THE GENERAL Practiſe of Phyſick.

CONTAINING

All inward and outward parts of the body, with all the accidents and infirmities that are incident unto them, even from the crown of the head to the ſole of the foot.

Alſo by what means (with the help of God) they may be remedied: very meet and profitable, not onely for all *Phyſitians*, *Chirurgions*, *Apothecaries*, and *Midwives*, but for all other eſtates whatſoever: the like whereof as yet in Engliſh hath not been publiſhed.

Compiled and written by the moſt famous and learned Doctor CHRISTOPHER WIRTZUNG, in the Germane tongue, and now tranſlated into English, in divers places corrected, and with many additions illuſtrated and augmented.

By JACOB MOSAN *Germane*, Doctor in the ſame faculty.

And now in this fourth and laſt Edition are very many Additions added by ſome of our Engliſh Phyſitians, which you may know by this mark ☞

COLL. OF PHYS. LONDON

LONDON,

Printed for *F. L. Henry Hood*, *Abel Roper*, and *Richard Tomlins*, and are to be ſold at their Shops in *Fleetſtreet*, and at the Sun and Bible in *Pie-Corner*. 1654.

919 b

TO

THE READER.

AS the true ſcope of all actions and endevours ought chiefly to tend to the glory of God, and to the good and common utility of many : ſo are thoſe men worthy of great praiſe and commendation, who not regarding their private gain or glory, have laboured their wits, and ſpent their ſtudies, in compoſing, tranſlating, and publiſhing in our vulgar either their own works, or ſuch learned writings of others, as they think moſt neceſſary for the publike weal; imitating therein the moſt famous Authors of ancient and modern age : namely, ſuch as Hippocrates, Galen, Avicen, Paracelſus and others, that have in their native tongues opened and revealed to poſterity the very depths and ſecrets of that excellent Art of Phyſick : which as it is more ancient, more neceſſary, more profitable, and more pleaſant, than any other Art or Knowledge whatſoever (except the knowledge of true felicity :) ſo it may boldly be ſaid (though not without apprehenſion of grief) no Art more falſified nor more abuſed in theſe dayes, as well by the preſumptuous intermedling of audacious and unskilful perſons; as for lack of good and wholſome Writings in Engliſh for the inſtruction and ſafe direction of all thoſe that have not alwayes a good and Learned Phyſitian at hand. Therefore (gentle Reader) that you may the better avoid theſe and ſuch like miſchievous inconveniences, here is preſented to your view the Learned work of that worthy Phyſitian *Chriſtopher Wirtzung*, firſt written and publiſhed by himſelf in the high Dutch or German Language, wherein it hath been more often Printed there, than any other Work of like nature : Afterwards Tranſlated into the low Dutch or Flemiſh tongue, by *Carolus Battus* Doctor in Phyſick, whoſe judgement and experience, the City of *Dort* in *Holland* doth willingly acknowledge, and now likewiſe Engliſhed for the Publick benefit of our Countrey, by *James Moſe* Doctor in Phyſick. What pains and labour hath been taken in the Tranſlating, it is referred to your own favourable cenſure, after you ſhall have peruſed and made tryal of it. Onely this for the preſent may with your good favour be boldly added out of the teſtimonies of men Learned and skilful in this faculty, that there is not publiſhed in our Engliſh Tongue the like Work, wherein the whole body of Phyſick is ſo ſuccinctly, ſo abſolutely, or ſo Artificially digeſted and compiled. For whether you conſider the matter therein delivered, or the manner of the delivery it ſelf, which as it is altogether profitable, ſo is it eaſie and methodical, deſcending from the head to the foot,

shewing all manner of Diseases incident to each part of our body, and setting down,

First the causes from whence they spring;

Secondly, the signes and tokens whereby they are known:

And thirdly, the remedies and helps whereby they may be cured and eased. There is no doubt, but when you have indifferently perused, and heedfully noted the same, you will not onely concurr in judgement with others, but also accept in all kindnesse the work it self, and make such favourable construction of the good endeavours of those that have laboured for your preservation, as your self would look to be rewarded withal in the like.

Farewell.

THE

The Contents of this Book.

¶ The 12. Chapter 769
The 1. §. oyl of Poplar buds *ibid.*
The 2. §. oyl of Mandragora 770
The 3. §. oyl of Amber *ibid.*
The 4. §. artificial Baulm *ibid.*
The 5. §. Sallad oyl, or oyl of Olives *ibid*
The 6. §. oyl of Behen 771
The 7. §. oyl of Pyretrum *ibid.*
The 8. §. oyl of Bevercod *ibid.*
The 9. §. oyl of Lead *ibid.*
The 10. §. oyl of Pennyroyal *ibid.*
The 11. §. oyl of Purslain *ibid.*
The 12. §. oyl of Cammomil *ibid.*
The 13. §. oyl of Capers 772
The 14. §. oyl of Costus *ibid.*
The 15. §. oyl of Dill *ibid.*
The 16. §. oyl of Eggs *ibid.*
The 17. §. oyl of Annis *ibid.*
The 18. §. oyl of wilde Cucumbers *ibid.*
The 19. §. oyl of Euphorbium 773
The 20. §. oyl of Foxes *ibid.*
The 21. § oyl of Lillies *ibid.*
The 22. §. oyl of Hempseed *ibid.*
The 23. §. oyl of the kernels of Aprecocks. *ibid.*
The 24. §. oyl of Eldern flowers *ibid.*
The 25. §. oyl of St. Johns wort *ibid.*
The 26. §. Oleum Infirmum 774
The 27. §. oyl of Cherry kernels *ibid.*
The 28. §. oyl of Melilot *ibid.*
The 29. §. oyl of Cresses *ibid.*
The 30. §. oyl of Copper *ibid*
The 31. §. oyl of Gourd seeds 746
The 32. §. oyl of Linseed *ibid.*
The 33. §. oyl of white Sesamum *ibid.*
The 34. §. oyl of Linnen cloth *ibid.*
The 35. §. oyl of Bay *ibid.*
The 36. § oyl of Mace *ibid.*
The 37 §. oyl of the seeds and flowers of Poppy 775
The 38. § oyl of sweet Almonds *ibid.*
The 39. §. oyl of Marjoram gentle *ibid.*
The 40. §. oyl of Mastick *ibid.*
The 41. §. oyl of Narcissus *ibid.*
The 42. §. oyl of Mirtles 776
The 43. §. oyl of Mints *ibid.*
The 44. §. oyl of Motherwort *ibid.*
The 45. § oyl of Nutmegs *ibid.*
The 46. §. oyl of Cloves *ibid.*
The 47. §. oyl of Walnuts *ibid.*
The 48. §. oyl of Pepper *ibid.*
The 49. § oyl of Peach kernels *ibid.*
The 50. §. oyl of Quinces *ibid.*
The 51. §. oyl of Rue 777
The 52. §. oyl of Earthworms *ibid.*
The 53. §. oyl of Privet *ibid.*
The 54. §. oyl of Rubarbe *ibid.*
The 55. §. oyl of Roses 778
The 56. oyl of Saffron *ibid.*
The 57. oyl of Sandaraca *ibid.*
The 58. §. oyl of Sulphur *ibid.*
The 59. §. oyl of blew flower-delice *ibid.*
The 60. §. oyl of Scorpions *ibid.*
The 61. §. oyl of water Lillies 779
The 62. §. oyl of Mustard seed *ibid.*
The 63. §. oyl of Spikenard *ibid.*
The 64. §. oyl of Antimony 751
The 65. §. oyl of Steele, or oyl of Iron *ibid.*
The 66. §. Rock of Peter oyl. 708
The 67. §. oyl of Turpentine. *ibid.*
The 68. §. oyl of Violets *ibid.*
Oyles of Ireas. *ibid.*
The 69. §. oyl of Vitriol, or Copperas *ibid.*
The 70. §. of the oyl of Wheat. 791
The 71. § oyl of Juniper berries *ibid.*
The 72. § oyl of Willow leaves *ibid.*
The 73. §. oyl of Argal *ibid.*
The 74. §. of Wormwood *ibid.*
The 75. §. oyl of Tiles *ibid.*
The 76. §. Oxycraton *ibid.*
The 77. §. Oxymel simplex 782
The 78. §. Oxymel compositum *ibid.*
The 79. §. Oxymel Scyllinum *ibid.*
The 80. §. Oxyrrhodinum *ibid.*
The 81. §. Oxysaccharu *ibid.*
¶ The 13. Chapter. *ibid.*
The 1. §. Emplastrum album coctum *ibid.*
The 2. §. Apostolicon plaister *ibid.*
The 3. §. Emplastrum de Baccis lauri *ibid.*
The 4. §. Basilicon *ibid.*
The 5. §. a plaister for the Rupture *ibid.*
The 6. § the plaister Ceroneum *ibid.*
The 7. §. Dyachylon 783
The 8. §. the plaister de Galbano *ibid.*
The 9. §. Gratia Dei plaister *ibid.*
The 10. §. Emplastrun Griseum de lapide Calaminari. *ibid.*
The 11. §. Hyssopi cerotum sive Philagrii. *ibid.*
The 12. §. Emplastrum de Melilото *ibid.*
The 13. §. Emplastrum de Muscilaginibus. *ibid.*
The 14. §. Emplastrum Oxyrroceum *ibid*
The 15. §. Emplastrum de pelle Arietis *ib.*
The 16. §. Emplastrum de Radicibus *ibid.*
The 17. §. the plaister of Saunders *ib.*
The 18. §. the black plaister 784
The 19. §. Sparadrapon *ibid.*
The 20. §. Emplastrum viride *ib.*
¶ The second part of this Chapter speaketh of Pils *ibid.*
The 1. §. Pilulæ de Agarico *ib.*
The 2. §. Pillulæ Aggregativæ *ibid.*
The 3. §. Pillulæ Elephangine. *ibid.*
The 4. § Pillulæ de Aloe lota *ibid.*
The 5. §. Pillulæ Azaiareth *ibid.*
The 6. §. Pillulæ Aureæ *ibid.*

The

The 7. §. Pillulæ de Bdellio. 785
The 8. §. Pillulæ benedictæ. ibid.
The 9. §. Pillulæ Cochiæ. ibid.
The 10. §. Pillulæ de Cynogloſſa. ibid.
The 11. §. Pillulæ de Euphorbio. ibid.
The 12. §. Pillulæ fœtidæ. ibid.
The 13. §. Pillulæ de fumo terræ. ibid.
The 14. §. Pillulæ de Hermodactylis. ibid.
The 15. §. Pillulæ de Hiera ſimplici. ibid.
The 16. §. Pillulæ de Hiera compoſita. ibid.
The 17. §. Pillulæ de Hiera cum Agarico. ib.
The 18. §. Pillulæ Iliacæ. ibid.
The 19. §. Pillulæ Indæ. ibid.
The 20. §. Pillulæ de lapide Armeno. 786
The 21. §. Pillulæ de lapide Lazuli. ibid.
The 22. §. Pillulæ lucis. ibid.
The 23. §. Pillulæ Maſticinæ. ibid.
The 24. §. Pillulæ de Mezereo. ibid.
The 25. §. Pillulæ de Opopanaco. ibid.
The 26. §. Pillulæ Peſtilentiales ſive Ruffi. ib.
The 27. §. Pillulæ de quinque generibus Mirobalanorum. ibid.
The 28. §. Pillulæ de Rabarbaro. ibid.
The 29. §. Pillulæ de Sandaraca. ibid.
The 30. §. Pillulæ de Sarcocolla. 787
The 31. §. Pillulæ de Serapino. ibid.
The 32. §. Pillulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo. ibid.
The 33. §. Pillulæ Stomachicæ. ibid.
¶ The 14. Chapter. ibid.
The 1. §. Hony of Roſes. ibid.
The 2. §. Vinegar of Roſes. ibid.
The 3. §. Vinegar of Rue. ibid.
¶ The 15. Chapter. ibid.
The 1. §. Ægyptiacum. ibid.
The 2. §. Salve of Agrippa. ibid.
The 3. §. Salve of Alabaſter. 788
The 4. §. Unguentum album. ibid.
The 5. §. Unguentum de Althæa. ibid.
The 6. §. Unguentum Anodinum. ibid.
The 7. §. Unguentum mundificativum de Apio. ibid.
The 8. §. Unguentum Apoſtolorum. ibid.
The 9. §. Unguentum Aragon. ibid.
The 10. §. Unguentum de Artanita. ibid.
The 11. §. Unguentum de Ceruſſa. ibid.
The 12. §. Unguentum Curinum. ibid.
The 13. §. Unguentum Comitiſſæ. 789
The 14. §. Salve for Scabs. ibid.
The 15. §. Unguentum infrigidans Galeni. ibid.
The 16. §. Unguentum Martianum vel Martiatum. ibid.
The 17. §. Unguentum Mercuriale. ibid.
The 18. §. Unguentum Nervinum. ibid.
The 19. §. Unguentum Nihili. ibid.
The 20. §. Unguentum Pectorale. ibid.
The 21. §. Pomade, Pomadoes. ibid.
The 22. §. Unguentum Pompholigos. ibid.
The 23. §. Unguentum Populeonis ibid.
The 24. §. Unguentum Roſatum. ibid.
The 25. §. Unguentum Sandalinum. 790
¶ The ſecond part of this Chapter of Sief. ibid.
The 1. §. Sief album Raſis. ibid.
The 2. §. Sief de Fellibus. ibid.
The 3. §. Sief de Memiche. ibid.
The 4. §. Sief de Plumbo. ibid.
The 5. §. Sief de Roſis. ibid.
The 6. §. Sief de Thure. ibid.
The 7. §. Sief Viride. ibid.
¶ The third part of this Chapter of Syrupes. ibid.
Of the Syrupes and Juices in General. ibid.
The 1. §. Syrupus de Abſinthio, that is of Wormwood. 791
The 2. §. Syrupus de Acetoſa of Sorrel. ibid.
The 3. §. Syrupus Acetoſus, of Vinegar. ib.
The 4. §. Syrupus Acetoſus compoſitus, alſo of Vinegar. ibid.
The 5. §. Syrupus Acetoſus de Citoniis, which is of fowr Quinces. ibid.
The 6. §. Syrupus Acetoſus Diarrhodon, that is of Vinegar and of Roſes. ibid.
The 7. §. Syrupus de Acetoſitate Citri, of the juice of Citrons. ibid.
The 8. §. Syrupus de Agreſta, of Verjuice, ib.
The 9. §. Syrupus de Aurantiis, of Oranges, 792
The 10. §. Syrupus de Artemiſia, of Mugwort. ibid.
The 11. §. Syrupus de Berberis, of Berberies, ibid.
The 12. §. Syrupus de Betonica, of Betony, ibid.
The 13. §. Syrupus Byzantinus. ibid.
The 14. §. Syrupus de Boragine, of Burrage. ibid.
The 15. §. Syrupus de Bugloſſa. ibid.
The 16. §. Syrupus de Calamintha, of field Mints. ibid.
The 17. §. Syrupus Capillorum Veneris, or of Maidenhair. 793
The 18. §. Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhabarbaro, of Cicory. ibid.
The 19. §. Syrupus de Citoniis, of Quinces. ibid.
The 20. §. Syrupus de Citro, of Citrons. ib.
The 21. §. Syrupus de Corticibus Citri, of Citron Peels. ibid.
The 22. Syrupus de Cucurbita, of Gourds. ibid.
The 23. §. Syrupus de Endivia, of Endive, ibid.
The 24. §. Syrupus de Epithymo. ibid.
The 25. §. Syrupus de Eupatorio, of Agrimony. 794
The 26. §. Syrupus de Fumo terræ, of Fumitory. ibid.

The

The Contents of this Book.

¶ *The second Part of this* Chapter, *of certain Powders for meat.* 806

¶ *The third Part of this* Chap. *of* Trochisks. *ibid.*

The 1. §. Trochisci de Absinthio, of Wormwood. *ibid.*

The 2. §. Trochisci Adulphi. *ibid.*

The 3. §. Trochisci de Agarico, of Agarick. *ibid.*

The 4. §. Trochisci Alhandel, of Coloquint. *ibid.*

The 5. §. Trochisci Alkakengi, of winter Cherries. 807

The 6. §. Trochisci de Berberis, of Berberies. *ibid.*

The 7. §. Trochisci de Bolo armeno. *ibid.*

The 8. §. Trochisci de Camphora, of Campher. *ibid.*

The 9. §. Trochisci de Capparis, of Caper roots. *ibid.*

The 10. §. Trochis. de Carabe, of Amber. *ib.*

The 11. §. Trochisci de Chelidonia, of Celandine. *ibid.*

The 12. §. Trochis. de Coralis, of Coral. *ib.*

The 13. §. Trochisci de Eupatorio, of Agrimony. *ibid.*

The 14. §. Trochisci de Lacca. 808

The 15. §. Trochisci de Myrrha. *ibid.*

The 16. §. Trochisci de Olibano, of Frankincense. *ibid.*

The 17. §. Trochisci de Rhabarbaro. *ibid.*

The 18. §. Trochisci Diarrhodon. *ibid.*

The 19. §. Trochis. de Rosis, of Roses. *ib.*

The 20. §. Trochis. de Santalis, of Saunders. *ibid.*

The 21. §. Trochisci de Spica. 809

The 22. §. Trochisci de Spodio, of Ivory. *ibid.*

The 23. §. Trochisci de terra sigillata. *ibid.*

The 24. §. Trochisci de Violis, of Violets. *ibid.*

The 25. §. For to make writing Ink. *ibid.*

The 26. §. For to make common Vernish. *ibid.*

The 27. §. of Painters Vernish. 810

The 28. §. For to make odoriferous Vernish. *ibid.*

¶ *The* 17. Chapter. *ibid.*

¶ The 18. Chapter of all kinds of Wine. *ibid.*

The 1. §. of Wine in general. *ibid.*

The 2. §. of sundry natures of wine. 811

The 3. §. of Must. *ibid.*

The 4. §. of Wine cuict, or decocted wine. *ibid.*

The 5. §. of burnt wine, or spirit of wine. *ibid.*

The 6. §. of Vinegar. 812

¶ The 19. Chapter, of herbed wines, and such like. *ibid.*

The 1. §. the Wine of Elecampane roots. *ibid.*

The 2. §. Eyebright Wine. 813

The 3. §. Wine of whole Grapes. *ibid.*

The 4. §. Wine of Avence. *ibid.*

The 5. §. Betony wine. *ibid.*

The 6. §. Burrage wine. 814

The 7. §. Wine of *Asarabacca*. *ibid.*

The 8. §. Wine of Frambois. *ibid.*

The 9. §. Wine of Harts tongue. *ibid.*

The 10. §. the wine of Hyssope. *ibid.*

The 11. §. winter Cherry Wine. *ibid.*

The 12. §. Cherry wine. *ibid.*

The 13. §. Lavender wine. 815

The 14. §. of Malmsey. *ibid.*

The 15. §. Wine of Marjoram. *ibid.*

The 16. §. Wine of Cinamom. *ibid.*

The 17. §. Muscadel Wine. *ibid.*

The 18. §. Wine of Gilloflowers. 816

The 19. §. Wine of Bugloss. *ibid.*

The 20. §. Wine that purgeth. *ibid.*

The 21. §. Wine of whole Grapes. *ibid.*

The 22. §. *Vinum pwirum.* *ibid.*

The 23. §. Rosemary wine. *ibid.*

The 24. §. Wine of Sage. *ibid.*

The 25. §. Wine of Clary. 817

The 26. §. Wine of Water-Lilly flowers. *ibid.*

The 27. §. Tamarisk wine. *ibid.*

The 28. §. Wine of Wormwood. *ibid.*

The 29. §. Wine of Zeduary. *ibid.*

The 30. §. How that the infirmities of all wines are to be mended. 818

The End of the Contents of this Book.

The 27. §. Syrupus de Glycyrrhiza, of Licorice. *ibid.*
The 28. §. Syrupus Granatorum, of Pomgranats. *ibid.*
The 29. §. Syrup. de Hyssopo. of Hyssop, *ib.*
The 30 §. Syrupus de Ireos, of Ireas. 795
The 31. §. Syrupus de Jujubis. *ibid.*
The 32. §. Syrup. de Limonibus, of Limons. *ib.*
The 33. §. Syrupus de Lupulo, of Hops, *ibid.*
The 34. §. Syrupus de Menta, of Mints, *ibid.*
The 35. §. Syrup. de Myrto, of Myrtle seed. *ibid.*
The 36. §. Syrupus de Nymphæa, of water Lillies. *ibid.*
The 37. §. Syrupus de Papavere, of Poppy heads. 796
The 38. §. Syrup. de Persicis, of Peaches. *ibid.*
The 39. §. Syrup. de Plantagine, of Plantain, *ibid.*
The 40. §. Syrup. de Pomis, of Apples. *ibid.*
The 41. §, Syrup. de Portulaca, of Purslain. *ibid.*
The 42. §. Syrup. de Prassio, of Horehound. *ibid.*
The 43. §. Syrupus de Pyris, of Peares. *ibid.*
The 44. §. Syrup. de Radicibus, of roots *ibid.*
The 45. §. Syrup. de Ribes, of Raspes. 797
The 46. §. Syrupus infusionis Rosarum, of Roses. *ibid.*
The 47. §. Syrup. de Rosis siccis, of dry Roses. *ibid.*
The 48. §. Syrup. Rosatus solutivus, purging Syrups of Roses. *ibid.*
The 49. §. Syrup. de rosis albis, of white Roses. *ibid.*
The 50. §. Syrupus sapor Regum. *ibid.*
The 51. §. Syrupus de Stœchade, of Stechas flowers. *ibid.*
The 52. §. Syrup. de Thymo, of Thyme. *ib.*
The 53. §. Syrupus violarum, of Violets. 798

¶ *The fourth part of this Chapter of the Species and of Lohsnges.* *ibid.*
The 1. §. Species de Ambra, of Amber. *ibid.*
The 2. §. Spec. de Anisso, of Annis. *ibid.*
The 3. §. Spec. de Anthus, of Rosmary. *ibid.*
The 4. §. Species aromaticum rosarum. 799
The 5 §. Spec. de Calaminthe, of field Mints *ibid.*
The 6. §. Spec. de Capparis, of Caper roots. *ibid.*
The 7. §. Spec. de Caryophillis, of Cloves. *ibid.*
The 8. §. Species de Cynamomo, of Cynamom. *ibid.*
The 9. §. Spec. Cordiales, for the heart. *ibid.*
The 10. §. Spec. Diacostu, of Costus roots. *ib.*
The 11. §. Species de Croco, or Crocoma, of Saffron. *ibid.*
The 12. §. Species de Cumino, of Cumin. 800
The 13. §. Spec. de Tragacantha, of Dragagant. *ibid.*
The 14. §. Species *Ducis*. *ibid.*
The 15. §. Spec. de Galanga, of Galangal. *ib.*
The 16. §. Spec. de Gemmis, of precious stones. *ibid.*
The 17. §. Species Hieræ simplicis. *ibid.*
The 18. §. Spec. de Ireos, of Ireas. *ibid.*
The 19. §. Species Justini. *ibid.*
The 20. §. Species de Lacca. 801
The 21. §. Spec. lætificantes, & lætitiæ Galeni. *ibid.*
The 22. §. Species liberantes. *ibid.*
The 23. §. Spec. lithontribon. *ibid.*
The 24. §. Spec. de Margaritis, of Pearles. *ibid.*
The 25. §. Spec. de Mentha, of Mints, *ibid.*
The 26. §. Spec. de Moschu, of Musk. *ibid.*
The 27. §. Species Nere. 802
The 28. §. Spec. de Olibano, of Frankincense. *ibid.*
The 29. §. Spec. de Papavere, of Poppy seed. *ibid.*
The 30. §. Spec. de Penidio, of Sugar pennets. *ibid.*
The 31. §. Spec. de Pæonia, of Piony. *ibid.*
The 32. §. Spec. Diaphœniconis, of Dates. *ibid.*
The 33. §. Species Philanthropon. *ibid.*
The 34. §. Spec. piris Arcoticon. *ibid.*
The 35. §. Spec. de Prasio, of Horehound. *ibid.*
The 36. §. Spec. Diarrhodon Abbatis, of Roses. 803
The 37. §. Spec. Electuarii de succo rosarum, of Roses. *ibid.*
The 38. §. Species Rosatæ novellæ. *ibid.*
The 39. §. Spec. de Seminibus. *ibid.*
The 40. §. Spec. Triasantalum, of Sanders. *ib.*
The 41. §. Spec. Trion pipereon, of Pepper. 804
The 42. §. Spec. Diaturbith, of Turbith. *ib.*
The 43. §. Species de Xyloaloe. *ibid.*
The 44. §. to make strong water. *ibid.*
The 45. §. Spec. *Barchotis*. *ibid.*
¶ The 16. Chapter. 805
The. 1. §. *Decoctiones Aperitivæ*, Potions that do deobstruct. *ibid.*
The 2. §. *Decoctio Epithymi*, of Dodder. *ibid.*
The 3. §. *Decoctio fructuum*, a Potion of certain fruits. *ibid.*
The 4. §. *Decoctio pectoralis*, the pectoral potion. *ibid.*
The 5. §. *Decoctio & infusio Sennæ*, a Potion of Sene leaves. *ibid.*
The 6. §. a water of mans blood. *ibid.*

¶ The

The Contents of this Book in General.

This present Work, or Practise of Physick, is divided into Nine Parts.

The first Part is a very necessary introduction, which is marvellous needful for this Whole Work, and is subdivided into Eleven Chapters and twenty five §. Page 1.

THe first Chapter speaketh of the manifold miseries and calamities of mankind. *ibid.*

¶ The 2. Chapter, sheweth the causes of mans miserie and wretchednesse. 3

¶ The 3. Chapter, declareth the necessity, profit and praise of Physick. 4

¶ The 4. Chapter, maketh a division of the whole work. 6

¶ The 5. Chapter, sheweth how all manner of roots, barks, herbs, flowers, fruits, and such like may be gathered. 7

¶ The 6. Chapter, is of the preparation of some things for Physick. 8

¶ The 7. Chapter, 1. §. hath a general rule to be observed in purging. 20

The 2. §. teacheth what persons shall abstain from purging, and the impediments thereof. *ibid.*

The 3. §. declareth what is to be observed in and after the taking of a purgation. 21

¶ The 8. Chapter, 1. §. maketh mention of Phlebotomy in general. 23

The 2. §. is of the causes that prohibit Phlebotomy. 24

The 3. §. at what time and in what sign a vein is to be opened. *ibid.*

The 4. §. is an admonition to those that let others blood. 25

The 5. §. what is to be done before, in, and after the letting of blood. *ibid.*

The 6. §. what vein ought in every disease to be opened. 26

The 7. §. of the head vein *Cephalica.* 27

The 8. §. of the Liver vein *Basilica.* *ibid*

The 9. §. of the median, or middlevein. *ib.*

The 10. §. of the armpit vein called *Axillaris.* *ibid.*

The 11. § of the Spleen vein or *Salvatella.* 28

The 12. §. of the Hip vein. *ibid.*

The 13. §. of the Womb vein. *ibid.*

The 14. §. of the ham or knee vein. *ibid*

The 15. § of the vein in the forehead. *ibid.*

The 16. §. of the eye veins 29

The 17. §. of the vein in the temples of the head. *ibid.*

The 18. §. of the vein upon the nose. *ibid.*

The 19. §. of the veins in the lips. *ibid.*

The 20. §. of the veins of the Almonds or kernels in the throat. *ibid.*

The 21. §. of the veins under the tongue. *ib.*

The 22. §. of the veins in the neck. *ibid.*

¶ The 9. Chapter, of cupping. *ibid.*

¶ The 10. Chapter, of the diminishing of blood by Horsleeches. *ibid.*

¶ The 11. Chapter, of the six not natural things; called of the Physitians *Res non naturales,* 28

¶ The 12. Chapter, of all the weights and measures which commonly are used in Physick. 36

The rest of this Book is divided into eight Parts; whereof the first containeth the Head, with all the Parts thereof to the very neck, as face, hair, beard, scull, brain, nose, ears, lips, mouth, tongue, teeth, speech, &c. with all such accidents as are incident unto them, and their appropriate remedies. 37

THe 1. Chapter, speaketh of the pain in the head. *ibid.*

The 1. §. of the causes of head-ach. 38

The 2. §. sheweth the signs of a hot head-ach, that proceedeth from choler. 39

The 3. §. of the pain in the head with agues, and lask or flux of the belly. 42

The 4. §. heat of the head with melancholy. 44

The 5. §. headach proceeding from emptinesse of the stomach. *ibid.*

The 6. §. of *Cephalea*, and *Hemicrania*, certain pains of the head. 45

The 7. §. of headach of the Sun or of the South winds. 46

The 8. §. of headach that cometh of drunkennesse. *ibid.*

The 9. §. of headach proceeding of a stroke or fall. 47

¶ The 2. Chapter, treateth of the pain of the head that is caused by cold. *ibid.*

The 1. §. sheweth the manner of purging in this infirmity. 48

The 2. §. is of neesing for a cold and rheumatick head. 57
The 3. §. teacheth the order of dyet for the cold pain of the head. 59
The 4. §. of outward bruises of the head. *ibid.*
The 5. §. sheweth what doth convey the medicines to the head. *ibid.*
The 6. §. hath divers kinds of *Oxymel*. *ibid.*
The 7. §. of the purging sirup of Roses. 60
The 8. §. of Barly water. *ibid.*
The 9. §. of *Manus Christi* with Pearls. 61
¶ The 3. Chapter, of the hair of the head. *ibid.*
The 1. §. to cause the hair to grow, and to colour it. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the dying of the hair in general. 62
The 3. §. grey hairs how to hinder them. *ib.*
The 4. §. to take away hair. 63
The 5. §. of divers defaults of the hair. *ibid.*
The 6. §. of baldnesse and falling out of the hair. 64
The 7. §. of the scales of the head, beard, & eyebrowes. 65
The 8. §. to drive away Lice & vermine. *ib.*
The 9. §. the Lousie evil *Phthiriasis*, a miserable sickenesse. 66
The 10. §. of the bad sore, scurfe or scal of the head and such like. 67
The 11. §. of the skin of the head. 70
¶ The 4. Chapter, of the scull of the head. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of the compression of the skull in young children. 71
The 2. §. of the fracture of the skull. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the skins or tunicles of the brains called *Dura*, and *Pia mater*, when they be perished. 76
The 4. §. the trial when a plaister is sodden enough. *ibid.*
¶ The 5. Chapter, the face, a part of the head. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of all staines or spots in the face. *ib.*
The 2. §. of the redness of the face. 78
The 3. §. for all white pushes of the face. 79
The 4. §. for to make a clean face. *ibid.*
The 5. §. for congealed blood after any blowes remaining. 80
The 6. §. how to make a good colour. *ibid.*
¶ The 6. Chapter, of the eyebrowes, eyelids, with all that appertaineth unto them. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of the swelling of the eyelids. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the itching and smarting of the eyelids. 84
The 3. §. of clefts in the eyelids. 85
The 4. §. of warts upon the eyelids. 86
The 5. §. of the inversion of the eyelids, when the inward red flesh appeareth outwardly. *ibid.*
The 6. §. of the consolidation or growing together of the eyelids. 87
The 7. §. of the nethermost eyelid, which pricketh the apple of the eye. 88
The 8. §. of the falling out of the hair in the upermost eyelids. *ibid.*
¶ The 7. Chapter, of the eyes. 89
The 1. §. of the pain of the eyes in general. 90
The 2. §. of the corners of the eyes and their diseases. 91
The 3. §. of the disease in the eyes called *Ophthalmia*. 93
The 4. §. of the redness of the eyes. 94
The 5. §. of hot eyes. 96
The 6. §. of itch and scabs of the eyes. 97
The 7. §. watering or running eyes. *ibid.*
The 8. §. sore eyes with or without matter. 102
The 9. §. of *Ægylops*, a certain swelling between the nose and the corner of the eye. 105
The 10. §. of blemishes or spots in the eyes *ibid.*
The 11. §. of the fistula in the corner of the eye. 108
The 12. §. of gnats and flies that seem to swarme before the eyes. 109
The 13. §. of the skin of the eyes. 113
The 14. §. of the mists and clouds of the eyes. 115
The 15. §. of dispersion and contraction of the eye-beams or sight. 116
The 16. §. of the extuberation of the eyes as if they would fall out. *ibid.*
The 17. §. of the eyes that be burnt. 117
The 18. §. when any is stricken in or upon the eies. *ibid.*
The 19. §. if any thing be fallen into the eies. 118
The 20. §. how to cure the diminishing, feebleness and darkness of the eies. *ibid.*
The 21. §. of those that after the rising of the Sun can see nothing at all, or very little. 124
The 22. §. when one is waxen almost blind. *ibid.*
The 23. §. of squintnesse. 125
The 24. §. Hydromel, hony water how to make and use the same. *ibid.*
¶ The 8. Chapter, of the nose. 126
The 1. §. of obstruction, or stopping in the nose. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of ulcers in the nose. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of obstruction or stopping in childrens noses without any other infirmity. 128
The 4. §. of impostumations of the nose. *ib.*
The 5. §. of the Canker in the nose. 129
The 6. §. of the murrhe. *ibid.*

The.

The 7. §. of the exceſſive bleed at the noſe. 131
The 8. §. enfeebled or loſt ſmelling. 134.
¶ The 9. Chapter, of the ears. 136
The 1. §. pain of the ears in general. 137
The 2. § of the noiſe and hiſſing in the ears. 139
The 33. §. impoſtumes and ſores in the ears. 141
The 4. §. of ortward ſores of the ears. 144
The 5. §. of the bleeding at the ears. *ibid.*
The 6. §. of little worms that grow in the ears, and that do creep into them outwardly, and ſuch like. 145
The 7. § of obſtruction or ſtopping of the ears through inward and outward cauſes. *ibid.*
The 8. §. if any thing be gotten into the ears from without. 146
The 9. §. of the diminiſhing of hearing. *ibid.*
¶ The 10. Chapter, of the lips. 148
The 1. §. of the chops and clefts in the lips. *ibid.*
¶ The 11. Chapter, of the beard. 149
The 1. §. for the growing of the beard. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the falling out of the beard. 150
¶ The 12. Chapter, of the brains and all that concerneth them. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of the memory. 151.
The 2. §. of the giddineſſe of the head, and infirmitie of the brains. 154
The 3. §. of Frantickneſſe, madneſſe, or doting, and ſuch like infirmities. 157
The 4. §. of *Delirium*, doting and childiſhneſſe. *ibid.*
The 5. §. of *Phrenitis*, or frantickneſſe with an Ague. 158
The 6. §. for to bring the ſick to ſleep and reſt. 160
The 7. §. of *Mania*, another kind of frantickneſſe, which we commonly call madneſſe. 162
The 8. §. of *Melancholia*, or *Dementia*, a wonderful madneſſe. 163
The 9. §. of the Palſey in general. 166
The 10. §. of the ſleeping diſeaſe *Lethargus*, *Veternus*, *Torpor*. 167
The 11. §. of numneſſe and aſtoniſhing, which is *ſtupor*, and *congelatio*, whereon dependeth *tremor*, which we call trembling. 168
The 12. §. of the ſhaking Palſey. 169
The 13. §. for the reſolution of the ſinewes or dead Palſey. 171
The 14. §. of the convulſion of the mouth through the Palſey. 177
The 15. §. of the cramp and convulſion of the ſinewes by the Palſey. 179
The 16. § of the Hag or Mare, *Ephialtes*, and *Incubus*. 182
The 17. § of the falling ſickneſſe called *Epilepſia*. 183
The 18. §. of the Apoplexie or dead palſey. 191
¶ The 13. Chapter, of the mouth, and all that appertaineth unto it. 193
The 1. §. of putrifactions and exulcerations in the mouth. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the ſwollen Almonds. 195
The 3. §. of a ſtinking mouth & breath. *ibid.*
The 4. §. a Gargariſme for all infections of the mouth. 196
The 5. §. of the pallet, and the falling down thereof. 197
The 6. §. of the tongue. 199
The 7. §. of the gums, and mandibles. 205
The 8. §. of the teeth. 208
¶ The 14. Chapter, of the voyce. 216
The 1. §. of hoarſeneſſe. 217
The 2. §. how to make a clear voice. 218
The ſecond Part of this Practiſe of Phyſick, containeth the Breaſt. 218
THe 1. Chapter, of the Neck. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of *Bronchocele* *ibid.*
The 2. §. if one have ſomething ſticking in his throat. 220
The 3. §. when a Horſleech taken in drink remaineth ſticking in the throat. *ibid.*
The 4. §. of the Squinancy or ſwelling in the throat. 221
The 5. §. of the Squinancy or pain in the throat through heat. 222
The 6. §. of pain in the throat through *Phlegma* and cold taking. 225
The 7. §. of the ulcers of the throat. *ibid.*
¶ The 2. Chapter, of all Rheumes and defluxions in general. 226
The 1. §. of rheums that proceed of cold. 227
The 2. §. of hot Rheumes. 231
The 3. §. of Rheumes with Agues. 234
The 4. §. if the rheume would not paſſe through the noſe. 235
¶ The 3. Chapter, of the foremoſt part of the breaſt *Thorax*. *ibid.*
The 1. § of womans breaſts milk, and of their diſeales. *ibid.*
The 2. of the overmuch growing and hanging down of the breaſts. 235
The 3. §. of milk in general. 236
The 4. §. of want and ſcarſity of milk. *ibid.*
The 5. §. againſt the ſuperfluity of milk. 238
The 6. §. for the clotted or congealed milk in the breaſts *ibid.*
The 7. §. of the hardneſſe and inflammation of womens breaſts. 239
The 8. §. of the tumour or ſwelling of the breaſts. 240
The 9. §. of the impoſtumation of the breſt. *ibid.*

The 10. § of the Canker in the breast. 242
The 11. §. of the fistula in the breast. 242
The 12. §. of the clefts or chops in the nipples. 243
The 13. §. what the hair on the breasts doth signifie. *ibid.*
¶ the fourth Chapter, of the back in general. *ibid*
The 1. § of the pain in the back. 243
The 2. §. of the crooked back. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the shoulder blades. 247
The 4. §. of the ribs. 248
The 5. §. of the Pleurisie *Pleuritis*, a sicknesse with great pricking in the side. *ibid.*
The 6. §. of the Pleurisie of heat and blood. 249
The 7. §. of the pleurisie of *Cholera*. 252
The 8. §. of the pleurisie of *Phlegma*. 253
The 6. § of the pleurisie of *Melancholia*. *ibid.*
The 10. §. of the Bastard Pleurisie. 254
The 11 §. when the plueriſie sheweth it self outwardly. *ibid.*
The 12. §. when the Plurisie taketh a woman with child. 255
The 13. §. rules for such as are recovered of the Pleurisie, that they fal not into it again. *ibid.*
The 14. §. certain several remedies against the cold Pleurisie. 256
¶ The 5. Chapter, of the Lights or Lungs. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of the Cough. *ibid.*
The 2. § of the Rheume or catarrhe which falleth vpon the Lights. 257
The 3. §. what is commodious for the obstructed Lights. 258
The 4. §. remedies for the Cough. 259
The 5. §. against all dry Coughs. *ibid.*
The 6. §. of a moist and cold Cough. 260
The 7. §. of an old Cough. 262
The 8. §. what is good for coughing up of Phlegme. 263
The 9. §. of a short panting breath. 264
The 10. §. of the six not natural things, called *res non naturales*, whereto is also added a rule for the Pursiveneſse. 165
The 11. §. of the breast oppressed with flegme. 268
The 12. §. of the right pursiveneſse with a sore old cough, through tough flegme in the brest, which is called with one word *Asthma*. 269
The 13. §. of certain excellent things in general. 272
The 14. §. of shortneſse of breath through *Cholera*. *ibid.*
The 15. § of the shortneſse of breath thorow Melancholy. 273
The 16. §. of the shortneſse of breathing or pursiveneſse through wind. *ibid.*
The 17. §. of the spetting of blood through some disease of the Lights. *ibid.*
The 18. §. for a broken vein in the Lights or Breast. 276
The 19. §. for congealed blood. 277
The 20. § comfortable things in and after the spetting of blood. 278
The 21. §. of the infection of the Lights which is called *Peripneumonia*. 279
The 22. §. of the anguish in the Lights, which is called *Empyema*. *ibid.*
The 23. §. of the consumption *Phthisis*, a disease of the Lights. 281
The 24. §. of the stinking breath in *Phthisis*, or the consumption. 287
¶ The 6. Chapter, of the Heart, the most precious part of mans body. 288
The 1. § of the fainting of the heart in general. 289
The 2. §. *Syncope*, the great swooning. 291
The 3. § of the beating or panting of the heart. 294
The 4. §. of the panting of the heart thorow heat. 295
The 5. §. of the panting of the heart thorow cold. 268
The 6. §. of the panting of the heart thorow a bad stomach or appetite. 302
The 7. §. of the panting of the heart thorow frighting. *ibid.*
The 8. §. of heavineſse, a disease of the heart. *ibid.*
The 9. §. of the griping of the heart. *ibid.*

The third Part of this Book of Physick Containeth the Belly. 304

THe first Chapter of the Navel. *ibid.*
The 2. Chapter of the members of generation in general. 305
The 1. §. of the tumours in the groin, and other such like diseases. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the privities or secrets in particular. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the unnatural erection of the yard, called *Priapismus* and *Satyrismus* 307
¶ The 3. Chapter, of the Testicles & Cods, and of sundry Ruptures. 308
The 1. §. of the uppermost Herby or Rupture which happeneth aboue the Cod. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of Rutures that fall down into the Cods. 312
The 3. §. of the Rupture through wind. *ibid*
The 4. §. of the waterish Rupture *Hernia Aquosa*. 313
The 5. §. of the Rupture through blood and flegme. 314
The 6. §. of the fleshly Rupture. 315
The 7. §. of the Rupture which is caused of bro-

broken veins, called *Varicosa.* *ibid.*
The 8. §. of the terrible Rupture called *Burris.* 316
The 9. §. of the Rupture whereby the bowels do fall down into the Cods. 317
The 10. §. of the Ruptures of children. *ibid.*
The 11. §. for to keep up the matter that it descend no more. *ibid.*
The 12. §. for to stay the reversion of the Rupture that it come not again. *ibid.*
The 13. §. the order of life or dyet. 318
¶ The 4. Chapter, of the Testicles or stones. 319
¶ The 5. Chapter, of womens privy members. 320
The 1. §. of the imflammation of the place with swellings. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the clefts of this place. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the ulceration in the privities of women, 321
The 4. §. when any body catcheth any sore through carnal copulation. *ibid.*
The 5. §. for to make a woman to be as narrow as a Maiden. *ibid.*
¶ The 6. Chapter, of the Spermatical flux, or the running of the Reins. 322
The 1. §. of the flux of the seed, or running of the Reins through heat. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the flux of sperme, or running of the Reins through cold. 325
The 3. §. of the flux of sperme or seed in the sleep. *ibid.*
The 4. §. of what and whereby natural sperme or seed will be most augmented. *ibid*
¶ The 7. Chapter of barrennesse in general. 327
The 1. §. for to help and prefer or hasten fruitfulnesse. 328
The 2. §. of barrennesse through heat. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of barrennesse through drouth. 329
The 4. §. of barrennesse through fatnesse. *ibid.*
The 5. §. of barrennesse through cold and moisture. *ibid.*
The 6. §. for to comfort the retentive vertue of the womb. 330
The 7. §. of barrennesse through repletion of the body. and obstruction of the terms or flowers. 331
The 8. §. for to further fruitfulnesse in man and woman. 332
¶ The 8. Chapter, of the Reins, and their pain. 333
¶ The 9. Chapter, of the Buttocks. *ibid.*
¶ The 10. Chapter, of the Arsegut, or Fundament in general. 334
The 1. §. of the going out, or hanging down of the Arsegut, *Procidentia ani.* *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the relaxation or slacking of the Arsegut. 335
The 3. §. of the impostume of the Arsegut *ibid.*
The 4. §. of the Piles called *Hemorroides.* 336
The 5. §. to stanch the bleeding of the Pyles. 337
The 6. §. how the Pyles are to be opened. 341
The 7. §. against the pain of the Pyles. 342
The 8. §. of the Pyles which are called *Verrucales.* 344
The 9. §. of the Pyles that do hang far out. *ibid.*
The 10. §. of the impostumes in the Arsegut. 346
The 11. §. of the clefts in the Fundament that are called *Rhagades.* 347
The 12. §. of the fistula and Canker in the Arsegut. 348
The 13. §. of the itch in the Arsegut. *ibid.*
¶ The 11. Chapter, of the inward members of the third Part. 349
The 1. §. of the stomach in general. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the neck and mouth of the stomach *ibid.*
The 3. §. to preserve and keep a good digestion of the stomach. 351
The 4. §. of the debility of the stomach in general. 354
The 5. §. of a weak stomach through cold. 355
The 6. §. of the debility of the stomach thorow heat. 363
The 7. §. of the debility of the stomach through drought. 364
The 8. §. of the scalding in the throat, and of the heart-burning. 366
The 9. §. of inappetency or lost appetite, and whereby it may be remedied. *ibid.*
The 10. §. of the wambling and lothing of meat. 368
The 11. §. of the wambling or vomiting through weakenesse of the stomach. 369
The 12. § of parbraking or vomiting, with the lask or scouring. 371
The 13. §. of the flux, lask, or scouring by stool. 375
The 14. §. of the lask *Lienteria*, of *Cholera* and heat. *ibid.*
The 15. §. of the lask *Diarrhaa.* 378
The 16. §. of the scouring which proceedeth of the Liver and stomach. 308
The 17. §. of the lask *Dysenteria*, called the the red flux. 381
The 18. §. of the other kind of *Dysenteria*, or bloody flux. 389
The 19. §. of all bloody fluxes in general.

The 20. §. of the conſtipation or binding in the body. *ibid.*
The 21. §. of the ſtraining or unſatiable deſire of going to ſtool, which is called *Tenelmus*. 396
The 22. §. of pain in the ſtomach in general. 398
The 23. §. of the pain in the ſtomach without impoſtumation through heat. 399
The 24. §. of the pain in the ſtomach without impoſtumation through cold. 400
The 25. §. of the pain in the ſtomach through wind. *ibid.*
The 26. §. of the ſwelling or puffing up of the ſtomach. 402
The 27. §. of the pain in the ſtomach through *Phlegma*. 403
The 28. §. of the pain in the ſtomach through *Melancholia*. 404
The 29. §. of the pain in the ſtomach through a hot impoſtume. *ibid.*
The 30. §. of the impoſtumes of the ſtomach that be of a cold nature. 406
The 31. §. of the exulcerations in the ſtomach. 407
The 32. §. of the ſtinking breath through the exulceration of the ſtomach. 408
The 33. §. of the ſchirroſity of the ſtomach. *ibid.*
The 34. §. of the hickcough in general. 409
The 35. §. of the unſatiable hunger in general. 411
¶ The 12. Chapter, of the Liver. 415
The 1. §. of the infections of the Liver in general. 416
The 2. §. of the obſtruction of the Liver in general. *ibid*
The 3. §. of the oppilation or obſtruction of the Liver through heat. 417
The 4. §. of the obſtruction of the Liver through cold. 420
The 5. §. of a Schirrous Liver. 423
The 6. §. of a cold Liver without obſtruction. *ibid*
The 7. §. of the impoſtumation of the Liver. 424
The 8. §. of the laſk or ſcouring through weakneſſe of the Liver. 425
The 9. §. of divers things which be very commodious for all infections of the Liver. 426
The 10. §. of the thirſt through drouth and heat of the Liver. *ibid*
The 11. §. of the yellow Jaundiſe, a ſickneſſe of the Liver. 427
The 12. §. of the Dropſie in general. 431
The 13. §. of the Dropſie *Anaſarca*. 432
The 14. §. of the Dropſie *Aſcites*. 433
The 15. §. ſweating is very good for all Dropſies. 436
The 16. §. of the Dropſie *Tympanites*. 437
¶ The 13. Chapter, of the Gall. 439
¶ The 14. Chapter, of the Milt or Spleen. 440
The 1. §. of the obſtruction of the Spleen with heat and an Ague. 441
The 2. §. of the impoſtume of the Spleen. 442
The 3. §. of an obſtructed Milt without ague, yet with pain. 443
The 4. §. of the hardneſſe or *Scirrhus* of the Spleen. 444
The 5. §. of *Melancholia* and moiſture of the Spleen. 449
The 6. §. how the melancholick blood is to be purged. 451
¶ The 15. Chapter, of the bowels or guts. 452
The 1. §. of the pain and griping of the guts in general. *ibid*
The 2. §. of the uppermoſt pain and griping of the guts, *Iliaca paſſio*, the which the common man calleth *Colica*. 353
The 3. §. of the pain or griping in the guts, which is called *Colica*. 454
The 4. §. of the difference of theſe pains in the guts. 455
The 5. §. of the pain in the guts through obſtruction or binding in the body. *ibid.*
The 6. §. of the pain in the guts through ſlime and flegme. 456
The 7. §. of the pain in the guts through wind. 458
The 8. §. for all manner of pain in the belly. 460
The 9. §. of the pain in the guts through any impoſtumes, or other affections of the bowels. *ibid*
The 10. §. of the pain in the bowels thorow heat and *Cholera*. 462
The 11. §. of the pain in the belly mixt with gravel. *ibid.*
The 12. §. of the paine in the bellies of young children. 463
The 13. §. of the Worms in the belly. *ibid.*
The 14. §. of the Worms *Aſcarides* which do keep in the Arſegut. 470
¶ The 16. Chapter, of the Kidnies. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of the pain in the Kidneies thorow cold and moiſture. 471
The 2. §. of the pain in the Kidneies thorow wind. 472
The 3. §. of the obſtructed Kidneies. 373
The 4. §. of the pain in the Kidneies thorow heat and drith. 474
The 5. §. how to aſſwage the pain in the Kidneies. 475

The

The Contents of this Book.

The 6. §. of an hard impoſtume in the kidneys. 476
The 7. §. of impoſtumes and ulcers in the kidneys.
The 8 §. of the impoſtumation in the kidneys through heat. 477
The 9. §. of impoſtumes in the kidneys through cold. 478
The 10. §. of the exulceration in the kidneys. *ibid.*
The 11. §. of piſſing of blood. 480
The 12. §. if any man piſſe matter. 481
The 13. §. of the outward ulcers of the kidneyes. 482
The 14. §. the order of dyet. *ibid.*
¶ The ſeventeenth Chapter, of the gravel ſand, or ſtone of the Kidneys, and of the Bladder. *ibid.*
The 1. §. for to hinder and reſtrain the ingendring and growing of the gravel and ſtone. 483
The 2. §. to let the growing of the ſtone. 484
The 3. §. againſt the pain of the gravel. 485
The 4. §. of thoſe things that expel the gravel and break the ſtone. 486
The 5. §. when one cannot hold his water. 493.
The 6. §. of the effluxion of the urine thorow cold. 494
The 7. §. of the effluxion of the urine thorow heat. 495
¶ The eighteenth Chapter, of the bladder. 496
The 1. §. of the retention of urine in general. 497
The 2. §. of the pain which is cauſed by the retention of the urine. 498
The 3. §. of the ſtopping of the urine thorow the debility of the vertue retentive. 499
The 4. §. of the retention of urine through fall or blowes. 501
The 5. §. of the retention of urine through ſome obſtruction of the conduits. 502
The 6. §. of the hot and ſcalding urine. 502
The 7. §. if any one be forced againſt his will to make his water. 503
The 8. §. of the excoriation of the bladder, or neck of the ſame. 505
The 9. §. of the impoſtume of the bladder, and neck of the ſame. *ibid.*
¶ The nineteenth Chapter, of the Matrix or Womb. 506
The 1. §. of the terms or flowers in women in general. 507
The 2. §. how to prefer and move the terms or flowers in women. 509
The 3. §. how the exceſſive courſe of the flowers are to be ſtopped. 516
The 4 §. of the Whites, or the white flux in women. 529
The 5. §. of the ſuffocation or aſcenſion of Matrix. 511
The 6. §. of the deſcenſion or falling down of the Mother or womb. 524
The 7. §. of the pain in the Mother or Matrix through wind. 526
The 8. §. of the pain in the Mother through cold. 527
The 9. §. of the pain in the Mother through heat. *ibid.*
The 10. §. of the contraction of the Mother or the neck of the ſame. *ibid.*
The 11. §. of the *Scirrhus* or hardneſſe of the Mother. *ibid.*
The 12. §. of the impoſtume in the Mother, or in the neck of the ſame. *ibid.*
The 13. §. of the canker and ulcer of the Womb or Matrix. 530
The 14. §. of an unnatural birth called *Mola*. 532
The 15. §. what things are good for the Matrix. 535
¶ The twentieth Chapter, of all that concerneth the fruitful and child-bearing women. *ibid.*
The 1. §. to know whether a woman be with child or not. 534
The 2. §. to know whether a woman be with child of a boy or a girl. 535
The 3. §. of thoſe things which be moſt commonly perceived in women with childe. *ibid.*
The 4. §. at what time, and in what manner the childe groweth in the Womb. *ibid.*
The 5. §. of the order of dyet for women with childe. 536
The 6. §. of the ſtrange longings of women with child. 537
The 7. §. of the vomiting in women with child. 538
The 8. §. when a child is weak in the mothers womb. *ibid.*
The 9. §. of miſchances and untimely birth. 540
The 10. §. how a miſchance is to be prevented or hindred. 541
The 11. §. how a dead child is to be expelled out of his mothers womb 543
The 12. §. a preparation for an eaſie childbirth and delivery. 545
The 13. §. when the throws do not continue in bearing women. 547
The 14. §. of the perillous and hard childbirth in general. 548
The 15. §. when a woman cannot be delivered of a child. *ibid.*
The 16. §. of the Secundine or after-birth, and

and how the same is to be expelled. 549
The 17. §. how the after-throwes are to be eased. 550
The 18. §. for the excessive flood after birth. *ibid.*
The 19. §. of the superabundance of milk. 551
The 20. §. of divers other accidents after birth. *ibid.*

The fourth Part, or Book, containeth all the outward parts, with all their accidents and infections, and it is divided into nine Chapters, and 35. §. 552

The first Chapter, and first §. of the arms. Pag. 552
The 2. §. of the Armpits. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the hands. 553
The 4. §. for to keep the hands clean. *ibid.*
The 5. §. for to perfume hands and gloves. 554
The 6. §. for scabbed hands. *ibid.*
The 7. §. for chaps in the hands. *ibid.*
The 8. §. for itchy or scabby hands. 555
The 9. §. of the fingers. *ibid.*
The 10. §. of the numbnesse of the fingers, whether it be in part, or in the whole. 556
The 11. §. when the fingers are numbed through some bruises. *ibid.*
The 12. §. of the Felon or Ancome in the fingers. 557
The 13. §. of the nayles on the fingers and toes. *ibid.*
¶ The second Chapter, of the legs and feet. 558
The 1. §. of the knees. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the shins. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the feet. 559
¶ The third Chapter, of the pain in the joynts in general. 560
The 1. §. of the Gout in general, *Gutta. ib.*
¶ The fourth Chapter, of the Gout in the joynts *Arthritis.* 562
¶ The fifth Chap. of the Gout in the hands *Chiragra.* 564
¶ The sixt Chap. of the gout in hips *Ischia*, which we commonly call *Sciatica.* 565
The 1. §. of the pain in the hips of *Sciatica* through heat. 559
The 2. §. of the pain in the hips of *Sciatica* through cold. *ibid.*
¶ The seventh Chapter, of some accidents which this pain of the hips doth cause. 570
The 1. §. of the eluxation of the joynts. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the extenuated and withered limbs. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the extenuated or withered members in general. *ibid.*
The 4. §. of hardnesse of the joynts. 578.
¶ The eight Chapter of the Gout in the feet, or *Podagra.* *ibid.*
The 1. §. how the *Podagra* is to be prevented. 575
The 2. §. of divers other means whereby one may be freed from the Gout. *ibid.*
The 3. §. how the hot *Podagra* is to be purged. 576
The 4. §. of the cold Gout or *Podagra*, and of pain. 578
The 5. §. an especial and well approved remedy for the Gout. 579
The 6. §. the direction for the Gout sent to *Charls* the Emperor. 580
The 7. §. when any one doth go but ill after the Gout of the feet. *ibid.*
The 8. §. what things they be that convey other medicines towards the joynts. 581
¶ The ninth Chapter, of the outward accidents of the joynts and outward members. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of strained members. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the fractures of the bones. 582
The 3. §. of the putrifaction of the bones. 583
The 4. §. here follow now some speciall things for the pain of the joynts. *ibid.*
The 5. §. of the unsensibleness, shaking, and numbnesse of the limbs. 584.

The fifth Part or Book, of all the parts of mans body, that are dispersed over all the same, as the skin which covereth the whole body, the veins, the blood, the flesh, bones, and sinews, with many other accidents, as heat, coldnesse, Phlegma, Melancholia, *fatnesse, leannesse, sweat, and such like, and it is divided into twenty one Chapters, and* 84. §. 585

The first Chapter, of the skin. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of the inward cause which harms the skin. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of Warts. 590
The 3. §. of the Measles, Red-gum, and small Pocks in general. 587
The 4. §. of the Measles. *ibid.*
The 5. §. of the small Pocks. 588.
The 6. §. of another sort of small Pocks which be called the Swine Pocks. *ibid.*
The 7. §. of the cleaving or chaps of the skin. 589
The 8. §. of the itch of the skin. *ibid.*
The 9. §. of scabs or scurfes of the skin. 590
The 10. §. of Tumours. 593
The 11. §. of botches, byles, and other hard swellings. *ibid.*

The

The 12. §. of the Roſe, a certain impediment called *Ereſipelas.* 595
The 13. §. of the ſwelling of the groins, armpits, and ears. 597
The 14. §. of the Carbuncle or Plague ſore, a perillous ſwelling. *ibid.*
The 15. §. of all manner of old ulcers and old old ſores. 598
The 16. §. of a ſtinking and running ulcer. 599
The 17. §. of the broken veins called *Varices.* 601
¶ The ſecond Chapter, 1. §. of depaſcent ulcers in general. *ibid.*
The 2. § of the Fiſtula. 602
The 3. §. of the corroding ulcer called the *Herpes.* 603
The 4. §. of the hard tumor *Schirrhus.* 604
The 5. §. of the Canker. 605
The 6. §. for the heat and inflammation of the ulcers. 607
¶ The third Chapter of the Pocks, and of the lameneſſe which is cauſed thereby. *ibid.*
The 1. §. an order and cure of the ancient Phyſitians. 608
The 2. §. how to decoct *Guaiacum* 609
The 3. §. another manner to heal the pocks. *ibid.*
The 4. §. the third cure of the Pocks. 610
The 5. §. the fourth cure of the Pocks. 611
The 6. §. for the Pocks that have continued long. 613
The 7. §. if there be great pain with it. *ibid.*
The 8. §. of the byles in the Pocks. *ibid.*
The 9. §. for all open ſores in the Pocks. 614
The 10. §. for the ſcales and other ſpots. *ibid.*
¶ The fourth Chapter, of the Leproſie. 615
The 1. §. of means and medicines againſt the Leproſie. 617
The 2. §. of an order of dyet. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of ſleeping and waking. 619
The 4. §. of letting of blood. *ibid.*
The 5. §. for to expel the matter of this ſickneſſe by urine. 621
The 6. §. wherewith the mouth and other parts are to be waſhed. *ibid.*
The 7. §. whereby the blood in the Leproſie ſhall be cleanſed. 622
The 8. §. to conſume the remanent matter. *ibid.*
The 9. §. what is to be uſed for the ſcales. 623
The 10. §. to ſtrengthen the heart, the liver, and the brains in the Leproſie. 624
The 11. §. what concerneth the skin. *ibid.*
The 12. §. of the actual and potential cautery. *ibid.*
The 13. §. what is requiſite for every ſort of Leproſie. *ibid.*
The 14. §. of the bad ulcer *Cacoethe.* 625
¶ The fifth Chapter of outward infections and woundings of the skin. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of burning or ſcalding with fire, hot water, and of the burning with gunpowder. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the burning with gunpowder. 627
The 3. §. for all ſcales of burning. *ibid.*
¶ The 6. Chapter, for to draw ſplinters and thornes out of the skin. 628
¶ The ſeventh Chapter, of wounds, and all that concerneth them. *ibid.*
The 1. §. for to ſtaunch blood. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the clodded blood in the body. 629
The 3. §. of the ſtitching of wounds. *ibid.*
The 4. § of freſh wounds. 630
The 5. §. many kinds of vulneral potions. *ibid.*
The 6. §. of the plaiſters for thruſts and wounds. 631
The 7. §. of vulneral ſalves. 632
The 8. §. to draw matter out of the wounds. 633
The 9. §. of taints. *ibid.*
The 10. §. for foul fleſh. *ibid.*
The 11. § to ſtanch the *Synovia.* *ibid.*
The 12. §. when a wounded member is lamed. *ibid.*
The 13. §. to cauſe the fleſh to grow in wounds. 634
The 14. §. of that which cauſeth the skin to grow. *ibid.*
¶ The eight Chapter of the cicatrices and ſpots in the skin. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of the moles or marks that children be born withal. 635
The 2. §. of red ſpots through heat. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of ſpots which come by falls. *ibid.*
The 4. §. of ſpots by ſtripes or falls. *ibid.*
¶ The ninth Chapter of inward things which ſpread themſelves over all the body. 636
The 1. §. of the bones. *ibid.*
The 2 §. of *Nerva.* *ibidem*
¶ The tenth Chapter, of three kindes of veins in general. 637
The 1. §. of the blood veins. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the Arteries. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the blood. 638
The 4. §. whereby the blood may be cleanſed. 639
The 5. §. how the abundant bleeding is to be ſtaunched. 640
The 6. §. how to let out ſuperfluous bloud. *ibid.*

¶ The

¶ The 11. Chapter, of the natural warmth of mans body. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of unnatural heat. 641
¶ The 12 Chapter, of the ſweat in general. 642
The 1. §. whereby ſweat is provoked. 643
The 2. §. of the ſweat bath and others. 644
¶ The 13. Chapter, of the ſinews. *ibid.*
The 1. §. of hurt and wounded ſinewes. 645
The 2. §. for the pain. *ibid.*
The 3. §. when the ſinewes be reſolved and limbed. 646
The 4. §. for ſinewes that be ſhrunk, or for the cramp of the ſinewes. *ibid.*
¶ The 14. Chapter, of the fleſh and muſcles, or Lacerts. 648
¶ The 15. Chapter, of the fat of mans body. 649
The 1. §. of the troubleſomneſſe of fatneſs. *ibid.*
¶ The 16. Chapter for great leanneſſe. 650
¶ The 17. Chapter, of weariſomneſſe. *ibid.*
¶ The 18. Chapter, of ſleep. 651
The 1. §. what hindreth ſleep. *ibid.*
¶ The 19. Chapter of pain. 652
¶ The 20. Chapter, of *Phlegma*. *ibid.*
¶ The 21. Chapter, of cold diſeaſes. 654

The ſixt part containeth thoſe diſeaſes which concern the whole body : and it hath 21. *Chapters, and* 47. §. 655

THe firſt Chapter, of agues in general. *ibid.*
¶ The ſecond Chapter, of the one dayes ague called *Ephemera*. 657
¶ The third Chapter, of the continual ague, *Continua*, in general. 661
The 1. §. of the ague that is continual, *continua*. *ibid.*
The 2 §. the order of dyet in hot agues. *ibid.*
The 3. §. common rules for agues. 662
The 4. §. of common things for hot agues. 664
The 5. §. of the loathing of meat in them that be aſſailed with the ague. *ibid.*
The 6. §. of the thirſt in hot agues. 665
The 7. §. of purging and ſuch like. *ibid.*
The 8. §. for vomiting in agues. *ibid.*
The 9. §. for the loſſe of ſleep. *ibid.*
The 10. §. to relieve them that be ſick of the ague. 666
The 11. §. for the relief and comforting of the ſick patient. *ibid.*
The 12. §. ordinances for all thoſe that be recovered of a long ſickneſſe. *ibid.*
¶ The fourth Chapter, of the half third dayes ague, called *Hemitritæa*. 657
¶ The 5. Chapter of the Tertian ague. *ibid.*
¶ The 6. Chapter, of the counterfeit and baſtard tertian, that is, a falſe third dayes ague. 670
¶ The 7. Chapter, of the burning fever *Cauſon*. 671
¶ The 8. Chapter of the ague which is called *Synochus*. 673
The 1. §. of the ague *Synochus* with putrified blood. 674
The 2. §. of the order of dyet. *ibid.*
¶ The 9. Chapter, of the quotidian ague, *Quotidiana*. 675
¶ The 10. Chapter, of the quartain ague, *Quartana*. 676
¶ The 11. Chapter, of the conſumption or Ethick *Hectica*. 679
The 1. §. of the ague *Hectica*, with a pain in the breaſt, *Empiema* and *Phthiſi*. 682
¶ The 12. Chapter of the ague *Maraſmode*. 684
¶ The 13. Chapter, of long lingring agues. 685
¶ The 14. Chapter, of ſwellings after the ague. *ibid.*
¶ The 15. Chapter, of the Plague. 686
The 1. §. of the cauſes of the Plague. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the ſignes of the plague to come. *ibid.*
The 3. §. how to prevent the plague. 687
The 4. §. how the healthy are to be kept and preſerved from the infection of the plague. *ibid.*
The 5. §. how their dwellings ought to be. 689
The 6. §. what exerciſe to be uſed in the plague. 691
The 7. §. of the ſleep in this ſickneſſe. *ibid.*
The 8. §. of purging and letting of blood. *ibid*
The 9. §. of the motions of the minde. 692
The 10. §. of baths and other common cauſes. *ibid.*
The 11. §. how one ſhall govern himſelf without doors. *ibid.*
The 12. §. *Præſervativa*, or preſervatives that defend men from the plague. 675
¶ The 16. Chapter, when any are infected with the plague. 700
The 1. §. of the Ague in the plague. *ibid.*
The 2. §. of the ſigns whereby this ſickneſs is known. 701
The 3. §. by what means the patient is provoked to ſweat. *ibid.*
The 4. §. how to comfort thoſe that are infected with the plague 703
The 5. §. what is to be done after ſweating. 704
The 6. §. another regiment when any one

is infected with the plague. *ibid.*
The 7. §. how to purge those that are infected with the plague. 705
The 8. §. of the unnatural heat in the plague. *ibid.*
The 9. §. for the unsatiable and great thirst. 706
The 10. §. of the bitternesse in the mouth. *ibid.*
The 11. §. of the want of appetite to meat. *ibid.*
The 12. §. of the weakenesse and sleepinesse. 707
The 13. §. of the binding in the body. *ibid.*
The 14. §. of the losse of sleep. *ibid.*
The 15. §. when a plague sore appeareth. *ibid.*
The 16. §. when as there is no plague-sore perceived, 710
The 17. §. for letting of blood in the plague. *ibid.*
The 18. §. government of life in the plague. *ibid.*
The 19. §. of a convenient air for the plague. 711
The 20. §. how they shall govern themselves that escape this sickenesse. *ibid.*
¶ The 17. Chapter, an exhortation for them that keep these patients. *ibid.*
¶ The 18. Chapter, of the Scurvy, *Scrobuticus Morbus.* 712
¶ The 19. Chapter, of the detestable sicknesse Drunkennesse. 713
¶ The 20. Chap. of frighting and fear. 715
¶ The 21. Chapter, of trembling. 716
¶ The 22. Chapter, of the impediments that come of fals. *ibid.*

The seventh Part and Book speaketh of some kinds of Poyson, Plants, Mettals, and Beasts, and it is divided into 4. Chapters, and 4. §.

THe first Chapter, 1. §. of all those things that are good against poyson. 718
The 2. §. an exhortation for all those that are afraid to be poysoned. *ibid.*
The 3. §. when any body perceiveth that he hath taken poyson. 719
The 4. §. the signes when one is poysoned. *ibid.*
¶ The 2. Chapter, of the venemous plants and such like. 720
¶ The 3. Chapter, of the venemous Mettals and such like. 725
¶ The 4. Chapter, of the venoms that come of beasts. 726

The eight Part and Book containeth divers kinds of remedies, to wit, Electuaries, Potions, Conserves, Confected fruits, Flowers, Roots, and other Plants, Trochisks, Oyles, Syrupes, and juyces, vital waters, Aromatical wines, and such like, which otherwhiles have been mentioned: It is parted into 19. Chapters, and many §. all which are needlesse to be recited: but we will onely rehearse them that be most needful, with their Chapters. 735

THe first Chapter, the Confection of *Calamus.* *ibid.*
The 1. §. how to make Verjuice for the kitchin, and for Physick. 736
¶ The 2. Chapter, of the artificial Baulm, which may be used in stead of the right *Balsamum.* 737
The 1. §. of Beer. *ibid.*
¶ The 3. Chapter, of the Claret wine, Hypocras, and of herbed wines. 738
The 1. §. of Clisters and their use. 739
The 2. §. of confected seeds. *ibid.*
The 3. §. of the confected spices, peels, roots, and such like. 740
¶ The 4. Chapter, of preserved fruits, flowers, and other things. 741
The 1. §. how to preserve Elecampane roots, *ibid.*
The 2. §. how to preserve black Cherries. *ibid.*
The 3. §. Conserve of Eyebright. *ibid.*
The 4. §. Conserve of Betony. 742
The 5. §. how to preserve the roots of the greater Pimpernel. *ibid.*
The 6. §. how to preserve Pears after two wayes. *ibid.*
The 7. §. how Oranges are to be preserved. 743
The 8. §. conserve of Burrage. *ibid.*
The 9. §. how that Calamus is to be preserved. *ibid.*
The 10. §. how that Citrons are to be preserved. 744
The 11. §. how that Citron peels are to be preserved. *ibid.*
The 12. §. how Barberries be preserved. *ibid.*
The 13. §. Conserve of Fumitory. *ibid.*
The 14. §. how the conserve of the fruit of the wilde Rose tree is to be made. *ibid.*
The 15. §. how that Abrecocks are to be preserved. 745
The 16. §. Conserve of Eldern Berries. *ibid.*
The 17. §. how that Ginger is to be preserved. *ibid.*

The

The Contents of this Book.

The 18. §. how that Raſpes are to be preſerved. 646
The 19. §. how the conſerve of Hyſſope is to be made. *ibid.*
The 20. §. of the Conſerves of Lavander and of Spikenard. *ibid.*
The 21. §. how to preſerve the Eryngus roots. *ibid.*
The 22. § Conſerve of Marjoram. *ibid.*
The 23. §. Conſerve of Baulm. 747
The 24. §. how that Nutmegs are to be confected. *eadem*
The 25. §. Conſerve of Gilloflowers. *ibid.*
The 26. how Walnuts are preſerved. *ibid.*
The 27. §. Conſerve of Bugloſſe 748
The 28 §. how Apples are preſerved. *ibid.*
The 29. §. Conſerve of Pyony. *ibid.*
The 30. §. how to preſerve Peaches. *ibid.*
The 31. §. how to make Conſerve of Prunes. 449
The 32. §. how that Quinces and other things are to be preſerved. *ibid.*
The 33. §. Conſerve of Roſes. 751
The 34. §. Conſerve of Roſemary. 752
The 35. §. to preſerve the roots of all red Beets. *ead.*
The 36. §. Conſerve of Sage. *ibid.*
The 37. §. how Sloes are to be preſerved 753
The 38. §. Conſerve of Cowſlips. *ibid.*
The 39. §. Conſerve of water Lillies. *ibid.*
The 40. §. Conſerve of Violets. *ibid.*
The 41. §. Conſerve of the flowers of Cicory *ibid.*
The 42. §. how red Cherries are preſerved. 754
The 43. §. how that ripe and unripe Grapes are to be preſerved. *ibid.*
The 44. §. of that which commonly keepeth all fruits freſh. *ibid.*
¶ The 6. Chapter of the Golden and Vital waters, and elixirs of life. 755
¶ The 7. Chapter, of Hand-waters. 757
The 1. §. for to make May cheeſes. *ibid.*
The 2. §. how to make Wafers of Sugar. *ibid.*
The 3. §. Hony water, *Hydromel.* *ibid.*
¶ The 8. Chapter, for to make Juleps. 758
¶ The 9. Chapter for to take ſpots out of all clothes. *eadem*
The 1. §. Spice cakes which be excellent good. *ibid.*
¶ The 10. Chap. hereafter follow Confections. *ibid.*
The 1. §. *Confectio Anacardina.* *ibid.*
The 2. §. *Antidotum Hæmagogum.* *ibid.*
The 3. §. *Electuarium de Bacis lauri.* *ibid.*
The 4. §. *Benedicta laxativa* 759
The 5. §. *Bezoartica.* *ibid.*
The 6. §. *Electuarium de Calamintha.* *ibid.*
The 7. §. Confection of Caſſie after three wayes. *ibid.*
The 8. §. *Electuarium de Caſtoreo.* *ibid.*
The 9. §. *Cathartic. imperiale.* *ibid.*
The 10. §. *Catholicon.* *ibid.*
The 11. §. *Electuarium de Cineribus.* 760
The 12. §. *Electuaria varia de Cytoniis.* *ibid.*
The 13. §. *Electuarium de corticibus Aurantiarum.* *ibid.*
The 14. §. *Electuarium Ducis.* *ibid.*
The 15. §. *Electuarium de Epithymo.* *ibid.*
The 16. §. *Electuarium de Gallia.* *ibid.*
The 17. §. *Confectio Hamech.* *ibid.*
The 18. §. *Hiera picra ſimplex.* *ibid.*
The 19. §. *Hiera logodion.* 761
The 20. §. *Hiera pachis Ruffini.* *ibid.*
The 21. §. *Electuarium Indum.* *ibid.*
The 22. §. *Electuarium lenitivum.* *ibid.*
The 23. §. *Electuarium de Lepore combuſto.* *ibid.*
The 24. § *Lætificans Almanſorit.* *ibid.*
The 25. §. *Electuarium de Manna.* *ibid.*
The 26. §. *Electuarium ad melancholiam.* *ibid.*
The 27. § *Michleta.* *ibid.*
The 28. §. *Mithridatium.* 762
The 29. §. *Electuarium Oculiſtæ.* *ibid.*
The 30. §. *Electuarium de Olibano.* *ibid.*
The 31. §. *Electuarium de Ovo.* *ibid.*
The 32. §. *Electuarium Diaphœnicon.* 763
The 33. §. *Philonium.* *ibid.*
The 34. §. *Electuarium Diaprunis.* *ibid.*
The 35. §. *Electuarium de Pſyllio.* *ibid.*
The 36. §. *Electuarium de Raphano ſylveſtri.* *ibid.*
The 37. §. *Electuarium regium.* *ibid.*
The 38. §. *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum.* *ibid.*
The 39. §. *Diaſatyrion.* 764
The 40. §. *Electuarium de Scoria Ferri.* *ibid.*
The 41. §. *Electuarium de Sebeſten.* *ibid.*
The 42. §. *Dia Senæ.* *ibid.*
The 43. §. *Theriaca Magna.* *ibid.*
The 44. §. *Theriaca Diateſſaron.* 765.
The 45. §. *Triphera.* *ibid.*
The 46. §. *Electuarium vitæ.* *ibid.*
The 47. §. of Lee. 766
The 48. §. for to make excellent ſpice or Sugar Cakes. *ibid.*
The 49. §. *Loch Jobot.* *ibid.*
¶ The 11. Chapter. 767
The 1. §. Almond-milk. *ibid.*
The 2. §. *Manus Chriſti.* 768
The 3. §. *Marchpane.* *ibid.*
The 4. §. for to counterfeit Marrow of bones *ibid.*
The 5. §. *Medicamen de Turbith.* *ibid.*
The 6. §. *Melicraton.* *ibid.*
The 7. §. of Mead, a common drink. *ibid.*

¶ The

A Very meet and necessary Introduction, for the better understanding of all such things as are handled in this present Practise of Physick.

The Contents of the Introduction.

The misery of mans life caused by sin, hath constrained us to think on such meanes, by the which the diseases that daily are incident unto it, might be eased; which truly by the mercy of God, and Physicks rule at length have been found out. The profit and necessity whereof together, are just causes why Physick may thoroughly be praised. And because the sicknesses are manifold, and the body of man also divided into many and sundry parts and members, but principally into four; the Head, the Breast, the Belly, and the external or outward parts: Every Malady hath her due remedy: also where, when, how, and in what sort every remedy is to be sought, gathered, and kept: likewise if any superfluity were in it, how and what is to be separated from it, what regiment or order is to be observed in Purging, Letting of blood, Cupping, or softening of Horrible leaches. Then is shewed the due and true use of the Ayr, of moving and quietnesse, of waking and sleeping, of meat and drink. At length also are expounded the weights and measures which are used in Physick.

The first Chapter.

Of the manifold sufferes and calamities of mans life.

This

This was the firſt finding and foundation of this noble ſcience of Phyſick, and hath been from time to time by divers and ſundry experiences of the old Phyſitians diligently obſerved, truly taught and written: and at the laſt alſo imparted unto us, and ſhall be reſerved untill the end of the world.

The wretchedneſſe of mans life.

And indeed, if we behold our own wretchedneſſe, we ſhall evidently perceive, that we in the whole courſe of our ſhort life in this world, are as it were ſwimming in a boyſterous and bottomleſſe ſea, where wave upon wave unceſſantly covereth us, and is ready to ſwallow us up; where we are toſſed to and fro, not finding any place to reſt our foot, or free our head from water: and albeit at length (with much ado) we do from ſtormy ſeas arrive on ſhore; yet there we find as many thiſtles and thornes, calamities and miſeries about us, which do prick and plague us on every ſide, untill our miſerable fleſh at the laſt return (whence it began) to the duſt and worms meat. This is it that the Prophet *Eſay* acknowledgeth, when he ſaith, *VVhat is man? All fleſh is graſſe, and all the glory thereof is as the flower of the field. Behold, the graſſe withereth, and the flower falleth away, for the breath of the Lord bloweth on them.* And *David* ſaith, *VVhat is man, that thou art ſo mindful of him, and the ſon of man, that thou viſiteſt him? Man is as it were nothing, his dayes paſſe away like a ſhadow.* With many ſuch like ſayings in divers places of his Pſalmes. And in very truth, if we rightly weigh our eſtate, what is our life (ſo long as we remain on earth) more then a continual anguiſh and pain, labour, fear, ſorrow, and alas, altogether troubleſome?

Wretchedneſſe of new born babes.

Behold our wretchedneſſe, even from the hour of our birth; we are brought forth not onely in peril and danger of our ſelves, but hazarding alſo our mothers life. But granting that happily we are born, yet are we not able in any wiſe, or any way to help or aid our ſelves, but are as it were thruſt headlong into an everlaſting and terrible priſon: for we are no ſooner come into the world, but preſently we are fettred and bound both hand and foot; then muſt we eat and drink what others command, we muſt ſleep and awake when others will; there lie we wrapped in our own filth, then do we abide pain in the belly, gnawing of the worms, ache of the gums and teeth, neither can we (which is the greateſt miſery of all) complain and ſhew our pain and grief, but lie weeping and wailing evermore. Beſide all this, how long creep we upon all four, not having uſe of leg or hand? how long live we, before we chat or prate any whit at all? Thus without hand, without foot, without tongue, yea without any joynt that doth his duty aright, live we (though not ſeeming to live) ſome years together: and thus we ſpend our infancy in miſery. Afterward coming peradventure a little further, what followeth more then ſtripes and blowes, brawlings and chidings of the parents, ſchoolmaſters, and over-ſeers, till at the laſt (if ſo it pleaſe God to preſerve us) we with no ſmall ſorrow, care, and trouble of our parents, leave childhood and enter into youth? But now alas, with much travel and pain being come to youths eſtate, we are in ten thouſands of perils both of body and ſoul; for now we grow wanton and laſcivious, ſtubborn and obſtinate towards our parents, vicious and ungodly in the ſight of God, as by experience daily we find and ſee, and need not any further proof. What ſorrowes and cares after all theſe, bring mans years with them? great labour and pains taking do they again require to maintain himſelf, his wife, his children and family, to feed and find them honeſtly and well, to ſupply their wants, to eſteem of friends, to beware of enemies, and to take care for the Common-wealth. If then at length peradventure he come to any preferment, office, or governance in that place where he liveth, he is not onely conſtrained to ſet behind, and omit his own affaires and buſineſſe, but is hated alſo and envied of others, now ſorroweth, now joyeth for his Countries eſtate, now with one thing, now with another troubled and vexed in mind. Furthermore, the turmoile and pains he taketh, reſteth neither night nor day, otherwhiles called upon for one matter, ſtraight-way for another, and then at the laſt reapeth his pains for his labour, and is rewarded with ingratitude, yea oftentimes he is endangered of goods, of honour, of life and all. Thus with much travel, with many perils, and with great pains gaineth he nothing but gray hairs and old age. And to conclude, what is old age elſe then a very ſickneſſe it ſelf, feeble, weak, full of ſorrowes, and an heap of cares, not regarded and eſteemed of thoſe that ſhould moſt account of it? I will not here rehearſe the temptations of Satan, vexations and troubles in mind, pricking of the conſcience, and many other heavy matters, which age is ſubject unto; but end with this, that the old man goeth with one foot in the grave, and hath nothing more ſure then

Of youth.

Old age a ſickneſſe of it ſelf.

death

death at his door. Then we begin to bethink with our selves, either what sicknesses we have had and withstood, or what we have seen in others, and what diseases we are subject unto, what strange, how diverse, and what incurable calamities, even from the hour of our birth, till our dying day are incident unto us, as leprosie, falling sickness, lameness, blindness, deafness, &c. Out of all which we may easily gather, and evidently see, that our short life is nothing else but a long dying day, in the which all miseries meet. This may well be a just cause to admonish us to think upon another home, which is promised and prepared for us, of that most cunning Physitian and Saviour of our soules Christ Jesus, which we shall find to be without all troubles or cares, without wants, and without end.

The second Chapter.

The causes of mans miseries and wretchednesse.

The cause of mans wretchednesse.

THe reason of man (as alwaies it hath done even from the beginning) seemeth to complain greatly, that our nature should be subject unto so many infirmities, miseries, and calamities: yea, it doth as it were chide with God, and accuse him of tyranny, for creating of man so wretched. And in very deed, a worldly minded man, that neither acknowledgeth God, nor the cause of his natural imperfections, might easily be brought and carried away with such like opinions and with great reason bewail the infinite wretchednesse of mankind, seeing he findeth no creature on the face of the whole earth, that is vexed with so many adversities, but man onely: But contrariwise, they that are endued with the knowledge of God and godlinesse, will not accuse him of tyranny that is most gentle; will not accuse him of evil. that hath created and made all things most perfect and good, nay, that never could or would do harm. *Adam* was created in the beginning sound and whole, perfect, wise, absolute, and without any blemish or spot whatsoever; but by disobedience, transgressing the Commandement of God, in that he would without contradiction be made like unto God, and know both good and evil, which he did of his own stubborn head, and in despite and contempt of his Creator; herewith hath he not onely brought and wrought unto himself, but unto all his posterity after him, an everlasting mishap and infelicity, as a well worthy and deserved punishment for his and our mis-deeds together. Wherefore sin is the first and only cause of all our distresse, of all our sicknesses and heavinesse here on earth; which hath brought us to that estate, that after all our turmoyling and pains taking, we must at the last taste and take death as a merit and payment for our sins.

Christians bear their crosse with patience.

This if a godly man consider with himself, and (as Saint *Paul* saith) sigheth for sinnes sake, then doth he bear the crosse patiently, acknowledgeth it to be a fatherly warning and rebuke, useth due and true means: First, calleth to God even from the bottom of his heart, committeth both his life and his death into his hands; afterwards cometh unto Physick, the which it hath pleased God of his mercy to ordain for the behoof and need of man, and hath taught it his servants the Physitians. Also it is his will and pleasure, that we should use his creatures in our necessity, and give him praise and thanks for them. And to the end the aforesaid means might the better be used, he hath mercifully lent and sent us the Physitian and Physick, and hath shewed us a way, by which those means might best be wrought.

And to the end, this might in our native language be better published and shewed abroad, I thought good not to bury, but to employ this little talent of mine, which for this end and purpose I have received of God.

In which work, my purpose and intent is, to begin and divide the body of man orderly from the crown of the head, and so descend downward from joynt to joynt, till I come to the sole of the foot; and withal to shew, what infirmities every part and member is most subject unto: And lastly, how, and by what means they may be cured.

But seeing this cannot be done without Physick and Physitians help; I thought it best, first to shew the just dignity and worthy praise of them both, before we go forward with our intent and purpose.

The third Chapter.

Of the neceſsity, profit, and praiſe of Phyſick.

The need and praiſe of Phyſick.

SEeing it hath pleaſed Almighty God, that we ſhould, with many infirmities of body, and with great and heavy troubles and vexations of mind, run on and continue this our race and pilgrimage on earth; and that we might preſerve this lump of clay, flie and avoid thoſe things that might harm it, take away the incident infirmities, and to keep our bodies a pure habitation for God and his holy Spirit, as it pleaſeth him to grant us life, he hath alſo of his infinite mercy and goodneſſe created (as is above ſhewed) natural and effectual means revealed them, and in pity, ſo bountiful by the art of Phyſick imparted and communicated unto man, that *Jeſus Sirach* ſaith in this manner, *Honour the Phyſitian with that honour that is due unto him, becauſe of neceſſity: for the Lord hath created him; from the moſt High cometh healing, and he ſhall receive gifts of the King: The knowledge of the Phyſitian lifteth up his head, and in the ſight of great men he ſhall be in admiration: The Lord hath created medicines of the earth, and he that is wiſe will not abhor them. Was not the water made ſweet with wood, that men might know the vertue thereof? So he hath given men knowledge, that he might be glorified in his woudrous works.* And giveth thereupon a good leſſon well to be noted and kept, as that we ſhould leave off from ſin, and not fail in our ſickneſſe that we ſhould pray unto God that he would heal us, and afterwards give place to the Phyſitian.

What greater praiſe alſo can we have of Phyſick, then that onely example of Chriſt our Lord and Saviour? What elſe was his ſhort life, whileſt he was mongſt us here upon earth, but firſt as it were a ſpiritual curing and healing of the ſoul, and afterward alſo of the body, ſhewing thereby that he was the true Phyſitian, the onely healer and helper both of body and ſoul of man? He made the blind to ſee, the deaf to hear, the dumb to ſpeak, the lame to go, he cleanſed the lepers, ſtayed the bloody flux, which all Phyſitians could not do, drave the Devils out of the poſſeſſed; and to conclude, he raiſed the dead. Such expert and cunning Phyſitians after him were his Apoſtles, who oftentimes have expounded this healing of the ſick, to be a ſhadow of our ſalvation, and myſtery of his holy Word, and a rule or path-way for the whole life of a Chriſtian. Is not this a ſufficient praiſe and commendation of this Art?

The heathen and wiſe men heretofore have ſo eſteemed of this great gift of God, that they have not onely aſcribed the Art it ſelf unto the gods, but alſo have reverenced all thoſe that were skilful in it, with ſuch honour, as was due unto their gods; as we may read of *Apollo*, *Æſculapius*, *Chiron*, *Machaon*, *Paon*, and alſo *Hippocrates*.

Phyſick is a ſure pawn.

If thou regard riches: What expert Phyſitian ever lacked wealth, (as *Galen* teſtifieth) that reſpected and cared for it? Moſt true it is, that Phyſick is a moſt firm and ſure pawn, that defendeth the poſſeſſour from extreme poverty: An approved Phyſitian may go whither he will, every where findeth he ſtore of ſick and diſeaſed people, and if peradventure ſome ſpeak not well of him, yet others will, ſo that never he can want where ever he be. Neither is there any vocation under the Sun that is leſſe hated and envied, then the eſtate of a Phyſitian: for the greateſt tyrant in the world, if he fall into an extremity of ſickneſſe, and know a renowned Phyſitian, whom he hath ever hated, and greatly injured, his counſel will he ſeek in the time of his infirmity, forgetting all rancor and evil will and laying aſide all the injuries that paſſed between them; yea he will commit both life and death into his hands, and afterward reward him honourably. A good Phyſitian alſo may ſave the ſoul of an ungodly and vicious man; for although he were never ſo wicked, that never had once thought on God, or his Judgment to come, and falling into a great ſickneſſe of body, very ſeldom ſeeketh for God, but ſendeth onely for the Phyſitian of the body; who coming, may very conveniently mixe ſpiritual Phyſick with his corporal medicines, admoniſh the diſeaſed to repentance, to ſorrow for his ſins, and to lead a more righteous life hereafter: The ſick taketh his counſel kindly, aſſuring himſelf that it proceedeth from a good mind, and ſpoken by him that ſeeketh not onely to ſave and prolong his life; but alſo by Gods help, to cure him of his preſent infirmity. And indeed we find by daily experience, that in ſuch a caſe a godly Phyſitian

more

more effecteth then a good Divine or Preacher: It is alſo an even pathway for the Phyſitian to obtain the bleſſing of God, when he ſaith, *Come ye bleſſed, inherit the Kingdom of my Father, which hath been prepared for you, even from the beginning of the world: for I have been ſick, and you have viſited and comforted me*, &c.

Phyſick is thus defined or deſcribed: Phyſick is an art, which doth no leſſe maintain health, then cure and take away ſickneſſe. *The definition of Phyſick.*

Phyſick is a ſupplying of that which is wanting, and a diminiſhing of that which aboundeth: If any one liſt to hear a longer and a larger diſcourſe of this, let him reade *Galen* in his book *De Arte medendi.*

And albeit, that there have been ſome learned men heretofore, and peradventure yet are, that do ſeem to ſcoffe and mock at phyſick and Phyſitians; as *Cato, Pliny*, and the reſt: yet let them ſay what they liſt, the art of phyſick ſhall to the end of the world well and worthily be eſteemed and accounted. Neither needeth any one to be offended, for that there are many, that falſly uſe and abuſe the name and title of Phyſitian, thruſting themſelves into Phyſick, that never learned the art, neither ſtudied or made any one thing in it; deceiving all men under a colour of fair ſpeeches and flattery, with coſtly apparel, with chains of gold and jewels ſo bedeckt, and ſo adorned with every coſtly thing, that many are induced to wonder at them. In *Egypt* were all Phyſitians very gallantly and well maintained, although they had but one particular remedy for one onely diſeaſe. A Phyſitian (as *Homer* ſaith) is a man, that is to be eſteemed as a great number of men: and *Seneca*, ſpeaking in the commendation of Phyſick, ſaith, We buy of the Phyſitian an ineſtimable treaſure, namely, life and health of body: and we do daily find by experience both in Court and Country, that there is not a more ample vocation then that of phyſick; for certainly we ſee that every one ſtriveth to be a Phyſitian; and no ſooner can any one either be pricked with a pin, or ſtung with a Bee, yea ſcant bitten with a flea, but every one ſtraight-waies giveth his counſel, and as it were preſenteth himſelf to be Phyſitian for the aggrieved patient.

There are two Inſtruments in Phyſick, Reaſon and Experience.

Reaſon to judge and diſcern the ſtate of the Sick, the cauſe of the Diſeaſe, and the ſymptomes and quality of the diſeaſe.

Experience, to know the quantity and quality of Medicines to be given and applyed, to cure the ſick and diſeaſed.

Galen in ſectarum libro, obſerves three ſorts of profeſſours of Phyſick; the Emperical, the Methodical, and the Logical.

The Emperical Phyſitian is ſuch a one as is led by opinion of receipts; as many women and ignorant people, when they hear of a medicine that did good to a man or woman, they will preſume to give it to any one, without any conſideration of the cauſe or quality of the diſeaſe, or condition of the diſeaſed; whereby moſt commonly they doe great hurt: therefore let ſuch endeavour to know the diſeaſe, and the nature of the diſeaſed, before they preſume to give medicines, although approved.

The Methodical Phyſitian, is ſuch a one as is led by a certain form of giving Phyſick, becauſe his books have taught ſuch things: like the former, neglecting Reaſon and Experience: but let me tell ſuch, that *Medicus in libro non valet Obolo*, a Phyſitian onely by book, without experience of approved Medicines, is not worth a ſtraw, ſuch do more hurt then the former; for in all diſeaſes moſt commonly ſuch being called to the ſick, preſcribe a Glyſter, and preſently let blood in all diſeaſes, and ſo proceed in their method, till the ſick hath neither blood nor life. Blood is the life of man, and the meanes to help nature, to expel evil humours, therefore let ſuch let as little blood as they can, except in urgent cauſes.

The Logical Phyſitian is ſuch a one, as refuſeth not reaſon, and is not without experience of approved medicines; for he by reaſon conſiders of the Patient, his ſtrength, his age, his diſeaſe, and of the Region where he lives, his manner of diet which he uſed, and the time of his ſickneſſe, and after theſe he endeavours to find out the cauſe of the diſeaſe, the ſymptomes and ſeat of the diſeaſe, and then he proceeds to apply his approved medicines to heal the ſick: And theſe are truly called the Emperical Phyſitians; for the word, ἐμπειρία, ſignifies experience. And they by experience, reaſon, and knowledge, endeavour to cure the ſick; leaving the ſucceſſe to God; by whoſe bleſſing we have both health and life.

Galeni definitio in primo cap.

Medicina scientia est sanorum: et egrorum, et neutrorum corporum.

Physick is a knowledge of the state of the body, whether it be whole, or sick; or neither whole, nor sick.

As every Art hath his subject and end; so Physick hath his subject and end.

The subject of Physick, is the body, and medicines: for it behoveth the Physitian not onely to know the state of the body, but also to know medicines fit for the bodies health.

The end of Physick is to procure the health of the body; for as it is written in Ecclesiasticus, Chap. 38.4. *The Lord hath created Medicines out of the earth, and he that is wise will not abhor them*: for as you read in the 7. verse, *with such doth he heal men, and taketh away their pain. Then give place to the Physitian, for the Lord hath created him; and there is a time when in their hands there is good successe*, vers. 12, 13.

The fourth Chapter.

The division of this present Work.

The division of the whole work.

THe causes that have induced me to compile and make this present Book, I have partly shewed before: partly also intreated, and very earnestly requested by such persons, whom I could not, and willingly would not deny a greater matter then this was: as that I would comprehend in writing, not onely such things as by long experience my self have approved, but also whatsoever I had either seen, read, heard, or duly and truly observed and noted, amongst the most expert and learned Physitians of all nations, as well the ancient as later Writers. And that I would not onely write according to the common custome, *Fiat secundùm artem*; but as much as is possible and as need shall require, adde also the preparation of every remedy: for in this if a little errour be once committed, a great displeasure and fault might easily ensue, the operation of the medicine weakned, and oftentimes altogether lost and perished.

In fine, this whole work was made, to the intent, that every good housholder in the time of sickness, having neither Physitian nor Apothecaries near him, or at least none skilful in that Art, might himself know how to prepare and use any medicine that might serve for his disease, or what he might as best and meetest send for at the Apothecaries for his purpose. In like sort also may he judge of the properties and vertues of compounded or mixed medicines, as Electuaries, Syrupes, Pills, Powders, &c. and which of them in every disease might rightly be applyed and used. Furthermore, I have very diligently observed and noted the just dosis, proportion, or quantity of every medicine that is at one time to be used, and what things are to be avoided and shunned. And for this cause have I parted it into six treatises or parts, named and shewed divers kinds of poysons, to the end that better heed might be taken in shunning them, and if by some mischance they had been taken inwardly, how to infringe and break the force and violence of them. And albeit there be some things noted and set down in this Book, which might seem better to have been passed over in silence, yet was it done to such an end, that the deceits and knaveries, by which the common sort of people is oftentimes illuded, might be disclosed and bewrayed, to teach them also to take heed hereafter of those that would deceive them, and onely to regard those things that are grounded on reason and skill.

All such things as are noted with Latine names, are either those that have no English name as yet known, or else that are not growing here in England, but are commonly found at the Apothecaries.

The method we have observed in this Book, is according to the customes and orders of the ancient Physical Writers, who dividing mans body into four general parts, to wit, the Head, the Breast, the Belly, and the external or outward parts; so also have I divided and cut this present work into four books: The one for the head, the other for the breast, the third for the belly, and the fourth for the outward members; as at large in the beginning of every of them shall be shewed. Unto these four first are adjoyned other

four

four books, and not without cauſe; for that the method and order I have obſerved, requireth and asketh no leſſe, as ſhall be ſhewed hereafter.

The ancient Phyſitians have (as is already ſaid) for ſundry and very neceſſary cauſes, divided the body of man into four general parts. The firſt part containeth the head, and ſtretcheth no further then unto the neck: the ſecond hath the breaſt unto the midriffe, or to the lowermoſt ſhort ribs: the third part is the belly, with all that is in it, even unto the hips: the fourth part are the outward members, as Armes, Hands, Thighes, Legs, Feet, &c. with all their particular parts and joynts. This very ſame method (if God of his infinite mercy give me grace) do I purpoſe in this my work to follow.

And this may ſuffice, to let us ſee the wretchedneſſe of mans nature; the fountains and cauſes of all infirmities, and alſo the neceſſity, profit, and praiſe of Phyſick. But before I proceed any further in deſcribing of diſeaſes with their appropriate remedies, I think it were very meet and neceſſary to give a more cleare inſtruction in ſome points of Phyſick, to the end that ſuch as ſhall uſe this Book, might have the better underſtanding in the preparing of medicines.

The fifth Chapter.

How all manner of Roots, Barks, Herbs, Flowers, Fruits, and ſuch like, may be gathered and kept.

THe beſt time and moſt convenient to dig or pluck up roots, according to ſome mens judgment, is the harveſt or Autumne, when the leaves do wither and fall away. Others ſuppoſe the Spring time to be moſt meet for the ſame intent, when the herb doth firſt begin to appear and creep forth of the ground: But the greateſt and fitteſt obſervation in the gathering of them is this, to note the place or ground they grow in, the time when they are ſappieſt and fulleſt of juyce, and the uſe, as either that we muſt needs have them, or that we muſt needs have them green and freſh. We muſt endeavour alſo to have them freſh new digged out of the ground, to waſh them clean, to ſeparate the ſmall haires and leſſer branches from the root, to crop off the ſtalkes and tops, to cut away that which is rotten and Worm-eaten. Of all theſe roots which are woody within, as of Fennel, of Cichory, of Parſly, &c. ſhall the hard and woody heart be taken out. The biggeſt roots muſt be ſplit aſunder, and afterwards dryed in the ſhade and in open ayr.. And if it be moyſt and wet weather, they are to be put in a warm place, where no ill ſmoke cometh, with often turning them upſide down. They muſt alſo be kept free from Sun, moyſture, duſt, and ſmoke, and be hanged up in ſuch a place, where the wind and freſh ayr may ſometime come to them. The leſſer roots, as of Sparage, Valerian, *Azarabacca*, are kept longer then a year, and continue of like force and vertue. The great and hard roots, as of Brionie, Gentian, and Ariſtolochie, as alſo amongſt the leſſer, both kinds of *Neeſewort* may well be reſerved three years together, without any let or hinderance to their vertue: the rindes of the roots being ſeparated (as is aforeſaid) from the innermoſt woody parts, ſhall in like ſort be dryed and kept.

The beſt time to gather roots.

As concerning herbs, it is the common opinion, that they ought to be gathered within thirty daies, as from the 15. of *Auguſt*, unto the 15. of *September*. But ſeeing that ſome herbs do ſooner come to their full perfection and growth, other ſome later: (which difference for the moſt part dependeth on the diverſity of the Countrey, or elſe of the ground and place where they grow) the beſt time of gathering them ſhall be either when they bear their flower, or when the leaf is at the biggeſt, and when they ſmell ſtrongeſt, and are beſt coloured. They muſt be dryed in the ſhade, or elſe in a reaſonable warm place, where neither duſt nor ſmoke can come at them. They continue not in their full vertue and ſtrength above one year.

Herbs.

All manner of Flowers ſhall be gathered when they are full blown and wide open, while they be freſh and not withered, not when they have loſt their ſmell. Roſes muſt be gathered when they begin to blow, and as yet not full blown: None of them all may be

Flowers.

kept above one year, except the flowers of Cammomil, and that is by reaſon they be naturally dry: the ſweet ſmelling flowers are longeſt preſerved and kept in boxes of Lentil wood.

Fruits. Concerning Fruits, Nature it ſelf teacheth us, that they ought to be gathered or plucked from the tree, not bruiſing them, at ſuch a time when they are at the ripeſt; thoſe that have ſtones in them, may have the ſtones (if it ſo ſeem good) taken forth, afterwards thoroughly and well dryed, or preſerved and confected in honey or ſugar, as is taught in the 8. part of this book.

Seeds. Seeds are ripeſt and of moſt vertue, when the fruits are full ripe, and when herbs are at their full growth, all duſt ſhall be ſifted and fanned from them, then bound up in Paper, which longeſt keepeth them good. Some ſeeds may be kept longer in their full vertue and ſtrength, others muſt be new gathered every year, but eaſily it may be diſcerned by the taſte, which of them hath loſt his vertue, and which hath not.

Addition.

For the gathering of ſimples and their parts, there be almoſt as many minds and diverſities of opinions, as Authors that write of them. The one will have them gathered when they bear their flower: the other before, or when the leaf is at the biggeſt, and they ready to have flowers: the third ſort, when they are but young, and new come forth of the ground. Some do gather one and the ſelf-ſame herb at ſundry times, as when it firſt ſpringeth out of the earth, when it beareth his flower, and when it beareth ſeed: adding, that the firſt is for children and young folks, the ſecond for middle aged, and the laſt for old men. Other ſome would have the leaf, the ſtalk, the root, the flower and the ſeed each gathered and reſerved apart, affirming each part of them to ſerve for ſundry uſes. There are yet others, that gather all manner of herbs in their ſeveral moneths, beginning the moneth ſtill when the Sun entreth into one of the twelve celeſtial ſignes, ſaying, that every herb hath moſt vertue when it moſt flouriſheth; ſome adde unto this the full Moon. But howſoever it be, this I know by experience, that not onely the diverſity of the time in gathering them, in preparing and in reſerving them, but alſo the manifold uſes of them, are juſt cauſes of ſundry, nay, clean contrary effects and operations in them. For this I have ſeen, that one and the ſelf-ſame Simple being gathered at ſundry times in one and the ſelf-ſame place, ſhall purge and bind, which are quite contrary effects. And therefore it is no marvel, if ſometimes we miſſe of our expected purpoſe and hope, in not finding thoſe vertues in the Simples, that by Hippocrates, Galen, Dioſcorides *and others, are aſcribed unto them, ſeeing they are of divers men gathered without regard of time or place, prepared without care, reſerved and kept they paſſe not how nor how long. I remember, that as I travelled through the Dukedome of Brunſwick, I heard of a woman that was very famous (in the Town there called* Goſler) *for womens diſeaſes, but eſpecially in ſtaying and provoking their menſtrual fluxes; with whom when I had conferred about her Art, I found that it was one onely herb, but gathered at ſundry times. The reaſon of all theſe opinions and ſundry operations, becauſe it is not our intent nor meaning here to recite them, we will defer them till a more fit opportunity be offered.*

The ſixth Chapter.

Of the preparation of ſome things for Phyſick, as followeth.

The preparation of Simples.

IT is alſo very neceſſary and convenient, to know the true preparation of divers and ſundry things and Simples that are uſed in Phyſick, and to take away or diminiſh, or at the leaſt correct that which is and might be hurtful in them; For if this ſhould not be done, they would oftentimes, by reaſon either of their ſharpneſſe or venemous nature, do a great deal more harm then good. Neither ſhall it be amiſſe, to ſhew and declare the nature and properties of the principal ſimples and drugs in Phyſick.

What Aloes Hepatica is. *Aloëpatica* is the juyce of a very ſappy herb, which groweth in the Countries that lye Eaſtward, and is in taſte marvellous bitter. The beſt is that which

which glistereth, is light, clear, like a liver, without sand or gravel admixed, and as yet cleaving to the skin wherein it is brought. There is another kind of *Aloes*, called *Aloes Caballinum*, which in colour is very black, and not used in Physick.

The vertues of the same.

Aloes is hot in the first, and dry in the third degree, purgeth gall or choler, and water-ish flegme. It is corrected two sundry waies, as followeth:

His preparation.

Take of very fine powdered and sifted *Aloes*, as much as thou wilt, put twice as much rain water to it, stir and mix them well together, let it then rest all night, that the sand, stones and other filth may fall to the bottom; in the morning after, strain off the clearest, cover it with a linnen cloath, and set it in the hot Sun, or in some other warm place till it be somewhat dryed, then make little rowls of it.

The other manner of washing *Aloes* is done with spices thus; Take of *Aloes* (as afore) powdered and sifted six ounces, of the sweet wood called *Cassia Lignea*, Spikenard of India, *Asarabacca*, sweet Cane, *Cubebes*, *Lignum Aloes*, Cinamon, *Xylobalsami*, Saffron, Mastick, prepared *Lacca*: of each one ounce and a half. Boyl all these together in a glass or pot in water, until all the vertue be boyled out of the ingredients and gone into the water; then strain it through a cloth; after this dissolve your *Aloes* in this water, stirring it continually, and at the last strain and dry it as is aforesaid. This is called of the Apothecaries *Aloe Lota*, or washed *Aloes*, either with or without spices; of this may boldly without any danger be given a quarter of an ounce at once.

Aloes much used of it self, as many ignorant people use it, causes hurt and obstructions in the Liver and parts adjacent, as by experience I have proved, and *Jo. Anglicanus* in his second book testifies the same out of *Avicen.*

Aloes applyed outwardly to the eyes, healeth the watering and blemishes of the eyes, as you shall learn more in the Tract of eyes.

Aloes applyed to sores, helps to heal them.

Aloes taken in any medicine is hurtful for those that are grieved with any disease in the Liver, and those that are troubled with Timpany or Dropsie, &c.

I observed one, who by frequent taking of Pills of Aloe Rosata, had a violent Gonorrhea, and his wife was affected with diseases in the Matrix and Flux of whites, &c.

Therefore I wish the Ignorant to use Aloes qualified, or not to use Aloes but by the judgement of some discreet Physitian.

The boyling of Gums consumeth the strength and vertue of them; therefore it is better to grind them upon a Marble stone or plate of steel made hollow, and so cleanse them from filth, with Vinegar or some other liquid matter.

Or rather prepare Pitch, Rosen, Turpentine, and such like things, on this manner, seeth the Pitch, or Rosen in a strong and well glased earthen pot till it will rise no more into froth, then strain it into fair running water, and this is the best way.

The Julep of Roses, and the Julep of Violets is made of the Syrrup and water of Roses, and of the Syrrup and water of Violets.

Or, Rx. of the Syrrup of Violets, ℥. 1. ß. of Syrrup of Vinegar, which is made of Sugar and Vinegar; of Julep of Roses, *ana.* ℥. ß. of barly water, ℥. 10. or of water of Lettice, Endive, Sorrel. *ana.* ℥. 3. mix it for 2. or. 3. doses.

Or, Rx. of syrrup of Violets, ℥. 1. ß. of water-lillies of Endive, *ana.* ℥. of Lettice-water, Cichory, Endive, *ana.* ℥. 2. and thereof make a Julep for 2. doses.

Emulsions of the four greater cold seeds, Poppy, Lettice, &c.

As Rx. of the four greater cold seeds, their Pills taken away, ℥. ß. of white Poppy seeds, ℥. 2. of barly water simple, ℔. ß, of Lettice, ℥. 3. of water-lillies, ℥. 2. of Roses, ℥. 1. and thereof make an Emulsion, add unto it the syrrup of the Julep of Violets, ℥. 1.

Electuaries.

Rx. of the conserves of Roses, of Violets, *ana.* ℥. 1. of water-lillies, of Lettice conserved, *ana.* ℥. ß. of the species of Diamargariton frigid, ℥. ß. and with the syrrup of Violets makes an Electuary:

Or, Rx. of the conserves of Roses, of Borage, *ana.* ℥. 2. of the four greater cold seeds pilled, *ana.* ℥. 1. of the species of Diamargarit frigid, ℥. ß. and with the syrrup of Violets, make a conserve.

Outward

Outward compounded medicines.

℞. of flowers of Roſes, of water-lillies, *ana. M.* ß. of Alder flowers. *P.* 1. of leaves of Willow, Vine, Lettice, Barley, *ana. M.* 1. ſeeth them in water, until a third part is conſumed; then add of Vinegar, ℥. 1. ß. to the ſame being ſtrained, and apply it hot or cold with linnen cloth to the forehead, and hinder part of the head, or pour it upon the head, or ſprinkle the head with it.

Or ℞. of Roſe water, ℥. 4. of oyl of Roſes, ℥. 2. of Roſe-Vinegar, ℥. ß. the whites of two eggs, beat them together, and with a folded linnen cloth apply it to the head behind, and the temples.

Or, ℞. of oyl of Violets, of Roſes, of water-lilles, *ana.* ℥. 2. of water of Roſes, of Lettice, of Houſleek, *ana.* ℥. 2. of Vinegar, ℥. ß. mix them, and with a double linnen cloth, apply it to the fore-head.

Or, ℞ of the juice of Lettice, of Purſlaine, of Night-ſhade, of Pennywort, *ana.* ℥. 2. of Houſleek, ℥. 1. apply it with a ſponge or cloth to the forehead.

Or, ℞. of the mucilage of the ſeeds of Fleabane, ℥. 1. of oyl of Roſes, ℥. 1. ß. of Vinegar, ℥. 1. apply it as aforeſaid.

Liniments.

℞. of the juice of Lettice or Plantain, ℥. ß. of the mucilage of the ſeeds of Fleabane, Lettice-water, ℥. 1. oyl of Roſes, Violets, water-lillies, *ana.* ℥. 1. ß. ſeeth them till the juices are waſted and make a Liniment.

Unguents:

As, *Unguentum Roſaceum frigidum, Galeni unguentum populeum album camphoratum*, both which unguents you ſhall have at the Apothecaries.

Or, ℞. of oyl of Violets, of Roſes, *ana.* ℥. 1. ß. of Poppie, ℥. ß. of the juice of Houſleek, of Nightſhade, ℥. 1. ſeeth them till the juice is waſted, then add red and white Sanders, *ana.* ℈. ß. of the mucilage of the ſeeds of Fleabane, ℥. ß. of Camphire diſſolved in Roſe water, *q.* 6. of Wax, *G.* ß. and make an unguent thereof.

Or, ℞. of the *Cerat albi Galeni*, ℥. 2. which you may have at the Apothecaries, juice of Nightſhade, or Cucumbers, ℥. beat them in a morter, and make an unguent.

Cataplaſmes.

℞. of red Roſe leaves, of Violets, of water-lillies, of Mallow ſeeds, of Barley meal, *ana.* ℥. 3. of white and red Sanders, of the ſeeds and rindes of Poppie, of Lettice ſeeds, *ana.* ℥. 2. of Melilote, ℥. 1. pounder them, and with oyl of Roſes, juice of Lettice and Vinegar, make a Cataplaſme for the fore-head and temples.

Or oyl of Roſes, Violets, Poppie, *ana.* ℥. ß. Barley meal, white Poppie ſeeds bruiſed, Camphire, ℈. ß. mix them with the white of an egg, and make a plaſter for the temples and fore head.

Or, ℞. of white Poppie ſeeds, ℥. ß. red Roſe leaves, *P.* 2. Barley meal, ℥. 1. and with womans milk and oyl of Roſes, make a Cataplaſme, and apply it to the forehead, folded in linnen cloth.

Or, ℞. of Lettice leaves, *M.* 2. Roſe flower, *M.* ß. white Poppie ſeeds, ℥. ß. ſeeth till they are ſoft, bruiſe them and add of Barlie meal, ℥. 1. of oyl of Violets, *q.* ß. and a Cataplaſme and apply it to the fore-head.

Cerotes, and emplaſters.

Cerotum ſantalinum, which you may have at the Apothecaries.

℞. *Ceroti ſantalini*, ℥. 1. ß. beaten in a morter with the juice Lettice, and make a Cerote for the fore-head.

Or, ℞. of the powder of red Roſes, of Poppie heads, of Lettice ſeeds, *ana.* ℥. 2. of Camphire, *G.* 6. of oyl of Violets, of Wax, *q.* ß. and thereof make a Cerote.

Baggs are made for the head, by putting herbs or flowers or other things into a bag and applying it to the head, or by quilting the like into a Cap.

As ℞. flowers of Violets, of water-lillies, of Roſeleaves, *ana. M.* ß. white Poppie ſeeds, Lettice, Sanders, *ana.* ℥. 1. bruiſe theſe, and make a bag or quilt for the head.

Odours.

Odours.

℞. flowers of Roſes, Violets, water-lillies, Sanders; ſprinkle them with Roſe water and Vinegar, and put them in a cloth, and ſmell unto them.

Or, ℞. Sanders, flowers of Roſes, Water-lillies, and Camphire, and ſeeth them in a veſſel narrow mouthed, and ſmell thereunto.

Pomander.

℞. Roſe-flowers, Water-lillies, Poppy-ſeeds, Lettice, Henbane; and with gum dragagant, diſſolved in Roſe water, make a Pomander.

To make burned Allume.

Take of the beſt Allume, as much as thou wilt, beat it not very ſmall, put it into an earthen pot upon a little cole of fire, boyl it till it be thick, white and light, and ſtir it well in the boyling: if it were not altogether dry, then take it out by pieces, and lay it in the hot fire, and it will be dryed incontinently. *How to calcine Allume,*

Ammoniacum and ſuch like gums, that cannot be beaten ſmall, and are very unclean, are cleanſed as followeth: Put ſtrong vinegar upon them, and let them melt together on the fire, ſtrain and preſſe them through a ſtrong linnen cloth, to ſeparate pieces of wood, ſtrawe, and whatſoever elſe is with it, let it afterwards boyl till it be thick, pour it out on a ſtone that is be-oyled, and make it up as pleaſeth thee beſt. *Ammoniacum*

Sallet *Oyl*, or oyl of *Olives*: it is oftentimes commanded to uſe old *Oyl* of *Olives*; in place of which (if it be not to be had) thou ſhalt take one part of *Oyl* and two parts of water, and let them boyl together eaſily on the fire until the *Oyl* become as thick as hony and ſo uſe it. Others add more water to their *Oyl*, but that cometh all to one end. *Oyl of olives.*

Pitch is ſometimes uſed in form of powder, and is prepared on this manner: Take one part of Pitch and twenty parts of water, let them boyl together in a great pot, till ſuch time, as that the Pitch do no more ſmell as it was wont to do, and be molten again together: then let fall one or two drops upon a cold ſtone, and if (it being cold) thou canſt rub it to powder between thy fingers, it is ſufficiently prepared. After the very ſame manner is alſo *Turpentine Roſine*, and ſuch like things prepared. *Pitch.* *Turpentine.* *Roſine.*

Pearls ſhall be beaten very ſmall, and ſearced thorow a lawn ſearce, then moul or grind them on a mortar or marble ſtone with Roſe water, until thou find or feel no ſharpneſs or ſandineſs between thy fingers, then let them dry in ſuch a place where no duſt can come at them: on this manner are all other precious ſtones prepared. *Pearls.* *Precious ſtones.*

Lead being burned to aſhes is uſed to many purpoſes, and it is thus to be burned: Take as much Lead as thou wilt, put it in a little pipkin, and ſtop it very cloſe, ſet it in a potters fornace, there let it grow and burn whiles his pots be a baking, then let it cool: if it be not calcined or burned inough, lute it and ſet it on the fornace again, and ſo burn it till it be ſo fine as aſhes. *Lead* is alſo waſhed and prepared thus: Take Lead and beat it in a Leaden morter, put rain-water to it, and beat them both together a good while, till the water begin to be very thick, and troubled like puddle, ſtrain this thorow a cloth very wel, and let it dry in a warm place. *Lead calcined.* *Lead waſhed.*

Take Bloodſtone which now in uſe at the Apothecaries, is the mine of Quickſilver: powder it, and ſearce it finely, then put it in a mortar, and pour clear freſh water on it; ſtir them well together, and let it ſettle to the bottom, then pour away the foul water on the top, and put more clean water to it, and do as before, till it be clean waſhed, but much better it is to waſh this ſtone with Plantain-water. *Bloodſtone.*

The preparation of Bucks blood is this: in the Summer time when the Sun is in the Lion, thou ſhalt then take a black Buck or Hee-goat, that is ſome three or four years old, keep him by himſelf the ſpace of three weeks, and feed him with nothing but theſe herbs, as *Smallage*, (which is ſo good for the gravel, that of ſome for that cauſe it is called the hand of God) Paſley, Mallows, Pimpinel, Ivie of the Oak, Pauls Betony, Saxifrage, Saxifrage of the wall, and ſuch like herbs with their roots. Item Strawbery leaves, Bean huſks, the leſſer branches of the Vine; give him theſe herbs one after another; thou ſhalt alſo give him red wine to drink, but every third day give as much fair water as he is able to drink. Now when he hath thus been fed three weeks together, he ſhall at the firſt full moon be killed or ſtuck; the firſt blood ſhalt thou let paſſe away, and receive that which is the middlemoſt or ſecond, dry this in the Sun until thou canſt powder it; or elſe if it cannot be done at the Sun, dry it in an oven, and ſo reſerve it in ſome dry place, &c. *Bucks blood.*

Goats

Goats blood is good for the ſtone, and uſed in Camps among Souldiers for bruiſes, and blood congealed in the inward parts.

The diſtillation of buck blood.

Thoſe that take great delight in diſtillations, do feed the Buck with meat and drink, as is before ſaid, onely excepted that they give him no water at all; they take ten pounds of this blood, and five pounds of wine-vinegar that hath been twice or thrice diſtilled, one pound of ſalt, of Radiſh, of *Cicorie*, *Pempinel*, of each of them three ounces, *Valerian*, *Cicorie-roots*, *Ginger*, *Winter-Cherries*, *White Amber*; *Sulphur vive* that hath been well waſhed in wine, *Cinnamon*, *Anniſeeds*, *Fennel-ſeed*, *Cummin-ſeed*, *VVilde rape ſeed*, *Parſley-ſeed*, of each two ounces; of the juice of *Agramony*, *Rue*, *Penyroyal*, and of *Pauls Betonie*, of each ſix drachmes: Theſe things being cut ſomewhat ſmall, and well mixed together, they ſhall be put into a pot cloſe luted and ſtopped, and buried in horſe-dung for one fortnight or three weeks, then diſtilled in a glaſſe limbeck: The firſt water that diſtilleth is very clear, and ſo ſoon as the colour of the water altereth, thou ſhalt change thy recipient or receiver; this iterate in changing of recipients as often as thou ſeeſt the colour of that which diſtilleth to change. Others diſtil it all over together into one receiver, and afterward reiterate or repeat their diſtillations twice or thrice, till neither the taſte nor the ſmel do offend them: In the firſt and ſecond diſtillation aſcendeth alſo ſome oyl with the water, which ſhall be let alone with the liqour; and albeit the liquor do ſeem nothing troubled or thick, thou ſhalt not regard that, for it is but ſo much the ſtronger. This liquor and oyl together, if it be kept cloſe ſtopped, remaineth good and vertuous two or three years after the firſt making of it. Of this mayeſt thou give at one time two drachmes, or half an ounce in wine or mead, againſt gravel and dropſies before meat; it doth alſo wonderfully provoke ſweat.

Bole Armenack.

Bolus Armenus or, *Bole Armenack*, is a red ſtone or earth that is brought from *Armenia*: This hath an eſpecial vertue to purge melancholy; the weight of a crown at once is ſufficient, for it purgeth ſomewhat violently; but if it be waſhed, thou mayeſt exhibite the weight of two crowns at one time, for then purgeth it gently.

Bole Armenack, purgeth not, for it is aſtringent and bindeth, therefore it is given inwardly to help the flux of Rheume and blody flux, and to ſtanch blood.

Beat as much of this Bole as thou wilt, pour upon it Rheniſh or French wine, or fair water, ſtir and mix them well together, let it ſettle again, pour off the humidity or water, or wine, and put on freſh and ſtir it again as before: this do as long as thy water cometh coloured from it, which will be ſome ſixteen or twenty times; after this, waſh it yet ten times with Roſe water. Some there be that do add ſuch things as do comfort and ſtrengthen the heart, which in very deed is not to be miſliked.

Camphire.

Camphire wil in no wiſe be beaten to powder except it be rubbed and chafed in a mortar, in the which mortar hath firſt been beaten ſome piece or part of an *Almond* or *Almonds*, according to the quantity of *Camphire* which thou wilt prepare.

Camphire is eaſily beaten to powder, if you put a little fair water unto it, in a very clean mortar.

Maſtick is poundered alſo by adding a little fair water into the mortar.

Caſſia.

Caſſia which is in the pipe, quill, or cane, is one of the beſt purging medicines, and is ſufficiently known. The beſt pipes are choſen by weight, and in which the kernels do not rattle, which is a ſure ſign that the pith or marrow in them is ſucculent and moiſt, and nothing withered or dryed. It is uſed on this manner: Take as many of the pipes as pleaſeth thee, beat upon them ſoftly from one end to the other until they rend or ſplit aſunder, take out all that is in it with a knife into a hairen ſtrainer, and lay it over a boyling pot of water, that the hot vapor may come to it: When the *Caſſia* is reaſonable warm, take off the hairen ſtrainer or ſieve, hold it over a diſh, & with a round peſtel ſqueeze it through the ſtrainer, and all the black pith will paſs through and hang on the outſide of the ſtrainer, which thou ſhalt ſcrape off with a knife, and keep it; then ſet thy ſieve or ſtrainer over the boyling water, as is aforeſaid, and afterwards ſqueeze it through again as at the firſt. This work ſhalt thou do again ſo long, till no more pith paſſe through, and nothing but kernels remain in thy ſtrainer: this prepared *Caſſia* is called by the Apothecaries *Caſſia cribrata*.

Note, that when thou wilt uſe this *Caſſia*, it muſt alwaies be new taken out of the Pipes: for being reſerved out of the Pipe, preſently it waxeth ſowr, and eſpecially in the ſummer time.

time. Of this ſtrained *Caſſia* maieſt thou exhibite at one time one ounce, or one ounce and a half, in hot burning agues unto his children and women in child-bed, to every of them more or leſſe, as they are able to bear.

Alſo if thou wilt have this *Caſſia* to purge more effectually, then put either the bloſſomes or leaves of the Peach tree in the boyling water, before thou hold thy *Caſſia* over the vapour of it. The vertue of *Caſſia* is to purifie and clear the blood, to quench thirſt, and to allay heat, being taken with Endive water: alſo to purge the ſtomack, to drive out choler and flegme without any danger: for it hath no ſharpeneſſe or corroding vertue in it. In like ſort it is very comfortable for the breaſt and liver, and is very good for the kidnies, being mixed with the appropriate waters that drive out gravel, and beaten Liecorice, then miniſtred, it doth ſcowre away the gravel, and hindreth the growing of the ſtone. It is uſed in a confection with Manna, and is alſo prepared for *Cliſters*.

Coloquint is a very bitter apple, and is oftentimes ſown in gardens for pleaſure ſake, yet it is found very ſeldom to be ripe. The uſe of that which is brought us from *Venice* or other places, is this, and no otherwiſe. The innumerable white kernels being caſt away, the reſt ſhall be beaten very ſmall, and ſifted thorow a very fine ſearce, and ſo be brought to as fine a powder as poſſible may be; when it is wet, it ſwelleth as if it had never been powdered: and for that cauſe it is ſtraightly charged to be reduced into ſo fine a duſt: for if never ſo little a peece ſhould by chance remain in the ſtomack or guts, it would eaſily excoriate and hurt them, ſo that hereby the ſinewes might take ſome harm, yea lameneſſe and cramps enſue of it. The right preparation of it is this that followeth. *Coloquint.*

Take of the aforeſaid fine powdered *Coloquint* two ounces and a half, rub it a great while with two ounces of oyl of Roſes, then take of the gum *Tragacanth*, of gum *Arabicke*, of *Bdellium*, of each of them ʒ.ß. ſteep them in a little roſe water untill they be diſſolved: put of this mixture unto the beaten *Coloquint*, and form little cakes of it; let them dry, beat them ſmal again, and faſhion your cakes again with the gum water, and keep them: On this wiſe prepared are they more ſafe than the crude *Coloquint*, and are called *Trochiſci Alandali*: To what end they be uſed in Phyſick, ſhal be ſhewed hereafter.

This prepared *Coloquint*, may be exhibited from ϑ.i. to ϑ.i ß. ϑ.ii. but it purgeth vehemently, it draweth the tough flegmatical humours from the head and otherparts.

Coloquint is ſuppoſed of ſome to be hot and dry in the ſecond: of others, in the third degree.

Corral, both red and white is prepared in that manner as is aforeſaid of the Pearls. *Corral.*

Coriander ſeed being hurtful unto the brain, both by his hot nature and by his ſtrong ſmel, is very profitable for many uſes: ye ſhall correct it as followeth; ſteep it the ſpace of twelve hours in good ſtrong wine vinegar: afterward evaporate or dry away your vineger from it in a warm place, then it is prepared. Black Coriander is the ſeed of *Nigella*, and is prepared as that aboveſaid. *Coriander ſeeds.* *Nigella ſeeds.*

Dates both ſweet and ſowre do purge very eaſily eſpecially in hot diſeaſes and great drithes: being preſt cloſe together as they are brought unto us, they are kept good a long time: you may miniſter of them from two ounces to four at once. They need no preparing or correcting at all, for that they purge ſo gently, and can do no harm. *Dates.*

Dates purge not, for they are uſed to ſtay fluxes of the belly, and fluxes of the matrix; they are hard of digeſtion and cauſe headach: yet they are to be uſed for diſeaſes of the matrix the bladder and bowels. *Dioſcor. & medici Colonienſes.*

Gems or precious ſtones are prepared as is aboveſaid of pearls. *Gems.*

Horſleaches, the blood ſucking water worm, ſhall be keep ſome dayes in freſh water before they be uſed; putting a little blood and bran into the water for their food, then do they loſe their venome. *Horſleaches.*

I hold it is not good to uſe horſleaches, becauſe of their venemous quality; and the conſcionable Phyſitian that regards his patients good more then his own purſe, may uſe beter means to procure health. I will not uſe them, and divers other learned Phyſitians beyond the ſeas uſe them not.

Scoria ferri, the refuſe of iron, ſhalt thou caſt into fair water: waſh it, and let it ſettle to the bottom, powre of the water from it untill it remain very clean and pure, afterward *Scoria ferri.* *Refuſe of iron.*

put

put it in an earthen pot that is well leaded or glaſſed within: put as much vinegar to it as will wet it onely, and not overflow it: let them ſtand ſo both together the ſpace of thirty dayes, in the mean while often times ſtirring them: afterward moul or grind them on a marble, as thou didſt the pearls.

Polipody. *Polipodium*, little fern or polipody doth willingly grow on old walls and moſſie ſtones, but the beſt groweth on oakes; it purgeth gall and ſlimy ſuperfluities: It is ſomewhat hurtfull to the ſtomack, it is therfore corrected with Anniſeſeeds, Fenelſeeds, Cloves, Cumine ſeeds, and is adminiſtred either with hony water, or elſe with the water of grapes, and very ſeldom by it ſelf alone.

Dodder. *Epithymus*, Dodder is uſed in many profitable medicines: the gold coloured and ſtrong ſmelling Dodder is the beſt: four drachmes of it in powder, or at the moſt ſix, driveth out melancholy and choler. It is almoſt never given by it ſelf, but alwayes admixed with other things, but ſpecially it is ſodden in drinks or portions, at which time thou maieſt uſe one ounce at once. It is put in laſt of all into the boyling potion.

Elaterium. The juyce of wild cucumbers (called in Greek *Elaterium*) is preſſed out of the wild Cucumbers: the Phyſitians command that it ſhould not be uſed till it be two years old, it may be kept ten years together, the older it is, the better; and when it is moiſtened it is like unto milk: being put to the fire, it doth preſently burn. It purgeth flegm, water and all ſuperfluous humidities moſt violently, and in like ſort gall and choler alſo. It ought not to be uſed unadviſedly, or without the counſel of a skilful Phyſitian, for that an error might be committed in a few grains.

Euphorbium. *Euphorbium*, is a ſtrange gum ſo called, amongſt all the purging ſimples the ſtrongeſt and hotteſt, very ſharpe and byting on the tongue, it ſeemeth to burn in the noſtrils, and provoketh neeſings, it ſtoppeth the breath, as if it would choke one, if the duſt of it be received. Therefore great heed is to be given: for two or three drachmes of it is rank poyſon. In extreme diſeaſes of flegme and dropſies, when no other remedies will help, thou maieſt uſe it from four grains unto twelve, but no more: Maſtick and Spike of India do greatly diminiſh his hurting quality. The ancient Phyſitians did miniſter it with meade or honey water.

Suets. Marrowes Sewets and marrows of ſundry beaſts are prepared as followeth: firſt waſh them clean and often in cold water, then chop and melt them together with a little fire in a ſeveral pot with boyling water and wine, or elſe with roſe water: after this, preſſe and ſtrain them thorow a cloth, and keep it in a veſſel or pot of pewter in a cold place. The marrow muſt eſpecially be taken out of the bones in the beginning of winter.

Ivory. Ivory is thus prepared: take of it in quantity as you pleaſe: cut it into thin chips, put them into a new pot, and ſtop him cloſe with a pot lid that is unbaked; put him into a potters fornace amongſt other pots to be burned. When your pot is cold, take out your Ivory, beat it to a ſmall duſt or powder and ſearce it thorow a fine hairen ſearce: put it into a leaded or glaſſed pot, powring as much roſe-water on it till it be clean covered. Afterwards, take for every twelve ounces of Ivory half an ounce of Camfere: moul or grind them on a marble together, and when it is hard like dow, form or make little ſquare cakes of it called *Trochiſces*: keep them in a glaſſe well ſtopped, that they loſe not their ſmel. Note alſo, that if thy pot be not very cloſly luted and covered, that thy Ivory cannot be burned white, and that it loſeth a great deal of his vertue. This is uſed againſt all manner of poyſons.

☞ Ivory in moſt places by experienced Artiſt it is uſed without burning or calcining: And ſo is heartshorn uſed with burning or calcining.

Hermodactilis *Hermodactils* ſome ſuppoſe it to be our Daffodils, and indeed I do take it to be a kind of them, but the Greeks do call their *Hermodactilon*, *Ephemeron*, and *Colchicon*, of the place where it groweth. And although this root may kill a man in one day (as alſo our Daffodils, do excitate a flux or lask in the belly even till the very blood do follow) yet hath it his uſe, as in other places ſhall be ſhewed. This root ſhall be digged up out of the earth in the beginning of the ſummer, and thoſe that are ſappieſt and whiteſt within, ſhall be reſerved. Thoſe that are withered and ſoft, have loſt their vertue: ſuch as grow in wet, wateriſh and low ground, are very venemous. And albeit that they be very clean and dry, yet ſhall they not be uſed in half a year, and are very ſeldom in requeſt. One drachme, or one drachme and a half at the moſt is ſufficient at one time. Cinnamon, Ginger

ger, Maſtix, long Pepper do greatly correct their venemous quality: they are given in the vinegar of Squils, honey of Roſes, or Oximel.

Hartshorn is prepared as is aforeſaid of Ivory. *Hartshorn.*

Lacca the gum or ſap ſo called, do we not uſe very often, notwithſtanding that, we will not paſſe over her preparation, which is as followeth: Take of Hartwort, of Fenegreek, of each one ounce: boil them in a ſufficient quantity of water, untill the fourth part be conſumed and that there remain but ten ounces: being ſtrained, put into this liquor eight ounces of the aforeſaid *Lacca*, boil them together on a litle fire, till the water become as red as blood, and all the beſt of the gum be diſſolved in the water: then ſtrain it thorow a cloth, and let your bloody liquor boil in a glaſſe in water, till it become thick unto a ſirupe, and more thicker and harder: make it up into little cakes, and dry them. *Lacca.*

Agaricus, a kind of well known Muſhrome: the white, compacted light and ſoft, is alwayes the beſt: that which is hollow, full of holes and black, is rejected. The one is taken to be the male, and the other the female kind: the beſt is at the firſt in taſt ſweet, but preſently afterwards very bitter. Being given by it ſelf, one drachme or one drachme and a half, is enough at once: but being boiled in drinks, or other decoctions, thou mayeſt uſe half an ounce, it is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree. It doth purge tough flegme, and openeth all obſtructions. When thou wilt adminiſter it, thou ſhalt add a little ſalt gem and Ginger to it, alſo Oximel and honey of Roſes, by the which his venemous quality is very much delayed. The Apothecaries do diverſly prepare this *Agaricus*, as followeth: Take of it as much as thou wilt, cut it ſmall, moule or rub it in a mortar (for it will not be beaten to poweder) make it in a form of a dow with wine, in which ginger hath been ſteeped eight or ten houres, and then make little cakes or *Trochiſcos* of it. The other manner of preparing is this: Take Malmeſey or Muſcadel four ounces, vinegar of Squils, three drachmes, white ginger two drachmes, Spike of India half a drachme; let them boil together with a ſoft fire: ſtrain it, and ſteep in this liquor three ounces of the beaten *Agaricus*, but not too fine powdered, and let it ſtand and dry very well in a glaſſed pot, and when it is almoſt dry, make little cakes of it with the ſlimy of Polipody. They purge the head and the breſt of ſuperfluous and ſtinking humidities, they are called at the Apothecaries *Trochiſci de Agarico*. *Agaricus.*

Manna may we call (as it is indeed) a dew of heaven, ſeeing that this precious liquor falleth in the morning with the dew from heaven. This is now in great quantity and very good brought unto us out of Calabria, ſituated beyond Italy. The beſt is that which is a little yellow, and ſomewhat perſpicuous, or clear like Maſtick, in taſt ſweet, and without any filth admixed. This Manna is an eaſie, harmleſſe, cooling and fine purging medicine, which may be given to women in childbed and to young children, with diſtilled waters, or any broth of meat, from one ounce and a half untill two ounces and more at once; when it is moulten in the waters on hot coals, ſtrain it thorow a cloth, that all the uncleanneſſe might be ſeparated. It needeth no correction, for it hath no venemous or bad quality at all with it. *Manna.*

Myrobalani, theſe are ſtrange fruits, of the which there are five ſorts; of ſome of them are the rinds or barks dried: of others is the whole ſubſtance dried and brought unto us. All of them do purge and draw tough flegme from the head; they dry the brain, &c. But every one of them hath an eſpecial and ſeveral vertue, which ought to be noted. *Myrobalani.*

Citrini, theſe are yellow, having a thick skin or rind with a hard ſtone or ſtony kernel They purge cholerick and hot humors.

Emblici do comfort and dry the brain, and are confected or preſerved.

Bellirici have the ſame vertues with the firſt.

Kebuli are big, black, and ſomewhat long, dark and of a Cheſtnut colour: the heavieſt and thickeſt of rine are the beſt. They purge flegme, and may alſo be preſerved.

Indi, of theſe are the barks onely brought unto us, which are in colour black, for which cauſe they are alſo called *Nigri*: they are weighty as the others alſo are: they do purge melancholy.

The powder of either of them by it ſelf) which is not uſual) may be given the weight of one drachme or twaine: they be commonly uſed with an admixtion of many things; with Almonds, Currants, Fenelſeeds, Spike of India, in the whay of goats milk, and the juyce of Fumitory, they may very meetly be adminiſtred.

Neeſwort

Neeſewort or Hellebor.

Neeſwort, of this are two ſorts or kinds, the white and the black, and it is concluded amongſt Phyſitians, that the beſt time to gather them is the time of harveſt: they purge both upward and downward, and muſt therefore be very warily uſed: yea if it be poſſible it is good to refrain from them altogether. The whiter that one of them is, the better it is: it ought alſo to be ſoft, unperiſhed, and not too ſharpe or byting on the tongue. With this root have ancient Phyſitians done great marvels, and have had many ſtrange opinions of it, that it ſhould ſtrengthen memory, ſharpen the wit, and ſhould be very commodious againſt the falling ſickneſſe. They compare it to a captain, who placing his ſouldiers to the Battel, is himſelf the firſt that forſaketh the field. Both of them may be uſed, but (as is aboveſaid) with great circumſpection, for that they be venemous, as preſently appeareth in the digging of them up: for if the ſent of them chance to aſcend into the face and noſtrils of the digger, it doth grievouſly diſturbe his brain, and cauſeth both a great pain and ſwelling to follow: and for this cauſe ſhall they be digged up in haſt, and he that diggeth them ſhall ſtand with his back to the wind, that the ſmell of them may not annoy him; and before he begin to dig he ſhall eat garlick, and drink ſome wine. The white Neeſewort purgeth very violently by vomit, and is not ſo hurtful for beaſts as it is for man; of neither of them may be given above a drachme at a time, and that in no wiſe unprepared, that the patient be not choked with it. It is corrected by the addition of Pepper, Parſley ſeed, Anniſeeds, Marierome, and wild mints.

The black Neeſewort killeth horſes, oxen and hogs, and purgeth by ſtool. In fine, theſe roots may the ancient Phyſitians praiſe as highly as they liſt, yet it is forbidden that neither women nor old men, nor children, nor men of a weak conſtution, nor thoſe that have a ſhort breath ſhould in any wiſe uſe them. To what other uſes they are put, ſhall be ſhewed hereafter.

Opium.

Opium is the juyce of a ſtrange kind of poppy dried, being too much uſed it killeth by ſleep: it hath a ſtrong and unpleaſant ſmell, which may be corrected as followeth: take a little pair of tongs, which is ſomewhat broad before, make it red hot, hold a little peece of *Opium* in it, and lay it down again preſently, and ſo do as much as thou wilt.

Rubarbe.

Rhabarbarum, Rubarbe, how far this pretious root is eſteemed above all other purging ſimples, ſhall openly appear in this book. The beſt is that which is without, of a Cheſtnut and darkiſh colour, but commonly that which is brought unto us hath the rind taken off, and is yellow coloured. That is alſo commended which is reaſonable heavy, in the breaking ſpongious, and not hard, very red, with white ſpecks; alſo that which hath yellow ſpots, and in chewing coloureth like Saffron. The preparation of it is very eaſie; for that it is ſo harmleſſe that it may be uſed without any adition, yet do Phyſitians commonly uſe to add to every drachme of Rubarbe three or four grains of Spikenard, Squinanth, or ſweet Cane, or Maſtick, and moſt fit, with whay of goats milk; in the winter time with wine the weight of one drachme, or one drchame and a half, being finely powdered; but ſteeped, two or thee drachmes, according to the ſtate and ability of the patient.

Juices.

The ſaps or juyces of herbs, flowers and roots, for ſirupes and other compoſitions, are thus prepared: preſſe out your juyce into an earthen pot, let it boil on the fire three or four bubbles; then let it ſettle from the fire, till all the thickeſt droſſe be ſunk to the bottom, poure of the cleareſt from the top by inclination, which onely ſhall be reſerved and uſed, caſting away the unpure ſetlings.

Wild ſaffron.

Wild Saffron, of *Carthamus* is very offenfive for the ſtomack, and is hot in the third degree. Of this is uſed the innermoſt part or kernel of the ſeed; it purgeth all ſuperfluous humiditiek, dropſies, and flegme. It is given to the weight of half an ounce in barly water ſodden, and well preſſed, but not without the admixtion of ſuch things as doe comfort the ſtomack. It is alſo uſed to other in tents, as hereafter in this book ſhall appear.

Scammony.

Scammony or *Scammonia*, is a ſtrange juyce, and uſed in many compoſitions and purging medicines, to increaſe and ſharpen their purging quality: the beſt Scammony is brought to us from Aſia: when it is prepared, it is called *Diagridion*. It is given from four grains unto twelve at the moſt in one day, or at one time. The beſt is diſcerned by that, that it is black, lean, or not gummy, ſhining, and with many little holes, much like unto bread; and as ſoon as it is touched with the tongue, that preſently becometh milky white,

white, not ſharpe or biting, not ſandy, not heavy or weighty, and very brittle. In the ſecond year is Scammonie in her flower, and moſt vertue: afterward doth it decay, and waxeth obſolete and old. It is thus prepared: Take two ounces of Scammonie, powder it very finely in a mortar, put a little oyle of *Ireos* to it, to bring it to the conſiſtence of dow: then make hollow a Quince, in which thou ſhalt put thy Scammonie, and ſtop the whole with a piece of a Quince very cloſe; wrap the Quince in dow, and let it bake in an oven. Afterward take one ounce of yellow Myrobalans, ſteep them fowre and twenty houres in two ounces of the juice of Quinces, ſetting it on warme aſhes; then preſſe them very hard thorow a cloth, mingle it with the Scammonie, and let it dry in a warme place. Some men do admixe ſome Maſtick with it; others take nothing elſe but the juice of Quinces: but the former preparation is that which is commonly uſed.

Fuyce of Sloes.

The juice of Sloes is every where taken and uſed likwiſe for the ſtrange ſap *Acatia*, yet it doth not agree in all points with the vertues of *Acatia*. The true *Acatia* is the ſap of of the tree, from which the gum Arabick is taken; notwithſtanding if any man would make a mixture that might have the ſame vertues with *Acatia*, *Valerius Cordus* doth teach it him thus: Take the kernels of ſowre dates, ſeed of Sumach, of each one pound: bruiſe them, and put upon them three or foure pints of rain water: let them ſteep together foure and twenty howers, then ſtrain them thorow a cloth, boyl that is ſtrained till one third remain, clarify it with the white of egs. ſet it on the coales again, and let it boyl ſoftly, till it be as thick as the juice of Sloes, which then may boldly be vſed.

Brimſtone.

Brimſtone is thus prepared: Melt thy Sulphur or Brimſtone at the fire, then pour it into the water of Lettice; this reiterate eight or nine times: when it is dry, beat it to powder. This is commonly uſed to ſtop the bloud, as hereafter ſhall be ſhewed.

Sene leaves.

Sene leaues with the huſks and their ſeed is a common purgation for every man, for that it purgeth all bad humours, and eſpecially choler and flegme. Great ſtore of it is brought from Florence. It is alſo ſet in our gardens, but the very beſt is brought from Alexandria. The huſks of them are of more force and vertue then the leaues. Two drachmes of them in powder is a ſufficient doſe at once: but either ſteeped or ſod, an ounce is little enough, as in this booke ſhall appear. They are corrected with Ginger, or ſalt Gem: and may be given in the decoction of Borage, Bugloſſe, Violets, Maſtix, Cloves and Cardimonie, or elſe being powdered, may any of theſe be admixed with them and ſo exhibited.

White muſtard ſeed.

White Muſtard ſeed may in no wiſe be inwardly uſed. except it be firſt corrected as followeth: ſteepe it one day and a night in good *Aqua vitæ*, and then evaporate or dry it away from it: then powre upon it freſh *Aqua vitæ*, that hath been made of the beſt Malmeſey, or of ſome other ſtrong wine with Lavender flowers in it: then let it ſtand and ſoke as before, and afterwards alſo evaporate: then is thy ſeed prepared. This ſeed may be made up in Suger, or confected and ſo uſed, or by it ſelfe, but very little of it at once. It is very good to be mingled with any ſtomachical powders: it dryeth up all moiſtures of the brain, it helpeth the ſwimming in the head, falling evill, and the dead Palſie: but unprepared may it in no way be uſed.

Mezereon.

Mezereon, of ſome purge, or *Chamelæa* of the Apothecaries *Coccognidion*. The ancient Phyſitians were wont to give ſeven or eight of the ſeeds of it, wrapped up in a green fig or date; but experience doth teach us, that three of the ſeeds are ſufficient enough to purge the body. Sops of bread may be uſed inſtead of the figs or dates; for it is onely done to the intent, that they by reaſon of their extreme heat ſhould not harme the throat. They alſo commanded a good draught of water to be preſently drunk after them. But flee the uſe of ſuch medicines, which deſcribed for none other cauſe, then that we might know and ſhun them; let Empericks and the outcaſts of phyſick uſe them.

Steel.

Take filings of Steel, caſt them into fair water, and rub them well between thy hands in the water, powre away the uncleane water from thy ſteel remaining on the bottom; this waſhing reiterate ſo often, that the water come clear from it. Then put the Steel into a well glaſſed earthen pot, powre ſtrong wine vinegar upon it, as much as will onely moiſten it and not cover it; let them ſo ſtand together thirty dayes, but in the mean while oftentimes ſtirring it; afterward beat it to powder, and moule it on a marble, as is before ſaid of the pearles.

Turbith.

Turbith is the bark of a root, and at the Apothecaries well known and very common, for that it is added unto many purging confections. It is thought to be a kind of Wolfes-

bane. It is given in powder from one drachme unto two at once; but being decocted, half an ounce every time. It purgeth flegme mightily. All his maliciouſneſſe is corrected by the addition of one third part of Ginger, and ſo, either with honey of Roſes, or the water of grapes, exhibited. When it is uſed in powder, it muſt not be beaten very ſmall.

Tuttie. *Tutia*, Tutty is commonly uſed for the eyes, and in all kinds of infirmities where exſiccation is required, and is thus prepared; Make it red hot in a Goldſmiths cruſible or melting cruſe: then extinguiſh it in the urine of a male child; this reiterate the ſeventh time, afterwards alſo five times in Fennel water: then powder it as thou didſt the pearls. Item glow it, as is now ſaid, five or ſix times, and ever caſt it into Roſe water, and powder it as above. This is the common preparation of *Tutia*.

Wolfes liver. Wolfes-liver muſt be taken freſh out of the Wolfe, and be waſhed with good warm wine; cut it into little pieces, put it into a pot, and ſet it into a warm bakers oven: keep it in a dry place well wrapped in Wormwood, leſt the worms do ſpoyl it.

Eſula. *Eſula*, is taken for the root onely at the Apothecaries. It is a ſtrong purging root, and ought not to be uſed unadviſedly; being prepared, not above the weight of a drachme or leſſe, as occaſion ſerveth. There be ſeven kinds of it called *Tithymalus*, and are all more fit to be uſed outward, then inward in the body. It purgeth choler and melancholly. Take either the bigger or the leſſer roots of *Eſula*, ſteep them fout and twenty houres in wine vineger, and let them dry again. When thou wilt uſe them, cut off and caſt away all the hairy and hard parts of them, and beat the reſt to fine powder.

The ſeeds of Tithymalus cauſe vomit, and purge downward; take from 6. to 20. of the ſeeds to cauſe vomit, but drink butter-milk after them, becauſe they cauſe corroſion in the throat and wheſand, except they be qualified.

Palma Chriſti ſeeds. The ſeed of *Palma Chriſti* or *Ricinus*, being purified, doth by his purging vertue drive out choler and flegme. The ancient Phyſitians do command not above ten in number at once to be exhibited; but becauſe they are very greatly hurtful to the ſtomach, they ſhall in no wiſe be uſed: but in place of them, other things which are leſſe hurtful. There is a falſe opinion amongſt the common ſort of this *Palma Chriſti*, to wit, that if the ſeed in the gathering of it be plucked upward, it provoketh vomit; if it be plucked downward, it ſhould move ſtooles: but howſoever they be gathered, by reaſon of their venemous and hurtful quality, they may purge both upwards and downwards.

Laurel. *Laureole*, *Daphnoidis*, and *Laureola*, Laurel. Theſe leaves have a ſharp purging quality, to drive out flegme and choler. Of the powder of them prepared may be taken from four grains unto ſix, and no more; and with other ſpices and ſimples corrected, not above one drachme. There is nothing of it in uſe, but onely the leaves: it is prepared by ſteeping of it four and twenty houres in wine vineger, and then dryed.

Sugar. Sugar is uſed in many things, as hereafter in this book may appear; but to boyl it, there be divers and ſundry waies: and firſt of all ſhall be ſhewed, how the common and courſe ſugar muſt be ſevered from his filth and dregs, and clarified for ſirupes, and other neceſſaries in Phyſick.

How to clarifie Sugar. Take (for example) two pounds of common ſugar, put it into a certain quantity of water; ſet it on the fire until it be ready to boyl or ſeeth: then have in a readineſſe the white of five egs, beaten to water with a little rod, and ſprinkle them with thy rod into thy boyling ſugar; let it boyl afterwards a pretty while, then doth the filth of the ſugar adjoyn himſelf to the whites of the egs; then ſet it from the fire, and when it ceaſeth boyling, take away the filth from it with a skimmer, boyl it again, beſprinkle it, and skim it as before, ſo often, until thou find it bright and clear. For ſirrupes and other confections, let this Sugar boyl ſomewhat longer, let two or three drops of it fall on a cold ſtone, dip thy finger in them, and ſee if it do ſtring or glue, or draw out in a threed, which is a ſign of a ſufficient cocture.

Manus Chriſti. For to make ſugar cakes, or *Manus Chriſti*, the foreſaid ſugar muſt boyl yet longer; and if thou wilt know if it be ſufficiently boyled for this thy purpoſe, take a little of it on ſpattens or skimmer, and throw it from thee into the ayr; if it flye very white and fiery from it, then is it boyled enough; ſet it from the fire, ſtirring it continually untill it begin to be ſtiffe or hard, then adde and mixe thoſe things with it, which thou wilt: then very ſpeedily caſt it on a cold ſtone, whereupon a little flour hath been caſt or ſifted before, leſt they ſhould ſtick or cleave faſt to the ſtone.

Saccharum Penidium, called Sugar pennets, is beſt made of the whiteſt ſugar that is brought from the Iſland of S. *Thomas*. Take of this (if thou canſt tell how to work it) from two until five pounds at once, pour upon it a good pretty quantity of water, and if it be very unclean, clarifie it as afore, continue the boyling eaſily untill it begin to be thick, and that it riſe up in great bubbles; then have a ſpindle or the like little round ſtick being wet with cold water, thruſt it into the boyling ſugar about a fingers breadth, that ſome of thy ſugar may cleave to it, and cool it in cold water: if then it eaſily come from thy ſpindle or ſtick, if it be reaſonable hard, and if in the biting or chewing it ſtick and cleave not to thy teeth, then it is ready to be wrought: Take it from the fire, let the bubbles ſettle themſelves, pour it out upon a ſtone or table, that is moiſtened all over with the oyl of Olives; when it is run flat or abroad, take up the ends, corners, or edges of it, and throw them upon the midſt of it: this continue, until ſuch time as it all do remain in a heap or lump; then dip thy hands in fine flour, leſt the ſugar ſtick to them; hang or faſten the whole lump of ſugar upon a ſtrong hook or crooked nail faſtned on a wall, and draw one part of thy ſugar towards thee about a cubits length; faſten the end in thy hand to the hook again, and pull again; thus continue pulling and faſtening, untill thy Sugar become very white. There muſt at the leaſt be a couple to work it, that the one being weary, the other may go forward with it; beſides that, by reaſon of the great heat of the Sugar, it is not poſſible that one ſhould do it well alone. Now when it waxeth white and cold, thou ſhalt draw it out in long ropes, and lay them on a table whereupon a little flour is ſprinkled, and ſo make it up in rowles. This whole work muſt be done in haſte; for otherwiſe the Sugar will waxe too hard, which notwithſtanding, it is not ſpoiled: But if thou wilt bring it into Sugar pennets again, it will be ſomewhat blacker then otherwiſe it would be.

This ſhall ſuffice at this preſent concerning the principal purging ſimples, and after what ſort they are beſt prepared and corrected; and thoſe things that have as yet not been ſpoken of, ſhall hereafter (as need ſhall require) be ſhewed and treated of at large.

Addition.

Succus roſarum, *the juyce of Roſes, or their infuſion, purgeth choler gently, and cooleth withall. It may be given from one unto two ounces very ſafely.*

Serum lactis, *whay of milk or of cheeſe, is a lenitive and laxative medicine, it doth alſo purge choler. It is exhibited from three unto five ounces.*

Mechoacha (*in Engliſh Mechecan*) *is an Indian root, of ſome called white Rubarbe. It may be taken in ſubſtance from two ſcruples unto one dragme with broth, wormwood wine, or ſweet wine, as followeth: Take Mechecan one dragme, Gentian one ſcruple, Cinnamom half a ſcruple, beat them into a fine powder, exhibit it three houres before meales with wormwood wine. It purgeth flegme and wateriſh humours without any moleſtation or trouble unto the patient. It is given for the pain in the head, that hath continued long; for agues, for the Collick, for the dropſie, and for the ſhortneſſe of the breath.*

Opopanax *is the juyce of the herb* Ferula. *The beſt is white within, and yellow without, bitter, brittle, and of a ſtrong ſent. It is commonly given from one unto two dragmes. It evacuateth the groſſe and tough flegme that is inherent in the brain, nerves, breaſt, and joynts.*

Sagapenum *is a certain juyce or gum ſo called, of a dark yellow colour, white within and ſtrong in taſte. It may be given from half a dragme unto a whole, with the water of Rue, or of Elecampane. It doth in like manner purge groſſe and tough humours. Both theſe gummes are corrected with Maſtick and Spica, &c. Taken out of* Dioſcorides, Mathiolus, Wekereus, *and others.*

The ſeventh Chapter. Sect. 1.

A general Rule to be obſerved in purging.

A rule for purging.

Oraſmuch as the eſpecialleſt point in ſanation is to unburden the body of man, of abounding ſuperfluities, and cleanſe it of all corruption and uncleanneſſe; which indeed may be done either by preſcribing a moderate dyet in meat and drink, by leading a well ruled life, or rather if in theſe any thing be wanting, by purgations: Therefore it ſeemeth needful here to ſet down a general rule, which every man is to obſerve and keep, that purpoſeth to purge, as thus; He muſt have a great regard of the nature of the diſeaſe, of the diſeaſed, of his age, of the time of the year, and ſuch like. And where (as it is already ſaid) all ſickneſſes and inward griefs do proceed of corruption of the bloud and bad humours, (as in this our work doth appear,) neceſſity therefore doth require that ſuch ſuperfluities and corruptions ſhould be expelled and baniſhed out of the body, which for the moſt part is perfected by drying or purging medicines, whereof now ſhall be mentioned. The beſt counſel therefore is, that not unadviſedly, but very warily thou meddle with ſtrong medicines. For as in all infirmities purgings are very needful and profitable, ſo alſo the uſe of bad and too ſtrong purgations is very hurtful and dangerous. Wherefore in ſharp and perilous diſeaſes ſhall the advice of a learned Phyſitian be asked, or elſe in his abſence to chooſe and uſe things that are eaſie and ſafe, of which in this book every where mayeſt thou have choiſe.

VVhat perſons ſhall abſtain from purging, and the impediments thereof, §. 2.

what perſons are to refrain from purging.

ALL ſuch as uſe a moderate dyet, and eat nothing but that which ingendreth good blood, they have no need of any purgation.

Thoſe that do abound in blood, may in like ſort omit purging; but good it is for them to be let blood.

If any matter or bad humour do ſettle it ſelf in the concavity or hollowneſſe of the articles or joynts, and is inherent, as in the Leprie, and ſuch like happeneth, in vain it is alſo for them to purge; for if ſuch humours be moved onely, and not wholly expelled, they might eaſily be drawn to ſome noble and principal part of the body, whereby the diſeaſed might be greatly weakned, and fall into a worſe inconvenience then before.

In great heat or cold mayeſt thou not purge, for the heat divideth and ſpreadeth the matter over all the body, and weakneth greatly: at which time if thou purge, thou doeſt ſtir and move the humour, and doſt overthrow the ſtrength of nature. In great cold is the matter tough and thick, and altogether unapt for Phyſick to work upon.

It is alſo forbidden in weak perſons, whether their weakneſſe proceed from nature or ſome other accidental cauſe, to purge ſtrongly, although gentle purgations for their eaſe in ſome ſort be allowed.

Hot and dry natures muſt forbear purgings, for all purging medicines for the moſt part are hot and dry, and by that meanes do they augment heat and drought, and hurt the body.

Very nice and dainty perſons ſhall not take any ſtrong purgation, for in them are the humours eaſily moved.

In like ſort might fat bodies, which commonly are but weak, by ſtrong purgations incur the danger of ſtifling.

Young Children and old men ſhall ſhun purgations: and thoſe alſo that labour much, and carry great burdens; for they are alwaies weary, which is contrary to all purgations.

What is to be obſerved in and after the taking of a purgation. Sect. 3.

In, and after purging.

AFter the taking of a purge, is a moderate motion up and down, and ſtirring of the armes commodious, that the matter fall and remain not all upon a heap in the body. But if thou fear that thou ſhalt caſt up the purgation, thou ſhalt be at reſt and quiet till thy ſtomach be ſtayed.

If the purgation that thou haſt taken be gentle, and a little potion or drink, thou ſhalt forbear to ſleep after it; but upon hard or ſolid medicines, as pils, tabulats, and ſuch like, is ſleep and reſt granted, that by the inward and natural heat the ſubſtance of the pils might the ſooner be diſſolved and diſperſed.

The purgation being taken, it is not amiſſe to uſe ſome ſowre thing after it, as a Pomegranate, unripe Grapes, Oranges, &c. for that ſtrengthneth the ſtomach, that it draweth no ill humour to it, and it ſtayeth all the vomiting. It is alſo good after the taking of any purgation to drink a draught of Whay or warm Beer; it helpeth the operation of the medicine, and dulleth her ſharpneſſe. It is alſo good to keep the belly warm, leſt by force he draw away the medicine from the ſtomach. To this end is nothing more commodious then warm water to ſet thy feet in, for that warmeth all the body. The belly may alſo be covered with a little bag, and ſome bran in it.

When the medicine beginneth to purge, it is not much amiſſe to move the body ſomewhat; for by that motion deſcendeth it downwards, and all the harm or badneſſe which the medicine hath with it, is thereby taken away: the motion helpeth alſo to expel the humours.

Whileſt the medicine doth yet purge, thou ſhalt neither eat nor drink, leſt it hinder the operation thereof. Notwithſtanding if the patient cannot forbear ſo long, let him uſe the broth of a hen, or ſome ſuch like thing, or elſe the ſirupe of Violets, to delay the heat of the ſtomach, and to preſerve him from an ague: For a great quantity of choler being drawn into the ſtomach by reaſon of hunger, might eaſily cauſe ſuch an accident as might be very hurtful for the diſeaſed. Secondly, if a great hunger ſhould overtake him, he may boldly take a piece of a toaſt and dip it in good Wine, or any ſuch like liquor, but not ſo much in quantity, that the medicine might be hindered of her operation.

Sleep, after the operation of the purge, is permitted: for as the purge doth weaken and diſtemper the body, ſo doth reſt and ſleep ſtrengthen it again.

After thy ſleep thou ſhalt make but a ſmall and eaſie meal: for conſidering that the natural powers and vertues of the body be ſomewhat weakned, they might by too much and too haſty eating be quite overthrown: ſo that this is a general rule; The more the medicine hath purged, the leſſe ought to be eaten after it.

The next day after purging, is good to bathe in warm water, if at the leaſt the feeble eſtate of the patient do not diſſwade from it: for thereby are the relikes that are left after purging moiſtened and digeſted, and it ſupplyeth alſo the dry body.

On the third day ſhall a vein be opened, by the which the vapours (of the humours that were moved and expelled) are taken away, which otherwiſe would be no ſmall hurt unto the body. This ſhall ſuffice as concerning the rules and ordinances that ought to be obſerved in purging.

Open no vein except thou have a Pluriſie, or other urgent occaſion; for blood is the life, and is the onely ſtrengthener of nature, and qualifier of evil humours in the body.

An addition for the better and more expedite understanding of this Chapter

Purging is an evacuation of humours that abound and molest one: wherein is to be noted

- *Who*
  - *Are to be purged, to wit, they that be*
    - *Full of corrupted humours*
      - *Not crude.*
      - *First concocted.*
    - *Strong.*
    - *Used unto it.*
  - *Not; to wit, they that be*
    - *In health, without any bad humours, weak, women with child, lean, not accustomed, of a dry complexion, old, fat, troubled with the bloudy flixe, or any lask, convulsed, empty of body, subject to swooning, women that have their flowers, children, labourers, &c.*
- *How*
  - *The brain by the*
    - *Eyes.*
    - *Nose.*
    - *Palate.*
  - *Lungs* — *by coughing.*
  - *Arteries of respiration* — *by coughing.*
  - *Stomach* — *by vomite.*
  - *Convexe part of the liver* — *by vomite.*
  - *Humours ascending upwards* — *by vomite.*
  - *Concave part of the liver* — *by stoole.*
  - *Humours descending* — *by stoole.*
  - *Kidneyes* — *by stoole and by vomit.*
  - *Womb* — *by urine and by vomit.*
- *How much*
  - *Age.*
  - *Strength.*
  - *Complexion.*
  - *The disease.*
  - *Time.*
  - *Custome.*
  - *Place of*
    - *habitation.*
    - *infection.*
- *When*
  - *Not*
    - *In the beginning*
    - *In the state or viger* — *of a disease.*
  - *In the declination* — *of a disease.*
  - *The humours being concocted.*
- *With what in*
  - *Cholerick*
  - *Flegmatick*
  - *Melancholick*

  — *persons* — *With medicines that purge.*
    - *Choler.*
    - *Flegme.*
    - *Melancholick.*

The eight Chapter. Sect. 1.

Of Phlebotomy in general.

Phlebotomy.

THe health of man is no leſſe maintained, and being in decay reſtored by right uſe of Phlebotomy, then by purging; and therefore ought it not at this preſent time to be paſſed over in ſilence. As concerning every particular diſeaſe and cauſes of it, ſhall hereafter particularly be mention made. Firſt, one that is in good health, needeth neither boxing nor cupping, nor the letting of blood. Alſo the Phlebotomy is fruitleſſe to ſuch as have ſo ſtrong a nature, that (being overladen) is able to expel all ſuperfluities through natural paſſages, as by bleeding at the noſe, by the piles or hemorrhoides, by the flowers in women, and ſuch like: to ſuch is nothing elſe to be done, but to ayd nature in opening of thoſe paſſages that ſhe hath choſen to eaſe her ſelf by. But now might ſome man ask this queſtion; Why, or for what cauſe is Phlebotomy uſed? Whereunto may thus be anſwered: When the above-named natural evacuations have not their courſe, then are there four reaſons why this letting of blood might be uſed. Firſt, when blood aboundeth, as commonly in thoſe that have a hot liver, full veins, a high colour and browniſh, and are not too fat and corpulent; alſo in thoſe that eat and drink abundantly, live at eaſe, and not uſe meats that engender much blood; which when nature cannot altogether digeſt, doth ſmother, rot and corrupt in the veins; from which dangerous and deadly diſeaſes do enſue. Wherefore if phlebotomy be in due ſeaſon adhibited, it hath theſe commodities with it. Firſt, that the whole body, or the part affected, may more ſurely by this means then by adminiſtration of inward Phyſick be eaſed. For in the letting of blood, being ruled by art, thou mayeſt draw as little as thou wilt, and as much as ſeemeth needful; which in purging can in no wiſe be done: for that which is taken into the body, that remaineth there, whether it be too much or too little, whether it do good or evil. Furthermore, phlebotomy doth ſtrengthen the brain, comfort the ſight, warmeth the cold marrow in the bones, freeth the inward parts of many infirmities, ſtayeth vomiting, helpeth alſo oftentimes the flix or lax, cleareth the ſenſes, reſtoreth ſleep, reviveth the ſpirits, becauſe melancholy blood is by it diminiſhed, cureth deafeneſs, reduceth the loſt voice, augmenteth the powers and vertues of all the body, by reaſon that it is by this means rid of ſuperfluities. In the ſame ſort alſo is anger delayed by it, becauſe that choler or gall is by Phlebotomy alſo diminiſhed. The abundance of blood is known no leſs by the thickneſs and troubled conſiſtence of urine, then by the ſigns before mentioned.

Secondly, although the blood be not inflamed, but onely ſuperabounding, yet doth it cauſe grievous agues and other perillous diſeaſes; wherefore, whenſoever we finde an inflammation and an abundance of blood, preſently we open a vein. Alſo if any one every morning about the dawning of the day doth uſe commonly to ſweat, it is a ſign of a ſuperfluity in the veins.

Thirdly, where bad and cold blood is, there muſt a purgation precede Phlebotomy; otherwiſe the good blood will be drawn forth, and the thick, tough and cold blood remain in the veins.

Laſtly, it is profitable at ſome times to be let blood, not for any of the aforeſaid cauſes, but only that the blood might be led or drawn from the one vein into the other. For example, If a woman do over-paſſe the time wherein ſhe ſhould have her flowers, then do we open the vein *Saphena* in the foot, thereby intending to draw the blood downwards. Others comprehend all theſe particulars in theſe two points; namely. ſuch ought to be phlebotomized that abound in blood, and for that cauſe are very ſubject unto ſickneſſe. Secondly, that are full of bad humours, or that do abound in a corrupted maſs of blood, and are diſeaſed: of all which points, and how every vein ſhall be opened, we will more at large ſpeak hereafter, where we ſhall treat of every ſickneſſe in particular.

Of the cauſes that prohibite or forbid Phlebotomy. Sect. 2.

Cauſes that hinder phlebotomy.

WE have before ſhewed what perſons ought to be phlebotomized: alſo what profite this letting of blood cauſeth. Now we will declare what perſons muſt forbear it, and what might hinder it. Firſt, *Galen*, commandeth that no body, before the fourteenth year of his age ſhould be let blood; but his ſucceſſors the latter Phyſitians, will that no man ſhould have a vein opened before the ſeventeenth year: alſo thoſe that are above threeſcore and ten years old ſhould in no caſe meddle with it; adding that youth being hot and moiſt, doth conſume much, and therefore needeth much blood for the ſuſtenance of life. In like ſort alſo have old men ſmall ſtore of good blood, but rather great ſtore of bad humours; where the letting of blood, might take away the beſt blood and leave the worſt behind: Beſide this, they are weak, and their ſtrength doth daily decay, but thoſe that are of a middle age from thirty to fifty, may moſt ſafely uſe Phlebotomy: for they neither incline to the one, nor to the other.

To thoſe that are cold of complexion is phlebotomy forbidden, as alſo to ſuch as dwel in cold countries: for their blood lieth deep in their bodies, is thick and unapt to be educed. Alſo where there is a great pain ſhall it be omitted, except it were in a hot ague; and there ſhall ſo much be drawn that the patient do ſwoon, to the intent the whole body thereby might be cooled, and the heat taken away.

Alſo it is not good preſently after a bath to be let blood, nor after the uſe of Venery, nor after any long laſting ſickneſſe, unleſſe the patient do abound in unclean blood: neither muſt any one that hath overladen his ſtomach with meat or drink, and as yet is undigeſted uſe phlebotomy. They that are conſtrained to much vomiting of choler in the ſtomack, muſt alſo forbear it, otherwiſe it will greatly weaken them.

Laſtly, no man ſhall after much bleeding at the noſe, or much bleeding of the hemorrhoides or piles, or after great ſtore of the flowers in women, be phlebotomized; for it will caſt him down and weaken him, becauſe the blood is the treaſure of life.

At what time and in what ſign a vein ought to be opened. Sect. 3.

When phlebotomy ought to be uſed.

FOr the preſervation of health, it is beſt to let blood in April or in May, becauſe at that time man doth moſt abound in blood, and it ſhall be done on the right ſide, either in the hand, arm, or foot: for in theſe moneths and in Summer alſo increaſeth choler, which proceedeth from the liver and gall, that both lye on the right ſide.

In Harveſt groweth melancholy blood, and then muſt the vein of the ſpleen be opened on the left ſide, and in winter alſo.

In like ſort it is ordained to be let blood for diſeaſes of the heart in the Spring, of the liver in Summer, of the feet in Harveſt, and of the head in Winter. And to the end it might more clearly appear at what ſpecial times Phlebotomy may be uſed, it ſhall now be ſhewed from moneth to moneth, which times are moſt convenient, and which are not.

January. In January ſhalt thou by no means be let blood, except neceſſity conſtrain thee, and that in diſeaſes of the head.

February. In February, if neceſſity require, mayeſt thou uſe it.

March. In March it is altogether forbidden.

April. In April it is alwaies convenient to open a vein, but not the Median.

May. In May it is very good and convenient, but not in legs nor feet.

June. In June (if need require) thou mayeſt ſometimes Phlebotomize.

July. In July it is hurtful, by reaſon of the heat.

Auguſt. In Auguſt likewiſe, unleſſe it be towards the latter end of the moneth.

September. In September it is as convenient as it was in April or May.

October. In October and November mayeſt thou alſo phlebotomize.

November. *December.* In December is phlebotomy prohibited, partly by reaſon of the extreme cold, partly alſo becauſe at ſuch time there is ſmall ſtore of blood in the body of man.

There is a great abuſe among the common people commited, to look for the ſign in the Almanack, and ſo where the Moon reſteth. They make alſo great difference between the height and lowneſſe, dryth and moiſtneſſe of the ſigns, alſo whether the Moon be new or full, increaſing, or decreaſing, and divers things more, which of ſome very

ſuperſtitiouſly

superstitiously are observed. Furthermore, if the Moon be in *Aries*, then it is forbidden to let blood in the head vein and under the tongue. And if the Moon be in *Taurus*, it is thought unmeet to open any veins in the neck, or to box or cup about the neck and shoulders. When the Moon is in *Gemini*, which rule the arms, and is supposed to be a hot and moist sign, the places governed are not to be touched. *Cancer* is hot and moist, where if the Moon be, neither the hand nor the left arm ought to be touched. Because, *Leo* is hot and dry, no phlebotomy is permitted concerning the heart. *Virgo* is thought to be a very bad sign, and to be cold and dry, and to rule the guts: at which time ought neither phlebotomy nor any purgation to be used, but all kind of Physick to be abandoned.

But I take it to be a great deal more meet that every Physitian examine well the estate and manner of the diseased patient, and to judge wisely thereof: and first to feel the pulses, and seek out the infallible signs of the infirmity, before he run up to heaven to see the celestial signs: for in sharp and very hot diseases there is no leisure to expect a good sign celestial, but immediatly to open a vein, and that so often reiterated as need shall require. But in such like infirmities must the counsel of an expert Physitian be alwayes used: for if Phlebotomy in the like extremities be not in time adhibited, life it self might oftentimes be indangered.

An admonition to those that let others blood. Sect. 4.

ALL those that let others blood, must take great heed they enter not too deep with their launcet, for fear of pricking an artery or sinew, because they are placed very near underneath, and about the veins. And if a sinew be wounded or hurt, great danger is like to ensue, as *spasmus*, great tumours and swellings, or other more grievous accidents, and at the last a terrible and hard death, or at the least a resolution or lamenesse of the whole member so grieved; for a wounded sinew is counted incurable, as at another time and place at large shall be shewed. Also if an Artery be touched, then either gusheth forth that excellent blood of the heart, in which the soul of man resteth; or else *Sinovia* which very hardly will be stinted, because rest and quietness in all consolidations and healings are required, where indeed all arteries are in continual motion. But to stay the running of *Sinovia*, thou shalt have very good and expert remedies in the fifth part of this book. Notwithstanding it is sometime permitted to open an artery, but onely when the greatest need requireth that may be, because (as is already said) it can by no means be done without great danger. But because there is no such peril in the opening of some veines as is in others, let this instruction that followeth be diligently observed.

Head vein safe

The Cephalical or head vein is without danger, for that there is neither artery nor sinew near it.

Median somewhat dangerous.

The Median is somewhat perillous, for there lieth a sinew just under it, which is to be regarded.

Liver vein dangerous.

Basilica or liver vein is not without danger, for under it is placed both an artery and a sinew.

The spleen vein.

The Spleen vein hath no other danger, but that it is small and hard to be pricked: and therefore shall the hand first be layd in warm water. But whatsoever is more to be said of these and the like other veins, shall immediately hereafter be declared.

Incision great or small.

In this point all Physitians do agree, that wheresoever is great store and very thick and grosse blood, there must the incision be made the larger, that the vapors and bad blood might the better issue forth: for if it be not large enough, then cometh forth the thin and subtile blood, and that which is grosse and bad remaineth behind. But if the patients be very weak, then of necessity must the issue be made the lesse, that their little strength be not overthrown, and their vital spirits let out.

What is to be done before, in, and after the letting of blood. Sect. 5.

WHensoever thou doest purpose to be let blood, use some four daies before meates that are subtile, light and easie of digesture, especially if thy blood be grosse, thick and heavy, that thereby it be made thinner, more fluid and subtile, and so much the easier issue forth: neither is it amiss to bathe thy self two or three daies before, but not on the day appointed for letting of blood. It is also good in the precedent daies to use the sirrups of vinegar. Note

Note alſo, that thou be not phlebotomized preſently after awaking out of thy ſleep, but rather two or three hours after it, and when thou haſt walked before. All the learned Phyſicians alſo do counſel (although it be againſt the common cuſtome) not to open any vein, the Patient being faſting, or not having eaten a new laid egg, and drunk a good draught of wine upon it; then to be let blood, and three hours after to break his faſt again: the cauſe whereof is, that when the ſtomach hath taken a little food, nature is moſt ſtrong.

The member likewiſe which is to be phlebotomized, ought firſt to be ſomewhat chafed and rubbed with warm clothes, that the humors thereby might be drawn thither. It is alſo not amiſs to bind the member with a band: for that in like ſort draweth the humors into the veins.

It befalleth oft in phlebotomy, that the blood by no means can be ſtanched or ſtopped: for the which thou ſhalt finde in the fifth book divers approved remedies, but for the ſame is the powder of calcined or burned Vitriol very highly commended, being caſt upon it.

If the Patient chance to faint in the letting of blood, let him drink a cup of good wine, for that reviveth the vital ſpirits, ſtrengtheneth the heart, and refreſheth the blood. We alſo for the ſame uſe thoſe things that do comfort the heart, which thou ſhalt find in the ſecond book.

If the opened vein ſhould ſwell and puffe up, then boyl Rue in the Oyl of Olives, and apply it to the vein. This alſo is very good to be uſed after cupping, if the place ſhould begin to rancle.

After the letting of blood the Patient ſhall forbear ſleep at the leaſt ſix hours, and not eat in the time above ſpecified, that the humors now ſtirred and troubled in the body might be ſettled again in the mean while. Afterwards let him uſe light meats, abſtain from milk or any thing that is made thereof, and then at the laſt commit himſelf to ſleep. Laſtly, he is not to uſe any thing either inwardly or outwardly, but that might warm and comfort the body, and to follow that moſt learned man *Ioachimus Camerarius*, who excellently and briefly obſerved theſe rules after the letting of blood.

Prima cœna die ſit miſſo ſanguine parca:
Lux abeat lætis antica ſecunda modis.
Tertia ſed placide debetur tota quieti:
Quarta & quinta ſibi mollius eſſe volunt.
Balnea ſexta petit: octox ſeptima colligit auras,
Fertq; vagos circum rura nemuſq; pedes.
Octava amplexus dilectæ conjugis: & qua
Antè fuit, vitam reſtituiſſe ſolet: That is,

The firſt day not much meat be ſpent;
The ſecond day to mirth be bent:
The third day uſe thy reſt and eaſe;
The fourth and fift eat what thou pleaſe;
The ſixt day bathe in any caſe;
The ſeventh walk from place to place:
The eight mayeſt thou lye with thy wife,
And after live thy wonted life.

What veins ought in every diſeaſe to be opened. Sect. 6.

SEeing that the body of man is every where full of veins, here ſhal now be ſhewed which of them ought to be opened for the eaſe of any one member, or for cure and help of any diſeaſe whatſoever. Firſt, therefore ſhall be noted, that phlebotomy may be uſed in divers parts of the body, partly as the diſeaſe requireth, partly alſo according as the veins are aparent. Amongſt others, there are ſix from the armpit downward to the elbow, with thoſe on the hand, that may be opened. The firſt is called *Cephalica*, the head vein. The ſecond *Baſilica*, in Latin *Hepatica*, the liver vein. The third *Mediana, Cordiaca, Corpulis, Nigra, Matrix* and *Communis*, that is, the median, heart, corpulent, black, mother and common vein. The fourth, *Axillaris*, the vein of the armpit, becauſe in the armpit it moſt plainly appeareth. The fift on the beginning of the hand, which now is no longer phlebotomized. The ſixt is alſo on the outſide of the hand, between the little and fourth finger, which of the Phyſicians is called *Scelica, Splenitica, Salvatella*, that is, the ſpleen vein:

The

The lower parts of the body (as the legs and feet) have three ſpecial veins: the one *Iſchiadica*, the hip vein: the other is *Saphoa* or *Saphena*, the womb vein: the third *Poplitis*, the knee vein, which is the juſt middle vein. They are the ſpecial veins that commonly are opened; of which and others more, we will hereafter ſpeak at large.

Of the head vein Cephalica. Sect. 7.

THis vein is alſo called *Humeralis*, the ſhoulder vein, becauſe it eaſeth all the veins that are above and beneath the neck, whenſoever it is opened. This vein being opened, it doth much help the head-ach called *Hemicrania*, madneſſe, and ſuch like, that proceed of an extraordinary heat. It beginneth to appear about the armpits, and paſſeth along by the left arm.

To the end then that the Reader might more cleerly underſtand and know, in what infirmities this vein may conveniently be opened, I will briefly rehearſe out of other places of this our book, and ſhew when it is uſually opened. As for example; in head-aches with agues, heat and fluxes: in tumors of the arm-pits; in the pains, inflammations and apoſtumations, with other impediments of the eyes; in frenzies or madneſſe, in the night-mare or hag; in accidents of the mouth and throat; in all rheumes, in hot agues with an infection of the lungs. Here mayeſt thou perceive and ſee manifeſtly, that this may juſtly be called the head-vein.

Of the liver vein Baſilica. Sect. 8.

AMongſt all others is this liver vein *Baſilica* the principalleſt, whoſe name is ſufficiently known both in Greek and Engliſh. This being opened, unburdeneth all the parts below the neck, as breaſt, liver, &c. of their ſuperfluous blood; ſo that if any of theſe be any kind of way diſeaſed, it may by that means be recovered again; it taketh her beginning of the armpit vein or *Axillaris*, and goeth down to the elbow. The diſeaſes in the which it is uſually phlebotomized, are theſe. In tumors of the eyes, in unmeaſurable bleeding at the noſe, in wheeſing or ringing of the ears, in extreme melancholy, in rheumes with heat and agues, and in all infirmities of the lungs, in broken veins or varices of the breaſt, in the panting or beating of the heart, in great faintneſſe, in ruptures, in bleeding of the hemorrhoides, in barrenneſſe of women that proceedeth of heat, in an obdurated and hardned liver, in melancholy, in hot ſwellings of the ſtomack, in obſtructions of the urine, in impoſtumes of the womb, in the pain of the hips, in the gout, in wrenchings of the joynts in broken veins, in great inflammations, in the Pox, and in the meaſles.

Of the Median or middle vein. Sect. 9.

THis is for the moſt part of all our Phyſitians and Chirurgians called by the Latine name *Mediana*; becauſe it lyeth between the aboveſaid veins, and taketh his beginning alſo from them both. This being opened in all infirmities doth moſt good, for that it eaſeth both the upper and lower parts of the body: for which cauſe it is called *Univerſalis*, the common vein, and not as ſome ſuppoſe, becauſe it cometh from the heart. Here is to be obſerved, that if the head vein or *Cephalica* ſhould be opened, and it no where appeareth; in ſtead of it the Median ſhall rather be uſed then the head vein: likewiſe if the Liver vein be not ſeen, open rather the Median then the head vein. As for example, this vein is conveniently opened in ſwoln eyes, bleeding at the noſe, outragious melancholy, hot rheumes, panting of the heart, ruptures, to procures children in women of hot complexions, bleeding of the hemorrhoides or piles, and to procure the flowers in women, &c, by which every skilful man may guide himſelf.

Of the armpit vein Axillaris. Sect. 10.

THe fourth vein is called (as is aforeſaid) *Axillaris*; it is a branch of the great liver vein, called *Vena cava*, the hollow vein, which cometh from thence into the arms, and ſheweth

ſheweth it ſelf in the bending of the arm. It hath great correſpondence with the head vein, as is already ſufficiently ſhewed. After the ſame ſort it is with the fift, which is on the end of the arm: ſo that all that hath been ſaid before, and which ſhall be ſaid hereafter of the Spleen vein, the very ſame may be ſaid of theſe two.

Of the Spleen vein or *Salvatella.* Sect. 11.

THe firſt principal vein lyeth between the little and fourth fingers, on the outſide of both hands. It is oftentimes opened, becauſe it cleanſeth the Spleen, liver and breſt, cleereth the voyce, preſerveth the internal parts, but eſpecially the ſtomack and mouth from all accidents whatſoever, eaſeth the pain of the hearts, and taketh away all the ſuperfluous blood of the before named inward parts. The later Phyſitians make this diſtinction; they call this vein on the left hand *Splenetica*, the ſpleen vein; and on the right hand *Salvatella*; for this cauſe have divers opened that on the left ſide, letting it bleed till of it ſelf it ſtanched, ſuppoſing thereby to heal all infirmities of the ſpleen. It is alſo opened in blood ſpittings, in obſtructions of the ſpleen, and in the French pox: That on the right hand in infirmities of the liver, in ſhaking palſies, in contractures of the mouth, in all manner of ſtitches, in the gout, in the pockes, and in fine, almoſt in all other diſeaſes.

Of the hip vein. Sect. 12.

AFter the deſcription of the veines that are in the arms and hands, it followeth now to treat of the three principal veines apparent in the legs and feet. The firſt and uppermoſt of them is called in Greek *Iſchiadica*, and in Engliſh the hip vein. It is commonly opened upon the left foot, thereby to draw the blood downwards, and to eaſe all the maladies of the ſame ſide, of the kidnyes, of the woombe, and ſuch like: alſo to make the piles bleed, to help the pain of the hip, to ceaſe the raging of the gout, if it be opened hard by the little toe, although it ſpecially appear upon the ankle on the outſide of the leg.

Of the womb vein or Saphena. Sect. 13.

THis commeth from the great liver or hollow vein, and deſcendeth from the foreſide of the leg down to the inward ankle, where it very manifeſtly appeareth: for the which cauſe it is alſo called *Manifeſta*, the apparent or manifeſt vein, otherwiſe *Saphena*, and not *Saphena*. This is eſpecially opened to draw the blood downwards from the privy parts of man, from the womb in women, in ſore eyes, in madneſſe, in the the palſie, in the night-mare, falling evil, blood ſpittings, womens flowers, and barrenneſſe of them, in the ſuffocation of the matrix, or the riſing up of the womb or the mother, in the gout, and in the plague.

Of the ham or knee vein. Sect. 14.

THis alſo is a median or middle vein, which deſcendeth downwards through the calf of the leg into the foot, as the median of the arm doth into the hand: and it is more meet to be opened to the aforeſaid infirmities, than either the hip or womb vein, becauſe it is nearer adjacent to the womb with her annexed parts then either of them, and therefore draweth with more force.

Of the vein in the forehead. Sect. 15.

IN the middeſt of the forehead is alſo a very apparent vein, which uſually was opened in all pains of the hinder part of the head and neck, although it have continued very long; alſo in all pains of the eyes, but firſt of all ought the head vein to be opened. It is alſo uſed in the frenzie, night-mare, and palſie.

Of the veines of the eyes. Sect. 16.

THese little veines appear in the corners of the eyes, hard by the Nose upwards toward the forehead. They are commonly opened in inflammations of the eyes: but first of all open the vein of the head.

Of the vein in the Temples of the head. Sect. 17.

IN the temples of the head are veines, which some men do counsel to be opened in the pain of the eyes, if the same proceed of hot humors or windinesse, as is before said. But it is not without great danger, because there is an artery hard by it, which easily may be felt. The same may be said of the veins behind the ears, which also are very commodiously opened in great pains of the head, as *Hemicrania*, in a continual pain and swimming in the head. But *Avicenna* supposeth, that such as use ot thereby are made barren or unfruitful.

Of the vain upon the Nose. Sect. 18.

IN like manner also is there a vein upon the nose close by the forehead, which may be opened: but first must a cowel or napkin be tied hard about the neck and throat, that the vein may swell or puffe up, and be the better seen.

Of the veines in the lips. Sect. 19.

THese are opened in all putrifactions and rottings of the gums, and many other infections of the mouth, but not before the head vein.

Of the veines of the Almonds or Kernels in the throat. Sect. 20.

THere be four of these veines apparent, the which being opened, help very greatly in all rheumes and defluxions, as also in tooth ach, but it is not good to open them but when the rheume beginneth to fall.

Of the veines under the tongue. Sect. 21.

UNder the tongue are also some veines, which in dangerous diseases may well be opened, and especially in the squinancy, and in all other flegmatical tumors of the throat, in the night mare, and all maladies of the tongue.

Of the veines of the neck. Sect. 22.

TO conclude, there be certain veines in the neck, called of the Arabians *Guingedet*, which usually were opened in the beginning of the leprie, in the pain of the throat called *Asgrina*, in thornes and oppression of the breath, impostumes of the lungs, in affections of the spleen and sides. Thus ending this Chapter of the opening of all kind of veines, we will treat of boxing or cupping, which also is greatly commended in Physick.

The ninth Chapter.

Of Cupping.

THis is the second means, whereby the abundance of blood in mans body is diminished. *Galen* did so highly esteem of it, that he termeth it a precious help, and commendeth it in many diseases, but especially where flegme and windinesse doth exceed. He ascribeth unto it the attraction of humors, easing of pain, diminishing of flegme, dissipation of windinesse, to provoke hunger, to withdraw, and to stay rheumes, and to stanch bleeding. He adviseth also to use it in great pain of the belly proceeding of wind, as the most true and present remedy, namely, to fasten a great box or cup on the place pained, and often to renew

it:

it: for thereby is the wind marvellously drawn forth and dissipated: and not onely for this, but for the hardnesse and other accidents of the Spleen, but without picking or opening of the skin. But note that this boxing or cupping ought not to be used, except the patient have first of all throughly been purged; otherwise it doth draw the superfluous humidity, which lyeth deep underneath, outward to the skin. These boxes also are not to be set just upon the place affected, but hard by it thereabout, that by them the matter might be dissipated and withdrawn: As for example, if a woman had too many of her flowers continuing the cups or boxes shall be set upon her brests. In too much bleeding at the nose, upon the navel, and so in more places contrary still to the course of the blood, or else upon the veines whence the cause proceedeth; likewise to provoke or move the terms in women, the cups shall be fixed upon the thighes: in sore eyes, behind the neck, as in many places in this book shall be shewed. Thus much for the cupping without opening the skin.

But if thou wilt open the skin also, as commonly is used in divers parts of the body, and especially in any hard tumor or *Schyrrhus*, or other swellings with a great distinction and pain. In like manner when thou wilt draw the peccant matter from the infected place to another, as to remove head-ach, the cups are fixed on the caves of the legs with opening of the skin: which also is done if the terms or flowers in women be stayed, and in such like other accidents, as hereafter in this book at large shall appear.

The tenth Chapter.

Of the diminishing of the blood by Horseleaches.

THe third means whereby the blood is drawn forth of the body, is that blood-sucking water worm, which the ancient Physitians by their experience for the help of man have found out. These Horseleaches are of divers and sundry colours, some black, some red, some greenish, and of many other colours. They are all of them somewhat venemous, but especially those that be party coloured with green stripes, big, and live in stinking pools, which altogether are to be avoided. Others that appear in May, and most of all about noon, abide in other pools and waters, where also they are taken: How to prepare them for to use, hath been shewed in the sixt Chapter.

Before they be fastened, the place must first be well chafed, with water moistened, and well scratched with the nails; then take they the better hold. When they are fast, annoint the place with warm oyl that it cool not; and if they be fixed to either hands or feet, then put that part into luke-warm water, whereon they be fastened: but is they draw or suck not strong enough, clip off a little peece of their tails, that the blood may passe thorow them; for they will not leave sucking for all that, unlesse a little salt or a few ashes be cast upon their heads, or that they be stricken on the head with a little wand or rod, or that they be burnt with a wax candle. After they be fallen off, thou shalt fasten a box or cup upon the same place to draw out the remaining blood and venome, or else moisten it with a warm spunge: add if it continue bleeding, cast some meal on it, and lay sheepes wool dipped in oyl upon that, or some other thing, as in the first part of this book is taught how to stanch blood.

Here is also to be observed, that these horseleaches do not draw the blood out of the inward parts of the body, but onely that which lyeth in the flesh thereabout, so that they can onely be used in place of boxes, and especially in black melancholy blood, which by nature they onely suck forth. And this is all the difference between the use of them and of cups.

In the application or fastening of Horseleaches, they must be put into a quill, reed or cane, that they take hold of no other place but where they should.

It is furthermore well known, that great store of superfluous humidities are expelled by baths, sweat, rubbing, vomiting, and such like: but because these things must be altered, augmented and diminished according to the estate of the person, great heed ought to be given, what here and there in this book is spoken of them.

The eleventh Chapter.

Of the ſix things not natural, called of the Phyſitians

Res non naturales.

THe cauſe why we make no mention of theſe ſix things, is, for that by them a general rule of the life is to be obſerved; but moſt of all in the time of ſickneſſe, when every one (according as neceſſity requireth) is taught what order is to be kept in every of them.

The firſt is air, to wit, what air ought to be elected, what to be refuſed, and if neither of theſe may be, by what means to correct it.

The ſecond is moving or motion, which is not a little to be regarded, becauſe ſome diſeaſes require much moving, others little, and ſome none at all.

The third is ſleep and watching, which is of no leſſe account then motion.

The fourth is fulneſſe and emptineſſe, which teacheth what order is to he followed in meat and drink, as alſo in hunger and abſtinence: the meanes alſo to reſtore that which either is wanting in the one or in the other.

The fift, the accidents or motions of the mind, as anger, fear, gladneſſe, ſorrow, love, hatred, &c. which oftentimes cauſe great change and alteration both in ſickneſſe and in health.

The ſixt is meat and drink; which is meet for every diſeaſe, which unmeet. Of the which in every particular diſeaſe, ſeveral inſtructions ſhall be given: this general rule preſuppoſed, that no man diſeaſed ſhall overlade his ſtomack with meat or drink, except it were to vomit it up again. It is alſo better to eate thrice a day, and a little at once, then but twice abundantly.

If of all theſe things thou wilt have a more juſt explication, look in the ſecond part of the wheeſing and ſtopping of the breath, by the which thou mayeſt alſo rule thy ſelf in other infirmities.

Furthermore, whatſoever might be ſaid of the four complexions or humors of mans body, as blood, choler, flegme, and melancholy, with their in compaſſed mixtures called *Intemperies*, which are eight fold, and what elſe doth appertain unto them, ſhall ſufficiently as oportunity ſerveth hereafter be declared.

In the courſe of phyſical obſervation 3. things are to be obſerved; that is to ſay. Things natural, Things not natural, and Things againſt nature. ☞ *In Iſagoge Ioannis.*

There are 7. things natural, Elements, Complexions, Humors, Members, Vertues, Operations, and Spirits.

There are (by ſome) 4. things annexed to things Natural, Age, Colour Figure, and diverſity of ſexe or kind.

There are 6. things not natural; Aire, Meat and Drink, Sleep and Watching, Motion and reſt, Fulneſſe and Emptineſſe, and affections of the mind.

There are 3. things againſt nature; Sickneſſe, cauſe of Sickneſſe, and Accidents which follow ſickneſſe.

There are 4. Elements; fire, which is hot and dry: Aire, which is hot and moiſt, Earth which is cold and dry, Water which is cold and moiſt.

Complexion is a commixtion of two divers qualities of the four Elements in one body, as hot and moiſt, hot and dry; cold and moiſt, cold and dry.

The body hot and moist is called Sanguine, and is known by these signes.

Sanguine
- *Visage, white and ruddie.*
- *Hair, plenty and red.*
- *Veines and arteries large.*
- *Sleep, much.*
- *Carnositie.*
- *Dreams of bloody or pleasant things.*
- *Pulse, great and full.*
- *Digestion perfect.*
- *Angry, shortly.*
- *Siege, urine and sweat, much.*
- *Apt to bleeding.*
- *Urine, reddie and grosse.*

The body cold and moist, is called flegmatick, and is perceived by these signes.

Flegmatick
- *Colour, white and pale.*
- *Hair, much and plain.*
- *Veines, narrow.*
- *Fatnesse and soft.*
- *Sleep, superfluous.*
- *Dreames, of watery things.*
- *Slownesse in action.*
- *Cowardise.*
- *Dulnesse to learn.*
- *Digestion weak.*
- *Spettle much.*
- *Urine, grosse, white and pale.*
- *Pulse, lowe and little.*

The body hot and dry, is called cholerick, and is perceived by these signes.

Cholerick
- *Leannesse, Hair blackish and curled.*
- *Costivenesse.*
- *Colour red as fire, or Sallow.*
- *Little sleep.*
- *Dreams of fire, fighting, or anger.*
- *Wit quick.*
- *Apt to learn.*
- *Voyce sharp and shrill.*
- *Hardy, and fighting.*
- *Urine high coloured and clear.*
- *Pulse swift and strong.*

The body cold and dry, is called Melancholick, and is perceived by these signes.

Melancholick
- *Leannesse and hardnesse of skin.*
- *Hair plain and thin.*
- *Colour duskish, or white with leannesse.*
- *Sleep little.*
- *Dreames fearful.*
- *Stiffe in opinions.*
- *Digestion slow and ill.*
- *Fearful.*
- *Angry long.*
- *Seldome laughing.*
- *Urine, watery and thin.*
- *Pulse little.*

These

Theſe four humours, Blood, Flegme, Choler, and Melancholy, are not ſimply in any body, but are alwaies mixed in each body; and where blood abounds, that body is called Sanguine, and ſo of the reſt. Where flegme abounds, that body is flegmatick. Where choler abounds, that body is cholerick; and where Melancholy abounds, that body is melancholick. Some bodies by nature are neither ſimply ſanguine, nor ſimply flegmatick, nor ſimply cholerick, nor ſimply melancholick, but are mixed, partly ſanguine, partly flegmatick, partly cholerick, partly melancholick.

When theſe humours keep their natural proportion, then the body is in health; but when the natural temperature of theſe humours in the body, do either abound or want in quantity or quality, over or under their natural aſſignment, then the body is in ſickneſſe, more or leſſe, according to the malice of the humours abounding or corrupting.

Blood is the qualifier of humours in the body, the cauſe and treaſure of life, the nouriſher of the body, and the preſerver of Natural heat and moiſture: the loſſe of blood bringeth death ſuddenly, for as the Scripture ſaith, Gen.9.4. blood is the life; blood is hot and moiſt. And the property of blood is to nouriſh and ſtrengthen the whole body, and to make fleſh.

Theſe humours have their proper receptacles in which they are contained, the veines are the veſſels containing blood; the ſtomach or ventricle containing flegme; the blauze of gall contemning yellow choler; the milt or ſplene, the veſſel containing black choler or melancholy.

Blood is two-fold, to wit, natural, and unnatural.

The natural blood is hot and moiſt, of a red colour, of a good ſmell, and of a ſweet taſte.

The unnatural blood is, when blood is altered from his natural ſubſtance or quality. It is altered in quality, when it is diſtempered with much cold, or inflamed with much heat.

And this diſtemperature of the blood, in heat, or cold, is the cauſe of many diſeaſes in the body.

It is altered in ſubſtance, either when the blood is changed into evil humours, or when it is mixed with evil humours, or when the humours of flegme, choler, or melancholy, abound and corrupt it.

Flegme is natural, or unnatural.

Natural flegme is blood not well concocted; and in the due concoction it is apt to be made blood; And it is cold and moiſt. And the property of it is, partly to make the blood more thin, to be conveyed to nouriſh the flegmatick members; and partly to moiſten the Joynts and members of motion, leſt dryneſſe ſhould hinder motion, by reaſon of the heat which motion procures.

Unnatural flegme is that, which is mixed with other humours, or is altered in his qualities, and is of four ſorts.

Salt flegme, is more cold and dry then the reſt, and is mixed and corrrupted with the cholerick humour.

Sowre or ſharp flegme, is coldiſh and dry, infected with melancholy.

Viſcous or glaſſie flegme, is cauſed of great cold and congelation, either by reaſon of cold external, or elſe by want of natural heat, which is common to old men.

Sweet flegme, is hottiſh and moiſt, mixed with blood, and differs from natural flegme onely in this; to wit, that natural flegme is ſweetiſh, without mixture of blood; and this is mixed with blood: and natural flegme is cold and moiſt; and this is hottiſh and moiſt.

Choler is natural, and unnatural.

Natural choler is the ſpume or froth of blood, and is of a reddiſh colour and clear, and is hot and dry. It hath beginning in the liver, and is divided into two parts, one part goes with the blood, the other part goes into the blauze of the gall.

And the property of that which goes with the blood, is, to nouriſh thoſe members, which require a greater part of that humour, as the Lungs, and to be a help to make the blood more ſubtile in his paſſages, and more apt to penetrate.

And the property of that which goes into the blauze of the gall, is, either to cleanſe the whole body of ſuperfluity; or elſe to nouriſh that one member of gall. And alſo to cleanſe the Intrals of dung and viſcous flegme, and to provoke the inteſtines and muſcles of the arſe, to have neceſſary ſenſe, and to caſt out the excrement. And there-

fore the *Colica Passio* is caused of opilation, which is in that hole which descends from the gall, unto the Intestines.

Unnatural choler, is that which is mixed with other humours, or is altered in his qualities, and is of four sorts.

Citrine, or yellow choler, is not so hot as natural choler, and is mixed and corrupted with flegme,

Yolkie, like the yolk of eggs, which is mixed and corrupted with viscous flegme, and hath lesse heat then the former.

Green, like Leeks, which is caused of choler adust, not so much in the liver, as in the ventricle, filled with sharp flegme, and evil humours.

Green like the Canker of brasse, is very hot and dry, caused by mixture of sowr flegme, and choler adust, and is poysonous and deadly.

Melancholy or black choler, is natural or unnatural.

Natural Melancholy, is the dregs of good blood, and is cold and dry, and hath beginning in the Liver, and is divided into two parts; one part goes with the blood, the other part goes to the spleen.

And the property of that which goes with the blood, is to nourish the melancholy members, as the bones; and to thicken and fortifie the blood.

And the property of that which goes to the spleen, is either to help to cleanse the whole body of superfluities; or else to nourish the spleen. And also, to close and comfort the mouth of the stomach or ventricle, and to stir it up by his acrimony unto hunger and desire of meat.

As the natural red choler doth waken nature to use her expulsive quality to cast out the excrement downward: so the black choler doth waken nature in her desiring quality, to receive nourishment upward.

Unnatural Melancholy, is caused of adustion of cholerick mixture, and is hotter and lighter then the other, having in it a violent and killing nature.

Members are bodies which are generated of the first commixtion of humours, even as humours are bodies which are generated of the first commixtion of meats; and as meats are generated of the first commixtion of elements.

Of members some are simple, some are compound.

Simple members are such, whose parts in name, definition, and division are the same; and they are called similar parts: as part of the flesh is flesh, part of the bone is bone, part of the nerve is nerve, part of the fat is fat, and so of the rest.

Compound members are such, whose parts in name and division differ in respect of the whole: as the face and the hand; for part of the face is not the face, and part of the hand is not the hand, and so of the like.

1. The bone is a similar body and hard, created to be a supporter and upholder of the body in his motion.

2. The cartilage or gristle, is softer than the bone, yet harder then any other part of the body, created that by it there may be a more apt continuation of the bones with the softer parts of the body, that the soft parts should not be compounded with the hard parts, without a mean or medium, lest that the soft parts should be hurt and destroyed by the hard parts. In which behold and magnifie the excellent goodnesse and wisdome of God, in making a mean or mediator in the body, to qualifie the extremes for preservation and ease of the body.

3. The Nerve or sinew is a long body, round and solid, which hath beginning from the brains and pitch of the back, created to the end, that by it the members may have sense and motion; *nullus quidem motus fit, nisi per nervos & ejus villos.*

4. The Ligament is a body like the nerve, and hath his continuation and being between the extremes of the Joyntures of bones, and between other members, whereby they are more firmly knit and united together; and the Ligament hath of it self no sense, and therefore feeleth no pain by motion or rubbing, although it is rubbed and pressed by the bones in motion of the joynts.

5. The Arterie is a body round, sinewy, and hollow, which hath his beginning from the Concave of the heart, having motion to open and to shut it self; created to vent the heart, and to expel and carry away from it fumes and vapours, and to convey and distribute the vital spirits and pure blood to the members of the body.

6. The

6. The vein is a body round, ſinewy and hollow, like the artery which hath his begining from the liver, created to conveigh the blood to every member of the body, to nouriſh and ſtrengthen the ſame.

7. The pannicle or tunicle is a body compact of nervy threeds not to be perceived by the ſenſe, whoſe ſubſtance is very thin, and covereth the ſuperficies of other bodies, and keeps them in their proper form and figure, and by means of the nerves whereof the pannicle is ſo made, it gives ſence unto the body which it covers; and as ſome affirm the Lungs, the Liver, the Splene, the reines, in their own ſubſtance have no ſenſe, but by meanes of the panniele which covers their ſuperficies.

8. The fleſh is a ſoluble body, made of the digeſtion of pure blood created to fill the hollow parts of the body, that it may be the more beautiful.

In every of the members, there is a natural vertue, to draw, to retain to aſſimilate, and to unite nouriſhment unto it ſelf; and alſo to expel ſuperfluity and excrement.

Of members, ſome are principal, ſome are leſſe principal.

The principal members are the braines, heart, liver, and ſtones.

The leſſe principal members are the ſtomach, the reines, the bowels, and all the great ſinewes.

The principal members are thoſe members which have the principal and chief vertue in preſerving of the whole body, and are called preparing. As the heart hath the principal vertue in preſerving life. The brains have principal vertue of ſenſe and motions; the liver hath the principal vertue in nouriſhing; and the ſtones have the principal vertue of genetation.

Some members are official and ſerving unto theſe, and are called ſerving members, as the ſinewes, arteries, veins and veſſels of ſeed.

They are called official and ſerving members, becauſe they conveigh and carry unto every member, that preſerving vertue which the principal members have prepared.

The ſervice
- Of the ſinewes is to conveigh ſenſe and motion from the braines.
- Of the arteries, is to convey the vital ſpirits from the heart.
- Of the veines, is to convey the blood from the liver.
- Of the veſſels of ſeed, is to convey the ſeed to the ſtones; but I hold, that the veſſels of ſeed have both a preparing and conveying vertue unto the act of generation.

The preparer of nouriſhment for the ſtomach, is the mouth, the conveyer is the *Aeſophagus*, or wheeſand.

The preparer of nouriſhment for the liver is the ſtomach, the ventricle, and meſentery; the conveyer is the vein called *vena porta*.

The preparer of nouriſhment for the heart, is the liver, the conveyer is the great vein called *vena cava*.

The heart either prepareth or ſendeth nouriſhment unto the lungs or lights, which is conveyed by the Arterial vein, which proceeds from the right ventricle of the heart.

The preparer of nouriſhment for the brains is the heart, and all inferiour members, the conveyer is the *vena porta*, and *vena arterialis*, and their branches.

Vertue or power (in Phyſical obſervation) is that which gives unto nature, the faculty and beginning of operation. And this vertue is three-fold, that is to ſay, Animal, Natural, Vital.

And every one of theſe are ſeated in his principal member as in his proper ſeat: the Animal vertue hath his ſeat in the brain, the Natural vertue hath his ſeat in the liver, and the vital vertue hath his ſeat in the heart.

The Animal vertue doth prepare the members which are under his government, to receive the vertue of ſenſe, motion and operation.

The Natural vertue doth conſerve the liver and the veſſels of ſeed, and prepares the one to miniſter nouriſhment for the preſervation of the whole; and fits the other with the operation of generation for the preſervation of the ſpecies.

The Vital vertue doth conſerve the life of the whole, and is the chariot of ſenſe and motion, and adminiſters life unto the whole.

Operation is a diſpoſition of nature, which ariſes from the vertues or powers: from the natural power ariſes the operation of Appetite, Digeſtion, Retention, and Expulſion.

The Appetite is moved by heat and dryth.
The Digeſtion is made by heat and moiſture.
The Retention is effected by cold and dryth.
The Expulſion is moved by cold and moiſt.

Spirit is an aiery ſubſtance ſubtile, ſtirring the powers of the body to perform their operations; which is divided into Natural, Vital, Animal.

The Natural ſpirit taketh his beginning of the liver, and ſpreadeth into all the body, by the veins which have no pulſe.

The Vital ſpirit proceedeth from the heart, and is ſent into the whole body, by the arteries and pulſes.

The Animal ſpirit is ingendred in the brain, and is ſent into the whole body, by the ſinewes, and maketh ſenſe and motion.

The twelfth Chapter

An Explication of all the Weights and Meaſures which commonly are uſed in Phyſick.

THere be two ſorts of pounds; the common pound containeth ſixteen ounces, but the Phyſical pound hath but twelve ounces. It is abbreviated thus, lib. but to avoid all errours, we have ſet down the word pound; and where a Phyſical pound was meant, there are twelve ounces ſpecified. An ounce containeth eight drachmes, which every where is noted by this name ounce.

Half an ounce is four drachmes, which is noted by the phyſitians and Apothecaries with this mark, ℥.ß. which might breed error, and therefore doe we ſet the name of halfe an ounce.

Drachma is the eight part of an ounce, which we write thus, drachme or drach. leſt by the character ſome error might be committed, marked thus, ʒ.

Scrupulus is the third part of a drachme, and ſhall be written after this manner. ſcruple or ſcrup. marked thus, ℈.

Granum a grain, is the weight of a barley corne, whereof twenty do make one ſcruple: but becauſe that barley cornes are bigger in one country then in another, thou ſhalt inſtead of them uſe Pepper cornes, and ſo take twenty of them for a ſcruple: This ſhall be noted by the name grain, marked thus, *G.*

Manipulus is a handful of herbs, flowers or ſeeds, and this ſhall be marked thus with an M. and halfe an handful, which is called of the Apothecaries *Pugillus*, ſhall be noted thus with a *P.*

Meaſures of water, honey, and ſuch like liquors, do we eſteem every wine-pint at eighteen ounces.

Note alſo, that if thou happen to find any unknown name or word in this booke, either in Latine or Engliſh, that thou ſhalt find in the Table or Index at the end.

After all the inſtructions we will by Gods grace come to the principal, and beginning at the uppermoſt part of the body, that is the head, and deſending downward to the foot.

The moſt high Phyſitian God our moſt dear Father, through Jeſus Chriſt our onely Saviour, give us his bleſſing and grace to finiſh it.

The End of the Introduction.

The

THE
First Part of this Book containeth the HEAD, with all the parts thereof, to the very Neck, as Face, Hair, Beard, Scull, Brain, Noſe, Eares, Lips, Mouth, Tongue, Teeth, Speech, &c. with all ſuch accidents as are incident unto them, and their appropriate remedies.

The firſt Chapter.

Of Pain in the Head.

THere are many pains in the Head, by the Arabians commonly called *Soda*; which as they proceed of divers cauſes, ſo do they alſo differ in nature. They are delivered unto us either in particular, proper, principal or univerſal affections, under which all the other are comprehended, as *Cephalalgia*, *Cephalaa*, *Hemicrania*, and *Congelatio*.

Of giddineſſe of the head, falling evil, dead palſie, and ſuch like infirmities ſhall be ſpoken hereafter, where we treat of the brain; for that theſe and divers other diſeaſes are cauſed for the moſt part of a debility and weakneſſe of the brain.

The brain is the primarie part of the head, and is compaſſed with two membranes. The outmoſt is next unto the inſide of the Skull, and is thick and hard, and is called the Dura mater. The inmoſt involves the ſubſtances of the brain and is thin, and is called the Pia mater. And theſe parts may be diſtempered with heat or cold moiſture or dryneſſe; and they may be diſtempered with heat and moiſtneſſe, with heat and dryneſſe, or with cold and moiſtneſſe, and with cold and dryneſſe.

In curing the diſeaſes of the brain, rectifie the ventricle and parts below; that the humours aſcending hurt not the braines, as alſo hempſeeds, flaxſeeds, rockets, muſtard, Daucus, Onions, Juniper berries, Dates; theſe are to be eſchewed in all diſeaſes of the head, vine ſeeds, wormewood, milk, Acornes, black Olives, Crabs, Lentiles; alſo Myrrhe, Olibanum, Ivie berries, which hurt the joynts; alſo the fruit of Lentiſke, or maſtick trees ſaffron, horſeſtrange, Sowebread, Styrax, which diſturb the mind; alſo haſel nuts, Wallnuts, Cheſtnuts, Squinant, and violent exerciſe after meats; and ſudden ſleep after meats; alſo want of food, or an exceſſe coſtiveneſſe in the bowels fill the head with evill humours: or to ſlip with ſhoos on the feet.

His internal ſimple medicines in hot cauſes.

Leaves of Lettice, of Purſlain, of Plantaine, of garden nightſhade, flowers of Roſemary, of Violets, of Waterlillies, of white poppy ſeeds, of Lettice, of white Poppy, Melons, Cucumbers, Gourds, Citruls. Barley.

Woods of Sandals, and other cooling hearbs.

His outward ſimple medicines.

Leaves of houſe-leek, willow vines, penny wort, Myrtles, Gourds, Water-Lillies, the herb fleeting vpon the water called Ducks-meat, ſeeds of ſleabane, Lettice, Poppy, Roots of Sumach, Mandrages.

Juyces of willow leaves, vines, Sengreen, water-Lillies, plantain, nightshade.

His inward Medicines Compound.

Waters distilled of Roses, Violets, Lettice, Purslain, Water-Lillies, Nightshade, Gourds, Conserves of Roses, violets, water-Lillies, Citrons, Syrupes of violets, Roses, water-Lillies, Conserves of Coleworts, Lettice; Of these you may make Julips.

His Oyles to anoint the temples and head.

Oyl of Violets, of Roses, Lillies, Myrtles, Quinces, Gourds, Poppie, Lettice.

Oyntments.

The Oyntment called *Unguentum Rosaceum*, or *refrigerans Galeni*, *populeum album camphoratum*.

Signes shewing What humour causes Head-ache.

IF the Head-ache be of bloud, there is great heat in the head, heavinesse in the forehead, the veins of the eyes and whole face is red, the veins of the face are full, the urine is reddish and fatty, and the pulse is soft.

If it be of red choler, there is great heat in the nostrils, the tongue is dry, with much watching and thirst, and the greatest pain is on the right side of the head.

If it be of black choler, the head is cold, the colour of the face is swarth, the veins appear not, little sleep, much fear and pensiveness, and the greatest pain is on the left part of the head.

If it be of flegme, the senses are heavy and dull, much sleep, heavy retention of the spirits with moan, and the greatest pain is in the hinder part of the head.

Of all outward accidents, as blowes, bruises, wounds, and falls on the head, shall be shewed in the Chapter of the brain-pan or scull.

Cephalalgia. *Cephalalgia*, by the Greeks so termed, is such a disease that allmost affecteth the whole head: which sometimes is very violent, otherwhiles more tolerable, and either continueth long, or passeth over speedily.

Cephalea. *Cephalea* is an intolerable head-ache, which (notwithstanding that it hath some communion with the aforenamed *Cephalalgia*) doth marvellously weaken all the powers of the head, and at some time ceaseth, seeming as though it would not return again, yet (in manner like unto the falling sickness) by fits returneth with such violence, such noise in the eares, such beating in the forehead, such thrusting forth of the eyes, and finally with such swelling up of all the veins of the head, that both hearing and sight thereby decayeth, yea taketh divers with that extremity, that it seemeth unto them as if something did beat on the inside of their head with a hammer, and would rend and tear their head asunder. This ache sometimes cometh in the sinewes of the eyes, and doth oppilate and harm them greatly, and at the length induceth blindnesse altogether. And albeit this affection of the head oft times groweth of a light and small cause, yet procureth it divers times very heavy and grievous accidents.

Hemicrania. *Hemicrania* is also an head-ache, wherewith either the right or the left side, the back or forepart of the head is infected; it taketh commonly the one side of the head, even from the midst of the forehead, and so passeth through the boll or concavity of the scull to the very back part of the head. It doth also very often so disease the eyes, that it perisheth the sight of them: insomuch, that this pain is so like to the above named *Cephalea*; that *Galen* and many others do not only describe them both together, but use also one and the self same remedies for them both, as hereafter may appear.

Congelatio. The fourth kind of head-ache is *Congelatio*, as it were a cold nummednesse; this proceeding from the back part of the head, taketh away all sense and feeling of the patient, and therefore it is not unlike unto that heavy and drowsie disease *Lethargus* and *Stupor*, wherein also the affected body is suddenly deprived both of sense and feeling.

Of the causes of the head-ach. §. 1.

THe common causes of head-ach in general are innumerable; as heat of the Sun, bathings, change of ayr, a continual South-wind, a strong sent of spices, whether they be hot or cold by nature; also the smell of wine, drunkennesse, stinking meat, Garlick, Onions, Mustard, strokes or blowes, bruisings, or great motions of the brain, sleep presently after dinner, much bleeding, wormes in the eares, nostrils, or stomach, choler in the stomach, fumes and vapours out of the same, too much repletion of the stomach

mach, *Intemperies* or an unnatural mixture of the humours, with many more, which for brevities ſake we omit, and will treat of more neceſſariy matters. But for the moſt part (as hath already been ſaid) this pain in the head proceedeth of the intemperature of the four humours, namely of blood, choler, flegme, and melancholy. The Phyſitians have found out eight kinds of this intemperature, with their appropriate and due remedies, as hereafter at large ſhall be ſhewed. As concerning the aches and paines of the head, we do divide them into hot or cold aches, in which all others that we purpoſe to treat of are comprehended, and ſo begin with the hot paines of the head.

The ſignes of a hot head-ach that proceedeth from choler, Sect. 2.

IN this kind of head-ach are theſe commmon ſignes, belching, or breaking of wind upward with lothſomeneſſe and thirſt, dryth of the mouth, tongue, and noſtrils. The pain is pricking, ſharp, and rather in the right then in the left ſide of the head, heat over all the body, but eſpecially in the noſtrils, no appetite, no ſleep, the pulſes haſty and quick, the urine reddiſh, the face yellow. The ſureſt notes are, if the time of the year be hot and dry, the Patient young, and hath uſed thoſe things that procure heat and dryth.

The cauſes, and ſignes then being knowne, now follow the firſt and eſpecialleſt means to eaſe it, namely in ſhunning thoſe things that in any way might either procure or continue it, as hot wines, the ſent of hot and ſtrong things, the uſe of meats hot in operation; then to begin (not onely in this, but in all, other infirmities whatſoever) with the eaſieſt remedies at the firſt, and moſt of all if this hot pain of the head be but new and of no continuance; at which time, to delay the heat, thou mayeſt ſafely uſe theſe that follow.

For Head-Ache in a Fever, rub the feet, and bind the extreames, and it helps, and anoint the noſtrils and crown of the head with oyl of Violets, or apply *emplaſtrum pſilliticum* to the forehead and temples, which is made thus; take the mucilage of flea-bane infuſed in Roſewater, and then with Roſewater and vinegar, make it ſomewhat thick: proved.

Or bruiſe attriplex, and apply it to the forehead or head; Or bruiſe wood-ſorrel, called alleluja, and vervine, and apply it as a plaiſter to the forehead, temples, and grieved place.

But my vomiting potion never failed me in this diſeaſe; which Vomit is made of Stibium, Saffron, Angelica Roots, Caſtoreum, and honey diſſolved in wine: the manner of making hereof, I ſhall expreſſe hereafter.

Or make a plaiſter of the white of egs, and the powder of Comin, and apply it to the forehead, the crown of the head and nape, let it lye 24 houres.

Applications, Oyntments, Plaiſters, Lotions.

Oxyrrhodinum applyed outwardly is greatly commended, that is, Oyl of Roſes, water and vineger of Roſes, of each a like quantity: in this mixture dip double linnen clothes, and lay them ſo cold and wet to the forehead, from one temple to another, and as often as it dryeth muſt it be refreſhed again. Others make it ſtronger thus: Take of Roſe water five ounces, of Melilot water four ounces, water of Nightſhade two ounces, oyl of Roſes one ounce and a half, Roſe Vineger one ounce, uſe it as the other before. Theſe two compoſitions, by reaſon of the Oyl and vinegar of Roſes which are in them, are called *Oxyrrhodinum*; unto which (if the heat be very extreme) thou mayeſt adde one drachme of Camphire. Alſo take the white of an Egg well beaten, Roſe water one ounce, water of Elder, and Fennel water, of each half an ounce, five ſmall Nuts well beaten in a mortar, a little Saffron; lay this to the forehead with wool. Another that is more ſtronger, the water of the white water-Lilly, water of Endive, of each three ounces, red, white, and yellow Saunders, or one of them, of each one drachme, beaten Roſe leaves half a drachme, beaten Camfere half a drachme, mixe them all together, and uſe them as is above ſhewed. This cooleth greatly, and eaſeth the pain of the head.

The Ointment of Roses described by Mesues.

TAke fresh or new hogges grease, as much as thou wilt; wash it very often with warme water, afterwards with cold water; then take as many Roses in weight as thy grease weigheth, beat them both together in a mortar, let them so rest the space of seven dayes; then strain it thorow a cloth, and beat as many Roses with thy grease as before, and so let them stand other seven dayes; strain them again, and adde to thy grease halfe the weight of the juice of Roses, and the sixt part of the oyl of sweet Almonds, and boyle them together untill all the juice be consumed, which thou shalt know thus; put one or two drops of it into the fire, where if it make no noise or hissing like unto water, then it is sufficiently boyled: then take it from the fire, stirring it continually with a wooden pestle until it waxeth stiff and white; some add a little *Opium* unto it to make it cool the more, but it is needlesse; for if it be necessary thou mayest add it at all times afterward. This ointment is an especial good remedy in *Cephalalgia* and heat of the head, it stayeth flegmatical rheumes and phlegmons, it mitigateth the canker, it is also good for the heat of the stomach, liver, kidnyes, &c.

Take bears greas. ℔. ß. camphire powdered. ʒ. ß. melt the camphire, and bears grease, till the camphire is dissolved, and anoint the aking head with it: if it be for a woman you may add the pouder of castoreum unto it.

The manner of purging for head-ach.

If the head-ach be caused of bloud corrupted, or choler, purge with these, or the like. Take ceterach, Venus hair, maiden hair, Scolopendia, seeds of cucumbers, citrons, melons, 26. pompons, prunes, Violets, sebestens, of each, ʒ. 1. boyl these in water, then strain it, and put into the liquor so strained, of Cassia, and Tamarindes, of each, ℥. 6. or, ʒ. 1. of Manna, ℥.iij. or so much Rubarb, of Myrabolanes Citrine, ʒ. ß. let it infuse all night; strain it in the morning, and put an ounce of the syrup of Violets unto it, and drink it.

If it proceed more of choler and blood, then adde Lettice seed, purslain, and white poppy seed; and instead of Rhubarb, Myrabolanes and Manna, you may take the pulpe of Coloquintida, a scruple, more or lesse according to the strength of the patient; or you may give the patient a drachme and a half of Tryphera Sarasenica, with a scruple of Rubarb, in fumiterre water: but in this case my vomiting potion before named in this Chapter, hath cured without any other thing; and give it after the former purges if they prevail not; or give it before, or without them.

I am not ignorant of the commendation of Diarodum Albatis, Diapapaveris, Triasantalorum. Dracytonitis frigidi, or of Rosatæ novellæ with syrupe of Violets, which you may use as need requires.

For outward meanes.

You may take Oyl of Roses, oyl of Violets, vinegar, Juyce of house-leek, Juyce of Knotgrasse, of Plantain, of purslane, mix them, and anoint the head and temples therewith; if the pain be great, you may adde some Opium: if sleep is wanting, take oyl of violets, oyl of Mandrage and Opium, and rub not the head too much, for it causes the humours to ascend to the head.

If the head-ach be caused of flegme or melancholy, you may digest the humour with this oximel; take a quart of vinegar and seethe in it reddish roots, fennel roots, mallow roots green, of each 4 ʒ. bruised; Rewe, Rosemary, Sage, Betonie, wild marjerom, of each a little, shred small, and when it is sod to half, strain it very hard, then put half a pound of clarified honey into the liquor, and seethe it to a thin syrupe.

Then you may purge with my vomiting potion which I have used with good successe; or else you may purge with pills called *pilula aurea*, or *pilula arabaca*, or with *benedicta laxativa*, or the like.

Or take Cloves, Mates, Pepper, of each ʒ. 2. Cyperis Roots, ℥ 1. the inner bark of Ash, ʒ. 1. ß. Cardamom. Cubibs, of each ʒ. 1. Nutmeg, ʒ, ß. let all be bruised, seethe them in wine and water unto half, strain it, and put into half a pint of it, half an ounce of *Myrabulanorum Indorum*, or lesse, and half a drachme of *lapis lazuli*, let them infuse all a night, in the morning strain it, and drink it. You may also take the other half pint with the Myrabolanes and Lazuli infused as before; and this may be given to those that are delicate and nice, or those that are troubled with fever quartanes or others.

For

For outward means uſe that which I expreſſed in the ſecond Chapter.

Above all things in purging you muſt conſider the Age, the Time, the Region, ability of the Patient, and quality of the diſeaſe, and thereby thou muſt take of the purging ſimples more or leſſe.

I will in this book as occaſion requires ſet down the medicines obſerved by an Author unknown, of which approve as thou findeſt, and in every place; thou ſhalt know them by this obſervation, *viz.*

Medicines of the unknown Author.

OMitting his rules of opening veins and Arteries, and of applying horſleaches and cupping-glaſſes, and leaving that to thoſe which love and uſe it; I will deſcribe the reſt.

To purge.

Take Prunes, Tamarinds, and Raiſons ſtones, flowers of Violets, of borage, of Bugloſe, ſeeth them in water; ſtrain it, and take of that decoction, and diſſolve two ounces of Manna; ſtrain it, and drink it, or take the manna in poſſet drink or whay.

Or, you may take of Caſſia, ℥. ß. of Manna, ℥. 1. and diſſolve it in the ſame decoction.

Or, elſe put ſix drachmes of Diacatholicon, into ſome of the decoction and drink it, with half an ounce of Caſſia, or ℥. 2 of *Diaprunum ſolutivum.*

Or, take two drachmes of the powder of *Hieræ picræ* new made in conſerve of Violets.

Stronger purges, for ſtronger perſons.

Take the powder of Aloes, ℥. 1. Maſtick, Cinamon, of each ten grains; Diagredinum, 4. grains, and with the ſyrrup of Citrons make pills, if the Patient be lean or have a fever, uſe not theſe pills with Diagredinum, for it will bring the Patient into a fever, and hurt the party.

Make this ſyrrup to take at any time two hours before meat. Take Stecades, ℥. 2. ſeethe it in two quarts of water to a pint and a half, ſtrain it hard, then put it into the liquor, of honey or of Sugar, ℔. 1. and ſeethe it to a thin ſyrrup; the doſe is, ℥. 3.

Or, uſe the ſyrrup of Stecades.

A cooling unguent, Infrigidans Galeni.

TAke 2. ounces of white or virgin wax, & melt it eaſily, waſh it often with fair water, and at the laſt with white vinegar; then add unto it four ounces of the oyl of Roſes, which alſo hath been waſhed as before. It may alſo be made up in form of a plaſter or *Ceratum.* It eaſeth both the heat of the agues and of the head, being applyed to the forehead and temples; it is alſo very good againſt the pain of the kidneyes. If thou wilt uſe it for the pain of the head, melt it on a little fire, then waſh it with vinegar, and with the juice of Plantane and Nightſhade; annoint the forehead with it, eſpecially on thoſe ſeams of the ſcull; then lay vine or willow leaves upon it, and thou ſhalt finde great eaſe. To the ſame intent is this Popular unguent or *Unguentum Populeum* alſo uſed, which is found ready made in all Apothecaries ſhops. Likewiſe take Roſe-leaves, Willow-leaves, water-Lillies, Mallowes, of each one handful, boyl them in water, and irrigate thy head with it. Alſo take Violets, Barley beaten in a mortar, beaten Gourd ſeeds or the bark of Gourds, Poppy heads, ſeeds of Hollihock, Purſlain-ſeeds, Lettice-ſeeds, of each one handful: boyl them in water, and let the decoction being warm, drop from on high upon thy head. Note alſo that if neceſſity and the violent pain ſhould require ſtronger remedies, then uſe the juice of ſuch herbes as are cold and dry, as of Plantain, of Shepherds-purſe, of Night-ſhade, of houſleek, of Pomgranates, and in the greateſt extremity add a little *Opium* unto it, of Henbane; adding the juice of Southernwood or of Poppy unto it, and applying them unto the head as is above-ſaid. Here is alſo to be obſerved, that the ſtupefactive or narcotical things are not to be uſed, but onely in the greateſt extremities. Neither may any ſuch cold remedies be adhibited to the back-part of the head, but onely to the forehead. In fine, whereſoever theſe and ſuch like may be omitted, there are they not at all to be uſed; notwithſtanding if the extremity be ſuch that no other remedies would ſerve the turn, and any danger might enſue of any obſtu-

pefaction

pefaction or numming of any one part: this shall be sometimes used. Take the wood of *Cassia* small beaten one drachme, mix it with oyl, and drop it into the ears and nostrils; and if peradventure the Patient should lose both sense and feeling, then mix half a drachme of Bever-cod, a scruple of Saffron, and a little oyl of Olives, or rather oyl of Chestnuts together.

Also make this emplaister; Take of the Vine buds, beat them small, and add as much oyl of Roses and Barley flower as shall suffice, then lay it plaister-wise to the forehead: in the want of Vine-buds take housleek, or the juice of Nightshade, of Shepherds-purse, or of Lettice. Or else take yellow Saunders, Roses, water-Lillies, of each half an ounce, Camphire one scruple, *Spica* of India half one scruple; wet them together with Rose-water, boyl them, and receive the vapors at your nose through a funnel: likewise take Roses, the blossomes of the Pomegranate-tree, shels of Pomgranates, seeds or berries of the mirtle-tree, shels of Citrones, of each one drachme, Agarick as much; boyl them in lee a little while, and wash the head with it. This cooleth, dryeth and strengtheneth the brains. Otherwise take Venice hard, or cake Soap, slice it small into a flat earthen pan, pour a good strong lee upon it, cover it with a linnen cloth, and set it in the warm sun while the Soap be molten; stir it oftentimes till the lee be evaporated or dryed away, then put Rose-water upon it, and let it dry again; this reiterate so often till the soap have lost her strong and unsavory smell, and imbibe the sweet smell of the Rose-water. Take of this prepared soape one pound, white or yellow Saunders, Roses, of each half an ounce, water-Lillies two drachmes, Camphire one drachme, being all beaten to powder, mix them with the Soap, and make it up in little cakes, dry them, and reserve them for thy use.

Of the pain in the head with agues, and lask or flux of the belly. Sect. 3.

WHereas this pain of the head is oftentimes cause of divers other maladies, it shall not be amiss to describe that head-ach which reigned in the year of our Lord 1564. in *Mosbach*, and in the whole Dukedom of the *Palsgrave* of *Rhine*; at which time I compiled this present work.

This pain began with a shivering cold, presently ensued an ague with a little heat, but with great dryth and thirst, which continued about one fortnight or more. It returned unto divers after they had been clear of it a moneth or twain, and that twice or thrice together: others were intolerably troubled in the head; and some were so vehemently vexed with a flux of the belly without blood, that it could by no means at all be stayed, yea they oftentimes very miserably perished with it.

In this head-ach were these remedies found very effectual and good. First, if nothing do diswade from it, thou shalt open the head vein, especially if the Patient be young, full of blood, and be of body strong and able enough to bear it. Children shall then purge with easie medicines, as *Cassia*, *Manna*, syrup of Roses, Sene-leaves decocted with some cooling herbs. The bigger sort shall be purged with sharp pils and other purgations, if they have no lask withal: and if nothing else could be had out of hand, thou shalt make this decoction or drink. Take Sene-leaves one ounce, Cinnamon, Anniseed and Fennel-seeds; Currants, of each as much as thou canst hold between two of thy fingers, Licorise the length of thy finger, if it be a thick stick take lesse of it; one fig, both cut small, sweet-Marjoram, Rosemary as much as thou canst take up between thy fingers, Sugar one ounce: boyl them all in a quart of water, till half be consumed; of this give a child to drink two ounces, to an old body four ounces, to a strong body mayest thou boyl half an ounce of Sene-leaves with it. For women and children to be boxed on the shoulders and legs is very good, or to rub their arms and legs with warm clothes downwards. It is also good for them to bathe their feet in the decoction, Roses and betony. Wines of all sorts must be shunned in this infirmity, and all things that are hot, as Spices, Onions, Garlick and such like: for daily drink, take two handfuls of Barly, Anniseeds half an ounce, Raisons one ounce and a half; boyl these together in a pottle of water, till the Barley do burst; then add three drachmes of Cinnamon grossely beaten; and let it boyl a little, and so cool. Seeing then this sickness provoketh thirst, thou mayest not bar altogether the diseased from any kinde of drink, but let him take enough of the prescribed decoction, with the syrup of Roses, of Violets, or of Citrons admixed. Thou mayest also give him the

conserve

conſerve of the ſame flowers, with the water of Endive, Succory, Borage, and of Lettice, for that it doth comfort the heart. For his meat, he ſhall commonly uſe French Barley boyled with a hen in broth. Veal, Kids fleſh, or ſtued Prunes, and ſuch like light meats. But if a flux or looſeneſſe in the body be adjoyned to the former infirmity, the affected party ſhall in any wiſe take great heed of ſuch light and looſing meates: and onely uſe roſted Veal, Pullets roſted, and other ſmal Birds, ſtewed Quinces, or any ſuch like thing. Or if he would have any other meat dreſſed, it ſhall be done with ſtilled water, which is made as followeth: Take as much fair water as thou wilt, ſet it on the fire, and caſt a good piece of ſteel into it, being firſt made red hot three or four times together: then let the water cool, and uſe it as thou wilt. In like ſort alſo mayeſt thou prepare water of iron, of gold, of ſilver, and of flints for the ſame purpoſe; thus is wine, the milk of a Cow, and of goats alſo ſteeled.

But to come to our purpoſe again; as long as this looſeneſſe of the body doth continue, thou ſhalt annoint the ſtomach twice a day with the oyls of Maſtick and of Quinces. If it be about the time of the year that Sloes be ripe, take as many of them as you pleaſe, put them into a pot, and pour boyling water upon them; ſtop or cover them very cloſe; give unto the infirmed body three or four of theſe a little before his meat: noting alwaies, that in four and twenty hours he uſe not above twenty of them at the moſt.

Contrariwiſe, if the body be bound, thou ſhalt ſeek by all means thou maiſt, to looſe it, otherwiſe many vapors aſcend up into the head, and there augment both the heat and the pain, yea oftentimes bereave the Patient of his wits. Wherefore firſt of all thou ſhalt try to open the body by ſuppoſitories, which if they will not ſuffice, uſe common Gliſters, which hereafter in the third part for the binding and ſtopping of the body are preſcribed. Otherwiſe, if theſe do not pleaſe thee, uſe ſome cooling purgation, or elſe that purging potion above deſcribed. There be above ſet down many unguents, ſalves, and waters, but all are very good for the pain of the head. But in this kind of head-ach this remedy that followeth is expreſly deſcribed: Take of the water of Lettice, Nightſhade, and of Houſleek, of each two ounces, water of Cammomil an ounce and a half, good ſtrong Vineger one ounce, Camphire beaten four grains: mix them all together, or take Roſe-water, Roſe-vinegar, Melilot-water, Betony-water, of each, or of as many as are to be had, what quantity thou pleaſe, wet linnen clothes in them, and lay them to the forehead.

In this infirmity oftentimes is both the tongue and throat very raw and ſore, by reaſon of the great heat, for the which look the remedies that are ſet down in the Chapter 13. Sect. 6. of this firſt part, for the infirmities and heat of the tongue: and the gargariſmes for the pain in the throat in the firſt Chapter of the ſecond part.

The ſyrup of Mulberies with Plantain, Knotgraſſe, and Self-heal-water admixed, conduceth and helpeth very much: likewiſe take the ſeed of Quinces, and the ſeed of Fleawort; then take a little ſtick, and tye to the end of it a little skarlet or linnen cloth with one drachme of theſe ſeeds in it, ſteep it in the water of Self-heal; when thou wilt cleanſe thy tongue, rub it eaſily with that cloth ſo ſteeped: it cleanſeth, moiſteneth, cooleth and healeth all the chops or clifts in it.

To comfort the heart, uſe *Manus Chriſti*, with pearls, conſerve of water-Lillies, Pomegranats, preſerved Citrons, and other ſuch like.

This binding water hath done very many much good. Take a hot wheaten loaf new taken out of the oven, take out all the crum of it, put a good quantity of ſteeled water unto it, with one ounce and a half of Nutmegs, ſtop it cloſe, and let it ſo ſtand one whole day in a warm place: then ſtill off the water in a glaſs Lembeck; give of this to the Patient every morning two ounces, and let him faſt two hours after it; two hours after his meat give him as much more, not forgetting firſt to warm it alwaies, and let him then faſt till night. The third potion or draught he ſhall take the next morning faſting (as before) after the ſame; this is not onely in this kind of flux, but in all other fluxes experimented and approved. Note alſo, that if the flux be without heat, thou mayeſt take red wine in in ſtead of the water, for then will it be of better force and vertue.

Heat

Heat of the head with melancholy. Sect. 4.

THis infirmity is described by these signs following; the pain is not so great as the former, but with a drineſſe and sadneſs; the heat is more evident in the left side of the face then in the right, it causeth disquietneſſe, and albeit the sick sometimes taketh rest, yet it is an unnatural sleep; it maketh the a ffected faint-hearted, fearful and careful, the colour of the face is red and blew, with a sowr taste in the mouth; if the Patient be old, if it be about the Autumn, then are the signs the surer. Thou shalt use those remedies for this malady which are prescribed against melancholy, as sufficiently shall appear hereafter. Also use this Gliſter: Take Mallowes, Violet-leaves, Bugloſſe, Fumitory, Bran, of each one *M.* Polipody, *Epithymus*, or Dodder, of each one drach. boyl them together in a sufficient quantity of water, take twelve or sixteen ounces of this decoction, Oyl of Olives, three ounces. Stronger Gliſters shalt thou finde elsewhere described. Thou mayeſt also make these or the like suppositories: Take Coloquint, Sal-amoniack, of each one drachme, Oxe-gall two drachmes, sodden or boyled honey three ounces; make them reasonable thick and long; they are very effectual and strong.

Heat of the head with melancholy.

☞ Take the powder of *Hiere colocynthidos*, ℥. ß. *Agarici trochiscati*, ℈. 1. Mastick *bdellii*, of each ℈. ß. Nutmegs eight grains, and with the juice of Wormwood make pills; the dose is ʒ. 1. more or leſſe after the Patients age and strength, or take those powders in the conserve of Rosemary flowers.

His purging syrup.

Take of the roots of knot-grasse, Parsley, Sperage, of each, ℥. ß. Anniseeds, Fennel-seeds, of each ʒ. 1. bruised; Betony, Stecades, of each a handful; flowers of Violets, Borage, Bugloſſe, of each a little handful; Raisons stoned, ℥. 1. ß. Licoras, ℥. ß. bruised Polypody, ℥. 1. *Agarici trochiscati*, ʒ. 6. seethe these in five pints of water, until a quart is dissolved; then put to it seething of *Sena*, ℥. 2. ß. or ℥. 3. let it seeth to a pint and a half, strain it, and put to a pint and a half of the decoction, one pound of Sugar, seethe it to a syrup, the dose is, ℥. 1. ß. or ℥. 2. in water sod with honey in the winter, or with whay, or with the decoction of Prunes, Tamarindes and Raisons before expreſſed.

Another syrup stronger.

Take *Polypodium*, the roots of Acory of Ireos, that is the roots of white flower-deluce, seeds of wild Saffron called in shops *semum Carthani* of each ʒ. 2. *Sebestens*, *Ceterach*, *Scolopendria*, Betony, tops of Hops, Agrimony; of each a little handful; Stecades Arabick and Citrine, of each half a little handful, seeth these in five pints of water until a quart or more is dissolved, then put to it seething of *Sena*, ʒ. 4. Trochisces of Agariik, ℥. 1. ß. Turbith, ℥. 1. seethe it unto a pint or more; strain it, then seethe the colature with Sugar and Honey, of each, ℔. 1. seethe it to a syrup, the dose is, ℥. 2. to be taken once in twelve dayes, with the former decoction of Prunes, Tamarinds and Raisons, or with honey sod with water or the like.

Pills.

Take Agarick newly trochisced, ʒ. 2. Turbith, ʒ. 1. salt Gem Ginger, of each a scruple, dissolve these in white Wine, upon a soft fire, or hot ashes, then presse out the liquor, then take of the powder of *Hiere Diacolocynthidos*, drachmes 3. powder of Hiere Picre ʒ. 1. ß: and with that liquor make a masse for pills, the dose is, drachme 1. more or leſſe.

After purges strengthen the stomach, ventricle and bowels with Diascordium, drach. 2. or take old Mithridate in conserve of Bugloſſe.

Or, take of the species *Electuarii Diambra*, drach. 1. *Aromatici Rosati* drach. ß. in the conserve of Rosemary flowers, or syrup *de corticibus citri*, or the syrup of *Stecades* or the like.

This head-ach cometh of crude matter and slimy humours in the stomach, and therefore to take Vinegar or Verjuice or juice of Pomgranates, I hold not convenient, and *crudum crudo addere eſt malum*, as a learned Jew in *Italy* gave out as a maxime; therefore use such things as may digeſt that crude humour, and close the mouth of the Ventricle, which is sometimes corroded, and too open by such sharp humours; for this take Honey and powder of Turpentine prepared, as is taught in the sixt Chapter, and make pills thereof, and take three or four as big as peaſe, before you eat or drink

in

in the morning, if it proceed of choler make your pills of the sirupe of violets and prepared powder of Turpentine, and use them as is said.

And sometimes it is caused by the opening of the sutures of the head, then close the sutures, and apply this Lixivium warm. Take very strong lye a quart, pepper an ounce, powdered and searced, kernels of *Cotoquintida* powdered and searced, an ounce and a half, seethe all the lee, till a third part or more is consumed; this is a special secret of mine, for many uses, which thou shalt know in several places in this book: let the Lixivium dry into the head, and bind the head to hold the sutures together. *Lixivium.*

Head-ach proceeding from emptinesse of the stomach. Sect.5.

IT befalleth oftentimes, that this head-ach vexeth many every day, especially before they eat or drink any thing, and presently after meals departeth; wherefore to avoid this emptinesse of the stomach, thou shalt every morning take one bit of bread dipped in vinegar, or in the juyce of Pomgranats or Verjuyce.

The order of dyet in hot head-aches.

THose that are troubled with a head-ach that proceedeth of heat, must altogether abstain from wine, as hath been already said, and not eat any flesh at all, or very little: for both of them do ingender much blood. Their meat must be things cold by nature, as Lettice sodden and stewed, Spinage, Purslain, Panadoes, Broths, Beer and Bread sodden together, Apples and Pears stewed, broths of Veal, of Hens, being sharpened with a little Verjuyce. Their drink shall be small Beer, Whay of milk, Barley water, with a little of the juyce of Pomgranats or Lemmons.

Of Cephalæa *and* Hemicrania *certain pains of the head.* Sect.6.

IF this head-ach do come with quick and hasty pulls, and with heat, then shall it seem good first of all to purge the body; and if the circumstances of the infirmity permit it, the patient shall use this lenitive medicine, which is thus prepared: Take of the greater and lesser Endive, Lettice, of each one handful, Poppy heads, two ounces, seeds of Melons, Gourds, Cucumbers, and of Pompions, of each two drachmes, grossly beaten half an ounce; Violets, Roses, white and yellow Saunders, of each two drachmes: boyl them all in a sufficient quantity of water, till the third part be consumed, then add twelve ounces of Sugar, boyl it to the consistence of a sirupe, and then clarifie it with the whites of Eggs. Of this give to the sick one ounce and an half at once, with the water of Borage, or Endive, or Bugloss: use this three or four times every morning.

Because there is a great use of sirupes in this book, I will now shew and set down the prefect order and way how to make and prepare them. First see thou have fresh and clear water, with which thou wilt make thy sirupe: put into it those things first which are hardest, as roots, woods and such like, let them boyl as long as thou wouldst seethe a couple of Eggs: then cast into it thy seeds grossly beaten, then thy herbs being cut, after them thy flowers and Currants: let them boyl well together, that their strength may come forth, and if *Epithymum* be one of the ingredients, let it be put in last of all, and when it is sodden sufficiently, add thy honey or sugar unto it, and clarifie it with the whites of Eggs, as hath been taught in the Introduction, namely, in the clarifying of Sugar: after this manner maist thou also deal in the purifying of honey. *How to make sirupes.*

But to come to the purpose again, thou shalt note, that if the choler be supple and thin, then shalt thou take sirupe of Endive, of Violets, of water Lillies, of each three drachmes, admixed with the above named waters: if the choler be grosse and thick, then take instead of the sirupes, the like quantity of *Oxysaccharum compos. Rasis* counselleth to give this purgation after it: Take Damask Prunes ten drachmes, sowre Dates one ounce: boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water: in this decoction steep the rinde or bark of yellow Mirobalans two drachmes grossly beaten, the next day strain and presse out all the liquor, and give three or four ounces of it in the morning. Others boyl Violets and water Lillies, of each one ounce, Steechas or French Lavander, two ounces, with half an ounce of Mirobalans: this alwayes give at the first. They are both of them easie and safe

safe purgations; for which cause also it is found good sometimes (according to need) to add three grains of *Diagridium* to them, or else to mixe with them of the conserve of Prunes, or of *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, three drachmes. Also in the stead of the foresaid potion or drink, thou maist use this confection that followeth: Take of both the confections before named, of each half an ounce, sirupe of water Lillies as much as sufficeth to mixe them withall, and cast some Betony roots powdered and a little Sugar upon it.

Likewise, if thou hadst rather use pills; take two drachmes of Rubarbe, Mastix one scruple, Scammony half a drachme: make pills of them with the juyce of Rue, or with wine, and take a drachme at one time of them.

For the same purpose are sowre Dates approved to be an especial good remedy, and may in this hot kind of head-ach very safely and with very great effect be adhibited. But thou must take three or four ounces of them at once, as thou maist behold their description and vertues in our Introduction. This manner of purging is set for an example, which according to the circumstances both of the disease, and of the diseased, may either be changed or used at pleasure.

The body then being purged, the oyl of Roses, or of water Lillies shall be dropped, or by some other means, put into the patients nose, and let him smell to Camphire. Rose-water, or the water of Violets. Or take oyl of Violets, of Roses, of water Lillies, of each half an ounce, Camphire three grains: rub them well together, and put them in his nose.

In like sort also take oyl of the seed of Gourds, Willows leaves, and oyl of Roses, and use it as before: likewise in place of the foresaid oyls, thou maiest use cooling herbs, as Night-shade, Housleek laid to the forehead with tow and double linnen cloths. Also to the same end is womans milk mixed very well with the white of an egg, and so laid to the forehead especially approved: or let the patient bath and rub his legs with the decoction of Vine leaves, water Lillies, Violets, Gourds, Cucumber, and Melon leaves,: and if for all this the pain would still increase, thou maiest mixe two or three grains of *Opium* or Camphire with it, and often iterate the dropping of the oyl of Willow leaves into the ears and nostrils; for this purgeth the head greatly. But see thou forget not that which before hath been said *de Narcoticis* and obstupefactive things.

A sweet ball for the head-ach approved: Take Violets, water Lillies, Willow leaves, Roses, of each one ounce, Camphire two grains, beat them altogether, & bind them up together in a fine peece of silk or linnen cloth, and wet it often with a little Rose-water. Others beat the foresaid simples into fine powder, and with molten wax make it up in form of a ball; but this is not so good. Many such like cooling balls are described in the Treatise of the plague, in two divers places of the sixth part, as well to recreate and restore the sick, as to preserve the sound.

Head-ach proceeding of the sun or south wind. Sect. 7.

IF the pain of the head be caused by the heat of the Sun, then may it easily be remedied with the above described *Oxyrrhodinum*, unguent of Roses, the cooling unguent of *Galen*, &c. And if those would not suffice, use the juyces of the before named cold herbs. Also the oyls of Roses, of Violets, mixe with them as much strong vinegar, as thou takest of one of the oyls, beat them well together, dip a wollen cloth in it, and lay it where the pain is. Furthermore, the patient shall observe and keep the same diet that is above set down in the Chapter of *Cephalalgia*: eat things light of digesture, abstain from all things that might any way trouble or vexe the head, and if need require, to purge with cooling medicines, as above is already shewed.

Head-ach that commeth of drunkennesse. Sect. 8.

OF the disease that proceedeth from drunkennesse, shall be spoken hereafter: now we will onely treat of head-ach without any other infirmity adjoyning with it. Needlesse it is at this present to recite any signs of this kind of head-ach, for that every thing is most evident, whether this pain take her beginning of drunkennesse by wine or beer.

bee. The firſt remedy is to vomit; the ſecond, to ſleep long, to faſt it out, the broth of Colworts, or of Beets a good quantity being taken: alſo to drink much cold water, and to eat ſowre fruits, but the beſt meat is firſt of all to eat ſodden Lentils, Colworts and Pullets dreſſed with verjuyce or Lemmons. The patient ſhall alſo ſmell to Roſes or Camphire: let the uttermoſt parts of his body be rubbed, drink wine allayed with water, and two dayes after eat aſtringent and binding meats, with Pomgranats. The firſt day alſo ſhall it not be amiſſe to anoint the forehead and temples with the oyl of Roſes, the next day with the Oyl of Cammomil or of Lillies; and if peradventure the pain as yet would not ceaſe, he ſhall (as need doth require) be purged, eſpecially if any vapors aſcend up into the head. Likewiſe he may alſo uſe this powder following; Take Colwort-ſeeds, Barbarie-ſeeds, Endive-ſeeds Lentils, Roſes, calcined or burnt Ivory, or Elephants tooth, of each two drachmes make it into a very ſupple powder, give of this two drach. at once, Camphire prepared, three grains, with the ſirupe of Pomgranats or Citrons.

Put ſome cold oyl into his ears, and rub the extrems, 1. the feet and hands with vinegar and cumminſeeds, and apply cold water, or vinegar to the members.

Head-ach proceeding of a ſtroke or fall Sect. 9.

IF any one were hurt in the head by a ſtroke, a fall, or the throwing of a ſtone without any wound or breaking of the skin, or fracture of the skull, he ſhall firſt of all be let blood in the head vein, and afterward (if need require) take a common Cliſter, and (if he have not an ague) he ſhall be purged with *Pilulæ Cochiæ.* And firſt of all lay on his head being ſhaven, this that followeth: Take the ſhels and flowers of Pomgranats, the juyce of Sloes, *Hyppocyſtis*, fine Bole, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra ſigillata*, of each one drach. beat them all into powder, mixe it with the whites of Eggs, and lay it upon the place affected or bruiſed. Or take the decoction of Roſes, of Mirtle ſeeds, or of Willow leaves, applying it three or four times a day: then take oyl of Mirtles and of Roſes, of each one ounce, Mirtle ſeeds, juyce of Sloes, *Hyppocyſtis*, of each one drachme, mix them together with a little molten wax, and if there be no ſuffuſion or congealed blood, anoint the place with it two or three dayes together.

Thou maiſt alſo make a pultis of Roſes, Cammomil, and Melilot flowers, adding a little fine Bole to it, and mixing it with the Oyls above named. If an ague be preſent, uſe either cold or lukewarm things; alſo let him ſmell to cooling things, as Violets, Camphire, Willow leaves, and Mirtle leaves &c.

Seethe the leaves of Ladies Thiſtle in water, till they are tender, then bath the head with the water thereof warm and apply the leaves; this takes away the blewneſſe of any bruiſe and mitigates the pain.

The ſecond Chapter.

Of the pain of the head that is cauſed by cold.

IF the pain of the head proceed of cold flegmatick humors and continue long, then are theſe the ſigns: weariſomneſſe of all the parts, and as if all the body were beaten and broken into pieces: the pain is not extreme, without any ſwelling or thirſt, ſleepineſſe, much ſpitting at the mouth, much moiſture at the noſe; for ſuch like humidities do daily increaſe in the diſeaſed; the face is alwayes palely coloured, and ſomewhat ſwollen, the eyes run, and the mouth is quite out of taſt. In ſuch cold head-aches, muſt contrary remedies be uſed, that is, warming and drying medicines. Alſo we muſt begin here likewiſe with the gentleſt and eaſieſt remedies firſt, as this example following ſheweth: which alwayes muſt be holden in the mouth, chewing it continually, and caſting forth the ſlime and ſpittle, which thereby is gathered. Take Maſtick, Nutmegs, Diptamer of Candy, Pepper, Staveſaker, Pellitory of Spain, Cubebs, Ginger, bound up in a little cloth.

In

In the cold head-ach, wet a roſecake in vinegar and put to it powder of cloves and nutmeg, or take aquavitæ with powder of cloves and nutmegs, and with a linnen cloth apply it often to the temples and grieved place.

Alſo ſeethe Cammomil, Mint, and Bawm in poſſet-ale and drink it onely for 2. or 3. dayes together. Prob.

Oyntments made of oyl of Camomil, oyl Dill, oyl of Bayes, oyl of Maſtick, oyl of Spike, or of Petroleum, is good in the cold head-ache.

If it be in a maid or woman, I have onely uſed Petroleum, and oyl of Caſtoreum, and it hath prevailed.

But you may adde to the former Oyles, or to one or more of the ſaid oyles, mints, or Tyme, or ſweet marjerom, or Roſemary, or penny-royal, or Nutmegs, or Cloves, or Maces, or Cinamon, and ſeethe them a little, then ſtrain it, and anoint therewith.

Take Cloves, Nutmegs, of each half an ounce, ſeethe the ſame in half a pint of oyl of Camomil, and a quarter of a pint of red wine, untill the wine is conſumed; then ſtrain it, and anoint therewith.

Or take the roots of the wild Cucumber, and cut them in pieces, and the tops of wormwood, and ſeethe them in water and oyl, then bathe the grieved place with the water and oyl, and apply the roots and herbs to the place.

If the diſeaſe be old, and waxeth worſe and worſe, then the hair muſt be cut cloſe, and apply *Emplaſtrum Cephalicum*, which you ſhall have at the Apothecaries; or elſe take oyl of Euphorbium, oyl of Caſtoreum, oyl of Spike, and with a little wax make a plaiſter, and apply it to the head.

Alſo you may uſe Maſticatories, gargles, naſales, or ſweet balls.

For a Maſticatory, or pill to hold in thy mouth.

TAke of Maſtick two drachmes, of Pepper one drachme, of Caper roots half a drachme, make them into fine powder, and with a little vinegar of ſquills, make pills, and hold them in the mouth, and under the tongue, and ſpit out the rheume. Or adde the powder of Staphacre to your pills, or of wild pellitory, or neeſingwort.

For a Gargle.

Take muſtard ſeed bruiſed, ℥. 1. pepper 3. drachmes powdered, hyſope a handful, ſeethe it in red wine and a little honey, and gargle with it.

For a Naſale or Medicine to purge the head by the Noſe.

Take the juyce of Marjoram, or of beetes, or of brooklime, or of wild Cucumbers, and adde a little oyl to any of the ſaid Juyces, and put ſome of the ſame into the palm of the hand, and ſnuffe it into the noſe.

Or you may ſnuffe up the powder of Hellebore, or the powder of the root of wild pellitory, by ſome called Bartram, or the like.

Or take the Juyce of Marjerom, ℥. 2. juyce of beets, ℥. 1. vinegar of ſquills ℥. ß. put of it into the palm of the hand, and ſnuffe it up; or infuſe Tobacco in oyl, and ſnuffe it up.

Or take the oyl of Spike one ounce, elaterium one drachme; and for the rich, adde two grains of muſk, and anoint the noſtrils as far as you can with a feather.

A Ball to ſmell unto, to comfort the Braines.

Take of Cinamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Lignum Aloes, Marjerom dryed in the ſun, of each two drachmes, *Gallia Moſcata* one drachme; Muſk, Ambergreece, of each two grains, powder all very ſmall; then take of Laudanum, and of Maſtick, and beat them in a Mortar with a little Oyl of Spike, and Oyl of Behen, and make thereof a Ball.

A Quilt or Bag, or Cap for the Head.

℞. Cummin ſeeds, Fennel ſeeds, Bay-berries, of each two drachmes; Nutmeg, Cinamon, Cloves, of each one drach. *Gallia Moſcata*, Maſtick, Sandaracha, of each half a drachme,

drachme, powder these small, and put it upon raw Silk, or Cotton wool, and quilt it in a scarlet silk, and wear it upon the head.

The manner of purging in this infirmity.

Sect. 1.

SEeing that purging is very needfull in this kind of head-ach, purge therfore both head and body in manner as followeth: Take Sage, Lavander gentle, Bayberies, wild Mints, Hysope, Marjoram, sweet Marjoram, garden Mints, Calamus, of each one M. seeds of Fennel, Parsley, Sperage, Endive of each two drachmes, Raisins, *Nux Pinea*, seeds of Melons, of Pompions, of Gourds, and of Cucumbers, Roses, roots of wild Smallage, Anniseseeds, of each half an ounce, Cubebs, Piony seeds, Cloves, Nutmegs, of each a drach. and a half, Spikenard of India, Ginger, Cinnamon, Pepper, of each half a drach. boyl these things in a sufficient quantity of water, then presse out all the moisture from them, and boyl it the second time with honey or Sugar to the consistence of a sirupe. This if thou wouldst have to purge, add unto it seeds of wild Saffron, Hermodactils, of each half an ounce, Agarick six drachmes, Salt gem half one scruple, Turbit two drachmes: knit up these together in a little bag, and boyl them in the foresaid liquor. Afterward sharpen thy sirupe with the vinegar of Squils as followeth. Of this sirupe thou maiest give one ounce and a half, or two ounces at once, mingled with good wine, or else with some other distilled waters that may serve to the same end, three or four dayes continually together.

The composition of the vinegar of Squils is as followeth: Take the Squill (called in Latin *Scilla*) take away the external shels from it, till thou come to the white: these white ones take off by themselves severally with thy hand, or else with a woodden Spattin or knife, and not with iron, for that is hurtful: also leave out the heart, the innermost part of the Squill, and take onely the middle white shivers of it: fasten all these on a thred, that the one touch not the other, and hang them up to dry forty dayes in a cool place and in the shade. But this way that followeth, is much better; Take away all the utmost parts untill thou come to the white, then wrap it up in dow, and bake it in an oven: afterwards put it in shivers as before, and dry it as is already said. Take of this dried Squill as much as thou wilt, cut it into little peeces with a woodden or bone instrument, put four times as much vinegar upon it in a glasse, and let it so continue forty dayes in the sun.

Having taken the aforesaid potion as hath been taught before, thou shalt give him *Pillula Cochia*. If thou wilt have them strong, take two drachmes of them; Coloquint, *Bdellium*, of each one scruple, make them into pills with the water of Sage: of these give but one drachme at one time, because they be very strong; to the same purpose likewise serve the pills *Alophangina*, *Aureæ*, and Aloes prepared, being taken a drachme at once. But if the sick would rather take a potion then these pils: Take Lavender gentle, flowers of Borage and Bugloss, Currants, of each one ounce, Basill seed one drach. Agarik, Turbit, of each one drachme, boyl them in a sufficient potion of water, untill there remain about ten ounces; steep in this liquor one ounce and a half of the barks of Myrobalans called *Chebuli*, and set it so in warm ashes all one whole night: then presse it out hard, and give three ounces of it at once. Also take *Hierapicra*, Agarick, of each one drachme, Lavander, Saffron, of each one scruple, Salt gem, two grains, mixe them with some broth that Nutmegs and Sage hath been boyled in. In like manner maiest thou use this that followeth: Take honey of Roses, sirupe of Stechas, of each three drachmes, Agarick, Turbit, of each two scruples, *Spica* three grains, prepared Turpentine, half an ounce; beaten to powder all what thou canst beat, melt thy Turpentine in some hot broth, and when it is as cold that may be drunken, mixe the powders and sirupes with it, and give it early in the morning. This must be either diminished or augmented in quality, according to the ability of the patient.

If the diseased can bear no kind of Physick, then use this Clister: Take Mallowes, herb Mercury, Dill, Rue, Bran, of each one handfull, boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, take of Colatare twelve or sixteen ounces, mixe with it of *Hiera picra*, of white Sugar, of each half an ounce or somewhat more, Salt, two drachmes, oyl of Dill and Rue, of each one ounce and a half, and minister it warm.

Gargariſmes are alſo very good for this malady, becauſe they draw forth a great deal of flegme and filthineſſe from the head. Take Maſtix, Calamus, Licorice, Currans, of each half an ounce, Hyſſop, Ireos, of each two drachmes, Pellitory of Spain, Saxifrage, Ginger, Muſtard ſeed, of each one drachme, beat them all together, and boyle them in freſh water; uſe it three or foure times a day warme.

Some do counſel to take a vomit of reddiſh-water and Oxymel, but it is not without ſome danger, for that it doth oftentimes greatly diſturb the head: otherwiſe it might do ſome good.

There are alſo divers confections and Electuaries made for the ſame which might warme and dry a cold moiſt brain. Take conſerve of Roſes two ounces and a half, conſerve of Betony one ounce and a half, green Ginger half an ounce, Cinnamon one drachme, Cloves, Anniſeſeeds, of each one drachme, beat and mix them all together; and if it be too dry add as much of the ſyrup of Citrons unto it, as ſhall ſuffice, or as much of any other ſyrup. Of this exhibite every morning the bigneſſe of a nut in quantity.

Paulus Riccius *Phyſitian to the Emperor, his Electuary.*

Another Electuary. This is diſcribed by *Paulus Riccius*, head Phyſitian to the Emperor *Maximilian*, and is very comfortable for the head, for it doth warme and dry it.

Take Currans ſix ounces, Licorice two drachmes, boyle theſe in the water of Bugloſſe, Scabious, and Betony, of each 12. ounces: then ſtrain it and preſſe out all the humidity in the which being yet warm, ſteep one drachme of Rubarbe, Lavender five graines; being bound up together in a cloth, then put together in a pot, and ſtop it cloſe, and boyle it a good while in a kettle with water, preſſe it out and put into it as much Rubarbe and Spike as before, letting them there remain all a night, preſſe it out again as before, and ſteep it in the barks of Mirobalans, to wit, *Chebuli*, *Indi*, *Bellirici*, and yellow Mirobalans, of each one ounce. *Embilici* two drachmes, boyle them all together, and ſtrain them through a linnen cloth, then add Sugar ſix ounces, Manna two ounces, and let it boyle to the conſiſtence of a ſyrup: when it beginneth to cool, mingle in it Cinnamon half an ounce, Cloves, Galangale, Nutmegs, of each one drachme, *Lignum Paradiſi*, half a drachme, ſeeds of Fennel and Anniſe, of each half an ounce; mix them well together, and reſerve it in a gally pot. This following is likewiſe greatly commended for the ſame: Take conſerve of Betony, three ounces and a half, conſerve of Sage two ounces and a half, conſerve of Roſemary one ounce and a half, conſerve of Borage and Bugloſſe of each one ounce, of the aforeſaid confection of life two ounces, Cinnamon two drachmes, preſerved *Chebuli* half an ounce, preſerved *Embilici* two drachmes, ſix leaves of beaten gold, add as much ſyrup of Betony as may ſuffice. This confection alſo comforteth the heart: The right *Calamus Aromaticus* of the antient Phyſitians, as is deſcribed in the beginning of the eight part of this preſent booke, taketh away all cold head-aches and ſharpeneth the wit.

Calamus Aromaticus.

Another conſerve which is greatly commended for this kind of head-ach: Take Cinnamon one ounce, Cubebs, Mirabolans, *Chebuli*, and *Emblici*, of each two drachmes, red Roſe leaves red Saunders, red Corall, of each one drachme, Cardamony, Mace, Cloves, Nutmegs of each half a drachme, Sugar ſixteen ounces, diſſolve your Sugar in in Roſe water and Lavender water: boyle it till it be hard, and make it up into a cake or *Manus Chriſti*.

What vertues the confects of Coriander, Anniſe ſeeds, Fennel ſeeds, Cummin ſeeds, bitter Almonds, Haſelnuts, and ſuch like have to help, comfort and ſtrengthen a cold brain, as alſo they keep back and hinder the fuming vapors that would aſcend from the ſtomach into the head, is at large declared in the eight part.

An eſpecial Medicine of the ancient Phyſitians for the cold Head-ache.

CUt the Roots of Horſe reddiſh ſmall, dry them, and beat them into powder, give of this one ſpoonful in wine or broth, and let him ſweat in his bed very well, and faſt two hours after it. Let his meat be light of digeſtion, as pullets, and ſuch like. But I muſt needs miſlike of this remedy, for that the Horſeradiſh is very ſtrong, and doth more harme then good to the brain: neither ſeemeth it any way convenient to ſweat upon.

Certain

Certain wines composed for the cold head-ache.

TAke Rosemary two *M.* Nutmegs one ounce, dryed. Betonie two ounces, Cloves two drachmes, being cut very small, put upon them eight quarts of good Rhenish wine, let them so stand together three or four dayes. For the weaknesse of the stomach drink a good draught of it in the beginning of thy meales; but for the head-ache, at the latter end.

This wine is very good for a cold and moist brain, and hurtful for young folks and hot complexions.

Another for the same; Take roots of Bugloss one M. roots of Cichory half as many, flowers of Bugloss, of Borage, of Roses, of Rosemary, Harts tongue, of each half a *M.* boyl them in four quarts of wine the space that thou mayest boyl an egge hard; let it cool, strain it, and then take four quarts of wine more, and steep in it fixe sage leaves, and as much Rosemary, long Pepper one ounce, Galangale one ounce and a half, Cloves, Cubebs, of each half an ounce, Cardamony two drach. Cinamon, Corrans prepared, Coriander seeds, of each one ounce: these things being well beaten, tye them in a cloth, and boyl them with the wine, but not above twenty bubbles; then put both wines together in a little rundlet, and let the spices steep in them eight dayes together, pressing them out once a day. If this wine be too strong for thy drinking (as it is most like to be) then mixe other wines therewithal before thou drink it.

Of other Cephalical herbs and spices, thou shalt find a description in the eight part of this book.

Severtus his Rules and Observations of the cold Head-Ache.

Causes of the cold Head-Ache without matter.

COld ayr, cold winds, cold washings, and medicines applyed to the head; also medicines and meats cooling the brain; as Lettice, Purslain, Endive, Poppy, &c. much evacuation of blood, much sleep, which suffocate the heat, much sadnesse and fear, which consume the spirits, much joy or venery, or much weeping after some.

Signes.

The face is pale, the veins in the forehead and temples are not seen, the eyes swell, tending to white and pale, the sense is dull, inclined to sleep; and the party is apt to be fearful, and sluggish and dull in all the body. And to such cold things hurtful and hot things are good.

Inward Simple Medicines.

Roots of Pionie, gathered in the decreasing of the Moon, Fennel, Flower-deluce, Gilliflowers, Elecampane, Aristolochia, Angelica, white Diptame, Valerian.

Leaves of Rosemary, Marjoram, Rue, Betony, Sage, Hysop, Bawme, Calamint, Organs, Penny-royal, Centory, Cowslips, or Daisies, Eyebright, Savorie, Clarie, and also proper to the nerves, Marum, Champitis or Groundpine, Time, wild Time, called pelimountain basil.

Flowers of Stecades, which as *Mesues* saith, cleanseth the brain of black choler and flegme, and doth comfort the brain, the nerves and sense of motion, Rosemary, Lavender, Lillie convallie, Sage, Clary, Betony, Piony, Primrose, Linden, which are commended against the Vertigo, Epilepsie, Convulsion and trembling.

Seeds of Piony, Annise, Fennel, Panax, Caraway, Basil. Coriander prepared, wilde Parsnipe.

Woods of Aloes, Miscel of the oake, hasel, Juniper, Beech, Gualcum.

Fruits of Bay-berries, Juniper, Anacardia.

Spices of Cubebs, Cardamone, Grains of Paradiſe, Nutmeg, Mace, Acorns, Cloves, Cinamon.

Juyces, of Balſome, wine.

Gummes, of Olibanum, Maſtick.

Of the Sea; of Coral, Amber.

Parts of beaſts; as of Caſtoreum, of Civet, of Musk.

Outward Simple Medicines:

Leaves; Vervain, which greatly comforteth the head, eſpecially green leaves or dry, with the roots, mixed with oyl of pellemountain, Tobacco, Bay-leaves, folefoot, wormwood.

Roots of Aſarabacca, or Folefoot.

Flowers of Camomil, Melilot.

Seeds of Nigella, or Git.

Gumme of Juniper, Tacamabaca, Euphorbium.

Juyce of Laudanum.

Creeping things; As Chiſlops ſod in oyl and applyed to the part affected.

And of theſe ſimple Medicines, there are made inward and outward compounded Medicines.

Inward compounded Medicines.

℞. of leaves of Betonie, ſage, flowers of *Stecades, ana. M.* ß. roots of Piony, Fennel ſeeds, ana ℥.3. Nutmeg, ℥. ß. ſeethe them in water, *lb.*2. till the third part is conſumed, ſtrain it, and ſweeten it with ſugar if you pleaſe.

Or ℞. of Roots of Piony, and Gellefers, *ana.* ℥.2. Marjoram, Betonie, ſage, ana. *M.*1. ſtecades, *P.*1. Roſemary, Lavender, ana, *P.*1. Anniſeeds, Fennel ſeeds, ana. drach. one, ſeethe them in fair water, till the third part is waſted, then let it ſtand three houres to cool, then ſtrain it, and put ſugar to it, q. ſ. and then ſeethe it to a ſyrupe if you pleaſe, putting Cloves, Mace, Cinamon, ana. ℥. ß. wood of Aloes, and Nutmeg, *ana.* ℈. 1. into a linnen cloth to ſeethe therewith.

Or ℞. of Roots of Acorns, Galangale, ana. drach. 2. Pionie, ℥. ß. Cowſlips, ſage, Marjoram, *ana. M.* 1. hyſop, *M.* ß. ſeeds of Anniſe, Fennel, ſeſeli, ana: ℥. 2. ſtecades, Roſemary, ſage, *ana. P.*1. ſeethe them in fair water, q. ſ. ſtrain it, and to a pint of the liquor put ℥, ℥ of ſugar, and with Nutmeg, and the ſpecies of *Diamoſc. Dulcis*, (which yourſhall have at the Apothecaries) of each half an ounce; let the patient take every morning 4. or 5. ounces of it.

Medicinal wines.

Bawme wine, ſage wine, or of Roſemary, or of ſtecades.

Or ℞. Nutmegs, Mace, Cloves, ana. ℥. 1. Cardamon, Cubebs, *ana.* ℥.1. ß. ſeeds of Anniſe, Fennel, ana. ℥.2. Conſerve of Roſemary, of Bugloſſe, ana. ℥.1. the aromatical ſpecies of Roſes, Dianthos, ana. ℥. 1. infuſe theſe in three or 4. quarts of rich wine, then ſtrain it, and drink of it.

Or ℞. Cinamon, drachme 6. Cloves, Nutmegs, Galangale, Cubebs, Cardamon, grains of paradiſe, Fennel ſeeds, *ana.* ℥. ß. Raiſins of the ſun ſtoned, *lb.* 1. red-Roſes, ℥.3. Roſemary, wild Time, *ana.* ℥.2. put theſe in a bag, and let them hang in a veſſel of 20. quarts of new wine.

Medicinal Ale you may make of ſage, Bawme, Roſemary, Betony.

Or ℞. of Ginger, Cinamon, ana, ℥. 1. Roots of Gilleſers, ℥. ß. Elecampane, Bayberries, ana. ℥. 2. Mace, Nutmegs, ana. ℥. ß. Cardamone, drach. 1. bruiſe them, and put them into a bag into Ale.

Sweet wine and Hydromel.

℞. of Cinamon ℥, 1. Cloves, Nutmeg, *ana.* ℥. 2. Calamus aromatis, Cardamone, grains of paradiſe, Coriander prepared, *ana.* drach. 1. bruiſe them and put them into three or four meaſures of wine, and of honey *lb.* put all into an earthen pot cloſe ſtopt, and ſet the pot in a Kettle of water, and ſeethe it therein.

Melicratum.

Mellicratum.

℞. of honey ℔. 10. water ℔. 40. seethe it, skim it, after that put into a bag of sage, organs, mugwort, wild clarie, hysope, betonie. *ana.* M. 1. bay-berries bruised, ℔. 1. hop-flowers, *M.* 3. barley whole, *P.* 3. seethe them again till a third part is dissolved, strain it, and put into it a bag of Cinamon, Cloves, Galangale, Piper grains of paradise, *ana* ʒ. ß. this is good in cold cause for the head.

Distilled waters good in cold causes. Simple.

Water of Sage, Rosemary, Marjoram, Betonie, Lavender, Bawme, Cowslips, Lillie convallies, stecades, flowers of *tillia pionie*, Organes, Calamint, Juniper, wild Time, Cinamon.

Distilled waters Compound.

℞. of flowers of Lavender, *M.* 2. Nutmegs, Ginger, Cubebs, *ana.* ʒ. 3. Cinamon, Galangale, Mace, Calamus aromaticus, Rocket seeds. *ana.* ʒ. 1. ß. put them into a pottle of Rhenish wine, then still them.

Aqua Cephalica Langii.

℞. of Rosemary flowers, red-Roses, Marjoram. *ana. M.* 2. flowers of Bugloss, *M.* 1. the species of the confection of Anacardium, ʒ. 2. waters of Bugloss, of Betonie, of Tillia flowers, *ana.* ℔. 1. Lavender ℔. ß. of the spirit of wine, ℔. 1. ß. let them infuse a moneth, then distil them.

Or ℞. of Cowslip flowers, Rosemary, Marjoram, Betonie. *ana. M.* 1. of the species of *Diamoschi dulci*, *Diambræ. ana.* ʒ. 6. of the confection of *Anacardium*, ʒ. ß. Cubebs, wood of Aloes, Nutmeg, Cloves, Pepper long, wood of Balsome. *ana.* drach. 1. Roots of *Acorus*, round Aristolochia, Ireos, *ana* ʒ. 1. ß. Juniper berries, drach. 2. Lonage seeds, Anniseeds, Fennel seeds, *ana.* drach. 1. Cowslip water, Betonie water, sage water, *ana*, *q.* ß. let them infuse 8. dayes, then distil them, take it with a spoonful of the spirit of wine.

Or ℞. of flowers Lillie convallie, *M.* 1. sage, *M.* 2. Roses, *M.* 3. Lavender, baulm, *ana. M.* 2. Nutmeg, drach. 2. Cloves, ʒ. 1. ß. Mace, ʒ. ß. infuse these three weeks in wine, then distil them.

Syrupes.

As of *Stecades*, simple or compound, of Betonie, Rue, Pionie, Bawme, Calamint, mel anthosatum, anacardinum

Conserves.

Of Betonie, sage, Lavender, Bawme, Rosemary flowers, Marojram, pionie, Lillie convallies, Cowslips, stecades.

Candied, Nutmegs, Calamus aromaticus, Mirabolanes, Walnuts, bastard pellitory or bartram, rindes of Citrons.

Confections: Of Cubebs, Anniseeds, Fennel seeds, Carraway seeds, Coriander, Cloves, Cinamon.

Rob. or dryed juyce of Juniper.

Powders.

The species or powders of *Diambræ dulcis, aromatici rosati, Caryoph. Diarrhodon, Dianisi, Letitiæ Rasis*, which are to be had at the Apothecaries.

Boles.

℞. of Conserve of Betonie, sage, *ana* ʒ. 1. Mithridate, ℈. 2. and with sugar make 8 Boles, to be taken to bedward.

Or ℞. of conserve of Roses, ʒ. ß. of Rosemary flowers, Treacle, Mithridate, *ana.* ℈. 1. and with sugar make boles.

External Medicines, compounded.

Apply external moist medicines to the head when the ventricle is empty, lest being full, the vapours should ascend the more into the head.

Seethe of flowers of Lavender, Camomil. *ana. M.* 1. Bay-leaves, Hysop, Betony, Marjoram. *ana. M.* 2. in water, and therewith wash the head.

Or Rx. of flowers of Camomil, Melilot, stecades, Lavender, *ana. P.* 1. of leaves of Sage, Marjoram, Rosemary, Bayes, Calamint, *ana. M.* ß. Betony *M.* 1. ß. seethe them in water, and with a cloth or a spunge apply it hot to the head; do so often while it is warm.

Or Rx. of ashes ℥. 2. vinegar ℥. 6. warm it, and with a cloth apply it to the head.

Oyles.

Of Rue spike, Marjoram, wild Time, Castoreum, Euphorbium.

Or take of quick Lime, ℔. 1. salt ℔. ß. Marjoram, Pellemountain, stecades, Calamint, Sage, Betony, Rosemary, penny-royal, Bawme, *ana. M.* 2. seethe it in water ℔. 100. and pour it warm upon the head.

Unguents.

Rx. of oyl of Rue, of spike, ℥. 1. of Nutmegs ℥. ß. powder of Cloves, ℈. 1. distilled oyl of Marjoram, G. 4. and anoint the forehead and temples.

Or Rx. of Unguenti marciati, ℥. ß. oyl of Nutmegs, ℥. ß. of Lavender ℈. ß. Cloves, Gut. 4. and make a Cataplasme.

Or Rx. of Fenegreek, Lupines powdered, *ana.* ℥. 1. Bay-leaves ℥. ß. seethe them in sweet wine, and put to it oyl of flower-deluce, of Marjoram, and make a Cataplasme.

Emplaisters.

Rx. of Gum of Juniper trees, styrax calamite, Frankincense, ana. drach. 1. Pigeons dung, ℥. 2. Nightshade rosted, drachme 1. Nutmeg, Cloves, of each ℈. 1. and with oyl of spike, Turpentine, and wax, q. ß. make a plaister and lay it to the forepart of the head.

Or Rx. of the flower of Lupines, powder of pellemountain, Stecades, Marjoram, ana. drachme 2. of the Gum tacamanacæ, drach. 1. ß. oyl of Spike, wax, q. s. and thereof make a plaister.

Powders.

Rx. Nutmeg, Marjoram, Cloves, *ana.* drach. 1. stecades, Rosemary, wood of Aloes, ana. ℈. 1. Musk, Amber, ana. G. 3. make it a powder.

Or Nutmegs, Cloves, Kermes, ana. ℥. 1. rindes of Citrons, half a drachme, wood of Aloes, ℈. 1 make it a powder.

Rub the head with those powders, and sprinkle it with the spirit of wine, or else make quilted caps with the powders, and apply to the head.

Or. Rx. of Camomil, Betony, Vervain, Marjoram, Wormwood, Roses, Stecades, Rosemary, ana. P. 1. Gum of Juniper, half an ounce, Sene, Kermes, ana. half a drach. wood of aloes, ℥. 3. Amber, powder them, and quilt them in a cap of red cloth.

Or Rx. Olibanum, ℥. 1. Amber, ℈. 1. Marjoram, Rosemary, Betony, ana. ℥. 3. Stecades, drachme 1. Lavender ℥. 1. ß. Cloves, Nutmegs, ana. ℈. 2. powder them, and make a Cap.

Or Rx. Rue, wild Time, hysop, ana. ℥. 1. Marjoram, Betony, ana. drach. 3. Stecades, Lavender, ana. drachme 1. make them into powder, and make a Cap.

Pomanders.

Rx. of Laudanum, drach. 2. styrax calamite, half an ounce, Nutmegs, Mace, ana. ℈. 2. Rosemary, half a drach. Cinamon, wood of Aloes, ana. half a scruple, Civet, Musk, ana. G. 4. Amber, G. 2. oyl of Cloves, Gut. 5. Gum Dragagant dissolved in Rose-water, q. ß. and make a Pomander.

Or Rx. of Cloves, Nutmegs, Roses, ana. ℥. 1. Lavender, ℥. ß. Laudanum, drachmes 3. Benjamin, Styrax Calamite, ana. half a drach. Musk, G. 5. Civet, G. 4. Amber, G. 3. Gumme Dragagant dissolved in Rosewater, q. s. and thereof make a Pomander.

A

A Bag to boyle in Ale.

℞. Cinnamon, Ginger, *ana* ℥. i. *Galingall* ℥. ß. Bay-berries ℥. ß. Cloves, Nutmegs, grains of Paradise, Cubebs, *ana* ℥. i. bruise them, and put them in a thin cloth, and put them into a vessel of three gallons of Ale, or lesse.

Thus far *Senertus.*

Hitherto we have abundantly treated of cold head-aches with their appropriate remedies internal; now because that outward applications oftentimes are of no lesse effect then the inward medicines, I doe purpose at this present to set down divers external remedies.

Pomanders for the cold head-ach.

A Musk ball for the same; Take *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, *Lignum Paradisi, Styrax Calamita*, of each one drachme, Cloves, Nutmegs, Basil seeds, of each halfe a drachme, Rose-water with which a little Musk is dissolved, make it up into a ball; if thou add a small quantity of Amber, it will be the better. Thou shalt find divers sorts of these sweet smelling bals in sundry places of this booke described.

These bals are made after this manner: Take a warme mortar and pestle, and put into it a little of the aforesaid Rose-water, with the *Laudanum* and Wax, stirre them with the pestle together till they be molten, then mix the other powders with them, except the musk and Amber, and make it up in bals of what bignesse thou please; last of all, prick them full of little holes, yet not very deep, in the which thou shalt put the musk and Amber mixed, first with Rose-water; then take some finely prepared Cotton, wipe the mortar with it, and wrap the sweet ball in it, or keep it in a little red peece of sinadal. It is also good to snuffe up some of the foresaid powder into the nose, or else a little musk.

To perfume withall; Take frankincense, wood of Paradise, Mastix, Nutmegs, *Styrax Calamita*, of each by it selfe, or of them all as much as thou wilt. Also take frankincense, *Sandaracha*, wood of Paradise, of each a like quantity, throw it on glowing coles, and receive the vapor or smoke.

The manner of making lees and sopes for the same, with which the head being washed, the brain is comforted, her moisture dryed, and her overmuch cold changed into warmth, for which purposes thou shalt use these things following: Take Roses, Sene leaves, Betonie, Marjoram, Agarick, of each one drachme, steep them in hot lee the space of four or five houres; others first boyle them in wine, and afterward mingle it with lee.

Take Mace three drachms, Stechas, Marjoram, of each one drachme, blossoms of the wild Vine, Roses of each two drachmes, *Spica* one drachme, cut them all into small pieces, put them into a little bag, and then steep them in the lee; this comforteth the head, brain and memory, and helpeth also the swimming or giddinesse of the head.

Also take Spica halfe an ounce, Lavander flowers, Roses, Marjoram, Rosmary, roots of the blew flower deluce, of each two drachmes, cut them into pieces, and being put into a bag, steep them in lee and wash thy head with it; this strengthneth the brain, all the senses, and the memory very much.

Also take wild Mints, Nep, course Marjoram, Hyssope, Bay-leaves, of each sort two M. Rosemary blossomes, Stechas, Gold-flowers of each half a M. and seeth them in lee, take also Marjoram, Sage, Cammomil, Bay-leaves, Stechas, of each a M. lay them in steep the water of lee, as is aforesaid.

Washing ball for the cold pain of the head.

Here followeth divers sorts of washing bals very meet and necessary for the cold, and humours of the head, take Venice Sope, halfe a pound, bruise it and stamp it in a warme mortar with a hot pestle, and make it somewhat moist with Rose-water, or Lavander water, untill it be like unto dowe, then beat one ounce of Ireos roots, Cloves, Nutmegs Cinnamon, Cardimony, Stechas, of each a drachme, Roses, Basil, Rosemary, Lavander blossomes, of each halfe a drachme, all dryed and beaten to powder, and then mingle the same with the dowe of the Sope; and take oyle of Spiknard, and rubbing your hands therewithall, then make up the bals.

Also prepare or dresse the Sope in like sort as before is mentioned, and then mingle therewithall these powders hereafter following, to wit, Lavander halfe an ounce, Roses, Marjoram, Basil, of each a quarter of an ounce, *Ireos*, three quarters of an ounce, *Ben-*

zoin *Styrax Calamita*, Stechas, of each a drachme, *S*pike a quarter of an ounce and mingle them with Roſe-water, then annoint the temples of the head, and it will give a very ſweet ſmell or fume, and comfort the head and brain.

Alſo take of the foreſaid Sope prepared in the like manner as before is ſpecified, two ounces, and mix therewithall a quarter of an ounce of Agaricke Ireos, Cloves, of each half a drachme, Camphire a ſcrup. Then make bals thereof in what fore you deſire them.

Alſo take Venice *S*ope four ounces, Ireos, Cloves, Betony, of each three drachmes; Marjoram, Macis, Galigan, *Lignum Aloes*, Ciperus, Calamus, *S*andaracha, of each a ſcruple, liquid *S*tyras a drachme and a halfe, Muske foure graines, then dreſſe the *S*ope with Layander-water, as before is ſpecified. Alſo heretofore in Chap. 1. *Section* 2. is mentioned, how the ſtrong ſmell of the *S*ope may be taken away, and made very commodious and fit for uſe to divers purpoſes.

Here is to noted that if the bals be for preſent uſe, then are the bags hereafter mentioned not needful: but for the bags, you are to take dry Betony a M. Borage, Melilot, Mellet, a little dryed in a pan, of each half an ounce, Roſemary flowers, Stechas, of each a quarter of an ounce; make the bag ſo great, as the place of the grief, and put the ſame therein, and lay it to the place where the grief is. This following is ſtronger: Take dry Betony Rue of each half a M. Roſemary bloſſomes, Stechas of each an ounce. Baſil ſeed, Rue of each half an ounce; beat them in a mortar together, and put them in a little bag, and lay them to the head. Millet ſcorched or dryed a quartern; the like quantity of ſalt, and alſo as much Cammomil, put them in a little bag, and lay them warme upon the head; this is alſo very good.

Alſo take Stechas, Cammomil, wild Mints, Marjoram, Bay leaves, of each a handfull, Sene leaves, Cyprus, Citron ſhels, of each two drachmes, Cubebs, Nutmegs, Cloves of each a drachme, Macis, ſpike of India, Cyprus roots, Calamus, of each two drachmes, beat theſe together in a mortar; then put the ſame into two little bags; and if thou wilt have it warmer, then take Doves dung and Muſtard ſeed, of each three drachmes, Beaver cod, and *Euphorbium* of each a drachme.

Note alſo very ſpecially, that neither Roſes nor other ſtopping things be put in the bags, neither are theſe plaiſters following, in any wiſe ſerviceable; and although they be ſtrong yet do they but hinder the dividing of the matter. Therefore you ſhall not uſe the bags in certain hours after you have waſhed it with the Sope before mentioned.

A Powder for the head. Take Nutmegs, Macis, Roſemary, Cloves, Frankincenſe, Marjoram, Lavander, Stechas, of each a little quantity, beat it ſmall, and rub the head well therewithal upon the ſeam of the head, and then cover and keep warm the head with a cap, that the ſmell of the powders may the longer remain.

Alſo take Betonie, Marjoram, Stechas, Roſes, of each a M. Sage, Rue, courſe Marjoram, of each half ſo much, Roſemary two drach. Citron ſhels one ounce, Bark of Frankincenſe, Myrrhe, Frankincenſe, Maſtix, *Sandaracha*, of each half an ounce, Cloves half a drach. beat them all into powder. This is very good for the moiſt and rheumatick head, to dry it, and to procure warmth.

Plaiſters and ſalves: Take Aloes, penny-royal, Citron ſhells, wild Mints, *Sandaracha*, Frankincenſe, of each half an ounce, oyl of Roſes one ounce, *Laudanum* ſix ounces, beat theſe ſmall in a warm mortar, with a warm peſtel, put thereunto ſix ounces of molten waxe, the other being very ſmall beaten, then ſpread it upon leather, and cover it over with red ſarſenet: this ſhalt thou lay upon the head of the party grieved, in the morning whileſt he is faſting; this dryeth very ſtrongly, warmeth the head, and comforteth the braines.

Another; Take of the beſt *Laudanum* two ounces, Maces, five drach. Millet that is ſcorched or dryed, two drach. Turpentine and oyl of Camomil ſo much as ſhall be needful for one plaiſter, and then uſe the ſame as before is mentioned. Some take four ounces of *Laudanum* and Horehound in the place of Mace.

This plaiſter following is very ſtrong, and of great heat: Take Bever Cod, *Euphorbium*, Pepper, white Muſtard ſeed, *Styrax Calamita*, Rue, Horehound, of each a like quantity; this beat altogether with wine, untill it be like dowe, and thereof make cakes of a like weight, let them dry. When you will uſe them, rub them with oyl of *Coſtus* (otherwiſe Balſom) or Camomil oyl, until it be made fit for a plaiſter or ſalve, then lay it upon the forehead: for it is very good for any old or cold pain of the head, but lay it not unto the

the forehead onely, but also drop some into the eares, and it will be very warm, and therefore I do not counsel you to take much thereof.

This is of special account: Treacle or Mithridate, with the juyce of bruised Mints, make it thick as pap, and then anoint the forehead therewithal in the time of rest, and principally in *Hemicrania*, and where you find the head most cold, there use it oftenest.

Also take the roots of wild Cucumbers, Wormwood, of each two M. seethe them together with a soft fire in three ounces of water, and as much common Oyl, untill it be sodden to a third part. With this moisture rub the head till it be wet, and of the rest make a plaister, and lay it to the place of the pain.

Also take of the usual plaister *Apostolicon* four ounces, make it soft with the Oyl of Camomil, and then rub the place of the pain therewithal. Alwaies understanding that the hair is to be first cut off very close.

Hereunto may also of the oyl of Spikenard, of *Costus*, of Bevercod, of Camomil, and Dill be used, of each a like quantity, and then stamping all the foresaid herbs and roots with them:

Addition.

The herbs and simples that are used in a cold head-ache are these; Iris Illirica, *Oyl of the wild Olive, oyl of Almonds, the seeds of the chast tree, bitter Almonds,* Lana succida, *water Mints, the juyce of Ivie leaves, Aloes, Mints, wild Time, Melilot, the leaves of Baccharis, Rue, Scammony, Annise, Dog Fennel, Git, the lesser Coniza, the young leaves of Anagyris,* Rhodia radix, *Hippoglossa, Laurel, juyce of the wild Cucumbers, Galingale,* Nardus Italica, *Lavander, Valerian with the root, Cinamom, Cubebs, Musk, Sivet, Amber, Oyl of Baies, Mummie, Mastick, Agarick, Water of Vervain, Verbascum, Coloquint. For the heat and hot pain of the head, Privet blossomes, dry Roses, Purslain, the roots of water Lillies, and of Rhodia, juyce of Poppie, the greater Housleek, tame or garden Nightshade, Vine leaves, messe of trees and stones, oyl of Privet, juyce of Plantain, of Lettice, Fabaria beaten, Henbane, Muscilage of Fleawort, Mandrake, all manner of Housleek, white Saunders, the decoction of Sene, Camphire, &c. Some of these are used onely inwardly, some onely outwardly, and some also both waies, and for that cause they are not to be used without great circumspection.*

Of neesing for a cold and rheumatick head, §. 2.

MAny do advise to provoke neesing, for to cleanse the brain and head thereby; but it is also to be doubted, that the same will rather distemper the head, so that it must providently be dealt with, as shall presently hereafter be expressed. Therefore it is also needful to speak somewhat of neesing, which doth men much good or ill.

Neesing, *Sternutatio*, is a motion of nature, or of the expulsive vertue to drive out all that hindreth the ayr from the brains. Or, neesing is a special motion of the brains expelling superfluous moisture or matter, and that thorow the help of the attracted ayr, which driveth out the same speedily through the mouth and nose.

Sternutatio est motus naturæ, non morbus, secundum Galenum, 5o. de mor:

Sonitum Sternutationis dicunt esse multitudinem aeris exeuntis subitò per nares:

The causes of sneesing, are External, or Internal.

The External cause, is the looking into the Sun, or the snuffing or smelling of some sharp medicine, as is before said.

The Internal causes are humours, vapours, or wind, or some such like, grieving and oppressing the animal vertue or power; for the animal vertue sensibly feeling the hurt and oppression, doth stir up the expulsive nature, which is moved with violence to expel the evil matter offending the animal vertue and nature.

Item, take powder of Pepper, of Castoreum, of each a scruple, Hellebore, Gally Moscate, of each ten grains.

Sneesing is good in some causes, hurtful in others: It is good after the maturation of the coryza, and after the digestion of the matter causing head-ach, Frenzie or Lithargie,

Subtich,

Subith, Epilepsie, Apoplexie, Scotomy; and it is good to cause easie birth, and to expel the Secundine, *Gal. Sa. affo. Com°.* 34. 38.

It is hurtful in the beginning of a Catarrhe, and in diseases of the brest, and lungs and of the head-ach caused of fulnesse, and of diseases of the Ribs, if the sneezing be be caused before the digestion of the humour offending.

If sneezing medicines be given to sick parties to cause sneezing, if the party sneez not it is mortal.

Sternutatio cum rheumate in omni agritudine pulmonis & coxæ malum est.

Sed sternutatio in omni agritudine acuta sine rheumate bonum est: & maxime post digestionem, & post purgationem, & bonum est quando per se venit, sine mediis extrinsecis.

To stay sneezing, hold the breath as long as may be, rub the extremes, the ears, the gums, the pallate, the tongue, and rub the eyes much, which is best of all; also put the juice of Basil into the nostrils, and it helpeth, or else smell unto the oyl of Roses, of Willow-buds, or of water-Lillies, and put of the same oyles into both ears and upon the head.

Or, let the party sup cold water, and let the party draw cold water into the nostrils, and wash the face with it; if it be caused of cold, warm water used in the same manner helpeth.

Or, else cut off the hair, and lay a plaister of this following, *viz.* Pitch, Rosin, of each ℥. 1. Sheeps suet, ℥. β. Frankincense, ℥. 1. Saffron, ℥. 1. Laudanum, ℥. 3. seethe it to a plaister, and so apply it to the head.

Or, moisten the nostrils with warm water, or annoint them with Milk, Butter, oyl of Violets, oyl of Roses, oyl of sweet Almonds, the white of an egg, or seeds of Gourds, Poppy, with the white of an egg and mucilage of seeds of Quinces and fleabane: some will wash the face and mouth with cold water, also drink the decoction of Basil, and wash the head with the same decoction, and smell unto Annise and Smallage.

For Rheume or distillation of the head.

Take Sene-leave six drachmes, Rockets, four drachmes, long Pepper two drachmes, make them into powder, and take morning and evening one drachme, in white wine.

The causes of sneezings are sharp things, as Onions, Lillies, Hellebore, Pepper, Mustard-seeds, and such like, in smelling, eating and drawing them into the nose. To hold up the nostrils against the Sun, to tickle in them with some sharp things. But for more safty this is mine advice, that Neesewort be refrained as much as is possible, as also *Piretrum*, *Euphorbium*, and such like more, and principally by themselves alone. In like manner, although the wilde Cucumber doth draw forcibly, yet notwithstanding it is a great deal too sharp. But if it be found good advice to use sneezing, then are these compounded remedies hereafter following much safer and milder to cleanse the head and brains: Take Marjoram one quarter of an ounce, Nigella-seeds, Rose-mary-flowers, of each one drachme, Cloves two scruples; beat them small, and smell thereto.

Neesing powder.

Item take beaten Marjoram one quarter of an ounce, *Piretrum* one scrup. Ginger one scrup. white Hellebore nine grains, and beaten all small together.

Item, take *Pyretrum* ten grains, Betony a drach. Marjoram one drach. and a half, and beat them all together.

Item, take *Laudanum*, Myrrhe, *Amanacum*, white Hellebore, of each one drach. Frankincense, *Euphorbium*, Coriander, Ginger, long Pepper, of each half a drach. these beaten all to fine powder, it is very good for the cold murre.

Item, take *Pyretrum*, black Hellebore, of each half an ounce, white Hellebore, Bever-cod, of each two drach. Marjoram half a drach. beat them to powder; of this use but a little, and not very often; for it is very strong.

Oyl of Spike being put into the nose, doth provoke sneezing. There may also be drawn up into the nose two ounces of Marjoram-water, and afterwards wash the forehead and face warm therewith.

For what end sneezing is commodious or hurtful, you shall perceive here and there in this book.

Lotions for the feet. All Physitians do commend for sundry sicknesses, and also for cold ach in the head, this lotion of the feet: Take Betony, Roses, Eldern-flowers, Camomil, Marjoram and Sage, of each four handfuls; seethe them together, and every evening put the feet deep enough therein, and so continue about half an hour therein; this may be kept good three daies together.

If

If ſo be that the Patient cannot ſleep, he may uſe this three or four times a week: Take Cammomil, Melilot, Violet-leaves, of each one handful, water-Lillies half a handful, Poppy-heads broken in pieces one ounce; ſeethe and uſe them as before.

The order of dyet for the cold pain of the head, Sect. 3.

STrong wine is good, but not too much, to the end it do not diſturbe the head; once in eight daies he muſt bath and waſh his head with the decoction of Cammomil, Marjoram, and Stechas: or he may uſe according to the importance of the ſickneſſe, one of the aforeſaid lees or ſoaps; before meals is his head to be rubbed with warm clothes, and after meals take a little Marmalade, thereby to hinder the vapors of the ſtomach from aſcending to the head, and provoking of new pain.

Outward bruiſings of the head. Sect. 4.

ALl outward bruiſings or wounds of the head, whereof is not only cauſed great pain, but alſo great peril of life, do belong chiefly to Chirurgerie; notwithſtanding where we ſhall hereafter diſcourſe of the Scull, ſomewhat ſhall be ſpoken thereof.

What doth convey the medicines towards the head. Sect. 5.

VVE have hitherto deſcribed many kinds of remedies and medicines that are meet for the hot, cold, and other pains of the head; but becauſe the laxative and purging medicines through their own power do not expel all humours (for which they be given) out of all members indifferently, without the addition of ſuch things as may convey their operation towards ſome certain member, the which one deſireth to have them to purge: therefore we will diſcourſe here ſomewhat thereof. And that you may by example clearly underſtand the ſame, then behold the *Oxymel* that ſhall immediatly be deſcribed: it prepareth or digeſteth flegmatick humours indifferently as well in one member as in another. But if ſo be you mix therewith Nutmegs, Pionie-ſeeds, or Cubebs, then doth it onely purge the head, and none other part of the body: and if you put thereto Tamariſcus and Caper-roots, then doth it purge out of the Milt, and ſo forthwith all the reſt. Now becauſe we write here onely of the head, theſe are the principalleſt ſimples or herbs, that do conduct the medicines towards the head; to wit, Nutmegs, Cubebs, and Pionie, Penniroyal, Marjoram, Balſam wood and ſeeds, Frankincenſe, Bever-cod, *Laudanum*, Melilot, the right *Acorns*, *Lignum Aloes*, Myrrhe, Chamedris, Squils, *Nuces pineæ*, Spikenard, Gentian, Hyſope, Pepper and *Sagapenum* or *Serapinum*.

There are many things more here and there diſcovered in this book, which the diligent Reader ſhall finde to be very meet for the Head-ach.

Additions unto the pain of the head.

FOr the forementioned pain of the head there are certain things commemorated, that are commodiouſly and much uſed, and yet are not diſcovered how they ſhould be prepared.

Thus, to the end the Reader might be ſatisfied, we will here deſcribe certain of them, and begin with *Oxymel*.

Divers kinds of Oxymel. Sect. 6.

FIrſt we will begin with that which at the Apothecaries is called *Oxymel ſimplex*: for that it is made onely of honey and vinegar; now for to make the ſame, take clarified honey four ounces, pour thereto two ounces of cleer water: ſeethe the ſame together, and ſcum it, until all the water be ſodden away; put thereto two ounces of vinegar, let it ſeethe together unto a ſyrup. This conſumeth all tough ſlime and thick humours, openeth all obſtructions, cleanſeth the breaſt, and maketh an eaſie breathing.

The ſecond *Oxymel* is called of the Apothecaries *Compoſitum* or *Diureticum*. It is made

made in this manner: Take Fenel roots, and roots of Smallage, of each two ounces, the seeds of Parsley, of Butchers broom, of Sparage, of Smallage, and of Fennel, of each an ounce: take out the core of the roots, chop them, and seethe them in a quart of water untill they be mellow, afterwards wring them out thorow a cloth, and add to the decoction six ounces of sharpe vinegar, twelve ounces of cleansed honey, let them seethe together unto a sirupe. This is much stronger for all uses then for the former: it doth attenuate all tough slmies, it driveth them out of the members, openeth the obstruction of the liver, of the melt, and of the kidnies, it expelleth the urine and sweat.

The third *Oxymel* is made of Squills called *Scyllinum*, or at the Apothecaries *Squillitiçum*. for this, take vinegar of Squills which is described before in the second Chapter, Sect. 1. against the cold pains of the head, four ounces, clarified honey six ounces, and seethe it altogether unto a sirupe.

The fourth is *Oxymel Scyllinum compositum*, the which is thus made: Take the roots of Smallage, of Fennel, of each two ounces, the roots of Parsley, of Butchers broom, of Sparage, the seeds of Smallage, and of Fennel, of each half an ounce: seethe them together in a quart of water untill the roots be mellow; unto this decoction add twelve ounces of vinegar of Squils, clarified honey 18. ounces, and then seethe it to a sirupe.

They are both very good to attenuate the tough slimes, to strengthen the stomach, and to provoke urine: but the first is stronger to open all obstructions, and is special good against all quotidian and quartain agues.

Purging sirupe of Roses. Sect. 7.

TAke a pound of red or Damask Rose leaves, put them into a pot with a narrow neck, powre thereon about three times so much of hot clear water, let it stand so 8. or 12. hours covered very close, afterwards wring it hard out with thy hand, strain the liquor clear thorow a cloth: then take again fresh Roses as before, and powre the strained liquor seething hot upon it, let it stand as before: wring it out again, and do this afterwards eight or twelve times together (the oftener the better) and it will be the stronger in purging.

Lastly, weigh all that straind juyce of Roses, and put half so much Sugar unto it, and clarifie it with the white of an Egg, untill it be very clear: afterwards let it seethe to a sirupe. Some do stamp the Roses, that the vertue might come out the better.

Others do make it after this manner, as followeth: Take red or Damask Rose leaves two pound and a half, powre thereon ten quarts of May dew, or clear rain water made meetly hot: let them infuse together in a warm place a whole day and a night stopt very close. The next day wring it out hard: make the broth not seething, but onely meetly hot: then powre it again upon two pound of fresh Rose leaves: let them stand and steepe, as before. The third time take one pound and a half of Roses; the fourth time one pound, and so the fift and sixth time; last of all, after the four last times, take each time half a pound of Roses: afterwards, the liquor being strained, put unto three parts of it one part of Sugar: seethe it well, clarifying it unto a sirupe. Of one of these sirupes may be given to a full grown person three, four, or five ounces at one time: unto a young child one ounce, unto one of eight or nine years old, two ounces, and further after the same rate, according to the greatnesse or smalnesse.

This sirupe doth quench the thirst and heat in all hot ague, it doth strengthen the stomach and the hot liver, defendeth the heart from all venome and stinch: therefore it is also good for the plague, and loseth very gently.

It is also prepared with Rubarbe and other things, according to the opinion of every Physitian.

Barley water. Sect. 8.

IT is ordained before, for the hot pain of the head, to give unto the sick body Barley water for his daily drink, the which is prepared after divers manners, but is commonly prepared thus: Take unto a good deal of water one ounce of peeled Barley, let it seethe untill it break. Some do steepe it two or three hours before in clear water. And albeit that such Barley water have small force, yet it is better then bare water, when the patient is forbidden to drink wine.

There

There are also other things more, according to the importance of the sick person, put unto it, as Mastick, Barberies that do colour it like unto wine. In like manner are also herbs, roots, and all that one will, decoct therein.

Manus Christi with Pearls. Sect. 9.

THis cordial Sugar is very common, and is made thus: Take 12. ounces of the whitest Sugar, seethe it with Rose-water like as is taught in our Introduction, afterwards when it beginneth to be cold, stir an ounce of prepared Pearls amongst it, and make Tabulates or *Manus Christi* of it. It is good for all faintnesse, hot agues, heavy fantasies and imaginations.

The Apothecaries do commonly not take more a drachme of Pearls upon a pound of Sugar, because men will not go to the cost thereof.

Without Pearls the Apothecaries do call it *Manus Christi simplex*: they decoct the Sugar with Rose-water, without putting any thing else unto it. It is made also with Violet-water, Cinnamon-water, and howsoever that one will have them.

The Third Chapter.

The Hair of the Head.

EVen as we have discoursed of all kind of pains in the head, so we will now begin certain other things of the same in particular, and of that which maketh shew outwardly in the top of the head, to wit, the hair, the which groweth there of it self, garnisheth the head, decketh and covereth it. And although the same hair (like as the nailes also) hath no other government but onely the growing and garnishing by nature: nevertheless it hath that secret in it, that thorow his colour, his hardnesse, softnesse, fineneſse, curling, evenneſse, and other marks, it doth sufficiently give knowledge how the brains which lye under it are inclined; to wit, the cold, warmth, dryth, moisture, as also their mixed complexions, as cold and dryth, warmth and moisture, whereby it may be known what humour or moysture doth most abound, or whether ones hair also will quickly fall off or not. These weighty and other causes have planted by nature in all men, especially in women, a carefulneſse to look unto, and maintain it: the one with making it grow more or thicker then the other, to change the colour, to make it fall away, to keep it clean from all vermine, and to free and clear it from all defaults. Because therefore that this is so greatly esteemed, it is requisite to prosecute our attempted method, and to write also somewhat thereof. And first of all, of those things which cause the hair to grow: afterwards, to take that away which hindreth, or to draw or pluck it out.

To cause the hair to grow and to colour it. Sect. 1.

ALl they that desire to have their hair to grow thick and apace, are to annoint the place oftentimes with hony where they will have it grow: also to make a lee of hearbs (to wit for young maidens and women) who bear the name thereof, *Callistrichon*, fair haired, *Polistrichon*, much hair, *Capillus Veneris*, Venus hair. And if any body have a bald patch, then take garden snails pluckt out of their houses, Horsleaches, Bees, Wasps, Salt, of each a like quantity: Powd them not too hard one amongst another, put them into a glassed pot that is pitched beneath, and having a small hole, bury it the space of eight dayes in warme horse-dung, and receive the moisture that droppeth out in another glasse bound under it; and anoint therewith the baldnesse, rubbing well the place first; wash the head with the decoction of urine, Wormewood, Southernwood, and of Linseed well parched; goats-milk doth likewise make the hair grow fair. You shall also find more things hereafter in the description of the eye browes and of the beard.

Of the dying of the hair in general. Sect. 2.

IF any desire to dy the hair otherwise then it is grown by nature, then is this generally to be observed: that he awayes wash the hair with lee made of vine stockes, wherein a piece of Allum is dissolved: for the Allum maketh a preparative for to receive all colours, as is well known to all Dyers.

Here do now follow certain sorts of colours.

Yellow hair. Amongst Dutchmen there is no colour more highly commended then the gold colour or yellow, like as it was much esteemed of the Romans; so that sometimes they dyed their beards and hair with gold: but these things following are also meet for this purpose.

Take ashes of the Vine sticks, eight ounces, of Barley-straw two handfuls, of Licorice two ounces, seethe them together in a great quart of water; afterwards let it settle, and wash the head with this lee, and let it dry of it self.

Item take shaven Beechen wood, Gold flower, Venus or maiden hair, of each one handfull, Licorice half an ounce, Saffron one scrup. let this mollifie in lee, wash the head, and let it dry of it self; also as often as one combeth him, he must wet the combe therein.

Item take Willow leaves white beaten mustard seed, *Consolidia Saracenica*, broad Plantain, water Cresses, Radishes, white Hellebore, Bryony, Onions, of each half an ounce: cut them all in pieces, and let them seeth all together a while in lee, temper one ounce of Honie amongst it, and then let it stand until the hearbs do putrifiy; afterwards put more fresh hearbs therein, and seeth them with as much hony as there is of the decoction, until it be thick, and annoynt the place where you desire to have the hair grow: but look well to it that you touch no other hair with it, for it would be disordered thereby, but I advise no man to use much of this salve, for it is hurtful for the head.

Item in March take Poplar buds, and seeth them with lee: take also pownded Colewort seed, temper it with the oyle of Walnuts like to a salve, and annoynt the head therewith.

Or take nettle roots, horse Radish, the gum of the Birch, make it hot upon the fire with the lee, and wash the head therewith. Iuniper oyle annointed thereupon after washing, will easily make yellow hair to grow: but note that this oyle is hot, This should also the fruit of the Beechen tree do, being laid in lee.

Black hair. Black hair: Some that by nature have black hair, do diligently seek, to augment the colour; others will cloke therewith the mishapen hair, many will dye gray hairs therewith, which to effect, they anoint it with the juyce of Sage.

Burn Hasel nuts, as many as you please, in a luted pot, stamp them to powder, then make them unto a salve with the tallow of a Bear or Goat; this doth not onely dye black, but maketh also the hair to grow.

Curled hair. Item take beaten Gall nuts six ounces, seethe them in nine ounces of Sallet-oyl, as long as one would seethe an egg hard; afterwards wring them out, mixe amongst it pounded Privet, burnt Vitriol, Salt gem, of each one quarter of an ounce: let it seethe a good while together, having washed the hair with the decoction of Blites and Elderne flowers, then make it fat with the aforesaid oyl.

Item take the green shales of walnuts, stamp them and seethe them, anoint the hair with it, and it will be as black as Pitch. For this also helpeth Cypers nuts, Bean-straw, burnt shales of Hasel nuts, peels of Pomgranats, unslackt Lime, Privet, and oyl of Nuts.

For to make curled hair, take Mallowes layed in lee; if one would dy his hair gray, then make ashes of the innermost barke of Ivy, and wash you oftentimes therewith, or anoint your hair with Badgers grease.

To hinder gray hairs. Sect. 3.

TO be gray is onely proper to mans head, which commeth thorow the abatement of the natural warmth, or thorow the ryoting life, whereby *Flegme* is increased, and it is sometimes also caused as well thorow unnatural heat as cold: but if any be gray before his time, that commeth by use of much fruit and fish: but to

utter

utter the truth, the gray hairs are none other then an Enſign or banner for us, that death planteth upon our heads, ſignifying that it will ſhortly have victory over us. But as there be many that would hide their age, and would rather be thought young men, then old fools; ſo hath it been alſo found out, not how to turn away gray hairs, but how to prevent the ſame, whereof we will here write ſomewhat.

The chiefeſt is the daily purging of flegme, and ſpecially with vomits and cliſters, for which are fit *Pilulæ Choctæ, Triſera Saracenica*, theſe pills following.

Take Coloquint, Turbith, Aloe, of each a drachme, Fennelſeed, Anniſeeds, Parſley-ſeed, black prepared Hellebore and Pepper, of each half a drachme, Diagridion two ſcrup. make thereof a maſſe with the juyce of Wormwood, take a drachme thereof at the moſt at one time, for they be ſtrong: good heed is to be taken in this purging; that age for gray hairs be not thereby taken away.

Waſh the head twice in the week with my Lixivium mentioned in the 1. Chap. this takes away gray hairs, and preſerves from baldneſſe.

Of baldneſſe and falling off of the hair, waſh the head with my Lixivium above mentioned.

The ancient Phyſitians do aſcribe many things for preventing gray hairs, what is to be eaten, drunk, and refrained: alſo what is to be uſed a whole year in youth, and that one muſt eat ſnailes: ſo that it grieveth me to enter into ſo needleſſe a matter (when one would ſtay and prevent the courſe of nature) I will therefore be brief. Anoint thy head with the oyl of Bever-cod, with the oyl of a Bear, freſh oyl of Roſes, or oyl of Muſtardſeed: all which are meet to prevent gray hair: or take the ſpleen of an old dog, and rub the hair therewith. Alſo the oyl of Privet doth prevent gray hair.

Item take Taſſel, ſeethe it in lee and uſe it daily: ſteep in the lee Mirtle leaves, Cypers nuts, Iuniper-wood cut, the barke of Fir wood with the leaves, Gall-nuts, and ſuch like.

To take away hair. Sect. 4.

TAke a pint of wine, drown twenty green frogs therein, or as many as can be drowned therein, then ſet the pot forty dayes in the warm Sun: afterwards ſtrain it hard thorow a cloth, anoint the place therewith where you will take away the hair.

Make the place often times moiſt with the juyce of yellow Lillies, which is wilde Flower-deluce. Take Ants eggs and rub the place therewith, wherein you would have the hair taken away; it will fall off and grow no more again. Item anoint the hairy place with the juyce of Sloes, and it will make the hairy place bald and ſmooth.

To pluck out hair.

Will you pluck out hair without breaking the skin: then take ſix ounces of Turpentine, ſet it on the fire in a new pot, and let it ſeethe ſomewhat; then powre it into a pan full of cold water, and ſtir it continually about with a woodden ſtick untill it run together. Then powre therein other freſh water, and pluck it with your fingers well from another, whereby it may be well waſhed; and do this ſo long, untill it waxe fair and white; afterwards temper amongſt it one ounce of beaten Maſtick in the foreſaid pot, ſeethe it all together as before, and waſh it alſo afterwards as before is done, and keep it alwayes covered with water, and when you will uſe it, powre out the water: let it melt with the fire, ſpread it on a cloth, and lay it no where but on the place whence you would have the hair drawn out, and when it is cold (as it will be quickly) pull off the plaiſter with violence. Then will the skin remain very white and bare of hair, then have a piece of freſh larde ready, and therewith anoint the place, and then wipe it by and by with a cloth: then will the skin be bald and ſmooth.

Of diverſe defaults of the hair. Sect. 5.

THe cunning and expert Phyſitians do reckon nine kinds of defaults of the hair: *Contorſio, Decoloratio, Quaſſatio, Fractio, Atrophia, Canities, Alopecia, Defluxio and Ophiaſis.* The firſt, *Contorſio*, is called a curling or intangling of the hair. The ſecond, *Decoloratio*, a deformity of the colour. The Third *Quaſſatio*, which is a ſplitting or cleaving aſunder of the hair. The fourth, *Fractio*, a ſhort breaking away

away of the hair, that it ſnappeth aſunder. The fifth is, *Atrophia*, that is as much as a drying away or conſuming of the hair for lack of food. The ſixth is, *Canities*, when the hair before his due time becomes gray or white. The ſeventh is, *Alopecia* or *Area*, which is baldneſſe or falling off of the hair. The eight is *Defluxio*, which is alſo a falling away of the hair, like as in them who loſt their natural heat, or recover after a long continued ſickneſſe. The laſt is *Ophiaſis*, which her name of the ſnaks: it is alſo a changing of colour not unlike to the other; for it is parry-colouring like to a ſnake.

Of baldneſſe and falling off of the hair. Sect.

BAldneſſe and falling away of the hair is three-fold: as the falling off of the hair of the head, of the eye-browes, and of the beard. Of the two laſt we will diſcourſe in their place: here we will onely ſpeak of the firſt falling away of the hair. The cauſes of the ſame are inflamed moiſtures, whereby the hair before was fed: which through inflammation thereof is taken away, as already hath been rehearſed: for whenſoever that it wanteth ſuſtenance, the hair muſt of meceſſity dry away, and fall off with his roots, as may be ſeen in them that have hot brains, and become bald betimes; and contrary-wiſe women, children, and they that be gelded, very ſeldom. Thus to ſpeak of the means: the firſt proof is, whether the hairs may be reſtored or not, to rub the bald place: and if it be not forth-with red, then is there no hope at hand: but if it were waxed, then it is a ſign that there is ſtill ſome good blood, and therefore good hope alſo. And to come unto it, firſt muſt good order of diet be obſerved, to refrain ſtrong wine, Borage, rear egs, and all that is light of digeſture is commodious for him, and to drink white, clear, and ſmall wine, that is ſweetiſh. Bathing and rubbing is very meet for this diſeaſe; if the perſon be full of blood. open the head vein, or that on the noſe, or the vein behind the ears, and alſo purge, if it be needful, of whatſoever occaſion it be that the falling away of the hair happeneth. Theſe means following are alwayes convenient for it: Take *Euphorbium*, burnt Haſel nut-ſhels, burnt Cheſtnut-ſhels, Creſſes ſeeds, India Spica, *Thuſcum*, of each one drach. bitter Almonds with their pills burnt, one quarter of an ounce; make ſalve thereof with vine cuict, oyl of Radiſhes or Barberies.

Item, take *Euphorbium*, wild Rue, Boreas, Muſtard-ſeed, Mugwort, of each a like much; beat them altogether and make thereof a ſalve with the juyce of Onions: let the head be rubbed untill it be red, and then anointed therewith. Of ſuch like remedies are many more deſcribed by the ancient Phyſitians: but omitting them, ye have ſome here that are certain and common.

Take Pegions dung, burn it to aſhes, then powre lee upon it, and let him be waſhed therewith.

Or Haſel nuts with the ſhels beaten ſmall and tempered with Bears greaſe, is very good.

Oyl of Eggs doth defend and keep the falling out, and maketh the hair for to grow again where it is fallen away. Foraſmuch as the oyl of Eggs is ſo good for this, and for many other things more, it is needful to teach here how to make the ſame.

Oyl of Eggs. The oyl of Eggs and his vertue. Take hard ſodden yolkes of eggs as many as you will, break them in pieces, and parch them in a pan untill they waxe ruddy, then ſhall you ſee oyl run out; then without ceaſing muſt you ſtir them about, and when they be throughly parched, preſſe them hard through a woollen cloth.

It is many times approved and found, that this oyl doth not onely cauſe the hair that is fallen off to grow again, but doth prevent and ſtay the hair from falling. It alſo healeth, and cauſeth all other itches and ſores to heal.

Further: Take well ſalted Barley bread, burn it to powder, and temper it with Bears greaſe, and anoint your head therewith.

Item, ſlake a glowing ſteel in the lee wherewith you will waſh you: uſe it often without any thing elſe therein.

Take Mirtle ſeeds and the leaves: ſeethe them in water, and waſh the head therewith.

All that is taught hereafter againſt the falling off of the hair in the eye-browes and the beard, is alſo meet for this purpoſe.

Of the scales of the head, of the beard, and eye-brows. §. 7.

THe Latinists do call the scales of the head *Furfures*, which is bran, well known of all people, and are very common in all mens heads. They grow there thorow a hot complexion, and when they abound much and above custome, then were they wont to be messengers of leprosie. They that have them so excessive, do get them thorow a licentious life, and surfeiting in eating and drinking, through incontinency, strong wine, much use of Garlick, Onions, and Mustard, whereby the blood is burnt to ashes.

For this must one begin with purging, like as in all dry itches shall be expressed. But if the person have much blood, then is he to be let blood; if not, then are to be used necessing powders, gargarismes, and boxing cups are to be set on the shoulders and neck, and afterwards these things: Seethe Mallowes, or Venus hair in water, wash therewith the head and face, and alwaies rub well the head; or boyl Fennel seed, Licorice, Flea-wort, Lupins, hollihock roots, take out the muscilage as shall be taught hereafter, and temper them with the juyce of Melons. Item take Nut-tree wood, or Nut shels burnt to ashes, put them in the lee and wash you therewith. Item, take Charnil, Southernwood, make a lee thereof with a little vinegar.

Item burn Hay flowers to ashes, and pour lee upon it. Item, take Elecampane roots, and infuse them a good while in lee.

Or take Storks bill, let it seethe in water, and foment well the scales therewith, that they be well frothed, and afterwards lay the herbs on the top of it, and they will wear away.

Will you yet have stronger things? then take the gall of a Bull, Coloquint, *Sal Alcali*, Boras, of each one drach. Galls, pills of Pomgranates and their blossoms, of each one scruple, and temper them together.

Item, take narrow Plantain, Henbane seeds, and salt, of each a little, seethe them in water, and rub the scales therewith; the same also doth *Aqua-vitæ* with brimstone amongst it.

Heretofore in the second Chapter, and §. 1. you have a bag for lee, which beginneth, Take *Spicæ*, &c. you may use the same also for the scales, and put thereto two ounces of Orange pills, whereof some of the white is cut away.

Let the head be purged with Aloes, rectified by the advice of a discreet Physitian. Or else seethe ℥. 1. or five or six drachmes of Sene, sod in water with Anniseeds unto a quarter of a pint: drink the strained decoction of it in a morning fasting, and it will purge the head, but observe such dyet as is used after purging physick.

For to draw the muscilage out of the seeds and roots, the Apothecaries do call the slime drawn out of all seeds and roots *Muscilagines*; it is much used in this matter, and is thus prepared.

How to make the slime or muscilage of seeds and roots.

Take roots and seeds, chop and stamp each according to the quality, seethe them untill the liquor be very slimy and muscilaginous; this being done, pour it all together into a long bag that is piked beneath, and bind it hard to a staffe, afterwards take two little boards and fasten the said bag between them, wring it hard from above downwards, then runneth the slime or muscilage out of it, receive it in a clean porrenger, and after this fashion wring or presse out all the slime that will come forth.

For to drive away Lice and Vermine. §. 8.

Lice.

THis loathsome and (especially to children) troublesome worm, hath his most abode in the foresaid hair of the head, and they do grow through moisture of the flesh, or (to speak properly) of a grosse and moist vapour that fumeth out at the pores, and through natural warmth becometh outwardly a Louse, and receiveth also a vital spirit, and is altered into a little worm with six feet, increasing and seeking their meat in the place of their generation: therefore are children and women more plagued then men that are dry by nature, and be much lesse hurtful to young children then to full grown persons, yet they have this commodity thereby, that they that have most lice be wholly freed from the head-ache.

Their cause.

The cause whence they are ingendred, may be overmuch eating and small digesture, or eating of meats that be very moist, as divers fruits, and especially figs and chestnuts; also over much carnal copulation, unclean clothes, and such as are worn over-long.

Their remedies.

Now that one may be rid of this vermine, anoint the head with the broth of Salt fish, with the juyce of Alehoof, the juyce of Fumitory mixt with vinegar: take Gentian and seethe it in lee, and wash the head therewith.

Take Bay-berries, or (if you have them not) the oyl of Bay, vinegar, pownded Bay-berries, burnt Harts horn, seethe them together in water or lee, and wash the head therewith.

Salve. Take half a pound of Barrowes grease, mixe and temper amongst it one ounce of Quick-silver, and one ounce of the oyl of Bay, Licebane, and white Hellebore, of each half an ounce, *Galgan*, one drachme, and a little vinegar, temper them all together, and therewith anoint the head, and put a kercher on the head, and in the morning wash the head with lee.

Another. Take Barrowes grease half a pound, beaten Liver four ounces, Wolves-bane, and white Hellebore roots, of each half an ounce, oyl of Bay one ounce; temper amongst it one ounce and a half of Quicksilver so well that one cannot see it, salt one drach. use a little thereof, for it is strong.

Item, take unpreparèd Coriander, seethe in water, wash therewith the head, and all places where there are any Lice, and wash the clothes in like manner, it driveth away Lice and fleas; you may also try the same with Coriander leaves.

Crab-lice.

Against Crab-lice you are to use all the former things. They grow of a stinking matter, that nature expelleth through the hairy skin, as in the eyebrowes, beard, and privities; they are most plagued with them that eat many kinds of meats, use small exercises, and much bathing. For to consume this unclean matter, he is to be purged with *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, and to use oftentimes gargarismes with the syrupe of vinegar, and a little mustard seed, and to wash the place with Allom water, and Salt water, or that wherein Staves acre is decocted.

Item take Staves acre and Allom, of each one drach. beat them together, temper it with honey, and anoint therewith: Others do take Sal-armoniac, Aloe and Borax amongst it, and instead of honey, vinegar of Squills: also the white of a rosted egg is commended for it, wrapt up in a cloth, and held as hot upon the place as may be suffered. This being done three or four times, they will fall away.

Lice in Childrens feet.

Sometime young children have also Lice growing in their feet; for them take new laid hen eggs, let them be sodden hard, cut the white in pieces in the breadth, beat then the yolks, and with fine linnen rags lay it on the feet, and then the white upon it; and so being well bound certain houres, the Lice will creep to the white of the egg.

Wash the head or any other place with my Lixivium mentioned Chap. 1. Sect. 4. pag. 34. it killeth Lice in any party.

The Lousie evil, Phthiriasis, *a miserable sickness*. §. 9.

EVen as we have written of the Lice, so we will adjoyn thereto the Lousie evil, which the Grecians do call *Phthiriasis*. This is a wonderful and terrible sickness, that a man would be eaten up with such baggage worms, and so bereft of his life. It happeneth that these worms do breed of moisture of a mans flesh, and begin commonly in the eyebrowes, and in some scabs, or among some scurf therein, when they do break of themselves or are opened. Then do Lice creep out, and so by little and little out of the whole body with such danger, that very skilful Physitians have enough to do therewith, and yet nevertheless are these medicines following ordained for the same; Take the juyce of Fumitory, Borage, Germander, of each two ounces, *Mirobalani, Chebuli, Indi, Citrini*, of each four scrup. black prepared Hellebore one quarter of an ounce, prepared Agarick half an ounce, Aloe three quarters of an ounce, *Epithymum*, Sene leaves, roots of Polipody, of each one ounce; pownd all that is to be pownded, and temper them with the juyce; if it be too soft, let it dry, and form a lump or masse; thereof take one drachme, and make fine pills of it, of the which you are to take twice or thrice every week, two at one time, an hour before supper.

Prepare this lee ensuing, Take Aristolochy, Swines bread, of each half an ounce, of Gentian, *Rhaphanitis*, of each three drach. Centory one quarter of an ounce, seeth these things in lee, and wash therewith.

Item, take Ireos half an ounce, Squils one ounce, Centory half an ounce, Mirtle seed one ounce, Cloves three quarters of an ounce, bitter Almonds four ounces, vinegar as much as is needful: let them seethe together stopt well in a glasse in water by a soft fire

about the ſpace of four houres: afterwards wring it out well, and with this oyl anoint the puſhes or ſcabs whence the lice do iſſue and breed.

A ſalve. Take Iuniper berries pounded well one ounce, of Sallet oyl three ounces, of white wine one ounce and a half; ſeethe them together till the wine be conſumed, afterwards wring it out; then take two ounces of Barrows greaſe, Elecampane roots roſted under the aſhes one ounce and a half, Litharge of gold one ounce, prepared quickſilver one ounce and a half; temper them and annoint the ſcabs therewith, but beware of the eyelids that you do not annoint them therewith.

In this louſie evill it is commanded to mortifie the Quickſilver as hereafter followeth: take wild Ferne and the roots three M. Limons, and Oranges cut in pieces, of each three drachmes, ſeethe them in water untill the third part be conſumed; afterwards ſtrain it through a clean cloth, and temper the Quickſilver well amongſt it. There are other meanes more to kil the Quickſilver, like as hath been ſhewed in the other ſalves for Lice. *How to prepare and mortifie Quickſilver.*

Of the bad ſore, Scurf or Scall of the head, and ſuch like. § 10.

AS through the unnatural moiſture of the head Lice do grow; ſo doth there come thereof bad ſores or ſcals of the head, as is ſeen in children which are full of moiſture. And although theſe ſcabs are for the moſt part alwayes an expulſion of nature, whereby children are cleared from other accidents and noyſome diſeaſes, for which cauſe they ought rather to be provoked then healed: nevertheleſſe heed muſt be taken that this breaking out come not to grow old, and to be changed into a bad ſore or ſcall, the which is not to be holpen in people of years, nor yet in young children, therefore will wee here write ſomewhat thereof.

Melt ſome of my yellow ſalve (which is made of Roſin, wax, Venice Turpentine, hony, and hogs lard) the quantities of each you ſhall know hereafter in my writings; firſt cut off the hair of the head as cloſe as may be, then put the ſame ſalve as hot as may be upon all the head ſomewhat thick, that when it is cold upon the head it may cover all the ſcurf and ſcabs, and ſcald, then lay clean white paper upon it, and keep it upon the head faſt bound, or ſowed to, for three dayes; then take it away, and put on freſh as before; and with this onely have I cured all ſore, ſcald, ſcurfy, ſcabbed, or leproſy heads that ever I undertook, waſhing of it firſt with my Lixivium.

Of the Scald head.

THis is deteſtable, to wit, the ſoreneſſe or ſcabs of the head with ſcurf, ſpoyl and and falling off of the hair, with much itch, ſtench, and lothſome miſhape or illfavouredneſſe: the one ſort are dry, the other are moiſt; nevertheleſſe are all to be cured after one manner.

At the firſt doth this bad ſore appear ſmall and little; but if they be not quickly looked unto, then runneth it forthwith from the one ſide of the head to the other, untill the whole head be full, the cauſes are dry burnt humours; or moiſture and putrified blood.

If it come onely of *Phlegma*, then yeeldeth it moiſture, whereof we will make further mention. If it be dry and old, then do all the learned conclude upon it that it is incurable; and although it ſhould heal in continuance of time, and through much advice, and with trouble, nevertheleſſe muſt not one ceaſe therefore. And to this end are theſe things following acknowledged to be good for the ſame.

Firſt it is needful to begin the curewith a good order of dyet, wherein nevertheleſſe there is no certain order to be made, becauſe that this diſeaſe is incident to young children, albeit ſometimes alſo to people in years, wherein great difference is to be made. But generally to eſchew all things which maketh heavy, melancholick and flegmatick blood, whereof are many inſtructions given in many places of this booke. Firſt of all, a full grown man muſt alway apply himſelf as hereafter followeth.

Above all he muſt beware of ſtrong and ſharp wines, and (as is ſaid) from all melancholick meat, as cheeſe, Coleworts, ſalt fleſh, and ſuch like, and muſt rather uſe them that be light of digeſtion, and make good blood, as fowls that haunt high grounds, rere egs, Borage, ſweet fiſh of freſh waters. He muſt alſo oftentimes purge, according as the perſon is, and as the ſores be great and noyſome.

If a mans age will permit it, and the Patient be abounding in blood, which may be perceived by the greatneſſe of the veines, it is advised to open the head veines in both arms, likewiſe the veines in the forehead, and behind the eares. Nevertheleſſe ſome do ſuppoſe that the two laſt mentioned veines are not often to be opened. To the end one might recover hair, for which this blood is requiſite, upon the places where it is red and raiſed, and ſheweth bloody, horſe-leaches and boxing cups to be ſet, and plaiſters to be applied that doe raiſe bliſters, whereof ſhall be more ſpoken in time. If there be any diſeaſe where hair groweth, there it muſt be ſhorne off twice a week, and alway before there be laid any ſalve upon it, the hair muſt be clean ſhorn away, and be alſo well rubbed with courſe linnen, and afterwards annoint it over with the juice of Onions or of radiſhes. Theſe are now the beginnings of the cure.

Firſt of all muſt the groſſe burned moiſture be attenuated and prepared for expulſion, the which is to be effected with *Oximel* of Squils called *Compoſitum*, and is deſcribed in the ſecond Chapter, §.9. for which alſo doth ſerve the ſyrup of Fumitory. The melancholick and flegmatick humours are to be purged with pils *Cochia*; and if one have ſtrong folks in hand, he may uſe thereunto *Epithymum*, Coloquint, and prepared Hellebore, yet a man is alwawyes to be adviſed herein by a learned Phyſitian. And for example in a dry ſcall: Take prepared black Hellebore one drachme, Sene laves, *Epithymum*, of each one drach. *Agaricus* ℥ ſ.β. maſtick one drachme, Aloe half an ounce, make pils thereof with juice of Smallage, and give thereof one drachme at one time.

But if the ſcall be moiſt, then purge with theſe pils following: Take *Cochia* one drach. and a half, *Epithymum*, half a drachme, make pils thereof for to uſe at two times: or take *Agaricus*, Coloquint, and Maſtick of each one drachme, Aloe half an ounce, temper them all together with the juice of Garlick, take one drachme, at once. Mirobalans, *Chebuli*, tempered with *Epythymum* and Sene leaves are alſo meet for this.

Take of theſe remedies, of which we ſhall write againſt both ſorts of theſe ſcals, and begin firſt with the leaſt.

Fumitory, after what ſort ſoever it be taken, doth much cleanſe the blood, therefore it is to be uſed for this diſeaſe. Alſo waſh the head with wormwood wine, for that it dryeth the moiſture and ſpecially healeth the ſcals, with the white ſcall or ſcurf.

Annoint the ſcals with oyl of white Lillies mixed together with the oyl of Camomile.

Take the yolks of egs, fry them well in ſwines greaſe, and put unto it as much Turpentine, let them well melt together, they dry very gently.

Take oyl of Roſes, Iuniper oyl, of each half an ounce: quickbrimſtone, Pigeons dung, Verdigreaſe, of each three drachmes, a little wax, melt them together; it is very certain, and healing all ſcals.

Take ſtamped Lupins, temper them in vinegar with Barrowes greaſe.

Take oyl of Bay and Oatmeale, of each a like much, Baſill-ſeed, one quarter of either of them, annoint the head, and lay leaves of this herb upon it. But it is too mild for the ſcall, and beſides the Baſill-ſeed is hurtfull to the head.

Take two handfuls of Sage, beat them ſmall, temper them with ſalt, hogs greaſe and vinegar; let it ſeethe well, and annoint therewith the ſcald head every other day. Upon the day between both it is very good to waſh the head with the decoction of of Mallowes and dock roots.

This ſalve is certain, and approved many times: Take butter which is burnt black, Soot out of the chimney, and ſalt, of each a like much: ſtir them both well amongſt the butter, vntill the butter be ſtiff, and therewith anoint the ſcals. And if it be not needful every day, then about the third day waſh the head with a ſmall lee, and do this as often as is needful when the ſcurf falleth away, annoint the red place with this ſalve. Alſo this remedy following is much in uſe: take pure turpentine two ounces, and waſh it well with clear water, freſh butter one ounce waſht well, half an ounce of ſmall bruiſed ſalt, one Orenge beaten all to pieces and wrung out hard, the yolks of three new laid egges, oyl of Roſes half an ounce; temper them all together by a ſmall fire. This is a certain ſalve, it may be uſed for all itchs and ſcabs.

This ſalve following is exceeding ſharp, and therefore is not to be uſed but at great need, and for the moſt venemous ſcabs of the head.

Take two ounces and a half of Barrowes greaſe, oyl of Bay, wax, pounded Frankincenſe of each on ounce, ſalt one quarter of an ounce, Quickſilver mortified three drach. firſt melt the wax, oyl of Bay and greaſe by a ſmall fire, and put one ounce of the juyce of Plantaine and Fumitory with it, let them boyl till the juyces be conſumed; then take it from

from the fire and temper with it the Frankincenſe and quickſilver, and ſtir it ſo long until you ſee no more Quickſilver; it is then prepared: and you are to annoint this ſalve onely upon the ſcall, and if you mix half an ounce of maſtix with it, it would make it the better.

Some have another manner to heal the ſcall of the head, and do firſt thus: they cauſe the head to be ſhaven bald, afterwards they annoint it the ſpace of three daies with oyle of nuts, oyle of *Palma Chriſti* ſeeds, and oyle of Cammomile tempered together.

The fourth day do they let the head to be pricked in divers places, that it may bleed: afterwards they let it be waſhed with the decoction of Fumitory, Dock roots, and of Cammomile; and afterwards they put into the ſame decoction, Argall *S*quils, or Garlick; they ſeethe it all together, and forthwith do rub the head therewith, and dry it with hot cloathes; and this do they twice or thrice a day for the ſpace of three daies. The fourth day they waſh it again with the former decoction, and then ſhave off all the hair; if the skin be not yet clean, uſe rubbing again with the Argal, and continue it ſo long untill the skin be through clean, then annoint the head with the ſalve following. If you have a woman to cure, then take a womans hair, if you have a man then take a mans hair, burn it in a pot of aſhes, take thereof an ounce, burn hazel nuts one ounce and a half, the dregs of Sallet oyle foure ounces, clarified hony three ounces, Myrrhe one ounce and a half, Aloe half an ounce, Saffron three drachmes; temper them together unto a ſalve. This preſerveth the skin, and permitteth not the moiſture to putrifie under it, but maketh the hair to grow. But if it happen that through this or any other ſalves the skin is diſtempered, then muſt it be uſed no further, but with theſe decoctions following (which are as much commended) it is to be waſhed, to wit, with the decoction of Willow leaves and woodbind, for which theſe alſo are more requiſite, Blites, Fumitory, wild Time, Dock roots, Sorell, Storks bill, all together, or which one can get, decocted or bathed therewith.

This following is a very good ſalve, not onely for the ſcals of the head, but alſo for all other ſcabs and ſcurfs, itch, falling off of the hair, nits and lice.

Take Gals, red Arſnick, Ariſtology, of each 3. drach. Hemlock ſeeds one quarter of an ounce, ſoot of a chimny, Brimſtone, bitter Almonds, Coloquint, Caper roots, fig leaves, Elmtree leaves, Verdigreaſe, Plume Allom *Sieff memithæ*, plain Coegal, Myrrhe Aloe, Frankincenſe, and pitch, of each one drachme, and a half, ſtamp all that is to be ſtamped, and temper it with Vinegar, ſet it eight daies or more in the ſun untill it be well tempered, and then uſe it.

In like manner is this highly commended, although the ſcall had continued many years.

The black and white Hellebore, Brimſtone vive, Vitriol, Cold litharge, unſlakt Lime, Shoomakers blacking, Aloe, Gals, ſoot of the chimny. Wood aſhes, of each half an ounce, mortified Quickſilver, Verdigreaſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſtamp all that is to be ſtamped. Further take the juice of Borage, *Scabioſe*, Fumitory, Dock-roots, of each two ounces, mix them all together with three ounces of old dregs of Sallet oyle and as much vinegar: let this ſeethe upon a mild fire half an houre, and then temper the other things amongſt it, and put an ounce of molten Turpentine amongſt it, Wax as much as is needfull for to make a ſalve. This is marvellous much commended for all ſcurf and diſeaſes of the skin.

A ſharp lee. The antient Phyſitian will make a clean head with ſharp lee; but I cannot adviſe, eſpecially if one will often uſe the ſame.

Take a pound of Argall beaten ſmall, and bind it in a cloth, pour thereon a pinte of water, and let it lie ſo the ſpace of halfe an houre; afterwards lay cloth and all in the fire, and ſo burn it three houers long, then beat it again, and bind it up as before, and burn it two hours more, beat it to powder, and put it into an Hyppocras bag, pour the foreſaid water upon it, let it run through ſix or eight times, and make a lee thereof; it dryeth vehemently, and hath almoſt the ſharpneſſe of blew Tartary.

Of the plucking away of the ſcall.

MAke nine caps of blew cloth or blew linnen, as big as the head is ſcally, annoint it inwardly with molten Pitch and Roſin, and put it upon the ſhaven head, and ſo leave it thereon three dayes; afterwards pluck it off by force, and it will take away with it the hair and all the ſcurf. But if there remain any haires in it, then plucke them

them out with ſmall mullets, and then waſh the head with water (like as is ſaid) wherein is decocted Fumitory and Dock roots, &c. And when it is dry, then ſet another cap upon it; do as before, and ſo untill nine times, afterwards uſe one of the foreſaid ſalves.

Of the Skin of the Head. §. 11.

FOraſmuch as the foreſaid ſcall hangeth moſt on the skin of the head, and the foreſaid skin is not onely faſtned to the head, but alſo to the whole body, covering it as with a clothing, and is laid under the hair as his ground; therefore are we ſomewhat admoniſhed here, and afterwards occaſioned once again to write thereof in the firſt part.

The Skin which covereth the head, is not of one kind of nature; for this whence the hair groweth is hard, dry and thick: the skin of the forehead, as much as it is without hair, hath her free motion; that which is under the eye cannot be ſeparated but with great trouble, and hath no motion, like that of the forehead. The skin of the lips is a mixture of the skin of the muſcles, ſo that they may be called with both the names. Thus much may ſuffice at this preſent time.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Skull of the Head.

BY this name we will not onely have *Cranium*, but alſo all the uppermoſt bones of the head to be underſtood, whereof there be ſeven commonly told, the which through fine *Suturæ*, which is ſewings or conjoyning, very naturally are in each other knit together. But for the ſame one may look into the *Anatomicos*: concerning this our purpoſe, the head is parted into ſix parts, whereof the firſt is *Frons*, the forehead, which is beginning from the eye-browes till there where the hair beginneth on both ſides even unto the ears, it is but one proper bone called by the Chirurgions and other moe *Coronalis*, like as men do uſe to wear on this place of the head the garland. The ſecond is faſt by it covered with hair, they call it *Sinciput*, it is with us the former part, and hath two bones which we call *Parietalia*, the ſide-bones; they touch both of them the ſuture that paſſeth over the middle of the head, are thick bored through with ſmall holes and weak. The third do they call *Occiput*, the hinder part of the head; the neck is a great ſtrong bone with a great hole, where the firſt joynt *Vertebræ* of the back bone hath his winding about. The fourth is *Vertex*, the crown, the height and middle, from which, as from a point or circle, the hair doth ſpread abroad it ſelf round about; but that which is between both the eares and eyes be called *Tempora*, with us the temples.

I have ſeen Skulls without any ſutures; and I have obſerved three skulls in one place, and the ſutures were much differing the one from the other; and therefore that deſcription of the ſutures of the head, is not a true demonſtration, κατ' αὐτο, which alwaies agrees with every one, and yet it may be a true demonſtration καθ' ἑκαστα, of ſome one, or of many particular perſons.

Senertus.

Of Contuſion of the Brain.

IF the Brain be bruiſed by a ſudden blow, or a fall, and the party be partly ſpeechleſſe; Then preſently let the party blood in the arm; And anoint the head with oyl of Roſes, or Myrtles, or put a Cataplaſme upon the head of this or the like.

℞. of barley meal, bean meal, ana. ℥ 6. oyl of Roſes, ℥.3. vinegar, q. ß. and make thereof a Cataplaſme and apply it to the head, which muſt be removed often; dry and vehement aſtringent things muſt be eſchewed, for it ſtops the pores, and hinders the tranſpiration of humours.

Clyſters are to be uſed, and ſuch things as may keep the humours from aſcending into the head.

After four dayes repercussive things are to be used; as this:

℞. Wormwood, *M.* 1. red-Roses, Camomil, ana. *P.* 1. Bean meal. ℥. 1. *Sanguis Draconis*, drach. 2. Mummi, drach. 3. and with oyl of Roses make a plaister.

Or ℞. roots of Marsh Mallowes, ℥. 3. Flowerdeluce, Cypres, Calamus aromaticus, ana. ℥. 1. Leaves of Sage, Marjoram, Betony, red Roses, Stecades, ana. *M.* ß. Salt, ℥. 1. seethe them in red Wine and bean water, and use it for a fomentation.

Or apply the Sear-cloth of *Vigo*, which is thus made.

℞. of Bran, ℥. 3. Meal of Fetches, ℥. 2. Roses, grains of Myrtles, ana. ℥. 1. Calamus aromaticus, ℥. 10. Camomil, Melilot, ana. M. ß. Cypres Nuts, N. 6. oyl of Roses, Camomil, ana. ℥. 3. Wax, ℥. 2. ß. Olibanum, Mastick, ana. ℥. 3. Myrrhe, ℥. 2. powder the things to be powdered, and melt the wax and oyl, and make a plaister.

Or this Emplaister of *Alexander Benedictus*.

℞. of Gum of Ivie, ℥. 3. Rosine of the Pine tree, ℥. ß. Wax, ℥. 3. oyl of Roses, ℥. 2. ß. Ammoniacum, ℥. 2. Turpentine, ℥. 3. Juyce of Ivie-berrries, ℥. 3. bean meal, q. ß. mixe it for a plaister.

Or a young Pigeon, or Cock, or the lights of a beast, applyed to the head, hath vertue to divert the humours.

He must abstain from wine, and use a moderate dyet.

If Infants have the sutures of their heads displaced, or the Skull bruised, apply a plaister of Gum Elenii.

Or ℞. of Rosine of the Pine tree, wax, ana. ℥. 4. Turpentine, Gumme Elenii, ana. ℥. 3. oyl of Roses, ℥. 2. Ammoniacum, ℥. 1. ß. Mill dust, ℥. 1. red wine, q. ß. and make a plaister of it.

Or ℞. of Mastick, Turpentine, ana. ℥. 1. Gum Elenii, ℥. 10. Colophonie, Rosen of the Pine tree, ana. ℥. ß. Ammoniacum, ℥. 1. Juyce of Betony and Camphire, ana. ℥. 1. of Parsley, ℥. 6. wine, ℔. ß. seethe these till the wine and juyce is consumed; then strain it hard, and adde unto that which is strained, wax and honey, q. ß. and make a Sear-cloth, and lay it upon the head, and it will bring the brain-pan into his right place and form.

Thus far *Severinus*.

Lastly, is all that begmneth under the forehead and the eye-browes unto the end of chin, as eyes, eares, nose, mouth, called *Facies*, that is, the face. These are now the outward parts of the head, which do also comprehend the bones, of which hereafter particularly mention shall bee made.

As much as then concerneth the skull, that is outwardly after divers manner of meanes bruised and perished, as through stripes, fractures, wounds, and such like, which accidents do specially appertain unto Chirurgions, nevertheless we are minded to discourse somewhat thereof. And this for a beginning.

Of the compression of the Skull in young children. §. 1.

IT cometh to passe otherwhiles, that new born children have their skulls doubled one over another or compressed; for which lay this plaister upon it: Take Loadstone, Pumice stone, salt, of each a like much, bruised small, and make with honey a plaister thereof.

Of the fracture of the Skull. Sect. 2.

WHen it is time after the first dressing to look to the wound of the head, then take off the towe, cover the wound with a fine linnen cloth made wet in this *Aqua vitæ* following; Take *Aqua vitæ* made onely of wine one ounce, wherein put pownded *Aloe* and Myrrhe, of each one drachme, Mastich half a drachme, stop it fast; then strew of the powder which is pownded together of the three things upon the wet cloth, cover it with another cloth, and anoint the wound round about with oyl of Roses, cover the head gently with a linnen cap or kercher.

Item take womans milk that giveth suck to a boy, wet a piece of silk therein, and cover the wound therewith, afterwards take the well brayed white of an egg, put pownded Frankincense unto it, spread it on a cloth, and lay it over the wound above upon the first cloth

cloth which is made wet in the womans milk, and let it lye so three dayes; if the brains be quiet, then is it a good sign of life: afterwards dresse him with the black plaister or salve that shall hereafter follow; but if the wound stanch not bleeding, then is this powder following marvellous good; Take Frankincense two drachmes, Aloe one drachme, and therewith strew the bleeding wound.

A water. Take Rosemary with the flowers, Sage, Betony, of each one M. steep them 24. houres in good wine and distil it, put thereto Myrrhe half an ounce, Aloe one ounce, Saffron ten grains, *Sarcocolla*, Frankincense of each one drach. This you are to keep in a fast closed glasse untill you have need to use it.

After that the wound is dressed, and that it hath not bled much, some do advise that the head vein is to be opened, and that is very truly advised, that for all such wounds the head vein once at the least should be opened, and the patient purged: for it happeneth oftentimes that the pain of the head, impostumation, or other mischances may thereby be hindered and prevented.

But to return again to the Chirurgery. It happeth oftentimes that there befalleth with it pain of the throat and of the almonds, for which is meet this gargarisme.

Take Mastick, Frankincense, of each one drach. Plantain, the juyce of Sloes, Acorn cups, of each one qaarter of an ounce, Licorice an ounce, *Pieretrum*, Pomegranate pils, of each one quarter of an ounce; seethe them together in a quart of sowre red wine untill the third part be sodden away, put thereto prepared *Bolus Armenus* half an ounce, burnt Allom one ounce and a half. Lay this plaister following then upon it to heal it withal: Take oyl of Roses eight ounces, oyl of Mastick one ounce, sheeps and calves suet, of each twelve ounces, silver litharge bruised small two ounces, red lead one ounce, and a pint of wine; then let this boyl softly untill it be brown or black; then put thereto four ounces of Turpentine, Mastick two ounces, *Gummi Elenii* half an ounce, white wax as much as is needful for to make a plaister. This plaister is especial good to cure a wound in the head, although one used nought else, yet is the wound oftentimes to be washed with warm water; and if it were wholly impostumated, then instead of water use wine, wherein Mirtle seeds and blossomes of Pomgranates with a little Allom hath decocted.

Another plaister, which is also commended for good, and to have been approved. Take *Gummi Elenii* one ounce and a half, white Rosine two ounces, Waxe two or three ounces, oyl of Roses two ounces and a half, Ammoniack one ounce, Turpentine one ounce and a half, make a plaister or salve of it; some adde Rie meal unto it; others black Bean meal: the third sort beat Plantain seeds, some also use wine instead of oyl.

An especial salve for the fracture of the Skull.

A salve. Take white Rosine five drachmes, pownd Aloe half an ounce, oyl of Roses and wax as much as is needful, let it melt by a mild fire; when it is cold, put thereto half an ounce of *Gummi Elenii*, with boyling may be made a tough plaister thereof. It draweth the matter out of the broken skull, and from the bottom or depth asswageth the pain.

Yet one more that is stronger; Take the upright Balsom, or instead thereof oyl of Cloves, Bdellium, Ammoniacum, of each three ounces, white Rosine, *Gummi Elenii*, of each one ounce, Frankincense, Myrrhe, Sarcocolla, beaten small, of each one drachme and a half, oyl of Roses two ounces, Wax as much as is needful; make a tough salve thereof, and seethe it in four ounces of the juyce of Woodbinde untill all the juyce be consumed.

The best help for any fracture in the skull, is my yellow salve made of Venice Turpentine, Rosine, wax, hogs lard, and honey; this healeth the evil in the brain if the skin be broken, that it may enter into it.

This I proved; One had his head cut very deep with a sword, insomuch that it was supposed that the *Dura Mater* was not onely cut in pieces, but also the *Pia Mater* and brains were supposed to be cut; for that which was put into the wound to stay the bleeding, came out at the mouth and nostrils.

I did onely spread the said yellow salve upon fine cloth, and I put it into the skull that was cleft in two pieces, and therewith (by Gods blessing) I healed the party in a short time. *Valet hoc tempore, Laus Deo.*

Senertus.

Of fractures of the skull.

If the skin and skull be whole and not broken in small pieces, the danger is the less. But if the muscles of the temples be broken, either madness, convulsion, palsey, or death may follow.

You must endevour to stay the flux of humors, and to mitigate the pain if there be any, and the blood which is under the skin must be cleansed, if there be hurt it must be cut off; and anoint the place with oyl of Roses, then apply the whites of eggs beaten with Rose-water, and Vinegar, and dip tow in it, and apply to the place.

Or Rx. oyl of Roses ʒ.3. whites of 2. eggs, Cipres nuts, Flowers of Pomgranats, allum, red-roses, ana. ʒ. 1. powdered, mix them, and apply it.

Or Rx. of Barley meal, Beanmeal, ana. ʒ. 6. oyl of Roses ʒ.3. Vinegar. q.ß. and make a cataplasme.

The body must be purged with gentle phylick, or a glyster, and a spare diet used, if the matter ripen not but festereth.

Take the tops of Wormwood, m.1. ß. redroses, flowers of Cammomil, Betonie, melilote, ana. m.ß. seethe them in wine to half, and add to it of Bean meal, Barley meal, ana. ʒ.1. ß. powder of Comminseeds, ʒ. 2. oyl of Roses. q.s. and make a cataplasme.

Or Rx. of emplastrium Diachylon, ʒ. 2. oxycrocei, *de meliloto*, ana. ʒ 1. oyl Camomil, of dill, ana. ʒ.ß. melt them and make a plaister.

Or Rx. of oyl of Cammomil, Lillies, ana. ʒ.10. mastick, ʒ.2. the fat of a Ram, litharge of gold, ʒ.8. red-lead, ʒ 2. Spanish wine, an ounce and a half, seethe these till it wax blackish, then put to it of turpentine *lb.*2. powder of mastick, ʒ.2. gum elemi, ʒ.1. wax, q.s. seethe them to a plaister.

A fomentation.

Rx. of Cypres nuts bruised, n.10. myrtles, ʒ. 1. redroses, wormwood, Sage, Majoram, Stecades. Cammomil, ana. m.ß. allum, roots of Cypres, Calamus aromaticus, ana. ʒ.ß. seethe them in *lb.*4. of red wine, and *lb.*2. of common lee; and when it is sod, foment the head with it, and then dry the head, and apply a plaister.

Rx. of Redroses, Cammomil, Wormwood, Betonie, ana. m.1. seethe them till they are soft, bruise them, and add of Bean meal. ʒ.3. oyl of Roses; Red wine, ana.q.s. and make a plaister, or the like.

Or Rx. of Red roses, leaves and berries of myrtles, powdered, ana. ʒ.2. bean and barley meal, ana. ʒ. 1. wormwood, betonie, ana. ʒ.ß. Comminseeds ʒ.1. Honey ʒ.2. and with red wine, oyl of Roses, Camomil, make a plaister; this medicine is called Benedictum, and is to be applyed warm twice every day.

Of wounds of the Cranium or skull, Of the membranes, and hurt of the brains

Some use this digesture medicine, Vz. Rx. of turpentine, ʒ.6. oyl of hypericon, ʒ.3. powder of Frankincense, ʒ.1. the yolk of an egg.

Or Rx. of roses ʒ.6. the yolk of an egg, mix it, and apply it.

Or Rx. of turpentine, gum elemi, ana. ʒ.1.ß. Sheeps suet, hogs lard, ana ʒ.1.ß. melt it and make an Unguent.

If the Skull be made bare you must put no unguent upon it, but medicines actually or potentially dry, with dry linaments, agreeing with the temperament of the bones, which are prepared of Aloes, Olibanum, the barke of Frankincense, Mastick, Myrrhe, Sarcocolla, Bole-armonick, Sanguis Draconis, Barley meal, Fetches, Roots of Iris aristolochia, or,

Rx. of aloes, Sarcocolla, myrrhe, ana. ʒ.1. Olibanum, drach. 2. Sanguis draconis ʒ.ß. make a powder. Or,

Of myrrhe, Aloes, rinds of frankincense, aristolochia, flower-deluce, Sarcocolla ana. ʒ.1. make in a powder.

Or of Aloes drach. 3. myrrhe drach. 1. olibanum drach. ß. make it a powder.

Or of Aloes, roots of flower-deluce, Aristolochia, Rotunda, ana. drach. 2. Myrrhe, Olibanum, ana. drach 1. Sanguis draconis drach ß. make it a powder.

These

Theſe powders are to be uſed after the wound is cleanſed of the filth, to dry it up, and to heal it.

For this purpoſe you may make this Cerote.

℞. of oyl of Roſes, of oyl of green grapes, ana. ℥.1. oyl of maſtick, of myrtles, ana. ℥.1. Goats greaſe, ℥.1. ſeethe them till the juyces are waſted, then add the powder of Maſtick, ℥.10, gum elenii ℥.6. Turpentine, ℥. 2. ß. wax q.ſ. boyl them to a ſeareloth.

When there is great dryneſſe in the part, you muſt apply things to moiſten it, as the yolk of an egg, and the oyl of Roſes mixed.

Or ℞. of oyl of Roſes, Turpentine, ana. ℥.1. ß. wax ℥.ß. Saffron ℈.ß. If there be fear of inflammation, add unto it Barley meal ℥. ß. and to make it incarnative add unto it, of the rinds of Frankincenſe ℥.1. Aloes ℥.ß.

If there be pain, make a Cataplaſme of the roots of Althea, Barley meal flowers of melilote oye of Roſes, the yolk of an egg, and a little Saffron.

Or, ℞. of Mugwort, Betonie, Scabious, horſetail, pimpinel, bruiſe theſe and preſſe out the juyce, take of that juyce, ℥.6. oyl of Roſes, of Maſtick, of Myrrhe, ana. ℥.2. ſeethe them untill the juyce is diſſolved; then add to it Aloes, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Sanguis draconis Gum elenii, Myrrhe, ana. ℥.3. wax q.ß. and of them an Unguent.

To heal it, uſe Diapalma.

To expel poyſon out of the wound, ℞. of Mithridate ℥.1. Treacle, ℥.2. Unguenti Ægyptiaci, ℥.ß. Aquavitæ, and Carduus water, ana. q. ß. mix theſe and waſh the wound with it.

If the body be Plethorick, you have need to purge it, with the ſyrup of Roſes, and the ſyrup of Violets, laxative, the pulpe of tamarindes, Myrabolans, Citrine infuſed or ſod.

℞. of the roots of Pionie, ℥.1. Pellitory, Mallows, water Mallows, Betonie, Marjoram, Hyſope, ana. *M.* 1. ſeeds of aniſe, Rue, Pionie, ana. ℥. 2. Flowers of Stecades, Camomil ana. p. 1. ſeethe them in water, ſtrain it, and take of the ſtrained water ℔.1. of the Electuary Diacatholicon, of Indi Majoris, ana. ℥.6. oyl oyl of Lillies ℥.2. of Rue, of honey, ana. ℥.1. Salt, ℥.ß. make a Glyſter.

Some uſe theſe Medicines to heal the wound, as the honey or ſyrup of Roſes, with a little oyl of Roſes if there be pain, dipped in fine ſilk, or linnen, and applied to the place. But they fill the wound with ſome Cephalike Unguent, and put upon the Skull a Cephalike powder, and then they apply the emplaſter of Betonie, or the like.

The emplaſter of Betonie is thus made.

℞. of Betonie *M.*2. Woodbind, Sage, Hypericon, Yarrow, Monſeare, Comfrey, ana. *M.*1. Centry of both ſorts, Pimpernel, Vervain, ana. *M.*ß. Turpentine, ℥. 20, oye of Roſes, ℥.10. pine Roſen, Gum elenii ana. ℥.1.ß. bruiſe the herbs, and put to them of white Wine, ℔.2 let them boyl a little, and then let them ſtand in the ſun eight dayes or more, and ſtir them every day, then ſtrain it, and add the oyls and gums, and wax, q.ſ and make a plaiſter.

Some make the Emplaſter of Betonie on this wiſe.

℞. of green Betonie, Pimpernel Agrimonie, Sage, Penyrial Yarrow, Comfrey, woodbind, ana. ℥.0. Frankincenſe, Maſtick, ana. ℥.3. flower-deluce, Ariſtolochia, Rotunda ana. ℥.6. wax, Turpentine, ana. ℥ 8. Gum elenii ℥.2. Pineroſen, ℥.6. oyl of Turpentine, and white Wine, q.ſ. Stampe the herbs, and let them infuſe in the white Wine eight dayes ſtirring them often, ſeethe them till the third part be diſſolved, then ſtrain them, and add unto that which is ſtrained, the wax, roſen, and gums, and turpentine melted, and make of it a plaiſter.

The Cephalike Plaſter is thus made.

℞. of the dried herbs of Betonie, Plantaine, Woodbind, Pimpernel, Roſemary, ana. *M.* bruiſe them ſmall, and let them macerate 24 houres in oyls of Roſes, ℥.3. and of Maſtick, ℥.1. freſh Hogs lard, and fat of a Calf, ana. ℥.2. Wine q.ſ. ſeethe them till the Wine is conſumed, ſtraine them and add of Maſtick, Gum Elenii, Pineroſen, Litharge, ana. ℥.ß. ſeethe it till it begins to look black, alwayes ſtirring of it, then add of turpentine ℥.2. wax, q.ſ. and make a plaiſter.

Or ℞. of the emplaſter of Betonie ℥.4. Gum Elenii diſſolved in oyl of Roſes, ℥.1. powder of Re-droſes, Myrtles, ana. ℥.1. Maſtick, Calami Aromatici, Angelick gil-

lofers,

Gillofers, *ana.* ℥. 1. Oyl and Wax, *q.* ß. make of it a plaister.

Or, oyl of Roses, of green grapes, *ana.* ℥. 2. of Mastick and Myrtles, *ana* ℥. 1. the fat of a Goat, ℥. 1. ß. juice of Betony, ℥. 1. seethe them till the juice is wasted, then of Mastick, ℥. 10. Gummi Elenii, ℥. 6. Turpentine, ℥. 2. ß. Wax, *q.* ß. make thereof a plaister.

Or, ℞. of Gummi elenii, pure Rosen, *ana.* ℥. 2. Wax, ℥. 1. ß. Oyl of Roses, ℥. 7. Amoniacy, ℥. ß. Turpentine, ℥. 6. juice of Betony, ℥. 10. make thereof a plaister. *Felix Wirtz* praises this Unguent.

℞. of Dears Suet, Honey clarified, *ana.* ℥. ß. Aloes powdered, ℥. 1. mix them. *John Andrea a cruce* hath used this with good successe.

℞. of Wine, ℥. 20. juice of Betony, ℥. 4. Calamint, ℥. 2. Myrrhe, Frankincense, Aloes, *Sanguis Draconis*, the lesse Centory, Graves, Saint *Iohns* wort, *ana.* ℥. 1. powder those that will powder, and let all stand macerating two daies, then seethe them until a third part is wasted, then add to it Honey of Roses, let them boyl a little more, then take the vessel from the fire, and add to it of Aqua vitæ, or the spirit of Wine, ℥. 6. Strain it, and keep it for your use, adding of oyl of Turpentine, ℥. 4.

Or, ℞. of Aloes, ℥. 2. Myrrhe, ℥. 1. Sarcocolla, Frankincense, *ana.* ℥. 2. Saffron, ʒ. 1. powdered spirit of wine, ℥. 10. use this to wash the wound.

Or, ℞. of Aqua-vitæ, ℔. 5. Malmsey, ℔. 2. ß. Aloes, Myrrhe, Frankincense, *ana.* ℥. 1. ß. powder of the rootes of the greater Comfrey, ℥. 2. the lesser Centory, ℥. 1. ß. *Hypericon*, ℥. ß. Turpentine, ℥. 1. let them stand a moneth in a close covered pot, then strain them, and keep it for your use to dip a cloth in it, and to apply to the wound.

Or, ℞. of Aloes, ℥. 1. the spirit of wine, ℥. 1. ß. Myrrhe, ℥. 3. dissolve them upon Embers, dip a cloth in it, and apply to the wound.

Or, ℞. of the spirit of wine ℔. 2. Mastick, Myrrhe, Frankincense, Gummi elenii, Ivie, Amoniacum, Opopanax, Bdelium, Woodbinde, Betony, *ana.* ℥. 1. Treacle, ℥. 3. powder the Herbs and Gums, and let them stand three dayes, then distil in Balnea Moria, then keep it for use, dipping a cloth in the liquor distilled, and put it into the wounds.

The powders of Rochet, Piony, wild Cucumber, and Aristolochia, make the bones to scale in a wound the sooner.

Of the Dura Mater wounded.

If the *Dura Mater* be wounded, apply oyl of Roses warm which hath a faculty to take away pain, and to expel the humours, some take a Turtle or a Dove and let out blood under the wing, and put it warm into the wounds, which doth not onely mitigate the pain, but also cleanse and heal.

Or, ℞. of oyl of Turpentine, ℥. 2. spirit of wine, syrup of dryed Roses, *ana.* ℥. 1. after it is anointed therewith, ℞. of the powders of Aloes, Myrrhe, Mastick, Sanguis draconis, Rubarb, Red coral, put of this powder into a fine thin cloth, and put it into the wound, and lay the emplaister of Betony upon it.

Haironimus Fabricius his medicine.

Or, ℞. Meal of Hirse, ℥. ß. *Oleum Hispanum*, ℥. 1. Mithridate, ʒ. 6. Black Balsom which is brought from *Portugal*, ʒ. 3. Aquavitæ, ʒ. 5. oyl of Vitriol, ʒ. 1. ß. which I should not add.

Upon which he layes this plaister.

℞. Barley meal, ʒ. 3. powders of flowers of Camomil, ℥. 1. Spike, Squinant, *ana* ʒ. 3. Betony, Stecades, *ana* ℥. ß. oyl of Mastick, ℔. ß. oyl of Roses, ℥. 3. Oximel simple, ℥. 5. White wine, *q.* ß. to make a plaister.

Oleum Hispanum, is thus made.

℞. of old oyl, ℥. 3. Turpentine, ℥. 3. Wheat whole, ℥. 1. ß. Hypericon, ℥. 2. roots of Cardnus Benedictus, Valerian, *ana* ℥. 1. powder of Frankincense, ℥. 2. the roots and herbes grosly bruised, let them macerate two daies in wine, then add the oyl and wheat and seethe it till the wine is consumed, strain it and add the Turpentine and Frankincense and let it boyl a little.

John Andrew a cruce, doth dip linned cloth in oyl of Turpentine mixed with oyl of Roses, and covers the Wound with the like.

℞. Myrrhe, Aloes, Mastick, Sanguis, Draconis, *ana.* ʒ. 2. Turpentine, ℥. 2. spirit of wine ʒ. 2.

Or, ℞. of Turpentine washed in water of Comfrey, ℥. 2. spirit of wine, syrup of Roses, *ana*

ana. ℥. 1. powders of Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Myrrhe, *ana.* ℥. 2. Mummie, ſeeds of Hypericon, Sanguis Draconis, *ana.* ℥. 2. mix it.

Some drop this liquor into the wound. viz.

℞. of wine, ℥. 20. juice of Betony, ℥. 4. Calamint, ℥. 2. Myrrhe, Aloes, Frankincenſe, Sanguis draconis, Centory the leſſer, Graves, Hypericon, ana. ℥. 1. bruiſe them, and let them all ſtand three dayes, then ſeethe them till one third part is waſted, then add of Honey of Roſes, ℥. 4. let them boyl again a little, then take it from the fire, and add of the ſpirit of wine, ℥. 1, ſtrain it and add of the oyl of Turpentine, ℥. 4.

An Artificial Balſome.

℞. of the oyl of firretree, white of eggs ſod hard, ana. ℔. 1. Roſen of the Pinetree, ℔. ß. Gummi Elenii, ℥. 2. diſtill them in an ordinary ſtill.

Vulneraria Potions are made of Betony, Cowſlips, Mugwort, Lillie Convallies, Gillofers, Sage, Carduus Benedictus, St. Johns wort, Nutmeg, Plantain, Veronica, ſod in Ale or Beer, or wine and water, as

℞. of Betony, Cowſlips, Carduus Benedictus, Parola, or water-green, Saracens Comfrey, Mugwort, Sanikel, ana. ℥. ß. powdered; ſeeth of it in wine or ale till one third part is waſted, and ſweeten it with honey or Sugar, and drink morning and evening, ℥ 2.

Or, ℞. of Plantain, Red Roſes, Gillofers, Hypericon, veronica, ana. ℥. ß. ſod in wine, ſtrain it, and add of *Magiſterium oculorum cancri*, ℈. 2.

Or, ℞. of red Mugwort, Betony, Cowſlips, Vervain-roots, of Gillofers, *ana.* ℥. ß. ſod in wine or ale.

Or, ℞. of Sanikel, Mugwort, Betony, Veronica, ana. ℥. 1. Conſerve of Red Roſes, ℥. 2. Gillofers, ℥. ß. Tormentil, ℥. 2. ſeethe them in water and wine, ana. ℔. 2. ſtrain it.

Or, ℞. of leaves of Columbine, m. 6. Saracens Comfrey, m. 4. Beets, m. 3. Betony, bruiſe them ſmall, put them in a veſſel ſtopt very cloſe with any liquor, and ſeethe them four hours in a pot of water, then ſet it be cold, ſtrain it, give morning and evening two ſpoonfuls.

Or you may give the Patient Conſerves, or powders. as,

℞. of Conſerves of Betony, Red Roſes, Cowſlips, ana. ℥. 1. Pearles prepared, bones of the eyes of Crayfiſh prepared, Mace, ana. ℈. 1. with the ſyrup of Betony, make an Electuary, and morning and evening give, ℥. 1.

Or, ℞. of Nutmegs, ℥. ß. the bones of the eyes of Crayfiſh prepared, ℥. 3. make a powder of them, doſe, ℥. 1.

Or, ℞. of red Coral prepared, Pearls prepared, ana. ℥. 1. Spodium, ℥. 2. bones of the eyes of Crays, ℥. 1. make a powder, doſe ℥. 1.

Thus far Senertus.

Of the skins or tunicles of the brains, called Dura *and* Pia mater, *when they be periſhed*, §. 3.

THeſe two skins or tunicles that cover the brains under the skull, do the Greeks call *Meninges*, the upmoſt is called *Dura Mater*, the hard Mother, for that in compariſon of the other it is very hard and full of holes where the veins paſſe thorow. *Pia Mater*, the good Mother, is very ſpare and thinne, therefore alſo very dangerous if the ſame be wounded: for which theſe ſalves following are ordained and found requiſite.

Take Woodbinde, Betony, Pimpernel, of each two m. *Gummi Elenii*, Dragons blood, of each three quarters of an ounce; ſeethe them together in two ounces of oyl of Roſes, and a ſufficient quantity of red wine until al the moiſture be conſumed, wring it out, and let it be cold, make it as thick as you will with molten wax.

Or take Turpentine, Roſin, Wax, of each one ounce, Frankincenſe one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Roſes three ounces, *Gummi Elenii* three drach. Maſtick one quarter of an ounce, Betony, Woodbinde, of each three drach. Theſe herbs muſt be ſodden in red wine until all the moiſture be ſod away, afterwards wring it out, temper the other things with it, ſtir it well about until it be a ſalve.

But if the skull be only broken, whether it be by falling, throwing or beating, and a ſwelling withal, then take Wormwood, Roſes, Camomil, of each one m. ſeethe them in red wine and oyl of Roſes as much as is needful, temper a good quantity of bean meal with it, and ſo apply it.

Item, take Wormwood, Camomil, Melilot, ana. ℥. 1. Stechas, Betony, Woodbinde, Bolus, Dragons blood, ana. ℥. ß. Barley meal ℥. 1. oyl of Roſes as much as will ſuffice for a plaiſter or ſalve, yet if you would have it hard, add wax unto it.

The

The trial when the plaister is enough. §4.

IF any will put juyces, Wine or any other moiſture in plaiſters, then are you to let the juyce be ſod away: and when they be ſufficiently ſodden, you ſhall know it hereby: let a drop or twain fall upon the fire, if it do not ſiſſe as water is wont to do, then it is enough.

The fifth Chapter.

The face a part of the Head.

IT is before declared in the beginning of the fourth Chapter, that in dividing of the head, the face is the ſixth part, beginning and ending from the eye-browes unto the end of the chin, of which parts diſeaſe we will now diſcourſe.

As much as concerneth the face in general, man hath purchaſed the ſame above all living creatures, for it cannot be ſaid of any beaſt that it hath a face, *Faciem*, but onely of mankind: and it alſo to be wondred at, that nature hath planted ſo many parts into ſo ſmall a compaſſe; for that there be eyes that ſee and lead the whole body; a mouth that ſpeaketh and taketh in meat for the ſuſtenance of the whole body: a noſe that ſmelleth, and can diſcern what is pleaſant or unpleaſant in ſmell or ſavour, that alſo doth diſcharge and unburden the brains of all ſuperfluous moiſture, ears for to hear, whereby men may underſtand one another: a beard for to diſtinguiſh one man from another; eye-browes to the garniſhing and defence of the eyes, cheekes, wherewith to manifeſt and ſhew ſhamefaſtneſſe, fear, peace, and friendſhip, as ſhall be more at large ſhewed hereafter: conſequently, the face is a looking glaſſe of the mind, of the inward intention and unrevealed thonght. But we will not make long diſcourſe thereof at this preſent, but onely to diſcourſe of the diſeaſes of the face, and how to cure them.

Of all ſtains or ſpots of the face. §.1.

FOr to take away this diſorder or miſſiguring of the face, may theſe remedies following be uſed: make a little cruſe of dow, as it were a ſmall paſtie meetly thick, put therein ſix ounces of Ceruſſe, make it faſt on the top, that there flie no vapour out of it; let it ſtand ſo in an oven the ſpace of an hour, that it be not too hot. and when it is waxen cold, take it out and bruiſe it ſmall, and put thereto a ſufficient quantity of Eldern water, and ſo ſet it in the Sun cloſe ſtopped, ſtir it every day about four or five times, waſh the face therewith fourteen dayes long, or as long as is needfull with a cloth which is wet therein. This is oftentimes approved.

Item, take freſhroots of Solomons ſeal, beat and anoint it on the ſpots: or take Goats milk wherein Solomons ſeal roots are decocted, and uſe it as is aforeſaid. The water of diſtilled honey doth take them alſo away.

Maidens milk, *Lac virginis*, the which the ancient Phyſitians do ſo name, is a good and ſure water, not onely for ſtains in the face, but alſo for many other diſeaſes, as ſhall be hereafter more at large declared, and the ſame ſhall be prepared thus: take half a pound of litharge of gold, beat it ſmall, and put it into a pot, pour half a pint of vinegar upon it, let ſeethe a little, afterwards when it is ſetled pour of the clear into another glaſſe, and keep it; you may preſerve the litharge for to make a plaiſter with it afterwards. *Lac virginis, or maidens milk.*

Secondly, take a good handfull of ſalt, put four ounces of water upon it, ſeethe it to the half, and keep it alſo in a glaſſe by it ſelf: whenſoever you will uſe it, then take three parts of ſalt water, and one part of the foreſaid vinegar, temper it well, then will it be as milk: will you have this better, then put a little Roſe-water and *Sal Armoniack* unto it.

It is good for all ſcurfes: ſome do uſe it in the eyes alſo, but it is very ſharpe, chiefly if one take *Sal Armoniack* with it.

Triſtrame

Triſtrams Water.

TAke twelve ounces of Nutmegs, Mace, Ginger, Grains, Cloves, of each half an ounce, Rubarb one ounce, Bever-cod, Spikenard, of each half an ounce, oyl of Bay two ounces, leave the ſpices unbeaten, pour to it four quarts of wine, cover it cloſe, and let it ſtand ſo the ſpace of four weeks, afterwards pour away the wine, pownd all the ſpices to pap, and put it again to the foreſaid wine, let it ſtand well ſtopped three dayes, ſtir it well about: then diſtill it in hot water without ſeething, and preſerve it well. Beſides that this water doth take away all ſpots of the face and of the body, there is aſcribed more unto it theſe wonderful vertues, to wit, ſome holden in the mouth taketh away the tooth-ach. Alſo veniſon laid therein ſhould continue good a year and a day. Alſo all manner of fruits and flowers laid therein do the like: a little thereof put into faint wine, maketh the ſame freſh and quick: a little drunk thereof doth break all inward impoſtumes, it keepeth a man in good conſtitution, alſo, the ſtomach, the liver, the milt, the lights and the bowels; a cloth dipped therein put on wounds, doth heal the ſame: it preſerveth from all dead palſies, it drieth all moiſt and rheumatick brains: if any drink the ſame, or annoint the head therewith, it taketh away a ſtinking breath; alſo it keepeth one long youthfull if one drink a little of it in the morning, as many times hath been proved.

A ſalve for the ſpots: Take oyl of Roſes, unguent of Roſes, of each half an ounce, oyl of Violets one quarter of an ounce, the juyce of Plantaine half an ounce, Muſcilage of Fleawort, of Mallowes, of Violet leaves, of each one ounce and an half: let it ſeethe till the Muſcilage be conſumed, afterwards with molten wax make a ſalve thereof.

For the Freckles which one getteth by the heat of the Sun: Take a little Allom beaten ſmall, temper amongſt it a well brayed white of an egg, put it on a milde fire, ſtirring it alwayes about that it wax not hard, and when it caſteth up the ſcum, then it is enough, wherewith anoint the Freckles the ſpace of three dayes: if you will defend your ſelf that you get no Freckles on the face, then anoint your face with the whites of eggs.

Of the redneſſe of the face. §. 2.

TAke the whites of two eggs brayed well with Roſe-water, temper the juyce of Plantaine and of Dockes amongſt it, of each a like much, afterwards three grains of ſmal powdred Sublimate alſo mixed amongſt it, anoint the redneſſe with it.

Afterwards take about eight ounces of vinegar and Roſe-water, temper one quarter of an ounce of Brimſtone amongſt it, Allom one quarter of an ounce, let it ſeethe ſoftly untill about one third part be ſodden away, waſh therewith the red face.

It is alſo good that the bad blood may be drawn out to ſet a horſleach or twain to it, for it is found that the redneſſe of the face and the puſhes can never be better taken away, then with this faſtning of the Leaches, but one muſt alwayes purge before hand.

A water: Take Sulphure vive half an ounce, ſalt one drach. Camphire half a ſcruple, Roſe-water, the water of blew Flower-deluce, of each two ounces; ſet it fourteen dayes well ſtopt in the Sun, ſtir it oftentimes together, make a cloth wet in it, and therewith waſh the face.

Another: Take one ounce of Ceruſſe, Maſtick one quarter of an ounce, Myrrhe half a drach. let them be ſifted through a lawne ſearce together, put them into a morter, and pour through a little ſallet oyl and vinegar, and with long ſtirring it about make a ſalve thereof.

☞ I ſuppoſe inward medicines purging the peccant humour, by the adviſe of a diſcreet Phyſitian prevaileth more for the clearing of the face from redneſſe and ſpots, then any outward medicine can do. Yet with purging uſe outward means.

For puſhes, pimples, redneſſe, or wrinkles of the face, apply my ſalve made of Venice Turpentine Roſen, Wax, Hogs-lard, and Honey.

Anoint the face with that ſalve warm, then apply a clean white paper upon it, and let it remain 3. dayes, and it will at 2, or 3. times dreſſing (once every third day) heal the puſhes, pimples, or, wrinkles of the face, if you keep the white paper upon it.

For

For all white pushes of the face. §. 3.

FOr this is first of all good, the water of broken Ceruſſe with Eldern water, which is deſcribed in the firſt §.

This ſalve may be alſo uſed for it.

Take Sheeps fuet, freſh marrow out of the ſtags bones, melt them together on the fire, and anoint the face therewith. Item, take Camphire half a drach. grind it ſmall with three ounces of Roſe-water, ſtir it often, and waſh the face therewith.

For this is alſo highly commended, the oyl of Spike, beſides the good favour, it giveth the face a good colour.

With the white puſhes of the face, we do alſo underſtand all ſcabs, bliſters, and other ſpices of leproſie in the face, which the Grecians do call *Lichenas*, and the Latiniſts *Mentagram*: for that all ſuch diſeaſes do commonly appear with dry white ſcabs, and itching ſcurfe about the chin, the which doth at length ſpread it ſelf from thence over the whole body, for which theſe remedies following are very good. Mentagra.

The Goats milk that commeth warm from the beaſt, the water of Liriconfanſie, of each eight ounces, the whites of three new laid eggs which come warm from the neſt, the cruſts of two warm white loves, Solomons ſeal one M. Camphire half a drach. This ſhall be diſtilled together in ſeething water, then temper the Camphire amongſt it, and waſh oftentimes the face therewith.

The face commeth alſo other-whiles full of little red bliſters, whence iſſueth a ſharpe moiſture mixt with blood, the which if it be not remedied in time, it will degenerate into the right leprie, againſt which theſe means following are to be uſed.

Take water diſtilled of water ſnegs, or of muſcles three ounces, Ceruſſe waſhed with Harts tongue water, one ounce and an half, the juyce of wilde cucumbers or the water thereof as much as is needfull for to make a ſalve thereof: but this following is more forcible.

Take *Sarcocolla*, Ceruſſe, Starch that is ſteeped four dayes in lee, of each three ounces, all theſe are you to temper with the white of an egg: Laſtly, put thereto two grains of *Muſcus*, and one drachme and a half of Camphire, make a ſalve thereof, and therewith anoint the face.

But this following is above all other to be commended, Take litharge of Gold which well decocted in vinegar and well cleanſed, bruiſe it very ſmall, and temper with it oyl of Roſes: but amongſt all the reſt this is to be noted for a rule, that the uſe of this foreſaid anointing is not to be done but onely at the evening.

For to make a clean face. §. 4.

IF any one have a darke and ſad countenance, he is to be purged with *Hiera picra*, afterwards he muſt every morning faſting take Gentian, Wormwood, bitter Almonds, of each one drachme beaten ſmall together: he is to waſh the face oftentimes with vinegar tempered with Roſe-water. This following is alſo very ſure: Take Litharge of ſilver an ounce and a half, Sulphure vive half an ounce, Camphire half a drach. burnt Allom half an ounce, make a fine powder thereof; put thereto the water of Lillies and of Liriconfanſie, of Bean bloſſomes, Solomons ſeal, of each one ounce and a half, keep it in a cloſe ſtopt glaſſe, and when you will uſe it ſtir it well about.

Item, take Beans as many as you will, ſteep them all a night in ſharpe vineger, take off the peels, and dry them in a warm place; beat them to powder, and put ſome of it in warm water when you will go to bed, and waſh thy face therewith.

It is counſelled for women, that if they will have a well coloured face, to eat oftentimes courſe Marjoram: for this it is alſo good to drink wine, for it maintaineth a lively colour.

In like manner are much commended for this purpoſe the Aromatical wines, that have Roſe-mary in them, not onely to be drunken, but to waſh the face alſo with them. Betonie infuſed a whole night in wine maketh a good colour.

For

For congealed blood after any blewes remaining. §. 5.

TAke Comfrey, Daiſie leaves, of each three ounces; Camomil, Meliſot, of each one ounce, Bean meal two ounces, boyl them together and beat it to grout, and when you will uſe it, adde oyl of Roſes to it. Item, this following is very good; take Comfrey, Daiſie leaves of each three ounces, Camomil, Melilot, of each two ounces, Saffron, one dram, Bean meal four ounces, freſh butter two ounces, Fenegreek meal one ounce and a half; boyl the roots in water, beat them and make a plaiſter of it; this is very good for bruiſed members with congealed blood, it ſuppleth and ſwageth the pain, put alſo Wormwood and Cumin unto it, of each one ounce, then hath it not his like.

Take the Lady thiſtle, that is, the thiſtle with broad leaves full of white ſpots; ſeethe the ſame leaves in water, and bathe the place with the water, and apply the leaves ſo ſod as a poultis, and this will take away the blew marks and congealed blood.

How to make a good colour. §. 6.

TAke the roots of Cuccowpint, Ceruſſe, of each half an ounce, beaten ſmall, mixe them with Roſe water, and anoint the cheeks with it; or take the leſſer three leaved graſſe beaten, rub the face therewith, it maketh a fair face and a clear skin: It is alſo aſcribed to the Mithridate that it ſhould alſo beautifie the face, but young hot folks are not to uſe it.

The ſixth Chapter.

Eyebrowes, Eyelids, with all that appertaineth unto them.

IN the beginning of the deſcription of the face in the fifth Chapter, is ſhewed that the ſame hath his entrance at the Eye-browes; therefore doth the diviſion of mans body require ſomewhat to be written of the ſame.

This is here ſpecially to be noted, that provident nature doth wonderfully defend the eyes, not onely with theſe, but alſo with other members more, from many kinds of external accidents; for firſt there be *Cilia*, the hair of the lids placed on the edges of the uppermoſt and undermoſt eye-lids, which ſtand out before with hard and ſtiffe haires, whereby all ſmall things, as flies, duſt, and the like, that might fall into the eyes, ſhould be therewith withſtood. Afterwards are both the Eye-lids *Palpebræ*, whereof the undermoſt ſtandeth very faſt, and the uppermoſt moſt ſwiftly moveth, ſo that it covereth the eye againſt all that might fall into it: they do thus preſerve and keep the eyes in the ſleep, they cover them from the ayrie light, to the end that the whole body might the more commodiouſly take reſt. Thirdly, they have above in the end of the forehead as is ſaid, *Supercilia*, eye-brows ſet upon a high bulk garniſhed with much hair, to the end that all things that might fall down, and ſpecially the ſweat, which thorough his ſalt nature might do the eyes much harm, ſhould be kept of theſe as it were with a bulwark or fortreſſe. And in like ſort have both the cheeks alſo two bunches in the midſt of the two ſides, ſeparated and defended with the height of the noſe, like as alſo the outſides, both of them with hard bones preſerved and provided for, called of the Anatomiſts *Jugales*, the temples; ſo that the eyes are on every ſide fortified, that they might lye the ſurer in the depth. It is not needful to ſpeak more amply thereof, but onely to diſcourſe of thoſe things which are convenient for the healing of the maladies that are incident to thoſe members.

Of the ſwelling of the Eye-lid, §. 1.

THere do fall many maladies into the Eye-lids, as ſwellings, impoſtumes, bleredneſſe, and other more, which maladies alſo oftentimes with the falling away of the hair are augmented. But we will begin with the ſwelling, theſe have many cauſes, firſt, that the defluxion of the eye-lids cometh of a groſſe and tough humour, their redneſſe, itch and

ſmart

smart make manifeſt whereby they be exulcerated, and the hair falling away by no meanes groweth again as long as this diſeaſe endureth, the which doth hurt the ſight and the eyes. This patient firſt of all, if he be full of blood, is to have a vein opened, afterwards to prepare the matter with *Oxymel compoſitum* and ſyrup of Fumitory, and afterwards to purge with theſe pils following: Take yellow Mirobalan barks half an ounce, Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Turbith one drachme, Dragagant, Roſes, Diagridion, Sene, the juyce of Fumitory; temper them all together, and give thereof one drachme at once or foure ſcruples. They do purge the burnt matter and ſalt flegme; water baths are alſo very profitable for this, wherein Mallowes, Sorell, Docks, and Verveins are decocted, uſed oftentimes.

At night lay this plaiſter following thereon, take Endive, Purſlaine, Prieſts crowne, of each alike much; beat them to pap, and temper them with the white of an egge and with a little oyl of Roſes; you may alſo wet a cloth in the juyce of thoſe herbs, and ſo lay it thereon. Item, take ſodden Lentils, pour out the broth, bray them with a little Roſe water, and lay it thereon like as the former. Or take Lentils, Pomgranate pils, Roſes, Sumach, of each one ounce; beat theſe together, and make a pap thereof with Roſe water; make the eyes often moiſt with ſtilled Roſe water, or well water wherein Sorrel is decocted. Or do thus; Take Dandelion, Sorrel, and Roſes, Dock leaves Lentils, of each a like much. Item, take prepared Sarcocolla, and bruiſe it in the juyce of Celendine, and anoint the eyes therewith, is very good. The order of dyet is like, as hereafter in *Ophthalmia* ſhall be ſhewed; but if this defluxion or redneſſe of the eyelids be of long continuance, then muſt one be let blood, and purge the oftener, and outwardly uſe the ſtronger things, as this enſuing, called *Sieff viride*. Take verdigreaſe one drachme, burnt Vitriol one quarter of an ounce, Orpiment, Seafome, Salt-peter, of each one ſcruple, Sal Armoniac two ſcruples, temper them together with the juyce of Rue, and anoint it upon the eylids. This is very good indeed to expel all ſuch diſeaſes, but it is very ſtrong, and ſomewhat perilous to be uſed in the eyes, yet outwardly not awhit.

Sennertus.

To molliſie the hardneſſe of the Eye-lids.

℞. of Mallowes, Beets, Purſlain, ana. *M.* 1. Sorrel, *M.* ß. red Roſes, Melilot flowers, ana. *P.* 1. ſeethe them in water, and foment the Eyelids therewith.

Or ℞. of Endive, Purſlain, Lions tooth, ana. *P.* ß. bruiſe them, and put thereto the white of an egg, and a little oyl of Roſes, and apply it to the Eye.

Or ℞. of *Unguentum pomade*, ℥.ß. Tutia waſhed in Roſewater, white *Sieff*, ana. ʒ. ß. Romane Vitriol ℈.ß. mixe them for an Unguent to anoint the eye-lids.

Or ℞. of leaves of Celendine, blew-bottle, ana. *M.* 1. Vitriol, Allom, ana. ℥.ß. Camphire, ʒ. 1. put them into Agrimony water and white wine, let them infuſe 3. dayes, then diſtill them.

Or ℞. of water of blew-bottle, Celendine, ana. ℥. 4. Rue ſeeds, ℥.ß. white Vitriol, ʒ.2. *Viride æris*, ʒ.ß. ſeethe them, then ſtrain it.

Or ℞. of burnt braſſe, Cadmia waſht, Ceruſſe waſht, ana. ʒ 1. Aloes, Myrrhe, ana. ʒ.ß. Salt Ammoniac, Flower of braſſe, ana. ℈.ß. make powder thereof, and an Oyntment thereof, to anoint the eye-lids and browes.

For the red Scabs: Firſt foment the eyelids with the decoction of Burdock roots, Sorrel, Mallowes; then ℞. of waters of Burnet, Celendine, Burre-docks, ana. ℥.9. burnt Allom, Camphire, eyes of crayfiſh prepared, ana. ʒ.ß. ſeethe them, and waſh the eyes therewith.

Or ℞. of butter without ſalt, ℥.1. Roſewater, ʒ.3. Turpentine, ʒ. 1. the white of an egg, mixe them.

Or ℞. of *Unguentum Roſatum*, Venice Sope, ana. ℥. 1. Quickſilver, ʒ. 1. Sarcocolla, Aloes, ℈.1. mixe them in a morter.

Or ℞. of honey, ℥.2. Amber, Aloes, ana. ʒ.2. rinds of Pomegranates, Allom, ana ʒ. 1. mixe them for an Oyntment.

Or ℞. of Cadmia waſht in Roſe water, ʒ. ß. *Sanguis Draconis*. ʒ.2. *Virides æris*, ℈.1. Aloes, ʒ.ß. make them into powder, and with oyer, ℥.3. or hogs lard, ℥.2. Camphire, ʒ.1. make thereof an oyntment.

Take the white of a new laid egge, put into it the powder of Camphire, 5. grains, beat it to a curd with Allom, and apply it to the eye-lids somewhat thick, and lay flaxen towe upon it, and bind it on, &c. *mesue probatum.*

Or take the buds of red brambles, Fennel, and houseleek, stamp them, and apply it to the eyes as a poultis.

Sennertus.

For water wheales in the Eye-lids, or Knots.

℞. of the fat of moles, drach. 3. oyl of elder, drach. 2. ß. ashes of an Asses hoof, ʒ. 1. Mastick, Frankincense, Mercury mortified, Ceruse, *ana.* ʒ. ß. mix them to anoint the eyes.

Or ℞. of honey, ʒ. 7. oyl of pine apples, ℥. ß. oyl of eggs, ʒ. 2. bean meal, powder of roots of Capers, ana. ʒ. ß. make thereof an Oyntment.

Of Warts on the Eye-lids.

℞. of the Fat of Herring, oyl Olive, ʒ. 1. ß. burnt bees, ʒ. 1. ashes of Mice, make an Oyntment.

Or ℞. oyl of Hypericon, ℥. ß. Brimstone, mixe them.

Or ℞. Of Leaves and Roots of Agrimony green, ʒ. 5. Onions, ℥ ß. bruise them, then put thereto oyl Olive, and oyl of Brimstone, *ana.* ʒ. 3. or 6. bruise them together, and put thereto of Ceruse, ʒ. 2. mixe them.

Or ℞. of Turnsole, roots of Capers, Crowfoot, *ana. M.* 2. Allom, burn them in a new earthen pot, make powder thereof, and put into the Warts when they are opened.

Or ℞. of the roots of Scilla, ℥. 3. Pettie Spurge, ℥. 2. Turnsole, Roots of Celandine, ana. ʒ. 1. bruise them and distil them.

℞. of honey, ℥. 6. Sheeps dung, ʒ. 5. Goats dung, vinegar, ana. ʒ. 5. mix them, and apply it upon the Warts.

Of the Hawe in the eye-lids, called Hordeolum, *because it growes in length like a barley corn.*

Rub the eyelids where it growes with Hens grease, or Sage every morning, or with the flesh of a mouse, or put upon it Galbanum mixed with *nitur*, and foment it with the decoction of barley, and Camomil, and rub it with Pigeons blood.

Or ℞. of Linseed, Fenegreek, Roots of Marsh Mallowes, ana. ʒ. 5. infuse them in water of Elder flowers, and take the muscilage thereof, ℥. 1. put thereto Hens grease, ʒ. 6. oyl of white Lillies, Wax, ana. ʒ. 1. ß. seethe them till the moistnesse is gone, make thereof an Oyntment to anoint the Eye-lids.

Or ℞. of Hens grease, ℥. 1. oyles of white Lillies, Camomil, ana. ʒ. 1. ß. Opopanax, Galbanum dissolved in vinegar, ana. ʒ. 2. mixe them over the fire for an Oyntment.

Or ℞. of Deeres grease, ʒ. 6. Linseed oyl, ʒ. 3. Wax, ʒ. 2. Galbanum, ammoniac. ana. ʒ. ß. Salt Gem, ϑ. ß. make thereof a plaister.

Or ℞. of Frankincense, Myrrhe, ana. ʒ. 2. Laudanum, ℥. ß. Nitur, Wax, Allom, ana. ʒ. 1. dregs of oyl of white Lillies, q. ß. make thereof an Oynment.

Of the Cancer in the Eye-lids.

℞. the red berries of Nightshade, *M.* 3. red Roses, Dates, ana. *M.* 2. ß. Wormwood, *M.* 1. Roots of Flowerdeluce, bruise them, and let them infuse two dayes in water of Nightshade, then distill them and linnen cloth therein, and apply it two or three times every day.

Or ℞. a living Hedgehog, roots of Elder, roots of Reeds, Marjoram, black shell-snails, ana. *M.* 3. burn them in an earthen pot, and make powder thereof, and put it upon the Cancerous places.

Or ℞. of Burdocks, Dragons, blind nettles, ana. ℥. 2. ß. burn them in an earthen pot, put the powder thereof upon the Cancer.

Or ℞. of the roots of vincet oxicum, ℥. 2. Tormentil, Serpentine, Sanicle, ana. ℥. ß. Sage royal, ana. ℥. 1. infuse them 24 hours in Ale, then seethe and strain it, and give the patient thereof a spoonful morning and evening.

This

This following is somewhat milder; Take Verdigreaſe one drach. Dragagant three drach. Saffron and Pepper, of each one drach. make it as thick as honey with ſowr wine, and uſe it as before.

Item, take white wine, Roſe-water, of each two ounces, Aloe, Saffron, of each ℥ 1. wherewith waſh the eye-lids; take water wherein Sumach is decocted, Roſe water and white Wine, of each three ounces, Vitriol, Verdigreaſe, and burnt Aloe, of each one drach. waſh it cold therewith; or take Roſes one quarter of an ounce, prepared *Tutia*, three drach. Antimony, burnt Copper, of each ℥. ß. Wine. ℥. 6. Fennel water, ℥. 1. ß. temper them, and waſh the eyes therewith.

The other manner of ſwelling or diſtention of the eyelids and browes, doth come of ſubtile moiſture or vapours. Alſo if there be ſomething thrown into the eye, ſtung of Waſps, or periſhed through any other inconveniencies. In like manner if one rub the eyes with any other herbs, as Nettles, Rue, Eſula, &c. Alſo theſe accidents may proceed of a bad digeſture of the ſtomach, of overmuch watching or ſleeping, like as it cometh to paſſe in the Lethargy, and alſo in the Dropſie.

Item, if the ſwelling be cauſed through ſtripes or hurt, then take the white of an egge brayed, temper it with Roſe water, or oyl of Roſes, and lay upon it as often as it is dry; two or three dayes after put Camomil in a little bag, and let it ſeethe in Wine, and wet the ſwolne eyes therewith.

Item, if this ſwelling be cauſed through wind or vapours, then take pownded Millet and Cumin, of each a like much, make a plaiſter thereof with Fennel water, and lay a roſted Apple unto it. You may anoint it alſo with the juyce of Sloes.

But if the ſwelling do come through the ſtinging of Waſps or Bees, then take Theriaca, Mithridate, or the confection of Triphera, tempered with a little Aloe, bruiſed with Roſe water, and anoint it therewith. Some do temper ſalt Gemme amongſt it: You may read further thereof afterwards in the ſeventh part, of the ſtinging of Bees.

Or if this ſwelling be cauſed through rubbing of hot herbs or ſuch like, anoint it with *Popnleon*, oyl of Roſes tempered with the white of an egg; for this alſo the juyce of Houſeleek tempered with oyl of Roſes, or with juyce of Plantain, making clothes wet therein, is good. If it be cauſed by much watching, then is ſleep requiſite; and alſo for a bad digeſture, to ſuffer hunger and thirſt, &c. If the ſame be cauſed through cold, then take *Aſarabacca*, Daffodil, of each half an ounce, prepared *Tutia*, and anoint the ſwelling therewithal; there may alſo oyl of Roſes, and white Wax be molten amongſt it, that it may be like a ſalve. The third ſort of ſwelling of theſe members, is like as it were a fatneſſe that ſheweth it ſelf throughout the browes, where the ſame aggravateth and hindreth the lids that one cannot well open them. This diſtention is without pain, and if one preſſe his finger upon it, then is the mark ſeen ſtand a good while afterward therein. The occaſion of this is dry or groſſe ſlime, and withal ſome moiſture of the eyes, it doth matter in the corners of the eyes, that ſticketh ſo faſt to the eye-lids. But one muſt firſt try to remedy it by fomentation, and to take for it the decoction of Wormwood, Camomil, Fennel, Anniſe, and ſuch like: afterwards make a plaiſter of prepared Ammoniack, or Diachylon, and ſome ſalt Armoniack and Ireos tempered amongſt it; and if it will not away therewith, then is it certain that it proceedeth not of moyſture or vapours, but of rottenneſſe; for which many ſtrong things are to be uſed, for that will not eaſily be conſumed, even as you may apparantly perceive, if you let water and fat ſeethe together, that the water is much ſooner waſted then the fat; therefore we are alſo to uſe the things following that are rehearſed hereafter in the firſt place of this diſtention.

Eſpecially if the premiſſes will not help, he is to purge, like as is ſaid in the firſt ſwelling or diſtention of the eye-lids: but if ſo be that the water be ſubtile and fluxible with choler, then is a purgation to be tempered with yellow Mirobalans and Woodbind water, and alſo to let blood if it be needful. Warm clothes wet with Well-water are alſo very good laid thereon, alſo to bathe otherwhiles. And when one goeth to bed, to lay upon it the white of an egge brayed well. In the morning are the eyes to be fomented again with warm water: if then the matter be groſſe, and the ſwelling be any thing big, then take Fenegreek and Linſeed, lay them to ſteep in womans milk, then wring out the muſcilage, but foment the eyes with warm water before, and lay the foreſaid Muſcilage upon it; if there be then pain with it, anoint the place with the fat of a hen. This doth alſo the Muſcilage of Lindſeeds alone, tempered with a little Wax and oyl of Roſes, and laid thereon. This tough matter we muſt ſeek to conſume with the foreſaid Collyrium of *Tutia*,

Pepper and ſuch like, and therewith continue ſomewhat, becauſe health cannot follow ſo ſoone after it. There cometh alſo otherwhiles pain of the eye-lids, which preſſeth none otherwiſe then as if one were conſtrained to hold his eyes ſhut: for which the Mithridate is very good layd upon the eyes and the forehead, and held in the mouth.

The fourth kind of the ſwelling is called Hailſtones, by reaſon of their hardneſſe which is not throughout like to the fat ſwelling, but onely in one place whether it be within or without the eyelids: for this is firſt to be ſought to mellow it, as ſhall be hereafter taught. If this cannot be effected, then if it may be come by outwardly, it is to be cut off.

The fift kind receiveth her name of the Barly which it reſembleth, for it is ſuch a ſwelling of the eyes that ſtretcheth him from one corner of the eye to the other, and is greateſt in the middle and ſmalleſt in the corners; and hath this difference with the aforenamed Hailſtones, that they remain hard throughout, but this not ſo, unleſſe it were hardned through long continuance of time.

For to cure this, the head vein is firſt to be opened and purged: afterwards to lay upon it *Opopanacum* molten in Camomil oyl, afterwards a plaiſter made of prepared *Galbanum* and Barly-meal, of each a like much, prepared with oyl of Lillies and layd thereon: for this is alſo very good, Hens greaſe warme. The eyes muſt be often bathed with warme water, wherein Barly and Camomil is ſod, and afterwards anointed with the blood of Pigeons, Turtles, or Partridges.

Another plaiſter; Take *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, of each half an ounce, Boreas one drachme, mix them together and lay them upon the eye. Or take Frankincenſe and Myrrhe, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Laudanum* half an ounce, Boreas, Allum, wax, of each one drachme, the dregs of the oyl of Lillies as much as is needful: melt therein the *Laudanum* and Wax, the reſt temper and beat amongſt it; uſe this ſo long until it be all conſumed.

Of the itch and ſmartings of the eyelids. §. 2.

IT is mentioned in the former diſtenſion or ſwellings of the eyelids that the ſame commeth with great itching and ſmarting, whereof we muſt ſpeak more at large. This happeneth oftentimes in the infuſion of the eyes *Ophthalmia*, through ſalt and ſharp rheumes, whereof ſhall be hereafter diſcourſed, and alſo of Lice, whereof is before ſpoken in the third Chapter and eight §. and ſhall immediatly hereafter follow in the diſcourſe of the browes.

Otherwhiles this itch and ſmart doth proceed of hot blood, or ſuch like other moiſture, and in caſe then the rubbing and ſcratching do come to it, then hath the humour the more recourſe thither, whence follow ſcabs and ſcurf, not much differing from the brain or ſaw-duſt, which doth harden and continually fmarteth. And although in the former ſwelling of the eyelids (as is ſaid) there be good remedies declared, meet alſo for this diſeaſe, yet nevertheleſſe it is very needful to ſpeak ſomewhat more thereof. If it do come through heat and redneſſe, uſe for it all that is there rehearſed: if it come of any ſharp matter, purge (as before in the firſt ſwelling is ſhewed) once every moneth. Or purge with the whay of Goats milk, wherein is ſodden *Epithymum*, in the which ſhall be ſteeped and wrung out *Mirobalani*, *Chebuli*, three drachmes, Annis ſeeds half a drachme; and if this be too much, then prepare theſe pils following; Take Aloe, Rubarb, of each one drachme, Annis ſeeds half a drachme, Diagridion two ſcruples, make pils thereof with the juice of Fumitory, take thereof one drachme at the uttermoſt at one time; afterwards open the veins in the corners of the eye, and ſet boxing cups behind in the neck. Alſo uſe either of theſe fomentations of the eyes, whereof hath been ſpoken in many places of the diſtention and ſwelling of the eyelids. Or take yellow Amber one quarter of an ounce, Pomegranate pills three drach. temper them with hony, and anoint the eyes with it where the itch is. Or take Sal Armoniack two drach. Aloe half an ounce, mix them together in a brazen mortar. But if the itch be not too great after the letting of blood and purging them, onely foment the eyes with warme water, wherein is decocted Mallowes, Docks, and Sorrell, with ſome Roſe water put amongſt it; or take white wine three ounces, Aloe one quarter of an ounce, anoint the eyes therewith after the fomenting.

Item; Take Butchers broome ſeed, Purſlan ſeeds, Lentiles, of each a like much, pownd them all together, cloſe it with the white of an egge and oyl of Roſes; Sarcocolla tempered with the juice of Celendine is alwayes very good for this purpoſe.

Take

Take fair running water a pint, Camphire powdered very fine, ʒ. 1. Roſemary 2. large tops, and put them together in a clean pewter baſon, and heat four ſtones (of the bigneſſe of pullets eggs,) called *Lapides Calaminares*, which you ſhall have at the Apothecaries; heat them red hot, five or ſix times, and quench them every time in the ſaid water and Camphire: put this into the eyes, five or ſix drops at once into an eye, and hold the eye open, that the water may abide in the eye, whiles one may ſay the Creed; then put in as much more, dreſſe it ſo three or four times a day, till the ſmart and itching is gone; and this recovers the weakneſſe of the eyes, and the web in the eye, and skin that growes upon the eyes.

Sennertus, *Of inverſion and contraction of the Eye-lids.*

IF the fleſh appear red and ſwelled outwardly, it is of ſuperfluous humours; firſt purge the humours abounding; Then

℞. of wine vinegar ʒ. 6. Acatia ʒ. 1. burnt Allom, ʒ. ß. ſeethe them, and therewith anoint the red parts of the Eye-lids.

Or ℞. of white Vitriol, Allom, white bricks, ʒ. 1. powder them, and put thereto of bloodſtone, ʒ. 1. Mercury, G. 2. *Tutia*, ʒ. ß. make powder thereof to lay upon the ſuperfluous fleſh.

Or ℞. of burnt braſſe, ʒ. ß. Vitriol burnt, Chalcitis burnt, Myſeos, ana. ʒ. 1. make powder thereof.

A Plaiſter to lay upon the eye.

℞. of meal of the ſeeds of Fenegreek, ℥ 3. powders of the flowers of Camomil, red Roſes, ana. ʒ. ß. red wine, q. ß. to make a plaiſter to lay upon the eyes.

Take of the ſaid plaiſter or poultis as much as is needful, and put thereto the yolk of an egg, and apply it to the eye.

Or ℞. of Mercury, G. 2. Tutia, *viridis æris*, Bloodſtone, Litharge of gold, ana. ʒ. 1. powder them very ſmall, and apply it to the fleſhy excreſcens of the eye-lids, and lay a plaiſter upon it.

Some take up the fleſh with a needle and ſilk threed, and cut it off with a pen-knife, and apply this water, ℞. of water of Bullace, ℥. 3. Allom, ʒ. 6. Camphire, ʒ. ß. ſeethe it, and waſh the eyelids within, and apply the white of an egg with fine flax, and after it hath remained 24. houres, waſh it with womans milk, and uſe this conglutinate plaiſter.

℞. of Starch, ʒ. 6. Bean meal, ſeeds of Conſound, Flaxe ſeeds out of which the oyl is preſſed, ana. ℥. β. Gum Tragagant, Bole-armenic. ana. ʒ. 2. make powder thereof; and uſe it with the white of an egg.

If the eyelids are contracted, looſen it with mollifying medicines; As

℞. of Roots of Marſh Mallowes, ſeeds of Fenegreek, flowers of Camomil, ana. drachme 2. Saffron ʒ. ß. bind them in a cloth, and wet them in convenient water, and apply it to the eye.

Or ℞. of Hens fat, marrow of a Deer, ana. ℥. ß. Camomil, white Lillies, oyntment of Dialthæa, ana. ʒ. 2. mixe them.

For evils or Lice in the bree of the eyelids.

WAſh with ſea-water, or the decoction of Staphiſager and Beets, and anoint it with Aloes, Myrrhe, ana. ʒ. 2. mixed with hogs lard, or with Aloes, Staphiſager and honey.

Or ℞. of hogs lard, ℥. 1. powder of Pyrum, ʒ. 3. Quickſilver, ʒ. 1. mixe them.

Or ℞. of hogs lard, ℥. 1. white Hellebore, ʒ. 1. yellow arſenick ℥. ß. mixe them.

Of clefts in the Eye-lids, §. 3.

THeſe Clefts and inſection of the Eye-lids are cauſed of heat, or of a ſharp and ſalt humour that falleth into the eye-lids after the purging and letting of blood (whereof is ſaid ſo oftentimes.) Seethe pills and bloſſoms of Pomegranates very ſoft, afterwards ſtamp them in vinegar, and therewith anoint the eye-lids certain dayes together, and

afterwards temper ſome Saffron, and the yolk of an egg amongſt it, and lay it upon it, for it healeth much, like as doth alſo the *Sief de Thure*, which is approved for all rheumes of the eyes, and to be ſought for in the Regiſter.

Of Warts upon the Eye-lids §. 4.

OF theſe there be two ſorts; the one not very hard and without rankling, which is cauſed of melancholick humours; the other hard, like to a ſmall Mulberry, ſtanding commonly about the corner of the eyes; both of theſe muſt be cut or burnt, and afterwards things laid upon it, which hereafter for the cure of the excreſcence of the fleſh, of the fiſtula and corners of the eye, are diſcourſed. But of the Warts ſhall be more amply written hereafter in the fifth part.

Of the inverſion of the Eye-lids, where the inward red fleſh appeareth outwardly, §. 5.

IT happeneth alſo, that through the increaſe of fleſh, the Eye-lids do turn, and the inſide doth appear outwardly. There are two ſorts of this; the one when the Eye-lids being turned about be red and ſore, which is a kind of ſcabbedneſſe; the other doth cover and hide the whole apple of the eye with red and meetly big veines: both of them are of long continuance, and hard to be healed. Therefore it is adviſed that at the very firſt there bee ſome what laid unto it; and although the cure of this diſeaſe have the ſame intention with all other forementioned infirmities of the eyes, yet nevertheleſſe it is required for this diſeaſe, that if the party be in health, he muſt purge with theſe pils: Take *Agaricus*, Coloquint, *Bdellium*, Maſtick of each one drachme, Aloe half an ounce, Turbith one ounce and one quarter, make pils thereof with the juyce of Betony, whereof you are to give one drachme at once. Or take *Pillulæ aureæ* two ſcruple, *Cochiæ* one ſcruple, make pilles thereof, and faſt ſix houres upon it. But if one have once purged, then is the head vein to be opened between the thumb and the forefinger, and in like manner in the forehead, and to ſet boxing cups behind in the neck. Allum boyled in white wine, and waſhed therewith, is alſo very good. Afterwards this plaiſter following ſhall be laid thereon; Take Fenegreek meale ſix ounces, Camomil, Roſes, one ounce of each, red wine as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter, whereof take as much as you will uſe at one time: temper amongſt it the whites of two well brayed egges and lay it upon it. Afterwards you are eight dayes one after another to uſe this ſirup following; Take ſirup of Roſes one ounce, ſirup of Vinegar *Compoſitum* half an ounce, Fennel and Licorice water, of each one ounce; after this muſt you by and by take the foreſaid pils again; and further then every fift day once, two houers after ſupper, the inverted eyelids are in the day time often to be anointed with the juyce of Smallage, and that enduring the ſpace of eight dayes. The next eight dayes afterwards, they are to be made moiſt ſofdly with the water wherein *Sal Armoniac* is diſſolved, and then being anointed with the foreſaid juyces, lay this plaiſter following upon it; Take the plaiſter *De Muſcilaginibus* as hereafter is deſcribed, one ounce; of Allum, Vitrioll, both burnt, of each one drachme; melt this plaiſter with old Wine, temper the powders amongſt it into a tough plaiſter.

After the uſe of this plaiſter and the foreſaid water, then uſe this powder following; Take Antimony half an ounce, prepared *Tutia*, Orpiment, Bloodſtone, Litharge of gold, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a very fine powder of it; this eateth away all the ſuperfluous fleſh, healeth the ſore eyes, dryeth and taketh away the itch. But if it be too ſtrong, then leave out the Orpiment, and take onely the Verdigreaſe two drachmes, *Tutia* three drachmes, Antimony half an ounce, but have care of the apple of the eye. And if this diſeaſe wax old, then it is needfull that this ſcabbedneſſe be rubbed until it bleed, which may moſt commodiouſly be effected with fig leaves. The other muſt be opened with a lancet, with a hot iron, and the pain aſſwaged with the braied white of an ege. But theſe are cures of cunning and expert Chirurgions, to whom onely the ſame is to be referred. But this drying powder is not here to be concealed, which is alſo diſcovered in other places; Take egg-ſhels of very new laid eggs, lay them the ſpace of nine dayes in Vinegar; dry them and make thereof a ſubtil powder, and ſtrew it upon the diſeaſe.

Theſe ſick perſons ſhall beware of all meats that fume into the head, as of Spices, muſtard

muſtard, ſtrong wine, and eſchew eſpecially drunkenneſſe; but let them eat rere eggs, Spinage, Fennel, Borage, Parſley, young fleſh, and drink watered wine.

The other manner of inverſion of the eye-lids happeneth when the uppermoſt eyelid ſhrinketh up, or is drawn up, ſo that it cannot cover the apple in the eye; we call it the Hares ſleep, it doth ſometimes cover but one part. Thirdly, when the uppermoſt of the eyelids cannot reach to the lowermoſt. But if it come by nature, then it is not poſſible to be holpen.

There cometh alſo otherwhiles a pain in the Eye-browes, which wringeth ſore (as if one were conſtrained to keep them alway ſhut) for which Methridate is very good, being ſpread upon the eyes and the forehead, and likewiſe ſome thereof holden in the mouth.

Of the Conſolidation or growing together of the Eye-lids, §. 6.

IT happeneth otherwhiles, that after the taking off of the skin, or cutting off of the fleſh in the corner of the eyes (if it be not well looked unto) that the eye-lids do grow unto the apple of the eye, or one faſt to another, wherewith the whole eye is covered.

For to prevent this, muſt the eyelids which are not yet grown, be raiſed up ſoftly, and the place be anointed with a ſoft feather, with the decoction of Fennel and Carraway, then put in ſome of the white of an egg; do this every day two or three times; now if there remain any fleſh, the fourth day are ſharp *Collyria* to be uſed, which hereafter are deſcribed in the eyelids.

Of Haires of the Eye-lids turning into the Eyes.

I Was in *Curland* in the Duke of Curlands Court, with whom I lived as his Phyſitian. And there was at that time great reſort of Nobles and Ladies which came unto me for Phyſick. And amongſt the reſt, a Lady that had the haires of her eye-lids turned into her eyes, which had a long time hindered her ſight, and put her to great pain; there being preſent five or ſix, or more honourable Ladies, to ſee what I would do unto her to cure her: I ſaw pulling them out prevailed not; for the hairs had been often pulled out, yet they grew again. Therefore I took Shoemakers Wax, and therewith I took hold of the hairs, and I made the hairs by means of the Shoe-makers wax to cleave unto the outſide of the Eye-lids; and this healed her. But when ſhe ſaw her Eye-lids was black and ſmeared with the Shoemakers wax, ſhe was much diſcontented; thereat we had a general laughter, although ſhe chafed and could not help her ſelf: and the pitch entring into her eyes, took away the white skins that was grown thereon. So that although ſhe chafed at the firſt, yet when ſhe ſaw her ſelf perfectly cured therewith, ſhe laughed with us for company, and was very thankful. And herewith divers have been cured ſince of the like diſeaſe.

Sennertus ſaith ſuperfluous haires grow within the Eye-lids by means of humours that flow to the Eye-lids, for which he adviſeth to purge the body.

And to foment the Eyes with Kernels of Walnuts, ℥. 7. Fenegreek, Linſeeds, Roots of Marſh-Mallowes, *ana*. ℥. ß. Vervain, ℥. 2. bound in a cloth and dipt in warm vinegar.

And to keep the haires from growing, anoint with the blood of a dog, flye, or blood of a green Frog, or the ruſt of Iron, and mans faſting ſpettle, or the gall of a Hedgehock, or blood of a Hedgehock and Caſtoreum.

Or ℞. of Roots of Mandrakes, drachme 6. Camphire ℈. ß. vinegar half an ounce, mixe them in a morter, and ſtrain it, and anoint where the haires were pulled out.

Or ℞. of juyce of Dandelion, ℥. ß. Maſtick, ℈. 1. Vinegar, burnt Allom, *ana*. ℥. ß. mixe them.

Or ℞. of the Aſhes of a Hedgehog, half an ounce, ruſt of Iron, drach. 2. aſhes of Ants eggs one ounce, make powder thereof, and apply it to the pores where the hairs grew.

Of the neathermoſt Eye-lid which prickeſh the Apple of the eye. §. 7.

FUrther, it cometh alſo to paſſe, that the Eye-lids do alter their natural courſe in growing, not growing right but inwards: and becauſe (as hath been ſaid) next to the Apple of the eye, they are very ſubtile, not ſenſible at all, they make the more pain in their pricking; for to amend this, theſe means following are to be uſed.

If there be but one or two haires, then take Maſtick, *Gummi Arabicum*, make them ſomewhat moiſt, turn the eye-lids about, and anoint them therewith; if it will not be well therewith, then are the haires to be pluckt quite out, and you muſt burn the holes with a glowing needle that it may not grow out again. Or you may uſe this ſalve following; Take the juyce of the roots of Southernwood, Muſcilage of Fleawort, a little vinegar and Camphire, anoint the ſame in the ſame hole. Item, take *Opium* one grain, Maſtick, half a ſcrup. make it ſoft with a drop of vinegar, and anoint the hole therewith. Or take the blood and gall of a Hedgehog, iron droſſe, of each like much, make a flat cake like to a Lentil, or fiſh ſcale, and lay it on the place where the hair is drawn forth; that ſwageth the pain within the ſpace of an hour, and will not ſuffer the hair to grow there any more. Or take the ruſt of iron, temper it with faſting ſpettle. In like ſort may alſo be pownded Ants eggs, and uſed. But amongſt all is the plucking out and burning moſt ſureſt.

If the haires be many that grow inward, then muſt one cut off the outer edges of the Eye-lids, ſo that the roots of the hairs be taken away, the which muſt be done by expert Chirurgions, otherwiſe muſt the Eye-lids not be cut overthwart at any hand, for that they could not grow together any more.

A plaiſter *de Muſcilaginibus*, promiſed to be deſcribed in the fifth Section. Take Fenegreek, Linſeed, Hollihock roots, of each three ounces; boyl them, and draw out the ſlime or the Muſcilage, beſprinkle it beſides with a little vinegar, afterwards temper three ounces of ſmall beaten Litharge of gold ſodden ſoftly with ſix ounces of oyl of *Seſamum*, and put thereto the foreſaid ſlime, and then ſeethe it to a plaiſter or ſalve.

For falling off of the Hair in the undermoſt Eye-lids, §. 8.

THe falling off of the Hair is of many ſorts; whereof heretofore in the imperfections of the hair, are many things deſcribed in the third Chapter, §. 6. and further in the deſcription of the beard ſhall be declared. The cauſe of the falling off of the haire out of the lower Eye-lids, is a ſharp ſalt matter, which conſumeth the humours that ſhould feed the hair, and dryeth away the roots thereof, that they muſt fall away, which is oftentimes ſeen by them that recover of a ſore ſickneſſe. It may alſo happen in the foreneſſe and ſcabs of this place, as heretofore is ſufficiently declared. Alſo experience doth teach us, that the haires do fall from the eye-lids of thoſe that lead an unchaſt life. Alſo that the Crab-lice do grow thereof, is ſufficiently declared before in the former Chapter, §. 8. But if the cauſe of all this be a ſharp, ſalt, ſmarting matter, let the body be purged, like as heretofore is ſpecified for the itch of the eye-lids, and ſo for the like in others.

But for a beginning, one muſt keep a good order in eating and drinking; afterwards make this plaiſter: Take Hares dung, Bucks dung, of each one quarter of an ounce, burnt Haſel nuts three drach. Goats fat as much as is needful for a ſalve, therewith anoint the Eye-lids. Or take Antimony, burnt Pepper, of each one drach. and waſhed Lead half an ounce. Indie *Spica*, Squinant, of each one drach. and a half, burnt Date ſtones five drach. Goats and Bears fat, as much as is needful for a ſalve.

Item, take Swallowes dung, Mice dung, of each half a drach. burnt Date ſtones, Laſure ſtones, of each one drach. Indie *Spica* one ſcrup. make a ſalve thereof with clarified honey, and uſe it as the aforeſaid.

If the falling off of the hair be cauſed of redneſſe, ſmarting, or ſcurf, then take a Pomegranate, cut it in eight pieces, and ſeethe it in vinegar untill it be ſoft, and unto grows of pap; afterwards ſtrain the juyce thorow a cloth, and uſe it ſo long untill it be thorow whole.

The

The seventh Chapter.

Of the Eyes.

THey are thus described; The eye is an instrument of the sight, whose nature and complexion is moist, round, yet a little flattish, with seven panicles and three humors compleat and conjoyned, the definition whereof would here be too long to rehearse. These two members are accounted in comparison of all the rest to be very small, yet notwithstanding so precious, that our Lord God hath planted marvellous things, and shewed his power and omnipotency most excellently in them: whereof it is not here needful to write any more, yet it is not amiss to rehearse those things which in the beginning of the first Chapter have been said of the face: to wit, that for the most part all humane affections, inward desires, and cogitations of the heart, do most forcibly appear in the eyes. For what is there, that the inward thoughts, will and desires of the heart and the mind could counterfeit more naturally, then these members? For they shew thorow their rowling about, looking downwards, sudden motions, winking, and other such like, mirth, sorrow, anger, hatred, and other affections of the heart. They do give also sure knowledg of the secret lusts; for there cannot be so many inclinations in the brest of man, but there may be a sign thereof discerned in the eyes; so that one may justly say, the eyes are most true messengers of the heart and of the minde. Of them have the *Physiognomici* known the manifold nature of men, and adjudged that the eyes which stand so deep in the head do see much sharper, then they that stand wide out. Those eyes that stand far out (they say) do decipher a fool and light brained person; they say also, that the eyes which do so twinkle and close the eye-lids so often, do alwaies signifie fearful persons; contrariwise, they that hold the eyes strong open, are stout and invincible, and such like more, with which natural causes the daily experience agreeth. In fine, there is nothing more costly, nor more needful in a living body, then the sight: It is also amongst the motions of the body an onely thing, that maketh a difference between life and death. And this is sufficient in general to be said of the eyes; we will now come to their diseases and their cures.

Galen in 8. *de Juvamentis membrorum*, saith there are two Nerves which come, *a prima cerebri parte* from the Ventricle of the brain unto the eyes, and by them cometh the sense of seeing, and those two Nerves are hollow, and are called *Canales*. And that Nerve which comes from the right side of the brain, goes unto the left eye, and that Nerve which comes from the left side of the brain goes unto the right eye. And those Nerves are involved with two panicles of the brain, the one coming from *Dura Mater*, the other from *Pia Mater*.

First, that panicle which comes from *Dura Mater*, extends it self upon the eye, and of it is made the coat, called *Pellicula Sclirotica*, and it is called *Sclirotica à Scliros, durum*, hard, because it is harder then the rest, and defends the eye from the skull, as the *Dura Mater* defends the brain from the skull.

Secondly, that panicle which comes *Pia Mater*, extends it self unto the eye, and of it is made the coat, called *Pellicula Secundina*, which contains the humour called *Humor Vitreus*.

The third *Pellicle* comes from the inner part of the brain, and is called *Retina*, which contains the *Cristalline* humour, which is the instrument of sight, and that *Pellicle* beginneth from the head of the *Optick* Nerve, and hath Veins and Arteries, as *Galen* saith, *in loco præallegato ut ab ejus contentis humor cristallinus nutriatur*, and that Christalline humour is placed in the middest of the eye, as the Sun is placed in the middest of the seven Planets to give light unto the rest.

The fourth *Tunicle* or *Pelliele* is called *Aranea*, and doth retain the Cristalline humour, and defends it from the humour called *Albugineus*. And this *humor Albugineus*, is contained between the Tunicles called *Retina* and *Uvea*, and is as it were the superfluity of the Cristalline humour, and it lyeth on the outside of the Christalline humour to defend it from external heats, dryness, and other hurts.

The

The fift Tunicle or Pellicle is called *Unea*, and doth ariſe from the Tunicle called *Secundina*, and it hath divers colours, but moſt commonly greeniſh, blackiſh, or grayiſh. And this Tunicle *Unea* hath a hole in the middle, and that hole is called *Pupilla*, and that hole is ſometimes contracted and made leſſe, ſometimes extended and made bigger, according as the Criſtalline humour doth dilate it ſelf, that the ſight may be made the more perfect.

The ſixth Tunicle or Pellicle, is called *Cornea*, which doth ariſe from the Tunicle called *Sturotica*, and is bright and ſtrong, like a new Lanthorn horn, from whence it hath his name, and it is bright, that the viſible ſpecies may enter through it, as the light of a Candle doth enter through a Lanthorn horn, and it hath two offices in Nature; One to keep the humour called *Albugineus*, from flowing out, the other to defend the Criſtalline humour from outward hurts, and therefore it is hard and ſtrong in reſpect of the other Tunicles, and hath in it ſelf four Pellicles, that if one be hurt, the other may be preſerved.

The ſeventh Tunicle or Pellicle is called *Conjunctiva*, which is white and groſſe, and covers the outward part of the whole eye, except the blackiſh part, which is not covered, to the end that the Criſtalline humour, may be manifeſt to external objects, and thit Tunicle hath many Veins, from whom it receiveth nouriſhmen. And this Tunicle ariſeth from the Pannicle which covereth the *Craneum*. *Et ideo reſtrictoria juvant ſi ponantur ſuper ſupercilia habentium ophthalmiam.*

From theſe Obſervations is ſhewed, that the eye is compoſed of ſeven Coats or Pellicles, and of three humours.

1. Humour *Vitreus*.
2. Humour *Criſtallinus*.
3. Humour *Albugineus*.

Of the pain in the eyes in general. §. 1.

BEfore that we do come to the effect of the matter, theſe things are to be obſerved in all pains of the eyes: to wit, the nature of the Patient, his age, the time of the year, the ſickneſſe he hath had before, and all other circumſtances: ſo that all things, according as occaſion ſerveth, may either be augmented, diminiſhed, or altered. In general, it is alwaies good in all pains of the eyes, that the Patient do keep him in a dark place, free from ayre and wind, lie high in the bed, ſo that the rheume may not tarry in the eyes, but may fall down to the cheeks; ſleep is very meet, for it conſumeth and digeſteth the matter. All vexation is alſo to be eſchewed, and all that may breed or bring any trouble to the head, as ſorrow, anger, ill ſavour, and ſuch like. Alſo to refrain much venery, feed on light meats, to avoid ſtrong ſents, as Muſtard, Onions, Garlick, Beans, Nuts, Wine, Vinegar, and all ſowr meats. He muſt keep himſelf very quiet, as long as the grief of the eyes endureth. This is now a general and brief declaration, becauſe that we ſhortly hereafter (in the deſcription of the Gnats that ſeem to ſwarm before the eyes) ſhall give a longer and ampler inſtruction of the eyes. What concerneth the letting of blood, purging, and other ſorts of remedies, that ſhall particularly be taught in their proper places.

Firſt ſome remedies are here deſcribed which may be uſed for all pains of the eyes; and for that this is a general rule, that as oftentimes, and ſo long as the pain of the eyes endureth, you ſhall lay thereon the white of an egge, brayed together with oyl of Roſes; for it ſtayeth the courſe of the humours, and ſwageth all pains.

Of the pain in the eyes.

FOr pains in the eyes, I have onely uſed the buds of Brambles, Houſleek, and Fennel, ſtamped together, and applyed poultis-wiſe over the eyes.

Or elſe.

Take the white of two eggs, Camphire, ℥. 1. powdered, and with a piece of Allome as big as an egge, beat the white, and Camphir to a curd, and ſo apply it over the eye grieved.

Take cream of milk, Endive-water, of each two ſpoonfuls, Vinegar, one ſpoonful, Camphire, ℥. β. mix them and put it into the eyes.

Item,

Item take the juice of Gelendine and Honey, of each a like, beat them together by a ſoft fire, afterwards ſcum them, and annoint the eyes therewith. The juice of Fennel and the juice of Betony is alſo very good for this purpoſe.

Item, take broad Plantain, Eye-bright, Fennel, ſeethe them together in a pot, and receive the vapor into the eyes.

Take a young Pigeon, open the veins under the wings, and let the blood drop in your eyes, but uſe not this in the beginning, (for it is too hot) but at the laſt when the courſe of the humours beginneth to abate. Or you may uſe this following.

Take the blood of a Turtle Dove; temper it with Roſe-water, and put it into the eyes. This is many times approved for the pain of the eyes. Others do only annoint their eye-lids with it.

A very good *Collyrium*, which diminiſheth and diſcuſſeth the pain. Take prepared *Tutia*, Camphire bruiſed very ſmall, of each ℈. 1. Roſewater, ʒ. 1. White Wine, ʒ. ß. temper them well: when you will uſe, it ſtir it well, and put a drop or twain in the eye.

Raſis his white powder which marvellouſly aſſwageth the pain. Take prepared *Sarcocolla*, ʒ. 5. *Sief memithe* (which is hereafter deſcribed) ʒ. 1. temper it well with Fennel-water or womans milk. But by reaſon that womans milk is oftentimes uſed, therefore we will admoniſh here, that womans milk muſt not be uſed except it be very freſh; for it ſowreth very quickly, and looſeth her force, whereby it might do more hurt then good. *The white powder of Raſis for the eyes.*

Sief memithe which is here and in other places mentioned, is thus prepared. Take the juice of the ſtrange herb *Glaucium*, called by the Arabians *Memithe, Chamedrios*, barks of Frankincenſe, Myrrhe, Aloe, *Sarcocolla*, burnt Vitriol, *Ariſtologi*, of each a like much; make this together into a moſt fine powder, and uſe it like as is taught. *Sief memithe.*

Of the corners of the Eyes and their diſeaſes. §. 2.

FIrſt there groweth in the corners of the eyes ſometimes as much of the fleſh, that the ſight thereby is hindred. Contrariwiſe there cometh alſo ſometimes ſuch drying away or conſumption, that they wholly wax ſore, and alwaies run, ſo that the rude and unskilful people do deem no other, then that it is a Fiſtula. The cauſe of this growing is overmuch blood and moiſture, as it alſo cometh to paſſe in the diminiſhing of the eye-lids, the ſame being not rightly handled, the affluent humours make fleſh to grow again. The diminiſhing and abating is cauſed of drought. The ſigns of both theſe are apparent to the ſight; they are both almoſt incurable, but that there muſt be ſharp medicines uſed unto them which the eyes cannot ſuffer, wherefore it is ſtrictly to be commanded to the vulgar *Oculiſts*, that they have ſpecial care of their inciſions and cauterizings in ſuch perilous places.

For this diſeaſe the beſt remedie is to purge the body with Alhaudal, Aloes, or the like, well rectified and qualified, by the adviſe of an experienced Phyſitian.

After purging, I have onely uſed the white of eggs beaten with a quill, with the powder of Roſen prepared, and this healeth the Fiſtula, or matter running out of the corner of the eye.

Sennertus of the Ophthalmie.

FIrſt take this preparative, ℞. of ſyrup of Violets, Water-Lillies, Rob of Ribs, ana. ʒ. 1. waters of Violets, Strawberries, ana. ʒ. 3. waters of eye-bright, Vervain, ana. ʒ. 1. mix them for a potion.

Then purge with ſyrup of Roſes or Violets laxative, Caſſia, Tamarinds, Rubarb, Mirobalanes.

Or, ℞. of Myrobalanes, Citrons, ℥. 1. ß. Rubarb, ʒ. 2. Spike, G. 6. Cinamom, ß. ß. infuſe them in Cichory-water, Q. ß. then ſtrain it, and put thereto of the ſyrup of Roſes laxative, ʒ. 1. ß. make a potion, or purge with *Pilulæ lucis*.

After purging he commends repercuſſive medicines, if the humours come from the *Pericranium*. As juice of red Roſes, Plantain, Nightſhade, Willow-leaves, Lettice, flowers of Pomegranates, heads of Poppy, red Saunders, Bole Armenick, Sanguis draconis, ading Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Gumme Tragacant, mixed with the white of an egge.

℞. Bo-

Or, ℞. Bolus, Sanguis draconis, ana. ʒ. 2. the white of an egge, and with Vinegar, in which red Roſes, red Saunders, and Frankincenſe are ſodden, make a plaiſter to be applyed to the forehead.

Or, ℞. of Bolus, ʒ. 2. flowers of red Roſes, Sanguis draconis, ana. ʒ. 1. Maſtick, flowers of Pomgranates, ana. ʒ. ß. powder them, and with the white of an egge and roſe Vinegar, make a plaiſter to be applyed to the forehead.

Other Topick medicines, not ſo aſtringent.

℞. of Roſe-water, ℥. 1. Eye-bright-water, ℥. ß. Tutia prepared, white Sief opium, ana. ϑ. ß. Camphire, G. 1. mix them.

Or, ℞. of white Sief opium, ana, ʒ. ß. and with womans milk and Roſe-water, apply it to the eyes.

Or, ℞. of womans milk, ℥. 3. the white of an egge, ℥. 2. juice of Plantain, ℥. 1. mix them.

Or, ℞. of the muſcilage of fleabane-ſeeds extract with Plantain-water, or Roſe-water, ℥. 2. the white of an egge well beaten, ℥. 1. mix them, and apply to the eyes, and if there be much heat add Camphire, G. 5.

Or, ℞. of Roſe-water, ℥. 2. juice of Plantain, ℥. 1. the white of an egge, ℥. ß. mix them.

Or, ℞. leaves of Plantain, red Roſes, ana. ʒ. flowers of Pomegranates, ʒ. 1. ſeethe them in Roſe-water and Plantain-water.

Or, ℞. of the pulpe of Crabs, or Quinces, ſod in Roſe-water, and Plantain-water, ℥. 2. Barley meal, ℥. 1. Sumach, flowers of Pomegranate, red Roſes, ana. ʒ. ß. juice of Houſleek, and Plantain, Q. ß. which repelleth the humours and mitigates pain.

Or, ℞. of Ceruſſe waſht in Roſe-water, ℥. 2. Plantain, ℥. 2. the white of an egge, mix them.

Or, ℞. of Tutia prepared, ʒ. ß. Roſewater, ℥. 2. white of an egge, ℥. ß. mix them.

Or, ℞. of Strawberies, ℥. 9. Sugar, ℥. 4. bruiſe them and let them, ſtand in Balnea, 8. dayes, then diſtil them.

Water of Succory.

℞. of flowers of Succory, gathered before Sun riſing, ℔. 3. bruiſe them in a mortar with Sugar Candy, ℥. 14. put them into a glaſſe, and let them ſtand in the Sun till they are diſſolved into an oyly water, and annoint the eyelids and eyes therewith, and it will ſtay the flux of humours, and quicken the ſight.

Oyl or water of Blewbottles.

℞. of flowers of Blewbottles, gathered before Sun riſing, ℔. 2. ſtamp them in a mortar, and put them into a glaſſe well ſtopt, and let them ſtand in the Sunne twenty eight dayes, then put it into an oven with Houſhold bread, and let them remain with the bread in the oven until the bread is baked, and the oyl or water is a ſpecial remedy for hot fluxes of humours and ſalt humours.

Or, apply a plaiſter of the yolke of an egge, crums of white bread, and Roſe water or milk.

Sennertus *of the dry Ophthalme.*

IN this diſeaſe alſo the humours are to be temperated, prepared and evacuated. Then apply Topick medicines to mollifie the hardneſſe and dryneſſe. As

℞. of Endive, Water-lillies, Lettice, Nightſhade, flowers of Violets, red Roſes, ana. M. 1. roots of Marſhmallowes, ℥. 1. ß. ſeeds of Fenegreek powdered groſſe, ℥. 2. bruiſe them in a mortar with butter and oyl Olive, and diſtil them.

Or, ℞. of Pellitory, Scabious green, ana. M. 4. cut and bruiſe them, and put thereto of Pigeons and Swallowes blood, ana. ℥. 2. diſtil them and waſh the eyes morning and evening.

Or, ℞. of Wheat meal, ℥. 2. Fetches beans in meal, ana. ℥. 1. ß. *Terra ſigillata*, ʒ. 2. roots of Solomons ſeal, ʒ. 2. powder them and mix them with water of Succory, and make a plaiſter to apply upon the eyes at night.

Or, ℞. of May Butter without ſalt, oyl of Roſes, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Aloes, ʒ. 2. Camphire

phire ℥. ß. litharge of gold and ſilver, ana. ℥ 1. melt the oyl and butter, then put ther-to the other things powdered, and wrought together in a lead morter; make an oyntment thereof and anoint the ey-lids, in the evening and in the morning waſh the eyes with womans milk and waters of agrimony, and roſes.

For eaſe may one uſe one of theſe remedies following, which are very meet for it, if the corners of the eyes do run much and impoſtumate.

For this is the body firſt to be cleanſed, afterwards to be bathed every day, and to ſweat, but not too much: for that thereby ſhould the moiſture be drawn out of the body and be conſumed.

Afterwards ſhall this powder be uſed oftentimes, made after the ſubtilleſt manner.

Take prepared *Tutie*, one ounce and a quarter: red Coral, yellow Mirobalans, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pepper half a drach. ſtrew that in the corners; Or take prepared *Tutia* one drach. Antimony half a drach. prepared Pearls, *Nihil*, red Coral, of each one quarter of an ounce, burnt ſilk houſes half a drach. make an impalpable powder thereof, it drieth very ſtrongly, and is alſo ſafe. Or take Aloe, *Acatia*, *Licium*, fine Bolus, *Gummi Arabicum*, of each one drach. This being powdered together, is to be mixed with the white of an egg, or diſſolved Dragagant: afterwards anoint therewith the forehead and eye-lids.

Item take the juyce of Houſleek, or Nightſhade, and Verjuyce, of each one ounce: mix beaten Acorns amongſt it, Myrrhe, fine Bolus, of each one drach. lay it on the eyes, as is ſaid before.

Item take Cipres nuts, Mommie, Dragons blood, Maſtick, Dragagant, of each one quarter of an ounce, beat them ſmall, and make with the white of an egg, or diſſolved Dragagant a ſalve of it.

Item waſh the eyes oftentimes with rain water, wherein Galnuts, Mirtle ſeeds, fine Bolus, and Cipres nuts have been decocted. Theſe things are all good to drive back the moiſture. Or take burnt Mirobalans, Chebuli ſtones beaten ſmall, make with water of Mints a *Collyrium* of them.

Item, take one drach. of *Tutia* ſteeped in Mirtle water and waſhed, white Coral, burnt ſtones of Chebuli, Butchers broom ſeeds, Galnuts, Aloe, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, *Opium*, of each one ſcrup. all beaten together after the ſmalleſt manner, make a powder; or temper it in water wherein *Gummi Arabicum* or Dragagant is diſſolved.

Now becauſe that in this *Collyrium*, alſo in other more medicines for the eyes, *Opium* is uſed: therefore muſt I here admoniſh, that the ſame is not to be taken but in time of great extremity: for it might eaſily happen, that whereas one meant to eaſe the pain, that the diſeaſe for evermore were made altogether incurable, yea that blindneſſe might follow after it: therefore are men to take heed unto this. *Opium not alwayes to be uſed for the eyes.*

A plaiſter: Take *Ladanum Ammoniacum*, of each one ounce, Maſtick, five drach. parched Millet two ounces, beat it all ſmall, make with Camomil oyl a plaiſter four fingers broad and one quarter of a yard long, the which lay upon the ſeam of the ſcull.

Hereafter do follow many more remedies, which are alſo very good for it; but this preſent is prepared rather for the running corners of the eyes, for to dry them, and to ſtay the rhenme.

Of the diſeaſe in the eyes called Opthalmia. §. 3.

SOme have ſuppoſed that this Greek word did generally ſignifie the pain in the eyes; but others have defined it thus, *Opthalmia* is an infirmitie that cometh in the eye-lids and in the eyes, ſpreading it ſelf ſo wide abroad, that it covereth the whole apple of the eye. Or *Opthalmia* is a hot diſeaſe, which onely aſſaileth the eyes (after a natural manner) through blood or Choler; or outwardly of corrupted matter, of cold Rheumes, or is cauſed of blood or vapors, and thereby whatſoever moiſture is in the eye it is over heated: yet do all learned conclude with *Galen*, that it is flegme of the eyes. Of this do alſo come other moiſtures, which the Latiniſts do call *Lippitudinem*, that is, the blearneſſe of the eyes which is cauſed of three ſpecial cauſes, like as is ſaid at the firſt, to wit, of outward, and inward; Of outward, as the Sun, ſmoak, duſt, and ſuch like: ſo match alſo the unnatural alteration of the times, uſe of vaporous meats, as Onions, Garlick, Muſtard, ſtrong compounded Wines, cauſe the ſame. The inward cauſes

cauſes are the afflux of certain humors, be they mixt or not; but this infirmity of the eyes may be cauſed of the blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, or *Melancholia*, of which ſignes we will here ſomewhat diſcourſe.

If it proceed of blood, then are the eyes and their veines puffed up red, the temples of the head do beat, the uppermoſt eye-lids do ſwell, the eyes are moiſt, yet with little pain; but with ſuch moiſture that in ſleep the Eyes do bake too; for this doth alſo the time of the year avail, as doth the clearneſſe, youth, warm and moiſt country, and meats that ingender much blood. If it do come of *Cholera*, then is there pricking, burning, with great pain and ſwelling, not ſo red as aforeſaid, but moiſt and burning, that thereby alſo the apple of the eye is other whiles periſhed. If it proceed of *Phlegma*, then is there a compreſſion and ponderoſity in the eyes, with great pain, without heat or redneſſe, but ſome whiteneſſe, and by reaſon of the great moiſture, much ſoreneſſe and ſwelling.

If it be cauſed of *Melancholia*, then is there alſo great ponderoſity, with ſallow colour, without redneſſe of compreſſion; the eyes do not bake together in ſleep, for that the Cutarre or the Rheume is too dry. The Phyſitians do herein make more differences and ſignes, which are to be commended to the Philoſophers. But this may ſuffice for our purpoſe and intention.

Nevertheleſſe, this is alſo to be noted, that theſe defluxions: ſoreneſſe, or impoſtumations of the eyes (that befall for the moſt part in the corners of the eyes, with a ſharpe ſalt Rheume, which hath been ſpoken of in §2) are the beginning and true ſigns of this *Ophthalmia*. The corners of the eyes are four, two beſides the noſe, which are the greateſt, the other ſmaller. Whenſoever then the *Ophthalmia* doth appear in this place, occaſioned of blood; then muſt it be prevented with letting blood, be it in the head vein, or other, in one, or both the arms, and let out much or little according to the ability of the patient. And if the matter were ſubtile and run ſore, one may alſo let him blood in the temple of the head. In like manner, hotſleaches applyed to the forehead, and boxing cups on the neck. But if all this will not help, there is to be made and appled on the top of the head upon the *Sutura Coronalis* a *Cauterium*, whether it be potential or actual. Afterwards the patient is to be purged, and to uſe no other outward means but to betake him to a good order of diet. Now to proceed to the ſpecial imfirmities of the eyes or *Ophalthamia*, this ſhall be the firſt.

Of the redneſſe of the eyes. §. 4.

THis is cauſed outwardly of ſtripes, thruſts, concourſe of blood, ſuperabundance of blood in the veines, which (as is ſaid) ſpreadeth it abroad in the eyes. For this, it is adviſed to open the head vein on the contrary ſide, or at leaſt to ſet boxing cups upon the ſhoulders: afterwards to purge. Further, to apply outward things which drive the matter back again. For this is firſt, the white of an egg brayed with womans milk, moſt highly commended and ſafe, a drop or twain dropped into the eye. Or ſeethe Linſeed and make a ſpunge wet in that decoction, and lay it warm on the eyes; but if this will not help much, then do in like manner with the decoction of Fenegreek or of Camomil.

Item, take the juyce of Nightſhade, temper it with the brayed white of an egg, and with oyl of Roſes, make a cloth wet in it, and lay it on the eye.

Item, if the eyes be bloodſhot, take the juyce of Wormwood, bray it well with the white of an egg and drop into the eyes.

Take Coriander, ſeethe it in water, wring it out with this decoction, make muſcilage of Fleawort, temper it with fine Bolus, and lay it on the eyes with wet clothes.

Or make Cotton wet in the brayed whites of eggs with oyl of Roſes, and lay it to his forehead, eyes, and temples. Alſo you may temper amongſt it fine Bolus, or Frankincenſe, which you will.

But if the matter be ſubtile, then muſt one labour to diſcuſſe the blood: for which end, you are to take young Pigeons or Turtle doves blood, like as is taught before in §. 1. for that hath been found many times to be good.

Item, take Frankincenſe, *Sal gemmæ* of each one drach, beat it ſmall, and make it with womans milk into a *Collyrium*.

Take

Take broad Plantaine water about one pint, ſmall bruiſed Verdigreaſe one ounce, fine Bolus, Dragons blood, of each half an ounce, Camphire one quarter of an ounce; diſtill this in a glaſſen helme in ſeething water: It is not onely good for red eyes, which are painfull, and for ſwollen eye-lids that have long continued; but alſo to all ſore ſtinking mouthes, and eſpecially for all ulcerations of the privy members. *Ulcerations of the privities.*

Item, take Aloe three parts, Camphire one part, ſteep them in Roſe-water, and uſe it.

Radiſh water is alſo marvellous good for all redneſſe of the eyes. Take the water of Vervein, of Eyebright, of Marjoram, of each half an ounce, Fennel water one ounce, Camphire half a drach. the gall of a great Pickerel; temper and ſtir it altogether, and uſe it as the reſt.

Item, take prepared *Tutia*, prepared in piſſe and Fennel water (like as is taught in the Introduction) half an ounce, of Mace three drach. of Camphire ſix grains, of Malmſey one ſmall pint: beat all theſe as ſmall as may be, mix them together and keep it.

You have alſo other preparations more of this *Tutia*, like as there are twain expreſſed in the Introduction of this Book: but for the redneſſe of the eyes is this eſpecially recommended: take half an ounce of *Tutia*, make it glowing, and quench it 15. times in Roſewater; then bruiſe it ſmall, and put unto it one quarter of an ounce of Calamint ſtone, three Cloves, half a pint of Malmeſey: mix all theſe together. Theſe three *Collyria* are for all redneſſe of the eyes, and other things very highly commended of the ancient Phyſitians. Tutia *prepared.*

Alſo to beſume the eyes with white Amber, is much praiſed.

Item, take Hyſſop, Marjoram, Fenegreek, Camomil, Melilot, Roſes, and ſuch like: ſeethe them, and let the vapour go into the eyes.

A plaiſter for the redneſſe of the eyes: Take Radiſh leaves well made clean and waſhed, and Currans of each half an ounce, Pigeons dung one quarter of an ounce; beat them well together, and lay it thereon.

The ſame may alſo be done with pownd Willow leaves, and laid upon it.

Salves: Take *Tutia* half an ounce, oyl of Bay one quarter of an ounce, Honey and Vinegar of each a ſpoonfull, Camphire one drach. make a ſalve thereof, and therewith anoint the eye-lids. This is alſo meet for inverted eye-lids.

Eyeſalve called *Nihil.* Take prepared *Tutia* a quarter of an ounce, red Coral one drachme, Pearls one drach. *Nihil albi* one quarter of an ounce, Camphire half a ſcrup. Barrow greaſe 4. ounces; temper it well, anoint of this ſalve the quantity of a Coriander ſeed in the corner of the eye, in the evening when you go to bed; yet healeth the redneſſe of the eyes, and taketh away all the Rheumes that falleth into the eyes. After this form is the ſalve of Roſes much commended, which is deſcribed in the firſt Chapter and 2. §. whereof take one ounce, prepared *Tutia*, four ſcrup. and anoint the eye-lids therewith.

Confected Chebuli being eaten, do withſtand the redneſſe of the eyes, and defend the ſight. In like manner Nutmegs confected in honey.

For redneſſe of the eyes, firſt purge the body, after that, Take the white of eggs and Camphire, and with Allom beat it to a curde, as I have ſhewed in §. 1. of this Chapter; and without any doubt it helpeth the redneſſe of the eyes, and heat of the eyes.

Take the white and yolk of an egg mixed with Sugar and a little Saffron, and put thereof into the eyes.

To dry the humour, take Quinces or rinds of Pomgranats ſod in water.

Or ℞. of Lycium, Saffron, ana ℥. ß. Acacia, ʒ. 1. Roſewater, ʒ. 1. or the white of an egg, and Roſewater, ana ℥. ß. mix them.

Or ℞. of Melilot, Vervein, Rue, Celandine, ana *M.* 1. red Roſes, *m.* ß. diſtill them, and put off the diſtilled water into the eyes.

Or ℞. of *Tutia* prepared, Lapis Calaminaris, droſſe of braſſe waſhed, ana ℥. ß. gum Arabick ℥. ß. make a powder of them, and put the powder into warm water, and make a Collyre; and when you uſe it, take thereof ℥. ß. with water of Fenegreek, ℥. 6. and put of it into the eyes

℞. of Roſewater, ℥. 1. ß. Eyebright, ℥. 1. Sugar-Candy. *G.* 15. *Tutia* prepared ʒ. ß. mix them,

℞. of

℞. of Muſclage, Fleabane, Quinces, Fenegreek, drawn with water of Roſes, ana. ʒ. 2. Roſe water, ℥.1.ß. Elder flowers, ℥.ß. Saffron, ϑ.ß. mix them.

℞. of Roſewater ℥. 1.ß. Eyebright, ʒ.ß. *Tutia* prepared, white Siefs *Opium*, ana.ϑ.1. white Vitriol, *g*.2. mix them.

Hot Eyes. §.4.

FOraſmuch then as that there can be no redneſſe of the Eyes without heat, therefore muſt we diſcourſe ſomewhat thereof, and uſe theſe remedies following for it: Take the water of Eyebright, of Fennel, of Celendine, of each one ounce, prepared *Tutia*, three ſcrup. prepared *Sarcocolla* and pearls of each half a drach. temper it together. This *Collirium* is much in uſe at *Auguſta*.

Another: Take Rue, Fennel, Vervein, of each like much, ſtampe it, and pour theron Roſewater and white wine, ſo that the herbs be covered i let it ſtand a night, afterwards diſtill it in a glaſſed helme and in water.

Item, take prepared *Sarcocolla* half an ounce, white Dragagant, Frankincenſe, Iron droſſe, of pearls, of each three drach. Indy *Spica*, Silver and Gold litharge, of each one drach. and a half, Starch Ceruſſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Tutia*, three drach. bruiſe this altogether unto a ſmall powder, make a dough thereof with Roſe water, afterwards make ſmall trochiſces thereof, and let them dry; pownd them afterwards again, and make them moiſt with the juyce of Pomgranats, and dry them again. Thirdly, make them moiſt with the water of Nightſhade like as before: put thereto one drach. of Camphire, white Sugar one drach. and a half. When ye will uſe of it, ſtir it with Roſewater, white of an egg, and womans milk: Take Aloe, *Tutia*, Honey, Sugar, Fenegreek, Fennel, of each alike much, ſeethe them in Wine, and receive the vapour, or apply it unto them, it is very good for the hot eyes.

Item, take white Wine four ounces, Aloe, *Serapinum*, Myrrhe, Sugar, Fennel, of each one drach. let it ſeethe moderatly: this is alſo good for a *Collyrium*.

Take the water of Fennel, of Eyibright, of Celendine, of each half an ounce, *Serapinum* one drach: diſſolve this gum, and temper it altogether.

Item, take green Agrimony, ſtamp and temper it with the white of an egg; make tow wet therein, and lay it upon the eyes.

To ſet boxing cups on both ſhoulders, is alſo commodious for this infirmity, womans milk, letting of blood, Roſes and Fennel, with *Tutia*: ſodden Fenegreek, and eggs ſodden warm and laid upon the eyes is alſo much commended.

Hot bliſters and pricking in the Eyes.

THeſe are cauſed thorow moiſture which ſetleth it ſelf in the white of the apple of the eye, and there rankleth. The bliſters are ſometimes great, and ſometimes ſmall, white, red, dark, and alſo black with pain and pricking, according as the matter is. The deeper, the greater they be, and the more hurtfull and dangerous to be cured, becauſe of the nobleneſſe and tenderneſſe of this member. But this in the beginning is alwayes good for it. Take *Lycium*, Saffron, of each half a drach. *Acacia* or the juyce of Sloes one ſcrup. mix this with Roſewater, and drop a little in the eyes; he muſt alſo be let blood and purged. But this foreſaid water for the eyes muſt be dropped into them with the white of an egg, and whileſt the diſeaſe is in *Augmento*, or the increaſe: then take Fenegreek, Linſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Melilot one quarter of an ounce, ſeethe it in fair water, and waſh the eyes oftentimes therewith, let a drop thereof drop other whiles into the eyes: that ripeneth, draweth out the corruption and, ſwageth the pain. When as the bliſter is broken out, then heal it like other ſores of the eyes. Item, take the fat of the fiſh *Tymalus*, and anoint it on the apple of the eye: it is very ſtrong, therefore it is better for horſes then for men. But this following is more ſure: take the crum of white bread, make it wet in water; but it is ſtronger in womans milk, and lay it on, where it is dry make it wet again, or take a freſh.

Take rotten apples, ſtamp them with water of white Lillies; put of the juyce into the eyes, and cover the eye-lids ſomewhat thick in ſubſtance. Or elſe uſe my former medicine of the white of eggs, Camphire and Allom.

Waſh the eyes with my Lixivium mentioned in before cap: 1. §.4.

If

If the itching comes of worms in the eye-lids, Take Salt and burn it, and being powdered, mixe it with honey, and anoint the eyelids.

This confection following is very good for all heat of the eyes, ſwelling and pricking; take Eyebright, Fennel, Cinamon, of each three drach. long Pepper, Mints, Mace, Marjoram, Vervain, *Calamus*, Roſemary, of each ʒ.1.ß. Sugar penners three ounces, white Sugar five ounces; with the Sugar ſeethe theſe juices following, of Roſes, of Vervain, of each ʒ.2. the juice of Fennel that is well clarified five ounces, the juice of Celendine, of Rue, of each ʒ. 1.ß. let them ſeethe ſo thick as a ſirup, afterwards temper amongſt it the reſt well beaten.

Item, take young Endive, ſtamp and temper it with the oyl of Violets, or rather the oyl of Roſes, anoint therewith the hot corners of the eyes and the eye-lids; the ſame taketh away the pain, and ſwageth the heat. If that will not help, take the meal of Lentils, Sumach ſeed, Roſes, Pomgranate kernels, pownded together and tempered with Vine *cuille*, uſe this as the reſt.

Item, if this help not, then muſt the head vein in the forehead be opened, or in the corners of the eyes, which you will; which doth void away the ſharp matter that ſettleth in the eye-lids. In like manner purge alwaies with ſuch medicines which expel the *Cholera*, and ſalt matter.

It is alſo good to bathe otherwhiles, and to ſweat moderately, whereby the ſharp defluxion is delayed: or inſtead of ſweating, you may foment the eyes with a ſpunge made wet in luke-warm water. Laſtly, it is very good to waſh the eyes with water of Fennel, of Celendine, of Vervain, and of Eye-bright, mingled together one amongſt another.

Itch and Scabs of the Eyes.

THeſe biting dry Scabs of the Eyes do otherwhiles manifeſt themſelves on the lids of the eyes, ſo that one cannot forbear but to rub them, the which doth the eyes and face great hurt, making the ſame more hotter and redder.

This defluxion is a ſalt matter, which is ſharp and pricking. Againſt this, he muſt firſt refrain from rubbing of the Eyes, eat and drink ſoberly, purge choler, open the head vein, and alſo lay thereon outwardly at the firſt freſh water, or Roſe water two or three daies: afterwards he muſt foment and waſh the eyes with the decoction of Mallowes, Violet leaves, Celendine and Vervain, or with Roſe water alſo alone. If then of this or any other occaſions there come any ſwelling to it, then look to that which is ordained for red and hot Eyes.

Watering or running eyes. §. 7.

IT is manifeſt that the watering of the eyes doth proceede ōf many occaſions, of mirth, ſorrow, weakeneſſe of the retentive power, and ſuperfluous moiſture of the braines that falleth upon the eyes; like as of thruſts, ſtripes, ſharp windes, ſmoke, cough, ſharpe ſavours of Onions, Saffron, &c. all the which doe periſh the eyes, ſo that the eyes do ſtand as if the eyelids were newly pluckt off, or that a Cataract couched in them, or as if they had ſuffered any other diſeaſe, the which alſo happeneth if any body drinke too much wine; wherefore that many may afterwards bewaile the miſeries of drunkenneſſe, what concerneth the outward cauſes, thoſe may be learned of the patient himſelfe. But if this running of the eyes be cauſed through any diſeaſe of the brains, and not through heate: then doth the patient alwayes feele ſome heavy puffing up of the veines in the forehead, and in the temples of the head; and this defluxis for the moſt part alwayes augmented by the neeſings. This running or watering is very ſtrong, falling as well into the eyes as into the noſe, with a ſharpneſſe in the throat. But if this defluxion be through heat, then is the humor ſo hot, that through the heat it bites open the eyelids, which cauſe the hair to fall out of the eyelids, yea that the heat may be perceived, through feeling with the hands. But if it come through a cold, then are all things contrary to all theſe that we have now ſpoken of. Now the remedies of theſe running eyes be theſe.

They that be cauſed of outward cauſes, may be eaſily remedied, that is, by taking away of the cauſe of this defluxion; but as much as doth concern the inward cauſes where heat is the cauſe, it is ſpecially adviſed, that the body be purged ſometimes with

Pills *Cochiæ Aureæ*, with *Succo Rosarum*, or with Pills of the five kinds of Mirobalans. And it is not enough that this and the letting of blood be once performed, but oftentimes; to wit, in the beginning, in the augmenting, and in the standing still of the disease; that thereby the sickness may be throughly holpen.

Wash the eyes with the said Lixivium, Cap. 1. §. 4.

Or take a red cole leaf and smear it with the white of an egg, and apply it over the eyes all night. Or stamp Elder leaves and fresh butter, lay it poultis-wise over the eyes.

Or take sowr leaven of Rye bread, or sowr rye bread, mix it with vinegar, and apply it to the hinder part of the neck.

Or take Cantharides, rub them in pieces, and put them into a fine cloth, and put them with the cloth into vinegar, and when they are well moistened, bind the cloth as big as you would have a blister, and so apply it to the nape of the neck, and when it hath drawn a blister, prick it, and cut off the skin, and apply Cole or Cabbage leaves unto it.

Sennertus de Epiphora. *Of watering Eyes.*

IF the flux encrease, *Galen* openeth a vein, that the inflammation may be expelled; but you must consider whether the flux come of the weakness of brains, or whether it comes of the distemper of humours of the body; if of distemper of humours, then the body must be purged; the head must be strengthened with drying and comforting medicines; and you must apply astringent topick medicines, as Roses, Myrtles, juyce of Plantain, flowers of Pomgranates, Acatia, Frankincense, Mastick, Bolus, Sanguis Draconis, which you must mix with the white of an egg, and vinegar, and apply it to the forehead with a linnen cloth.

℞. of Acatia, Sanguis Draconis, ana. half an ounce, Bolus prepared, drach. three, Mastick, drachm sthree, the white of an egg, Plantain water, q. ß. mix them, and dip a linnen cloth in it, and apply it to the eyes and temples, and remove it as often as it dies.

Or ℞. of Powder of Frankincense, ʒ.3. Tacamahaca, ʒ.1.ß. bloodstone, ʒ.2. flowers of Pomgranates, flowers of Rosemary, ana. ʒ.1.ß. the white of an egg, Rosewater, use it as before said.

Or ℞. of Mastick. ʒ. 2. Gum animæ, *Tacamahaca*, ana. ʒ. 1. ß. Juniper berries one drach. with a little Turpentine and Wax, make a Ceratum, and apply it to the forehead and temples.

If it be of cold humour after purging, dip Wooll in astringent wine, and apply it to the eyes.

Or ℞. of unripe galls, Cypres Nuts, Sanguis Draconis, ana. ʒ.1. Saffron, ϑ.1. Tragagant, q. and with a cloth apply it to the eyes.

Or ℞. Tutia infused in Melilot water, and apply it to the eyes. Or quench Frankincense in water of *Virga aurea*, and apply it to the eyes.

Or ℞. of Frankincense, Mastick, ana. ϑ.1. Myrrhe, Aloes, ana. ʒ.ß. Tutia prepared, ʒ. 1. Sarcocoll. ʒ.ß. powder them, and mix them with the white of an egge, or juice of Quinces, and dissolve them in Fennel water, or Eyebright water, and morning and evening drop of it into the eyes.

Sometimes the water that runs out of the Eyes is reddish like blood, which happeneth to women whose courses are stopt.

Such are to be cured by medicines that cause the natural courses of women. Thus far *Sennertus*.

Of wounds of the eyes.

IF any of the tunicles be broken, to divert the humours at the first, you may use phlebotomie, but rather use some fit purgations to detract the humours; and apply the white of an egg beaten with Rosewater and a little Bolus.

Or ℞. the whites of two eggs beaten with waters of Roses and Tormentil, ana. one ounce, then put thereto of Allom, Saffron, ana. ϑ. 1. and apply it to the eyes and temples.

Or

Or ℞. of Ceruſſe, Starch, ana. ʒ.2. Frankincenſe, ʒ. 1.ß. Sarcocolla, Tragagant, ana. ʒ.1. Camphire, ʒ.ß. infuſe them in Roſewater, and ſet them in a veſſel cloſe ſtopt, and put into a pot of water to ſeethe.

Or ℞. of Gum Arabic. diſſolved in Roſe water, ʒ.3. powder of the roots of Camphire, ʒ.1.ß. powder of Olibanum, Aloes waſht, ana, ϑ. 1. mix them.

Or ℞. of white *Sief Raſis* with Opium, ʒ.1.ß. Roſewater, ʒ.1. the whites of two eggs, Tutia prepared, ʒ.ß. mix them.

After ſeven dayes uſe more drying and abſterſive means, to hinder the growing of thick fleſh.

As ℞. of Myrrhe, Sarcocolla, diſſolved in milk, ana. ʒ.ß. Tutia prepared ʒ.1. honey of Roſes, as much as will make a Liniment.

Or ℞. of Bolus Armoniac. ʒ.1. Tutia, Sanguis Draconis, Gum Arabic. ʒ. ß. Roſe water, ℔.1. put them into a glaſſe cloſe ſtopt, and ſeethe them in Balnea one hour, then put thereto of the juyce of Pomgranates, ſtrain it, and put of it into the eyes.

Or ℞. of honey, ℔.ß. juice of red Roſes, ʒ.4. Verdigreaſe, diſtill them in Balnea, and put two drops thereof into the eye 2, or 3. times a day.

I have with good ſucceſſe uſed the buds of red brambles, Fennel, Houſleek, ſtampt together and applyed; and I put into the eye my water made of white wine, Camphire, and Roſemary, in which *Lapides Calaminares* were often quenched. After this I beat the powder of Roſine with the white of an egg, and applyed it 2. or 3. times in the day, and with this onely I have cured ſome that were ſorely wounded, and had fiſtulaes in their eyes.

If the Tunicle be broken, this I have approved to be very good.

But *Sennertus* willeth to mixe the white of an egge with prepared Tutia, and to put it into the eye. Alſo foment the eye with the flowers of red Roſes, bramble leaves, Shepherds purſe, Knot-graſſe, ſod in wine; or elſe if heat moleſt, ſeethe them with water, and therewith foment the eye.

Or make a plaiſter of red Roſes, Quince leaves, ſod in wine, and with Acatia, ϑ.2. and Saffron ϑ.ß. and apply it.

Or make it with *Hypociſtis*, flowers of Pomgranates, and unripe galles of the Oake.

Or uſe this Collyre. ℞. Aloes waſht, Tutia prepared, Sarcocolla, ana. ϑ. ß. Spike, Saffron, Sugar Candie, ana, G.5. and with the muſcilage of Gum Tragagant, and Fenegreek, make a Collyre.

Or ℞. of Comfery water, ʒ.3. Gumme Arabic. Olibanum, ana. ʒ.1. Eyes of Crayfiſh, ʒ.ß. flowers of Pomgranates, ϑ.1. mix them upon the fire, and ſtrain it, and put of it into the eye.

Of bleared eyes of a hot cauſe.

IF the eyes be bleared through heat of the brains, Then the head muſt be kept cold by going bareheaded. And purge the head with the pulpe of Coloquintida, Aloes prepared, Cubebs, Cardamome, Pepper, made into pills with Venice Turpentine, this I have often proved, and it is very good to purge the head and ſtomach, &c. But yet let none be too bold to uſe inward medicines, although approved, without the advice of an experienced Phyſitian: for a mere Emperick by his deſperate attempts, to prove every medicine that he reads in any book, is not only the diſgrace of the divine art of Phyſick, but alſo is the cauſe of the ruine and death of many people.

The order of Dyet.

FOr this muſt all drying things be uſed, and all moiſt attenuating meats and drinks eſchewed, like as Lentils, Coleworts, Lettice, Purſlain, ſalt fiſh and fleſh, Milk, Cheeſe, Onions, Scallions, Garlick, and all that fumeth into the head; ſome forbid to eat in the evening. When it is cauſed through heat, he muſt ſmell to Roſes, Saunders, Camphire, and ſuch cooling things; like as alſo the Pomanders are commodious for theſe cauſes, ordained in the diſcourſe of the Plague.

When the patient is purged, and the pain of the eyes be yet in the beginning; then take (like as it is oftentimes adviſed at the firſt) the brayed white of an egge, and drop a drop thereof in the eye. Take alſo milk of a young woman which hath a daughter ſucking upon her, put it freſh into the eye; or take two ounces of Roſemary amongſt it, then beat the white of an egg, and drop a drop or two thereof in the eye.

Some do take onely freſh water mixt with Vinegar, and uſe it as is rehearſed, ſpecially after bathing, and have thereby found great amendment.

This is alſo much praiſed; Take unripe Grapes, burn the ſame to aſhes, bruiſe them very ſmall, and blow ſome-what thereof into the eyes; it dryeth the running, and doth drive away the rednesse.

Or take the ſlime of Fleawort, Quince kernels, or Dragagant one quarter of an ounce, the white of an egge well brayed, womans milk that hath a daughter ſucking, half a drach. tempered well; if the pain be very great, then draw out the ſlimes or muſcilage with water, wherein before Poppy heads have been ſodden. You may alſo uſe *Sieff de Raſis* which followeth hereafter.

Take freſh Roſe leaves half an ounce, Saffron, *Spica* of Indie, *Gummi Arabicum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, beat all ſmall, and make cakes thereof with rain water, and when you will uſe them, then take one drachme thereof, and lay them to ſteep in the beaten white of an egge. This is ſpecial good in the beginning of the hot *Ophthalmia*: for it repelleth the matter backe, it conſumeth and aſſwageth the pain. In like manner, is this alſo following much commended; Take waſht Ceruſſe, prepared *Sarcocolla*, dragagant, *Licium*, *Acatia*, pils of Pomegranates and Frankincenſe, of each one drach. Pearles, *Opium*, of each half a ſcruple, and the juyce of Pomgranates (which is very clear) as much as is needful for to make cakes or troſchiſces thereof when you will; then uſe thereof. Then lay a drachme thereof to ſteep in Roſe-water; this hath a conſtringent vertue: it dryeth and cooleth all hot humours; but when the pain is at the moſt, then temper among the foreſaid medicines two or three graines of *Opium* or of *Sieff album* called *Seiff Raſis*.

Take waſht Ceruſſe one ounce, *Gummi Arabicum* half an ounce, *Opium* dragagant, of each half a drachme: this muſt you bruiſe very ſmall, and temper it with the well brayed white of an egge and womans milke. Take alſo the juyce of Fennel well ſcummed one ounce and a half, Aloe two drachmes and a half, a leaf of well beaten gold; temper them well, and afterwards put unto it the weight of ſeven graines of Frankincenſe: diſſolve them in good white wine, and mix them all together with Fennel and Roſe water; you muſt drop of this water twice a day in the eyes.

Item, take good Aloe ſteeped in the juyce of Fennel; put thereto the weight of ten graines of Frankincenſe burning therein, kindled at the candle, uſe it as afore.

Other waters more. Take Roſe water four ounces, quench therein glowing gold, afterwards put thereto Aloe, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Litharge of ſilver, of each one drach. let it ſeeth until a third part be conſumed; afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth and uſe it as is needful.

Item, take Dragons blood, Aloe, *Sarcocolla*, of each half a drachme, Saffron, Camphire, of each half ſo-much, prepared *Tutia* one quarter of an ounce, bruiſe it very ſmall, and temper amongſt it wine of Nutmegs ℥ 4. and as much Roſe-water; alſo let it ſeethe in water, in a glaſſe, until about 3. parts be conſumed, it dryeth and healeth without any danger.

Item, take *Tutia*, Hony, Rue, Fenegreeke, Fennel; ſeeth it in wine; it is ſpecial good for all over-hot eyes.

This water following is alſo very appropriate for the ſame diſeaſe; Take prepared *Tutia* one ounce, prepared Bloodſtone one drachme, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Pepper, of of each a ſcruple, Fennel water, Eyebright water, of each one ounce, Roſe water and Violet water, of each two ounces, old fine wine three or foure ounces; put it into a glaſſe, and let it ſeeth in water even to the half, afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth.

A ſalve. Take the juyce of Rue, of Framboyes oyle, of Myrtle, of each one ounce, let it boyl until the juice be ſodden away; then wring it through a cloth, and ſet it again upon the fire; mix amongſt it prepared Saphire half a drachme, Iacint one ſcruple, Antimony one drachme, burnt Copper one ſtruple, prepared *Tutia* three drachmes, let it ſeeth ſoftly with the foreſaid fire; put therto three drachms of wax, be it more or leſſe accordingly as you deſire to have it hard; wherewith anoint the eyelids. This aſwageth the pain, ſtayeth all defluxions in the eyes, and taketh away the cauſe of them wonderfully.

In running and overmoyſt eyes, take Myrrhe half a drachme, Bloodſtone one drachme, the uppermoſt ſprigs of Framboyes, and of the Roſe tree, of each one ounce; ſeeth them together in a glaſſe in water unto the half; afterwards ſtrain it forth through a cloth, and drop at leaſt foure times a day one drop in the eyes. Secondly, the forehead and temples of the head are oftentimes, or at leaſt againſt the evening, to be anointed ſoftly with the juyce of Roſes.

But

Ryenus Bennet 1687

But if this rheume be but in his increasing, or in *Statu*, which is at the highest; then may he very freely put therein all the foresaid things, and chiefly womans milk (which is much commended for this) also temper Dragagant amongst it, and drop in them. In like manner take prepared *Tutia*, Camphire, of each a scruple tempered with half an ounce of white wine: It dryeth and swageth all pain. This is also very good, *Tutia* tempered in Fennel water, in water of Celendine, Rue, Vervein, and in Rose water, and a gal of a Pickerel, or a Partridge put thereto, and the same kept in a Copper vessel, until it be to be used; or take prepared *Tutia* one quarter of an ounce, white Amber one drachme, Fennel and Rose water, of each foure ounces, take also washt Ceruse one quarter of an ounce, prepared *Sarcocolla*, Dragagant, *Opium*, of each half a drachme, *Gummi Arabicum*, Saffron, of each half a scruple. This being altogether beaten as small as may be, temper it with rain water, and let it dry. And when as you will use it, mix it with womans milk.

Here is to be be noted, that rain water for all pain of the eyes is very meet, for that it is subtile.

But whensoever this *Ophthalmia* cometh to abate, then may bathing be used or that which is most sure, seeth Camomil and Melilot in water, and make a spung wet therin, wringing it out a little, and so hold it warm upon the eye, and when it is cold to make it warme again. Or take fresh wormewood, *Licium*, Fenegreeke of each two ounces, *Sarcocolla* one ounce and a quarter, the juyce of Celendine half an ounce. Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Saffron, Sea-froth, of each one drachme, seeth that which is to be sodden, in rain water unto a pap, and temper amongst it all that is beaten, and lay it warme over the eyes. It is also very good to wash hands, feet, and face oftentimes with the warme decoction of wormwood, Melilot, and of Camomil. In like manner also is the yellow powder of *Rasis* in the declination of this defluxion much commended, which is thus to be made: Take *Sarcocolla* five drachmes, Aloe, Saffron, *Licium*, of each one drachme, Myrrhe half a drachme, make a powder thereof.

Bleared eyes of a cold cause

IF this defluxion or rheume come through cold, then at the first when it beginneth to fall, use this confection; Take Indie *Spica* five drachmes, *Agaricus* one drachme, and a half. Cinamon one ounce, Mastick, as much as the weight of them all: also make a confection thereof with clarified hony, and use thereof every day.

This patient is to smell unto all warming and drying things, as Muscus, Lavander, Marjoram, Amber, Betony, *Styrax Calamita*, and such like, as also unto the pomanders that every where in this booke are specified.

It is also very convenient to chew and to eat a good deal of Fennel seed every morning. Likewise also Rue and Verveine chewed, and the eyes anointed with the spettle.

If so be that the eyes be filled with cold moisture that floweth out of the braines: for that is this following very good to be used. Take prepared bloodstone one quarter of an ounce, Roses, burnt Ivory, red and white Coral, Amber, yellow Mirobalans, of each one drachme, the juyce of the sprigs of Framboyes foure ounces, temper them together, and so keep it well stopped: of this juyce put daily into the eyes, and anoint also the eyelids therewith. This doth dry the rheume marvellous much, and doth strengthen the eyes from taking any such moisture.

Or take the juyce of Fennel, of Rue, of each one ounce, childrens urine half an ounce, Aloe three drachmes, let it seeth somewhat, and then strain it through a cloth, and put a drop of the same in the eye; it cleanseth, dryeth, and sharpeneth the sight.

Item, take Frankincense, Mastick, Cypres nuts, Myrrhe, Aloe, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Tutia*, *Sarcocolla*, of each one drachme, and a half; Dragons blood, Sumach, Barberies, Roses, of each one scruple, make them to powder, or to trochisces with the juyce of Fennel, and use it with Rose water or Fennel water.

Item, roast three apples, cleanse them of the pils and kernels, then temper them with the yolks of three new laid egges, and then lay it warme to the eyes.

Item, take *Acatia*, Dragons blood, of each one drachme, fine Bolus a quarter of an ounce; this being beaten together, then make it to a plaister with the white of an egge, and lay it round about the eyes from whence the rheume doth come: you may lay it also upon the forehead, and upon the lids of the eye; but then you must leave out the Bolus.

In winter time may one wash his Eyes with the urine of a man child and wine: in sommer with the urine and with Rosewater, that driveth away the rheume, and preserveth the sight wonderfully.

This water following doth dry much the cold *Catarres*: Take *Gummi*, the Muscilage of Fenegreek seeds, of each one quarter of an ounce, of prepared *Sarcocolla*, *Spica nardi*, Myrrhe, Cinamom, Aloes, Bever cod, of each half a scruple; this powdered all together small, and made up with womans milk.

This following dryeth also much the defluxion: Take an ounce of *Tutia*, bruise it very small in a mortar, put thereto 12 ounces of old sowr wine, pour some upon it, and bruise it well with the stamper, afterwards pour wine upon it again; afterwards let it seethe together in a copper pan. When it is from the fire, then temper amongst it Aloes beaten small, one quarter of an ounce, put 2. or 3. drops thereof in the eyes. Then lye upon your back the space of two hours. This discusseth the blood also in the eyes, and taketh away all sharpnesse, and biting Rheumes.

In like manner, if this defluxion do make much pain, then take unwashed sheeps wooll, burn it to ashes in a close stopt pot, bruise it as small as may be, and mix it with the white of an egg, lay it on your forehead, and on the temples of the head; this swageth the Catarre very quickly, and abateth the pain.

Another. Take the sowr juice of a Pomgranate (seethe the same to the half, and scum it well) six ounces, *Sief Memithe*, Aloe, *Licium*, Saffron, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Hydromel* half an ounce, put them all together in a glasse stopped close, set the same the space of four dayes in the Sun, and use it morning and evening, it is good and approved; it helpeth much the obscurity of the eyes.

A Plaister. It is also profitable for such cold Catarres, to have a plaister laid upon the temples of the head. The same is to be made thus: Take Aloe, Myrrhe, Mirtle leaves, *Acatia*, of each one drach. Mastick, Frankincense, of each half a drach. beaten small together, make it to a plaister with the white of an egg, and lay it as is said on the forehead and temples of the head.

Another. Some do counsel for to take *Assa fœtida* one ounce, Pepper one quarter of an ounce, melt and seethe the Gum in vinegar untill it be thick, then stir Pepper amongst it, lay it over the Eyes; but have good regard, that there come none of it into the eye: it will stink much, and is very dangerous for the eye. But there be other things that may be used for this purpose.

Of actual cauterisation in the Neck in all Rheumes of the Head.

THis hath oftentimes also been more remembred, and is often used by the ancient Physitians, even as many Italian Physitians do advise, that in these cold rheumes or defluxions, the neck is to be opened with an actual or potential Cautery, whereof divers may be sought in the Register, and must be kept open about fourty daies.

What is convenient for Purging.

THat is to be effected with the pills *Cochiæ*, which be sharpned with the trochisces of *Alhandali*, also with the confection of *Hiera*, and such like. In the declination of the rheume through cold, bathing is very meet, to wash himself with urine, to drink Wine moderately, to apply unto it the foresaid sponge with the warm decoction of Camomil and Melilot.

Sore Eyes with or without matter. §. 8.

THese diseases do come commonly through outward occasions, as of pricking, striking, or any other manner of bruising: in like manner, of inward causes, as hot, sharp, and salt rheumes, which do eat in and perish the pannicles of the Eyes.

If then there be perceived great pain with pricking, beating, and with moist rheumes in the eyes, and the eye-browe be fallen, the eyes stand wide open, the white of the eye looking red, and that some whiteneſse be seen upon the black: then is there an impostume growing, and indeed such accidents do verily require an expert Chirurgion: for (as the common proverb is,) there is no jesting with the Eyes; Therefore to this end and intent shall hereafter be presented and delivered many good medicines: and we will first begin with

with things which are cauſed through inward ſharp rheumes: It is to be noted, that the Impoſtume that cometh in the white of the eye, is not ſo much to be feared, as they that come upon the ſtar or black; for that they are the moſt dangerous. Amongſt which, one is called the Canker, which cometh of melancholick humours, and the ſignes be, that this Impoſtume doth ſhew it ſelf with heat and heavineſſe of the mind; the face and the eyes are of a leaden colour: It maketh great pricking pain in the eyes, and in the temples of the head, on the ſide whereas the diſeaſe is. And if there be applyed thereto any hot things, then doth the pain increaſe manifeſtly, the appetite to meat is loſt, and all the face getteth another colour: Therefore when that is ſeen and perceived, then muſt it be with all ſpeed prevented. And firſt to begin with a neceſſary letting of blood and purging: The Patient muſt be forbidden wine and fleſh, and eſpecially ſweet wines. His meat muſt be cooling herbs, as Spinage, Lettice, Purſlain, Gourds, Endive water muſt be his beſt drink: much letting of blood (if the party may ſuffer it) is good. And if ſo be that the Impoſtume do appear very great, then is the Patient to be let blood the more in the *Median*, or in the *Saphea*, on the ſame ſide: afterwards in the Liver vein, alwaies regarding the time of the year, and the Patients ability. But if the Impoſtume be not ſo great, you may be content with the opening of the Liver vein or *Median* onely: hereby will the Rheume be cut off, that it cannot fall any more into the eyes.

For this are meet alſo boxing cups ſet upon the ſhoulders and higher, with pricking: But if the matter be ſharp and biting, one muſt purge with Mirobalans, Manna, laxative juyces of fruits, and ſuch like. Afterwards the Patient muſt be cauſed to neeſe, and to gargariſe, whereof you have before in the ſecond Chapter, and §. 2. good inſtruction, and ſhall have hereafter in other more places. When as this is effected and done, you may uſe of theſe medicines which you will. Firſt there is *Sief album*, (not long ſince deſcribed in §. 7.) tempered with womans milk. If it leave beating, then it is a good token, and hope that the ſoreneſſe or pain will wear away without Impoſtumation; but if it come to impoſtumate, then muſt it be cleanſed with *Hydromel*, or honey of Roſes, tempered with rain water, making a linnen cloth wet therein, and ſo laid on it. Secondly, with aſtringent things; as the *Sief de Thure*, which is forcible for all humours and defluxions of the eyes. Thirdly, with drying medicines; as with well prepared *Tutia*, and chiefly with the plaiſter *de Muſcilaginibus*, which is deſcribed in the fixth Chapter, and in the end of §. 7. Will you then have ſome part of the Catarre repelled? Then put thereto the Muſcilage of Flea-wort, or of Quince kernels, the which muſt 3. or 4. times a day be laid upon the Eyes, mixed alwaies with *Sief de Thure*, to wit, as long as the matter cleaveth to the apple of the eye, and no longer.

A good Salve. Take *Tutia* prepared in Roſewater half an ounce, freſh Swines greaſe one ounce, Starch three quarters of an ounce; bruiſe it long in a mortar one amongſt another: afterwards waſh it three times in the water of Nightſhade, and anoint the forehead, the temples of the head, and the Eyelids with it, without and within. This ſalve is marvellous good for all impoſtumate and running eyes, as alſo for all pains of the Eyes, blood-ſhots, ſcabs, and wounds of the Eyes. Some do uſe alſo the maiden milk, or *Lac Virginis*, (which is deſcribed in the fifth Chapter, §. 1.) but it is ſomewhat ſharp in the Eyes.

If there be any ſharp *Catarre* that falleth into the Eyes, take warm white bread, ſteep it in womens (or any other milk) lay it upon the Eyes.

Item, take a white loaf, cut ſlices thereof a finger thick, lay them to ſteep in Well-water, and lay them on the Eyes.

Oyl of burnt linnen is alſo very good for the impoſtumate eyes, which is to be made as hereafter followeth.

Lay clean and waſhed linnen clothes in a glaſſen helm, ſtrew pownded glaſſe upon it, again afterwards another lay of clothes, and glaſſe again, untill the helm be half full; afterwards diſtil it in ſand. Some do burn it in gilt bowles, and give it for the plague. Item, ſet the clothes on fire with a candle, lay them upon an even piece of iron, tin, or ſilver, and put them preſently out again. Then ſhall you alwaies find a drop of oyl, the which take up with a feather, and ſo gather it. This healeth marvellous well the impoſtumation of the eyes, taketh away the pain, and is good for the fiſtula and wounds in the eyes.

Clarified honey anointed in the corners of the Eyes doth heal all diſeaſes.

This *Collyrium* following is above all measure much commended; a little of it being dropped often in the eye, for it healeth and strengtheneth the sight mightily.

A precious water for the eyes.

Take Rue, Roses, Endive, Betony, Vervain, Venus hair, Agrimony, Clevers, Milfoil, Eyebright, Chamedris, Pimpernel, Sage, of each two *M.* cut them small, steep them a day and a night in good wine; afterwards wring them out, and spread them on a board that the moisture may run off; ten houres afterwards beat them grosse, and distill them in water, and keep it stopt close.

Item, take the juyce of Celendine one ounce, the juyce of Fennel ounce and a half, Oxe gall five drach. and one scrup. Wolfes gall three quarters of an ounce, prepared *Tutia* half an ounce, temper them all together, this dryeth much the imposthumate eyes.

Item, take Poppy leaves one *M.* Vervain, Eyebright, Fennel, Mallowes, Hollihocks, Camomil, of each half a *M.* chop it and stamp it to pap, mixe it with oyl of Roses, make a cloth wet therein, and lay it over the eyes. It is a general commandement, that where one useth water for the eyes, you must bind it hard with twice double linnen, whereby the medicines applyed fall not off through neesing, coughing, or any other stirring or motion of the head.

Impostumes of the eyes through outward occasions.

IF so be that the Impostumes of the eyes be caused through any outward occasion, as through thrusts, strokes, and such like, then are the deep thrusts or pricks dangerous and most to be feared, lest blindnesse do ensue. But these means following are to be used for the same; Take unpared Quinces, the kernels being taken out, beat them small, and temper meal of Lentils amongst them, and a little honey, that there may be a plaister made of them; lay the patient upon his back, and apply some thereof upon his eye. Or take a whole Pomgranate, between sowr and sweet, seethe it in a little Vinegar, stamp it, and use it as before.

Item, take the yolk of a rosted egg, lay it with towe upon the eye. Item, use also waters for the eyes that are drying and astringent, as hereafter followeth; take pownded Bloodstone that is nine times washt in the urine of a manchild or boy, one quarter of an ounce, *Gummi Arabicum*, Dragagant, burnt Copper, of each one drach. burnt and washt Pumis stone, *Opium*, of each a scrup. Fennel water as much as is needful for to form some trocises thereof; when you will use them, then steep them in white wine. The eyes are also to be often washed with water wherein Roses are decocted, or Well-water tempered with Vinegar and sowr Wine; for this is also fit Olive leaves, and if they cannot be had, then in the stead of them is the juyce of Shepherds purse used, wherein burnt lead bruised small is to be tempered, also the juyce of Quince leaves, and Medlar leaves, and then sallet oyl must be put amongst it, and so lay it over the sore eye.

A drying and astringent Collyrium.

☞ All Impostumes in the eyes may be holpen, by applying the white of eggs, well beaten with the prepared powder or black rosine, by some called ship rosine, and washing the eye with this water.

Take of white wine, ℔. 1. Camphire, ʒ. 1. Rosemary tops, P. ß. put all into a clean bason; then heat 6. or 5. stones, called *Lapides calaminares*, and put them fire-hot into the wine and Camphire with Rosemary, then take them out, and heat them fire-hot, and put them in again, do so five or six, or seven times; this is the best water that ever I could use for any disease in the eyes, be rheume, water heat, cold, filme, fistula, pearl, blindnesse, dimnesse, or the like; this I proved in my practice in *Russia*, to be most excellent of all other waters.

Where the eyes do bake together in the sleep.

TAke the juyce of Housleek, and anoint the eyes therewith; it doth soke them softly, and cool them.

Item, take the juyce of Agrimony alone, or tempered with womans milk; also Rosewater, and other waters for to soke therewith the dryed matter of them.

Of Ægylops, a certain ſwelling betwixt the noſe and the corner of the eye. §. 9.

THere commeth otherwhiles a ſmal impoſtume between the noſe and the corner of the eye, the whichthe Phyſitians call *Ægylops*. If the ſame be not holpen betimes, then doth it infect the bone. The Chirurgions do heal the ſame in this manner: they cut up the uppermoſt skin, and wring out the impoſtume which lyeth lockt in a little bladder, and cut it off as near as may be; the reſt do they take away with an actual or potential Cautery. The ſame ſwelling doth ſettle it ſelf otherwhiles in the length of the eyelids, yet both are to be holpen with Oatmeal, Wine, and *Tutia* tempered together in manner of a Salve.

This *Ægylops* is holpen with often waſhing the eyes with my *Lixivium* before mentioned, Prob.

Of Blemiſhes or ſpots in the Eyes. §. 10.

THeſe are two ſpecial kinds; red, and white: The red are cauſed through blood, when there appeareth in the eye a red drop, or a dark (like as a congealed blood) which at times is alſo black: that is wont to be cauſed of blows, falls, great labour, much weeping, and ſuch like. In like manner alſo of inward cauſes, as hath been ſaid of *Ophthalmia*, and of red or overheated eyes.

For this is alſo much commended, the blood of Turtle doves, wilde Pigeons, or (if one cannot have them) of common houſe Pigeons being let blood under the wings, (like as is already rehearſed) and chiefly in the beginning, if one temper ſome fine Bolus among it, and the eyes to be fomented with warm water, wherein wild Time, Maridram, Fennel and Barly is decocted.

A water for the eyes. Take the ſeed of Ameos, Comin, Fennel-roots and the ſeeds ſodden together, and a little *Sal gemma* tempered amongſt it; you ſhall oftentimes let ſome thereof drop into the eyes.

If it be needful to uſe any ſtronger thing for it, then take one quarter of an ounce of Orpiment, put eight ounces of water unto it, ſtir it well about, and then let it ſettle; pour the water clear from it, that no ſubſtance of the Orpiment run with it, and drop thereof in the eye. But good heed muſt be taken in the uſe of this ſharp venome, that there follow no bad accident after it; therefore it is more ſure to uſe this following.

Take prepared Bloodſtone three drach. burnt Copper one quarter of an ounce, red Coral, Pearls, of each a drach. *Gummi*, Tragagant of each two drachmes and a half, Pepper the weight of thirty grains, waſhed Cerviſe one drag. Orpiment, Dragon blood, Saffron, Amber, of each halfe a drach. make a dough thereof with the blood of Turtle doves, of Hens, or common Pigeons blood, and form *Trociſes* thereof about the weight of one drach. When you will uſe theſe, bruiſe them in womans milk, and put a drop thereof in the eye.

It is alſo very good for the skinnes of the eyes, whereof we purpoſe to treat hereafter.

A plaiſter. Take Doves dung, make it with wine and vinegar into a plaiſter, and apply it luke-warm upon the eyes.

Or, take that which followeth, which is moſt certain. Take Raiſons, put out the ſtones, pownd them, and put vinegar to it, uſe it as before.

Item, take freſh cheeſe meetly ſalted, Radiſhes roſted in aſhes, Melilot, Camomil, of each one ounce, roſted Lilly-roots, meal of Lentils, Dragon blood, of each half an ounce, Saffron one quarter of an ounce; temper them all together with the brayed white of an egge, unto a plaiſter.

In like manner it is good to foment the eyes with the decoction of Coleworts, and the leaves thereof (ſodden together in wine in manner of a plaiſter with Camomil) laid upon the eyes.

Now concerning the white ſpots which do come commonly after the Impoſtume of the eyes. Of theſe ſome are thin, and ſome are thick. But they that ſtand upon the white and be thin, do the ſight no hurt; but thoſe that are thick, and lye upon the apple of the eye, they remain and are almoſt unpoſſible to be healed, but to be ſomewhat eaſed, and rather in children then in aged folks.

Now

Now albeit that this is hardly effected without the manual operation of an Oculiſt; yet nevertheleſſe are theſe things very good for it, and eſpecially if the ſame be white and thin.

Firſt of all, he is to bath oftentimes in water, or at the leaſtwiſe to foment his face and eyes ſo long with warm water, until the face be thorowly red and ſweating; and if that thereby be cauſed a redneſſe or pain of the eyes, it is to be omitted certain dayes, and afterwards begin again. Alſo you may uſe water wherein Mallows, Hollihock roots, Oaten ſtraw, Barley, Oates, and chiefly Fenegreek are decocted, for this is a certain and approved receipt. After this fomenting, ſtrew this powder therein take; *Sarcocolla*, white Sugar, *Spuma maris*, of each a like much, and bruiſe it very ſmall.

Item take Cuttle bone powdered ſmall, and temper it with womans milk.

Take Swallows dung, honey as much as is needful, and if you will make it ſoft, mix it with Fennel-water. But the ſtory of *Tobias* doth ſhew that this medicine is eſpecially perillous.

Make the eyes oftentimes moiſt with freſh womans milk, but if you cannot get it, then uſe the waters wherein Mallowes and Hollihock roots be decocted: afterwards you may put thereto the *Sief de Thure*, the which you muſt prepare like as hereafter following.

Take Frankincenſe five drach. *Ammoniacum*, Sarcocolla, of each two drach. and a half, Saffron one drachme, beat them all unto an impalpable powder, and with the muſcilage of Fenegreek make it into trochiſces; uſe it with womans milk, it doth mundifie the eyes apparantly.

In like manner, the *Sief de Plumbo* doth ingender fleſh where there be ſmall ſores and ſpots, and it is thus made: Take burnt Lead, Antimony, prepared *Tutia*, burnt Copper, *Gummi Dragagant*, of each half an ounce, *Opium* fifteen grains: make it very ſubtile, and form Trochiſces thereof with rain water. It is very good for all diſeaſes of the eyes, it cleanſeth and driveth the matter out of the eyes, when it is mixt with Roſe water, it taketh away all manner of uncleanneſſe out of the eyes, and ſtayeth the defluxion alſo, but preſerveth eſpecially the ſight of the eye.

Item, take Litharge of ſilver bruiſed very ſmall, Cumin, Bayberies, Galangal, Ginger, Ariſtology, Cloves, Nutmegs, of each one drachme beaten ſmall, put a pint of Malmſey unto it, or any other ſtrong wine: ſtir it well about three or four daies, afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth into another glaſſe, and preſerve it well ſtopped, for it is good for all ſpots of the eyes, and alſo for all fractures of the bones, and it draweth the wounds together without ſtitching. Firſt take water that droppeth from diſtilled honey two ounces, Sugar-candy one quarter of an ounce, drop it twice a day in the eyes, Sugar-candy is good for all diſeaſes of the eyes, and for the ſight. Roſemary water made under the earth is alſo very good for theſe blemiſhes of the eyes, the which ſome do thus prepare: Fill a glaſſe with Roſemary flowers, ſtop it with wax on the top, and bury it in the Dogdayes about half a foot deep in the earth forty dayes long, and then yieideth it a water.

Vertues of Sugar Candy, Water of Roſemary for the eyes.

Of Blemiſhes or ſpots in the eyes.

☞ For ſpots or Pearls in the eyes uſe my Lixivium.

Or, elſe put the marrow that is in a gooſe wing into the eye, and put the water laſt rehearſed into the eye, made of white wine, Camphire, Roſemary, and Lapides Calaminares heat hot, *&c.*

Or, Take Roſe-Sugar-candy, burnt Allome, and Cuttle bone, powdered and ſearſed very fine as may be, put of that powder into the eye to bedward, and within half an hour after put into the eye two or three drops of this water made on this wiſe.

Take of ſweet greek wine, ℔ 1. white Roſe-water, ℔. ß. of Celendine-water, ℥. 2. waters of Fennel, of Euphrage, of Rew, ana. ℥. 2. of Tutia, ℥. 1. of Camphire, of Aloes, ana. ℈. 1. ß.

☞ Prepare your Tutia thus, make it ſix times red hot, and quench it every time in Roſe-water and wine, caſt away that wine, then powder all that will be powdered, and put them into the before named wine and waters, then let them remain in a glaſſe well luted, and ſet it in the Sun forty dayes, ſhaking it three or four times every day. This medicine is precious, and hath cured thoſe that have been blind.

Sen-

Sennertus.

AT the first coming of the disease foment the eyes with this following. ℞. of roots of Mallows, ℥. 1. ß. Mallow, Celendine, Marjoram, Eye-bright, ana. M. ß. Linseed, Fenegreek, ana. ℥. ß. seethe them in water and foment the eyes; then dissolve Sugar-Candy in Eye-bright-water, and put it into the eyes, or powder of Frankincense in Fennel water; or Mares milk mixed with hony; or the juice of Calves snout mixed with hony: and to take away the spots, take the juices of the lesser Centory, Celendine, Agrimony, Anemone, Fennel, Rew, Marigoldes.

Or, ℞. of Butter washt in Eye-bright-water, ℥. 1. Tutia prepared, mix them.

Or, ℞. of Blewbottle water, ℥. 3. Frankincense, Sarcocolla, ana. ℥. 2. Dragagant Castoreum, Aloes, Coral prepared, Camphire, ana. ℥. ß. seeth them in a glasse; strain it, and put thereof into the eyes.

Or, ℞ of juice of Calves snout, ℥. ß. Celendine, ℥. 3. Fennel, ℥. 2. hony of Roses, ℥. 1. mix them.

Or, ℞. of juice of the lesser Centory, Fennel, ana. ℥. 2. hony of Roses, ℥. 3. Mother of Pearls prepared, Harts horn prepared, ana. ℈. ß. Allome calcined, ℈. ß. mix them.

Or, ℞. of juice of Rue, ℥. 2. Fennel, ℥. 3. Gall of Pickerel, ℥. 2. bones of Cuttlefish burnt, ℥. 3. Sugar Candy, ℥. 1. mix them.

℞. of the dung of Swallowes powdered, hony and Eye-bright-water, and make a Collyre.

Avicens powder, which some commend, made of Sarcocolla, Aristolochia, Rotunda, Pumiston, and white Sugar.

Or, ℞. of Tutia prepared, red Coral prepared, Saphires prepared, ana. ℥ß. pearls prepared, ℈. ß. Camphire, Vitriol white, ana. G. 5. make powder thereof.

Or, ℞. of Harts horn burnt, the bone of Cuttlefish burnt, Sarcocol. washt, ana. ℥. ß. Aristolochia rotunda, ℈. 1. Sugar Candy, ℥. 2. make powder thereof.

Or, ℞. of Tutia prepared, ℥. 1. Mother of Pearls prepared, ℥. ß. Sarcocol. ℈ ß. make powder thereof.

When the Pearls or Velmes be new.

WHen the pearls or spots be new, there are four kinds of waters to be used for them. First of all (as is sometimes admonished) let womans milk be dropped into it, and afterwards fine bruised Cuttle bone blown into the eyes. Secondly, take the juice of Corn-roses and of Centory, of each one ounce; hony two ounces. Thirdly, take Swallows dung bruised small and dry, half an ounce, hony as much as is needful. For to make a dough, let it dry; take thereof one drachme and a half, Eyebright water two ounces, temper them together: this is wonderful, but (as is already said) perillous. Fourthly, take Cuttle bone two drachmes, Sugar one drachme, make a subtile powder thereof, and let some of it be blown into the eyes: But if the fleckes be out, then are they to be fomented with womans milk, or with the decoction of Hollihock roots, Mallows, Barly or Oat straw: afterwards this followlowing is good. Take fresh egge shels, burn them a little, the dung of a green Lizard, *Spuma maris*, Sarcocolla, that hath lyen certain dayes in the juice of Celendine, washt Ceruse, of each one drach. prepared Tutia, Sagapenum, Galbanum, of each half a drach. Cuttle bone, Ginger, ana. ℈. 1. Kites gall ℈. 2. pownd all that is to be pownded, and temper it with the water of Celendine.

For this serveth also the foresaid Rosemary water, which is made under the earth. Fourthly, take Verdigreace, ℥. 1. Frankincense, ℥. 2. Vitriol, ℥. ß. Spuma maris, Celendine, Rue, Roses, Rosemary, ana. ℥. 1. ß. seethe well the last four, until there remain about four ounces; mix the other powders with this decoction, and let it dry. Afterwards beat it again, and temper it as before, do this four times together. Lastly, make a subtile powder of it, and use it upon the pearls. It doth strengthen the sight, and taketh away the white pearls without pain; but if it be thick or old, so that none of these will help it, then is the last mean to take it away with the needle, which belongeth onely to the manual operators or Oculists.

of the Fiſtula *in the corner of the Eye.* §. 11.

THere be many Chirurgions that deſcribe theſe Fiſtulaes amongſt other ulcers of the eyes; in which place, namely, in the fift part of this book we ſhall deſcribe their natures, and what ulcerations they be; but we will here onely write of this Fiſtula, which is wont to appear in the corner of the eye. The cauſes of this are bad humours, and for the moſt part cold, which do a long time in this place ſettle themſelves, putrifie and laſtly impoſtumate. The ſigns thereof are humours of the place; and if any one wring it, then doth it pain one; it is ſomewhat reddy, giveth afterwards green matter; and it happeneth, that it oftentimes hurteth the eyelids and the noſe. But before that the Fiſtula be touched with any application or cautery, the patient muſt be preſcribed an order of dyet, and muſt purge well. For dyet; firſt, he muſt beware of all fat and ſtrong ſavouring meats, of milk, moiſt fruits, Onions, Garlike, Muſtard, and all that is much ſalted. In like ſort, all that may repleniſh the head with hot vapors, as Spices, ſleep immediatly after meals, and doing violent exerciſe.

For to purge, one drach. of the pils of Hiera Compoſita is to be taken; Make five or ſix pills thereof with the ſyrup of Calamintha: If you will firſt uſe preparatives, then take of the foreſaid ſyrup one ounce, *Oximel Compoſitum* half an ounce, decoction of Mace three ounces. Are you afraid of the heat of the liver? Take ſome cooling things therewith, as Cicory-water, or any ſuch like. One may uſe four of theſe potions in the ſpace of eight dayes; in the morning, and at the ſame time that the body is ſtopped. He is to take every other day, or every day, one pill of Aloephangine before meat, or waſhed Aloe. After the taking of theſe four potions, theſe pils following are to be uſed, *Pil. de Sarcocolla*, ℈. 2. *Cochiarum*, ℈. 1. make with the ſyrup of Roſes ſeven pils of them; afterwards you are to uſe every morning, this *Collyrium* following; and after that, apply this plaiſter on the corner of the eye. Take prepared Antimony, Frankincenſe, ana. ℈. 1. prepared Sarcocolla, ʒ. 1: Licium, Dragons blood, burnt Ivory, parched Dragagant, prepared Iron droſs, ana. ʒ. 3. Rue, Nightſhade, and Celendine waters, ana. ʒ. 1. let this dry, until one may form dow thereof; when you will uſe thereof, then diſſolve it in the foreſaid waters, and put two or three drops thereof in the eyes.

For a plaiſter; Take Mommy, fine Bolus, the juice of Sloes, Frankincenſe, *Hypociſtis*, Maſtick, ana. ʒ. 3. Acorn cups, Cipers nuts, Gals that are worm eaten, Iſenglaſs, Dragagant, Gum, ana. ʒ. 1. The Iſenglaſs muſt be diſſolved in red Vinegar, and temper the other ingredients amongſt it, and make thereof a plaiſter.

If it be then perceived that the corner of the eye watereth, and if one wring or preſſe upon it, there come matter out of it; then it is a Fiſtula, and the actual cautery is the beſt mean to heal it, for otherwiſe it is very uncertain as *Raſis* writeth; he found this medicine firſt, that the Fiſtula doth thereby ceaſe certain moneths, that one would think the ſame to be thorow whole, and is thus prepared.

Take Aloe, Frankincenſe, Sarcocolla, Dragons blood, bloſſomes of Pomegranates, Antimony, Allome, of each a like much, Verdigreaſe, the fourth part of one of them, make a powder thereof; when it is then needful, wring the Fiſtula ſo long, until it yield matter. Lay the Patient on the contrary ſide where the Fiſtula is not, and temper this powder with a little Womans milk, and drop a drop in it, now, and a certain ſeaſon afterwards one more, and ſo four times one after another; let him lye the ſpace of three hours. Do this the ſpace of a week, and look well to it that the Fiſtula be wrung out, and yield no more corruption or matter.

Now although (as it is ſaid) the accident is uncertain to be healed, yet is there amongſt all the reſt, Rue moſt highly commended for it. When that the Fiſtula is made wet with the juice of Rue, and wine of Pomegranates, and covered with a double cloth, alſo if the cauſe require to open the Fiſtula ſo wide until one may ſee the bottom of the ſame, which may be effected with the dry root of Gentian, Eldern pith, or with an Iron. Secondly, the ſpongious fleſh which lyeth at the bottom, and is the right root of the Fiſtula, muſt be killed. The which muſt be effected with an actual or potential Cautery. The corroſive is made thus: Take Orpiment, Vitriol, *Cantharides* the heads and wings taken off, quick Lime, Sal-armoniack, Allome, ana. ℈. 1. beat them to powder, and make a dough thereof with the urine of a man child; let the ſame dry, and lay ſomewhat thereof every morning in the Fiſtula; this will cleanſe it. Alſo you may uſe this following, which is alſo very good.

Take

Take Ginger three drachmes, Verdigreaſe one drachme, beat them ſmal together, and ſeethe them in half an ounce of vinegar untill they be thick; anoint the taint with it, or that which you lay in the fiſtula.

Item take freſh Rue, Agrimony, Celendine, of each a drachme, beat them and ſeethe them in ſix ounces of Aqua-vitæ, or water of Rue, unto the half; put ſome thereof every day in the fiſtula, two or three times. Thirdly, it muſt be cleanſed, which is to be effected with *Hydromel*, and Rue water, and honey of Roſes, or with lowre wine wherein Roſes are ſodden. Fourthly, for to cauſe the fleſh to grow or incarnate; you ſhall take Aloe, Frankincenſe, *Sarcocolla*, ſteeped in Fennel water, Oyl of Roſes, of each one quarter of an ounce, wax as much as is needfull for a ſalve; one may put thereto one quarter of an ounce of *Ireos*. In like manner Agrimony is highly commended, and Rue leaves, of each one drachme decocted unto the half in a pint of wine, the ſame being wrung out, and uſed every day, like as is aforeſaid.

After the ulcer is cleanſed, apply Rhaſis his Sief *de plumbo*, or uſe the yolk of an egg mixed with Sugar.

℞. of Frankincenſe ℥.10. gum Ammoniac, Sarcocol. ana. ℥.ß. Saffron, ℥.2. and with the juyce of Fenegreek, make a Collyre.

℞. of burnt and waſht lead, burnt braſſe, *Tutia* prepared, gum Dragant, ana. ℥.1. and with Eyebright water make a Collyre.

℞. of red Coral prepared, Harts-horn burnt, ana. ℥.1. Ceruſſe waſht, ℥.ß. crude Mercury, ℥.ß. and with Honey of Roſes make a linament.

℞. of the juyce of the leaves and flowers of Celendine digeſted, in Balnea untill it is purified. Then take 20. crabs in the month of June, at the full Moon, and caſt away the clawes and hard cruſt, and ſtamp them in a morter, and diſtill them with the juyce of Celendine purified as aforeſaid in Balnea.

Item, wet a little lint in Petroleum, and lay it to the fiſtula in the corner of the eye, or onely drop a little of the oyl into the eye: Or put of the powder of Angelica roots into the corner of the eye, three or four times, then the Petroleum, or elſe the powder of Dittain roots; uſe theſe powders not to often, becauſe they corrode. At the laſt take the white of an egg, and beat it well with the powder of black Roſen prepared.

Prob. With this I cured one that had a Fiſtula 5. years, but I put peſſaries in his noſtrils made of Dittain roots and Honey, or the yellow Balſome.

If Gnats, Flies, or any ſuch like thing ſeem to ſwarm before the Eyes. §. 121.

THis diſeaſe proceedeth of flegmatick and melancholy humours which fall out of the brains into the eyes, oppilating the ſinewes of the ſight more or leſſe according as the defluxion is tough, hard, thin, much, or little.

The Phyſitians do call this accident *Cataracta*, as a cadent water. It doth ſometimes proceed of a foul ſtomach, or through ſome diſeaſe of the eyes; but if it be cauſed of the ſtomach, then is the danger not ſo great; for as ſoon as the occaſion is taken away, then avoideth that which is cauſed thereof. But the other is much to be feared, and very needfull to be looked unto, whilſt it is yet time; but when it waxeth old it is incurable by Phyſick; and can by no means be holpen, but through the needle, and that is alſo uncertain.

That which is cauſed from the ſtomach, maketh before the eyes buzzing and flying, as if there were Gnats or ſomewhat elſe, that ſwarmed ſo before the eyes; and that much more, if the ſtomach be full, then when it is empty. Alſo whatſoever ſuch ſwarmings do continue, enduring before the eyes the ſpace of a moneth or twain without any alteration of the apple of the eye, or diſcloſing of any other ſigns; then may one aſſuredly judge, that theſe diſeaſes are cauſed of the ſtomach; for this patient is a certain order of diet to be ordained, and he muſt purge with *Pilulis Cochiis*.

But if this ſwarming of the Gnats or Flyes be onely before ones eye, and not to be wiped off, then may it well be deemed that this diſeaſe cometh by reaſon of ſome membrane which lyeth cloſed in the eyes, eſpecially if one ſee no dark thing in the eye, but ſome perceive any dark thing therein, then without all doubt the ſinew of the eye is ſtopt and obſtructed. Now for to help this infirmity, there is nothing more to be adviſed then to begin with a good diet: firſt heed is to be taken, that the body, and eſpecially the head

be

be covered well, and kept warm: he muſt refrain all moiſt air and dwelling, and not look much into the water (eſpecially where it is much ſtirred with the wind) he muſt oftentimes faſting rub and comb his head. He muſt bathe his feet before ſupper with this decoction following: Take Bay leaves, Sage, Betonie, *Stechas*, Penniroyal, and ſuch like; except Smallage and Dill.

Item let him be oftentimes rubbed with warm clothes from the neck to the ſhoulders downwards: after meat he muſt refrain from forcible exerciſe, and (if it be poſſible) he muſt abſtain three hours from writing, and beware of all hard meat; but uſe all that warmeth.

And to recite ſomewhat thereof in particular, well ſalted and raiſed bread is not amiſſe to be uſed, wherein Fennel ſeed or Fennel powder is baked. Concerning fleſh, there is nothing more commodious, then ſucking Veal, young Mutton, Roe deer, Kids, and Hares. Of Fowles, young Hens, Pullets, Capons, and young Pigeons, (and chiefly wilde ones, which have a ſecret vertue to ſtrengthen the brains) Partridges, Snipes, Feſants, and Quailes; the Blackbird is alſo permitted for this. River fiſh are more wholeſome then other: nevertheleſſe other fiſh are tolerated meaſurably uſed and broyled, dreſſed with Pepper, Ginger, Fennel, Annisſeed, Parſley, Vervein, Eyebright, and Rue. One may eat eggs after what manner he liſt; onely ſo that they be not hard baked, ſodden or roſted. Further, Sugar, Honey, Verjuyce, the juyce of Lemons, and Citrons, herbs of a warm nature, as Sage, all manner of Mints, Penni-royal, Hyſſop, and wilde Time, are all good, all kind of Rapes, all their ſeed confited doth ſtrengthen the ſight. Of all fruits are allowed freſh Figs, Almonds, roſted haſel Nuts, Piſtacies, roſted Cheſtnuts, Currans, Raiſons, Sallet-oyl, Oyl of Walnuts, Oyl of ſweet Almonds. Theſe Spices following may be alſo uſed, as Pepper, Galangal, Cloves Nutmegs, Mace, Ginger, Cinnamon, Grains, *Lignum. Aloes*, Cummin freſh Fennel, Eyebright ſtrewed upon his meat, or take half an ounce of Eyebright, one quarter of an ounce of Mace; and alwayes take one ſcrup. thereof before meat, for this hath been found to have oftentimes holpen them that had their ſight blemiſhed: Rue ſeed is alſo very good, and for them that have this paſſion in the eyes, are the herbs, roots, and ſeeds of Pionie good, howſoever they be prepared for the taking. Alſo Treacle, and Mithridate, have a ſpecial property to put away the clouds, and all that ſwarm before the eyes. *Avenzoar* doth write, that all they which be burthened with the forementioned Cataracts or dimneſſe, that if they look earneſtly into the eye of an Aſſe, thereby the defluxion ſhould be ſtayed, but if ſo be that this be true, it is a wonderful work of nature. This powder following may alſo be uſed for an approved thing, for many have been holpen thereby.

Take Eyebright with the flowers beaten ſmal, Mace, of each an ounce and a half, ſilver mountain three quarters of an ounce, Sugar four ounces and a half: make a powder thereof.

It is alſo very good, that one hold his face oftentimes over the vapour of the decoction of Celendine, Fennel, and Eyebright: but ſuch like more ſhall follow hereafter.

What theſe patients muſt refrain.

Every ſuch patient muſt beware of thoſe things that make great diſturbance in the head, as anger, calling, crying aloud, raging, ſorrow, ſtench, and from much watching, becauſe they much weaken the natural heat. But he muſt oft let blood, and uſe boxing cups. But as concerning his meat; there are hurtful for him all ſtill ſtanding waters, ſeafiſh, and all fiſh which are taken in mooriſh waters, to be eaten rather ſodden then broyled if one ſhould often eat of them, Crabs, Eeles, Tenches is he utterly to forbear: alſo milk, and all that is dreſt with milk, and he muſt not uſe much vinegar but onely outwardly. All herbs of cold and moiſt natures, as Endive, Beets, Spinage, Purſlain, Lettice, Cucumbers, Gourds, and chiefly Colworts which darken the ſight, and are to be eſchewed and left. Of all roots are chiefly forbidden Garlick, Onions, Radiſhes. In like manner alſo all pottages (except red peaſe, which be called *Cicheling*) Rice, Wheat, and Barley: all fruits which be ſweet and cold, Apples, Cherries, Pingles (whether they be confected or not) are to be refrained. And he muſt chiefly beware of all that which provoketh neeſing, and the cough. There is nothing better for his drink, then clear wine of a good taſt, and that is meetly ſtrong, but a little at once. But they that drink no wine, or have no wine, may uſe from October unto March this following: Take Vervein,

vein, Celendine, Rue, Eyebright, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſeethe them in twelve quarts of water, untill the third part be conſumed, put 14. pound of honey unto it; ſeethe it again untill about the third part be ſodden away, alway skumming it, then ſtrain it thorow a cloth, and keep it ſtopt cloſe in a pot. Now if the ſick perſon deſire it, then may wine (that is meet for the eyes) the 3. or 6. part be tempered amongſt it. By this drink hath been perceived much amendment, and that in ancient folks who had a dark ſight, have ben holpen therewith. Alſo *Hydromil*, which is honey water or mead, is much commended for this, with any addition. Every one may diminiſh or increaſe the quantity of the honey even as it pleaſeth him beſt.

Foraſmuch as concerneth purging, which is exceeding needfull, he muſt know to direct him according to the time of the year, otherwiſes in winter then in ſommer, otherwiſe in the ſpring of the year then in harveſt, or fall of the leafe, which were too long to rehearſe at this preſent, and therefore we will recommend that to the Phyſitians. But there are to be commonly uſed *Pillula Cochiæ, de Succotrella, Sine quibus, Diabiera Compoſita, Lucis*, of the confections *Hiera picra, Benedicta laxativa, & Hiera longedium*. The Cliſters are to be decocted with the common herbs, and tempered with one ounce of *Hiera*. Further, it is then commanded to take in winter a peece of confected Ginger; in like manner alſo after dinner and ſupper to uſe one of the tabulates following: Take *Spec. de Kyfo*, Aloe three drach. *Diacinnamomi* one drach. white Sugar four ounces, ſeethe them with Fenel water, and caſt Tabulates thereof of a meetly bigneſſe.

And if he begin to perceive any clearneſſe, he muſt in the beginning of March drink of this decoction following four ounces alwayes four hours before meat in the morning: firſt, take Ginger, white Pepper, *Calamus*, of each one drach. flowers of Eyebright, Balſame wood, of each a quarter of an ounce, three cleanſed Hermodactils, ſtampe them all together, and ſeethe them in three pints of water, untill two parts be conſumed. Secondly, take the juyce of Fenel, common lee which is not ſharpe, of each two ounces, *Tutia* prepared with the urine of a manchild one drachme and a half: ſet this the ſpace of twenty dayes in the Sun, and uſe it aſſhall be declared hereafter. Thirdly, take juyce of Roſes one drach. common lee, Eyebright water, of each one ounce, ſet it (as is ſaid) in the Sun, and make the eyes therewith moiſt every morning and evening two hours before meat: uſe alſo the juyce of Roſes alone, anoint therewith the forehead and temples of the head.

Before ſupper he is to take all the ſpring time a quarter of an ounce of *Diacorum*. Fourthly, take Gall, Maſtick, ſealed earth, the juyce of Sloes, of each one drach. *Sandaraca* one ounce, the juyce of Roſes as much as is needfull to ſteep the ſame in: bray it altogether in a morter untill it be meetly thick: anoint therewith alwayes every third day when you go to bed, the forehead, and the temples of the head.

Fifthly, take Mace, Eyebright, of each one drach. and a half, *Lignum Aloe* one quarter of an ounce, Fennel, Comin, Ameos, of each half a drach. Amber two ſcrup. ſeethe this altogether in a pint of Fennel water unto the half: take alwayes four ounces at once tempered with Sugar: drink thereof four times a week, three hours before meat.

In the ſommer you are to uſe this following every morning, at the leaſt every ſecond day then muſt you chew (but not ſwallow) a peece of Maſtick and *Cuebes*. Item, take Fennel, Celendine, Rue, the juyce of Roſes, of each three ounces, Sugar-Candy, white Sugar, of each ſix ounces, Sugar pennets four ounces, of Fennel ſeed, Licorice, Violets, Roſes, Eyebright, of each one ounce, Piſtates three drach. that have been ſteeped five dayes in Eyebright water, and be dried again; pownd them all to powder. The Sugar is to be ſodden unto a ſirope for to make a confection thereof, and take thereof every morning about half an ounce. Secondly, take the juyce of Vervein two ounces, the juyce of Roſes, of Fennel, water wherein Licorice hath been ſodden, of each two ounces, the gall of a Pickerel one drach. temper it and ſet it 15. dayes in the Sun. This *Collyrium* is to be put once or twice into the eyes before meat, or at leaſt moiſten them therewith, for it is very good and ſure.

In the beginning of harveſt, and after purging, one muſt uſe to chew ſometimes *Calamus*, otherwhiles Nutmegs, Galangal, or as much *Agaricus* as the bigneſſe of a Bean; ſpew out the ſlime (as is ſaid) and then uſe the confection with the ſalve of the forehead.

A plaiſter for the forehead: Take clean *Landanum* half an ounce, Roſen one quarter of an ounce, Celendine, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one ℥. Cloves half a drach. melt the two firſt in ſharpe vinegar, temper them afterwards with ſtrong wine, and let them all ſeethe thick

with

with the herbs; put the ſpice unto it, and make a plaiſter thereof, and ſpread it on lether, cover it with red Syndal, make it that it be as large till it come over the eyes: this warmeth, dryeth moderately, and ſtrengtheneth the brains. This powder following may alſo be ſtrewed upon the head, take *Lignum Aloes*, Eyebright, wild Time, Hyſop, Stechas, of each one drach. Mace three quarters of an ounce, Violets ℥. 1. ß. pownd each of them by themſelves, and temper them well, thereof ſtrew upon the head alwaies two houres after ſupper, on the top of the crown about the weight of a ſcruple, and that once in three or four daies; the ſame helpeth much. Or take this powder following, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloves, Cardamome, of each half a drach. Amber, Eyebright, Fennel, flowers of Celendine, Roſes, of each one ſcrup. Mace one drach. make thereof a fine powder, and uſe it as before; but take not more then ſix grains thereof at one time, and when you will ſtrew more upon it, then firſt bruſh off the former.

Item, wind ſmall ſtamped Marjoram in a piece of ſilk, and ſmell oftentimes thereto, fume alſo your head or hat oftentimes with *Lignum Aloes* over the fire.

There may alſo ſometime be uſed drying head lee, whereof every where may be diſcovered. Famous Phyſitians do alſo require to take every moneth an ounce and three quarters of *Hiera Picra*, tempered with Fennel water, and that without any fear, for that it is a gentle medicine. There may be taken every moneth in the ſtead of the other, two ſcruples of the powder of Centory, with Fennel water, and faſt ſix houres after it.

With the things that are to be dropt in, one muſt go to work very providently, and that not careleſly, but only in great need, and when the body is well cleanſed. Amongſt the ſame be theſe commended, which are alſo the leaſt: Take the juice of Fennel well cleanſed two ounces, let one drachme of *Sal Gemma* be diſſolved therein, put three or four times a day one drop thereof into the eye. Or take the juice of Fennel as it is, or that which is thick one drachme, bruiſe it in an ounce of the water of Eyebright, uſe it as before. For this are alſo good the galls of ravening birds, and alſo of Feſants, Partridges, and ſuch like, which eat no fleſh. This ſimple *Collyrium* following is very much commended; Take the gall of a Pickerel one quarter of an ounce, *Sal Gemma*, half a ſcruple, let them melt together. In like manner this following: Take the freſh liver of a found Buck, being waſhed, prick it well through, and fill it with long Pepper, Fennel and Eyebright powder, of each alike much; put it on a ſpit, and let it roſt by a gentle fire, receive the juice that droppeth from it in a clean pot, and uſe it as a Collyrium.

Or take in the end of April the juice of Fennel, ſtop it tight in a glaſſe, and ſet the ſame 15 daies in the Sun; afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth, and temper Aloes unto it ℥ 6. one ounce of *Lignum Aloes* beaten ſmall; let it afterwards ſtand 15 daies in the Sun, and ſtrain it again through a cloth, and uſe it as is rehearſed already.

This following is alſo many times well approved. Take Swallowes heads, burn them to aſhes in a covered pot, take one quarter of an ounce thereof, clarified honey ℥. 3. the juice of Fennel one ounce; temper them altogether in a glaſſe, ſtop them tight, and ſeethe them in water unto the half; uſe thereof morning and evening, and before and after meat, one drop.

Item, burn Fennel ſtalks to aſhes, poure lee upon, it waſh therewith the eyes and eyelids, for it is very good. It is likewiſe alſo good that each one uſe his own urine, or that of a man child.

Foraſmuch then as for theſe diſeaſes there be many kinds of remedies deſcribed, therefore may one chuſe that which liketh him beſt, and to follow all that one findeth to do good, for there are not ſo many deſcribed, that they ſhould altogether be uſed; but becauſe that one might chuſe thereof, and uſe only all that one may get moſt eaſily.

Of the skin of the eye. §. 13.

IT is declared in the beginning, that out of old Cataracts there doth eaſily ingender a Skin, and the ſtar, which will take away the ſight; whereof we now mean to write: there be therefore commonly two kinds of them diſcovered by the Phyſitians; as the red and white. The red do the Aarabians name *Sehet*, which cometh of abundance of blood in the ſmall veins of the eyes, which doth ſpread it ſelf abroad over the whole eye, ſo that it ſeemeth to be a red cloth, whereof enſueth a great itch. The patient can abide by no means any light, nor Sun, nor fire. This diſeaſe will be ſometimes alſo (as is reported)

ported) inherited from the Parents, but it infecteth not any body elſe. It is grievous and tedious to be cured, if ſo be that the manual operation be not uſed thereto. For this, one of the chiefeſt things is to lead an ordered life, to uſe that which is good, and to eſchew that which is ill, like as is ſufficiently ſhewed in the 12. Section, and is meet for this purpoſe.

For purging are the *Pillulæ Cochiæ* or ſuch like requiſite. Alſo for this is adviſed to open the head vein: And for the itch, to waſh the eyes with water wherein Roſes, Sorrel and Mallowes are decocted.

Or you may prepare this Powder; take the freſh egg ſhells, that have been infuſed nine dayes in vinegar, afterwards ſeeth them a good ſpace in the ſame vinegar, dry them in the ſhadow, ſtamp and bruiſe the ſame: this powder is to be uſed oftentimes in the eyes.

Some do temper amongſt it *Sarcocolla*, Aloe, Ginger, Gum, of each the third part of the egg ſhells, and make it with Eyebright water unto a Collyrium. It may be uſed in manner of a powder, being beaten ſmall.

Item, take Ceruſſe which is waſht nine times in Roſe water, one drachme, burnt Copper, Gummi Dragagant, prepared Sarcocolla, Bever cod, Aloe, Frankincenſe, Opium, prepared Pearls, Camphire, of each a drach. temper this with the juyce of Celendine, make your hands fat with the oyl of bitter Almonds, and make trochiſces thereof, the weight of half a drachme. Afterwards diſſolve one of them in Fennel water, and when you will uſe it, put ſome thereof into the eyes; it cleanſeth them, and taketh away the skin from the eyes.

Sennertus.

Of the Skin or Hawe in the Eye.

FIrſt foment the eyes with the decoction of barley, Mallowes, Marſh mallowes, Camomil, Melilot, Linſeeds, Fenegreek, Dill, flowers of Blew-bottles.

Or take egg-ſhells and diſſolve them in vinegar, then dry them and make them into powder, and put thereof into the eyes.

Or you may uſe of burnt braſſe, Vitriol, Scales of braſſe, flower of braſſe, calcitis burnt, but I ſuppoſe it is beſt to uſe milder medicines; as

℞. of womans milk, honey, ana. ℥. 1. Saffron, G. 4. ſeethe them and put thereof into the eyes.

Or ℞. of Sorrel water, ℥. 4. Allom, Ceruſſe, ana. ℥. 1. Camphire, G. 4. ſeethe them in a glaſſe, ſet in Balnea, then ſtrain it.

Or ℞. of Roſe vinegar, ℥. 4. Roſewater ℥ 5. white Vitriol ℥. 2. the Jaw-bone of Pickerel burned, Tutia prepared, ana. half a drachme, ſeethe them in a glaſſe cloſe ſtopt in Balnea.

Or ℞. of Roſe water, Tormentil water, ana. ℥. 1. ß. white wine vinegar, ℥. 1. Tutia prepared, ℥. 1. ß. Scales of braſſe, ℥. ß. boyl them in a veſſel cloſe ſtopt, ſtrain it, and filter it.

Or ℞. of Plantain water, Knotgraſſe water, ana. one ounce and a half, Vitriol calcined one drach. Salt amoniac. half a drach. Myrrhe one drach. boyl them, and ſtrain it and filter it.

Or ℞. of the Gaules of Pickerels, diſtill them in a glaſſe till they are thick, and put thereto a little Camphire, and draw the gaul that is thick with the ſpirit of wine, that you ſeparate the ſpirit of wine, to which extract put Sugar to the ſpirit, ana. G. 1. and diſſolve it in the former liquor, G. 6. and with a feather put it into the eyes morning and evening.

Soiſſe in the Rhaſis is alſo good.

Or the powder of burnt braſſe macerated in urine, 5. or 6. dayes, and then dryed is good.

Or ℞. of Sugar candy ℥. 3. bloodſtone prepared, ℥. 1. burnt Allom, white Vitriol, Camphire, ana. ℥. ß. put thereto of white wine vinegar, Roſewater, Fennel water, ana, ℥. 4. ſeethe them and ſtrain it.

Or ℞. of Celendine water, ℥. 4. burnt Allom, ℥. 2. Pumice ſtone, ℥. 1. ſeethe them in a veſſel cloſe ſtopt, and ſtrain it.

Or R. of Maſtick half an ounce, Ceruſſe, burnt Allom, ana. one drachme, Pumice ſtone, G. 15. Salt Gemme, G. 7. make them into very fine powder to put into the eyes.

Or R. of Tutia prepared, ℥.3. Pearls prepared, red Coral prepared, pompholix, ana. ℥.2. Sugar candy, ℥.1.ß. Camphire, Ginger, ana. ℈.1, make thereof a very fine powder to put into the eyes.

Or R. of Blew bottle water ℥.7. Frankincenſe, Sarcocoll. ana. ℥.2. Caſtoreum, Aloes, ana. ℥.1. Camphire, ℥.ß. put them into a glaſſe well ſtopt, and boyl them, and put the liquor thereof into the eyes.

Or R. of Celendine water ℥.8. Shells of Crabs feet, or egg ſhells burnt, Aloes, Sarcocoll. ana. ℥.1. Tutia, white Vitriol, Sugar Candy, ana. ℥.ß. put them into a glaſſe cloſe ſtopt, and ſeethe them in Balneo and ſtrain it.

Or R. of bloodſtone two drachmes, white Vitriol, Verdigreaſe, ana. three drachmes, Myrrhe, Saffron, ana. one drachme, long Pepper half a drach. Sugar-Candie, ℥.ß. make them into very fine powder, keep it for uſe to make a Collyre. Take of that powder ℥.1. diſſolve it in ℥.2. of radiſh water, and put it into the eyes two or three times in the day.

R. of the juyce of Fennel four ounces, Celendine three ounces, Rue two ounces, Mallowes two ounces, Aloes one ſcruple, Vitriol one ſcrup. Verdigreaſe one ſcrup. Ginger, Cinamon, ana. ℈. 1. Galls of Eeles ℥.ß. gall of an Oxe, ℥.2. Sugar-Candy ℈.2. honey ℥.ß. boyl the juices, and thereto the other things, cleanſe it, and make thereof a Collyre.

Item, make this powder following, which is good to take off the white skin when it is but new; the ſame is alſo good for running and ſore eyes. Take Ginger, Pepper, *Myrobalani Indi*, and of the yellow Mirobalans, of each five drach. Aloes one drachme and a half, Cuttlebone three quarters of an ounce, Antimony three drach. Caſſia wood and Cloves, of each half an ounce: make all this unto a ſubtile powder, and let it be blown into the eyes.

And if ſo be that theſe foreſaid things do not help, then muſt the skin be pluckt off; whereof it is not our meaning here to ſhew the manner.

Ungula. Now as concerning the white skin of the eyes, which the Phyſitians do call *Unguiem*, which is a nail; for that it is ſikened to a nail of the finger, which is of nature between skin and fleſh, and groweth from the corner of the eye towards the middle of the ſame: Of theſe ſome be hard, and ſome be ſoft, yellowiſh, darkiſh and reddiſh, and have ſome ſociety with the foreſaid Sebel, whereof ſome be light, and others very hardly cured by manual operation.

They do grow out of all corners and ſides of the eyes, untill that in part or in whole they cover the apple of the eye. The cauſe of this are many tough and thick humours, like as one may ſee in the horſes, and four footed beaſts more, which are fed with groſſe food. Now what one is to beware of in this ſickneſſe, hath been before declared at large in the 12. Section.

For this (like as alſo in all other) is very good the letting of blood and purging, with all other things which repel this defluxion, for the beginning of the cure, like as is ſufficiently ſhewed in the former Inſtructions. Now henceforth we will go and diſcourſe of the ſmalleſt and neweſt skins.

Take Mallowes, Camomil, Hollihock roots, Linſeed, of each half a *M.* let it ſeethe well, and receive the vapour into the eyes; afterwards uſe the Collyrium which is deſcribed before in the eighth §. and beginneth thus; take beaten Blooſtone, &c.

Item, take *Vinum Pulvinum*, put a good deal of Rue therein, and let it ſtand in a glaſſe the whole Sommer in the Sun; drop thereof into the eyes. The ſame doth drive away the new skin, and all darkneſſe of the eyes. The juyce of Celendine, of Beets, of Fennel, Vervein, each a part or mixed, being put into the eyes, do take away the heat of the eyes, and all darkneſſe of the ſame.

Or take the flowers of Cicory, as many as you will, put them into a glaſſe ſtopt, cover the glaſſe with thick dowe, put it then into an oven. The water which runneth from theſe flowers, uſe to the skin of the eyes.

This alſo may be approved; Take Juniper leaves, and the berries that grow thereon, diſtill water thereof, and put it into the eyes. Item, take fine honey, bruiſe ſome Camphire amongſt it, and uſe it as all the reſt.

Break

Break a freſh piece of Bever rod in pieces, wherein you ſhall find ſome moiſture; temper this with Wine, and put it into the eyes.

For this is alſo good, great Ants bruiſed in pieces, and made to pap with the fat of Quailes, Myrrhe, and Fennel water.

Take ſix grains of Pepper, and as much Allom, vinegar one ounce, ſeethe it unto the third part, and keep it for daily uſe.

Take Graſhoppers, but not the green, nor them that be big, nor too little, bind them on a threed, and dry them in the Sun, then beat them to powder, bind them in a cloth, and lay it all night in wine, drop thereof into the eye; it is very ſharp. Others do but make a cloth wet therein, and lay it upon the eye, and that is ſurer. Some do uſe Eldern Pith.

Item, take the innermoſt skins of the maw of a Sparrow, half an ounce, *Verbaſcum* ſeeds three drach. beat them very ſmall, and make it into a ſalve with the oyl of ſweet Almonds; afterwards take Verdigreaſe, white Vitriol, Sal armoniack, burnt Copper, of each half a ſcrup. long, white, and black Pepper, green earthen potſheards, *Sagapenum*, *Galbanum*, of each one drachme, Bucks galls one quarter of an ounce; pownd very ſmall what is to be pownded, temper them with honey, and put of the juyce of Marjoram or water unto it, that thou mayſt uſe it for a Collyrium. There may many be found wherein the venime *Orpigmentum* is put, the which I do not willingly rehearſe; becauſe that where any thick and old skin doth cover the eye, it is to be taken off with the needle, ſo that it is unneceſſary to vex the eyes with any ſuch perilous thing.

Of the miſts and clouds of the Eyes. §. 14.

THe *Nebula* (which is alſo called by reaſon of her whiteneſſe, *Albugo*) is divers: it hath alſo other cauſes then the foreſaid white eye skins.

There be two ſorts of theſe; the firſt is meetly thick, like the white of a ſodden egge to look unto: the other is much ſubtiller, and is like a cloud, and it is alſo eaſier to cure then the other; both proceed through the defluxion of moiſtures out of the head, and will be according to the nature of that moiſture, thick or ſubtile. There cometh alſo otherwhiles a third ſort into the eyes, as of ſome kind of bruiſe, or old impoſtume, or of any bliſters of the eyes, which are a long time in curing.

Nevertheleſſe it hath been found, if young children through the pocks do retain any ſuch clouds, and the eyes with the body be waxen greater; that the ſame clouds do leſſen in time.

The thick whiteneſſe is thus to be cured; Every morning faſting are the eyes to be fomented with clear warm water, or with water of theſe herbs following, whereof we mean to uſe the juyce: Take the juyce of corn Roſes, the juyce of Centory, temper them together, or uſe each by it ſelf. Item, take the dryed juyce of Celendine ℥. 3. Ameos one quarter of an ounce, make a powder thereof.

Item, take white Sugar Candy, each put a part in the eye, is very good. Take Pumice ſtone, prepared *Sarcocolla*, Ariſtology, white Sugar, of each a like much; make a powder thereof. Cuttlebones alone, or tempered with one of the foreſaid, are alſo very profitable; womans milk after the foreſaid bones, milkt in the eyes, and uſed often, mollifieth the white skins.

This following is alſo highly commended; Take Pumice ſtones, Cuttle bones, prepared Sarcocolla, Ariſtology, red Coral, Boreas, of each one drach. Sugar-Candy three quarters of an ounce, make thereof a ſubtile powder. Take the burnt ſhells of Sea-crabs, prepared Tutia, and Sugar; beat them as ſmall as may be. Now to the end the eyes may be cleanſed, and the clouds taken away, this honey following is to be put therein: Take clarified honey two ounces, the juyce of Centory, the juyce of Fennel, of each an ounce and a half, let it ſeethe ſomewhat, and ſcum it till it be clear; drop thereof on the white cloud of the eye. Will you have the honey more ſharp? Then put thereto 3. drachmes of Boreas.

Take one part of Swallowes dung, Honey three parts, temper them together; this will apparantly help, but it is ſharp like as is ſaid already.

Dispersion, or contraction of the Eye lessens or sight, §. 15.

BEcause that these parts or skins of the apples of the eye (called *Regadæ* and *Vuea*,) are sometimes disgregated through inward and outward occasions, so that they be stretched out even to the white of the eye, whereby the sight is not a little hurt: it is therefore first to be marked, whether this disease be from the nativity, or proceed of the great pain in the head, *Cephalæa*. If it be born with one, there is then small hope to have it cured; but if it be caused through any other occasions, as falls, blowes, thrusts, many humours that disperse themselves abroad, or of some former impostume that hath not long been past, then it is still to be holpen: first, by letting of blood in the head vein on the contrary side where the disease is; afterwards through purging with the pills of Cochiæ, and through a well governed dyet. This is one of the best medicines, for it consumeth all humidities, not onely of the head, but also of the whole body. Afterwards one may make a plaister for it with fine Bolus, Mirtle seed, of each half an ounce, Linseed beaten small two ounces, Rose water, and the juyce of Barberies; or take Nightshade, Plantain, the juyce of Housleek, of each a like much, and lay it over the eyes with a cloth. Item, wet a cloth in Rosewater, wherein Tutia hath been infused, and lay it over the eyes; for this is cauterization in the neck very much commended: but if this disgregation of the sight be small, then it will be easily cured with the *Sieff* of Gaules, which hereafter shall follow, which foresaid *Sieff* of Gaules, or *de Fellibus* is thus prepared.

Take the Gals of these aforenamed beasts, to wit, of Cranes, Pickrels, Buckes, Hobbies, Sparhauks, or of any other ravening Birds whatsoever, of each two drachmes, and a half, *Euphorbium*, Coloquint, *Sagapenum*, of each one drachme, melt the gum, pownd all that is to be pownded, and temper it with the gals, and with two ounces of the juyce of Fennel, and use it like any other *Collyrium*; It is also specially good for those that are purblind, whereof shall be hereafter spoken.

But if the starre or beam of the eye be dispersed because it is hurt, there is then no great care to be taken, for the same is easily to be holpen; make this plaister following. Take beanes and Barly meal, of each one quarter of an ounce, Oyle of Roses half an ounce, the yolke of an egge, temper it well with the juyce of Endive, as much as is needful.

Take Nightshade, Housleeke, and Rose water, of each one ounce, and the white of an egge, make a cloth wet therein, and lay it upon the eyes. For this is also good, the gall of a Bucke, ashes of the burnt head of a Magpie, of each a like quantity, tempered with Hony and the juyce of Celendine, and so layed upon the eye; this is commended for a very approved receipt.

And if so be that the apple of the eye be contracted and wax smaller, it is then caused through drought; and although naturally the small apple of the eye be good, yet is the diminishing of the same very bad. For this are good moist meates to be used, to bath in sweet waters to use oftentimes womans milke, and drop of the foresaid mildest *Collyrium* into the eyes.

Sennertus, *of the extension of the apple of the eye.*

IF it come of aboundance of humors, the body must first be evacuated, then use medicines resolving the (Unea) and strengthening the same. And for this purpose let the party hold his face with his eyes open in sea-water, or for want thereof in water mixed with salt. Also use meet astringent things, as Roses, Spike, Saffron, Pompholix, Spodium. Also use a Collyre of Roses, Saffron, rindes of Frankincense, and Acatia.

℞. of red Roses dryed ℈. 1. Saffron, Spike, rindes of Frankincense, ana. ℈. ß. Tutia prepared, Spodium, Acatia, ana. ℈. 1. powder them, and bind them in a knot in a linen cloth, and put it into Rose water, ℥. 3. and when you use it, presse the cloth, and put of that water into the eyes.

Or ℞. of gum Arabick, Tutia, Sandarach, Tragagant, ana. ʒ. 2. Bolus, ʒ. 1. Linseeds, Quinces, Saffron, ana. ʒ. 1. the juyce of Pomegranates, ℥. 1. ß. Rose water, ℔. ß. let them macerate all night in warme water, then boyle them half an houre and strain it, and put thereof into the eyes.

of

Of the contraction of the apple of the eye.

If it comes of the defect of the watry humours, then use moystning things; as milke and water applyed to the forehead and head, that the head may receive nourishment from the inferior parts; and it is good to wet the hands in some water, and to hold them over the eyes; use moystening things, but use no sharp nor hot things.

Of the extuberation of the Eyes, as if they would fall out. §. 16.

THis is caused through many occasions, as for that the head is full of humours, or for that the eyes of themselves do swell through a full body, and otherwhiles through wind, and otherwhiles through some kind of impostume, if there be much blood or flegme with it, whereof mention is before made in the 8. §. It may happen also that the sinewes of the muscles about the eyes are feebled and lamed through some superfluous humour of the head, like as it may well happen by reason of the great paine of the head through extreame vomiting, and strong straining of going to stoole, of hard coughing, and of such like strong motions; and this happeneth especially in the dropsy, if it come through fulnesse of the body, then doth the Patient feele a strong pricking and pain about the eyes; if through wind, then is the pricking not so strong, but rather contracting; and if it come through much blood, that do the red veines declare; with heate, Cholera, maketh pricking and smarting. If this infirmity be new, then it is easily to be holpen (in case that it is not caused through the Dropsie) and that onely through good government of dyet. But if this infirmity be but small, then lay cotton on the eye, and tye it to a linnen band; eat and drink but little, sleep much, and refrain from all labour. But if the grief be much, and with great pain, open the head vein, and purge with *Hiera*, and with Pills ordained in *Ophthalmia*. Set boxing cups with picking on high upon the shoulders, foment the eyes with wooll which is dipped in warm vinegar and water, or with water and vinegar, wherein Pomgranate blossomes and peels, Gaules, and Sumach is decocted, and make the whole face wet therewith. And if therewith be great heat, then make a plaister of the herbs Shepherds purse, Plantain, and Housleek, and so apply it upon the eye. But if it proceed through weakenesse of the sinewes, then purge the head, use Gargarismes, and the Salves that hereafter are taught in *Paralysi* and contraction of the mouth, make a fomentation of warm herbs: or this plaister; take Frankincense, Mastick, Cipres nuts, and the leaves, of each a like much beaten, tempered with oyl of Camomil; but if you will put some of the juice of Sloes unto it you may.

Of eyes that be burnt. §. 17.

IF any bodies face be burnt, so that one have fear of his eyes, and that they do swell, then take water of Vervein, steep Quince kernels therein, wring the slime through a cloth, and anoint the face therewith, and the eye-lids: but look for that which is written before of white and red eyes, what cooleth all kinds of inflammations, or that is declared in the first part.

Take a fine linnen cloth, dip it in sallet oyl, lay it over the eyes, then take curds made of the white of egges, and beaten with Allom, and lay them upon the oylie cloth, change it 3. or 4. times every day till the eyes are whole. *Prob.* This I have proved in all burnings or scaldings.

Whensoever any be stricken in or upon the eye. §. 18.

TAke pownded Wormwood, temper it with the brayed white of an egge, and lay it over the eye.

Item, take the juyce of Vervein, the white of eggs well brayed, lay it on the eyes with a wet cloth; look also thereof in the sixth Chapter, and the first Section, of the humours of the eye-lids.

If any thing be fallen into the Eyes. §. 19.

IF so be that the eye (through any thing that might fall therein) be bruised or perished, that must forthwith be holpen, to the end that it do not inveterate; for this it is advised to take fresh cleer water in the mouth, and spout the same into the sore eye so long, untill all that whatsoever be in it may be washed out.

Yet womans milk is more commodious, sprouted into it out of the breast. This may also be done with white wine, for it causeth the eyes to run better; and if one wring thereon, then cometh that which is fallen into it with more ease out of it again.

Or take a piece of white Rosine, let it be made warm in the Sun, or after another manner, then draw it very softly on the apple of the eye, then doth it remain hanging thereon.

This operation or power is attributed also unto *Rubies* and *Saphires* being stroked in the eyes.

Roll the upper eye-lid about, and wipe it with a soft linnen cloth, then doth it remain hanging on the cloth.

Item, take Betony, Celendine, Eyebright, Hyssop, Penny-royal, of each a like, seethe them in meetly water, and wash the eyes with this whilest that it is warm.

How to cure the diminishing, feebleness, and darkness of the eyes. §. 20.

THe sight is many times of some disease of the eyes (like as in *Ophthalmia* is declared) lessened, and also enfeebled, as the shining of the Sun, looking-glasses, shining copper, lightning, fire, long darkness, watching, the beholding of white things, like as when one walketh far in the snow, cold ayr, or that chalk, dust, or any things else come into the eyes, thorow much looking upon small things, to let much blood, or that one doth it not if he be accustomed, also through an unchaste life. Further, the eyes are much weakened with great lasks, great labour, odoriferous things, and specially the *Basilicon*, of which we are not to omit this admirable work of nature, that is, if one eat too much of this, then will the sight be weakened, where notwithstanding the juyce thereof dropt into the eyes doth strengthen the sight, and dryeth up the moisture.

Sennertus, *Of feebleness and dimness of the Eyes.*

EXternal medicines are made of Eyebright, Fennel, Celendine, Valerian, Rue, Marigolds, and the like; as

℞. of Rosewater two pound, Blew bottles, Eyebright, ana. half a pound, Malmsey wine, ℥.2.ß. Tutia prepared.℥.6.ß. Camphire, G 8. Cloves sliced, ℥.2. boyl them in an earthen pot, and strain it, then put thereto of white Vitriol, G. 6.

Or ℞. of Eyebright, Rue, Larks spur, ana. ℥.1. Nutmegs, Mace, ana. ℥.ß. Cloves, Ginger, ana. ℥.1. stamp them, and put them into strong wine four pound, or q.ß. let them digest two or three dayes, then distill them, and put of the distilled water, into the eyes morning and evening.

Or ℞. of Eyebright, Rue, Betony, Vervein, Celendine, Blew bottles, Rosemary, Larks spur, ana. *M.* Frankincense, Aloes, Myrrhe, ana. ℥.2. Calamus aromaticus, Mace, Cloves, ana. ʒ. bruise them a little, and put them into Rosewater two pound, Rue water, Malmsey, ana. one pound, Urine of a child half a pound, macerate them eight dayes, then distill them.

Or ℞. of Eyebright, Fennel, Rue, Celendine, Vervein, ana. *M.*1. Rosemary, seeds of Fennel, Annise, Carawayes, Lovage, ana. ℥.1. roots of Calamus aromaticus, ℥.ß. Mace, Frankincense, Myrrhe, ana. ℥. 2. waters of Roses, Rue, Malmsey, ana. two pound, macerate them and distill them.

Or ℞. of clarified honey ℥.1. juyce of Fennel, ℥.1. the gaule of a Gosshauk, the gaule of a Pickerel, and of a Partridge, ana. ℥.1. mix them.

Or ℞. the roots of Gentian cut into pieces, q. *P.* and seethe them in water and wine, ana. half a pound, strain it, and put it into the eyes, it clears the eyes of scars after the small pox, &c.

The

The Emperour Maximilians *Eye-water.*

℞. of young Geese dung, gathered in the moneths of May or April, distill the dung, and put off the distilled water 2. or 3. times a day into the eyes.

Or ℞. of Tutia prepared ℥.2. white Vitriol, Sarcocol. *nihili albi*, Aloes washt, ana. one scruple, Camphire half a scruple, waters of Fennel, Roses, Celendine, Pimpinel, water Lillies, ana. two ounces, Cuttlebones one drachme, mix them, and make a Collyre.

The old Arabians commend the liver of a Goat roasted and eaten with Salt; or the vapour of it received into the eyes, or the gravie of it rosted to be reserved and dropt into the eyes. Some roast the liver and gall together, and reserve the gravie thereof and drop it into the eyes.

Or ℞. of the juice of Fennel, Celendine, Rue, Eyebright, ana. ℥.2. Honey, ℥. 10. Tutia, Sarcocoll, Crude Vitriol, Aloes, ℥.ß. Nutmegs, Cloves, Saffron, ana. one drach. Gaules of Capons, Cocks, and Hens, ana. half an ounce, Sugar Candie, of syrup of Roses sixe drachmes, the Liver of a Goat two ounces and a half, flowers of Roses, of Rosemary, ana. *M.* ß. cut the Liver into small pieces, and bruise the other things, mix them, and distill them.

Or use this which is stronger.

℞. of long Pepper sod in the Liver of a hee-goat, ℥.2. Goats gall, ℥. ß. of the liquor of a Goats liver roasted, ℥.6. mix them and distrain them. Some commend the gall of a viper before any other thing.

Compounded wine to drink for the Eye-sight.

℞. of roots of Elecampane, ℥. 4. Eyebright, *M.*4. seeds of Fennel, Lovage, ana. ℥.2. put them bruised into a bag, and hang them in new Hydromel, and drink thereof morning and even.

Or ℞. of Eyebright, *M.*2. Fennel seeds, ℥.ß. Cinamon, ℥.3. bruise them and put them into a bag, and hang it in rhenish wine.

Or this Ophthalmick water is good, if you take every morning fasting a spoonfull.

℞. of leaves of Rue, Eyebright, Vervain, Fennel, ana. *M.*1. tops of Rosemary, Sage, flowers of Roses, ana. *P.*2. Juniper-berries, ℥.1. Cassia Ligna, ℥.ß. Wood of Aloes, ℥.ß. Fennel seeds, ℥.2. Lovage, ℥ 1. Rue, ℥.ß. bruise them, and put them into Malmsey, *lb.*6. let them macerate 5. dayes, then distill them and drink of it.

Another. ℞. of the roots of Valerian, *Pon. ponticum*, ana. ℥. 2. Gilloflowers, ℥. ß. leaves of Rue, Vervain, Fennel, Eyebright, with the flowers, ana. ℥.6. green Bay-berries, ℥.1. green bay-leaves, ℥.ß. Marigold flowers, Bawme, Sage, Rosemary, white Roses, ana. ℥.2. Fennel seeds, ℥.ß. Cloves, Cardamome, Cubebs, ana. ℥.1. Cinamon, ℥.1. Wood of Aloes, Rhadii, ana. ℥.1. shred and bruise them, and put them into *lb.* 12. of Malmsey, after that distill them in Balnea, and drink of it.

A compounded spirit of Euphrage.

℞. of the spirit of black Cherries, *lb.* 1. of the greater compounded water of Swallowes, ℥.6. Doronicum, Wood of Cassia, Amomum, Roots of Valerian, Celendine, ana. ℥.2. Marmu. leaves of Rue, ana. ℥.1.ß. Eyebright, ℥..1.ß. infuse them together 12. hours, and distill them in Balnea, and drink thereof fasting.

A water strengthening the Eyes.

℞. of the compounded spirit of Euphrage, ℥. 3. *aqua epileptica Langii*, *Elixir vitæ Matthioli*, ana. ℥. 1. essence of Rosemary, ℥.ß. Ambergreese, G.6. Musk, G. 4. Syrup of Cinamon, ℥. 1.ß. mix them.

Or ℞. of the juyce of Fennel, ℥.3. Rue, Celendine, ana. ℥.1 honey, *lb.* 1. seethe them unto the right thickneſse, then adde unto it of the powder of Eyebright, ℥.1. Fennel seeds, ℥.ß. Mace, Cubebs, ana. ℥.2. make thereof an Electuary.

Or R: of the Conſerve of Eyebright, ℥.3. Treacle, ℥.2.ß. white Amber prepared ℥.ß. Pearls prepared, ʒ.1. of the ſpecies of Diaphenicon, ℥.ß. and with the ſyrup of Roſes make an Electuary to be uſed at night going to bed.

Or ℞. of the Electuary Humami Meſue, ℥.3. conſerves of Eye-bright, ℥.2. Fennel ſeeds, Lovage ſeeds powdered, ana ℥.1.ß. extract of the roots of Valerian, ʒ.1. Salt of Rue, of Vervain, ana. ʒ.ß. ſpecies Oeconis, ℥.1. and with the ſyrup of Stecades make an Electuary.

Or ℞. of the conſerves of Eyebright, ℥.1.ß. Betony, Roſemary, ana. ℥.1. Elecampane roots, ℥.2. Fennel roots condite, ℥.ß. Myrabolanes, Chebuli condite, ℥.3. extract of Rue ſeeds, ʒ.ß. Lovage ſeeds, G.1. eſſence or ſpirit of Valerian, ℥.1. and with ſyrup of Betony make an electuary to be taken morning and evening.

Or ℞. of Cinamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Mace, Cloves, Cubebs, ana. ℥.1. Cumin, Cardamom, ana. ℥.2. Sugar as much as of the reſt, and make thereof an electuary, adding powder of the ſeeds of Anniſe and Fennel.

Or ℞. of Fennel ſeeds, ℥.1. Valerian roots, ℥.ß. Anniſeeds, Pepper, Ginger, Cumin, Penny royal, Roſemary flowers, Juniper berries, Galangal, Gilloſers, ana. ℥.1. Eyebright, ℥.ß. powder them with honey, make an Electuary.

Or ℞. of Eyebright, drach.5. Marjoram, Cinamon, ana. ℥.2. Fennel ſeeds, Coriander ſeeds prepared, ana ℥.3. Anniſe, Carawayes, long Pepper, Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Ginger, Galangal, ana. ℥.1. Spike, ℥.ß. Sugar, ℥.2. make thereof a powder, and uſe it in meats.

Or ℞. of leaves of Eyebright, Marjoram, ana. ℥.ß. Fennel ſeed, Carawayes, ana. ℥.ß. long and black Pepper, ana. ʒ.1. Cinamon, ℥.ß. Salt, ℥.1.ß. make thereof a powder to uſe in meats.

Or ℞. of leaves of Rue, Lovage, flowers of Eyebright, ana. half an ounce, Roots of Valerian, Cinamon, Fennel ſeeds, ana. two drachmes, Cubebs, half a drach. as much Sugar as of all thereſt, make thereof a powder.

A diſtilled Water to drink.

℞. of leaves of Rue, Eyebright, Sage, ana. *M.* 1. Juniper berries, ℥.2. Wood of Caſſia, half an ounce, Wood of Aloes, ℥.1. Fennel ſeeds two drachms, Lovage ſeeds, ℥.1. Rue, ℥.ß. bruiſe them, and infuſe them 24 daies in Malmſey, *lb.* 6. take thereof a ſpoonful every morning.

Theſe Patients muſt beware of all groſſe meats, as Cheeſe, old fleſh, Coleworts, alſo from over-much eating and drinking, and from faſting. Alſo all ſuch diminiſhing of the ſight is cauſed through great pain of the head, ſwimming and great heat, which dryeth too much. Alſo through cold moiſtures, which obſtructeth the ſinewes of the ſight. There are three kinds of the weakneſſe of the ſight, the firſt of all diminiſheth, when a thing is ſeen unperfect, and when it is thought to be leſſe; the ſecond kind is a ſpoyled or corrupted ſight, whereas one ſeeth any thing otherwiſe then it is, like as happeneth in the diſeaſe *Scotoma*. Thirdly, it is a contracted ſight, when one can diſcern nothing by the ſight, like as in the blindneſſe. For all theſe aforeſaid infirmities, ſhall the Patient firſt uſe preparative potions, and purge with the pills *Cochiæ* or *Stomachicæ*, and alſo uſe Glyſters which draw all humours downwards. Fennel ſeed uſed in all meats is eſpecial good both before and after meat; then as it happeneth, that the feebleneſſe of the eyes do proceed of a bad full ſtomach, which doth cauſe many bad vapours in the head; then do the ancient Phyſicians adviſe, that theſe ſick perſons ſhall be cauſed to vomit, for that will dry and cleanſe the ſtomach from all bad corruptions and intolerable moiſtures. Alſo there be drying powders to be put into the eyes, whereof there be many before deſcribed.

But if with this imperfection of the ſight, there be an abatement or conſumption of the body, like as one ſeeth in all thoſe that recover after a languiſhing ſickneſſe, they muſt be fed with good meat, for that if one be faſting or hungry, the pain will be the greater and more forcible. Alſo he is to be let ſleep well, and given wine to drink, make the head oftentimes moiſt with warm water, or to bathe; but beware that he ſweat not too much.

In the noſe and ears is he to drop the oyl of Almonds, and beſprinkle the eyes oftentimes with the young womans milk.

Hereafter do follow certain medicines: first a government of life, for that a good order of diet is no lesse of importance for this, then it is in any other sickenesse. First of all, one is above all the other foresaid things to abstain from very clear air, unmeasurable Venery, reading small prints or writings, &c. From going to sleep with a full stomach, from all salt and strong meats, from drunkennesse, and all that repleniſheth the head. If the cause be moisture, then is likewise to be feared bathing, much sleep, letting blood, cupping, and vaporous meats, new Wine, Beans, Peaſe, and other pottages, Lettice, Vinegar, and Radishes, much fish, Pears, Apples, and all moist fruits, especially after meat. In like manner all moist, dark and misty weather, smoak, wind, dust, moist dwellings, going idle, unleavened bread, old and grosse flesh, and all that maketh grosse blood. On the contrary side, there be many commodious things that strengthen the weak sight, as the sight of green fields, trees, the precious stone *Smaragdus*, green grasse, green linnen, and such like more, which are to be set before our eyes, to the end it may thereby be quickned. In like manner also all blew colours, and all other orient colours, as to looke into a steel looking-glasse, in the clear water, gold, the stars of heaven, the precious Saphire stone, flowers of Borage, of Eyebright, and specially of Larks spurres, which are chiefly commended.

The like operations are ascribed unto the Wine and the conserve of Eyebright, and that not without reason, for that they be both forcible for to strengthen the sight, and to make it clear and fresh, so that many old folks through the use of these have continued and strengthened their sight with them. They do also deopilate the obstruction of the Milt and Liver being daily used, they cleanse the stomach, and withstand all agues that proceed out of the stomach: for what they serve else, and how they are to be prepared, the Register shall make mention. Therefore hath the wine of Eyebright also, and the conserve of the same, not their names in vain: for they have like power in strengthening of the sight, to dry the moistures of the brains, and to clear all dark sights. *Wine, and conserve of Eyebright.*

Further, it is very commodious that one do kembe well once a day especially ancient folks: youths are to wash their eyes often with fresh water, also to suffer hunger and thirst sometimes, and to drink sweet water. In like manner all that is meet for the strengthening of the memory, is also very fit for the sight, as hereafter shall be shewed: and all that is accounted good for the five senses, as the sight, the hearing, smelling, tasting, and feeling. Clear fair air is alwayes good, bread well raised, good wine soberly drunk, also light meats which fume hot into the head. This is now sufficiently written of the order of diet. Now we will come to the medicines, and waters for the eyes. Hereunder is one which was made and ordained for the Emperour *Frederick* the third, the which unto this present day is very highly commended, and is thus prepared: Take Betony, Rue, Vervein, Celendine, Eyebright, Roses, all of them green, of each six good handfulls, Aloe one ounce, long Pepper, Cloves, of each half a drach. some also put thereto three handfulls of Woodbind and the flowers. This being all chopped, is to be distilled through a glasse helm: drop thereof into the eyes, & anoint all the face therewith. Or take the juyce of Fennel and of Vervein, each by it self, or mixt amongst other, drop it into the eyes, lay it over them with a cloth, it taketh away the dimnesse. There is also described before in this Chapter and first §. a water for the eyes, of Celendine decocted with honey, which is especially good for all darknesse of the eyes. *The water of the Emperour Frederick for the sight.*

Another, Take Fennel, Eyebright, and Rosewater of each one ounce, *Sarcocolle*, *Tutia*, both prepared, Sugarcandy, of each one scrup. the gall of a pickerel, five leaves of beaten gold: put these together in a glasse, and let it seethe a while in hot water in a glasse, and use it as a *Collyrium*.

This preserveth the sight marvellously.

Item take Fenegreek, Hollihock roots, of each two ounces, cleanse them well, and let them seeth well in clear water, with a mild fire unto the half: wring them out hard & strain them through a cloth, tempered with Aloe, a quarter of an ounce, Sugar-candy or Sugar of Roses one ounce, strain it with the Rosewater through a cloth, and let it seethe together unto a sirupe: preserve it stopt close in a glasse, and use it as other eye-waters. Take prepared *Tutia* one ℥. white Amber half a ℥. Camphire half so much, Fennel water and Rosewater, of each two ounces, temper them together. The water that is gathered of the vapor of hot bread marvellously cleereth dim eyes; Take Rosewater as much as you please, Sugar-candy as much also; let it stand before that you use it a certain time in the Sun. All galls of ravening brids, as also of Partridges, of Buls, Hares, Wolves, Foxes,

and

and above all the Bucks gall doth dry the eyes and ſharpen the ſight, but one of theſe or more muſt be decocted with much juyce of Fennel and clarified Honey(once as much more as the other) and dropt into the eyes. Take the galls of Partridges, Balſom oyl, of each one quarter of an ounce, the juyce of Celendine one drachme, temper and uſe them as the other. The ancient Phyſitians have highly praiſed this following: Take the juyce of Pomgranats which be neither ſowre nor ſweet, two ounces: ſeethe them in a ſilver veſſel unto the half: then add clarified honey one ounce, let it boyl well, ſtrain it through a cloth, let it ſtand certain dayes in the Sun, and drop it into the eyes. Item, the juyce of ſowre and ſweet Pomgranats, of each two ounces, ſet it in the Sun two moneths, then ſtrain it, and temper thereto one drach. of Aloes, long pepper half a ʒ. And if you deſire it to be more drying and biting, put thereto one ſcrup. of Sal. Armoniack: the older this is, the better.

Hereafter follow certain ſimples which ſtrengthen the ſight, as the juyce of roſted Onions tempered with honey dropt into the eyes, the brains of flitter mice or Bats tempered with honey and dropt therein, the aſhes of the ſame blown into the eyes eſpecially in the beginning. Rue hath an eſpecial property in the eyes, is good eaten, and the juyce of it tempered with the juyce of Fennel and Honey dropt into them. Hyſſop uſed in meat is alſo very meet for the ſight, Rapes and ſodden young doves very good, alſo their broth drunken; ſo are alſo ſwallowes and Mag-pies eaten, good for the ſtrengthening of the ſight, and the aſhes of them tempered with honey and put into the eyes; Calamus raw and confected is very meet, burnt Coral drith and conſumeth all moiſture of the eyes: *Acatia* ſtrengtheneth and ſharpeneth the ſight, and expelleth the redneſſe; Almonds are alſo very good. All odoriferous herbs, as Lavander, Roſemary, Gilloflowers, Roſes, and all pleaſant ſmelling fruits, are good for the eyes.

Pomanders fit for a bad ſight.

Pomanders: Take Roſemary, Nep, Marjoram, Penni-royal, of each one drach. *Lignum Aloes*, Marjoram gentle, and Mace, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Muſcus*, *Ambra*, of each two grains, make thereof a powder, bind it in a piece or red ſilk, and ſmell oftentimes to it. They may alſo uſe the ſame which have the diſeaſe of the Cataract, whereof is much admoniſhed before.

The ancient Phyſitians were of opinion, if one anointed oftentimes the eyelids with Coral, precious ſtones and gold, or did behold them, that it were to ſtrengthen and clear the ſight.

This powder following of *Raſis* is much commended for to ſtrengthen the ſight therwith: Take prepared Tutia, ten drach. make this to paſte with the freſh juyce of Marjoram gentle when it hath ſtood a night and be well ſetled; afterwards let it dry well, beat it again and put Ginger unto it, long and black Pepper, and Celendine each a drach. Sal Armoniack half a drach. all beaten ſmall, and made moiſt with the clear juyce of Feunel; let it dry again, and ſo preſerve it. When you will occupy it, then beat it unto an impalpable powder, and put it into the eye.

This powder following is to be ſtrewed upon the head: Take Cloves, Lignum Aloes, Betonica, Sandaraca, burnt Ivory, Styrax Calamita, of each half a drach. make thereof a powder, ſtrew all the head therewith. As oftentimes as you will uſe it, then kembe the head before, to the end the firſt may come off, afterwards uſe twiſe a moneth when you go to ſleep one quarter of an ounce of the trochiſces of Diambral, hold them long in the mouth untill they do melt.

Item, take Cumin which is ſteeped one night in Vinegar. and afterwards dried, Aniſeeds, prepared Coriander, of each three ounces, Fennel ſeed ſix ounces: temper them altogether. You may alſo let them be confited with Sugar, and uſe it after meat: this ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach, ſtayeth the vapours from gathering upwards toward the head, and conſumeth all cold matter in the ſtomach and the head.

A powder to be uſed with meat.

TAke Sugar mountain, Ginger, Cucubes, Cloves, long Pepper, Nutmegs, the roots of Celendine, Diptamer roots, of each half an ounce, prepared Cumin, Fennelſeeds, Anniſeeds, flowers of Eyebright with the leaves, of each three quarters of an ounce, prepared Coriander one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as you pleaſe: this is to be beaten ſmall together, and uſed daily in meat; it ſtrengtheneth the ſight, and defendeth againſt blindneſſe.

This

This following is alſo to be obſerved for a ſpecial means, that one muſt gargariſe every ten dayes; two dayes together in the morning and evening eight or ten times together. Take marjoram gentle, one handfull, Licorice half an ounce, ſeethe them in a pint of water unto the half; take a good cruſe full thereof, temper againſt it one drachme and a half of *Hiera Piera*: gargariſe with it (as is ſaid) it is very requiſite, but bitter.

After ſupper take one of theſe Tabulates; Take *Spec. Diambræ* one drachme and a half, Eyebright, Celendine, Fennel, Vervein, of each one ſcrup. the ſeed of Rue of Silver mountain, of each half a drach. Sugar five ounces; ſeethe all theſe with Eyebright water, and caſt Tabulates of it. Laſtly, take Rue, Celendine, Eyebright water, of each two ounces, Fennel and the juyce of Vervein, of each one ounce, the gall of a pickerel three drach. *Lignum Aloes* beaten ſmal half a drach. the ſeed of Rue, of Celendine, Marjoram gentle, of each one drachme, temper them with the aforeſaid water, ſtop it tight in a glaſſe, and cement it with dow; afterwards ſet it in an oven when the bread is taken out, and let it ſtand a whole day therein. The next day take of the dow again, and ſet it the ſpace of twelve dayes in the Sun; afterwards ſtrain it through a tight cloth, but wring it not out, and keep it in a ſtopt glaſſe, whereof put every morning and evening one drop in the eye, and lye upon your back, then ſhall you perceive an apparant amendment.

Pillulæ, Pilles.

TAke white beaten Eyebright half an ounce, Caroway ſodden in vinegar and dried, Marjoram gentle three quarters of an ounce: *Lignum Aloes*, India *Spica*, of each one ounce, the ſeeds of Sorrel five ſcrup. temper them with the Iulep of Roſes, whereof you are to take at one time a half or a whole drach, once in three or four dayes in the evening when you go to bed.

Will you then make a powder thereof? Put thereto prepared Coriander, Cinamon and Fennel, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as you pleaſe. This may you take after ſupper.

This following is a coſtly confection, and ſtrengtheneth the ſight, therefore it is called of *Montagnana*, *Electuarium Oculiſtæ*, becauſe it is very profitable for the abating of the ſight which proceedeth through flegmatical humours; for beſides that it ſtrengtheneth the brains, it reſtoreth the loſt ſight again, and maketh alſo the ſpirits of the ſight ſubtiler and ſtronger. *The confection of* Montagnana *for a bad ſight.*

Take Silver mountain ſeed, Eyebright, Fennel, and Cucubes, of each a drach. Cardamome, Mace, of each one drach. and a half, the ſeed of Celendine, of Rue, of each one quarter of an ounce, Roſemary one ounce, Annisſeed, *Lignum Aloes*, Caroway, *Conſolida Saracenica*, of each half an ounce, Sugar or Honey as much as is needfull for to make thereof a confection.

Another.

TAke dried Betonie, Celendine, Eyebright, Hyſſop, Penni-royal, of each one drach. Fennel, Silver mountain, Annis, prepared Coriander and Marjoram gentle ſeeds, Baſill ſeeds, Cardamome, Cinamon, Ginger, Galangal, Nutmegs, Cloves, long Pepper *Lignum Aloes*, Maſtick, Spiknard, of each half a drach. preſerved Citron pils three drach. conſerves of Borage of Roſemary, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar decocted in Fennel, and Roſewater as much as is needfull for to make a confection. This patient ſhall take alſo after purging the ſecond or third day one drach. of Treacle, Aurea Alexandrina, or Mithridate. Or make a potion: Take half a drach. of Treacle, break it in wine, water of Rue or Fennel, and take it once every week: yet this is beſt of all that one may uſe for a weak ſight, preſerved *Chebuli* eaten faſting doth much ſtrengthen the ſight; ſome chew every morning Iuniper-berries, ſpetting it afterwards into the hands, and letting the fume go into the eyes: the which can alſo ſtrengthen the ſight much. The ſame vertue hath alſo the chewed Annis, Cumin, and eſpecially Fennel ſeed, whether they be confected or no.

All later and ancient writers do commend this remedy following, as well for the ſtrengthening of the ſight, as for thoſe that be purblind; take the liver of a Buck, take off the Gall, cut broad pieces out of it, lay therein whole long Pepper, cover it with another piece of liver and Pepper as before, thus continuing till all the pieces be laid one upon another, ſo that above and beneath be nothing but liver. Put this then into an oven, and

dry

drie it well away; then take of the Pepper, beat it ſmall, and mix ſo me Muſcus amongſt it, and with the moiſture which droppeth from the liver, moiſten therewith the powder, and make loſinges thereof, preſerve it untill you have need of it, then temper it with Eye-bright water, or ſuch like, and uſe it as the other. To theſe ſpices of medicines are three kinds of commodities aſcribed: the firſt to drop fatneſſe into the eyes: the ſecond to receive the warm vapor into the eyes: Thirdly, that the patient eat thereof many times a year, every time three dayes together.

One more (which is almoſt like unto it) doth hereafter follow: Roſt a hogs Liver, weeche eyes with the damp of this roſt-meat, and rub the fatneſſe on the eye-lids.

Take a ſlip of Rue, drink the infuſion of it at your meal, it is alſo very good for this.

Take Cinamon, Cloves, Mace, of each a like much, powre Malmſey upon it, and uſe it as you pleaſe.

When one hath then uſed a good deal of theſe foreſaid things, and there be yet perceived much more moiſture in the eyes: there is ſometimes to be uſed for to dry the brains of this juyce following, drawing it up though the noſe, to wit, of Marjoram gentle and Dane weed.

There are alſo twice a week two of theſe pils following to be taken after ſupper: Take *Pillulæ Lucis*, Rubarbe, of each one ſcrup. and a half, and make thereof five or ſeven pils.

Of all thoſe that after the riſing of the Sun, do ſee nothing at all, or very badly. §. 21.

THis infirmity of the ſight is of two kinds: The firſt is when one can ſee well in the day time, but againſt the evening and night can ſee nothing, or very badly. The other to the contrary, when one in the day time doth ſee little, or badly, moving the eyes up and down, when he doth come into the clearneſſe, without holding them open, therefore be they commonly called in Dutch blind Cats; but when it groweth towards evening, then begin they to amend, and can ſee much better. Both theſe infirmities do proceed of like cauſes, and according as the ſpirits of the ſight be formed, where of the Philoſophers do diſpute much. The Grecians do call them *Nyctilopas*, the Latiniſts *Luſciioſos*, in Engliſh purblind, whereof *Galenus* ſpeaketh generally, that it is a diſeaſe which proceedeth of no manifeſt cauſe. Others write, that it is incident rather to black eyes then to other: what concerneth the ſigns, they are to be inquired of them that have this infirmity.

Firſt, for this is reputed good, if the party be full of blood, that firſt of all the head vein, afterwards the veines in the corners of the eyes be opened: others do adviſe to open the median and the vein in the forehead, Afterwards whether it be of a *Phlegma*, or *Melancholia*, purge with the pils *Cochia* or *Lucis*, and then to make Mithridate or Treacle. In the eye is to be uſed the fat of the Bucks liver (deſcribed before) or to temper it with a little of the Bucks gall, or the Bucks gall alone decocted with a little vinegar applyed likewiſe as aforeſaid: for in this diſeaſe is moſt of al to be commended that which commeth from the Buck or Goat. *Plinius* admoniſheth that ſome have adviſed, that one ſhould wrap the Goats dung with wax, and ſo ſwallow it down. He writeth alſo that this blindneſſe is to be holpen with Goats blood, and it may come thereby, for that it is ſaid that thoſe beaſts do ſee as well by night as by day: therefore it was commanded to *Nycticoli* to eat the Bucks and Goats liver roſted. And how the ſame ſhall be dreſt is ſhortly before declared, where we have diſcourſed of the diminiſhed and weak ſight.

When one is waxed almoſt blind. §. 22.

IF there fall any moiſture in the eyes which maketh one almoſt ſtark blind, then it is found out by experience, that the decoction of a Viper, the head and tail chopt off, hath holpen (yet the intrails pluckt out and ſtuffed with Fennel ſeeds) like as it alſo helpeth if one eat the fleſh of this Serpent boyled. This is reported of the Viper ſnake.

The like vertue hath the decoction of *Guaiacum* uſed after his manner or kind, the which is not onely meet for this, but alſo in certain confections for the ſight, which Pope *Innocentius* the third did ſend to an Abbot, who was almoſt blind, and is made thus: Take Fenpel ſeed half a pound, Silver mountain ſeed, and blew Chamedris, of each four ounces,

ounces, Smallage, Annis, Parſley ſeeds, Peni-royal, Hyſſop, Saxifrage, Juniper-berries, of each one drach. the ſeed of Staveſacre two dances: this beaten ſmal with Honey, or Sugar, and a confection made thereof, and uſe thereof morning and evening, and you ſhall ſee marvels.

Cometh the cauſe of the hindrance in the ſight through obſtructions of the ſinewes whereby the ſight commeth into the eyes? then uſe the Pils *Cochiæ* and *Lucis*, drach. half a drachme, make 7. or 8. pils thereof, ſwallow them in the morning betimes, and faſt five hours upon it, uſe them once every moneth. Afterwards uſe this confection, take Penni-royal, Rue, Betonie, Celendine, of each one handful, Saxifrage, Lovage, Annis, Camomil, Ginger, Fennel, Parſley, Hyſſop, Marjoram, Silvermountain, of each two drachmes and a half, Gallangal half an ounce, pownd all very ſmal that is to be pownded, and temper it with Sugar which is clarified in Fennel water, it requireth half a pound of Sugar at the leaſt; caſt Tabulates of it, and then lay them upon the tongue, and let them melt of themſelves: this do and continue it the ſpace of two or three moneths, all after that the blindneſſe is great and hath long continued.

Seethe of ſene, ʒ. i. Annisſeeds, ʒ. ß. in fair water, lb. i. unthill half is conſumed, ſtrain it, and drink it in a morning faſting; uſe broth 4. or 5. hours after, and eat not untill towards night: uſe this once in 7. or 8. or 9. dayes, for outward meanes ſee more in this 7. Chap. §. 10.

Of Squintneſſe. §. 23.

THis is a diſtraction of the eyes out of their natural places towards the right or left ſide, upwards or downwards: the occaſion of this is ſometimes through relolution of the ſinewes, where the whole place doth draw that infirmed unto it. Alſo it may be a cramp in the ſame ſinewes, where to the contrary the ſhrinking ſinewes do draw the whole unto them; it cometh alſo very well through a cuſtome, when young children in the cradle do lye alwayes upon one ſide, and open but one eye: but if the ſquintneſſe do come through ſlacknеſſe of the ſinewes or the cramp, that is ſeen and ſhewed by the ſigns which are deſcribed in *Paralyſi*, or in the cramp. This diſeaſe could the ancient Phyſitians heal very badly, and it is very uncertain in young childen, nevertheleſſe we will not pretermit to ſhew our adviſe for it: on the ſide where the diſeaſe is, put ſome clearneſſe, to the end the eye may be drawn to his natural place: alſo when it is carried about on the arm, the ancient Phyſitians have uſed all thoſe things which were wont in *Paralyſi* and in the diſtraction of the mouth to be adhibited.

Take a pair of glaſſes made very narrow, ſowe them in lether, Silk, or Velvet fitted for the eyes; let the glaſſes be very narrow, and by the lether be bound right before the eyeſight that the party may be forced to ſee onely through thoſe glaſſes, and this is an approved means.

Hydromel, honey water: how to make and uſe the ſame. §. 24.

IT is before oftentimes mentioned, and therefore it very worthy for to deſcribe here how to make it: The ancient Phyſitians took rain water and honey decocted therewith, ſcumming it well, and uſing it for a common drink, in the ſtead of water or wine, like as alſo it ſtandeth diſcovered in many places of this Book; now it is for the moſt part made with Well-water and Honey. In fine, *Hydromel* is no other thing but our commmon mead without any addition: of other ſorts of mead is ſpoken hereafter in the eight part.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Noſe.

THis is alſo one of the principalleſt outward members of the face, artificially conjoyned of ſinewes and griſtles, and by nature ordained for many kind of uſes; for who knoweth not how exceeding needfull it is for the life, and for preſervation of the good breath, and for diſcerning of all ſmels and ſavours? in behalf of both theſe two cauſes is the Noſe ſet in the height of the body, and endued with ſuch a property that it might refreſh and cool the heart, thelights and all inward parts with continual breathing, without the which no man liveth.

Beſides this, it hath power to diſcern and judge the ſavour of the meat: it is ſet beſides and above the mouth, to the end it might adjudge and give evidence to all before it goeth into the mouth, what is pleaſant and what is to be eſchewed, or is neceſſary or hurtfull: it ſtandeth alſo in the middeſt of the face, not only for a garniſhing, but alſo for a ſtay or defence between both the eyes for to defend them (as hath been ſaid before.) It is alſo a right pipe or gutter to purge and cleanſe thereby all the moiſture of the brains and the head; to the end there ſhould nothing fall down upon the breaſt or other principal parts that might there cauſe great ſickneſſe. This member is ſubject alſo to many kind of diſeaſes, as Impoſtumes, Obſtructions, Rheumes, exceſſive bleeding, loſſe of ſmelling, of all which and others more, ſhall be hereafter ſpoken.

Of Obſtruction or ſtopping in the Noſe. §. 1

THis infirmity is cauſed through inward or outward occaſions: If the Noſe be ſtopt through falling, ſtriking, or thruſting; then muſt it ſwell: if it be then ſwolen, then be the wayes, through which the breath and ſmell commeth, ſtopped: yea alſo the ſmel otherwhiles wholly loſt. It may alſo be well ſtopped through ſome groſſe moiſture, that falleth out of the head and brains, which cannot paſſe through the noſe, for that the noſe vents are thereby ſtopped. As much as then concerneth any outward bruiſing, there muſt be ſalves and plaiſters laid upon it, like as upon other tumours. The ſame being healed, the vents and pores will be open again, and the ſmelling reſtored, yet it is always good advice to ſet boxing cups upon the neck and ſhoulders, and to lay upon the breſt brayed whites of Eggs, tempered with ſome Camphire. But of this ſtopping ſhall be ſpoken more at large hereafter, eſpecially in the loſſe of the ſmelling.

Of the Ulcers in the Noſe. §. 2.

THeſe impoſtumations do the Writers divide into *Ulcera & Apoſtemata*, which we do Engliſh, Ulcers and Impoſtumes; the Ulcers are alwayes dry or moiſt: dry when they make hard ſcurfe, and contrarily when they yeeld out much moiſture, like as if the noſe were rubbed on the inſide and thereby bled, and yeelded yellow, green or black metter; both proceedeth of ſharpe, ſalt, and burnt matter that deſcendeth out of the head into the noſe. The ſigns thereof may one eaſily diſcern: if there be pain in the noſe, then is to be ſeen againſt the bright Sun where the diſeaſe is. For this accident the pain is to be purged with the Pils *Cochiæ* or *Hieræ*, and ſuch like. This is alſo a common rule in the curing of all Ulcers, to wit: that it be begun with no ſtrong medicine, or that the party be purged before. Like as for example, if the patient be plethorick in body, and the ulcer be great, open the Median, and let out four or five ounces of blood according to the ſtrength of the patient: but if the diſeaſe be not ſo great, then open the head vein upon the arm or upon the hand, at all times upon that ſide where the diſeaſe is not, and ſometimes very well in the veines of the noſe. In like manner, alſo are cups to be ſet in the neck, thereby to ſeduce the matter. This being done, the patient is to uſe the ſpace of eight dayes, or ſix dayes, this preparative potion: Take *Oxyſacchara* (which ſhall be immediately hereafter deſcribed) the ſirups of water Lillies of each three quarters of an ounce, Sorrel water, and Fennel water, of of each three quarters of an ounce, drink it luke-warm in the morning. The purgation upon it is this. This

Take half an ounce of the confection *De ſucco Roſarum*, *Caſſia* prepared with the water of Violets one ounce, temper altogether with three ounces of Barley water meetly warm, for otherwiſe it is too thick. Immediately after purging lay this plaiſter following upon the noſe, that it may be covered every where with it: Take ſmal Houſleek, and the juyce of Plaintan, the juyce of ſhepheards purſe, of each one ounce, the whites of two eggs, Camphire bruiſed ſmall four ſcruples, prepared Tutia, and Butchers broomſeeds of each one drachme, burnt Coral and Amber of each two ſcrup. Starch one ounce and a half; bruiſe theſe together in a leaden mortar ſome hours together; this is to be uſed three or four times a day.

Another.

PUt the juyce of Taſſel leaves three or four times a day into the noſe, it may be drawn up into the noſe: but if you fear that it will cool too much, then temper the third part of the juyce of Betony amongſt it.

Oxyſacchara.

THis kind of Sirupe may eaſily be made by all houſe-keepers, it hath alſo great vertue and operation, for it doth conſume the mixed and flegmatick humidities which do pinch or annoy the uppermoſt parts, and cauſe the unruly double Tertian and quartan Agues: Take ſix ounces of white Sugar, the juyce of Pomgranats four ounces, ſharpe Vinegar two ounces; ſeethe them in a little pot by a mild fire, untill they be of the thickneſſe of a common Sirupe.

Iem, if there be ſcurfe in the noſe: Then take Sallet-oyl, the greaſe of a Capon as much as you pleaſe, and powre a little molten wax amongſt it, and anoint therewith the ſcurfes: likewiſe take warm water, draw it up into the noſe certain dayes together, in the morning it is alſo good. Item, take the gum of a Cherry tree, the gum of a Palme tree or Dragagant, diſſove them in Roſewater which thou wilt, anoint the Muſcilage or ſlime in the noſe with a feather. Or take the Marrow of an Oxe bone, new wax, of each half an ounce, oyl of water Lillies one quarter of an ounce, melt and uſe it as before. Or you muſt in ſtead of the oyl of water Lillies, take alſo the oyl of Roſes.

Another: Take Dragagant and the ſeed of Fleawort, ſteep them in Roſewater and oyl of Violets, anoint the noſe oftentimes with this muſcilage. You may alſo make this ſalve; Take Ducks and Hens greaſe, the fatneſſe of Sheeps wool, Harts ſuet, Honey, of each half an ounce, brunt Mirobalans, Galls, of each a drachme, temper them together. This aſſwageth and drieth much.

In like manner this ſalve following is very convenient. Take oyl of ſweet Almonds one ounce, oyl of Roſes one ounce, waſht Butter, Hens greaſe, the Muſcilage of Dragagant of each one quarter of an ounce, and a little wax.

Or take freſh marrow out of the Calves bones, and gum, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of white *Camelina* one ounce and a half, wax as much as is needfull. The ſame doth alſo butter waſht well with fair water, likewiſe alſo decocted Hollihocks, Nightſhade or Mallowes.

Another, almoſt as the former: Take the marrow of Calves bones, the yolks of eggs, Dragagant and gum, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of *Camelina* one drachme and a little wax.

But if the impoſtume onely beginneth to run: then dip Cotten in ſtrong and well ſalted vinegar, put it into his noſtrils, herewith they will be dried. But this following is better: Take prepared Tutia which is ſlaked in the urine of a man-child of two years old, and Ceruſſe, of each two drachmes and a half, the juyce of Houſleek five ounces: rub this at the leaſt the ſpace of three dayes together, the ſpace of three hours every day in a leaden morter, ſet it afterwards well ſtopt in the Sun when it is to dry; then powre again other juyce of unto it, and bruiſe it as before: do this ſo three or four times together: with this ſalve are you to anoint the diſeaſe three or four times a day. This ſalve is ſo forcible, that many people which have had the Canker and *Polypum*, thereby have preſerved their life a long time.

And if ſo be (through the great uncleanneſſe of this ulcer) there behoveth ſtronger things, and the diſeaſe be alſo old: then make firſt of all the ſcurfes moiſt with wine, wherin Agrimony, Vervein and honey is decocted, dry it and make it moiſt again, afterwards uſe

uſe this following; Take Vitriol, red and yellow Orpiment, of each half a drach. beat and ſteep it in the gall of a Bull or Oxe, and refreſh it daily untill the matter be white, then put thereto Antimony and Myrrhe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Wax as much as will make an oyntment, anoint therewithal, and ſtop it in the noſe; if you will have this somewhat milder, then put thereto beaten Horſemints and Mallowes, to the quantity of one quarter of an ounce.

This that followeth is not ſo ſtrong: Take Cypres roots, Allom, Galls, Myrrhe, Saffron, of each one quarter of an ounce, beat them to powder, and blow it into the noſe. Or make thereof a ſalve with honey. Alſo you may uſe the ſalve *Unguentum Apoſtolicum*, the which is made thus: Take Turpentine, white wax, white Roſine, *Ammoniacum*, of each one drach. *Opopanacum*, Verdigreaſe, of each half a drach. the Litharge of gold two ſcrup. ſallet oyl ſix ounces in the Sommer, but in the winter nine ounces, vinegar as much as is needful for to diſſolve the Gum with it, make a ſalve thereof. This ſalve is common at the Apothecaries, and is not only good for this, but alſo for all ſore eyes, Fiſtulaes, for cleanſing the wounds, wherein it hath a marvellous operation; for it conſumeth the bad fleſh, incarnateth afterwards, and healeth all hard ſwellings; ſo that there is not almoſt the like unto this.

Item, take burnt lead well waſht, Ceruſſe, Litharge of gold, of each a like quantity, oyl of Roſes, and Wax as much as is needful for a ſalve. This alſo following is much commended and is certain; take one ſowr Pomgranate, others take ſowr, mean, and ſweet Pomgranates, of each one ſtamped with their pills, wrung out and decocted a while in a a little pot and clarified, dip a taint in it and put up into the noſe: but if there be any ulcers with it, then uſe this following, Take Ceruſſe, Myrrhe, Litharge of gold, burnt Copper, Galls that are parched a little, Allom, of each one drach. oyl of Roſes three ounces, Wax as much as is needful for a ſalve: this healeth and dryeth. Item, take Ceruſſe one ounce and a half, calcined and waſhed Ceruſſe, Litharge, of each half a drach. Vinegar, Wax, of each one ſpoonful; make it with oyl of Mirtles unto a ſalve, waſh the noſtrils with warm wine and piſſe, wherein Myrrhe and Frankincenſe is decocted. And if this Ulcer will not be healed with the aforeſaid things, it is then to be taken for a ſecret Canker, which one may not touch with ſharp things, as preſently hereafter ſhall appear.

Obſtruction or ſtopping in Childrens Noſes, without any other infirmity. §. 3.

IT happeneth oftentimes, that young, yea new born children do ſuffer great ſtopping in the noſe; their breaſts muſt be anointed well with the oyles of ſweet Almonds, and of Violets, and to them that give ſuck, wine is forbidden.

And if the chiidrens breaſt be full, then is the oyl of Violets with Sugar to be put into the mouth. Ancient folks (if they cannot abide the oyl of Violets by reaſon of the ſmell) then take ſallad oyl, or oyl of ſweet Almonds inſtead thereof.

Impoſtumations in the Noſe. §. 4.

THe ſecond kind of exulcerations in the noſe are much more perillous and worſe, and are called *Apoſtemata*, *Hemorrhoides*, *Polypus* Canker.

The firſt is a ſoft excreſcence of the fleſh, which giveth moiſture when one wringeth the noſe; ſoft in feeling, and bleeding quickly: this proceedeth of moiſt water which falleth out of the brains, rotteth there, and degenerateth into the fleſh, the which otherwhiles groweth out ſo long that it hangeth without the noſe; it taketh away the ſpeech, the breath, and alſo the ſmelling, ſometimes ſhewing red and ſometimes white and blackiſh. But the Polypus is hardiſh, hath many roots and veins; he is ſo called after the name of a fiſh which hath many feet; and for many more ſimilitudes and properties that are between them. This is cauſed of melancholick humours tempered with ſlime or *Phlegma*, and ſtoppeth the noſe through his increaſe.

This Canker is wholly hard and faſt; it manifeſteth himſelf alſo on the outſide upon the noſe, with many black veins of melancholick bloud, whence this ſore taketh his offspring, and doth bring with it an intolerable ſtench (which the Phyſitians do call *Ozenam*.) The cauſe of theſe tumours is the affluence of bad humours; but that which cauſeth *Hemorrhoides* is a ſweet *Phlegma*, which is without bloud, but rotten, very moiſt without pain, therefore is better to be healed then this following.

But

But in *Polypo* is corrupted blood, whereto doth come a stinking *Phlegma*. The Canker is a burnt, rotten, and hardened *Melancholia*. Both these last are uncertain, yea wholly impossible to be holpen; nevertheless there be many kinds of remedies ordained and used as followeth.

When as then the first sort doth appear with softened or white flesh which filleth the whole nose, then is the head vein first to be opened; afterwards a tent anointed with this salve following, to be put into the nostrils where the disease is. Take yellow Orpiment, Copperas, Verdigrease, of each ʒ. ß. Quicksilver, Sal-Armoniack of each an ounce, bruise these small and cast it into Lime lee; this may you use so: or make it with honey unto a salve. Others do use this sharp water following: Take yellow Orpiment, quick lime, Verdigrease, Quicksilver, of each ʒ. 1. ß. Sal-Armoniack ℥. ß. beat them clean, and let it seethe well in water; when it hath stood a while, then will it be very sharp. In like manner, getteth also a corroding quality, the water wherein quick lime is quenched, and wherein Quicksilver is put.

This is more gentle, take Allom, Verdigrease, of each half an ounce, yellow Orpiment one scruple, temper them, and stick a tent in Vinegar, sprinkle it with this powder, and so stick it in the nose where the disease is. Of the mean Corsives is also taken for an approved thing, pownded Vitriol blown into the nose in the morning and evening. There is also described in this Chapter in the second Section, a medicine with the juyce of Pomgranates, which are especially good for this, amongst which you are to temper a little Antimony and Verdigrease. But if this will not help, then are stronger things to be used, as an actual cautery or incision, and although this do seldom prosper, nevertheless we will discourse somewhat thereof. For this soft excrescence of flesh whereof we have spoken at the first is not wholly incurable, but may through these meanes be cured, which nevertheless is very unpossible in the Canker: but if it were found that there ought to be used either the actual cautery or incision, then must the cauterized place be anointed with fresh butter, and the brayed white of an egge, and cover the nose and the whole face with vinegar and water, or Rose water, or take the yolk of an egg, temper it with oyl of Roses, and the juyce of Roses, this swageth almost all the pain of the Cautery.

Here do now follow certain sharp, yet good means, which are most surest in greatest necessity, the first is, that these superfluous excrescences be clipt off with a sharp payr of Cisors even to the bottom, afterwards take away the rest that remaineth behind with this salve following; Take one ounce of honey, vinegar one quarter of an ounce, *Sarcocolla*, *Ammoniacum*, of each ʒ. ß. seethe these upon a mild fire, and therewith anoint your tents which you thrust into the nose: it hath a special vertue of healing and drying. The other means, if this were not sufficient, then burn the disease with an iron that is flat before, thrust it through a copper pipe which is wrapt in clothes wet in Rose water, to the end that the sound part of the nose be not burnt, do this so long untill one can perceive no remainance of it more. Afterwards anoint the cauterized place with butter, untill that the Escarre falleth off, and heal it with Basil and the oyntment of Cerusse, or with the salve that is described in §. 2. in the Ulcers of the nose with *Tutia*.

The third mean to expell this accident; Take a long and strong horse hair, thrust it into the nose untill you bring it out of the mouth again: fasten it on both ends, and pluck it hitherwards over the accident, and that so oftentimes till it be cut out at the bottom. This being accomplished, stanch the blood with this powder, take Myrrhe, Sarcocolla, fine Bolus, Dragons blood, of each ʒ. 1. prepared *Tutia* ʒ. ß. this powder must be blown in the place where it bleedeth, or strew a tent with it and stop it into the nose; now the blood being stanched, heal it with the foresaid salve.

Of the Canker *in the Nose.* §. 5.

THe causes of this Canker in the Nose, and the signs thereof are discovered before. First, it sheweth it self small like a corn of wheat, but afterwards will be as big as a hasel nut or Almond: it yeeldeth seldom matter, and remaineth alwaies (as is said) hard and dry: it will abide no strong things, as actual or potential cauteries, but it must be softly medled with, and easie remedies used thereto, as to let blood, laxative things, and Master *Tristrams* water, which is described in the fifth Chapter, and §. 1. Also oyl of blew Flowerdeluce anointed thereon, and chiefly Treacle and Mithridate thrust into the nostrils, and to hold the same in the mouth and eat it.

Also it is very good to purge the head with this potion; Take *Myrobalani Indi* one ounce

and a half, Sene, Epithymum, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar-Candy four ounces, seethe them together in nine ounces of water even to the half, strain it then through a cloth, and temper it with Manna and four Dates amongst it, of each one ounce. In like sort may one purge also with the *Pillulis fœtidis*, or *Stomachicis*. The place of the accident is also to be twice a day at the least strengthened with the oyl of Roses wherein Camphire is tempered, and lay a cloth therein dipped in them, or made as it were into a salve, and anointed therewithal. Yet instead of this he may use the juyce of Nightshade. The Patient must much beware of all pottages, cheese, hard flesh, and all which ingendreth melancholick blood; but must use drying meats. His drink must be wine tempered with water.

For the defluxion *Ozena*, which the Canker bringeth with it, is this following very meet; Take one ounce and a half of oyl of Roses, half an ounce of white Wax, a little vinegar, and the brayed white of an egg, milk one ounce, washed Cetusse one quarter of an ounce, the juyce of Lettice, of Plantain, of Nightshade, of each half an ounce, stirre them together the space of two or three houres in a Leaden mortar.

For Ulcer or Apostumation in the Nose: or Cancer.

☞ USe to put honey often into the nostril, or mix it with Tobacco powdered, or Dittany roots powdered.

Or Re. of the plaister made of Honey, Wax, Rosine, Turpentine, and Hogs lard, mixe thereof with Dittanie or Tobacco, or Pepper powdered. This I have often approved for special remedies.

Use to purge before and after with the purges aforesaid for the head.

Of the Murre. §. 6.

WE have taught in the description of the Nose, that it is by nature ordained for a channel, thereby to cleanse the moisture of the head and the brains, like as is brought to passe through this course of the Murre, the which the Grecians do call Catarrhum, especially this Murre which falleth down into the Nose, do they call Coryzam; of the other two kinds, whence cometh so much badnesse, which be salt Catarrhes or rheumes, which descend into the throat and upon the breast, shall be taught at large in their places.

We will onely here now discourse of all those maladies that concern the Nose; that this course or running proceedeth out of heat and cold, which is *Cholera* and *Phlegma*, that shall be shewed at large in the discourse of the pain in the throat, in the second Part, where is spoken of the Catarrhe or rheume. Here is no other thing discovered but only of the Murre, how that that is most caused when one cometh suddenly out of great warmth into cold; and to the contrary, out of great cold speedily into warmth: like as when one runneth bare-headed out of the bath into the wind; or as one runneth out of the great cold into the warm stew: and this is also the cause wherefore the people for the most part in the latter end of Winter or Sommer are plagued therewith. Now when this murr or snivel is salt and biting, then doth it soon cause these accidents, *Ozena*, *Cancer*, or *Polypus*: therefore the snivel is not to be esteemed so small, but rather endeavour by and by to provoke and move this defluxion, to the end the matter may be carried out, whereto this fume so flowing is convenient; Take Cloves, Myrrhe, Frankincense, odoriferous fruits and herbs, as Quinces and their parings, Rue, Marjoram gentle, and such like. Lotions for the feet are also very fit for this purpose, like as followeth; Take Sage, Lavender, Betony, field Mints, or any other, three or four handfuls, seethe them in water, and put the feet therein, use it oftentimes, and meetly deep.

For the Murre.

☞ Seethe Rosemary tops and Maces, in wine vinegar, and when it hath sodden a while, bind some of the Rosemary and Mace in a thin linnen cloth, and hold hot to the nose, do so often.

The cleansing of the Head.

IN all the former cases, the most principal remedy was alwaies to cleanse the head and braines, whereto this water following is very good; Take four ounces of the

juyce

juyce of wild Cucumbers, Sal Armoniack pownded small, ʒ. ß. tempered in a glasse, and fill it half full with water, stir it oftentimes about, and snuffe it up into the nose in the morning fasting five or six times together warm, and do this alwaies about the second day. This openeth all obstructions that hinder smelling, whether it be in Impostumes or Ulcers of the Nose; it draweth also the matter out and consumeth it, and it strengtheneth all the instruments that are created for smelling.

Item, take the juyce of Marjoram and penny-royal, of each one ounce, Muscus two grains, use it as before. Make also this powder following; Take Penny-royal, Marjoram and Nep, of each one drach. Grains 3.3. pownd all and bind them in a fine cloth, and smell oftentimes to it.

Take oyl of Violets, oyl of Saffron, of each three drach. Ireos, long Pepper, *Euphorbium*, of each two grains, make a salve thereof with a little wax, whereof you shall take the quantity of a pease, and anoint it in the nose when you go to bed, it purgeth and cleanseth the brains.

Some do use Hellebore or Pepper for the nose, but it is not without danger, for it troubleth too much the brains; but how and through what means the head is to be cleansed with neesing, look in the first and second Chapters of the pain in the head.

Of the excessive bleeding at the Nose. §. 7.

THe excessive bleeding at the Nose hath divers causes, which were too long to discovet them all at this present time, it only sufficeth us to shew the inward and outward causes: as concerning the outward causes of bleeding, are blowes, falls, thrusts, sore labour, and the heat of the Sun: all these things do open the veins, and make subtile blood, which is easily moved to run out. The causes thereof can easily be perceived and inquired of the patient. The inward causes be superfluity, sharpnesse and heat of the blood, the which is over all the whole body, head, liver, milt, womb, and other places.

In like manner also through agues and other great sickenesse, through pain of the head, a forcible expulsive power, and feebleneſse of the retentive vertue, in full bodies and abounding of blood, is the bleeding at the nose requisite, it emptieth the head and other parts. In *Phthisi* and other sicknesses more, it is commanded to provoke it, whereof shall be more at large spoken in other places. Therefore if there be perceived an unburthening through this bleeding at the nose, then it is a good sign of health: like as to the contrary, a sudden and excessive bleeding is very dangerous, and a sign of death. But if this bleeding happen through any bruising of the skin of the brains, then it is very hard, yea in danger never to be holpen.

And whensoever the bleeding is above 48. ounces, then it is a bad token, and yet badder if it do surpasse it: if it come then unto 20. or 24. pound, every pound reckoned at 12. ounces, then must death follow after it immediately.

In like sort the signes of death are, if the bleeding person be not onely of a bleak colour, but also dark, green, or leady coloured.

For excessive bleeding at the Nose.

BRuise Plantain leaves, and put a little of it into the nostril that bleedeth, or if both bleed, then first in the left nostril.

And let the party stand upright and hold one of the hands extended as high as he can reach by a wall or post; and hold the other hand extended downward as straight as may be, and if the party bleeds at both nostrils, then first hold up the left hand, then the right in manner aforesaid. This failes not to cure the bleeding at the nose.

An order of Dyet.

THis bleeding at the nose cometh through some causes that require alwaies a good order of life to be observed. For this purpose is this most common, that those things be alwaies used that cool the blood, and make it thick: if there be any agues with it, then must light things be used (which be cooling) as Lettice, Purslain, Endive, small Endive, vinegar, verjuyce. Is then the bleeding strong and vehement? to the end it might

once be ſtayed, uſe Beans, Peaſe, Lentils, Rie, Coleworts, Cheeſe, Beef, Hares and Harts; alſo thick red wine, all hot ſpices, white wine (if ſo be that they be not well watred) are to be eſchewed.

Now we will ſhew how the blood is to be ſtanched.

For to perform the ſame, there be ſix kind of means; firſt, by the foreſaid cooling things (which be to be eaten) theſe things following are to be dropt into the noſe, and laid thereon; in like manner alſo upon the forehead, the juyce of Lettice, of Houſleek, of Nightſhade, corn Roſes or Nettles: in like manner the water of water Lillies, of Cichory, of Roſes and Cumin water; Alſo the herb of Poppy, Willow leaves, or their juyce.

Item, alſo Horſetail, Shepherds purſe, Vinegar and Camphire, and if it be very great need, Opium; for theſe things altogether make thick blood, that it cannot run ſo haſtily out of the veins. It is alſo good to irrigate his head with cold water, ſo long continuing untill his head be ſo cold, that he get thereby a ſhivering and ſhaking, or trembling. In fine, to keep the head cold, and not to ſtir it much, is very commodious; alſo wet a cloth or napkin in cold water, in vinegar, or in Roſewater, wring it not out too hard, and wrap it ſo about the neck.

Item, take the whites of twelve eggs, pownded Allom four ounces, beat it well together, wet a cloth in it, and wrap it about the neck, about the forehead and temples, afterwards take Hares hair, or the hair of a Roebuck, ſtop the noſtril full thereof, and that at the firſt.

Alſo it is commended that both the thombs and their arms be bound hard about the elbowes; but let them not be bound too hard, but being ſometimes made looſe, to bind them again.

Or make one of theſe plaiſters, take the juyce of Nightſhade ſix ounces, Roſewater ℥. 1. ß. Barley meal as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter, lay this upon the liver, if the blood run forth of the right noſtril.

The ſecond mean to ſtanch the blood effected with ſtopping things, as the juyce of Sloes, red Coral, Momy, Aloe, Horſetail, Amber, Bloodſtones, Hippocyſtis, Bolus, flowers of Pomgranates, Lentils, Gals, Sumach, Shepherds purſe, Medlers, Ceruſſes, Quinces, Pears, and other ſowr Pears amongſt the compounded things, *Trochiſces de Carabe*, *Terra ſigillata*, which foreſaid things, all that be of this nature, do draw and ſhut the veins together.

For this are alſo meet theſe plaiſters following, take the juyce of Plantain and Roſewater, of each two ounces, vinegar half an ounce, and the white of an egg, ſealed earth, or in the ſtead thereof lime as much as is needful for to make it meetly thick; lay it upon the forehead and the temples of the head.

Another. Take Dragon blood, parched gum, parched ſtarch Roſes, the juyce of Sloes, Hippocyſtis, burnt Ivory, the bloſſoms of Pomgranates, Bolus, ſealed earth, bloodſtone, red Coral, and Amber, of each one drach. and a half, Poppy ſeed, Purſlain ſeed, of each ℥. 1. Opium ℥. ß. pownd all all that is to be pownded thereof, and with the juyce of Plantain make it to a plaiſter, and uſe it as before.

This following is not much unlike to the former; Take Dragon blood, parched gum, the yellow ſeeds of Roſes, the juyce of Sloes, Hippocyſtis, burnt Ivory, bloſſoms of Pomgranates, Bolus, ſealed earth, bloodſtone, red Coral, of each one drach. and a half, Poppy ſeeds, Purſlain ſeeds, burnt Harts horn, aſhes of galls, Cipres nuts, of each one drach. beat them all ſmall, and mix them amongſt the other with the juyce of Plantain, afterwards make ſmall cakes of it; when you will uſe it, then beat it to powder and blow it into the noſtrils: but you may uſe it as a plaiſter for to lay upon the forehead and the temples of the head.

Item, take well beaten Momy as much as you pleaſe, mix it with copwebs and the white of an egg, dip cotton or lint in it, and then ſtop it into the noſe. Firſt take Harts bones, burnt Ivory. Dragon blood, *Verbaſcum* pownded with vinegar, temper the foreſaid powder amongſt it, according to that you will have of it little or much put it into the noſe, all theſe things ſtanch blood, tempered together, or each alone, or mix Aloe with the white of an egg, uſe it as aforeſaid. Item, take the whites of four eggs well brayed and tempered amongſt Aloe ℥. 1. Frankincenſe one quarter of an ounce, Dragon blood and fine Bolus, of each ℥. ß. uſe this, yet putting therein Hares hair made wet.

Secondly, take well brayed whites of eggs, and temper Gips or plaiſter amongſt them, ſo that it wax a pap, then lay it upon the forehead, take Harts hair, temper it well with the white

white of eggs, and a little Allom, afterwards mix it with Roſe water, or Roſe vinegar: take pownded Horſetail, temper it with Plantain water, or the juice of Plantain.

Thirdly, the blood is to be ſtopt with aſtringent things, as Dragagant, Gum, Frankincenſe, Mill duſt, whites of eggs, and ſuch like, take Tormentil or Pyrola, one of both, this is to be held in the mouth. Theſe aſtringent things are not oftentimes uſed alone, but commonly tempered with the aforementioned binding and cooling things.

Fourthly, the bleeding is to be inhibited by potential cauteries, as Copperas, Orpiment, quick lime, Sal Armoniack, when the ſame be powdered and blown into the noſe, for they make an eſcarre. But this is to be feared, if ſo be that the blood be not quenched therewith, that it might afterwards bleed the ſorer, therefore it is not without great danger to uſe this mean.

Fifthly, it will be ſtanched with thoſe things which have a proper and hidden vertue for it, as the juice of Baſil, but eſpecially Aſſe dung, and Hogs dung are ſaid to be good for it (be it of whatſoever cauſe that the bleeding be provoked) if the ſame be but of it ſelf alone held before the noſe, and ſo let ſmell thereto: and alſo the ſame tempered with the juice of broad Plantain, and anointed in the noſe, or burnt to aſhes and blown therein, or a plaiſter made thereof and laid on the top of the noſe: this plaiſter is alſo meet againſt the exceſſive terms or flowers of women, put into the neck of the womb, and alſo applyed to their privities.

This is alſo very good; Amber, Purſlain, garden Mints, and their juice with cobwebs, thruſt up into the noſe.

Sixthly, the blood will be ſtanched if one let it out on the contrary ſide, the which is effected if one open the Median or liver vein, as alſo many learned Phyſitians do affirm, that they have for the bleeding of the noſe not approved any thing more better nor certainer then to open the vein upon the hand or on the foot, and then to drink two ſcruples of *Philonium Perſicum* with Purſlain water: they have alſo, as hath been ſaid, powdered *Troc. de Carabe*, and blown into the noſe.

It is alſo very good to ſet boxing cups on the ſhoulders and on the legs, underſtanding well, that if the blood run out of the right noſtril, then ſet the boxes unpickt upon the liver; if it run out of the left noſtril, upon the Milt in the left ſide: alſo the legs, the arms and the breaſt are to be bounden, to rub the outward members, and alſo under the armpits and other places of the body with burnt nettles for to draw therewith the blood downwards. Beſides all theſe aforeſaid, I am to manifeſt one remedy more that exceedingly ſtoppeth alſo bleeding: Take ſlackt lime, make a plaiſter thereof with vinegar, lay it over the noſe, it will ſtop preſently. Others ſuppoſe alſo that this lime is to be blown into the noſtrils, or made up with the white of an egg, to be ſo put with a teint into the noſe. This alſo (as ſome ſuppoſe) will the wooll or flaxe do, that flyeth from the herb *Cardnus Benedictus*, cut ſmall and thruſt into the noſe.

Item, it hath been oftentimes found, that an extreme frighting hath cauſed blood by and by to ſtanch and ceaſe, for that the blood runneth then towards the heart. In this alſo hath ſuperſtition and unbelief taken place, whenſoever one holdeth in his hand a dead mans bone, and the moſſe that groweth upon a dead bodies ſcalp be ſtopt into the noſe, then is the blood ſtanched out of hand. In like manner alſo, albeit that it be ſomewhat more natural, if one lay the moſſe of the black (or ſloe) thorn in the ſhooes and go thereon, it doth ſtanch blood.

Item, take broad Plantain, and the juyce of Shepherds purſe, of each ℥. 3. prepared Bloodſtone, fine Bolus, ſealed Earth, Dragons blood, of each ℥. 1. ß. ſpread it on a cloth, and lay it on the place of the noſe where the blood cometh, and refreſh it oftentimes. Or take beaten Bean meal, temper it with the white of an egg and uſe it as before. It cometh alſo otherwhiles to paſſe (and is alſo no wonder) that ſuch ſuperfluous blood of the noſe doth bring ſwooning with it; for the which are ſick perſons hands and feet to be rubbed with ſalt and vinegar, to bind faſt the arms and leggs, and to bind and unbind them again, alſo to uſe other outward means, which here afterwards in the ſecond part ſhall be deſcribed for the ſwooning.

Item, if the blood run out at the right noſtril, ſet a boxing cup unpickt upon the Liver, and ſo whenſoever the ſwooning is paſt, the Liver vein is to be opened, or the *Salvatella* in the left ſide, and to ſmell to cold things, as that which is made of Quince pears, and to uſe Lettice, Purſlain, Beans, and other pottages, untill that the blood waxeth thick.

For a concluſion, you have hereafter many remedies in the fifth Part for to ſtanch blood, which are alſo good for this purpoſe.

Enfeebled or loſt ſmelling. §. 8.

This is no ſmall diſeaſe to man, for if one be born with it, or have had it long, he is eſteemed by the Grecians incurable, unleſſe it be through continuance of time, and with great trouble: nevertheleſſe the ancient and latter Phyſitians have imployed all diligence to deviſe all neceſſary means; and firſt deſcribed three ſeveral kinds thereof. The firſt kind, where throughly and wholly the ſmell is loſt.

The ſpoond is a diminiſhing of the ſmell, where a thing is ſmelt like as it is, yet unperfectly; and this diſeaſe is much more with men then with beaſts, for that they be of a moiſter brain, and all beaſts have their brains much dryer, therefore they do alſo ſmell ſharper and further.

The third kind is a corrupted ſmell, where one receiveth the ſmell otherwiſe then it is of it ſelf, like as when one adjudgeth ſtinking things for odoriferous. The cauſe that the ſmell is utterly loſt, is when the conduits that go towards the brains be throughly obſtructed, that the ayr received cannot come to the skin of the brains, which obſtruction may happen through ſome violent motion or blowes on the head. Alſo if about the place and inſtruments of ſmelling there ingender any Wart or fleſhly excreſcence, or any ulceration; or alſo through any other groſſe humours that will ſettle there, and ſtop up the conduits of ſmelling. Laſtly, through repletion of the head and of the whole body.

The cauſe of the diminiſhing of the ſmelling is as before, but is not ſo great; it may alſo be cauſed by cold or by hot medicines, which be uſed at the noſe. The cauſe of a corrupted ſmell is a bad moiſture, which lyeth hidden in the ſame place, and there maketh ſtinking vapours; and ſo may alſo the Canker of the noſe be cauſed and procured.

The ſignes of the obſtructions are, that no moyſture cometh out of the noſe without pain, unleſſe the brains had ſome impediment; but if any moiſture doth appear without pain, then doth the ſame moiſture obſtruct the conduits of ſmelling.

If it proceed of heat and drought, then may you perceive the heat in the forehead and noſe: if of cold, it is alſo diſcerned by the ſame places; or if it be ſome ſtinking moiſture, then doth all ſtink that he ſmelleth unto, and all what is near him, alſo his breath is unſavoury and ſtinking.

Other infirmities or lets are known by ſight, they may alſo be diſcerned by the pain and by the matter. The cure of them all conſiſteth eſpecially in comforting and cleanſing the infirmities of ſmelling and the brains, whence moſt commonly all theſe theſe infirmities do proceed.

It may alſo be perceived by the former reaſons, that all theſe obſtructions and foreneſſes, the diminiſhing and loſſe of ſmelling doth proceed of humours: now to remedy the ſame, are you to begin the cure by a good dyet, wherefore all meats eaſie of digeſtion are beſt, as broths, yolks of eggs, Hares brains, which have a proper and ſecret vertue for this infirmity, Pullets, young Pigeons, Partridges, Feſants, Veal, Cawdles, and all of them diſtilled with Sugar, Marjoram, Roſemary, and Betony; parched haſel nuts are alſo very good for this purpoſe, ſmall white wine ſhall be his drink, neither may you omit to purge the body: if the ſickneſſe be cauſed of cold, then is he to be purged as hath been ſaid in Chap. 2. §. 1. of the cold pain of the head; but if blood and heat do cauſe it, then are you to proceed as hath been ſhewed in Chap. 1. § 6.

Afterwards you are to cleanſe the head with neeſing, in them that have loſt their ſmelling without any excreſcence of fleſh or foreneſſe of the noſe; for which purpoſe you may look the ſecond Chapter, and ſecond Section; alſo in §. 6. of this preſent Chapter: but theſe ſimples are eſpecially to be uſed for it, to wit, Amber, Roſemary, Cinnamon, Cloves, *Lignum Aloes*, *Nigella*, to which he muſt ſmell often and long, for they open the obſtructions of the head; which is alſo effected with theſe dryed herbs following, namely, Roſe, Germander, field Cypres, Nep, and Marjoram: but for to provoke ſternutation or neeſing, take Lignum Aloes, Pepper and Staveſacre. Alſo the vapour of boyling vinegar received into the noſtrils very often is of good effect, for becauſe the ſame hath a biting nature, it doth move neeſing. Alſo you may ſeethe one of theſe things following in wine, and receive the vapour as is ſaid into the noſtrils.

Take Calamus, Gentian, Bay-leaves, Penny royal, field Mints, Anniſe and Fennel ſeeds, Parſly, and roots of Smallage; or receive often in one day the vapour of warm water wherein Melilot or Fumitory be decocted, the water of *Aſaranbacca* or of Elder, is alſo good for

for this use. Also the seeds of Nigella bounden in a cloth, carried with him, and smelt oftentimes unto it; the same strewed upon hot coals, and to receive the fume of it.

Item, take the powder of Nigella, Ireos, of each ¼ quarters of an ounce, Marjoram gentle, Camomil, Bay leaves, Nep, Staechas, of each half a handful: seethe all in sufficient water untill about the third part be wasted: mix the powders amongst it, and draw thereof into the head, it doth cleanse the head very well. Also this powder following may be prepared; Take Nardus seed which hath lyen a day and a night in sharp vinegar, and is dryed again, one ounce, Bever cod and Nutmegs, of each one drach. and a half, red and white Behen, Galangal, white Pepper, Marjoram and Nep, of each ℈. 1. Costus roots, Sagapenum, the seed of Rue and Basil, of each one ounce; stamp each apart, and bind it being tempered in a piece of Syndal, and smell oftentimes unto it. This is good against all hinderance of the smelling which cometh through coldnesse, be it with or without obstructions.

Pomander.

TAke red Storax, Nutmegs, Cucubes, Cloves, Nardus seed, Lignum Aloes, Indi Spica, and Cinamom, of each one drach. Muscus and Amber, of each one scruple, Laudanum one ounce, make a Pomander thereof, like as there be many described in the sixth Part, and is also taught how the same is to be made. Or else Camomil, Melilot, Rue, Marjoram, decocted in half wine half water. But if these things will not help, then take the juyce of blew Flowerdeluce, and a little beaten *Pirethrum*, anoint that, or stop it into the nose: do the like with oyl of Spike, wherein is tempered a little *Euphorbium* and *Muscus*, for both of them be strong and hot.

This following is commended for a worthy receit, whereas the smelling is lost; Take small pownded Nardus seed, temper it with oyl of Olives, bend the head backward as much as is possible, and let three or four drops fall into the nose, but take the mouth full of water, to the end the oyl may run the lesse into the mouth. Item, take Nardus seed which hath lyen three dayes in vinegar, and is dryed again, one quarter of an ounce, steep them in three ounces of the juyce of Marjoram gentle, or at the least in fair water, and use it as aforesaid three or four times between day and night, and so shall you see marvels. Take oyl of Tiles, like as shall be described hereafter, half an ounce, Muscus two grains, stroke them in the nose being made warm. The gargarismes are also commodious, like as here followeth: Take Radish, Marjoram, Calamus, Betony, Pennyroyal, of each half a *M.* let them seethe in a pint and half of wine, untill about the third part be sodden away; put thereto as much honey as you please, Mustard seed, *Pirethrum*, of each one drach. use it in the morning. The like also gargarized with decocted Rue and Hyssop, also *Pirethrum*, Mastick and Zedoary, or one of these, are to be taken and chewed in the mouth, and to spet out the moisture: likewise is also very good to strew this powder following upon the head.

Take Briony, Lignum Aloes, grains, of each ℈. 1. Marjoram gentle, Cloves, of each one quarter of an ounce, Bever cod one scrup. Muscus, Amber, of each one grain and a half, pownded apart, and then mixed: of this powder take 4. grains, and strew it upon the head before where the hair beginneth, to the crown of the head.

For conclusion, because among the foresaid remedies there be some violent, which may provoke much pain in so precious a member as the nose is; therefore drop therein when the pain is too great, the oyl of Gourds seed, and pour warm water upon the head, that will asswage the heat and pain, so will also all whatsoever cooleth and moisteneth, whether it be used inwardly or outwardly, or stopt inwardly into the nose: like as for example, a cloth made wet in Rosewater and laid upon the nose, or Rosewater drawn up into the nose.

Oyl of Tiles or Bricks, called Oleum Philosophorum.

THis oyl is worthy for her vertues sake, that it should be here described; for it is not onely good for the lost smelling, but also for all cold sicknesses; for it is warm and piercing, it consumeth all tough moisture of the members, and expelleth all swelling: it is also very good against the falling sickenesse, swimming of the head, the dead palsie, losse of memory, cramp, and pain of the back, and against all manner of Gouts: it is also highly commended in all diseases of the milt, the bladder, and of the Kidneyes, in all ulcers, lepry, scals, and fresh wounds. This oyl is made as hereafter followeth.

Take a very old Tile or Brick, beat it in pieces as big as Walnuts, make it glowing hot, caſt one piece after another in old Sallet oyl, leave them therein ſo long, untill they be well ſoaked through with the oyl, afterwards beat them to fine powder, and put them in a glaſſe helm, the which is clean over well luted, lute alſo the helm and the recipient, afterward diſtill it in ſand or aſhes, but firſt with a mild fire augmenting the ſame a little; the oyl which cometh out of it, preſerve it well ſtopt.

The ninth Chapter.

Of the Eares.

THere be more parts of the face, to wit, the Eares, in truth precious and neceſſary members, the which nature hath ordained as inſtruments for receivers and judges of the voices and their noiſe, whereof as well men as beaſts have alwayes twain, on each ſide of the head one, that alwayes ſtand open, becauſe that as well ſleeping as waking we have need of hearing. They be alſo outwardly ſhapen with divers crooked entrances, to the end they may receive much ayr, and noiſe might retain and diſcern the ſame the longer: which crooked wayes are alſo meet for this, that there may not eaſily fall any thing therein, which otherwiſe might befall if the entrance were right out, whereto is alwayes the moiſtneſſe in the entrance of the eares, which we call the waxe of the ears, and is as it were birdlime, to the end that the ſmall flies, fleas, and other ſuch like that would otherwhiles creep into the eares, might be firſt ſtaid therein. It is alſo very ſeldom ſeen that men can ſtir their ears, the which nevertheleſſe is ſeen in all fourfooted beaſts.

The eares are alſo ſubject to many kinds of diſeaſes, the which are divided by the learned into three principal kinds.

The firſt is, when any one is wholly and throughly bereft of his hearing, the which we call with one word deafneſſe.

The ſecond is, when the hearing is diminiſhed or weakened, like as when one heareth not but when one calleth alowd to him.

The third kind is when the hearing only is loſt or altered, like as one thinketh that he heareth one pipe, ſing, ruſh, or any thing elſe, the which in truth is not ſo.

But of this and of other more that concern the ears, we will write thereof more at large.

The cauſes which may hurt both theſe, are almoſt incurable, ſome be natural, ſome alſo through ſome outward and inward accidents, to wit, as to come out of too hot or too cold ayr, ſudden alteration of cold or heat, from warm water to cold water, or any thing elſe that might come into the ears, as thruſting, falling, ſtriking, wounds, beaſts that may creep therein, unſleckt lime, &c. In like manner alſo diſturbance of the brains, of the head, and of the whole body, rheumes of the head, and chiefly cold, tooth-ache, pain of the ſinewes, and of other members which do touch the hearing; or impoſtumations, ſwellings, and worms that do grow in the eares. All theſe and other more have their ſpecial ſignes. If the deafneſſe or diminiſhing of the hearing proceed of outward cauſes, the ſame may be well demanded of the Patient. Doth it come from the braines? Then will alſo the ſight, ſmelling, and eſpecially the taſte be annoyed. If it be cauſed through hot Impoſtumes, or ſwelling of the ſinews, then is there intolerable pain, panting, trembling, and ſome frenſie with it, yea hot Agues, and laſtly death it ſelf, if ſo be that there be not ſome good advice taken for it in time. If it be cauſed through cold humours, there is then Impoſtumation and cold alwaies about the ſame places. Be winds the cauſes? then is there alwayes ſome hiſſing with it. Impoſtumations do yeeld matter: Worms may be perceived by their ſtirring or rumbling, and if otherwhiles one fall out: what now concerneth the deſcription of their remedies, our beginning ſhall be firſt of all of the pain of the ears, and afterwards of all other infirmities of the ears.

Pain of the Ears in general.

FIrst it is herein to be noted, that the pain of the ears is not sighed nor properly spoken, for that which toucheth the outward part of the ear, this ache can suffer no great pain; and although the pain were great, yet is there no danger of life with it, for that they be no principal members of the life: nevertheless this is worst to be called, the pain in the ears which is within the head, and in the instruments of the hearing, as in the sinews of the hearing, which are ingrafted into the brains, and are knit therewith; of which intolerable pain deadly Agues and frensies do proceed. Therefore we will here especially sundry remedies for the strengthening and cleansing of the brains, from whence these terrible accidents do come, like as already hath been done in the description of the head, in the first and second Chapters, and more yet where we have discoursed of the pole or marre, that for this are especially these following gentle cleansings of the head commanded to be used.

Take two ounces of Marjoram gentle, white wine one ounce, the seeds of Licebane, Piretram, of each one scruple, temper it and drop it into the eares; such cleansing of the head is not to be spared, as long as the pain of the ears or head endureth. Or when he perceiveth that it will come again, it is forthwith to be prevented and cut off: but if the pain get the upper hand, which is caused through blood, the which the red and swolne face with beating of the brains doth shew, then is the head vein on the same side where the pain is to be opened, that the matter may be drawn downwards.

If there run any choler amongst it, then may the same be purged with yellow Mirobalans, sowr Dates, sirup of Roses, *Cassia, de Succo Rosarum*. After both these remedies following, or one of both are to be used outwardly.

Take oyl of Roses, of Willow leaves, of each a like much, temper a little vinegar amongst it, and drop it luke-warm in the ears. Or take warm womans milk like as it cometh from the breast, and drop it oftentimes therein. Both of them do slack the heat, and asswage the pain. For this is also good the braved white of an egg, tempered with a little oyl of Violets, and some Camphire; others do use oyl of water Lillies alone, or tempered with others.

A general rule of the outward applications into the Eares.

FOrasmuch as now it is of much importance, how that is to be used which is to be put into the eares, therefore we will (before we run any further) declare this rule following. First there ought nothing to be dropt into the ears before that the body and especially the head be purged: but before we come to this, he may use the fomentations, bags, vapours, and plaisters that are to be used most safely; for this application hath alwayes some more danger in causing some obstruction or stopping. And if so be that with them nothing can be affected, then is the imposition to be attempted; yet the eares are first of all to be cleansed with clothes: also there is nothing to be put therein, which by nature is either too hot or too cold, but all whatsoever is middle, mean and luke-warm; also not too much, but from one to four drops, and to hold the same not above three houres in the eares; howbeit nevertheless others do suppose this time to be too short, for that the medicine in so short time cannot perform his operation, therefore do they prescribe six or eight houres. In the imposition shall the patient lye upon his whole ear, yet not to drop it in, if so be that it be not first run out: the which through neesing, crying, strong blowing of the nose is done. And this is also to be noted, that there is never any repelling medicines therein to be used, to the end that the pain be not driven to the brains. Now for to come to the hot pains of the ears, then take the water of Purslain, grated Gourds, (the juyce prest out) temper them, or use each alone, like as is already taught.

Or take the seeds of Gourds, Melons, Pompions and Cucumbers, of each one drach. and a half, beat them and seethe them in six ounces of vinegar until that two ounces be consumed; strain them through a cloth, and use them like as all the other.

Take the juyce of Housleek, oyl of Roses, of each half an ounce, and temper them; or take the juyce of Roses, of Housleek, of each half an ounce, oyl of *Sesamum* two drach. temper them together. Or take the oyl of Roses two ounces, sharp vinegar half an ounce,

let

let them ſeethe untill the vinegar be ſodden away, then temper therein *Philonium Romanum* one quarter of an ounce, and rub it in and about the ears.

Take the juyce of Houſleek, temper it with womans milk and uſe it. Alſo you may take the juyce of Peach leaves, tempered with a little vinegar.

Item, take a ſmall glaſſe with a narrow neck, put therein the freſh leaves of Violets half full, put more unto it afterwards twenty Ants eggs, and then fill full the glaſſe with the foreſaid Violet leaves, ſtop it tight, bury it the ſpace of ſixteen dayes in the ground wherein Ants are, afterwards ſtring them out, and drop thereof into the ear: and if one perceive thereby no amendment, and that the pain be yet augmented, then are ſtronger things to be uſed for it as followeth.

Take *Opium* one ſcrup. oyl of Roſes one ounce, temper them together, and drop a little thereof in the ear, it aſſwageth the pain and procureth ſleep: but do this but ſeldom, for we have oftentimes warned you from the *Opium*. The ſame may you alſo do with the juyce of Southernwood, with the foreſaid oyl. In like manner alſo garden Snailes decocted in the oyl of Almonds. Eyewaters may alſo be uſed for this, which are ordained for the hot and ſharp pain of the eyes, like as here before in the ſeventh Chapter, in the fourth and fifth §. is declared, if ſo be that the pain be intolerable.

This plaiſter following is very highly commended for all pain of the ears; Take dry Violets and Camomil, of each one ounce: temper amongſt it well decocted and beaten Henbane roots, with Barley meal, of each one ounce and a half, the fat of Hens one ounce, oyl of Camomil as much as is needful; let them ſeethe thick together, and lay it upon the ears, and upon the temples of the head: when it is cold, then lay another upon it that is warm. It muſt alſo not be neglected to rub the patient ſoftly behind his Ears with the foreſaid oyl, being made luke-warm once or twice a day. But if the occaſion of this pain be through cold, then parch firſt Millet and ſalt upon the fire, and lay it warm over it in a cloth, and purge the Patient, like as hereafter ſhall be taught of the diminiſhing of hearing.

For to put into the Ears, are to be taken theſe things following which are extant or in readineſſe, as oyl of Bayes, oyl of Coſtus, oyl of Radiſh ſeeds, the juyce of Marjoram gentle, the which alſo is good each apart, or mixed and dropt therein. Alſo oyl of Rue, oyl of Spike, of Bever cod, and of Behen: the Ears are to be rubbed round about with the ſalve of *Martiaten*, and covered with unwaſht ſheeps wooll, and to do this twice in 24 hours.

Take oyl of Roſes or of Eggs, and the juyce of Sage, of each two ounces, ſtamp therein one or two Scarabees (which are of the ſmall beaſts that flye abroad in the evening with or without horns) alſo as many Earthworms waſht in wine, ſeethe this by a ſoft fire untill all the moiſture be waſted: afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth, and drop thereof in the ear every morning and evening luke-warm two or three drops.

Item, temper Bever cod with womans milk, uſe it as aforeſaid; if this help not ſo ſoon, then take Ants, bruiſe them and temper them with womans milk; the juyce of Radiſh dropt therein the ſpace of three dayes, ſhall alſo take away the pain.

Take the juyce of Pauls Betony, of Strawberry leaves, of Sage, of Houſleek, of each one ounce, Maſtick and Frankincenſe of each one drach. and a half, temper them together; the decoction of Coleworts two ounces: to drop thereof into the ear, ſhould alſo take away all pains.

Of the order of life or dyet.

WHereas we have ſhewed many cauſes of the diſeaſe in the Ears, yet can there no certain order or rule be yeelded for it. But one muſt direct him according to the quality or importance of the cauſe.

But generally whereas pain or impoſtume of the ears be approaching, then muſt one keep him alwayes ſober in eating and drinking, and to eſchew all that which aſcendeth to the head, whereof is already ſufficiently expreſſed: alſo all that maketh wind, as pottages, moiſt fruit, cheeſe, ſmoked and ſalted fleſh, unleavened bread, and great fiſhes, ſmall or watered wine is he to drink, and to eat roaſt meat: Cumin, Anniſe, Caraway, and Fennel are very requiſite for all diſeaſes of the Ears which proceed through cold: ſo alſo is prepared Coriander after meat.

Of the noise and hissing in the ears. §. 2.

THis disease hath many causes, as blowes without wounds, overmuch vomiting, great stirring of the head and the whole body, great cold or heat, wind, moisture of the head, or the impostumation of any other member; but the principallest cause of this hissing is, that the vapour and winds of the brains do fall into the ears; and according to the importance thereof, do forcibly rush like water, which either continueth alwayes without intermission, or at some times also ceaseth. Now pretermitting many subtil differences; this hissing proceedeth most through the feebleness or imbecility of hearing, by reason it is not throughly clear and clean, so that it may be thereby known, to wit, that it is lesse perceived fasting and when one is hungry, then when one hath eaten; for that the ascending vapours of a full stomach do much take away all such pureness in hearing.

This hissing must be prevented betimes, for that when it endureth continually, it is not to be cured through good government and necessary medicines; then commonly followeth after it a perfect deafnesse: and for this are commonly used these following: *Pillulæ de Hiera, Mastichinæ, Cochiæ, Sine quibus, de Agarico*, and *Trochisci de Agarico*; These diseases of the head be cleansed with the things which are described in the first §. of the pain of the ears through neesing and otherwise.

Certain ancient Physitians have more violently dealt with it, and advised to temper two grains of *Opium* in oyl and to put it into the ears, but the same is so perilous, that some thereby have remained utterly deaf: but if *Opium* must needs be used, then this is more safe.

Take *Opium*, Bever-cod of each one grain, break them with one quarter of an ounce of vinegar, and drop a drop or twain into the ears: yet is this following much safer.

Take Sallet-oyl wherein Poppy seed and Myrtle seed are decocted, and use it as is expressed, But if the hissing come with anguish of the head, and especially through cold causes, feebleness of the hearing, and windy vapours, whether it be from the stomach, the wombe, or any other parts of the body, then use for it the juyce of Marjoram, with womans milk.

Use also which of these oyls you will, as the oyl of Radish-seed, of Bayes, of Roses (wherein some Bever-cod is mixed) of Mustard seeds, *Costus* and of *Sesamum*, and above all is the oyl of bitter Almonds commended. In like sort these things following which have the same efficacy are to be used, temper Radish water with oyl of Bayes, the juyce of great Harts tongue with honey, the juyce of an Onion alone steept well in Rue water, afterwards take bitter Almonds and the juyce of Rue, of each half an ounce, and prepared *Euphorbium* bruised small and tempered amongst it: but if so be that these foresaid do not help, then it is a token that this hissing of the ears proceedeth of a great moisture which lyeth inclosed in the pannicles, which cover the brains.

And then must the brains be oftentimes purged with the pils of *Hiera cum Agarico*, and *Pillulæ Cochiæ*, and to take them in the evening after meat. Will you then according as it is advised use preparative potions before? then take Oximel, and Oximel of Squils, honey of Roses, sirupe of Betonie and of Stechas (which you think good) each time one ounce and a half, or two ounces, tempered with the water of Baulme or each like, continuing this three or four mornings one after another. After the purging take Marjoram gentle, Stechas, Sea-mints, Wormwood, Marjoram, of each half a M. seethe them, and let the warm vapour go into the ears.

Item, take Rosemary, Sage, Betonie, Camomil, Marjoram gently, of each a little sodden together, and use it as aforesaid.

Item, for this is also good, the vapour of vinegar wherein Wormwood is decocted: also juyce of Onions and of Rue decocted in oyl, and two or three drops put into the ear, boil the Betonie alone in Wine, and let the the vapour go into the ear: the juyce of Marjoram put into the ear oftentimes in the day, driveth away all hissing of the ears, which cometh through any wind or cold matter, and hindreth sleep.

We have before shewed how to mix *Euphorbium* in the oyl of bitter Almonds, for which one may take the oyl of Eldern, of Rue, of Camomil, and Dill, also of Licebane, Peach kernels, oyl of Wallnuts, of Bayes, or which you will: or you may use one of these foresaid which you will alone, or with oyl of Bever-cod, and of *Euphorbium*, which is not so hot.

Item

Item, take the gall of an Oxe, or of a Sheepe, the oyl of bitter Almonds, of each half an ounce, the juyce of onions or of garlik and honey, of each one quarter of an ounce, temper them and uſe them as is aforeſaid. Take oyl of Spike (at the Apothecaries) and the juyce of Onions, of each a like much, uſe it warm as before, it is very forcible.

Item, take one drachme and an half of Ariſtology, temper it together with the juyce of Bayes and uſe it as before.

After purges to cleanſe the head of evil humours;

Take the beſt leafe Tobacco, ſeethe it well in water and inject thereof into the ears, this opens the ſtoppings, diſſolves, the viſcous matter, and is ſpecial for hearing.

Hiſſing in the Eares with bad hearing.

TAke white Hellebore, Bevercod, of each one drachme, Rue, Saltpeter, long Pepper, of each two ſcruples, *Euphorbium* one ſcruple, the juyce of Radiſh and Garlick, the oyl of ſweet and bitter Almonds, oyl of Dill, of Camomil and Nardus, of each one ounce; let them ſeethe alone in a pot of water untill the juyce be conſumed; afterwards ſtrain them through a cloth, and drop two or three drops in the ear with a chip, or ſlice of Cipres wood, whereon is laid a good deal of the ſtamped leaves of Marjoram. Theſe little Cipres boards are very highly commended of famous Phyſitians, made warm and laid alwayes before meat upon the diſeaſed ear and temples until it be cold, and this continued ſo long until the hiſſing be gone away: alſo when one goeth to ſleep he may lie down upon his ear, putting alwayes the ſtampt Marjoram upon it.

And if any body through the great hiſſing cannot ſleep, then is he to prepare this bagg following, and after that it hath layen certain hours in lee, to waſh and rub himſelf therewith.

Take the innermoſt of the Coloquint, field Cipres, *Aſarabaca*, Centory, of each one handful, Marjoram, field mints, Penni-poyal, of each two handfuls, water mints one handful and a half, chop it ſmall, and make two bags thereof; lay them in lee and waſh your head therewith, afterwards wring them out well, and lay them warm upon the head, or on the hiſſing ear. It is an approved remedy.

Item, in like manner may you take a dry bag for to hold before the ear, to wit of Betonie, Stechas, Marjoram gentle, and Camomil, lay theſe warm upon the ear. Take Maſtick half an ounce, *Piretrum* one drachme, beat it ſmall, and temper it with as much honey of Roſes that you may form *Trociſcos* thereof, chew it in the mouth and ſpet it out again: they do draw much ſlime out of the head.

Treacle and Mithridate are not onely good againſt this hiſſing, but alſo againſt all the diſeaſes of the ears and hearing; therefore it is commanded in this diſeaſe for to take after purging one drachme of fine Treacle with conſerve of Bugloſſe.

After meat you ſhall uſe Marmalade or any ſuch like that detaineth the aſcending vapours out of the ſtomach towards the head: it is alſo commended not to eat much in the evening, nor to drink late: but rather to take a ſpoonful of Caroway ſeed (which is ſteeped in vinegar) and ſo go to bed, or you may uſe alſo Annis, Fennel, and prepared Coriander.

What meats are to be refrained.

BEware of al whatſoever doth aſcend upward towards the head, as Garlick, Muſtard, Onions, Horſeradiſh, nuts, ſtrong wine, and all that is made of dow and milk; of Colworts, ſodden fiſh, and eſpecially from Eeles and Tenches, alſo from all broths, but eſpecially in the evening, alſo it were not amiſſe every fourth day before ſupper, or two or three hours after, to take theſe pils following.

Take Bevercod five gains, pils of Sarcocolla half a drach. waſhed Aloe one quarter of an ounce, make pils thereof with the juyce of Nep; after this uſe the vapour deſcribed in this §. where it beginneth: Take Marjoram gentle, Stechas, &c. Afterwards this bag or cap laid upon the head, that both the ears even to the neck be covered therewith: Take Nep, marſh Mint, Penni-royal, Marjoram, and Rue, all dry, of each one handful. Mace half an ounce, Ameos, Borage ſeeds, and Caraway, of each half a handful, two white Poppy heads, ſtamp all theſe to powder, and make thereof a cap or bag.

Another: Take *Aſarabacca*, Nep, Penniroyal, Stechas, of each one handful and a half, Spikenard, *Spica Romana*, Roſemary flowers, Baſil, Lignum Aloes, of each half a drach.

Mace

Mace half an ounce, pownd this together, and make a cap thereof; make it warm between two Cipres boards, and lay it on the head as before. Capital powders are also commended for this purpose: Take Lignum Aloes, Cucubes and Cloves, pownd each apart, and strew this in the hair on the top of the whole head, as is taught before.

Will you then have a mixt or compounded powder? then take one quarter of an ounce of Lignum Aloes, Spica Indica, Cucubes and Cloves, of each one drachme, *Sandaracha* and Roses, of each two drachmes, Mace ℈ j. make thereof a powder; strew this upon the head two hours after supper, and early in the morning, like as is said. Whereto all such patients are oftentimes to smell, is sufficiently alleadged here before in the eight Chapter and eight § in the diminishing or lost smelling.

Of the binding or rubbing in the hissing of the Ears.

FOr this rushing or hissing of the ears is very good that the shoulders even unto the rump, and the knees unto the feet, be forcibly rubbed and chafed downwards so long untill they be through red.

It is also very commodious to bind them hard, and again quickly to make loose and undo them: also to bind hard the brawn beneath the knees, and then afterwards ascending by little and little, even to the very privities.

In like manner are also good for this, boxing cups without picking, applyed from the buttocks upwards even to the shoulders.

Lastly, if there appear in the face or on the temples any extuberating, then can it not be ill to let two or three ounces of blood out of the Median. To these we will add a very old superstition, whereof *Plinius* hath written 1500. years ago, which is, When ones right ear itcheth, then is there somewhere some good thing spoken of him: but if any ones left ear itch, then is there some ill speaking of him: which misbelief continueth with many even to this present day.

Impostumes and sores in the Ears. §. 3.

IT hapneth very seldom that nature accustometh to purge her superfluous moisture through the impostume of the ears, nevertheless it chanceth in young new born children which are full of moisture; this appeareth oftentimes in the first described hissing of the ears, but when this hath ceased and abideth away, yet cometh again and endureth the space of three dayes; then it is a sign that there is an impostume of the ears, at hand, for which maturatives must serve, and when it is broken up, mundification. The running and mattering of the ears is moved through three kinds of causes, to wit of an impostume, or of some ulcers of the ears, or through any defluxion into the eyes that afterwards falleth towards the ears, and there putrifying, is altered into corruption and matter.

For all these foresaid, a sober life is fit and requisite, whereby this course of matter may be diminished. Also the patient must refrain from all grosse and vaporous meats; moderate exercise is meet and commodious for him: he is alwayes to hold the body loose, if he be hot and full of blood by nature, then is his head vein to be opened in the hand or in the arm. And if so be this (by reason of occasion) might not be compassed, then are boxing cups to be set upon the shoulders, also to purge with the pils *Cochiæ*, and otherwhiles move neesing, for that it draweth the matter into the nose, whereby it may be easily purged and drawn, for the gargarismes are also very meet which are prescribed in *Paralysi*: for this are also outward things to be used, wherewith the impostumation may quickly be maturated, the matter evacuated, and the ulcer mundified, the which can be by no surer means effected then by this: Take oyl of *Sesamum* half an ounce, Ducks and Hens grease, of each one quarter of an ounce, melt them together, and drop them oftentimes in the ear, or use Hydromel, which is described in the end of the seventh Chapter.

Item, take salt water wherein fish hath been sodden, or the pickle of salt Olives, and use them as before: the same may you do also with the leaves of Betonie sodden in wine, which are very good for all pain of the ears: or take the juyce of Harts tongue tempered with honey; afterwards are to be used one of these things following.

First, This is a commodious plaister for to draw out the matter therewith, take two ounces

ounces of *Galbanum*, & *Ammoniacum*, Turpentine and Wax, of each half an ounce, Serapine one quarter of an ounce, the juyce of Onions one drachme and a half, Myrrhe, Beverood, of each one drach. dissolve the Gums in a little Wine, and pownd all that is to be pownded, afterwards mingle them and work throughly this salve with oyly hands, so that there be made a hard plaister of it.

Another; Take one ounce and a half of fine wheat floure, the muscilage of Linseed. of Fenegreek seed, Eeles grease (which droppeth off when they are rosted,) gold Litharge, Cerusse, and Frankincense, of each one drachme, make a plaister of it, and lay it all over the ear, and rub it also in the ear.

Item, take fresh Holihock roots beaten small two ounces, Linseed and Fenegreek seed both beaten, of each one ounce, Dill seed and Camomil of each half an ounce; let them seethe somewhat together in butter, afterwards make a soft plaister thereof, and lay it upon the ear as is aforesaid.

Another, which is not unlike unto this former: Take the muscilage of Holihock roots, of Linseeds and Fenegreek seed, of each three drachmes, Lilly roots sodden and stampt as much as is needful for a plaister; temper amongst it one ounce of seeds of Dill, two ounces of Camomil, butter six ounces; if it be too thin, let it seethe till it be thicker, anoint all over the ear therewith, and lay it upon it.

But when the pain beginneth to cease, it is then a sign that the impostume is ripe and will break. But for to draw out the matter the better to mundifie and heal, you are then to use this that hereafter followeth.

Take *Sarcocolla*, Aloe, Dragons blood, Iron drosse, Verdigrease, Myrrhe and Frankincense, of each half a drachme, temper altogether with vinegar, dip a teint therein and put it into the ear. The same doth also the well known salve called *Apostolorum*, whether it be new or old. Iron drosse alone bruised small and tempered with vinegar untill that it be as thick as honey, rub the same in the ear, it drieth much. The like also doth burnt Allom tempered with honey.

This ensuing is also marvellous good for all kinds of impostumes of the ears: take honey five drachmes, vinegar half an ounce; let them seethe, put thereto one drach. of Verdigrease bruised small: lay it with wool in the impostumated ear.

Item, whether you see the impostume in the ear or not, you are to wash the ear with water wherein Willow leaves and Agrimony are decocted and mixe with Oximel. If there be great pain with it, then look in the first §. chuse there what you please to asswage the same: but if this matter and impostume be caused of a hot corruption, the which may be known by the former signs, then is the head vein to be opened, and let him blood. Lastly also purge, as is alledged in the pain of the ears through heat, and drop oftentimes new womans milk. For this is also good oyl of Roses decocted with vinegar untill all the vinegar be consumed.

Some do take oyl of Roses, of Violets, and Vinegar, of each half an ounce, Henbane seeds half a drach. and let them seethe till the vinegar be wasted away, then strain it through a cloth: this may be done the first three or four dayes, and then use this drying and healing salve.

Take Iron drosse as much as you please, make it glowing hot, and then slack it in vinegar and do this so five times together; afterwards take thereof one quarter of an ounce beaten small, and bruise it very small upon a bruising stone; temper amongst it one ounce and an half of the oyl of Roses, vinegar seven drachmes, wax as much as is needfull for to make a soft salve; spread thereof upon the teint, and stop it into the ear, or seethe it in vinegar & oyl. Take sheeps wooll with the fat called *Hyssopus, humida* temper therewith as much oyl of sweet Almonds, and use it in the ear, it is very wholesome: likewise is also Vervein and Nightshade sodden.

Item, take the leaves of Nightshade, beat them very small, temper some salt amongst them, make a plaister thereof, and lay upon the ears. Take oyl of Roses and clarified Honey, of each a like much, temper it well, and drop it in the ear: this is good for all impostumated and sore ears.

Will not the pain cease, but rather increase? then take *Opium* one scrup. oyl of Violets three drach. use it like as in the pain of the ears is expressed in the first §.

Or take two grains of *Philonium Romanum*, and a little womans milk, drop it in the ear, it asswageth the pain. This is to be laid on the outside, take the muscilage of Linseed and Fenegreek seed.

Item,

Item, take Ducks greaſe, Hens greaſe, the ſuet of Foxes, or which you will, tempered together with oyl of *Seſamum*, it delayeth the pain.

If the impoſtume be very hot, temper Goats ſuet with honey, this maturateth and aſſwageth the pain. For this is alſo meet Butter alone, or elſe tempered with Calves feet oyl and honey.

Item, melt Honey and oyl of Camomil together, temper ſome Gooſe dung amongſt it, let it ſeethe a little, and then wring it through a cloth; this helpeth for the opening of the Impoſtumes. But this enſuing is more better, and more profitable for to maturate and open all impoſtumes.

Take Litharge of Gold and Ceruſſe, of each half an ounce, white Roſin, Frankincenſe and Milduſt, of each one ounce and an half, Sallet-oyl ſix ounces, Fox greaſe, Goats ſuet, and hogs greaſe (altogether freſh) of each one ounce and an half, muſcilage of Linſeed and of Fenegreek as much as is needfull, let them ſeethe unto a plaiſter, and lay it over the ears upon the forehead and temples of the head. You muſt alſo keep a part ſoft with the water of the greater With-wind, and when you will occupie it to moſtifie it with Honey and moiſten Cotten therein, and ſo uſe it in the ear. But if the Impoſtume do come through cold, the which may be perceived through the ſmal pain, leſſe beating, by cold wether, continuance, and ſuch like, then is he to be purged again with the pils *Cochia*. For this is alſo meet the forementioned ſuets and greaſes, tempered with oyl of Spike.

Item, take a good handfull of Millet, parch it in a pan that thereby it may loſe the moiſture, and may warm the better, put it in a bagg and lay it ſo warm upon the ear; this doth alſo parched Bran mixed with Salt: in like manner alſo dried Betonie laid warm in a bagg upon the ear.

Item, hold the ear oftentimes over fair water, wherein Mints, Stechas, and Marjoram, are decocted.

Take Rue, Onions, both or each a part, uſe them as before. This warmeth alſo the matter, and prepareth it to break out. They oyl of Hemp ſeeds dropt into the ear, helpeth alſo to mundifie. The juyce of Onions and Rue, of each a like much meetly ſalted, doth much dry the running of the ears: likewiſe alſo the juyce of Radiſhes.

In like ſort are requiſite for this theſe juyces enſuing, to wit, that of Daffodils, of Shepherds Purſe, of Vervein, Knotgraſſe, each alone or mixed: the juyce of Betony tempered with oyl of Roſes, and ſo uſed is very good for all impoſtumes and pain of the eares.

Item, take Bean ſtraw, ſeethe it in water, and receive the vapour in the ear, for it is ſpecial good for all hiſſing impoſtumes and pain of the ear which proceed through cold.

But if theſe foreſaid things will not help then take one ounce and an half of Sallet oyl, ſteep one quarter of an ounce of Turbith a whole day therein, then let it ſeethe ſomewhat, and temper one ounce of the oyl of Lillies amongſt it, *Euphorbium*, Bever cod, of each one drach. uſe it as the former; this diſperſeth the matter mightily.

In like ſort it is oftentimes found, that the water which runneth out of the green Aſh wood laid on the fire, doth help marveiouſly if one let a drop or twain fall into the ear.

Here before is an oyl alſo deſcribed which is made with Beetles, which are called in Latine *Scarabæi*, the which in time of need is alſo to be uſed: theſe beaſts do flye in the evenings alwayes in Sommer.

Item, take the ſalve *Baſilicum*, melt it in the oyl of Lillies, or the ſalve *Martiaton* molten in the oyl of Spike, and rub it all over about the impoſtume.

Bathing is alſo very meet with warm herbs wherein Stechas, Camomil, and Bay berries be decocted: but firſt to purge with the pils *Cochia*, otherwiſe it is not commodious.

And if ſo be this impoſtume would fiſtulate, then temper Oxe gall with as much urine of a young boy, and drop it into the ear: or take the oyl of Rue, Hens greaſe, and Oxe gall, of each half an ounce, Swines bread one quarter of an ounce, Cumin one drachme, both beaten: let theſe ſeethe in two ounces of Vinegar until the Vinegar be conſumed, whereof being ſtrained, you ſhall twice a day drop into the ear.

Item, take wine wherein white Frankincenſe is ſodden.

Another; Take red wine and honey, of each half an ounce; white Hellebore one drachme and an half, ſteep a linnen teint therein, and ſtick it in the ear. For this is alſo good whatſoever is deſcribed for the fiſtula of the eye.

Outward sores of the ears. §. 4.

ABout the eares do also ingender more kinds of outward swellings, which are called *Parotida* or *Gemelli*. For that commonly there cometh one under each ear, chiefly in the time of the plague, whereof is more at large described in the fifth part. These are somewhat perilous, not onely in the time of plague, but also hurtful for the brains at other times, for that they be causes not onely of frantickneſſe, but also of death. In like manner also if the matter descendeth towards the throat, it doth sometimes cause a squinancy, whereby the patient cometh otherwhiles in great peril, and might be strangled therewith.

These foresaid swellings may proceed from the blood *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and *Melancholia*: the signs of blood are fumes and hardneſſe, if it be wrung with the finger, the place where the finger was sheweth white, and in the twinckling of an eye spreadeth with red: also with heavy breath and ill swallowing. If the grief do come through Cholera, or of the subtileſt blood, then there is a byting pain and great heat, without any impediment either of breathing or swallowing. But if it proceed of Phlegma, then is there a little pain in the feeling, without heat or great redneſſe. As the other be, the Melancholia giveth great hardneſſe and little pain, and is leaden cloured: these are to be cured as followeth. First, if the patient be of a plethorick constitution, then the matter of the same is to be avoided and drawn away with Clisters and letting of blood: also to be holpen with setting of cups, especially if there be no head-ach or Ague at hand, that thereby one do not aggravate pain with pain; but if there be great pain with it, then use outwardly warming and moistening things, as butter, the yolks of eggs, sodden Hollihock roots, Swines greaſe, Figs, Muscilage of Linseed, of Fenegreek seed, oyl of Olives, warm water and such like. And if the same swelling incline to maturation, then make a plaister of these things following which are in a readineſſe, as Milduſt, Linseeds meal, and Fenegreek meal, or Wheat meal; temper them with water wherein Mallowes, Hollihock roots, Figs or Fenegreek are decocted; these things do mollifie, consume and maturate: when they be ripe they are to be opened, the matter is to be let out, and the issue so long continueth untill all the Ulcer be freſh, and well mundified. But if the swelling be caused through cold, then are hotter things to be used for to maturate it, as oyl of Camomil, oyl of Lillies, and old Swines blood tempered amongst it, or Goats dung, Sheeps dung sodden in wine, and a little honey put thereto. This is very forcible also, Oxe tallow with honey, oyl of Lillies, the juyce of Onions, Linseed oyl, Peaſe meal, and such like tempered together.

But if the malady be old, then muſt strong things be used therennto, as Ireos, Pigeon dung, of the foresaid greaſe or tallow of old beasts, for how much older the beast is, so much the better is the greaſe.

For this is also good, Badgers greaſe, Bears suet, the Marrow of Harts bones: of these foresaid things may plaisters be made: take which you will, of the gum *Ammoniacum*, the fatneſſe of Sheeps wool, *Sal gemmæ*, and such like, are you to mix amongst it.

Of the bleeding at the Eares. §. 5.

THis unaccustomed bleeding of the eares doth come of falling, or of blowes on the head, but seldom of superfluous blood, but often through very subtile blood, the which openeth the veins in and about the ear: if it come in hot Agues, or in great pain of the head, then followeth great ease afterwards: if it be caused of falling or blowes, then is the head vein to be opened on the same side, for that thereby the blood will be drawn down and hindred that it congeal not in the ear, and so cause an impoſtume; if there be pain with it, use oyl of Camomil, Wormwood, or the juyce of the same with so much wine wherein hot bread is steepd, and so laid over all the ear.

Item seeth galls in vinegar and water, and drop thereof in the ear. Take a whole Pomgranat, seethe it in vinegar, and wring it out well. Also for this is good Hares greaſe decocted in vinegar. But if you be afeaid of any gored or congealed blood in the eares, for that use the juyce of Garlick tempered with vinegar. If there be any heat with it, then take the juyce of Shepheards purſe, the juyce of Plantan, the juyce of Houſleek, which you will, tempered with wine. These are cooling and astringent.

Item,

Item, take both the kidneyes of a Steer or Oxe, with some of the tallow about it; salt it meetly well, let them rost, of the fat which droppeth off, put a little into the ears. All that is also described in the eighth Chapter and § 7. of the bleeding of the nose, that is also very fit for this purpose.

Make little rolles of my yellow Balsom, and put them into the ears as far as you can. *Prob.* It is made as I have said of Honey, Wax, Rosine, Venice Turpentine, and Hogs lard.

Or you may foment the ears first with the decoction of Plantain, Shepherds purse, brambles, apples, prunes, or sloes, Roses, &c.

Or of Acatia, Hypocistis, flowers of Pomgranates, Roses, Sumach, Mastick, Frankincense, seethe them in wine and vinegar, then strain it, and use it for the eares.

Of little worms that grow in the Eares, and that do creep into them outwardly, and such like. §. 6.

WOrms do grow as well in the ears as in the nostrils, although that the same be not so common; these do make an itch with great pain. Besides that, it happeneth oftentimes if one do lye upon the bad ear, that the worms do creep or fall out. Against this are you to use any of these juyces following; of Mints, of Peach leaves, Peach kernels, and water wherein Aloes is dissolved, put of each a drop in the ear; for that they kill all worms whether it be that they be grown or crept into them, as fleas or earwigs. The same doth also the juyce of Wormwood, of Lupines, of Caper roots, Coriander roots, which have therein an especial property; and also the juyce of green nut shells: some do decoct in wine a little Hellebore, and so drop it therein. But if these maladies may otherwise be cured, then is the use of these roots to be omitted.

Item, take burning nettles, stamp them and strain out the juyce, put it into the ears, and give him to eat of the root, it will help immediately. Take Aloe half an ounce, Coloquint, Agaricus, of each half a drach. beat them together, and temper them with hot water, bruise them and use as aforesaid. Take a slice of well tosted bread, hold it to the ear, then will the worms, fleas, earwigs and such like come out: or hold the ear wherein the worms be, on the vapour of hot new milk, then do the worms creep after the vapour of the said milk.

Another. Take one quarter of an ounce of Wine, Honey, and oyl of Roses, of each three drach. temper them together with the brayed whites of two eggs, make cotten moist therein, and stop the ear therewith, lye about an hour on that side, afterwards pluck it suddenly out, then will the worm hang upon it: the same doth also the wooll steeped in honey. Item, set a great boxing cup or glasse on the ear, then will it be drawn out whatsoever is within it.

Obstruction or stopping of the Eares through inward and outward causes. §. 7.

IF the Ears be stopt, and thereby the hearing hindred, the same must proceed either through an inward or outward cause. The inward cause may be some tough slime or moisture, worms growing in them, congealed blood, matter, impostumations, excrescence of flesh, warts and such like. Outward causes are if there come any thing into them whereof we will speak severally. Do now these obstructions proceed of excrescences, warts, and such like, which one cannot see nor come at with the hand? then it is taken to be incurable: as contrariwise if it may be seen, it may very well be cured, the which is committed to the Chyrurgians, otherwise the oyl of Bay, Ox gall, Hemp oyl, are very good, each used apart. If then the stopping be through slime, matter, or any other uncleanesse, mollifie it with the oyl of bitter Almonds, or drop honey water warm into it two dayes together, and oftentimes use the one instead of the other: afterwards take a warm tile, sprinkle it with wine, cover it with a cloth, lay the ear upon it, to the end that the matter may run out. For this is also good Goats gall tempered with oyl, or Scorpion oyl. For the stopping with worms, you have heretofore in §. 6. the remedies.

If any thing be gotten into the Ears from without. §. 8.

THese things are of two sorts, as it also happeneth, that the one child doth put peason, small stones, or cherry-stones into the ear of another; the other be soft things, as water, Fleas, Earwigs, and such like. If this happen, then is not the same to be slept upon or delayed, for those things require help and advice with all speed, for there is great danger imminent, especially if that which is cropen therein be of any bad nature, for of that cometh great pain, and consequently great sickneſſe.

For this accident, first one of these foresaid Oyles is to be dropped therein, afterwards to bathe, and to sit there a good while, move neesing, and to hold in the breath for to drive out whatsoever is in the ears: but if this will not help, then is the same to be done with manual operation with instruments. But if that which is gotten in be liquid and soft, as water; then use oyl again, and bend the neck alwaies towards the side of the diseaſe, and exercise your self with leaping and jumping: and if so be that it come not out thereby, then endeavour your self again to neesing. Also you may often cleanse the ear with an Ear-picker covered with wooll, or with a piece of a spunge, or to tye the pith of Eldern wood at a threed, and so to thrust it into the ear, or through a little pipe let the moisture be sucked out, the which in like manner may be done with the worms. One may also hold the ear over the vapour of hot wine, wherein Camomil, Linseed, Anniseeds, and such like are decocted. But if fleas or worms be gotten into them, they do raise great pain through their jumbling, especially the fleas; for the which take a tent and anoint it with a little cleaving salve made of Turpentine and Rosine, to the end that the fleas being fast thereat, may remain hanging at it, and so be drawn out.

If this cannot be effected, then use that which is heretofore described in §. 6. of the worms in the ear, and wherewith they be to be destroyed.

Of the diminishing of hearing. §. 9.

THe diminishing of hearing may proceed of many sundry occasions: the outward causes are these, strong fumes, unexpected, vehement, and sudden noise; as when the thunder striketh one, oftentimes hath been seen that some thereby have lost their hearing, and have been starkdeaf. In like manner the South wind doth also cause it, by reason that it filleth the brains with moisture, whereby the sense of hearing is enfeebled. What now concerneth deafneſſe, and the diminishing of the hearing, thereupon do all learned men first conclude, That if we be born with it, or that it continue the space of two years, that there is no hope at all left for to cure the same: and if the same do proceed of any moisture, water, matter, or other cause, whereby the hearing is weakened, that may be known by these means ensuing.

Take a spunge, make it very dry and warm, bind it in a double linnen cloth, and when you go to bed lay it under the ear; if you then in the morning see the cloth spotted, then may you well adjudge, that there is some matter in the ear whereby the hearing is hindered; but if the cloth be clean and fair, then dependeth it on another cause.

If that this diseaſe do then come through heat, yet without any impostumation, the which thereby may easily be discerned; if the Patient complain of no heavineſſe, but much rather of lightneſſe in the head, the heat perceived in the feeling may well abide cold things, and hot things very ill: where this is found and perceived, then to take away the great heat is first to be endeavoured, and to drop those things ensuing into it luke warm.

The oyl of Roses, oyl of Violets, oyl of water Lillies, temper them together, or use each alone. Item, take a Pomgranate, wring out the juyce, put vinegar and oyl of Roses unto it, of each a spoonful, pownded Frankincense one drach and a half, let it seethe a little, and drop it therein.

Take the water of Lettice, the water of a cut vine, mixe them together, or use each alone, the brayed whites of eggs with womans milk (mingled together, or each used alone) that giveth suck to a maiden child, are also very good: the juyce of Housleek alone, or tempered with other things is also good.

Take Mallowes, Hollihock roots, Lettice, Purslain, Willow leaves, Nightshade, of each half a handful, let them seethe together, and receive the vapour.

But

But if this deafneſſe be, as it chiefly happeneth, through cold matter, which cannot be withnot wind, then is the Patients head alwaies heavy, the face puffed up or ſwollen, caſteth out much moiſture through the mouth and noſe: For this is the head vein to be opened, certain potions to be uſed, as Oximel of Squills, or ſyrup of Stechas, one ounce and a half, in a broth wherein Marjoram gentle, Hyſſop and Fitches be decocted; and afterwards to purge with the pills *Cochiæ* every 14. day once, in the weight of a French crown. Some do uſe the *Hieralogodion*; two dayes after purging he is to gargariſe with this decoction following.

Take Hyſſop, Marjoram, field Mints, of each half a handful, Calamus, Muſtard ſeed, of each three drach. ſtamp and beat it with honey unto a confection, take thereof one quarter of an ounce, temper it in eight ounces of water, wherein Dane weed, Fullers graſſe, or Licebane is decocted. Alſo to provoke neeſing is very meet; how that is to be effected, look in the firſt Regiſter.

In like manner, Maſtick doth draw out much ſlime. Alſo Ginger and *Piretrum*, oyl of bitter Almonds alone is to be dropt into the ear. oyl of Bay tempered with a little oyl of Roſes, and ſome Pepper amongſt it, or the juyce of an Onion, of Radiſh, of Gatlick, of Daffodils (which you will) as much ſtrong vinegar with it, and for every ounce 4. grains of *Euphorbium*, tempered amongſt it: The vapour of water wherein Wormwood is decocted, and the warm vapour of Vinegar received into the ear openeth all obſtructions, and conſumeth all moiſtures.

Take Hares gall, Fox fat, molten Pitch, of each a little quantity, temper them together, it is very good for deafneſſe. In like ſort Sheeps gall, Sallad oyl, the oyl of bitter Almonds, and wine decocted together untill the wine be evaporated.

Of this enſuing it is ſaid, that it hath holpen deafneſſe, which hath continued 30 years; and they that find it ſo may juſtly ſay, *Probatum eſt.*

Fill a bottel with the bloſſomes of Walnuts, ſtop it faſt with wax that it do not putrifie, and that there come no vapour out of it, bury it in horſe dung, that it ſtand covered all about three quarters of a yard; let it ſtand ſo a whole year: when you then open it, then ſhall you find therein a kind of oyl or moiſtneſſe, that muſt you ſtrain out, and ſet in the Sun certain dayes together, then put a drop thereof into the Ear, and you ſhall quickly find amendment: At the firſt opening it hath a loathſome ſteneh: therefore muſt the Ears and noſtrils be ſtopped, and to eſchew as much as is poſſible the receiving of this vapour.

But if the infirmity of the hearing do come out of any uncleanneſſe, then is the ſame to be remedied with the things deſcribed in this Chapter, in the third Section, of the Impoſtume of the Ears; or elſe if it be needful, to uſe the manual operations for it: and if ſo be that there be no matter appearing, and that the diſeaſe doth breed through repletion, or of ſome great former ſickneſſe, then are the Ears to be fomented with the water wherein Marjoram gentle, Wormwood, Stechas, Mints and Marjoram is decocted; for that this vapour doth conſume and expell all winds and thick vapours, which do ſtop the conduits of the hearing. Alſo one pound of freſh or new Sallad oyl ſodden, and the vapour thereof received into the Ears is alſo very convenient.

Trochiſces.

Further you are to prepare theſe Trochiſces; Take Coloquint half an ounce, Boras one ſcrup. Bever cod, Ariſtology, the juice of Wormwood, of each 3. ß. the root of Coſtus 15. gra. *Euphorbium* ten grains, Cowgalls as much as is needful for to faſhion Trochiſces thereof; when you will uſe them, then break it with the oyl of bitter Almonds, and drop thereof into the ear.

This medicine is very fit for all infirmities or diminiſhing of the hearing, which proceedeth of wind and flegmatick humours.

Item, take Aloe, Coloquint, Euphorbium, of each one ſcrup. temper it all together with Cow gall, afterwards divide it in ſmall pieces and let them dry; when you will uſe this, then bruiſe it on a ſtone, and mixe it with the juice of Radiſh, and ſo drop it lukewarm into the ear, and anoint it alſo therewith. Item, take oyl of Bay, and ſeethe therein a caſt skin of a Snake.

Take beaten Bay-berries half an ounce, ſeethe them in the oyl of Lillies; afterwards wring it through a cloth, and uſe it as before.

Or take Balſom, oyl of Juniper, the oyl of bitter Almonds, temper them together, or uſe each alone.

Item, take the juyce of Sage, as much as you pleaſe, temper it with Ox gall, or Gooſe greaſe, or the fat of an Eele.

Item, take oyl of Scorpions, of ſweet Almonds, and Wormwood, of each a like quantity, mixe them together, or uſe each alone. The ſame doth alſo the herb Coriander decocted with Onions and water.

Or take Ants eggs, pownd them, and put thereto a freſh Hares Gall, as much honey as both of them, temper them together, and uſe them luke-warm.

Item, take a reaſonable big Radiſh, wind it about with wet towe, roſt it under the aſhes, cleanſe it, and afterward ſtamp it, wring out the juyce, then put as much Sallad oyl unto it, and uſe it as the other.

Take Oxe gall, the juyce of blew Flowerdeluce, oyl of bitter Almonds, of each a like quantity; drop it warm into the ear. Take alſo the juyce of Peach leaves, the juyce of Wormwood, of each a like much: This is very forcible for the impoſtumation of the ears, and pain of the ſame.

Maſter *Triſtrams* water deſcribed before in the diſcourſe of the face, §. 1. is very good for this infirmity of the hearing being dropt into them, and uſed otherwiſe.

But if this diſeaſe be cauſed of too much faſting, or too much watching, whereby the face is clean fallen away, and waxen lean, and the eyes ſtand deep in the head, then muſt one bathe oftentimes, eat well, and drink more then before, ſleep longer; to pour oftentimes upon the head warm water and oyl, and to keep it moiſt.

The tenth Chapter
of the Lips.

IN the face is comprehended the mouth that outwardly doth not appear in ſight, but only the lips, which do hide all that is contained therein, and accordingly are deſcribed among the inward members.

The uſe of the foreſaid lips is diverſe: Firſt, and before all, they are moſt needful for the ſpeech, therefore they alſo by nature are wholly moveable and light, yea made more ſwift to move then any other muſcle of the body: ſo that juſtly they may be called neither skin nor fleſh only, but a muskly skin. They do cover (I ſay) and ſhut the mouth, to the end there come nothing into it againſt ones will; alſo that they might cover the teeth from all cold ayr, and whatſoever elſe; they do retain the ſpettle, that otherwiſe would alwaies drivel apparantly out of the mouth. So do they alſo keep in the meat, the which the tongue doth thruſt amongſt the teeth, and might fall out of the mouth. Laſtly, both for man and beaſts they are behoveful to draw in the drink.

The learned do aſcribe four kinds of maladies unto the lips, as chops and clifts, impoſtumation and quaverings: others do write onely of the chopping and the ſwelling, as hereafter ſhall appear.

Of the chops or clifts of the Lips. §. 1.

THis is otherwhiles cauſed through falls, ſtrokes, great heat or cold, whether it be inward or outward, and very often of nipping cold winds: the ſigns of the outward cauſes are to be perceived by the Patient. Be they then provoked through ſharp hot rheumes which do fall out of the head? then is there a manifeſt heat and drought in the lips: in like manner alſo in the forehead and in the noſe; if there be no ſuch, then is it a ſign that it doth proceed of vapor. If now theſe chops proceed of a burnt matter, as ſalt *Phlegma*, *Cholira*, or *Melancholia*, then are the ſame to be prepared for expulſion, and to uſe 3. or 4. mornings together the ſirup of Fumitory, of Wormwood, or *Oxyſuccharo* tempered with Endive water, or ſuch like, and then to purge with theſe pills following, which are approved eſpecial good for all ſuch burning matter: Take the rindes of yellow Mirobalans, *Chebuli*, Sene, Epithymum, of each ℈.2. Maſtick ℈. ß. Agaricus, and Rubarb, of each 1.℈. *Diagridion* 2. ſcrup. Fumitory 3. ß. make thereof pills with the juyce of Fumitory: one may

give

give of theſe pills one drach. unto one drach. and a half. Afterwards lay a Nut upon hot coles, untill the ſhell be ſomewhat blackiſh, then wring the oyl out of the kernels, and anoint the clefts therewith.

Item, take Dragagant or gum of Cherry trees (which you will) in the mouth, untill it begin to diſſolve, afterwards rub it with the tongue upon the clefts, or diſſolve it in Roſe-water, and ſo uſe it.

Item, take freſh Butter, the muſcilage of Fleaworr, Calves ſuet, Ducks greaſe, honey, oyl of Roſes, of each a like much, melt them and temper well amongſt them the well brayed white of an egg and Peaſe meal.

Item, burn the herb Fern to aſhes, it healeth marvellous well; or take Wax, Hens greaſe, of each half an ounce, Turpentine ℥. 1. Dragagant ℨ. ß. Galls one quarter of an ounce, melt them all together with a little oyl, and mix the reſt amongſt it.

This following alſo is altogether wholſome; Take the Caul of the Hart or Stag, lay it the ſpace of three dayes in lee, waſh it every day with freſh water, and renew the lee every day, let it dry; the third day cut it ſmall, and melt it by the fire: then temper amongſt it half ſo much Harts ſewet, Ceruſſe bruiſed ſmall ſix ounces, Camphire ℨ. 1. or beaten Ginger and Cloves, temper them together; but if ſo be that the chops do eat in, then leave out the Ceruſſe.

Pomade.

Pomade is eſpecial good and ſafe. Take the ſewet of a Hart, freſh Butter or Barrowes greaſe, of each three ounces, let them melt together on the fire, put thereto four or five ſmall cut apples, alſo white wine ſix ounces; let all theſe ſeethe together, untill that the apples be ſoft; then bruiſe them well together, and put Camphire unto it, Cinamom, Cloves, Nutmegs, of each half a drach. beaten ſmall together, alſo Muſcus four graines, Roſewater ℥. 2. ſeethe theſe again in another pot in boyling water, untill all the Roſewater be waſted away: afterwards wring it through a cloth, and waſh it ſo long with Roſe-water, untill it be white. This *Pomade* is alſo good for all chops of the hands and otherwiſe. For this is the Poplar oyntment alſo good.

Item, take white Wax, Hens greaſe, the ſewet of a Weather ſheep, the juyce of Rue, of Camomil, Dragagant, of each a like quantity, temper them together.

Take Gum, freſh oyl of Almonds and Hens greaſe, of each a like much, Wax as much as is needful; theſe two laſt are alſo ſpecial good for the impoſtumation of the nipples and Womens breaſts, although they give ſuck unto children.

The blood of the lips (do the Phyſitians call *Hemorrhoide*) it is to be healed like the ulceration and bleeding of the noſe, which hath been ſhewed in the eight Chapter.

The trembling or quivering of the lips is commonly a meſſenger of imminent vomiting, the which afterwards ceaſeth again: what is to be uſed for this quivering, look in the Regiſter.

If the lips be hot and ſwollen; for that do ſome adviſe that the navel is to be anointed with Sallad oyl, the which is eaſily to be approved. You have in many places elſe what is to be done to all ſuch hot ſwellings: of the inverſion of the lips, ſhall be ſpoken hereafter amongſt the diſeaſes of the mouth.

The eleventh Chapter.

of the Beard.

THis is the laſt part of the face which one ſeeth outwardly, and alſo a goodly ornament of man; therefore men do deſire to have it grow, and ſtayed from falling out.

For the growing of the Beard. §. 1.

FOr to make the Beard grow thick and ſpeedily, take Southernwood, Squinanth, of each a handful, pour oyl of Dill upon it, ſtop it cloſe, and let it ſtand a night; then afterwards ſeethe it in water two or three houres ſpace, temper then more amongſt it, about half an ounce of pownded Southernwood: after this ſtrain it through a cloth, and anoint the place therewith, where you deſire to have a beard.

Another.

Take oyl of Dill two ounces, of Southernwood half a handful, Squills two ſcrup. Wine three ounces, let theſe ſeethe together untill all the wine be conſumed, and then ſtrain it thorow a cloth and uſe it as before. Look for this alſo in the third Chapter, §. 1.

Againſt the falling out of the Beard. §. 2.

TAke as many Bees as you pleaſe, kill them and lay them in the Sun or elſewhere, beat them to powder, make with Sallad oyl a ſalve thereof, anoint therewith the bald place. Take five drach. of Wax, the oyl of *Palma Chriſti* ſeeds two drach. and a half, liquid Styrax, and Myrrhe, of each ℥.3. *Laudanum* ℥.1. *Euphorbium*, wild Rue, Gum, *Cantharides*, of each ℥.3. powdered Bees or Waſpes two ounces; melt all that is to be moulten, and temper the pownded things amongſt it; therewith anoint the place of the beard when you go to bed, but chafed well firſt; and in the morning waſh it off again; let alſo the beard be often ſhaven away.

This enſuing is alſo good for the hair of the head, and of the Eyebrowes.

Take the oyl of Behen, ſeethe *Cantharides* therein, whereof the head and wings be abated, make it ſmell well with Muſcus and Amber, and uſe it as before.

Even as of all outward accidents of the head and the face, mention hath been made before; ſo will we now alſo ſpeak of all inward diſeaſes and members of the ſame. And firſt of the Brains.

The twelfth Chapter.

The Brains and all that concerneth them.

LIke as is already alledged, the brains are the uppermoſt and chiefeſt of all the inward members of mans body, a place and abode of the underſtanding, memory and judgment, the which are ſhapen, and by nature faſhioned with many kinds of wonderful, ſeveral, and proper ſhapes, for they be without blood, without fleſh, ſoft and congealed together like as a ſcum, alſo as marrow, moiſt, cold, and of themſelves inſenſible; where they nevertheleſſe through the ſinews, do impart and ſend to all other members the ſenſibleneſſe and motion. With this part of the body are all beaſts indued (which have much or little blood) but moſt of all men above all beaſts, and the men more then the women: the foreſaid brains are alſo moiſter in man then in any beaſt.

Hence do alſo ſpring all the ſinews, that thence (as is ſpecified) do ſpread themſelves thorow the back over all the whole body, ſtrengthening and conjoying it, making it moveable and ſenſible. Unto the brains do alſo ſtretch and reach the beginning of all veines out of the heart, and there do they end: from thence cometh alſo ſleep, which imparteth reſt unto the whole body.

It is alſo the ſecond part (next to the heart) that is formed in the mothers womb.

This precious and tender part is alſo ſubject unto many accidents, which bring with them very great inconveniences; like as for example, if ſo be that the brains through falls or ſtrokes be annoyed or moleſted; then doth it oftentimes come to paſſe, yea commonly, that the Patient becometh mute and dumb: like as alſo in the dead palſey the members are altogether nummed or utterly lamed, and ſo loſſe of underſtanding enſueth. But before that we do come to theſe infirmities, we purpoſe here to admoniſh, that before the deſcription of other diſeaſes of the head, thoſe things are not diſcovered, which might be convenient for the brains; as Neeſing, Treacle, Mithridate, Eyebright wine, conſerve of the ſame, and ſuch like. With theſe may be alſo well annexed, all that ſtrengtheneth the brains, dryeth the ſuperfluous moiſture, taketh away heat, and whatſoever might be elſe. But becauſe our whole book is full with ſuch like things, therefore is it the leſſe needful for to write much thereof.

For

For to dry the Brains.

FOr to dry and ſtrengthen the Brains, you have amongſt other, many and ſundry remedies. When you go to bed, ſwallow down two or three little pieces of Frankincenſe, this ſtrengtheneth and dryeth the brains marvellous much. The ſmell of Sugar is alſo very good received at the noſe.

Certain Aromatical wines which in the laſt part are deſcribed with their operations, and other more, as Calamus, compounded waters, Maſter *Triſtrams* water, are alſo very good for this uſe.

And eſpecially this following: Take Ireos ℥.3. Lavender flowers, Roſemary flowers and the herb, Roſe leaves, of each ℥.1.ß. red Styrax, Benzuin, of each one ounce, *Nigella*, prepared Coriander, Epithymum, Stechas, of each ℥.1. make a powder thereof, furre a cap therewith and wear it on the head. You ſhall have alſo many more ſuch like, whereas we ſhall diſcourſe of the giddineſſe of the head.

But if you deſire any cooling things for the brains, whereto you have not onely commodious things to lay thereon, in the firſt Chapter, and §. 2. but alſo in other places where we diſcourſe of the Ague and Plague, as much as concerneth their vertues, and infections of the brains; we will begin with that coſtly treaſure of Memory.

Of the Memory. §. 1.

MEmory is a retaining of acts either heard or ſeen: Or Memory is a comprehenſion of the things over-paſt; the which the mind, as preſent, doth keep and retain.

Item, Memory is a retaining, eſtabliſhing, and preſerving of matters which have been conceived in the ſpirit. If ſo be that this memory be hurt, then followeth forgetfulneſſe of matters which be paſt and done. And there be two ſorts deſcribed thereof by the Phyſitians; The firſt they do call the greater *Lethargus*, the ſleeping diſeaſe, whereof we will ſpeak apart hereafter. The other is leſſe and without Ague, that may in time ſo take the upper hand, that not only the memory will be enfeebled, but alſo that men loſe their underſtanding, and become childiſh and fooliſh. The cauſe of this is commonly a bad and cold complexion: otherwhiles alſo adjoyning with cold and moiſture which overruleth the hinder part of the head. If it be cauſed only through cold, then it is *Stupor*, aſtoniſhment: Theſe ſick perſons do ſpeak neither of things paſt, nor yet things to come; they care for nothing, they ſleep and wake meetly, they feel no drought of the tongue, nor yet of the noſe.

Lethargus.

Cold brain.

Stupor.

But if this diſeaſe be cauſed through cold and dryth, then can the Patient ſleep, thinketh well upon things which be over-paſt, but not of any thing that is preſent: the mouth and noſe are alwayes dry. If it come through moiſture and cold, then it is the ſleeping diſeaſe, which forgetteth all former things wholly and throughly, and all preſent very quickly: they have very moiſt brains; ſo that the moiſture runneth out of the noſe and mouth. If heat and dryth be cauſes, then cometh it to *Mania*, that is, the right madneſſe.

Cold and dry.

Cold & moiſt.

Mania.

To the end now, that this precious treaſure of memory may be continued and kept: thereof you ſhall have ſufficient inſtructions which you find of the ſleeping ſickneſſe, aſtoniſhment and madneſſe; ſo that we will only ſpeak here of that kind of forgetfulneſſe which is cauſed of cold and moiſture together, and is not an abſolute *Lethargus*: nevertheleſſe doth reign moſt.

For this is to be applyed for a general rule to defend the head from all ſuperfluous moiſture, how the ſame is to be effected you have many and ſundry meanes, eſpecially there whereas it is diſcourſed of the cold pain of the head, in Chap. 1. §. 2. and alſo hereafter where we ſhall ſpeak of giddineſſe.

But to the end we have an orderly rule for to prevent this forgetfulneſſe, therefore we will here preſcribe an orderly means for an example.

If this diſeaſe proceed of an exceſſive uncleanneſſe, ſurfetting of meat, of drink, of cold, and ſuch like outward cauſes, then are they to be ſhunned, and good government obſerved, whereof we will once again ſpeak more at large.

For this, muſt alſo ſtrong Cliſters be uſed, take *Conſolida Saracenica*, Betony, S. Johns wort, both kinds of Sage, both ſorts of Centory, Roſemary, Stechas, Flouramour, Camomil, of each half a handful, Baulme a handful, Coloquint one drach. and a half, all

theſe things are to be bounden in a cloth and ſodden in ſufficient water, afterwards wrung out, and to take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, wherein ſhall be tempered *Hiera Picra*, *Benedicta*, *Laxativa*, of each five drach. Salt one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Lillies two ounces and a half. This Cliſter (as is expreſſed) is ſtrong; will you then have a milder? then uſe them that be deſcribed for the cold pain of the head: for a preparative potion is meet *Oximel Squilliticum*, with the decoction of Galangale, or Calamus. Afterwards purge with theſe pills following, take *Pillulæ Cochiæ* one drach. Coloquint, Maſtix, Bdellium, of each half a drach. make pills thereof with the juyce of Baulm, you may give them all together to a ſtrong man, although they be ſtrong. Hereafter you may uſe certain dayes Treacle, Mithridate, or *Aureæ Alexandrinæ* one drach. at one time, afterwards purge again with *Hiera Logadion*, or *Simplici*, according to the importance of the matter. You muſt anoint the head with Bever cod diſſolved in vinegar, and oyl of Lillies, or rub the neck with ſome of theſe waters of life hereafter deſcribed, like as moſt of all thoſe waters are requiſite for this uſe which be deſcribed in the eight part. For this, is alſo convenient, Ginger, Maſtick, *Piretrum* chewed or bounden in a cloth by reaſon of his heat, they draw out much moiſture. In like manner are things of a good ſavour or ſmell to be holden before the noſe, and thoſe that be of a hot nature, as *Muſcus*, *Ambra*, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloves, Nutmegs, Indi *Spica*, Flouramour, and ſuch like ſavours: take Frankincenſe, Pepper, Cipres roots, and Myrrhe, of each a like much; make with decocted honey a conſerve thereof, give thereof a drachme at one time.

The ancient Phyſitians commend much to take every morning one drach. of Frankincenſe, Pepper half a ſcrup. and that with a draught of wine.

For the Memory.

After evacuation and cleanſing of the head, R. of Ginger, long Pepper, Galangal, ana. ʒ.1. Cloves, Cubebs, ana. ʒ.ß. mix Indica ʒ.3.ß. make them into powder, and put them into a bag and hang it in a pottle of wine, boyl it a little, reſerve it in a cloſe veſſel, and let the bag remain in it, take of this ʒ.5. or 6. at once.

Order of Dyet.

FOr forgetfulneſſe of cold and moiſt cauſes, are alwayes warming and drying things to be uſed; the dwelling place muſt be clear and clean, and carnal copulation as much as is poſſible to be refrained, and that not only therein, for it is ſeldom found that they that be immoderate therein, have a good memory or underſtanding: Muſtard, Garlick, and all things which be of cold nature: in like manner, all exceſſe of meat and drink is alſo very hurtful: likewiſe alſo Mutton, Marrow of Mutton bones, ſleep immediately after meat, and ſuch like: to the contrary all dry fruits which be parched, as Haſel nuts, and Cheſtnuts be very good.

Alſo all Fowles are very meet for this, and the brains of the ſame, whereof we have made mention in the other deſcription of dyet, where we have ſpoken of the memory, ordinary going to ſtool, and making water, &c. moderate mirth, freſh water wherein Baulme, Fennel, Bay leaves, and ſuch like are decocted.

The head may alſo twice a week be waſhed with lee wherein Camomil, Roſemary, Sage, Bawlme, Betony, or which one will, is ſteeped or decocted.

Like as for example to be followed, here we deſcribe for theſe matters.

A good Powder.

TAke three ounces of Sene leaves, Zedoary, Cumin, Parſley, and Dill ſeed, of each one ounce, Ginger half an ounce, Cloves, Nutmegs, Calamus, Galangal, Pimpernel roots, Sage, Rue, Valerian, Anniſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar three ounces, pownd all ſmall, and temper them together, take thereof in the morning and evening about one drach at one time; this powder doth not only ſtrengthen the brains, but alſo the memory: it is alſo good againſt giddineſſe of the head, cleanſeth blood, and is good for the ſtomach, ſtrengtheneth the womb, preſerveth the lights from all ſuperfluous humours withſtandeth all diſeaſes of the heart, pain of the liver, of the milt, of the gall, driveth away the cough, maketh a good colour and a clear face.

It is alſo good to be uſed againſt all ſwellings, and againſt all peſtilential air: holden in the mouth, it taketh away all tooth-ach, ſtinking breath, and keepeth men in good health.

The water of *Cardans Benedictus* is ſaid to ſtrengthen the memory, to take away the pain of the head, to amend the giddineſſe, and all other accidents of the head, if ſo be that one take the water or the decoction of the herb every morning two or three ounces at one time.

Coriander ſeed and bitter Almonds confected with Sugar, do ſtrengthen alſo the memory and the brains.

You have heretofore in the ſecond Chapter and firſt §. of two lee bags which ſtrengthen memory, and in like manner in the eight Chapter 8. §. of the oyl of Bricks, which is alſo requiſite for it. Secondly, there be alſo prepared for this many compounded wines, as the wine of Marjoram gentle, which not onely ſtrengtheneth the memory, but alſo cauſeth it, if were loſt, to return again.

Another means for to ſtrengthen the memory.

THere was by our time at Canterbury here in England, a Cannon, a Doctor of Divinity and alſo in the Law, named *Johannes Coletus*, to whom by that time he was ſixteen years old, was an experiment imparted by a Chriſtened Jew, whereby he obtained ſuch a marvellous ſtrong memory, that he retained and kept all that ever he read in all his life time: the which when he was in his 39. years of age, he lying at the point of death, his friends prayed him to diſcloſe and reveal his ſecret remedy and experiment unto them: where he hath declared that before he had a very groſſe and hard underſtanding; but through the uſe of this experiment he afterwards obtained ſuch a ſharpe wit and memory, that he could not onely remember and hold in mind that which he read, but alſo al that he heard and ſaw; Inſomuch that he could recite by heart from word to word the *Decreta* Decretals the orders of all the Emperours lawes, with their expoſitions, *Ariſtotle* and other authors which he had ſeen and read. Alſo how many names that were reherſed before him, he could afterwards without miſſing one repeat them again.

Therefore may this experiment be reputed of a great value, and as a gift of God, becauſe that thereby men may with ſo little trouble attain unto ſo great a matter.

Firſt, the head is to be cleanſed with theſe things following: Take *Pirethrum*, Marjoram, Galangal, Ginger, Caraway, ſeed of broad Plantain, prepared white Muſtard ſeed, of each alike much: this being beaten groſſe together, and if this powder weigh about two ounces, then ſeethe it in a quart of water ſtopt cloſe too, when it hath now ſodden well, then put a quart of ſtrong wine unto it, and an ounce of clear honey, let it ſeethe again untill about two fingers breadth of the liquor be waſted: herewith are you once every morning (in the increaſing of the moon) to gargariſe well and many times, holding it long and warm in the mouth, to the end it may vapor up into the head.

Afterwards make this potion following: Take Ginger, long Pepper, of each one drachme, Galangal one ſcrup. Cloves, Cubebs, of each one drachme and an half, pownd them all together to powder, and bind them in a linnen cloth, let them ſeethe well together in two quarts of Wine ſtopt faſt as aforeſaid: afterwards let it ſtand covered untill it be clear, whereof you are to drink every morning faſting, and at evening going to bed a good draught, and that before you ſhall have anointed with the ſalve which ſhall hereafter be deſcribed. The vertue of this wine is for to draw a ſuperfluous moiſture out of the head.

This being done, then place your ſelf in Sommer time in the Sun, and in Winter ſeaſon by the fire, and kemb your head ſoftly a long time; ſo that thereby the pores may be opened: afterwards waſh your head with the water of Rue, and drink a good draught of wine, and thereupon eat a bit or twain of bread that hath been ſteeped in the wine, then faſt ſo unto the evening. Your ſupper muſt alſo be ſober, your ſleep quiet and undiſturbed: continue this many dayes together, the longer the better.

When now the veines be warm with kembing, then anoint the head and the temples with this ſalve following. Take white Lilies, Colwort leaves, wild Baulme, of each one drach: pownd them together, put them in a pot, powre therein two ounces of Sallet oyl, freſh butter as much as all the reſt, three ſpoonfuls of the ſpirit of wine (which hath been

rectified

rectified at leaſt four times) water of Rue, of Sage, of Celendine, of each two ſpoonfuls, old white wine five ſpoonfuls; temper them well together, ſet it ſo ſix or eight hours in a warm place, then ſtrain it through a cloth; afterwards ſeethe the liquor untill it be as thick as honey, (and that by a ſmall mild fire) then ſet it in the Sun ſo long till it be of the colour of Copper: This ſalve muſt be alwayes made betimes, and it can continue good the ſpace of two years. Alſo it behooveth to gather all the herbs for diſtillation when the dayes be at the longeſt: and then may alſo moſt meetly this ſalve be prepared. This ſalve muſt you (as is reherſed) uſe after that the head is purged, you muſt anoint well the hinder parts of the head and the temples with it; afterwards cover it with a leathern cap or hat ſo that the head may be warm that the ſaid ſalve may have her operation the better in the blood and brains. In the evening is the head to be waſhed with good warm wine, and one muſt keep a good diet, and uſe meats that be light of digeſtion, alſo uſe moderate drinking. This order is to be kept at the firſt by the ſpace of four dayes, and ſo to continue it the ſpace of a whole year, every eight weeks once two or three dayes together.

The next year afterward you may chuſe one day upon which it is good to take Phyſick, and then uſe this ſalve every three moneths once, when the Moon increaſeth: The third year it is ſufficient once in twelve moneths, and afterwards ſo long as you live, once in two years.

Of the giddineſſe of the head, and infirmity of the brain. §. 2.

THis diſeaſe is called of the Grecians *Scotomia*, and of the Latiniſts *Vertigo* which is a giddineſſe or ſwimming of the head; we call it alſo the ſwimming of the head, for that it ſeemeth, that all which one ſeeth runneth round about: or the ſight faileth when he will behold any thing, and he thinketh that he ſeeth ſwarming before his eyes many marvels, and things which be of ſtrange colours, yea it often hapeneth, that his eyes be very dark, and muſt fall to the ground; like as alſo it ſometimes hapneth to a ſound body, if they run too much about, or to ſuch as look too much downward from a great height, or upon a turning thing, or into running waters.

This diſeaſe do they chiefly get, that are wont to frequent much the Sun, and their heads have been overheated: It is alſo cauſed of the ſtomach, if that it be overcharged with any ſuperfluity, whereby the mouth of the ſtomach is harmed, and ſendeth ſome bad vapours towards the head, which do cauſe the ſwimming or giddineſſe.

In winter time, and when the wind is ſoutherly, then are all people more ſubject to this giddineſſe, then in dry ſommer: Of this giddineſſe the Phyſitians do make many kinds, like as alſo it is divers according to the nature of the humour whereof it is cauſed: but to ſpeak of the foreſaid giddineſſe, when any one thinketh that all that he ſeeth runneth round about, the ſight vaniſheth as he would fall to the ground, the face and the eyes wax red, the veines ſwell, the eares ſhew themſelves great and full of blood, thereby it may eaſily be adjudged, that it is cauſed through ſuperfluous blood in the head, the which troubleth and moleſteth the brains: therefore is this ſick perſon to procure preſently afterwards to open the vein behind the ear, & to let out three or four ounces of blood; for that is a certain remedy for this diſeaſe. And further, for all other ſpices of this ſwimming, of whatſoever cauſe that they may proceed; for if ſo be that this giddineſſe do continue long, it is much to be doubted, that the falling ſickneſſe or the dead palſey may come thereby. In like manner are boxing cups unpickt to be ſet above upon the head, in the neck, upon the ſhoulders, and on the legs. For this alſo are certain lotions of the feet to be uſed, made with herbs which do ſtrengthen the head, whereof before in the firſt Chapter §. 3. for the heat of the head, and in the ſecond Chapter §. 12. ſundry are deſcribed. But although theſe foreſaid veins do not appear and make ſhew, and nevertheleſſe the face were alwayes red, then muſt the median be opened, boxing cups, as is ſaid to be uſed, to moiſten the head with vinegar of Roſes, and with oyl of Roſes, and to eſchew all hot meats, much ſleep, long watching, to look from great height downwards, and ſuch like things; Lintels, milk, kids fleſh prepared with Verjuyce, ljuyce of Pomgranats, or with vinegar, roſted Pears or Apples after ſupper are very good for him: of herbs, Lettice and Purſlain with vinegar may he alſo eat well; for his drink he may alſo temper vinegar or the juyce of Pomgranats, Sugar water decocted with Fleawort, or any ſmall thin wines.

For

For purging are meet yellow Mirobalans, eſpecially if the giddineſſe be cauſed of *Chelera*, the which are thus to be uſed: Take one ounce and an half of yellow Mirobalans beaten groſſe, ſeethe them in eight ounces of water at the leaſt, put thereto one ounce of ſowre Dates, let them ſeethe together unto the half; thentemper amongſt it three or four ounces of ſirupe of Violets, or of Roſes, and ſo give it to the patient in the morning faſting.

Take ſix ounces of whay, lay therein to ſteep one drachme and an half of Rubarbe a whole night, wring it afterwards out, and give it to the ſick perſon cold or luke-warm.

Take ten dry Prunes, ſowre Dates one ounce, ſeethe them in ſix ounces of water, then take thereof three ounces, and mix amongſt them two drachmes and a half of the Electuary *Deſucco Roſarum*, and drink it warm.

Item, take ſowre Dates, Manna, of each one ounce, temper them with three or four ounces of Prune broth.

Alſo theſe pils following may be uſed: Take *Pillulæ fœtidæ, de Sarcocolla*, of each one ſcrup. temper them, and make thereof ſeven pils.

After the purging he is to keep him quiet, and to cover the belly with warm cloths. But if to this giddineſſe there happeneth no redreſſe in the face, nor any Ague, it may be concluded thereof; that the cauſe proceedeth of cold, whereof the matter lyeth in the ſtomach, which there provoketh the patient to wamblingand vomiting, whereto the patient is then to urge himſelf, thereby to be rid of it; and that through this means: Take Radiſhes, or Horſeradiſh, one ounce, the ſeed of Orage and of *Aſarabacca*, of each half an ounce, ſeethe all this in twelve ounces of water unto four ounces: unto this ſtrained decoction you are to add half an ounce of Oyl, Saffron one drachme, Vinegar four ounces, give thereof two ſpoonfuls in the evening after meat. Preparative potions are to be uſed according to the cauſe of the diſeaſe, for the ſpace of certain dayes, and then to take theſe pills following, *Aureæ* or *Cochiæ*, the weight of one drachme. Or in the ſtead of theſe pills, to uſe half an ounce of *Hiera Picra*, and *Oxymel Compoſitum* one ounce, with four ounces of water, wherein Hyſſop and Zeduary is decocted.

It chanceth alſo oftentimes, that at the firſt this giddineſſe doth come with ſome ſwarming or fantaſies which appear before the eyes, the which nevertheleſſe in truth is nothing ſo. This the Phyſitians do call *Scotomiam* and *Imaginationes*, whereof before in the ſeventh Chapter and 12. §. is ſpoken at large. Of the which very many be holpen by theſe means following: Take Eybright two ounces, Mace half an ounce; beat them ſmall, give thereof after the purging half a drachme, or two ſcruples with wine or fleſh broth. What further concerneth this kind of giddineſſe, you may diſcern hereafter, when we ſpeak of *Paralyſis*, with the which this ſwimming doth agree. This patient muſt refrain from all meats and drinks which be of cold nature: but Kids, Mutton, Pullets, Partridges, Pheaſants, and all other fowles that have their abode in hilly countries, he may well eat them, yet rather roſted then ſodden: in like ſort eggs and all that is dreſt with wheat or Rice: ſmall red wine, or rather honey water is to be his ordinary drink. But if this will not help, and the foreſaid giddineſſe do ſtill continue, then is this commended for a principal remedy, to wit, to open the head by actual or potential cauteries above upon the ſeam (which is called *Sutura Coronalis*) to the end that thereby all bad vapours, which cauſe theſe infirmities in the brains might exhalate. Some uſe in ſtead of the foreſaid Cauterie this corroſive ſalve following; Take Cantharides (the heads and wings broken off) two ounces, ſowre dow half an ounce, temper them with ſpirit of wine or vinegar, lay them behind in the neck, and behind upon the brawnes of the legs, in bigneſſe of half a doller; let them lye ſo long untill they raiſe a bliſter, that is, about twelve hours or ſomewhat more. Theſe bliſters are to be holden and kept open, with the laying upon them of a Colwort leafe as long as is poſſible. But if ſo be that neither ague, nor vomiting, nor any other impoſtume do befall with it, and yet nevertheleſſe the giddineſſe perſiſt and endure, then is the ſick perſon oftentimes to be purged with the pills Cochiæ, and to withdraw him (as is ſaid) from cold meats, becauſe that the cauſe of this diſeaſe proceedeth of cold. Further, he is to be let ſmell to a little bag of Annis ſeeds, and in like ſort muſt he wear a cap with Annis ſeeds upon his head, and receive the vapour of the decoction of Annis ſeeds into his noſe; for that the ſmell is very requiſite, becauſe it drieth and warmeth well: Alſo the head is to be cleanſed, as oftentimes hath beenſhewed: but this enſuing is eſpecially good for it: Take the juyce of wild Cucumbers

bers one ounce, honey water wherein Marjoram is decocted, two ounces; temper and draw them into the noſe: but take before, thy mouth full of clear water, ſo that it may come the leſſe into the mouth.

Gargariſmes.

GArgariſmes are alſo to be uſed for this purpoſe, thereby to expel all flegmatical humours which cauſe this malady: Take Betony, Hyſſop, of each one handful, Licorice, Rue, and Raiſons (the ſtones being taken out) of each one ounce, *Piretrum*, Ireos, of each half an ounce, Muſtard ſeed, Licebane, Ginger and Maſtick, of each one quarter of an ounce, clarified honey three ounces; ſeethe them in ſufficient ſtore of water, and ſcum them well, take thereof before and after meat, at each time two ſpoonfuls in the mouth, holding it long therein, and having gargarized, ſpet it out again.

With this may you alſo uſe chewed Maſtick, *Piretrum* decocted in wine or water, or ſteeped. But alwaies (as is admoniſhed before) the roots knit in a cloth; for it is otherwiſe too ſtrong.

Item, take Muſtard ſeed, Marjoram, *Piretrum*, long Pepper and Sage, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſeethe it to the half, being ſtrained, uſe it as before.

The *Piretrum* hath an eſpecial operation againſt the giddineſſe, therefore it is alſo to be decocted and beaten to pap with the whites of Eggs, and ſo laid upon the head.

A Powder for meat.

TAke Nutmegs, prepared Coriander, of each half an ounce, Meſſelden of the Oke, Piony ſeed peeled, and Galangale, of each one drach. Calamus, Betony, Cubebs, and Cumin, of each half a drach. Sugar, as much as you pleaſe. You have heretofore in the firſt Section a good powder for the memory, which is alſo meet for this purpoſe: and this following is very neceſſary for it.

Take the juyce of Fennel one ounce, Sugar two ounces, ſeethe it together like to *Manus Chriſti.*

An Electuary.

TAke a pound of Currans (well cleanſed) Licoriee cut ſmall) Bugloſſe water and Endive water, of each ſix ounces, let them ſeethe together, and afterwards wring it out hard: in this decoction are you to put of preſerved Mirobalans, Chebuli and Emblici, of each ſix ounces, Honey of Roſes and Sugar five ounces; let it ſeethe until it be ſomewhat thicker then honey: afterwards clarifie it with the whites of eggs; when it is now cold, then temper amongſt it one drach. and a half of Cinamom powder, preſerved Nutmegs one ounce, Lignum Aloes, Cloves, of each one drach. Fennel and Anniſeeds, of each half a drach. conſerve of Roſes two ounces and a half. Of this confection you are to uſe every week the quantity of a Walnut. Item, take Cinamom, Cloves, Fennel, Galangal, chew them long in the mouth, and afterwards ſpet it out again. The confected Calamus is alſo much commended for this giddineſſe, and in like manner confected Coriander, as is more ſaid in other places, where we have treated of the memory.

Preſerved Mirobalans are alſo eſpecial good after meat, alſo being dry to chew them in the mouth; for that they do hinder the vapours aſcending up to the head, and conſume all watery moiſture: alſo how good *Cardanus Benedictus* water is for this uſe, look in the place where we have ſpoken of the memory: the Treacle and Mithridate are alſo much commended for this purpoſe.

The order of Dyet.

THey that be troubled with this giddineſſe ought to live very ſoberly and moderately, to leave wine, or to water it well: if the diſeaſe come through heat, then is heat to be eſchewed; if through cold, then is cold to be ſhunned: after meales take a piece of toſted bread and eat it. His meats muſt be light of digeſtion, and uſe little; like as is ſufficiently ſhewed in the hot head-ache.

of

Of franticknesse, madnesse, or doting, and such like infirmities. §. 3.

THe diseases of the brains are divided into three kinds, to wit, first if their accustomed operation be hindred. Secondly, if they be perished & enfeebled. Thirdly, if they be altered from their good disposition and nature into another; like as when a man falleth into foolishnesse and forgetfulnesse, that he forgetteth his writing, reading, and his neerest kindred, yea his own name: the which in truth proceedeth out of a coldnesse of the brain, like to the palsey, and falling sickenesse, and such like accidents which suddenly assault men. But if this foresaid disease (whether it happen in the understanding or in the memory) be small, then it is a sign that the coldnesse is not great, for these diseases have also their greatnesse and smallnesse. Delirium, doting childishnesse, be it howsoever it will, it cometh of some bad humour and distemperance of the brains, and is an erring, troubled and spoiled motion of the principal vertues of the mind; and if so be that an Ague befall with it, then it is a right Phrenitis, that is, Frenſie; which is not onely caused through hot humours, but is also admixed with some Phlegma in the brains: but in case there be no Ague with it, then is this malady called *Mania*, madnesse; and springeth out of hot humours, & chiefly of the *Cholera*, which inflameth the brain too much; *Melancolia*, of which issue onely despair, sorrow and fear, and that which is called in Latin, *Dementia*, (to wit, when a man is wholly out of his right mind) proceedeth onely of cold humours, like as hereafter again shall be more at large declared.

Of dotage and childishnesse, called in Latin Delirium. §. 4.

THis disease is for the most part in all sicknesses or infirmities of the braines, for that in case the same be distempered, (be it by whatsoever manner that may be) then will the understanding be thereby wholly or in part enfeebled, according to the greatnesse or smallnesse of the humour whence this disease is caused.

When now these doting conceits and strange thoughts do come without crying, calling, or noise, as if he were possessed, then it is the very true *Melancholia*.

But if the madnesse do come with chiding, scolding, leaping, cursing, and such like misdemeanours, then it is the right *Mania*, or madnesse, with all her symptomes, which do assail him no otherwise then as if he were possessed.

If there be with this madnesse laughing, merriment, friendly semblance, then is the same alwayes better then any of the rest: but if this come through burnt melancholike humours, then it is the worst, and the behaviour none otherwise then as if he were possessed. Others make of these Delirium or Desipientia, 12. kinds, whereof the most part are here described.

And to the end we might first of all have an example how that these kinds of sicknesses are best to be holpen; therefore we will set before us a youth that hath lost his understanding, and is become distracted.

At the first is very meet for it a very good government or order of diet, and to use all things which be warm and moist, to eat good raised bread, which is above three dayes old, otherwise he is to eschew all things that are made of dow: young Veal, Mutton, Lamb, Pullets, Capons, young wild swine; in fine, he is to eat all that is young whether it be wild or tame, and to refrain all that is old.

Of herbs are meet for him Endive, Spinage. Purslain. As concerning fruit, fresh Almonds, Hasel nuts, sweet Cherries, Melons, Gourds, Pompions, fresh Figs, Grapes, sweet Pears, Apples, oyl of sweet Almonds, or fresh Butter. He must refrain from Vinegar; or if he will use it, he must delay it with Sugar or water: yet is he rather to use the juyce of Lemmons or Verjuice, but seldom, and that made sweet with Sugar.

For his drink he is to take sweet wine, and clear wine well watered, for that he will be very soon drunken, which is hurtfull for him. In this country instead of the foresaid wine, small beer is commonly to be used: he is to forbear all old and salt flesh.

But if so be he cannot forbear wine, and were it notwithstanding inclined to drinke much, then are you to steep therein prepared Coriander seed, Sorrel seed, Purslain seed, with the flowers of water Lillies, this will resist and withstand all drunkennesse.

Can he be satisfied with drinking of water? then let him drink none other then Barley water or sugered water:

Bugloſſe

Bugloſſe good for Melancholy.

Bugloſſe leaves or the roots of the ſame are alwayes good, whether they be uſed in meats or drinks, and all that may be made with Bugloſſe.

He muſt alſo moderately move and ſtir in going and ſtanding. Copulation muſt he utterly eſchew, becauſe that thereby the beſt blood of a man is waſted, and worn away, and the natural forces infeebled.

He muſt kemb the head oftentimes, ſing much, uſe muſick which is very commodious for all melancholick perſons, his ſleep muſt be ſomewhat longer then it was wont to be when he was in health.

Becauſe that this matter is very hard to be purged, and yet nevertheleſſe it muſt be done for the moſt part, then is alwayes the adviſe of a learned Phyſitian to be followed, the opening of the Pills or Hemorrhoides is eſpecially commended for this diſeaſe. One may alſo drink many dayes together, three ounces of the juyce of Bugloſſe, for it is marvellous good for all kinds of melancholy. Alſo is very good two ounces of the juyce of Hops, (being wrung out) if it be preſently taken without ſetling, preſerved Citron pills one ſpoonful taken in the morning early and in the evening two hours before meat are very meet, or two ounces of the ſirupe of Citron pills, with three ounces of Lettice water uſed before purging.

Comfortable Electuaries:

TAke the fleſh of roſted partridges breſts twelve ounces, the roots of white Behen, the flowers of Borage, Bugloſſe, Zeduary, of each one drachme, Saffron one ſcruple, Mace, Sacrifrage, of each one ſcruple, Jacint, Smaragd, Saphires, and Harts bones, of each half a ſcruple, three leaves of beaten Gold, fired gold half a drachme, prepared Pearls one drach. three ounces of freſh Pine apple kernels; let this ſteep 24. hours with the fleſh in four ounces of white wine, and two ounces of the juyce of Quinces, pownd them all ſmall, and ſeethe 12. ounces of white Sugar with the foreſaid liquor, temper it altogether: give thereof every morning half an ounce, and drink thereupon two ounces of Bugloſſe water; afterwards take before dinner and ſupper one quarter of an ounce of it: for beſides that it is good for the giddineſſe, it doth alſo ſtrengthen all the members of the body.

In like manner mark, that all which ſtrengtheneth the heart, whether it be hot or cold, the ſame alſo ſtrengtheneth the brain.

Of Phrenitis, *or frantickneſſe with an Ague.* §. 5.

VVE will now diſcourſe of that kind of frantickneſſe, which the learned call *Phrenitis*, which we define thus: Phrenitis is a frenſie or bereaving of the wits with an hot Ague, or Phrenitis is a doting and diſtraction or ſpoil of the underſtanding, which endureth not alwayes, and that aſſaileth one with quivering, ſmall voyce and with an Ague, which doth alſo moſt proceed of ſome inflammation or ſwelling in the brains. And although there be many kinds of frantickneſſe, yet may they be divided into principall ſorts; the one which is cauſed of blood, the other of *Cholera*: out of both which, the third kind which is *Melancholia*, as a mixture doth ſprout and ſpring.

They that be burthened with the firſt kind, they may adjudge all things like as they be, know what it is; but how to think of it and uſe it do they know nothing at all. They that have the ſecond kind of frantickneſſe, they do know in their thoughts or forecaſt nothing at all; but adjudge much otherwiſe of all that ever they ſee then it is. For both theſe ſorts have you a notable hiſtory recited of *Galen*. They which be charged with the third ſort, they be ſo diſtracted of their wits, that they can neither diſcern right, nor adjudge right. And now for to come to the right ſigns of the foreſaid diſeaſes, we will rehearſe theſe following.

The ſigns of frantickneſſe with hot agues

Firſt, inward Agues, heavineſſe of the head, drought, redneſſe of the eyes and face, pain of the head, ſhunning the light, and ſtrong motion of the pulſe.

Item, unquietneſſe, much and filthy talke, dryeth and blackneſſe of the tongue, tumbling up and off from the bed: their urine white, quick and ſtrong breathing, crying out in their ſleep, fear, impudency, do not cover their privities being uncovered, forgetfulneſſe of all that is paſſed, terrible dreames, &c.

And if, beſides the foreſaid ſigns, the tongue be red and yellow, and the underſtanding enfeebled with much watching: then it is a perfect Phrenitis, that is, frantickneſſe, with

with a ſtrong Ague. For this the remedy is not to be delayed, but before they (which do proceed of blood) do take root, he is ſtrongly to be let blood in the head vein, even till he ſwoond, if nature may abide and ſuffer it.

But if ſo be that the ſickneſſe have endured already paſt the fourth day, and ſettled it ſelf, then is the vein of the forehead alſo to be opened on the top of the noſe, and to be diligent for to open the Hemorrhoides, the which is very requiſite and ſure.

And if ſo be that for ſome cauſes the opening of a vein be hindered, then is blood to be forced out of the noſe, or at the leaſt to ſet boxing cups on the ſhoulders.

But if the cauſe be of Cholera, then is the body to be purged through Cliſters, as hereafter followeth.

Take two handfuls of Lettice, Barley half a M. Mallowes, Mercury, Violet leaves, of each half a handful, the flowers of water Liſſies one ounce, and a little bran: ſeethe theſe together in a ſufficient quantity of water; then take of this decoction twelve or ſixteen ounces, put thereto Sallet-oyl, and prepared Caſſia, of each one ounce, extracted Prunes five drach. ſet this Cliſter faſting.

Another; Take Mallowes, Blites, Mercury, Violet leaves, and water Liſſies, of each one M, let them ſeethe together in ſufficient water; afterwards take twelve ounces thereof and temper amongſt it Triphera Saracenica one ounce, ſtrained Prunes an ounce and a half, oyl of Violets two ounces, Salt half a drach. Further to purge withall, ſowre Dates are eſpecially fit: for they do not onely expell the bad humours, but alſo alter them. Theſe are thus to be prepared.

Take twelve ounces of ſowre Dates, ſeethe them in 24. ounces of water untill the fourth part be conſumed: this decoction is to be ſtrained through a cloth, and to give him five ounces thereof at once. Item, take three ounces of Manna, temper it in the decoction of Prunes, and give it him in the morning.

But if ſo be that the humours be burnt, then ſeethe with the Prunes a few Sene leaves, a little Fumitory, and Epithymum, of each one quarter of an ounce; the roots of Polypodium one ounce, and in 4. ℥ of this decoction, temper the Manna and ſowr Dates.

Another; Take yellow Mirobalans one ounce and a half, ſtampt Prunes two ounces, ſeethe them together in ten ounces of water unto the half, or till that there remain four ounces over: then give it ſo.

Or take one quarter of an ounce of Rubarbe, decoction of Prunes four ounces, beat the Rubarbe and ſo temper it amongſt the decoction; add unto it two ounces of ſirupe of Violets: let this ſtand together the ſpace of twelve hours, and give it him early in the morning. But if ſo be that the humour be burnt, then put ſome Sene leaves unto it, Epithymum, and the roots of Polipody, of each one quarter of an ounce.

After the foreſaid purging, may the head vein upon the hand or in the elbow, be ſafely opened, and boxing cups fixed upon the ſhoulders. Alſo to open the Saphea, and to move the Hemorrhoides, if ſo it ſeem requiſite.

If this ſickneſſe be cauſed of blood.

TAke twelve ounces of the juyce of Plantain, juyce of Shepherds purſe and Roſe-water, of each four ounces, Vinegar two ounces; make clothes or tow wet therein, and then lay them on the forehead, and ſo over half the head.

Item, take Violet leaves, Lettice, and pownded Barley, of each 1 M. Poppy heads, roots of Southernwood, and water Liſſies, of each half a handfull, Henbane, Poppy ſeeds, and Lettice ſeed, of each half an ounce, Camomil, Melilot, and Mallowes, of each half an M. ſeethe them altogether in a ſufficient quantity of the water of Sage; afterwards take a Spunge and therewith moiſten from the forehead, or from thence where the hair beginneth, unto the neck behind as often as you pleaſe. Item, take the juyce of Houſleek, of Lettice, of Purſlain, and of Nightſhade, of each three ounces, Roſe water two ounces, Vinegar one ounce, temper and uſe them as before: this bringeth alſo ſleep with it, and eſpecially if one temper therewith two ounces of the juyce of Poppy heads: cannot you get the juyce? then take the diſtilled water it ſelf, if you will have a plaiſter of it, temper Barley meal amongſt it:

Note alſo, that theſe cooling things are to be uſed onely in the beginning of the frenſie: for that if it be ſeen that the matter beginneth to yeeld, there are other things to be adhibited; as when it beginneth to depart, then take a ſucking whelp and take out the bowels,

and

and ſo lay it warm upon the Patients forehead, or rather on the top of the forehead when the hair is ſhorn off.

Item, take another whelp (the intrails being taken out as is ſaid) beſtrew it inwardly with Henbane ſeed, and lay it warm upon the head, this maketh the frantick to ſleep; the ſame do alſo young Doves and Cocks opened in the back, and laid upon the head: or take the warm lights of a Weather, hold it upon the forehead, when it is waxen cold make it warm again in warm water, but wring it well out, and lay it again upon the forehead, and reiterate the ſame oftentimes.

Of the dwelling of a frantick man, and other remedies concerning this diſeaſe.

THe dwelling of any frantick perſons muſt be temperate, more cold then warm: Beſtrew his Chamber and bed with cold herbs as Lettice, Purſlain, Houſleek, ſmall and great Willow leaves, water Lillies, and Nightſhade; have alſo clothes made wet in common water, round about him pluck away all pictures out of his eyes, for that they bring fantaſies and troubles unto him, let honeſt people come amongſt them, to the end he may be aſhamed; let him ſmell to Roſes, Violets, water Lillies, Flowers, and Camphire, whereof may alſo bags be made; this is preſcribed for an example, how all manner of frantick men are to be governed; now will we proceed forward.

But if it be feared that a man would become frantick, then take quick Brimſtone, and Maſtick of each one drach: and a half, temper them well beaten with half an ounce of good Treacle, and give a youth thereof half a drach. at once mixed with Cicory water, an old body one drach. with old wine. He is to ſweat thereupon as long as he is able to indure it: doth it not help at one time? then do it more times, but the Patient is to beware of cold and wind.

Take Camomil, the herb Dill, Roſes, Marjoram gentle, of each one M. ſeethe them and make clothes wet with it, and lay them warm oftentimes upon the Patients forehead.

Take Violet leaves, Melilot, Mallowes, Roſemary, Bay leaves, and Poppy heads, of each two handfulls, let them ſeethe together, and uſe it as before: the conſerve of Betony, of Gilloflowers, and eſpecially of Piony flowers, is very convenient for this above all other, and not only for this diſeaſe, but alſo againſt all ſtrange fantaſies, frightings and fear, the which people have a nights, and without any cauſe.

A precious Water.

THis is much commended above all things, for to keep men in their good underſtanding, and to reſtore the ſame if it were loſt; take May Lillies ſtript off from their ſtalks, pour Muſcadel, Malmſey, or any other old wine upon them, put this in a glaſſe and ſtop it faſt, and let it ſtand certain dayes: afterwards diſtill it through ſoft ſeething in a kettle of water. This is not only good againſt the frenſie, but alſo in the dead palſie, where the ſpeech is loſt, againſt all faintneſſe, againſt all conſumption: it repugneth alſo all venome, and ſtrengtheneth the heart; a ſpoonful taken thereof at once.

Theſe frantick perſons are to be alwaies kept ſober in eating and drinking, as is expreſſed, and to uſe cooling things, for neceſſity requireth the ſame: They muſt eſchew wine, and be content with ſmall beer and Barley water, wherein the ſirupe of Violets, of Roſes, or of water Lillies be mixed. He is to eat Orgemond or Ptiſane (called *Ptiſana*) or any other water paps. Alſo all other cold herbs ſtewed, as Lettice, Spinage, and Sorrel, yea ſome require this order to be kept ſo directly, that they will not allow any other thing in the world. But regard is alway to be had to the ability of the Patient; and heed muſt alſo above all things be taken, that this Patient be not made angry, nor feared, and not frighted, but as much as is poſſible to be kept with mirth.

For to bring the ſick to ſleep and reſt. §. 6.

FOr that this malady doth bring with it much unnatural watching, therefore it is needfull to write ſomewhat thereof, for that is very hurtful in the diſeaſe, becauſe it doth dry the whole body, taketh away the appetite, troubleth the mind, contracteth the ſinews, weakeneth

weakeneth the wits: alſo cauſeth ſome Ague, and bringeth with it other inconveniencies more; as alſo the loſſe of the ſleep, which is a very bad ſign in all hot diſeaſes.

The cauſes why one cannot ſleep are many, as anger, ſorrow, pain, heavy thoughts, a full and crude ſtomach, hard meats; as Toad-ſtooles, Beans, Onions, and Muſtard ſeed, the which do all bring terrible dreams: Alſo when there is an impoſtume in the braines, great diſquiet, barking dogs, and ſuch like more which may hinder the ſleep: theſe are the common cauſes which do keep one awak. But how the ſame is to be redreſſed, and how that the reviving ſleep is to be reſtored, ſhall be ſhewed hereafter.

But now to proſecute our method, there be in the Frenſie (called *Phrenitis*) which is with ſtrong Agues, theſe things following preſcribed.

If it happen that this Patient can attain to no ſleep, like as it commonly chanceth in ſuch diſeaſes, whereby the ſickneſſe is aggravated; then may the ſleep be provoked well with inward and outward things; whereto theſe ſafe remedies are very meet.

Take womans milk, of one that giveth ſuck to a daughter, four ounces and a half, the brayed whites of four eggs, and white pownded Poppy ſeed as much as is needfull to make them to a ſalve; ſpread thereof upon the forehead and the temples. Take the ſirup of Poppy heads, the water of white water Lillies, and oyl of Violets, each alone or mixed together, and uſe them (as hath been ſaid.) Take Henbane ſeeds, and ſeethe them ſo long in wine untill it be thickiſh, anoint the temples of the head, the noſe, and ears therewith: this is very ſtrong, but uſe it not but only in great need. Item, take Poppy ſeed, and Henbane ſeed, of each a like much, beat them ſmall, and temper them with the white of an egg, womans milk, and with a little Vinegar; uſe them as before. When one is come out of his natural ſleep, or enfeebled in his wits, then make a ſponge wet in this water following, and lay it warm on his forehead and on the temples of his head; being waxen cold, it is to be renewed.

Take Lettice, Violet leaves, pilled Barley, Poppy heads, the roots of Mandragora, the white water Lillies, of each a handful, Henbane ſeed, Poppy ſeed, Lettice ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Camomil, Melilot, and Mallowes, of each half a handful: let this ſeethe together in water.

Take Caſſia wood one drach. Opium two drach. and Saffron one drach. make a powder thereof, and at the moſt take one ſcruple thereof, let it ſteep in Vinegar and Roſe water; anoint the temples with it, it is very ſtrong and ſafe. In like manner will be for this (amongſt the common things) *Oxyrrhodinum* uſed; whereof ſome ſtand deſcribed in the firſt Chapter, and §. 2.

A Salve.

TAke one ounce of Poplar ſalve, oyl of Violets half an ounce, Henbane ſeeds, the roots of *Mandragora*, of each ℥. ß. Saffron, Caſſia wood, of each one ſcrup. temper this together: the ſleep was wont alſo to be procured with this following, binding it about the neck, and to lay it upon mens privities, and womens breaſts.

Take cold water and Roſewater, of each five ounces, vinegar one ounce and a half, wet a double linnen cloth therein, and lay it over it.

Item take herbs of cold natures, as Willow leaves, water Lillies, Vine leaves, and Lettice, ſeethe them in water, and waſh the foreſaid place, alſo the hand and feet therewith. This doth alſo, to ſet the hands and feet in cold water.

A potion and ſuch like to procure ſleep.

TAke white Poppy ſeeds half an ounce, roots of *Mandragora*, Henbane ſeeds, of each ℥. ß. unbeaten Saffron 4. grains, ſtamp them all together, and bind them in a cloth, and lay them in ſteep in five ounces of the water of water Lillies the ſpace of ſix hours, afterwards wring it out, and give it to the ſick perſon two hours before ſupper or dinner, from one ounce unto 3. ounces, according to the importance of the ſickneſſe, and the ability of the Patient.

Item, take water Lillies ℥. 12. Opium ℥. 1. ſteep them together in three pints of Malmſey the ſpace of 24. houres, then caſt therein one quarter of an ounce of Salt, white beaten Poppy ſeeds half an ounce, Henbane ſeeds one quarter of an ounce, Lettice ſeed three drach. diſtill the ſame in ſeething water, whereof you are to give going to bed, from half a drach. unto a drach. This is ſtrong enough for to cauſe the Patient to ſleep

ſix houres: wine doth alſo provoke ſleep if one drink ſomewhat exceſſively; in like ſort alſo wine of Wormwood, yet that driveth away heavy dreams.

A confection and what elſe may be taken.

TAke conſerve of Violets and water Lillies, of each one ounce, white Poppy ſeeds, white Henbane ſeeds, of each half an ounce, Ginger 3. drach. temper this together, and when you go to bed, then take the bigneſſe of a Haſel nut rather more then leſſe: the Ginger is put thereto, to the end his power might penetrate.

Another. Take white Poppy ſeeds, Endive ſeeds, Lettice ſeeds, and Purſlain ſeeds, of each two ounces, Melon ſeed pilled, Pompion ſeed, Gourds ſeed, and Cucumber ſeeds, of each a drach. and a half, *Mandragora* apples one ounce and one quarter, Saffron, Camomil, Dill ſeed, of each one drach. and a half, Lignum Aloes, one drach. Sugar 12 ounces, honey of Violets ſix ounces: the Sugar and honey you are to ſeethe in the water of water Lillies untill it be thick; when it is almoſt cold, temper the other beaten ſmall amongſt it, and uſe it as before from one quarter of an ounce unto half an ounce. It is good for frantick perſons to anoint the forehead, the temples, the noſe and the pulſe veins therewith, or to take it with the water of Lettice one hour after meat.

Another not ſo ſtrong.

TAke white Poppy ſeed three quarters of an ounce, the ſeeds of Violets, of Lettice, of Endive, of each one quarter of an ounce, pilled Melon ſeed, Pompion ſeeds, Gourd ſeeds, Cucumber ſeed, of each half a drach. Sugar one quarter of an ounce, temper this as thick as you will have it, with the ſirup of Poppy ſeeds.

Here may you ſee that Poppy ſeeds are uſed almoſt in all receipts for the ſleep, likewiſe all that is made of Poppy is good to procure ſleep, as the confection *Diapapaver*, *Loch de papavere*, *Syrupus de papavere* and *Diacodion*.

A Powder. Take Lettice ſeed and white Poppy ſeed, of each half an ounce, Endive ſeed, Henbane ſeed and Ginger, of each one drach. Sugar four ounces, make a powder thereof.

But if all theſe things will not help, then muſt Opium of neceſſity be uſed, to the end that nature may get ſome reſt. But with what providence this is to be uſed, that do all experienced Phyſitians ſufficiently know, without whoſe counſel the ſame is not to be done.

Of the over-heated children, when they awake out of ſleep.

TAke water Lillies or Purſlain, Willow leaves, Vine leaves, and Poppy ſeed with the heads, of each one handful, let theſe ſeethe together in a pot of water, when it is then luke-warm ſet the child his feet therein, and ſtroke him well downwards, likewiſe alſo from the ſhoulders to the elbow. This enſuing is much more ſafe and expert then any thing elſe anointed on the temples of the head.

Item, make a cloth wet in his mothers milk, or if the ſame be not to be had, in warm Goats milk, lay thereof upon the forehead, and on the temples of the head, it cooleth well and alſo cauſeth to ſleep.

Of Mania, *another kind of Franticknеſſe, which we commonly called Madneſſe.* §. 7.

IT is diſcovered how that the *Mania* is a mad *Phrenеſis*, without an ague, and is deſcribed by the learned, and defined after divers manners, which are meet to be here rehearſed. *Mania* (ſome ſay) is a diſtemperature of the underſtanding, which altereth the right and reaſonable thoughts, with loſſe of voyce, of wit, and of judgment, which were good in health.

Others ſay thus, This *Mania* is a dotage or madneſſe, and therefore a diſeaſe of the mind, which no otherwiſe diſtempereth the mind, but as any other ſickneſſe of the body, whereby can be no health. In fine, it is ſuch a *Melancholia*, in caſe that it begin to root in one, that they become raging and mad, and muſt be bound, yea the common ſort think no otherwiſe, but that he is poſſeſſed with a ſpirit.

The

The chiefeſt ſigns of *Mania* be theſe, unſtedfaſtneſſe, alterations in words and deeds done without ſenſe or reaſon, like as much talk and prating, much waking, leaping, great troubles, and ſuch like.

But if they be cauſed of a cholerick *Melancholia*, then is the Patient the more unquiet, and ſo much the more inclined to chiding, calling, and great madneſſe; but if it be mixt with burnt blood, then do they onely rage, and hold alſo their peace otherwhiles, the which cometh ſtraight way again afterwards with ſo wonderful much talk, that they are hardly induced to hold their peace; they will be lean over all their body, they have heavy dreams, ſpet out otherwhiles ſome gall, which falleth ſeething upon the ground, their pulſe is ſlow and weak, and their arteries hard.

This is verily a terrible ſickneſſe, not onely for the Patient himſelf, but for all them that do aſſiſt and keep him; and is cured through the ſame means that are preſcribed for *Phrenitis*, and for this *Melancholia following*.

Of Melancholia, *or* Dementia, *a wonderful madneſſe.* §. 8.

THis word *Melancholia*, is to be taken after two wayes: Firſt, for one of the four humours of a mans body, the black part of mans blood, whereof we have as yet not admoniſhed. Secondly, for a certain ſickneſſe which annoyeth and weakeneth the brain and mind, with great trouble and heavineſſe, and is thus deſcribed: *Melancholia* is a corruption of the judgment and thoughts, altered from their natural kind, into an unnatural and ſpoiled manner, tempered with fear and care: through which the black blood cauſeth a troubled and changed ſpirit; like as it is alſo true, that it is common with all melancholick perſons, (be it of whatſoever cauſe it will) to be alwaies fearful and ſorrowfull; and if you demand of them the occaſion, they know not what to declare or alledge any occaſion unto you: they be ſo full of fantaſies and marvellous imaginations. Otherwhiles they be weary of their life; nevertheleſſe they ſhun death: they complain not any otherwhiles but that they be perſecuted and murthered, or that ſome wild beaſts will devour them; yea ſome be alſo moved in their wits, albeit that they fear death much, nevertheleſſe ſometimes deſtroy themſelves. Other alſo being infected with this diſeaſe, they fall into ridiculous fantaſies: (for an example) like as we do read in *Galen* of one that had a ſtrong imagination, ſo that he thought he was an earthen pot, and therefore ſhunned the way from all ſuch as met him, fearing that they would break him.

There was another that ſo ſurely minded the fall of the Gyant *Atlas*, which ſhould carry heaven, that he thought that he alſo carried heaven, and was ſo weary thereof that he could no longer carry ſo great a burthen, and yet would not caſt it down for fear he ſhould bruiſe himſelf and all men in the world to fitters.

Some ſuppoſe and imagine that they be Emperours, Kings, Wolves, Devils, Fowles, and what may be more; ſome weep, ſome laugh, others ſhun the water. Alſo it hath been ſeen before times that learned men being plagued with this diſeaſe, afterward did not know one letter. To the contrary, unlearned men did know wonderful arts, could ſpeak ſtrange languages, who alſo propheſied: and others that did thoſe things that ſeemed to be againſt nature. Some fear the things which be not to be feared, nor never can come to paſſe. But in this they be like to fearful men, yea all thoſe men who alwaies fear darkneſſe: for like as ſuch outward darkneſſe bringeth fear with it; ſo doth *Melancholia* alſo cauſe a dark black blood, which maketh darkneſſe in a bodies mind, and a fear withal.

This is alſo a cauſe wherefore the melancholick perſons are eaſily poſſeſſed with the falling ſickneſſe.

The cauſe of theſe melancholick fantaſies do proceed moſt from the nature of the meats which ingender melancholick blood; to wit, all Veniſon, but eſpecially Hares, Conies, and all old fleſh, whether it be of Oxen, Goats, Bucks, Kine, wild Oxen, and rather if they be ſalted then freſh.

Alſo of great Sea fiſhes, Salmons, Sturgeons, &c. The like alſo of all herbs which do not moyſten, eſpecially of Coleworts, and all other Pottages, as Beans, Lentils, Peaſe, &c. The black thick Wine, old Cheeſe, unleavened bread, and ſuch like, do alſo increaſe Melancholy.

The melancholick perſons are alſo to beware of great labour, ſorrow, heavy thoughts,

much watching, from great hunger, and great thirſt; and eſchew alſo great cold, dry Countries and dwellings.

To the contrary is alſo good for them, young Mutton, Kids, Lamb, Pullets, Hens, freſh fleſh broth, Eggs, and whatſoever elſe is eaſily to be digeſted, and maketh good blood, as Burrage, Bugloſſe, &c.

His bread muſt be white, light and well raiſed; to bathe oftentimes without tarrying long in it, is very meet for them. In like manner the hearing of muſick and all mirth, and all well ſavouring and odoriferous things carried about them, this is now a general rule for all thoſe that be aſſailed with this Melancholy.

But foraſmuch as this grief of the mind, or heavineſſe, doth commonly proceed out of two parts of mans body, as out of the brains, and the Milt or Spleen; therefore is good heed to be taken, viz. when theſe grievous thoughts and fantaſies do aſſail a body, as fear, ſorrow, and alſo when anger doth get the maſtery, then it is a ſign that the melancholy proceedeth out of the Spleen, and that the rather when it appeareth with ſwelling, and ache of the belly, loathſome colour, loſt appetite, and vomiting; if it then come ſo far that the Patient do diſcloſe his thoughts in words or deeds, then it is a ſign that the melancholy hath faſt ſettled her ſelf, and that it is high time to uſe good advice for it: for if this malady do take root, then it is uncurable. Therefore firſt the Liver vein is to be opened in the hand; and if the blood be black, then let it bleed as long as the ſick perſon may ſuffer it; but if it be fair red, then ſtanch it preſently again. And if with this frantickneſſe were not the foreſaid ſigns, but that this Melancholy (according to the Frenſie) were cauſed through long continuance in the Sun, or that the Patient be beaten on the head, then is his head vein to be opened, and he is alſo to uſe purging, and meat as is before ſaid; his head is to be irrigated with warm water from on high, and afterwards to be anointed with oyl of Roſes, Vinegar, and womans milk, and let him ſmell to things which be cool of nature, as Roſes, Violets, Sanders, Camphire, &c. In fine, that which is before preſcribed for Frenſie, and in the firſt part of this book for *Cephalea* and *Hemicrania*, is alſo good for this purpoſe.

And if ſo be that none of the foreſaid ſigns be preſent or apparant, then doth the melancholy not aggrieve the head only, but it hath alſo communion with the heart and liver. For this, the Median muſt be opened, and the ſick perſon governed (as is ſaid before) a certain ſpace, otherwhiles holden up and interceaſing, and then to begin again with Phyſick, and continuing this ſo long, till he be throughly whole.

Now in general to write of this ſickneſſe, it is firſt to be noted, that no medicine is meet for this which purgeth by vomit, for becauſe that the matter is heavy of it ſelf, it doth covet to be purged by ſtooles; therefore it is good that he uſe ſome preparative potions, according to the advice of a learned Phyſitian, and according as the Patient is able. Some alſo commend for this a potion of *Epithymus*, thus prepared.

A potion of Epithymus.

THis decoction or potion do we here deſcribe to be made after three manners, the which alſo is a ſure ſign that the ſame as well by the ancient Phyſitians, as of later time, is of eſtimation and price.

The firſt maketh *Raſis* thus; take Mirobalans Indie one ounce and a quarter, the roots of Polypodie five drach. Sene leaves nine drach. Turbith half an ounce, Epithymus 20 drach. ſeethe them all together (except the Epithymus) in 36 ounces of water; then at laſt caſt in the *Epithymum*, afterwards take it from the fire and let it cool; ſtrain it and reſerve it.

The ſecond manner. Take Epithymum, Stechas, Mirobalani Indi, of each one ounce, Mirobalani Chebuli, Emblici, Bellirici, Turbith, the herb Pyony and Agaricus, of each two drach. and a half, Polypody roots, and Sene, of each three drach. Fumitory, Squinant, of each one drach. and a half, rinds of black Hellebore roots one drach. Sal-gemme two ſcrup. Currans three quarters of an ounce; ſeethe them all together (except the Epithymum) in a pot of water a good ſpace, then put thereto the *Epithymum* at the laſt, and let them ſeethe untill three parts remain; when it is luke-warm, then ſtrain it, and keep it in a cold place covered.

The third manner. Take Fumitory, Endive, Cicory, of each one handful, roots of Polypody three quarters of an ounce, Cuſcuta, Sorrel, Bugloſſe, of each one handfull,

full, Thymus, Epithymus, of each one ounce and a quarter, Currans one ounce, Dates and Figs, of each one ounce, Sene leaves ſeven drach. Turbith three drach. Agaricus half an ounce, ſeethe them altogether in a pint and a half of water of Fumitory, untill the third part be ſpent; then ſtrain it, and lay to ſteep in this warm decoction, two drachmes and a half of good Rubarb, Rinds of *Mirobalani Chebuli* one drachme and a half, *Indi* one drach. let them ſtand together; wring it oftentimes out, and keep it untill you have need of it.

But before this potion, theſe pills are firſt to be uſed; Take Agaricus two ſcrup. Aloe one drach. Indi ſalt half a drach. black Hellebore half a ſcrup. make as many pills as you will with it for to take at twice. Three hours before the potion alſo you may inſtead of theſe pills, uſe the confection, Hamech, or *Diaſtun*: When as now it hath thus been continued certain dayes (according to the ability of the Patient) then let him reſt three daies, and live ſoberly, (drinking ſmall white wine, and then purging again as before) and ſo untill four times one after another; for (as it is ſaid before) melancholy is wonderful hard to be purged. In fine, delay is in no wiſe meet, and the Phyſitian is to do his very beſt for to make the ſick perſon fat, for if that can be effected, then ſhall he quickly recover his health.

And if it chance that he could not uſe this potion, then may he take inſtead thereof the pills which expel black Choler, yet to uſe alwaies before ſome preparative medicine, for which you are, according to the importance of the cauſe, to follow the advice of a learned Phyſitian. This potion following is very convenient, take *Mirabolani Indi* one ounce and a half, dryed Prunes one ounce, ſeethe them together in 8. ounces of water, even to the half: afterwards ſtrain them through a cloth, then diſſolve therein ℥. 2. or ℥.2. and a half of Manna, and uſe it in the morning betimes. All the time that he ſhall reſt, may he uſe theſe things, as *Lætificans Almanſoris*, the which is thus prepared; Take Balm, the pills of Citrons, Cloves, *Gallia Muſchata*, Mace, Cinamom, Nutmegs, Cardamom, red and white Behen, Biony ſeed pilled, Seduary great and ſmall, Baſil ſeed, of each one drach. and a half, Muſcus nine grains, afterwards 20. *Mirobalani, Chebuli*, and 30. *Emblici*, pour twelve ounces of water thereon, bray them ſo long in a mortar, untill the fifth part remain: afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth, and mix therewith ſix ounces of clear honey: ſeethe it ſo long, untill all the water be conſumed; weigh that which is overplus, and temper alwaies with 12 ounces of this decoction, one quarter of an ounce of the foreſaid Spices, or one ounce and a half in the whole quantity, and then make a confection of it. But if you will have tabulats or rotuls, take unto twelve ounces of Sugar one ounce, or at the moſt nine drach. of the foreſaid Spices; you ſhall take of the confection the quantity of an Haſel nut, it ſtrengtheneth all the principal parts of mans body, and helpeth much the natural warmth and concoction; it withſtandeth all grievous thoughts, and maketh alſo merry, and a good colour.

A very precious Confection.

TAke Lignum Aloes, Cloves, Cardamom, Amarantus, which is burnt to powder, Roſes, Burrage, and Flowers of Bugloſſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, parched Haſel nuts half a drach. ſweet Almonds, and *Zujubes*, of each one ounce, prepared fine Bolus three drachmes, Annis, Fennel, of each two ounces, Saffron two ſcruples, *Doronicum*, Harts bones, Zeduary, Jacinth. Smaragd, and Saphires, of each one ſcruple, prepared Pearles one quarter of an ounce, Baſil ſeed one drach. eight leaves of beaten gold, you are to ſeethe this together in the juyce of *Chamadrios*, of field Cypres, and juyce of Bugloſſe, of each three ounces, untill all the juice be conſumed. But note, that the pretious ſtones, gold, and Saffron muſt not be ſodden with it, but be at the laſt tempered amongſt it. Of this is to be given in the morning early three drach. in a draught of wine before dinner and ſupper, one drach. and a half to eat, and half an ounce of conſerve of Bugloſſe after it. This is eſpecially fit for the burnt melancholy, of whatſoever occaſion the ſame doth proceed. If you will uſe it alſo in *Manie*, miniſter it with the Water of Violets, and of water Lillies. Now for to provoke ſleep, you are to give the decoction of Poppy heads, or luke-warm water of water-Lillies one quarter of an ounce, and that two hours after ſupper.

Another Confection.

TAke burnt ſilk, prepared Coral, of each half a ſcrup. burnt Harts horn 2. ſcrup. prepared Pearls, one drach. Cardamom 4. ſcrup. prepared Pingles two ounces, Hyſſop, and Licorice, of each two ſcrup. Nutmegs, Cloves, Mace, Indi Spica, Cypres roots, Cucubes and Galangal, of each ℥. 1. ß. Cinamom one quarter of an ounce, Saffron one ſcrup. white Sugar 24. ounces, ſeethe this with Bugloſſe water, untill it be as thick as honey, and then temper the reſt with a little Musk amongſt it.

A Powder which is much commended.

IT is ſaid that it hath been many times found, that they which had this melancholick paſſion, have onely through this powder recovered health both of body and mind.

Take Epithymum one ounce and a half, Azure ſtone, Agaricus, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Diagridion* one drach. 20. Cloves, this being beaten together and tempered, you are twice a week to give thereof, but at the moſt one quarter of an ounce. Or you may uſe for this the confection *Diamargariton*, and all that is deſcribed before for the ſtrengthning of the head, and ſhall be deſcribed hereafter for the comforting of the heart. To moiſten the dry brains in this *Melancholia*, take the broth wherein the head of a Weather, or the feet be decocted: let certain Poppy heads be ſod five or ſix waumes, and ſo lay thereof wet clothes upon the head. Or take the flowers of Borage, of Bugloſſe, *Thymus*, *Epithymus*, of each a like quantity, ſeethe this together, and waſh the head therewith.

Take the juyce of Borage, and of Fumitory, of each ſix ounces, foment therewith the head with a ſponge which is made wet therein; if you cannot get this juyce, then take the water of the ſame herbs.

Neeſing is alſo very fit for this uſe; and that is to be provoked like as is taught in the ſecond Chapter, and §. 2. The learned do adviſe, that in this diſeaſe, after the purging, the head before and behind above the neck is to be cauterized even to the very bone, and to hold the holes open the ſpace of 14. dayes. In fine, to rehearſe the whole manner of curing this Melancholy, it conſiſteth onely therein, that the black melancholick blood is firſt and laſt to be purged, through all means poſſible. Alſo good heed is to be taken unto the liver, and the Phyſick to be ordained thereafter.

Of the Palſie in general. §. 9.

THis is indeed a ſwift, grievous and terrible diſeaſe, which (like as is ſaid before) hath his off-ſpring from the brain. It is of divers natures, each one worſe then the other, which we will comprehend in five kinds: the firſt is *Lethargus*, which is the ſleeping ſickneſſe; the ſecond is *Stupor* or *Tremor*, which is aſtoniſhing and quaking, which ſome call the ſmall Palſie: the third is *Paralyſis*, that is, the right or dead Palſie: the fourth is *Epilepſia*, which is the falling ſickneſſe, and all kinds of ſuch like paroxiſmes, ſometimes in old men, and otherwhiles in young children: the fifth is *Apoplexia*, that is the moſt grievous, which is not without reaſon, we do call the power or hand of God.

Becauſe that theſe ſaid ſickneſſes do reſemble each other in many things, therefore we will before all briefly diſcover what difference there is between them, and wherein they do accord together. Firſt therefore *Apoplexia* and *Epilepſia*, have this difference, that the laſt mentioned is placed before in the head, the man fallen neither calleth nor cryeth out, the ſinews ſtirre, and are contracted towards the brain, he hath the breath almoſt wholly free, and cometh quickly to himſelf again. To the contrary, the *Apoplectici*, or he that is ſtricken with the dead Palſie, the ſickneſſe is over his whole head, cryeth in falling, the ſinews will be ſlack, they have a grievous or no breath, and come ſlowly to themſelves; but they reſemble each other ſo like, that they be both cauſed of flegmatick humours in the brain.

The Palſie or Apoplexia, is alſo differing from the numnedneſſe and ſleeping ſickneſſe, which is *Lethargus*, *Subeth*, and *Congelatio*; but *in Congelatione*, there is no reſtraint of the breath, as there is in the Palſie: ſecondly, it forcibly aſſaileth the ſick perſons; they thruſt, cry out, and ſuch like, which is nothing ſo *cum Apoplecticis*.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, that the ſleeping diſeaſe cometh ſlowly, and the dead Palſey very ſuddenly. But herein they accord, that all they be altogether deprived of their underſtanding. *Subet* or *Stupor*, doth therein diſagree with *Lethargus* and *Congelatio*, that at the laſt there aſſaileth in *Lethargus* an Ague, and an Impoſtume in the hinder part of the head: where contrariwiſe *Subet* or *Stupor* cometh without an Ague, and alwaies without any foreneſſe, and in the forepart of the head.

Of the ſleeping diſeaſe Lethargus, Veturnus, Torpor. §. 10.

THe nature of this diſeaſe is clean contrary to the foreſaid frenzie: for that like as they be plagued with an immoderate watching; ſo are they in this ſickneſſe vexed with an inſatiable ſleeping. It beginneth firſt with an alteration in the colour in the skin over the whole body, and with a feeble pulſe, ſometimes with a ſmall, and otherwhiles with a great and hurtful ague. It is alſo cauſed out of a cold moiſture of the head and brains, whereby not onely the underſtanding is enfeebled, but is for the moſt part alwaies ſo ſpoiled, that they utterly forget all that they do ſpeak, hear and ſee. The which alſo the Greek name *Lethargus* doth ſignifie; for this cold ſlime doth through his toughneſſe obſtruct the hindmoſt tunicles of the brains, where the memory hath her ſeat. Amongſt many cauſes this is one of the commoneſt, namely, all that augmenteth melancholy, that cauſeth this ſleepy ſickneſſe: but which they be, look in other places, *viz.* where the melancholy is deſcribed, which the firſt Regiſter diſcovereth eſpecially. This malady is cauſed of all meat and drink which aſcendeth towards the head, as Onions, Garlick, Penniroyal, Muſtard (howſoever they be dreſt) and ſuch like more: Alſo if he overcharge himſelf, liveth in filthineſſe, ſleepeth much, and eſpecially lyeth on the back, whereby that the heavy flegmatick vapors do aſcend into the hindermoſt parts of the head, which do cauſe there otherwhiles an impoſtumation or depravation of the underſtanding, and ſometimes much gaping or yawning.

Here is alſo to be noted, that there be four kinds of diſeaſes contained and comprehended amongſt theſe ſleeping ſickneſſes.

Firſt, *Lethargus* it ſelf; *Congelatio*, which is the numneſſe; *Stupor*, that is, ſenſleſneſs; *Subet*, which is called of the Arabians, a very deep ſleep. And although it appear that all theſe be one kind of ſort, nevertheleſſe they have notable differences.

The numneſſe and ſleeping ſickneſſe do therein accord, *viz.* that they do both infect the hinder part of the brain, do take away underſtanding, and all ſenſibleneſſe, and prefer forgetfulneſſe.

But they diſagree herein, that in *Lethargo* the eyes be ſhut; and in the numneſſe they remain open, like as is ſufficiently ſhewed before in the 9. §. But to the end we might ſpeak ſomewhat of their ſignes; theſe are the commoneſt; ſmall continual agues with a dead ſleep, and the Patient lyeth alwaies with cloſed eyes; if one calleth him, he openeth, and ſhutteth them cloſe again by and by; the pulſe is ſtrong, but ſlow and ſweaty, with forgetfulneſſe of all that is paſt and done, and of preſent things, yea in ſuch manner, if they ask for meat and drink, they forget to ſhut their mouth to: they draw their breath ſlowly, and with great trouble; the going to privy or ſtool is alwaies thin, the urine thick and troubled, as of a four footed beaſt. If all theſe ſigns (or any of them) be marked, then it is eaſily to be adjudged, that it is none other but the ſleeping diſeaſe. But if there befall ſomething elſe with it (whereof it were too long to write) then do theſe foreſaid ſigns alter and change.

Now for the firſt mean all diligence is to be done, to let and ſtay that theſe perſons fall not in any deep ſleep, through the ſtrong binding of the outward members, like as is taught in the 9th Chap. and §. 2. and in other places of the Hiſſing of the ears, frothing and rubbing the ſame hard; alſo the plucking by the noſe or beard, and women by the hair of their privities, lowd crying, and making great noiſe, yea if it were needful, by fearing them, to the end they may be ſorrowful.

Some Phyſitians begin firſt the cure with letting blood and opening of the head vein: and if there be no other occaſion which may let and hinder it, few daies after the vein on the forehead above the noſe. They alſo do further the bleeding at the noſe, by thruſting in of ſwines briſtles and ſuch other. Afterwards they uſe ſtrong Cliſters, and two or three daies afterward neeſing powder, for to expel ſleep therewith: and if all theſe will not help, then is one to look if he can bring the Patient to parbarking and vomiting, whether

whether it be through thruſting in of his fingers, feathers, plumes or wax candles into the throat, or through the juice of Radiſhes tempered with *Oxymel*, or taking a Radiſh, ſticking hate and there into it pieces of black Hellebore laid all night in a celler, taking out the roots in the morning, and boyling the Radiſh in water, and ſtraining it through a cloth; tempering therein one drach. of Saffron, and four ounces of vinegar, whereof two ſpoonfuls are to be given him immediatly after meat.

The order of dyet.

BEcauſe that this malady is ſhort, and inclineth ſpeedily to life or to death; therefore is no great heed to be taken for meat and drink in this ſickneſſe: but thin Mead muſt be his onely drink, for it digeſteth and expelleth. Alſo he is to occupy the broth of Fitches and Barley decocted with Hen broth: it is a commodious meat for him; but of all fruits, and meats of cold nature, he muſt beware.

But as much as concerneth the foreſaid Cliſters, we ſhall ſpeak thereof when we diſcourſe of the *Apoplexia*: for thereby be the brains diſcharged from all that hurtful matter. You muſt alſo inſtead of the ſame, uſe theſe ſuppoſitories. Take ſtone ſalt, and beaten Bevercod, of each one drach. clarified Hony two ounces; make meetly thick and long ſuppoſitories of it.

For to purge, this enſuing is very requiſite; Take *Hiera Picra*, half an ounce, Honey water three ounces; it is thin and bitter: or break the Pils *Cochie* one drach. ſyrup of Roſes one ounce, in three or four ounces of honey water; alſo he muſt drink ſometimes of this hony water following: Take four parts of water, and one part of hony, ſeethe it ſo long as it will caſt up any ſcum. The above mentioned *Oxyrrhodinum* three daies together laid upon the head is alſo much commended. Or make this water, Stechas, Rue, Marjoram gentle, Marjoram, Bay-leaves, Hyſſop and Nep, of each half a handful: ſeethe them all together in ſufficient water unto the half: dip a ſponge therein, and apply it warm to the head. This foreſaid water may from on high be irrigated upon the head, and the herbs being wrung out to be laid in a little bag on the top of the head.

Item, take Pigeon dung, temper it with Hony, and ſo lay it upon the head; you muſt rub well the neck with Lilly-roots or with Squils. For this are alſo good all theſe Oyles enſuing uſed each by it ſelf or mixed together, as the oyl of Bevercod, of Spike, of *Pietrum*, of Muſtard ſeed, and oyl of Bayes, the juice of Rue, or the herb decocted in Wine, and laid in the neck, is very highly commended.

Becauſe then the cauſes require (like as is ſaid) that the head be purged through neeſing, take the things whereof we have at ſundry times ſpoken, like as the firſt Regiſter ſhal ſhew thee: if it be needful to purge yet more, you have further inſtructions for it in the foreſaid places, where we have diſcourſed of the Palſey.

Laſtly, the Patients hair is to be ſhorn off, and afterwards he muſt have the head annointed with the ſalve of Muſtard ſeed, Bevercod, and Vinegar tempered together, for it is ſtrong and hot for to conſume all melancholike humors in the hinder part of the head. There may alſo thoſe things be uſed for it which are ordained for the Palſey, which be worthy of obſervation.

Of Numneſſe and Aſtoniſhing, which is Stupor, Congelatio, *wherein depeindeth* Tremor, *which we call trembling.* §. 11.

THe ſecond kind of this ſleeping diſeaſe have we aſcribed to *Stupor* and *Tremor*, that is, the numneſſe and trembling which commonly follow each other.

What the firſt is for a diſeaſe, that is diſcovered in the beginning of this our book, *viz.* a ſtrong cold, which comprehendeth the hinder part of the head (like to *Lethargus*) and maketh unmoveable and ſenſleſſe the party affected, and therefore is likened therein to the *Paralyſis*, for that alſo (as is ſaid) it is called a ſmall *Paralyſis* or Palſey. In this ſickneſſe the Patient lyeth none otherwiſe then as if he ſlept, but hath the eyes open, and ſtirreth neither the eyelids nor any other member of the body. If they do get this numneſſe, as they ſtand, they remain ſtanding, or as ſtiffe as a ſtick: if they get it writing, ſo do they continue ſitting, as if they wrote: or if they get it with looking into the Skie, ſo they alſo remain ſeeing without any alteration; whereby then the com-

mon people do get an unbelief, saying, that they be taken away, and that they speak with God, or with an Angel: amongst which otherwhiles Sathan doth mingle his whirnesse, whereby some do take and hold them for Saints; like as they sometimes shew forth, that they have seen marvels in Purgatory and in heaven. In fine, these be likened to Idols, that do not see with open eyes, do not smell, nor hear, do not speak with open throat, neither go on their legs, like as the Psalmist saith. This numnesse or stifnesse doth also most commonly take one in their sleep, that is, if any one have a leg or a foot stiffe, like as the learned and we also call it sleeping, and hath lost for the space of a certain time his feeling and motion, the which happeth if that one member lye too hard upon the other, whereby the vital spirits are kept back; but with what infirmity of the brain this numnesse agreeth, is sufficiently before rehearsed and shewed.

This disease is to be holpen as the sleeping sickenesse *Subet* is cured, as you finde written in first Chapter §. 6. and afterwards of *Cephalea*; but for this is especially commanded not to tarry long from taking of good advice, for that if one let this numnesse grow old, then followeth after it a perfect Palsey.

Therefore, if any body have their feet or other members benummed, or will wax stiffe, then are the remedies to be used for it, which are good for the Palsey, and those that shall be hereafter described, and a good dyet to be observed in eating and drinking. Also all such meats to be chosen which be warm and dry by nature, as Pullets with their brothes, and all other Fowls which make their abode in the hilly country. If this Patient may also be brought to sweating, it would be very good. The neck and all other stifned members are every where to be anointed with *Dialthea*, or *Marinton*: for this is also good oyl of *Costus*, with a little Bevercod tempered amongst it, which is special good for trembling. But if the malady wax old, then purge with the pils *Cochiæ*, and use otherwhiles the confection *Anacardina*, which is much commended for the same: or take the oyl of Eldern flowers one ounce and a half, temper it amongst one quarter of an ounce of *Euphorbium*, and annoint the head therewith.

In like manner the head may also be annointed with the oyl of Eldern leaves, Bevercod, and of *Euphorbium*; or use this water following, which is more mild.

Take Burrage, Bugloss, Fumitory, *Stechas*, *Tymus*, *Tymiama*, of each half a handful: seethe them all together in sufficient water, and let the head be therewith irrigated warm, or made moist with a spunge. The neesing is also very requisite, and this is to be done in the numnesse or stifnesse with black Hellebore, by reason that the same vehemently ridde away all melancholy, whereof two kinds are here described. Clisters are also very commodious for this kind of numnesse; take Mercury, Balm, Sene leaves, roots of Polypody, Burrage, Bugloss, Annise seeds, and Fennel seedes, of each half a M. Also take Bran, seethe all these together in sufficient water, and take thereof 12. or 16. ounces. Temper amongst it *Hiera Ruffi*, *Logodionis*, ana. ℥. ß. oyl of Rue, ℥. 4. salt ℥. ß. then make a Clister thereof.

The second. Take Burrage, Bugloss, both the roots and herbs, Fumitory, Mercury, of each one M. *Cosciua*, Fennel, *Tymus*, *Tymiama*, *Stechas*, and *Amaranthus*, of each half a M. also a little Bran: seethe this altogether, and take of this decoction as much as before; afterwards put more thereto, oyl of Lillies, and Honey, of each one ounce and a half, *Sal gemmæ*, one drachme, *Hierulogodion*, or *Ruffi*, three quarters of an ounce more or lesse according as the Patients ability requireth.

Of the shaking Palsey. §. 12.

CConcerning the shaking Palsey, the which is a kind of this forementioned disease, it is therefore added to the numnesse, for that they both proceed from one kind of cause.

There be diverse spices of this, which are here especially reckoned amongst the contagions of the brains, although they be caused through some offence or perishing of the sinewes, and are thus described: the shaking is a continual strife of the natural powers, which willingly and after a natural manner are raised without ceasing and is overcome by sicknesse. Also this shaking is a weakning or diminishing of motion.

This happeth of many causes, as if one look from great height into the depth, or like as any body should speak to a severe Prince, a Tyrant, or any other great Sir, or Ruler, or if one see any devouring beast before his eyes. Also this shaking or trembling

commeth

cometh of great anger, great joy, hard binding, through great cold and darkneſſe, like as daily experience ſheweth. Item through great heat, unbridled incontinency; much bleeding, and alſo when there is little blood and ſpirit extant, as one ſeeth by them which be recovered of a long ſickneſſe. But becauſe that it plainly appeareth by the foreſaid reaſons, that this diſeaſe is cauſed by divers means and accidents, therefore there be generally divers remedies appropriate unto it, wherefore if it proceed of periſhing of the ſinews, and cold cauſes, (like as it moſt cometh to paſſe) then is to be uſed for it all that is ordained for the Cramp and Palſey. Generally of all other herbs there is praiſed for this, Three leaved graſſe, Cummin, and *Succus*, whether it be in Cliſters or otherwiſe: of oyles of wild Cucumbers, of Dill, of Cleavers, Articocæ, which herb is marvellous forcible againſt the ſhaking or trembling.

For his meat, are very meet for it the brains of Hares, young Stares, and young Bevers, and alſo for all other diſeaſes of the ſinews. Theſe Cliſters following are alſo to be uſed, take Centory, wild and garden Sage, Rue and Cowſlips, S. Johns wort, and Mercury, of each half a M. alſo peeled wild Saffron ſeed one drach. Rue ſeed, Baſil ſeed, ſilver mountain ſeed, of each half an ounce, Agaricus five drachme Stechas and Amaranthus, of each half an ounce; let them ſeethe together in ſufficient water, take 12. or 16. ounces of this decoction, Honey and the oyl of Lillies, of each one ounce and an half, *Sal gemmæ*, *Pil. Cochiæ*, of each half a drachme, temper them well for a Cliſter, this is alſo good for the Palſey and ſtifneſſe: but if the trembling come of exceſſive drinking of wine, then is the ſame to be forborn, or at leaſt tempered with Sage water, or common water wherein Sage is decocted; Mead is much more meet for this then wine, or common water tempered with the juice of Pomgranates, or Verjuice. There is alſo to be demanded, what the cauſe is, that the head alwaies ſhaketh moſt of all, and next after the hands; like as by experience is ſeen. The anſwer; for that the brain is a very flegmatick part, the which imparteth her moiſture to the other members. And for that the hands are next of all to the head with their ſinews, and far from natural warmth: they are alſo moſt annoyed with outward cauſes, for that they be ſeldom covered. Now that one may chiefly help this ſhaking of the head, (out of which might proceed much damage) firſt is the Patient to eſchew all moiſt and cold meat, as fiſh, and eſpecially ſodden Crabs and Eeles. He is alſo to refrain from Spinage, Beets, Purſlain, Cucumbers, and ſuch like herbs, and all that is made of dowe, except leavened bread. Item, from all ſorts of pottages, except red and white Peaſe, and Riſe. All fruit is alſo hurtful unto him, except Oranges and Lemmons which be preſerved. Milk, and all that is made of milk is he to ſhun like poiſon; and if he love his health, he muſt drink no wine. But his meat is to be whearen bread with the bran. Alſo Veal, Kids fleſh, and lean powdered fleſh, Fennel, Mints, Roſemary, Sage, wild Time, yellow Rapes, Parſneps, Capers, and ſuch like, are alſo very commodious. For his drink is this to be prepared; take ſix quarts of freſh Well water, and one ounce of dryed Roſemary flowers; let it ſeethe until two quarts be waſted; afterwards temper thereto four and twenty ounces of Honey, let it then ſeethe again, and ſcum it well, until there be about a quart conſumed: Afterwards ſtrain it through a tight cloth, and let him drink thereof in ſtead of wine; but if he cannot well drink it, then temper a little red clear wine amongſt it. But if ſo be that he muſt and will drink wine, then take Roſemary wine; for it ſtrengtheneth the members, and alſo the ſinews, whether it be drunken, or the members rubd with it. The ſame doth alſo the wine of Clary, Sage, and Wormwood, but above all other Roſemary wine.

But if ſo be that the perſon be young and full of blood, the uſe of the foreſaid Cliſters open the Liver vein in the elbow, or upon the hand, and let out of it four or five ounces of blood, and the next day afterwards let him take theſe pils following; as *Cochia, de Sarcocolla*, of each half a drach. with the juice of Roſes, whereof are ſeven pils to be made, and he muſt faſt after them five hours; alſo to drink afterwards a good draught of warm wine, and an hour after he is to break his faſt. After purging he is to drink every morning this potion following the ſpace of a moneth, and to faſt four hours after it. Take water of Artichokes, of Betony, and Roſemary, of each one ounce, ſyrup of *Stechas* and *Oxymel*, of each three quarters of an ounce: and once in twelve dayes he is to uſe theſe pils following: as *Pill. fœtidarum*, two ſcrup. *Cochiarum* one ſcruple whereof you are to make with the ſyrup of Roſes ſeven pils, every evening when he goeth to bed he is to eat one quarter of an ounce of Calamus, and thereupon to drink a

draught

Artichoke water. He is also from the neck downwards to the rump along the back bone, to be rubbed with warm clothes, and thereupon anoint it with the oyl of Artichokes. He is also to drink half a drachme, of the powder of a Hares head burned, and that one hour before meat, with Mead or water of Artichokes. Now after that the Patient is well purged, then may he every day two or three hours before meat, set boxing cups unpickt behind in the neck.

A powder.

TAke field Cypers, Cowslips, *Lignum Aloes*, Ireos, Hermodactils, *Stechas*, Marjoram, Mints, ana. ʒ. ß. Indy *Spica*, Grains and Rue, ana. ℈. 1. this beaten each by himself, and then tempered, bestrew all the head therewith when it is shorn.

The Confection of Diamargariton.

THis Confection following is very meet for all manner of shaking; it doth marvellously strengthen the heart in all venemous accidents, and is amiable to the stomach. Take Cinnamom, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloves, Indy *Spica*, Galangale, Licorice, *Trochisci de Violis sine Scammonio*, *Specierum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, of each five drach. Nutmegs, *Aliptæ muscatæ*, Sedoary, Spikenard, Mace, Rubarbe, and red Storax, of each half an ounce, prepared Pearls, burnt Ivory, Harts bones, Ginger, *Blattæ Byzantiæ*, of each two drach. and a half, Muscus, *Ambra*, Cardamom, Lovage seed, Basil seed, of each one drach. and a half, Camfere one drach. and three ounces of clarified Honey: temper these all together, and you shall give thereof early in the morning, and as often as is needful in the day time; to wit, one quarter of an ounce at once.

If you will have Tabulats thereof, then take twelve ounces of Sugar, and one ounce of the foresaid ingredients: seethe the Sugar with Lavander water; or if you desire it cooler, then take Bugloss water, there is also at many Apothecaries *Diamargaridon frigidum*, which is yet more cooling, because that the former is of a warm nature.

Against the trembling or shaking are all *Aquæ Comp.* good, which are described in the eighth part, taking thereof, or the trembling member washed or rubbed therewith.

Item take Garlike, beat it with wine, and rub the shaking members with it: in like manner also, with the juice of wilde Cucumbers, tempered with the oyl of three leaved grasse, or used by it self. Take a Spunge which groweth on the Juniper tree in May, before the rising of the Sun: put it into a glasse, set it in the Sun, and then will it change to water; wherewith wash the shaking and trembling hands, and let them dry of themselves. There is much taught in the second part, of the palpitation of the heart, which is also meet for this shaking.

For the Resolution of the sinewes or dead Palsey. §. 13.

OF the third kind of Palsey we have told heretofore in the beginning of the 8. §. of the Resolution in the sinews, what manner of sickness it is that doth suddenly take away the free motion and action of a part in mans body particularly, or wholly, and maketh it dead and insensible. We do call the same a Resolution of the sinews, or a dead Palsey, and them that be troubled with it, *Paralyticos*.

This is now called by the learned, the great or dead Palsey or Resolution, for a difference of the foresaid trembling and shaking. In this are two kinds of natures hidden; whereof the one is *Epilepsia*, when it taketh the left or right side, and not all the whole body, and is called in Latin *Resolutio*, or *Dissolutio nervorum*, that is, a resolution or unbinding of the sinews, that the members have no strength or might in them, whereof we will here speak more at large, for this Palsey concerneth not the head at all: for if so be that the head be therewith infected, then is it a right Apoplexy.

The Palsey or Resolution, whereof we at this present do speak, hath many causes: first, it is properly caused of cold moist meats, as Fish, Swines flesh, Milk, and all that is dressed therewith; all fruits, except Almonds, Hasel nuts, and Pistaces: also all cold herbs, as Beets, Spinage, &c. In fine, all that is moist and cold is hurtful for this sickness. But if one will eat Fish, Pork, and red Pease, then are they to be prepared with Rosemary, wild Thyme, Mints, Sage, and such like. The surfetting with meat and drink, is

in

is this sickness very prejudicial, like as much sleeping, and chiefly for all them that be of a cold nature, and be old, or dwell in a cold or moist country.

This disease may also proceed of beating, breaking, or racking of the sinewes, of anger, of fear, great cold, hard binding of any of the members, and such like more. For this, all drying and warming meats are good; as well salted and leavened bread, Partridges, Feasants, Turtle doves, and all small fowles: also Mutton and Veal drest with the foresaid herbs. Some commend much Kids flesh salted, the which should strengthen much the sinewes. For this is also meet all kind of drying and warming Conserves, whether they be of roots, herbs, flowers, or spices: but wine is to be refrained as much as is possible. But in case that the patient, by reason of his age, cannot forbear wine, then chuse old red wine, which he is to drink tempered with a little Rosemary water: and if that like him not, then he may drink Rosemary water alone, whether it be decocted or distilled. If the red wine be against him or not to be gotten, then take thin white wine, and temper it with water wherein Cardamom is decocted.

Now all they that will be defended from this Palsey, they are to use much confected Coriander, fasting and before meals; as also to use white prepared Mustard seed therewith. For this is also very good the blood of Turtle doves drunken. This sickness commonly appeareth with a new and full Moon, against which you are to prepare these things following.

Take good Treacle three quarters of an ounce, Bevercod one quarter of an ounce, and temper it with Lavander water, and take it in the morning fasting.

But if so be there appear any beginning of this sickness, then do many advise (and that rightly) that then the thumb and great toe are to be hard rubbed, chafed and stretched out; and likewise to rub with warm clothes the neck and the back bone downwards, that the blood may be drawn from the head, and from the heart. Also there must be a little Treacle thrust behind in his throat.

Bevercod holden in the mouth and under the tongue is also very good. Some do also give Bevercod and Pepper to drink, of each one drach.

For this is also much commended Asa fœtida, whether it be taken inwardly, used on the outside, or in gargarismes: and if you would take the same, then is one drachme and a half enough, with Pepper and Rue, of each half a drachme tempered with wine. This is good for all diseases of the sinewes.

The distilled water of black Cherries is also much praised for this sickness at the first, and especially if one put thereto as much Lavander water, and so take thereof three or four ounces at one time.

The common order of this sickness is, that all remedies for this disease are applyed to the hinder part of the head, and in the beginning before the fourth and seventh, or also before the fourteenth day to use no strong medicines, but onely preparatives. And if so be that the sick person will yeeld unto it, then it were not amisse that he drank no other thing the first four or five dayes, and did eat almost nought else but onely honey water, yea also (if it be possible) to suffer hunger and thirst with it. The fourth day he is to have given him one drach. or a drach. and an half of Treacle or Mithridate, with waters meet for this disease.

It is also found by experience, that all they that be burthened with this disease, shall get great ease, if they accustome to drink every morning three ounces of Rosemary or Lavander water, with three drach. of the powder of Pircrum tempered amongst it.

Item, take the water of the blossomes of the Tillet tree, of May Lillies, and of black Cherries, of each one ounce, give it him so to drink. In like manner also stilled womans milk is highly commended for it, and all kinds of Aqua Compos.

Take sliced Licorice, and Annis seeds, of each one ounce, Elecampane half an ounce, Piony roots one drach, Nutmegs one ounce, Spirit of wine sixteen ounces, Honey eight ounces; temper these all together and conserve them well. In winter put thereto one quarter of an ounce of long Pepper, use thereof every morning a spoonfull or twain. This is marvellous much commended for a special remedy.

Another.

TAke Lavander water six ounces, water of the May Lillies three ounces, *Elixer vitæ*, and the water of wilde Poppy, of each two ounces, oyl of Bevercod one ounce and a half;

half, temper it in a glasse, and then set it in the Sun the space of eight dayes, whereof in time of need take a spoonfull, and anoint therewith the temples of the head. Mo. Tristrams water is also very fit for this purpose.

Of Purging.

FOrasmuch as purging is very needfull in this sickneſſe, therefore for an example will we deſcribe here a purgation. But it is above all adviſed, that the ſick body drink every morning four or five dayes together five ounces of Roſemary water, and faſt four hours upon it.

Afterwards he is to take half an ounce of *Hiera logodion*, tempred in two ounces of Agrimony water, in the morning, & to faſt five hours after it, or to uſe theſe pills following: take Agaricus a ſcrup. *Aſſa fœtida* half a ſcrup. Ginger twelve graines, Diagridion one grain: make pills thereof with the juyce of Hyſſop. When the patient is purged, then he is to uſe this potion following, for the ſpace of eight dayes together: Take the water of Agrimony, and of Sothernwood, of each two ounces, put ſome Sugar amongſt it.

Others do rather adviſe this following: Take Calamus half an ounce, Cowſlips three M. Saint Johns wort, field and garden Sage, Betony, Balm, Rue, Bay leaves, of each one M. Silver mountain, Balſom wood, Balſom fruit, and Baſil ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Licorice, Currans, Lavander flowers, *Amaranthus*, of each one ounce, clarified Honey ſix ounces, rain water which is clarified with the white of an egg, twelve ounces; let all theſe ſeethe together unto a ſirupe.

Another.

TAke Calamus ſix ounces, Sage three M. Stechas three ounces, clarified honey ſix ounces, white Sugar nine ounces; ſeethe them together in eighteen ounces of rain water unto a ſirupe, whereof you may take one ounce and a half, or two ounces at once, tempered with Sugar water:

Alſo you may uſe the ſirupe of Stechas, for all they be very commodious for this diſeaſe. Afterwards take the former purgation again, or the pills of *Euphorbium, de Serapino, & de Opopanaco*. And if the patient by drinking of theſe potions do remain bound in the body, then is he every evening before ſupper to ſwallow one of theſe pills following. Take of the pills of Aiephanginæ one drach. Trociſci Alhandali, Agaricus, of each half a ſcrup. Indie ſalt five grains, whereof make ſixteen pills.

Cliſters.

TAke Sage, Rue, Stechas, Centory, Mallowes, Mercury, and Cran, of each half a handfull; let them ſeethe altogether, and take twelve ounces of this decoction; temper amongſt it Hiera logodion half an ounce, Salt one quaeter of an ounce, Saller-oyl three ounces, adminiſter it warm. But for them that have newly gotten this dead palſey, there is to be ſodden in theſe Cliſters, half an ounce of roots of Brionie, or of Piony, for both theſe are good for the diſeaſe.

Powder for ſauce to meat.

THis powder is he to ſtrew upon the meat inſtead of ſpice; Take pickt Cinnamom one ounce and a half, prepared Coriander, Cloves, Galangal, Pepper, Cucubes, Mace, Nutmegs, of each one ounce, Calamus two ounces, Coutchenel half an ounce, Sugar ſix ounces: this is to be tempered together.

Another.

TAke Pepper two drach. and a half, Cloves, Cardamom, long Pepper, Seduary, of each one drach. Indy Spica, Mace, Saffron, of each one ſcrup. Sugar as much as you pleaſe, temper them well together.

Item, about the third day is the patient before the riſing of the ſun, to take one drach.

of

of Treacle tempered with the water of wild Sage. This medicine is moſt highly commended of diverſe Phyſitians.

Of Bathing.

IN this ſickneſſe is alſo bathing much commended; whereof there be two kinds naturally, as ſea water, or that is ſulphuriſh by nature: Others which be prepared with herbs and ſuch like.

For the herb bath: take the ſame herbs, roots, and ſeeds, which be named in the laſt ſirupes, and one is onely to receive the vapour, and ſweat withall: or make this enſuing.

Take Bay berries, Juniper berries, and Pepper, of each as much as you pleaſe, ſtamp it to groſſe powder, and ſet the patient in a dry bath; powre of this powder on hot irons, tempered with Lavander water, to the end he may ſweat well with the vapour thereof, then rub all his members infected with Venice Sope, untill the Sope be dry again: Alſo his body is not to be made wet at any time with any thing, but onely as he ſteppeth out of the bath with Lavander water, which is to be powred on a glowing Iron, and ſo moiſten him with this vapour. And after bathing, tarrying in a warm place, the lame joynts are to be rubbed hard with the greaſe of Storkes, untill they be dry, and afterwards with the ſuet of a Weather; and laſtly with Bucks ſuet. This being continued ſo the ſpace of four dayes, the great vein on the foot is to be opened, and boxing cups ſet upon the arms: then will he be holpen.

An eſpecial Bath.

TAke a Fox, uncaſe him, and (the bowels being taken out) ſeethe him in a ſufficient quantity of water, and bath the ſick perſon with it: but yet not before that the body be purged, it is not otherwiſe permitted.

Fomentations inſtead of Bathes.

TAke Sage ſix M. Juniper berries four M. the ſtrong wine lees ſeven quarts; let them ſeethe together by a ſmall fire: afterwards put it altogether in a neceſſary kettle or pot, to the end the vapour thereof may evaporate and aſcend unto the lame member, and uſe this ſo twice every day.

Item, take dry Sage three M. ſeethe it in a pint of rain water untill the third part be ſodden away: at the length caſt therein one ounce and a half of Stechados, let it ſeethe a waum or two; then temper amongſt it half a pint of wine, or ſalt water, with half ſo much white wine, clarified honey two ounces: anoint and rub therewith the lame members. This (and other more which following hereafter) is approved for this diſeaſe, if one cannot get the natural bath, or will not uſe artificial baths, which is alwayes to be uſed before the anointing, therewith before hand to open the pores.

Take a hot Tile, ſprinkle it with good ſtrong wine, receive the vapours unto the lame members, when they then be warmed and beſweated, dry them with warm clothes, and anoint them with ſome of the foreſaid things, now with the one, and then with the other, and cover well the members with a good Wolfes furre, or with ſomewhat like unto it.

In like manner it is alſo good to rub the lame ſide with good burnt wine, or ſpirit of wine onely, or half ſo much white wine tempered amongſt it: but if you will have it yet more forcible, then take inſtead of the ſpirit of wine, one of theſe Elixirs vitæ following.

A Water for Inunction.

TAke Roſemary, Marjoram gentle, and Bay berries, of each one handfull, Venice Sope as much as the yolk of an egg, ſix ounces of Lavander water, temper all theſe together in a mortar, and let it ſtand a day: afterwards wring it through a cloth, the which is thus to be uſed: Firſt rub the member well with a warm cloth, and anoint the water upon it.

Alſo he is twice a week for to ſwallow or ſlide down, 9. or 11. prepared Muſtardſeeds, and to drink thereupon two or three ounces of Lavander water, and ſo to continue this he

the ſpace of three weeks: otherwhiles he may anoint the lame ſide with the Oyl of Juniper, but not too often; for thereby might come great hurt. The oyl of Coſtus is alſo eſpecially recommended for this uſe, which is thus made.

Take the roots of Coſtus one ounce, Pepper, *Piretrum*, *Euphorbium*, of each eight ſcrup. Bevercod half an ounce, melt there altogether in ſix ounces of the oyl of Wall flowers, or in oyl of Bay which is more forcible.

Another.

TAke pownded Piretrum, half an ounce, ſeethe it in ſix ounces of Sallet-oyl, untill the third part be conſumed, let the ſick perſon be anointed therewith four times in four and twenty hours: it is much commended of all ancient and later Phyſitians.

A marvellous Oyl called Hypobalſamus.

THis Oyl is moſt highly commended for the dead Palſey, and for all reſolutions of the ſinewes, and is thus made: Take clear Turpentine ſix ounces oyl of Bayes, one ounce, Galbanum, Gummi, Helenii, of each three ounces, Gummi Hederæ, Olibanum, Lignum Aloes, of each one ounce, Maſtick one quarter of an ounce, Myrrhe, Laudanum, Aloes, Bevercod, of each three drachmes, pownd it groſſe; then add unto it two ounces of ſpirit of Wine, let it ſtand three dayes, afterwards take Galangal, Cloves, Cinamom, Nutmegs, Zeduary, Cucubes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Diptamus, Comfrey, of each one ounce and a half: powre thereon two ounces of ſpirit of Wine: let it ſtand ſo four dayes, ſtirring it oftentimes about, diſtill it afterwards in a glaſſe helme. This water is called alſo Balme water, which muſt be preſerved alone, ſo alſo do with the oyl: for it ſwageth and ſtrengtheneth all the ſinewes marvellous much.

For this is alſo meet the oyl of Marjoram gentle, the oyl of Juniper, of wild Cucumbers, of Tyles, and two precious balmes which ſhall be hereafter deſcribed in the eight part, which are eſpecial good for the lame members.

This ſalve following is very good for all lame hands: take Lavander, Sage, of each one handfull, Juniper berries three ounces, ſeethe all together in wine, and rub the fingers and other members with it. And if you will have this more forcible, temper it with the former oyles unto a thin ſalve, which is wonderfully commended.

Another.

TAke Squils, Rue, Calamus, Nettle roots, Agrimony, Cowſlips, of each a handfull, pownd them altogether, and powre oyl of Nuts upon it, and old Sallet-oyl four and twenty ounces, and well ſalted water or wine as much alſo: let theſe ſeethe together untill the moiſture be waſted away, wring it hard through a cloth and temper amongſt it Saltpeter, *Euphorbium*, Pepper, oyl of Bay, of each one ounce and a half, *Galbanum*, Turpentine, of each two ounces, Wax as much as is needfull for to make a ſalve thereof. This is marvellous good againſt the Cramp, againſt the cold Gout, and whatſoever ach elſe may proceed of cold.

Alſo you may make of all the foreſaid oyl, ſalves, if you temper amongſt it any greaſe of Bears, of Badgers, wild Cats, Hens, and Geeſe, of each you will.

Item, take Calamus, the roots of Lillies, roots of Coſtus, of each half an ounce, Pepper, Piretrum, Bevercod, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sage three drachmes, Stechas one drachme and an half, Spicanardi, Squinant, of each one drachme, and the juyce of Cowſlips which is well ſetled one ounce, of the oyl of Indy nut-kernels, of the oyl of crabs and wine, of each three ounces: afterwards pownd all that is to be pownded, the reſt are to be bruiſed by themſelves: ſeethe this by a milde fire ſo long, untill the wine be conſumed, afterwards put as much wax unto it as is needfull for a ſalve.

Item, it is reported that this ſalve enſuing doth preſerve men from the dead Palſey: take Bay leaves, Marjoram, Roſemary, Sage, Coſtus roots, Scariola, Mints, Millet, *Conſolida minor*, *Sanicle*, of each one M. *Spicanarci*, broad & picked Plantain, *Agrimonia* Bugloſſe, and Rue, of each one M. and an half; Wormwood, Smallage, Saint Johns wort, red and white Roſes, of each two M. Hyſſop, nettles, and Tanſey, of each half a handfull: beat them altogether, and ſeethe them in three pound of freſh Butter, untill all the

juyce

juyce be consumed: afterwards strain it through a cloth, and temper amongst it white molten Wax three ounces, Mastick two ounces, Sallad oyl one ounce, and make thereof a salve. This is also good to preserve one from the Gout.

Another Salve highly commended.

TAke a pluckt Goose, taking clean out all the intrails, and wash it with vinegar; afterwards make a dow of Sage, Frankincense, Mastick, pownded Earthworms, Wolves and Cats grease, fill the Goose therewith, and let her be gently rosted: the fatnesse that droppeth off is to be gathered in a pot, with some vinegar. This is a very piercing salve, which doth marvellously resolve and consume all hardnesse. But if the Wolves or Cats grease cannot be gotten, then take sheeps suet instead thereof, and anoint the neck and lame members therewith.

It is also very requisite after the use of this salve, to wear a plaister upon the lame member, whereto this following is very meet; Take six ounces of the juyce of Rue, which is very clear, and Pigeons dung as much as is needful for to make a plaister. This plaister is to be laid on the lame part.

Also you shall many times find many kinds of remedies more in the fourth Part, of the lameneese and extenuation of the members.

To be noted.

IN this Resolution or Palsie, are two principal members, which are to be healed with the foresaid Oyles, Waters, Salves, and Plaisters, *viz.* the member which is taken, and the beginning of the sinewes which are next to the same member. Take for example, if the Palsie or Resolution is in the one hand, then is the same, and all the parts of the back, from the neck unto the huckle bone to be anointed, for that the sinews of the hand have their off-spring from thence.

Further, boxing cups unpickt are to be applyed upon the beginning of the sinewes, which do also help well, because that they do warm and dry them; it is also good to rub the same places with Salt, Nettles, and Mustard seed; but alwaies after purging certain dayes together: whilest that the Patient stayeth and ceaseth from purging, bathing, and such like, then is he to take every morning half an ounce of the confection *Anacardina*, for that it is commended above all measure in the cold Palsie; and if so be that there be any sweat or small Ague with it, (like as accustometh to happen, which his heat causeth) then it is a good sign: but if this follow not, then is the Patient to forbear ten dayes long from all use of Physick, and to continue onely with good meat and drink.

It is also here to be noted, that all that is described before, is onely fit for the resolution which proceedeth of cold causes; but if they proceed of hot causes, the sicknesse will be augmented thorow the foresaid remedies.

Palsie through falls or blowes.

IF so be that one do fall so hard, or be beaten or stricken, that thereby forthwith he be taken with the Palsie, then it is not to be holpen; but if it come slowly afterwards upon one, then this salve is very meet for it.

Take Bevercod ℈.2. *Euphorbium* one scrup. Pepper 3. grains, *Pirethrum* half an ounce; seethe all these in ten ounces of Sallet oyl unto the half, then temper it with five drach. of Brimstone, and a little wine: It is also especial good for the *Spasmus* or Cramp.

Item, take Myrrhe, *Opopanacum*, of each five drach. Bevercod 3. drach. Euphorbium one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Lillies, and of *Narcissus*, of each two ounces, make a strong plaister thereof with wax, and spread it upon a cloth, and lay it upon the place aggrieved.

But good heed is alwayes here to be taken of the lameneese (and all that might concern the same) with heat or without heat, like as we have already admonished, that it may be known to apply the remedy hereafter.

Lavender, Rosemary, *Spicanardi*, (which have almost the same operation) are inestimably good for the Resolution which proceedeth through cold causes. Therefore all conserves which be made thereof, are not onely profitable for these causes, but also for all

lost

loſt ſpeech and lamed limbs. If ſo be that any will uſe any wine in this ſickneſſe, then is there none fitter nor better then wine of Roſemary, or Wormwood wine. Conſerve of Sage and of Cowſlips are alſo much commended; with other things more which are declared in the Palſie.

Convulſion of the Mouth through the Palſie. §. 14.

THis diſeaſe is thus deſcribed of the Phyſitians; *Contorſio* is a diſeaſe which altereth the natural ſhape of the face: or, *Contorſio* is a convulſion of the mouth and lips to the right or left ſide; ſo that it doth otherwhiles clear ſhut up one eye, and alſo the breath iſſueth out but at one corner of the mouth, whereby ſometimes alſo the whole face is changed in colour.

In fine, it is a Cramp, with a contraction and ſhortening of the ſinews, which draweth the lips hither or thitherwards, and theſe be the moſt cauſes, (like as in the Cramp and Palſie hath been ſhewed) that if it proceed of moiſture, then it is a kind of Palſie; whenſoever it is cauſed through dryth, then it is a kind of Cramp.

Alſo this Contorſion or contraction cometh ſometimes by reaſon of an impoſtume, like as in the pain of the throat, which quickly ſtrangleth a body.

This Cramp or contraction of the mouth aſſaileth a body oftentimes ſuddenly, as in *Phrenitide*, and ſuch like, whereof at this preſent ſhall not be ſpoken, becauſe that the ſame is commonly a ſign of death; it cometh alſo not through repletion of the body, but through inanition and dryth. But we ſpeak here only of that which is cauſed of *Spaſmus* or the Cramp, which diſtendeth the ſinews from hour to hour, therefore is there ſome advice to be done and taken for it.

But for to expel this diſeaſe there is ſomewhat to be done unto it out of hand, that there breed not a worſe matter of it, as Epilepſia, or Apoplexia. This cure is firſt to be begun with Cliſters, eſpecially if the Patient be bound, and to acuate the Cliſters by little and little.

Afterwards he is to be let blood, if it be not that this accident be ſo ſmall, that there were time ſufficient firſt to take a purgation, and to take good heed whether the urine be clear and well coloured, and then to open the Salvatella, beſides the little finger upon the right hand, and to let out 3. or 4. ounces of blood, and after that to purge.

Theſe preparative potions is he to take firſt of all; Take Calamus ſix ounces, Ginger and Nutmegs of each one ounce, clarified Honey nine ounces, make a clear ſirup thereof, and give the ſick perſon thereof certain dayes together every morning two or three ounces tempered with the decoction of Sage.

Afterwards he is to take theſe Pills; take *Pill. Cochiæ, de Sarcocolla, de Hermodactylis*, of each one ſcrup. and *Diagridion* two grains, make thereof 7. pills, with the juyce of Rue, and take them early in the morning faſting, and faſt ſix hours upon; for this uſe are alſo good the pills *Fœtidæ*. Will you then have them more forcible? then take two drach. of the pills *Cochiæ*, prepared Coloquint. and *Bdellium*, of each one drach. make pils thereof as big as a peaſe, and if the Patient be reaſonable ſtrong, then give him a drach. at once.

Item, let his head be ſhaven and rubbed ſoftly with warm clothes, untill the skin begin to be red, and then anoint it with this following; take the juyce of Swines bread three ounces, Stechados, Pennyroyal, Mints, Hyſſop, of each one ounce beaten, and one quarter of an ounce of Violets, temper them all together.

When he hath then purged well, and the matter is prepared, which is done in four daies, then is he to uſe every day before meat this Gargariſme.

Take white Muſtard ſeed two ounces, Vinegar one ounce and a half, honey three ounces, ſeethe them all together in a pint of water unto the half, and skim it well. But it is here to be noted, that theſe Gargariſmes muſt not be uſed at the firſt, that they make not an affluxe of the humours, and the accident thereby be augmented.

Item, take Nutmegs, *Piretrum*, *Stechados*, of each half an ounce, ſeethe them and uſe them as before. You may alſo temper amongſt it Oxymel of Squills.

Another. Take three ounces of Calamus, Vinegar one ounce, and uſe it as before.

This contraction of the mouth ſometimes alſo yeeldeth much ſpettle, and to further the ſame, and to make it run the better, make this *Maſticatory*.

Take Licebane, Maſtick, white Muſtard ſeed, *Piretrum*, of each a like quantity; temper

per it with molten virgin wax, make ſmall balls or pellets of it as big as Haſel nuts. This is to be chewed and ſpit out: the ſame doth Frankincenſe and Maſtick alſo together, or each chewed by it ſelf.

Neeſing.

NEeſing is very good; wherewith it might be effected, you are to ſeek for that in the firſt Regiſter.

Salves.

ALſo the nape and hinder part of the head, the throat, the face, and the forehead are to be anointed with the oyl of Coſtus; but it were good, that one made firſt a Cypres board hot, and bound it in a cloth, and laid it ſo long on the neck and ſhoulders, untill the ſame parts were throughly warmed, and afterwards anointed.

Item, take the oyl of Coſtus one ounce and a half, oyl of Euphorbium half an ounce, Mints, the ſeed of Rue, Stechas, Pennyroyal, Lignum Aloes, of each half a drach. oyl of Bevercod one ounce, white wax as much as is needful; beſprinkle it with ſome Vinegar of Squills, and therewith anoint all the neck from the nape to the rump four times in twenty four hours.

Item, take Calamus four ounces and a half, Ginger, Nutmegs, of each 3. drach. oyl of Coſtus 4. ounces, wine as much as is needful: let them ſeethe together by a mild fire untill the wine be conſumed, ſtrain it, and make a ſalve thereof with molten wax.

A Plaiſter.

TAke Betony ſix ounces, white water Mints, field Mints, Pennyroyal, Marjoram, of each one ounce and a half (altogether green,) Stechas two ounces, Peaſe meal one ounce and a half, Bean meal two ounces, Saffron half a drach. ſeethe theſe herbs in ſharp lee unto grout: afterwards temper the meal and Saffron unto it, alſo oyl of Bevercod, oyl of Pepper, and of Rue, of each two ounces; lay it morning and evening warm upon the head, and upon the temples of the head, where this contorſion is.

Another.

TAke *Opopanacum* three ounces, Calamus three drach. Ginger, Nutmegs, of each one drach. Turpentine one quarter of an ounce, melt the Gum and Turpentine, and temper it with the reſt unto a plaiſter; then ſpread it upon a cloth, and lay it behind upon the head, upon the neck, and over all the nape.

Item, Take freſh Swines bread half an ounce, Marjoram gentle 7 drach. *Lignum Aloes*, one drach. and a half, ſeethe them in a pint of water unto the half; but before that the Patient draweth up this into his noſe, he muſt firſt take his mouth full of honey, or ſugred water, and then hold ſome of the ſaid decoction in his hand, and draw of it three times through the right noſtril, and thrice alſo thorow the left noſtril, and that one hour before ſupper; the like alſo in the morning and at noon. This is very requiſite for health: he is alſo every day two or three hours before ſupper to ſwallow down 2. or 3. cornes of Myrrhe.

A capital Powder.

TAke Stechas, Pennyroyal, white water Mints, and Betony, of each one drach. and a half, *Piretrum*, Coſtus roots, Licebane, of each one drach. Marjoram gentle, pownd it, and temper it altogether: Strew therewith the uppermoſt part of the head, rubbing it gently. Alſo it is to be ſtrewed thereon, when he hath anointed him with the oyl of Coſtus.

A Lotion for the Feet.

IT is alſo very good to uſe theſe Lotions for the Feet before meat, wherein Woodbind is ſodden. Alſo the feet, the legs, the thighes, the hands, the arms and face may be waſhed with this decoction following; Take Bay leaves two handfuls, Juniper leaves three handfuls; ſeethe them all together in a good deal of water, untill it ſmell ſweet.

Order

Order of Dyet.

THis Patient is to keep himself from eating and drinking, and all other things, as is taught in the Passie, and Apoplexie, *viz.* to eschew wine, to drink honey water, to eat Kids or young Goats, Robucks and Hares, rather rosted then boyled.

All his other meats are to be besprinkled with Rosemary, Sage, Wormwood, white water Mints, Garden Mints, Pennyroyal, and Cumin. And albeit that hot spices are also good for him, yet he may instead thereof use these following.

Take Nutmegs one ounce, long Pepper, Bevercod, Galangale, of each one scrup. Seduary half a drach. pownd all small and temper them together.

Item, take Nutmegs, Ginger, of each 3. drach. of the confection of Calamus 3. ounces, Sugar as much as will suffice to make an electuary; this ought he to use in the morning fasting. Eggs howsoever they be drest, Rice, Coleworts, and Rapes he may eat. But from milk, and all that is drest with it, from all fruit, and all that is of a cold and moist nature must he refrain. A dark habitation is also meet for him, and to look oftentimes into a looking glasse, and to force himself to set his mouth right: great labour also is not fit for him, but rather rest and moderate sleep. To warm him, he is to burn that wood which is warm of nature, as Firre wood, and Juniper wood; he is alwaies to keep his head covered with a Fox fur, and to hold alwaies a piece of Nutmeg in the mouth, in the place affected, or instead of that these *Trochiscos*; Take Calamus two ounces and a quarter, Ginger half an ounce, Nutmegs two drach. and a half, pownd them altogether, and steep them two daies in water of Sage. Now if it be too moist, then let it dry away upon warm ashes, and then with honey make *Trochiscos* of it, of the weight of a drach. and a half, and hold them in the mouth; if you can swallow them, they will do no hurt.

And if these things will not help, then must he purge again, and lastly make an issue behind in the nape of the neck, and on the veins under the ear, or under the chin with an hot iron or corrosive, and to hold it long enough open.

Of the Cramp, and Convulsion of the sinewes by the Palsie. §. 15.

THis disease is also a kind of *Paralysis*, called of the Grecians *Spasmus*, and by the Latinists *Convulsio*, and it hath also no small agreement with the foresaid contraction or contorsion of the mouth, (like as hath been said already:) in like manner also with the *Epilepsia*, and all other diseases which be reckoned amongst such like infections, and it is described thus: *Spasmus* or *Convulsio*, is a contraction of the sinews and muscles against our wills, which sometimes do convulse but one part, and otherwhiles the whole body. The Grecians for divers causes, do give this Cramp sundry names, *Opisthotonos*, that is, when the sinews are drawn backwards; *Emprosthotonos*, when they be drawn forwards; *Tetanos*, when one member waxeth stiffe like to a stick. The causes of these are otherwhiles when any one is thrust into a sinew, wounded or over-burdened with too much labour or work. Also it is caused through great scowring of the body, through excessive bleeding, through unbrideled lechery, fright and worms, &c. In fine, the causes do proceed of an intemperate nature, as cold which is augmented, and heat which is diminished; also of dryth and moisture, according to that the body is full or empty. Of these differences there be yet more, which are here too long to be rehearsed.

Nevertheless, yet can I not omit, that this *Spasmus* (of whatsoever cause that it do proceed, and especially if it be caused of a hot ague) is not onely a bad sign, but also that it is incurable; for by reason of the heat the sinews will be a great deal too dry, and shrunk up short, like as one for example may see by a leather lace, or such like, if one hold it by the fire, then will it be hard and shrinketh. On the contrary, if it be holden in a moist place, it will be lithier or limber.

When as then such kind of Cramps do assail the whole body, and that the Patient beginneth to be childish, and addicted much to sleep, then is the disease in the marrow of the backbone, which hath his off-spring from the brain. Also this disease cometh either suddenly, or slowly; that which cometh suddenly, proceedeth of repletion of the body, and is through purging (as hath been said of the Palsie) to be remedied.

But it must be more and oftener anointed and rubbed with the oyl of Costus, for that

that the humour is much grosser then in the Palsie, and may worse be consumed. But if so be that this sickenesse be by little and little bred and grown, then is the cure to be taken in hand after another manner, *viz.* at the first to use preparatives, and afterwards digestives are to be used, as followeth hereafter.

The rubbing of the limbs downward is very meet, for that it disperseth and digesteth the moisture, and openeth the pores: afterwards are these salves or oyles following to be used; to lay plaisters upon it, to cover the limbs with Foxe, Wolves, or Cats furre, and to keep them warm: or if so be that one member alone be convulsed, it is to be wrapt about with warm clothes.

Suppling or mollifying Salve.

TAke the Muscilage of Fenegreek, and of Linseed, of each half an ounce, fresh Butter and sewet, of each two ounces, and a little wax, and make a salve thereof.

Digestive Salve.

THis Salve is described before in §. 13. *viz.* where it beginneth, Take Calamus, Lilly roots, &c. Of these two Salves the Patient is to use at the first the mollifying oyntment the first two dayes, and afterwards the other so long also, and so forth; now the one, and then the other, untill that the matter begin to avoid.

Item, take a fat young Cat, pluck off the skin, and take out the intrails, chop her small, and fill therewith a Goose, let her rost softly, gather the drippings, and preserve it well, for it is also good for the Palsie through cold. You have before in §. 13. one Salve almost like unto this, and also one other Salve more in the said discourse, where it beginneth thus, Take Bevercod, &c.

Take *Euphorbium*, Cinamom, Saffron, Frankincense, Bevercod, Pith, *Opopanacum*, the juyce of wild Rue, and dry Hyssop, of each half an ounce, Wax ℥.1.ß. *Piretrum*, *Ammoniacum*, of each half a drach. Sallad oyl as much as is needful for to make a Salve, therewith are you to anoint the whole body.

Take oyl of sweet Almonds six ounces, beaten Saffron one drach. and a half, good wine cuict 12. ounces, seethe them all together in a tin pan on a mild fire, untill the wine be consumed, and anoint therewith the cramped limbs; this is a noble remedy.

Many kinds of sewets or fats are very requisite for this, for to make salves thereof, *viz.* of Lions, Bears, Badgers, Hens, Goats, Capons, and such like, as shall be hereafter discoursed in the fifth part, where we shall speak of the lame and extenuated members.

There are many more common plaisters and salves good for this, which are to be found ready at all Apothecaries, as followeth hereafter. *Ceratum de Hyssopo*, *Unguentum Arregon*, *Martiaton*, *Emplastrum de Melilato*, *Diachylon*, *Oxycroceum* dissolved with the oyl of Lillies, oyl of Tiles, oyl of Foxes, of Bevercod, of Rue, and of blew Flowerdeluce, and all other which be warm of nature. Of the things which are to be taken inwardly, Treacle, Mithridate, confected roots *Eringus*, and also Wormwood wine are very good.

Of Bathing.

ALl Bathes which be by nature Allumy, or Sulphurish, or made artificially, are much commended. Also one may prepare a bath in this manner; take wild and tame Rue, Juniper tops, Wormwood, Southernwood, Pennyroyal, Bay leaves, Cypres roots, Dragons blood, Squinant, of each one M. seethe them all together in sufficient water for to bathe therein, put the Patient into it, and afterwards lay him in a bed, that he may sweat. In like manner is meet for this a dry bath; but one must not abide in it long, for avoiding of swooning: you may also use the bathe which is discovered before in the thirteenth Section. Also Gargarismes and Neesings.

Of the Cramp through emptinesse and heat.

IF this contagion assaile one not suddenly, but by little and little, as after an Ague, through great scowring, vomiting, or through much bleeding, then it is very hard, and almost incurable, by reason that it is caused through emptinesse, to wit, *Eximinition*, nevertheless necessary meanes are not to be omitted.

First,

Firſt, Barley water is good for this Patient, eſpecially if there be Crabs and prepared Wood-ſnailes decocted therewith; for that this drink will almoſt wholly and throughly turn to nouriſhment.

Secondly, he may drink well watered wine, rear eggs, and Henbroth prepared, as hereafter followeth: Take a Hen, chop her ſmall, and put her in a Can, pour Roſewater upon it, and Wine, of each a good ſpoonful, ſtop it tight that there can come no vapour out, and ſo put the Can into a Kettle of ſeething water, and take eldan away the fatneſſe. But if the Patient be very weak, then take a Capon and roſt him a little, afterwards drip it with unſalted Lard, beat him and preſſe out hard the juyce, temper it amongſt the foreſaid Henbroth, then will the ſame be the ſtronger. *A comfortable Broth.*

A better broth.

LAy a dreſt Capon in Wine, pownded and diſtilled in a glaſſed helme; that water ſtrengtheneth much in extreme debility: temper alſo amongſt it the yolk of an egg. Item, chop a Pullet, hang the pieces on threeds in a great glaſſe or pot, ſtop it tight, and ſeethe it three hours long in a Kettle of water, and uſe the liquor that hath dropped out of it. If you will make it more cordial, then lay therein ten or twelve pieces of gold. For this is alſo milk meet; firſt Womans milk: ſecondly, Aſſes milk; thirdly, Goats milk, as new as you can get it. If ſo be that there come a ſcowring with it, then ſeeth the milk with ſteel or flint ſtones.

The meat which he is to uſe and take whenſoever there is an ague with it, ought to be Kids, Lambs, and Hens, wherein Spinage, Mallowes, Beets, Purſlain, Lettice, or ſuch be decocted. Watered wine is alſo permitted, if there be no heat perceived.

For Strengthening.

TAke Pullets or Kids fleſh which is meetly ſodden ſeven ounces, chop it ſmall; temper amongſt it Cardamom, Cloves, Cucubes, Galangal, Ginger, Nutmegs, Dragagant, and Gum, of each one drach. Mace, Saffron, of each two ſcrup. Starch, Licorice, Currans, pilled Almonds, Pine apple kernels, Sebeſtes, Piſtacies, pilled Melon ſeed, Pompion ſeed, Gourds, and Cucumber ſeeds, white Poppy ſeed, Lettice ſeed, and Purſlain ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar pennes four ounces; diſſolve it in Bugloſſe water, with other Sugar as much as is needful for to make a confection thereof.

Of Bathing.

FOr this diſeaſe is alſo commanded for to bathe in luke-warm water. But to the end it might be the more forcible, cooling herbs may be decocted therein; as water Lillies, Violet leaves, and Willow leaves. For this purpoſe alſo, bathing in milk is much commended.

Item, at laſt ſhall the beginning of the ſinews be anointed with warm oyl of Violets, oyl of Pompeons, and ſuch like, thereby to ſtay the exſiccation of them.

This ſalve following is alſo marvellous good; Take Hens and Ducks greaſe, and the marrow of Calves bones, of each half an ounce, the muſcilage of Fleawort, Dragagant, and Gum, of each three drach. oyl of water Lillies, and Willowes, of each one ounce and a half, Wax as much as is needful for a ſalve, anoint therewith all the back bone. It is alſo good for all other members.

Cramp through wounding.

BUt if this Cramp or contraction of the ſinews do come through any wounds, then are the oyles of Camomil, Dill, and Flaxe tempered together, or each alone requiſite and fit for it.

Item, take wine lees, temper ſome beaten Allom amongſt it; this is of a marvellous force and operation.

Take Linſeed, and Fenegreek meal, pownded Dill ſeed, Henbane roots, and Annis ſeeds, of each a like quantity, temper them with the foreſaid oyl, and lay it warm upon it.

Here be alſo two experiments which every one may prove; Take *Victorialis longa*, otherwiſe called *Allium Alpinum*, and wear it alwayes hanging about the neck; it ſhould

defend a body from the cramp. The ſecond, Pluck off an Eeles skin, and let it be dreſſed like leather; when you be plagued with the cramp, then lay it upon it, and when the skin is warm, then ceaſeth the pain.

Of the Hag or Mare Ephialtes, *and Incubus.* §. 16.

Although that we have reckoned among the five *ſpecies* of the Palſie or Apoplexy, the falling ſickneſſe *Epilepſia* to be the fourth; yet doth method firſt of all require, to write of this ſickneſſe, the which through unbelief is with us called the hag or mare, becauſe that this *Incubus* is a meſſenger of a future falling ſickneſſe.

The unbelievers make thereof *Daemonium inſultans*, which is an upſtarting and pinching Devil, the which we alſo in this Country, as is ſaid, make one another to believe they be witches. But in truth it is none other but a natural ſickneſſe, as hereafter ſhall more evidently appear.

The *Incubus* is thus deſcribed: *Incubus* is a ſickneſſe which vexeth the body, whereby hot motion and ſpeech is taken away. Or more larger, *Epihales* is a ſickneſſe, when a body is in his firſt ſleep, lying on his back, doth ſuppoſe and alſo believe none other, but that ſomewhat creepeth upwards from his feet unto the breaſt, the which wringeth, and vexeth him there as it were a ghoſt, and ſo wholly hindreth his breath and voyce, that he cannot call for any help, yea it ſeemeth that it would murder him: therefore is otherwhiles heard of them, that be vexed therewith, ſuch a kind of groaning, that as ſoon as the vexation or torment is paſt, they awake with great fear and trembling.

And albeit that this diſeaſe of it ſelf alone is troubleſome enough, nevertheleſſe ſomewhat elſe is to be feared, *viz.* the Convulſion or madneſſe, which is *Mania*, and (like as it is already ſaid) the falling ſickneſſe *Epilepſia*, and eſpecially of them which have great head veins; becauſe that the brains (as the place of the underſtanding) are thereby enfeebled.

Now when as ſuch accidents come, then is there no long delay to be looked for; therefore it is meet indeed that there be advice taken for it out of hand, and firſt of all to take good heed whether the ſick perſon have a good colour. And if ſo be that alſo his veins be full, then is the *Saphaa* to be opened; ſecondly (if need require) the *Cephalea*: thirdly, the vein of the forehead, or under the tongue. And if great heat of the time, or any thing elſe do hinder it, then ſet thereon two boxing cups with picking, the one upon the right brawn of the leg towards the heel, the other hard by the ham; but if it amend not thereby, then ſet two upon the ſhoulders.

Alſo it is very needful to obſerve good order in eating and drinking, and to refrain from wine, ſweet things, and eſpecially of all that engendreth blood.

Some allow wine, yet that which is thin, white, clear, and well watered, drunken ſoberly.

For his meat are all fowles good which have abode in hilly countries, better then any four footed beaſts; yet of theſe, the wild are alwaies better then the tame.

Item, new laid eggs ſodden rear, Capers, with Oxymel, are good for him in the beginning of ſupper; he is to eſchew fiſh, and eſpecially ſodden fiſh: he is to ſhun all fruit, except Raiſons, Pingles, Piſtacies, confected Pears, Quinces, and ſuch like.

All herbs be alſo forbidden him, except Fennel, Dill, and Bugloſſe; but Rue, Sage, Marjoram gentle, Hyſſope, and Roſemary are eſpecial good for him, which are rather to be reckoned for medicine then for nouriſhment.

Furthermore, he is to refrain theſe things, as the Sun, cold winds, the fire, the ſmoke, incontinency, bathing, wearineſſe, care, much vexation, deep ſpeculation, and eſpecially two hours after meat, all great noiſe, to look from any height, to look upon whirling things, or that turn ſuddenly about, and all that ſhineth much, all ſtrong ſavours, long ſleep, eſpecially after noon, much watching, and ſuch like: but meetly moving after dinner is very good. Alſo he muſt be rubbed otherwhiles from the ſhoulders to the breaſt, untill beneath upon the legs, with warm clothes.

And when that is done, then is the head to be kembed and well rubbed. Piony roots worn about the neck, and ſmelling oftentimes unto them, are alſo very good. 15. Piony kernels, pilled and drunken in honied water, do much hinder and let, that the vapours which might obſtruct the brains, ſhould not aſcend upwards, and do alſo ſtrengthen the brains.

Confected *Mirobalani Chebuli* taken every morning doth ſtrengthen the head and the brains, and drive away the Mare. If the ſick body look bleak in the face, then it is a ſign

of

of Melancholy. Therefore is he to uſe the pils of *Cochie* oftentimes, to the end he may be well purged. Further, he is no otherwiſe to order himſelf in eating and drinking, then as is ſhewed in *Epilepſia*; for that *Incubus* is none other than a ſmall falling ſickneſſe or *Epilepſia*.

This water following is very good for to purge: Take Hyſſope two handfuls, Currans one ounce, ſeethe this together in a pint and a half of rain water unto the half, take thereof three ounces, of *Oxymel* of Squils, ℥. 1. ß drink it every morning continuing the ſpace of eight or ten daies, meetly warm.

When the body is purged, then is the head alſo to be purged with this gargatiſme enſuing: Take Hyſſope, Currans, and *Oxymel* ſodden together with water, and gargariſe therewith. Neeſing is alſo be hoveful, like as many times hath been expreſſed.

In like manner may you carry theſe little balls or pellets in the mouth. Take Penniroyal, ℥. 1. ſeven freſh Figs, long Pepper, ℨ. 1. *Piretrum*, ℨ. ß. pownd them all together, and make pellets or round bals of it. It is alſo marvellous good twice a week in the evening and morning to take half a drach. of Treacle or Mithridate, with 3. ounces of water wherein Pyony roots are decocted.

If this diſeaſe be cauſed through great cold of the head, then it is to be annointed with the oyl of Coſtus, of Rue, or oyl of Bay: But if it be cauſed through overcharging of the ſtomach, then it is to be holpen with vomiting, Cliſters, and ſuch like.

For this is alſo to be ſought to ſtrengthen the heart and the brains, which is very conveniently done with this confection following.

Take red Coral, Harts bones, Pearls, and burnt Silk, ana. ℨ. ß. Galangale, Cardamome, Grains, long Pepper, Cloves, Nutmegs, cleanſed Mirtle, and Piony kernels, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Cinnamom, ℥. 1. Mace, Saffron, ana. ℨ. 1. white Sugar, ℥. 34. ſeethe it unto a a ſyrup in Bugloſſe water, and make an Electuary of it. In the winter honey is to be uſed in ſtead of Sugar, whereof you are to take in the evening and morning the quantity of a great nut, and thereupon to drink a draught of water wherein Piony roots are decocted.

The confection of *Diathamaron* and *Diambra* are alſo very meet for this purpoſe.

For a concluſion, if ſo be that theſe foreſaid remedies brought not health with them, then are they once again to be uſed.

At the laſt caſt or need muſt be plaiſters laid upon the head, that corrode the fleſh and skin on the forehead, wherein the skull is joyned together, which is to be made with Muſtard ſeed or *Cantharides*, as is taught in this Chapter in the ſecond §. and in other places, or to open it by an actual cautery.

Of the Falling Sickneſſe, called Epilepſia. §. 17.

WE name this ſickneſſe with ſundry names. And albeit that it be but one kind of ſickneſſe; notwithſtanding it ſeemeth by diverſity of the names to have ſome ſmall difference. The Grecians do call it *Epilepſia*, the Latiniſts *Morbus Comitialis*, *Caducus*, *Herculeus*, and *Lunaticus*: the which we have comprehended all under four kinds of Apoplexies, and taught alſo thereby, that this falling ſickneſſe (as all other is an infection of the brain.

This is a quick and ſpeedy diſtraction of the underſtanding, whereby the party is ſo ſpoiled and robbed of all his wits, powers, remembrance, and all the uſe of his members, that he muſt ſuddenly and unawares fall down to the earth, ſome, and lye a certain ſpace without motion, ſeeth not, heareth not, neither feeleth, and ſometimes alſo doth forcibly ſtir and caſt himſelf about; when he cometh to himſelf again, he knoweth nothing of it, what is hapned unto him, although there be ſome that know all that was done with or about them.

The cauſes of this ſickneſſe are divers, for that it proceedeth of the four humours of the body, and doth chiefly take his beginning of *Phlegma*, next of *Melancholia*, ſometime of the blood, and ſeldom of *Cholera*. This is alſo increaſed by exceſſive eating, drunkenneſſe, all ſavors of meats; and of all things which fume up into the head, as Onions, Garlick, raw fruits, and ſuch like, that be of a cold and moiſt nature; worms of the belly, whereof the venemous vapors aſcend upwards out of the ſtomach towards the head, putrifaction of the detained natural ſeed, of obſtructed terms in women, like as oftentimes alſo hapneth to women which have firſt conceived; to ſit long in the Sun with a full ſtomach, to eat or ſmell to Bucks livers. Alſo thunder and lightening do hurt them,

them, whereby they are wont quickly to fall, as alſo long and much ſleep, and all that increaſeth *Phlegma*.

There hurteth them alſo who are infected with this ſickneſſe, the South wind, cold and moiſt countries, and the ſmell of theſe five things following, as Goats horns, which is ſo forcible, that they that ſuppoſe to be clean rid of this ſickneſſe, receiving the ſewet thereof, muſt immediatly fall to the ground. Item *Galbanum*, *Myrrha Benzum*, and above all the herb Smallage, like as it is found, that it hath cauſed one to fall onely through looking upon it, therefore ſuch perſons muſt and are to be kept from them. Youth is alſo more ſubject to this diſeaſe then age : but it is eaſier to be cured in young perſons then in old, like as ſhall be more at large taught hereafter.

The ſigns of one that hath the falling ſickneſſe, are theſe : if he fall ſuddenly to the earth, bendeth him, beateth or ſtriketh from him, loſeth his underſtanding, and ſometh at the mouth, if thereby his urine, nature or excrements paſſe away; then it is a ſign, that the ſickneſſe is the ſtronger.

Order of dyet.

IT importeth as well young as old people in this ſickneſſe, like as in all other ſickneſſes, but for this ſickneſſe muſt regard be had, eſpecially of the age and youth, nature, cuſtome, and abilitie of the Patient.

In common falling ſickneſſes is firſt to be eſchewed all cold moiſt and watry places, in like ſort alſo all meats cold of nature, all that bringeth with it ſlime, and obſtructions, as Dow, Milk, Fiſh, Gourds, Lettice, Beets, Spinage, Purſlain, Cucumbers, and fat fleſh. Item all ſtrong things, as Onions, Garlick, Scallions, Radiſhes, Coleworts, Muſtard ſeed, all that is much ſalted, and all Spices. Item, freſh water, all ſtrong wine, be it red or white, and chiefly ſweet, they are very hurtful : like as is alſo to eat too much, and to ſwallow down meat unchewed, and to eat again before the former be digeſted, long ſleep, and principally to ſleep by day, he is utterly to eſchew.

But on the contrary, all his meats are to be drying, as Mutton, Partridges, Pheaſants, all wood Fowls, with ſome Pepper, Zeduary, and Galangal prepared, and alwaies rather roſted then ſodden : his drink muſt be thin, clear, ſmall red wine; but if the wine be ſomewhat ſtrong, then it is to be tempered with water of Bugloſſe, or the water wherein Betony roots are decocted. Great motion is not fit for him, but rather much reſt.

The remedies which are to be uſed for this falling ſickneſs are moſt of them here before (where we have diſcourſed of the hag or mare) deſcribed, which according to the importance of the cauſe muſt be uſed for old folks, which be burthened and troubled with this diſeaſe.

And becauſe (like as before is diſcovered) the young children by reaſon of their moiſture, whereof they be full, are more ſubject to this ſickneſſe; therefore we will firſt (as much as ſhall concern that) deſcribe theſe means, and remedies following.

Of the Falling ſickneſſe in children.

WIth ſucking children nothing is ſafer to be taken, then that the mother or nurſe do obſerve a good order of dyet, eat meat that is light of digeſtion, and that moderately warmeth, that ſhe refrain man, and all that maketh groſſe blood. And if ſhe be conceived, then is the child to ſuck no more at any hand; before meat ſhe is to move and ſtir well, and to drink watered wine or ſmall Beer : ſhe is to refrain and leave all fruits, and eſpecially thoſe that be cold and moiſt. In fine, ſhe is not to govern her ſelf otherwiſe then if ſhe were her ſelf infected with the falling ſickneſſe.

When as the child doth wax ſtronger, and beginneth to feed on other meat, then it is to be governed according to the importance of his age, and of his ſicnkeſſe, like as by this preſcription (and other Chapters written to this end) may be ſeen.

Theſe are alwaies the remedies which by the ancient Phyſitians be commended for young childrens falling ſickneſſe, and are found profitable.

Take water of Rue, May Lillies, of each a like quantity; give a ſpoonful thereof or more, according to the bigneſſe of the child, make peeces of Tiles hot, lay chopt Rue thereon ſprinkled with vinegar, hold him that before his noſe; the ſame is alſo good for ancient people.

Temper

Temper Conſerve of Violets in Endive water, or Piony water; this is very good if there be any heat mixt amongſt it.

Make thick Almond milk, temper therein as much Sugar that it be as thick as pap, wipe thereof in the childs mouth; it nouriſheth well, bringeth ſleep with it, and defendeth the ſtomach from all foul and ſtinking humours: the water of Chickweed is alſo very requiſite for this.

Others do commend much for this, the water of Cowdung; and if it cannot be had, then is the Cowdung to be broken into fair water, and ſtrained through a cloth, and to give thereof half an ounce at leaſt.

Item, take the water of black Cherries, water of Tillet bloſſoms, of each a like quantity: give it in the time of ſickneſſe, or when it is thought to be at hand.

The fiſh that is called *Muſtella Fluviatilis*, or *Trinca*, called *Triſca* in Latin, hath two ſmall bones lying upon the brains, which are to be dryed and powdred, and given to the child. Theſe are marvellous good: but theſe ſmall bones are to be taken out of an unſodden fiſh, for when they be ſodden they have loſt their vertue.

It hapneth alſo, that children when they be full of worms do get the falling ſickneſſe, which is very dangerous; againſt which you ſhall finde hereafter in the third part, where we ſhall diſcourſe of the worms, ſundry good advices.

Take young Magpies out of the neſt, diſtil water of them, and give to young children a ſpoonful for the Falling ſickneſſe.

Another. Take three young Magpies that cannot flie, *Ungula Alcis*, ℥. 3. Harts horn ſhaven ℥. 1. ß, diſtill them together, and uſe them as before; it hath been often proved.

Item, take *Cardnus Benedictus* water ℥. 2. Lavender water ℥. ß. when you perceive that the falling ſickneſſe will aſſail any body, whether they be young or old, then look that you get a young Hare, which ſucketh ſtill, take the maw out of it, (hang it in the aire that the milk may dry in it) whereof give to the ſick perſon one drachme or leſſe (according to the importance) powdred with freſh water; for this are Pyony kernels good, worn about the neck, and alſo the powder thereof taken, the root ſodden, and drunken thereof, and the powder ſtrewed upon the meat, is alſo very good.

A good powder.

TAke prepared Pearls one drach. red Coral half a drach. Miſcleden one drach. and a half, prepared Amber two ſcrup. Harts bones one drach. Pyony ſeed, and the roots, of each half a drach. white Sugar one ounce, beaten gold ſix leaves: of this powder is every week one drach. to be given with Betony water: Sometime alſo half a drach. or a drach. tempered with a little broth.

A powder.

TAke half a drachme of the skull of an executed man, prepared Pearls one drachme, Harts horns two ſcrup. Tormentil, Seduary, of each two ſcrup. Sugar candy one ounce and a half, five leaves of beaten gold; temper them all together, and give it to the ſick body with Pyony water and ſuch like.

A Confection.

FEtch theſe things following at the Apothecaries: take *Diapenidium*, ℥. 3. Pliris Arcoticon, ℥. 1. *Diambra*, ℥. ß. Cinnamom, ℥. 1. ß. Nutmegs, Cucubes, ana. ʒ. 2. Ginger, ℥. 1. Sugar, ℥. 8. melt them in Pyony water, and make a Confection thereof.

All that is before written of young children, is alſo to be uſed for aged people, taking alwaies good heed, whether the ſickneſſe be great or ſmall, and alſo with that which followeth hereafter.

Yet more of the Falling ſickneſſe.

BUt if ſo be that the Falling ſickneſſe doth aſſail young, full grown, or ancient people, then (beſides all that is already diſcovered) this is one common and neceſſary rule,

rule, that every one which is infected with this ſickneſſe, keep himſelf at home in rainy weather, in places which be warmed with fuming works and fire and be alſo dry. The chamber is to be ſtrewed with herbs are neceſſary for the falling Evil, as Rue, wild Tyme, Roſemary, of each half a M. pownd them, and make them in a bag three quarters long, at night lay it on both ſides under the head.

If there be then any one infected with this ſickneſſe, that perceiveth ſomething to aſcend or climbe up out of any member of the body towards the head, then muſt he, as ſoon as is poſſible, and before that he falleth or goeth beſide himſelf, binde hard the place where he feeleth it creeping upwards, wring hard the fingers, rub the feet, ſet boxing cups behind on the neck, without picking, thereby to ſuppreſſe the aſcending vapors, and afterwards (if it may be poſſible) for to ſet or miniſter unto him this Cliſter following.

Take Swines bread, black Hellebore, Centory, freſh white Daffodil, of each one drach. wild Saffron ſeed half an ounce, ſeethe this in a quart of water until the half. Take 13. ounces of this decoction, temper therein *Hiera logodion*, one ounce, oyl of *Euphorbium* 10. drach. *Sal gemma* one drach. and a half, temper all theſe together, it is a very ſtrong Cliſter for to draw the matter out of the head.

Set alſo great boxing cups on the inſide of the thighes, beſides the buttocks, and rub well his arms and legs downward.

Take the juice of Swines bread, the ſeed of Rue, the Rennet of Hares mawes, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſtir them together in a mortar, blow that into his noſe through a Vultures quill; there have been before times marvels wrought thereby.

There is alſo a great noyſe to be made about the Patient, to open his eyes, and hold great light before them; when he is come to reſt again, then is he to purge often with theſe pils *Cochie* (or ſome other) but uſing alwaies before certain Juleps, thereby the more eaſily to take away the humour. Whileſt that he uſeth theſe potions, he muſt preſently upon it, likewiſe alſo two hours before meat, take and uſe the quantity of a Nutmeg of this conſerve following.

Take Piſtacies ſhaled, which have been ſteeped one night in Pyony water three ounces, *Doronicum*, Harts bones, Burrage, and Bugloſſe flowers, Violets, Roſes, of each one quarter of an ounce, red and white Behen, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Baſil, red Coral, ana. ℥. 2. ß. Jacinth, Smaragda, Saphir, ana. ℈. 1. Grains, *Lignum Aloes*, ana. ℈. 2. water Lillies, and Yvory, ana. ℈. 4. five leaves of beaten gold, *Muſcus*, *Ambra*, ana. five grains, Honey of Roſes, ſyrup of Citron peels, ana. ℥. 5. Sugar, ℥. 3. you are to ſeethe the ſyrup and Sugar in four ounces of Bugloſſe water until the water be clean conſumed; break the Musk and Amber in a little Lavander water, and temper all the reſt amongſt it. This may be alſo uſed whenſoever he uſeth not the other potions, and ſo forth, now the one, and then the other.

It is alſo adviſed to cover the place whence the diſeaſe is cauſed with plaiſters, which make bliſters, and to let them lye ſo long upon it, until the bliſters be drawn full of water, and break of themſelves, and run out; the which are not be ſuffered to ſhut in ten daies, to the end the moiſture have his full courſe, for this is one of the moſt principal remedies that is meet for this malady.

Plaiſters which raiſe and draw bliſters.

TAke Muſtard ſeed, Pepper, and *Euphorbium* beaten ſmall, ana. ℥. 1. Honey of *Anacardio*, as much as is needful for a plaiſter, ſpread this upon a cloth the bigneſſe of a Doller, and lay it on the place where you deſire.

But this inſuing is generally uſed; Take *Cantharides* (heads and wings broken off) one quarter of an ounce, Honey of *Anacardio*, and ſowr dough, of each one drachme, ſtrong vinegar as much as is needful for to temper it together; lay this upon it as is ſaid, when the bliſter is full, open it with a needle with threed in it, and leave the threed behinde, that thereby the humidity may may be let out. Item, take blak Soap, quick Lime of each one quarter of an ounce, mix them together.

A

A ſtronger.

TAke *Cantharides* prepared as before, quick Lime, of each a like quantity, temper them with the juice of Daffodils, ſome do burn it with Iron or Gold. When as theſe bliſters have run enough, they are to be healed with this ſalve: Take Ariſtology, Ireos, Myrrhe, Frankincence, *Sarcocolla*, of each one drach, oyl of Roſes four ounces, Wax as much as is needful, make a ſalve thereof. For this alſo is adviſed to ſee boxing cups with ſmall picking upon the ſame place: And if the Patient, before the ſickneſſe aſſailed him, were grieved with any kind of vomitting, with griping and panting of the heart, and came thereby to fall then is the vomiting or caſting to be furthered by all manner of means.

Take blew Flower de-luce rootes one ounce, Ariſtology half an ounce, Centory, Garden Mints, Wormwood, Rue, Sage, Hyſſope, Polypody, Mallows, Mercury, of each a M. Silver mountain, Ameos, Dill ſeed, wild Rape ſeed, and Baſil ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, beaten Piony ſeed, and a little Bran: ſeethe theſe all together in a good deal of water: of this decoction you are to take 14. ounces, temper therein one ounce and a half of Honey, ſalt one quarter of a ounce, *Hiera Picra*, three quarters of an ounce, oyl of Rue two ounces, make a Cliſter thereof.

For to purge.

HAlf an ounce or one ounce of *Hiera Picra* taken oftentimes, is very convenient: But it is better to uſe firſt ſome preparative potions, which are thus to be compoſed: Take blew Flower de-luce roots, or Ireos, Piony roots, Fennel roots, and Ariſtology, of each one ounce and a half, prepared Squils one ounce, garden Mints and Wormwood, of each one handful and a half, wild Thyme, Miſcleden, wild and tame Sage, and Rue, of each one M. Anniſe, Fennel ſeed, Piony ſeeds pilled, of each one ounce, Silver Mountain, Baſil ſeed, ana ℥. ß. Licorice, Raiſons, and *Stechas*, of each one ounce, the juice of Fumitory (or the water) two ounces, clarified Honey ſix ounces, Sugar nine ounces: ſeethe the herbs, ſeeds and roots all together; afterwards wring it out hard, and with the decoction, the Hony and Sugar make a clear ſyrup; give thereof to the Patient the ſpace of certain daies together one ounce and a half, or two ounces, with any of the waters meet for it. And becauſe that the foreſaid *Hiera* is gentle in purging, and this ſickneſſe doth require ſtrong things; therefore take *Hiera Picra*, ℥. 2. ß. prepared Coloquint, and *Bdellium*, ana. ℈. ß. Maſtick, ℊ. 3. make pils thereof with the juice of Worm wood, and give the Patient ℥. 1. at night going to bed.

In like ſort when he goeth to bed, then is this ſalve following, the quantity of a Hemp ſeed, to be wiped at the leaſt thrice a week in the Patients noſe: Take Oxe gall one quarter of an ounce, Starch half a drachme, *Nigella* ſeed half a ſcrup. Marjoram gentle ſix grains, white Helleborе five grains, *Euphorbium* three grains, pownd all reaſonable ſmall and temper it well together.

After purging.

AFter purging is the ſick perſon to uſe a confortative, as hereafter followeth: Take prepared Pearls half a drach. Galangal and Cinnamom, ana. ℈. 2. Seduary, ℈. ß. prepared Coriander, red Coral, ana ℥. 1. Nutmegs, Cloves, Cucubes, Coutchenel, Aniſe and Fennel, ana. ℊ. 16. yellow Saunders and Maſtick, ana. ℊ. 5. *Diptamus* Miſcleden, pilled Piony ſeeds, of each two ſcruples, confected Citron Pills half an ounce, Sugar Candy half an ounce, conſerve of Roſes, and of *Stechados*, of each three drachmes but if the Conſerve of *Stechas* cannot be had, take pownded Stecas one drachme, ſix ounces of Sugar decocted to a ſyrup in Roſe water and then temper the reſt amongſt it. In like manner are other ſtomachical things to be uſed; for which Maſtick is highly commended.

For the ſtrengthening of the ſtomach is this ſhield worn: Take Maſtick three ounces, Spikenard, Roſes, Frankincence, of each one drachme, ſtampe them all together, and make it to a plaiſter with odoriferous wine, ſpred upon leather, and lay it upon the ſtomach; if it will not cleave faſt, add wax, and oyl of Maſtick as much as is needful unto it.

Ano-

Another.

TAke Laudanum, and Maſtick, of each one ounce and a half, Frankincenſe one quarter of an ounce, Galangal, Sednary, and Annis ſeeds, of each one drachme and a half, Roſes, red and white Sanders, of each one drachme, garden Mints, and Bloodſtone, of each one quarter of an ounce, Turpentine one ounce, melt the Laudanum in the Turpentine in a warm mortar, with a little of the juyce of Wormwood, temper the reſt beaten ſmall amongſt it, and make a plaiſter or ſhield of it: you ſhall have more of theſe ſhields for the ſtomach in the third part.

After the uſe of the purgation, the patient is to take once a week at leaſt, early in the morning, one drachme of Mithridate tempered with Balm water, and thereupon to remain lying the ſpace of four hours, and to ſleep if he can without uſing any thing elſe the ſame day.

A Bag.

TAke *Species Electuarii de gemmis, Letificantis Almanſoris*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Mace, one drach. Marjoram, Indy ſpica, *Lignum Aloes*, and red Stirax, of each half a drach. each ſtamped alone, make a ſilk bag, and wear it on the left breſt, when it is beſweat, then let it dry again.

Here followeth yet many a good remedy.

TAke Piretrum, Maſtick, of each a like quantity, temper them with molten Wax, and make ſmall balls or pellets thereof, of the bigneſſe of a Haſel nut, chew them and ſpet out the ſlime, kembe your head oftentimes, and anoint it with the oyl of Maſtick and Spikenard: the Gargariſmes which follow hereafter are very meet for this ſickneſſe; Take Ireos, prepared Squils, of each one ounce and a half, Hyſſop, wild Thyme, of each one M. Piretrum one quarter of an ounce, Licebane, Maſtick, of each one drach. white Hellebore one quarter of an ounce, Piony ſeed pilled, and Ginger, of each five drach. Raiſins (the ſtones taken out) two ounces, Vinegar half an ounce, clarified Honey three ounces: ſeethe all that is to be ſodden, afterwards temper the Vinegar and Honey amongſt it.

Neeſing.

THe Neeſing (like as it is oftentimes ſaid already) is very ſpecial good, thereby to purge the brain. But for this ſickneſſe are Piony roots beaten commended above meaſure, and blown into the noſe. If you temper this powder with the juyce of Rue, and drop it into the noſe, then will it be more forcible, for the Rue hath a marvellous operation againſt the falling ſickneſſe, like as hath alſo *Spicanardus*: theſe foreſaid things are alſo good beaten, and ſmelled to the other, as this ſmall bag following.

Take wild Rue beaten half an ounce, Silver mountain one quarter of an ounce, red Stirax one drach. and a half, Piony roots five drach. temper them well together, and bind them in a little bag or cloth, and ſmell unto it.

Of things that may be hanged about the neck.

IN this falling ſickneſſe are ſome things highly commended of all the famous Phyſitians, to be hanged about the neck, and they alleadge thereto alſo certain reaſons and experiences, wherewith they do prove and ſhew, that they that wear them about the neck, do not fall, and omitting it, their diſeaſe preſently returneth. This is alſo no miſbelief, like as the common people thinketh: but it is the ſmell or ſavour, which doth moſt vehemently withſtand this evil, and therefore is the ſame at no hand to be omitted. Some write alſo, that the red Coral and the Emerald hath the ſame vertue, which experience muſt teach us. This haply hath been (as hath been ſaid) a cauſe of ſome ſuperſtition, as commonly it befalleth, that good things are abuſed: for every one can tell, that the Goſpel of Saint John, pieces of the Croſſe and other ſuch like fantaſtical Reliques, alſo ſentences of the holy Scripture, have been uſed to unwitch and bleſſe thoſe

that

that have been foreſpoken. It hath alſo been faithfully credited, that thereby great marvels might be wrought, if they were onely either ſpoken over the patient, or hanged about his neck: for the which this piece of Jugling might alſo be uſed, wherein it is counſelled, that a girdle be cut out of a Wolves skin, even from the head thereof to the very tail, and ſo wear it about the body. But becauſe it is not eaſily for every man to catch a Wolf, the ſame is alſo aſcribed to the skin of an Aſſe. Theſe things for the moſt part are accounted as Goſpel of old doting women: like as it is alſo with the gut of a Wolf, that is of many Women applyed to the navels of young children againſt the Collick & gripings of the belly: but theſe remedies following are of better eſtimation, and of a more ſecret or hidden vertue, to wit; Briony worn about the neck: alſo Thyme, hyſſop, Rue, and Southernwood worn likewiſe in the boſom, for by reaſon of their ſmell they may have ſome effect.

A Capital Unguent.

TAke Marjoram gentle, Roſemary flowers, of each half an ounce, Lignum Aloes one ounce, beat them together, and rub them well with ſtrong Wine in a morter, temper one ounce of Barley meal, Starch two ounces amongſt it, apply this to the head being ſhaven; it eaſeth the falling evil marvellouſly.

Item, take oyl of Rue, oyl of Pepper of each one ounce ſweet Coſtus roots, Piretrum, Ginger, Galangal, Rue ſeeds, of each one drach. and a half: mix them all together, and ſo apply them warm over both the ſhoulders.

Item, take Bevercod cut ſmall four ounces, oyl of Olives ſix ounces, Juniper berries beaten groſly three ounces, put a pint of ſtrong wine upon them, cover it well, and let it boil a while: with this is the patient to be anointed in the hams, in the armpits, and on the pulſes of his hands. Alſo it is very good in this infirmity to anoint the forehead with the ſuet of a Stag.

Indian Baulme is in like ſort good for all kind of falling evils, being anointed on the roof of the mouth; and albeit that it cureth not the ſickneſſe wholly, yet will it greatly hinder his return.

Ungula Alcis.

IT is a common errour to wear a ring of this beaſts hoof on his finger againſt the falling ſickneſſe, I have proved it oftentimes, but with no eaſe unto the patient.

A Confection or Electuary for the falling evil.

TAke Piretrum, Coſtus roots, Stechas, of each ten drach. Agarick five drach. Dill ſeed, *Aſſa-fœtida*, Ariſtologie, of each two drach. and a half, juyce of Squils, clarified Honey, of each 14. ounces: boil the juyce and the honey with a gengle fire, untill it wax meetly thick, afterwards when it beginneth to cool, mix the other ingredients with it: take of this every morning three drach. and faſt four hours after it. *Montagnana* taketh God to record, that he hath known a thouſand cured thereby. This following is not much unlike the former, take Piretrum, Silver mountain, Stechados, of each ten drach. Agarick five drach. Cardamom, Aſſafœtida, Ariſtologie, of each one drach. and a half, juyce of Squils, and honey twice as much as of all the reſt, or as much as is needfull; let them boil ſufficiently, and temper the other things being powdered amongſt them. The patient ſhall uſe every day of this confection one quarter of an ounce, and beware of groſſe meats.

Theſe two Electuaries following are very good for all manner of falling evils, except that which is cauſed of blood: take prepared Pearls one drach. Cloves, Galangal, Nutmegs, Cucubes, of each half a drach. Cinamom one ſcruple, Couchenel, Lignum Aloes, red Stirax, of each half a ſcruple, red Sanders, Calamus, Doronicum, of each five grains, Piony ſeeds peeled, Miſtlero, Diptamar of each one drach. Currans one ounce, conſerve of Roſes, conſerve of Stechados, conſerve of Burrage, of each two drachmes, white Sugar clarified in Roſe water twelve ounces, make a confection of them.

Another; Take Piony roots one ounce, Mace, Indian, Spike, Saffron, red Corral, prepared Pearls, of each half a drach. Cinamom, Cloves, Nutmegs, Ginger, Pepper, long Pepper, Cardamom, Grains, of each two drachmes, Licorice five drachmes, Anacardium one ounce and a half, Muſk, Amber, of each ſeven grains, Clarified Honey or Sugar twelve

twelve ounces, make an Electuary of them: take of this the bigneſſe of a Nutmeg, and drink a little Mead after it. It is very good againſt the falling-ſickneſſe, the Palſey, and ſuch like other infirmities more, it comforteth the brain, maketh a good memory, and expelleth the lethargie, and all oblivioufneſſe.

One may uſe either of theſe preſcribed medicines, or this powder following, take Cinamom, Cloves, Galangal, Nutmegs, Mace, Cucubes, of each two drachmes, black, white and long Pepper, Cardamom, Annis ſeeds, Fennel ſeeds, peeled Piony ſeeds, Hyſſop, Diptamer, Miſtleto, of each one drach. Saffron two drachmes, Sugar-candy five drach. make a powder of them, keep it in a leather ſack, and uſe it in all thy meats.

Item, take the ſeeds of Maiden hair half an ounce, Miſtleto one ounce, Tormentil one ounce and a half, make them into a powder and miniſter two drachmes of it at once, with the decoction of Piony roots when you fear the exceſſe of the diſeaſe. For this purpoſe ſerveth alſo white Muſtard ſeeds prepared, conſerve of Betony, the juyce, the water, the herb, and the flowers: in fine, all that is made of Betony is very good for the falling ſickneſſe of the head, and for all other infirmities of the ſame: So is alſo the conſerve of Piony roots, ſeeds, water, wine of Piony, and all what may be prepared thereof, as may evidently be ſeen by the former receipts: the preſerved Eringus roots are alſo very profitably uſed therein.

In like ſort alſo Lavander, Roſemary, Spikenard, their leaves, flowers, wine, and whatſoever elſe is made of them: we have alſo mentioned of the taking of Mithridate and Treacle: likewiſe Guaicum is very commodiouſly uſed for this infirmity. After due evacuation of the body, this is alſo much commended in the falling ſickneſſe, take the juyce of Rue two ounces, Aſſafœtida half a drachme, mix them together, and ſo take them.

Item, take the skul of a ſound man calcined or burnt, pilled Piony ſeeds, of each half an ounce, Tormentill, Miſtleto, of each two drachmes, give it to the patient as before: the ſame doth alſo burnt Harts horn taken with wine, as alſo the liver of a Kite, and dried blood of a Sheep, the bladder of a Boar with the urine dried in an oven, and every day the bigneſſe of a bean taken with Oxymel.

Item, Ravens eggs, Swallowes fleſh, Wolfs, Harts, Fox fleſh, either boyled or otherwiſe, the blood and fleſh of a Weſel tempered with the urine of a man-child.

Item, Bucks blood taken, the hoof of an Aſſe burnt and mixed with ſtrong Vinegar, and ſo anointed about the head.

The liver of an Aſſe taken faſting, the gall of a Bear powdered, the fume of Peacoks dung or otherwiſe uſed, Partridges livers dried, and one drachme and a half drunken, the brains of Camels, or of Weſels uſed with vinegar, the bones of a man calcined, the blood of a Tortoiſe that liveth in freſh water, a Cuckow put into a pipkin cloſe ſtopped, and burnt to aſhes, the ſtones of a Boar, of a wild Boar, of a Ram, and of a Bear drunken, with water, the brains of Sparrowes with many ſtrange things more that are highly commended of divers famous Phyſitians, but above all other things is the rheuming of a Leveret much commended, as hath been ſaid before. Every one may uſe of the premiſſes thoſe that he hath approved to be good: but if this falling evil (which very ſeldom befalleth) be cauſed of blood, then appeareth it with redneſſe of the face, red eyes, and with large veins. In this caſe is the Saphea to be opened, boxing cups to be ſet on the thighs, and legs, and on all other parts of the body. Three ounces of oyl of Roſes mixed with an ounce of Vinegar, and other cooling things more, are to be apdlyed to the head: alſo to beware of theſe meats, that fume into the head, and that ingender much blood, as hath been ſaid, neither may the patient uſe any Wine, ſowre Fruits, as Citrons, Lemons, Verjuyce: Pomgranats may he meaſurably uſe either raw by themſelves, or mixed with his drink.

Of the Friction.

THe patient is to be rubbed downwards, to wit, from the neck to the very rump, from the breſts to the legs, and from the thighs to the feet, the lower the better, with rough clothes warmed, thereby to draw the matter downwards: after that, he is to uſe a reaſonable motion, walking, and kembing of the head. Some counſel to rub the pulſes with Strawberry water: and if all this will not help, then is an actual Cautery to be uſed for the extreameſt and laſt remedy, whereof hath been ſpoken before.

Of

Of the Apoplexie or dead Palsy. §. 18.

EVen as we have generally ſpoken of this fearfull diſeaſe in the §. 9. this Apoplexia is the moſt vehement and laſt of all the former five infirmities. becauſe it is more hurtfull and perillous then all the reſt; for it often befalleth, that theſe Apopleſtici do not onely loſe their ſpeech, ſenſes, and memory, but alſo all motion, natural warmth and nourishment, yea remain wholly dumbe, which happeneth by reaſon that all the paſſages of the brains are obſtructed, whereby the vital ſpirits cannot be ſpread over the whole body: and becauſe they are without ſenſe, without feeling, and without all motion, do the Latiniſts call them *Attonitos.*

This *Apoplexia* is deſcribed after two manner of wayes, the one bereaveth a man of all ſenſe and feeling, and that otherwhiles ſo long, that the patient ſeemeth to be dead, wherfore it is alſo commanded, that he ſhould not be buried before the fourth day: and to be aſſured that there is no life more to be expected, thou ſhalt hold a little feather at his mouth, which if it neither move nor wag, and that the body waxeth ſtiffe, then is he departed. Likewiſe a glaſſe of water is to be ſet upon his breſt and if the ſame be not ſtirred, then it is a ſure ſign of death.

The other Palſey is ſomewhat eaſier, it doth firſt infect the breſt, whereby all the ſinewes are conſtrained to move immoderately, and to hinder reſpiration, and this is rightly called Apoplexia. Others do divide it into three kinds: whereof the firſt is, when the patient doth draw a little breath, but with great difficulty, as alſo when he ſweth, his breath is not heard, but his voyce a little, as if he were choked, and this is the worſt and deadlieſt Palſey.

The ſecond hath a variable reſpiration or breathing, ſometimes not perceived at all, and anon returning to his former courſe, without ſome at the mouth: this is alſo not without great danger, and albeit that it were cured, yet doth it turn to ſome other ſickneſſe.

The third kind is, when the breath remaineth in due order. The cauſes of theſe ſickneſſes are ſuperabundant humours either in the brain, or in the blood, overcharging the ſtomach with meat or drink, overwatching, debility of the brains, drinking of cold water, cool winds, rainy weather, blowes, falls, uſe of many cold meats, as fruits, fiſhes, letice, overmuch ſleep carnal copulation preſently after meals, long reſt or quiet, binding in the body, over much bleeding either by opening of a vein, or otherwiſe. This diſeaſe is both very common, and very dangerous for old folks, eſpecially if they have kept an immoderae diet before. The common and ſureſt ſigns of it are theſe, to wit, if the patient he quickly ſnorting and not ſleeping, be handled or pinched without ſenſe or feeling. Likewiſe, the vehemency or debility of this diſeaſe may be diſcerned by the ſnorting: alſo it is to be taken for a moſt ſure and infallible ſign thereof, if he ſome at the mouth, and is by no means poſſible to be cured; ſo that all Phyſicians herein agree, that nothing can be done but onely to ſatisfie his friends, yet without all hope of recovery.

But if the patient ſnort not hard, then is the Apoplexie the leſſe, and to be brief, a ſtrong Apoplexie maketh quick diſpatch of the patient, or elſe there enſueth a dead palſey, which is much eaſilier cured: wherefore it is altogether needleſſe to make any great diſcourſe of this Apoplexie, and the rather, becauſe that all the remedies ſerving for cure of this ſickneſſe, are declared in the treatiſe of the falling evil, and of the palſey.

Afterwards heed is alſo to be taken, whether the face wax red, black, or green, as it commonly befalleth if ſome part be tyed or bounden about hard: for this, are both the Saphenæ to be opened on the feet, and a while after both the head veins, afterwards in the forehead above the noſe. This being done, the arms above the elbowes, and the legs beneath the knees, are to be very ſtrongly bound, that the blood might be drawn to the pains, yet (as it hath oftentimes been ſaid before) not to let them be bounden too long without untying them, and then afterwards tying them again. Alſo you are to pinch the fingers of the patient very hard, and rub both his ears and his noſe ſo roughly, that it might be painfull unto him.

Some do counſel that the outward parts ſhould be ſtroked downwards with wine, wherin Ireos or Calamus hath been decocted: alſo ſuppoſitories, Cliſters, and boxing cups, and ſuch like not to be omitted, nor yet the application of Oxyrrhodinum to the head.

But if none of the foreſaid ſigns do appear in the patient, but onely a little ratling in the throat

throat when he breatheth, then it is an infallible ſign of many watriſh humours, for the which this Cliſter following is to be uſed. Take Centory, wild and garden Sage, Rue, Southernwood, Marjoram, white water Mints, of each half an M. a little Bran, and half a Coloquint tyed up in a cloth, boil them all together in a ſufficient quantity of water. Take of this decoction 16. ounces, and mix it with *Melanacardinum*, and oyl of Coſtus, of each one ounce and a half, Sal gemmæ one drachme, Hiera Picra 7. drachmes, ſtir them well together, this is very meet for the Apoplexie.

To draw the phlegme out of the head, ſhalt thou provoke neeſing with Ellebore, for the which this root is very appropriate, or uſe this following: Take white Ellebore, or neeſing-wort one drachme, Bevercod half a drach. Lignum Aloes one ſcruple, beat them to powder, and blow it into the noſe; and if he could abide vomitting, the uſe therof will not be unprofitable for him, open his mouth and powre therein Oxymel of Squils with warm water, oyl of Roſes, and of Lillies.

Item, boyled Radiſhes, or horſe Radiſhes in water. Alſo this vomiting may be provoked by putting a feather into the throat: give unto him not much meat, and if it be poſſible, give him nothing to drink but Mead, and the next day let him drink one drach. or one drach. and a half of the decoction of Annis ſeeds.

Thou ſhalt call alowd and make a great noiſe about this patient, alſo uſe Muſick, thereby to awake him out of his deadly ſleep, which if it will not help, then is he to be pulled, pinched, and very roughly to be handled.

It is alſo very meet, that this patient take every day one drachme, more or leſſe of the confection Anacardina with Oxymel, thereby to bring an Ague according as the cauſe requireth, for it is very hot: wherefore the learned diſpute greatly whether an ague be a good or a bad ſign in the Apoplexie.

Of outward applications.

TAke Cammomil, Melilot, Penniroyal, wild Thyme, Marjoram, Baulme, Marjoram gentle, of each one M. boil them in water, and bathe or foment the head therewith warm, ſtamp the herbs, put to them oyl of Rue, and of Lillies, of each one ounce and a half, and apply them warm to the head; if it be cold weather, then anoint the head with oyls that are warm of nature, & with the oyl of Daffodils, of Bevercod, of Piretrum, and ſuch like: and not onely the head, but alſo the neck and the whole back bone. Or make this ſalve following: Take Calamus, bitter Coſtus roots, of each half an ounce, Silver mountain, Baſil ſeed, of each an ounce, oyl of Spikenard, of Cammomil, of Lillies, of each two ounces, white Wine three ounces; melt all that is to be molten, and boil them together on a ſmall fire of coals, untill the Wine be conſumed; then mix the oyl amongſt it, and anoint the whole head therewith, and the back bone downwards to the very end thereof: And if this will not help, then ſhave off all the hair on the head; and apply this plaiſter following, being ſpread on a piece of leather or a piece of fuſtian, and make it as big that the whole head may be covered therewith. Take *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, *Opopanacum*, of each two drachmes, Sulphur vive one drachme and a half, Turpentine one ounce, melt and mix them well together.

Now to finiſh this part of the brains, we muſt firſt remember two things briefly: Firſt that it is moſt neceſſary for this patient altogether to forbear wine, and to drink ſome ſmall beer; or to continue with this Mead following, which is made of twelve quarts of water, and three or four quarts of honey being well ſodden and ſcummed. Concerning his meat hath ſufficiently been ſpoken before.

Secondly, if his ſpeech be altogether or very much decayed, then is the water of Liriconfanſie to be uſed, as it is deſcribed in the 5. §. before, and with it all manner of waters of life, which are ſpecified in the eight part. Alſo Wormword Wine, Lavander Wine, Spikenard Wine, and the conſerve of the ſame: but remember alwayes, that all other wines be ſtreightly prohibited: wherefore theſe ought alſo very circumſpectly to be uſed.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the Mouth, and all that appertaineth unto it.

AFter the deſcription of the Brains, which are the uppermoſt inward member of the head, we will now ſpeak of other parts, as of the Mouth and Lips. In the mouth, firſt is the palate, the tongue, the gums, the roof, the teeth, the almonds, with all the other adjacent parts; as the voice, which is made and brought forth with the lips, tongue, teeth, and with other parts more.

After them follow all manner of accidents that are incident unto them.

Now to ſpeak of the whole mouth it is to be admired, as alſo all other parts that are created by God; for above all that it containeth, it is the only means whereby every living thing receiveth food for the whole body. Alſo by this the noſtrils, the heart and lungs receive ayr, without which it is impoſſible to live.

Thirdly, out of this proceedeth the voyce and ſpeeches, whereby one man underſtandeth another, and whereby a man is different from all other beaſts, which have nothing common with us but only the voyce.

Theſe things are manifold, as hereafter ſhall appear more at large. Of the outward parts, to wit, of the lips, hath been ſpoken in the tenth Chapter: but before we come to this particular treatiſe, we will firſt of all ſhew all that belongeth unto the mouth.

Of Putrifactions and exulcerations in the Mouth. §. 1.

THeſe exulcerations or putrifactions of the mouth are of many ſorts; one deep, another not; ſome purulent, ſome corroding, virulent, as well in the tongue as in the gums, conſuming and ſpoiling them otherwhiles wholly. They proceed of divers cauſes, and amongſt all other of theſe, to wit, if one ſcald his mouth with hot meats, or uſe any thing which is hot by nature; likewiſe alſo hot vapours which aſcend from the ſtomach and ulcerate the mouth.

If theſe exulcerations be red, the face alſo red and inflamed, and eſpecially about the place where the ſore appeareth; thereby may be adjudged, that it proceeds onely of the blood: but if the colour in the face be yellowiſh, with heat and dryth in the mouth, redneſſe in the eyes, of the throat, and with bliſters in the mouth, without any great ſwelling, and that the Patient cannot abide any hot thing in his mouth; then proceedeth it of *Choler*; but if the Ulcers be white, without great pain, without any great ſwelling of the lips and gums, and if the ſpettle be ſaltiſh, then riſeth the ſame of *Phlegma*. The melancholick humour bringeth her own ſigns with her, to wit, obſcureneſſe, hardneſſe, and blackneſſe.

Theſe infections are thus deſcribed; The Putrifaction in the mouth is, when many bliſters and ulcers are ingendred, which do arrode the gums, tongue, and throat painfully, running from one place to another, and ſo ſpoyl the mouth.

Before thou take theſe exulcerations in hand, look whether they be deep eaten into the fleſh or not, new or old. If they be not big but freſh, and not overladen with much moiſture, then uſe theſe things following, which may ſuffice with ſome aſtringent and binding things admixed, as to waſh the mouth with Well water, Plantain water, and Roſe-water, wherein the bloſſoms of Pomgranates and their pills, and alſo Galls have been decocted. You may alſo uſe Roſewater mixed with vinegar.

Item, the decoction of Fleawort ſeeds, or of dryed Prunes, by it ſelf, or tempered with vinegar. Item, take rain water, boyl therein the yellow ſeeds, of Roſes, with Galls as much as you pleaſe, and waſh the mouth therewith, or extinguiſh Steel made red hot in milk, and waſh thy mouth often therewith. Item, take Galls one drach. Roſe water ſix ounces, vinegar one ounce and a half, put them together. Or take Roſes, burnt Ivory, Coriander, Sumach, Lentils, Purſlain ſeeds, peeled Gourd ſeed, and Cucumber ſeeds, of each half an ounce, beat and mix them together; and laſtly, adde a little Camphire unto them. Take of this powder half an ounce, Roſewater, vinegar, of each two ounces, uſe it as hath been ſaid before: mix Well water with the juice of Pomgranates or wine;

likewiſe the decoction of Barley mixed with Sugar, cleanſeth the mouth. The water of Sage healeth all exulcerations, if the mouth be rinſed oft therewith. Alſo in a hot cauſe are very good all fruits that are ſowr, cold and aſtringent, being chewed, as Medlars, Mulberries, Choak pears, Quinces, Services, Framboies, and ſuch like, eſpecially if they be not over-ripe. Alſo the juyce of Vine leaves, and ſowr and tart herbs may be uſed for Gargariſmes.

But if theſe gentle remedies do no good, then purge the Patient as the cauſe requireth, as before hath often been ſhewed. But becauſe this is for the moſt part cauſed through heat, he is to be purged with Caſſia, ſowr Dates, or with the Electuary of Roſes, afterwards open the vein under the tongue, or thoſe that appear on the inſide of the lower lip, which is very commodious for all hot infirmities of the lips.

If ſucking children be troubled with it, then is the nurſe to be fed with cooling things, for by the alteration of their milk, they are eaſily reſtored to health again; for this purpoſe is the oyl of Sulphur very good, as well in young children as ancient people, but there are many common things that are altogether as good as that.

Item, take the yellow ſeeds of white Roſes, bloſſoms of Pomgranates, Starch, burnt Ivory, milk of Lentils, Purſlain ſeeds, Coriander, Sene husks, of each alike much, and a little Camphire; make a powder of them, and rub the ulcer eaſily therewithal, or hold it in thy mouth with vinegar of Roſes, Roſe water, and oyl of Roſes. Item, for this hot exulceration thou ſhalt take the water of Shepherds purſe, of broad Plantain, of Roſes and of Purſlain, of each two ounces, the juyce of Mulberries, honey of Roſes, of each one ounce, mix them well together, and gargariſe with it often.

Item, take Galls, Pomgranate bloſſoms, and Cypres nuts, of each one ounce, Roſes, white Bryer, two drach. Acorn cups half an ounce; beat them groſly, and boyl them in water, and waſh thy mouth with it. When by theſe means the pain is ſomewhat abated, then mix freſh butter with hony of Roſes, and anoint the place therewith; this mayſt thou well account one of the beſt remedies. Or ſtamp a ſowr Pomgranate with the pills, wring it out hard, and adde as much hony to the juice; let them ſeethe together untill it be thick. If thou wilt have it ſtronger, adde the third part of beatens Acorns with it. The application of boxing cups is alſo very meet and fit for it; and if the Patient be full of blood, then is the head vein to be opened.

But if the bliſters be white, then is the Patient to be purged with *Diaturbith*, or with theſe pills following; Take *Species Hiera Picra* two drach. *Species medicaminis turbith*, 2. drach. and a half, Coloquint half a drach. make pills thereof with wine, take of them one drach. or one drach. and a half at once. It is alſo very good to rub them with hony and ſalt; but theſe things following are more in uſe, and more fit for this purpoſe: Take Allom one ounce, boyl it in Plantain water; you may alſo put plantain leaves unto it, and waſh the mouth often therewith. Take hony of Roſes, warm water, and a little Allom, half as much vinegar as water, uſe it as before, it is very good. Take Roſes one ounce and a half, Plantain one ounce, burnt Allom half a drach. Mirtle ſeeds half as much, Pomgranate bloſſomes and pils, of each one ſcrup. let them ſeethe well together and uſe it as the other. Item, take one pint of water, and a good piece of Ireos cut ſmall, and as much Allom, honey of Roſes two ſpoonfuls, let it boyl away two fingers breadth. In ſum, whenſoever *Phlegma* is cauſe of the Ulcers, then muſt drying and aſtringent remedies be uſed. Cypres nuts, barks of the Frankincenſe tree, Frankincenſe and Maſtick; and although one ſhould mix theſe warm things with others that are cold and aſtringent, as Galls, Pomgranate pils, Roſes, Mirtle ſeeds, and ſuch like; yet is not that any errour at all, but rather a help. Alſo of theſe things following may gargariſmes be made, or little balls with the juyce of Pears, or Quinces to hold in the mouth.

There is in the ſeventh Chapter and §. 4. a water deſcribed for the eyes, beginning; Take broad Plantain water, with Verdigreaſe, and Dragons blood. This may you uſe if the ſore run much, and were very unclean, for it dryeth and healeth much: Take Plantain water, boyl therein groſſe beaten Myrtle ſeeds. This cleanſeth the ſores, and cureth them: Conſerve of Roſes held in the mouth long doth cleanſe the ſame. *Oxycrater*, that is wine, water, and vinegar mixed together, is alſo very good.

If this exulceration of the mouth proceed of Melancholy, then ſhalt thou purge as followeth: Take Currans one ounce, Borrage flowers, and of Bugloſſe, *Epithymum*, and Sene, of each one drach. boyl them in water wherein *Mirobalani Indi*, and *Chebuli*, of each half an ounce have been ſteeped and decocted, give 3. or 4. ounces there of in the morning.

In

In like manner may you purge with *Hiera Ruffi*, you ſhall alſo uſe a gargariſme made with Currans and Anniſeeds, and mixed with hony. Hereafter do divers good things enſue for the infirmities of the tongue, that are alſo very good for this preſent purpoſe.

Of the ſwollen Almonds. §. 2.

IT chanceth alſo ſometimes, that in theſe infirmities the Almonds or the palate in the throat do exulcerate; of this palate ſhall hereafter eſpecial mention be made. But for the tumour of the Almonds, and other exulcerations in the throat, are theſe remedies following ordained. Take a quart of red wine, Roſes 3. M. peeles of two Pomgranates, four Galls groſly beaten, Licorice half an ounce, Currans two drach. boyl them together untill the fourth part be waſted; before thou doſt adhibite this, waſh thy mouth with a cloth dipped in wine, then uſe it warm; if it be with any exulceration, then adde honey of Roſes unto it, and waſh it every day five or ſeven times.

Aqua Johannis.

THis water is very good and effectual to gargarize withal, both in bliſters and ulcers; Take Sulphur vive, red Mints, Allom and Sugar, of each half an ounce, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, of each two drach. *Piretrum* half a drach. *Aqua vitæ* three ounces, beat all what is to be beaten, and temper them together; Take Allom, Sugar, of each half an ounce, boyl them together in Plantain water, mix it with the juyce of Mulberries, waſh the mouth therewith, it aſſwageth the ſwelling, dryeth and healeth. The ſame doth alſo the ſirup of Mirtle ſeeds, and of the juice of Nutſhels that hereafter are deſcribed. In like manner alſo, Milk, and the juice of Lettice, each by it ſelf. If the throat be exulcerated within, then take Frankincenſe, *Sandaraca*, Maſtick, of each one drach. red Styrax half a drach. beat them together, and receive the fume thereof at the mouth oftentimes: afterwards gargarize with Barly water and honey of Roſes.

For all impediments, putrifactions, and exulcerations of the mouth, are 3. divers gargariſmes preſcribed and ordained; whereof ſome are ſpecified hereafter, wherewith is alſo declared how that commendable juice of Mulberries, hony of Roſes, and more other things are to be prepared.

Of outward exulcerations, and contractions of the mouth, hath been ſpoken in the twelfth Chapter, and §. 14.

Of a ſtinking Mouth and Breath. §. 3.

THis infirmity proceedeth not only from the mouth, but of many other accidents more, which the learned comprehend in the number of eight: firſt, when the gums do putrifie and ſtink: ſecondly, bad and hollow teeth: thirdly, ſtinking humours that fall down from the head into the pannicles of the mouth, and there make the ſpettle to ſtink: fourthly, ſtinking ſlime of the ſtomach: fifthly, the corruption of the lights: ſixthly, ſtinking matter and purulency, as in *Phthiſi*: ſeventhly, ſtopping in the noſe, or ſome exulceration of the ſame, as in *Ozena*: eighthly, the corruption before mentioned of the mouth.

Of the foreſaid infirmities have divers Authors ſufficiently ſpoken, as alſo hereafter in many places ſhall appear. Here we treat only of the corruption of the mouth, in the which we may comprehend the three laſt cauſes. And firſt of all, if this ſtench proceed from the brain, and ſettle it ſelf in the tunicles of the mouth, which moſt commonly commeth of heat, then is there preſent a great itch heat, thirſt and drought. For this ſhalt thou open the head vein, ſet boxing cups in the neck, purge the head with *Pillulæ Aureæ*, or *Cochiæ*, waſh thy mouth often with Plantain water, or water of Shepherds purſe, receive the water of decocted Mallowes or Lettice, and ſmell of Roſes, Violets, Water-Lillies, Willow leaves, Saunders, or of Camomil.

If it proceed of cold, then uſe ſome dayes together potions of Oxymel Compoſitum, or Oxymel of Squills, purge with *pill. Cochiæ*, and gargarize with this water following.

Take Ireos, Cypres roots, Juniper berries, Marjoram gentle, field Mints, wild Time, garden Mints, all of them, or as many as you pleaſe, uſe it often: you may alſo draw it up into the noſe; you muſt beware of Fruits, Fiſhes, Beans, all hard meats, and ſuch as putrifie ſpeedily in the ſtomach.

If the corruption of the mouth do cauſe this ſtinking breath, then ſhall you garganize very often with the decoction of Agrimony, and Olive leaves, adding as much Honey unto it, as you think good. Item, take Vinegar and extinguiſh it in gold, made red hot a good many times, with cloves decocted in it; waſh the mouth with it, this taketh away the ſtench: alſo gold only held in the mouth is very good, ſo likewiſe doth chewed Ireos. Take green oaken leaves, beat them to powder, and take of this one drach. every day faſting with Wine, it taketh away the ſtench. In the 12. Chapter, and §. 1. in the deſcription of the Memory you may find a good powder, which beginneth, Take Sene leaves, Sedvary, &c. Item, take Cinamom, Cloves, Sage, Marjoram gentle, Balm, Nutmegs, Angelica roots, and ſuch like odoriferous things, eat and chew them in thy mouth, ſpet them out, and take in freſh; they take away all bad ſavours and ſtenches.

Of what cauſe ſoever this infection proceed, theſe ſimples following are very commodious for it, each by it ſelf, to wit, Avence, Cipres roots, Frankincenſe, Lignum Aloes, Cinamom, Citron ſeeds, Rape ſeeds, Cloves, Myrrhe, *Blatta byzantia*, Maſtick, Cardamom, *Agnus caſtus*, Spica, Squinanth, Citron leaves, Roſes, Saunders, Camphire, water Lillies, Roſewater, prepared Coriander, odoriferous Apples, Quinces, Tormentil roots, and ſuch like.

Take white Saunders, Roſes, of each five drach. red Saunders, Citron pills, Squinanth, *Gallia muſchata*, of each two drach. make a powder or little balls thereof to hold in thy mouth.

A Gargariſme for all infections of the mouth. §. 4.

GArgariſmes are commonly made for all infirmities of the mouth, throat, and lips, to cleanſe, to heal, and to cure them; but becauſe we have deſcribed many ſuch accidents, and have promiſed to ſhew ſome gargariſme for them, which ſhall be done at this preſent: and for that in all gargariſmes three principal things are tempered, as the ſirup of Mulberries, hony of Roſes, and the juyce of Nut ſhells, we will therefore firſt of all ſhew how they are to be prepared.

The Syrup of Mulberries Diamoron.

THis Syrup is diverſly prepared. The common people take half Mulberries, and half Blackberries, and boyl them like to a Conſerve: of this do they give in hot diſeaſes to comfort. Others take onely the juyce of Black Mulberries, wringing them through a ſtrainer as ſoon as they are gathered, and ſo with Sugar make it to a ſirup.

The Apothecaries prepare it thus: Take ſix ounces of the juyce of Mulberries, 12 ounces of the juyce of Blackberries, both the berries as yet being not full ripe, clarified hony 11 ounces, ſweet wine three ounces; let them ſeethe together over a gentle fire till it be reaſonable thick, and keep it in a pot.

The fourth and beſt means. Take juyce of Mulberries, Blackberries, Framboyes, and of Strawberries, of each four ounces, clarified hony eight ounces, boyl them with a mild fire till they wax reaſonable thick. But note (as already hath been ſaid) that the berries be not altogether ripe; and becauſe the Framboyes and Strawberries be ripe before the reſt, their juyces are to be ſodden with half as much Sugar, and ſo to be kept untill the reſt be red; all theſe ſirups have an eſpecial vertue to cure all infirmities of the mouth, to cleanſe, to cool and to dry: for which cauſe alſo they are good to be uſed againſt the Squinancy, and all infections of the throat. But if thou wilt make it ſtronger, then temper Allom, Myrrhe, Saffron, and Verjuyce, of which thou wilt amongſt it, according as the cauſe requireth.

Honey of Roſes.

THis Honey of Roſes is alſo made diverſly, but commonly as followeth; Take Roſes that are not fully blown, cut off the yellow tops, and to one pound of Roſes put three pound of hony which hath been clarified very well, and ſo place it in the Sun.

One that is ſtronger: Take Roſe buds (as before) one pound, beat and boyl them in a pint and a half of rain water, wring it out hard, adde to the expreſſed liquor four ounces of the juyce of Roſes, clarified hony two pound, boyl them together till it be thick enough.

The

The third manner. Take clarified honey two pound and a half, juyce of Roſes new made four ounces, ſet them on the fire, and when it beginneth to boyl, mixe one pound of chopped Roſe leaves amongſt it, ſet them boyl till all the juyce be conſumed: afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth, and keep it cloſe ſtopped; for the older it is, the better it is. This honey of Roſes hath an eaſie aſtringent vertue, it cooleth, and is very good in all ſharp rheumes that fall from the head into the mouth: it withſtandeth all putrefactions, corroſions, and white exulcerations in the mouth; it expelleth all ſtinking humours of the ſtomach, that are cauſed of the gall, if it be uſed in hot Feuers; otherwiſe it doth cleanſe the ſtomach of all ſlimineſſe, provoketh ſweat. That which is made with the juyce of Roſes looſeth, and outwardly it cleanſeth all Ulcers, ſtinking wounds, and ſuch like. If any man had taken Phyſick, and would not willingly vomit it up again, he ſhall take a little of this honey of Roſes after it.

There is yet another manner of making of this honey of Roſes. Take ſix ounces of dry Roſe leaves, put 15. ounces of boyling water upon them in a pot that may be cloſe covered, let it infuſe ſo eight hours, then wring it out hard, and take as many Roſes more; make the liquor boyling hot again, put it on the Roſes, and let it infuſe as before; this reiterate thrice and no more; afterwards weigh the liquor, and to five ounces of it put three ounces of honey, boyl and clarifie it; this bindeth the body, and comforteth the ſtomach.

The Syrup of Nut-ſhells.

THe Apothecaries do call this ſirupe *Roh nucum*, and *Diacaridion*, which is thus prepared: Take the green ſhells of Nuts, beat them and preſſe out their juyce: of this take one pound, clarified honey half a pound, boyl them to a ſirupe. Some do take of the juyce and hony of each a like quantity: this ſirup is very good for women and weak folks troubled with hot rheumes that ſwell. You may adde other things unto it, according as the accident requireth.

The Gargariſmes which are moſt ſweet for the mouth, the throat, and the adjacent parts are theſe: Take Roſe water, Plantain water, of each four ounces, honey of Roſes one ounce, ſirup of Mulberries half an ounce, burnt Allom one drach. white wine 8. ounces, let them ſeethe together as long as you would do an egg, gargariſe therewith warm, it dryeth and cleanſeth.

Take Plantain, Knotgraſſe, and Barly, of each one handful, boyl them until the Barly burſt, ſtrain it through a cloth, and add to it hony of Roſes, ſirup of Mulberries, of each half an ounce: uſe it as above. Item, take Barly half a handful, roots of Bugloſſe as many, juice of Quinces one drach, and a half, Violets, Currans, and Staveſacre, of each two drach. boyl them in a good pint of water, until the barly ſwell; this healeth and allayeth the pain.

Take Pomgranates pills, broad and long Plantain, of each one handful, let them boyl together in a pint and a half of water being ſtrained, adde to it *Unguenti Ægyptiaci*, ſirup of Mulberries, and Nut ſhells, of each half an ounce, temper them all together; this dryeth marvellouſly, and healeth all ſtinking exulcerations. But you may not ſwallow any of it down, by reaſon of the Verdigreaſe which is in the ſalve.

Ingrent heat of the mouth and throat, with a ſharp matter adjoyned, which exoneareth this place: Take water of Nightſhade and Purſlain, of each three ounces, water of Burrage and of Violets, of each two ounces, ſeeds of Henbane half a drach. Quince kernels half a drach. Dragagant a drach. and a half, ſteep it in Roſewater, preſſe out the ſlime or muſcilage, and mix them all together.

Take Plantain water and mine, of each four ounces, burnt Allom half a drach. Hony of Roſes, ſirup of Mulberries, of each one ounce, boyl them a little, and gargariſe often therewith: this is eſpecial good in all tumours of the throat, and alſo in the ſquinancy. There are many more ſuch like gargariſmes preſcribed for many other diſeaſes, as every where may appear. There are alſo divers Phyſitians, which without any exception, uſe in all gargariſmes *Scrophularia*, and that not amiſſe, for it hath a wonderful vertue.

Of the Palate, and the falling down thereof. §. 3.

IT is called by the Grecians *Epiglottis*, that is, the little tongue; by the Latiniſts, *Epiglis, uvula*, and by us the palate. It is alſo a very needful part and member of the

tongue, it hath five ſeveral parts; firſt, the two Almonds, *Tonſilæ*, that engender the ſpettle, and moiſten the tongue; and if they wax dry, then do they hinder the ſpeech. Secondly, the *Aſpera Arteria*, or *Trachea*, and *Oeſophagus*. Laſtly, the Palate it ſelf. This is the only inſtrument of the voyce, whereby the ſame is faſhioned, and for that cauſe it is placed in the middeſt of the throat, becauſe it ſhould cover one part of the throat, and preſerve the breaſt, heart and lights, ſhould direct the meat and drink received, to the mouth of the ſtomach. It befalleth often, that it hangeth down, and ſo troubleth one very much, which he is not accuſtomed to have before, as may be ſeen when the tongue is preſſed down.

If this proceed of heat, then is the palate red, the veins about the eyes ſwollen, the face red, and the ſpettle ſweetiſh; all which are ſigns of over-much blood.

But if it be white, then it is cauſed of a cold rheume, which falleth into the mouth abundantly: the voice is hoarſe, the face pale, the palate white, and much longer then it ought to be.

Of the tumour and falling down of the Palate through heat.

IF the Palate be red, then is the whole back bone from the very neck downwards, and both the armes to be rubbed with warm clothes, the legs are to be tyed hard, and untyed again; afterwards boxing cups are to be faſtened on the thighes, againſt the fire; alſo if need require, the head vein may be opened upon the right hand.

Item, a veſicatory Unguent ſhall be applyed to the ſhoulders (which is diverſly deſcribed in the twelfth Chapter, and §. 16.) and ſo let it remain thereon two hours long.

Item, take Roſes, Galls, and Pomgranate pills, of each one drach. Allom one ſcruple, Salt half a ſcrup. make them into a powder, and bear up the Palate with it. Or take Roſewater and Vinegar mixt together, gargarize with it; or in the ſtead of Roſewater, you may take Well water.

Water of Plantain, and Nightſhade is alſo very meet for the ſame, but it muſt not be taken down.

Item, mix the ſirup of Mulberries and a little vinegar with water, and gargarize therewith.

Another. Take the yellow ſeeds of Roſes, and a few Citron ſeeds, boyl them in Plantain water, afterwards mingle ſome honey and a little vinegar with it.

This following is of no leſſe vertue then the former; Take the ſirup of Nutſhells one ounce and a half, the decoction of Sumach two ounces, temper them together, and uſe it certain dayes continually: if you will have it milder, then take Barley water inſtead of the other, and mixe ſome Pomgranate wine with it.

Item, another that is ſtronger, and eſpecially at the firſt: Take two ounces of Roſewater, one ounce of red vinegar, Acorn cups, *Hypociſtis*, juyce of Sloes, calcined plume Allom, of each one ſcrup. mingle them together for a gargariſme.

A Powder.

TAke the green ſhells of Nuts dryed, beat them ſmall, and take a little ſpoonful of the powder, hold it to the palate, and bear it up therewith continually: this hath oftentimes been approved.

Another. Take Allom (that is called *Allumen Jamenum*) burn it, and uſe it as before: or burn Sal-Armoniack, and uſe it as the other.

Note alſo, that all the powders may moſt conveniently be uſed, after that the Patient hath gargarized; nevertheleſſe they may be uſed when one thinketh good.

Of ſtalling, and falling down of the Palate through cold.

IF the Palate be white, then take Cinamom, Ginger, Pepper, *Pirethrum*, Pomgranate pils, Galls, and Roſes, of each alike much, make them into powder, and hold it to the palate as before.

Item, take long Pepper three drach. Ginger one drach. and a half, *Album Græcum*, that is, a white Dogs turd (of a dog that eateth nought elſe but bones) one drach. Allom four ſcruples, *Saccharum*, half a drach: uſe it as all the reſt; abhorre not the dogs turd, for in this extremity it hath a marvellous operation.

Item, take Sage; Muſtard ſeed, ana. ℥. 1. boyl them together in water, until there remain about 8. ounces, then add one ounce of honey of Roſes unto it.

Take *Album Græcum*, being well dryed, fine Bolus, ana. ℥. 1. Allome, ℥. ß. Pepper and Salt, ana. ℥. ß. make them into powder, and uſe it as above.

Take *Oxymel*, Muſtard ſeed beaten, and vinegar, of each a like quantity, anoint the Palat therewith.

Item, ſhave off the hair that groweth on the ſuture of the skull called *Sagittalis*, apply a great boxing cup unto the bare place, and let there remain a whole hour long. This may you reiterate three or four times a day; it draweth the palat up again.

What is to be done in the greateſt extremity.

IF the Patient have long hair, then let a ſtrong man take hold of it, and pull it upward violently, until ſuch time as one may perceive that the skin is ſevered or parted from the skull; then alſo doth the palat aſcend, becauſe it is faſt to the skin: it hath been found by experience that it hath holpen immediatly, and hath preſerved the Patient from choking.

But if this infirmity be of long continuance, and that the palat ſeemeth to hang onely at a little skin, and the nether end of it is much ſwollen, then there can be no other means uſed (although one is loth to follow it) but by inciſion to take it away; afterwards you are to uſe this gargariſme following: Take the decoction of Ireos, and Licorice, of each a like much, mingle as much honey with it as you pleaſe, and a little vinegar.

Item, Vinegar and water wherein the bloſſomes of Pomegranate trees have been decocted.

The order of dyet.

IN this infirmity proceeding of cold, uſe excalefactive meats, drinks, and habitations, beware of all manner of violent motions, anger, vexation of mind, fear, and ſuch like. The confections, *Diatrion*, *Pipereon*, *Diamoſcu*, *Diambra*, and Mithridate are very commodious in this malady; or elſe to gargarize with *Miva Citonarum*, and the water of Sloes.

Take beaten Cucubes, ℥. ß. make thereof with the juyce of Roſes or their water, two pils; they are very effectual. Theſe pills following do alſo hinder the falling of the rheume into the mouth. Take *Pill. Elephangine*, ℥. 1. Maſtick, ℈. 1. make eight pils of them, take twain after ſupper at each time.

Of the Tongue. §. 6.

THe parts of the tongue are fleſh, muſcles, veines, and ſinews combined together, ſpungious and ſoft; which member amongſt all living creatures, or amongſt them that have a tongue is moſt different, not onely by reaſon of her form, but rather by the voice: and indeed it is no leſſe, for by her wonderful motion (whereof there be three in general) doth ſhe bring marvels to paſſe.

Firſt, by the manner of the words and ſpeech, whereby we can declare whatſoever we conceive in minde; and make it known to another body. By this groweth wars and peace, friendſhip and enmity, concord and diſcord: by this is both God and man praiſed and diſpraiſed. In fine, by this is done both good and harm, as that merry *Æſopus* ſaith in his fables, that the tongue is the beſt and worſt piece of fleſh.

The ſecond is the taſte, whereby it can diſcern which is bitter, which ſweet, ſowr, tart, ſharp, cold, hot, or any ſuch like; alſo it adjudgeth what is good or bad for the ſtomach.

The third is the ſenſe of feeling, whereby it perceiveth what is hard or ſoft, hot or cold, &c. Beſides all this, it helpeth to hold the meat received between the teeth, that there it might be chewed, and thence conveyed into the ſtomach. Alſo it ſerveth to gather the ſlime and moiſture of the mouth together, and to ſpet it out, which by no means can be effected without it, as it evidently appeareth in thoſe that have a dead Palſey, and cannot wag or move their tongue.

This member is ſubject to divers and ſundry infirmities, as when the tongue is heavy and ſlow, hard and immoveable, hot and dry; for which cauſe it is eſpecially infected of *Alcola*, which cauſeth it to ſwell, harden and exulcerate, &c. whereof we purpoſe to ſpeak hereafter.

Of the loss and unperfectnesse of tasting.

AMongst the before mentioned infirmities, this is also to be placed, that in the taste, as in the sight and hearing, oftentimes happeth that it be quite and clean decayed, so that there remain not one whit of taste, otherwhiles also is the tasting only diminished, as when one can perceive some taste, yet not perfect and to the full. Also it is oftentimes quite spoiled, as when one taketh sowre or sweet, &c. As it befalleth to them that have the yellow Jaundies, or to them that are troubled with a hot ague, wherein the Patient adjudgeth all what he tasteth to be salt, bitter, sweet, or without savour, according to the quality of the disease.

The signs of the humor that causeth this infirmity, are these: The blood yieldeth a sweet taste. *Phlegma* also somewhat sweetish, with much spettle, humidity of the head, of the tongue, and of the whole body. *Cholera* causeth bitternesse, saltnesse, and giveth a salt flegme. If there be no taste at all, then is the mouth of the stomach pestered with many bad and superfluous humours. If it proceed of melancholy, then is the taste tart, and astringent, of all that he taketh in the mouth.

There may also very sure signs be taken of the tongue; the which if it be white, then it is not onely a sign of cold, but also that the stomach, head and liver are full of *Phlegma*; if it be red, then doth it signifie that this malady is caused of blood, and of hot rhenmes: The yellowneſse is a sign that *Cholera* is cause of all: If it be the colour of lead, and blackish, it sheweth Melancholy to be the cause of it, unlesse it should proceed of some unnatural heat, as in hot Fevers it commonly chanceth.

Now concerning the remedies for this lost, bad, or corrupted taste: If it come of a hot sickneſse or Fever, and the Patient be full of blood, then is first the head vein, after the vein under the tongue to be opened, and a good dyet to be kept, and all manner of cooling things to be used.

He is also to be purged with a potion of the syrup of Roses, of yellow Mirobalans, or with these pils following.

Take of the *Species Hiera* one drach. and a half, shales of yellow Mirobalans, three drach. *Diagridii* and Annise seed, of each half a drach. temper them with syrup or the juice of Roses, and give a drach. of them at once, more or lesse, according to the ability of the Patient. Or take five drach. of the Electuary of the juice of Roses, or some such like matter; afterwards is he to hold in his mouth vinegar mixt with the juice of Pomegranats: otherwhiles also the juice of Lettice, of Purslaine, muscilage of Fleawort, and of Dragagant, made with Rose water, and held in the mouth a long time, sometimes Rose water by it self used as before. These pils following are also to be made, and holden continually in the mouth: Take Roses, burnt Ivory, and Bayberries, of each a quarter of an ounce, pilled Melon seeds, Gourd seeds, Cucumber seeds, Pompeon seeds, Lettice seeds, Purslain seeds, Endive seeds, Dragagant, ana ℥ i. make it into pils with the Dragagant dissolved; afterwards he is to gargarize with the juice of Endive and of Nightshade, or with the decoction of Roses, Vervein, and Myrtle seeds. Thou shalt rub his tongue with peeces of fresh Melons or Gourds. All these things alter the bad savour and taste of the mouth in a hot cause.

But if the losse of taste proceed of heat and drought with any humour with it, which may be perceived, if the tongue be dry, red, and without any spittle; then are contrary things to be used for it, to wit, cold and moist remedies.

Contrariwise, if it be caused by cold, then note if there be any afflux of humors with it, or not: if there be (as commonly it befalleth) any superabundant humours with it, and if the body be full of blood, then is purging and letting of blood (as opportunity serveth) to be used; if not, minister unto him *Oxymel compositum*, or of Squils, with the decoction of Hyssope, Marjoram, Sage, and *Stechas*; afterwards purge him with the pills *Cochie*.

A Gargarisme for the same.

TAke Hyssope, and Licorice, of each half an ounce, twenty sappy Figs, Honey six ounces; boyl them in water, and gagarize therewith, and hold it a good while in thy mouth. If there be no ague with it, use this gargarisme; Take the juice of Squils one ounce, Vinegar twelve ounces, Well water and Honey, of each six ounces; let it boyl

boyl a while ſcumming it. If the Patient do abhor every thing, ſuppoſing them to taſte very unſavory, then he is to be purged with an ounce of freſh Caſſia; with *Oxymel*, and with the afore mentioned water.

For this purpoſe ſerve alſo ſharp meats, as Onions, Garlick, Leeks, Muſtard ſeeds with vinegar, juice of Lemmons, juice of Citrons mixt with other meats, alſo otherwhiles ſalt meats.

Of a heavy and ſlow Tongue.

THeſe infirmities are of two ſorts, the one natural, and the other accidental; as when the tongue cannot pronounce the letters aright, but in pronouncing the vowels, *A, E, I, O, V*, is no want in it, becauſe that the tongue then need not much to be ſtirred: alſo in the ſaying of *B, M, P, Q*, wherein the lips do the greateſt labour. But in theſe letters following muſt the tongue be moſt of all uſed, to wit, in *C, D, G, H, L, N, R, S, T, X, Z*. In the naming of *F*, muſt the breath be blown out between the upper teeth and the lower lip. If any of theſe be any hinderance, then may the ſame be aſcribed to the tongue, eſpecially if the ſame be inveterated through a long cuſtome, which alſo remaineth for ever incurable.

The other that proceedeth of outward cauſes, and lurketh in the ſinewes of the tongue, may be cured by Phyſick.

Both theſe infirmities are cauſed of foun ſundry occaſions. The firſt of a cold matter that lyeth in the ſinewes of the tongue, which is perceived, if they cannot pronounce perfectly the letters above ſhewed in the third row, and eſpecially the *R*. Beſides this alſo their ſight and hearing decreaſeth; or when one would ſpeak haſtily, and therewithal dribleth againſt his will, the which is a meſſenger of the dead Palſey.

Secondly, it is alſo ſometimes cauſed of hot agues; then can the Patient not draw his tongue backward, and it waxeth black and rough.

Thirdly, this infirmity may proceed of the toughneſſe of the humour that flayeth the tongue, as if it were faſtened underneath, and therefore could not be put forth by the Patient.

Fourthly, it is otherwhiles cauſed of certain fleſh that groweth under the tongue, the which if the tongue be lifted up apparently may be ſeen.

The firſt which groweth of cold, and without an ague is thus to be cured, to wit, that after the Patient hath been purged, he open a vein, and afterwards waſh his tongue with this water following, but he is to take great heed he ſwallow none of it down. Take Sal armoniack, Pepper, Ginger, white Muſtard ſeeds, *Piretrum*, Licebane, Borras, Salt, ſalt of Indy, Marjoram, ſeeds of Nigella, Marjoram gentle, ana ℥. 1. boyl them altogether in a quart of water unto the half, and uſe it as hath been ſaid.

Item, boyl *Piretrum* in Vinegar, and gargariſe therewith. Look alſo that theſe things do not excoriate the throat and make it raw; for the *Piretrum* is very ſtrong, and therefore it is commanded (as often as hath been ſaid) to tye it in a fine piece of cloth, and to chew it.

A Powder.

AFter the long continuance of this gargariſation, take Sal-armoniack, *Piretrum*, Pepper, and white Muſtard ſeeds, of each a like much, make it into a powder, and rub the tongue often with it; but childrens tongues may you rub only with the powder of Sage, or waſh it with *Oxymel*.

Item, take honey of Roſes, ℥. 2. *Sal gemmæ*, ℥. 1. mix them together, and rub the tongue often with it.

Alſo make this gargariſme following. Take Sage, Hyſſope, *Calamus*, of each a like quantity, boyl them in water. Take *Coſtus* roots that are ſweet, white Pepper, Ginger, Licebane, Rue ſeeds, ana ℥. 1. *Piretrum*, ℥. 3. Grains, ℥. 6. Maſtick diſſolved in vinegar, ℥. 1. temper them together, and make pils of it of the bigneſs of ſmall Nuts. Take one of theſe in thy mouth otherwhiles and chew it, they are very meet to draw the Phlegmatick matter out of the tongue which there hindreth the ſpeech.

But of the bereaving of the ſpeech by reaſon of the dead palſey have I ſhewed before how the party ſo troubled is to be purged and deal withal, you notwithſtanding that, I will proceed in teaching all what may happen unto the tongue.

If the ſame ſeem to be cauſed of a cold and moiſt matter, then is the tongue to be

be often rubbed with *Hiera Picra* tempered with a little Staveſacre, Muſtard ſeed, and *Piretrum*, but this is very hot and bitter, ſo that the Patient ſhall hardly be able to abide it; but this following is milder.

Take Sal armoniack and Ginger, of each a like much, temper them with the juice of Squils and rub the tongue with it.

Item *Oxymel* of Squils, and water wherein one or more of the former things have been decocted, is very commodious; but annoint the neck and the hinder part of the head with oyl of Bayes, and of Bevercod, afterwards apply this plaiſter following upon it, being ſpread on Leather.

Take Gum, ℥. 3. *Stechas* and Marjoram gentle, ana. ℥. 1. oyl of Marjoram gentle, and wax as much as is needful for a plaiſter.

Take Bevercod, wet with the juice of Sage, and make pils of it, and hold them in thy mouth, or elſe take Nutmegs, Indian Nuts, Cloves, *Piretrum*, *Aſſa fœtida*, ana ʒ. 1. *Ladanum*, Dragagant, ana. ℥. 1. make them into pils with wine, and hold them in thy mouth. So alſo may you hold you a piece of a Nutmeg in the mouth, and chew it. Treacle, Mithridate, and ſuch like confections are commended in this infirmity. The Patient muſt alſo ſpeak much and plainly.

But if it come with the infection of any other ſinews, then it is to be cured by the means that are preſcribed in the Palſey.

But if it proceed of an Ague, with a contracture of the tongue, then muſt you irrigate the Patients neck and ſhoulders from on high with warm water, for that moiſteneth and warmeth the ſame place and the tongue alſo; afterwards annoint it with the oyl of Olives.

How to moiſten the Tongue.

IF then a great drith of the tongue happen with it (as it commonly befalleth in hot Feavers) then is the Patient to hold in his mouth oyl of Roſes or of Violets; but eſpecially ought that to be obſerved which hath been ſaid before in the loſſe of the taſte, where it beginneth thus: Afterwards he is to hold in his mouth, &c.

For this uſe ſerve alſo theſe things, to wit, preſerved black Cherries, preſerved Raſpiſes, and whatſoever elſe is made of them, preſerved Peaches, Barberries and their ſyrup, the preſerved red Cherries with their ſyrup, and ſuch like more, ſyrup of Mulberries, of Nutſhels, conſerve of Roſes, conſerve of water Lillies, and many more ſuch like, as is ſhewed in hot diſeaſes and peſtilential Feavers.

Diatragacanthum frigidum, is very good in this and in all other hot diſeaſes whatſoever.

For this purpoſe ſerveth alſo Sugar-candy, the muſcilage of Fleawoort, of Quince kernels, and to waſh the mouth often with warm water, Vinegar, and Roſewater.

If there be any tumour with it, then uſe the Julep of Violets, and of Roſes, dryed Prunes, dryed Cherries, juice of Licorice, ſowr Dates, Manna, or which of them you pleaſe; but if the tongue were faſt ſomewhere, then is it to be looſed with ſome inſtrument, and afterwards to beſtrew the place with Ginger and Allume.

Laſtly, if a piece of fleſh ſhould grow under the tongue, as if it were a frog, then doth the ſame proceed of a groſſe and tough humour; when the tongue is lifted up, then may you ſee it very red, and it is otherwhiles little or big like unto a little tongue. It is alſo ſometimes round like a Haſel nut, and bigger, whereby both the ſpeech and eating is hindered. Here muſt the Patient firſt be purged, let blood under the tongue, and obſerve a good dyet, as in any other impoſtume of the head, that might alſo proceed of flegme. Afterwards is the frog to be rubbed with Sal-armoniack, Gals, *Sal gemma*, or parched ſalt; or elſe you may prepare this for it. Take *Piretrum*, Ginger, ana. ℥. 2. Sal-armoniack, *Sal gemma*, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Marjoram, Calamus, Ireos, Daffodils, Maſtick, ana. ℥. ß. make a powder of them. Of this powder may you take one part, and with the white of an egge make it into *Trochiſcei*, and when thou wilt uſe them, diſſolve them in *Aqua vitæ*, and ſo annoint the the frog under the tongue with it.

With this water following may you alſo waſh the mouth very often. Take Marjoram, Mints, Penniroyal, Nettle roots, ana. M. 1. *Piretrum*, ℥. 2. boyl them together in a pint and a half of water till the third part remain.

But if this malady do once inveterate and wax old, then it is to be cured with thoſe things that are deſcribed hereafter in bleeding of the Gums; amongſt which this following is rehearſed: Take Sugar, Allume, Verdigreaſe, of each a like much, mix them with hony, and rub it therewith.

Item,

Item, if this infirmity waxe too big, then it is to be cut, taken away and healed, as all other sores of the mouth. Some do counsel to burn it, which is uncertain in this place; but this is to be observed, if this Frog be hard and black, then it is doubtlesse the true Canker, which is altogether incurable.

Of the Alcola, *or hardnesse and cliffes in the Tongue.*

THis *Alcola* of the Tongue proceedeth of the foresaid hot and dry causes, when the tongue waxeth black, dry, hard and full of cliffes. For this must the Patient first be purged with this purgation following.

Take Rubarb three drach. *Spica* half a drach. Squinant one scrup. of the decoction of fruits, called at the Apothecaries *Decoctio fructuum*, which shall hereafter be described, eighteen ounces; let them infuse in this decoction a whole night, in the morning presse it out, take four ounces of the Colature, sirup of Pomgranates ℥. 1. sirup of Lemons an ounce, temper them together, and so take it three mornings together.

If these potions have not sufficiently purged (for they be very gentle) then take of these pills, *Cochiæ, Fœtidæ. Aureæ*, of each one scrup. and of them all one drach. make seven pills of it, gargarise after that purging with warm Goats milk, and eat five or six Cherries after it.

And because Wine is very hurtful in such a heat, this water following shall be very meet for it. Take half a handful of Barly, thirty dry prunes, Barberries, Cinamom, of each half an ounce; boyl them in four pints of water untill the fourth part be consumed. In like manner may you use this potion for to cool: Take the juyce of Quinces one ounce and a half, *Rob de Barberis* half an ounce, water of Purslain three ounces, temper them together.

For this purpose serveth also whatsoever hath been written in §. 1. of the corruption of the mouth, but especially the gargarismes.

Of the tumour and swelling of the Tongue.

THis is caused of blood, or of flegme that falleth down out of the head. It happeneth sometimes that the Tongue doth so swell, that it lyeth before in the mouth, whereby the spetting and all other her actions are hindered. In this you are to purge the head with the foresaid pills.

If then it proceed of cold flegme, which is discerned, that the tongue or face are alwaies white, and the mouth alwayes full of moisture, then is the tongue to be rubbed so long with the juyce of Onions, of Citrons, sirup of Raspes, or with sowr Pomgranate wine, untill all the spettle and slime be gone away: for these foresaid things do separate the matter.

Item, take Ireos, white Mustard seed, *Piretrum* and such like, all of them, or each apart, boyl them, and use it in the washing of the tongue:

Item, boyl Dates, Raisins, and Figs, of each a like much in sweet wine.

This gargarisme is also good being used oftentimes. Take Fenegreek, Raisins, Fennel seed, Lilly roots, and Figs, of each half an ounce, boyl them together in a quart of water, untill the third part be wasted, afterwards temper three ounces, of honey of Roses amongst it.

Item, take Squills and Oxymel three ounces, mix them with the decoction of Bevercod. Or boyl Rue, Cypres roots and Pepper together, or which you please, in vinegar.

But if heat be cause of this tumour, that will be perceived by the redness and swelling up of the face and tongue, without any spettle, and with sweetness of the mouth: for this you shall presently open the head vein, then under the tongue; for this asswageth the pain, and cooleth the blood.

If it be needful, then purge with the Electuary *de Succo Rosarum*, sirup of Roses, or with *Cassia*, fasten boxing cups in the neck, that the affluent matter might somewhat be withdrawn. Also the Patient is to gargarize with sowr and astringent remedies, as with the juyce or sirup of Raspes and of Lemons: the juyce of Lettice is also good for it, likewise the juyce or wine of Pomgranates.

Of the Impoſtume of the Tongue.

THe tongue doth otherwhiles impoſtumate through abundance of blood, which is known by the redneſſe, the tumour, the ſweetneſſe in the mouth, and by the puffing up of the face with redneſſe.

If it proceed of *Cholera*, then it is perceived by the great burning, vehement pain, and bitterneſſe of the mouth.

Or if it be cauſed of flegme, that may be ſeen by the paleneſſe, by the ſmall ſtore of pain, and much ſpettle, without any great ſwelling being ſpread over the whole tongue.

When this infirmity cometh of melancholy, then groweth the tongue hard, aſh coloured, and with ſmall pain.

But if this proceed of heat, then purge the Patient as hath been ſhewed in the tumour of the tongue and *Alcola*; and in the beginning make Gargariſmes of cold things, as of Gourds, Shepherds purſe, Purſlain, Endive, and eſpecially of Lettice, Milk, Roſewater, or the decoction of Roſes, and rub the tongue with a Peach, which is very profitable for this purpoſe. But if by theſe means it do nothing amend, then uſe oftentimes honey, milk, and the decoction of Lillie roots, and Raiſins, Fenegreek, and of Fennel ſeed.

For his meat he may uſe Coleworts, Orage dreſt with oyl of Almonds, or of Olives, Figs, Raiſins, and Linſeed chewed and ſpet out again with the ſlime.

When this tumour or impoſtume is broken up, then take any one of theſe things following, to wit, Butchers broom, Barberries, Myrtle ſeed, of each half an ounce, Agrimony one handful, boyl them in a pint of water untill the half, then adde Mead or honey unto it two ounces, and gargarize therewith often. It preventeth great harm that might enſue. Old wine is alſo very good, being held in the mouth, and ſpet it out again.

But if it proceed of cold, then purge the Patient with pills *Cochiæ*, or with the confection *Diatarbith*, and make this gargariſme following for him. Take Fenegreek, Lilly roots, and Fennel ſeeds, of each one ounce, ten Figs, Currans one ounce and a half, Bayberries one ounce; boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of water: let him hold this in his mouth, and waſh his mouth with it very often. It eaſeth the pain, and ripeneth all impoſtumes of the mouth and throat, eſpecially if you adde honey unto it.

This Impoſtume is accounted the middlemoſt thing between the ulcers of the mouth and the Squinancy; for they do agree together both in their cauſes and their remedies, as hath been ſhewed before in the firſt Section.

Of the laſſe of Speech.

BUt if of any of the foreſaid cauſes the Speech is hindred or taken away, and yet the voyce remain, and that the Patient could not utter his mind, then is he to take twice a week one drach. and a half of *Hieralogadion*, with the decoction of Roſemary.

A Gargariſme.

TAke a drach. of Coloquint, Harts tongue two drachmes, Ginger, Galangal, Coſtus roots, Grains, of each half a drach. boyl them together in a pint and a half of water even to the half; wring it out hard, and temper with it *Oxymel* of Squills ſix ounces, and let it boyl a while longer: afterwards hold it warm in thy mouth, and waſh thy mouth therewith. This will not deceive thee.

Take Mithridate or Treacle two drach. water of Sage, Marjoram gentle, and Roſemary, of each three ounces, or which of them you can come by; waſh thy mouth with it in the morning and at night, and ſpet it forth again: and thus much for the tongue.

Of the Gums and Mandibles. §. 7.

IT is ſufficiently known that children are born with the Gums and Mandibles, whence firſt the teeth do grow; wherefore it is firſt needful to write of the root, and then of the tree. Theſe Mandibles have their ſituation one near to the other, called by the Latiniſts *Præſepiolia*, that is, little mangers, for ſo in the old time were the mangers of beaſts wont to be parted. In them are the teeth faſtened, with veins and ſinews at the bottom.

Theſe

These Mandibles or gumes are subject unto many infirmities, as impostumes, putrifactions, corrosions, aquefactions, bleeding, increase and decrease of the Gums, the which are caused of the rheumes in the head, or else of vapours ascending out of the stomach: of the which, and first of all of the impostume, now shall be spoken.

Of the impostumation of the Gums.

IF with this impostumation be great pain admixed, so that the impostumated Gums be red, then it is caused of heat. In this case is the head to be purged with water wherein Prunes have been decocted, and Rubarbe or Manna mixed with it, and afterwards to use mild Clisters: also to open the head vein, and to be let blood under the tongue: lastly, to fasten boxing cups to the shoulders, and to hold this following in the mouth a good while. Take honey of Roses one ounce and an half, Vinegar half an ounce: when you spet it out you are to take it fresh again. If then any other sores do happen unto them, they are to be opened with a fleam, and then to wash it thrice a day with water wherein Allom, Myrrhe, or Salt is sodden.

Item, take half a pint of the water of Knotgrasse, Allom half an ounce; dissolve it in the water, wash the teeth and Gums with it: Afterwards take Pomgranat pills beaten, dip a cloth in them, and rub them gently with it. In like manner you may also find in the first §. those things that are very meet for this purpose, because both these infirmities do proceed of one cause.

Item, wash the mouth often with Vinegar and Allom, afterwards with the wine of Pomgranats with a little Allom dissolved in it. Look the description of the sirupe of Mulberries in the fourth §. before.

Item, rub thy gums in the morning with the unguent of Egypt, but swallow none of it down: and gargarise often with honey of Roses and sirupe of Mulberries, of each a like much, mingled with the water of Plantain.

For all impostumes and corruptions of the gums or teeth, which procure a stinking breath, and if there be much blood and moisture with it, then is the party to be purged according to his ability with yellow Mirobalans and sowre Dates, then to open the vein of the head, and to apply a great boxing cup in the neck, to rub the gums untill they bleed, and to wash the mouth with this water following.

Take blossomes and pills of Pomgranats, Acorn cups, and Roses of each half an ounce; Stavesacre two drachmes, boil them very well together. This following is to be used for to heal and to dry it: Take Roses, Cipres nuts, Gals, burnt Allom, of each a like much; boil them together in Vinegar and water, add unto this decoction as much honey as you please. After the use of this Gargarisme strew this powder upon the sores: Take burnt Allom two drachmes, blossomes of Pomgranats, plume Allom, Mirtle seeds, of each one drachme and a half, burnt Harts horn one drachme, mix them well together. He is also oftentimes to be purged with the foresaid capital pills Cochiæ.

Of the bleeding of the Gums.

THis may happen of some outward accident, as of blowes, falls, and such like; the which must be known of the patient. The inward causes are either heat or cold of a sharpe matter falling down out of the head, corroding the gums and the sinewes of the teeth, and making them to impostumate: in so much that if it once begin to inveterate, it soon changeth into the Canker, whereby all the teeth fall out. But if this blood be thin and subtile, then are these sowre things following to be put in practise. First, to take away the corrupted gums: Secondly, to mundifie and cleanse that which is infected: Thirdly, after mundification, to astringe or draw together and heal them; Fourthly and lastly, to confirm and strengthen the gums and jawes, that the matter may not have recourse thither again

First there are many kind of powders in such vehemency used, that the venome Orpiment is added thereto: but my counsel is to omit it, and to use this following in stead thereof: Take roots of Daffodils and Pomgranat pills, of each a like much, make them into powder and rub thy gums therewith, and an hour after wash thy mouth with warm wine or vinegar.

Secondly, you may make this decoction following. Take Olive leaves one M. and an half,

half, Piretrum half an ounce, Ginger, Maſtick, Ireos, of each one drachme, Honey two ounces, boil them together in a pint of water to the half, waſh thy mouth therewith.

This following is very good for all infections of the gums and jawes. Take honey of Roſes three ounces, warm water one ounce, dip a cloth in them and rub the gums with it, and an hour after waſh thy mouth with wine or water wherein dryed Roſes have been decocted.

In like manner this following mundifieth very well: Take water of Cammomil one ounce, honey of Roſes three drachmes, temper them together and wet the place infected with it: afterwards waſh thy mouth with wine wherein dried Roſes have been decocted.

Thirdly, they are to be cured with this powder: Take Frankincenſe, Aloes, Sarcocolla, and Dragons blood, of each one drachme; beat them ſmall, and ſtrew them in the gums.

Item, take Laudanum, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Coral, of each a like much; make them into fine powder, and apply it to the place infected: it confirmeth, hardneth, and cleanſeth the gums and jawes; and when the ſore is well mundified, then it doth alſo incarnate and ingender fleſh.

Fourthly, this following is highly commended. Take Cipres leaves, or nuts, half an ounce, Well water a pint, boil it untill the half part remain, dip a cloth in it, and apply it to the grief: this doth not onely confirm and ſtrengthen the gnms, but defendeth them alſo from all bad rheumes.

Another.

TAke bloſſomes of Pomgranate tree, Allom, Roſes, Hounds tongue, Acorn cups, and Plantain, of each a like quantity, boil them all in win and waſh thy mouth therewith: it ſtrengtheneth the gums and teeth, and hindereth the bleeding.

Item, boil Gals, Olive leaves, Lintels, Mugwort, and Pomgranat pills, of each a like much in water, and waſh thy mouth with it.

Another that is ſtronger.

TAke Piretrum, Lilly roots, of each one drach. the outward rinds of Gals, and bloſſomes of the Pomgranat tree, of each two drach. beat them ſmall, and rub the gums therewith. Take the ſame ingredients, but in greater quantity, boil them in red wine, and add the fourth part of Vinegar unto it; with this thou ſhalt waſh thy mouth.

By all theſe former things is eaſily to be ſeen, that many remedies there be for the former infection of the teeth and gums, which are alſo very good for all ulcers and corruption of the gums.

Of the outward applications.

FOr both the former infirmities, and for all pain and griefs of the gums, theſe things following are very good, which may be outwardly applyed. Take Linſeed oyl, Cammomil beaten, Holihock roots, meal of Fenegreek, Butter, of each half an ounce, oyl of Dill or of Cammomil four ounces, this aſſwageth the pain, maturateth and digeſteth.

Item, ſheeps wool unwaſhed, wet it in the juyce of Roſes, of Violets, or of Willow leaves; Or make a bag the breadth of ones hand full of dried Roſes, decoct it in Vinegar and water, wring it out hard, and then apply it outwardly.

Take cold water onely, or vinegar mixed with Roſe water, or wine of Pomgranats, and waſh the mouth therewith.

Item, uſe the juyce of cold herbs, as of Nightſhade, of the bigger and leſſer Houſleek, of Plantain, of Purſlain, or which of them you can get.

For this purpoſe ſerveth all the wine wherein Gals have been decocted.

If then neither the pain nor bleeding will ceaſe, then is the ſame place to be opened with a Lancet, or Horſleaches to be faſtened unto it.

But if the gums be not apt to bleed, nor exulcerated nor painfull, nor the face any thing ſwollen, and that the patient be not well after meat, but when he hath eaten meats cold by nature, then may you eaſily geſſe, that this infirmity proceeds of a cold phlegme. Wherfore every ſuch patient is to be purged with *Pil. Cochiæ, Hiera Picra*, exacuated with a little of the trochiſces of Coloquint, or Diaturbith. Afterwards he is to waſh his mouth with the aſtringent decoctions, as of the bloſſoms and pills of Pomgranats, Acorn cups,

Allom

Allom, Salt, juyce of Rue, and ſuch like. Alſo for a change he may gargariſe with the decoction of Figs, Fennel ſeeds, and ſeeds of Lillies.

The roots of the blew Flower-deluce provoketh the gums to bleed much, whereby the pain is aſſwaged. The decoction of Agrimony tempered with Allom is approved to be very meet. Of this matter look into the firſt §. where you ſhall find many good remedies for this purpoſe.

Of the Fiſtula in the gums.

WHat a bad accident this Fiſtula is ſhall be ſhewed in the fift part, for it appeareth in this place, as in all other places, with ſalt and ſharpe defluxions: you ſhall cure them with thoſe remedies that have been deſcribed before in the infections of the tongue, and putrifaction of the gums; ſo that at this preſent I purpoſe not to write much of it. Take Gals one ounce, Myrrhe half an ounce, make them into a powder, and ſtrew it on the ſore. Waſh thy mouth often with Vinegar of Squils, or take Gals, Roſes, Lencils, Acorn cups, Bedegar bloſſoms, and peels of Pomgranats, of each a like much; boil them all in water, if it proceed of a hot cauſe: but if of a cold, then boil them in wine.

If the Fiſtula be deep, and the gums corroded, then take the bloſſoms of Pomgranats, plume Allom, of each a like quantity, make them into powder, ſtrew it once in three hours upon the ſore. For this ſerve alſo the bloſſoms of Pomgranats boyled in Vineger and Honey, and the mouth waſht with the decoction. Amongſt divers other dentifrices, this that followeth is the ſafeſt. Take the calcined Allom, plume Allom, bloſſoms and pills of Pomgranats, Ireos, Piretrum, Sumach, Barbaries, Gals, Acorn cups, and Dragons blood, of each a like much, make a powder of them. This powder may alſo be tempered with vineger and hony; and waſh the mouth therewith, it is very good for all manner of exulcerations of the mouth.

When the Fiſtula is mundified to the bottom, then are you to uſe incarnatives.

Others do commend the uſe of actual and potential cauteries, but they are nothing commendable but at the laſt need, and in the greateſt extremity.

Of the waſting away and conſumption of the Gums.

TAke Cinamom one ounce, Frankincenſe, Roſes, of each two drach. Dragons blood, three drach. beſtrew the gums therewith very often.

Take Myrrhe, Maſtick, ſhels of Pine apples, Date ſtones, burnt Harts horn and Ivory, bloſſoms of Pomgranats, Roſes, Dragons blood, of each alike much, uſe it as before; it confirmeth the teeth.

Take Peaſe meal, make it into little cakes with honey, and dry them untill you can powder them again, take of this two drachmes, Dragons blood, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, of each two drach. Ariſtologie and Ireos, of each one drach. rub the gums therewith.

Of the mollification of the Gums.

FOr this infirmity are all thoſe remedies very meet that ſhall be preſcribed for the wagging or looſeneſſe of the teeth.

For a concluſion.

ALthough the gums were altogether corrupted and black, yea although all the teeth were looſe, yet theſe remedies following have done wonderfull much good. Take Worm-eaten Galls, Sumach, Myrtle ſeeds, Acorn cups, and Plantain ſeed, of each one drach. white Vitriol, plume Allom, of each one drach. and a half, yellow ſeeds of Roſes, and refuſe of Cloves, of each two drach. and a half, beat them all groſſe, and let it boil in a ſufficient quantity of water: when it hath ſodden a good while, then add forty young buds of the Mulberie tree, and let ſo them ſeethe untill the half part remain. Waſh thy mouth often with this decoction, afterwards thou maiſt ſtrew this powder following upon thy gums: Take Maſtick, Sandaraca, juyce of Sloes, Hippocyſtis, of each one ſcrup. prepared Tutia one drach. white Vitriol four ſcrup. make them into powder.

of

Of the Teeth. §. 8.

MAn hath for the moſt part 32. teeth, according to the verſe, *Sunt hominis dentes, triginta duo edentes*: although ſome there be that have but 28. or 30. and they are differing in form. Firſt, there are four above and as many beneath, that are ſharpe and broad, therewith to cut and divide the meat as it were with a knife, for the which cauſe they are called of the Latiniſts *Inciſores*, they have but one root onely.

Afterwards there are on each ſide of the former four more above and below, which are broad above, and thin below, and for that they are called by the Grecians and Latiniſts Dog teeth, becauſe they be moſt like unto the teeth of Dogs: they have but one long root, and are made to break that which the former have as yet not ſufficiently broken.

Thirdly, there are above and beneath on both ſides commonly twenty teeth, albeit that ſome have but ſixteen, and others but ſix on each ſide, which are called in Latine *Molares*, that is, grinding or cheek teeth. Their office is to grind and chew whatſoever the former teeth have not as yet ſufficiently broken and chewed. Thoſe that are in the uppermoſt mandible, are faſtened unto three roots, the lowermoſt onely unto two; although that ſometimes it befalleth, that the two former of them have three roots.

The Philoſophers do write, that the foremoſt teeth are ingendred of a pure and ſuperfluous moiſture of the skull; the middlemoſt of a reaſonable good humour; and the very hindermoſt of a groſſe humidity of the foreſaid skull.

The pains and griefs of the teeth are divers, inſomuch that amongſt the Phyſitians there are accounted twelve or thirteen kinds of them, of the which we ſhall ſpeak hereafter. Theſe infirmities have all of them ſundry cauſes, to wit, outward and inward: which difference we purpoſe alſo to obſerve.

In all pains of the teeth, purge the party with pills made of Caſtoreum Saffron, Angelica roots, ana. finely powdered, and with honey make maſſe for pills. And when you will uſe thereof. R. of the maſſe for pills, ℥.ß. or ℥.i. powder of Aloes ℈ 2. ſene ℈.i. ß. Pepper ℈.ß. make thereof pills, and let the party uſe a ſlender diet, you may give of thoſe pills more or leſſe for 2. or 3. or 4. dayes together.

Of the pain in the teeth through outward cauſes.

THis is cauſed through the continual uſe of ſowre and aſtringent things, as unripe fruits, through much picking of them with pins, and other ſtinking things that remain in them; alſo through falls, blows, and thruſts, ſharpe wind, too hot or too cold meats, but eſpecially of thoſe that be dreſt with honey, which cauſes muſt be known and inquired of the patient, thereby to order and govern himſelf.

Of the pain in the teeth through inward cauſes.

THis kind of tooth-ach is of divers ſorts, and it hath alſo ſundry cauſes. Firſt, if it proceed out of the head or brain, then is the patient not without ſome pain in the head: out of which there falleth continually great ſtore of ſlime. If this pain be cauſed of the mandibles and teeth, that doth manifeſtly appear. But if one doubt which tooth might firſt have provoked this pain, then let the patient bite ſomewhat between his teeth, firſt between two, then between two more, and ſo from tooth to tooth untill you come to the tooth it ſelf where the pain reſteth. By this means alſo you may know whether the pain be in the ſinewes or no, becauſe the other teeth be nothing painful. If it proceed from the ſtomach, then is there pain felt in the ſame, after which doth inſue vomiting, and eſpecially of a ſowre and ſtinking matter. If it be procured by the blood, then may it be known by the heat and redneſſe. If of Cholera, then is the pain with pricking and ſhooting. That which cometh of Melancholy, is known by the great and hard ſwellings: Of Phlegma, by the whiteneſſe of the face, and by the ſmall pain. If it be cauſed of many humours, then is the patient heavy headed, with much ſpettle in the mouth. The pain that proceedeth of drought is thereby diſcerned, if of windineſſe, then ſhall you perceive much heating and ſtirring with it. Wherefore of theſe inward means, to wit, of the four humours may this impediment be cauſed. The teeth grow hollow and full of holes, they rot, the worms do ſpoil them, and the ſinewes

are weakened, that at the last they fall away, and are so that they may easily be drawn out. How to prevent and remedy the same, shall be shewed hereafter.

How to procure Teeth in children without pain.

NOt without reason are we to bethink our selves how to ease the young and tender babes of that pain and grief which they do suffer in breeding their teeth, especially if the pain continue long, as it often hath been seen, that it hath continued three or four years.

This is for the most part caused of the debilitie of their nature, or of worms, which do consume the moisture, whereby the teeth should grow.

When this delay in teeth is caused through the debility and weakneſſe of nature, then must the child be fed with rosted birds, bread dipped in broths of flesh, and such like, according to the age of the child; they have also a great laske commonly with it, which must be staid. The mandibles where the teeth appear are to be rubbed softly: and amongst all other remedies that may be invented for this purpose, the brains of a hare dreſt with the milk of a Bitch are the best. if you cannot get them, then take butter, oyle of lilies, the fat of hens or of other Birds, each by it selfe, or mixed all together.

And because that in these remedies following there be many sharp ingredients, as Orpiment, Neesing wort, Copperas, Staveſacre, Southernwood, Henbane, Opium, and such like more (of which we will make mention but little) which are in no wise to be taken down: wherefore here we will admonish and shew how they ought in the greatest need with the most safety to be used.

First, they are to be applied onely to the dolorous and painfull tooth with a peece of Wax covered about, to the end it should touch but only the place aggrieved. Otherwise they might also harme the good and sound teeth, the patient must also hold his mouth open, and downewards, that the spettle and slime might run out; neither are they to be applyed too hot or cold.

If this pain proceed of cold rheumes, as also of the use of cold meats, then put the Patient into a warm place, cover his head with warm clothes untill he feel the warmth apparently. Afterwards annoint his head with the oyle of Camomill, of Rue, Behen, of Beyercod, and of *Spica*, or in place of them with *Aqua vitæ* three daies together. A hard yolk of an egge applyed to the tooth is also very good, and afterwards is the tooth to be washed with warm wine: Or take vinegar, wherein *Piretrum*, white Mints, and Marjoram hath been decocted.

Item take *Piretrum*, white Mustard seed, Pepper, Borras and Ginger, of each a like much, make a powder of them, and rub the teeth therewith, or strew it on a little cotton, and apply it to the very roote of the tooth.

But before you use any other kind of remedy, take heed you purge the head very well, that you draw not down more humors out of it unto the teeth, the which may be effected through the pils or potions which every where are sufficiently described. After purging you may use any one of these things followings: take Mastick ʒ. 1. Sage a M. beat and boyl them in ʒ. 8. of wine or vinegar untill the half remain, wash thy mouth therewith.

Item, take good white wine sixe ounces, temper half an ounce of *Sandaraca* with it, boyl them together untill one quarter of it be wasted, and hold it in thy mouth warme, and if you add one drach of *Philonium Romanum*, then will it be so much the stronger. Or take of the aforesaid *Philonium* two drach, red wine foure ounces, and hold it luke-warm in thy mouth. Gals decocted in vinegar are also very good for this purpose. In like manner Betony or Plantain decocted in vinegar or water, and used warm. Pellitory of Spain bound up in a cloth and chewed in the mouth, draweth out much slime.

Take *Asa fœtida*, and Frankincense, of each a like quantity, hold it on the painful tooth. The decoction of Alehoof is also very good for it. Likewise the conserve of Gilliflowers, of Lavender, of Spikenard, Rosemary wine, Sage wine. Item, take the roots of Sperage, boyl them in water, and wash thy mouth often therewith. Others do commend Garlick, Ginger, Agrimony, each by it self, or mixed together, and so applyed to the tooth. Also the water of Marjoram gentle should be very good for this use. In like sort *M. Tristrams* water which is described in the fifth Chapter, and §. 1.

Item, take white and long Pepper, Cucubes, Saxurage, the bark of the Mulberry tree, Caper roots, and roots of Southernwood, of each a like much, boyl them according to

the quality of the pain in water, wine, or vinegar tempered together, or each by it self: it is very good, and confirmeth the gums.

Pepper, Pellitory of Spain, roots of Diptamer, and Licebane chewed together, or each by it self, are commonly very commodious for the tooth-ache.

These Remedies following are more cooling.

TAke a little branch of a Cherry-tree, scrape off the outmost rind, take the yellow rind and boyl it in wine, take of this decoction in thy mouth as warm as thou canst suffer it. In like manner if the rheume fall into the teeth, then boyl Oaken leaves in wine, and hold it often in the mouth; it draweth out the slime very well. The water that issueth out of a Vine being cut, is also very good for the Tooth-ache, if it be held in the mouth.

Yet more Remedies that are approved.

TAke 8. ounces of wine, boyl it in half an ounce of *Esula*, wash thy teeth therewith three times in a moneth; it preserveth the teeth from pain, but it is very violent and dangerous to be used: but this that followeth is safer and better.

Take Roses and boyl them in milk, hold them a good while in thy mouth, and lay the leaves to thy teeth. Take Campher the bignesse of a pease, boyl it in two ounces of vinegar, and hold it in thy mouth, it is very good for all manner of pain in the teeth. Item, take of a Harts horn, to wit, that which hath been cast off in March, cut it into small pieces and boyl it in Well water, take the decoction into thy mouth warm, repeat it three or four times, and after the use of it (as many men suppose) the pain should not return again: whosoever shall approve it, and find it true, may commend and love the experiment. Others do counsel to take of the skin of a Snake that hath been cast off by her, one drach and to boyl it in three ounces of vinegar unto the half, and to take it into the mouth: it should also be an approved remedy. Oyl of Roses luke-warm onely held in the mouth asswageth the pain. Boyl a Frog in water and vinegar, untill the flesh part from the bones, and wash the teeth therewith. The juyce of Beets dropped into the contrary ear of the pain, is also counselled of some men: likewise of Cichory, of Daffodils, and of earth Worms.

But if this Tooth-ache proceed of a hot cause, then hold any of these things following warm in thy mouth, as the oyl of Willow leaves, oyl of Poppy heads, and oyl of Roses (as hath bin said before.) The juice of Sorrel slaketh the heat greatly. You may also anoint the place with the juice of Nightshade, of Purslain, of Lettice, of Endive. Item, boyl the roots of Nettles and Sage in wine. Henbane seed and Opium mixed with the oyl of Roses, do make the tooth insensible.

If *Cholera* be admixed, then is the Patient to be purged with the Electuary of *Succo-rosarum*, with Cassia, sowr Dates, or yellow Mirobalans.

If it be caused of overmuch blood, then is the head vein, the vein in the lips, and that under the tongue to be opened, or the gums made to bleed, and boxing cups to be applyed behind in the neck.

What else may be used for the pain in the Teeth.

ABove in the twelfth Chapter, and §. 1. have I described a good Powder, which beginneth, Take Sene leaves, &c. which is also very commodious for this purpose.

Item, take Myrrhe two drach, Frankincense half a drach. Mastick one drach and a half, Cuttle bone, and red Coral, of each 15. grains, Argoyl two drach. Glasse small powdered five drach. *Lignum Aloes*, Cinamom, Cloves, *Sarcocolla*, of each half a drach: make them into powder; it confirmeth and whiteneth the teeth, and it cureth the sore gums, being rubbed therewith.

Item, take Pellitory of Spain, Licebane, of each a like much, beat them and temper them with a little white Wax, and cover the tooth therewith of all sides.

A wonderful remedy. Take the liver of a green Evet, and the fruit of Tamarisk roots of wild Cucumbers, and *Propolis*, which is taken out of the hole of the Bee-hives, of each a like quantity. This may you use for all manner of Tooth-ache, either in washing with it, or applying it to the tooth, or in using it outwardly.

Of the outward applications.

PArched Millet applyed unto it is very good. Item, take Mallowes, fry them in butter untill they be ſoft, and ſo lay it outwardly unto the pain. Item, toaſt a ſlice of bread upon hot coals, and apply it to the cheek where the pain is, and renewing it ſtill being cold with another that is hot; do this eight or ten times together; for when the pain is departing then it is moſt grievous, wherefore leave it not off.

But if the foreſaid means do not eaſe the pain, then make this compoſition; Take Bevercod, Pepper, Ginger, red Storax, Opium, of each half a ſcrup. this being beaten, temper it with hony of Roſes, and put the quantity of an Hemp ſeed unto the root of thy tooth.

Item, take Opium the bigneſſe of an Hemp ſeed, warm it in thy hand untill it be ſoft, and apply it to the painful Tooth, it aſſwageth the pain.

If you will forbear the Opium, then uſe any of theſe juices following, to wit, juice of Southernwood, of Henbane, of Poppy, or to uſe the *Philonium Romanum*, as hath been before ſaid; yet are you alwaies to adde unto them a little Saffron, Caſſia wood, or Camomils, to mitigate their great cold. For this purpoſe ſerveth alſo Mithridate, either inwardly or outwardly adhibited, for it is very good for all infirmities of the teeth.

It is alſo adviſed, that the Patient abſtain from meat as long as is poſſible, and that he uſe a dry bath to ſweat, and meetly exerciſe. But if the pain be not mitigated by all theſe means, then is the root of the tooth to be ſeared with a hot iron, or to be drawn out altogether.

Of the Tooth-ache in the Peze.

MIxe the juice of Wormwood with the white of an egg, and apply it to the pain. For the ſame uſe ſerveth the decoction of Guaiac holden in the mouth warm; and all thoſe things that have been mentioned before.

Of hollow and rotten Teeth.

THe cauſe why theſe Teeth wax hollow and rotten, is ſome ſtinking matter adjacent unto the tooth, the which doth putrifie the ſame. To prevent this impediment, is the putrifaction to be taken away; which hath been ſhewed before, and ſhall more largely be declared hereafter.

You ſhall in no wiſe omit to pick and cleanſe your teeth after meals with a tooth-picker, and afterwards to waſh thy mouth with wine. The remedies that hinder the putrifaction of the teeth are theſe, namely *Lycium*, Frankincenſe, Mints, Mirtle ſeeds, *Spica*, *Gallia muſcata*, Cypres roots, Maſtick, Gals, Turpentine, Pepper, Camphire, and ſeeds of Nigella, if there be heat with it. This water following ſhould alſo prevent this putrifaction, or (if it were once entred) take it away, and allay the pain. Take of the middle rinde of the Mulberry tree one ounce and a half, of the beſt Ginger one ounce, boyl them in ſtrong vinegar unto the half, and waſh thy mouth therewith in the morning.

Item, take the aſhes of Roſemary, bind them in a cloth, and rub thy black and putrified teeth therewithal. Take Ariſtology beaten, temper it with honey, and uſe it as before. Take the water of wild three leafed graſſe, mix as much Allom and Hony unto it as thou pleaſe, and waſh thy rotten teeth with it.

Or take the inward part of Galls, and as much Pellitory of Spain, beat them to powder, and adde ſome Staveſacre unto it, and lay ſomewhat of it on the rotten teeth.

Item, Borras and Staveſacre decocted together, or each by it ſelf. This remedy following is no leſſe commended then any of the former; Take Pellitory of Spain one drachme, *Ammoniacum* and *Opium*, of each one drach. melt the gum, and mixe the reſt being beaten ſmall with it; thruſt ſome part of it into the hollow tooth, it taketh away the ſenſe and feeling of the ſame.

Item, take prepared Coral, blow it through a little quill into the hollowneſſe of the tooth, it taketh away the pain, and preventeth the putrifaction of the tooth. All theſe things may be mixed with Treacle, and ſo uſed. We have alſo ſhewed divers and ſundry remedies before in the 13. Chapter, and §. 1. againſt the corruption of the mouth, which may alſo be uſed very well in this neceſſity. Waſh thy mouth often with the decoction of Roſes, Nep, and a little Pellitory of Spain.

Thou mayſt alſo put a little of the ſpirit of wine into thy hollow tooth; alſo any of the waters of life that ſhall be deſcribed in the eight part of this book. Some men do uſe *Aqua fortis*, and it helpeth much, but you muſt deal very orderly with it.

Theſe ſtinking teeth are oftentimes the cauſe of a ſtinking breath. If the Tooth be altogether corrupted, then is the only and beſt remedy to draw it out; otherwiſe muſt one waſh the mouth alwaies after meals, with water ſodden with Sal Armoniack, or otherwhiles with Vinegar, wherein hath been decocted ſome Pellitory of Spain, and Staveſacre; Vinegar of Squills tempered therewith is alſo very good. After meals (as hath before been admoniſhed) is the hollowneſſe of the Tooth to be picked and cleanſed of all ſuperfluity. If this pain proceed of cold, then are you to thruſt into the hollow Tooth a little piece of Galangal, of Ginger, of Cloves, of Pepper, of Frankincenſe, or of Myrrhe. If it be cauſed of heat, then uſe Roſes, Sanders, Camphire, and ſuch like.

Of the Wormes that are in the Teeth.

IT is evidently known, that if the pain be not overmuch, but that there be felt a continual ſtirring and crawling in the Teeth, that the ſame was wont to proceed of Worms: for if one waſh his mouth with warm water, and hold the hollowneſſe of the tooth up towards the Sun, then may the Worms apparantly be ſeen to ſtirre in them. For this thou ſhalt take Aloes one drach. Myrrhe half a drach. make them into little pills with wine, and thruſt them into the hollow tooth. Item, boyl Coloquint in fair water, and waſh thy mouth with it. Make a fomentation of Henbane ſeed, or (which is ſafer) of Onion ſeeds, or of Garlick ſeeds, then waſh thy mouth with warm water, and ſpet it into cold water, then ſhalt thou ſee the Worms ſwim in it.

Take Myrrhe, Aloes, and red Storax, of each a like much, put a little of it into thy tooth where the Worms are. Or take Calamus bruiſed, boyl it in a little wine, dip a little Cotton in it, and lay it over or under the hollow Tooth.

In the greateſt extremity make a fume with Opium, Bevercod, and Onion ſeeds, or with white Henbane ſeeds or Muſtard ſeeds, receive this fume through a tunnel into thy hollow tooth; but at one time take but the quantity of a Barly corn to fumigate withal, and take heed the fume paſſe only into the hollowneſſe of the tooth, although you ſhould get a little pipe of purpoſe to put into thy hollow tooth, and to fit it unto the tunnel. If all theſe means bring no eaſe, then let it be drawn out, and bleed throughly.

Of the grinding of the Teeth in Children.

THis commonly happeneth unto children in their ſleep, through the debility of the muſcles that ſtirre and move the jaws: this after a while leaveth them altogether. It may alſo be cauſed of Worms that are in the ſtomach or inteſtines, but then their grinding of their teeth is not all after the ſame manner, they rub their noſes, &c. Of which thou ſhalt have further direction in the Treatiſe of the Worms, where alſo ſhall be ſhewed how this is to be remedied. But if this infirmity do continue for ſome other cauſe, then it is commonly the meſſenger of the dead Palſie, contracture, or of ſome other affection of the ſinews: for the which you are to uſe thoſe things as are thought meet for every ſuch infirmity. But for this it is eſpecial good to anoint the cheeks and the whole neck with *Unguentum Martiatum*, or the oyl of Bevercod, of Spikenard, of Juniper, of Bayes, and ſuch like.

Of the pain in the Teeth that cometh through the application or uſe of cold things.

ALl manner of Oyles that are warm by nature, applyed to the tooth, or holden in the mouth, do eaſe this pain. Item, take Bayberries, Ariſtology, and Allom, of each a like much, boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of wine, waſh thy mouth with it warm. If thou wilt have it ſtronger, adde *Hiera Picra* unto it. The ſame operation hath old Treacle mixed with wine, and a good while after not to take any other moiſture in the mouth.

Note alſo, that whatſoever is uſed or applyed to the teeth, may not be hot; for they are thereby corrupted and ſpoyled.

Of the ſtanding an edge of the Teeth.

THis proceedeth otherwhiles of a ſharp and aſtringent ſlime or rheume, which falleth into the roots of the teeth; or of ſome other ſowr matter that lyeth in the ſtomach, and fumeth up into the mouth and teeth, whereby the teeth are ſet an edge. But for the moſt part it is cauſed of ſowr and unripe fruits, as of unripe Grapes, Limons, Raſpes, *Corna*, Sloes, and ſuch other: for this purpoſe ſerveth Purſlain with her ſeed beaten together, and vinegar put upon it, bitter or ſweet Almonds, Licorice, and the juyce thereof, Salt water, milk of an Aſſe, to waſh the mouth with the decoction of Ariſtology and Bay leaves. Theſe things may you mix together, uſe or chew them as you pleaſe. To hold warm wine in the mouth is alſo very commodious. Or as ſoon as ever you do perceive this infirmity, then chew ſix of the grains of Pepper, and afterwards waſh thy mouth with warm wine, this helpeth immediately.

This doth alſo oftentimes proceed of cold, as hath been before ſaid. For when one will cure the Tooth-ache with overcold things, then will thereby the ſmall heat of them be extinguiſhed, ſo that they loſe their ſenſe and feeling. Now to cure the ſame, you muſt take ſome kind of Oyl that is warm by nature, as I have ſhewed you before, and alſo bite the yolks of eggs hard roſted, or hot bread: to anoint the gums with the oyl of Spikenard, and afterwards to hold warm wine in the mouth, wherein Cubebs have been ſodden. Laſtly, to chew Maſtick in the mouth a great while, and then to waſh it with warm wine.

How to confirm and faſten Teeth that be looſe.

THe cauſe of this looſeneſſe of the Teeth may be blowes, thruſts, defluctions that fall out of the head into the teeth, that (as it were) reſolve and ſlacken their ſinews, and looſe their roots. It may alſo proceed of a great drought, as it happeneth unto them that recover of a long lingring diſeaſe: the corruption of the mouth and teeth may alſo cauſe the ſame. The ſigns of this looſeneſſe of the teeth may be diſcerned by beholding them diligently.

The cure of this infirmity is comprehended in two principal points; to wit, in a good regiment or diet, and in the adhibition of good remedies. Firſt he muſt take heed not to bite hard upon any thing, but to uſe ſoft meats: alſo not to ſpeak much, thereby to eſchew the cold ayr; alſo he is not to ſleep with an open mouth, neither are the Teeth to be touched roughly either with the fingers, or with the tongue.

If this looſeneſſe of the teeth do come of blowes and ſuch like, with an evident heat, then is he to uſe the pills and bloſſomes of Pomgranates, Medlars with their leaves and rinds, Services, Quinces, *Lycium*, Galls, Butchers broom, burnt Ivory, Roſes, Saunders, Ambers, Mirobalan ſtones, Date ſtones, red Coſtus pills, *Hypociſtis*, ſealed earth, fine Bole, burnt Harts horn, ſea Muſcles, and all that may be made and ſodden with theſe things. But if theſe proceed of cold, then uſe *Laudanum*, Frankincenſe and her bark, parched Comin ſeed, Creſſes ſeeds, parched Anniſeeds, Allom, Pitch, Myrrhe, parched Salt, Cypres Nuts and leaves, Maſtick, *Sarcocolla*, *Sandaraca*, and all that may be made with it. Here now do follow ſome things that confirm and faſten the teeth, gums and their ſinewes.

Take garden Mints, freſh Olive leaves (if they may be had) of each an ounce, Roſes, Mirtle ſeed, Butchers broom ſeed, wood of the Barberry tree, and the fruit of the ſame, of each half an ounce; beat, cut, and boyl it in unripe wine, and hold it in the mouth. Water of Nightſhade, of Plantain, and of Shepherds purſe do faſten the teeth; and if in this water and vinegar together you boyl the bloſſoms of Pomgranates and Mirtle ſeeds, then will it be the better.

In like manner you may boyl Galls, Medlars, Lentils and Services, of each half an ounce. For this purpoſe ſerve alſo Cypres Nut and leaves, Acorn cups and Sene leaves, all together, or each by it ſelf, decocted in wine, and uſed as the former.

Item, take Allom, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Cypres Nuts, Roſemary flowers, of each a like much; boyl them together in a ſufficient quantity of rain water and red wine, and waſh thy mouth with it very often warm. Item take Harts horn, Salt and Myrrhe, all of them burnt, of each two drach. boyl them in honey, and rub thy gums therewith within and without.

Item, take burnt Allom half an ounce, Roſe buds half a handful, Bedegar, red wine

one pint; them unto the half, take of this being warm into thy mouth often, and hold it a good while therein, for it is very good.

Another. Take Ireos, Coral and Frankincenſe, of each half a drach. temper it with hony of Roſes to a confection, anoint the teeth therewith, and in the morning waſh them with wine where in hath been decocted Sage, Roſemary and Roſes, of each alike much. Item, take Aſlom, burnt Harts horn, Roſes, Dragons blood, Acorn cups, *Hypociſtis*, bloſſomes and pills of Pomgranates, Galls, of each a like quantity, boyl them in ſtrong red wine or in vinegar, and waſh thy mouth therewith.

Vinegar and Oxymel of Squills are alſo eſpecial good for this uſe. To waſh the mouth oftentimes with Roſemary wine, confirmeth the gums, and faſteneth the Teeth.

Of the falling out and drawing of the Teeth.

THe laſt and extreameſt means for the Tooth-ache, is, that the teeth might either fall of themſelves, or be drawn out. To prevent the falling of them is unpoſſible to many men, yet are theſe things following preſcribed for it, amongſt which this that followeth is very ſharp, and yet for all that very ſafe and good to be uſed.

Take the bark of a Mulberry tree, Caper roots, *Piretrum*, the bigger and the leſſer *Eſula*, red Orpiment, roots of Coloquint, of each two drach. put as much vinegar on them as will cover them, let it ſo reſt eight dayes, and every day put a little more vinegar unto it, and uſe it as hath been ſaid.

Open the gums round about the tooth as much as is poſſible with ſome kind of inſtrument, then rub them ten times in one day with the foreſaid water; it maketh the tooth looſe, and ſeparateth the root. Item, open the gums as before, anoint it with Oyl wherein Frogs have been decocted: and when the tooth is very looſe, then take it out. You may alſo do as hereafter followeth: Take Pellitory of Spain, Scammony, white Hellebore, Euphorbium, of each one drach. beat and ſteep it in vinegar, open and looſe the gums about the tooth, and rub it often therewith; it is very forcible, and therefore to be the more regarded.

Item, take Nettle ſeeds, roots of the Mulberry tree, and roots of Celendine, of each a like quantity, boyl them in wine or vinegar: this ſhould have the ſame operation with the former, and it is much ſafer.

Another. Open the gums, and lay bare the root of the tooth, and ſtrew Euphorbium in it, this will doubtleſſe looſe the tooth, that it may be eaſily taken out; afterwards waſh thy mouth with the decoction of Myrrhe, for thereby will the place or hole be drawn together, and all pain abated.

Take the dregs or lees of ſtrong vinegar, and apply it to the tooth many daies together: afterwards draw out the tooth. But if it will not ſtirre, then rub the place with freſh butter or ſome other greaſe of birds, and eſpecially with the brains of a Hare ſodden, which have a hidden vertue and operation for this purpoſe, as before hath been ſaid.

This remedy following applyed to the tooth, maketh the ſame to fall out without any pain. Diſſolve two drach. of *Ammoniacum* in vinegar, temper Henbane ſeeds beaten amongſt it, and anoint the tooth and the root theſeof.

Item, take the juyce of *Eſula* with the meal, make a dow of it, temper it well, and let boyl a while, and apply it to the tooth.

Of the double Tooth.

OTherwhiles two teeth grow unnaturally one before the other, which is not only unſeemly, but hindreth alſo very much; wherefore it muſt be taken away with an inſtrument, and with applications. If you will take it away by application, then are you firſt to looſe the gums from it, and make a little ball of Wax, and mixe the juyce of *Eſula* or of Neeſewort with it. The ſame doth alſo the blood of a leaf Frog. Or take the root of a Mulberry tree, and Pellitory, of each half an ounce, wet them in vinegar, and dry them in the Sun untill they be as thick as hony, then temper them with the foreſaid juyce of *Eſula*, and anoint the tooth thrice a day with it, and it will eaſily fall out. The juyce of the roots of Nettles mixed equally with *Galbanum* ſhould do the ſame. In like manner alſo beaten Fig leaves applyed to the Tooth.

To make and to keep the teeth clean.

TAke Cuttle bone, white leg Muſtles, *Spanish nuts*, Allume, Ariſtology, parched Nutty, Sulphur vive, Cinnamom, and long Pepper, of each a like much, temper it again with honey, and rub the teeth often therewith. Or take Argoile, ℥. 2. beat it ſmall and ſcarce it, waſh it with good wine, rub the teethe once a day with it, and afterwards waſh thy mouth in the winter warm, and in ſummer with cold wine. This following is highly commended.

Take two drach. of Date ſtones, red Coral prepared three drach. Lupins, and the roots of the yellow Flower de-luce, of each three drach. beat all that is to be beaten, and afterwards make confection of it with clarified Honey, which muſt be ſo hard that you may make ſmall placents, or Troches of it, dry them in the ſhadow: when you will uſe them, then diſſolve one of them in wine or vinegar, and waſh thy teethe therewith every morning, when thou haſt firſt rubbed them well with a cloth, and keep the moiſture a good while in thy mouth. Item take burnt Oiſter ſhels, and *Sandaraca*, of each half an ounce, Ireos two drachmes, Ariſtology, Gentian and Centory, of each half a drach. uſe it as before. It is bitter, but it dryeth and cleanſeth much.

Or take one drop of the oyl of Vitriol, wet the teethe with it, and rub them afterwards with a courſe clothe; this taketh away all blackneſſe of the teeth, but it is very ſharp.

The ſame operation is aſcribed unto the oyl of *Sandaraca*. Take Allome and ſalt, of each a like much, beat it ſmall, diſtil it in a glaſſe Lembick, and rub thy teeth therewith. Theſe laſt three things are very ſtrong, and my counſel is to refrain them.

But if one would keep his teeth clean, then are not thoſe things to be uſed that do change the natural white colour of the teeth into another hew. The cauſes are both outward and inward, as the long uſe of tincting or colouring meats, and the continual dreſſing of the ſame in braſſe pots. There groweth alſo a hard ſubſtance to the teeth, which may be called Argoil. The inward cauſes may be a corrupted and foul ſtomach, which commonly doth colour them green, and eſpecially when one hath oftentimes eaten many Toadſtools. The cure thereof is this; if it be cauſed of bad meats, then muſt the Patient firſt of all be let blood. If the teeth be peſtered with Argoil, then is the ſame to be taken or ſcraped off gently. And, becauſe this colouring of the teeth doth onely proceed of bad humours, they are therefore often to be rubbed with parched ſalt, afterwards with the dentifrices or powders that make white teeth, (which ſhall be deſcribed hereafter) and rub them therewith; and laſt of all with a piece of Scarlet dipped in Honey.

How to make the teeth white.

TAke Venice glaſſe, mould it upon a marble ſtone until it be very ſmall, add unto it white ſtones burnt, in like ſort powdered, and Ireos, of each a like quantity, rub the teeth therewith; Item take burnt Date ſtones, red Coral prepared, ana. ℥. 1. put them mixed together in a piece of linnen cloth, ſteep it in wine, and rub the teeth with it: this maketh them white and ſtrong.

Another. Take Pumice ſtone, Cuttle bone, and red brick, egg ſhels, the white skin taken out of them, prepared red and white Coral, ana. ℥. ß. Pellitory of Spain, burnt Allome, ana. ℥. 2. ß. Ireos, ℥. 2. *Sandaraca*, ℥. 3. Maſtick, Myrrhe, ana. ℥. ß. make them into powder, and uſe it for a dentifrice. Item take Pellitory of Spain, burnt Allome, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Dragons blood, bloſſomes of the Pomegranate tree, ana. ℥. ß. mix them together, and uſe it as before. Some do uſe the Cuttle bone onely, others onely egg ſhels, they are very good and ſafe.

How to preſerve the teeth from all accidents.

MAny Phyſitians do write that whoſoever will preſerve and keep good teeth, he muſt obſerve two things eſpecially; firſt they do command not to uſe Milk, Fiſh, Radiſhes, dry Figs, Dates, ſodden Honey, and all other meats that be dreſſed therewith. Alſo to abſtain from ſowr and green Apples and Pears, Prunes, Services, Medlars, Lemons and Garlick, all which by nature are hurtful unto the teeth. In like manner all things that are very hot or very cold, and eſpecially the ſudden change of hot or cold meats.

A good dyet is also very commodious for this purpose; vomiting (as before hath been shewed) is very bad and hurtful: also to bite on very hard things. The teeth are alwaies to be kept clean, that nothing remain between them and stink.

The means whereby the teeth are preserved and kept good, are these, to wit, that you rub them often with the bark of Tamarist, with the peeles of Pomgranates, with the rind of an Ash tree, with blossoms of the Pomgranate trees, or with red blossoms of the Peach trees: they cleanse the teeth and confirm the gums. You may also temper white Sugar with Hony, and rub the teeth therewith: in cold causes with the oyl of Behen; in hot causes with the oyl of Roses. Item, take the powder of a burnt Hares head, rub the teeth and gums therewith: or take Hony and Salt, and burn them to ashes: beaten Lupines are also very commendable with any addition. Item, beat Myrrhe and plume Allom into powder, or temper burnt Allom with vinegar, and wash thy mouth with it; or else take burnt Harts horn, seeds or flowers of Tamarisk, Cypres roots, Roses, Spikenard, of each one scrup. Salt half a scrup. make it into powder and rub thy teeth with it. Myrrhe sodden in Wine, and the teeth washed therewith, fasteneth the teeth, and dryeth the superfluous humidity of them. Chew Mastick and rub the teeth and gums with it, it maketh them clean and strong.

The teeth also are alwaies to be kept clean and pure, and not to pick them with an iron, but with a tooth-picker made of *Lentiscus*, which is the tree whereof droppeth Mastick, which is much commended for the teeth; remember also to wash the teeth after every meal.

The fourteenth Chapter.

Of the Voyce.

WE have concluded before in the 13. Chapter, the Voyce to be the last part or portion of the mouth, which part is only proper unto all those living creatures that have lungs: for although fishes and some other beasts seem to have a voyce, yet it is nothing else but a noise: for a true voyce proceedeth of an open breast. Also the voyces of all females are much lesse (except the Cow) then of males. But it is not our intent to speak of any other voyces, but onely of the humane voyce.

Amongst all living creatures you shall hardly find any thing more changeable and inconstant then the voyce. For behold a man or a woman from childhood even to old age, and you may easily perceive the mutability of it; and which is above all things to be admired, that those children which speak very timely or young, begin to go very late. It is also no lesse marvel, that this voyce being shut up and included in something, can nevertheless be understood. As for example, put a long trunk to another bodies ear, speak in it what and as softly as you please, yet shall he perfectly understand every word of your saying. Likewise you may as well know one by the voyce as by sight: for it is most sure, that if you hear one speak and see him not, you shall as well know him by his voice, as if you saw him and heard him not.

In like manner the voice maketh great difference both in words and in names in divers speeches over all the world. It breedeth great delight by abbreviating, and extending, by singing high or low, soft or aloud in musick. And in this it exceedeth all other parts whatsoever, and is the only means whereby we may disclose and make known our hidden thoughts, and secret conceits of the mind unto our friend; also there is nothing else in which we differ from bruit beasts, but onely in the voyce.

We will not speak of any weak voyces, which are caused of some long sickness: for we have already written of them before in the thirteenth Chapter. But we purpose only to treat of those things that do corrupt or spoyl the voice, as of hoarseness and such like.

If the voyce be decayed of a cold cause, then drink half a drach. of beaten Cubebes at your lying down, sodden in three ounces of the decoction of Guaiacum.

The common people think it a good experiment to steep Horsetongue in wine, and to drink the same.

But the tabulats of *Diaireos* are especially commended, which are made as followeth: Take Ireos half an ounce, Pennyroyal, Hyssop, Licorice, of each three drach. Dragagant,

gant, bitter Almonds, Pine Apple kernels, Cinnamom, Ginger, Pepper, ana. ʒ. 1. ß. Figs, Dates, Currans, ana. ϑ. 1. red Styrax, ϑ. 3. ß. and for every ounce of this powder, take twelve ounces of Sugar, cut the fruit ſmall, beat all the reſt and make tabulats, or an Electuary of them. This is called at the Apothecaries *Diaireos Salomonis*.

Another. Take Ireos, ℥ ß. Sugar-candy, and the abovenamed ſpices without Sugar, ʒ. 2. Sugar, ℥ 12. boyl it in the water of Hyſſop until it be thick, then make tabulats of it. Both theſe kinds of *Diaireos* are good for the cough, proceeding of a cold rheume, and for a wheeſing breath.

Of Hoarſneſſe. § 1.

THis hoarſneſſe proceedeth of many and ſundry cauſes, but eſpecially of cold and ſharp humors that fall out of the head into the throate, and there make it dry, whereof ſhall be ſpoken at large when we ſhall ſpeak of the infirmities of the throat: we will now onely ſhew what is convenient for the roughneſſe and hoarſneſſe of the ſame; for the which Sugar-candy holden in the mouth very often is very commodious; alſo the confection *Diatragacanthum*, whereof there be two ſorts, to wit, the hot and the cold, which may be made as hereafter followeth.

The cold Electuary of Diatragacanthum.

TAke white Dragagant one ounce, gum Arabick five drach. Starch two drach. Licorice, peeled Melon ſeeds, Gourd ſeeds, Cucumber and Pompeon ſeeds, of each one drach. Camphire five grains, Sugar pennets one ounce and a half, beat them to powder. If thou wilt make tabulats of it, then take of this powder one ounce, of the beſt Sugar twelve ounces, boyl it in water of Violets as it behoveth. This confection is alſo very good for all infections of the Lights and of the Breaſt, which do proceed of heat and drought, and eſpecially for them that are declining to a Conſumption, and them that have dry cough doth it much help.

The hot confection of Diatragacanthum.

TAke Dragagant, Hyſſop, ana. ʒ. 2. Pine apple kernels, ſweet Almonds, and Linſeed, ana. ʒ. 3. Fenegreek, Cinnamom, ana. ʒ. 2. juice of Licorice, Ginger, ana. ʒ. 1. make it into an Electuary or confection as before. This is very good for them that have a tough and ſlimy cough, and that cannot get up any thing: alſo for all them that have a wheeſing and ſhort breath, and that are ſubject to a Conſumption.

Take Jujubes, boyl them in water, ſteep Cotten ſeeds in it, and hold them in thy mouth a long time: it hath a marvellous operation in all hoarſneſſe, drought, and roughneſſe of the throat.

Amongſt all other things that have been found good by experience, the tabulats of Diatragacanth are much commended; wherefore every night when you go to bed ſhall you diſſolve one of them in ſweet wine, adding half a ſcruple of Saffron unto it, and drink them all together; this hath cured many men of an inveterate hoarſneſſe.

A good potion. Take five pints of water, half a pint of honey, ſix Figs, one ounce of Currans, two drach. of Licorice, boyl one pint of it away and ſcum it well, drink every morning faſting a good cup full warm: you ſhall alſo temper or mix your wine with it. This potion is alſo very commodiouſly uſed againſt the cough. Hony of Roſes is alſo very good for all drought and hoarſneſſe of the throat, for it moiſteneth and eaſeth it. In like manner alſo the conſerve of Roſes, oyl of ſweet Almonds, ſyrup of Violets and Hony water, which commonly allayeth all roughneſſe of the throat.

But if this hoarſneſſe proceed of a cold rheume, then is Fennel ſeed very profitably uſed, howſoever it be adhibited; but for this purpoſe are confected Cumin ſeeds, Carvi and confected Almonds much better. Likewiſe whatſoever ſhall be written hereafter in the ſecond part of this book for the cough, may alſo be uſed in this infirmity.

How to make a clear voice. §. 2.

ONions and Garlick, as alſo the Hyſſop wine, are much commended for to mak a clear and good voyce, alſo the tabulats called *Diaireos Nicolai.*

This Electuary following is alſo much commended for this purpoſe. Take Cabbage ſeeds, Hyſſope, Elecampane roots, Fole foot, roots of Flower de-luce, Horehound, ana. ℥ß. Anniſe ſeeds, Fennel ſeeds, Ameos, Cucubes, Ariſtology, ana. ℥. 1. ß. *Oxymel compoſitum, Sirupus de Praſſio,* ana. ℥. 3. Sugar pennets, ℥. 3. Pine apple kernels that have been infuſed in *Vine cuiſt* two daies four ounces, Saffron, ℥. 1. clarified honey, ℥. 12. temper it in a confection or electuary. Take of this in the morning half an ounce, with two ounces of the decoction of Nettle roots. If it be not too much trouble for you take one half of it in the morning, and the other half at night, mixed with a little Sugar. This may be uſed for all harſhneſſe and hoarſneſſe of the throat. The water may you alter or change according to the quality of the diſeaſe.

For Hoarſneſſe.

I have often uſed the powder of Mechoacan, in white wine, and it hath holpen the hoarſneſſe.

And ſo we end the firſt part of this our Book.

The ſecond part of this Practiſe of Phyſick,

Containeth the Breaſt.

THE *Anatomici*, by dividing mans body into the outward and inward members, do affirm the ſecond part of the ſame to begin in the uppermoſt part next under the Head; thence to extend it ſelf downwards unto the Midriffe, which is a skin that parteth the Heart and the Lights from the Belly. This part maketh ſhew outwardly of very few members, to wit, of the Neck, of the Breaſt, Ribs, Shoulders, and upper parts of the Back: and containeth inwardly two of the principalleſt members, as the Heart and Lights, of the which, and of the diſeaſes of the ſame, and how they are to be holpen, ſhall now be ſhewn.

The firſt Chapter.

Of the Neck.

THere is none other diſeaſe to be ſeen in the Neck outwardly, then a ſwelling or tumour, which is called *Bronchocele*, the which either cometh by nature, or elſe of ſome outward cauſe; the ſame chanceth alſo ſometimes to ſwell inwardly, although that commonly depend and is cauſed of the firſt ſwelling.

Of Bronchocele. §. 1.

IF any man have this tumour in the throat by inheritance or deſcent from his Parents, & naturally is born with it, as commonly hapneth in Bintſgaw, and in many places more, whereof at this preſent ſhall not be ſpoken: for that all Phyſitians hereupon conclude, that they are altogether incurable. But that which is not natural, which proceedeth commonly of flegmatick or wateriſh humors; with the which otherwhiles winde is admixed, (by joyning both together) breedeth knots on the neck For by experiecce it hath been found, that when theſe Tumours have been opened by inciſion, that ſometimes there is found nothing in them but water, therefore is the ſame called a watery *Bronchocele.* Sometimes there will be therein a thick matter like Honey, and other-

otherwhiles a tough aſhcoloured ſlime, as it were ſnot or ſnivel. Laſtly, it hath alſo been ſeen, that there is but a little water in it, with much winde, which in opening (even in other wind) is let out and flyeth away. Theſe Tumors are cauſed moſt of cold raw Northern winds, and of thick ſlimy flegme, whereby all ſuch flegmatick defluxions are increaſed: alſo through continual uſe of groſſe meats that augment *Phlegma*. When as ſuch ſwellings appear, then muſt you not delay and reſt thereon, but ſeek ſome remedy betimes, and not follow the counſel of ſuch as do ſay, that it will wear away of it ſelf.

The order of dyet.

IT is firſt needful that he take heed of eating unleavened bread; in like ſort of all young ſucking Beaſts, and that are fat and ſlimy, as Swines fleſh, Fiſh, and chiefly ſod milk, and all that is dreſt therewith; alſo of moiſt fruits, as Cherries, Pears, Apples, Haſelnuts, and Melons; alſo of cold and moiſt herbs, as Beets, Spinage, Lettice, Endive, Purſlain, Verjuice, and freſh Butter. But contrariwiſe, warm and dry dwellings, ſituate in the Eaſt and South, are very good, and not much ſleeping, for that increaſeth much flegme; alſo quiet and idleneſſe are hurtful. Therefore are all ſuch Patients to endeavour themſelves to go and walk much, and to hold alwaies the head upright. And if that cannot be done, let them be rubbed with hot clothes from their heads downwards towards their feet, until the skin be red therewith, and alſo both their feet. Their heads ſhall be ſeldom waſhed, and then onely with lye and Soap after the dryeſt manner, like as you may find a good inſtruction thereof in the diſcovery of the headach. Their drink ſhall be ſmall white Wine, that is old and of a good taſte, the which muſt be delayed with decocted water: in their meats they muſt beware of all ſuperfluity, and ariſe from their meals with appetite; alſo they muſt chew their meat well before they ſwallow it.

Now to the remedy of this Tumour, firſt you ſhall prepare the humour whereby this ſwelling is cauſed, with *Oxymel* of Squils, which is acuated with Pepper and Pellitory of Spain. This muſt be continued certain daies faſting, taking 2. or 3. ounces mingled with wine. In like manner (if need require) open a vein; afterwards uſe this laxative powder following, whereby the corruption may be drawn out of the head and out of the ſtomach, the brains ſtrengthened, and all humors conſumed that run towards the ſwelling. Take beaten *Hermodactili*, *Turbith*, of each one drach. Ginger two ſcrup. *Diagridion* ſix grains, flowers of *Eſula* half a drach. mingle them together; you are to give at once half drach. of this powder or two ſcrup. at the moſt, tempered with three ounces of Mead once every week, and that early in the morning; whereupon he muſt faſt four hours. And this ſhall he take continually a whole moneth together.

Prepare alſo this following, and it will conſume the corruption and wind, whereby the Tumour is cauſed: Take Cammomil, Melilot, of each one ounce, Anniſe ſeeds, Rue, of each one ounce and a half, dryed Gooſe and Pigeon dung, *Sal gemmæ*, of each two ounces, all beaten groſſely. Of this compound take a handful, and ſteep it eight hours long in Sopers lie and then let it ſeethe a little; make a ſponge wet therein, and bind it warm on the grief. Take one of theſe waters following, the which you can get beſt, to wit, water of Ariſtology, of wild Cucumbers and Roſemary, make a ſponge wet that will cover the ſame and the places about it, wring it out, and lay it warm thereon, and renew it often. You muſt alſo anoint the part infected and the places about it with warming oyles, and then lay this plaiſter following.

Take of *Diaculum magnum* (called the *Apoſtolicon* plaiſter) *Ammoniacum*, of each a like quantity, temper therewith Ireos and *Sal gemmæ*, both beaten as much as the other, ſpread thereof upon leather: three drach. of *Opopanacum*, Litharge of ſilver, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, of each one drach. Myrrhe, Miſcleden, Frankincenſe, of each one drach. and half, Gips, Bolus, Aloe, of each half a drach. the muſcilage of Holihock half an ounce, Turpentine one ounce, or as much as is needful: pownd all that is to be pownded, diſſolve the gums in vinegar, and temper the powder therein, and then make it into a plaiſter with wax. This is alſo good for *Bronchocele*.

Divers Powders for the ſame.

TAke Haſel nuts, Spunges, Sea-balls, writing paper, burnt all together, Cuttle bones, and ſeeds of Plantain, of each half an ounce, Pepper, Ginger, *Salgemmæ*, Pumice ſtones, Nutmegs, Galls, white and long Pepper, Cinamom, black and white Hellebore, of each one quarter of an ounce, make them into powder, and give thereof every morning half a drach. The Hellebore or Neeſewort is ſomewhat dangerous, therefore this following is ſafer. Take new ſpunges, and burn them in a luted pipkin or pot untill they may well be beaten, and give him thereof every morning with wine one drach.

Another which is much uſed; Take clean waſht ſpunges four ounces, burn them in a luted pot with half an ounce of Spunge ſtones, Pumice ſtones, and Cuttle bones, of each one drach. red cloth burnt like to the ſpunges, half an ounce, mingle them and uſe them as before. Make alſo this gargariſme: Take Oxymel of Squills one ounce, ſirup of Calamint one quarter of an ounce, blew Ireos and Marjoram gentle, of each two ounces, temper them all together, and therewith you are to gargarize morning and evening every other day. Let him ſmell to this that followeth; Take Roſemary flowers, Marjoram gentle, *Spica*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Lignum Aloes one drach. and a half, Mace, Ameos, Laudanum, red Storax, of each one drach. Amber ʒ. ß. pownd each apart, and bind it up in a piece of ſilk, and let him hold it alwaies in his hand for to ſmell to.

Capital Powders.

TAke Cucubes, Nutmegs, Lignum Aloes, Roſemary flowers, Swines bread, of each half a drach. *Sandaraca* one quarter of an ounce, pownd them and temper them together: take every morning 5. grains thereof, and ſtrew it on the top of the head. Or make a little bag 5. fingers long, and 3. broad, and lay it on the head. Take the herb called Harts tongue, beat it ſmall, mingle it with eggs and meal, bake cakes thereof, and take alwaies thereof before meals, eſpecially one hour or more before noon, about one quarter of an ounce.

If one have ſomething ſticking in his throat. §. 2.

IF one have a great bit of meat ſticking in his throat, then are you to clap him behind above and under his neck, that thereby the meat may be removed, either by vomiting it out, or ſwallowing it down towards the ſtomach. In like manner alſo, you are to give him water oftentimes, or rather oyl of Roſes to gargarize therewith, and let it down: for it dilateth the throat, and maketh it ſlippery, whereby the ſame bit will ſink down the better. And this is alſo good for all ſlimy things, as Raiſons and Figs ſod in Mead. Item, take bread, chew it not too ſmall, and ſwallow it down. Do the like with Figs, for they are very commodious for this purpoſe. Item, take a bit of hard ſodden fleſh, bind it on a ſtrong threed, and ſlide it down, and afterwards pluck it out again: if the bone or any thing elſe that ſticketh therein cannot be forced downwards, then with a mullet or other inſtrument draw it out. But if ſo be that all thoſe things will not help, then may you uſe a leaden pipe which is throughout full of holes, ſomewhat ſmooth without, and ſomewhat bent, which you may thruſt into his throat to the neather part by force.

Take the muſcilage or ſlime of Linſeed, Butter, prepared Caſſia, oyl of Almonds, of each a like much, lay them on the throat. The vomiting after meat is alſo found good for this intent, and is therefore to be moved.

When a Horſeleach taken in drink remaineth ſticking in the throat. §. 3.

ONe ſhall perceive this, not onely by the place where the ſame was drunken, but alſo by the biting and tickling in the throat, and by the clear blood that he avoideth, and the wambling and vomiting. For this you are to preſſe his tongue downwards, and to look into his mouth whether the Leach can be ſeen or not; if yea, to take it by the head with a mullet and draw it out; if not, then muſt you make a Gargariſme with Muſtard and Vinegar, or with Vinegar and *Aſſa fœtida*, or with vinegar and ſalt, which you will, and gargarize therewith.

Or

Or you may blow beaten Muſtard ſeed, and Nigella ſeed into his throat. Alſo you may gargarize with Onions, or the decoction of Garlick. The aſhes of our Ladies thiſtle blown into the throat, is commended above all the reſt. The root of Gentian beaten, and all that is bitter. When as the Horſleach is fallen away, then ſeethe the bloſſoms of Pomgranats in water, and gargarize therewithal.

To ſtay the blood, take the bloſſoms of Pomgranats, Frankincenſe, *Sang. Draconis*, and ſtarch, of each one drach. blow this powder into his throat. Item, take the bloſſoms and pils of Pomgranats, Sumach ſeeds, and *Sang. Draconis*, boyl them in water, and gargarize therewith. You may alſo blow the foreſaid things into the throat, or boyl them in Wine and drink it.

Another. Take Garlick, Lupins, and Coloquint, of each one drach. Gith ſeeds half a drachme, Muſtard ſeeds one drach. and a half, boyl them all together in ſixteen ounces of vinegar till the fourth part be conſumed: then diſſolve three drach. of Sal armoniack in it, and gargarize therewith.

But if the Leach be gone down into the ſtomach, then are you to uſe the ſame remedies that are preſcribed againſt worms, and there kill it. Or take meal of Lupins, Turbith, Stechas, Penniryal, Gith, of each one quarter of an ounce, mix it with the juice of wormwood, and make trochiskes of it of the weight of a drach. of which diſſolve one in three ounces of the decoction of Gith, and take it faſting. It is very forcible, but ſafer and eaſier things may be uſed for it.

Of the Squinancy or ſwelling in the throat. § 4.

THis Squinancy have the learned given many kind of names, and that of the place in the throat where it appeareth, or according to the quality and nature of it: as *Angina*, *Cinanche* or *Cynanche*, which laſt name the Phyſitians have altered, naming the ſame *Squinanchem* or *Squinantiam*. And with all theſe names have they meant but one ſickneſſe, to wit, a tumour in the throat; even as they call *Pleuritis* the Pleuriſie.

They deſcribe the Squinancy thus: *Angina* is a ſtrong perillous ſickneſſe, that ariſeth about the throat, in the mouth, and about the throat boll, and very quickly ſtoppeth the breath. Or *Angina* is a flegmatick defluxion, that ſinketh into the outward part of the throat, and there ſwelleth, ſo that all the inward parts of the throat are thereby ſhut up, and the breath hindered.

The cauſes are divers: for it is ingendered as well through great heat, as through great cold, and alſo through ſharpe Northern winds; but eſpecially when the ſame bloweth preſently after a South wind: likewiſe alſo if one ſit bare-headed in the Moon-ſhine a long time. But this ſickneſſe doth chiefly come and proceed of defluxions that fall out of the head into the throat, and there cauſe a ſwelling; and chiefly in the falling of the leaf or harveſt, when the rheumes are moſt of all mingled with ſharpe *Cholera*, like as the ſame are in winter for the moſt part mingled with *Phlegma*. Sleeping alſo immediately after meals with hanging of the head increaſeth the ſame. Fat meat, and all that is dreſt with milk, Melons, and violent motions ſtraight after meats cauſe alſo this ſickneſſe. The ſame do alſo the venemous things, as black Hellebore, and all Toadſtooles. So are ſometimes blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma* and *Melancholia* occaſions of this ſickneſſe, which nevertheleſſe do ſeldom ſtrangle a man.

The ſigns of *Angina* are a ſhort breath, with bad ſwallowing; otherwhiles bliſtering of the tongue, ſo that the drink taken will be driven out at the noſe again: the ſpeech goeth through the noſe more or leſſe, as the ſickneſſe is of importance.

If the blood be cauſed of it, then is the pulſe ſtrong, the face, eyes and tongue red, the mouth ſweet, great pain and retaining of the breath. If it come of *Cholera*, then is there great heat with little ſpettle, thirſt, bliſtering and drought of the tongue, bitterneſſe of the mouth, and great pain with it: the breath is not ſo ſhort as of blood, the tongue is yellow, this is alſo augmented in harveſt, and in ſummer, and if one be cholerick alſo.

If this ſickneſſe proceed of *Phlegma*, then is there too much tough moiſture in the mouth, ſometimes ſalt, and of an evil taſt, the face is bleak and the tongue alſo: then is but little pain, little thirſt, and a little tumour.

But if it proceed of *Melancholia*, then is therewith ſowreneſſe in the mouth, the ſwelling is hard, his face aſh-coloured. Alſo this Squinancy cometh by little and little, and not ſo ſudden as the other.

Now

Now to eaſe this diſeaſe, there is nothing better then to eat and drink but little: the drink ſhall be a Julep of Roſes tempered with Well water, or Sugar water, or any thin Mead.

Further, he is to eat light meats, as bread mollified in freſh fleſh broth, and ſuch like. He ſhall alſo oftentimes two hours after meat, take Pillulas Elephanginas, and let his head be often combed and ſtroked. And let him gargarize with wine of Pomgranats and Barly water mingled together. Afterwards he is to cleanſe his mouth with ſix ounces of Barly water, wherein is tempered one ounce of the ſirupe of the outward green nutſhels. Before meat he is to uſe water to waſh his feet, wherein Woodbind, Bay leaves, Marjoram gentle, and Roſemary are decocted, and he ſhall rub his legs downwards with theſe herbs. Alſo he is often to uſe three or four grains of Maſtick, and one grain of Cucubes, or Lignum Aloes, to chew it in the morning, and to hold it in his mouth.

For this infirmity it is alſo very commodious for one to avoid much filth through the noſe.

And as this Squinancy is cauſed diverſly, ſo do the learned alſo divide the ſame into four kinds; Firſt, when the throat and the bulke, with the parts round about them, do ſwell: Secondly, if about the throat there be no ſwelling ſeen on the outſide, notwithſtanding above all this, that the breath is ſo ſhort that one would think that the patient would be ſtrangled: Thirdly, when there appeareth a ſwelling on the outſide of the throat: Fourthly, when the throat ſwelleth as well within as without.

But after what manner ſoever it cometh, it is alwayes a perillous ſickneſſe, and eſpecially the ſecond kind, for that it is very quick and ſpeedy, ſo that oftentimes it diſpatcheth one in two or three dayes; and commonly it is more dangerous for children then for aged folk: therefore do the Latiniſts call this kind of Squinancy *Strangulatorem*, which is, Strangler, as it were ſomewhat that fell into the throat, the which then ſo ſtopt the the breath, that one muſt therewith be ſtrangled. For *Strangulation* they ſay, is nought elſe but a ſpeedy death, by reaſon that one can get no breath, even as it hapneth when the throat is ſtopt. And this is the difference between them: the Squinancy (as it is ſaid) killeth one very haſtily; *Peripneumonia* (which is a ſickneſſe of the lights) doth with a painfull breath ſtrangle by little and little. But if rheumes fall into the throat, then are they a cauſe of ſtrangling, for that thereby the pipes of the lights in time are ſtopped.

If in ſwallowing he feel a narrowneſſe and pain that the breath be painfully drawn, and that the patient have ſcarceneſſe of breath, and is conſtrained to hold open his mouth, then is the Squinancy at hand, which is great or ſmall, as may appear by the vehemency of the ſigns. And for that this diſeaſe proceedeth as well of blood, *Cholera*, and heat, as of cold and Phlegma, and ſo requireth ſpecial remedies, therefore we will hereafter in particular ſpeak of them.

☞ Make a poultice of green Copperas, and the white or yolk of an egg, and apply it under the chin, and to the throat, and mix a white dogs-turd with it.

After letting of blood under the tongue, ℞. Coriander ſeeds, Annisſeeds powdered, roſted Onions, and oyl of Olive, and apply it as a poultice under the chin.

Then take of Coloquintida pulpe and ſeeds powdered together ʒ. 3. Pepper, Annis ſeeds, ana. ʒ. 4. with honey and vinegar make a gargle.

Alſo ſeethe Cabage leaves in beer and let the party drink no other drink.

And take of that drink ʒ. 4. and put to it of the powder for the Gargle, ʒ. ß. or ʒ. 2. more or leſſe according to judgement, and drink.

Seethe Celendine roots in Wine, and Gargle with it, which dries the head, and purges.

And bruiſe Vervein and apply it hot, it is ſaid to cure deſperate Squinancies.

Of the Squinancy or pain in the throat through heat. §. 5.

FOr this Squinancy, regard is to be had to the face and the eyes, whether they be red, and the face puft up, and whether the patients ſpettle be ſweet; Alſo whether he (being healthy) hath uſed much nouriſhing meat and drink, for when theſe ſigns (as is ſaid) do appear, then is it certain that this Squinancy proceedeth of ſuperfluous blood and heat, then is the head vein to be opened without all delay on the right hand, and to let out four or five ounces of blood, according to the ability of the perſon, and to uſe this Cliſter by and by after it.

Take

Take Mallowes, Holihock roots, Violet leaves, Cammomil, Adiantum, of each a handfull; seethe these in sufficient water unto the half part. Take 12. or 16. ounces of this decoction, oyl of Dill, and of Saffron, of each one ounce, oyl of Bevercod half an ounce, Hieralogodion one ounce, the juyce of Swines bread (if you can get it) one scruple, Diagridion half a scrup, Salt one drach, minister it warm. If the sickneſſe be ſomewhat tolerable, then within twelve hours after ſet two great boxing cups on the ſhoulders hard by the neck very warm, and let them bleed well.

But if the patient be corpulent, then is the Median to be opened on the ſame ſide, or the little veins under the tongue. This letting of blood is not to be done at one time only, but if the patient may well abide it, ſhall be the oftner reiterated, and the leſſe at once, for it diſpatcheth and driveth the matter from them.

But untill the patient be let blood, Cliſtered, and boxed, he muſt be rubbed with warm clothes, and firſt, from beneath the knees even to the feet; afterwards from the thighes to the knees; thirdly, from the ſhoulders unto the buckle bone; fourthly, from the ſhoulders unto the hand; or at the leaſtwiſe bind the ſame members hard, and make them looſe often, as hath been ſaid.

Then both before and after purging are perſently to be uſed all cooling and aſtringent gangariſmes, whereof divers are deſcribed in the third Chapter and the fourth §.

Or make it thus, lay the ſeeds of Sumach to ſteep in Rice water, and gargarize therewith. Or take Coriander, Sumach, Galls, Hypociſtis, Pomgranat pills, of each a like quantity, ſeethe theſe in ſufficient water untill the half be conſumed.

This following is alſo very good (being uſed within the firſt three dayes.) Take the water of Purſlain, and Plantain, of each four ounces, ſirupe of green Nutſhels three ounces, tempered and holden long in the mouth.

Item, to gargarize with warm milk eaſeth the pain. Take ſirupe of Poppy heads, and ſirupe of Mulberies, of each one drachme, Roſe water three ounces, tempered and uſed as the other before.

Or take Barly water as much as you will, and mingle amongſt it ſirupe of Pomgranats, Mulberries, and honey of Roſes as much as you will.

Item, take ſmall ſliced Licorice, Currans, Figs, Fleawort, Quince kernels, and white Poppy ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Barley one ounce and a half, ſeethe it in ſufficient water till that the barley break, put unto it two ounces of the honey of Roſes. This is very good to be uſed after the purging.

Take Acorns that be old, beat them ſmall, give of them to the patient twice a day half a drach, at each time, in what you pleaſe. This is ſpecial good againſt the ſwelling of the throat: it is alſo good to take the fume of them into the throat.

Item, take dried white Dogs dung, half an ounce beaten ſmall, tempered with the ſirupe of Mulberries, and give it to the patient to ſwallow by little and little: it helpeth and drieth marvelloully.

What ought to be uſed outwardly.

BEfore there be any ſalves, plaiſters, or any other thing laid upon the outſide thereof, you are to froth and rub the patients arms and legs (even as before is ſaid) and annoint the ſame members afterwards with freſh butter, or with the oyl of ſweet Almonds. Or uſe this following: Take the ſalve Dialthea one ounce and a half, mucilage of Fleawort and of Quince kernels, of each one quarter of an ounce, prepared Caſſia and freſh butter, of each one drach. Leven and Dates, of each half an ounce. oyl of Violets two ounces, and make a ſalve of them.

Item, take a Swallowes neaſt, and ſeethe it in Well water, ſtrain the ſame through a narrow ſieve, and in this water boil the roots of Lillies, Mallowes, Hollihocks, Violet leaves, Pellitory, Camomil, Adiantum, of each one handfull: ſtamp them all together with Barley water and Linſeed meal, of each one ounce, Camomil two ounces, and thereof make a plaiſter.

Another of *Myrepſus*. Take a Swallowes neſt, Mallowes and Hollihock roots, of each one handfull, Camomil, Adiantum, of each two handfuls Barley meal three ounces, oyl of Camomil one ounce, and lay it warm on the throat. Afterwards if any impoſtume appear, then take Figs, Fenegreek, and Squils, of each half an ounce, ſeethe together in a pint of water till but half remain, temper it with three ounces of Oxymel, and then gargarize with it. And if you think that be too mild, then open the ſwelling (if you can come to it) and waſh the mouth often with wine and honey.

For

For purging thereof.

THis purging must be effected with cool things, as sowre Dates, Prunes, Confections, Cassia and Manna (as shall seem good:) also mild Clisters are to be used, as hereafter followeth.

Take Mallowes, Hollihock roots, Violet leaves and Orage, of each a handfull, of the seed of Melons, Cucumbers, Gourds, and Pompeons stamped grosse together, of each one drach. and a half; seethe them all together in sufficient water, take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, Cassia one ounce, salt one drach. minister it warm.

Good heed is also to be taken, that the patient have a solube body; and to that end serve suppositories made of Venice sope, using the same oftentimes.

If the same ach of the head be mixed with *Cholera*, the which may be known hereby, that is, if with the swelling there be a pricking and gnawing pain, yellow collour, bitternesse in the mouth: also if that he in time of health have eaten such meats as augment *Cholera*, then is the sick body to be purged with the abovesaid things. Rubarbe is also very commodious for it, in this manner following: Take one ounce of Manna, Rubarbe one drachme or twain, steep them in six ounces of Prune-broth six hours long; then strain it out hard; afterwards use the Clister which is described in the twelfth Chapter of the first part §. 5. for madnesse or frenzie which beginneth thus, take Lectice &c.

Hereupon you are to open the head vein on the hand, and set cups on the neck and shoulders. Use also these aforesaid gargarismes, or this following: Take the juice of Nightshade that is well setled, six ounces, Roses, sliced Licorice and Fitches, of each half an ounce, good white wine three ounces, let it seethe meetly well; then temper it amongst one ounce and a half of Cassia, and gargarize therewith often. This helpeth and easeth the pain. In the increase of the sickneſſe, there is sometimes used Myrrhe sodden with wine. In like manner also the muscilage of Barley tempered with Goats milk, Sugar, Nightshade, and a little Saffron.

Thus may then the bad matter be drawn outwardly: Take Sheeps wool dipped in oyl of Camomil, and Sallet-oyl, and lay it upon the sore. Or (if one can get it) take one quarter of an ounce of the Snakes skins, which the Snakes do cast every year, and seethe it in an ounce of oyl of Almonds: then wet a cloth therein, and lay it on the place where the sore is a whole day and a night.

This plaister following is to this end also much commended. Take Fenegreek and Linseed meal, of each one quarter of an ounce, Hollihock seeds, Camomil, Hyssop, of each one handfull. These three last seethe, and stamp to pap, and then mingle it with the foresaid meal, and with two ounces of Camomil oyl, and two ounces of the oyl of Lillies; afterwards seethe it all together untill it be somewhat thick, and then lay it warm on the neck.

In like manner are highly commended the swallowes with their young ones, burnt in a pot to ashes, and the same blown into the throat, or tempered with honey, and the throat anointed therewith, or gargarized, which is a passing good remedy.

But above all other is Oxymel with Rosewater and vinegar in the beginning most commended. Likewise the sirupe of Mulberries and green Nuthels: so that the skilful Physitians do write, that those three last are the best remedies of all others. Prepare also these pils to hold under the tongue: Take Assa fœtida one drach. Ireos half an ounce, make them up with the juice of Colworts.

If thou think that the patient will be strangled and cannot swallow, then take Hemlock seed, Radish seed, Assa fœtida, Boreas, Myrrhe, Ammoniacum and common Salt, of each a like quantity: of these altogether, or of some of these make a powder, and blow thereof into the throat. A great boxing cup (without pricking or otherwise) set it behind in the neck, helpeth that the meat and drink will be the easier swallowed down.

But in case that the impostume be broken, then are you often to gargarize with Mead and Wine, wherein Sugar and Ireos be sodden. Julep of Violets is very good for these kinds of pains.

Pain in the throat through Phlegma, *and cold taking.* §. 6.

IF the face and the eyes be not red nor fiery, and that the Patient have his mouth alwayes full of ſpettle, and is hoarſe without great pain; with other ſignes more of *Phlegma*: then ſhall Treacle and Mithridate be uſed, for that they mitigate the pain, expell all ſwellings, and cleanſe all exulcerations wonderfully. Further, you may uſe this gargariſme following; Take Ireos half an ounce, Hyſſop, *Adiantum*, of each one drach. Licorice, Currans, and Figs, of each one ounce, Fenegreek and Linſeed, of each half an ounce, Barley one ounce and a half, let it ſeethe together in ſufficient water untill the half be ſpent. Alſo you may make choice out of the laſt mentioned gargariſmes in the 13. Chapter, and §. 4. of that ſhall beſt like you, and that is ſpecial good which is prepared of the ſirup of Mulberries, and ſirup of green Nutſhels, for a foul mouth: for both of theſe are ſpecially commended for all pains of the throat, as daily experience teacheth. The root of Devils bit ſodden in water, and therewith gargarized, doth marvellouſly eaſe the Squinancy.

For to purge are very requiſite the pills *Cochiæ, Fœtidæ, de Hiera*, and the powder *Medicamen de Turbith*, according as need ſhall require. And if need be, let a ſtrong Cliſter be made and miniſtred, as you ſhall find in the twelfth Chapter, and §. 17. that which is very meet for this, which beginneth, Take Centory, &c.

There are Trochiſces alſo uſed that are to be holden in the mouth, and are to be made and dreſt thus; Take Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Raiſins, red Storax, and Nep, of each one quarter of an ounce, beat them all to powder, and make trochiſces thereof in weight half a drach. The ancient Phyſitians did uſe to take a green Eldern ſtick, to ſhave from it the uttermoſt bark, and did take the green and yellow rinds of it, and ſtrewed them with wheat flowr, and ſo held them in the mouth. They do warm and dry much.

Outwardly you muſt anoint the neck with Sallad oyl, Camomil oyl, and oyl of ſweet Almonds, or with the oyntment of *Dialthæa*, and waſht Sheeps wooll laid upon it, and afterwards the plaiſter before mentioned in §. 5. with *Caſſia*, or this that hereafter followeth, for that there is ſmall difference between them both.

Take the Unguent of *Althæa* one ounce and a half, the muſcilage of Fenegreek and Linſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Caſſia*, freſh Butter, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſowr dough, and fat Dates one ounce, oyl of ſweet Almonds two ounces, and thereof make a ſalve or plaiſter.

Or take Wheat, Fenegreek, and Linſeed meal, of each two ounces, water ſix ounces, oyl of Camomil two ounces, ſeethe them till they be thick enough, and afterwards ſpread it on a cloth, and lay it about his neck.

Item, take Gooſe dung, and Swines blood, of each a like quantity, mingle them, and lay it five times in 24 houres about his neck.

Some ancient Phyſitians do counſel to take warm Hony of *Anacardio, Mel Anacardium*, and let the neck be anointed thick clean over, that bliſters may be raiſed, whereby the matter might have an iſſue forth.

Item, take white dogs dung (of a dog that eateth nothing but bones,) Swallows dung, or Wolfes dung, which you can get, beat them to powder, afterwards temper it with hony, and anoint the neck therewith. This may you make for a gargariſme, or blow it into the throat with a pipe.

If ſudden ſtrangling be feared, then are you to clip or ſhave off as much hair from the top of his head, that a great boxing cup may be ſet thereon, which muſt be often faſtened, and taken off again.

In greateſt extremity is wont to be made a vent in the Patients throat between the two griſtles, that he through the ſame vent may take ayr and breath, the which vent afterwards when the ſwelling is gone, is to be cured as other wounds are.

Of the Ulcers of the Throat. §. 7.

WHen as the foreſaid Squinancy or any other defluxion hath ſo annoyed the Throat, that thereby the skin is broken, and the throat exulcerated, then take Cypres nuts, Calamus, Sulphur vive, burnt Allom, Roſes, Pomgranate pills, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and *Piretrum*, of each one drach. and ℥. 12. of *Aqua vitæ*, temper them all together, and keep them for thy uſe.

Then in the time of need, take a little thereof, and gargarize therewith, for it dryeth, cleanseth and healeth marvellous well. If this be too strong; then allay it with Plantain water, Knotgrasse water, or *Prunella* water. For this purpose is also good a decoction of Guaiacum. In like manner also *Aqua Johannis*, which is described in Chap.12. of the first Part, and §.5. But of all such things that do greatly hinder the same, you shall find good instructions hereafter in the beginning of the description of the stomach.

The second Chapter.

of all Rheumes and defluxions in general.

THis Greek word *Rheuma*, termed also in English a Rheume, is nothing else but a defluxion which descendeth or falleth from the head into the throat or breast, which doth otherwhiles so stop there the piper of the lights and throat, that the Patient seemeth to strangle or choak. Also these Rheumes do often fall into the nostrils, where they cause the Pose, which is described in the second Part, the eight Chapter. and §.6.

And for as much as these kinds of Rheumes, according to their several natures have several names, as that which falleth into the nostrils is called *Coryza*; that which descendeth into the breast, *Rheuma*: that which cometh into the throat, *Bronchus*: Nevertheless, all tough and slimy defluxions which fall from one member into another, are called rheumes or defluxions; for that they provoke (as is said) not onely the strangling in the throat, but also are both noysome and troublesome unto the breast, whereof we shall shortly write; therefore it is very requisite that we make mention of them at this present.

First, these rheumes do proceed of divers causes, like as when the humours of the brain through the same, through bathes, vaporing meates; as Onions, Garlick, Mustard, Pepper, and such like, are made thin and fluxible.

Secondly, these are caused of great cold, whereby the parts of the head be thrust and compelled together, and the humors forcibly expelled: even as water is wrung out of a spunge. In like manner may they be stirred up of the superabundance of some humors, be it of *Cholera* or *Phlegma*, or of some other outward alterations, as of a sharp Northerly wind, that bloweth suddenly after a South wind.

In fine, the plaisters that are neither too hot nor too cold, are available for all such defluxions: to wit, as followeth: Take Rosin two ounces, *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, Myrrhe, Masticke, of each halfe a drach. *Sandaraca*, one quarter of an ounce: Beane meale, Pease meale, of each halfe an ounce; dissolve the Rosin and *Laudanum* in one ounce of lee, and let them seeth till they be very soft: then put it into a mortar and mix the meale amongst it: Spread this warm upon a cloth, and lay it upon the whole head. If you will have it harder then leave out the meale, and temper together with the other one drach. and a halfe of Waxe. This comforteth the brains, stayeth the rheume, drieth all tough slime that falleth into the nostrils, mouth, and throat, and would choak one. For it is often found, that those that have beene at the point of death, have by this meanes been recovered.

Item take new Barley meale two ounces, *Nigella* seeds, Mustard seed, and Mice dung, of each one ounce, Oxe gals, or the urine of a manchild, as much as sufficeth therewith to make a plaister. Or take fresh Bryonie roots twelue ounces, Wormwood, Rosemary, Marjoram, all green, of each a handfull and a half, Barley meale two ounces, Saffron one drachme, Scammony halfe a drachme, oyl of Lillies three drach. seethe well all the roots in water, afterwards stamp them well to Growt or pap amongst the other herbs, and therewith temper all the rest, except the Saffron which must be also added unto them. Last of all, spread thereof upon a cloth, and then lay them all warm over all the polled head, covering the same warm.

This is also commodious for all old head aches, especially for such as proceed of cold humours, for it consumeth all defluxions and bad vapours of the braines that fall out of the head into the eyes, eares, teeth, and throat: it is twice a day to be renewed.

These two plaisters following are also highly commended to be very good for the same first,

firſt, put above upon the head a meetly great box or cup unpickt upon the ſame; on the ſeam of the ſcul (the haire being cut off before) and the place that the cup is faſtened unto muſt be firſt well rubbed, till it be red, and let the cup draw it well. Afterwards lay this plaiſter following thereon: Take *Laudanum*, *Gummi Heleni*, *Sandaraca*, Frankincenſe white and red Storax, and Roſin, of each a like much, melt the *Laudanum*, Roſin, and liquid Storax together, and temper the other with them: But, if it be hard, then make it ſoft with oyle of Lilies plaiſterwiſe.

The ſecond is more forcible then the firſt. Take Aloe, wild Mints, and Citron pils, of each alike much; mixe them together with *Laudanum* in a warme mortar, with as much juyce of Sloes as will make it ſoft.

Of Rheumes that proceed of cold. §. 1.

THe cauſe of theſe rheumes are ſtrong cold Northern winds, and chiefly if there did blow before that, a mild moiſt Southweſt wind, as hath been told already. Alſo to lye bare-headed in the nights when it is cold, whereby the moiſture is forcibly driven together, and chiefly if warmth follow after, as hath been heretofore ſhewed of the Spunge. Alſo moiſt fruits do cauſe theſe diſtillations, as Cherries, Apples, Pears, Peaches, and ſuch like.

Theſe Rheumes are known by theſe ſigns following; as wearineſſe and heavineſſe of the whole body, ſleepineſſe, heavineſſe of the head and forehead, paleneſſe of the face, with full veins, ſtuffing of the head or noſe, bereaving of the ſenſe of ſmelling, ſwelling up of the eyes, pain in the throat, motion to vomit, dropping of the noſe, and ſwelling of the Almonds.

In like manner is the head alſo in the feeling found cold, and the rheume is neither ſharp nor biting at all.

The which is commonly ingendred and maintained, if the complexion, the time, the age, and the weather be cold.

As for example, If that any one do run into the cold ayr bare-headed out of a bath, or after any other great warmth, eſpecially in the nights, and begin to get a tickling in the noſe, then is it a ſure ſign that he hath already gotten a defluxion, and then muſt the Patients head be covered ſo long with warm clothes, that he feeleth manifeſtly that his head beginneth to warm inwardly, or inſtead thereof he ſhall lay theſe things following upon his head.

Take beaten Millet four ounces, Salt one ounce, parch them in a pan, and lay this upon his head as hot as may be ſuffered. Or take a good quantity of Salt, pour thereto as much Wine as is requiſite to diſſolve the ſame Salt, and being a little ſodden, wet clothes therein, preſſe them out, and lay them very dry upon his head, this dryeth and is ſafe. You may alſo prepare this ſalve: Take Pigeons dung, wild Rue, Bevercod, and white muſtard ſeed, of each one drach. oyl of Rue three ounces, *Euphorbium* half a drach. Wax as much as will ſuffice for a plaiſter; but let the forepart of the head be ſhorn, and the place anointed therewith where the ſore is, it is forcible, and dryeth much.

Will you now have more plaiſters and ſalves for the ſame? then look into the firſt part of the deſcription of the cold pain of the head, for theſe things are alſo very commodious for this pain.

Yet note this, that all that is here diſcourſed, is to be ſpeedily effected; for if this diſeaſe be to be maſtered, the ſame muſt be done at the beginning, when as the Patient is incontinently to have a vein opened on the right hand between the thumb and the forefinger, letting out four or five ounces of blood.

Cliſters.

AFter the full diſpatch of letting of blood, miniſter a Cliſter unto him at night. Take Bran, Mallowes, roots of blew Flowerdeluce, Beets, of each one handfull, ſeethe it all together in ſufficient water, and then take of this decoction twelve or ſixteen ounces, confection of Bevercod a drach. and a half, prepared Caſſia and Tho. Sugar, of each five drach. oyl of Lillies and Camomil, of each one ounce and a half, Salt one quarter of an ounce, mingle them all together, and miniſter it meetly warm.

The next morning following give these pills; take pills of *Hiera composita* two scrup. *Ovibis* one scrup. make seven pills and use them at one time.

Against the evening let him be rubbed with rough warm clothes, even as is said not long ago in the first Chapter, and § 5. of the pain of the throat. And this is to be observed certain daies every morning and evening.

If therefore these rheumes be cold, thin, and watery, then can you not do better, then to make the same thick, the which may be performed with Mastick, Frankincense, Cypres nuts, and such like, if one do gargarize oftentimes therewith: or use this following; take Myrrhe, and Frankincense, of each one ounce, Cypres nuts, Nutmegs, and Mastick, of each half an ounce, beat them all together, and boyl them in twelve ounces of red Wine unto the half, and gargarize therewith.

Cakes to be holden under the Tongue.

TAke Mastick, Nutmegs, Cypres nuts, of each half a drach. red Storax, and Frankincense, of each one drachme and a half, fat Raisins (the stones taken out) Sugarpane, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a dough thereof with Mead, and then make Cakes thereof as big as small Beans, the which you are to hold continually day and night under the Tongue.

A Syrup to stay Rheume.

℞. of Laudanum, Mastick powdered, Venice Turpentine, q. v. seethe them in Hyssop water, untill the powder and the Turpentine incorporate; let it stand untill it is cold, then pour out the water into a clean vessel, and with honey seethe it to an electuary; take often of this.

Also ℞. of fine flowr ℔. 1. yolks of eggs 2. Rosewater, Sugar, ana. ℔. ß. Anniseeds, Licorice powdered, ana. ℥. 1. make cakes to eat often.

And take Mustard seeds, powdered Wax, and after the head is shaved, apply it to the head, and it will exulcerate the head a little, and dry up the rheume.

Syrupes and Purgations.

FOr a Syrup. Take Sage, Cypres leaves, of each one ounce, *Lignum Aloes* one quarter of an ounce, clarified hony and Sugar, of each six ounces, and let them seethe together in a sirup, as hath been often taught.

Another. It is also very needful, that in such diseases the head be well purged, whereto this sirup following serveth well; Take Elecampane roots, Ireos, Currans, and Licorice, of each one ounce, Hyssop, *Adiantum*, of each a handful, Mastick, Frankincense, of each one drach. Nutmegs, Cypres nuts, of each half an ounce, seethe this together (as is before said) with Sugar, and give him certain dayes continually two ounces with three ounces of this water.

Take twenty Jujubes, thirty Sebestes, Currans one ounce and a half, dryed Violets half an ounce, cut Licorice five drach. and ten figs, seethe them all together in a pint and a half of water, unto the half; afterwards strain it out, and let it settle. You have also here before in the first part of the cold pain of the head, sirupes and other things that serve for these rheumes. For purging these pills following are special good, as *Hiera Composita* and *Cochia*.

Three dayes after purging, there is to be set above the buttocks two great boxing cups unpickt, two houres before supper, and let them draw well, and the next morning take of this confection following, the quantity of a Walnut; Take Ginger two ounces, Licorice one quarter of an ounce, Cloves, Nutmegs, and Cardamom, of each one drach. and 18. ounces of refined white Sugar; temper them all together one amongst another.

Another. Take Cinamom one drachme and a half, Nutmegs, red Storax, of each half a drachme, Licorice, Currans, of each one ounce, Sugar candy half an ounce, refined Sugar five ounces, make a confection thereof, and take half an ounce thereof every evening when you go to bed. The seventh day after that the Patient hath been purged, he shall every day two houres before meals, at noon and at night, twice every moneth wash his mouth with water, wherein Costus and *Asarubacca*, of each half an ounce is decocted.

Take

Take of this water four ounces, of Oxymel Compositum two ounces, therewith shall he gargarize two daies one after another, till he have washed it eight times. For this cold rheume is also special good the herb Calamus, as it is described in the eighth part of this Book. Three corns of white Frankincense swallowed down before he go to bed are also commended: And if so be that the rheume be waxen a little thicker, then is there no better advice in the world; for it comforteth and dryeth not only the brains, but stoppeth the rheume also from falling. It is also good counsel after purging every third or fourth day, three or four hours before meals, that you take a drach. of Treacle or Mithridate, the which is better for aged then for young folks.

Capital Powder.

After letting blood, you are every evening two hours after supper, to strew the head with this powder following; Take red Storax, Roses, burnt Ivory, wild vine leaves, Cloves, *Sandaraca*, of each one drach. and make a powder thereof.

Another for to smell on; Take Nigella that is parched on the fire, bind it in a cloth, and smell often thereto. Or take *Lignum Aloes*, red Storax, of each ℥ i. ß. Nutmegs, Cypres, Frankincense and Cloves, of each one drach. parched Nigella seeds one quarter of an ounce: stamp them all together, and bind them in a cloth. The vapour or smell of Sugar is also good for the brains, and driveth away all cold rheumes.

In this behalf Pomanders may be made also, as followeth; Take *Laudanum* and Horehound, of each half an ounce, *Lignum Aloes*, red Storax, of each one drach. and a half, Nutmegs, Cypres Nuts, Frankincense and Cloves, of each one drach. Amber half a drach. pownd all that is to be pownded, and dissolve the *Laudanum* with Rose water in a warm mortar, and make thereof a Pomander. Another, Take one drach. of Laudanum, Lignum Aloes, red Storax, Frankincense, of each half a drach. Nigella, Cinamom and Cloves, of each two scruples, Nutmegs, Cypres nuts and *Sandaraca*, of each one drach. *Gallia Muscata* one drach. Myrrhe, Lavender spike, Mastick, Costus roots, of each one scrup. Amber half a scrup. *Muscus* three grains; dissolve the *Laudanum* with a little Wax, and temper the rest being powdred amongst it, form thereof Pomanders as big you will have them: afterwards make holes in them, and put into them the Musk and Amber mixed with a little Rose water. Such like Pomanders shall you have more hereafter in the sixth Part.

You may also make bags with all these foresaid compositions.

For this disease some do counsel to neese, and some suppose it hurtful: but if these things do help the Patient, then I counsel that this neesing be omitted, that the brains and the head be not thereby disquieted.

Plaisters.

Take Pigeons dung, Rue seeds, Mustard seed, Frankincense, Mastick, Nigella, of each half an ounce, mingle these things with Oxymel of Squills, and then put the rest amongst it, spread it upon leather, and lay this plaister on the top of the head. This plaister dryeth the superfluous moisture of the head, and strengtheneth the same, and you may put thereto Stechas, Rosemary, Marjoram gentle and Cloves.

Of the Dyet in these Rheumes.

Every such Patient must have special care, that he never lye upon his back: for if the rheumes fall backwards, then is it to be feared that they will provoke the Cramp or Palsie, or might choak one.

His dwelling place or chamber shall be prepared for dryth and warmth, yea in sommer season also: for if he should use moist things, then it will be the worse for him, and be in danger of the Palsie.

In fine, the greatest care of all must be, that his dwelling be free from all moisture, and if the place be not so by nature, then take fire, and cast therein these things following, (or one alone) therewith to fume his chamber; to wit. *Sandaraca*, *Laudanum*, Rosin of both sorts, Frankincense, red Storax, and such like. Make also a fire with Juniper wood, Bay tree wood, Tamarisk wood, or with any thing of that nature: and the Patient must be

warm clothed, and have a ſpecial regard to his head, and he ſhall wear alwaies on the breaſt a ſoft ſmall cuſhion, filled with down or Hares hair, or (which is better) with Squirrels hair, the which he is to keep about him night and day.

Concerning his meat and drink, every ſuch Patient muſt refrain from wine as much as is poſſible, and drink onely Sugar water tempered with wine or juyce of Pomgranates, to wit, the ſixth or ſeventh part of it. So that nature finding no ſuperfluity of the meat, may the more eaſily work upon the moiſture of the rheume, and therewithal conſume it.

Here is to be noted, that one ought not to eat unleſſe hunger urge thereto; otherwiſe might one evil light upon another, and the ſtomach thereby be weakened. But when natural hunger cometh, then may he eat, yet evermore ariſe and ceaſe with appetite, and avoid all ſuperfluity, eſpecially if he feel any diſtemperature in the ſtomach, and drink not before meat, unleſſe the meat before were paſſed thorough the ſtomach, which happeneth at leaſt eight hours after that it is taken.

His bread ſhall be in winter and in the ſpring time wheaten bread with the bran: but in harveſt and in Sommer he may eat boulted bread. Alſo it were not hurtful for him in caſe he ſame bind him not overmuch, that alwaies after meat he eat a little Biſket baked with Anniſeed, in which bread (be it howſoever it will) is to be obſerved, that it be baked light, riſing or puft up, and ſalted a little more then ordinary, and that it be not above three daies old.

Concerning his fleſh, all kinds are good for him, Veal, Kids fleſh, young Mutton, and lean Pork, but not too much, nor too often. All old and fat fleſh muſt he ſhun and forbear. Of wild beaſts, Bucks and Does fleſh is beſt of all. Hares fleſh, albeit it be ſomewhat melancholick, yet nevertheleſſe becauſe it dryeth, is not very unwholſome for him, yet chiefly if it be dreſt with Pepper, but he muſt forbear Conies and Hedgehogs.

It is alſo requiſite to ſhew what parts of the beaſts are moſt wholeſom for this ſickneſſe: to wit, the ſtomach, the heart, the skin, the ſinews, the milt, the intrails, the braines, lights, and ſuch like of the foreſaid beaſts, are hard of digeſture, and their fat is windy.

Other parts are much eaſier of digeſtion, and warmth of nature; reaſonable fat fleſh is eaſie to be digeſted, the wings or pinnions and the leggs are good for him at noon, being ſodden; and at night are good roſted; but fryed in a pan is not for his dyet.

All fowls, as Capons, Cocks, and chiefly Hens, wilde and tame Pigeons which are not fully feathered, and have been killed a day or twain before, and are well dreſt: theſe may he eat frank and freely.

Young Peacocks, Geeſe and Ducks, ſhall he alſo refrain, or at leaſt eat of them very ſeldom, and that roſted. Of all wild birds, theſe are good for him, Partridges, Feaſants, and ſmall birds; as alſo Stares, Finches, Nightingales, Larks, Sparrowes, Snites, Diſhwaſhers, and ſuch like; by reaſon that all their fleſh is much drying.

Swallowes, Magpies, and Woodpigeons are not to be uſed; Quailes ſhall he alſo abſtain from, in regard they are hurtful for the ſtomach, and breed loathſomneſſe.

No kind of fiſh is to be uſed; but in caſe that he will eat them, then let them be hard broyled; to wit, Roches, Pikes, Gudgeons, Perches, and ſuch like: and they will hurt the leſſe if they be dreſt with Parſley and Mints: and they are alwaies better broyled or fryed, then ſodden and ſtewed; alſo the ſalt fiſh is better then the freſh. The Eele, the Tench, and the Crevets are alſo forbidden. Likewiſe Milk and all that is dreſt therewith; but he may eat rear eggs out of their ſhells, or poched, but hard eggs are naught.

Of all manner of Pottages, there is only allowed of *Panicum*, red Peaſe, and Rice.

The herbs that are commodious for this muſt be in operation drying and warming, as Sage, Fennel, Mints, wild Thyme, Roſemary, Marjoram gentle, Baſil, Dill. Contrariwiſe he muſt forbear Lettice, Endive, Spinage, Cherries, and all that are cold and moiſt. In like manner alſo Radiſh, Leeks, and Onions, (after what manner ſoever that they be dreſt) ſhall he forbear.

Rapes or Turneps have much ſuperfluous moiſture, therefore are not to be uſed; but Olives and Capers are good for him. He muſt avoid all cold and moiſt fruits, parched Haſel nuts, Almonds, Figs, Raiſins, Pine apple kernels; *Piſtacium* may he uſe without danger. All meats that are between ſowr and ſweet; in like manner that which is dreſt with Ginger, Anniſeed, Fennel, Parſley, Saffron, Cinamom, Nutmegs, and Mace, are very commodious for him; and the rather if they be ſweetned with honey then with Sugar.

Item, a Sallad made of Parſley, Mints, wild Thyme and Vinegar, is very profitable for

for him. His beſt drink is Hony water or Mead, Cinamom and Licorice wine, amongſt which are to be tempered ſome of the foreſaid waters: And if he will needs drink wine without mingling it at all with water, then is to be taken (as is ſaid) a thin and pleaſant white Wine, the which ought to be drunken delayed with ſteeled water.

Laſtly is the Patient after meals to uſe ſomewhat that cloſeth the ſtomach, that the vapours aſcend not into the head; as prepared Coriander, roaſted bread, roſted Quinces, or ſuch as be confected with hony.

In the morning faſting, to go or walk on foot, or to ride a horſeback ſoftly, is very commodious for theſe Rheumes. And if the Patient be not ſo ſtrong, then may one uſe inſtead thereof to rub him with warm clothes, (even as is oftentimes aforeſaid) and after meals to keep himſelf quiet two or three hours.

Of watching and ſleeping.

THis Patient muſt wholly forbear ſleeping on the day time, unleſſe he be otherwiſe diſtempered, and muſt forbear it at the leaſtwiſe two hours after meat: firſt he muſt lay himſelf on the right ſide, and then on the left ſide, and not on the back; for how hurtful the ſame is, hath been ſhewed ſufficiently before.

The heat of the Sun and of the fire muſt he avoid, and forbear loud calling and ſpeaking. And to conclude, touching theſe cold and ſtifling rheumes, we will tell how they are to be prevented, the which may be effected through theſe means following.

And for that this diſeaſe proceedeth of a cold and moiſt ſtomach and brains, all things (meaſurably warm and dry) are good for it, as theſe confections following.

Theſe *Species*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Aromaticum Roſatum*, of each half a drach. Mace one quarter of an ounce, Cinamom one drach. and a half, Sugar three ounces, ſirup of Roſes five ounces; the Sugar and the ſirup ſeethe till they be meetly thick; afterwards mix the other ſpices amongſt them in a mortar: take every day four hours before meals, as much as a Nutmeg. And this muſt you continue a moneth together, and afterwards 3. times a week, as long as you pleaſe.

Or make this confection to be uſed after meat, and take thereof three drachmes at one time; Take *Species Diambra*, *de xylo Aloe*, of each one drach. and a half, Violets, Water Lillies, Sorrel ſeeds, and Endive ſeeds, of each one ſcrup. Sugar four ounces, ſeethe it in water of Violets, and make *Manus Chriſti* of them.

A Plaiſter for the ſtomach.

TAke *Laudanum* and Roſine, of each five drach. prepared Coral and Ivory, ſmall Endive ſeed and Purſlain ſeed, of each one ſcrup. The two firſt you ſhall diſſolve in ſharp Vinegar, and put thereto molten wax as much as is needful, and thereof make a plaiſter or twain for the ſtomach, and wear them all the winter upon it.

When theſe rheumes are a dividing, then muſt you prepare a dry bath, as hereafter followeth.

Take a ſweating tub, make it meetly wet with wine and Roſewater, afterwards hail the ſame over a glowing fire till that it be thorough dry; then make the ſame wet again with a ſponge or cloth, as before: and do this ſo long, untill that the tub be through hot; and then ſet the Patient therein, and cover the tub over with clothes, which muſt ſtay upon the hoops, yet holding his head without; and let him ſit ſo ſweating one hour or twain.

Hot Rheumes. §. 2.

AS in the beginning is generally treated of Rheumes, ſo are there alſo declared certain cauſes of the hot rheume, therefore it is needleſſe to rehearſe the ſame again. Theſe rheumes are much provoked through idleneſſe, through ſleeping a dayes, through ſuperfluous eating and drinking. Alſo if the head be too hot covered, great labour, overheating of himſelf, and ſuch like.

The ſigns and tokens that one hath the rheume, are theſe; to wit, the face is red, mixt with bleakneſſe or pale colour, great heat in the noſe, with itchings, when as the mouth and the throat are full of bitterneſſe and ſharpneſſe: and if the head be hot in feeling; the which rheume is thus to be cured.

First, it hath not been a little disputed of amongst the learned, whether a vein must be opened or not; but for the most part they affirm it; some would open the head vein, other the median, and some the Liver vein. But this letting of blood must be effected, according as the rheume falleth more on the one side than the other, & when the rheume is almost stayed. For it hath been often seen, that they that have been let blood in the beginning of the rheume, have alwaies remained and been the hotter. But to diminish all such subtile courses of the rheume, and to make it thick, then must he hold in his mouth these gargarismes and losinges.

Gargarismes.

TAke syrup of Jujubes, of Violets and Poppy seeds, of each a like much, temper them with Barley water; Or take Jujubes, Sebestes, Violets, white Poppy seeds, and Quince kernels decocted with Barly water, use it in the evening after meat; it is passing good.

Item, take syrup of Poppy seeds, syrup of Mulberries, of Roses, and Well water, ana. ʒ. 3. wine of Pomegranates, ʒ. 1. make it warm, and gargle therewith.

Losinges.

TAke white Poppy seeds, Purslaine seeds, and Lettice seeds, ana. ʒ. 1. Dragagant, *Gummi Arabicum* and Saffron, ana. ʒ. ß. *Opium*, g. 5. pownd all that is to be pownded, and make it with the syrup of Poppy heads to a dow, then make losinges thereof as big as small beans, and hold one of these in thy mouth. And for this also are commodious these common losinges. *Diapapaver*, and the cold *Diatragacantha*.

Item, take *Gummi Arabicum*, Dragagant, Starch, Licorice, Quince kernels, and seeds of Fleawort, beat all these small together, make thereof as aforesaid losinges, with the muscilage of Fleawort, and hold them under thy tongue.

Also there may otherwhiles be made for a change the small losinges, called *Bechion*, of *Diachodion*, *Diamargariton*, and all the sorts of losinges, which are here worthy to be described.

The preparation of the losinges for the cough and rheume after divers manners.

THe black losinges are called at the Apothecaries, *Bichion*, or *Bechion*, the which are made after two sorts; to wit, as followeth: Take the juice of Licorice, and Sugar, of each half an ounce, Starch, Dragagant, pilled Almonds, of each one quarter of an ounce, the muscilage of Quince kernels, as much as is needful for to make losinges with it; these do thicken all subtile rheumes, and delay their sharpnesse.

Another sort: Take Pine apple kernels that have been steeped a whole night in Rosewater and bitter Almonds pilled, of each three quarters of an ounce, juice of Licorice, ʒ. 2. beaten Licorice, ʒ. 3. make a dow with Rosewater, and then make thereof losinges: they are very good against the Cough, and against all raw swellings of the throat.

The white losinges are thus prepared: Take white Sugar, and Sugar candy, of each a like, Starch the fourth part, beat them all together, and with Dragagant, dissolved in Rose water, make losinges of them.

Item, take six ounces of white Sugar, Sugar candy, and Sugar pennets, ana. ʒ. 2. beaten Ireos three quarters of an ounce, Starch almost, ʒ. 5. beat these all together with Dragagant dissolved in Rosewater, and make losinges of them.

The third manner is this; Take Sugar Pennets, ʒ. 1. Sugar candy three quarters of an ounce, *Manus Christi* without pearls and with Rose-water, ʒ. ß. fine Bolus, ʒ. 1. ß. white Sugar one ounce and a quarter; make losinges thereof with Dragagant as aforesaid.

If that then need require that these rheumes must be yet more suppressed and made thicker, then take Starch, Dragagant, pilled Almonds, Bean meal, black and white Poppy seed, Gum, and fine Bolus, of each a like much: thus must you beat together with the muscilage of Fleawort or Quinces, and make losinges thereof.

For to Purge.

NEceſſity alſo requireth in this ſickneſs for to purge; the which is to be begun with the ſyrup of *Jujubes*, and *Sebeſtes*, or with the drink at the Apothecaries called *Decoctio pectoralis* the which is thus prepared; Take Burrage, Bugloſſe, Violet flowers, of each one drach, *Jujubes* and Sebeſtes, of each fifteen, Venus hair, Scabions, Folefoot leaves, of each a handful, Anniſe ſeeds two ounces, Figs and Dates, of each five, Licorice cut ſmall three drach. husked Barley half a handful: let all theſe ſeethe together in a pint and a half of water until the third part be ſodden away, ſtrain it, and take the cleareſt of it, and keep it in a cool place.

Take ſmall cut Licorice one ounce, Jujubes and Sebeſtes, of each ten, ſeethe them altogether in ſufficient water, and make it as aboveſaid. In this manner are there many more made: but theſe are the commoneſt.

For purging, take three or four ounces of the firſt mentioned decoction, break therein Caſſia and Manna, of each one ounce, mingle them together, and drink it warm, and you may drink a good draught of the two foreſaid pectoral decoctions.

Another purgation. Take Violets and water Lillies, of each one quarter of an ounce, Damask Prunes ten or twelve, ſowr Dates one ounce, ſeethe them all together in eight or ten ounces of water till the half part be conſumed; you are to take three or four ounces of this decoction; temper therein one ounce of new Caſſia, confection of *Succo Roſarum*, conſerves of Prunes three drach. mingle them, and give them early in the morning.

The third purgation. Take four ounces of broth wherein Prunes are ſodden, ſteep therin a quarter of an ounce of groſſe beaten Rubarb all night, and in the morning ſtrain them, and temper therewith two ounces of the ſyrup of Roſes, and give it faſting in the morning, in the ſummer cold, and in winter warm.

But if you had rather have pils, then prepare them thus: Take the ſhales of yellow Mirobalans, ℥. ß. Rubarb, ℥. ● Aloe, *Diagridion*, ana. ℈. 5. Maſtick and Licorice, ana. ℈. 1. beat them all together with the muſcilage of Quinces unto a maſs; you are to take a drach. at once.

To purge for the Rheume.

℞. of Mechoacan powdered ℥. 8. Cardamome powdered ℥. 4. infuſe theſe powders in ſix pints of white wine or Sack, take of the thinneſt of it, leaving the powder in the bottom, and drink thereof every morning ℔. ß. and uſe broth and a good dyet for 6. or 7. dayes together; or you may take more or leſſe according as it purges the party the firſt day. Or you may ſeethe this liquor with honey, and make a ſirup which purges moſt mildly.

After Purging.

HAve regard whether the matter be yet watery and thin, then you are to give the ſick body ſomewhat that is made with Poppy ſeeds. For this is alſo good cold loſinges of Dragagant, conſerve of Roſes and water Lillies, alſo he muſt ſmell to things that are cold of nature, as Roſewater (the which he muſt alſo draw up into the noſe) Camphire, Roſes, Saunders, Pomanders of cold natures, whereof ſome are deſcribed in the firſt Part.

But if the rheume be tough and thick, then is all that to be forborn that is made of Poppy heads, and make this water following; Take dryed Hyſſop, Licorice, Venus hair, Figs, Hollihock ſeeds, and ſeeds of Mallowes, of each a like much, and he ſhall hold in his mouth Dragagant with a little loch *de Pino*.

Becauſe theſe ſalt rheumes have ſome communion with the Liver, then is highly commended for this, ſtrange bathes, that flow from iron or other mines in the ground.

When the Patient will go to bed, then is he to take a quarter or half an ounce of the conſerves of water Lillies, and uſe alſo one of theſe two capital powders following: Take Mace one quarter of an ounce, red Coral, burnt Ivory, red and white Saunders, of each one ſcrup. *Sandaraca* one quarter of an ounce, water Lillies one drach. and a half, Cloves half a drach. temper them together being all beaten ſmall, and therewith beſtrew the crown of the head, and every other day when you will ſtrew other powder thereon, bruſh off the firſt.

This

This following is more cooling; Take Roſes, Myrtle ſeed or leaves, Coral, and Butchers broom ſeeds, of each a like much. This being powdred ſmall, uſe it as before.

The Order of Dyet.

THe beſt meat that this Patient may uſe (when he is not overweak) are paps of Barley, of Spelt, of Starch, of Oaten meal, and alwayes adde ſome Sugar pennets. In like manner may he eat theſe herbs following dreſt or ſod with other meats; as Spinage, Orage, Purſlain, Mallowes, and Beets, alſo Melons, Gourds, Cucumbers. But if he be weak, then is he to eat Kids, Hens, and ſuch like ſodden with theſe foreſaid herbs and mildly ſalted, rear eggs: Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and all ſmall birds are very meet.

The beſt that he may uſe for drink is Barley water, or Sugar water, and both having Licorice ſodden in them.

Item, clean freſh Well water tempered with ſirup of Roſes or Violets. He muſt wholly forbear wine; but if that will not be, then muſt he uſe a thin wine tempered with a little verjuyce.

It is alſo good counſel for all rheumatick perſons to ſleep as little as is poſſible, and that with the head upright. The which together with the whole body muſt be well recovered, and in the mean whiles if any ſweat follow, he muſt let the ſame have his courſe.

It is alſo thought good, that the forehead, the temples, and the whole breaſt be anointed with oyl of Violets, water Lillies and Roſes mingled together, or with each apart: Or that his breaſt be anointed with oyl of ſweet Almonds and freſh Butter. When as the ſickneſſe is declining, then is the Patients head to be waſhed (if ever he uſed the ſame) with clear lee, wherein is decocted or ſteeped Marjoram gentle, Roſes, Camomil, and Melilot, and afterwards he is to be combed, and dryed with warm clothes.

Of Rheumes with Agues. §. 3.

IF in caſe that through the foreſaid remedies the rheume will not be ſtayed, which happeneth often through the abundance of humours, then befalleth oftentimes a cough and ague to follow it, whereby one may well gueſſe, that the ſame proceedeth of a cholerick humour, that lyeth ſtill hidden in the veins. Therefore the letting of blood is very needful for this, and eſpecially in the liver vein. Afterwards you muſt purge the head with Caſſia and Manna, or concerning the ſame take the counſel of a learned Phyſitian.

For this alſo muſt continually be uſed thoſe Loſinges wherein is no Ireos. And for to take away this hurtfull matter of the rheume, it is eſpecially adviſed, that the ſame be derived from the breſt into the noſe where the ſame may be the better evacuated.

To this end, take *Ammoniacum* halfe an ounce, ſmall beaten Pellitory of Spaine one quarter of an ounce, make this with the juice of blew Flowerdeluce into dow, and thereof take a little on a knife, and put it in the noſe, and forthwith you ſhall ſee the water to run out of the noſe. This is a ſecret. Item, take the juice of the roote of blew Flowerdeluce one ounce, beaten Staveſacre and *Piretrum*, of each one drach. make ſome cotten moiſt herein, and ſo put it warm into his noſe.

He muſt alſo be prevented and kept from eating of fleſh, and drinking of wine as long as the ague and the cough endure. Barly water tempered with Julep of Violets and ſirupe of Violets muſt be his drink: for this ſuppleth, moiſtneth, and cooleth the breſt, and maketh the matter thicker. But if it proceed of cold, then are you to boyl Venus hair, Hyſſop, and Licorice amongſt them.

When as then the ague and cough begin to ceaſe (which one may feel as the drouth and ſpettel beginneth to ceaſe (then are you to prepare this water following: Take five Figs, ten Jujubes, twenty Sebeſtes, Raiſins (the ſtones taken out) one ounce and a quarter, Licorice cut ſmall five drach. let them ſeethe well together in ſufficient water. Afterwards ſtrain it, and take thereof three ounces, ſirupe of Violets five drach, temper them all together, and you ſhall give him this potion, if the rheume proceed of heate: but if it proceed of cold, and the flegme or ſpettle will not be looſed, then ſeethe Venus haire, Currans with the foreſaid things, and leave out the ſirupe of Violets.

If

If the Rheume would not passe through the Nose. §. 4.

TO conclude, we are to adde this following to the rest. If so be this rheume do stop the nose a great while, and that there is no heat with it, then are fumes to be used for it. And heed is to be taken, that if the moisture that issueth out at the nose be subtile, sharp or yellow: make a smoke with a little Sulphur, that hath been steeped in a little vinegar, and is dryed again, or with husked Barley or Beans peeled, that were also steeped in vinegar and are dryed again, and beaten to powder. For this also serveth Saunders, and the fume of Sugar. Or you may prepare this following; Take grosse beaten brimstone one quarter of an ounce, seeth it in 8. ounces of red Vinegar, and receive the vapour of it into your nose. Or sprinkle the Sulphur with Wine, and lay it on a hot stone.

Item, make a vapour of sodden Barley, water Lillies, and white Poppy seed. Also you may sprinkle vinegar alone upon an hot Iron. For this is also good the vapour or smoke of Partridges feathers. But if there be no heat nor redneſſe in the face, then make a fume of Costus roots and Frankincense. Or take Gith seed steeped in wine, and so sprinkle it on a hot stone. Take also *Lignum Aloes*, Mastick and Frankincense, of each alike much being pounded together, and receive the vapour thereof. Likewise is commodious for this, *Sandaraca* steeped in vinegar, and the same sprinkled on a hot stone, and the vapour thereof received into the nose. And for as much as there is very much written at this present of this rheume, and shall be more discovered thereof in the description of the rheume, of the cough, and pursiveneſſe, therefore will we here make an end of this Chapter.

The third Chapter.

Of the foremost part of the Breast, Thorax.

THat which we generally call the Breast, hath his beginning there where the neck endeth, downwards unto the lower rib; albeit that *Aristotle* ascribeth the whole body from beneath under the neck without the arms, even to the privities below, unto it; yet this *Thorax* includeth the foremost and hindmost part of the body, from the neck even to the midriffe. The foremost part is in the middle of it downwards, somewhat lower and heightened again where the breasts or paps are; even so in the hinder part down along the backbone it is lower, and on both the sides higher towards the shoulder blades and ribs. This place is not altogether bony like to the skull, nor of one piece, but very orderly the one with the other intermingled, and filled with bones and muscles; so that the ribs comprehend and defend behind and before the inward parts, even as it were with a bulwark. And even as this part of mans body is outwardly defended with bones; even so are also the inner parts with veins, arteries, and strong sinews joyned together, and fashioned very formally, thereby to take ayr into it, and to yeeld it out again, whereby the lights, and other parts should be refreshed, and preserved in their estate.

Also the breast (like as other parts of man) is subject to many kinds of maladies; as partly may be seen in the description of the rheume. For when these mischievous rheumes fall upon the breast, then do they harm the lights, stop the wind-pipes, make a man pursive, stinking breathed, much coughing, and anguish: so that at the last they rid matter and filth, with many more such accidents, whereby the lights are perished and hurt, whereof afterward more at large and plainly shall be parcelwise discovered. And to follow our wonted method, we will first speak of the outward parts of the Breast.

Of womens Breasts, milk, and of their diseases.

THe womens Breasts are by nature indued with two kinds of wondrous works: The first, that through their means the new born child receiveth his food, to wit, from the blood, which through natural warmth is altered and brought into milk.

The second, that they are a defence and cover of the heart, whereby when they warm them, they are also in like manner kept warm of the said heart. Even as our body warmeth the clothes, so do the clothes also keep the body warm. And this cometh more to passe

paſſe in women then in men, by reaſon that their breaſts are bigger by odds. The ſubſtance of womens breaſts is a ſoft fleſh, by nature ſpungious, thereby to draw much moiſture unto it. Contrariwiſe, mens breaſts are hard and clung together, eſpecially in them that are not overcharged with fatneſſe: both of them have their nipples in the midſt of their breaſts: The which in women are very meet and comely inſtruments for to give their new born children their ſaid ſuſtenance. Otherwhiles alſo mens breſts do give milk: but this is a token rather of unable humours then otherwiſe. Thus to proceed with womens breaſts, they are ſubject to divers and ſundry accidents. Otherwhiles they grow a great deal too big, the which ſeemeth not onely ill, but is alſo ſometimes an occaſion of other diſeaſes. But this cometh rather by nature or inheritance, and according to that one woman is fatter and corpulenter of body then another. But by nature (as it hath been ſaid) they are veſſels of milk, whereby in ſome women it is too little, and in ſome too much. Therefore it is very needful to ſeek remedy, how in the one to leſſen them, and in the other to augment them. For where milk is too abundant, there provoketh it many kinds of diſeaſes, to wit, that it doth clod and congeal in the breaſt, whereof hardneſſe, heat, ſwellings, canker, worms, and ſuch like do enſue.

Mans Milk.

In like manner the nipples do alſo chop, which bringeth thereby great anguiſh to them that give ſuck, and infect the children that ſuck the matter and blood into their bodies, with ſundry ſickneſſes.

Of the overmuch growing and hanging down of the Breaſts. S. 2.

WHen as this ſuperfluous and overmuch growing of the breaſts hapneth in hail, young and plethorical women, there ſhall (in my beſt opinion) the nature be ſuffered to have her free courſe, leaſt by taking them away, ſome greater miſhap be procured: yet ſome do counſel for a ſure remedy, that if one anoint the breaſt with the gall of a Hare, that then they will not grow too great. Item, take Barley meal, and Goats milk, of each a like much, vinegar half ſo much, let them ſeethe well, and be laid on the breaſt: it is taken for a certain remedy; in like manner fry Mallows in Sallat oyl, and lay it over the breſt.

Theſe things following are yet ſtronger: Take *Hypociſtis*, the pils and bloſſomes of Pomegranates, Acorn cups, and burnt Lead, ana. ℥. 3. Allome, Ceruſe, the juice of Sloes, and roſted Lentils, ana. ℥. 1. Snails with their houſes burnt, and Southernwood, ana. ℥. 2. ß. Make a Salve thereof with the jnice of Plantain, and therewith anoint the breaſt; Item, take Frankincenſe, Maſtick, ana. ℥. 1. ſea Muſcles, ℥. 1. ß. temper them together with red vinegar.

All that is taught here doth not hinder onely the growing of the Breaſts, but alſo that they be not looſe or hanging down: theſe things may alſo be uſed againſt the falling down of the Mother, even as in the third part ſhall be further declared, in the deſcription of the diſeaſes of the womb or mother.

Pills.

TAke Fern roots, *Sarcocolla*, and Allome, ana. ℥. 1. *Sandaraca*, ℥. ß. make five pils thereof with the juyce of Ireos, whereof take one, and faſt four hours after it. Theſe pils do not onely conſume all ſuperfluity, but alſo the natural fatneſſe of mans body, if if they be oftentimes uſed.

Secondly, he or ſhe may (if they will) ſtrew beaten Amber upon all their meat; and if you will have it work better, put the powder in wine; for the wine carrieth the force of it very quickly in the veins.

Thirdly, take beaten Galls, Cypers nuts, of each ſix ounces, Allome prepared, Iron droſſe, of each three ounces, ſeethe them together in a good deal of Tanners lee, and waſh therewith meetly warm, and make often wet therewith the hands, feet, face, and breaſt with a ſponge. The like are you to do alſo on the privy members. Or take ſtamped Henbane ſeed, ſeethe it in wine, and then lay the wine over the Breaſts. But I cannot counſel you to take this by reaſon of his great cold.

Of

Of Milk in general. §. 3.

FOraſmuch as this wonderful alteration of the red blood into ſo fair and white a colour, daily happeneth in women, and alſo in beaſts, therefore is their force and might accounted the leſſe; nevertheleſſe hath God ordained it for all creatures that are born alive, for their firſt and moſt requiſite nouriſhment. Of the difference of women and beaſts Milk, it is not our meaning here to diſcourſe: but concerning womens Milk, the yellow is alwayes better then the white; ſo is alſo the ſame more forcible in brown women then in white. In *Ponto* by the River *Aſtea* it is ſaid that milk in women and in beaſts is black. But without any circumſtances, we will onely diſcourſe of the breaſts of women, and of the accidents unto them.

Of the want or ſcarſity of Milk. §. 4.

IF women that give ſuck have want of Milk, then muſt we ſearch out the cauſe thereof. This may proceed ſometimes of ſome hot or dry, or of ſome cold quality of the Breaſt, that the blood, which ſhould alter into Milk, be dried out. Likewiſe both theſe infirmities may alſo be cauſed of ſome infection of the liver, yea and ſometimes of the whole body; that if their complexion be too dry, then the increaſing of Milk is not to be effected, but of pure blood.

Item, the want of Milk may alſo be cauſed by want of meat, or by the uſe of ſuch meats as make not much blood: as if they be cold and dry. Much bleeding (be it by what means ſoever it will) and the bad digeſture of the ſtomach and liver, ſore labour, or if the child ſuck too little, may be a cauſe of the want or ſcarſity of Milk.

The ſigns of this infirmity are evident and apparant; as when the Breaſts are wrung, and the Milk doth not iſſue forth. Alſo if the child have not enough to ſuck.

Item, whenſoever that the mother which giveth ſuck be fretting by nature, be lean, be not long ſince recovered of ſome long ſickneſſe, ſweateth much, and is without all exerciſe. But if the infirmity do proceed of bad meats and drinks, it is then good counſel that they do eat good wholeſome meat, that is light of digeſture, as Hens, Partridges, Capons, young Mutton, Eggs brothes of good fleſh, and drink good wine: Some women are accuſtomed to increaſe their milk, that they drink a good draught of milk wherein Fennel ſeed hath been ſteeped.

But if the infirmity be through too much bleeding, by what means ſoever that the ſame come to paſſe, then are you to prevent the ſame through meet and neceſſary remedies, as is ſufficiently ſhewed in their proper places. But if the women be of a hot nature, as full of *Cholera*, then are they to drink Barley water, and Almond milk, and to eat Cocks, Hens, and Partridges dreſt with Lettice: alſo to uſe cool fruits and their ſeeds; fiſh of running waters, Burrage, Spinage, Goats milk, Cow milk, Kids fleſh, and Lambe ſodden with Verjuyce: they are alſo to refrain from wrath and ſorrow, and to be alwayes merry.

But if theſe mothers that do give ſuck, be flegmatick of nature, and have lack of Milk, then is their foreſaid meat to be dreſt with Saffron, Cucubes, or Cinamom, and other ſpices: alſo to eat it being ſodden with Fennel roots and ſeeds, *Piſtacia*, and Pine apple kernels.

Whether the malady do then proceed of heat or not, it is alway needfull that the ſtomach be comforted; for the which theſe things may ſerve, as Annis and Fennel ſeeds confected; but chiefly Caraway and Cumin alſo confected. To eat Fennel ſeed green helpeth alſo greatly for the augmentation of milk. Likewiſe Caraway ſeed, Annis and Fennel ſeed ſodden in water, are very commodious for this purpoſe: alſo to eat green Marjoram faſting in the morning is much commended for the ſame.

And I cannot here pretermit to rehearſe divers other remedies more, that are preſcribed of others for the increaſing of Milk, like as hereafter may appear: Take ten earthworms, waſh them in Wine, ſeethe them in fleſh broth, ſtrain them, and in the morning give thereof a draught to drink. It is alſo holden for certain, that if theſe worms be dried and beaten to powder, and if you give to the patient half a drachme to drink in fleſh broth, that thereby the milk will be much increaſed.

For this alſo you may take this Plaiſter following: Take Parſly roots, and the herbs, Deer ſuet, of each half an ounce, red Storax three drachmes, new Oyl of ſweet Almonds

three

three ounces, Barley meal one ounce and a half; let the roots ſeethe well, and ſtamp them to pap, and then mingle the reſt amongſt it, and lay it warm upon the Nipples, for it increaſeth the milk.

Item, take beaten Anniſeeds two drachmes and a half, temper them with the broth of Colworts, and give it to the party to drink when ſhe goeth to bed. Item, take Barley water, ſeethe therein green Fennel and Dill, make it ſweet with Sugar, and drink thereof at your pleaſure.

The like doth Linſeed ſodden in the broth of freſh meat and drunken. Some believe, that if a woman do drink a drachme of fine powdered Chriſtal with Honey or Barley water, that thereby the milk will marvellouſly increaſe. Some impute the like operation to be in the prepared Saphire ſtone, if the ſame be tempered with water, and the breaſts wetted therewith. I account neither of them good: but they that will may try them, for they cannot be hurtful.

Againſt the ſuperfluity of Milk. §. 5.

It cometh oftentimes to paſſe when women have lien in, that their Breaſts do happen to ſwell through the abundance of milk, & do bring more inconveniences with them; namely, that ſometimes the whole body thereby waſteth: for the greater abundance there is of Milk, ſo much the more blood is thereby conſumed: if it be not ſuckt out, then doth it clod and congeal, hardneth and turneth at the laſt with great pain into an impoſtume.

The cauſes hereof are ſuperfluous blood, much eating and drinking, and eſpecially ſuch kinds of meat as ingender blood. Therefore muſt the ſame be in the beginning prevented, and thoſe kinds of meats refrained; and to eat and drink but little. And in caſe there be much ſuperfluous blood, then is the mother vein to be opened, that thereby the blood may be drawn downwards. Otherwiſe, there be two means to take away this ſuperfluous blood: The firſt means is through the uſe of Rue, and chiefly of wild Rue with their ſeeds, Baſil and Cumin ſtampt together, if one take of them every day one quarter of an ounce, the ſame drieth the milk.

The herb *Rapiſtrum* is very forcible for the ſame, the which may appear in Swine; for for when they eat of this herb, then are they rid and quit of all their milk, whereby the Pigges are conſtrained to ſtarve. You may alſo lay theſe hot things on their Breaſts. But theſe following are more ſure: Take Roſin as much as you think good, temper it with the Cream of milk, ſpread it on a cloth, and lay it luke-warm over the Breaſts.

Item, take eight ounces of Honey, and two pints of water, let them ſeethe well together, and ſcum it well, and then wet therein a threefold cloth, and lay it on the breaſts; and when it is cold take another; this driveth away the Milk.

Item, take Chickweed, let it ſeethe in Goats milk, or in water, lay it over the Breaſts. Alſo the water of Knotgraſſe or Venice ſope water, are both very good; uſed as before.

Item, take one drachme of Saffron, eight ounces of Malmſey, wet a cloth therein, and lay it on the breaſts, as aforeſaid.

Item, take green garden Mints, ſtamp them and mix them with oyl of Roſes, and do as before. And for this purpoſe is the oyl of Mints alſo very good.

Item, take Bean meal mingled with vinegar, and ſodden to a pap or grout, tempered with oyl of Roſes to a plaiſter, and lay it on the Breaſts.

Take Bean meal four onnces, oyl of Roſes and red vinegar as much as needeth for to make a plaiſter. Of Bean meal and Lentils, of each two ounces, Saffron one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Roſes as much as is needful: all which foreſaid things do dry up the milk.

For the clotted or congealed Milk in the Breaſts. §. 6.

This congealing of the milk in the breaſts proceed as well of heat, as of cold: Or that the milk is too groſſe, and cannot have paſſage through the veines into the Breaſts, or cannot be ſufficiently ſucked out, and there congealeth, hardeneth, putrifieth, and impoſtumateth. The tokens thereof are manifeſt, as hardening, inflammation, and pain in that place where the milk is congealed, that if one do draw or or wring the breaſt, yet doth it give no milke at all.

To prevent therefore this congelation, women muſt keep themſelves very ſober in eating

ing and drinking, uſe moiſt meats that may make ſubtile milk. For this is requiſite, Mints, Parſly, Saffron, and Cinamom, in their meats, and their drink muſt be neat white wine, and uſe commonly this following for the congealed milk.

Take grated white bread as much as you will, new milk oyl of Roſes, of each a like much, for to make pap thereof; let theſe ſeethe together, and lay it warm upon the breaſts; it diſſoveth knots and ſwellings that proceed of congealed milk.

Item, if the milk do pain any body, then take Cork, kindle it well, and then pownd it to powder, temper it with the oyl of Roſes and a little Vinegar, and therewith anoint the breaſts. Or take of the fat of a Kid one ounce and a half, liquid Styrax one ounce, Wormwood one ounce and a half, Comin and Dill ſeeds, of each one drachme, Anniſeeds half a drach. Barly meal half an ounce, oyl of Wormwood one ounce and an half; temper the reſt amongſt it being beaten ſmall, and laſtly put a little Saffron to it, and uſe it as aforeſaid.

This ſalve following is very good for to diſſolve the congealed milk: Take Deers ſuet three quarters of an ounce, liquid Styrax one ounce, Wormwood, Comin, and Dill ſeeds, of each one ounce, oyl of Wormwood, Ducks greaſe, of each one ounce and a half: make an ointment or plaiſter thereof, and at the laſt add a ſcruple of Saffron to it.

If this congealing of milk be with an inflammation, and that it were needful to cool more: then mix the muſcilage of Fleawort, of Fenegreek, and Purſlain ſeeds together, of each a like much: make of them with molten Wax an ointment, and therewith anoint the Breaſt.

Item, take Chickweed without bruiſing it, apply it warm to the breaſts.

Item, take the juice of Colworts, of Nightſhade, and of Coriander, of each a like quantity; this being mingled together, lay it with a cloth warm upon the breaſts. Alſo beat Roſe vinegar and oyl of Roſes together, uſe it as before. Likewiſe Colwort leaves or their juyce mixed with Saffron eaſeth the pain. Take Fenegreek meal, and make a plaiſter of it with oyl of Violets and Vinegar.

But if the Milk be augmented by extrem cold, then take water and wine together, and lay it on the breaſts; or boyl Camomil, Melilot, Fennel ſeeds, Annis ſeeds, Dill ſeeds, Fenegreek, Linſeeds, Southernwood, Ginger, and Baſil, which you will, and uſe it as hath been ſaid, eſpecially if there be not been an ague with it. That which is ſodden mayeſt thou beat, and with the oyl of Camomil make a plaiſter of it, and ſo apply it. The Bevercod and his oyl is very good for the ſame purpoſe.

An eſpecial good plaiſter; Take the crums of white bread, Barly meal, Muſtard ſeeds, Fennel, and Holihock roots roſted under the aſhes, of each a like much, pownd them well together, and with the oyl of Camomil, make a plaiſter of them, and apply it warm on the breaſts: it ſofteneth the hard Knots, diſſolveth them, and ſuffereth them not to congeal again.

Item, take Mints, and make a plaiſter thereof with white bread and Vinegar. But if ſo be that this congealing grow to an impoſtume, then make the breaſt moiſt again (as is already declared with warm wine and water, alſo with the foreſaid pap of Mints and crums of white bread, or Myrrhe mixt with Saffron and Bread. But if this impediment happen to break, then cleanſe it and heal it as you do other tumours; whereof ſhortly hereafter you ſhall have a ſufficient declaration.

Take of Mints, and Parſly green Fennel, ana. M. i. ſtamp them and heat them with butter, and apply it to the breaſts.

Or anoint with oyl of Sheeps ſuet, commonly called trotter oyl. And fry beans and apply them plaiſter wiſe, they will reſtrain the milk from coming into the breaſt; or uſe the meal of beans with vinegar.

For the hardneſſe and inflammation of womens breaſts. §. 7.

WHereas the breaſts, not through the congealing of the milk, but through other occaſions chance to be hard and inflamed, the which may ſoon be be felt with the hand, or diſcerned with the eye: then may you uſe for the ſame any of theſe things following, which you will.

Firſt, lay Rice about four hours long to ſteep in wine, afterwards ſeethe it well, and lay it on the breaſt: Or temper Rice meal with oyl of Violets, and the white of an egg, put-

ting

ting thereto a little diſſolved Dragagant. Item, take ſifted Bean meal and Barly meal, of each one ounce, Linſeed meal and Fenegreek meal, of each half an ounce, temper it to a ſalve with oyl of Roſes: Laſtly, and thereto one ſcruple of Saffron, ſpread it on a cloth, and ſo lay it over the hardneſſe and the whole breaſt.

Item, take Barly meal and Bean meal, of each three ounces, beaten Comin half an ounce, oyl of Violets one ounce, Deers ſuet one ounce and a quarter; make thereof a plaiſter with the water of Sorrel: and for this is alſo to be uſed that which is deſcribed in the ſixt §. of the congealing of milk through heat.

This plaiſter following is exceeding good: Take the flowers of Mallowes, Violets, Celendine, Daiſies, and Cinque foil, of each a handfull; let them ſeethe together in ſufficient water, untill there remain eight ounces: then ſtrain it, and mingle it with wheaten meal, to the conſiſtence or perfection of a thick pap, then temper with it Hens greaſe, or Swines ſuet, and ſo let it ſeethe together unto a plaiſter. This muſt you ſpread on a cloth as thick as a finger, and lay it morning and evening upon the inflamed and ſore Breaſt.

Another: Take Bean meal, and powdered Mints, of each three quarters of an ounce, powder of red Mints half an ounce, prepared Coriander and Peaſe meal, of each one drach. Roſes half a drachme, two ounces of freſh butter, muſcilage of Linſeed one ounce, muſcilage of Fenegreek three quarters of an ounce, Sheeps ſuet and Ducks greaſe, of each one ounce, the yolk of an egg, oyl of Turpentine half an ounce, Saffron three grains; temper them all together and make a ſalve thereof.

Item, take the crums of two or three white loaves (according as their bigneſſe is) Sallet oyl three ounces, pownded Holihock roots one ounce and a half, Fenegreek meal half an ounce, two yolks of Eggs, oyl of Roſes and of Camomil, of each one ounce, mingle them all together, and lay them upon the Breaſts.

Item, take earth-worms as many as you will, waſh them with wine, and burn them to powder in a tight ſtopt pot, temper this powder with oyl of Roſes and of Lillies, and therewith anoint the breaſt, and cover it over with fatty ſheeps wool wrapped in cloth. This maturateth very well and ſwageth the pain. This powder is alſo highly commended, taken with ſome ſweet things, againſt the worms in the belly, the weight of a drach, and half, and is in like ſort very good againſt the yellow Jaundies.

℞. of Mallowes, Herbgrace, Southernwood, Wormwood, Camomil, ana. M. 1. bruiſe them and ſeethe them in water, and with wheaten Bran or Oate meal make a poultice and apply it hot; you may put to it ſome oyl of Lillies or the like, renew it twice every day, and beware it takes no cold when you dreſſe it.

Of the tumours or ſwelling of the Breaſt. §. 8.

TAke broad Plantain and Purſlain, of each one handfull, ſtamp them to pap, Cammomil, Melilot, of each one ounce, Barly meal four ounces; temper them being ſmal with oyl of Violets and Roſes amongſt the juice, untill it wax to be a thick ſalve. And laſtly, mingle amongſt it half an ounce Gummi Helenii, diſſolved in ſtrong vinegar, ſpread it on a cloth and lay it on the ſwelling.

Item, take Sallet oyl and Cow dung, mingle them and ſtrain them through a cloth; then put Fenegreek meal amongſt it, untill it will ſerve for a plaiſter.

Or take Peach leaves only, or as much Rue with them; ſtamp them to powder, let them ſeethe in water untill it be a pap lay it on the ſwelling, it eaſeth the pain, and ripeneth the impoſtume.

This ſalve is alſo highly commended: Take Plantain and Mallowes, of each one handfull, the leſſer Houſleek ſix handfulls; let all be ſodden green until it be a growt, ſtrain it out, then add unto it three ounces of the oyl of Roſes, beaten Camomil and Melilot, of each one ounce, Barly meal four ounces, *Bdellium*, diſſolved in vinegar one quarter of an ounce: let them ſeethe together unto the conſiſtence of a plaiſter.

Of the Impoſtumation of the Breaſts. §. 9.

THeſe impoſtumations do proceed of two ſpecial cauſes: Firſt, of congealing of the milk whereof is written already: Secondly, of other bad rheumes that ſink into theſe parts and there putrifie, breeding there divers accidents; as namely, the Canker, Ring-

worm,

worm, Gangreen, and such like. According to the nature of the foresaid cheume, it happeneth also quickly, in women which have not their Termes, that their Breasts do impostumate by reason of the abundance of bloud, that taketh his course thither.

The signs of this grief are, that the woman hath not conceived nor can give suck, that this swelling doth not divide it self into many places, but remaineth in one place onely. If it be caused of blood, then is the Breast full of pain, with beatings and redneſſe. Or if it come of *Cholera*, then is the pain greater, the breast redder, and yellowish, and with greater agues and more heat than that which proceedeth of blood. If it be of *Phlegma*, then is there small pain, and no ague with it; the Breast is white, with a small tumor.

For to remedy this must the cause be known: If it proceed of blood, then first of all open the mother veine on the same side where the sore is, for to withdraw the matter thereby. But if there be any want of the Termes or flowers, then are they to be provoked by all meanes possible: and in the augmenting of the swelling must the liver veine be opened, or at leastwise the Median: afterwards temper oyl of Roses with Vineger, and wet a cloth therein, and lay it four times a day upon it: You may also seethe Camomil, therein. Of these things following you may use which you will.

Take Bean meal, Fenegreek meal, Linseed meal, and crums of white bread, of each one ounce, Myrrhe half an ounce, Saffron one drach. and a half, rosted Hollihock roots foure ounces, foure yolks of eggs, oyle of Violets, and Linseed oyle, of each three quarters of an ounce: if it be too hard then make it softer with water, and use it till that that the swelling be ripened. Or make this following. Take sixe ounces of clarified hony, Barley meal two ounces and a half, two yolkes of eggs, Myrrhe and *Sarcocolla*, of each half a drachme, let the hony and meal seethe together untill it be meetly thicke, stir then the yolkes of the eggs amongst it, and at last the powder. But if you will have it more cooling, put thereto three ounces of the oyl of Roses, and hony of Roses four ounces, and six ounces more of Barly meal. This is a wonderful plaister to consume and cleanse all swellings not onely of the breasts, but also of all other members.

Item, take Ireos, as much as you please, cut it small, then put as much oyle of Roses thereon as will cover the Ireos root, let it seethe very well, and strain it; afterwards put one half ounce of Ireos unto it, oyl of Violets four ounces, Cerusses, Waxe, and Mastick, of each one drach. and therewith annoint the Breast.

When as then this Tumor is sufficiently maturated, and will breake out, then make pap of Wheat meal, Sallad oyle, and common water. If it will not break out of it self, then is it to be opened with a Lancet, and afterwards cleanse it with hony, the juyce of Smallage, yolks of Eggs and Turpentine, and a salve made thereof. Or take the common salve *Unguentum de Apio mundificativum*, the which is thus to be prepared; Take clarified Hony, and the clear juice of Smallage, of each one ounce, Wheat meal three quarters of an ounce, temper them together: This is also good for all Fistulaes and Carbuncles. This Salve is to be used for any kind of sore, with a Tent or Lint for to cleanse the same.

But if this Tumor be caused of cold, then are all warming oyles to be used thereto, as of Lillies, Spike, and Bevered, and such like: And you may lay thereon water of Honysuckles, whereby divers are holpen; but washed with water of *Cardans Benedictus*, and the powder of the same strewed thereon, helpeth above all others.

All things that are ordained in the first Part, Chap. 13. and §. 1. against the uncleanneſſe of the mouth, are also commodious for this. For to maturate, take six fat Figs, green Cresses, Dock roots, Hollihock roots, Lilly roots, Penegreek meal, and Linseed meal, of each one ounce, let them seethe well to a pap, stamp it well together, and temper it with three ounces of Barrowes greaſe, this swageth the pain, and ripeneth exceedingly. When as this Impostume is sufficiently ripened, open it with a Lancet in the lower part of the same, or with a Corsic, afterwards cleanse and heal it, as you do all other Impostumes.

In the cure of Apostemations in womens breasts, you must evacuate and purge the evil humours, and rectifie the matrix and move her termes.

And if it be broken, use this plaister: Take of honey, Wax, Rosin, Turpentine, hogs lard, make a salve thereof; then when you will use it, Take the fine powder of Dittanie roots, or Angelico roots, and mix with it, and use it for a plaister. And this is good for the Cancer in the breast.

Or Rc. of Sheeps dung, q. v. fry it in a pan with sheeps sewet, then strain it very hard, and dip a linnen cloth in it while it is hot, and apply it over the breast, you need not put in any tents, although there be many holes, if you lay your plaister large enough. *Prob.*

For the Canker in the Breasts. §. 10.

HItherto hath only been spoken of the Impostumes and Tumours of the breasts whereof otherwhiles do spring and grow the Canker, Fistulaes, and other inconveniences: but here will we onely discourse particularly of the Canker-worm and Fistula of the breasts. For the sore which the Chirurgions call the worm, this is their common plaister: Take Rye and Wheat meal of each alike much, temper amongst it about one third part of burnt Copper powdred small, and make a dough thereof with Rose water, spread it on a cloth, and lay it warm thereon; but this availeth not much, a better way must be taken to cure this malady, and so to withstand this Canker or worm.

First, it is very needful that the Patient at least thrice a moneth be purged of melancholick humours, that he keep a good dyet in meat and drink, and use alwaies such things as are somewhat cooling, and very much moistening. Also he must eschew all sharp, salt, windy, and fat things, and such as are soon corrupted in the stomach, and chiefly from all that increaseth *Choleram*, and *Melancholiam*. For to prevent this, prepare this drink following.

Take *Thymus* one quarter of an ounce, the roots of Polypody and Sene, of each one drachme, the seeds of Gourds, Cucumbers, Pompeons beaten, and Violets, of each one drach. and a half, Cinamom, yellow Rapeseed, of each one scrup. let them seethe altogether in eight ounces of Hopwater even to the half, strain it, afterward take of this clear decoction, and temper therewith three ounces of the whay of Goats milk, and so drink it warm, and fast six houres after it.

Secondly, make this plaister following; Take Fenegreek and Barley meal, of each two ounces, Mallowes three handfuls, of great Housleek eight handfuls, of small Housleek four handfuls, of the oyl of Roses six ounces, brayed in a leaden mortar; seethe the herbs in whay, afterward beat them altogether to pap, and temper the other things amongst it. Then let it seethe again in six ounces of the water of Nightshade untill it be sodden away.

The Patient is first to anoint the sore with oyl of Roses that is brayed in a leaden mortar, and afterwards let him lay this plaister following upon the sore, and the foresaid oyl must be also prepared.

Take one pound of the oyl of Roses, put it into a leaden mortar, and bray it with a leaden pestle three or four hours long. This plaister cooleth, swageth the pain, and preserveth one from all other corrosion.

Thirdly, if this Canker corrode any further, then must it by two manner of wayes be hindered: first, by laying somewhat on the score: secondly, by applying somwhat about the sore. The first shall be prepared as followeth.

Take Barly meal four ounces, of the oyl of Violets, oyl of Roses, prepared with lead, of each three ounces, four whites of Eggs, prepared Tutty two ounces, Bloodstones that be stamped ten times in a leaden mortar, with the water of water Lillies one ounce, afterwards bray the whites of Eggs a great while with the oyl tempered amongst the Barley meal: And lastly, the *Tutia*, and Bloodstone, and then therewith anoint small tents, and lay them on the sore.

The Second.

TAke of the foresaid oyl of Roses prepared with Lead one ounce and a half, the juice of Nightshade two ounces, Starch one ounce, fine Bolus one ounce and a half, sealed earth two ounces, temper them all together in a leaden mortar, and therewith anoint round about the Canker or disease of the breast.

Of the Fistula of the Breasts. §. 11.

IF this or any other sore of the breast would turn to a Fistula, then look what hath been said in the first part of the seventh Chapter, and §. 11. of the Fistula of the eyes: likewise

likewiſe that which is written in the third Chapter and fifth Part, of the Impoſtumes of the arſegut, wherein you ſhall find ſufficient remedies.

Of the Clefts or Chops of the Nipples. §. 12.

TAke freſh molten ſuet of young Lambs poured on water, and afterwards waſhed with water of Roſes as much as you pleaſe, and therewith anoint the Nipples.

Item, take Gumme of the Cherry tree, and Frankincenſe, of each one ounce, Wax and Gumme of each half an ounce, melt the Wax with an ounce of freſh butter or Barrows greaſe, then mingle the reſt amongſt it, and uſe it as aforeſaid.

Take oyl of Violets and oyl of Eggs, of each three drach. Harts ſewet and Goats ſewet, of each one quarter of an ounce, make as much as is needful for a ſalve.

Here before in the firſt Part, Chap. 10 and §. 11 there are ſet forth two good ſalves, that do alſo ſerve well for this purpoſe.

Take a white Lilly leaf out of his oyl, and lay it on the Nipples, it is very good.

All theſe foreſaid means cannot hurt the child, although it do ſuck at the ſame breaſts.

What the hair on the Breaſts doth ſignifie. §. 13.

THe Philoſophers do agree all together in this, that all they that have no hair on their breaſts, or very little, are more timerous, fearful, and much ſlower of nature, then they be that have much hair upon their breaſts, who are at all times more manly, ſtout and couragious.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Back in generall.

ON the upper parts of the Rump is the backbone, which (as is ſaid) ſtandeth deep into the body about the ſhoulders and ribs; but on both the ſides is the back ſomewhat higher. This begins at the neck, and reacheth downwards even to the fundament. Four and twenty ſundry bones are imputed unto it, the which the Greeks do call *Spondyli*, and the Latiniſts *Vertebras*, and in our language, the Chine or Backbones. The neck hath ſeven, which are leſſe then all the reſt.

The back hath twelve; five ſtand alſo cloſe to the loyns, whereon the laſt and utmoſt piece of the back bone is faſtened, which is calld the Rump, in Latine *Cauda*, or the Tayl, which is ioyned together of three piece, and is a Griſtle or Tendrel.

The foreſaid pieces of the backbones are all hollow within, filled with marrow, the which is not much unlike the brains in ſubſtance, and yet an off-ſpring and beginning of all hard ſinews.

This ſubſtance of the brains may be aſſimilated to a plentiful fountain, whereof many ſmall brooks and divers ſtreams do flow, which we call Sinews, whereby we have both motion and feeling.

Theſe Sinews are about threeſcore, which do come all of them (each through his own paſſage) from the backbone, and ſpread themſelves into all the members of mans body, where they cauſe both moving and feeling.

From them do the hands and feet, all parts of the face, and the bowels (the inſtruments of the voyce only excepted) receive their ſinews, whereby they do move and are holden together.

Therefore doth it alſo happen, that whenſoever any of theſe Chinebones, through the which the ſinews do paſſe, are wrenched or bruiſed, either by falling, ſtriking, or any other way, ſome parts are thereby lamed, loſe their ſenſe and feeling, and otherwhiles deadly diſeaſes are thereby procured, even as it is mentioned in divers places of this book, ſo that we purpoſe not to diſcourſe here of any other thing, but of the pain or ache in the back, and of the crookedneſſe of the ſame.

Of the pain in the Back. §. 1.

THis pain in the back proceedeth of Rheumes that fall into the ſinews of the muſcles, or of great labour, and ſuch like occaſions, for the which theſe things following are good.

Take Mugwort, Melilot, and Camomil, of each one handful and a half, Melilot ſeeds heated in a pan, 4. *M.* the herbs and flowers chopt ſmall, mix them all together in a little bag, and lay them warm upon the back bone, uſe it often, and that faſting.

Afterwards, anoint the backbone with this ſalve: Take oyl of Spike, oyl of Lilies, of each half an ounce, oyl of Camomil and Dill, of each one ounce, Saffron, Lavender ſpike, Madder, and Agrimony, of each one drach, Maſtick and Squinant, of each one ſcruple, Wax as much as is requiſite, for to make a ſalve.

Item, ſeethe Nep in your meat, which draweth the noyſome and grievous matter out of the neck, it driveth alſo away all pain in the ſhoulders and backbones marvellouſly, if it be ſtewed in the ſaid broth.

In like manner take Silvermountain ſeed, ſeethe it in water, and drink thereof twice or thrice a week, every time three or four ounces, for it is very good againſt all wearineſſe, and pain in the back and reins.

Anoint the backbone with Bears greaſe: Alſo the oyl of a Fox is effectual againſt all pains of the backbone, reins, Kidnies, and Gowt, the which is thus to be prepared.

Uncaſe or fley off the skin of a young Fox, take out his bowels and caſt him in fountain water, and ſea water or ſalt water. Put thereto three pounds of Sallad oyl, Salt three ounces. When it is almoſt ſod, then put unto it Dill and *Thymus*, of each twelve ounces; let it ſeethe together till the fleſh fall from the bones, and when all the water is ſodden away, then ſtrain it.

The oyl of Bricks, which is deſcribed in the firſt Part, is alſo paſſing good for this, either by it ſelf, or when it is tempered with ſome other things.

Of the pain in the backbone that proceedeth from the Kidneys, of the gravel and other things more, ſhall be ſpoken elſewhere.

For pain in the back. ℞. of the powder of Agarick one ounce, powder of cleanſed *Laudanum* half an ounce, and with honey make a maſſe of pills; uſe hereof morning and evening: this is proved good.

Of the crooked Back. §. 2.

THere are three ſorts of this: The firſt doth come before, the ſecond behind, and the third groweth on the left or right ſide. Children are more ſubject to this diſeaſe then aged folk, by reaſon that their bones be feebler, eaſier to be wreſted and wrung out of their natural place. This happeneth of inward and outward cauſes. The outward be falls, blowes, ſtripes, ill handling of young children, racking and ſuch like bad dealing with young tender children. The inward cauſes do come of the Cramp, contraction of the ſinewes, abundant wind, rheumes, ſwellings and ſuch like, that ſettle themſelves in the back bone, and do thruſt and wrench awry the young weak bones.

The ſighs of the Cramp, that cometh through great inanition, is manifeſted and apparant by the conſumption and faintneſſe of the whole body. The ſigns of the windineſſe are, if the Patient that hath the crook back have much griping and contractions in the back. If there be any Impoſtume approaching, then is there great pain in the back, or in ſome certain place of the ſame, with a ſtrong Ague and vehement pulſe. But if there be but one of the back bones wreſted out of his place, then muſt it needs follow, that the Ribs which are faſtened therein, be alſo drawn overthwart, whereby the body muſt be crooked, and the ſhoulder blades raiſed, the which maketh an unhandſome breaſt, and uncomely body, as daily experience teacheth us.

Now to prevent this miſchance betimes, it is firſt counſelled for all young folks and children as followeth; ſo that at all times according to the age (as much as is poſſible) every one may know how to frame himſelf thereafter.

Take Cumin, Caraway, Fennel, and Anniſeeds, of each two handfuls, Rue ſeeds three handfuls, Bran ſix handfuls; make it all together very warm in a pan on the hot aſhes,

aſhes, put it then all together into a dry bag, and lay it upon the place where the pain is: and when the place is well warmed, then anoint it with this ſalve following. Take muſcilage of Fenegreek and of Linſeed, of each one ounce, oyl of white *Camelina*, oyl of ſweet Almonds, oyl of blew Flowerdeluce, of each one ounce and a half, Plaiſter *de Muſcilaginibus*, (which in the firſt Part, the ſixth Chapter, and § 7. is deſcribed) four ounces; melt this with Wax as much as is needful: Laſtly, adde unto them two ſcrup. of Saffron: do this four dayes together. Afterwards muſt the crook Back be bounden together with bolſters and other things as need ſhall require, and renew the binding every morning: Or elſe without putting the child to pain, do this ſix daies one after another; and this being done, return to the laying on of the bag, and anointing with the foreſaid ſalve, which ſhall be alſo uſed four daies together: afterwards lay this plaiſter following upon the Back bone and ſhoulder that is wrenthed.

Take of the foreſaid plaiſter *de Muſcilaginibus* two ounces, *Oxycrocei* plaiſter one ounce and a half, ſpread theſe upon a cloth or leather, and lay this plaiſter thereon, bind it very carefully as aforeſaid, and let it lye ſo ſix daies without opening of it. The *Oxycrocei* plaiſter is alſo good for this by it ſelf, and profitable, which you may alſo find alwaies ready at the Apothecaries, like as is here deſcribed after three manner of waies.

The plaiſter of *Oxycroceum* is thus prepared: Take Wax, Pitch, Roſin, Saffron, of each one ounce and a half, Turpentine, *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, Myrrhe, Frankincenſe, and Maſtick, of each half an ounce, Vinegar one ounce, diſſolve therein the *Ammoniacum* and *Galbanum*, then ſeethe them ſo long untill they become thick, and untill that the Vinegar be ſodden away, then melt herewith the Wax, Pitch, and Turpentine, but the Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Myrrhe ſhall you temper herewith firſt beaten ſmall; when this is mingled all together, then ſtrew the Saffron therein, and mingle them all together very well.

Item, take *Ammoniacum*, *Sagapenum*, *Galbanum*, of each half an ounce, Pitch four ounces, Roſin, Wax, of each ſix ounces, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Myrrhe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Turpentine three ounces, and Saffron half an ounce; and make it up as aforeſaid.

Oxycroceum Vigonis.

TAke eight ounces of Sallad oyl, Hollihock roots, the leſſer *Conſolida* roots, of each half a handful, Myrrhe, Frankincenſe, of each one drach. Roſes one drach. and a half: you are to cut and ſeethe the herbs and roots in red wine and water untill half be conſumed; ſtrain them hard out, and in this decoction boyl the oyl, put thereto alſo Bucks ſuet two ounces; afterwards ſeethe it again ſo long untill all the moiſture be ſodden away, then put thereto three ounces of Lytharge of gold, Bolus, ſealed earth, of each two ounces, red Lead one ounce and a quarter, Wax one ounce, and whileſt it is hot adde unto it two ounces of Turpentine, Maſtick one drach. and laſtly, whileſt it is ſoft, put thereto one ounce and a half of pownded Saffron, as is aforeſaid. This laſt is marvellouſly uſed of the Chirurgions. They are all of them not only againſt the crook back, but alſo for all fractures, and other members which are pained, and they mollifie and conſume all hardneſſe.

It is alſo good for theſe children ſometimes to drink the water of Southernwood, of Hollihocks, of blew Flowderdeluce, of each one ounce tempered, and to uſe three daies after one ſcruple of this powder following: Take half an ounce of the ſeeds of Smallage, one drachme of Cumin, Parſly ſeeds, Anniſeeds, and Licorice mixed, of each two ſcruples.

And you may give the Patient to eat after meat, a piece of the Confection of *Piſtacium* or Cinamom.

And there is to be ſtrewed upon his meat ſome of this powder following; Take half an ounce of good Cinamom, Licorice, and Hollihock ſeeds, of each half a ſcrup. Saffron one ſcrup. ſtamp them all together, and mingle them one amongſt another.

If this Patient be but ten or twelve years old, then were it very good twice in a week, alwaies before ſupper, that he ſwallow one of theſe pills following; Take prepared Aloe one drach. and a half, *Bdellium* half a drach. Smallage ſeeds half a ſcrup. and make ſeven pills of a drachme.

But if on an aged body there grow a crooked back, then muſt he uſe the pills of *Hermodactilis*, *Fœtidæ*, or *Cochiæ* to purge withal. All the meats that he is to uſe, muſt be hot unto

the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree, therefore muſt his Chamber be alwaies kept with a fire of Fiere wood, Juniper wood, and ſuch like, that muſt burn therein, and to fume the ſame with Bay leaves, white Mints, Pennyroyal, Styrax, *Landanum*, Cypres wood, *Gallia Muſchata*, *Sandaraca*, *Lignum Aloes*, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, and ſuch like, each alone, or tempered together. He muſt forbear cloudy weather, rain, and dewes, and uſe no exerciſe; alſo he muſt not ſleep much, nor lye much on the ſame ſide of the crooked back, and he muſt refrain lying upon his back, that his breath be not thereby painful to be drawn; watching is alſo ill for him.

Further, he muſt forbear all that is made of meal; but Kids fleſh, Mutton, Hares, Roe Deer, and young Bears fleſh are very bad for him, and eſpecially if the ſame be dreſt with garden Mints, wild Mints, wild Thyme, Parſly and Balm.

Of Fowles theſe be good for him, Hens, Capons, Pullets, young Pigeons, Feaſants, Partridges, Turtle Doves, and wild Pigeons, either boyled or roſted, being dreſt with the foreſaid herbs. He may alſo eat roſted Ducks, and alſo all field Fowles: but Quails (by reaſon of their moiſture) he ſhall leave. Fiſh is not good for him, and eſpecially thoſe that be ſodden, except they be dreſt with the foreſaid herbs: but being roſted they are for his diſeaſe moſt meet, except Eeles, Crabs, Muſcles, Oyſters, the which very ſeldome are to be uſed; and he muſt forbear all Beans.

All herbs of cold natures are hurtful for him, as Lettice, Burrage, Purſlain, Spinage, &c.

Of all ſeeds he may uſe them that are of a warm nature, as Cumin, Carraway, Anniſeeds, Parſley ſeed, Cardamom, and Greins.

Touching roots, the wild and tame yellow Rapes or Turneps, and alſo all other Turneps may he uſe; but he muſt beware of Onions, Garlick, and Radiſhes.

No herbs of cold natures are meet for his Sallads, neither yet Capers; but *Rapunculus*, Sperage, Hop ſprings, may paſſe well enough, dreſt rather with wine then with vinegar. Salted or powdered Verjuyce, the juyce of Limons, and juyce of Oranges be tolerable: but he muſt beware of eager vinegar, and Pomgranate wine. He may uſe all manner of ſpice (but ſoberly alwaies in his meat) he muſt forbear all cold and new fruit, as Apples, Pears, Cherries, Peaches, &c. but in the ſtead thereof he may eat Raiſins, dryed Figs, Almonds, and Haſel Nuts.

His drink muſt be ſmall Beer, or ſome thin well ſavouring wine, he may water the wine with ſome water wherein Cinamom or Licorice hath been decocted. But above all other, it were good for him (if he can come by it) for to uſe from the middeſt of September to the middeſt of March, this drink following, or at leaſtwiſe temper his wine therewith.

Take Well water ſeven quarts, clear Hony four and twenty ounces, Ammy flowers, and Marjoram gentle, of each one drach. Baſil ſeed half a drach. Artichoke roots 3. drach. Rue ſeeds two ſcrup. ſhaving of Licorice and Anniſeeds, of each three drach. let the water and Hony ſeethe together till there be about two quarts ſodden away, letting it remain ſtill all a night, and in the morning make it hot again, and ſtrain it through a cloth, preſerve it being ſhopt cloſe, for it will do him good.

The learned do give counſel accordingly, that every ſuch Patient muſt purge twice a year, to wit, in the beginning of Sommer, and beginning of Winter, and that according as a learned Phyſitian ſhall adviſe him.

Further, for this diſeaſe of the crooked back are two things to be regarded: firſt, that it do not increaſe: ſecondly, how to take away the ſame. For which, this plaiſter following is to be made.

Take oyl of Camomil, oyl of Lillies, and *Althea* ſalve, of each one ounce, oyl of Foxes one ounce and a half, oyl of Spike one quarter of an ounce, ſoft Styrax one quarter of an ounce, Cypres, Sage, Marjoram gentle, Squinant, Stechas, Wormwood, Melilot, and Linſeed, of each half a handful, prepared Earthwormes, and Nutmegs, of each one ounce, Hollihocks half an ounce, ſeethe theſe all together in a pint of Wine unto the half, then ſtrain it through a cloth, and make a hard plaiſter thereof with Wax and Turpentine.

But before this plaiſter is to be laid upon it, the crook back muſt be well fomented with this following: Take Hollihocks two handfuls, Calamus half an ounce, Mallowes, Camomil, Dill, Linſeed, and Melilot, of each one handful, Spike, Squinant, Fennel, Cumin, Wormwood, and Stechas, of each half a handful, cut them ſmall, and let them ſeethe well

And it were alſo very good that he uſed theſe pills all the year, take prepared Aloe one ounce, *Opopanachum*, *Sagapenum*, of each half a drach. temper them all with the juice of Roſes, take one pill thereof about the fourth day every evening before meat; and if ſo be that he do take twice a moneth the weight of one drach. of theſe pills one hour after ſupper, it is very good for him, and good advice.

An especial remedy against the crook back.

Theſe confections following ſhall alſo be prepared for him: Take Betony, Stechas, Marjoram gentle, Bdellion, Maſtick, Rue ſeed, and Cinamom, of each one quarter of an ounce, pownded Calamus 3. drachmes, roots of Artichocks one drach. and a half, red and white Beben, Saffron and Nutmegs, of each 3. ſcruples, Licorice four ſcruples, Hony of confected Ginger twelve ounces, and white Sugar two ounces, whereof take throughout the whole year before meat the quantity of a Nutmeg. And this is a ſpecial mean whereby this diſeaſe may be holpen. But if the Patient cannot take of it every day, yet is he notwithſtanding to uſe the ſame every third day, or twice a week.

Many things commodious for the crook back.

SEcondly, all theſe things following are good for this crook back, Zedoary chewed, or laid upon the outſide, likewiſe Calamus be it confected or otherwiſe uſed, Centory is very good for all infirmities of the ſinews, howſoever they be.

Gumme *Sagapenum* in manner of a plaiſter laid thereon, or anointed therewith, is very forcible for it. Muſcilage of Fenegreek made with lee, and the ſhoulders and all the back bone rubbed therewith. Sulphur baths alone have oftentimes brought that to paſſe, through a hole whereby the vapour may come againſt the back. The decoction of Sperage being drunken, is very good for this.

A good Salve. Take oyl of Bricks one ounce, oyl of Coſtus half an ounce, the plaiſter *Ceroneum Nicolai* 3. ounces, temper them together, and therewith anoint the backbone for the ſpace of one whole moneth when one goeth to bed, then cover it with ſheeps wooll.

Betony ſodden in all meats is very commodious, or a drach. thereof powdered drunken with hony water. The roots of Bryony ſodden, and the decoction thereof uſed for Cliſters, is alſo very good, and the whole backbone fomented or bathed therewith.

Of the Shoulder blades. §. 3.

THe ſhoulder blades do ſuffer ſometimes great pain, and that through many kinds of cauſes, like as through many cholerick and flegmatick humours that be mingled with ſome blood, and fall down into the ſhoulder blades, and there provoke pain, that ſpreadeth it ſelf afterwards into other members, which is known by feeling and handling of it. For this, make this ſalve following: Take oyl of yellow Violets one ounce and a half, of Coſtus one ounce, burnt Ivory, red and white Saunders, and Roſes, of each one drachme, Starch one ounce and a half, Saffron one ſcrup. yolks of eggs two ſcrup. ſtamp all ſmall that are to be ſtamped, and temper it in a mortar.

Item, take muſcilage of Fleawort, Starch, of each one ounce and a half, Saffron one ſcrup. Roſes, ſeeds of Plantain, Sorrel, and ſmall Endive, of each half a drachme, and the yolks of two eggs, ſtamp all theſe ſmall together, and then make them into a ſalve, and when you will uſe it, then let the ſhoulders be firſt well rubbed, and warm the ſalve. Theſe things be alſo very good for all pains of the backbone and of the Kidnies. For this alſo ſerveth the ſalves of *Aragon* and *Marciaton*, oyl of Saffron, oyl of Foxes, and Badgers greaſe, of each a like much tempered together.

In like manner alſo the oyl of *Pyretrum*, oyl of *Euphorbium* tempered together, or each apart, do ſerve well for all old pains, for they are very hot. Further, all that is very commodious which purgeth the head; Cupping, or boxes ſet on the ſhoulders, being anointed with this ſalve following; take unripe Sallad oyl one ounce, oyl of *Euphorbium* half an ounce, parched Salt beaten ſmall one quarter of an ounce, and temper all together. If there come any ſuch pain with any vehemency whereby the ſleep is hindered, then take oyl of ſweet Almonds, oyl of Camomil, of each half an ounce, oyl of yellow Violets ʒ. 1. ß. Ducks greaſe, Badgers greaſe, and Saffron, of each one drach. make a ſalve thereof with Wax. Item, take Camomil, Meſilot, Dill ſeed, *Anetos*, Balm, and Marjoram gentle, of each one ounce, let it ſeethe well, and put it together in a bladder, or (which is more commodious) into a ſponge, and ſo lay it warm upon it.

Or take Colewort leaves, Betony, and Balm, of each three handfuls, Bean meal two ounces, Wheat meal and Linſeed meal, of each one ounce and a half, Saffron one drach, and two yolks of Eggs; ſeethe the herbs untill they be ſoft, then ſtamp them all together, and lay them on all together, as is done with other plaiſters.

Of the Ribs. §. 4.

AFter the ſaid backbone and ſhoulder blades, there followeth amongſt the outward members of the uppermoſt parts of the body the Ribs, whereof by nature there are twelve on each ſide, which is together four and twenty. The uppermoſt fourteen do meet together, whereby they joyn themſelves in the backbone and on the breaſt, and become as it were one bone. The lowermoſt five of each ſide are named the ſhort Ribs, and there is not one man amongſt a thouſand, that hath eleven or thirteen ribs in one ſide.

When as then the Ribs through any outward cauſe, ſhall be thruſt or broken out of their naturall places, or elſe rotten through any long continued impoſtume, the Chirurgions muſt be entertained for them, unto whom I commit them; yet notwithſtanding, theſe two remedies following are highly commended. If then any body have broken or ſprung a rib, then take Elecampane roots, roſted amongſt the aſhes, beat them to growt, raw Hony, Butter, Horſegreaſe and *Althea* ſalve, of each a like much, let it ſeethe well together. Secondly, uſe one of the foreſaid plaiſters of *Oxycroceo*, and lay it over the ribs. Under and about the ribs cometh the moſt perilous ſickneſſe *Pleuritis*, which is the Pleuriſie, of *Pleura*, whereby the Greeks call the ribs, whereof we will now write.

Of the Pleuriſie, Pleuritis, *a ſickneſſe, with great pricking in the ſide.* §. 5.

THis ſickneſſe is deſcribed by *Galen* as followeth. *Pleuritis* is a pain of the ſide or of the ribs, which is ſpread abroad in the skin that covereth the ribs, even to the ſhoulders, with Agues, pricking pain, cold, ſhort breath, and cough.

He doth further deſcribe the ſame ſickneſſe in another manner, ſaying; the Pleuriſie cometh in the skin that covereth the ribs, with an inflammation of all the muſcles thereabouts, with a ſtrong Ague and with ſuch pain, as though the whole ribs were thruſt through with bodkins, with ſhortneſſe of breath, ſlow pulſe, which afterwards increaſeth, with a vehement cough, ſometimes without avoiding any thing, and otherwhiles by caſting out of bloody matter.

Theſe manners of Pleuriſies the learned do call *Incoctas Pleuritides*, which is, unripe Pleuriſies. It ſeemeth alſo ſometimes that this pain doth ſtretch it ſelf even to the throat, and is alwayes with a ſtrong ague and pricking in the ſide, whereby there followeth of neceſſity a ſhortneſſe of breath. But this Pleuriſie bringeth with it no ſpettle, and there is no other difference between it and the other Pleuriſie, the which may be onely differenced thereby, that at the laſt nothing is coughed up.

All they then that have the Pleuriſie without ſpetting, they will be plagued with a dry cough. Their pulſe is faint, and ſheweth no inflaming in the breaſt, and there is no ſtrong ague, nor any combrous breath therewith: when one doth wring the patient in the place of the pain, then will he feel pain; and by reaſon that there is no humour which may be enflamed in the breaſt, from the beginning, but in the outward muſcles onely, which humor being afterwards ripened, ſheweth it ſelf outwardly as an impoſtume, the which may be opened outwardly. Thus much teſtifieth *Galen* in this matter, whereby his ſucceſſors do conclude, that there be two kinds of Pleuriſies, to wit, a right, and a baſtard Pleuriſie. Of the true Pleuriſie hath here been ſpoken: the baſtard Pleuriſie is called that, which is opened on the outſide. But we will in theſe and more other ſubtil deſcriptions not uſe many circumſtances.

Firſt, there are many cauſes of theſe Pleuriſies. The outward cauſes may be unnatural heat or cold, much exerciſe, Northen winds, even as theſe ſickneſſes do raign more in winter then ſommer, ſuperfluous drinking of cold water or wine, carying of heavy burthens, falling, ſtraining, ſtriking, and after great heat to come ſuddenly into the cold, as alſo by drinking much Muſt. The inward cauſes proceed by repletion of the whole body, and alwayes moſt (above all other humours) through *Cholera*, afterwards of blood, thirdly, of *Phlegma*, and very ſeldom of *Melancholia*.

In like manner, wind may breed this false Pleurisie, the which may hereby be known; to wit, through anguish of the side without coughing, or with some shall cough: and if the place be wrung or touched, then will it cause pain, that so swelleth otherwhiles and rankleth, that it breaketh outwardly, or that it must be opened on the outside.

The true tokens of the Pleurisie you heard out of *Galens* own words: but that it may be known of what humours it proceedeth, is to be marked by these words following: in that of *Cholera* the urine is yellow and thin, the pulse hard, swift, and continuing, the pain is great and pricking, the whole body yellowish, the spettle mingled with a little redness, there is much thirst approaching, with bitternesse of the mouth, and no sleep, with divers other accidents more, which *Cholera* commonly causeth.

But if the Pleurisie do proceed of blood, then is the urine red and thick, the spettle ruddy, the veins full, the pricking pain is not so big, but there is is drouth and anguish with it, the mouth is alwayes sweet, the forehead and eyes are alwayes heavy, the patient is young of years and full of blood.

The tokens of *Phlegma* are, when the spettle is white, when the pain is not too great, when there is but little thirst, and much sleep therewith, the urine is bleak, slow pulse, and other signs more that *Phlegma* accustometh to bring with it. The *Melancholie* causeth the spettle to be a little leaden coloured, wherewith is no soreness or continual pain.

In like sort, there are certain tokens of life or death. The signs of death are these, when no remedies will help, and all accidents, as pain, pricking, shortnesse of breath dayly increase: and contrariwise, it is a token of life, when all they diminish. Commonly the stitch in the left side is more perillous then that in the right side, for that it is nearer the heart. But to come to the remedies, then will we first take in hand the Pleurisie which proceedeth of heat and blood.

Fry Oats with vinegar and apply them in a bag hot; some mix salt with it.

℞. of Figs, hogs grease and oyl, stamp them together and apply it for a plaister.

Or make a poultice of Fenegreek, Linseeds, Wheaten meal, and Butter sod in water.

Drink the juice of Rue in white wine. Prob.

Of the Pleurisie of heat and blood. §. 6.

WHen as any body getteth a pricking pain about the ribs in the side, with a cough and an ague, then must he first use this Clister following: Take 16. ounces of broth wherein a Lambs head or Calves feet be sodden. Put therein one ounce of flight Sugar, the yolk of one Egg, two ounces of Sallad oyl, Salt one drachme and a half, temper them all together. If need be to make a strong Clister, Take Pompeon seed, Cucumber seed, and Gourds of each half a handful, Purslain seed and Lettice seed pounded together, of each one drachme, Mallowes, Beetes, Violets, and Mercury, of each half a handfull; seethe them together in sufficient water even to the half part; then take of this decoction twelve or sixteen ounces, and temper therein oyl of Violets three ounces, *Electuarium de Psyllio* two ounces, Cassia and Tho. Sugar, of each half an ounce, Salt one quarter of an ounce, and set it warm.

In like manner it is needful to let blood with speed. Therefore is the liver vein to be opened, and that (like as all learned and also *Galen* himself teacheth) in the same side where the pain is: for this helpeth very soon, and the other very slowly. But *Rasis* maketh this difference: If that the patient be full of blood, then first must the vein be opened in the side where there is no pain, and that not onely once, but also oftentimes, even as the sickness doth require, and the mallady doth continue, the which may be forty dayes continually. But if there be great weakness or any other occasion at hand, that one durst not open the vein, then at the least set cups or boxes under the pain with much pricking, as the cause importeth. And after letting of blood, then anoint the place of of the pain or stitch with oyl of Camomil, oyl of Dill, or with this salve following, the which is stronger: Take oyl of sweet Almonds, oyl of Violets, and unsalted Butter, of of each one ounce, Althea salve half an ounce, Muscilage of Hollihocks, and of Frankincense, of each half an ounce, Wax as much as is needful: anoint the place therwith where the stitch is, and afterwards lay this plaister theron: Take rosted Hollhock roots ʒ. ℥. Violets and Camomil, of each one quarter of an ounce, Barly meal 3 quarters of an ℥. Temper them them together with the oyl of Camomil & Violets, as much as is needful for a

plaister,

plaister, and lay it warm on the place of the pain: It swageth the pain, and the stitch that proceed of hot *Cholera*.

Another that is also very good.

TAke dry Violets, red Saunders, Barly meal, the seeds of Mallowes Bran, Camomil, and Melilot of each a like much, pownd all that is to be pownded, and make it with oyl of Camomil, and Wax to a plaister; And if therewith the pain do not ceale and swage, then put Bean meal, Fenegreek meal, and Linseed meal unto it, of each one quarter of an ounce, and one Fig or twain: and use this so long, untill the pain (as may seem to the eye) be delayed and swaged, and untill the spettle avoyd more easily.

The Order of Diet.

ALbeit that the abstinence from eating and drinking is very highly commended of of all old Physitians, who have commanded for the first three or four dayes only Barley water to be used: yet is the custome of our country and nature, not to observe it so strictly: but (according to their command) to keep all possible abstinence, is very good advise, yet in such manner, that nature, aswell through such great abstinence, as by reason of the sicknesse it self, be not overthrown. Others do prescribe as followeth: If the sick body the first or second day do cough up no flegme, then is he to be kept with Barly water onely: But if he hath been purged and let blood, then shall he at noon drink Barly water, or the decoction of red Pease: At night he is to bed fed with the crum of white bread, that is steeped in sugred Almond milk, and after it to drink a good draught or twain of Almond milk. When as he cougheth up much flegme, then may he eat well of a sugred Pomgranat, and so moderate himself three or four dayes. Afterwards, when the flegme beginneth to be white or red, and to come easily, then may one let him sup up a little broth of a Pullet, with a little Saffron, which strengtheneth the heart and ripeneth flegme. Is the matter cold? then let a little Hyssop and Parsly roots be sodden therein. For a cold Pleurisie a little wine may wel be afforded, the which in a hot Pleurisie is not to be permitted. After the seventh day must his meat be the broth of Pullets, Barly pap, stued Raisins, Figs, Prunes that are alwayes dresst with a little Saffron, or Parsly roots. Sometimes also are good broyled river fish, and rosted Pullets or Chickens permitted.

And when as the Ague hath clean forsaken the patient, then may he eat measurably Pullets, Partridges, Capons Turtle Doves, Pigeons, Rabets, and Rere eggs, untill he have throughly recovered his health. He must also keep himself alwayes warm, and to sweat a morning; he may otherwhiles for pleasure eat Raisins, Figs, Pine apple kernels, and also two or three Dates, yet he must alwayes have regard that he keep a soluble body: and to this end these herbs following are to be dresst and used; as Spinage, Orage, Burage, Lettice, Violets and Mallowes, with Almond milk, the which is good also for all hot coughs: sheeps feet sodden very mellow are passing good for him. His bread must be wheaten or Barly, well baked; sops of bread and Almond milk with Sugar penned, are very meet for him. Contrarily, he must abstain from Vinegar, Verjuice, and all sowre and salt things; and likwise from eating and drinking too much. Also from smoak, wind, loud crying, wrath and sorrow, and above all, is carnal copulation hurtful. Hereafter have you yet many more potions that serve for such hot Pleurisies. Wine must be for this utterly forborn, and instead thereof he must be cherished with Almond milk, or with sugred Barly water, the which for all Pleurisies is much used and commended. And it is principally to be dresst in this manner: Take pilled Barly one pound, wash it very clean, afterwards powre nine pound of water unto it, and let it seethe even to the half; then strain it through a cloth. This is good for all infirmities of the breast: it looseth flegme, and withstandeth the Ague.

Some do seethe with this Barly water, Figs, Jujubes, Currans or Licorice, and such like, every one according to his own pleasure. Some do take vine Snailes out of their shels, and seethe them with the Barly water, which cause the tough slime in the breast to avoyd and drive it out. For dainty folks you may prepare this decoction: Take a Hen or Pullet, seethe therewith a good handful of Barly until the flesh go from the bones, strain it and temper it with the foresaid Barly water.

Item,

Item, take white bread crums, bind them in a fine cloth, ſteep them in Barly water, ſtrain them often through, and put thereto as much Sugar as you pleaſe.

Item, take pilled Barly half a handful, Jujubes, Sebeſtes, of each ten, or in their ſtead five Figs, one ounce and a half of Raiſins, Licorice, and Currans, of each half an ounce; cut all that is to be cut, and ſeethe it by a mild fire in as much water as you think good. Or take Licorice cut ſmal three quarters of an ounce. Currans two ounces, Sugar-candy one ounce, Barly a good ſpoonful, and a pint of water or as much as you will, let it ſeethe till about the third part remain and uſe it as above.

To every ſuch patient is not onely forbidden wine and other the things, but alſo ſpices, Muſtard, Garlick, hard and old fleſh, Eggs Cheeſe, Milk, and all that is dreſt therewith, he muſt forbear all fruits and herbs, except ſuch as be ſoluble and do open the body. In fine, all that warmeth and hindereth the ripening of flegme, like as all ſowre and cold things do.

Here follow many things againſt the Pleuriſie.

SO ſoon as the common people find not ſpeedy amendment of the expert Phyſitians, then will they be incenſed therewith and diſcontented, and will go ſeek for other counſel: therefore are theſe things following very well to be uſed, where there is any great heat approaching: Take Corn roſes one quarter of an ounce, ſtamp them, and wring out the juice and drink it with Violet water in the beginning of the ſickneſſe; it is a very good remedy.

This following is commended for an eſpecial maſtry in the Pleuriſie: Take the red skin out of the Haſel nut and their ſhels, make them up very dry, ſtamp them, and give them to the patient twice or thrice a day with Carduus Benedictus water, or Endive water. But if you will have it ſtronger, then uſe the red skin alone, take out that which is in the ſhell, and leave the ſhel, and give him thereof a ſcruple, which ſufficeth at one time.

Some do counſel for to take the water of water Lillies, before the Pleuriſie be full poſſeſt, for a preſervation of the Pleuriſie. But I cannot well agree thereto.

A wonderfull remedy that might be tried.

TAke a tooth of a wild Boar file from it two ſcruples, and drink this powder with Scabious water or Well water; And you may alſo take it with two or three ounces of ſweet oyl of Almonds; for the oyl of ſweet Almonds (taken with Sugar candy) is a bleſſed medicine for the Pleuriſie. This is alſo good for it conſerve of Violets, and of water Lillies; and both theſe ſirupes, to wit, the ſirupes of Endive and Pomgranats, and eſpecially the cold Dragagant loſinges which are deſcribed in the firſt part, the 14. Chapter and 2. §. In like manner the confection of *Diapruidion Diapapaver*, and conſerve of Roſes, and in great diſtreſſe and weakneſſe Pearl Sugar, which is called *Diamargariton Frigidum*.

Theſe waters following are alſo very good for this ſickneſſe, as water of *Cardaus Benedictus*, of *Dandelion*, of *Leviſticum*, of Cicory, Violets, Burrage, Bugloſſe, and all that is made with all manner of Sugar candies, Sugar penners, and Licorice.

And heed muſt alway be taken, that the patient in the time of this ſickneſſe have alwayes an open body, the which may alwayes eaſily be brought to paſſe, through the common Cliſters and ſuppoſitories, whereof we have here before mentioned twain, the which may be made ſtronger or weaker, according as need requireth.

Likewiſe it is very commodious alſo to give the patient two ounces of Manna, within 3. ounces of broth, wherein were ſodden Jujubes and Violets. And if ſo be that the ſickneſſe be not too vehement, and overthroweth the patient not too ſore, then may he uſe theſe ſirupes, to wit, ſirupe of Violets one ounce, ſirupe of Licorice half ounce, Barly water, wherein Violets or Licorice were ſodden three ounces; give him this in the morning early, and uſe it certain dayes one after another. For this ſerveth alſo the ſirupe of Poppy heads, although it were but to provoke ſleep.

Another; Take Endive, ſmal Endive, Liverwort, Lettice, and Venus hair, of each a handful, peeled Melon ſeeds, Gourd ſeeds, Cotten ſeeds, Violets, water Lilly flowers, of each one ounce, Sugar twelve ounces, make a ſirupe thereof, and uſe it as is a foreſaid; whereupon, take this purgation, to wit, new Caſſia two ounces, of the foreſaid broth four

ounces

ounces, and give it him in the morning early very warm. You may also put thereto half a drach, of Rubarbe, and half a scruple of Spica. But in case that the patient be very narrow in the breast, as it often happeneth in this sickneſſe, then take Manna, and new Cassia, of each three quarters of an ounce, and make thereof a drink with the foresaid broth.

For this are also these confections following to be used: Take *Diapenidion* without spices, and two ounces of the conserves of Violets, mix them together, and use it often. Take sirupe of Jujubes, and sirupe of Violets, of each three quarters of an ounce, temper them with the water of Folefoot and of Bugloſſe, take this also once a day when you please. But of the narrowneſſe or passions of the breasts, you shall afterwards in this Chapter find many good remedies.

An expedite cure of the Pleurisie.

AS soon as the pain of the Pleurisie is felt, shall boxes be fastened on the place of the pain, for this helpeth marvellously. Then open a vein on the contrary arm, and the next morning in the same side where the grief is. Afterwards thou shalt give him this sirupe following, as you find the sickneſſe to be either hot or cold. And when you find that the matter ripeneth or digesteth a little, then apply this plaister following upon the place affected: Take Hollihock roots, Mallowes, Violet leaves, and Camomil, of each one handfull, decoct them in water, and beat them to growt, add as much oyl of Almonds as shall be needfull. But if the flegme will not be raised and spet forth, then set boxes on the place again as before, with picking, and let them draw well. Also add to five ounces of his drink, two ounces of Oxymel of Squils, for that it breaketh the tough flegme, and casteth it forth with ease.

Of the Pleurisie of Cholera. §. 7.

IF the Pleurisie proceed of *Cholera*, then are soluble medicines to be used at the first, like as hereafter follow: take Endive, small Endive, Lettice, Liverwort, white Diptamus, Venus hair, (all green if they can be gotten) of each a handfull, peeled Melon seed, Pompeon seed, Cucumber seed, Gourd seed, seeds of Hollihocks and Burrage flowers, of each half an ounce, peeled Barly one ounce, Licorice, Cucubes, Jujubes, Sebestes, of each one drachme, Violets and water Lillies of each half an ounce, seethe them all together, and with twelve ounces of Sugar make a sirupe thereof, even as we have taught before. And the common sirupe of Jujubes is also good for this. Item, in stead of the foresaid things may you use this following.

Take sirup of Violets three ounces, sirup of Poppy heads, of Venus hair, of each one ounce and a half: mingle these together with sufficient water of Endive, so drink it at twice: afterwards take this purgation: Take Violets, Borage flowers, and Bugloſſe flowers, of each half an ounce, Prunes, Jujubes and Sebestes, of each ten, Spikenard half a drach. Licorice and Currans, of each five drach. let them all seethe well together; then take four ounces of this decoction, and steep therein half or a whole drach. of Rubarb; let it so stand in a warm place all night, and drink it warm. This being done, lay upon the affected place a spunge that is made wet in warm water, wherein Camomil, Violets, and Dill are decocted. But if these herbs be not to be gotten, take warm Well water, and wring out the spunge meetly well; you may do the like with a bladder that is filled with warm milk and Linseed oyl, and so lay it over the place of the pain. Or you may use this; Take a pint of milk, and two pints of hony tempered well together, and laid with tow upon the place.

Item, take Mallowes, and Hollihock roots, of each one handful, chop them well together, and fry it with butter or Sallad oyl, and so lay it upon the pain. This following is good to expel the blood; Take Bolus and Salt, of each a like much, make them to pap with hony, and bind it on the place where the pain is.

Hereafter follow Plaisters, Salves, and such like.

TAke crums of white bread about four ounces, fresh Butter or Sallad oyl, three ounces, Hollihock roots two ounces, Fenegreek half an ounce; cut, stamp, and seethe it well in Goats milk, mellow to pap; and when it is almost cold, then stir amongst it one drach,

drachme of beaten Saffron, and ſo lay it warm on the pain. Item, take beaten Hollihock roots, Mallow ſeed, and Barly meal, of each a like much; ſeeth it ſo together in Goats milk until it be thick enough, then put thereto ſufficient oyl of Camomil, and ſpread it on a cloth. You have here before in the fift §. of the pricking of the Pleurisie two plaiſters of roſted Hollihock roots, the which are marvellous good for this. This alſo following is very excellent for the great ſtitch and oppreſſion of the breaſt: Take half a pound of Caſſia taken out of pipes, as is taught in the Preface, temper amongſt it one ounce of the ſalve of Althea, oyl of ſweet Almonds, and pownded Hollihock roots, of each two ounces, ſpread them on a cloth, and make thereof a plaiſter, and lay it on the ſtitch.

Item, take four ounces of white bread crum, ſoften them one hour in Goats milk, afterwards pownd them well, then put thereto one ounce and a half of Caſſia, three whites of eggs, Saffron ten grains, and oyl of Roſes as much as is needful for a plaiſter.

Of the Pleuriſie of Phlegma. §. 8.

If the Pleuriſie proceed of Phlegmaticke humours, and that the pain draw downward toward the lowermoſt rib, then is the patient to take often times half an ℥ of the conſerve of Hyſſop tempered with Carduus Benedictus water, and a little Saffron.

Others do take a ſweet Apple, which they make hollow, and fill it with Frankincenſe, and then ſtop the hole again with a piece of an apple, cleaved too round about with dow, and ſo let it roſt a while. This Apple is eaten as a preſervative againſt the Pleuriſie, that people might not be taken with it, although they be ſubject to it.

Item, take a ſweet apple, cut a peice out of it, and put there in one ſcrup. of beaten Maſtick, cloſe it again with the ſame piece. Roſt this Apple in hot aſhes, and ſo eat it. Take the uppermoſt crops of Nettles, ſeethe them in Well water, and ſtrain out the juyce through a cloth, give him thereof at two or three times in the beginning of the ſickneſſe, three ounces at one time. For purging of this flegmack matter, prepare theſe ſirupes following: Take Hyſſop and Venus hair, of each two handfuls, pilled Melon ſeeds, Pompion ſeeds, Gourd ſeeds, Cucumber ſeeds, Butchers broom ſeed, Sperage ſeeds, Linſeed and Fenegreek ſeeds, of each one drachme, good vinegar half an ounce, cut and pownd all that is to be cut and pownded, let them ſeethe all together. To this decoction put three ounces of clarified Hony, nine ounces of Sugar, then make thereof a ſirupe: this is paſſing good when the *Phlegma* is thick and tough. But if you will not make a ſirupe for it then take common ſirupe, to wit, of Venus hair, of Licorice, or Hyſſop: but the ſirupe of Licorice is marvelloufly commended for this.

For a purgation: Take Violets, Bugloſſe flowers, and Burrage flowers, of each one ounce; Licorice, Currans of each two ounces, two or three Figs, Agaricus one drachme and a half, let all theſe ſteep and ſeethe together, take four ounces thereof, and temper therewith three drachmes of the confection of *Elaſchoph*, and then drink it at one draught.

When you have purged, then anoint the pain with the oyl of Dill, or oyl of Lillies; afterward ſeethe Camomil and Venus hair in water and vinegar in a bag; ſtrain it out, and then lay it warm upon the pain. Item, take Barly and Peaſe, of each one ounce and a half, Bran one handful; beat them groſſe, and make thereof a bag of a quarter of a yard broad, ſeethe it, and uſe it as above. Thirdly, take Myly and Salt as much as you will, warm it together in a pan, put it into a bag, and lay it warm thereon, eſpecially if the matter be windy.

Of the Pleuriſie of Melancholia. §. 9.

But if this diſeaſe proceed of *Melancholia*, (which chanceth ſeldom) then ſtrain the juyce of one handful of Burrage and Bugloſſe, and being clarified, give it him with the foreſaid ſirupe. For purging, take blak Hellebore, Thyme, Epythymus, the roots of Polipody, Sene leaves, and ſuch like, even as in the deſcription of Melancholy, in the firſt part the twelfth Chapter and eight §. is taught.

When as the ſick perſon beginneth to cough up flegme, then it is neceſſary that he uſe to drink for it every day of common Barly water a good draught, of the decoction which here before in the cold Rheume in the ſecond Chapter is expreſſed, and beginneth thus: Take 20. Jujubes, &c. which cleanſeth the breaſt. And if the great pricking and ſhooting

remain

remain, and he do cough with pain, then is the patient to drink of this potion following three or four mornings together: Take ten fat Figs, fat Dates, Smallage seed, Fennel seed, Venus hair, Licorice, Hyssop, and Mallowes, of each five drachmes, seethe them all together in six and thirty ounces of water to the half, and trouble not your self therein, albeit the patient should cough up matter or corruption.

Of the bastard or false Pleurisie. §. 10.

WE have mentiond heretofore of the false Pleurisie in the fifth §. & made her nature known. If the patient have plenty of blood, then is his *Saphena* or liver vein to be opened. Afterwards, set upon the place of the stitch, a cup or box or twain with pricking, according as the humors in that sickness do raign, as blood, *Choler*, *Phlegma*, or *Melancholia* do exceed: and afterwards purge and use stronger Clisters then for the true Pleurisie were prescribed. But in case that the patient feel this stitch about the *Diaphragma*, then open the Median, and use the foresaid warming things, that devide the matter; let the place be often rubbed with a hand or cloth, that thereby the pores may be opened. This being done, then lay this plaister following thereupon: Take two ounces of Fenegreek meal, and Pitch three ounces, Wax one ounce, melt them both, and mingle the meal amongst it, with oyl of Camomil to a plaister, which you may spread on Leather, and cover it with silk, and so lay it on the stich. But if the ague be not too big, then may you use thereto the *Oxycroceum* plaister. Item, take the ashes of Colworts, tempered with Pullets or Swines grease.

But if the anguish shew it self outwardly, and yet will impostume but slowly, then must the same be opened, be it with an hot Iron or with a Lancet. What doth loose flegme, that shal be set down hereafter in the description of the cough, of the shortnesse of breath, whether it proceed of heat or cold. But if the flegme that at the first shall be coughed up, be black and yellow together one amongst another, and that the Ague end not on the seventh day, then it is a very bad sign, if therewithbe any heavy rattling in the throat, with redness of the cheeks, lead coloured and dark eyes, then is death at hand.

When the Pleurisie sheweth it self outwardly.

IF the Pleurisie shew it self outwardly, with any rednes, & the party feeleth great pain in the touching of it, then it is a certain token of a false and Bastard Pleurisie, that is settled outwardly on the ribs. For the same, is a cup or box to be set thereon, or to lay a blistering plaister of Figs and Mustard seeds, and let it lye thereon so long, until the place begin to impostumate, and then open it, and heal it like as other impostumes. But if the matter wax hard, then it is to be maturated with this plaister following: Take Hollihock leaves one handful, Camomil, Melilot, and Violet leaves, of each half a handful, Fenegreek seed, and Linseed beaten small, of each half an ounce, Bean meal, and Barly meal, of each two handfuls, oyl of sweet Almonds, oyl of Dill, and Violets, of each one ounce, then temper the one with the other, and so lay it on the place. Hereafter follow plaisters and salves that asswage the stitch and pain, be it of whatsoever occasion it may be. Take Mallows, and Hollihock roots, of each one handful, seethe them together to pap, and then stamp them together with oyl of Violets, and Barrows grease, and so lay it on the sore: but let it not lye too long thereon, that the matter be not maturated too soon. Item, take oyl of yellow Violets two ounces, of the oyl of sweet Almonds, and oyl of Camomil, of each half an ounce, fresh Butter one ounce, Saffron one drachme and a half, white Wax one ounce and a half, Dill seed, Camomil, Ducks grease, of each half an ounce, and three yolks of Eggs; make thereof a salve or plaister. This poultice following doth much asswage the pain; take Bran as much as you please, seethe it in Wine unto a pap, and put thereto a little Salt.

Another: Take unripe Sallet oyl three ounces, four fesh yolks of Eggs, Saffron one drach. new oyl of Roses one ounce and a half, seethe it a while, and set it on warm ashes, and stir well amongst it the beaten yolks of Eggs; put afterwards unto it Starch and Barly meal, of each one drach. and a half, and last of all the Saffron: if you will have it more forcible, then put fresh Butter to it, and *Bdellium*, of each one drach. and seethe it with decocted sweet Wine, as thick as you desire it. Or use this following.

Take Camomil, Dill seeds, Venus hair, Hollihock seeds, and Folefoot of each two

handfuls

handfuls, Currans three handfuls, ſix Poppy heads, ſix ounces of freſh Butter, 16. ounces of ſweet ſodden Wine, put unto it (when all is well ſodden and brayed) one drach. of Saffron.

A good Salve. Take *Althaa* ſalve, and Butter, anoint the place therewith where the pain is, and ſtrew thereon beaten Cumin, and lay a warm Colewort leafe thereon.

When the Pleuriſie taketh a woman with Child. §. 12.

IF it then chance that a woman be in doubt of bearing the ſpace of two moneths, were brought a bed before her time, and brought a dead child into the world, or were much inclined to the ſame, and ſo be taken with the Pleuriſie, ſhe muſt not be let blood, but ſhe muſt have cups ſet on her buttocks, and be picked well, whereby to draw the blood downward. But women that are wont to miſcarry in haſt, they may well be let blood, yet alwaies taking good heed to their ſtrength. But for a general rule, all women (albeit they miſcarry or not, or that they have conceived) are to have the liver vein opened. But if it be not the right Pleuriſie, then make a bag with warm Millet and Bran, and lay it where the ſtitch is felt, and anoint the back with *Althaa* ſalve.

But they that are not with child and have the Pleuriſie, it is much counſelled, that their Terms be provoked as much as is poſſible, whereof in the fifth part is very largely diſcourſed. And the other (even as is already ſaid) are to be holpen (according as they be of ſtrength) by other medicines.

Rules for ſuch as are recovered of the Pleuriſie, that they fall not into it again. §. 13.

FIrſt, all they that be ſubject to this ſickneſſe, are to ſhun all dwellings (and principally in winter ſeaſon) that are ſituate in the North and Weſt, and near the water. They muſt alſo forbear all tough ſlimy meats, and all that is made of dough, Cheeſe, Milk, and ſuch like: alſo from vinegar, ſowr and ſharp, and all kind of tart things: Capers and Sallad oyl are alſo enemies unto him.

Item, from all pottage, except of red and white Peaſe, and Bean broth, which be good for him; and dreſſe Hens, Pullets, Veal, and Pigeons with it. All cold fruits, as Apples, Peares, Cheſnuts, &c. are hurtful for him; but Figs and Raiſins are very meet; ſodden Coleworts, and all ſorts of Rapes and roots, as Parſneps, Parſley roots, and ſuch like, are very good for him; and all Barley paps alſo.

His drink muſt be thin, white, and ſweet wine, or common Beer, which is very clear. To drink water, is for this ſtreightly forbidden; but if the Patient deſire to water his wine, he may do it; yet with water that is decocted with Cinamom or Licorice. After his meal tide is he to keep himſelf quiet one or two houres. Watching is very hurtful for him; but to ſleep long is very good and needful.

In eating, he muſt alſo beware of ſwallowing down meat not well chewed, and of overcharging his ſtomach with meat and drink, that there follow no harm to the ſtomach. He muſt look well to all theſe, and that he be alwaies merry and of a light heart.

Secondly, he muſt take good heed for to have alwaies an open body; and before he uſe theſe pills following, he muſt firſt uſe theſe potions: Take of the water of Fole-foot five ounces: Sugar one ounce, drink it every morning faſting at one time. The pills are thus to be made; Take prepared Aloe one quarter of an ounce, *Opopanacum*, *Bdellium*, and Coloquint, of each one ſcrup. make pills thereof with ſirup of Roſes fire of a drach. then take every four dayes one or twain, according as you are bound, and in the evening one before ſupper.

A Salve.

TAke *Aſarabacca*, Hyſſop, Mallowes, and Roſemary, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Sandaraca* 3. drach. *Spica nardi* one quarter of an ounce, Dragons blood, and the juyce of Sloes, of each one drach. Starch five drach. pownd each apart as ſmall as may be, then temper it with Malmſey, and keep this ſtopped cight: Herewith are you to rub the back bone and ſhoulders ſoftly, and afterwards a Foxe caſe bound thereon. And the Patient muſt have his vein opened on the right hand beſides the little finger, and let it bleed 4. or 5. ounces of blood.

Theſe

These are the moſt principal means, whereby theſe perillous ſickneſſes may be prevented; but we will adde ſomewhat more to the reſt.

Certain ſeveral remedies againſt the cold Pleuriſie. §. 14.

FOr the true Pleuriſie do ſerve theſe compounded Confections and Loſinges; which are prepared two manner of waies, *Diapaſſum, Diahyſſopum, Diaireos Solomonis, & Lohoch de Pino.*

Item, all that is prepared againſt the cold cough, as confected Elecampane roots, Treacle, Mithridate, ſweet ſirup of Pomgranates, and Parſley roots ſodden in wine, tempered with a little vinegar, and thereof drunken often. Alſo M. *Triſtrams* water, and other more *eadem Compoſita.* But by reaſon of the Ague, ſome cooling things muſt alwaies be tempered amongſt it.

For the common drink you have here before in the ſixth Section a ſpecial Barley water: mollifie crums of white bread therein bounden in a clout, ſtrain it often out, and mingle ſomewhine wine amongſt it. Hony water quencheth thirſt, it provoketh alſo the tough humours and flegmes to avoid, and it is good for all coughes. Thin wine tempered with water is tolerable for this, if the Ague be not too ſtrong.

Item, take *Cicera*, Venus hair, as much as you pleaſe; let it ſeethe with a little Licorice. For common things, theſe following are very good for the cold Pleuriſie; as *Aſſa fatida*, Nettles with their ſeed, Balſom wood, with their fruits, Ireos, Myrrhe, the right Acorns, for which ſome do take Calamus, or great Galangal and Starch.

The fifth Chapter.

Of the Lights or Lungs.

WE have hitherto ſpoken of the outward parts of the Breaſt, and diſcourſed of their infirmities: now we will write of the inner parts, and will begin with the Lights, for that they are made as a ſeparation between the pipes of the Lungs and the Heart; alſo as an inſtrument of the breath, ordained of God for the uſe of the body, thereby to draw in the outward ayr, thereby to cool and quicken the heart and all inward parts, wherewith to form alſo and effect the voyce and ſpeech in all that hath received life. Therefore hath nature made the ſubſtance of the Lights light, and like a ſponge, formed with many pipes, whereby they might be the more meet to draw the breath out and in. Some ancient Phyſitians are of opinion, that they were without blood; but it is not ſo, they have their blood too, and are full of it: but as ſoon as it cometh out of the Breaſts, the body is void thereof. What great difference is between the Lights of men and of Beaſts, is not here needful to be written. In like manner, that the ſmaller the Lights be in ones body, the more ſwiftly can they endeavour and beſtir themſelves.

This noble and neceſſary member is ſubject to many grievous and deadly ſickneſſe, whereof we will ſpeak hereafter: But firſt of all we will begin with the Cough.

Of the Cough. §. 1.

FOraſmuch as the Cough is a meſſenger of all the diſeaſes of the Lights and of the Breaſt, and that through the groſſeneſſe, drouth, moiſture, ſpettle, and other excrements; whereby men may eaſily adjudge how the Breaſt and Lights are made within: therefore it is adviſed firſt of all to write thereof. The ancient Phyſitians do write thus of the Cough: The Cough is a natural motion of the Lights, the which by the ayr and moving vertue of the muſcles that are within the Breaſt, is meet and made for to cough up all that which hurteth the Lights. The moving and breathing in the breaſt is appropriated by nature; as the neeſing for the brains, and the digeſture for the ſtomach. But before we go any further, we will ſpeak firſt of the Rheume, the which provoketh the cough moſt of all.

Of

Of the Rheume or Catarrhe which falleth upon the Lights. §. 2.

HEre before in the ſeeond part, the firſt Chapter, and §. 4. and afterwards in the deſcription of the Squinancy, there are written many things of this Rheume of the Lights, which may as well be underſtood of the Rheum in the lungs, as of the Squinancy. For the perill of ſtifling is even as much, whether the lights were ſtopt, or the throat were ſhut up. Such things happen oftentimes through a tough ſlimie matter, which falleth out of the head upon the lights, and into the breaſt, the which is very ill to be gotten out, and there reſteth and abideth. We will therefore firſt ſhew by what means all ſuch ſtoppings of the lights are to be remedied and cured. And for that theſe Rheumes are more incident to children, by reaſon of their moiſture, therefore we will expreſſe certain neceſſarie things that are requiſite for the ſaid young children.

Take Linſeed which is beaten, mollifie it in cleare honie, give it to the child to lick thereof: it driveth out the ſlime, it ſeparateth it, openeth the breaſt, and purgeth mildly, whereof give him five or ſixe times, according as it purgeth much or little: but if ſo be that the child will not eate any thing at all, then is there no hope of health to enſue. But then roſt an Onion in warm aſhes, wring out the iuyce, put thereto as much Hens and Capons greaſe as there is iuyce, and temper it by a ſoft fire, and anoint the childs breaſt therewith. Item, take Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Citron pilles, of each a like much, and make thereof a powder, and rub the Child ſoftly therewith above upon the future of the Scull. Alſo you may let him lick Oyl of ſweet Almonds, tempered with Sugar candie, for it mollifieth the breaſt, and looſeth it. Theſe loſinges following are not onely very good for children, but for aged people, whether the ſame be uſed in loſinges, or in form of any confection, Rc. *Agarici albi* ℥. 18. *Spec. Diambra.* ℥. 5. *Diairis Solomonis*, drach. 1. *Spec. Diatragacanthi*, ſcrup. 4. *Polypodii quercini*, ℥. 1. *Omnia in pulverem redacta, cum Saccaro incorporentur ad placitum.*

But with men in years it hath another reſpect. They that be ſixteen or eighteen years old, who are infected with this diſeaſe, they ſhall rule themſelves according to this regiment following.

Concerning the order of dyet, you have here before in the firſt Chapter and 4. § and good advice and inſtructions afterwards. Alſo it is very good that the Liver vein be opened, and fiue ounces of blood letten out. Afterwards two ſcruples or one ſcruple of of the pils *Cochie* to be taken, and to ſleep one hour after them, and five hours after that to drink a draught of ſugred Barly water, and then to eat ſomewhat. This ſo done, he muſt uſe this Potion following warm in the morning: Take ſirupe of Endive, Honie of Roſes, and ſirpu of Steehas, of each half an ounce, water of Licorie, and of Endive, of each one ounce and a half, tempered together.

But for this accident are Cliſters more profitable, like as theſe be following, which are recited and put for an example. Take Poppie heads, ſmall Houſleek, Mallowes, and Bran, of each half a handfull, *Aſarabacca*, and Betonie, of each half ſo much, ſeeth all together in ſufficient water, then wring it out well, and take of this decoction twelve or 16 ounces, oyl of Violets and of Saffron, of each one ounce and a half, *Hiera Picra*, and S. Thomas Sugar, of each 3 quarters of an ounce, Salt one quarter of an ounce: theſe Cliſters are you to uſe before noon. He may lay roſted Millet, with Salt and Camomil upon his head, and to ſet oftentimes cups or boxes upon his ſhoulders and buttocks (without picking) is highly commended. Or if that the partie be full of blood, then ought they to be picked. Alſo if by nature he be ſubiect to the Piles, then ought they to be opened by rubbing with rough clothes or Fig leaves; ſo alſo is the Ox gall very good for them. Afterwards muſt he be waſhed every day with ſharp Lee, and therefore uſe convenient Sope, and let him be well dryed, continuing this ten dayes together, but in the meane time ſhall he take the pils *Aſſaiaret*, and refrain the cold ayr, and keep his head well covered.

This Salve following is very commodious, if the ſhorn head be annointed therewith, it raiſeth many bliſters, and thereby draweth out all the moiſture from the braines, and ſtrengtheneth the head exceedingly.

Take one ounce of Nep, Bean meal, and Peaſe meal, of each three ounces, ſtamped roots of *Coſtus* and Mace, of each half an ounce, Muſtard ſeed one drach. Pigeons dung two ounces, Marjoram gentle ſtamped 3. quarters of an ounce, ſeeth theſe together in ſuffi-

cient water to pap, and use it as is said; for this purpose serveth also oyl of Mastick. Item, take oyl of sweet Almonds, and Hens grease, of each half an ounce, Saffron one scrup. and therewith anoint the throat and the breast. To this end may also this sirup following be prepared.

Take five Poppy heads with the seeds of *panis Divi Johannis* cleansed from the kernels, one ounce and a half, Myrtle seeds half a drach. prepared Licorice one ounce and a half, seethe them in a pint of water, unto two parts, wring it out and strain it, and put afterwards thereto Sugar candy, and Sugar pennets, of each two ounces, seethe it as thick as hony. And if the rheume fall vehemently on the breast, that it seemeth to strangle one, then take half an ounce of Agaricus, letting it steep 24. hours long in six ounces of the water of Venus hair, afterwards wring it out, and put as much Sugar unto it as you please. And seethe it to the thickness of hony for your daily use, whereof is to be taken half an ounce at a time.

If this Rheume come with heat, then make these pills following, and keep them one day and a night in your mouth. Take white Poppy seed, Purslain seed, and Lettice seed, Sugar candy and Sugar pennets, of each one drach. Saffron one scrup. and make them all to pills with dissolved Dragagant.

But if the Rheume be with cold and a great cough, then take red Styrax, Cipres nuts, Frankincense, *Landanum*, juyce of Licorice, and Amber, of each one drachme, Raisins (the stones taken out) one drach. and a half, Sugar candy three drachmes, make pills thereof with sirupe of Hyssope, and use them as before.

This powder following is approved for staying of the Rheume: Take *Spica* of the Indies one quarter of an ounce, Cinamom one quarter of an ounce, of the skul of a man that dyed through violence, three quarters of an ounce: take every time it commeth one drach. after meat in Wine, or any decoction. You may also make this in losinges with Sugar, or to a powder. Further, you may take and receive a fomentation for this Rheume, as in the first part, the third Chapter, and §. 2. Item, take Frankincense and *Sandarac* (which are very requisite for this,) the water of *Consolida regalis* is also very meet for this use. Certain ancient Physitians do highly commend Barley water mixt with Julep of Violets. Item, take cleare and well washed Turpentine one quarter of an ounce, beaten Licorice one drachme: put thereto seething hot flesh broth, stirre it still about untill the Turpentine be dissolved, and drinke it when you go to bed. Others do take also washt Turpentine, tempered with Hony, and beaten Licorice: both these are marvellous good, and specially if the patient therewith be troubled with the infirmity of gravel. Item, Hony and Vinegar wherein *Agaricus* hath been steeped, taketh away all danger of choaking. Likewise for this is very good the sirupe of green Nut shels, which is described in the first part of the thirteenth Chapter, and §. 4. look for it there. It is also here before oftentimes mentioned, that as men will go to bed, they are to swallow three or four grains of Frankencense, for that they do strengthen much the brains, and do dry and stay cold Rheumes.

If so be that through this Rheume the Pleurisie is feared, the which is thereby oftentimes caused, then take four ounces of new made Oyl of Almonds, and small filed bones of a Bore ten grains, tempered together, and so given the patient to drink.

And if so be that through all the aforesaid remedies the Rheume be not removed, then doe the learned give counsell for the last mean, which is to cauterize on the seam of the skull, the which any may do very well, if one be afraid that the Patient be in danger of stifling.

What is commodious for the obstructed Lights. §. 3.

FOr the obstruction of the Lights (which provoketh the cough, the shortnesse of breath, and many other diseases) is all that highly commended which causeth to rid much phlegme, like as hereafter more amply (where we shall speak of the Cough) you shall see: yet are these things following used against this present stopping, to wit, conserve of Fumitorie, and all that is made of that herb: it openeth the obstructions of all parts. In like manner, Conserves of Marjoram gentle, Sage, oyl of bitter and sweet Almonds, oyl of Wormwood, sirup of Violets, of Vinegar, and *Acetosus compositus*, which do separate and loose these Rheumes that are impacted in the light. In like sort *Oxymel* of Squils, and *Agaricus*, have especially operation for to loose all tough phlegme from the lights, for which this confection following is highly commended: Take Frankincense,

Myrrhe,

Myrrhe, Licorice, Saffron, and Caſſia wood, of each one drachme, beaten ſmall together, and Hony (ſodden with Malmſey ſomewhat thick) four ounces, tempered all together. This confection is ſpeciall good for this maladie.

But every one ought to know whether this Rheume do proceed either of heat or of cold, thereby to rule and direct himſelf, and may make choice of medicines that may be commodious as well for the one as the other.

Remedies for the Cough. §. 4.

WHat the Cough is, and how it is deſcribed of the learned, is declared before in §. 1. But as much as concerneth the inconvenience of the Cough, we will divide it into two ſorts, to wit, a dry and cold ſort, both proceeding either of inward or outward cauſes. The outward are, when as any thing cometh into the throat, be it powder, duſt, any peſtilent ayr, or any other bad ayr, dry, moiſt, or hot ayr, wherewith the Lights be infected.

In like manner ſmoke, ſharp meats dreſt with Pepper or much Salt, Medlars, Vinegar, Verjuyce, Limons, or ſuch like, which paſſeth through the throat, be it through meat or drink, which doe ſlide into the unright throat (as the common people uſe to ſay.) The inward cauſes are tough ſlime, and rheumes, (whereof before hath been written) that fall into the breaſt and the ſtomach. And when any vapor comes into the Lights, be it of an infirmity of the ſtomach, Milt, Liver, Mother, and ſuch like: the which infirmities bring with them their owne ſignes, and ſhew whereof they ſpring and ſprout, which would be too long to be rehearſed at this preſent.

But to come to the remedies of both theſe ſorts of the Cough, it is to be marked, whether the Cough be dry or no; for when it is ſo, then cometh it of heat: And if ſo be that the patient be full of blood and red in the face, then according to the permiſſion of Barage, of the country, of the time, he is to be let blood without delay, eſpecially if the party be dry and lean. But if it laſt long, it is to be feared that it will come to a conſumption (which is *Phthiſis*.) For this are good all cooling and moiſt things, as conſerve of Violets, ſtewed Barly (which is *Ptiſana*) and ſuch like things.

Againſt all dry Coughs. §. 5.

THat which at the firſt of the ſtewed Barly and other things hath been ſaid, the ſame is alſo good for this dry Cough, whereas little or nothing at all is coughed up; But this drink is eſpecially commended for it. Take ſirupe of Violets, ſirupe of Poppy heads, and ſirupe of Jujubes, of each a like much, water wherein Barly, Violets, Licorice, Raiſins, and Sebeſtes be ſodden, as much as you think good, tempered with Sugar. Purging is not onely commodious, but alſo needful, the which is thus to be effected: Take of the ſaid decoction, ſeethe therein Prunes of Damask, and ſowre Dates, of each half an ounce, piled Melon ſeed, Pompion ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, Gourd ſeed, and Venus hair, of each one quarter of an ounce; take four ounces thereof, and temper therein one ounce and a half of Caſſie, for it cooleth and openeth. The ancient Phyſitians do praiſe piled Beans; it is poſſible indeed, for that it will make the water thick. In like manner do they commend freſh Butter wherein Almonds and Suger are mixed, ſtrewed Gourds, Jujubes, Spinage, Endive, Lettice, Purſlain, oyl of ſweet Almonds, Kids fleſh, Pullets, and ſuch like.

It is alſo good that the patient alwayes keep ſomewhat in his mouth, ſometimes one thing, and otherwhiles another, to wit, loſinges of Dragagant. Sugar pennets, Licorice, the juice of Licorice, Sugar candy, or ſuch like; and for this you may prepare this confection following: R. *Specierum, Diapapaveris unciam unam, Diatragacanthi frigidi, Diapenidiorum ſine ſpecibus. ana drachmam unam, Sacchari violarum uncias duas, Speciei Diarodon unciam unam, fiat mixtura.* Or take that which followeth: Take Poppy ſeed beaten ſmal one ounce and a quarter, Starch, Dragagant, and Gum, of each half an ounce, piled ſeeds of Gourds and of Quinces, of each three drachmes; then make thereof a powder. Item, take Sugar pennets ſixteen ounces, ſeethe it with water of Colefoot unto the thickneſſe of hony, or ſomewhat ſtiffer, and take thereof oftentimes in the mouth. Item, take a little pan, and fry Currans therein, ſtirring them ſtill about, that they burn not, and eat thereof every morning a full ſponfull.

Item, take half an ounce of Manna, diſſolve it in freſh oyl of ſweet Almonds, if there be any dreſt therein, ſtrain them thorough oftentimes. For this alſo is meet a bath of fair water, wherein are decocted Violets, Mallowes, and Hollihock roots.

Becauſe that this kind of dry Cough hath need of moiſture and mellowing potions, for which theſe things are noted down: Take of the black Iosinges, and temper them with the ſirupe of Violets, and with the foreſaid decoction, and drink thereof as often as you will, it is marvellous good. And you may alſo uſe it with the ſirup alone. Item, take new milke, temper it with ſweet butter and ſugar, and drink when you goe to ſleep, it eaſeth the Cough above all meaſure. Or take four pints of water, and the fourth part of a pint of hony, ſixe Figs cut ſmall, one ounce of Licorice, ſeeth them together unto a pint, ſcum it well, and drink thereof every morning a good warme draught, and delay alſo the patients wine therewith. This is alſo marvellous good againſt all hoarſneſſe.

Another. Temper faire Well water with any of theſe ſirupes following, and drink thereof, to wit, with ſirupe of Violets, of Poppy heads, or of water Lillies. Item, take Barley water one pint, ſeethe therein four or five Crabs, according as they be big, or in their ſtead hedge Snailes, for they are ſpecially good againſt dry Coughes.

This potion following is called at the Apothecaries *Decoctio pectoralis*, and is much uſed and had in all the Apothecaries ſhops at *Anſborough*, and alſo very commodious: for it ſcoureth the ſtomach, melloweth the Cough, cleanſeth the tough ſlime in the breaſt, and moiſteneth alſo the ſame. Take new Figs half an ounce, Dates and Jujubes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Mallowes, Hyſſope, Currans, ſliced Licorice, Annis ſeed, Fennel ſeeds, and Barley, of each one quarter of an ounce; ſeeth them altogether in three pints of Barley water unto the ſecond part: but if there be much flegmatick ſlime with it, then let there be ſodden therewith one ounce or twain of Hony. The like remedy have you alſo here before in the ſecond Chapter, and the ſecond §.

Of that which may be uſed outwardly.

TAke Camomils alone, or with Roſes and Thyme ſodden together, and receive the vapour or fume thereof into your noſe.

Hereafter follow divers Salves, and ſuch like.

TAke the muſcilage of Dragagant, and of Gumme, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of ſweet Almonds, and of Violets of each one ounce, Hens greaſe and Calves marrow, of each half an ounce, Wax as much as is needful to make a ſalve. Or take oyl of Violets four ounces, as much white wax as will make it thick, ſpread thereof upon a cloth, and then lay it upon the breaſt. Item, take the muſcilage of Linſeed, and of Hollihock roots, oyl of Lillies, and Gooſegreaſe, of each half an ounce, Saffron ten grains, and a little molten Wax: a make a ſoft ſalve of them, and therewith anoint the whole breaſt. This is ſpeciall good for young children, and not unprofitable for people in yeares. The things hereafter following are exceeding good to anoint therewith the breaſt, if ſo be it be uſed alone, or tempered with other things, like as the oyl of Camomils, oyl of yellow and blew Violets, oyl of Lillies, and Poppy heads. Item, all fat of Hens and Ducks, of which two fats take one ounce of Saffron one ſcruple tempered together, and the breaſts annointed therewith.

There are at the Apothecaries two kinds of breaſt ſalves, which are called *Vnguenta Pectoralia*: Take muſcilage of Fleawort, Dragagant, Gumme, Linſeed, and Fenegreek ſeed, of each one drachme, Hens greaſe, marrow of Calves bones, freſh Butter three quarters of an ounce waſhed together with the water of Violets, oyl of ſweet Almonds, and of Violets, of each half an ounce, Waxe as much as need requireth, and ſo tempered altogether into a ſalve.

This ſwageth not onely the Cough, but alſo the pains of the breaſt. Another. Take oyl of Violets two ounces, oyl of ſweet Almonds one ounce and a half, freſh Butter two ounces, Ducks greaſe one ounce, Muſcilage of Hollihocke roots, Linſeed and Fenegreek, of each half an ounce, let theſe ſeeth all together untill that the muſcilage be conſumed. Take molten white Waxe as much as is needfull for a ſalve, but ſtirre it well about untill it be cold: this hath the ſame operation with the other.

Item.

A Plaister for the Breast to stay Rheumes.

℞. of Laudanum ʒ. 2. Wax ʒ. ß. Turpentine ʒ. 3. melt the Laudanum and Wax with a little hogs lard, then put the Turpentine into it for a plaister, apply it spread upon leather; you may adde the powder of Saffron unto it.

Of a moist and cold Cough. §. 6.

WHen the Cough cometh with much slime and moisture, and will not be removed, and that therewith be no Ague nor Lask, then are these Losinges following to be given him, with water wherein Venus hair and Hyssop is sodden. Take Fennel seed, Smallage, juice of Licorice, Venus hair, and peeled Almonds, of each a like much, make trochisces or losinges thereof with the muscilage of Linseed. You are also to prepare these Sirups following, which are passing good.

Take Ireos and Elecampane roots, of each one ounce and a half, Hyssop and Venus hair, of each two handfuls, white Mints, Pimpernel, Mallowes, Marjoram, of each half a handful, fryed Linseed one ounce, raw Barley one ounce and a half, Licorice and Currans, of each two ounces, Hony and Sugar, of each six ounces, make of them a sirup.

For this is also meet the usual sirup of Licorice, also *Stechados*, *Oxymel* of Squills, and sirup of Venus hair three or four daies one after another, with water of Venus hair or Scabious drunken. When as then the matter is prepared with the foresaid things, then purge the Patient with pills *Cochiæ* and *Aureæ*, of each half a drach. Or take one ounce of Cassia, Agaricus one drach and a half, *Turbith* also one drach. *Sal-gemma* and Ginger, of each three grains; give it him with 4. ounces of water, wherein are sodden Venus hair, Hyssop, Scabious, Licorice, and Violets.

After purging, some do give Mithridate and Treacle for old coughes, thereby to consume the matter. Also for old Coughes the Treacle *Diatessaron* is to be used, but take what you please giving him a drach. at one time, according as the person is young or old, with a little Barley water. The Breast is also to be kept warm, and the same to be anointed, whereto this following serveth: Take Muscilage of Fenegreek and Linseed, of each two ounces, fresh butter one quarter of an ounce, oyl of sweet Almonds one ounce and a half, Wax as much as is needful. For this is special good the salve *Althæa*, and when you have rubbed the breast warm therewith, then cover it with carded sheeps wooll.

Further, these things may be used outwardly, to wit, that in the morning there be laid on his head a bag of parched Millets and salt, or a bag with Pennyroyal, Marjoram, and Mints laid upon the head: Or in the stead thereof, Styrax, wild Mints, Myrrhe, and *Sandaracha*, of each a like much beaten to powder, and cast upon the fire, and the vapour or fume thereof received into the nose and mouth. For this is also good *Nigella* seed, or *Sandaracha*, each alone.

Item, take Rosemary, Pennyroyal, Camomil, white Mints, and Sage, of each a like quantity: let them seethe together, and receive the vapour or fume. You may make also of these things following a cap, and wear the same continually on the head; it is very commodious for old folk. Take *Stechas*, *Amaranthus*, Camomil, Melilot, *Agnus castus*, and Rue, of each a handful and a half, Anniseed, Fennel, Cumin, prepared Coriander, of each half an ounce: then lay this Cap upon a hot stone, which is sprinkled with Wine, and so set it warm on his head.

The Patient is also to hold Myrrhe a long time in his mouth, and afterwards swallow it down, for it hath a marvellous operation in all cold Coughes. A bath to wash the feet is also very commodious for this; take for the same Thyme, Roses, Camomils, and Salt, of each one handful: let them seethe together, and put the feet therein even to the knees. This may he use three daies long, and then renew the same. Seethe Hyssope, and old figs in wine, and drink of it daily.

Other things more that are very requisite for this purpose.

FOr this is also good all that warmeth the breast, whereof there are many sorts, as two kinds of *Diaireos*, the which in the first Part, the 14. Chapter. §. 1. are described: Likewise *Diatragacanthum calidum*, which is also there described in the 21. §. Meade is

also very good against the cold Cough, and all diseases of the Lights, which is taught to be prepared diverily in the eight part. What pectoral potions the Apothecaries have in use, the same is shewed in the second part, the second Chapter, and 2. §. Elecampane Wine taketh away all cold diseases of the breast. The same doth also oyl of Lillies, of sweet Almonds, oyl of Poppy heads, trochises of *Diapenidion*, *Looch de Pina*, which is a confection of Pine apple kernels, *Looch sanum*, and chiefly *Looch de Scilla*, roasted Figs, Dates, the decoction of an old Cock, with wild Saffron seed wherein Hyssop, Ireos, Raisins or Nettle seeds is decocted. Elecampane, Saffron, and all that is prescribed for the cold rheume. And because that these losinges, *Looch*, or confections are many times rehearsed in this our book of Physick, therefore it cannot be misadvised that we describe them, and other such like here, and begin first with *Diapenidion*, which is made thus, Take Sugar pennets two ounces, sweet and bitter Almonds, and white Poppy seed, of each three drachmes and one scruple, Cinamom, Cloves, Ginger, juice of Licorice, Dragagant, Starch, Gum, seeds of Melons, of Gourds, and Cucumbers, all pilled, of each one drach. and a half, Camphire seven grains, make thereof small powder being all beaten and chop, and with an ounce of this powder, 12. ounces of Sugar, and seethe it away with water of Folefoot unto losinges, and then let it melt in your mouth. This Sugar is very good for all old coughs, for hoarsnesse, for digestion, and coughing up of flegme.

Looch de Pina is thus prepared; Take fresh Pingels sixteen drachmes, steep them all night in the water of Folefoot, sweet Almonds, parched Hasel nuts, Dragagant, Gum, Licorice, Starch, Venus hair, and Ireos, of each one quarter of an ounce, 17. ounces, Dates, one ounce and a half of bitter Almonds, Honey of Roses, fresh Butter, and white Sugar, of each one quarter of ounce, 18. ounces and three quarters of clarified Hony, cut and pownd all that is to be cut and pownded, and then temper them together with the said Honey, this is passing good for all coughs.

There is also another *Looch* or confection, the which is called *Sanum & experum*, which is hail and approved. Take Cinamom, Hyssop, and Licorice, of each one quarter of an ounce Jujubes and Sebestes, of each sixteen, Currans, Figs, and Dates, of each one ounce, Fenegreek two ounces and a half, Venus hair half a handful, Annis seed, Fennel, Ireos, Linseed, and white Mints, of each one quarter of an ounce, seethe them together in 24. ounces of water unto the half part, then strain it out, and put to this decoction 12. ounces of Sugar pennets, seethe this together again untill it be through thick, afterwards mingle the other things therein cut and beaten small, prepared Pingles, one ounce and a quarter, as is before said, peeled Almonds, juice of Licorice, Dragagant, Gum, and Starch, of each one quarter of an ounce, roots of Violets one drachme, stir them well together untill it be white. It is very good against the Cough, and hoarsnesse that cometh of cold: it melloweth and emptieth the breast of all flegmatick matter.

Looch de Scylla which is of Squills, is very forcible to cleanse the Cough, slime, and flegme out of the breasts, and to separate the same: it asswageth all pain and smart of the breast, and it may be thus prepared: Take the very best and purest part of a Squil parted asunder with a woodden knife, stamp it with a woodden pestel, and wring out the juice; take so much Hony as there is juice, and seethe it together untill it be thick enough.

Of an old Cough. §. 7.

IF the Cough be waxen old, and so fierce that it will not let one sleep, then doth *Rasis* ordain to take Myrrhe, Styrax, and *Opium*, of each a like quantity, and to make pils thereof, and take one or two of them. It is often shewed before how hurtfull the *Opium* is, whereby every man may know how to deal therewith, this following is safer: Take sirupe of Poppy heads half an ounce or more, or eat a little Poppy seed with Sugar, both of them make the Rheume thick, and to stay the same that falleth into the breast. Item, take a handfull of Hussop, cut Licorice, and Currans, of each three ounces, Fenegreek and Linseed, of each one ounce and a half, beat them and seethe in two pints of water untill two parts remain, cover the pot with a funnel, and recive the vapour or reke at the mouth.

And for that the Cough is a very common disease, therefore will it not be amisse briefly to comprehend what things are commodious for this Cough. First, if it proceed of heat, then are good for it the Violets and *Sebestes*, Dragagant, Gum of Arabia, Starch, white Poppy seeds, Jujubes, Mulberies, Muscilage of Barly, of Fleawort, of Quince seeds, peeled

peeled Melon seeds, Gourd seeds, Cucumbers seeds, Purslain, Endive, Lettice, Melons, Almonds, Sugar pennets, oyl of Violets, of water Lilies and such like. Conserves of water Lilies do cool and moysten the breasts, the throat and the tongue, and chiefly the sirup of sweet Pomgranates.

If the Cough proceedeth of cold (and if it be grown old) then are these things following very profitable, hasel Nuts, with hony, do ripen the Cough, Smallage, Hyssop, Venus hair, Mallowes, Scabious, Betony, wild Thyme, white Mints, Marjoram, great and small water Mints, and *Chamedrios*; Of Roots, Licorice, Ireos, Squills, Lilies, Elecampane, the roots of blew Flowerdeluce, Garlick boyled, Calamus, Seseli, Pease, Fenegreek seeds, Nettle seed, Anniseed, and Fennel seed, Linseed, seeds of *Verbascum* peeled, and seeds of Hollihocks, which are both good in heat and cold. Of Fruits, Figs, Dates, Bayberries, Raisins, sweet and bitter Almonds prepared with Starch, are special good for all Coughes, sweet oyl, Pingles, sweet Pomgranates, and Jujubes. Of all Spices is very commodious Pepper, Cinamom, Saffron, and Cardamom. Further also of Gums, *Bdellium*, *Assa fœtida*, *Myrrha*, *Galbanum*, *Mastix*, *Sagapenum*, *Sarcocolla*: Likewise Sulphur, Hony, Sugar, and all that is sweet, Sugar pennets, Sugar candy, *Agaricus*, Hony combs, swallowed down or mixed with salves, and fine Bolus. Of Compositions, are Losinges, Barly water, many confections, Sirups, and *Manus Christi*, whereof one that hath understanding and knowledge, is to make choice of such as he shall see to be requisite for the cause.

In like manner is highly commended for this the Conserves of Rosemary; all *Oxymels* are good for the Cough, specially they that have *Agaricus* in them; notwithstanding in grievous Coughes is to be used the advice of a learned Physitian. For the Cough in children Bathing is hurtful; the drink of their Nurses shall be water and Sugar. Also it is very good for to put alwaies Sugar, or the powder of Licorice in their pap.

All sowr things are ill, and contrary to the Cough, as Vinegar, Verjuice, all sowr drinks and meats, and all that is cold of nature, or in any wise sharp, are streightly forbidden.

What ordinance or government of life is to be observed (be it in cold or hot Agues) you may see above in the second part, the second Chapter, and §. 2. where it is at length described. But this is onely yet to be therewith annexed, that in all moist phlegmatick Coughes, whether they proceed of heat or cold, reasonable walking, standing, and watching is most meet, by reason that the matter which causeth the Cough, doth alwaies fall more into the breast sleeping then waking.

What is good for coughing up of Phlegme. §. 8.

Albeit we have told here before what raiseth the Phlegme, and is commodious for the looling thereof, yet can it not be but expedient to rehearse here again certain of the forementioned things, and to adde other remedies more thereto, whereby the phlegme might be furthered and brought up. The Sirup of Licorice is one of the most precious remedies for the Cough; after that the sirup of Horehound, *De Prassio*, and of Hyssope, *De Hyssopo*. If there be much tough phlegme at hand, then is *Oxymel* to be tempered and drunken with Barley waters. Waters of Colefoot and Elecampane are passing good and forcible to loose the flegme; likewise *Manna*, and Sugar pennets.

Will you then have good Tabulates for this? then take Starch, peeled Melon seed, Gourd seed, Cucumber seed, and Pompeon seed of each (being all peeled) half an ounce, Dragagant and Gumme, of each three quarters of an ounce. Licorice one quarter of an ounce, Sugar pennets two ounces, Saffron 4. grains, Sugar candy two ounces, Violets one quarter of an ounce, seeds of white *Sesamum* half an ounce, of the sirup of Violets 12. ounces, dissolve the Sugar therein until that you (with other things therein tempered) may call Tabulates. If you will make a confection thereof, (like as it will best frame unto it) then seethe not the Sugar too hard.

And you are to anoint the breast with these things following: Take Ducks grease one ounce, fresh Butter half an ounce, oyl of *Sesamum* and of Violets, one ounce and a half, Saffron one scruple, Graves grease and Wax, of each three quarters of an ounce, melt them together, and wash it twice with Barley water wherein some Saffron is sodden, then mingle Saffron amongst it, which is then put amongst it, because it is special good for the breast, for all manner of Coughes and heavy breath, therefore is it to be used at all times in their meat.

Will you have the ſalve more maturating? then temper amongſt it the muſcilage of *Seſamum* and Fenegreek, of each one ounce, with a little molten Wax. And if ſo be that the belly, the fundament, the privities, and all parts round about them be anointed with it, then will all Rheumes be ſtayed therewith. Item, the breaſt anointed with the ſalve *Althea*, ripeneth Phlegme, and riddeth it very much. The like doth alſo the pectoral unguent deſcribed in the end of §. 5. In like manner alſo a ſtomachical powder, which is expreſſed in the firſt Part, Chap. 13. and §. 1. of the Memory, the which is alſo good for the Cough, and for the Lights. Item, M. *Triſtrams* water, and many other remedies that are alſo diſcovered before in §. 6.

And for that there is written much of the Rheume or Catarrhe before, whereof the ſaid Cough is moved, and there is likewiſe much hereafter to be ſaid alſo of the ſhortneſſe of breath, the which infirmities are to have one and the ſelf ſame kind of remedies: therefore we will proceed now and ſpeak of other maladies which the Breaſts and Lights are ſubject unto, and how they are beſt to be cured.

Of a ſhort panting Breath. §. 9.

OF this heavy and panting breath hath been mentioned before; that the Lights are by nature ordained an inſtrument, dwelling place, aud diſtributors of the breath, therefore (albeit they be ſubject to many diſeaſes) yet can there not a more dangerous accident happen unto any, then that the breath be hindered, or cannot be drawn or yeeld forth again, for that whenſoever this chanceth, then will the affected party be quickly choaked. Yet doth it come to paſſe oftentimes, that if any do get a ſhort panting breath, of which if he be not ſoon rid, death muſt needs enſue; therefore are all Phyſitians full of care and trouble in the cure of the ſame.

And whereas this malady proceedeth of many kinds of cauſes, therefore have the Phyſitians given it many kinds of names, and ſpecially the Grecians, which difference we are alſo (as much as is poſſible) for to imitate and follow.

That we may therefore firſt ſpeak of the purſiveneſſe or ſhortneſſe of the breath, and whence the ſame proceedeth, we will indeed firſt of all deſcribe three ſorts of purſiveneſſe, as *Dyſpnœa*, *Aſthma*, and *Orthopnœa*.

Dyſpnœa is, when the breath is drawn painfully and out of courſe, and therefore all that are ſo affected be called *Dyſpnœici*, who do draw their breath with great labour through the narrowneſſe of the breaſt and of the lights, and are more troubled in drawing it in, then in letting the ſame out again.

Aſthma is an uneaſie drawing of breath, where there is more grief in letting out the breath, then in taking of it in, ſo that this happeneth with a ſtrong wheaſing and noiſe, yea with ſuch narrowneſſe of the breaſt, that it ſeemeth that the party would thereby yeeld up the ghoſt, and depart this world.

Orthopnœa hath both theſe accidents, that cometh commonly ſo ſtrong, that the ſick perſon (if he be as feeble as he may) muſt yet notwithſtanding be alwaies upright for fear of ſtifling; and theſe perſons do find indeed, that when they are upright, then they draw their breath in, and let it out the eaſier: ſo that *Dyſpnœa* is cauſed onely through the feebleneſſe of the drawing in of the breath; *Aſthma*, for lack of this force that ought to drive out the ſuperfluous vapours out of the lights, and *Orthopnœa*, where that there wanteth vigour to draw the breath in, and again to let it out.

But theſe three infirmities of the Lights are very nigh of condition the one to the other, yet have they their ſeveral ſigns from what humours they proceed, which are chiefly cauſed of blood and flegme, but leſſe of *Cholera*, and very ſeldom of *Melancholia*. The cauſe of this purſiveneſſe may proceed as well of outward cold, as of unnatural heat, as alſo of falling, thruſting, and ſtriking, whereby any of the inward parts of the throat be tainted or pained, as Sinews, Arteries, Muſcles, Neck, and ſuch like, joyntly or particularly, whereby the breath is hindred, even as the ſame may be provoked by ſome ſudden ſtrong ſtirring of the body, peſtilent ayr, vapour or damp of Quickſilver. The inward cauſes are flegmatick matter throughout the whole body, or in any part thereof, the which for the moſt part infecteth the head and the lights, long and continual uſe of any choaking and binding things.

Item,

Item if there were any impoſtume in any part about the breaſt, as in the throat, pipe of the lights, as in the Squinancy, pain of the ſtomach, ſuffocation of the mother, and ſuch like. Alſo when as any Rheume falleth into the lights, which is comprehended under the foreſaid parts.

The outward cauſes muſt be underſtood by the Patient himſelf; to wit, whether he have led an unruly life, whether he have eaten much fruit, much Swines fleſh, much Beef, or have been fed with much Verjuice, Vinegar, Medlars, or Cheſtnuts, all which do breed a ſhort breath: but if this ſhortneſſe of breath do come of the Squinancy, look for the ſigns of the ſame, and likewiſe for other incident ſickneſſes, as for the ſigns of the Pleuriſie, inflammation of the lights, ſuffocation of the mother, ſuperfluity of flegme, even as of either of them is ſufficiently ſpoken in his place.

Concerning the remedies for theſe ſickneſſes, we will firſt of all ſhew in what manner the Patient is to behave himſelf, for that helpeth much, and chiefly, for that theſe diſeaſes do many times ſo mooter and plague people (for the ſpace of many years) that they can neither live nor dye.

Becauſe then this purſiveneſſe, coughes, and ſhortneſſe of breath are cauſed of all humours of a mans body, which is blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and *Melancholia*: therefore we will for brevity ſake, declare no certain rule of living, to the end that every one of diſcretion might know to rule himſelf according to the nature of every Patient, and other circumſtances, as alſo by many other inſtructions that are deſcribed here and there in this book.

Notwithſtanding to frame an introduction thereto, this is the beginning. If in caſe that this purſiveneſſe proceed of tough flegme that obſtructeth the breaſt, you ſhall know it by this, to wit, if the Patient be plagued with a grievous and pinching ſhortneſſe of breath, and that moſt at all times when as this tough ſlime ſhall be removed, to wit, two houres after midnight, even untill the morning.

And if that he through want of ſleep, can ſcant come to himſelf through weakneſſe of wit, with a ſtrange pleaſant taſte of his mouth, and caſting out of ſalt flegme, whereby that the foot and the eyes wax bleak, the breaſt is without heat, or with very little: yet the breaſt being burthened with a grievous Cough and ſhort breath; thereto cometh alſo a heavy fraighted head, litherneſſe of the whole body, a ſlow, feeble, and ſometimes alſo a ſtill pulſe. And if the matter which is impacted in the breaſt be ſtirred, then trembleth the Patient: yet with theſe other ſignes more are many alterations, which are incident unto them, according to the importance of the Ague, as it cometh to paſſe.

Of the ſix unnatural things, which are called Res non naturales, *whereto is alſo added a rule of dyet for the Purſiveneſſe.* § 10.

IN the Introduction of this book of Phyſick, in the eleventh Chapter, is a brief diſcourſe of theſe ſix unnatural things, the which the learned call *Non naturales*, whereof we then promiſed to ſpeak more at large.

And to the end this may be orderly effected, therefore are we to ſpeak ſomewhat thereof at large; and to that end, becauſe the ſame is very commodious for many ſickneſſes already mentioned, and others that are yet to be deſcribed hereafter. But theſe are not therefore called unnatural, becauſe they are contrary or beſides nature; for ſleeping, watching, &c. are not contrary unto nature, but only by reaſon they have not received their natural off-ſpring of blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and *Melancholia*, wherewith the nature of man is united and joyned together: and when they agree orderly together, nature will be ſupported by them, eſpecially for that they are but accidental things, that are not nature her ſelf, but be the furtherers and preſervers of the ſame: and by reaſon thereof have gotten theſe names, as followeth.

The *Ayr* is of the learned decreed for the firſt, wherein they that have a ſhort breath are to obſerve this rule, to wit, that men are for the ſame to chuſe a ſubtile, warm, and dry Ayr.

Contrariwiſe, men are to ſhun the cold and moiſt, and chiefly the South wind,

for

for that oftentimes is an occasion of a narrow breast or pursiveneſſe. But if you cannot get such an Ayr, then make fire in your chamber of Juniper Wood, and of a Bay tree, Cypress wood, Beechen wood, Oaken wood, and such like.

Item, make a fume with Myrrhe, *Laudanum*, *Ambra*, Musk, and red Stytax, three ounces; temper them all together in Sage, wild Thyme, Pennyroyal, and all manner of odoriferous herbs. Or if one be kept in a Stove, the fame muſt be made but meetly warm. All places next to the earth, and all vaulted chambers muſt he refrain. The windowes of his chamber muſt ſtand towards the East and North, the which in the heat of the morning untill noon are to be kept open, and afterwards ſhut up; and when the Sun beginneth to go down, then to open the ſame a gain, thereby to refreſh the ayr.

All dwellings that ſtand beſide ſtill ſtanding pooles, are to be avoided. In like manner alſo all dark, cloudy, thick, and ſtinking ayr. And when you are to go abroad, then is the Pomander following to be carried in your hand, and ſmelt to continually. Take *Spica* of Indi, Galangal, and Mace, of each one drach, *Laudanum* half an ounce, Frankincenſe, *Sanderaca*, of each half a drach. Musk and *Ambra*, of each two ſcruples, make thereof a Pomander with Malmſey. Look alſo that the chamber of his dwelling be ſtrewed with herbs of hot natures: but from Rue and Smallage let him beware, for that they hurt the brains. Or ſprinkle often the chamber with Wine wherein the ſame herbs are fodden.

Motion. Motion: *Motus* is accounted the ſecond unnatural thing; touching this is commanded in the ſtraightneſſe of the breaſt, that whenſoever any ſuch do riſe in the morning, that he ſhall go forthwith and eaſe himſelf. and beware how he wear any clothes that are narrow about the neck and breaſt: yet muſt he wear clothes well lyned, but no lyning of any Beaſts that frequent the water, or of Wolves. He muſt alſo not wear any heavy thing on his head; yet muſt he ſee that his head be well covered alway, and defended from the cold, with a light Cap or Hat. He muſt alſo give himſelf to meetly ſtout walking, or to ride upon an eaſie trotting horſe, or to ſhoot in a handbow, or uſe ſuch like exercises.

In the evening one houn before, and one hour after meat, ſhall he exerciſe himſelf, yet not above his ability, ſo that the ſhort breath be not moved too much, wherewith Venery is alſo comprehended, for that it is a deadly poyſon to a full ſtomach, by reaſon that the ſame ought to he done ſix hours after meals. But if theſe exerciſes cannot be atchieved by reaſon of great feebleneſſe and other occaſions, then inſtead of them the patient is to be well rubbed with hot clothes over all his outward or utmoſt parts, even as the ſame is ſufficiently taught in the ſecond part of the firſt Chpter, and §. 3. and in other places. This rubbing may be alſo well effected with oyl of Camomil, Dill, or with Sallad oyl, and in ſuch manner, that if the ſhortneſſe of breath be extream, then in the beginning is he to be futhed, and rubbed mightily, and afterwards very mildly: and this is all to be done in ſuch ſort as the patient may well abide and ſuffer it.

If there be great weakneſſe approaching, then let the clothes be fumed with Musk, Amber, Cinamom, Lignum Aloes, Gallia Muſcata, and ſuch like; or lay on thoſe parts certain clothes which have been wetted in Malmſey, or any other kind of Wine, wherein Cloves, Galangal, Mace, Spica, &c. are decocted.

Sleep. Sleep and watching are ſaid to be the third unnatural thing. And for this ſickneſſe is commanded that men give not themſelves to ſleep at any hand, be it at noon or evening, but onely two hours after meat: but it is better that one utterly forbear ſleeping a dayes: ſeven or eight hours long is the fitteſt time for ſleeping, yet the ſame may be diminiſhed or augmented according to the cuſtome of the ſick body, or his diet. Firſt they are to lye high with their head, and on the right ſide, untill the digeſture of the ſtomach be conſummated: and afterward a while on the left ſide, and then again on the right ſide, and to lye upon the belly is commodious for digeſture, but it is not good for the eyes. To lye upon the back is moſt perilous, and a cauſe of all diſeaſes of the brains, the Sinewes, the Palſie, the Frenzy, and ſuch like, becauſe that thereby all ſuperfluity of the humours do fall down backwards: contrariwiſe, meaſurable watching ſtrengtheneth much, yet according to the importance and cuſtome of nature, and power of natural humidities: for if one take not heed thereto, then cometh none other thereof, then all miſhap. How that all exceſſive watching ſhall be withſtood, is to be ſeen in the firſt part, the 12. Chapter, and 6. §.

Repletion and inanition are the fourth unnatural things, which the Latinists do call *Repletionem*.

Repletionem, and *Inanitionem*. You must have an especial care that the body be kept free from all superfluous humours, for thence do grow many and sundry infirmities, wherefore it is necessary that they be expelled in the morning through going to the stool, through the urine and sweating, and by all other such like means. And if so be that nature cause not all this of it self, then ought it to be compassed through the help of stronger means; and first to begin with the easiest remedies, that is, with meat and drink, but if the same cannot be perfected, then must other things be used according to the quality of the disease: but what serveth best for the grief in the breast (whereof we here do treat) shall be shewed hereafter.

The fifth part of the foresaid unnatural things is called of the learned *Accidentia animi*, which are things that concern the mind, as anger, rage, weeping, frightfulnesse, fear, heavinesse of the mind, sorrow and such like, wherof also proceed great sicknesses, and thereby this disease of the breast is especially increased, for that thereby are the rough flegmes in the breast drawn, and the bringing of them up hindred, therefore are all such sick folks to be alwayes merry and of good cheer.

The sixth and last part and unnatural thing is meat and drink, of which is to be chosen that is good, and to forbear all that is hurtful. For that is a general rule, that those so infected are never to be overladen with meat and drink. Also it is better that such do moderate themselves, taking at three times but a little, then at one time or two times to overcharge themselves with meat and drink. Secondly, that they swallow not down the meat unchewed. Thirdly, they that have a grief in their breast, are to forbear eating of all that is cold, moist, slimy, and astringent of nature, as unleavened bread, sodden fish, beef, inwards, and feet of all beasts; also Milk, Cheese and all that is dresst with Milk, Lettice, Purslain, Beetes, Spinage, &c. may he not eat. Meats that be good for him, are well raised white bread which is not above three dayes old, and bread wherein Annis seed, Licorice, Saffron, Cinamom, and Fennel is are baked.

Of flesh is to be chosen good Mutton, Veal, Lamb, Kids, Hares, Conies, Roe Bucks, and the lungs of a Fox. Of Fouls these are very commodious, Hens, Pullets, Capons, young Pigeons, Pheasants, Partriches, Blackbirds, wild Ducks rather boyled then rosted. Also three be good for him broths, Coleworts, Parsly, Fennel, Mints, Sage, and Hyssop, which are to be used often, but Turneps and Spinage very seldom; dry Figs, Raisins, and Currans eaten before dinner and supper are much commended. And his meat is to be dresst with Fennel seeds, Annis seed, Comin, Carawayes, Pepper, and such like things more. Pease porredge and Bean broth is also good for him to use: likewise Raisins decocted in Almond Milk, or Goats milk. To have his meat dresst with Sugar and Hony is very good, Vinegar or Verjuyce tempered with any kind of Spice, as Saffron, Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloves, Cinamom, or Cardamom. In stead of Sallad oyl is fresh butter, Barrowes grease, and Goose grease good for him. Further all they that be grieved in the breast, shall occupie much these herbs in their drink and otherwise, as Venus hair, Hyssop, Horehound, Elecampane, and Saffron.

For his drink, Wine is not utterly forbidden, but he may drink some small draughts, and that the oftener. Sweet and pleasant Wine is most wholesome for him, tempered in the Sommer with Well water, and in Winter with decocted water, notwithstanding that good sweet red Wine were as good. But if the patient will not gladly drink Wine, then is this mead following to be prepared for him; Take three quarts of the water of Cinamom and Saffron, of each one drachme and a half, Hyssop one drachme, seethe it so long untill the fourth part be sodden away; then put thereto twelve ounces of hony, and seethe it again till the third part be sodden away, scum it, and then let it run through a cloth. Of all Wines the Rhenish Wine is most commended, brued a little with water, for it fumeth not into the head, but hasteneth towards the bladder, and carryeth the matter with it. Sweet Lemons, Pomgranats and Quince pears, being well sugred, are also permitted for the appetite, but Marmalad strengthened much the breast and lights.

This is then the order to be observed in this sickness, chiefly when as it proceedeth of flegme, and not for any short time, but the same is still to be continued, for as we have already shewed, this sickness is of long continuance, and perilous, so that if one do his very best therein, yet it is in young persons very hard, and in old folks almost unpossible to be cured. And although there be many sicknesses of the breast (like as is already rehearsed, and shall be yet again spoken of hereafter) yet is there no evidenter means for to

know

know whether the Lights be infected or fraighted, then through the Cough, and by that which is cast up in the coughing. It is also to be noted, whether the breathing be unsavie, slow and wheasing, &c. For the troublesomnesse of the pain, and of the fetching up of the flegme, do bewray the matter which causeth the disease and ulcerations of the Lights, therefore must all Physicians look diligently unto it; for when the matter is known, then it is easily to be discerned, whereof this grief in the breast is caused. This may suffice for this present.

Of the breast oppressed with Phlegme. §. 11.

WHen any such sicknesses do light upon men, then must they be known and discerned (as is already recited) therefore we will write first of *Phlegme*, as of the most common infection of the breast. In this sicknesse is first the *Basilica* to be opened in the right arm, letting out four or five ounces of blood, and afterwards this drink following to be used.

Take ten or twelve Figs, Dates, Smallage seeds, Fennel seeds, *Veneris* hair, Hyssop and Horehound; of each five drachmes, seethe them together unto about the half, take about three ounces thereof, and temper therewith this Confection following, and take such once in every three dayes, or one ounce in every four, five or six dayes, for it exceeding expelleth the superfluous matter from the breast.

Take the juice of Licorice, Hyssop and *Veneris* hair, of each ten drachmes, Pepper, bitter Almonds, Aristologie, Cresses seeds, and Nettle seed, of each three drachmes, Hony as much as is needful for to make a confection; the hony must be boyled and clarified. But above all it is to be advised, that after letting blood he take one drachme, or four ℈. of *Pillulæ de Agarico*, which are much commended for this sicknesse Or use these pils following: *Pillulæ de Hiera Compositæ, Aureatum*, of each two scruples, make thereof seven or nine pils with sirupe of Roses, and take thereof twain early in the morning; and five hours after that take a draught of lean Hen broth; and then one hour afterwards break your fast. The next day, take in the morning this preparative Sirupe; *de Bizantiis, de Calaminthâ, de Glycirrhiza*, of each half an ounce, water of Cicory, of Violets and Balm, of each one ounce, temper them all together, and drink thereof eight dayes long fasting. When this is done, then take this purgation following: Take *Electuarii Indi*, two drach. *De Psyllio* half an ounce; temper them all together in a little warm wine, and drink it in the morning early. Some do counsel also, that after purging heed be taken that one vomit with beaten Mustard seed and Hony; for that doth vehemently expell the matter off the stomach. And if that you perceive the matter to be cast up, then take the water of blew Flower-deluce, Hyssop and Marjoram, of each one ounce, water of Folefoot two ounces, Sugar half an ounce; temper them and use them every morning for the space of one whole week; afterwards take three ounces of new Cassie, and water of Folefoot wherein two scruples of *Rhapontica*, and Spica half a scruple were steeped, drink it warm, and fast six hours after it.

This unguent following may also be used every day, anointing the belly warm therewith, covering it with a piece of warm fur; Take oyl of Saffron, oyl of Camomil, of each three quarters of an ounce, Ducks and Badgers grease, of each one quarter of an ounce, Saffron half a scrup. white Pepper, Ireos, and Rue, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Wax as much as is needful, thereof to make an unguent or salve.

Here is also to be noted, that all sowre and eager things, and all that is drest therewith, as sowre Pomgranats, Orenges, Lemons, and such like are very hurtful: In like manner is also grosse sowre wine and Sallad oyl very hurtfull. These pils following are to be prepared: Take good pot Aloe, three drachmes, *Agaricus* and the root of Polypody, of each one quarter of an ounce, Coloquint one drach. *Spica*, Ginger, and Indie salt, of each half a scruple; beat them all together, and steep them in the juice of Roses and of Endive, of each two ounces keep it in a warm place, stir it about till it wax dry, then afterwards powre thereon again two ounces of the juice of Marjoram gentle, and let it dry also. Thirdly, temper therewith two ounces of the juice of small Endive, and half a scruple of Saffron: when it is dry, then take the weight of a drach. thereof, make pils of it; of which take alwayes one every fifth day before supper, and one more two hours after. This may every such patient use all his life long in all countries. The like also when he useth the preparative potions, if he be bound in his body, he may freely take one of them in the evening before meat.

These

These pils have great force to preserve health, for they cleanse the breast, the stomach, and the liver. He must eat every week a piece of green Ginger, and fast at least four hours after it.

In winter time must he strew upon his head twice a week, this powder following: Take Lignum Aloes one drachme, Mace one quarter of an ounce, Stechas, Marjoram gentle, and grosse Marjoram, of each one scruple, Roses, Ivory, and Sandaraca, of each one drachme and a half, beat all small and temper them together. For a confection, take *Spec. Aromatici Rosati, Trochiscos de Rosis & de Spica*, of each half a drach. six ounces of white Sugar, make thereof Tabulates, and eat thereof after meat. If you use not green Ginger, is then also good for you, the Tabulates of *Diatreos Salomonis*, and more confections that serve for this end, even as it is described in the discovery of *Asthma*. There is a fume also to be made for this patient, with Myrrhe, Costus roots, Saffron, Cassia wood, Aristologie, or *Galbanum*, which liketh him best, each alone, or mixt together. Also he is every evening to wash his feet, even too beneath the knees in warm fresh water, wherein Roses and Violets, of each two handfuls, Mints, Marjoram, and Stechas, of each one handful, have been sodden.

Of the right pursiveneſſe with a sore old Cough through tough Phlegma *in the breast, which is called With one word,* Asthma. §. 12.

BY this name *Asthma*, some later Physitians comprehend the three foresaid species of pursiveneſſe, to wit, *Dispnœa*, *Asthma* and *Orthopnœa*, for that the breath in these three sorts is hardly drawn, which is perdventure because all the diseases of the breast and the Lights have a natural participation together, that they are very hardly to be discerned, even as may be well observed out of these descriptions following, where the lights and breast commonly are comprehended together: nevertheleſſe they have partly their difference, whereof we (as far as is possible) shall give good instructions.

It hepneth also oftentimes that these flegmatick humours do fall out of the head into the lights and breast, that they fill them full, and if then that nature be not so strong that she can avoyd or consume the tough slime, then will it corrupt there, and convert into that, whereof then (if it be not looked to) the *Hectica* or *Phthisis*, which is the consumption, is wont to follow, as hereafter shall appear. Therefore is this *Asthma* to be alwayes prevented; for when it beginneth to be confirmed, then is there no more help.

As much as then concerneth the order of living in this sickneſſe, he must (as much as is possible rule himself according to these foresaid ordinances; for which all they that are vexed with *Asthma*, are to have twice a week cups fastned on the their buttocks without picking; what is further fit, as to open the breast, and to bring up flegme, you have good remedies in the second Chapter of the cough, and yet more not long before in the 8. §. that may stand also in some stead for this purpose.

Now follow divers confections and other medicines that are good for *Asthma*: Take Sage, *Veneris* hair, Folefoot leaves, Lingwort, Violet leaves, and Hyssop, of each a handfull, Pennireyal and Thyme; of each half an handful, flowers of Bugloſſe, Violets, Burrage, and Cicory, of each half so much, Annis seed, and Fennel seed, and seeds of Mallowes, of each half an ounce, Elecampane and Licorice, of each three quarters of an ounce, Parsly and Polypody roots, of each half an ounce, ten or twelve Figs, Currans four ounces, prepared Agarick three drachmes, *Spica*, Squinant, Galangal, and Cinamom, of each half a drachme, Ginger and grains: seethe this all together, with a mild fire in sufficient water, untill there do remain about a pint, wring and strain it well out, then put as much Sugar unto it as you think good, and let it seethe to the thickneſſe of Hony, use this Lambative, and lick thereof as much and as often as you please.

The confection of Currans, which are used of all Apothecaries, is thus prepared: Take Piony roots half an ounce, dried Hyssop, Baulme, and Harts tongue, of each half a handfull, Licorice cut small half an ounce; seethe these all together in sufficient rain water, wring it hard out, and strain it through a cloth: put in this decoction washt Currans that be well pownded; seethe it once again with the decoction, and strain it through a cloth or hairn searce, put thereto a pound of Sugar, and let it seethe into a confection: it is special good to open the breast, to swage the Cough, and to maturate the flegme.

Another;

Another; Take washt Currans, or Raisins five ounces, seethe them softly untill they do swell, powre them into a sive and presse them through, put thereto twelve ounces of Sugar, and then seethe them together into a confection.

This confection following is good for the common people, take Colewort leaves with the red stalks, cut the stalks and ribs, stamp them in a woodden morter, and strain out the juice: let it seethe, and take as much Hony as there is juice; seethe it all together unto the thickneſſe of hony, stirring it alway about. If you will have it stronger, then temper some Saffron amongst it. Another; Take Hollihock roots one ounce, Elecampane half an ounce, let them seethe together in water of Violets; stamp them to pap, temper therewith one drachme of Chervil seed, and make thereof a confection with sodden Sugar, let them seethe together untill they be thick.

Or take one drachme of Rubarbe, oyl of fresh Almonds three ounces and two ounces of the cream of Milk, temper them together boyled on warm ashes, and use thereof often, for it is very good. Some put thereto one drachme of Rubarb more, which is not to be discommended.

Young children may have this kind of powder prepared; Take Mastick, Frankincense, and Citron pils, of each a like much, beat it small together, wherewith rub the child softly in the seam of his scull. Afterwards give him hereof to lick; take fresh oyl of sweet Almonds, temper therein white Sugar beaten; but if the obstruction of the breast be much, then temper amongst it *Trochiscos de Agariso*, or give him the powder thereof to drink; in like manner also Rubarb with Spica of Indie, with Cinamom, or Squinant, according to the importance of the cause. Old folks may use this as well as young children.

How commodious the Cassia is for all sore Coughs, is sufficiently declared in our Introduction. But for the pain in the breast, it is needfull that it be tempered with Agarick, or some other thing, according to the quality of the sickneſſe. But for this is especial heed to be taken for women with child, that it be not given them without great cause, because it maketh pain or ach in the belly.

Item, take Sulphur vive two grains, temper it with a little Hony, and so take it in, for it is marvellous good.

There is also to be had ready at some Apothecaries a costly compound *Trochiscus de Sulphure*, or called *Adulphi*, and is thus prepared; Take losinges of Cole, Dragegant, and Sugar pennets of each half an ounce, Ginger two scruples, Licorice three drachmes, Ireos one scruple, Hyssop, Nettle seed, Rosemary flowers, Saffron and Sulphur vive, of each seven grains, mix it with *Looch sanum*, and form trochisces thereof, take a little of it, letting it melt alone in the mouth, and use it often.

They make also a confection of Brimstone; take Sulphur vive one scruple, mix it with fresh Butter, and Muscilage of Linseed, or Elacampane one ounce, take thereof often, and a little at once.

The Confection of Fox lights, that is, *Looch de pulmone Vulpis*, is above all other remedies, for the Asthma (which is a shortneſſe of breath) very much commended; for it is not onely good for a sore Cough and short breath, but it healeth and cleanseth all ulcers of the breast and Lights. And for the consumption it excelleth all other remedies, and is made thus; Take prepared Fox lights, the juice of Licorice, Annis seed, Fennel seed, and Venus hair, of each half an ounce, clarified Sugar seven ounces and a half; beat these together, and decocted with Sugar in the water of Folefeet leaves, temper it into a confection.

Hereafter follow some good Potions for this shortneſſe of breath; Take Sebestes, Figs, and Dates, of each four, Venus hair, Violets, Currans, and Licorice, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Poppy seeds one ounce, Cinamom one quarter of an ounce, Annis seed, Fennel, Agrimony, Hyssop, of each one ounce, twenty Jujubes, Sugar or Hony five ounces, three or four pints of water; let this seethe together untill the third part be sodden away, strain the liquor through a cloth, and put the Sugar thereto or Hony, and let it seethe again untill it be clear.

Item, take three quarters of an ounce of Figs, Dates, Horehound, Smallage seed, Fennel, Roses, Venus hair, Hyssop and Licorice, of each five drachmes; seethe them as before, or to the half.

The common people may seethe water with hony and Hyssop; and as the shortneſſe of breath beginneth to lessen, he must lay one drachme of Agaricus in the water of Betony

and Hyssop to steep, and temper amongst it some hony of Roses, and so drink it together. Also the common Mead, and Sugar water is good to drink.

Another Potion; Take a pint and an half of white wine, steep therein one handfull of Horehound; let it seethe together untill the third part, strain it and put thereto six ounces of clarified Hony; let it seethe a little together, and scum it diligently, whereof the patient is to drink every day two or three ounces. Some do take three ounces of honey, and do melt therein half an ounce of Turpentine washt, or as much *Oxymel*: both are good and sure.

A marvellous good medicine which is highly esteemed in Turky. Take the liver of a Wolf, the Milt, Lights, and brains; salt well the brains, and take of these four of each a like much, let them be dried well that they may be pounded: Give the patient thereof one quarter of an ounce with a little fresh broth three dayes one after another in the morning fasting, and let him fast afterwards five or six hours. The sick party must take his drink through the Wolfs throat; and when this is so done, they report that they (which use the same) be from henceforth freed of it all the year following; but if it return not within twelve moneths, that then it will never come again. And if the have this sickness any more afterwards, they advise that one should make a lace of the Wolfs maw, wear the same all his life time on his naked body, for thereby should he be certainly freed of this sickness. But to try these things is the best way.

Water distilled of Elecampane, or broth wherein it is decocted is very good, and chiefly if it be mingled therewith.

Hereafter are some things described, which the diseased may hold under his tongue without chewing as big as a bean, and swallow it down by little and little.

Take *Looch de Pino* one ounce and a half, Sugar pennets half an ounce, pownd them together.

Item, take *Looch de Farfaria* (called *ad Asthma*) as much as you think meet, and as much pownded Hollihock roots, make a hard confection thereof with prepared hony or Sugar. And if any do resist these weak things, then shall he in the stead thereof use *Diapenidion* described in this Chapter and 6. §. And if it happen (as it wonteth often) that the sick person by reason of this cough cannot sleep, then is he once or twice a week to take this potion when he goeth to bed.

Take placents of Ireos one drachme, the confection of *Philonium Romanum* half a scruple, temper it with one ounce and a half of Hyssop water, and at the same time strew on the top of the patients head this powder following; Take *Sandarca* one quarter of an ounce, Cloves one drachme, Mace two scruples, Roses, water Lillies, Violets, and Poppy heads, of each half a drachme Lignum Aloes one scruple, stamp each apart and temper them together.

Plaisters or Unguents for this Asthma.

TAke fat Dates and Figs, of each one ounce, Mallowes, Hollihock leaves, of each three handfulls, roots of Mallowes and of Hollihocks, of each half an ounce, cut them to pieces, and boyl them together into a pap, mix Pigeon dung amongst it, Turpentine, and Rosin, of each one ounce, the Muscilage of Linseed, and of Fenegreek as much as is needfull for to make a mild plaister, lay it warm upon the breast; the same doth also the fat sheeps wooll.

Item, Take Camfry roots, broad and narrow Plantain, Purslain, and Henbane, chop them smal and seethe them together in the water of Plantain and purslain untill it be thick, beaten well and mixt with Pomgranat pils, Acorn cups, Galles, and Myrtle seed (which have been steeped eight hours in warm water:) then strained out hard, and powred to the rest and boyled unto a little; afterwards mingle it with fine Bolus, the meal of Lupines, and Barly meal, of each half an ounce, Gummi Helenii one quarter of an ounce, Wax and Turpentine as much as is needfull for to make a meetly thick plaister, then spread it on leather and lay it upon the breast. The unguent Althea is very good to anoint the breasts withall, as the same is often here before commanded to be used.

Item, anoint the breasts with the oyl of Wall flowers, of Bayes and Dill tempered together or each apart. Or take oyl of Violets and of sweet Almonds, of each one ounce, Docks grease and butter, of each four ounces, Saffron two scruples, white Wax as much as needeth for to make a soft Unguent.

Certain

Certain excellent things in general. §. 13.

THese things following are much commended for all diseases of the breast, and for all coughs in general. First, the gum *Ammoniacum* dissolved in Barly water and hony, and taken: Aristology, bitter Almonds, and oyl of sweet Almonds dresst with all meats, boyled Sothernwood, Balsam wood, and the fruits of the same; prepared Coloquint is worderfull good for this, being used in pils: Cypres decocted in wine, confected Elecampane roots, Galbanum, the roots of blew Flower deluce, Myrrhe put into pils Agaricus, Coriander and Spikenard seed, rere egs: supt up, or Candles made thereof, Leeks with Barly water and hony, Nettles and their seed with Barly water and Hony, Woodbind, Sandarach, green Rue boyled in Vinegar, Squils are specially good rosted, or howsoever you will use them; for that they be commended and esteemed above all other medicines. Saffron tempered in the broth of a Cock, wild Saffron seed, the gum *Sagapenum* given in with Rue water, Sesely seed, Fox lungs prepared one drachme only, Hyssop and all that is prepared with this herb, is good for the lights and the whole breast, confected roots of the Star thistle *Eryngion*, conserve of Rosemary, and all that is made of Rosemary, Betony, Gilliflowers, and all that is made thereof; Nutmegs that are confected, do consume all superfluous humours, not onely of the lights, but also of all the inward parts, albeit that some suppose, that they are hurtfull for the Lights; Walnuts that are confected in Sugar or Hony, do warm the Lights and all inward parts, for which this thing following is very good. Take a sweet Pomgranat, cut it in four parts, Strew the pieces with Sugar candy, and bind them together again, binding or wrapping them in a moist cloth, and let them rost leisurably, then take out the coar, and eat it for a medicine. Conserves of Eyebright openeth all inward members, and all obstruction of the Lights, like as doth also the wine which is described in the first part against the diminishing of the sight.

Calamus which is confected, hath a special power for the oppilation of the Lights, and to open all inward obstructions.

Comin doth also the same, Caraway and Fennel confected, or eaten raw; likewise Fennel is good for all coughs, roughnesse of the throat, and hoarsnesse. Treacle and Mithridate or also very good for this. All losinges of *Diapenidion*, of dragagant, juice and sirupe of Licorice, and all kinds of *Oxymel* (as is already said) are altogether marvellous good for this disease. *Siliquæ* rosted in hr ashes are also good also against all shortnesse of breath, and all kinds of coughs: M. Tristrams water: In like manner both the sirupes of vinegar *Simplex* and *Compositus* are also special good for this purpose. Also all the forementioned Potions for the Cough and the breast, even as they are set down in the second Chapter §. 2. In like manner also a costly stomachical powder, which is described in the first part, the 12. Chap. §. 1. that may be also used for *Asthma*.

Of shortnesse of breath through Cholera. §. 14.

IN the beginning of the description of this shortnesse of breath we have shewed, that the same is caused very seldom of Cholera; and if the same should be caused thereby, then is the same yet to be cured through the same means, as in all places are expressed hereafter and before.

Therefore is here no special matter to treat of, but onely the signs that are of this sicknesse through Cholera, and afterwards to see wherewith to delay the heat.

As concerning the signs thereof, it commeth with great drought, heat, and gnawing about the breast, and the same rather in the right than in the left side, with a yellow colour all over the breast, wherewith cometh also a roughnesse of the tongue and of the throat, and especially about the time when the Cholera accustometh to move and stir, which is from three a clock untill nine in the day time, whereby the patient will also cast up small store of flegme, and that is yellowish: In his sleep appeareth yellow things, and fiery fantasies, as lighting, and such like. The pulse is hard, quick, and continual, except the patient had lost most part of his natural strength; the urine is thick, yellow and ruddy, but in the bottom clear and subtile,; yet do these signs alter with every mutation of an accident, according to the which every expert person may know to direct himself. These things following do cool the heat of the breast in general, and the inflammation

of

of the Lights, as Caſſia, new Conſerves of Roſes, Julep of Roſes, ſirupe of Roſes, and ſuch like; conſerves of Burrage, Bugloſſe, and their wine, if they be not expretly forbidden for ſome reaſon.

In like manner the Cherry wine, which is of a temperate nature. Item, Conſerve of Violets and Julep. conſerves of Cicorie do cleanſe all inward members of *Cholera*, driveth it out through the ſtool, and doth withſtand all Agues of Cholera. Peaches confected in Sugar are alſo a ſpecial comforative for all hot diſeaſes, for that they cool all inward members, like as doth alſo the conſerves of water Lillies.

Take the juyce of Chickweed, and Vervein, or the water wherein they are decocted (if you pleaſe) it is very good for all Coughs. Sirupe of the right Endive is ſpecial good for hot Lights, and for all inward hot parts. Likewiſe alſo Manna of himſelf and his confection, *Electuarium de Manna*, which is ready to be had at all Apothecaries.

Of the ſhortneſſe of breath through Melancholia. §. 15.

EVen ſo it is alſo with *Aſthma* through *Melancholia*, which is the through the heavy blood, that happeneth very ſeldom, wherof theſe are the ſignes; a right leaden colour of the face and the breaſt. running eyes, with great heavineſſe of the ſpirits, wherewith is alſo a fearfulneſſe, faintneſſe of heart, deſire to be ſolitary, eſpecially from nine of the clock in the day time, untill two or three in the night: he complaineth alſo of more abatement or lack of breath in the left than on the right ſide, and of little ſleep; he his alſo vexed with many heavy fantaſies, he cougheth up much thin ſpettle, and that with much ado: his water is thin, white and clear, his going to ſtool is lead coloured and hard.

There is heard much rumbling and wind in his breaſt and in all the body. Yet do theſe ſigns alter through divers occaſions, ſo that you muſt note the meat and drink that the patient hath accuſtomed himſelf to uſe before time.

How this diſeaſe is to be remedied and cured, you ſhall find in the firſt part, the 12. Chapter, §. 8. of Madneſſe, of *Melancholia*, and all that is ſaid in the third part, of the foul melancholike blood.

Of the ſhortneſſe of breathing or Purſiveneſſe through wind. §. 16.

WHereas there is any ſhort breath, or heavineſſe in the breaſt through wind, the ſame will be alwayes augmented through meats and medicines that ingender wind, as may well be noted through the rumbling and courſe of the wind in the breaſt and other places more.

For this muſt be uſed, Rue, and Penniroyal, of each one ounce and a half, *Serapium*, *Opoponacum*, of each one drachme, Comin one ounce and a half; all this being beaten together, make thereof a ſalve with molten Wax, and anoint the breaſt therewith very warm. This ſalve is alſo very good for heavy breathing that proceedeth of groſſe tough matter, and that is impacted into the Lights: for it ſeparateth and conſumeth the ſame. What further might be done for this, that may you ſufficiently perceive by all the forementioned Treatiſe, wherin hath been ſpoken of this ſickneſſe. For this ſhort and ſore breath through wind cannot be alone by it ſelf; but there muſt be with it either Cholera, Phleghma, or Melancholia, or blood: of all which there is ſufficiently written.

Of the ſpetting of blood through ſome diſeaſe of the Lights. §. 17.

THe ſpetting of blood may come of many occaſions of the brains, which are wont to be eaſed through bleeding at the noſe, whereof is written in the firſt part the eight Chapter, 7. §.

Secondly, through any hurting or bruſing of the throat or the mouth, for which you are to look in the firſt part the 13. Chapter.

Thirdly, through hurting of the gums, whereof we have ſufficiently mentioned in the firſt part; alſo the ſame is ſometimes cauſed of the Lights, breaſt and ſtomach, alſo the Liver and of the mother, &c. This ſpettting of blood do the Greeks call *Hemoptoin*, whereof we will write at this preſent.

The cauſe of this bleeding may happen through falling, thruſting, and ſuch like outward occaſions of the breaſt, or of any Horſleech drunken, through great heat, or great cold, ſtrong coughs to cry loud, to vomit much and vehemently, through long uſe of hot peppered meats, or through uſe of Onions and Garlick, through much ſubtil blood, through neglect of accuſtomed letting blood, and through ſome diſeaſe of the lights; or when a vein chanceth to break, whereof hereafter we will diſcourſe in particular.

The ſigns of this ſpetting of blood that cometh out of the breaſt, or out of the lights are, that when the ſame proceedeth out of the breaſt, then will there be felt great pain in the ſame; and contrariwiſe, when it proceedeth out of the lungs, there will be felt very little pain, the ſpetting blood out of the breaſt is not ſo perilous as that from the Lights. But when there is a vein broken open, then runneth it moſt abundantly. If it be cauſed of any other inconvenience, as of impoſtumations, bruiſes, or hurts, then cometh up but a little blood, and that full of ſcum.

When as then a ſick man through haking without coughing fetcheth up blood, it cometh from ſome little veines about the throat, where you may eaſily come by it with any kind of remedies; but the patient for this diſeaſe muſt forbear to eat exceſſive meat and drink, by reaſon that thereby much blood is engendred, whereby through the ſuperabounding in the veins the throat openeth: but if he be provoked to ſuch bleeding through vomiting, then it is a ſign that it cometh from the ſtomach; the which is not much to be feared, for that the ſame is to be eaſily prevented through letting blood, ſetting boxing cups, opening the mother vein, or opening their termes or flowers: in like ſort by taking ſome aſtringent things, as the ſeeds of Sumach, ſowre grapes, and ſuch like. Item, through this potion following: Take fine Bolus, Gum, Dragons blood, Pomgranat bloſſoms, & Frankincenſe, of each a like much; pownd them together to powder, and take thereof three drachmes, and temper it with ſodden juice of Quince pears. For meat is very good, Starch, peeled Beans, Lentils, Peaſe, unleavened bread, turtle Doves, and common Pigeons. Of fruits, all that bind, as Medlars, Services, Quince pears, Prunes, Pears, and ſuch like. For drink, milk wherein are quenched glowing pibble ſtones, ſteeled water, thick red Wine a little now and then, ſirupe of Poppy heads tempered with water, wherein Quince kernels and Myrtle ſeeds are decocted. It hapneth oftentimes that ſuch ſpetting of blood cometh of it ſelf, without any cauſe at all, whereby the patient is neither hindred nor harmed at all, and is to have his courſe; but if the ſame do chance through coughing, which is a ſign that the ſame aſcendeth from the lights and the breaſt, then is it to be feared, that it will be *Phthiſis*, that is, the conſumption which then enſueth, becauſe one cannot come to this place with neceſſary remedies. Then for this ſickneſſe it is beſt to let blood immediately at the firſt, and that in the Liver vein, whereby the blood may be derived from the Lights. Others do firſt of all open the Saphæa on the feet, that the blood might be drawn downwards, and alwayes on the ſame ſide that it is adjudged the diſeaſe to be. The third ſort counſel for this diſeaſe, to ſet boxing cups on their buttocks. This being all done, the patient is to be laid in a cool chamber, where he may be as quiet as may be, without much ſtirring of himſelf, and muſt keep from him all that might inflame his blood, as anger, crying, copulation, laughing, hot coverings, hot and ſalt meats and drinks, bathing and ſuch like. There are alſo no red colours to be brought in his ſight. Above all this, binding is one of the principalleſt remedies againſt abundant bleeding, therefore is that here alſo to be uſed, as in other places is ſufficiently taught.

There are ordained many more remedies againſt this ſpetting of blood, even as hereafter followeth, whereof you may chooſe that which liketh you beſt.

Take Frankincenſe and Dragons blood, of each three drachmes and one ſcruple, of yellow Amber one drach. prepared Bloodſtone and ſealed earth, of each ten drach. Alom two drach. and a half, flowers of Pomgranats three drachmes, *Opium* 2. 3. Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, make thereof 18. trochiſces with ſirupe of Poppy heads, then temper every day one in Purſlain water, and ſo drink it. And if this ſpetting of blood be too violent, then may the patient take one more at night.

Theſe things following are more certain, becauſe of the *Opium*: Take Mumia, Maſtick, fine Bolus, and Dragons blood, of each alike much, being all beaten ſmall together, make *trochiſces* there of with Purſlain water; for this is alſo good *Trochiſci de Carabe*, and of *Terra Sigillata*.

Now follow certain confections and ſuch like, wherewith the cauſe of this ſpetting of blood will be taken away, for the which this following is a certain remedy. Take a drachme

a drachme of Egſhels beaten ſmall, and temper it with half an ounce of the ſirupe of Poppy heads, or ſirupe of Iujubes: temper alſo with it the confection of *Philoniam Romanum*. Half a ſcruple, and ſo take it: if you had rather drink it, then mixe it with ſome Purſlaine water. Item, take conſerves of Roſes and Violets of each one ounce, the confection of *Triaſandalon* three ounces, prepared red Corall, Purſlaine ſeed, and broad Plantaine ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, temper them together with Roſe water. Or take the ſpices of cold Dragagant cakes half an ounce, yellow Amber, prepared red Corall, Bloodſtone, fine Bolus, Plantaine ſeeds, and Houſleek, of each one drachme and half, Gumme, broad Plantaine ſeed, of each half a drachme, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, of each three graines, Raiſins one ounce, white Sugar as much as is needfull, Purſlain water and Roſe water, of each two ounces, ſeeth therewith the Sugar, untill it be as thick as Honey, and temper the reſt being beaten ſmall amongſt it. Item, take Pingles one ounce, Currans one ounce and a half, beaten Licorice half an ounce, Ginger one drach. Cinnamome two drach. as much Sugar as the reſt: ſeeth them with the water of Plantain, and temper the reſt, being chopt and beaten amongſt it.

Take Henbane ſeeds ten grains, prepared Coral one ſcruple, two or three ounces of Plantaine water, temper them together, and give it him to drink: put alſo thereto the tabulats of *Diatragacanthum*, the confection of *Diacodion*, *Looch de Portulaca*, each alone, or tempered to a confection with the ſirupe of Myrtles: the red loſinges are alſo to be holden in the mouth that ſtand deſcribed with other. Treacle or Mithridate do marvelouſly withſtand the ſpetting of blood, if there be taken of them one drachme and a half, tempered with Vineger and Purſlain water. The confection of Foxe lights deſcribed here before in the 12. §. are alſo highly commended aboue all other remedies.

Againſt all clodded blood in the breaſt, be it of any wounds or otherwiſe, you are to drink this: take field Cypers, ſtampe it ſmall, and lay it 24. houres to ſteep in Scabious water, wring it well out, and drink oftentimes thereof warme.

Item, take the herbe Horſetaile, beate it to powder and drink thereof every time one drachme with Plantain water twice a day. This powder may you alſo caſt upon the meat and a little Bloudſtone mixed amongſt it. Item, take prepared Bloudſtone, mixe it with water or juice of Purſlaine, and ſwallow it downe; for this ſtone hath a ſpeciall force to ſtanch bloud, like as experience bringeth with it. Or take two ſcruples of prepared Bloudſtones, and temper it with the renning of a young Deer, and make pils thereof, and hold them a while in your mouth.

Item, take Jujubes, Sebeſtes, Dragagant, Gum, of each one quarter of an ounce Anis ſeed, and ſeeds of Hollihockes, of each one drach. one quart of ſteeled water: ſeeth theſe together to the third part, whereof the patient is to drink foure times a day. Item, take ſirupe of Poppie ſeeds, of Jujubes and Myrtle ſeed, temper them together, or take each alone; make a drink thereof with water wherein Quince or Myrtle ſeed is boyled.

Another, Take Myrtle ſeed, broad Plantaine ſeed, both beaten ſmall, of each one drachme, temper them with Purſlaine water, and drink it treatably. Or uſe this following in this manner alſo, take beaten Lupins one quarter of an ounce, prepared Bloudſtone one drachme, tempered with Purſlaine water, and drink it as is ſaid. Betonie laid in Wine is alſo many times approved in the ſpetting of bloud.

There may alſo ſalve be uſed outwardly upon the breaſt; yet here is to be noted, that it is very commodious for the ſpetting of bloud, but for the cough very hurtfull, therefore this following is rather to be uſed; take oyl of Roſes, or Myrtles, of ſweet Almonds, and juyce of Prunes, of each a like much, and make thereof a ſalve with molten waxe. Item, take beaten Frankincenſe, temper it with the white of an Egge, and lay it on the breaſt. Or take the juyce of Sloes, *Hypociſtis*, Dragons bloud, bloſſomes of Pomegranats, Gals, Maſtick, and Roſes, of each foure ſcruples, Turbeth, fine Bolus, of each one drachme, oyl of Roſes, of Myrtles, of Maſtick, of each half an ounce, the white of an Egge wel beaten, and waxe as much as is needfull for a ſalve. The black Tabulates, deſcribed in the ſecond part, the ſecond Chapter, and 2. §. ſhall the patient hold under his tongue. And if this be deſired to be more forcible, then is it to be prepared as hereafter followeth: take Dragagant, Plaintaine ſeeds a little parched, and Gumme, of each half an ounce, Bloudſtone, the yellow ſeeds of Roſes, fine Bolus, ſealed earth, Amber, and red Corall, of each one drach. muſcilage of Fleawort ſeed tempered with Purſlain water, as much as is needfull for to forme therewith theſe trochiſces, uſe them as is ſaid.

It is alſo needfull that the body be purged. For which this ſirup following may be

uſed: Take Myrtle ſeed and the ſeed of Butchers broom, Roſes, bloſſoms of Pomgranats, the yellow ſeeds of Roſes, Acorn cups, Gals, juice of Sloes, and *Hoppocyſtis*, of each half an ounce, white Saunders, Quinces and burnt Ivory, of each one quarter of an ounce, Dragagant, Gum, fine Bolus, and Dragons blood, of each one drachme and a half, ſealed earth and Maſtick, of each three drach. Frankincenſe, white Poppy ſeed, of each two drach. and a half, prepared Bloodſtone half a drach. the juice of Plantain, and juice of Quinces, of each ſix ounces. You muſt ſtrain and ſcum the juice, then powre thereto as much rain water as will ſerve to ſeethe it together, and make thereof a ſirupe with Sugar, whereof give one ounce and a half tempered with three ounces of Purſlain water during certain dayes early in the morning.

This ſirupe doth not looſe, but ſtoppeth much rather, and ſtancheth blood. For the purging uſe theſe pils, *de Agarico* two ſcrup. *Cochiæ*, one ſcrup. make thereof ſeven pils. Or make theſe ſirupe of Roſes laxative with Rubarbe in an aſtringent decoction, and Purſlain water, wherein the ſhels of yellow Mirobalanes be decocted, and this is a ſoluble and good purgation, it cleanſeth well the blood. But if the cough be with it, then againſt night give him a pill of Cynogloſſo, and let him hold one in his mouth by day.

For a broken Vein in the Lights or breaſt. §. 18.

THe ſigns of a broken vein in the Lights are (as is already ſaid) if the blood be ſuddenly ſpet out or powred out by heaps, and that clear, clean blood, and not clodded, then is preſent remedy to be looked for before it turn to an impoſtume, or that the blood be congealed and turned into matter. For if ſo be that there be neglect thereof, then is there danger of never more to be holpen. And if ſo be that ſuch forcible blood will not be ſtaied, then are you to open out of hand the Liver vein in the arm of the ſame ſide, where you think that the vein of the Lights is broken, and then to let no more but two or 3. ounces of blood. And if you perceive that there is any Cholera run out with it, then is the bleeding of the noſe not bad for the ſame. But if this will not help, then is the head vein to be opened between the thumb and the firſt finger, and let out about two ounces of blood. There is good for this to purge choler with Caſſia, ſowre Dates, Manna, and ſuch like.

To draw the blood downward, the patient is to be rubbed ſoftly with warm clothes in the outward members, alſo to ſet great boxing cups unpickt on the top of the buttocks; and if the pils could be made bleed, that will do it much good.

Salves.

TAke beaten Gals, Acorns, Butchers broom ſeeds, and the juice of Sloes, of each half an ounce, Myrtle ſeed, ſeeds of Plantain and of Purſlain, of each three drach. Dragagant, Gum, Iſinglas, Glew of each five drachmes, Barly meal one ounce and a half, Starch, Milduſt, of each one ounce, Saffron one drachme, ſeethe it in red wine, which is ſomewhat mild, and make pap thereof, and lay it upon the breaſt, and renew it once every four and twenty hours. And in caſe that the pap cleave hard on the breaſt, then muſt you lay a freſh thereon.

Item, take Sorrel water, water of Balme, Cicory and Roſe water, of each ſix ounces, *Trochiſcos de Spodio*, *de Roſis*, of each two ſcrup. red and white Behen, *Doronicum*, Harts bones, and Pearls. of each one ſcrup. Malmſey half an ounce, temper it together and ſeeth it a little, then dip a four ſquare wollen cloth in it, and lay it luke-warm over the left breſt, in like manner one more on the ſame ſide of the backbone, and refreſh it every day once.

For ſtanching of blood there are many ſundry remedies deſcribed in the firſt part, the eight Chapter, in the 7. §. where we have ſpoken of the bleeding of the noſe, yet is there here commanded to be uſed (if need require) theſe things following.

Take Henbane ſeed and white Poppy ſeeds, of each five drachmes, ſealed earth and red Coral. of each two drach. and a half, prepared Bloodſtone one drach. and conſerve of Roſes four ounces, temper them all together and make a confection thereof. Uſe a little thereof, and that with great heed. For this alſo may be taken the oyl of Roſin diſtilled with Ireos and prepared Sulphur two ounces, Ireos one drach. beat it together very ſmall, and uſe thereof every day 3. or 4. grains. Yet it is to be underſtood, that this is not to be done, but after all the foreſaid things, as letting of blood, and ſuch like.

After-

Afterwards it is very good once in eight dayes to take one quarter of an ounce of Turpentine, with a little Ireos rowled with powder of Licorice.

This following is to be laid under the tongue: Take cold Dragagant tabulats two ounces, prepared Bloodstone, Amber, Glew, red Coral, and Pearles of each one drach. temper them all together with *Looch de Papavere*, as much as all the rest, and hold at all times thereof in the mouth the bigneſſe of a Bean.

Order for meat and drink.

IT is very needfull in this diſeaſe to obſerve a certain order in eating and drinking; therefore he is to be fed with that which cooleth measurably, which thickneth the matter, & draweth it together. From the firſt day to the fourth, the ſick body is to be kept ſoberly: afterwards is his meat to be dreſt and ſod with one of theſe things following, as Dragagant, Gum, or a little clean Glew, or a pap of Starch, of Milduſt, or at the leaſtwiſe other meat ſtrewed therewith. Pap of Goats milk that is prepared with pibble ſtones or ſteele is good for him. Sodden Calves or Lambs feet, Pullets broth, or Capon broth dreſt with Iſinglas are very commodious for him. There may alſo ſometimes a piece of a Tench or an Eele, with other intrails of fiſh be ſodden in other meats: for it is certain that thoſe things for this ſickneſſe are very commodious. In like manner are the Lentils ſodden with Wheat, and dreſt for this ſickneſſe very meet, for this is alſo fit Jujubes, Dates, Barly, thick milk, freſh Cheeſe, all kind of fleſh wherein is little blood, as Wood-Pigeons, turtle Doves, and partridges prepared with binding things, as with Quinces, Barberries, Raſpes, and ſuch like.

If this ſpetting of blood be cauſed through heat, then dreſſe his meat moſt with Letice, Purſlain, Gourds, Melons, Daiſies, Shepherds purſe, and ſuch like.

For his drink this following is very good: Take twelve ounces of very good Hony, four pints of water that is twice ſteeled with ſteel, being well ſodden together, temper amongſt it Dragagant and Gum, of each one drach. and a half, Saffron one ſcrup, let it ſeethe again untill the third part be ſodden away. But if one will not drink thereof alone, then is good red Wine to be tempered amongſt it. But let him drink what he will, if Iſinglas be ſodden in all his drinks or the powder thereof be mingled amongſt his drink, it is the better. He may alſo otherwhiles take a draught of Roſe water, or Purſlain water. Rain water is commended above all other ſorts of drinks, if a vein be broken in the breaſt, and chiefly if there be a little fine Bolus or burnt Ivory tempered amongſt it.

This following is praiſed for a precious and an approved powder; Take the ſeeds of Plantain, Butchers broom ſeeds, and the juice of Sloes, of each one drachme, prepared Pearls, red Coral, Amber, Bloodſtone, and Dragons blood, of each one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus three quarters of an ounce, Dragagant, Gum, and Frankincenſe, of each three drach. temper and beat it together.

You are to take one ſcruple of this powder with Purſlain water four times a day one hour before breakfaſt, one hour before ſupper, and likewiſe two hours after.

For congealed blood. §. 19.

WHen it is thought that (after the vein is ſtopt in the breaſt) there is yet ſtill a little clotted blood behind; then are theſe things to be uſed thereto. For which is fine Treacle highly commended, if thereof be taken one drachme, or a drachme and a half, with three ounces of water wherein Licorice and Venus hair have been ſodden. Or take old Treacle one drachme, one ounce of Vineger, two ounces of Roſe water, temper it together and give it him. For this is alſo good the water of Larks ſpurs, billet coles one quarter of an ounce beaten ſmall, and given to drink in Vinegar, is a general medicine for all clotted or bruiſed blood. So is likewiſe the renning of all young beaſts eſpecially good for all clotted or bruiſed blood. If then any body hath caught a great fall, or is hard ſtrucken or thruſt, and afraid of any clotted blood, then give him every morning and evening (each times) two or three ounces of the juice of Cheruil. Item, take Cheruil water and Lovage water, of each one ounce and a half, or two ounces, and drink it at a draught. Or take of Rubarbe half an ounce, Lacca one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus, and ſealed earth, of each one drachme, Rubarbe half a drach. if you put thereto ſome burnt Sponges, it wil be ſo much the better, make a powder therof

and uſe it as is aforeſaid. Another: Take fine Bolus half an ounce, ſealed earth one drachme, Dragons blood and Spermaceti, of each half a drachme, make a powder thereof, and give him a drachme of it with white wine. This plaiſter following may alſo be made; Take Goats milk and hony, let them be well warmed together, then temper amongſt it as much fine Bolus, untill it be as thick as a plaiſter, and ſo lay it upon the breaſt; it waſteth the clotted blood.

If any be afraid that through falling or thruſting he have broken any thing in his body, or fear to have any clotted blood within him, then is he to drink one drachme of this following with warm wine or beer. Take four ounces of the roots of red Bugloſſe, cut them in pieces; and let them ſeethe in a pot of red wine untill they be ſoft, then take them out and beat it to pap, put thereto two ounces of Spermaceti, and one pound of freſh Butter, let them melt together with a ſmall fire, and therewith anoint the place, where the pain is greateſt, and chiefly about the breaſt.

Laſtly, in the middle of the ſpetting of blood, take one ounce of the juice of Plantain, temper therein two or three grains of *Opium*, and give it to the patient. Or make theſe conſerves following; Take white Pepper and Henbane ſeed, of each five drachmes, ſealed earth and *Opium*, of each one quarter of an ounce, peeled Hemp ſeed and Saffron, of each four ſcruples, Beavercod, Spica, Euphorbium, Piretrum, Pearls, Amber, Zeduary and Doronicum, of each one ſcruple, Camphir ſix grains, ſodden Hony as much as is needful, I give of this half or a whole drachme, with one ounce and a half of Plantain water, tempered with half an ounce of wine.

Comfortable things in and after the ſpetting of Blood. §. 20.

FOr to keep nature by her might and power, theſe confections following are to be uſed. Take the fleſh of Capons that are ſodden with Dragagantin in ſteeled water ſix ounces, white and red Coral, Dragagant. Gum (both a little toſſed) of each one drach. and a half, fine Bolus, Amber, ſealed earth, *Mumia*; and Bloodſtone, of each one drach. Purſlain ſeed and Plantain ſeed, of each three drachmes, Almonds ſteeped in the juice of Quinces, three drachmes, Jujubes, Sebeſtes (ſo dreſt alſo) of each one ounce, *Speciorum Electuarii Regum*, one quarter of an ounce, *Species* of the cold Dragagant Tabulats four ounces, white Sugar and Sugar candy, of each one pound and a half, or ſo much as you pleaſe, ſeethe the Sugar with Pullet broth, and mix all the reſt amongſt it, and make of them morſels.

Another.

TAke *Species de Gemmis*, which are ſet forth in the deſcription of the heart, one drach. and give it with ſirupes of Apples; this ſtrengtheneth the heart and the lights, it is very good for thoſe that after ſpetting much blood, be ſo faint hearted, that they ſeem to have no more pulſe.

For concluſion; for this ſpetting of blood we will here preſent ſome particular things to be uſed for the ſame, where there is neither Phyſitian, nor Apothecary neer hand; bitter Almonds with Starch are paſſing good for this, and alſo for all cold coughs: *Agaricus* one quarter of an ounce, ſteeped in ſix ounces of Purſlain water, and wring it well out, and ſo in one day at two times taken. Flowers of Pomgranats, *Hippociſtis*, and prepared Coral, of each one drachme, with the white of an egg and Gum tempered together to Trochiſces, and ſo holden under the tongue.

The juice of Quinces, Centory, burnt and waſhed Harts horn, prepared Amber, *Lycium*, ſealed earth, fine Bolus, Myrtle ſeed, Myrrhe, or a little of all of them, three or four grains at one time taken with wine is paſſing good. Likewiſe the juice of Mints, or of Purſlain is highly commended for this diſeaſe. For this is alſo good the white Henbane ſeed, but not above three grains at once to be taken.

The yellow ſeed of Roſes, white Bryer, and many other things more that are above reheatſed, amongſt other compounds (which are to be uſed alone) are very good.

Of the infection of the Lights, which is called Peripneumonia. §. 21.

THis name is as much to say in Greek as *Phlegma*, which is flegme, slime, or corruption of the Lights, which matter infecteth the Lights, maketh them swell, and bringeth an hot Ague with it. This is caused chiefly of *Cholera*, or of *Phlegma*, the which falleth through the veins, or out of the head into the Lights, and may be caused of the matter that provoketh the Pleurisie, or Squinancy, and falleth into the Lights. And although the *Peripneumonia*, as an impostume of the Lights, happeneth to break out, whereby the lights are wounded, yet it is notwithstanding therein severed from the *Phthisis*, that this infection of the lights is rather placed between the small skin which covereth the lights, then in the substance of them where it can procure an exulceration; where contrariwise the *Phthisis* which is the right consumption, harmeth, impostumeth, and rotteth the very substance of the lights.

The signs of this *Peripneumonia*, or malady of the lights are these, namly, a troublesome breath, as if one would choak, whereby the sick body is compelled to lift up himself, his breath is alwayes hot, so that he doth alwayes call for cold ayr. This flegme is somewhat brown, and otherwhiles pure red, and sometimes green and black and scummy. They do feel a wringing and pain in the breast, that reacheth from the ribs to the backbone. There is also a strong Ague commonly therewith, the tongue is red, and will be in time slimy and black, so that when one toucheth it with the finger, it cleaveth thereto. They cannot lye neither on the back nor side, but must sit alway upright: the cheeks are alwayes so red, as if they were painted.

If then these signs all or in part do appear, then is it most certain that there is an impostume in the lights, the which otherwhiles causeth such a strangling, and *Apnœa*, that the patient can get no more breath, and that it cannot be thought otherwise, but that the patient must stifle, and all this without any great stitch or feeling of great heat, which nevertheless is very great over the whole body.

The remedies for this sickness are, that the head vein be opened, and afterwards the means be used which here before in the fifth Chapter in the 5. §. is ordained for the Pleurisie, be it of what cause soever that they proceed; but good heed must be taken, for that this impostume sticketh deeplier in the body then the Pleurisie: so that whatsoever one layeth outwardly upon the body, must be stronger and alwayes tempered with such things, that may convey the medicine to the lights, and make the flegme to be loosed the sooner: that which is to be laid on the outside, must not be laid on the side, but above over the breast; and if that the patient be not let blood, then is he to be let blood in the Liver vein in the arm.

Of the anguish of the Lights which is called Empyema. §. 22.

THis disease of the Lights is altogether like the foresaid *Peripneumonia*, and proceedeth commonly of these causes following, to wit, when one is thrust hard upon the breast, or hath fallen, whereby afterwards there flow bad humours to it, that at length alter into matter. Also, this sickness can be caused of a continual use of some certain vaporish meats and drinks, or through a Rheume that falleth out of the head upon the lights, and cannot be coughed up by any means, so that there it doth putrifie, and must needs turn to matter: or that inwardly within the breast some impostume happen to break, whereby the matter runneth into the hollowness of the breast, like as of the Squinancy, of the Pleurisie, and Peripneumonia commonly chanceth.

In fine, *Empyema* is an anguish or impostume wherein much matter gathereth together, the which is burthened with all the foresaid matter with it.

When as then any such anguish cometh into the lights, then is it very hard or impossible to be holpen, for that there be no other means for to cleanse the same then through the cough, the which stil exulcerateth more, and consumeth the Lights.

The signs of the impostume in the Lights, are oppression of the breast, a painful breath, to cough up corruption, with a dry and Salt Cough, to speak snappishly, a disordered pulse, with a small Ague, which is rather preceived by night then by day, whereby there is but a little sleep.

§

And to know in what place of the Breaſt that this impoſtume is, theſe are therefore the ſigns, namely, if it be in the right ſide, and the patient do lye upon the left ſide, then hath he much more pain and grief.

Item, make a cloth wet in water wherein fine Bolus is diſſolved, bind the ſame round about the breaſt, and upon the place; where the ſame cloth is firſt of all dry, there is the grief: if it dry on both ſides, then are both the ſides therewith infected.

This ſickneſſe, be it as perillous and incurable as it will, notwithſtanding are there no other remedies to help it, then that they are ordained for the pain in the Breaſt, for the Pleuriſie, and chiefly for the Cough; So that there muſt be uſed for the ſame now and then ſirupes, and otherwhiles Plaiſters, Confections, Pils, Tabulates, Gargariſmes, and ſuch like, now one, and then another.

Forasmuch then as we have notified in all the foreſaid places, and in the enſuing *Phthiſis* or Conſumption, many remedies, therefore it is needleſſe to reckon them here again, but onely to remember, if the amendment come ſlowly, that then it ſhould not be diſcontinued and left off, for that this diſeaſe accuſtometh commonly to tarry forty dayes and longer; and if ſo be that the ſickneſſe be not cured in forty dayes, then commeth thereof the conſumption. And whereas it often happeth, that neither inward nor outward remedies do help for this ſickneſſe, then doth the laſt refuge and neceſſity conſtrain, that other remedies be ſought for: to wit, that laſtly the breaſt muſt be opened, burnt with a hot iron, corſie, or inciſion, that thereby the filth and matter be let run out, whereby the breaſt is to be cleanſed, the patient cured, and old age atchieved; therefore we will not pretermit to make known, what the ancient Phyſitians have taught thereof.

Firſt, all ſuch Plaiſters are to be laid therein, that do diſcuſſe matter and maturate it, as theſe following: Take Fenegreek, and Linſeed meal, of each three ounces, eight or ten fat Figs, ſix or ſeven Dates, two ounces of Peaſe meal, Camomil one ounce and a half, pownd them all together and ſoothe them in wine, and temper therewith two ounces of Turpentine, and Linſeed meal one ounce and a half, oyl of Camomil one ounce, then make a plaiſter thereof, and lay it on the breaſt where the pain is.

And if you ſuppoſe that this ſwelling proceed out of a cold cauſe, then put thereto two ounces of Pigeons dung, Saltpeter one ounce, and oyl of Lillies as much as is needfull: Treacle or Mithridate (if there be no Ague) taken inwardly or laid thereon outwardly are very good. And that this impoſtume might the ſooner break out, the patient muſt provoke himſelf as much as is poſſible, to lye on his ſide where it is, not to forbear coughing, but to provoke himſelf much rather to cough up the ſame, as much as he can, thereby to break the ſame the ſooner.

But if the anguiſh will not of it ſelf incline to any breaking, then muſt the place where the ſame is, be opened on the outſide, with an hot iron, Corſie or inciſion. When as the matter is all run out, and the impoſtume mundified, then it is like other impoſtumes to be cured. And if ſo be that through riddance of much filth, be it through coughing it up, or any other iſſue, that nature doth begin to be weak, and requireth ſtrengthening; then is the patient to be well provided for, with good light bread, and ſweet white wine, and broths of Hens, and uſe all foules that haunt the high countries. Goats milk is very good for him to uſe; alſo rere Eggs, ſodden Barly, Coleworts broth, dreſt with Hyſſop, Parſly, and with oyl of ſweet Almonds. Laſtly, all his meats are to be tempered with Hyſſop and Saffron, by reaſon that they have both a ſpecial congruity or affinity with the Lights and the Breaſt.

Alſo there may be uſed a confection of the fleſh of Capons, deſcribed of late in the 19. S. for a ſtrengthening.

With theſe foreſaid things we will add ſome other things, that are not onely commodious for the impoſtume of the Lights, but alſo for the *Aſthma*, and all other diſeaſes of the Lights; but chiefly ſome Potions, as wine of Marjoram and *Aſparabucca*, like as both of them in the end of this book are deſcribed.

Item, take Fenegreek, Linſeed, Hollihock roots, Mallowes, and wild Saffron, of each one handfull, dried Hyſſop, and Venus hair, of each one handfull, eight or ten fat Figs, Currans two ounces, Sugar penneth, Licorice, of each one ounce, Fennel ſeed one dramme, Anniſeed half an ounce, Ginger one ſcruple, Saffron half a drachme, ſeethe theſe all together in three quarters of water, unto two quarts, and every day give the patient three ounces.

He may alſo uſe this Cock water following, the which is thus to be prepared; when as the

the greatest extremity is past, and when the patient beginneth to recover, then give him a good Cruce full of this broth following, for certain days continually. Take a Cock of three or four years old, course him so long untill he lye still; afterwards kill him, and stuffe him with Currans, Figs, Licorice, wild Saffron, Venus hair, white Mints, Pennyroyall, Fenegreek; if you cannot get all of them, take the most part of them, of each a like much; let them seethe in a great kettle that you need to powre no water upon it, drink of this as is said. But the third day, take six ounces of this Potion, and seethe therein two cut Figs, unto three ounces: then put thereto a drachme of Treacle or Mithridate, *Philonium Romanum* half a scruple, washt Turpentine one drach. and a half, and then take it all at one time.

This order must he observe certain dayes together, albeit that it should last one whole year, which would be the better. Likewise there is good for this sickneſſe, Turpentine taken with hony, and prepared For Lights, for it openeth the Breast, cleanseth the same and healeth the Lights.

Another Cock water; Dresse the Cock as he ought to be, and stuffe him with Hyssop, Licorice, and Venus hair, of each half a handfull, Currans half an ounce; let them seethe well together, and lastly put a drachme of *Thymus* unto it, use this broth, as is aforesaid.

Item, melt a drop of *Ammoniacum* in a spoonfull of the water of life, and drink it fasting.

Of the consumption Phthisis, *a disease of the Lights.* §. 23.

THis *Phthisis*, (the which by reason of her nature is called the consumption, and of the Latinists *Tabes*) is an ulcer of the Lights, of the Breast, of the throat, or of the mouth of the stomach, wherewith is alwayes a Cough or a small Ague, whereby the whole body consumeth away, and waxeth impotent. Or *Phthisis* is an exsiccation and weakning of the body, whereby the whole body will be consumed, even as the Greek name sheweth.

Item, *Phthisis* is a sickneſſe of the lights, that drieth away and consumeth the flesh, marrow, and all other powers of the body. In fine, *Phthisis* is all that harmeth the lights, or devoureth them. This disease is also of such nature and quality, that it seldom infecteth the very young, the very old and aged persons, but most of all, as *Hippocrates* testifieth, those that are between eighteen and 35. years of age; and this is the cause that the eager and sharpe matter in this age, be it through natural or accidental causes, doth as then raign most of all in these kinds of bodies.

First, this consumption can proceed of many causes, as of a sore Cough, whereby any vein doth break in the Lights, or of any eager brackish rheume that falleth upon the lights, and there through his eagernesse doth arrode some vein of the lights, as a drop of water through continual falling pierceth a hole into a hard stone.

Secondly, this can also be caused thorugh an impostume of the throat; the which breaking falleth into the breast, and there annoyeth the same.

Thirdly, of an impostume in the breast which after the Pleurisie, inflammation of the lights, or spetting of blood, is not well cleansed and taken away. Like as of *Empyema* (which is the infection of the lights) hath been said.

Fourthly, such can also be caused through some obstruction of any accustomed course of womens flowers, or course of the Hemorrhoides, which being closed up, by their vapors do endamage the lights.

Fifthly, it cometh through extream outward heat, or cold raw winds, and especially in the falling of the leafe. Also of strains, wounds, pestilent ayr, through long use of many hot spices, Onions, Garlick, and other things more, which do engender much and subtile blood, whereby a vein quickly cometh to break, whereby afterwards the blood putrifieth there, and turneth to an impostume.

These sicknesses can also be well provoked through long conversing in quicksilver, the vapour whereof harmeth and putrifieth the lights.

These also are the commonest signs of this sickneſſe, to wit, when the sick mans nose waxeth small and sharpe when the temples of the head fall down, their arm-pits do stretch out like wings, whereto cometh afterwards a small hot Ague, Cough after meat, oppression of the breast, grievous breathing, mattery spettle, the which is alwayes a little died with

with blood, which if it be caſt over hot coals, yeeldeth a ſtench; or if one caſt it in a kettle of water, doth ſink to the bottom. The cheeks of the patient are alwayes ruddy, the nails on the hands and feet will be crooked, he is ſometimes hot, and otherwhiles cold. In fine, they that are oppreſſed with this wretched ſickneſſe, are alwayes very raging and unpatient, ſo that no body can do enough for them, &c. When as then beſides all theſe ſigns, the blood beginneth to conſume, to dry away, and the hair to fall off, then is he very far ſpent.

Now for to come to the means whereby all ſuch ſickneſſes are to be holpen, then is there firſt an old ſaying, that the old and ripe Conſumption is not to be cured; The cauſe is, that all ſuch ulcers of the breaſt do corrode too deep.

Secondly, becauſe the lights muſt be in continual motion, where notwithſtanding all cures have need of quietneſſe.

Thirdly, through continual motion doth raze and eat in the deeper.

Fourthly, for that this diſeaſe lyeth ſo deep in the body, that Phyſick can hardly or ſlowly come to it.

Fifthly, if hot remedies be to be uſed for it, then increaſeth the Ague: if cold remedies, then have they but ſmall force to pierce to the place infected: Or if there be drying medicines uſed thereto, then do the ſame oppreſſe and putrifie there.

Theſe ſickneſſes may be ſettled a long time in children and old folks, in corpulent and fat folks, and ſpecially in women; but if the ſickneſſe do draw to an end, and that beſides all the ſaid ſigns the ſtomach faileth, and the laske approacheth with it, then is there ſmall hope more at hand, notwithſtanding, although this ſickneſſe (as is ſaid) is very dangerous, and long continuing, yet are the due remedies that ſerve for the ſame not to be deſpiſed nor objected. And before all, as much as concerneth this diſeaſe, the eyes are to be fixed on ſeven kind of things. Firſt, to ſee that the Rheume be ſtayed, for the which you may here before find divers remedies in the Squinancy in the twelfth Chapter and 2. §. Alſo in the fifth Chapter 2. §. Secondly, heed muſt be taken to the ulceration of the Lights, for which in this preſent deſcription of the lights very many remedies are preſcribed, more ſhall be hereafter ſpecified.

Thirdly, to drive away the Ague, and for that to this ſickneſſe many kinds of Agues are incident, as may appear in the ſixth part of this book.

Fourthly, care muſt be taken to diminiſh this Cough, nevertheleſſe to beware not to hinder altogether the coughing up of the flegme, for the which look here before the 4. and 5. §. and alſo afterwards.

Fifthly, the patient muſt obſerve a good rule of living, whereof hereafter followeth a good inſtruction.

Sixthly, means muſt be made to take away the ſpetting of blood, whereof is at large diſcourſed in the 17. §.

Seventhly and laſtly, care is to be had to lengthen the ſick bodies ſhort breath; for this, look into the 12. §. of *Aſthma*: what is further needfull for this ſickneſſe ſhall follow hereafter.

Firſt there are here expreſſed four principal things, as well fitting the patient for food, as for remedy, to wit, Hony, conſerve of Roſes, Crabs that are taken in freſh waters, Figs, and certain other fruits.

As much as concerneth the hony of Roſes, it is alway more forcible then the common Hony, becauſe that it expelleth flegme and matter, pierceth and cleanſeth, therefore is Hony accompted a ſafe conductor of all other medicines which are commodious for this ſickneſſe. But if ſo be that there be with it a vehement heat, and putrifying Ague; then in the ſtead of the ſame, is Hony water to bo uſed: for which cauſe ſome ſay that the Hony is not to be uſed in this ſickneſſe alone without ſcumming, for if the ſame be not ſcummed, and do not ſeethe, it is hurtfull, and cauſeth the laske.

The ſecond is the conſerve of Roſes, through which onely ſome preſerve themſelves, and prolong their life; and if through uſe of this the body chanceth to be ſtopt, then is ſirupe of Hyſſop to be uſed, and if the ſame be too hot, then are *Trochiſcus de Camphora* and cold Tabulates of Dragagant to be uſed.

Thirdly, are the Crabs, which muſt be thus prepared; Take freſh water Crevets as many as you will, ſeethe them ſo long in well water untill they may be pluckt in pieces, then cut off the feet and skins, take off all the ſhels and waſh them well in lee that is made of Vine aſhes, afterwards ſeethe them very mellow in Barly water: the patient muſt eat the Crabs, and drink the water.

Fourthly

Fourthly, there are good for this disease in stead of Physick, Raisins, Figs, Pingles, Pistacis, Currans, Sebestes, and Jujubes.

But for this we will discover more other remedies, amongst which is chiefly commended Asses milk, and if the same cannot be gotten, Goats milk is to be taken in the stead thereof; also bread sopped therein is to be eaten, and if that may be, he is to use no other drink sugred: but if that cannot be, then is he to use therewith some sugred beer, yet is it no counsel to use the Milk, if therewith be any putrid Ague. Here is also to be noted, that womans milk surpasseth all other milk; but be it what milk that it may be, yet must the same be drunken new milked, for all milk very quickly taketh an alteration and corruption. But if all manner of milk be lothsome to the party, then prepare him this potion; Take Ireos one quarter of an ounce, of Hyssop and green Venus hair (if it may be gotten) of each one handfull, peeled Barly three ounces, Melon seed, Cucumber seed, Gourd seed, Pompeon seed, seeds of *Verbascum*, Fenegreek, Jujubes, and Sebestes, of each half an ounce, Licorice and Raisins, of each one ounce, white Sugar nine ounces, Hony three ounces, seethe it all together except the Sugar and the Hony in a sufficient quantity of rain water, according as you will have it strong, let it seethe to the second part: when it is strained, then put the Sugar & Hony unto it, let it seeth a while and clarifie it.

And if so be that after the use of milk, there follow a small Ague, then shall he in stead of Milk, use barly water, or a thin Barly pap, for that cleanseth the breast, and cooleth the same, and expelleth flegme, but as soon as the Ague goeth away, then may you return to the use of the milk.

The rule of living.

First, they that have the consumption are to chuse all such dwelling places, where it is alwayes cold and moist, and chiefly where he is troubled with an Ague, situated to the Northeast and on the water. But if he cannot get the same, then must his chamber be often sprinkled with fair water; and if he be of ability, then is the chamber to be sprinkled in the place of common water, with stilled water of Violets, water Lillies, Cucumbers, Gourds, Pompeons, mingled, or each by themselves; or strew the chamber with with Violet leaves, water Lillies, Vine leaves, and with other cold herbs. The chamber may also be fumed with these fumigations following, which are made of water Lillie flowers, Lettice seeds, and Purslain seeds beaten together. He must not cover his head too warm.

Secondly, almost all exercise and travel is hurtful, principally when as yet his head is full of humours; therefore shall he refrain all labour, and be still and take his rest.

Thirdly, he must beware that he do not over eat himself, and it is more commodious to eat oftentimes, and a little at once, then for to eat once or twice a day very much; and so it is also with his drink. He must also beware and refrain to eat with hunger, and that which he eateth must be chew very well, whereon many do think but little, that do either hate or small esteem their own lives. In like sort must he eat to expel all the superfluity of the stomach or bowels. If there be any such thing in the stomach, then must it be taken away by stooles, for vomiting is very hurtful for this disease, but Manna or Cassia are to be used herein. But if the going to the stool be hardned in the Bowes, then must this Clister be ministred: Take Mallowes, Beetes, Violet leaves, and small Woodbind, of each a handful; seethe them together in sufficient water, take thereof twelve or sixteen ounces, oyl of Violets, and of white *Sesamum*, of each one ounce and a half, fresh Butter three quarters of an ounce, *Sal gemmæ* four scruples, or one quarter of an ounce of common Salt, minister it onely in the morning.

Fourthly, his sleep must be seven or eight hours long, and not at all but at the least one hour after supper; he must shun sleep a day times, and is to sleep half sitting, and not to lye upon his back nor on his face.

Fifthly, he must beware of anger, of calling a loud, and of all that will impact the flegme in the breast, as of sorrow, fear, fright, and above all things of Venery, for there is nothing that more abateth the nourishment of the body then the same, but he must by all means possible indeavour himself to be merry and of good chear.

As much as concerneth the sixth, to wit, meat and drink, for that you have this common rule, as, that his bread be of good white Wheat, and baked well, rising; also if the same be dreft with the water of Folefoot, it were very commodious. Of flesh es are good

for

for him, fat Pullets, Hens, Capons, and all field fowls, as Pheſants, Partridges, &c. Alſo young Kids, Calves, Hares, roſted Pigs, Fox lights, and the ſewet of all theſe beaſts. All water Fowls, wilde Pigions, and Geeſe are forbidden him. But this meat is ſpecially commended, take Almond milk when he hath a ſtrong Ague, and where there is no ague take Goats milk, and ſeethe crums of white bread to a thin pap, and let him eat thereof and ſuch like paps made with Wheat meal, Barley meal, or Millet meal, ſweetned with Sugar or Sugar pennets: amongſt which one may temper ſome white Poppy ſeeds.

All fiſh are permitted for this ſickneſſe, and chiefly all river fiſh: Crabs have alſo a ſpecial property, vertue, and ſecret operation againſt this malady. And if one cannot get Crabs, then take in the ſtead of them garden Snails, and let them with their houſes boyl with Hyſſop and Fennel, then take them out, and beſtrew them with Sugar, or frye them with Butter, as it liketh the Patient beſt, for they cauſe the flegme to ariſe, and moiſten the body: all herbs that moiſten and cool are good for this diſeaſe; yea it behoveth that all the Patients meat be dreſt with the ſame, as namely with Beets, Lettice, Spinage, Burrage, Purſlain, Melons, and Shepherds purſe, which have a ſpecial operation for this ſickneſſe in cooling and moiſtening. But Coleworts, and Turneps muſt he forbear: Rice ſod in water, wherein 24. hours before wheaten Bran hath been ſteeped, may he well feed upon, for through the Bran doth the water get a cooling & moiſtening operation. So is there alſo good for this ſickneſſe, red and white Peaſe, notwithſtanding that they be warm & dry in the firſt degree, which warmth & drouth is taken away by dreſſing. For amongſt all kind of pottage, there is nothing more requiſite than this for the Lights. But the ancient Phiſitians do much commend ſtued Barley, *Ptiſanam*, of all other pottages, for it is light of digeſtion, ſlippery, and looſeth the phlegme very well; it altereth alſo the bad, dry, and aguiſh complexion. And albeit that Barley is hot and dry in the firſt degree, yet all ſuch drouth is taken away through the moiſture wherewith it is boyled, whether it be ſodden and dreſt in water, Almond milk, or ſome freſh broth: for it is familiar to the ſtomach, cleanſeth the ſame, quencheth thirſt, putrifieth not in the ſtomach: for theſe vertues is Barley commended of all ancient and later Phyſitians that are expert in phyſick. So do they alſo commend Oatmeal, which hath almoſt the ſame vertue, and is like to the barly, but is not ſo common in uſe, yet are the right Oatmeal paps very good, ſo are paps alſo of bean meal, of Lentils, of rough bearded Wheat, of Starch dreſt with Almond milk, or the broth of Hens, as occaſion ſhall ſerve.

Above the foreſaid fruits the Haſel nuts are tollerated and allowed of, yet but a few, leſt they ſpoil the ſtomach: unſalted Cheeſe is very good for him, but old Cheeſe is highly forbidden; and albeit (even as is ſaid) milk is for meat tollerated, yet is not butter, nor hogs greaſe, neither Sallad oyl commendable for this diſeaſe: neither yet any meats which are dreſt with much fat. Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and oyl of Walnuts are accompted for the beſt, becauſe that the other ſtuff the head: all ſalted fiſh and fleſh are hurtful, like as be vinegar, verjuice, and ſuch like, and eſpecially if there be ſalt in it: but if any of theſe be uſed, then delay the ſharpneſſe with Sugar; but ſweet Pomegranats and Citrons well Sugred may he uſe well enough. Hony is not good in his meat, although the ſame uſed after another manner be good and profitable, even as is here before expreſſed.

He muſt beware of all ſpice, unleſſe they be dreſt with ſome other cooling herbs, as with Violet leaves, Purſlain, Spinage, Lettice, Endive, and ſuch like. But Saffron is much commended for this diſeaſe, for it ſtrengtheneth the heart, the breaſt, and cleanſeth the lungs. White Wine is good for his drink, if it be clear and ſomewhat ſweet: but the ſowr and hard wine harmeth him: if ſo be that the Wine do not fume into the head, then let him drink it by it ſelf, but if it be heady, then temper it with ſodden water, or the water wherein Licorice, Bugloſſe, Elecampane, Folefoot leaves, and ſuch like are decocted, this muſt be his drink at meals, but if he drink between meals, then is he to drink ſugred Barley water. Here have you now the ſecond time a deſcription of the ſix unnatural things, the which the Phyſitians do call *Res non naturales*, like as the ſame are before ſet down in the deſcription of *Aſthma*.

Here do follow many remedies for this diſeaſe.

TAke the tailes of freſh water Crabs ſix ounces, prepare and dreſſe them as is before inſtructed, the ſeeds of Endive, of Sorrel, of ſmall Endive, and of Lettice one drachme

drachme and a half, Pingles that have been ſteeped one night in Folefoot water two ounces, ſtamp and chop them all together, and ſeeth them with four ounces of Sugar and Hony to a Confection. There is alſo another Confection made of Crabs, called *Looch de Cancris*, as followeth: Take the tails of good fat freſh water Crabs four ounces, Raiſins the ſtones taken out two ounces: 30. Jujubes, Licorice two ounces, Venus hair, Taſſel leaves, Hounds tongue, and Dill, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſeethe this all together in ſufficient water to the half part, then wring it out, and put thereto ſirup of Poppy heads, and white Sugar, of each four ounces, and when it is well clarified, and decocted to the thickneſſe of Hony, then put unto it ſirup of Licorice, Almonds chopt ſmall, and Gourd ſeed, of each half an ounce, ſeeds of Mallows and Quinces, of each one quarter of an ounce, Purſlain and white Poppy ſeed, Dragagant, Gum and Starch, of each one drachme, powud all theſe ſmall together, *Species Diamoſchus*, and *Diambra*, of each one drachme, temper them all well together. Item, this *Looch* enſuing may alſo be prepared for this, the which is very good for the Conſumption, the drought and heat of the throat: Take Licorice ſliced, Raiſens without ſtones, of each one ounce, Jujubes, and Sebeſtes ten or twelve, ſeethe them all together in two quarts of water, that there remain not above the eighth part, then ſtrain it through a cloth, and put thereto five ounces of ſodden wine, Sugar pennets two ounces, and ſo let it ſeethe thick together, whereof the Patient is to take twice or thrice a day, and likewiſe in the night tereatably, a ſmall ſpoonful at once, for this are alſo good *Looch de Pino*, *De Farfaria*, and *Looch de Papavere*.

To theſe foreſaid confections is this following highly commended: Take the juice of Pimpernel, of Biſtorta, or powders of the ſame, of each half an ounce, conſerve of Roſes, one ounce and a half, temper them well together, and let them ſeethe over a ſmall fire; or if it be hot weather, ſet it in the Sun until it be thick. About the *Biſtorta* is a great debate amongſt the learned, every one may therefore look unto it that will.

Item, the confection of Fox Lungs deſcribed before in the twelfth §. is ſpecial good for all ſuch as have the Conſumption taking daily the quantity of a Nutmeg. The operations that Treacle and Mithridate have in this diſeaſe, are declared in many other places of the book. The warm and cold Dragagant tabulats are alſo ſpecial good for the conſumption, and that according to the importance of the ſame.

Item, take eight ounces of Hens fleſh which is ſodden in Barly water, and as much Almonds, beat them all ſmall together, and temper therewith one ounce and a half of Starch, and the whites of five eggs well beaten, with four ounces of beaten Sugar, temper them all together with Roſe water, and let them ſeethe well without the Almonds and the Hens fleſh: when it beginneth to be thick, then ſtir the Almonds and the Hens fleſh amongſt it, and make morſels or ſmall cakes thereof, and let them dry in an oven. The confected Almonds are ſpecial good for ſuch as conſume away, for they give good nouriſhment; in like ſort the confected Pingles, if they be ſteeped firſt 24. hours in Roſe-water.

This following is a coſtly powder: Take white Poppy ſeed one ounce and a quarter, Starch and Dragagant, ana. ℥. 3. peeled Melon ſeed, Pompeon ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, and peeled Gourd ſeeds, ana. ℥. 7. ſeeds of Purſlain and Mallows, ana. ℥. 5. burnt Ivory, and the juice of Licorice, ana. ℥. 3. Sugar pennets as much as of all the reſt, make a powder thereof, and give every morning thereof one quarter of an ounce, with the ſirup of Poppy heads, or ſirup of Jujubes: this is good againſt all ulcerations of the Lights, and againſt all Coughes, for that it is of wonderful operation, yea alſo in them that do Cough up pieces of their Lights. If you will have a powder of it for to ſtrew upon your meat, then put as much more Sugar unto it.

Item, take Lungwoort, and prepared Fox lights of each half an ounce, and two ounces of Sugar, and make thereof a powder. And you may make theſe pils following for to lay under the tongue, which are very good againſt the Cough, and againſt the Ague: Take peeled Melon ſeed, Gourd ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, and peeled Pompeon ſeed, ana. ℥. 5. white Poppy ſeed, Purſlain ſeed, ana. ℥. 7. Sugar pennets as much as all the reſt weigh, muſcilage of Quinces as much as needeth for to make pils therewith.

Item, conſerves of Betony, and conſerves of Gilloflowers being both of one operation) are paſſing good againſt the Conſumption: the conſerve of water Lillies cooleth marvellous well, and the wine thereof. In like manner Roſemary wine, and of Clary, are alſo good for this, even as in the laſt part of this book their operations are diſcovered.

Here

Here followeth also precious Capon water which much strengtheneth the heart, and restoreth all weakneſſe: Take an old Capon, chop it ſmall, and put unto him Bugloſſe water, the water of Burrage and Dandelion, of Endive, and *Cardans Benedictus*, of each eight or ten ounces, groſſe beaten Cinamome, and Pionie ſeed, of each half an ounce, Saffron and Nutmegs, of each one ſcrup. Roſes, Mints, Sage, and Flowers of Burrage cut ſmall, of each one handfull, Bugloſſe the roote and herbe one ounce, Harts tongue, Violets and Roſemary flowers, of each half a handfull, Miſſelden of the Oke half an ounce, let all this digeſt in a Stiller, and afterwards diſtill it like other water, this is ſpecially good for children.

Theſe cold remedies following are very meet for a conſuming body, which is hot and dry, to wit, conſerve of Roſes, ſirupe of Poppie heads, Roſes and Violets, Purſlaine, cold Dragagant, tabulats, and the confection of *Diarrhodion* which is very temperate. Or warming remedies if the patient be not too hot, like as in *Aſthma*, theſe following are good, *Diacuminum*, *Diapeos Salomonis*, *Dia Hyſſopo*, *Dia Calaminthe*, *Diapraſſium*. In like manner, the ſirupe of all theſe aforeſaid, alſo the ſirupe of Licorice, Jujubes, and Venus haire, but chiefly the laſt of them, which is not too hot. This patient ought alwaies as well before as after meat to ſit in a warme bath water, and to ſit therein ſo long untill the veines begin to ſwell and grow big.

Plaiſters and Unguents have alſo good operation in this diſeaſe, to wit, ſuch as hereafter inſue: take prepared Crabs tayles (as is taught before) twelve ounces, ſeeds of Endive and of ſmall Endive, of Sorrell, of Lettice, of each one drachme and a half, Mace one quarter of an ounce, peeled Melon ſeed, Gourd ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, and peeled Pompeon ſeed of each three drachmes; Pingles two ounces, beaten Sugar four ounces, and Hony of Violets as much as needeth for to make a plaiſter, and ſo lay it warme upon the breaſt.

Lixivium of the aſhes of cake doth much open the oppilations of the body, and doth diſſolve and open the humours.

Or make a confection of Figs and muſtard ſeeds, and eat of it every night to bedward.

Or ſeethe the ſeeds pownded, and the figs ſliced in wine and drink of it every night, and eat the figs after it.

Or make very fine powder of the cuttle bone, and drink it with water, this is very good.

℞. of Laudanum ʒ. 6. Angelico roots ʒ. 1. Dittanie roots ʒ. 1. ℈. 1. Saffron ʒ. 1ß. the 4. greater cold ſeeds, powder them and with honey make an electuary; take of this firſt and laſt, and in the afternoon every day. *Prob.* You may adde unto it the powder of ſweet Cubebs ʒ. ß. with this I have done much good in Conſumptions.

℞. of Caſtoreum ʒ ß. Angelico roots, powdered very ſmall and with honey make a thick electuary. I gave this to one at Riga in Leifeland that had received all the help of other Phyſitians in that Town, he lay as dead 4. houres, I put the ſaid electuary ʒ. ß. into a ſpoon with white wine, and let it remain in his mouth as he lay flat on his back, at the laſt ſome of it went down his throat; after this within half an hour I did waſh his head with my Lixivium made of the powder of Pepper, coloquintida ſeeds, and ſtrong lee made of aſhes: this revived him in a ſhort time; and after that he had the reſt of that electuary; and then he had an opening decoction; and ſo he was cured.

A good Oyntment.

TAke the fat of a white Cat, Harts ſuet, Barrowes greaſe, the marrow of Harts bones Dogs greaſe, and Badgers greaſe, of each one ounce, Hony two ounces; melt all theſe together on a mild fire: afterward put thereto Beverood and *Euphorbium*, of each half an ounce, long Pepper four ſcruples; beat that ſmall which is to be beaten ſmall, and make thereof with ſufficient Wax and oyl of Camomil an oyntment. Some have not without cauſe dried Betonie and field Cipers, ſtamping of each half an ounce, with three drachmes of Turpentine put unto it: and as this unguent is ſomewhat hot, ſo is this following temperate. Take one ounce and a half of the oyl of Violets, freſh butter three quarters of an ounce: melt them and powr them into a morter, and put thereto one ounce and a half of womans milke that hath a daughter ſucking on her, ſtir it together untill it be well tempered, and annoint the breaſt therewith, it is good againſt heate, it ſwageth

and

and looseth flegme: therefore it is also good in *Asthma* and *Hectica*. Item, take the whole purtenance with heart, lights and liver as it hangeth together of a blacke Calf, chop it together very small, and distill it in a glasse helme in seething water; you may take thereof as much as you will and temper amongst it as much Nettle water as of the former, and rub therewith the withered members.

If so be then the marrow in the bones do also wither away (as is admonished at the first) then take a Fole of a yeare old, let it be killed, fleyed and all the bones cut in peeces: take the marrow out; then take washt Turpentine, Hounds grease, and Harts suet, of each half an ounce; cut and melt the marrow, but the skin that sticketh to the bottome preserve that alone; for being powdered it is good for all sores; the molten marrow keep still in the pan, and temper one with another as long as an egg may be sod, and let it cool: you may take thereof the bignesse of a Walnut, and annoint your self twice a day therewith, on the hands and side, and elsse-where if it be needfull.

It is also to be noted, that there is another sort of Consumption called *Febris Hectica*, which proceedeth also of this contagion of the Lights, but we will speak further thereof in the sixt part, where we do treat of all other sorts of Agues, as also of other witherings of the members, of lamenesse, and the Poxe, in the fourth Chapter of this book.

Of the stinking breath in Phthisis, *or the Consumption.* §. 24.

OF all the former diseases and putrifactions of the Lights, it is easily to bee understood, from whence the breath hath this beginning and whence it stinketh, and that it cannot be amended, if the disease whereby it is corrupted be not taken away and cured; whereof is spoken more at large in the first part, the 13. Chapter, and §. 3. therefore we will speak more briefly of it: for which Master Tristrams water is very good. Likewise the juyce of Wormwood tempered with Vinegar, and the mouth washt therewith. Confected Calamus, Elecampane and Citron pils, are also very good with their sirups. In the first part the twelfth Chapter, and 1. §. is a powder set downe which beginneth thus, Take Sene, &c Annis and Fennel seeds confected, and such like, do also take away the stinking breath: the which also do sweet and bitter Almonds, be they confected or no.

But heed must be taken for the Consumption, that no laske or fluxe happen with it: and if such do happen, then is this powder following to be used. Take Gum of Araby, burnt Ivory, fine Bolus, and Myrtle seed, of each a like much, make thereof a powder, and minister thereof every day as long as very needfull, three drachmes at a time, with sirupe of Poppie heads and Myrtles.

For to conclude this Chapter of the Lights, we will add hereunto certaine needfull and necessarie things: to wit, the medicines which by nature voluntarily ease the Lights, as Ireos, Hyssope, Licorice, Raisins, Venus haire, Squils, Saunders, Pingles, Fox Lights, Horehound, Hony, Sugar, Dragagant, Fenegreek, Barley, Saffron, Ameos, Colewort broth, the broth of an old stued Cock, Cherries, *Lignum Aloes*, Hasell nuts, *Opopanacum*, *Serapinum*, *Myrrha*, Radishes, Daffodill roots, Lilly roots, Frankincense.

These things following doe cleanse the Lights and the Breast; as *Agaricus*, Hyssope, Wood-binde, *Sarcocolla*, Cassia, Ireos, Coloquint, the confection of *Diasena*, and the pils *Cochiæ*.

These things following doe strengthen and warme the breast and the Lights, as Hyssope, Horehound, Ireos, Elecampane roots, Gammomill, Hollihocke roots, Currans, Squils, Balsam wood, *Myrrha*, *Serapinum*, Lilly roots, Venus haire, Licorice, Indie *Spica*: and amongst the compounded things are *Diacalaminthum*, *Diaprassium*, *Diahyssopum*, Ireos tabulats, the confection of Pingles and *Looch de Pino*. For the cooling of the breast these things, Jujubes, Sebestes, Dragagant, Gum of Araby, Starch, and white Poppie seed, sweet Almonds, Violets, Sugarcandy, Mulberries, Saunders, Sugar, &c. Of the compounded things, the confection *Diapapavere*, cold Dragagant, Sallads, Sugar pennets, and other things more: that with many more are described before.

We must note further, that although the disease of Children, which is called the infection of the heart be a malady of the Lights, and a kind of Consumption, yet for some causes it is described in this Chapter following.

The ſixth Chapter.

Of the Heart, the moſt precious part of mans body.

ALl they that are expert in natural things, or in Philoſophie do write, that the Heart is the firſt member that is found in all living bodies: and in like manner the laſt that dyeth of all other parts of a living body; the which is very well to be believed, for that it is a perfect fountain and off-ſpring of life, and of all natural heat; and is alſo it ſelf hoter then any other member: therefore in all beaſts it is ſet in the middeſt of their bodies, that it might warm the blood, ſpread the ſame abroad over all the whole body, and thereby preſerve life right in the middle of the breaſt. (which is contained in this ſecond part of this book.) The Heart hath his place in mens bodies, but with his picked end tendeth towards the left ſide, and left nipple: therefore do the common people ſuppoſe that the heart lyeth in the left ſide.

Out of this ſpringeth firſt the vitall ſpirits, *Spiritus vitales*, which with a continnall ſtirring and moving preſerve it, and that with ſuch force, that the ſame being out of the body, yet it forcibly ſtirreth and goeth up and down, even as one may ſpecially ſee by the hearts of the Salmon and Sturgeon. Through which continnall ſtirring from this place, it doth communicate his motion through all the Arteries, and alſo the life it ſelf unto the whole body, the which is to be known by this, that when the ſame is infected with any impoſtume, or with any weapon never ſo little pierced that forth with the vitall ſpirits, yea life it ſelf muſt depart out of the body; like as is daylie ſeene by the like experience of the hearts of all beaſts which are killed: whereas the heart being ſound, ſo ſoone as the ſame is never ſo little touched or ſtirred, that then all warmth and helpe is taken from all other members, whereupon immediatly death enſueth; and is none otherwiſe but as if ones heart be not before harmed.

Item, this heart is alſo the dwelling place of all inclinations of the mind, as mirth, vexation, ſorrow, fear, care, hope, love, hate, anger, malice, mercy, ſufferance, or forbearance, and ſuch like,

Fourthly, appear in the Heart ſuch diverſities of affections, with ſuch a force and vertue, that if the one do raigne above the other, the ſame draweth ſuch an humor unto it, as is moſt acceptable for it: As anger draweth unto it *Cholera*, mirth diſcuſſeth the blood over the whole body, and through fear and fright haſteneth it towards the hart: in great ſorr ow and vextion it draweth the melancholike blood unto it, &c. How were it then poſſible to expreſſe all the cauſes of theſe and of other more wonderfull paſſions of the hart; yet have many renowned and learned men written very amply thereof, whoſe books may be read and peruſed.

Alſo it is certaine, that all bodies, which hath great hearts, are fearful, and faint-hearted, for that they have not ſo much heat as is needfull for them. Contrariwiſe all ſmall hearts, which draw the heat the better together are ſtout and valiant: This may well be underſtood of great and ſpongeous hearts, which are not ſo wide, nor filled with ſo many vital ſpirits: like as are other great and compacted hearts, that be hot, and filled with vitall ſpirits, then can they not otherwiſe but ſhew themſelves manly and couragious, like as the common proverb ſayth, He hath a great heart.

The heart hath ſome fatneſſe on the top, yet in leane bodies very little, but in fat bodies ſomewhat more, the which is ordained by nature therewith to moiſten the Heart, that through his continnall ſtirring it ſhould not be it ſore dried. Likewiſe it hath otherwhiles a thicke fleſhie ſkin which lyeth round about the heart, and ſometimes waxeth almoſt as hard as a bone, the which the Grecians call *Pericardion*, and we, the cloſet of the heart, and hath ſuch moiſture in it, like as it were urine, yea otherwhiles like as it were with a ſweet deaw. And when as this moiſture commeth to drie up, like as it happeneth in them that conſume or live in great ſorrow, then muſt death follow after it. Like as to the contrarie doth come to paſſe, when there is too much of this foreſaid moiſture, that thereby is cauſed the panting of the Heart, and deſtemperature of the vitall ſpirits. It were here too long to rehearſe all the ſignes of a hot, cold, drie and moiſt Heart, or of a cold & drie, hot and moiſt, cold and moiſt, or hot and drie; all the which are intemperatures or *Intem-*

peries:

peries of which is spoken in the first part and 3. §. We will also touching this, recommend the Reader to *Galen*, who hath at large discoursed of these *Intemperies*.

But must adjoyn thereto three things which concern the heart, whereof the heart of them that dyed of *Cardiaca* or swouning, or their hearts that dyed through poyson, cannot be burnt.

Secondly, the foolish fansie of the Egyptians, that were of opinion, that mens hearts do every year augment one quarter of an ounce, and that during fifty years, and that afterwards from year to year it abate as much again, which was the cause that men could not live above one hundred years.

Thirdly, that the heathen of their offred beasts (and also *Iulianus* the Emperor that fell from Christ) do marvellously seduce people and perswade, that all things to come may thereby be known, whereof we will speak no more at this present. We will now propound our intent, and treat of all the diseases and accidents of the heart, and thereby teach thereby how the same are to be holpen and cured. And albeit touching this there be many maladies and accidents described by the learned, yet we will nevertheless briefly rehearse only of the faintnesse of the heart, of whatsoever cause that it may proceed, as swounding, quaking and panting, be it through heat or cold; amongst which may be contained all accidents and maladies which are incident unto the heart, and lastly add thereto of the malady which is commonly called, the griping of the heart.

Of the fainting of the heart in general. §. 1.

Even as the heart is the most principal and precious part of the body, so doth the same declare that there is the more care and providence to be had, for to avoid and take away his maladies, for to cure all that which hurteth it, and to prefer all that helpeth; and to brain the same, thus do the learned write these common rules hereafter following.

First, that with expedition some good means and counsel be used and had against all that might happen unto the heart, for to expel the matter which is cause thereof, for that there is no part of the body which may tollerate lesse delay of help.

Secondly, for other members which have any disease, there one thing is commanded, another forbidden, so that thereby no hurt might happen, which nevertheless is not so duly observed, as whensoever is given to one that hath the Ague, Wine, or Flesh, which notwithstanding is clearly forbidden: but this must be more strictly observed in the infirmities of the heart, by reason that it is much more needful for to strengthen the same as can be best, and to comfort it.

Thirdly, if any member be by nature hot, and yet there striketh more heat unto it, then must a great cooling be used, but one may not do so to the heart, whereto lesse or smaller things be used, neither yet to delay it so long, before you seek remedy to cure it, as shall be hereafter declared in the eight and ninth instruction.

Fourthly, the parts that are helpers of the motions and actions of the whole body must not at any hand be touched with any strong purgation, so that thereby the same parts, and consequently the whole body be not overweakened, the which must so be observed in the heart, by reason that the same doth procure all actions of the whole body.

Fifthly, for that the diseases of the heart are caused for the most of blood and wind, therefore is Phlebotomy much better for it then purging: but if the malady proceed of blood, then must the Liver vein be opened on the right side; if of wind, then is the Liver vein on the left side to be opened.

Sixthly, if that purging medicines must needs be used, then is there alwaies to be put thereto that which may comfort the heart, as hereafter shall be taught, thereby to strengthen the same, and to preserve it, by reason that all purging medicines are not a little contrary to the heart.

Seventhly, it must be narrowly looked unto what part of mans body doth send these humors towards the heart, and causeth this malady, for to make ready the purgation accordingly, and to add the cordial things unto it, as hath been said.

Eighthly, that if the Heart have gotten a bad hot complexion, that the same must be cooled, and is to be tempered amongst the cooling medicines some warming things: for if nothing but only cold things were used, then might perchance the natural heat be quenched, and the patient be killed.

Ninthly, the cauſe of this mixture of cold and warm things is, for that cold things are commonly of no force or power without the help of warm things, to penetrate to the heart. As for example, the Saffron is therefore added to the *Trochiſces de Camphora*.

For that all which ſhall here afterwards be written of the malady of the Heart, is no other thing but a faintneſſe, where the one is greater and the other leſſer then another, like as *Lipothymia* and *Syncope*, it is needful to write of their differences.

Lipothymia is a ſwouning or defect of the mind, which ſometimes is but ſmall and ſometimes great, and is ſoon ended; contrarywiſe *Syncope* cometh ſuddenly upon one, and that with ſuch vehemency, that he can neither feel, ſee, nor hear, ſo that between death and him there is no difference, then that as yet he hath ſome breath.

Notwithſtanding is the *Lipothymia* not ſo little to be regarded, but that ſpeedily help muſt be had for it, for that it may quickly turn into *Syncope*.

But before all things, ſhall every one know, that both theſe tremblings of the heart, have ſo great acquaintance with the panting of the heart, that many Phyſitians have comprehended them under one title, as the remedies deſcribed every where do teſtifie the ſame; but that they have made many neceſſary differences between hot and cold ſwoonings, and firſt to write of the foreſaid ſmall ſwouning, or defect of mind, which taketh one unawares, therefore are theſe things following to be uſed which do ſtrengthen and warm the heart, as Balm, Burrage, Roſemary, Baſil, Penniroyal, Marjoram, Wormwood, and ſpecially marriſh Mints. Of roots, Cipres roots, Zeduary, Coſtus, Ginger, Elecampane roots, both the Beetes roots, and Doronicum. Of ſeeds, Ameos, Smallage ſeed, Annis ſeed: Of Spices, Cardamom, Nutmegs, Lignum Aloe, Saffron, cucubes, Cloves.

Item, take Muſcus, Ambra, Harts bones, Citron pils, Maſtick, Myrrhe, Blattæ Byzantiæ, good and pleaſant taſting Wine.

Item, take theſe warming confections following, as Diamargariton Calidum, Diacinnamomum. Diapliris, Lætificans, Dia Moſchu, Diambra, Aramaticum Roſatum, which is of a temperate nature; Treacle, Mithridate, confected Citron pils, confected Elecampane roots, and other things more that do follow afterwards.

Theſe things are of a temperate nature, Jacint, Smaragdes, Saphires, Rubies, Pearls, Coral, Gold, Silver, Amber, Mirobalanes Bellerici, Bugloſſe, ſilk Worms neſts, burnt Ivory, Barberries, Tormentil, Harts bones, and Saffron. To cool the heart take, Melon ſeed, Pompion ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, Gourd ſeed, the ſeeds of Fleawort, Sorrel ſeed, prepared Coriander, Pomgranats, Lemons, Citrons, and their juice, Quinces, ſowre Apples, Pears, Raſpes, new and dry Prunes, and all pleaſant ſavouring fruits, water Lillie flowers, the juice of the Vine, Vinegar, Roſes, Violets, ſhaven and burnt Ivory, all kind of Saunders, Amber, and ſealed earth. Of compounds, is the confection of Diarrhodon Abbatis, Triaſantalon, Manus Chriſti with Pearls, Diamargariton frigidum, Trochiſci de Camphora, conſerve of Roſes, of Violets, Sirupe of Raſpes, Lemons, Violets, Roſes, water Lillies, Vinegar, and Oxyſacchara, and all that you ſhall find written herafter. Moreover, there are hereafter ſet down divers confections, that comfort the heart in heat and cold.

The order of Life or Dyet for this faintneſſe of the Heart.

A Bad ſtomach is otherwhiles no ſmall cauſe for this ſwouning, for it procureth before the ſwouning come a heat over the whole body. As ſoon as this ſhall be perceived, it is not amiſſe to uſe for it confected Balſam wood, but in the ſtead thereof take Tabulates of Xyloaloe, which are very requiſite for this.

Secondly, he is to take every morning one drach. of fine Treacle, which muſt be twelve years old, with Roſewater, of the confection of Muſcu, Diamoſchu dulcis, he is to drink of it oftentimes with Baſil water one quarter of an ounce at a time, but that which concerneth the ſtomach ſhall follow hereafter. Fourthly, this patient is to have hanging about his neck a good Smaragde ſtone, or at the leaſt ſelected Coral. Fifthly, take one drach. and a half of Roſe buds which are not fully blwon, Vine leaves, red and white Behen, flowers and ſeeds of Baſil, Bark of Frankincenſe, Marjoram gentle, of each one drachme, Balm one drach. and a half, Camphire one ſcruple, Amber half a ſcruple, Muſk two grains, each beaten by it ſelf, and being bounden in a piece of ſilk, or to be ſmelt unto oftentimes; but if the faintneſſe be not holpen thereby, and that it be feared that he will be more fainter, then muſt thoſe things be uſed againſt the ſwouning that are deſcribed hereafter.

But for the first, you are to use these cordial waters and plaisters following; Take Bulls waste twelve ounces, Rose water, Violet water, the water of Willow leaves, and of wild Vine leaves, of each six ounces, burnt Ivory, Roses, red and white Saunders, Hartshorn, seeds and leaves of Basil, of each two ounces, Musk two grains, Amber five grains, Mirabel two ounces, let all these seethe together about one quarter of an hour (except the Musk and Amber) make then a piece of red Scarlet cloth wet therein, one quarter of a yard long, wring it warm out, and lay it four or five times in an hour upon the heart. A sponge may also be laid in this water, and laid unto oftentimes, for both of them do marvellously comfort the Heart.

If so be that the swouning doth not yet cease, then take two ounces of this foresaid powder, and temper amongst it as much Barly meal, one scruple of Saffron, and seethe it with good old wine untill it be reasonable thick, temper it well in a mortar with four leaves of beaten gold, and one drach of prepared Pearls, spread these upon a piece of red Scarlet cloth, and then lay it on the left breast. This is approved to be marvellous good, and to have sometimes holpen such a grief within one quarter of an hour, and sustained the sick person by his strength.

Of Syncope *the great Swouning.* §. 2.

The second and worst swouning of the Heart is called *Syncope*, and is thus described. *Syncope* is a distraction of all feeling and stirring of the whole body, with extream faintness. Amongst many other inward causes whereof, are these, receiving of any pestilent or other stinking air, whether it be in time of the Plague, or of the stench of any hollow caves, or of the byting of any venemous beasts, as of Scorpions, mad dogs, and venemous fumes of mettals, like as in the melting often happeneth: of great fear and fainting, of former diseases, as of the dead Palsey, the Pleurisie, inflammation of the lights, suffocation of the mother, of worms, of overwatchings, of many stakes, of much sweating, of great hunger, of much smarting, of great pain, yea also of great joy, and other strong motions of the mind. So that this great swouning hath great familiarity with the dead palsey; albeit there be a difference, whereof we are to speak. If any get the palsey, then remaineth his face by good semblance: but in this swouning it is like to a dead body. For in this swouning, all the blood runneth towards the Heart, so that the patient remaineth without any feeling, and in such an Estate, that no man can tell whether he be dead or living: so that there is a common proverb of it, That such dead men ought not to be buried in three dayes.

Secondly, they are like one to the other, in that neither breath nor pulse is perceived.

Thirdly, in the palsey the patient feeleth before a heavinesse in the head, but not in the *Syncope*; nevertheless they accord in this, that the affected party lyeth as though he were dead.

But in this swouning it is certain, if it come after a long panting of the heart, and continueth long, then it is a Messenger of death, and chiefly if there be Ellebor blown into the patients nose, and it doth not stir and move him at all.

The signs of the swouning to come, of what cause soever it be provoked, are sweating and panting of the heart, a slow and feeble pulse, bleakness of the lips and face, chilness of the outward members, numness of the sense of feeling and moving; where these signs appear, there a strong swouning draweth near, & there is need of good counsel.

First, and with speed, when the swouning approacheth or is extant, then is the patient to be spouted in the face with Rose water, or (if that be not ready to be had) with cold Well water, and it will be the better if there be a little Musk tempered amongst it; for thereby will the natural heat be driven inwardly, and the vital spirits revived. Stop also his nose and his mouth a little while: for if the breath find no vent, then turneth it back, and thereby quickneth the natural heat.

Secondly, his arms are to be bound hard, and then made loose, and bound hard again. The palmes of the hands and plants of the feet are well to be rubbed with raw cloths, salt, and vinegar, to the end that the matter may be drawn from the heart.

Thirdly, his stomach and about the mouth of the stomach is also to be well rubbed, whereby the natural heat may be quickned. All fragrant herbs, which are hot of nature, are to be holden before his nose, as all kind of Spice, Musk and Amber, if so be that the cause of this matter be cold.

But

But for women that do fall into swouning through the suffocation of the Mother, it is another case, as shall be shewed elsewhere, for that all odoriferous things are hurtful to be holden before their noses. A grain of Musk dissolved in Wine and then given, is passing good. And if the patient have vehemently closed his mouth, then is the same to be broken open with a wooden stick, and his tongue, teeth, and roof of the mouth to be annointed with Treacle or Mithridate. But if the cause be through heat, then must the patient have cold things given him to smell unto, as Camphire, Saunders, Roses, and such like, here before expressed. And of what cause soever this swouning doth come, yet is it alway good that there be made a great noise about the patient, and that he be called upon by his name, and blow Camphire in his nose, or Saunders in stead thereof; these are now the commonest means, if the swouning be procured through heat or cold, that are to be used at a sodain.

Secondly, all the windowes are to be set open, that then the patient may be refreshed with the fresh air, and they are to speak very friendly unto him. Also you are to anoint his pulse, nose, and temples with the foresaid things, and give him all comfortable things, as is before said, that nature may thereby be strengthened and quickned.

An order of life for Swouning.

FIrst, all men that are subject to this swouning, must beware of all cloudy, moist, and cold air, and shun such like dwellings, must suffer no sweat upon the head, must cast off all sweaty shirts, and put on clean; he must forbear all moist and cold meats, as Spinage, Beetes, Lettice, Purslain, Endive, Cherries, Hasel Nuts, Apricocks, Cucumbers, and such like; but new Figs are good for him. Further, he must be kept from all grosse binding meats, from all that is made of dough, from all fish, as Eeles, Tenches, and all great corpulent Fish; But Crabs and small Fishes which are taken in fresh waters he may eat, being a little broyled. He must also eschew all old and fat flesh, Cheese and such like. He must use for his drink all clear white Wine that is not sweet, or a good old mild sort of Beer; he must wholly forbear drinking of water; he must not overcharge his stomach with eating and drinking, but chew his meat well, and leave off eating with appetite. He must not sleep after meat, or at least not too long. He must walk well two hours before meat, yea run up hils, for that consumeth well the moisture whereof the swouning is provoked. He must specially fly all anger, sorrow, vexation, and other troubles of the mind, as is sufficiently declared before.

But what medicines are to be used for the swouning, shall be here taught; the patient must as soon as is possible, take these pils following in the morning betimes.

Take pils of Rubarb one drachme, *Hiera Composita* one scrup. make nine pils thereof with Rosewater, afterwards give him this drink following six dayes one after another; Take half a drach. of Agarick, *Hermodactili*, and Rubarb, of each one scruple, *Diagridii*, and *Sal Gemmæ*, of each two grains, Ginger, Squinant, Spica, and Annis seed, of each 3. grains, Hony of Roses half an ounce, let it steep one whole night in three ounces of water wherein Woodbind is sodden, afterwards let it seethe a walme, and strain it out. For to make pils, take good Aloes two ounces, Mastick, Saffron, Violets, and flowers of Bugosse, of each half a scruple, burnt Ivory and Roses, of each three grains, Diagridion seven grains, Agarick, Turbith, and prepared Azure stone, of each half a drachme: steep it all together with Cicory water three dayes long, and (being well stopt) let it dry in the Sun, or in another warm place, yet stirring it often about untill it be meetly thick; take then a drach. thereof, and make thereof seven pils, whereof every evening you are to take one pill a certain time long, afterwards a whole year thorow take one pill about the fift day; but if the patient be full of blood, and of sufficient strngth, then are you after purging to open the Liver vein in the elbow on the left side, and to let him bleed about five ounces.

For to keep open the body, you are to use this powder; Take *Epithymum*, roots of Polipody, *Thymus*, Harts tongue, and *Cuscuta*, of each one drach. Argal and Seny, of each half a drachme, Mace four scruples, stamp and mingle it all together, take one drach. thereof at the least twice a week at one time, tempered with a little wine, or some fresh broth; it purifieth, breaketh wind, and cleanseth the heart and stomach. Item, take at the least (once a week) as much *Pirethrum* as the bignesse of a Pease, chew the same, and spit the moisture out of the mouth.

Anthony

Another.

TAke a good piece of white bread, mollifie it in good Muſcadel or Malmſey, if ſo be that the cauſe of this ſwouning be of cold: but if it proceed of heat, then mollifie the ſame white bread in Roſe water, in juice of Pomegranats, in juice of Quinces, in the juice of Citrons, or any fleſh broth, and ſo eat it. Alſo this patient may uſe conſerve of Roſes, Burrage, Bugloſſe, and Roſemary, and other things more, which ſhall be expreſſed hereafter in the trembling of the heart, after that heat or cold hath the upper hand.

There are yet many more confections and Cordial things prepared, which are very profitable for this purpoſe, and do remain deſcribed before in the diſcourſe of the cold pain of the head where it beginneth, take conſerves of Betony, &c. Item take *Piſtacia* three ounces, white Sugar ſix ounces, ſirup of Roſes four ounces, ſeeds of Baſil red and white Coral, Roſes, burnt Ivory, red and white Behen, of each one drach. Zeduary, Amber, and Saffron, of each two ſcruples, Jacint, Smaragde, and Saphire, of each half a ſcruple, Mace, Cinamom, and Cloves, of each one drach. ſix leaves of beaten gold, Pearls four ſcruples: the *Piſtacia* ſteep (being cut ſmall) three dayes long in Malmſey; afterwards ſeethe the ſirup and the Sugar thick enough, and firſt temper therein the moyſt *Piſtacia*, and afterwards the reſt beaten ſmall, whereof is to be taken the ſpace of ſix weeks every morning the bigneſſe of a Walnut. This powder following is to be ſtrewed upon the meat: Take Cinamom half an ounce, Saffron one drach. Zeduary three quarters of an ounce: to beat and mix them all together. The Zeduary hath a ſpecial power for to ſtrengthen the heart. And there is to be dreſt alwaies in his meat Bugloſſe and Balm.

To this end are prepared divers cordial waters, as hereafter followeth: Take Cinamom and Cloves, of each one ounce and a half, Nutmegs one ounce, red and white Roſes, of each ten handfuls, Lavander flowers ſeven handfuls, Hyſſope two handfuls: pour then thereupon a quart of Malmſey: temper them all together, cut them ſmall, and let ſo ſtand nine dayes together, and afterwards diſtil it. Item, take good Wine five quarts, 2. raſes of Ginger, 40. Cloves Cinamom, 3. quarters of an ounce, Mace one quarter of an ounce, Spike 2. handfuls: If you will have it more forcible, then put two Nutmegs cut unto it, let it ſteep all together 6. or 7. weeks long, and afterwards diſtil it. This have the Antient Phyſitians done. Or take four quarts of good wine, Spike 3. handfuls, green Marjoram gentle 2. handfuls, Mace, Cloves, Cinamom, and Nutmegs, as much as you think good: temper them together, and ſet them a whole moneth long in the Sun in a glaſſe. This may you keep ſo, or diſtil it.

Another. Take Lavander three handfuls, ſteep it in a pinte of wine, or Malmſey, ſtop it tight; then ſet it for the ſpace of thirty daies in the Sun, and afterwards diſtil it. Of all theſe foreſaid waters may a little be given him when he beginneth to get the ſwouning, or hath the ſame already. This juice following is juſtly praiſed: Take a Capon or a Partridge, roſt him leiſurely, baſte it with Roſe-water and Muſcadel, or any other good wine wherein Cloves have been ſteeped; then preſſe the juice out of the ſaid Bird, and give him ſome thereof, and the reſt let him eat now and then ſome. And that this juice may continue good the longer, temper it with as much hard Sugar as you think good. But will you have another? then wring likewiſe as much juice out of a Pullet, or out of young Kids fleſh, take two ounces thereof, new preſſed juyce of Quinces, ℥. i. ß. and one ounce of good milde wine; temper them all together, and give the patient to eat thereof. For this is alſo commodious all *Aqua Compoſitæ*, which are deſcribed in the eighth Part. For this ſwouning may be uſed outward remedies after many manners: firſt, through ſhields: Take Burrage flowers, and Violets, of each one handful, red and white Saunders, red and white Coral, red and white Behen, and Roſes ana. ℥. i. Saffron, ℥. ß. burnt red Silk, G. i. Camphire, *Muſcus*, *Ambra*, ana. G. 2. pownd them all together, and mix them in a red ſilken bag, and ſo lay it on your left breaſt. *Cordial ſhields.*

Another. Take Ireos half an ounce, tame or wild Balm, Citron pils, Bugloſſe flowers of each one drachme, Mace one quarter of an ounce, yellow, white and red Saunders, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each half a drachme; temper them with powder of the capital bone which are deſcribed in the firſt Part, the twelfth Chapter, in the beginning, where is mention made of the brains: take thereof as much as is needful for a bag to lay on the Heart. The ſame is alſo wonderful good in time of the Plague being laid upon the

Heart. Item, take Ireos three ounces and a half, Damask Roſes ſix ounces, Marjoram, Cipers roots, and red Styrax, of each half an ounce, Cloves one quarter of an ounce, Calamus half a drachme, *Muſcus* two grains, uſed as above.

This following is a very cordial ſhield: Take Burrage flowers, Bugloſſe flowers, red and white Saunders, red and white Behen, Nutmegs, and Couchenel, *Lignum Aloes*, Saffron, Sedvary, white Diptamus, Cucubes, Baſil ſeed, Bauſme, and Citron pils, of each half a drachme, *Gallia muſcata* one ſcruple, *Muſcus* and *Ambra*, of each ſix grains, beat them all together groſſe, and put it into a red Crimſon bag, and lay it over the breſt.

Here follow divers more. Take Juniper berries, powr thereto water of Sage, pownd them to paſte, and then bind it luke-warm upon the Pulſe. Item, take Cinnamom, Mace, Saffron, Cloves, as many as you will, put Malmſey unto them, and lay it all upon the Pulſe. Take unpownded Saffron, faſten it in the left hand one hour at the leaſt; it ſtrengtheneth much the heart. Take clean burnt Balm, Pennyroyal, Cloves, water of Sage, and Roſes, temper them, and annoint therewith the Patient, eſpecially on the Pulſes, under the nose, and upon the temples of his head. The ancient Phyſitians do rub the heart with freſh Burrage flowers; it is very good, but it is very weak. All odoriferous things which are hot by nature, are to be uſed againſt the ſwouning through heat. But Hyſſope is chiefly to be commended for it, and all thoſe who are ſubject to this ſwouning are counſelled to ſmell of or unto it.

A precious Balm to comfort the heart, firſt ordained for the Emperor Ferdinandus.

This Balm following was ordained for the Emperor *Ferdinandus*: Take a pound of Turpentine, ſix ounces of Virgin hony, twelve ounces of water of life, even as hereafter be divers deſcribed in the eight part. *Lignum Aloes, Turbith*, yellow Saunders, Sage, roots of blew Flower deluce, and *Chamedrys*, of each one drachme, Nutmegs, Galingal, Cubebes, Cinnamom, Maſtick, Frankinſenſe, Cloves, *Spica*, white Muſtard ſeed, Saffron, Ginger, Rue ſeeds, and Coſtemary roots, of each three drachmes, Muſk one drachme, Amber one quarter of an ounce; beat them all groſſe together, and let it ſteep all together one day and a night in the water of life. But the Muſk and the Amber are to be broken alone in ſome Muſcadel wine. Laſtly, temper the Turpentine therewith, and diſtil it in ſeething water.

A good ſalve.

TAke Amber, Zedvary, red and white Coral, *Blatta Byſantina*, Baſil ſeed, red and white Behen, and Roſemary flowers, of each one drachme and a half; Mace one quarter of an ounce, Sorel, ſmall Endive and Cicorie, of each half an ounce, Roſes and water Lillies, of each three quarters of an ounce, Roſin one ounce and a half, *Laudanum* half an ounce, white Wax three drachmes; melt the three laſt things together, and as they begin to be cold, then mingle thereſt amongſt it: afterwards let it be ſpread on a round cloth, and laid upon the left breaſt. If it be too hard, then make it ſofter with oyl of Roſes; both which are good (as is ſaid) againſt the ſwouning and faintneſſe of the Heart. Yet is the Balſam much hotter than the ſalve, for it is temperate, and therefore you may know how to uſe it accordingly. When you have made it ſofter, then annoint the whole breaſt therewith.

This capital powder following may alſo be uſed for this: Take Indy *Spica, Anneſe*, Bayberries, Marjoram gentle, ana ℥. i. *Lignum Aloes*, ℥. i. ß. beat all apart, and mix them together with five grains of this powder; You muſt every evening when your go to bed ſtrew it on your head.

Of the beating or panting of the Heart. §. 3.

THe Grecians do call this diſeaſe *Palmus*, the Latiniſts *Palpitatio, Tremor*, or *Saltus Cordis*, which is a trembling or panting of the Heart, contrary to the common cuſtome. It is cauſed (even as we have taught in the beginning of this Chapter) of the abundant moiſture which is in the cloſet of the Heart.

With theſe there may be yet more other inward cauſes, as the pain of the ſtomach, vexation and offence of the Heart, of the Liver, the Lights, the Milt, or Mother: Alſo of wind, ill damps, corrupted blood, and ſuch like. The outward cauſes are commonly great heat, ſodain and great cold, great emptineſſe, great ſorrow, fright, great fear, and other motions of the mind: Further, of venome taken, biting of venemous beaſts, peſtilent Agues, corrupted ayre, ſtinking dwellings; like as in priſon, Mines or other

other ſuch like, which are under the earth: of belly worms, and all other things that vex the Heart, the which are well to be underſtood of the Patient himſelf.

The inward ſigns are theſe: If the panting of the heart proceed of Worms, then is the beating of the heart bigger before meat then after: but if the ſame come of a bad ſtomach, then may it eaſily be marked through pain in the ſame place, if the ſame be wrong: Alſo by the wambling and vomiting: If it come by fulneſſe of the ſame, then is the diſeaſe moſt grievous after meat; but if through emptineſſe, then it is moſt ſore before meat. If it proceed of fright, ſorrow, and ſuch like, you muſt underſtand and learn that by the patient: If it come of winds, then it is very ſuddenly upon one, and ſoon gone away again. If it be provoked of heat, then is the pulſe ſwift, and the breath is ſtrong, and diſordered. If it proceed of blood, then is the urine groſſe, and the pulſe beateth ſpeedily and ſtrong, his face will be red, and about the heart is alwaies great heat, the Patient is alwaies light hearted, the which is much augmented through meats that make and ingender much blood. Or if this diſeaſe be cauſed of *Cholera*, then is his urine yellow and thin, the pulſe beateth continually, ſwiftly, with great thirſt, poſſibly through daily meat, whereby the *Cholera* is increaſed, or of former pains taken. If this be cauſed of Phlegma, that appeareth by the white and thick urin, of ſmall ſlow, and diſordered pulſe, the Patient is ſleepy and faint-hearted. This is alſo wont to be cauſed of meats that procure *Phlegma*. Likewiſe in winter time, when this panting of the heart is cauſed of Melancholy, then is the ſick body fearful, the body decreaſeth, and falleth away, and that moſt of all in Harveſt, with many more melancholick ſignes that are elſewhere deſcribed. This panting of the heart doth often haunt both young and aged people, whereby the occaſion is hardly to be adjudged: and in all ſuch it is found, that the letting of blood hath not onely eaſed them well, but alſo throughly holpen them, and chiefely if therewith they have obſerved a good order in eating and drinking, and uſe all ſuch medicines as have abated the blood and other humours: howbeit the ſame hapneth very ſeldom that aged people be cured thereof, for that they moſt of all chance to dye of a hot Ague, or of ſwouning, and that commonly between forty and fifty years. Thus much for the beating or trembling of the heart.

Of the panting of the heart through heat. §. 4.

IF by the panting of the heart there be diſcerned a ſwift pulſe, and an Ague, then is it a ſign that it cometh of blood or Cholera, the which is not without danger: for it often hapneth, that then they do fall into a ſwoun, and thereby immediatly remain dead. Now for to remedy this, muſt the ſick perſons face, hands, feet, and pulſe veins be forthwith ſprinkled and rubbed with theſe compounded waters: take Roſe water four ounces, Mints water two ounces, Roſes, burnt Ivory, red and white Saunders, of each two ſcruples, *Muſcus* and Ambra, of each two grains, Vinegar two ounces, Malmſey two ſcruples, mix them all together, and when you will uſe thereof, then ſtir it well about. Secondly, take pleaſant Wine, and water of Bugloſſe, of each one ounce, *Speciorum Diamoſchi dulcis* one ſcruple, temper it, and give it to the Patient warm to drink. Thirdly, he ſhall continually ſmell to odoriferous bags, that ſhall hereafter be deſcribed. Afterward, as ſoon as is poſſible, ought the Liver vein to be opened in the right arm, and four or five ounces of blood be letten out, but not before that the ſick perſon hath gone to ſtool. The next day following, he ſhall take this potion: take ſirup of Citron pils one ounce, ſmall beaten Rubarb, and prepared Agarick, of each two ſcruples, ſirup of Roſes half an ounce, Ginger and Spica, of each ſix grains, *Sal Gemme* two grains, temper them all together with three ounces of the water of Burrage, and ſo drink it luke warm, and faſt thereupon four hours.

You may alſo cauſe him to be purged with Caſſia, Tamarines, yellow Mirobalanes, Manna, and Rubarb, putting to either of them ſome Agarick. As for example, you may take this Purgation following: Take water of Bugloſſe one ounce and a half, Cicory water two ounces, Rubarb one drachme and a half, prepared Agarick one drach. the juice of Roſes half a drachme, Spica one ſcruple, Ginger five grains: let this ſteep 24. hours in in a warm place, and making it hot in the morning, you muſt ſtrain it through a cloth, and ſo drink it warm, and then faſt four hours after. This being done, he muſt eight dayes one after another, take every morning this drink following: Take ſirup of Apples, ſirup of Citron pils, and *Oxyſaccharo*, of each half an ounce, water of Balm and of

Bugloſſe, of each one ounce, Cicory water one ounce and a half, temper them all together to a potion. And it were not ill that he take every fourth day one of theſe pils following: Take Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Rubarb one drach. Agarick four ſcruples, red and white Behen, Saffron, Mace and Indy ſalt, of each three grains, make pils thereof with the juice of Bugloſſe, ſix to a drachme. If there be greater heat approaching, then is it adviſed, that at the firſt every day be taken half a drach. of *Trochiſcos de Camphora*, with ſirupe of Pomgranats diſſolved, and ſo continue four dayes together. And if this will not help, then muſt the patient drink new Buttermilk, with all theſe purgations and letting blood. It is alſo highly commended, to cary a ſober life in eating and drinking, yet to take heed that the patient remain by his ſtrength.

We will here mention ſome more things that are very commodious for the panting of the heart, like as fragrant things which are of a cold nature, as Violets, water Lillies, Roſes, all Saunders, Coral, Pearl, Campher, Harts bones, Jacints, Smaradges, ſhaven Ivory, Amber, Coriander, the juice of Lemons, Roſe water, Odoriferous fruits, Quinces, Pears, Apples, and their like. Amongſt compounds are the confection of Orange pils and their ſirupe, the confection of Citrons, and their ſirupes, conſerve of Bugloſſe, Roſes, Violets, Burrage, confected Cherries, and their ſirupes, the flowers and roots of Cicory confected, ſirupe of Sorrel, Burrage wine, and Cherry wine, the Tabulates of *Diamargariton*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, Dragagant, and *Manus Chriſti* with pearls; but the Phyſitians do ordain many compounded medicines, as hereafter do follow.

The laxative ſirupe of Roſes is eſpecially commended, if there be any ſtopping of the belly, for it cooleth and diverteth all ill vapours from the heart, whereby the heart is much pained.

There are alſo made for this many confections, according to the importance of the patient, whereof there follow ſome hereafter; Take conſerve of Roſes half an ounce, conſerve of Bugloſſe two ounces, conſerve of water Lillies one quarter of an ounce, Pearls, Jacints, Smaragdes, Citron ſeed, Sorrel ſeed, and red Coral, of each one drach. red, white, and yellow Saunders, prepared Coriander, burnt Ivory, red and white Behen, Harts bones ſteeped in Roſe water, of each half a drach. filed Gold and Silver, of each two ſcruples, Gold and Silver leaves, of each 15. Sugar one ounce and a half; beat them all ſmall together, and temper it with Roſe water, but not on the fire.

Item, take the juice of ſweet Apples, and of Bugloſſe which is clear and ſetled, of each two ounces, *Doronicum*, Citron pils, Burrage flowers, Roſes, ſhaven Ivory, of each half an ounce, Baſil ſeeds half an ounce, Myrtle leaves, Balm, Coriander, Cinamom, Galangal, Zeduary, Spike, Lignum Aloes, burnt Silk, and Saffron, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſmall filed Gold and Silver, of each two drachmes and a half, red and white Behen, burnt Harts horn, Mace, Galliæ Muſcatæ, Amber, Harts bones, red Saunders, of each three drach. of all Mirobalans, of each half an ounce, Smaragdes, Beril, Jacints, Saphires, Granates, which be prepared, of each one drach. Pearls three drachmes, Amber and Campher, of each half a ſcrup. Musk one drach, make a powder thereof, and to every ounce of powder put twelve ounces of Sugar; diſſolve the Sugar in Roſewater, and ſeethe it for to make Tabulates thereof, or a confection.

This confection is of a temperate nature, very forcible for all ſwouning and maladies of the heart. Theſe two next following are cooling.

Take conſerve of Roſes, Bugloſſe, Burrage, of each one ounce, Species de Gemmis, and Rubies, of each one ſcrup. Harts bones, and peeled Citron ſeed, of each 10. grains, ſirup of Apples as much as you deſire to make it ſoft, uſe thereof in the morning two hours before meat. The other; Take conſerves of Roſes two ounces, conſerves of Bugloſſe one ounce, Species Triaſandalon, burnt Ivory, Sorrel ſeeds, peeled Melon ſeed, Gourd ſeed, and peeled Cucumber ſeed, Lemon ſeed, and Oxyſacchara, of each three quarters of an ounce, Sugar half an ounce, Pearls two ſcruples, three leaves of beaten Gold, mix it with the ſirupe of Apples unto a confection. And if this panting of the heart come too often, then give this powder following half a drachme tempered with Roſe water, and water of Bugloſſe.

Take red Coral, Jacinct, Smaragdes, and Saphir, of each five grains, ſmall filed Gold three grains, Pearls half a drach. temper them together, and put thereto a ſpoonful of white Vineger, and make a potion thereof. Item, take red Coral, Pearls, Jacincts, and Smaragdes, all together prepared, of each one ſcrup. and give thereof half a drach. with ſome kind of diſtilled water.

Reſtorative waters of Capons are very requiſite for this, which muſt be thus prepared: Boyl the Capon in water, wherein hath divers times gold been quenched; chop it afterwards in pieces, and put thereto flowers of Borrage, Bugloſſe, Violets, Roſes, Citron peels, Cinamom, Cloves, Balm and Saffron, of each one drachme. If you cannot get all theſe, then take as many of them as you can get, and diſtill them all together with fleſh and broth in hot water; and then when any body is very feeble, give him a meetly draught thereof; it ſtrengtheneth not onely the Heart, but the ſtomach alſo marvellous much.

There is alſo another made with ſpices, as followeth; When the Capon is made clean, then ſtamp him with bones and fleſh in a mortar, afterwards powre into a glaſſe helme, Borrage, Balm, Endive, Fennel, and Roſe water, of each two ounces; then put thereto the ſtampt Capon. Item, put more thereto the water of Wormwood and of Comfery, of each one ounce, *Spec. de gemmis Diarrhodon Abbatis, Diamargariton* the cold, Cinamom, Lignum Aloes, of each one ſcrup. diſtill them all together as before.

Moreover, there is another Capon water to be diſtilled, as followeth; Take an old Capon that is made clean, put thereto four quarts of water, let them ſeethe well together, then pull off the skin, and the fatneſſe, and then break him all to peeces, and diſtil water thereof as before. Yea are to ſalt this water, ſo that it may laſt the better without ſtinking. You have alſo here before in the firſt Chaper in the 22. §. a precious water, which ſtrengtheneth the heart wonderful much, the which may be alſo uſed for the ſame.

We have often here before admoniſhed of the ſirupe of Apples, which is thus made: Take the juice of ſweet and ſowre Apples, of each five ounces; ſeethe it to the half, ſcumming it, then let it ſtand two dayes to ſettle; put thereto three ounces of Sugar, and then ſeethe them together unto a ſirupe. Another; Take the juice of the beſt taſting ſweet and ſowre Apples, of each twelve ounces, ſeethe it untill it be well ſcummed, then put thereto ſix ounces of Sugar, and let it ſeethe together to a ſirupe. Theſe ſirupes ſtrengthen the weak panting heart, preſerve one from ſwouning, and ſtrengthen the ſtomach.

Item, take Roſe water, the juice of ſowre Apples, and water of Bugloſſe, of each three ounces, ſeethe theſe together to a ſirupe, or to a Julep.

For this is alſo good many kinds of accuſtomed ſirupes, as the ſirupe of Vineger, and of Lemons, of Raſpes, Violets, water Lillies, Verjuce, Sorrel, Borrage and Bugloſſe, alſo Julep of Violets and Roſes; the which are to be found in the firſt Regiſter by their names.

Diſtill a quart of white Wine with three handfuls of baulme Mints, drink 3. or 4. ſpoonfuls thereof at ounce.

Confections and Powders for to uſe inwardly.

TAke *Species Diarrhodon Abbatis, Aromatici roſati, de gemmis*, and prepared Corlander, of each three drachmes, prepared Bloodſtone one drach. and a half, *Torchiſci de Spodio cum ſemine acetoſæ*, two ſcruples, ſhaven Ivory half a drach. Hart bones half a ſcrup. prepared Pearls four ſcruples, Granadoes, Jacincts, Smaradges, Rubies, Saphires, Coral, and Roſes, of each one ſcrup. Cinamom one quarter of an ounce, Sugar ſix ounces, temper them all together to a powder. If you will make Sugar plates thereof, then ſeethe it with Roſe water, as hath been taught.

The like confection or powder may be made alſo of the *Species De gemmis*, or any other that like you beſt. And alwayes for one ounce of Species, you muſt take 12. ounces of Sugar.

Of ſuch things as are to be applyed outwardly for it.

FOr this are highly commended theſe Cordial waters, and to that end we will expreſſe many; Take water of Bugloſſe ſix ounces, water of Cicory twelve ounces, water of Balm four ounces, Species de gemmis the cold, *Latificantis Almanſoris*, of each one ſcrup. Species Triaſantali one drach. and a half, white vinegar half an ounce, and Malmſey two ounces; let it ſeethe a little, and then make a ſcarlet cloth wet in it a quarter of a yard ſquare, wring it out, and lay the ſame on his left breaſt four or five times before and after meat, and twice again before he go to bed.

Take Roſe water, and Sorrel water, of each three ounces, of Bugloſſe two ounces, red Coral, red Saunders and Roſes, of each one drach. Musk, Amber, of each three grains, Saffron one ſcrup. Vinegar one ounce and a half; temper them together, and then lay it divers times luke-warm upon the left breaſt.

Item,

Item, take *Species Diamoschu, Laetificantes, de gemmis* the cold, of each two drach. Malmsey four ounces, water of Bugloſſe, Sorrel, water of Cicory and Violets, of each one ounce, temper them together, and lay it thereon, as before.

The chiefeſt Phyſitians of *Augusta Vindelicorum*, have theſe things following in uſe: Take water of Burrage, Sorrel, Bugloſſe, Balm, and Roſe water, of each eight ounces, two kinds of *Species de gemmis*, of each half a drach. Harts bones, and burnt Harts horn, of each half a drachme, Saffron ſeven grains, Roſe Vinegar, ℥. 1. ß. temper them altogether. Another: Take Burrage water, the waters of Bugloſſe, Sorrel, Roſes, Balm, and Violets of each two ounces, Vinegar of Roſes one ounce and a half, red and white Behen, of each half a drach. flowres of Burrage, Bugloſſe, and Violets, of each one ſcruple, Cinnamom one drach. three Harts bones, *Lignum Aloes*, yellow Saunders, and burnt Harts horn, of each one ſcruple, prepared Pearls one drach. burnt Ivory, and Saffron, of each ten grains, *ſpec. Diamargariton* one drachme, temper them and uſe them as aforeſaid. Another: Take two kinds of *Spec. de gemmis*, ana. ℥. 1. *Diamoſchu dulcis*, ℥. ß. *Cordialium*, ℥. 1. Saffron, Indy Spica, red and white Behen, and *Spec. de Canna*, ana. ℈. 1. prepared Pearls, ℥. ß. yellow Saunders, ℈. 2. *Muſcus*, two grains, two Harts bones, one ounce and a half of Vinegar of Roſes, water of Balm, Sorrel, Burrage, Bugloſſe, Roſe water, ana. ℥. 3. water of Melilots, ℥. 4. temper them together, and uſe them as above.

Take red Saunders half an ounce, Citron pils, white Saunders, Roſes, red and white Corral, Amber, and burnt Ivory of each one quarter of an ounce, Harts bones, and Saffron, ana. ℥. 1. Spec. Lætitiæ Galeni, Diamargaritonis, ana. ℈. 2. Camphire, ten grains: powder theſe all together, and temper them well, and when you will uſe them, then take the foreſaid water which beginneth: Take Burrage water much as you pleaſe, &c.

Item, take Roſe water, and the water of water Lillies, of each ſix ounces, the juice of ſowre Apples three ounces, water of Balm and Bugloſſe, of each one ounce and a half, Vinegar half an ounce, red Saunders, Citron ſeed, and Sorrel ſeed, of each half a drachme, Camphire five grains, Cinnamom four ſcruples, temper them all together. This following is of a temperate nature: take water of Balm, Bugloſſe and Sorrel, of each four ounces, water of Cicory, Roſes, and Willow leaves, of each one ounce and a half, Saffron five grains, Vinegar one ounce, Malmſey three drach. temper it well, and uſe it as before.

Theſe following are more cooling: Take water of Bugloſſe, ſmall Endive, Burrage, and of Violets, ana. ℥. 6. of Roſe water, ℥. 8. Spec. de gemmis the cold, ℥. 1. ß. Camphire, ℈. ß. white Corral, ℈. 4. prepared Pearls, ℥. 1. ß. beaten Gold leaves eight, Malmſey, ℥. 2.

For ſhields. For ſhields to lay upon the outſide, you may take all the foreſaid things, except the Sugar and Roſewater.

Item, take Roſes, flowers of Bugloſſe and of Burrage, ana. ℥. 2. ß. Citron ſeed, burnt Ivory, Mirtles leaves, white Corral, and Coriander, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Camphire one quarter of an ounce, red and white Saunders, ana. ℈. 4. make a ſhield thereof, to lay upon the left ſide of the breaſt. Or take red and white Saunders, red and white Corral, ana. ℥. 1. Balm, Bugloſſe, Citron pils, Harts bones, and burnt ſilk, ana. ℥. 1. Spec. de gemmis the cold, and Saffron, ana. ℥. ß. Camphire one ſcruple, mix them together.

The ſame vertue that theſe ſhields have is alſo in the Plaiſters, for which theſe following are highly commended, as well to cool the panting of the heart, as the pulſe, and therewith for to ſtrengthen the breath, heart, and all natural powers. Take *Doronicum*, Harts bones, red and white Behen, ana. ℥. 1. ß. red and white Saunders, burnt Ivory, leaves of wild Grapes, red and white Corral, of each one quarter of an ounce, Roſes three drach. water of Bugloſſe and Barly meal, one ounce and a half, Saffron two ſcruples and ſix grains, four ounces of Malmſey, oyl of Saffron half an ounce, molten Roſin half an ounce, and make a plaiſter thereof.

Another.

TAke red and white Behen, Harts bones, *Doronicum*, Jacints, Smaragdes, Saphires, of each two ſcruples, Pearls one quarter of an ounce, four leaves of beaten gold,

Roſin

Rosin one ounce and a half, boyl the Rosin in thick red Vinegar, make a plaister, and spread it on a red woollen clout, and lay it on the left breast.

For these sick persons it is also very commodious (like as is already expressed) to hold at their noses continually odoriferous things that are cold of nature. For which be used the Pomanders which are described in the fifth Part, or these following: Take Basil, Roses, Violets, burnt Ivory, and Harts bones, of each two drach. Camphire two scruples, Musk and Amber of each four grains, red and white Saunders, red and white Coral, of each one drach. beat each alone, and being tempered, bind them all together in a red piece of silk, and smell thereon continually. These simples also are very commodious, especially if there be an Ague with it, as Violets, Roses, Saunders, water Lillies, Rose water, Vinegar, and such like, as hath before been shewed.

Cliſters to comfort the Heart.

It is very profitable also for the Patient every morning to use these Cliſters following: for it doth not onely loose the body, but also strengthen the Heart: Take Mallows, Violet leaves, Linseed, and Fenegreek, of each one handful and a half, seethe them in broth wherein hath been sodden a Lambs head, then take 12. ounces of this decoction, oyl of Violets and sweet Almonds of each one ounce, the marrow of Calves bones, Ducks greaſe, Hens greaſe and sweet butter, of each three drach. Fine Sugar one ounce: all this being made, then ſet it warm. In like manner may this salve be continually used: Take oyl of sweet Almonds, Ducks greaſe and sweet butter, of each one ounce, the juice of Mercury four ounces; seethe these together till the juice be throughly sodden away: with this oyntment annoint from the Navel downwards unto the Hips, in the evening when you go to bed. The Cliſter may be used both in cold and hot causes of the panting of the Heart.

Now as concerning the order of life, especial care must be taken that he be not overcharged with eating and drinking. In the beginning of this sickneſſe, Barley pap are very commodious: Also Hens or Pullets dreſt with Vinegar or Verjuice. In fine, he ought not to order himself in this sickneſſe, then according to the customs of other hot diseases. It is very good to seethe or steep in his drink Burrage or Bugloſſe with the flowers. He must refrain from all cloudy cold and moist ayre; his bed and his chamber shall be hung and strew with Willow leaves, Roses, water lillies, and Vine leaves, and that principally when it is hot weather. Also he must beware of all windy and flatulent meats; as Milk, Pottage, Honey, fruit, and especially groſſe slimy meats, as those made of dough, groſſe fish, unleavened bread, old Cheeſe, Chestnuts, and such like. In like manner also from all sharp and heady things, as Onions, Garlick, Radiſhes, Leeks, and such like. All groſſe wines are naught for him, and water also decocted with Liquorice.

Of the panting of the Heart through cold. §. 5.

WHen as there is no Ague with the panting of the heart, then is it a sign that the same proceedeth of cold, which is caused for the most part of a watery *Phlegme*, whereby the breath is hindred, yea sometimes is stuffed with such force in the breast, that it seemeth that they will stifle. This hath also a slow inconstant Pulse, with an heavy breath, and sluggiſhneſſe of the whole body and mind, and with an ill favoured colour of the face. This is to be remedied as hereafter followeth: Take water of Balm, water of blew Flower deluce, and Agrimony, of each one ounce and a half, and a little Sugar; and then drink it four or eight mornings together very warm. But if the Patient cannot go to stool, then is this Purgation following to be given him: Take *Electuarii Indi* one ounce, *De ſucco Roſarum* half a drach temper this with three ounces of good wine, and give it him in the morning betimes. And if the body be bound at the time when the foreſaid drink is to be used, then must the patient take alwaies one hour or twain before supper, one or two of these pils following: Take *Pilulæ de Sarcocolla* one drach. *Alaphangina* one quarter of an ounce, make thereof 24 pils with the juice of Roses.

Also he must drink this every morning: Take Treacle or Mithridate, ℥. i. ß. according as you think beſt, and temper this with good wine.

Some do adviſe, that at the first, yea forthwith you do give with wine one drachme, or a drach and a half of these Tabulates following: Take Maſtick, Indy Spike, *Lignum Aloes*, Cinnamom, Cloves, Cardamom, and Citron pils of each one drach, and a half,

Musk

Musk half a scruple: make a powder thereof, and give it him as aforesaid.

But the principal things serving to this panting of the heart, we will briefly expresse, to wit, all that is warm of nature and smelleth sweet; as Amber, Musk, Saffron, *Lignum Aloes*, red Styrax, Cloves, Citron pils, Nuts, Cinamom, Marjoram gentle, Basil, Spike of Indy, Balm, Burrage red and white Behen, *Morsus*, Zedoary, Cardamome, Rosemary, and Basil seed. Of all these things are made confections, powders, and other compositions, as shall appear hereafter. Of compounds these are commonly made in the Apothecaries, as *Diambra*, *Diamber*, *Diathemarin*, *Lætificans de Gemmis validis*, *Diamoschum Rofatum*, *de Kyle Aloes*, *Diaprin*, and confected Citron pils.

Here follow certain Electuaries for to use inwardly. Take Mastick, Cinamom, both kinds of *Basil*, Mints, Marjoram gentle, and long Pepper, of each a like much; when you have ten drachmes of this powder, then mix therewith prepared Pearles, red Coral, Amber, burnt silk, red and white Behen, and Indy Spike, ana ℥ss. afterwards mingle it with Hony unto an Electuary wherein Mirobalans *Chebuli* be put. This is good not onely for the panting of the heart, swooning, and for faintnesse of the heart; but also for a cold and feeble stomach, for it strengtheneth the same exceedingly.

This must also be noted, when any confection is to be made wherein there is not certain quantity of hony, then use you to take alwaies for one ounce of powder three ounces of Hony, and then mingle them well together.

Item, take the flowers of Burrage, Bugloss, Rosemary, red and white Behen, Saffron, *Dorenicum*, *Lignum Aloes*, Licorice and Basil seed, of each one quarter of an ounce. Jacint, Smaragde, and Saphire, ana ℈ss. Sugar thrice as much as the other; make a powder thereof: whereof the patient is to take a scruple at the least at meal tides.

Conserves of yellow Violets are very much used, and also highly commended for this panting of the heart. You have also before in the first Part the twelfth Chapter, a good stomachical powder, in the first ℈. which serveth for this purpose. Item, there is in the ℈ss. water of Lillies of Convallies. Also in the eight Part many sundry waters of life, hot of nature, which are for this very commodious. Confected Nutmegs do strengthen all inward members, and consume all superfluous humors.

Conserve of Bugloss, Burrage, Marjoram gentle, Rosemary, Cowslips and Cicory mingled with other, or each of it self, do much strengthen the heart. In like manner are good for this all Pomanders which are hot of nature, and are to be sought for in the Register, and those are special good wherein Musk and Amber are put.

Item, steep the space of certain hours Balm in Malmsey, and besprinkle therewith a hot brickbat, and then receive the vapor into the nose.

There may also be laid outwardly cordial waters upon the left breast, which are thus to be prepared: Take Balm water, and *Bugloss* water, of each six ounces, Vinegar one ounce, Cloves one drachme, Saffron half a drachme, Musk half a scruple; lay it with a cloth upon the left breast. Some do use the juice of the herbs (when they be settled) in stead of their waters, which are also very forcible. Item, take *Bugloss* water, and the water of Sorrel, of each three ounces, water of Willow leaves, Rose water, and Wormwood water, the water of Grasse and *Balm*, of each two ounces, *Spec. diadem temperat.* one drachme and a half, Saffron eight grains, Myrrhe, Diptamus, Gentian, *Lignum Aloes*, yellow Saunders, *Basil* seeds, red and white *Behen*, Jacint and Smaragde, of each half a scruple, the juice of Lemmons three ounces, Vinegar one ounce, and Malmsey three ounces, temper them all together, it is wholly temperate; so that it may be used for the comforting of the Heart in cold and heat.

Another.

TAke fresh Rosemary flowers, ℥. 3. Sage flowers, Bugloss flowers, Burrage flowers, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Saffron, ℈. ij. seethe the flowers in sufficient Muscadel, and then stamp them well together, and lay it warm upon the left breast; this doth not onely strengthen, but maketh also a light breathing.

There may also shields be made for this, even as here do follow two sorts. Take flowers of *Burrage* and *Bugloss* of each one handful, red and white *Behen*, and Saffron, of each one drachme, burnt red silk, one scruple, Cloves, Cinamom, red Coral, and Roses, of each half a drachme, Harts bones, Musk and Amber, of each three grains; put all these

these in a red silke bagge: then must you besprinkle them with warme Bugloſſe water, and ſo lay them to the left breaſt. Item, take Zeduary, red and white Behen, Roſemary, Spica, Roſes, red and white Saunders, Burrage flowers, burnt Ivorie, Mirtle leaves, Bugloſſe flowers, and Camphire, of each two ſcruples, Saffron and *Galla Muſcata*, of each one drachme, Ambra half a ſcruple, Muske foure graines, and make a bag thereof. This is very temperate.

There are alſo theſe plaiſters and ſalves, that hereafter follow to be uſed: Take *Lardanum* three ounces, Gloves and Citron pils, of each one drachme, Muſk one ſcruple, Turpentine half a drachme, melt then the *Ladanum* with the Turpentine in a warme mortar, temper the reſt amongſt it, and ſo make a plaiſter thereof, ſpread it on a red cloth, and ſo lay it on the left breaſt.

For to make a ſalve or oyntment, take unripe oyl of Olives, and oyl of Roſes, of each two ounces, Sandaraca one drach. and a half, parched Salt three drachmes, Roſes and Cypreſſe roots, of each half a drachme: beat them all ſmall together, and keep and preſerve it unto till occaſion ſerve to uſe it. For it hapneth oftentimes, that ſuch humors do draw downwards, and fall in ſome place of the hip, the knee, or ancle, the which muſt be kept warm.

Laſtly, you ought not to reſt, untill the patient be free of this panting of the heart, without uſing any medicine unto it, or that the diſeaſe may with all diligence be diminiſhed, if the ſame could be perfectly cured. Therefore muſt alwaies a little Saffron be mixt amongſt all his meats, and if that cannot be gotten, then is the dry powder to be dreſt amongſt his meat.

All theſe confections may be made thus: Take the *Spec. Letificantes Almanſorix, Dia Moſchu dulcis, Diagemmis temperatis*, of each three quarters of an ounce, red and white Saunders, red and white Corall, of each one drachme, Sirupe of Citrons, ſirupe of Roſes, and of Vineger, of each five ounces, white Sugar three ounces, ſeeth the ſirupe and the Sugar untill it be thicker then Hony, and when it doth begin to bee cold, then mixe the powder amongſt it, and uſe thereof in the morning, and two houres before ſupper, about the bignes of a Walnut.

Thirdly, make two bags in this manner: Take Baſill ſeeds, flowers of Bugloſſe, of Borage, Marjoram, red and white Corall, red and white Saunders, of each half a drachme, Jacint, Smaragdes and Saphir, of each five graines, Camphire one ſcruple, wild Vine leaves one quarter of an ounce, Mace one drachme and a half, ſtamp them all ſmall, and fill here with (as is ſaid) a little bag, and lay it on the heart.

The rule of life for this ſickneſs conſiſteth in light meats, as in all field Foules. In meats that be dreſt with odoriferous ſpices, yolks of new layd egs are very meet for him: further, behold what is taught in the diſcourſe of the cold braines, and cold head. For his drink, white Wine ſoberly drunken is good. For Wine, be it as ſtrong as may bee, if one drink too much thereof, then doth it cauſe cold diſeaſes: and if one deſire to delay it, then is it to be done with water wherein glowing Gold hath been extinguiſhed.

This Wine following doth ſtrengthen the heart and the ſtomack alſo: Take Ginger two ounces, Galangal one ounce, Cinamom two ounces, Zeduary one quarter of an ounce, Roſes one ounce, Burrage flowers one ounce and a half, and roots of Bugloſſe, beat them groſly together, and ſteep them in eight quarts of Muſt or new Wine.

Theſe ſpiced Wines are alſo good for the heart, if the diſeaſe do come through cold: in like manner Wine of Borage, of Harts tongue, of Roſemary, of Bugloſſe, and of Hyſſop, of Marjoram, and of *Aſarabacca*, all which have power to warme the panting of the heart, and alſo to ſtrengthen it.

Item, take Balme water, and Bugloſſe water, of each ſixe ounces, Sugar nine ounces, ſeeth them to twelve ounces, and then uſe it as a Julep. Or take water of Bugloſſe alone, wherein Cloves were ſodden, and drink ſometimes thereof, for it comforteth marvelouſly.

Item, take Parſly with the root, boyl them in Wine, according to that you will have it ſtrong; temper therewith a little Vineger, and drink the ſame. It taketh away the panting of the heart, and all paine of the ſame.

Beſides all this, the Patient is to forbear all milk, doughy, moiſt, and windy meats, to ariſe from meals with hunger, and have a thirſt; he muſt after meat not move nor ſtirre much, nor yet ſodainly give himſelf to ſleep: he muſt alſo (according to his old wont) not ſleep too much, whereby he might conſume and diminiſh the humidities of the bo-

dy;

up: he must also for the most part lye on his right side, and flee all anger, sorrow, and all other vexations.

Of the panting of the Heart through a bad stomach, or appetite. §. 6.

HEre before amongst the signs of this sicknesse, we have taught also that the panting of the heart is the swooning; are caused oftentimes through a bad stomach. But if this disease come of a full stomach, then must the cure begin with refraining from meat and drink, and first with opening the Liver vein, afterwards the Median: and if this be not very steadfast, then are you to minister to the Patient a mild Clister, for that all strong purgations are enemies to this disease. Further, he must observe for his meat and drink, even as is shewed hereafter, in the description of the stomach. Now for to strengthen the stomach through outward things, choose for it out of the foresaid remedies that which best liketh you.

Of the panting of the Heart through frightings. §. 7.

IT is also admonished in the beginning, that the Heart may come to much distempera-ture through fright and fear, and that through the concourse of bloud, for which, this water of Eldern flowers is marvellous good. Lay them into a glased helm chopt Eldern flowres; afterward lay thereon whole Eggs with the piked end upwards, and the same opened a little; then again Eldern flowers, and so Eggs, untill that the helm be so full as the water is high, wherein the helm standeth, and is to be distilled. When it is thus distilled, then are you to lay of this Eldern water with a cloth upon the heart, thus do the ancient Physitians accustome to make it. But mark that not onely fear and fright do disease the heart, but also all other motions of the mind, which are here before for the most part already expressed: but what power they have in furthering the sicknesse and health, is sufficiently before discovered in both the descriptions of unnatural things, which the learned do call *Res non naturales*, in the first Chapter and §. 10.

Of Heaviness, a disease of the Heart. §. 8.

THe cause of this infirmity is *Melancholia*, where are sorrow, fear, and many wonderful fantasies without any cause at all, which are thus to be purged; Take *Mirobalani, Chebuli*, and *Indi*, of each one drach. *Epithymi* one drach. and a half, fine *Bolus* five grains, *Moschus* three grains, make pils thereof, or mingle them with Wine: but this following is more common; Take Sene leaves one ounce, beat them, and cast them in the juice of Borage and of Buglosse, of each six ounces, the juice of Apples three ounces; let it seethe a little, and wring it out, and then mingle therewith six ounces of fine Sugar; then let it seethe again, and when it is cold, temper amongst it one drach. of Saffron, and ase thereof as often as you please, at each time one ounce, in Wine, or tempered in one of the foresaid waters.

You have also in §. 5. before a very good confection, which beginneth thus; Take Mastick, Cinamom, &c. which may also be used for this passion.

This following is also very expert; Take roots of Buglosse half an ounce, Zedoary, and *Doronicum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, beat them to powder, and give every day thereof one drachme with Wine.

Behold also what hath been said before in the first part, the twelfth Chapter, and §. 8. of the sadnesse, *Melancholia*, and also in like manner in the third part, which are commodious for this.

Of the griping of the Heart. §. 9.

HEre before in the end of the fifth Chapter we have rehearsed, that this sicknesse which we do call the griping of the heart, is rather a disease of the Lights, or a kind of consumption, then a malady of the heart: but be it taken as it will, nevertheless is this sicknesse very grievous for young children, and almost incurable for old folks. And in fine, this English name doth signifie none other, then the Fever *Hectica*, whereof we shall further discourse in the sixth part (where we do write of all Agues) for we have always thought good to adde thereto this that followeth: Take Walnuts with the shels, burn

burn them wholie to aſhes in a pot, and thereof give a child one ſcruple, or more, according unto the ſtrength of the child.

Item, take dry brown Betony, and therewith fill a ſmall bag, and lay it on the childs breaſt. Women are of opinion, that if the child may live till the ninth day, then will it recover health.

For this have you alſo a ſpeciall Capon water for children that have the conſumption, in the fifth Chapter, the 22. §.

It is alſo ſufficiently known to all the world, how that the heart by peſtilent ayr, will not only be feebled and infected, but alſo inflamed with a full deſtruction, againſt which you ſhall find ſundry fit remedies in the ſixth part, in the treatiſe of the Plague.

For concluſion of this Chapter of the Heart, and of the ſecond part of this book, we will not omit the diſcription *Species de gemmis*, whereof is ſo often mention made, which are to be found at every good Apothecaries after two kinds of preparations, to wit, the cold, and the hot *Species*, which may be uſed to Confections, Powders, Cordiall waters, and ſuch like, but by reaſon that the preparations of the ſame is very divers, therefore we will heer ſet fourth and diſcribe only foure ſorts of the moſt common preparation.

Spec. de gemmis frigida, which are cold of nature, are thus prepared: Take Pearles 3. drach. Rubies, Jacints, Granadoes, Smaragdes, and Saphir, of each one drach. Harts bones half a drach. burnt Ivorie, red and white Corall, of each one drach. Roſes one drach. and a half, white and yellow Saunders, flowers of Bugloſſe, Burrage, Sorrell ſeed, and Baſill ſeed, red and white Behen, of each one drachme, beaten Gold and Silver; of each five leaves.

Species de gemmis calida, or *Meſua*: Take prepared Pearles three drach. Saphirs, Jacints, Sardoniz, Correils, Granadoes and Smaragdes, of each one drach. and a half, Zeduary, *Dorocinum*, Citron pils, Mace, and Baſill ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Corall, Amber, and filed Ivorie, of each half a ſcruple, red and white Behen, Cloves, Ginger, long Pepper, Spica, Caſſy wood, Saffron, and Cardamom, of each one drach. Cinnamom Galangale, and Zeduary, of each one drach. and a half, ſmall filed Gold and Silver, of each two ſcruples, Amber one quarter of an ounce, Musk half a drach. each beaten by it ſelf, and then tempered together.

Species de gemmis temperata. Theſe ſpecies are of a temperate nature, not too hot, alſo not too cold, the which may be prepared as is thought good.

Species Cordiales, Cordiall ſpecies. For this, take Pearls, burnt Ivorie, Granadoes, Cinamom, Tormentill, and fine *Bolus*, of each three drach. red, white, and yellow Saunders, ſhaven Ivory, and Unicornes horne, of each one quarter of an ounce, Jacints, Saphirs, white and red Corall, Valerian, *Diptamus*, Zeduary, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each one drach: ſealed earth five ſcruples, burnt ſilk two ſcrup. Harts bones half a drach. red and white Behen, of each two ſcruples, five leaves of beaten Gold, Musk and Amber, of each ten grains, either of them prepared after his manner, are to be beaten together.

The ſame operation have alſo almoſt the *Species Diamargariton*, whereof there are two kinds, hot and cold; the warme are here before deſcribed in the 12. Chapter 12. §. the cold are thus prepared: take peeled Melon ſeeds, Pompeon ſeeds, Gourd ſeeds, and peeled Cucumber ſeeds, Purſlaine ſeeds, white Poppy ſeeds, white, yellow, and red Saunders, Ginger, Roſes, water Lillies, Burrage flowers, and Mirtle ſeeds, of each one drach. white and red Corall, of each half a drach. Pearles three drach. prepared together and being all beaten ſmall, temper them all together. This holdeth all fell people that fall quickly into a ſwoune, in their ſtrength, whether it be cauſed of the ſtomach, or of the heart; it fortifieth all the inward vitall parts: it is alſo good againſt all Coughes, againſt the conſumption; and all thoſe that be brought lowe through a long ſickneſſe, it bringeth again to their former might and ſtrength.

THE

THE Third Part of this Book of Phyſick, containeth the BELLY.

THe third Part of mans body, have the Anatomiſts (who are the ſurveyors of the uniformity and members of mans body) aſcribed to the belly, which beginneth outwardly from the breaſt, and inwardly from the *Diaphragma*, deſcending downwards even to the legs. This part hath outwardly theſe members following; on the forepart the Navel, which is placed in the midſt of the whole body and belly; under which do follow both the parts of generation, the which in man are the teſticles or ſtones hanging down in a cod: behind are the reins and the buttocks which cover the fundament. The inward members are the ſtomach, the liver, the gall, the kidneyes, the bladder, the bowels, and in women the mother: all which are ſubject to very dangerous diſeaſes; of the which we are now to write and diſcourſe.

The firſt Chapter.

Of the Navel.

THe firſt outward member of the belly is the Navel, which is called the root of the belly, for that nature hath formed it as the firſt amongſt the feeding parts, and alſo in new born children holdeth faſt in the mothers belly, no otherwiſe then as it were a root in the earth. For like as the root of a tree draweth nouriſhment unto it whereby it groweth: even ſo doth the Navel alſo, which draweth the blood unto it out of the mothers body thereby to nouriſh the child, and make it grow. Even as the foreſaid root of a tree, of all that which it draweth unto it for food, doth not drive away any thing but all that which is watery and unneceſſary for his nouriſhment (as the gum which one ſeeth on a tree:) even ſo doth the ſtring of the Navel, which ſweateth out all ſuperfluous moiſture which is not good for nouriſhment, and doth gather all the ſame together in the *Secundina* untill the birth day, the which is called of women the flood, or breaking of the water.

All people be they young or old may get a rupture of the Navel, which ſwelleth and hangeth out of the forepart of the belly; the which cauſeth chiefly to women a great hinderance if they be not holpen thereof, like as we ſhall write hereafter more at large, when we ſhall diſcourſe of the Rupture: yet we will here diſcourſe and write ſomewhat of certain things for the behoof and eaſe of young children.

Take Comfrey one ounce, ſtamp it well put thereto half an ounce of molten Wax, temper it well, and then lay it upon the navel. But if the Rupture be very great, then take Bears greaſe, and therewith anoint the whole back bone of the child; it cauſeth the Navel to be drawn in.

It is found oftentimes to be good for all ruptures of the Navel, be it in people of diſcretion, or in young children, that the herb *Perſoliata* and his ſeed be ſodden and laid upon the

the rupture, and ſo worn, or carried continually upon the Navel, until that thereby the Rupture be cured.

And the ſame ſeed being alſo ſodden in water or wine, and one drach. thereof given to drink, ſtamp the herb and the ſeed, and give thereof to the child the weight of one ſcruple and a half to eat in pap. Alſo you ſhall hereafter find a plaiſter of *Perfolata* which you may uſe for this purpoſe.

A good powder. Take Lupins meal half an ounce, burnt linnen one quarter of an ounce, temper them together, and take thereof one quarter of an ounce; then temper it afterwards with wine, and lay it upon the Navel.

For a Childs Navel that comes out.

TAke Wax as it comes from the bee hive, only ſtrain the honey from it, and when you have need melt it, and wet a cloth in it, and apply it to the Navel.

The ſecond Chapter.

Of the Members of generation in general.

FOraſmuch as the ſupporting of the ſucceſſion of mankind, cannot be purchaſed without the health of theſe parts in men and women: therefore it is to be endeavoured (if they be infected with any kind of diſeaſe) to remedy and cure the ſame, not to the continuance of carnal luſts, but onely to the advancement and accompliſhment of the ſtate of Matrimony. For whereas a mans nature doth ſcour away through the ſpermatical flux, and thereby is moſt unfit for generation: therefore can it not be but a Chriſtian deed to help the ſame, and to make it fit for generation. For it is taken at all times to be a puniſhment of God if a woman remain barren, therefore have we determined to write ſomewhat thereof.

Of the Tumors in the Groin, and other ſuch like diſeaſes. §. 1.

THere come alſo many kind of diſeaſes unto the foreſaid Groin or privy place, with heat, hardneſſe, anguiſh, and great pain. Amongſt other, the Latiniſts do reckon *Bubones*, the which are ſwellings of the Groins; for which theſe remedies following are to be uſed.

Take Muſcilage of Elecampane roots, Linſeed, figs, and Sebeſtes, of each ſix ounces, and as much alſo of the oyl of ſweet Almonds, prepared litharge of Gold three ounces: ſeethe it ſo long until the muſcilage be conſumed, ſtirring it alway about, and put thereto one ounce of Wax, then make of it a plaiſter and lay it thereon.

Item, take Birdlime and *Gummi Helenii*, of each two ounces, molten Wax half an ounce, temper them well by the fire, and make thereof a plaiſter; it driveth out the matter marvelouſly.

A good Salve.

TAke Roſine and Wax of each one ounce, a great Onion, two Lilly roots; ſtamp them, and let them ſeethe in Goats milk; then ſtrain them through a linnen cloth, and let it ſeethe well again, ſtir it alwaies about untill that it wax cold.

When as this Tumor is broken out, then cleanſe it with *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, or with hony of Roſes, and you ſhall find ſundry things in the firſt part, of the deſcription of all old Ulcers, rankling and Cankers, &c. which are commodious for this.

℞. of Wax, Roſen, Venice Turpentine, hogs lard and honey, and make a ſalve thereof to heal the tumors of the groin.

At *Exceſter* in *Devon*. For one that had bruiſed his ſtones or teſticles by a blow, that the Cods were ſwelled as big as a two penny loaf, I took of Bay ſalt *lb.* 2. of Cumin ſeeds powdered ℥. 6. I fryed them together with Sallet oyl, and applyed it warm in a bag; this eaſed and cured the party, and divers others.

If the ſtones be bruiſed by blow or fall.

℞. of Bay Salt beaten ſmall, Coriander ſeeds, Cumin ſeeds, powdred, fry them in a pan with oyl, and put them into a bag and apply it warm unto the Cods.

Of the Privities or Secrets in particular. §. 2.

BEſides the foreſaid tumor or ſwellings that the Privities are ſubject to, are mans privities ſubject to more other diſeaſes. And becauſe the ſame is a tender part, and very ſenſible, therefore do ſuch pains commonly bring greater accidents with them, whereof we will diſcourſe; but we will firſt ſhew the cauſes whence all ſuch accidents are wont to grow.

Firſt, for that he hath lyen with an unclean woman, or that there remaineth of his nature or Sperme ſticking in the Conduit, and ſo feſtereth and putrifieth there. Alſo if one wear any foul ſtinking clothes about his privities, or if any have ever had about that place any ſore, and the ſame was ill healed. Item, through rubbing and hard ſcratching, even as one may beſt of all demand all theſe things of the ſick perſon.

And to come to theſe remedies; if ſo be that this member be over heated, and hath an ulcer, then it is to be cleanſed and cooled with Roſewater and Plantain water. And if it require ſtronger things, then is water to be taken wherein the ſeeds of Butchers broom is ſodden, Roſe water and Wine, of each three ounces, Verdigreaſe, Vitriol, and burnt Allom, of each half a drach. temper them together, and waſh the open place therewith.

Others do take Hony water, and ſeethe therein burnt Allom; but whether one or the other be taken, the ſore is alwaies therewith to be waſhed and cleanſed. If it be upon the top of the yard or ſecreſie, then cleanſe it with ſoft cotton. And for the curing of the ſame, take wine and water wherein Gals, Cipres nuts, and Allom are ſodden, and lay thereon fine clouts (made wet in the foreſaid water) and then pluck the foreskin over, and ſo let it lie ſtill untill he will make water, and then ſhall you put on freſh, and continue it ſo long until the heat be drawn out, and the ulcers ſomewhat cleanſed. But this following have the later Phyſitians in uſe, which is alſo good and certain: Take ſmall turning or ſawduſt of *Guaiacum* three ounces, yellow Mirobalans half an ounce, Aloe and Myrrhe, of each one drach. ſowr red Wine and Plantain water of each twelve ounces; let them ſeethe ſoftly together till that about the third part be ſodden away; afterwards ſtrain it, and therewith cleanſe the ulcers. There may be alſo uſed for this the water for the eyes, which is deſcribed in the firſt part, againſt the redneſſe of the eyes, the which beginneth thus; Take broad Plantain, &c.

If it need any more cooling, then take the white ſalve with *Camfora* or *Diapompholigos*, and dreſſe it oftentimes therewith, waſhing it alwaies well.

And if it will not be holpen with theſe things, then is that to be taken which dryeth more, as hereafter followeth: Take Ariſtology, Aloe, of each a like much, ſtrew it on the ulcer; or take the roots of our Ladies Cowſlips, and ſtrew them therein, and lay a cooling plaiſter thereon, or *Album coſtum*, which is thus prepared: Item, take Sallad oyl. or oyl of Roſes ſix ounces, Ceruſe one ounce and a half, ſtirre them well together with a woodden peſtle, and put thereto one ounce of pownded Wax and boyl it to a plaiſter: this plaiſter is alſo good when the skin is rubbed off, or broken, for it dryeth and cooleth. The plaiſter *Diapompholigos* is made thus: Take oyl of Roſes and white Wax, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, the juice of Nightſhade berries about ſo much alſo, Ceruſſe one quarter of an ounce, burnt and waſhen Lead, and white Tutty, of each one drach. the juice and the oyl of Roſes, let them ſeethe together until all the moiſture be ſpent, then melt the Wax therein, and temper the other things amongſt it being well and ſmall beaten. This plaiſter is alſo good for all unclean ulcers, it dryeth, cooleth, healeth, and cicatriſeth well.

A Powder. Take *Tutia*, Aloe, Maſtick, *Sarcocolla*, Dragons blood, and fine Bolus, of each alike much; beat them all ſmall, and mingle them with Wax and Turpentine, afterwards burn it whole to powder, and ſtrew it upon the open place.

A ſalve. Take prepared Tuttie one ounce, Maſtick and Frankincenſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Wax half an ounce, oyl of Roſes as much as is needful for to make therewith a ſalve. The litharge of Gold is alſo good for this, uſed alone, or tempered amongſt the foreſaid ſalve; for it dryeth, it mollifieth, it cooleth, it cleanſeth, and cau-

ſeth

seth the flesh to grow. If there be great anguish, and the skin off, then the oyl of sweet Almonds serveth well.

Item take Argal, put it into a new pot, and burn it so long until it be black, then afterwards pownd it small, and strew it on the sore.

This is alledged onely for outward ulcers that are seen with the eye; but if there be any sore in the conduit of the yard, whereby the same is stopt, and the yard inflamed, then use this following, spouting it therein gently with a Sering.

Take white wine one pint, burnt Allom two drach. and a half, Verdigrease one drach. and a half, let them seethe well together, and strain it through a tight cloth, and use it as is said; it is very healing, and driveth away swelling. Also this salve is to be used for it, anointing the whole member therewith; Take the juice of Tassels, of Plantain and Comfry, of each two ounces, 4. ℈. of Camphire bruised very small, and 3. well brayed whites of Eggs, starch and Ceruse one ℥. the Litharge of gold half an ℥. Tutty prepared with Rosewater, one ℥. & ß. stir all these together in a leaden mortar, and make a salve thereof.

Of the unnatural erection of the Yard, called Priapismus *and* Satyrismus. §. 3.

THese names are given to the disease, because that the member of a man hapneth continually to stand after an unnatural manner, without the lust or concupisence of a woman, even as the heathen do paint and picture their false god *Priapum*, and their hedg gods *Satyros*. Some do write, that when a man without lust of women hath his yard erected, and coming to a woman, the same will not swage nor relent, that then it is called *Priapismus*. *Satyrismus* is the erection of the privities, which is lost by copulation.

The cause of both these infirmities, are grosse thick vapours or damps, with small heat that they cannot suddenly spend, as also abstinence from women, continual use of Pease and Beans, and other pottages. In fine, if there be not speedy remedy for these causes, then may ensue after it as great a pain and distention of the sinewes, as at the last might cause intollerable crampe and impostume.

For to remedy this infirmity, 4. things are to be noted; first, that the patient beware of all such things which might cause the yard to stand, and stir up venery; what these are, we will shew immediately hereafter. Secondly, he must endeavour to vomit, to let blood, and to take mild purgations. Thirdly, to rub well the uppermost members, and not the undermost, to hinder the deflux of the matter. Fourthly, the patient must refrain womens company, except it be that he have very great lust thereto. And for to cure this, it is therefore advised that first the Median be opened, and afterwards cause the patient to vomit. If it will not thereby amend, open the vein again, and give the patient a little of the muscilage of Fleawort, which is made with the water of Purslain or of water Lilies, or bath the members and parts about it with boyled Rue, *Agnus Castus*, Comin, and such like.

Item, anoint the kidneyes and the privities with herbs cold of nature, of which the seeds of Fleawort, Camphire and Poplar salve are tempered. For his Sallad he must take Purslain, Endive, Lettice and such like. For vinegar, the juice of Lemons and Citrons are good in all his meats. To fast much, and live onely by water and bread is very good for him: but in case he will drink wine, then must it be well watered. This plaister following shall he weare on the reins and the privities, so long as this sickness endureth: Take white Wax one ℥.6. melt it, and wash it ten times in cold water; afterwards temper amongst it half an ounce of small bruised Camphire, or wear upon the reins a thin plate of lead full of holes, and wet it often with vinegar and Camphire. This powder following may also be prepared; Take Fleawort two drachmes and a half, Parslain seed, prepared Coriander, and Lettice seed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Camphire one drachme, temper them all together being powdered small, and give every morning one drachme thereof with the sirupe of Lemons or fair water. Under the patients sheets must be laid the leaves of *Agnus castus*, and he must lie alwayes upon his side. But if he cannot abide to fast, then is he to eat much bread of Millet, and many Sallads, and his drink shall be white wine; wherein Rue, Comin, Coriander, and such like have been steeped. Also sirupes, cold confections and such like, are very commodious for him. The sent of Beavercod, of Camphire, of Saunders, Roses, and all cooling things are also passing good for him.

The third Chapter.

Of the Teſticles and Cods, and of ſundry Ruptures.

NAture hath faſtened behind the yard or ſecreſie a wrinkled bag or purſe, wherein the teſticles or ſtones are kept. This member is ſubject to many Hernies or ruptures, the which the Latiniſts do call with one common name *Hernias*, which notwithſtanding is manifold, and yet comprehended in 3. of the principalleſt, which are cauſed of ſwelling, of ſcabbines, or of ſtriving, all which do fall down into the ſaid Cods.

Yet is there another kind of rupture which cometh about the Navel, or about the privities, be it in man or woman, whereof we have made ſome mention before in the firſt Chapter. The firſt ſort of Ruptures hath many differences and each hath his proper name, and are to be compared with each other in four kind of wayes, to wit, when they are cauſed through wind; through puffing up of the veines with the blood, *Varices*; when the bowels or rim of the ſame little or much falleth down into the Cod: laſtly, when as the cod is ſo filled with water or with other moiſtures. Other do reckon four kind more, which nevertheleſſe may be cont ained amongſt the foreſaid four. The cauſes of all theſe ruptures are either inward or outward. The outward cauſes may be fals, thruſts, much labour, heavy burthens, loud hooping, coughs, extream blowing or winding, and chiefly when one hath well eaten and drunken. The inward cauſes are, when his bowels or rim cannot ſtay in his due place, but cometh to fall down into the navel, privities, and into the cod; Likewiſe winds, humours, or groſſe melancholike blood, like as is ſaid. The ſigns of all common ruptures, are an extuberation or ſwelling and puffing up of the ſame place beyond nature. Theſe Hernies at the firſt appear like to a ſmall egg or nut, which by little and little increaſeth. If this rupture proceed of wind, that may be heard by the ſhreeking or rumbling, and it may be diſcerned with eyes.

Of the uppermoſt Hernies or Rupture, which happeneth above the Cod. §. 1.

FIrſt, to ſpeak of the rupture which hapneth above the Cod, (which is called *Scrotum*) it is adviſed that forthwith remedy be had for it. The new ruptures in children, are eaſily to be holpen; and contrarywiſe when they wax old (eſpecially in old folks) then are they hard to be holpen without inciſion. All Chirugions do know well what kind of truſſe they are to make for this; for as much as it is difficult to deſcribe the ſame, therefore be they to be put in truſt therewith.

It is commanded, and not without reaſon, that the patient muſt be laid on his back, and that the bowels which are fallen down muſt be put up ſoftly again, untill they do lie in their due place; then muſt this plaiſter (ſpred upon a thin piece of leather) be laid upon the rupture, and on the top thereof a bolſter bounden prety hard. They that be about thirteen years old, muſt lie on their back; and if they muſt needs ariſe, then muſt they beware of ſtooping, and hold ſtill their hand upon the rupture. But young children muſt be dealt with ſomewhat milder. But for this can no certain rule be preſcribed: but regard muſt alwayes be had to the age, to the ſtrength, the time and diſeaſe, and ſo to deal thereafter.

Now for to help theſe ruptures, we will decipher firſt certain plaiſters which are very fit and requiſite for it; Take Pitch and Maſtick, of each three drachmes, Frankincenſe one quarter of an ounce, *Hyppociſtis*, *Sarcocolla*, and the juice of Sloes, of each one drach. and a half, bloodſtone, Dragons blood and Aloe, of each two drachmes and a half, birdlime one drachme and a half, Comfry, Gals, Pomgranat pils, fine Bolus, of each three drachmes, Ariſtology one quarter of an ounce, Sumach, bloſſomes of Pomgranats, of each one drachme, two ounces of Deer ſuet, Turpentine and Wax as much as is needful. The gums and juices diſſolve in hot vinegar or wine, the reſt pownd ſmall, and make thereof a plaiſter. Another; Take pitch ℥. ß. white and and red Wax, Litharge of gold, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, Momy, of each 2. ℥. & ß. birdlime, Myrrhe, Cipres nuts and Frankincenſe, of each 1. ℥. Gips, or plaiſter, prepared Bolus & Aloe, of each ℥. ß. Maſtick,

Comfry and Daisie roots, of each three drachmes and a half, Turpentine, one ounce, Aristologie round and long, and Galnuts, of each one ounce, Dragons blood one quarter of an ounce, but melt the Gums in vinegar, and pownd all that is to be pownded; the Pitch, Wax, and Turpentine are to be molten, and the rest tempered amongst them; the Wax may be augmented and diminished according to the importance of the time. This plaister is also good for all fractures of bones.

The ancient Physitians were wont to use for this rupture, this plaister following. Take Cipres nuts two ounces, Myrrhe, Cipres roots, Marjoram gentle, Gals, the juice of Sloes, Frankincense, and Gum, of each 1. ounce; the Gum is to be dissolved in Wine and the rest tempered amongst it, and so (as is said) laid upon the rupture; You shall not unloose the trusse but once in 4. or 5. dayes, and then renew the plaister.

Item, take fish lime two ounces, Momy one ounce and a half, Pitch and *Ammoniacum*, of each one ounce, break them all to pieces, and lay it to steep one day and a night in 3. ℥. of vinegar and oyl of Mastick; afterwards let them melt together, and temper therewith Mastick, Frankincense, fine Bolus, Dragons Blood, Gum, and Fenegreek meal, of each three drachmes, and stir it long together.

Item, take Daisie flowers and roots, wild Tansie flowers and roots, Comfry, of each half an ounce, Mastick one quarter of an ounce, the juice of Sloes and Pomgranat flowers, of each half a drachme, Hares hair chopt small one drach. Birdlime one ounce, Pitch two ounces. Wax five drachmes, oyl of Roses as much as is needfull, to make therewith a plaister. This salve following is much in use; Take Pitch three ounces, red Wax, *Bitumen Judaicum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum* and Turpentine, of each two ounces, Litharge of gold one ounce, Henbane seed, Aloe and Mastick, of each three ounces, Gips or plaister, and fine Bolus, of each three ounces and a half, both kinds of Aristology, of each two ounces, Frankincense and Myrrhe, of each two ounces and a half, prepared Earth worms, Comfry and Daisie roots, of each 2. ℥. fresh blood of a heavy minded man 6. ℥. Isinglas and Glew as much as is needfull; the Gums let steep three dayes in vinegar, afterwards temper them with molten Pitch and Wax; when it beginneth to be cold, then mingle the other things beaten small amongst it; lastly put the blood thereto, and when it is well mixt, powre it upon a stone, and work it very well with greasie hands, and spread thereof upon the leather, and lay it upon the rupture under the trusse.

Another; Take Iron drosse five ℥. Momy, Dragagant and Gum, of each 3. ℥. Frankincense, the juice of Sloes and *Sandaraca*, of each one ℥. & ß. Isinglas, Cipres nuts, of each 1. ℥. Birdlime 3. ℥. Gips 2. ℥. Rosin 18. ℥. make thereof a plaister with the juice of Celendine.

Item, take Pitch 1. ℥. Litharge of gold, red and white wax, Jewes lime, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each one drachme and a half, Birdlime one ounce, Turpentine washt with vinegar, both kinds of Aristology and Gals, of each two ounces, and two scruples, of Cipres nuts, Myrrhe, Frankincense, of each one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus and Gips, of each one ounce, Mastick, Comfry and Daisie roots, of each one ounce, Dragons blood and Momy, of each half an ounce, mingle them well together to a plaister. Another; Take the Gum of Cherries, dissolve it in Sallad oyl, put thereto Mastick and Frankincense, of each a like much, melt it, and boile it to a plaister.

Yet another; Take Gum, Dragagant, Mastick, fine Bolus, Dragons blood, Isinglas and common Glew, of each 1. drachme, Frankincense one drachme and a half, Jewes lime half a ℥. Pitch and Momy, of each one drach. and a half, Tar one quarter of an ounce. First melt the Pitch, then add the Glew and Tar, and temper then the other things amongst it beaten small. When it is cold, then anoint your hands with oyl of Roses, and work well this salve.

This following is taken for a secret; Take Dragons blood half a drachme, Myrrhe, Saccotra, *Opopanacum*, Brimstone, Amber, Mastick and Comfry, of each two drachmes and a half, Myrtle seed, yellow Mirobalans, of each 3. ℥. the bark of Pine apples, and Cipres nuts, of each 4. ℥. 4. or 5. garden Snailes out of their houses, Dragagant dissolved in red vinegar 1. ℥. fish lime molten in vinegar also as much as is needful for to make the foresaid things to a plaister; afterwards dry it by a small fire.

Six houres after, drink three ounces of this water following. Take Comfry and Tormentil, of each one quarter of an ounce, Codwort, Sengreen, Cinsfoile, Mugwort, and herb Trinity, of each 3. handfuls, *Caryophillata*, *Verbascum*, and broad Plaintain, of each 2. ℥. and a half, Roses, Horsetail, of each half a handful, cut and pownd it grosse, and

put thereto red feething wine, and Aqua vitæ, of each six ounces, or so much as will cover it well; let it so stand fourteen houts, afterwards strain it through, and wring it out, and make it sweet with sirupe of Mirtles. But if so be that three ounces be too strong to drink at once, then is he to take but one or two, and this potion may be tempered with somewhat else.

Hereafter follow three kinds of plaisters *De pice Arietis*, which is commended above all other plaisters as a certain remedy; Take pitch two ounces, Litharge of silver, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, Mastick, of each one ounce, white and red Wax, Jewes lime, Aloe, and both Aristologies, of each one ounce and a half, Birdlime, fine Bolus, of each three ounces, Gips, Myrrhe, Frankincense, Turpentine which is washt well in vinegar, prepared earth worms, Comfry, Senegreen, of each two ounces and a half, half a Rams skin made clean from the hair and wool, and cut small, the blood of a red bearded young and healthfull man six ounces, prepare them all together as hereafter followeth; Take the cut Rams skin, let it seethe to tough lime, then wring it out hard, and temper amongst it common glew, and fish lime, or Ilinglas, of each one ounce and a half, afterwards let it seethe well together. You must dissolve the gum in vinegar, and you must pownd all that is dry; in like manner also the green roots, herbs and earth worms to pap; you must work the Birdlime amongst the blood till that it dry, and the plaister wax hard, then are you to preserve this plaister in a glasse stopt tight.

☞ ℞. of Frankincense ʒ.6. Rosin, Pitch, ana. ʒ.3. Laudanum, ʒ.4. Saffron, ʒ.ß. and with oyl, or sheeps suet tried make a plaister; apply it upon leather.

And purge the liver and parts above with convenient medicines.

Take the powder of a Hare in all thy meats.

Also take Polipody roots, Elecampane roots green, ana. *M.* wash and pare them, stamp them as green sauce, temper it with oyl of Bayes and oyl of Excester, and apply it to the cods and belly; change it every two dayes, for 10. dayes; then take the white of 4. Eggs. Sope ʒ.4. the yolk of one Egg, two spoonfulls of Petroleum, mix them and use it after the former plaister, and use a trusse.

Or ℞. of Elecampane roots, Bole-armenike, Coloquintida, pulpe, and seeds, powdered and searsed fine, and with whites of Eggs make a plaister, bind it on with a trusse, with this I cured divers.

Also ℞. Polipodium roots, double Daisie leaves, Harts tongue, Comfry, ana. seethe them in white Wine, and drink it morning and evening, and lay the herbs to the place, eat no milk nor swelling meats.

For the fleshy Rupture use the plaister Mentioned in the 3. Chapter, §. 1. made of Frankincense &c.

The second; Take Pitch, Wax, Jewes lime, both the Aristologies, earth worms, prepared Turpentine and Aloe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Litharge of gold, *Ammoniacum*, *Opopanacum*, *Galbanum*, *Bdellium*, *Sagapenum*, Mastick, Comfry, and Daisie roots, of each three drach. Birdlime, Bloodstones, Dragons blood, Frankincense, Gips and Myrrhe, of each three drach. mans blood three quarters of an ounce, and the fourth part of a Rams skin; seethe this to lime, and strain it through, and dissolve the Gum therein, seethe it all together, and mix the rest amongst it.

The third; Take Pitch, Aloe, Henbane, Aristologie, Behen, Saffron, and Chickweed with red flowers, of each two ounces, white Wax and Jewes lime, of each one ounce and a half, Litharge of gold, *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, Momy, *Opopanacum*, Mastick, Cipres nuts, Dragons blood, of each one ounce, fine Bolus three ounces and a half, Gips, Myrrhe, Frankincense, Turpentine, of each two ounces and a half, Birdlime and Mans blood, of each 12. ounces; temper these with the glew or Muscilage a sheeps skin and of sodden Hollihock roots. Many have been cured onely herewith.

You have also before in the second part, the first Chapter, 1. §. a plaister which beginneth thus: Take Pitch half an ounce, &c. the which is also very good for this purpose. But note, before that you lay the plaister upon the rupture, rub it with water that is distilled out of a sheeps skin when the wooll is off.

Item, some other things more to lay thereon; Take the juice of Sloes, seethe it in water, and lay it on the rupture, and bath the same therewith; it healeth cutting. For young children in stead of this plaister are pultices also to be made, as hereafter followes: Take meal of Lupines and burnt linnen, of each a like much, and make with wine a pap or pultice, and lay it between two fine clothes upon the rupture.

A mild plaister for children: Take Beans as many as you please, and steep them in warm water, peel them, and let them dry again; afterwards stamp them to powder, and take thereof two ounces, small filed Oken wood one ounce, Comfry sodden treatably in wine, and then stamped, three ounces; let all this seethe meetly thick, and spread it on a cloth, and lay it three times a day on the rupture, and a nights, but one time; and let it be well fastened with a trusse; do this four or five weeks space until the rupture be cured, and the skin pretty strong.

Another: Take *Consolida Saracenica*, *Gariophilata*, Plantain, Fennel, Sanicle, broad Plantain and Pauls betony, of each one handfull; chop all small, and let the plaister seeth untill it be thick, then lay it on the rupture, and tie it as behoveth.

It hath been told before in the first Chapter how wonderfull good this herb *Perfoliata* is for all ruptures, which oftentimes hath been by experience found and approved.

Here follow some salves: Take womans milk 16 ounces, Badgers greasse, Capons greasse, Hearts suet and Comfry, of each two ounces, the innermost rind of a Cherry tree cut small one ounce and a half; let it seethe so long as a hard egg, strain it hard through a cloth, and therewith anoint the rupture four weeks long morning and evening; trusse up the rupture as behoveth, and keep the patient lying still on his back.

Badgers greasse is also especial good for all ruptures.

Hereafter are yet more sundry salves described, which are very good for this kind of rupture, and some potions, whereof the first is before described, beginning thus, Take Comfry, &c.

Item, take broad Plantain, Hounds tongue, of each half a handfull, Comfry, Daisse roots, of each half an ounce, Myrtle seeds three drach. blossomes of Pomgranats, Bay berries, a drach. and a half, Ladies mantle, Sanicle, Consolida Saracenica, and Agrimony, of each one handfull; seethe them all together in wine and water, of each one pint, unto the half, strain it, and put thereto Sugar, at each time one ounce.

Item, take Sengreen, Consolida Saracenica, red Beets, herb Benet, Fennel, Knotgrasse, and Pauls Betony, of each one handfull; boyl them all in wine, and drink of it twice a day, but not at night. An old body must continue with it 12. weeks, and a child 6. weeks. Some add unto it Ladies mantle and Sanicle.

Item, take the root of the long Consolida, one or twain, Consolida Saracenica with the root, Hounds tongue with the root, of Pauls Betony, and roots of Poly pody, of each a like much; chop it very small, put it in a bag, and put thereto three pints of Wine, and distil it through a glasséen helm, take thereof in the morning early a good draught, at afternoon, and in the evening when you go bed again; yet at all times warm.

Some do make this potion yet stronger, and put half an ounce of *Perfoliata* unto it, Watercresses one ounce and a half, Cicory roots one quarter of an ounce, and a pint of red Wine.

Or take Comfry, Consolida Saracenica, Avens, Ladymantle, of each a like much; let it seethe together with good wine in a earthen pot, and drink thereof between meals.

Another; If so be that the Rupture be not yet a year and a half old, then take two pints of small wine in an earthen pot, and put thereto *Pirola*, S. Johns wort, and Strawbery leaves, of each one handful, stop the pot close, and let the same seethe until the second part, and drink thereof morning and evening meetly warm. This must also be continued two or three moneths space, till that be cured.

Now follow some Confections, and such like; Take Calamus and Comfry, of each one ounce, Solomons seal roots, Horse tailes, of each half an ounce, cut them all small, & let them seethe together in sowre Wine until it may be stamped to pap, and then temper it amongst this powder following; Take Cipres nuts one scruple, small chopt Hares hair half a scruple, Mastick, red Coral, Momy, Sealed earth, Cinamom, of each 15. grains, and Cassia wood two scruples.

Lastly, take four ounces of Clarified Hony, and temper it to a confection; thereof may be taken every day one drachme, or a drach. and a half with wine wherein Cipres nuts are decocted. Item, take *Corna* as many as you please, seethe them in red wine, and strain them. Then take thereof eight or twelve ounces, and seethe the same with six ounces of Sugar meetly thick, and then mingle therewith Hares hair (cut it as small as may be) one scruple, great and small Comfry, and Tormentil, of each two scruples, herb Trinity half a drach. Horse tailes, Consolida media, rinds of Pine apples, and the seeths of

Butchers broom, leaves and roots, red Saxifrage, of each one ounce and a half, Jewes lime one ounce, Hyſſop one ounce and a half, Hares hair cut ſmall three quarters of an ounce, Gals and Cipres nuts, of each one quarter of an ounce; roots of Solomons ſeal, wild Cucumber roots, of each one ounce, roots of Sperage one ounce and a half, Numularia one ounce; temper them all well together with hony and Sugar as much as is needfull; and take thereof every evening and morning the quantity of a Walnut in wine.

Otherwiſe theſe things following are counſelled much to be uſed; Valerian every day one drachme taken in wine, Crefly ſeeds alſo in Wine: but the ſame muſt not be uſed oftentimes. Item, Shepheards purſe cut ſmall and decocted in Wine. In like manner alſo the herb *Cardopatium*. To foment the Rupture alſo with theſe things following, is very good; Take Daiſie leaves with red flowers, and Conſolida Sarachnica, of each a like much, Paule Betony, Perfoliata, Pirola, and Watercreſſes, Harts tongue, Orcory, Sanicle wild Thyme, Cardopatium, and the herb of the ſame, of each half ſo much; chop it ſmall, and make thereof two bags, ſeethe them in water, and lay firſt one bag, and then another, fomenting the Rupture every time ſix or ſeven hours long. After that, the Rupture muſt be truſſed again as before. This water may laſt good 3. dayes long in the winter time.

Item, take Rue, Agnus Caſtus, Marjoram, and white Mints, of each one handfull, Annis ſeed, Fennel ſeed, Rue ſeed, and Silvermountain, of each one drachme; Camomil, Melilot, of each 2 ℥. ſtamp it all together, and let it ſeethe in a quart of water until the third part be ſodden away; foment therewith the Rupture. This is alſo good for the *Hernia Aquoſa*, the wateriſh Rupture, whereof we will hereafter ſpeak more at large.

Of the Ruptures that fall downs into the Cods. §. 2.

NOw we will ſpeak of the breaches or Ruptures that fall down into the Cods, whereof the cauſes are divers, as it ſtandeth here before declared in the fourth §. that they may therefore be holpen by ſundry remedies, ſhall hereafter appear.

Of the Rupture through wind. §. 3.

THe cauſes of this kind of Rupture may proceed of meats which are windy, as certain pottages, milk and all that is dreſt with milk, all doughy meats and unleavened bread, ſweet Wine, brains and marrow of beaſts. Such muſt beware of cloudy air, and all moiſt dwellings, all heavineſſe of the mind, and he muſt eſchew ſleep. Further, ſodden fiſh, moiſt fruits, great riotting, much exerciſe immediately after meals, continual uſe of all moiſt meats are hurtfull for this diſeaſe

For to cure theſe Ruptures, it muſt be endeavoured to drive out the winds, for the which at the firſt this Cliſter is very requiſite; Take Cumin, Annis, Caraway, Fennel, and Ameos, of each one drach. Rue one handfull and a half, ſeethe theſe together in a quart of water untill the half, take twelve ounces of this decoction, oyl of Rue, of Bay, of each one ounce and a half, Indy ſalt, and Sal gemmæ, of each half a drach. Thin. ſugar one ounce and a half, make a Cliſter thereof, and miniſter it once a day. Secondly, is the patient every morning to take ſeven hours before meat one drach. of Mithridate with two ounces of the water of Rue. This is a divine medicine to expell wind, and to take away the occaſions thereof.

There may a good lee be uſed outwardly, and to take thereof a pint, Sulphur vive beaten two ounces, grains half an ounce, beaten groſly, this ſo ſodden together untill the third part be ſodden away; in this warm water wet a ſponge, and lay it five or ſix times a day upon the privities.

Secondly, ſet often Copper cups which have narrow mouths upon the belly. For this is alſo good, all that expelleth wind.

Of the wateriſh Rupture Hernia Aquoſa. §. 4.

IF any where in the veins, in the pores, or in the liver or other parts, do gather ſome water, which falleth downwards, then muſt it at laſt fall into the cods; but the Liver is alwayes the moſt principal cauſe from whence all ſuch moiſtures have their beginning.

There-

Therefore when as all such wateriſh Ruptures happen to any, it is quickly to be diſcerned by the navel or cods, which immediatly afterwards do ſwell up, and ſeem to be perſpicuous; whereto theſe things following are to be uſed.

Firſt of all, the Patient muſt be purged; for if ſuch happen not often, the matter of the ſickneſſe will not be carried out of the body. In like ſort, if there be not kept a good order of dyet, and the water be not expelled, then mounteth it again downwards towards the cods, whereby at length may be cauſed a greater harm. And to purge all thoſe humors, take this drink following: Take *Agaricus* and *Hermodactils*, of each one drach. and a half, Ginger one ſcrup. Ireos one drach. Hony water four ounces, then make the Hony water warm, and let the foreſaid things be ſteeped therein 24. hours; afterwards wring it out well out, and drink it warm, and ſix hours afterwards eat and drink warm beer and bread upon it.

But if ſo be this drink through the bitterneſſe thereof go againſt your ſtomach, then take this enſuing. *Electuarium Indum*, ℥. 3. burnt copper, ʒ. 8. water of blew Flower deluce, ℥. 2. temper them all together and drink it. Or take theſe pils: Take the root of *Laureola*, which hath been ſteeped five daies in vinegar, ℈. 1. Sulphur vive, ʒ. 4. burnt Copper, ʒ. 2. Licorice, Anniſe and Dragagant, ana. ʒ. 4. make pils thereof with the juice of Roſes, and take them all at one time.

There muſt alſo be given to this patient thoſe things to eat and drink which do move urine, whereof many are ſpecified where we ſhall ſpeak of the Dropſie *Aſcites*: but of theſe three things following, chuſe which liketh you beſt.

Take red Peaſe about ſix ounces, two Fennel rootes, let them ſeethe well together, and take five ounces of this decoction: or drink five ounces of Broom water. Thirdly, take the water of Melilot, and water of Smallage, ana. ℥. 2. ß. Sugar as much as you pleaſe, and drink this a whole week long.

A Confection to ſtrengthen the Liver.

TAke *Trochiſcos Diacrhodon*, and *Spec. Diacinnamomi*, ana. ℥. 1. burnt Ivory, ℈. 1. white Sugar ℥. 4. ſeethe it with Fennel water, and make tabulats of it; of theſe take one quarter of an ounce before meat. When as then through the foreſaid means the water be ſomewhat voided, then are theſe plaiſters to be uſed: Take Maſtick, ℥. 1. Cipers nuts, ℥. ß. Dragagant and Gum, ana. ʒ. 1. temper theſe together unto a plaiſter with oyl of Roſes. This ſtoppeth, that there can no more water run unto it. Item take *Seseli*, Cumin, Cammomil and Melilot, ana. ℥. 1. ſeethe theſe together in a quart of water until the third part be ſpent, and foment therewith the Rupture. Then lay this plaiſter upon it bounden warm to it: Take roots of blew Flower-deluce, and roots of wild Cucumbers, ana. ℥. ʒ. Peaſe meal and Bean meal, ana. ℥. 2. oyl of Rhe and juice of ſtay leaves, ana. ℥. 2. let this ſeethe till it be meetly thick, and ſo lay it upon the ruptures, and bind it warm unto it. But if this cannot be made, then uſe the firſt with Maſtick and Cipers nuts.

The Apothecaries have alſo one in uſe, which they call *Emplaſtrum ad Rupturas*, which is alſo very good, and is thus to be made.

Take Nutmegs, the juice of Sloes, Gips, Cumin, Anniſe, Rice, *Pyrola*, ſowr Dates, Cipers nuts, Sanicle, ana. ʒ. 1. ß. fiſh-lime or Iſinglaſſe, ℥. ß. *Bdellium* two ounces: but diſſolve the two laſt in Vinegar, and with the reſt beaten ſmall make a plaiſter of it.

Another. Take Bran 12. ounces, beat it very ſmall, and let it run through a ſieve, put amongſt it 2. ounces of beaten Cumin, make a plaiſter of it with *Oxymel*. You may alſo ſeethe it well with white wine unto a plaiſter. Item take Lilly roots one ounce, Linſeed meal one quarter of an ounce, Bean meal, ʒ. 1. Cumin and wild Rape ſeed, ana. ℥. 1. Sulphur vive one quarter of an ounce, Cipers nuts, ʒ. 1. *Bdellium* molten in Vinegar, ℥. ß. beat all that is to be beaten, and let it ſeethe to a plaiſter with white wine. Item take Marjoram, foment therewith the whole privities, or anoint it with the juice of Yarrow: take alſo oyl of Pepper and of Saffron, of each a like much, and therewith anoint the rupture.

But if ſo be that this wateriſh rupture be taken for a ſpecies of the Dropſie, then muſt you look for more other plaiſters, which ſtand deſcribed in the Treatiſe of the Dropſie *Aſcites*, and chooſe which you like beſt. But if the water (which is ſo gathered together)

muſt

muſt be let out, then are you after the purgation to lay the foreſaid plaiſter upon it, and ſo purr be ſed, yet let not the water run out at all at once, and being run out, then lay drying plaiſters upon it. It is alſo opened ſundry waies, as with a hot iron, with a threed thruſt through it alſo with a corrative, and otherwiſe, which we commend to the Chirurgions. But if ſo be that you be once cured, and that the ſame return again, then is he to be ruled in all things, like as is from the beginning hitherto preſcribed.

Of the Rupture through Blood or Phlegma. §. 5.

Although that out of all the humours of mans body, there be ſpecially cauſed four Ruptures, yet notwithſtanding is the ſame very ſeldom cauſed through *Choler*: In like manner alſo not often of blood, unleſſe that ſuch hapneth through ſtrokes, wounds, falls, carriage, and through uſe of meats which make much blood, that be very hot, moiſt and fweet, and ſuch like, theſe ruptures do make ſhew with notorious ſwellings, with heat and many humours, which may eaſily be known by their feeling, for at the laſt they will be red, and beating, or panting. The Liver or Median vein is to be opened of ſuch a patient, and 4. or 5. ounces of blood letten out, according to the ſtrength of the patient. And the next day muſt he purge with this potion following: firſt, muſt you make ready a decoction, which the Apothecaries do call *Decoctio fruſtuum*, as followeth.

Take Figs and Prunes, of each fifteen, Jujubes and Sebeſtes, of each 20. Hops a handful and a half, Endive, Purſlaine and Cicory, of each half a handful, peeled Melon ſeed, Pompeion ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, and peeled Gourd ſeed, ana. ℥. 1. fowr Dates, ℥. 1. Violets, ℥. ß. ſeethe theſe all together (except the Dates) and break them into this decoction, it is very good for the breaſt, and cooleth naturally, take of it three ounces, Rubarb, ℈. 2. Spica, G. 4. conſerve of Prunes, ℥. ß. temper theſe well together, and drink it warm, and faſt thereupon the ſpace of 6. hours. The ſame day lay upon the Rupture ſix ounces of green Nightſhade, but if you cannot get it, then take dryed Roſes and broad Plantain, ana. ℥. 2. Linſeed ſodden in Vinegar, ℥. 12. barly meal, ℥. 5. oyl of Roſes, ℥. 4. let all theſe ſeeth together unto a thick pap by a mild fire treatably, and then lay this upon it twice a day. Item, take water of Endive, Nightſhade, barly water, and bean water, of each a like much, temper amongſt it a little Saffron and oyl of Roſes, make it wet in a cloth and lay it thereon. Or take barly meal, Lentil meal, Bean meal and Violets, of each a like much, temper theſe all together with the juice of the herb of winter Cheries, unto plaiſter or ſalve, and uſe it as above. But if ſo be that the pain of this accident will not ſtanch, then pownd Henbane amongſt it. The third day muſt two cups be ſet behind on the buttocks, and that at ſuch time as the patient hath leaſt pain, letting them draw much blood. His meats muſt be cooling and drying, as Verjuice, the juice of Pomegranats, &c. His drink muſt be ſowr and thin wine. This is alſo to be noted, that this kind of Rupture is of that nature that it may be cured in eight dayes.

But the rupture which is cauſed of phlegmatick humors, is much more common, and they that gladly haunt ſtrange women, are more ſubject to theſe Ruptures. Alſo all they that live riotouſly, eat hard meats, and have ſat upon a cold ſtone with their naked body, which may be known through the coldneſſe of the diſeaſe, when it beginneth to mollifie, and when one doth thruſt his finger into it, that the dent of the finger tarrieth a good while in it, which in the windy Rupture nor in the watry Rupture happeneth not to be, Alſo the place is not perſpicuous, and the ſwelling remaineth at a ſtay. This diſeaſe is to be cured with theſe purgations following: Take Turbith one quarter of an ounce, Ginger, ℥. 1. white Sugar, ℥. 3. temper toge ther: of this muſt the patient every fourth day take one drach. with Wormwood-water, and between them muſt he every morning take this potion: take water of Balm, Betony and Wormwood, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Sugar, ℥. ß Vinegar of Squils, ℥. 1. mix them together. Now for to ſtrengthen the parts wherein the Phlegmatick humour ingendreth, it is very good every morning to take one drach. of Treacle which is ten years old. This plaiſter following is alſo marvellous good for to conſume all ſuch matter: Take *Sandarca*, ℥. 2. *Sarcocolla*, ℥. 1. aſhes of Bean ſtraw, or Vine ſtocks, ℥. 6. Vinegar of Squils, ℥. 2. as much water as is needful: let theſe ſeethe together unto the thickneſſe of a plaiſter, and lay it upon the ſore as above. Some do take in ſtead of common aſhes, the aſhes of *Saponaria*, which may well be done.

Of

Of the fleshie Rupture. §. 6.

THis Rupture may also ingender of good blood, for that the nourishing operation doth work so vehemently therein, that the blood turneth into flesh. It may also be caused through great heat of the cods. When as then this excrescence of the flesh doth much increase, then will this member be much feebled, and the new flesh which at the first was not hurtful, will be utterly destroyed. This excrescence of flesh, or fleshly Rupture, is first of all known, for that therewith is no pain at all. The heat is to be known by the redness of the place where the disease appeareth, and by the hardness it is also known, for that it agreeth with other flesh. Lastly, it is also to be discerned and known by the speedy increasing, by reason that it agreeth with other flesh. Lastly, it is also to be discerned and known by the speedy increasing, by reason that sometimes it will be as big as ones head. The outward causes of the fleshly Rupture are all that over-heat and overmoisten, whereby the blood inflameth and will be fat, even as all delicate meats, yolks of eggs, good fresh broth, sweet wines, Dates, Sugar, and all that is dresst therewith, and such like. For to remedy this, first the Liver vein or the Median is to be opened, and that at several times, first one, then another. Secondly, you must look to open the hemorrhoids in the fundament, through continual rubbing it with Ox gall or with water wherein Sulphur vive is decocted. Thirdly, through often applying great cups upon the buttocks, hips, and other fleshy parts. He must eat no other meats then that are cooling, and drying thereby to hinder the generation of the blood: for which this plaister following is also to be laid thereupon: Take Lentil, Nightshade, Roses, and broad Plantain, ana. ℥. 6. Barly meal, ℥. 12. three whites of Eggs; seethe all together in sufficient Vinegar, and thrice asmuch water, then make thereof a plaister, and lay it upon the whole cod five or six daies one after another.

Now when as this patient hath purged, and done all that is prescribed, then is this plaister following to be laid upon the Rupture: Take *Bolus*, ℥. 2. Sealed earth and starch, ana. ℥. 1. Mill dust, ℥. 1. ß. *Sandarach* and Mastick, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a salve thereof with the juice of Roses in a leaden mortar, and lay thereof twice a day over the Rupture.

Afterwards use this corroding ointment: Take black Soap, ℥. 2. Orpiment, ℥. 1. ß. Sulphur vive, ℥. ß. burnt Copperas, ℥. 1. ß. temper all together in a mortar with water wherein *Sal Armoniack* is dissolved: lay this upon the lower part of the cod, about the breadth of a groat, and let it lye therein about one hour, but no longer, so that it may not bite in too deep. When there is any ulcer, then lay easie things thereon, as Barrowes grease or butter until that the eschar fall off. When this is all done, then take for this the salve of the Apostles: afterwards are you to lay this biting salve again upon another place of the cod, so that it may be opened in six or eight places, yet so, that one may commodiously come to it with the foresaid things. When you then see that such excrescens be consumed, which may be discerned and known hereby, that the cod is come to his wonted bignesse again, the which sometimes happeneth to endure half a year before it come thereto, then must you proceed with incarnatives, which things require an expert and patient Chirurgion.

Of the Rupture which is caused of broken veins, called Varicosæ. §. 7.

HEreof we have in the beginning of the 4. § made mention, how that it is none other but an intumefaction of the veins through blood, for in the cods are many veins that compasse them all about.

This tumor or rupture proceedeth of melancholick blood, to which do help sorrow, vexation of the mind, many fantasies, and grosse meats, whereof the melancholick blood is ingendred: like as also of grosse red wine, salt flesh, portage of Beans and Lentils, and all that is dresst with sharp Vinegar.

Such a Patient is to rule himself no otherwise then is taught in the fleshy rupture, but that he must not use any of the corroding salve, but in stead thereof use the plaisters *De Mastichinum*, and especially those that be made with *Opopanace*, *Serapino*, *Bdallio* and *Ammoniaco*. For this is also good bathes which are Sulphurish, Copperish, and warm by nature. And (to speak the truth) this species of rupture is not to be holpen but with great pains, and continuance of time.

Of

Of the terrible Rupture, called Buris. §. 8.

THis Rupture commeth also through melancholick blood, which not onely falleth down into the cods, but also infecteth them wholly, so that beyond al measure it cometh thereby to swell, yea will be black and cold, and sometimes without any ulceration. But if so be that there come unto it any hard swellings, which afterwards break out and yield much matter, then may the same be well taken for *Elephantiasis*: yet if so be that the swelling be not so big, and hath nevertheless the foresaid signs, then is it to be taken for the right *Hernia Oscene*, which some do call *Ossealis*, which altogether descendeth into the cods. This disease will be cured like other hard swellings, or as hereafter followeth.

Take Bean meal, ℥. 3. Cammomil, Mucilage of Hollihock roots, Annise seed, Fenegreek seed, and Raisins without stones, ana. ℥. ß. temper them with yolks of egs. These things are good for plaisters; as Cumin, Nightshade, Bean meal, Cammomil, Melilot, oyl of Lillies, Cow dung, crums of Rie bread, and more other things aforesaid. But if so be that the hardnesse will not wear away, but inclineth to maturation, then must the same be opened and healed as other impostumations.

The plaister *Diachilon* is good to be used at the first, and the gum *Ammoniacum* by it self; for that they either consume or maturate the swelling in short space. There is also good for this Bean meal, Fenegreek meal, Lilly roots, Colewort leaves, and figs, as much as you please, sodden together, and then pownded, and so laid upon the grief. Also this Rupture is to be oftentimes annointed with the oyl of Cammomil, Lillies and Spike, and chiefly when there is no special heat therein.

It is also to be noted, that it is not good, if it be known that the Cod is full of matter or corruption, to leave the same long therein, least that the testicles thereby might also spoil and putrifie. For this is this rule to be observed, to the end that in time the melancholick humors might be drawn out and purged away; to wit, to open the Liver vein on the left side. The next day must he take half an ounce of *Cathartieum Imperiale*, with Violet Water or lilly water. Now for to cause to matter to discuss and consume, take six or eight daies one after another these potions following: Take Violet water, Lettice water, and Hop water, of each one ounce, sirupe of Citron pils one ounce and a half: take this warm early in the morning.

Of the Ruptures whereby the Bowels do fall into the Cods. §. 9.

THe eight and last sort of Ruptures is here above mentioned in the title. The descending of the bowels or rim, is oftimes very suddenly, and otherwhiles very slowly. But howsoever the same come, yet for all that can it not be without pain, and chiefly if it be touched: the inward causes are none other then wind, which clerly appeareth hereby; if the patient hold up his breath long, the Rupture will be the greater, and in breathing out the smaller. The outward causes are sufficiently expressed in the Treatise of the Ruptures of wind, and of the Navel.

For to help this disease, before all things diligence must be had, that the bowels which are descended may be brought again into their place. And for to compasse this, take hold on the cods underneath, and treatably thrust it up. Take also a great boxing cup, set it above the privities or hard by, and let it draw a good space. The patient must also lie higher with his buttocks than his body, that the bowels thereby the easier may return into their due places. If there be any great pain approaching, then first of all look to swage the same, and chiefly with clisters, which are thus to be made; to wit, the decoction wherein Linseed, Fenegreek, and white Sesamum seeds beaten grosly, have been boyled; and therewith butter and the oyl of Violets be mixed. Item, take Hens and Cocks broth, and oyl of Sesamum, ana. ℥. 6. *Sal gemma*, ℥ ß. or little lesse; temper them together, and minister this Clister meetly warm.

Another. Take 12 ounces of sweet Wine, fresh butter, and oyl of sweet Almonds, ana. ℥. 2. *Buglossa* ℥ ß. temper them all together for a clister.

Further, the whole Cods with all parts that are adioyning are to be well fomented or bathed. What waters are no be taken for it, you have them set down before in the end of the first §. beginning thus, Take Rue, &c. Yet another in the fourth §. beginning thus, Take Sesely,

Sefeli, or Silver mountain seed, &c. In one of these warm decoctions wet a great sponge and lay it over all the privities: which being done, then let the Rupture be softly shoved back. Afterwards must you lay this plaister following over it, and binde it as hard as may be abidden and suffered.

Take Cipers roots, ℥. 2. Mill dust, ℥. 3. Cumfrey and Daisie roots, ana. ℥. 1. fiftolime or Isinglas, ℥. 1. ß. Dragagant, Gum, Momy, and burnt Ivory, ana. ℥. ß. Dragon blood, *Sagapenum*, Sealed earth, and fine Bolus, ana. ℥. ß. the meal and pownded roots shall you seeth in two third parts of water, and one third part of red vinegar, until it be thick enough; then mix molten wax amongst it as much as is needful, stir it with dissolved Gum well together until it be cold. You have also before in the discourse of the Navel and upper Rupture, many good plaisters which are good for this use.

But if so be that the rupture be large, and all that is faln down be much, then lay the plaister thereon which is described in the Treatise of the upper rupture, in the beginning of the 1. §. for it is singular good also for this kinde of Rupture. Make a plaister thereof after the form of a shield, whereof the narrowest end may passe under the cods between the legs, and the broad end over the whole cods: this being done, then put thereon an accustomed trusse.

Lastly, heed must be taken to cure and strengthen the place of the rupture where the bowels come through: for the which this following is very commodious.

Take iron dross which is sodden in vinegar and Myrrhe, ana. ℥. ß. Dragons blood, fine *Bolus*, Frankincense, Mastick, Sealed earth, and the juice of Sloes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cipers nuts and Momy, of each three quarters of an ounce, Isinglas, ℥. 2. temper them all together with Wax and Rosin as much as is needful for a salve, and therewith annoint the Cods thrice a day, and knit it up with a trusse as is usual. If the rupture be not too wide and too old, then may it be well cured therewith in forty or threescore daies.

Of the Ruptures of Children. §. 10.

THe young children are subject to the foresaid ruptures of wind and water, more then aged folk, and are also to be cured with the foresaid remedies. Concerning the upper rupture of children, especial mention is made in the fifth §. But as in the beginning of this description we have said, that children and tender bodies are to be dealt withal more milder and subtiller then with aged folks, therefore is the same to be had in minde.

For the first, these are as much as is possible to be defended and kept from crying, and to be let lie with stretched out legs, and after the first binding not to unbind it in ten dayes. If the rupture as then be not yet cured, then is the rupture, the second and third time to be trussed, for that by the first trusse they heal not throughly, but all after as they be still or unruly. But if the children be so small that they suck still, then must the mother or the nurse keep a good dyet in eating and drinking of dry meats: and they must eschue all which be moist of nature.

For to keep up the Matter that it descend no more. §. 11.

FOr this purpose are good the last mentioned clisters, the binding and rubbing of the knees downwards, the setting up of boxing cups on the buttocks unpickt, the opening of the Liver vein or Median, wherewith also according to the importance of the cause, remedies must be used through vomits, whereby the matter that falleth out of the head will be diverted: for all ruptures are much subject to the defluxion of humours, and especially the great ruptures. Lastly, it is very necessary that women do further their flowers or Terms; and for men, the Hemorrhoides or Piles.

For to stay the reversion of the Rupture that is come not again. §. 12.

THis must be effected through such things as expel wind and flegmatick matters, whereof is sufficient store declared, and chiefly that which hath *Turbith* in it, in the first §. If you had rather have pils, then take Coloquint one scruple, *Turbith* one drach. *Bdellium* one drachme, and Ginger one scruple, make thereof twelve pils with

with *Hiera Logadion*, where of the patient is to take three in the morning early, and there upon drink one ounce of the water of blew Flowerdeluce meetly warme and sugred. This medicine is good for all flegmatick diseases. This foresaid matter wil be expelled through these things following by uring; Take water of Broom, Madder, and smallage, of each one ounce and a half, temper it, and drink thereof about half an ounce at a time: and immediatly afterwards take three pils of pownded *Millium solis* seed, mixt with the juice of Smallage: or take one drachme of beaten *Lignum Aloes*, with Hony water. Also you may use twice a week one drachme of Mithridate, tempered with mint water.

Thirdly, there is a strong confection discovered, made by *Nicholaus*, by the name of *Opoppra*, which hath a special operation to dry up the flegmatick humors. And if you desire to make the same, then are you to use the advice of an expert Physitian, for it is very hot. There are also simples, which be very necessary for to stay the bowels after the first curing, from falling downe into the cods any more: whereof, the first are Cipres nuts, when they are green to confect them with sirupe of Roses, whereof one is to be taken three or four hours before meat, and that continuing two or three moneths long. Secondly, after the same manner shall be confected Pine apples (the kernels being taken out) and use them in like manner. Thirdly, take one drachme of Momy, and make therewith twelve pils with the juyce of Roses, and take thereof alwaies three houres before meat, one, two, or three moneths space together. Fourthly, you are to swallow every morning three or foure peeces of Mastick, and continue it three or foure moneths: it is the most surest. Fifthly, you are four hours before meat to take a root of *Consolida media*. Sixtly, the powders of Cypres nuts is to be used in all meats. Seventhly, there must be worn a place of filed iron upon the rupture. Eightly, the patient set oftentimes in an Allum bath, which is very sure to prevent the recidive of all such accident.

For this may be prepared these confections following: Take Frankincense, Mastick, the juyce of Sloes, *Hypocistis*, of each one drachme and a half, Roses, burnt Ivory, parched Comin, Dill seed, of each one drachme. Cypres nuts half an ounce, small filed Steel, Iron drosse, decocted together in red vineger, of each one quarter of an ounce, dried seeds of Pomegranats one ounce; beat them all small together: Hony of Roses eighteen ounces, white Sugar twelve ounces; Granado wine sixe ounces, Dragagant, Gum of each half an ounce; seeth both of these gums with Hony, Sugar, and this juyce until it be thick. When it beginneth to be cold, put it into a mortar, and temper the other things amongst it, stirring it well about, and giue the sick body thereof two drachmes in a morning two hours before meat: also two hours after supper one drachme. With this have many been cured.

The oder of life or diet. §. 13.

EVen as all diseases in the world have need of a good diet, so hath this malady most of all need of it; but if the patient do not govern himself in this sicknes as it behoveth, then are all medicines of none effect, but in vain.

For this is first required to keep himself as quiet as is possible, and to ly upon his back. The patient is also forbidden all cold and moist places, carnall copulation, much stirring after meat.

To overcharge himself with meat and drink is also very hurtful unto him, all strong drinks and chiefly Must or new wine is forbidden him. All meats that are binding, as sad baked bread, and all that is made of meal and dough must he forbear. Of all sorts of pottages, there are none more hurtfull than Beans, Turky beans, and Lentils: contrariwise, he may eat wel smoke dried flesh, and all kinds of fish: but new milk, and all that is made thereof, is hurtful to him.

Item, butter; and all cold and moist herbs must he forbear, as Spinage, Lettice, Beets, Mallowes, Purstain, &c. unlesse they be mingled with some warme herbs, as Rosemary, Mints, Thyme, Marjoram, and such like. Meats that are good for him, are well leavened bread not above three dayes old, Brewesse of fresh flesh broth, rear Egs, Veal, Mutton, Pork, Hairs: Item capons, Hens, Pheasants, Partridges, Ducks, Doves, and all other field fowles, All fish fried in oyl, and salt fish may he use otherwhiles, &c. Hard salt Cheese is also sometimes permitted. All sorts of Turneps, Olives and Capers may he also use. All manner of spice may he eat drest with his meat. Also Annis seed, Fennel seed, Comin, and such like. All manner of sowr things in his meats cannot hurt him, as Vineger, Verjuice, Limons, Orenges, and such like.

For

For his drink ſhall be good cleer wine or beer. But if the Patient can neither drink wine nor beer, then is he to uſe this Meade following.

Take Roſemary half an ounce, Cinamom half a drach. Balm flowers, Ginger, Borage, Nutmegs, of each half a drach. ſeethe theſe together in ſeven quarts of water until the fourth part be ſodden away: afterwards put thereto ſixteen ounces of hony, let it ſeethe again until the third part be conſumed.

This drink is ſpecial good in the winter, and if the ſame be not continually uſed, yet may the Wine be delayed with it.

This order is as well directed for flegmatick humours, as for the cauſe whereof this Rupture hath his being. And if the ſame be cauſed of *Cholera* and blood, we have thereof diſcourſed before.

The Chirurgions have two other means to heal the Rupture, which is, by inciſion, and with cauterization, whereof we are not purpoſed to write.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Teſticles or Stones.

SOme do name both theſe parts, the privities; which name doth ſignifie more then the ſtones only of men or women, for that it is thought to be too groſſe a term, the ſtones: but if the matter be honeſt which is ſpoken of them, then can the true name of them not be ſhameful nor diſhoneſt. Both theſe ſmall parts of a mans body were once faſhioned thereto by God and nature (like as is diſcovered) whereby to continue mankind: for which cauſe they are by good reaſon accounted amongſt the principalleſt parts of mans body. For how greatly mankind is depending thereon, it is to be ſeen by ſuch whoſe ſtones be cut out, who have no beards growing, do loſe their mans voyce and natural heat, yea are wholly unfit for generation: In fine, do almoſt alter wholy into the nature of women, we may therefore with good reaſon write thereof.

Men and women have both of them two of theſe ſtones, therefore do the Grecians call them *Didymi*; which is, Twins or Twilings. In men they hang outwardly out of the body in the aboveſaid cods, and are of a faſt fleſhy ſubſtance, round and ſomewhat long, inwardly hollowiſh, wherein they receive the pureſt and cleaneſt blood of the whole body: and for that they be hot and moiſt, they prepare that for the full perfection of the ſeed.

Women have the ſtones inward, on each ſide of the neck of the Mother one: but they are much leſſe then the ſtones of a man, and alſo of another faſhion. It is alſo adjudged, that the right ſtone is hotter of nature then the left; therefore the right alſo (is ſaid) will ingender a ſon, and the left a daughter. It is found by experience, if a man have one ſtone cut out, yet may he ingender children: likewiſe they that have three ſtones are very unchaſt of life.

Of the diſeaſes which theſe members of the body are ſubject unto, is ſufficiently diſcourſed in the treatiſe of the Cods: for there can hardly come any infirmity to the Cods, wherein they do not ſuffer with them, whether they chance to ſwell through wind, or any other humour. But chiefly young Children get lightly ſuch diſeaſes: for which you have this plaiſter following for to uſe, as well for young as for aged folks: Take Lilly roots ℥. 4. Linſeed meal, Bean meal, half an ounce, yellow wild Rapeſeed half an ounce, Sulphur vive one drach. make a plaiſter thereof. But before you lay on the plaiſter, anoint the place with oyl of Pepper and Saffron, of each half an ounce, temper them, and uſe it warm.

Another Plaiſter. Take ſmall beaten Anniſeeds, temper them with well brayed whites of eggs, and lay warm upon it. This is approved and found good.

The

The fifth Chapter.

Of Womens privie Members.

THe Privities of women make outwardly a small shew, but within are much like to the privie members of a man. The neck of the Mother or Womb is instead of the Yard: the Mother or Womb is compared with the Cods, where on the neck of the same (like as is said) the stones are fixed; so that with good reason may be said, That whatsoever men have outwardly, the same have women inwardly: but for honesties sake we will write no further of it. But as much as concerneth the inward parts thereof, and all that appertaineth thereto, shall be discovered hereafter: here shall onely be touched certain diseases which these parts are subject too. For which, first of all the common advice of women is against all pain of these parts, be it of whatsoever cause that the same proceed, to wit, that Betonie be laid to steep in Wine, and to drink thereof.

Of the inflamation of the place with swelling. §. 1.

TAke the whites of Eggs, and bray them with a long peece of Allom a good space, then will it be a salve; spread it upon a cloth, and so apply it, and when it is dry refresh it: this hath been many times approved and found certain. Item, take of the white of an egg half a nutshel full, and Sallad oyl, stir them well together, and therewith anoint the hot burnt place. Or take the green and yellow bark of Eldern sticks, put them in a little bag, boyl them in wine, and lay them warm thereon; it driveth away all swelling, as well that which is caused of childbirth, as otherwise.

Item, take for the hot swelling of womens privy places, *Consolida*, *Saracenica*, *Avens*, and Ladies mantle, as much as you please: pownd them all together, and wring out the juice, temper it with molten Capons grease and fresh butter, anoint the place therewith between day and night four times at the least:

Of the Clefts of this place. §. 2.

THe Grecians doe call the clefts *Rhagades*, and are such clefts as discover themselves with excrescence of flesh, which for the most part standeth alwaies inward, and bleedeth not of it self, unlesse they be rubbed hard with the member of a man, which proceedeth of inward and outward causes. The outward causes may be fals, strokes, or bignes of a mans member: Also through putting in any sharp thing, as Gith seed, and such like. The inward occasions are, when as any inward swelling happeneth through descent of some sharp humor which there seeketh issue; and (to tell the truth) this is very hardly to be healed, especially when all such diseases do stand deep in the neck of the mother. But these clefts are to be healed with the same remedies which shortly hereafter in the treatise of the Arsgut shall be described, yet if there be no Ague nor sharpnesse present, then may these pessaries following be used.

Take Ducks grease, and the marrow of a Stags bone, of each half an ounce, Saffron one scruple, oyl of Lillies and of white Daffodill, of each one quarter of an ounce, Waxe as much as is needfull, wherewith to frame pessaries. These pessaries must be put into the place, yet bounden at a threed, they draw the clefts together. Item, take Frankincense and *Hypocistis*, of each half a drach. Aloe half a scruple, Dragons blood three drachmes, the juice of Sloes one drachme, dryed Asse dung one ounce, dryed Mints a scruple, burnt Egshels one drachme and a half, three whites of Eggs, burnt paper two scrup. 3. ounces of the juyce of broad Plantain, Vinegar one quarter of an ounce, temper them all together: it is especial good for all clefts of the whole body. But if so be that there be any heat or sharpnesse therewith, then is oyl of Roses to be used for it, and the the pessaries must be anointed with this white unguent: or make a pessary of Cotton, steeped in Rose water, or plantain water.

But if the heat thereof be great, take the juice of Purslain, muscilage of Fleawort, and

and juice of Houſleek; work this the ſpace of certain hours in a leaden mortar, and temper a little Oyl of Roſes amongſt it; this healeth and cooleth. It is alſo very good againſt the Canker of the Mother, and ſuch like diſeaſes.

Item, take Dragagant and Gum, diſſolved in Roſe water, waſhed Aloe, Ceruſſe, Frankincenſe, and Dragons blood, of each one drach, litharge of Gold half an ounce, oyl of Roſes two ounces, wax as much as is needful; ſtamp all that is to be ſtamped, and make a ſalve of it.

Alſo this hereafter following may with a Siringe be ſquirted into the place: Take waſhed white bread, Frankincenſe, Bolus, and Dragons blood, of each one ounce, pownd it, and ſeethe it in four ounces of Goats milk unto the half, then ſtrain it through a cloth, and uſe it as hath been ſaid.

Of the Ulceration in the privities of Women. §. 3.

ALl that is ordained here before for the clefts, is alſo good for all ulcerations of the privities in women; ſo is alſo in like manner that which followeth hereafter. Take freſh butter, Badgers greaſe, and Deers ſuet, of each one ounce, the marrow of a young Steer half an ounce, five beaten yolks of Eggs; temper them all together over a mild fire, and ſtir it continually: when as it is almoſt cold, then put thereto Violets, Camomil, and Roſes, of each one ounce, oyl of Olives one ounce and a half: let this ſeethe ſoftly one quarter of an hour, ſtirring it alwaies about; afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth. Item, take Barrowes greaſe wherein Dill hath been fryed, May butter, and Harts ſuet, of each two ounces, Sallad oyl one ounce and a half, the marrow of a young Steer, and Roſes, of each one ounce, Violets, Camomil, of each one drachme and a half, ſix yolks of eggs well beaten, temper it as before: you may put thereto a little Bevercod; this is, the elder the better.

For a general rule note, that whereas any ulceration or clefts do ſhew themſelves outwardly, that for the ſame theſe foreſaid remedies are commodious: if ſo be that they ſtand deep in the neck of the Mother, then uſe the foreſaid peſſaries, and thruſt them in deep enough, for which cauſe the peſſaries muſt be reaſonable long. Alſo for all ſwelings and exulcerations uſe the oyl of white Daffodil, for it is very much approved for it.

For Ulcers in the Matrix.

Re. of Sallad oyl ℔. 1. Wax ℥. 2. Laudanum ℥. 1. ſeethe them a little, then put thereto of red Sanders finely powdered ℥. 2. anoint therewith; or you may ſtrain it, and put it into the part.

For the running of the Reines.

MAke a poſſet with milk and allom, and let the partie eat the curd and drink the whay of it; do ſo every day for a week.

When any body catcheth any ſore through carnal copulation. §. 4.

THis is to be underſtood of any ſore which commonly cometh through copulation or venery. For this you ſhall take Calves ſuet, letting it melt treatably upon hot coles, then temper therewith the marrow of an Oxe; when it is molten, let it be cold: when you will uſe this, then take a little of it and anoint the ſore therewith. But if it hapned that one have his ordure to come forth before, then take a ſmall Tunnel, and ſtick it into the fundament, like as it were a Cliſter-pipe, then pour therein the molten fat but not too hot.

The Patient muſt alſo keep in his breath, and afterwards pluck out the Tunnel, and ſo, ſtop the fundament with Cotton, that the ſame fat might not run out again. And two or three dayes after he muſt bathe in warm water, or foment with a bag that is filled with Oken leaves, Plantain and Roſes, and is decocted in water.

For to make a Woman to be as narrow as a Maiden. §. 5.

TAke *Conſolida Saracenica*, Plantain, red Roſes, and Shepherds purſe, of each a like much, and chop them ſmall; when you have two handfuls of them, then take a pound

Of May Butter; melt it, and put thereto the said herbs: then let all seethe softly together half an houre long: afterwards strain it through a cloth, and therewith anoint the place. Item, take Coppras, and let it dissolve in Well water, wet a cloth therein, and lay it in the place: but it must otherwhiles be refreshed. If then one be troubled with the Crublice, looke the first part, in the third Chapter, in the 8. §. where is sufficiently written of Lice.

For to speak then more at large of this matter, and to declare (like as is said already) how much importeth mankind in the soundnesse and health of these parts of generation, therefore we will first speak of the Spermatical flux or running of the reins, be it by day or nighe: afterwards of the impossibility of the venereal act: Thirdly of the barrennesse both of man and woman, and how to redresse it. Fourthly, what belongeth to the *Secundina* or Skin wherein the child is wrapt, we will shew hereafter.

The sixth Chapter.

Of the Spermatical Flux or running of the Reines.

THE Grecians doe call this infirmity *Gonorrhœa*, which is, when one against his will, without the erection of the Yard hath his seed running out, through the losse of his strength and unnatural heat. This is caused through the feeblenesse of the vertue retentive, which is in the instruments of the seed, which may happen through any overcoldnesse, be it by sitting on cold stones, or otherwise. It is else daily seen, if any bear this mischief too long, that he waxeth lean thereby, and falleth away. And it is also no wonder, that by reason of this flux of the seed which sometimes ten yea twenty times happeneth between day and night, that thereby the best nourishment of the body is withdrawn. If so be then that this Spermatical flux is caused through weaknesse of the retentive vertue, then happeneth it without feeling: or if it happen through the force of the vertue expulsive, which is knowne before by certain impotency and trouble of these parts. But if the same grow through outward accidents, that must be understood of the Patient. And to cure this infirmity, first it is to be knowne that albeit this disease proceedeth for the most part through heat, yet notwithstanding the same may be caused through cold, therefore we will here first write of the running of the Reines which commeth through heat.

Of the flux of seed, or running of the Reines through heat. §. 1.

THis flux of seed, is (as it hath bin said) felt with some grief. All cold things are acceptable to the patient, and hot things do put him to paine, as to a man which is superabounding in seed, doth this flux of Sperme bring not any feeblenes, and he waxeth not thereby leane at all: but if such come through heat of the seed, then feeleth he also heat, itching and grief: this must first of all be begun with a good order of diet. And first he must chuse for his dwelling a place and ayre which is neither too hot nor too cold, neither too moyst nor too dry. It is also not convenient for him to stir or go much, neither to ride: but rest and sleep is highly commended for this infirmity, and not too long, but a little, and that oftner. Deep speculations, sorrow, vexation, fright, fear, and especially all venereal thoughts must he eschew. All purgations, and that which abateth the body are very hurtful: and if need require, the same is easily to be effected through vomits, sweats, and Clisters.

For vomiting, take water (wherein Radishes have been sodden) three ounces, sirup Vineger one ounce and a half, give the patient this warm, after that he hath eaten sundry meats.

For to provoke sweat, take Barly water three ounces, strong Wine two ounces, give it him very warm, and let him sweat. The clister must be thus prepared: Take Beets, Violet leaves, Nightshade, Tassel leaves, of each one handful, let them seeth well together, and take twelve ounces of this decoction, Thomas sugar one ounce and a half, yolkes of Eggs, oyl of water Lillies, and of Roses, of each two ounces, salt one drachme and a half: the clister must be set in the evening before meat.

In eating and drinking muſt be eſchued all that nouriſh well, except there be great feebleneſſe appraoching, whereof ought moſt of all to be adviſed. Alſo he muſt eſchue all that provoketh venery, as all ſharp hot meats, ſpices, fat and windy meats: but much rather may he uſe all thos ate contrary to theſe, be wabee wherein Lentils are ſodden, and Waterlilies tempered in all his meats and drinks, alſo conſerves of the ſame, prepared Coriander is alſo good: be it of what manner ſoever they be eaten. Theſe things have a ſpecial property to expel incontinency. In like ſort alſo Purſlain, Endive, Cicory, and Lettice, but Lettice ſeed excelleth all theſe, if one eat much thereof: it ſtayeth moſt exceedingly and ſpeedily the running of the Reins. Item, oyl Olive and Nightſhade, are very good for this. All theſe foreſaid things is ſuch a patient to uſe continually, merely ſowr vinegar, Oranges, and the juice of Pomegranats may be alſo uſe other whiles, and herewith eat ſheeps feet, and other beaſts feet. Fiſh that are taken in freſh waters are alſo good for him, with vinegar and other ſowr things, and dreſſed with ſallad oyl. All ſea fiſh ſhall he forbear. Concerning fleſh, there is good all kind of Veniſon, water Fowls, and in fine, the fleſh of all Deers that be not fat, but in good plight. For his drink muſt he have red clear and pleaſant wines, and if he deſire to have them watered, then take thereto water wherein Coriander, Lettice, Purſlain, (and that which is yet better) Gum of Araby, and dryed Waterlilly flowers have been decocted. And that we forget not the venereous and luſty women, it is ſpecially adviſed, that for them ſhall be made a potion of the juice of Betony & Cicory tempered together with vinegar. Item, yet more againſt concupiſcence of man and woman that are hot of nature, may plaiſters be made: Take Henbane, *Opium*, Camphire, the muſcilage of Fleawort, Purſlain ſeed, and oyl of Poppy ſeed, make a plaiſter thereof, and annoint or lay it upon the kidneys. Yet muſt this plaiſter by reaſon of the extream coldneſſe be uſed providently. Alſo to go bare footed is good likewiſe for this: and they that be full of blood are to be let blood. Theſe things following do much dry the natural ſeed, to wit, Rue and *Agnus caſtus*, wilde Mint, Cumin, and morſels made thereof. But chiefly if one do take the ſeeds of the premiſes with Vinegar. Item take Dill ſeed, ℥. 3. Lettice ſeed, and Purſlain ſeed, and ℥ß. drink thereof every time, ℥.i. ß. with the water of Lentils. Item take Rue ſeed and Henbane ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, roſes and flowers of Pomegranates ana. ℥. 3. make thereof a powder, and give thereof to drink one quarter of an ounce at one time with water or watered wine. But to return to the looſing of the Sperm, it is not amiſs to write what is inwardly to be uſed for it. Firſt then ſhall this confection following be neceſſary for it: Take Comfrey roots, ℥. 3. cleanſe them and cut them ſmall, pilled Pompeon ſeed and Water lillies, ana. ℥. i. the juice of Licorice, ℈. 2. prepared Coral, fine Bolus, Mirtle ſeed and roſes, ana. G. to Gum, ℥. ß. beat them all ſmall (except the roots) and make thereof a powder: ſeethe the roots in red wine, and ſtamp them to grout; then temper the powder amongſt it, and put thereto the ſirupe of Citron pils and of Oranges, as much as you pleaſe, and then let it ſeethe together again to a confection. Take every morning one ſpoonful thereof before breakfaſt.

Item, temper the Conſerves of roſes with Marmalade, as much as you will: or take either apart.

Another. Take prepated Bolus one quarter of an ounce, Conſerves of roſes three quarters of an ounce, temper and uſe thereof every time one drachme. Or take a whole new laid egg ſodden and ſugred.

Item, ſeethe Rice in new milk, boyl it with Archangel flowers, red for men, white for women, ſeaſon it with Sugar, Cinamom and nutmegs, and ſo eat it. Or, drink the ſeaſted powder of haſel nutſhels. Or, ſtamp the kernels of haſel nuts, and ſeethe it in milk: eat often. Alſo ſeethe Feverfew, M. i. in a quart of Malmſie and ſugar, q. i. drink it morning and evening.

Alſo take of nepte, of Clarry, ana. M. i. ſtamp them with the yolk of two eggs, make a taſſie of them, and eat it every morning.

This is approved.

Take a quart of milk and put into it a piece of Alome as big as a hens egg; ſeethe it and drinke the ſame in the morning and eat the curd.

The next morning take a quarter of a pint of Maligo ſack, and put into it a ſpoonful of Roſin, do this 6. dales in the morning.

A famous Sirupfor heat.

TAke Purſlain ſeed, Lettich ſeed, and Water Lilies, of each one ounce, prepared Coriander, roots of Water Lilies, of *Dandelion*, and of Nightſhade, of each half an ounce, Camfere half a drachme, or fifteen Jujubes, Dates (eight dayes ſteeped in Vinegar and chopt ſmall) two ounces, Rue ſeeds, mountain ſeeds, and parched Comin, of each one drachme; ſeethe theſe all together in two quarts of water unto the half, then ſtrain it through, being very hard wrung out, put more thereto, twelve ounces of the juyce of Quinces, Sugar ſix and thirty ounces, and let them ſeethe all together and clarify them. Laſtly, caſt a little mints into it, whereof ſhall be taken two ounces, with three ounces of Purſlain water, iuſh very precious and approved.

For this is alſo good theſe ſyrups following; as *De ſucco Endiviæ, de Cydonij, de Roſis ſiccis, Roſatus ſalutiuus*, and *Myrtinus*. It hath been alſo ſaid before, that for this diſeaſe no Purgations are fit. But if ſuch were moſt needful, then is there to be given him one ounce, or one ounce and a half of fine Caſſia with Purſlain water. Another which is ſtronger; Take Caſſia one ounce, and *De ſucco Roſarum* one quarter of an ounce, beaten ſeedes of *Agnus Caſtus* one ſcruple, Waterlillies three ounces; temper them all together. Alſo there is to be given him one ounce, or one ounce and a half of Caſſia with hony or milke. Afterwards take every morning a draught of well decocted barly water, and temper therewith (according as the heat is great) a ſpoonful or twain of the juyce of Houſleeke, or Purſlain, for it cooleth much. Item, take one ounce, or one ounce and a half of Caſſia, ſtrew it with the powder of Licorice, and ſwallow it down in the morning faſting. Item, uſe fourteene dayes continually in the morning early a little Caſſia out of the pipes, and ſpit out the kernels.

A confection that is very fit for this. Take prepared Coriander one quarter of an ounce, Powder of mints three drachmes, Lettice, Purſlain, and pilled Cucumber-ſeed, of each two drachmes and a half, Gum, Comin, (both parched) of each one drachme, parched Dragagant one drachme and a half, Waterlillies one quarter of an ounce and theſe beaten ſmall together, Sugar fifteene ounces, and ſeethe the Sugar in Purſlain water, and then make Tabulates of it.

Hereafter follow Potions. Take Comfrey rootes and ſeethe them in water, drinke thereof three or foure ounces with Sugar; it is very fit for this diſeaſe. Item, ſteeled water (wherein Mirtle ſeede hath been decocted) being drunken, is alſo very good. For this is alſo meete Plantain water, Sorrel water Purſlain water, and Cicorie water. Or take Mallowes and hollihock rootes, boyle them in water, and drinke of it. Or take of the *Trochiſci de Carabe, de terra Sigillata, & de Spodio*, which you will, or of each half a drachme; for the whole Doſe mix it with whay, and ſo drinke it.

What ought to be uſed outwardly.

IF ſo be that this infirmity have long continued, then make Smiths Cinders glowing hot, and ſlake them in wine, and bath therewithal; you muſt fill the navel with Stags ſuet, which ſtayeth the affluxion of the heat and ſharpneſſe of the matter. If the patient then deſire to make water, then muſt the Patient hang his privities in Plantain water or Night ſhade water. Item, take old oyle of Roſes two ounces, oyle of quinces and Mirtles, of each two ounces and a half, burnt Lead, white Lead, Bloodſtone (both waſht in Lettice water) of each half an ounce, ſtarch one ounce and a half, willow leaves and Water Lilly flowers, of each five drachmes, Camphire one quarter of an ounce; mix one with another in a leaden mortar with the juyce of Plantain, and make alſo a ſalve thereof. For this diſeaſe ſhall you find many remedies both in the antient and latter Phyſitians. The cooling ſalve is alſo very comodious for this; like as is the oyntment of Saunders *Unguentum Sandalinum*, which is made in this manner. Take Roſes three drachmes, red Saunders two drachmes and a half, yellow Saunders one drachme and a half, fine Bolus one quarter of an ounce, burnt Ivory one drachme, Camphire half a drachme, white wax one ounce, oyl of Roſe buds ℥. 3. the wax and the oyl are to be molten together and then temper the other things amongſt them. This is not only good for this diſeaſe, but alſo for inflamed kidneyes, and to coole the liver, the ſtomack and all other parts. With any of both theſe oyntments anoint the Patients Kidneyes

and

and all other parts. With any of both these oyntments anoint the patients Kidneyes and the Cods, even to the end of his yard. Item, take oyl of Mirtles, Roses, Mastich, of each half a drach. shaven Ivory one scruple, Camphire two graines: pownd all that is to be pownded, and with a little wax make thereof a salve, wherewith annoint the Kidneyes. This salve is also good for the whites in women. It is also much commended to weare upon the Kidneyes a piece of thin beaten Lead. womans whites.

Of the Flux of Sperm, or the running of the Reines through cold. §. 2.

IN this infirmity is felt with the pain in the head, a distemperance also of the brains, and a vexation of the whole body with cold, even as in *Mania*. For this be especially Mints, *Agnus Castus*, Attichokes with the roots, parched Cumin, and Caraway, Anise, Frankincense, and their barks, Mastick and Marjoram. This Patient must then providently (as is said) and mildly purge, and afterwards every morning take a drach. of Treacle with Betony-water. You may give him also stued Pears or Quinces to eat. Likewise rere sodden eggs wherein is a little Mastick powder strewed, and red Coral powder. Also the Reines and bladder are to be annointed round about with oyl of Mastick, and oyl of Roses.

Of the Flux of the Sperm or seed in the sleep. §. 3.

ABove the foresaid mentioned flux of the seed, this yet is to be annexed unto it, when as the seed also passeth away in the sleep a nights, and very seldom by day. The cause of this is daily ryotting and surfetting, and specially meats which are dresst with spice, and be easie of digestion. Secondly, the thoughts upon a fair woman whom one loveth. Thirdly, to sleep sound, and to lye upon the back, abundance of blood, abstinence from women, hail youth, whence all other signs are to had and taken, these are also to be remedied like the former. If it be caused of fulnesse, it is to be cured by abstinence: if through lust after women, then will it be eased with a godly Matrimony, as also by the use of cold and dry things, as is already said, of the running of the Reins, of that which proceedeth not of abundance, but maketh man unfit to get children, as shall be hereafter spoken of.

Of what and whereby natural Sperm or seed will be most augmented. §. 4.

THe cause of the diminishing or increasing of natural seed may as well proceed of intollerable heat, as cold: also of inward and outward causes. The cold is repercussive, and keepeth back. the heat consumeth. Likewise it may grow by fals, and such like other things more, whereby the brains are weakned.

Item, of some kind of lesion of the stones and other parts, also of inward, as a bad concoction of the seed, cutting of the stone, or the Piles, whereby the generation of the seed is hindred, of sore precedent diseases, of sorrow, heavinesse, temptation, smalnesse of the humane member, and (amongst divers other causes) of age also.

Now for to help this disease (even as is before said) not to increase lechery or fleshly lust in favour and preferment of Matrimony. For this therefore is good, warm and dry weather, and also all such dwellings, yellow Rape seed baked in bread, as much that there be put one ℈. in half a pennyworth of white bread is very requisite: young fat flesh, not salted too much, a sauce with Saffron, long Pepper, and tayles of *Storcus* prepared with good Wine: all sowr, sharp, doughy and slimy meats, must be forborn, long sleep, and especially after meat doth annoy: for the long sleep immediatly after meat doth no lesse hinder venery, then surfeiting with meat and drink. He is also to eschew all vexation, sorrow, and care.

But in general, these things are good for the increase of humane seed, and to recover the losse thereof again, to wit, eggs, Milks, Rice dresst in milk, Sparrows brains, yea the whole birds. And the stones of these Beasts following, *viz.* as of Buls, Cocks, Bucks, Rams, Bores, and all their pissells.

Of Potages are very good that of Beans, Cicher, Lupins: the first bitter broth of them cast away, and the rest Sugred, Pease, Turky or French Beans, and Wheat sodden in fresh broth, and dresst with Spice. Annise, Fennel seeds, white and red Mustard seed, Coleworts seed, and yellow Rape seed, the seeds of white *Sesamum*, Fenegreek seed, sodden with hony in fat flesh broth, Linseed tempered with Sugar and other meat, and also Nettle seed.

Of Roots, these following are highly commended, as stewed Onions, Garlick, Leeks, yellow Rapes, fresh Ragwort roots, and confected Sugar, or the powder thereof, drunken with the water wherein Mustard seed is sodden, confected roots of *Eringus*, confected Ginger, *Costus* roots, Sperage, Thistle roots, Radish, Zeduary, Squils rosted, confected *Asarabacca*, *Pieretrum*, and Cypers nuts. Of Herbs, are the garden Cresses, and branches of Sperage. Of fruits hasel nuts, *Pistacia*, Almonds, and above all, Marchpane made thereof.

All Spices are very commodious for this use, as Cinamom, Cardamom, Galangal, long Pepper, Cloves, Ginger, and Saffron. For this is also very highly praised *Assa fœtida*, the weight of one drachme and a half drunken in good Wine: in like manner also Dragagant, the pissel of a Bull, or of an Hart, the weight of one scruple taken also in wine; likewise the tayles of *Stincus* the weight of a drachme, taken before meat with Wine. Of things compounded you have these confections, *Diamoschu*, *Piris*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *Diambra*, *Dianthos*, *Diagalanga*, *Trionpipereon*, and *Diamargariton Calidum*: also Mithridate in like manner.

And above all other things is the confection *Diasatyrion* commended, for it strengtheneth the stomach. This following is much used at *Augusta*: Take Ginger one drach. and a half, Almonds, Pingles, and *Pistacia*, of each one ounce, the kernels of an Indy Nut, and *Siserum*, of each half an ounce, the pissel of a Hart five drachmes, Cynofory, *Palma Christi* one drachme and a half, Galangal, Cloves, Cinamom, white mustard seed, long Pepper, wilde yellow Rape seed, white Behen, of each one drachme, Onion seed, Radish seed, Rape seed, and Asshen keyes, of each two scruples, the sides and tayls of *Stincus* three drach. Borrage one quarter of an ounce, Sugar two pound, seeth it in Wine as you would make Tabulats, or a confection of it.

This also following may be prepared: Take yellow and other Rapes, Onions, Sperage roots, wilde Mustard seed, Radish seed, Pingles, Ash keyes, roots of *Eringus*, of *Satyrion* sweet *Costus* roots, Ginger, Long Pepper, and Cresses seeds, of each a like much. Also take clarified Hony, ℥. 3. one ounce of the powder, then make thereof a confection. Of the same may three drachmes be taken at once tempered with Sugar pennets and new Milk.

One may use outwardly Wax made to an oyntment, with oyl of Bevercod. Or take Bevercod, Marjoram gentle, oyl of *Costus*, of each a like much, put thereto a little Musk or *Zibeta*, and therewith annoint the yard, with other places adjoyning unto it. If you will have a slighter, then take the gall of a Bear.

An especial oyntment: Take of the great winged Ants three drach. oyl of white *Sesamum*, and oyl of Lillies, of each one ounce, pownd the Ants and put them into the oyl, and so let them stand the space of six daies in the Sun: afterwards wring out the oyl and put thereto *Euphorbium* one scruple, Pepper and Rue, of each one drach, white Mustard seed half a drach. set this again into the Sun a while, and anoint all over the privities therewith.

Another. Take oyl of Lillies two ounces, oyl of Bevercod one ounce, *Euphorbium*, Pepper, white Mustard seed, of each one drach. *Muscus* half a scruple: temper it unto an oyntment. If so be that then the natural heat be thereby excitated and stirred up, and other kindnesse do come upon you, then do what in you lyeth.

The ſeventh Chapter.

Of Barrenneſſe in general.

WHen as then neither in the one nor in the other, as that neither in the Man nor in the Woman, there appeareth any infirmity in the parts of neration, and both parties are mighty enough for the work, notwithſtanding cannot come to any generation, then muſt there be a certain cauſe of Barrenneſſe, whereof there be many kinds. Firſt then concerning the Man, it may be well cauſed through outward and inward accidents: the outward are hard meats, whereto there commeth then alſo the unbelief of witchcraft. But if ſo be that the ſame proceed of inward cauſes, then doth the ſame proceed of the weakneſſe of the moſt principal parts of mans body, as of the Heart, the Brains, the Liver, the Stomach, and the Milt. Or he may be too fat, or too lean, with many more other infirmities, which may be in the privy members, that are not to be here diſcovered. The ſignes of the Barrenneſſe of the man are theſe, great heat, which may be known by feeling him. The woman in receiving feeleth the great heat of the ſeed, he hath a great deſire to the action, and is very hairy over all his body, and got hairs very early about the privities: but if ſo be that cold be the cauſe, then are theſe things found to be all contrary.

Concerning the Woman, the Barrenneſſe may be cauſed by drinking too much cold water, by continual uſe of ſowr meats, by anger, by fear, by frighting, and other motions more of the mind, which may cauſe al the ſame. Item, when a woman after copulation ſtirreth by and by, leapeth, runneth, or danceth too much. If it proceed of any inward cauſe, then muſt it be either of the conſtitution of the whole body, or of ſome other infirmity of the parts of generation. If of the conſtitution of the whole body, then ſhall ſome principal part of the body feel the ſame, to wit, by reaſon that the Terms are hindred, or flow too much. Alſo a woman be too old, or too young, or too fat, which maketh barren. If the malady be in the parts of generation, then dependeth it moſt on the mother or womb, which hath ſome ulceration, or is too wide, or too narrow, or too much obſtructed, and ſuch like.

The ſigns of Barrenneſſe in women are theſe, to wit, when it proceedeth of the coldneſſe of the mother, then hath ſhe her terms very little, and if they do run, yet are they not well coloured; they have alſo but little hair on their privities, they be by nature ſlow and ſlack, they care not much for men, and are commonly of a pale colour, for which doth alſo much help the long uſe of meats or drinks, which are cold of nature.

If the barrenneſſe be cauſed through heat, then hath ſhe likewiſe her flowers or Terms very little, mixt with yellowneſſe, the woman is haſty headed, crafty, thirſty deſirous of the man, hairy about her privy place, ſhe hath a quick pulſe, and black hair, with other tokens more, all which dry or moiſt diſeaſes muſt needs be in the mother, or in the neck of the ſame.

Thirdly, they are ſometimes of a contrary complexion: for that the ſeed cannot be rightly mixed, or ſometimes alſo too near like one another of complexion: For an example, when a cold man cometh to a cold woman, or that they be both dry of nature: and if in all things elſe they be alſo of like complexions one to another, then is it unpoſſible that the woman can conceive. There ſhall be more other ſigns deſcribed how to know by whom the let and infirmity cometh, to wit, do caſt both *Spermata* upon the water, and that which driveth on the the top is barren. Item, ſprinkle both their urines upon a Lettice leafe, and whoſoever doth dye away firſt, the ſame is unfruitful. Or take five corns of Wheat, ſeven Barly grains, and ſeven beans, put them all into an earthen pot, and piſſe thereon, let it ſo ſtand ſeven dayes long, and if they begin to ſprout, then is the perſon fruitful, or if they rot, then is he or ſhe barren, be it man or woman.

Or let him piſſe in a pot, and let the urine ſtand a while, if worms grow therein, then is that urine barren. Theſe three laſt proofs do the ancient Phyſitians themſelves ſay to be uncertain, therefore we will let them reſt.

Item, make underneath an odoriferous fume, as of Myrrhe, red Storax, and ſuch like, odoriferous warm things to paſſe into the neck of womb, through a tunnel, which being cloſe covered round about, if the woman finde that this ſmoak go through the body, and feeleth it in her noſe, then is ſhe fruitful.

Another. Take grosse beaten Garlick, and lay the woman with her back thereupon, if so be that she feel the smell in her nose, then is it a token of fruitfulnesse. There are more such like tokens which are said to be approved: but how that fruitfulnesse is to be furthered and holpen; there are divers remedies hereafter rehearsed out of the writings of the most famous Physitians, out of which may be chosen according to the complexion of women, whether they be hot, cold, moist, dry, fat, lean, oppilated, or contrary by nature.

For to help and prefer or hasten fruitfulnesse. § 1.

IF that fruitfulnesse be desired to be furthered and holpen, then must the cause that hindereth the same be abated and taken away, of which the learned do reckon very many, which may be contained in three especial points, as when a woman is too hot, and too dry, too cold, and too moist, or hath her terms or flowers too much or too little, of which three especial points we will now discourse.

To help Conception.

LEt the woman receive fume of Darnel and Frankincense burned upon Charcoales: let her sit over the same, or stand with the same, between her legs.

Also the powder of Rams stones, taken after her courses is good. Also powder of Ivory is good.

Of Barrennesse through heat. § 2.

ALl such Women must beware of hot ayr, dwellings, and such like: also of clothes which keep the parts and sinews about the womb too hot. Also they must eschue all hot meats, as Spice, salt flesh, strong Wine, very fat meats, warm hearbs, as Smallage, Fennel, Thyme, Southernwood, Rue, long watching, to lye much on the Reins or Kidnies, great labour, anger, heavinesse, and such like motions of the mind: but all that moderately cooleth that must be used: They must take oftentimes conserve of Roses, or cold Dragagant lossings, and the confections *Triasantali*, also to hold before the nose and smell to Camphire, Rosewater and Saunders, as hath been many times told for hot Barrennesses.

Above all these, must the *Basilica* or Liver vein be opened in the right arm, and to let out above five ounces of blood. On the next day is this purgation to be used: Take *Elect. de Epithimo, de succo Rosarum*, of each two drachmes and a half, the whay of of Milk four ounces, temper them well together, and take it in the morning, then sleep afterwards about one hour hours and a half, and fast four upon it: this being done, drink a good draught of whay, and you may break your fast one hour after.

Other do purge with *Tripera Saracenica*, and Rubarb, and also minister preparative potions mixed either with sirupes of Violets, Roses, or Endive.

Or take the water of Water Lillies four ounces, water of *Mandragora* one ounce, beaten Saffron half a scruple: drink them luke-warm, and do this eight dayes one after another.

Also you may use these pils following: Take Broom flowers, smallage, Parsley seed, Cumin, Mugwort, and Feverfew, of each half a scruple. Aloe half an ounce, Indy salt and Saffron, of each half a drachme, pownd them all together and mix them well; afterwards pour thereon five ounces of warm Feverfew water: close it to, and let it stand and dry in a warm place: do this three times one after another. This being all done, then make six pils of each drachme, and take alwaies one thereof before supper about the second day, all the while that this foresaid Potion is used, afterwards you must take one thereof about the third or fourth day until that she have conceived. After the foresaid Potions must this purgation following be used: Take the conserve *Benedicta lax.* one quarter of an ounce, *de Pfillio*, three drachmes, *Electuarium de succo Rosarum* one drachme and a half; temper them together with Feverfew water, and drink it warm in the morning early: three daies after this purgation must the Median vein be opened in the right foot, to wit, five or six houres after breakfast, and according to her strength must be letten out five or six ounces of blood, the next day, and also five daies, one after another filed Ivory is to be taken, one drachme and a half with Feverfew water. And the while that

that this Potion is by her uſed: then is ſhe in the morning one hour before that ſhe do ariſe, and alſo at night before ſhe go to bed, to ſit in this bath following, and remain there-in about half an hour.

Take wild yellow Rapes, *Daucus*, Baliom wood with the fruits, and the ſeeds or keyes of an aſh tree, of each two handfuls, red and white Behen, and Broom flowers, of each a handful and a half, Muſk three grains, Amber, Saffron, ana. ℈. 1. ſeeth all theſe in ſufficient water. But the Saffron, Muſk, Amber and Broom flowers muſt be put into it when all the reſt be ſufficiently decocted and wrung out.

A profitable Confection. Take *Piſtacia*, Pingles, *Eringus*, ana. ℥. ß. of the ſweet roots which the Italians do call *Dolcegine* as much alſo, of Saffron, ℈. 1. *Lignum Aloes*, Galingale, Mace, *Gariophilata*, red and white Behen, and Balm flowers, ana. ℈. 4. ſhaven Ivory and Caſſia rindes, ana. ℈. 2. ſirupe of confected Ginger, ℥. 12. white Sugar, ℥. 6. ſeethe theſe well together with the ſirupe in 12. ounces of Balm water until it be all decocted: when it is cold, then put the reſt amongſt it, and ſtir it well together: Laſtly mix Muſk, and Amber amongſt it, ana. ℈. ß. Hereof muſt a woman take thrice a day, to wit in morning, one hour before noon, and one hour after Supper, every time the quantity of a Nutmeg, and that eſpecially after purging and bathing. This confection is rather a ſtrengthening and warming medicine than cooling, and is ſpecially to be uſed when it is perceived that the flegme and ſlime be approaching.

For Barrenneſſe through drought. §. 3.

FOr this muſt be eſchewed all that which is hot, for that hot things conſume the natural moiſture too ſoon; notwithſtanding their meat and drink muſt be meetly warm, as Barley and Oaten paps, Pullets, and ſmall hard fiſhes. For this is to be uſed ſmall Cliſters: as the broth of Lambes heads, and common herbes which do moiſten: to wit, Violet leaves, and ſuch like: Peſſaries of Hollihock rootes fattened with freſh Butter, and ſo put into the neck of the Wombe. Goats milk and ſuch like, that do fatten and moiſten, are very commodious for this purpoſe. In like manner alſo Almonds and Pingles, which not onely through their fattening withſtand the drouth, but alſo do ſtrengthen all the ſinewes.

Of Barrenneſſe through fatneſſe. §. 4.

THe great fatneſſe is no ſmall cauſe of Barrenneſſe: therefore are all ſuch women to lead and obſerve ſuch a rule of life, whereby the ſuperfluous fatneſſe may be conſumed, whereof in the firſt Part you ſhall have an eſpecial Chapter. But for a general obſervation, they muſt not ſleep much, and chiefly by day. Alſo they muſt forbear all baths, except ſuch as be warm of themſelves. For this is alſo good a dry ſweet bath very commodious and profitable. To purge often is alſo for this. Item ſtrong Cliſters which warm and dry, and other things more which hereafter ſhall be deſcribed.

Of Barrenneſſe through cold and moiſture. §.

A Woman which is cold and moiſt, meetly ſtrong exerciſe is very good for her, except it be then, when ſhe hath accompanied with her husband: after which time ſhe ought to reſt two hours at the leaſt. Alſo ſhe is not to be overcharged with any meat, but rather to refrain alwaies with appetite.

Much ſleep, ſorrow, anger, &c. ſhe muſt beware of. To eat much fiſh is hurtful unto her, Milk, freſh Cheeſe, and all that is made of dough, Beets, Lettice, Spinage, Endive, Purſlain, Cherries, Haſel nuts, Garlick, Onions and ſuch like, are not meet for her: fat fleſh, much broth, and Vinegar muſt ſhe refrain, for they are hurtful for the Womb.

There is therein ſpecially to be conſidered, how to cleanſe the Womb from all ſuperfluous moiſture; for which are to be uſed ſome preparative potions of *Syrupus* of Squils, or the leaſt of *Oxymel Compoſitus*, and ſirupe of Wormwood, with a decoction of Anniſe, Fennel, Cummin, *Cuſcuta*, and Harts tongue. And then to take thereupon a Pill, called, *Ad Lunam*, once every 4. dayes, and then to faſt five hours after them.

Secondly,

Secondly, take Storax Calaminta, field Mints, *Aſphalatos*, *Ameos*, *Seſeli*, Rue, Balſam wood and the fruits, red and white Behen, of each half an ounce, make a bath thereof, and let her ſit in it even to the Navel.

In the mean time no delay muſt be in the anointing the places adjoyning about the wombe, with warming and drying oyl; as oyl of Spike, oyl of Elder, and ſuch like.

Alſo this confection is to be uſed; Take Cinamom, Cardamom, Saffron, Cloves, Mace, long Pepper, Cipres roots, Nutmegs, Comin, Lignum Aloes, and Caſſia wood, of each one ſcruple, Cucubes and Doronicum, of each four ſcruples, Muſk, Amber, and Balſam, one drachme, white Sugar 18. ounces, Malmſey, Bugloſſe water, and of Balme, as much as is needfull for to ſeethe the Sugar, then make a confection; whereof ſhe is every evening to take a ſpoonfull when ſhe goeth to bed, alſo half ſo much before ſupper.

Another; Take yellow Rape ſeed, Peaſe, and ſcraped Ivory, of each one quarter of an ounce, Nettle ſeed, Ameos, Seſeli, Indy Spica, Cardamom, Blatta Byzantia, Bay berries, Nutmegs, Cipres nuts, Hyſſop, Marjoram, Spikenard, and Cipres roots, of each one drach. white, black, and long Pepper, half an ounce together; Ginger and Cinamom, of each one ounce, this being all ſtamped and mixed together, make with Hony a confection thereof, and laſtly temper therewith two or three grains of Muſk.

All the foreſaid things are are ſpecial good to conſume the winds of the womb. Now for this purpoſe followeth here certain ſimples and compounded medicines; as Annis, Fennel, Caraway, Smallage ſeed, and Rue ſeed, each uſed alone. In like ſort Marjoram, Agnus Caſtus, flowers and ſeeds, Comin, prepared Spikenard ſeed, Bay berries, Rue, the tabulats of Diacumino, and Aniſo, that do altogether conſume moiſture.

For to fume or to foment are ſpecially commended theſe things following, Rue, Carvi, Ameos and Gallia muſcata.

Item, take Galliam Muſcatam, Bdellium, Bevercod, Laudanum, Hares greaſe, and Nutmegs, of each half an ounce, let theſe ſeethe all together in water, and waſh or foment therewith.

Or uſe a peſſarie of Laudanum.

Make pils of Laudanum, Wax, Agarick, and Sheeps ſuet tried, take of them 2. or 3. mornings Prob.

This following cleanſeth and alſo warmeth well the womb, and drieth the moiſture of the ſame; Take Coloquint beaten groſſe one quarter of an ounce, Cinamom 3. drach. temper them with good wine, or with oyl of Spike, dip Cotten therein, and put the ſame into the neck of the womb.

Item, take Swines bread, form thereof a peſſarie of the bigneſſe of a Date ſtone, and women muſt put this into their privy places, being faſtened to a threed; it is paſſing good. They may alſo lay this plaiſter following under their navel being cut round. Take the plaiſter called *Cereaneum* two ounces, *Laudanum* one ounce and a half, *Gallia* and *Aliptæ muſcatæ*, of each half an ounce; temper them with oyl of Spike, and ſpread it on a round leather, and uſe it as is aforeſaid.

For to dry and correct a ſlimy and moiſt Womb this following is to be uſed. Take Silver mountain, red and white Behen, Aſhe keyes, ſhaven Ivory, yellow and wild Rape ſeed, of each one drach. Cinamom, Mace, Cloves, Galangal, long Pepper, Roſemary flowers, Balſam wood, *Blatta Byzantia*, Marjoram gentle, and Penniroyal, of each four ſcruples, Balm, Bugloſſe, Citron pils, of each two ſcruples, Pearls one ſcruple, Muſk two grains, white Sugar four and twenty ounces, ſeethe the ſame with Malmſey, and make thereof a confection. This confection is very good and approved for all that is aforeſaid, and alſo for fruitfulneſſe.

For to comfort the retentive vertue of the Womb. §. 6.

IF ſo be that there be any infirmity in the retentive vertue of the womb, which doth commonly happen through over coldneſſe, for the which are ſtrengthening and warming things to be uſed, as Amber, Frankincenſe, with their rinds, Maſtick, Lignum Aloes, Cloves, Nutmegs, Sage, Galangal, Calamus and Cardamom. Alſo ſhe muſt be governed like as hath been ſaid in the diſcourſe of barrenneſſe.

Item, there is more good for this, that the neck of the matrix be often waſhed with water wherein Cipres roots are decocted; or with water wherein Iron droſſe is ſodden, which

is stronger. Alſo for this may ſerve Maſtick ſtrewed upon hot coals, and the fume thereof received from below.

A very good ſalve fit for this; Take the juice of Roſes, of Pomgranats and Gloves, of each one ounce, Frankincenſe, Hypociſtis, the juice of Sloes, Maſtick, prepared Coriander and Iron droſſe, of each one drach. Sealed earth and Starch, of each one ℥. bruiſe theſe very long in a Leaden mortar, & anoint the privities therewith often times. But if the infirmity proceed of heat, then are things to be uſed which be aſtringent, roborating and cooling, yet tempered with ſome warm things. The cold things are theſe, burnt and waſht Harts horn, Amber, juice of Sloes, Hypociſtis, burnt Muſcle ſhels; Bolus burnt Gals, Dragons blood, Sealed earth, flowers and ſhels of Pomgranats, Acorns with their cups, the rind of the Medlar tree and the fruits, Serviees and Myrtle ſeed, of all theſe foreſaid ſimples may ſalves, plaiſters, and other things be prepared, which are all fit for this infirmity.

Of Barrenneſſe through repletion of the body, and obſtruction of the Termes or Flowers. §. 7.

THeſe women muſt forbear all ſlimy meats, as milk and all that is dreſt therewith, alſo from all doughie meats, portage and old fiſh, unleavened bread, new Cheeſe (but old Cheeſe is meetly tolerable) from all cold and moiſt fruits. Touching all other meats, they may live according to their old cuſtome; their drink muſt be reaſonable or mean ſtrong white wine.

Concerning the medicines, you muſt firſt begin with the letting of bloud, opening the *Baſilica* in the right arm, and to let out 4. or 5. ounces of blood

The next day following you may cauſe to be mixt together *Pillula de Opopanaco*, and of *Hiera Compoſita*, of each half a drach. and to make ſeven pils thereof, and to take them in the morning and then to ſleep one hour and a half upon it, and five hours after it to drink a draught of ſugred water, and then one hour after that to eat. This being done this powder following is to be prepared, and to be uſed four grains thereof every meal tide in all their meats. Take Cinamom half an ounce, Saffron one drach. Spikenard two ſcrup. Licorice four ſcruples, whereof make a ſubtile powder.

Immediately after the pils, they are to uſe this potion ſix or eight dayes continually early in the morning; Take *Syrupum Aceteſum Compoſitum, De Eupatorio*, of each three quarters of an ounce, Mugwort, Feverfew, and the water of Elecampane roots, of each one ounce, temper them together. Or take the foreſaid waters alone without ſirupes five ounces at one time.

Other pils; Take Aloe two ounces, *Agaricus*, and *Opopanacum*, of each one drach. and a half, *Spica*, Mather, Cinamom, Saffron and Indy Salt, of each one drach. Coloquint four ſcruples, the juice of Feverfew four ounces, temper all together and ſet it in the Sun, and ſtir it often about until it be dry, do this thrice. Then take the waight of a drach. and form ſixe pils thereof, and uſe one every three dayes juſt before ſupper. Alſo likewiſe one in the day time, ſo long as they uſe theſe foreſaid potions; but not when they purge. The ſaid purgation muſt be made thus; Take *Electuarium Indum* half an ounce, *de ſucco Roſarum* one drach. temper this with three ounces of water of Elecampane roots.

After this ſecond purgation: ſhe is one moneth long to take the waters of Feverfew, Elecampane roots and Balm, of each one ounce mixed together, before noon and againſt night ſhe is to ſit in this bath following; Take Balm, Marjoram gentle, white Mints, Penniroyal, Feverfew, and Mugwort, of each a handful, ſmall and great *Cumedrios, Spica romana, Daucus*, Agrimony and Stechas, of each a handfull, ſeethe theſe all together in ſufficient water, until that about the third part be ſodden away and then put thereto Muſk three grains, Lignum Aloes, Galliæ Muſcatæ beaten ſmall, of each a drach. This being ſo prepared, then ſhall ſhe ſet her ſelf therein, and keep her ſelf from her huſband three dayes.

In the mean while, ſhe is to put into the neck of the womb this peſſarie following: Take Saffron half a ſcruple, Muſk, Amber, Lignum Aloes, and Aſhe keyes, of each three grains, Hares renning, as much as is needfull; form it like to Date ſtones, and ſhe is to wear it all the day in her body.

Another; Take Hares renning one drach. and a half, ſhaven Ivory, red and white Behen, and Aſh keyes, of each half a drachme, Seſely, Penniroyal, Nep, Savine, Galliæ Muſcatæ, of each half a ſcruple, being all beaten ſmall and tempered with oyl of Spike,

until

untill it be ſoft; then temper therewith Musk and Laudanum, of each two grains, dip ſome wooll therein, and uſe it as before.

For the poor is onely the oyl of Lillies commended with a peſſarie of Cotten dipped therein, and ſo put up and holden therein the ſpace of three hours.

When ſuch women have purged and bathed, then muſt they before that they come at their husbands, be let blood in the *Saphena* or Median, two hours after ſupper, letting out three or four ounces of blood, if ſo be that ſhe be any thing ſtrong.

It were alſo very good that when ſuch women ariſe a mornings, they do gird about them a long garment, and ſet ſome fire under them, and to ſtrew therein this powder following, that ſhe may receive the vapour thereof, and uſe a little at once.

A very good Confection; Take *Doronicum*, Aſh keyes, Mugwort, Feverfew, flowers of Saint Johns wort, of each one drach. Balm, Baſil, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſhaven Ivory half an ounce, Amber one ſcruple, Musk five grains, ſmall filed Gold half a drach the powder called *Nere* one drachme, *Syrup de Calaminta* three ounces, Sirupe of Citron pils five ounces, Sugar ſix ounces, all that is to be pownded pownd ſmall, ſeethe the ſirupe and Sugar meetly thick; and when it beginneth to be cold, then temper it with all the powder (except the Spec. Nere, Musk, and Amber) the which muſt be put in at the laſt. Keep this confection in a Gally pot whereof the woman is to take immediately after her ſecond letting blood, every morning the quantity of a Nutmeg, and faſt four hours after. In like manner alſo after meat the bigneſſe of a Bean, and drink thereupon a draught of good wine; the which hath holpen many women.

The powder before promiſed for ſuffumigation. The Laudanum half an ounce, Galliæ Muſcatæ two drachmes, Musk, Amber, of each three grains, Lignum Aloes, *Opopanacum*, of each one drachme, make them into powder, and uſe a little of it one time.

For to further the fruitfulneſſe in man and woman. §. 8.

TAke Rapes, Siſarum, ſhaven Ivory, Seſely, red and white Behen, Aſh keyes, of each one drach. Cinamom, Doronicum, Mace, Cloves, Galangal, long Pepper, Roſemary flowers, Balſam wood, *Blatta Byzantia*, Marjoram gentle, Penniroyal, of each two ſcrup. Balm, Bugloſſe, Citron peeles, of each one ſcrup. Indy Spike, Amber, Pearls, of each half a ſcrup. Sugar decocted in Malmſey one pound, make Tabulates thereof or a confection.

A powder for to ſtrew upon the meat; Take Nutmegs, Cucubes and Ginger, of each half a drach. long Pepper, Maſtick, Cinamom, red and white Behen, of each one ſcrup. ſtamp them together, and uſe them as is ſaid.

Item, take the ſtone of a Bore hog being two years old, and the piſſel of a Stag ſhaven ſmall half an ounce, four pair of Fox ſtones, and fifty or threeſcore Sparrowes brains, wild yellow Rapes, Eringus roots, Satyrion confected all together in Sugar and ſhaven Ivory, of each three ounces and a half, Cinamom, the piſſel of a Bull, Pingles, Dates, and Indy Nut kernels, of each two ounces, long Pepper, Ginger, and Roſemary flowers, of each half an ounce, Seſely one drach. Nettle ſeed, Cloves, Saffron, Mace, Galangal Cipres roots, Nutmegs, Caſſy wood, Cucubes, Doronicum, field Mints, Penniroyal, Indy Spica, Musk and Amber, of each one drach. white Sugar refined in the water of wilde Mints, four pounds and a half, make thereof a confection; this confection may be both by men and women uſed in the morning faſting, and in the evening when they go to bed, whereof have been great wonders ſeen.

Another; Take clarified hony three ounces, Linſeed, Greines and ſhaven Ivory of each one ounce, Burrage three ounces, make thereof a confection, and temper therewith 24. ounces of Sugar, Musk and Amber, of each half a ſcruple, Cinamom two grains, Cloves and Mace, of each one grain, it is a very mild medicine.

It is alſo very good that men and women receive every morning a little Treacle, to wit, half a drach. with half a drach. of ſhaven Ivory, but for ſuch as be young, it is not ſo good by reaſon of the heat.

A good ſalve; Take Galliæ Muſcatæ, Nutmegs, Bevercod, Hares renning, Laudanum, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Spike, oyl of Maſtick and of Myrtles, of each 3 drachmes, Wax as much as is needful for to make a ſalve therewith; theſe are to be uſed as the other.

Wine of Roſemary is alſo much commended for this. In like manner the Moroſſe wine;

wine; all which are described in the last part, with other more such spiced Wines, which are very fit for such overcold and barren men and women.

For to make a woman fruitful, for which this serveth for a potion and bath following; Take Wormwood and Mugwort, of each a handfull, seethe them together in a quart of Goats Milk almost to the half, whereof every morning and evening she is to take a good draught.

For to bath; Take wild Penniroyal, Mugwort and Rue, of each one handful; make a bag thereof, and let them seethe in rain water; bath therein every eight hours, and alwayes about the third day a fresh bath.

For a conclusion, in women is (as is already said) the greatest cause of barrennesse, for that the Matrix or Womb is not clean, is overcooled, or hath some other infirmity, whereof hereafter in this part shall be discoursed and taught, also what is meet and fit for the same.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Reins and their Paine.

EVen as we have described now the outward parts before of the belly in this third part of our Book of Physick, so doth the cause require that we ought to write somewhat of the hinder part, amongst which the Reins are comprehended; and that these reins are a part of the back, it appeareth by all that here before in the second part, in the fourth Chapter, and also afterwards is written, therefore it is thought needlesse to make any further mention thereof.

These Reins do suffer by reason of the Kidneys great pain, when the same are vexed with heat, ulceration, gravel, stone, or other malady, the description whereof yet hereafter followeth in this 3. part, where it may also be noted and observed what may be good and commodious for the same. There be commonly commended for hot paine in the Reins oyl of Roses, Violets, water Lillies, and Poplar buds, in like sort also three salves following of Saunders, the cooling oyntment of *Galen*, and the Poplar salve are very good, and that in all causes.

But if the pain proceed of cold, then is hony water to be drunken, and confected roots of Eryngus, Fennel, Commin, Caraway, be it confected or otherwise, are to be eaten, for they asswage much the pain. Some use also the conserves of Piony.

This salve following is especial good; Take blew [illegible] yellow Violets, of each one ounce, and a half, oyl of sweet Almonds, of Sesamum, [illegible] one drach and a half, fresh butter one ounce, Saffron one scruple, white Wax one ounce and a half, Ducks grease, oyl of Camomil, oyl of Dill, of each one quarter of an ounce, and a small yolk of an Egg, the oyl, grease, and butter melt together, and at the last put the Saffron & yolk unto it, and stir it well about, it swageth much the pain, which is caused through the gravel, stone, and any thing else, therefore it is called by the Grecians *Anodynum*, even as the Apothecaries do call it unto this day *Unguentum e Anodynum*.

The ninth Chapter.

Of the Buttocks.

THere are two Buttocks given to men for their use, by nature compiled of a compact, fast, muscly, and hard flesh; and not narrow piked, bearing up like to Beasts, but pretty and round, as well for a comelinesse of the same place, as for to sit on, and ease the whole body, covering and defending the fundament, that the same can not be violated nor strained through sitting. These foresaid buttocks do seldom suffer any other infirmitie, but such as be subject to Chirurgery, as wounds, ulcerations, fistulaes, Cankers, and such like.

Besides

Beſides this is no more to be ſpoken thereof; therefore we will paſſe over to the fundament or outward part of the Arſegut, with his infirmities, which are incident unto it outwardly and inwardly.

The tenth Chapter.

Of the Arſegut or Fundament in generall.

THere have been ſome dotrels in the world, who have complained of Nature, wherefore ſhe had not choſen as well a bone or ſome other member of the body, whereby ſhe might expel the excrements, as ſhe did this mild place of the body; which groſſe ſpeech is to be ſcorned as a great folly; for how could ſhe have ordained a cloſer, fitter and handſomer place than this? Concerning then this Arſegut, it is a conveyer of all excrements, long and wide, and whereas it cometh to our ſight with a round circle, it is there ſhapen of a muſcly and ſinewy ſubſtance, (like as are the lips of the mouth) therefore hath it alſo ſuch power that it openeth like a purſe, and ſhutteth faſt again, that it might not receive any wind or any thing elſe. Unto theſe privy places do there come ſundry accidents, amongſt which the moſt manifeſt is, when this gut doth fall out of the body, therefore we will firſt write thereof.

Of the going out or hanging down of the Arſegut, Procidentia Ani. §. 1.

THis may be cauſed by two manner of means, to wit, when the Muſcles and Lacerts, which do open and ſhut this gut with two ſinews (which preſently divide themſelves into two parts) do give and relent through ſome falling down of humors, or thruſt the ſame out through ſome impoſtume. Of the ſaid ſinews, that which openeth the Arſegut is outward, and that which ſhutteth the ſame, inward. If ſo be then (as it is ſaid) that any of theſe ſinews be too ſore feebled or ſlacked through any humours, then followeth immediately the *Procidentia*, or hanging out of the Arſgut. The ſigns that this is happed through ſome reſolution of the ſinewes, are, that it may eaſily without pain be brought again into the body; like as contrariwiſe if there be any impoſtume with it, then will it not be done without grief. Alſo there is alwaies a hardneſſe with it, and an apparant diſtemperature. Now for to remedy this, cauſe firſt that the Patient may have his going naturally to the ſtool, that [illegible]t ſuddenly forced for to open the gut. But if there be no ſwelling with it, and that you have no other thing neer hand which is fit for it, then let the Patient ſit in common warm water. Otherwiſe it may be made ſtronger, as thus; Take Acorn Cups, Gall nuts, flowers of Pomgranates, and Mirtle leaves, ſeethe them together in water until it be a little red, and ſit therein. The ſame do Cipres nuts alone, or the juice of Sloes, wherein Mirtle ſeed and the ſeeds of *Verbaſcum* are decocted. After this bath, then foment the dependant gut with warm oyl of Roſes, and afterwards ſtrew this powder thereon; take white lead, bloſſoms of Pomgranates, Antimony, and Allom, of each a like much, make thereof a ſubtile powder.

Item, take Butchers broom half an ounce, Gals, the yellow ſeeds of Roſes, Cypres nuts, Myrrhe and Frankincenſe, of each one drach. beat them to powder and uſe them as aforeſaid. Another. Burn Dates to powder, and ſtrew that powder thereon as is ſaid. Or take *Mumia*, *Lycium*, *Hypociſtis*, and beaten Gals, of each two ſcrup. burnt Oyſterſhels two drach. and a half, and uſe it as before. This following is alſo very good for this: Take *Hypociſtis*, Maſtick and Myrrhe, of each one drach beat it meetly ſmall; firſt anoint the gut with oyl of Maſtick and Roſes, ſtrew it then with this ſaid powder: this being done, thruſt it ſoftly into the body, lay a cloth thereon wetted in groſſe wine, and it is good to put a little *Sandaracs* unto it.

It is alſo very good to anoint the place oftentimes with ſteeled wine for the ſame: and in like manner Savine dried, beaten, and ſtrewed upon it.

Item, after the anointing with oyl, anoint the gut with the juice of Sloes; when as then through any ſuperfluitie of humours this gut doth fall down in children, then take

Myrrhe

Myrrhe one drachme and a half, oyl of Roſes one ounce, annoint it therewith, and then put it up again ſoftly into the body.

This *Prouidentia Ani*, or falling downe of the Arſegut, happeneth for the moſt part in the piles with an excreſcence of the neſht, he which the Grecians do call *Condyloma*, for which *Plantain* is very good laid often upon it, whereof we will write more at large hereafter.

Seeth red nettles, bruiſed in white wine, until half the wine be waſted, drink the wine, and apply the herbs ſo ſod in the wine unto the fundament as hot as may ſuffered.

Or heat Apoſtolicon and annoint the arſe with it warm, and it will goe in again inſtantly; do ſo 3. or 4. times as need requires.

Alſo ſtampe Roſemary leaves, and apply it as a plaiſter, and it heals the ſwelling of the fundament.

Alſo take the Juyce of the heads of leeks, and with wool apply it often warme.

Of the relaxation of the arſe gut. § 2.

THis diſeaſe doth manifeſt it ſelfe ſometimes through the firſt recited falling down of the arſegut, and otherwhiles without the ſame, and is ſuch an infirmity (as hath been told already) that the ſinewes which do ſhut it are become altogether without might, inſenſible and lame, inſomuch that he cannot perceive his ordure, and doth it without any ſenſe or feeling; alſo oftentimes ſo contracted and made ſo ſenſeleſſe, that it holdeth up and ſtayeth the ordure altogether, whereby cometh gripings in the belly, and other great inconveniences. The cauſes of this, are ſometimes fals, thruſts or blowes behind on the back, and eſpecially on the place whence the ſinewes have their of-ſpring, whereby the power of the opening and ſhutting of the arſegut is infeebled.

In like manner when any body hath the piles opened, whereby the piles are in that place ſpoyled. this infirmity may alſo be cauſed by ſitting too long on cold ſtones, and by ſuffering too much cold in the feet. But if this diſeaſe do come through cutting, or any other bruiſing of the ſinewes, then are all remedies in vain. If it come through cold, which taketh away all motion, then is the place to be kept alwayes warme; for which this bath following is very good, which is thus prepared; Take Cipres nuts and the leaves, Mints, Savine, *Coſtus* roots, Sage, Bay-berries, rinds of the Pine tree, and the leaves, of each one handful; ſeeth them altogether in a good quantity of water, ſo that the ſick perſon may ſit thereon; when he hath been bathed, then lay a peece of felt in this water, and lay it to the patients Arſegut; he muſt uſe this bath twice in foure and twenty houres, it warmeth and ſtrengtheneth the ſinewes of the Arſegut.

Alſo he muſt ſeethe therewith Rue, *Scenanthe*, Allum, Garden mints, field mints; and if it will not alter therewith, then uſe theſe gliſters following; Take ſix ounces of this foreſaid decoction, and oyl of Spike two ounces, and mix them together; and annoint the Arſegut outwardly, and all other places adjacent with the oyl of Lillies, Bevercod, and of *Euphorbium*, tempered all together, or uſed each apart. If there be any flegmatick moiſture with it, then put unto it half an ounce or three quarters of *Hiera Picra*; if that there be heat with it, let the Patient after the uſe of all neceſſary medicines take a bath of water, wherein hath been decocted the rinds of the Medlar-tree and the leaves, the rinds of Oke, Services, Pomegranate rinds and bloſſomes, Cheſtnuts ſhels, or thoſe that may be gotten of them, yet alwayes putting ſome warming things unto it.

For this is alſo eſpecial good, all natural baths, which are Sulphuriſh, Alluminſh, yea there is alſo good for this Sea water or ſalt water.

Of the Impoſtume of the Arſegut, § 3.

IF there happen then any ulcer or impoſtume of the Arſegut, whereby one can not get it into the body, and the ſame is cauſed through heat, there is nothing more fit then to open a vein, and afterwards to provoke vomit, whereby the matter may be derived; but for this is no purging good, and eſpecially becauſe the diſeaſe is in the fundament, but lay this following thereon; Take peeled Lentils three ounces, Roſes and the juice of Sloes, of each one ounce, the juyce of nightſhade three ounces beaten Hollihock roots, Figs cut, Linſeed and Fenegreeke beaten ſmall, as much as you thinke good; let this ſeethe all to pap, and at the laſt temper therewith three or foure yolks of Egs, and as much

much Butter as you thinke good, and lay it warme upon the place where the pain is. If ſo be then this be cauſed through cold, then put unto it a little of the roots of Lillies, Camomil, Melilot, and ſuch like. And if ſo be that this Arſegut by reaſon of the impoſtume, will hardly be put up again into the body, then muſt the Patient be ſet oftentimes in warme water, and afterwards annoint the Arſegut with oyle of Camomil and of Dill, which are molten with a little wax; this ſwageth the pain. In like ſort alſo deſcendeth the neck of the Matrix in women, and is in ſuch ſort to be cured, like as here afterwards amongſt other infirmities of the wombe ſhall be written more at large.

Of the Piles called Hæmorrhoides. §. 1.

AFter the foreſaid falling downe of the Arſegut, there commeth one diſeaſe more in the fundament, the which we call the Piles, and the Grecians *Hæmorrhoides*, which is a flux of blood; and *Sycoſes*, that are figs, which the Latiniſts do call *Ficus* Figs, and *Maviſcas*. All theſe are accidents and Tumors, which doe come behind in the fundament, or in the lowermoſt part of the Arſegut. And they do appear by their ſwelling, and otherwiſe (whereof they get their name) ſometimes with blood, and otherwhiles without blood, but ſeldome without pain, but vexeth folkes with great trouble. They take their beginning from ſome ſmall veines, which ſpread themſelves into the uttermoſt parts of the ſtomach, and are thereof called the Pile or emroyd veins. When as theſe be then overcharged with blood, or any other humors, then doe they open themſelves, and expel the melancholick blood from them, ſometimes in great quantity, whereby nature is much unburthened, and getteth health; therefore it is often commanded for to open the ſame, even as hereafter ſhall be admoniſhed; alſo they bleed otherwhiles ſo exceſſively, that great travail is taken before they can be ſtopped, whereof we ſhall ſpeak hereafter. There be alſo ſome of theſe veines which lie ſomewhat deepe upwards, and therefore are called the blind piles.

Theſe Piles are properly the Hemorrhoides, like as by their name may appeare. Others be without blood, of the which, they that make ſhew outwardly on the Arſegut are firſt of all the fig-piles, by reaſon, that in their whole ſubſtance and quantity they be like unto figs, and alſo are therefore called *Verrucales*, the which are much worſe then the other, whoſe cauſe is onely melancholick blood. Others do ſhew themſelves like to a black ripe grape, ſo that they be called *Uvales*, which have their matter from blood mingled with melancholy. The third are like to Mulberies, red and blackiſh coloured, wherein the blood doth apparently exceed.

The fourth kind is like to the bladder of a fiſh, which is extended very much without blood filled or ſtuft with melancholick humors; but theſe ſorts are ſeldome ſeen. The fifth ſort are the ſecret Piles, which do come within the Arſegut, and be very hurtful, eſpecially thoſe which extend towards the privities, for that through their hot tumours they hinder the paſſage of the urine, whereby the ſtrangury is provoked, and eſpecially when they doe not bleed. Now for to know theſe hidden Piles and diſeaſes, there is nothing more certain then to ſet a great boxe or cup on the Arſegut without pricking, the which will draw the Arſegut outward, ſo that it may be apparently ſeene how that the caſe doth conſiſt within. The ſixt kind of piles are the Figs, a certain excreſcence upon the Arſegut outwardly, who with a little vein like the ſtalke of a fig is faſtened to the gut, formed as if it were a ſmall dry fig, from thence a little bigger, and is preſſed down on the top like a Fig, which is called of the Greeks *Condyloma*, which is an excreſcence of fleſh, for it happeneth ſometimes that round about the roundneſſe of the Arſegut, or faſt beſides it, there do come great ſcabs which ſometimes (yet uncertain whether it be firſt or laſt, according as the Patient ruleth himſelf) do happen to bleed, ſometimes much and ſometimes little. Theſe figs and ſwellings are tempered alſo with bloud and melancholy, a little red outwardly and perilous enough, even as hereafter ſhall be further expreſſed.

In all theſe Species of the Piles, the learned have a general rule, that they eſteem them for an accident that can hardly be cured. They recite nine cauſes accidents, albeit we will recite but four. Firſt, for that it is an unclean place, and no man medleth willingly therewith. Secondly, for that this place is very hard to be ſeen. Thirdly, for that it is a place whither all uncleanneſſe of the body doth deſcend: Laſtly, for that it is a place cold by nature, and therefore void of ſtrength, notwithſtanding there be many good remedies

medies provided and ordained for them, as hereafter followeth.

But before we diſcourſe of the foreſaid remedies for the Pyles, Blathers, Figs, Warts, Tumors, and their accidents, we will firſt of all ſhew their cauſes, and teach how the ſame may cured, for which the principalleſt is to obſerve a good dyet in meat and drink, and ſuch like.

For the Hemorrhoides when the veins are ſwollen inwardly with great pain.

℞. of white Wine ℔. 1. Camphire ʒ. 1. ß. powdered, put them into a baſon. Roſemary 2. or 3. ſprigs; then quench in it the ſtones called Lapides calaminares being often made red hot. *Prob. ſepe*, Or uſe a ſuppoſitory of Camphire.

Of the Dyet.

IT is ſufficiently declared before, that the greateſt cauſe of theſe accidents is the heavy melancholick bloud, which is mixt with the pure blood, and periſheth the ſame, which all other members expel from them, like as it were a poyſon, and ſo falleth downwards from the other bloud into the veins, openeth them through his heat, and maketh them bleed.

This is altogether cauſed of a bad digeſtion of the ſtomach, and other members, and of all ſuch groſſe meats, whereof there can be no other ingendred but melancholick blood, the which muſt be altogether left off, as beans, Lentils, and other Pottages. Item, Coleworts, Cheeſe, old Beefe, Harts, Hares, Goats, ſalted and ſmoked fleſh, ſodden Wheat, Rice, unleavened bread, which bring much moyſture with them.

Alſo all water Fowles, Eeles and other Fiſh without ſcales, feet, heads, and all entrails of beaſts, groſſe Wine, Muſt, and Beer. Item, all things which burn the bloud, as much Muſtard, Pepper, Garlick, Onions, Leeks. All things which be very cold do alſo increaſe melancholy, as Melons, Cucumbers, and ſuch like,

Amongſt the medicines which are contrary for this diſeaſe, are Coloquint, Centorie, Scammony, and chiefly Aloe, very hurtful for the Arſegut, for it openeth the Piles.

Even as we have recited what is hurtful for this diſeaſe, ſo we alſo teach what manner of dyet might be commodious and profitable for the ſame. The dwelling of this Patient muſt be a warme and dry place, which is cloſe and toward the South. But if the houſe be not of it ſelf fit thereto, then is it to be prepared for the ſame with fire and fumes; yet yet is alwayes to be eſchewed things which be too hot, and muſt take the milde mean which are hot and dry, as Franknicenſe, *Lignum Aloes*, red ſtyrax, *Laudanum*, and ſuch like.

And whereas all kinds of Pyles agree in this, they be cauſed of blood and melancholy (like as is already alledged) and of both together mixed, ſo may the patient uſe one and and the ſelf ſame dyet.

Next after the dwelling place, the patient muſt alſo according to the time of the yeare, provide himſelf of clothes, which are meetly dry and warme, keep the head well covered, and defend the outward members from all cold.

His meate muſt be white bread, not above three dayes old, Egs, Butter, Lambs fleſh, Veal, Kids, Mutton, Pullets, Capons, Partridges, Phefants, and Pigeons, yet of all theſe a little; in like manner all field fowles.

His drinke ſhall be good white wine, all groſſe and ſowre Wines ſhall he forbear, albeit that it were much better a good Sugred water than wine; ſodden Milke, freſh and meetly well ſalted Cheeſe, be meetly good for him; but good regard muſt be had that he feed thereof moderately, ſo that the ſtomach be not overcharged.

But if any exceſſe be perceived, then is it not a miſſe that the Patient be moved to vomit, and to take that with one ounce and a half of Vinegar, and three ounces of warme water, and afterwards to put the finger into the throate, and if that will not be, then may he take an eaſie Gliſter.

Theſe patients are alwayes for the moſt part bounden in the body, the which bringeth with it great pain and grief, therefore diligence is to be had that he keep an open body, for this ſhall he ſup every morning and evening before meat ſome broth, wherein is ſodden, Mercury, Mallowes, Burrage, Beets, and Fumitory, and with a little of the oyl of ſweet Almonds or Butter. Alſo to eate ſometimes new Prunes and Raiſins, and drinke upon it ſome broth of Coleworts; after that, he may eate ſome other meats. Alſo it were not amiſſe, to eate againſt this binding of the body, one drachme of peeled

wild Saffron ſeed, or one quarter of an ounce of Caſſia, now the one and then the other.

Reaſonable motion, yet more with the hands, then with the feet or the whole body, is very good, but riding and ſitting hard is very bad. In fine, long reſt is better then ſhort, for muſt it be alwayes with ſleep. He muſt lye upon his right ſide, but little on the left ſide, or on his backe. Laſtly he muſt utterly eſchew all ſorrow, vexations, anger, and other paſſions of the mind.

To ſtanch the bleeding of the Piles. §. 5.

FOr to come to the remedy of this accident, therefore we will firſt begin if theſe Pyles hapened to bleed overmuch, how and wherewith the ſame is ſtanched.

Firſt therefore we will rehearſe this (whereof hath alſo been ſpoken before) that if this bleeding chance without Pain, and not but by ſtawes, then is it no counſel to ſtay it unleſſe the Patient were greatly weakened thereby.

For when theſe veines begin to bleed, then do they exonerate the whole body of melancholick diſeaſes, as of the Leproſie, Pocks, dry Itch, Dropſy, quartain Agues, hardneſſe of the milt, or Spleen, and more other infirmities, which grow of burnt blood, and of ſuch like humors, as hereafter ſhall appear in a proper §. wherein ſhall be taught how the ſame ſhall be opened; alſo if they that be accuſtomed to Bleed and now remain ſtopt, do cauſe the Dropſy, the Conſumption, and many other ſickneſſes.

But if the bleeding of them do get the maiſtry, and thereby do weaken the patient, then let the ſame be ſtanched; and take good heed, whether the ſame bleeding be on the right ſide, for it is ſometimes a meſſenger of ſome long lingring ſickneſſe, as headach, giddineſſe, hinderance of the breath, and to conclude, feebleneſſe of the whole body, ſo that he cannot well goe or ſtand; at the laſt followeth great thirſt and binding of the body.

When as then theſe kinds of inconveniences do all appear, or part of them, then muſt ſuch bleeding be ſtanched out of hand, and forbear from all manner of Spices, alſo from Onions, Garlick, Muſtard, ſtrong white wine, Venery, great labor, and all ſuch like things, which inflame the blood; and to the contrary, uſe all things that increaſe blood: for this, is alſo good the ſirup of Quinces, Roſes, Mirtles, *Trochiſci de Terra ſigillata*, and *de Canabe*. Theſe ſtanchers of blood muſt be laid outwardly upon the Fundament; Take the white of an egge, and temper among it beaten Momy, Sealed earth, fine Bolus, and Dragons blood.

All theſe things following by their proper vertue, ſtanch this bleeding, as Amber, prepared Bloodſtone, burnt or prepared Coral, Dragons blood, fine Bolus. Burnt Vitriol, Aloe, Plantain, Maſticke, Bloſſoms of Pomegranates, the barkes of Frankincenſe, Copwebs, Hares haires cut ſmall, burnt Aſſe dung, and powdred Baſil.

The compounded things are theſe, *Trochiſci de Coralii*, *de Spodio*. Alſo, one may take one drachme of Amber, and ſealed earth with water wherein is decocted Butchers Broom ſeed.

The Pils of *Bdellio* and *de Sandaraca*, muſt one take the firſt eight dayes the weight of half a drachme, and faſt five hours after it.

Powders and other things to ſtanch Blood.

TAke the bones of Buls feet, red and white Coral, the ſtones of Dates, Oyſter ſhels, burnt all together, of each one quarter of an ounce, Vitriol half a drachme, burnt Ivory, Amber, and bloodſtone, of each three drachmes, Dragons blood, the juice of Sloes, the powder of four Pomgranate bloſſomes, Dragagant and Gum, both of them toſted, of each two drachmes and a half, beat them together very ſmall, and temper one amongſt another, then ſtrew it upon the place of the bleeding, and lay Cotton thereon which is made wet in Roſe Vinegar, afterwards bind it hard upon it, this ſtancheth blood marvellouſly, although it had continued a year and a day; and not onely for this, but alſo for all exceſſive bleeding.

There may alſo a plaiſter be made of the foreſaid powder, and Mill duſt with the juyce of Plantain, Comfrey or Taſſels.

Item, take Aloe, Frankincenſe, Dragons blood, Pomegranate bloſſomes, and ſo *meruithe*, of each a like much, make powder thereof, and uſe it as before.

Another

Another take Cypers nuts, and worme eaten Gals, of each half a drachme, Dragons blood, Mummy, Dragagant, and Gum, both of them toſted, of each one drachme, Gps half an ounce, temper them all together, and ſtrew therewith the Arſegut, it ſtancheth bleeding a whole day.

One more. Take the yellow ſeeds of the Roſe, ſtampe them to powder, ſtrew it thereon, for they dry and ſtanch blood.

Item, take *Hermodactyli* two ſcruples, prepared Antimony one drachme, Frankincenſe one ſcruple. Myrrhe ℈. ß. make a powder thereof, and ſtrew it upon the Pyles where they bleed: and further, ſpread round about the ſame Piles this ſalve following:

Take of the unguent *Pomphol ygos* ℥. ß. unguent of Roſes ℥. 2. oyl of Quinces, Linſeed oyl, and oyl of Nuts, of each ℥. ß. *Hermodactyli* ℈. 2. Pomgranate bloſſomes and Dragagant, of each one ſcrup. Mummy, Dragons blood, and prepared Tutty, of each ℥. 1. Bean meal and Mill duſt, of each ℥. 1. Plantain, *Verbaſcum*, Willow leaves, Mirtle leaves, and Horſe tayles, of each ℥. 1. ß. Camphire ten grains, oyl of Roſes as much as is needful therewith to make a ſalve, ſpread thereof upon a woollen cloth, and lay it upon the Fundament: the blood of the Piles hath therewith been ſtanched at ſundry times, when all other remedies had been uſed, and would not help, untill this aforeſaid was applyed. Item, take Gips, beat it ſmall, and make it to dough with the beaten white of an Egg, this ſtancheth blood marvellous well, and that in a quarter of an hour, in what ſort of bleeding ſoever it be.

Item, take Aloe, Frankincenſe, Dragons blood, fine Bolus, and ſmall cut hairs of a Hare, of each one quarter of an ounce, beat them all ſmall, afterwards take a Cobweb out of a Mill, rub it amongſt it, and make thereof a ſalve with the white of an Egg, and anoint the place therewith; this alſo ſtancheth much. It is alſo good for rent or cut veins, where the bloud cannot be ſtanched.

Or take the water of Hounds tongue, diſtilled from the herb and root; when the Piles grow inward, then are you to take every morning thereof 4. ounces, but if they be outward, then cleanſe the ſame, and lay on this water with a cloth, it healeth much.

Another: Take the kernels of Apricocks ℥. 1. ß. oyl of Maſtick, and unripe Sallad oyl, of each three ounces, the juice of Sloes, Dragagant, Gumme, and Fiſh lime, or Iſinglas, which have been long ſteeped and are diſſolved in the foreſaid oyl, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, temper them together, and dip Cotton therein, and hold it continually on the Fundament. You may alſo prepare this following; Take Maſtick, Spica, Cypres roots, Squinant, Calamus, Saffron, and Myrrhe, of each alike much, make a plaiſter thereof with red Wine, and lay it over the Liver. Item, take the juice of Plantain two ounces, Roſewater half an ounce, beaten ſeeds of Butchers broom as much as is needful for to make a mild plaiſter, lay this upon the Arſegut.

To ſtanch the bleeding of the piles powder the flixe of Hare, and apply it to the Hemorrhoides. And burn Dill ſeeds, powder them, and with honey apply it. Roſemary leaves ſtampt ſmall and applyed as a plaiſter to the Hemorrhoides heals them.

Here now follow ſome Salves.

TAke oyl of Myrtle and of Maſtick, of each ℥. 1. *Troſciſci de Carabe*, Paper glew, burnt Date ſtones, burnt Ivorie, *Sandaraca*, and Bloodſtone, of each ℥. 1. Wax as much as is needful for to make therewith a ſoft ſalve, anoint therewith the Fundament.

Or take beaten Plantain, *Verbaſcum*, Willow leaves, Mirtle leaves, and Horſe tayles, of each alike much; to an ounce and a half of this powder, adde ten grains of Camphire, and oyl of Roſes as much as is needful for to make a ſalve thereof. This ſtancheth blood, and dryeth gently.

A precious ſalve. Take Comin, Caraway, Rue ſeed, *Ameos*, *Seſeli*, and *Gallia Muſchata*, of each one drach. and a half, Roſin three drach. oyl of Dill two ounces, Sallad oyl one ounce, *Lignum Aloes*, and Cloves, of each half a drach. melt the Roſin in the oyl, and temper it with the other things being beaten ſmall, ſtir it then well about untill it be a thick ſalve. This ſalve verily hath great vertues, it ſtancheth the exceſſive Termes in women, if they anoint the reins and hips therewith; being applyed on the Navel and the ſtomack it expelleth wind, and taketh away vomiting and parbraking. Will you then have it ſtronger to uſe for the Pyles? then temper amongſt it two ſcruples of Saffron, and one drach. of *Opium*.

Other good Salves more.

TAke dryed Orange peels, beat them very ſmall, put thereto a roſted Apple, and bruiſe it in a diſh; then temper the foreſaid powder amongſt it untill it be as thick as a ſalve: then waſh firſt the Piles with Plantain water, and afterwards anoint it with the foreſaid ſalve.

Take two ounces of new Wax, three ounces of Hony, four ounces of Butter; melt them all together, and ſtrain it warm through a cloth; then ſet it upon the fire again, and ſtir therein as much Wheat flour untill it be as thick as pap, and then lay it thereon. Item, take white Dogs dung, that hath eaten nothing but bones, burn it to aſhes, and make a ſalve thereof with clean Barrowes greaſe, and anoint therewith the Piles, and then ſtrew thereon the powder of Hermodactiles. Or take the ſtones of Indian Mirobalans, burn them to powder; thereof take half an ounce, prepared Iron droſſe one quarter of an ounce, temper them well together with the juice of Plantain in a mortar, and therewith anoint the Arſegut within and without.

If ſo be that theſe forementioned will not help, then take two ounces of the juice of Roſes, the brayed whites of 2. Eggs, Gips three drachmes; bruiſe them in a mortar one amongſt another, and uſe it as aforeſaid. The like is alſo counſelled, when as this bleeding cometh too ſore, that the Baſilica is to be opened, whereby to derive and withdraw the blood, and afterwards that he be bathed with a water wherein Linſeed and the ſeeds of Hollihocks be decocted; or at the leaſtwiſe that he be well fomented therewith. Laſtly, like as it is ſaid already there muſt be laid thereon beaten *Parietary*, or Pellitory of the wall.

For to foment withall, take Pomgranat bloſſoms, Roſes, Cipres nuts, ſeeds of Butchers broom, Pomgranat pils, Myrtle ſeed, the juice of Sloes, Frankincenſe, of each half an ounce, beat them a little, and ſeethe them in thick red wine, and water, of each a like much, and foment the place with ſpunges; or ſet the patient in water wherein Gals, Pomgranat bloſſoms, Butchers broom, Myrtle ſeed and ſuch like are decocted.

Item, ſeethe Turnep leaves in water, and therewith waſh oftentimes the Fundament meetly warm.

Another; Boyl Roſe campion in thick red Wine, and foment the Piles often therewith.

If ſo be that through all theſe remedies the blood be not ſtanched, then dip a little wool in boyling oyl, and lay it hot upon it, then will it ceaſe. Afterwards place him in water wherein Gals, Pomgranat pils and the bloſſoms, the Bark of the Medlar tree, Services, Roſes, and Allom, of each one ounce beaten groſſe were decocted; but red Wine were more forcible for this.

How that the inward Piles are to be ſtanched.

OF this hath mention been made at the firſt; and for this purpoſe do ſerve theſe foreſaid remedies, if they be to be had. For the ſtanching of theſe Piles, if they do bleed exceſſively, then is this ſalve eſpecially to be ordained for them; Take Pomgranat bloſſoms and pils, burnt Muſſel ſhels, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Dragons blood, ſealed earth, and Cobwebs, of each a like much; make a powder thereof with diſſolved Iſinglas, and common glew in ſteeled water; make then a taint of Hares hair, or at leaſtwiſe of wool, and lay it to ſteep therein, and put it into the Fundament, refreſhing it oftentimes.

What is to be uſed inwardly to ſtanch this bleeding.

FOr this exceſſive bleeding of the Piles are theſe things following highly commended; Take Mirobalani Indi, Emblici, Bellirici a little parched, of each five drach. Pearls halfa drachme, temper them all together with the juice of Garlick, and uſe half a drach thereof at one time with ſteeled water, the party is alſo every morning to eat a couple of confected Mirobalans Chebuli, and to faſt four hours upon it, and that during the ſpace of ten dayes, or as long as the bleeding continueth. A ſtronger; Take the confection of *Triphera, ex parte Phenenis*, or *de Scoria ferri*, (of which you will) one quarter of an ounce

ounce or leſſe, tempered in two ounces of Purſlain water. Alſo the juice of Yarrow may be taken for this one ounce and an half; the ſame ſtancheth much. Item, take Worm-wood, Venus hair, and Sorrel, of each one handfull, Sorrel ſeed and the ſeeds of Plantain, Melons, Purſlain and Roſes, of each one drach. ſeethe them in fair well water, afterwards wring it out, and put thereto the ſhales of yellow Mirobalans one quarter of an ounce, red and white prepared Coral, Citron ſeed, of each half a drach. let it ſeethe to three or four ounces, then mix with this decoction *Syrupum Acetoſum Compoſitum* one ounce, *Syrupus de Plantagine* half an ounce, take this certain dayes one after another in the morning betimes. For this is alſo good one quarter of an ounce of *Galbanum*, diſſolved in water and drunken.

A very commodious confection for to be taken alwayes before meat; Take Butchers broom ſeed, parched ſeed of broad Plantain, the juyce of Sloes, and Coriander, of each one ſcruple, Amber, all beaten ſmall, and Sugar which is diſſolved in Purſlain water three ounces, take three drachmes thereof at one time. Above all theſe aſtringent medicines you ſhall find many more in the diſcourſe of the exceſſive flux of the Terms in women; alſo in the firſt part where many are ſpecified for the ſtanching of blood, the which are altogether good for this purpoſe.

How that the Piles are to be opened. §. 6.

WHat good this bleeding of the Piles doth cauſe when it cometh by nature and of it ſelf, and from what ſickneſſe it will preſerve a man, it is partly declared in the 5. §. Likewiſe what this bleeding doth procure if it be ſtanched contrary to the old cuſtome; alſo what inconveniences may come and enſue thereof. When as this bleeding diſcontinueth, and the Piles do vex the patient with great pain and extuberation, then are they to be opened for to let the blood have his accuſtomed courſe; for this preſerveth one (beſides all the recited perilous maladies) from all corroding ulcers, wildfire, cankers, madneſſe, melancholy, falling ſickneſſe, enflaming of the Lights, both the kinds of dropſies and conſumption. And if ſo be that this blood be ſtanched, then is it to be feared, that all the foreſaid diſeaſes may enſue thereby: therefore when any body deſireth to open them, then are theſe things following to be uſed.

Firſt put the ſick body in a bath whereby the Piles may be mollified. Or in the ſtead thereof make this fomentation: Take Marjoram, fild Mints, and Mallowes, ſeethe them in wine, and receive the vapour therof from beneath, ſitting on a cloſe ſtool meetly warm: the next day after open the *Saphæa*, or the Median. The *Saphæa* is upon the hindermoſt part of the foot, beſides the heel, whereby the Melancholick blood is drawn downward: afterwards anoint the Piles with the oyl of bitter Almonds, or oyl of Nuts; alſo a little Cotton is good for this, made wet in the juice of Onions, and laid thereon. This may you effect alſo with the Gals of all beaſts, although the Oxe gall be eſpecially commended above all the reſt. Secondly, put Horſleaches into them through a pipe, whereby they may fall right upon the Piles, for by nature they do draw out the melancholike blood, which is contrary to the boxing cups: Therefore if there be boxing cups ſet upon it, then muſt they be faſtened unpickt, be it on man or woman, and that between the privities and the Arſegut. Thirdly, rub the Arſegut with Fig leaves untill it begin to bleed, in like ſort may the powder of Nep, of Marjoram, of Fleawort, of Swines bread, and of Pepper, or any other biting powder, as *Cantharides* and *Eſula*: alſo *Flammula* may be laid thereon. But if you will have milder things, then take the juice of Centory, or water wherein a good quantity of Mallowes be decocted. Item, beaten Staveſacre tempered with Hony. Fourthly, this is the moſt certain way, viz. that two or three piles be opened with the Flem, and to the end they may not ſhut ſuddenly together again, like as their nature is, then uſe this ſalve following: Take oyl of Peach kernels, of Apricock kernels, (or the ſame kernels beaten) and the juice of Garlick, of each one quarter of an ℥: Wax as much as is needfull for to make a ſalve. But if ſo be that theſe inward Piles cannot be ſeen, then muſt the patient be required once to ſtrain hard as if he would go to the ſtool. Do not the Piles as yet appear thereby? then let a box or cup with a wide mouth be ſet upon the fundament; when theſe have pluckt out the Arſegut, then open a vein or twain that be fulleſt. Fifthly uſe this ſalve following; Take ſmall beaten Aloe one quarter of an ℥. Oxe galls ℥. 1. Vinegar two ounces, temper them all together, put therein ſome Cotton, or wet a cloth, and rub it wet therewith. Item, take Centory, *Betonica*, Staveſacre, Flammula, and white Neeſewort, of each alike much, temper it with

with Oxe gall, and the juice of Onions; let it then ſup, ſtamp it, and once again do as before. Reiterate this four times together, when you will uſe this, then waſh well the Piles with warm water, and temper the foreſaid powder with the Oxe Gall, and anoint therewith the Piles.

Another; Take two ſmall Onions, four heads of Garlick, beat them together, and temper them with the meal of Lupines, and with very eager Vinegar unto a plaiſter, which will open the Piles immediately.

Sixthly, make a long ſuppoſitory of Swines bread, put it up into the fundament, and keep it therein a whole night; if it come out, then put in another, untill the Piles begin to bleed. Alſo with the ſuppoſitories of wild Cucumber roots do the like. Item, take Coloquint three drach. bitter Almonds half an ounce, ſodden Hony three ounces, And make ſuppoſitories thereof, and uſe another every five hours, ſo that the Piles will then bleed immediately. Some do open theſe veins with hot irons, and ſome through Cauteries potential, as *Arſenicum* and ſuch like, but becauſe they are perilous, it is better to reſt with the former remedies.

Againſt the pain of the Piles. §. 7.

IF ſo be that there be an impoſtume beſides the pain of the Piles outwardly on the Arſegut, then muſt the patients Liver vein be opened on the right hand, and this plaiſter following laid upon the fundament thereby to aſſwage the pain; Take the yolk of a roſted Egg, one drach. of Saffron, *Opium* half a drach, Linſeed meal, Wheat meal, the muſcilage of Linſeed, Butter, and Goats ſuet, of each half an ounce, a freſh yolk of an Egg, Roſes one drach. and a half, Wax as much as is needfull for to make therewith a ſoft plaiſter. Item, take Hollihock roots ℥.6. Lillie roots ℥.1.ß. great Mallowes and Henbane, ana ℥.1.ß. Camomil ℥.1. Melilot and Dill ſeed, ana one quarter of an ounce; let theſe ſeethe well all together, and ſtamp them to grewt; then temper therewith Fenegreek meal, Linſeed meal, and Barly meal, ana. three quarters of an ounce, oyl of Roſes ℥.1.ß. *Opium* ℥.ß. make thereof a ſoft plaiſter, with the decoction wherein they were boyled.

Many kinds of Salves, againſt the pain of the Piles.

TAke oyl of the kernels of Apricocks one ounce, oyl of Roſes half an ounce, Ducks greaſe, and waſht Butter, of each three drach. *Bdellium* one quarter of an ounce, melt it in the foreſaid oyls, Wax as much as is needful therewith to make a ſoft plaiſter. Or take oyl of Peach kernels, and oyl of bitter Almonds, of each one ounce, liquid Styrax, *Bdellium*, of each one drachme, temper them well together, and therewith anoint the grief.

Item, take oyl of Roſes, oyl of the yolks of Eggs, Ducks and Hens greaſe, of each half an ounce, Wax three quarters of an ounce, melt them all together, and uſe it like as the reſt, covering it with warm clothes.

Item, take of that well known plaiſter *Diachilon* one ounce, oyl of Roſes half an ounce, the yolk of an Egg, Saffron and *Opium*, of each one ſcrup. temper it well together, and therewith anoint the place where the pain is.

Another: Take *Opium* one drachme: diſſolve it in Roſewater, make Cotton wet therein, and lay it upon the Piles, and keep it a little while therein, it doth preſently aſſwage the pain. But note, that all theſe narchotick and ſtupefactive remedies muſt be applyed warm unto it.

Item, take oyl of Roſes and Violets, of each a like quantity, and lay it warm upon it with a woollen cloth. Or take oyl of Roſes and freſh Butter one quarter of an ounce, the juice of Garlick one drachme, Bolus, Dragons blood, Gum, Roſes, Myrrhe, and Pomgranat bloſſoms, of each two ſcrup. pownd all that is to be pownded, and temper them all together. Item, take oyl of Roſes, and the white of an Egg, of each a like much, with a few crumbs of bread ſteeped in milk, and a little Saffron tempered amongſt it, and ſo uſe it. Item, take Vine cut two quarts, and the yolks of two Eggs well brayed, Saffron half a drachme, Camomil powder, and Dill powder, of each one drach. temper them together. Or (that which is more marvellous and better) take the yolks of four Eggs, oyl of Roſes ℥.3. Saffron one drachme, temper them together; this is ſomewhat ſtronger: Take

Take the oyl of water Lillies, Camomil and Dill, of each one ounce, Saffron one drach. the yolks of three Eggs, Barly meal two ounces, let theſe ſeethe together into two ounces of the juice of Lettice, untill the juice be waſted, then put thereto Henbane ſeed, and *Opium*, of each one drachme, and lay it upon the Piles.

Item, take the middle of corn Roſes, and temper it with the oyl of Apricock ketnels unto a ſoft ſalve, and uſe it as the reſt, for it is very good, and approved.

Philonium Romanum rubbed on the Piles aſſwageth the pain greatly. Item, take freſh Butter, and oyl of Violets, of each half an ounce, and beat amongſt it the white of an Egg. Or take oyl of Roſes, and Linſeed oyl, of each one ounce, oyl of Apricock kernels one ounce and a half, muſcilage of Fenegreek, and of Lindſeed, butter and Goats ſuet, of each as one ounce, the yolks of three Eggs, and Wax as much as is needfull for a ſalve.

Another; Take Linſeed, Hollihock ſeed, Fenegreek, Verbaſcum ſeed, S. Johns Wort, Mallowes, and Hounds tongue, of each one handful, ſeethe them together in water, and foment the place infected with a ſponge, afterwards anoint the foreſaid place with oyl of Eggs, for every ounce and a half whereof, have one grain of *Opium*. Or take Sallad oyl as much as you think good, pownded Chalke as much as is needfull therewith to make a plaiſter, it drieth well, and cooleth much. This can oyl of Olives do alſo alone, being made warm, and Sheeps wooll undreſt dipped in it, and ſo applyed unto the Piles. Item, take Verdigreaſe one quarter of an ounce, burnt Allom one ounce, diſſolve them in Wine, and then uſe it with Sheeps wool. Or take Ducks greaſe, the fat of Sheeps wool, Goats ſuet, and white Wax, of each a like quantitie molten together.

Item, take Harts ſuet one ounce and a half, the greaſe of a Heronſhaw half an ounce, melt and ſtir them together untill they be very white. This next following is paſſing forcible for to aſſwage the pain; Take a great Onion, make it hollow within, and fill it with Sallad oyl, or freſh Butter; afterwards cloſe it again, and roſt it in the aſhes until it be mellow, then bind it on the Piles. Alſo you muſt boyl Onions to growt, and temper them with Sugar, and uſe it as is ſaid; they be both very good. Item, anoint the Piles with the juice of Roſemary or Cloves, and lay a Peach leaſe upon it, this aſſwageth much the pain. This following dryeth, and eaſeth alſo the pain: Take pownded Houſleek ℥. 2. ſmall bruiſed litharge of Gold one quarter of an ounce, ſeethe them with freſh Butter to the thickneſſe of a ſalve. Theſe two ſalves enſuing do molliſie the hardneſſe, and take away the pain: Take Ducks and Hens greaſe, of each one ounce, oyl of Roſes ℥. 2. Wax as much as ſhall ſuffice; let them melt together, and cool afterwards, then mix the yolk of an Egg amongſt it, and one drach. of *Opium*, and half a drachme of Saffron.

Item take fine Bolus, Gum, Maſtick, Dragons blood, Roſes, and Pomgranat bloſſoms, of each three drach. pownd them ſmall, Butter ℥. 1. oyl of Roſes ℥. 3. juice of Garlick ℥. 3. juice of red Saxifrage ℥. 4. melt all that is to be molten, and temper the reſt amongſt it, this allayeth the ſwelling, aſſwageth the pain, dryeth and healeth all ulcers, and it is alſo eſpecial good for all clefts of the fundament.

Certain Powders for the ſame.

TAke Garden Snailes as many as you pleaſe, put them into a pot ſtopped tight, and burn them at a pot bakers oven to aſhes, ſtrew theſe upon the Piles, it aſſwageth the pain forthwith; alſo it is to be aſſwaged with Egg ſhels, wherein Chickens have been hatched, or with dried Cipres nuts pownded to powder, and ſtrewed thereon, as before.

Of fomenting, bathing, and ſuch like.

TAke Mallowes, Hollihock leaves, Violet leaves, Bearfoot, Garlick and Parietary, of each two handfuls, Camomil, Amaranthus, of each one handful, chop the herbs ſeethe them in water, and place the patient lukewarm therein.

Or take Oken leaves, Hounds tongue, Mallowes and Camomil, of each two handfuls, Fenegreek, Linſeed of each one ounce, ſtamp and ſeethe them in water; then make a ſponge wet therein, and ſo apply it warm unto the fundament. Alſo you may lay theſe herbs following, being ſodden, thereupon. Item, take ſmall beaten Peaſe, caſt them on a hot ſtone, & receive the vapour from beneath, it ſwageth the pain, it drieth wonderfully, and taketh away all ſuperfluous fleſh. If ſo be that the fume or ſmoak be noyſom to you, then

then put ſome wine thereto. Item, take Caraway, make it pretty moiſt with wine, taſt it alſo upon a hot ſtone, and receive the ſmoak as aforeſaid; or take *Gariophillata* and Lady mantle, of each one handful, ſeethe it in a bag, and therewith foment the reins. This hath holpen whereas the piles hang out a finger long, and it cannot hurt women with child.

Take Venus hair and Water torch, of each a like quantity, butter as much as you think good, let it ſeethe all together, powre the butter through a cloth, and therewith anoint the piles; it is ſaid that this hath holpen the piles, where the pain hath continued xx. years long. You may alſo anoint the piles with Ducks greaſe, wherein Coleworts have been fried, be it before, or after the bath.

Of the Piles which are called Verrucales. §. 8.

NOte that this ſort of Piles are called *Verrucales*, for they be much harder then the other, and therefore have more need of mollifying and diſcuſſive remedies; and thoſe muſt be uſed according to the opportunity of the time and the age of the patient. In the ſummer there is to be laid thereon three yolks of Eggs with the oyl of Violets, alſo ſweet unſalted butter, or oyl of ſweet Almonds tempered with muſcilage of Linſeed, and Fenegreek. If ſo be then the pain be intolerable, then temper a little *Opium*, *Mandragora*, Henbane ſeed, Poppy ſeed, or ſuch like amongſt it. The old Phyſitians deſcribe very many ſuch like things for remedies, but theſe aforeſaid ſhall be here ſufficient.

Of the Piles that do hang far out. §. 9.

BUt when as the Piles do hang far out, and do ſo dry that they wax black and ſtinking, then are they often to be anointed with warm butter, until the blackneſſe be again clean; and if ſo be that ſuch ſtinking moiſture would proceed further, then uſe the foreſaid corſives. But in caſe that this rotting ceaſe, then will it heal forthwith with the ſalve of Ceruſſe and ſuch like. There are alſo uſed ſometimes hot irons. Alſo while they be green, they may be cut off with a pair of ſizers, and afterwards the white of an Egg and oyl of Roſes laid upon it, to aſſwge the pain. But when they be old, then it is ſafeſt that they be bound about with a ſilke thred, and ſo often repeat the ſame till they die and fall away of themſelves. The which afterwards is to be further healed with this ſalve *Apoſtolorum*, and to leſſen the pain, ſteep the ſilk thred or horſe hair in Roſe water before, wherein is diſſolved two or three grains of *Opium*. In the ſame manner may all other warts of the body be driven away, whereof we will ſpeak in the fift part.

Here before in the common deſcription of the Piles, we have rehearſed the kinds of theſe grievous Piles. Through theſe Piles there is to be feared, when they begin to corrode, that they may ſo infeſt the Arſe-gut, that there may follow a Canker or fiſtula, yea that which is more, if there follow a ſalt defluxion to them, that the wayes may be ſo dilated and opened, that the patient might bleed to death. For this diſeaſe, there is great heed to be taken, to forbear all hot meats, as Radiſhes, Muſtard, Garlick, Onions, and from all ſpiced meats. For this muſt he alſo abſtain from all over cooling and ſlimy things, as fiſh, dough, and all intrails, ſinewes, and skins of beaſts. Meetly good red wine ſhall be his drink. But if (as it often falleth out) there come any other Piles, then are ſuch meats and drinks to be forborn as make melancholike bood, as pottage of Beans and Peaſe; but red and white Peaſe, and Turky Beans may be eaten ſometimes dreſt with Sallad oyl. Alſo in this caſe the Median is to be opened, and five or ſix ounces of blood be let out, according to the ſtrength and age of the patient. But if this letting of blood may not be done for ſome cauſes, and that it be thought better to apply Horſeleaches, as is already ſaid, that may ſafely be done; yet firſt make the place moiſt with cold water, for then will they faſten the rather. When as the Leaches be full, then fall they off of themſelves; if not, then ſtrike them off with a twig, or burn them off with a Wax candle. But if after their falling off the bleeding will not ſtanch, then lay this plaiſter following thereon: Take Starch and Milldu ſt, of each one drach, fine Bolus, Dragons blood, Aloe, Sarcocolla, Frankincenſe, Hypociſtis, of each one quarter of an ounce, the juice of Plantain as much as is requiſite, temper it in a leaden mortar until it be very tough.

A plaiſter: Take of hard Pitch, ℥. 3. Roſin and Iſinglas, ana. ℥. 1. Dragagant, Gum, *Sarcocolla*, ana. ℥. 1. ß. refuſe of Iron, ℥. ß. make a plaiſter thereof with red vinegar. This is for this purpoſe as forcible a remedy as may be found: Item, take wood aſhes ℥. 2. Yarrow, Pellitory of the wall, Cammomil, and roſted Squils, ana. ℥. 2. burnt Allome one quarter of an ounce, red wine as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter, and apply it warm. Item, take Yarrow, Parietary, of each one handful, Salt, ℥. ß. and uſe this daily. It is ſaid alſo that this for certain will cure the Piles, namely, Venus hair with Ariſtology beaten and tempered with red wine, and ſo continually uſed thereon.

This following is ſaid to be infallible: Take the aſhes of an herb which the Germans call Roorwort, and roſted Squils, ana. ℥. 2. hony as much as needful for to temper this withal; apply it, and it healeth very ſpeedily.

The confection of Iron droſſe *de Scoria ferri*, muſt be uſed ſix daies one after another, every morning one quarter of an ounce, and faſt five hours upon it. And if the Piles be without any afflux of humours, or other accident, then are you to uſe this following: Take oyl of Abricock kernels, ℥. 3. liquid Styrax one quarter of an ounce, four hard ſodden yolks of eggs, prepared Iron droſſe, *Sandaracha* and *Sarcocolla* ſteeped in womans milk, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Muſk, G. 3. bruiſe this a long time together, afterwards temper as much Barly meal amongſt it as is needful for a plaiſter, annoint therewith the Piles inwardly and outwardly. But if ſo be that the patient have need of any purging, uſe thereto thoſe things that are ordained in the deſcription of the other Pils. Or take of the confection *Diaſena* three quarters of an ounce, temper it with whay of milk, and take it betimes in the morning. After the purgation, the Arſe-gut is to be annointed the next day with theſe things next after following.

Take Swines bread, Cowſlips, *Biſtorta*, Dog fennel and red Saxifrax, ana. ℥. 1. ß. *Alumen Iamenum*, ℥. 1. oyl of Apricock kernels and Roſine, ana. ℥. 1. temper them all together, and anoint therewith four times a day, and lay this plaiſter following upon it.

Take the plaiſter *Apoſtolicon* that ſhall be hereafter deſcribed, ℥. ß. burnt Copperas, Frankincenſe, *Colophonia* and Orpiment, ana. ℈. 1. mingle it all together in a mortar, till that it be a plaiſter, with a little diſſolved Laudanum, but it may not be laid upon the fundament: but whereas the leaſt exulceration is, the vain exulcerated is to be anointed with the foreſaid ſalve, and if there come any ſcabs thereto, then muſt they be oftentimes anointed with the oyl of ſweet Almonds.

The plaiſter Apoſtolicon *which is alſo called* Triapharmacon, *is deſcribed after two manner of waies: the firſt is good* Triapharmacon, *for that it is made of three things, as followeth.*

TAke ſmall Litharge of gold and vinegar, ana. ℥. 4. old Sallet oyl, ℥. 8. let them ſeeth ſo long together until all the vinegar be ſodden away, alwaies ſtirring it about, till it be the thickneſſe of a plaiſter. This plaiſter maketh the fleſh grow, and healeth all wounds. Some put amongſt it one quarter of an ounce of Verdigreaſe, Wax and Turpentine, of each as much as pleaſeth them beſt, and when it is made, then it is called at the Apothecaries *Apoſtolicon*.

The ſecond: Take eight ounces of Sallet oyl, Small bruiſed litharge of gold, ℥. 4. Vinegar, ℥. 8. let it ſeethe well, and then put thereto prepared Galbanum, Frankincenſe, Myrrhe, Maſtick, Tormentil, ana. ℥. ß. Dragons blood three quarters of an ounce, Aloe, ℥. 2. beaten ſmall, Wax, ℥. 1. then mingle them all together, and let it ſeethe to a plaiſter.

There are other means more to heal theſe kinds of Pyles, namely that they be cut off where they be thinneſt: but by reaſon that then they bleed much, therefore it is moſt certain to take away the ſame with actual cauteries or hot irons, which is not unknown to all Chirurgions, which is afterward better to be holpen.

Some take them away with potential cauteries or coroſives, as with pownded *Anacardes*, Orpiment, *Arſenicum*, and ſuch like: afterward they lay ſalve thereon that aſſwageth the pain; and mollifie the eſcars with ſweet butter, or ſome other fatneſſe: But the binding, whereof we have ſpoken, is more certain.

Of the impoſtumes in the Arſegut. §. 10.

IT happeneth alſo very well when that one cometh to burn, cut, or corrode theſe Pyles, that thereby the blood is ſtanched: which notwithſtanding, for that it cannot have his courſe, doth ſometimes putrifie there, and impoſtumateth, and cauſeth therewith great pain, heat, Agues and thirſt: for which theſe things following may be uſed. Firſt, the Liver vein in the arm on the ſide of the accident, is to be opened, thereby to diminiſh the affluent blood. If the Patient alſo be corpulent, then are boxing cups to be ſet on his ſhoulders with pricking. Further, you are to binde the uppermoſt parts of the body, and to chaſe them, by reaſon that for this accident may no purging medicines be uſed, to the end that thereby the matter may be drawn out downwards. But if the great obſtruction or binding of the body require any purgation, then muſt the ſame be brought to paſſe with Cliſters, and according to the opportunity of the time, to open alſo a vein beſides the Ancles, and to uſe this ſalve.

Take oyl of Apricock kernels two ounces, *Bdellium* one ounce, liquid Styrax one ounce and a quarter, freſh butter, Ducks greaſe, Starch, of each one ounce, white lead one drach. and a half: temper it a long time in a mortar, and make a ſalve thereof, annoint therewith this impoſtume when the gut is turned and drawn forth, you ſhall find good eaſe thereby.

Secondly, take greaſe, Mallows, Fenegreek ſeed, of Seſamum and Linſeed, ana. ℥. 6. ſeethe them in water, ſtrain them, ſtamp and temper them with half an ounce of Rie meal, oyl of Abricock, unripe Sallad oyl and oyl, of ſweet Almonds, ana. ℥. 1. roots of Smallage, Elecampane roots, ana. ℥. ß. lay this warm thereon, or ſet it thereon, that it touch very well the Arſegut, it is very good.

Thirdly, if this impoſtume be not hereby ſufficiently mollified, then uſe this hereafter following: Take Sallad oyl 7. pounds and a half, ſweet red wine 6. quarts, Saffron, ℥. 1. ß. Bdellium, ℥. 1. ſeethe all theſe together until the Gum be diſſolved: herein ſhall the patient be ſet 4. times a day, being made luke-warm, as deep as to his privities.

Others uſe for ſuch Impoſtumes as proceed of heat, this plaiſter: Take Mallows and Nightſhade, of each one handful, Violets and ſhaled Lentils, ana. ℥. 2. let this ſeethe till it be as thick as grout: afterwards ſtir it well about in a mortar, and mingle therewith oyl of Violets, Roſes, and the white of egg, of an each a like much, as ſhall ſeem needful for to make a plaiſter: ſpread then thereof on the Arſegut, and lay over it.

Take white Lead, ℥. 5. Frankincenſe, ℥. 1. ß. litharge of gold one quarter of an ounce: This being beaten ſmall, temper it with oyl of Roſes, and therewith annoint the impoſtume, ſpread it on a cloth, and lay it thereon.

Item, take the crums of white bread, or in the ſtead thereof, ℥. 3. of Mill duſt, oyl of ſweet Almonds, ℥. 2. beaten Saffron, ℥. ß. temper them one amongſt another, and lay them warm upon it.

If there be a great heat preſent, then foment the Impoſtume with Roſe water, Purſlain water, or water of Nightſhade, and afterward apply this ſalve following thereon: Take crums of white bread, ℥. 3. oyl of Roſes, ℥. 2. Saffron, Opium, of each one quarter of an ounce, four yolks of Eggs, freſh Butter one ounce, mix them al wel together, and uſe it as above. But if it proceed of a cold cauſe then uſe this following: Take Onions, Garlick, and Woolblade, of each a like quantity, boyl them till they be ſoft, and beat them to a grout, afterwads add as much Butter and oyl of Cammomils as ſhall ſuffice.

All that hath been written before to aſſwage the pain, may be alſo uſed for this: But note this, if ſo be the impoſtume begin for to maturate, then are you to look to open it, to the end that the matter corrode not inward, and ſo there follow a Fiſtula after it, which hapneth very often.

Afterwards uſe this ſalve following for to finiſh the cure: Take burnt lead, Cypres nuts, and prepared litharge of gold, ana. ℥. 1. Roſin, ℥. 1. oyl of Maſtick, ℥. ß. Wax three quarters of an ounce: firſt melt the Roſin with the Wax, and when when it beginneth to ſtream, then mingle the foreſaid powder amongſt it: you may alſo ſtrew the powder of Knotgraſs upon it, for it dryeth much, and cauſeth great alterations.

Of the Clefts that are called Rhagades. §.

WHat manner of infirmity it is, is sufficiently declared in the fifth Chapter 2. §. These may proceed of five sundry causes in the Arsegut: as of the bloody flux called *Dysenteria*, of too hard excrements, of heat and drought of the Arsegut; otherwhiles also of the Piles that corrode inward, lastly, of some outward inconveniences that cleave to the Arsegut: the signs are pain, and burning, and sometimes such clefts as may be seen, and do yield a black gleet, or red stinking matter. There are also two sorts, the one with matter, and the other without matter, whereof shall severally be spoken.

First for to cure those that are without matter, the party is first of all to be purged (if need do require the same) and to open a vein, like as is told of the Piles, and especially with *Epithyme*, *Polypode*, and Whay, by reason of the Melancholick blood: also in like manner with the pils of *Bdellio*, or with Clisters, and other like purgations. Afterwards when these clefts do yield matter, then are they often to be washed with water wherein are sod Roses, *Polipode*, and Allome, and afterwards annoint them with this salve following: Take ashes of Muscle shels and roots of *Polipode*, ana. ℥. 2. leaves of the Olive tree, ℥. ß. pownd them all small, and temper them with oyl of Roses, and if they with inflammation, then use salve made with Cerusse and Camphire and other salves that follow hereafter. This following is good marvellous, for it dryeth, cooleth, and also healeth. Take litharge of Gold, white lead and burnt lead, of each a like much, bruise it in a leaden mortar with Rose water, oyl of Roses, and whites of Eggs as much as is needful, and with a little Camphire, until that it be wholly black, annoint the clefts therewith, and lay a cloth over them. If there be no heat thereby but onely a manifest drought, then take Hens and Ducks grease, marrow of Harts bones, and Calves bones, and the fatnesse of sheeps wool, of each half an ounce, fresh Butter, oyl of sweet Almonds, oyl of Poppy seeds, Dragagant, oyl of Lillies, and oyl of Peach kernels, of each one quarter of an ounce, Myrrhe, Starch, Mill dust, Momy, Frankincense, Mastick, Dragons blood, white lead, and burnt Allome, of each one drachme, Wax one ounce and a half, melt all these in the foresaid oyl and fats, and make thereof a salve: this salve asswageth the pain, moistneth and causeth the flesh to grow.

Item, take yellow Wax, oyl of Selamum, Ducks grease, Marrow of Oxe bones, the fat of Camels feet, or (in stead of them) Goats suet, or Hens grease, and Bdellium, of each a like much, melt these together in Muscilage of Linseed, and temper them together, for it is very commodious. Item, take Turpentine, Ducks grease, oyl of Violets, ana. ℥. 1. dissolved Dragagant and Wax, pownded Dragagant, ℥. 2. temper them by the fire unto a salve.

Or take muscilage of Licebane one ounce, Hens grease one and an half, the yolk of a new laid egg, Saffron one drach. temper them one with another, and annoint the clefts therewith.

Another. Take Dragagant and Gall nuts, of each a like much; temper them with molten Oxe suet, and a little oyl of Roses unto a salve.

But if the ulcers be deep, and yield much stinking matter, then are both outwardly and inwardly sharp waters to be used for them, and especially dresse it with the remedies that are described in the first Part and the eight Chapter, of the ulcers of the Nose, or strew them with Verdigrease, and pownded *Anacardia* for to cleanse them. But note, that this corrosive inwardly in the Arsegut is not wholly without danger, unless the Arsegut be drawn out by a boxing cup. Afterwards cool and heal them with white lead, or any other cooling and healing salve.

Item, take washed white lead, Aloe, Mastick, Frankincense, and Dragons blood, ana. ß. 3. oyl of Roses, ℥. 1. ß. Wax as much as is needful. For this you may also use the salve that was before described, and made in the leaden mortar, or prepare this following.

Take Pomegranate blossomes and the pils, Myrrhe, washed white Lead, burnt Lead, washed Aloes, seeds of Roses, Frankincense, Mastick, Dragons blood, and burnt Mussel shels, of each one quarter of an ounce, Olive leaves, burnt Allome, *Alumen plumosum*, Verdigrease, and Litharge of Gold, of each one drach. and a half, Wax one ounce, melt this in as much oyl of Roses as is needful to make a salve: use this oftentimes, and wash the ulcers twice or thrice a day with water wherein Gals, burnt Allome, Olive leaves

and

and Roſes are decocted. Theſe are very good for all ſuch like diſeaſes, being holden over the vapor or damp of water wherein Mallows, Hollihock roots, Violet leaves, and Bear foot is ſodden.

Of the Fiſtula and Canker in the Arſegut. §. 12.

THis infirmity cometh very ſuddenly into the Arſegut, and albeit it hath been accuſtomed, like as in other the like diſeaſes in the body, to uſe inciſion or an actual cautery: notwithſtanding in this place it muſt be utterly omitted, that there be no ſinewe hurt. For it might eaſily thereby befall, that the patient afterwards ſhould never ſtay his ordure, but (againſt his will) to let his excrements paſſe from him. The cauſe of theſe Fiſtulaes may be the bad healing of the diſeaſes in the Arſegut, be it of what cauſe ſoever it may proceed. In like manner alſo through uſing of the Pyles badly, or any other impoſtume that hath not been opened in time, but that the matter was left to ſtink & putrifie therein, all which may cauſe Fiſtulaes, as is above ſaid; amongſt the which there are ſome that penetrate the Arſegut, others the neck of the bladder, and ſome that remain alwaies at a ſtay. Theſe are hereby diſcerned, that either the urine, the ordure, or winde paſſe through the Fiſtula. Alſo if the Muſcles be therewith infected, then can he not retain or ſtay his excrements, but as ſoon as it deſcendeth to this place, it paſſeth from him.

If then theſe Fiſtulaes be moiſt and mattery, and the matter ſharp and ſtinking, and waxeth from day to day bigger, then it is a ſign of a depaſcent Fiſtula, for the which ſtrong remedies muſt be uſed to ſtay the ſame, that they corrode not deeper: for it happeneth otherwhiles that theſe depaſcent ulcers will conſume he whole buttocks and all parts adjacent, and bring a body at the leaſt after many miſeries to his lives end. But if ſo be that this Fiſtula corrode no deeper, then muſt the ſame be cured with drying things, ſo that for a while they neither run nor ſwell any more: but if ſo be the matter come to run again, then muſt be done as before, and that ſo long as one liveth. As concerning then the curing of this Fiſtula, it muſt alwaies be looked to, that the hole be kept open, which may beſt be effected with the pith of an Alder tree, dryed Gentian roots, or Briony roots: afterwards you muſt uſe thoſe things that are ſet down in the firſt part, the eight Chapter, and 11. §. and alſo afterwards of the Fiſtula of the eies. Some do commend two or three drops of oyl of Sulphur to be injected into the Arſegut, which will have a wonderful operation; and if ſo be that there follow any inflammation, that it ſhould be delayed with the white of an Egg, or freſh Butter. Fiſtulaes and ſuch like ulcers, are to be waſhed with Roſemary wine, for it cleanſeth and keepeth the ulcers clean, but of this Fiſtula will we intreat further hereafter in the fift part.

Of the itch in the Arſegut. §. 13.

THe cauſes of the itch in the Arſegut are four: Firſt, that there remains ſomewhat that is ſweaty or ſaltiſh in the fundament, which cauſeth the ſame: Secondly, through the worms *Aſcarides*, that have their being in the end of the Arſegut. Thirdly, ſome kind of ulcers that are in the lower part of the gut. Fourthly, ſharp humours, as it oftentimes happeth through ſome uncleanneſſe that reſteth in the Arſegut, and then muſt the Arſegut be waſhed with warm water, and be cleanſed with clothes or wolblade leavs. But if the ſame come through the ſmall worms, then take a ſharp Cliſter, yet not above eight ounces in quantity: alſo dip wooll or any ſuch like thing in ſoft Pitch or Turpentine, then do the worms ſtick faſt thereon; beſides, the Pitch doth kill the worms by nature: or annoint a great taint with Bird lime, and bind it on a thred that it may be drawn out again. You may alſo ſee in this preſent part what hath been written for the worms, but if the ſame be cauſed through any ulcers, then uſe for it the white ſalve and others more; but keep the ulcers alwaies clean and dry with freſh cloathes, waſh the ſame oftentimes with water wherein Agrimony, Olive leaves, and ſuch like are decocted, put alſo burnt Allome thereto, and plume Allome, and bind clothes over it, and keep your ſelf quiet. But if this itch proceed of a ſharp matter, then uſe Suppoſitories with Opium, Cliſters, and others, as ſhall appear hereafter for the lask or looſeneſſe of the body.

The

The eleventh Chapter.

Of the inward members of the third Part.

IN the beginning of the third part of this our book of Practiſe, we have given to underſtand, how that therein are contained the Stomach, the Liver, the Gall, the Kidneyes, the Bladder, the bowels, and in women the mother or womb; but becauſe we have hitherto treated of the outward parts and their accidents, therefore will we now diſcourſe orderly of the inward members; and firſt we will begin with the Stomach, for that the ſame is covered with the Liver, and lyeth on the top thereof: for it hath not onely his beginning at the ſtomach, but is alſo the meat room or kitchin of all the other members, and therefore will we (and that by good reaſon) place it before.

Of the Stomach *in general.* §. 1.

UNder the *Diaphragma* or Midriffe, between the Liver and the Gall on the right ſide, and the Milt on the left ſide, that is, right in the midſt of the body, yet a little more on the left ſide, there lyeth the ſtomach, that is ſo ordained by nature for that the Liver might keep room and ſcope. The ſtomach is called of the Greeks *Geſter*, *Colie*, and ſometimes alſo (although unjuſtly) *Stomachus*, and of the Latiniſts *Ventriculus*. It is ordained for a receiver of the meat, to dreſſe the ſame, and afterwards, like as out of a Cubbord, to impart all that is cooked, to each member his due, and that might ſuffice for his ſuſtentation and nouriſhment, and to ſend out all that is unclean or not fit for the nouriſhment, through the bowels and other natural paſſages as a ſuperfluity. His ſubſtance is outwardly hard fleſh, inwardly compacted full of veins, rough, and with many pleits or folds, wherby it draweth the meat unto it. His fotm is long, and round hollow within, and like a Tun, to let paſſe eaſily that is received, wide beneath, and near the mouth of the ſtomach (which is properly called *Stomachus*, *Oeſophagus*, and by the Arabians *Meri*) it is narrow. In compariſon of the bodies of beaſts, it is not big, ſo that thereby it doth not much exceed the blind gut *Inteſtinum cæcum*, and is otherwiſe not much unlike to a dogs maw. With the uppermoſt end of the Stomach doth it receive the meat, and with the lower end doth it let all that is digeſted fall into the bowels, from whence all ſuperfluities are caſt out. Both thoſe ends of the ſtomach, below and above, after that the meat is received, do ſhut up moſt wonderfully, leſt that the concocting and digeſting warmth ſhould vaniſh away. For if in the mouth of the ſtomach there were not ſuch cloſing, then could not the meat be well digeſted: whereby then muſt inſue a noyſome vapor, and a diminiſhing of natural heat. So hapneth alſo of the lower paſſage of the ſtomach, when as it after the meat is received, will not be ſhut up, a bad digeſtion and other diſeaſes, as the flux, &c. whereof we will hereafter ſpeak more at large. But thus much we would write in general of the ſtomach: Now will we proceed forward with particular things.

Of the neck and mouth of the ſtomach. §. 2.

THis paſſage, through which the meat and the drink deſcendeth out of the mouth into the ſtomach, is properly one piece of the ſame: therefore will we firſt write thereof, as of the beginning of the ſtomach. The neck of the ſtomach is of the old Grecians, and now adayes called by all learned men *Oeſophagus*, and unrightly *Stomachus*, and of the Latiniſts *Gula*, the which we in Engliſh do name properly the upper part of the ſtomach, the neck: and the nethermoſt part, the mouth of the ſtomach, which lyeth right in the pit of the heart. So that both theſe parts have ſome difference, and that by reaſon of their ſituation and for other cauſes more, even as alſo *Galen* maketh two ſundry Chapters of them. Theſe foreſaid neck and mouth of the ſtomach, are ſubject to many diſeaſes, be it out of heat, cold, drought, moiſture, or of any compounded complexion. Alſo through the obſtruction of thoſe parts, whereby the meat is drawn into the ſtomach. Item, through Impoſtumes, ulcers, blowes, wounds, and other inconveniencies, all which may hinder the ſwallowing, whereof

whereof much is written in the ſecond part, the firſt Chapter, §. 5.

But we will here onely rehearſe ſomewhat of the ſignes, and their difference. when as now then the whole neck hath any diſeaſe, then can the meat not be but ſlowly ſwallowed. But if this diſeaſe be in a certain place of the neck, then remaineth the meat ſticking in the ſame place. But whether it come of heat or drought, that ſhall be bewrayed by the drouth and thirſt, for that cold water is very acceptable unto him. But if ſo be it proceed of cold, then hath the Patient neither heat nor thirſt, but onely an anguiſh in the throat. If ſo be, that one can hardly ſwallow through exceſſive moiſture, then doth the ſame appear through much ſpettle and whiteneſſe of the tongue. Or the ſame cometh through drought, that maketh the drought of the tongue and the mouth knowne, for the Patient will drink continually, or waſh his mouth with cold water. If there be any impoſtume in theſe places, then have you the ſignes of Squinacy therewith, whereof we in the ſecond part, the firſt chapter, 4. §. have mentioned. Alſo when he would drink, then runneth the drink out of the noſe; neither can he addict himſelf to lie, but ſeeketh alwayes to ſit up. Then cometh this diſeaſe through blood *Cholera*, that may be knowne by the pricking pain, alſo by the thirſt, heat and Ague; and to the contrary, when the ſame is cauſed through cold, then is the pain ſmall, but with drought and the painfulneſſe of ſwallowing is felt in more places then in the place of the tumor. But if this impoſtume break out, then do they caſt up matter, and are very prone to vomiting, whereby alſo they loſe their pain in ſwallowing.

Theſe impoſtumes are alſo to be knowne, if that one do ſwallow down Vinegar or any other ſoure thing, or that is ſalt, not onely into the neck of the ſtomach, but alſo even into the ſhoulder blade.

Or if the ſame be cauſed through any cricke of the necke, then will the pain alſo be knowne there: or there groweth a bunch either before or behind. And if ſo be that the ſame be cauſed through the cramp, then ſhut to the Patients mouth; and he ſhall feel the pain moſt of all in the Nipples, and on the breſt.

But before that we come to the remedies for this infirmity of ſwallowing, we muſt preſcribe ſome common rules; and firſt, becauſe that the necke and mouth of the ſtomach are tender parts, therefore heed muſt bee taken that there be not uſed for it any ſharp or biting things, that thereby they be not grieved nor hindred in their actions. Secondly, if theſe parts do ranckle, or get any malady (like as often hapneth) then muſt all ſharp, ſowre and biting things be eſchewed, unleſſe the ſame things be drying withal, yet very little, becauſe ſuch ſharp things do augment the ſame pain, do feeble the natural power, and inflame the whole throat. Thirdly, if ſo be that the necke of the ſtomach be over cold, then muſt plaiſters be laid upon the ſhoulders, and there-about. But if this coldneſſe be in the mouth of the ſtomach, then muſt the plaiſters and other things be laid upon the pit of the heart. Fourthly, if there be a hot impoſtume with pain and a cholerick body, then muſt he be let blood, purge, and uſe other remedies, even as hath been ſaid in the deſcription of the Squinancie. Fifthly, the remedies that are to be uſed for the healing of the exulceration of the throat, and to incarnate, they are alwaies to be tempered with ſome tough ſlimie thing, to the end that they may cleave the faſter in the throat, and thereby alſo may have the better operation.

Now to come to the remedies; If that this impediment be onely cauſed through heat, or heat and drought, then purge the Patient with ſowre Dates, Caſſia, and Manna tempered in ſome broth, wherein Prunes, Violets, and Figs have been ſodden; for all theſe things do expel ſuch matter, and moyſten the throat and the neck of the ſtomach, like as in this diſeaſe is required.

Therefore ſhall the Patient (and that oftentimes) uſe ſyrup of Violets, water Lillies, and ſuch like, and ſwallow the ſame leyſurely.

There may alſo be made a ſyrup of Prunes as hereafter followeth; take foure or five Damaske Prunes, Violets two ounces, ſeeds of Lettice, Endive, ſmall Endive, Purſlain, of each half an ounce, Sugar 18. ounces, make a ſyrup thereof, like as before in the Introduction is taught.

Beneath under the neck between the ſhoulder blades there muſt the patient be anointed with cooling oyles, or any ſuch like plaiſters laid thereon, that are tempered with oyl of Violets, water Lilies, and oyl of Roſes: afterwards take wheat meal three ounces, the muſcilage of Fleawort, juice of Houſleek, of each one ounce and a half, juice of Purſlain one ounce, ſtamp them together unto a plaiſter,

Take

Take the juyce of great and ſmall Houſleek, Roſewater, of each two ounces, Melon ſeed, Lettice, Gourds, Cucumbers, Purſlain, and both kinds of Endives, of each one quarter of an ounce: let this ſeethe all together unto a plaiſter, then ſtamp them to grewt, and uſe it as above.

If there be no drought thereby perceived, then may be put thereto red and white Sanders and Roſes, of each one quarter of an ounce, and ℥. 1. of vinegar.

But if there be great drought therewith, then uſe the muſcilage of Fleawort, Dragagant, the ſeeds of Quinces, Violets, and ſuch like: alſo he muſt eat cold herbs (whereof the ſeeds are here above named) fried with butter, and anoint himſelf outwardly with all manner of beaſts marrow. In like manner are alſo very good for him conſerves of Roſes, the cold loſinges of Dragagant, ane *Diapenidion* without ſpices, and new rere Eggs.

Theſe enſuing pils are alſo to be prepared, and to hold them continually in the mouth, and laſtly, ſwallow them down; Take Dragagant, Gum of *Arabia*, Purſlain ſeed, Mallowes, and Quince kernels, of each one quarter of an ounce, Licorice one drach. and an half, the gum of Cherry tree a drach. make thereof flat pils: Barley water and Buttermilk are good drink for this ſickneſſe, alſo he may drink watred wine.

But if this impediment be cauſed through cold (like as moſt commonly hapneth) and if ſo be that need require, then give the Patient ſome potions of *Sirupo de Preſſie*, *de Calaminta*, or *de Hyſſopo*, and purge him with *Diaturbith*, or *Hiera logodion*, and if it be needful put a little *Eſula* to it.

Theſe tabulates ſhal he alſo hold in his mouth, and then ſwallow down the juyce of them, to wit, *Dianiſon*, *Diatrionpiperion*, *Diaireos Salomonis*, *Diaplinie* made with Musk, and ſuch like. Upon the ſhoulders muſt he be anointed with the oyl of *Coſtus*, or with the oyl of Rue.

For this is alſo good the ſalves *Mantiaton*, *Agrippæ*, and *Althea*, whereupon this plaiſter following is to be applyed; Take *Laudanum*, the fat of Sheeps wooll, *Galbanum* and *Ammoniacum*, of each one ounce, dryed Mints, Sage, Indi *Spica*, *Spica Romana*, and Cloves, of each ℥. 1. Wax ℥. 1. oyl of Spikenard as much as is needful to make a plaiſter, ſpread it over a cloth half a quarter of a yard, in compaſſe four ſquare, then draw it over with Syndal, and lay it after the length from the neck to the ridge of the back.

Amongſt other Medicines may alſo thoſe be uſed, that ſhall againſt a cold ſtomach be deſcribed hereafter, whence is to be taken alſo an order of life.

If that then this impediment in ſwellowing be cauſed through exceſſive moiſture, then is the firſt deſcribed order to be obſerved; but that is not needful to expel ſuch exceſſe of matter, but to keep a ſober dyet in eating and drinking: further, he muſt uſe this gargariſme following.

Take Cypres nuts, and the leaves, of each one handful, Frankincenſe and his tines, one ounce of each, burnt Allom 3. quarters of an ounce, plume Allom half an ounce; ſeethe this in a quart of Wine, and gargariſe herewith, afterwards waſh clean the mouth, but ſwallow it not down; or he ſhall uſe all that in the firſt part, Chap. 13. and §. 6. is taught, of the ſwelling of the tongue.

If then a hote or cold impoſtume, or the Squinancy be approaching, then rule you like as it is ſhewed in the ſecond Part, the firſt Chapter, and §. 4. of the Squinancy: now we will go forward with the Stomach.

To preſerve and keep a good digeſtion of the Stomach. §. 3.

HOw much the health of man is ſuſtained through a well digeſting ſtomach, is ſufficiently known to all the world: and it is alſo very true, that if the ſame receive no wholſome meat, it cannot digeſt it wel, the which appeareth in the diſeaſe of the ſtomach, that all meats muſt corrupt, the which may evidently be diſcerned through the ſickneſſe that ſhal hereafter follow.

Therefore it is firſt requiſite and neceſſary to preſcribe a rule, how to keep this good digeſtion in her full efficacy. And although in all places hereafter, whereas ſhall be diſcoursed of any of the infirmities of the Stomach, it ſhal be taught what ſhal be eſchued or uſed; notwithſtanding, it cannot be but available briefly to comprehend the ſame in theſe ten rules.

The firſt is, of the motion of the body, which (as followeth) is much commended.

The motion of the body is a preservation of a mans life, a quickening of natural heat, and an excitation of sluggish nature, a digesture of all superfluous humours, a strengthning of all the members, an overthrow of the diseases, a medicine for all anguishes, a gaining of time, renewing of youth, of mirth, of old age, a pleasure, a help of health and blessednesse, an end of all infirmities, an enemy of sloth and lithernesse, therefore do they fear and shun all labour, that will want mirth, and if any body desire not every day to eat, he may keep himself from all labour.

This motion is most commodious for sober folks before both mealetides, if they move not above their might: for when one beginneth to be weary, then must he rest, and each one must exercise and stir according to the ability of his body. The men of occupations have exercises enough about their occupations; but if any one at any mealtide have surfeited, then must he fast the next day, and use temperate motions, to consume all superfluity through abstinence and exercise.

All people that have great exercise, may much better digest grosse meats, then they that are idle and live at ease, whereby may easily be discerned the vertue of motion.

The second is of the property of meats, that they be not too hot of nature, or too cold, whereby they may not inflame the natural heat, or might overcool it, the which is also to be understood of all other qualities of meats. Secondly, providence must be had that all meats be well boyled, sod, and rosted, otherwise can the stomach not digest it as it behooveth.

Thirdly, binding things eaten before other meats, they bind the body, like as if they be eaten after the same, they loose, and are laxative. Fourthly, light meats are, Barley well sodden, well baked bread, small Fishes, Partridges, Pheasants, and such like. Fifthly, meats that are acceptable to nature, will be the more willingly received by the stomach, and also digested. But this is only to be understood of healthful persons, and of them that use the same moderately; otherwise that is not alwaies good which is pleasant to the mouth. Sixthly, although the subtile and light meats do lesse molest digestion, and are requisite for health, yet are they nevertheless nothing the stronger or apter for labour, therefore they passe all others herein, that feed on grosse meats. Seventhly, would or might any one not eat such healthy meats altogether? then is he notwithstanding to do the contrary as seldom as he may, tempering with some wholesom meats, like as men do pepper and wine with Mushrimps, and Spices or Garlick with Fish, &c. Eightly, slimie meats tarry long in the stomack, before that they passe into the bowels. Bread with his Bran goeth much sooner into the bowels, than where the Bran is boulted out. Ninthly, flesh boyled on the gridiron giveth good nourishment when it is digested; but it goeth slowly towards the guts. Tenthly Pullet broths do delay the humors more than Hen-broth, yea and give much more nourishment.

The third rule dependeth on the quantity of meats, whereof too much must not be taken in, lest they make some grief or wind in the body. Secondly, much meats do not moysten throughly, but onely those that be without sharpnesse, sowrenesse, saltnesse, and bitternesse. Thirdly, when any body hath taken much meat and drink, and thereby findeth weakenesse or drought in the stomach, he shall then the other day afterwards fast and sleep the more in a temperate place. Fourthly, a hail man shall take even so much meat, as shall nop greiv him. Fiftly all they that live lasciviously and riotously, do die before their old age. Sixtly, great bodyes have need of more meat and drink then small bodies; they require also more heat and vital spirits for their sustentation. Seventhly, much and manymeats taken at one time be prejudicial two manner of waies; first, by reason of the variable digesture, as when light meats are mingled with grosse meats; Secondly, for that it is seen, that there is more eaten of that which is pleasant in tast, than with moderat feeding would suffice.

The fourth rule containeth a good dyet, whereby the meate is not to be tempered with the medicine, for that it were an unmeet cost, when as the seeds of wild Saffron, Nettles, or wild Thyme should be mingled amongst meat, that spoyl the meat, hurt digesture, and drive it into the Bowels before the body have his nourishment out of it.

Secondly, grosse and hard meats are to be eaten alwayes and at the first, and afterwards the light meats. Thirdly if one do eate mild and moyst things at the first, and afterwards the hard meats, then do the light meats run quickly through the stomach, and leade the hard grosse meats away with them undigested. Fourthly, all they that be loose of body, are to take at the beginning of their meal-tides binding things and spices; and

if

if not, then are they alwayes first to take that which wil quickly passe through the stomach and lead the way to other meats.

To this end are Melons, Peaches, and other fruits to be eaten before one eate bread or flesh: for that when as they which be harder do hinder the passage, then is the digestion spoyled, and so it is with all other kinds of meats. Fifthly, meats which be of this nature that they do not easily passe through, or without requisite digestion, then must the grosse meats be first taken, and the light meats last of all: as Mutton before Birds, and Beef before Mutton. For the bottom of the stomach by reason of his heat, hath more force to digest the grosse meats first, then the top or upper part of the stomach. Sixthly, milk and fowr things are not to be eaten above once, for that the milk runneth into the stomach, whereby the digestion is hindered. Seventhly, Butter, milk and Radishes, are not meet together, nor yet with any birds; for the birds having subtile flesh, will be spoyled through the sharpnesse of the Radishes. Eightly, sodden wheat in flesh broth or in water, is not to be used after Spice, for that both of them be of grosse nourishment, and do obstruct the waies. Ninthly, Vinegar, oyl, and all manner of fatnesse are not at any hand to be kept in Copper vessels, for that they do draw the venemous nature of the Copper unto them.

The fifth rule containeth the time, that in the winter and spring more meat is behoovefull then in the Sommer; for that then the stomach is at the very hottest. Secondly, that there be nothing eaten until the former be digested. Thirdly, in the winter, things be not tolerable to be eaten which do little nourish, as herbs, and such like, but compact and strong meats are to be used, which be long in digestion. Fourthly, in sommer is the most fit time to eat before the heat commeth, and in evening when the heat is past. Fifthly, in the spring is one to eat but a little at dinner, and in summer nothing at all. In the harvest fruits do bring many sicknesses with them; but in winter one may eat his fill.

The sixt rule prescribeth a diet for every complexion. First, he is not to forbear meat which is hot and dry of nature; for there is nothing more hurtful unto him than abstinency. Secondly, for to preserve and keep a good digestion, those meats are to be used which do best agree with every ones complexion; to wit: if any be warme by nature that he feed upon meetly warme meat, and so the like for dry and moyst bodyes. Thirdly, if so be that the heat do increase in any one, then must coole things be taken for it. Fourthly, a melancholick man must feed upon moyst things and somewhat warme, A cholerick, body cold and moyst meats. Fifthly, all that be hot and dry of nature, and do much excercise, for them are all light and subtile meats very hurtful.

The seventh rule doth yeeld a reason of repletion and inanition, whereof is first to be marked, that how much the more you feed an unclean body, so much the more doth the same annoy and hurt it; for when the meat is mixed with the corrupted humors it is then also corrupted; the same happeneth also unto them who have the stomach full of bad humors. Secondly, no man ought so to over charge himself with meat, but that he might feele still some hunger. Thirdly, when one hath filled himself well the one day, although he might the next day feele some hunger, yet he is the next day to forbear as much as is possible, and to sleep in a temperate place. Fourthly, when any accustometh to eat flesh and to drink wine, and doth not labor at all, the same person (to the end he may be discharged) is the oftner to be let blood. Fifthly there, is nothing worse than when one hath fed on strong meats, before they be digested to eat again; for when as the one meat commeth to the other undigested, then do they both spoyle. Sixthly, all they who after dinner take their supper upon it, must then fast out the same. Seventhly, all that do live soberly, and after much eating and drinking do fast again, they live the longer. Eightly, all ryoters and great drinkers sometimes force themselves to vomit, and betake themselves therewith for to fast it out, and to sleep a day-times.

The eight rule comprehendeth the drinks: which first are not to be used so much that the meat come not to swim in the stomach, for thereby will the digestion of the stomach be spoyled. Secondly, albeit some be of opinion, that men ought not to drink at their meat, yet do they speake against all skill; therefore be they not to be heard. For one ought to drink, that the natural heat be not aggravated. Thirdly, when he feeleth good thirst, and when as the heat of the stomach requireth the same, the which never happeneth to such as be hail but when they do either eat or do great labour, and after a long Easterly wind. Fourthly, all sharp new grosse and sweet wines, likewise all they which are

kept in Sulphured caskes, and alſo all Muſt ought to be eſchewed, if ſo be that they be not uſed for medicine. White, cleer, thin, red, and Pallet wine which is not troubled, and of a good taſt, drunken moderately, is very healthy; but to water them much is very noyſome, becauſe that thereby is made gripings in the belly, windineſſe in the ſtomach, tumor in the milts, and ſpoyleth the digeſtion of the ſtomach.

The ninth rule is of the cuſtomes. Firſt, all they that be wont or accuſtomed to eat much, and that of all manner of groſſe meats, ſhall not onely altogether rely on the ſtrength of their ſtomach; for they ſhall not be able to eſcape the harme which they ſhall feele thereby in time to come, becauſe that thereby bad humors are increaſed in the body by little and little. Secondly, the cuſtome of eating once or twice a day, and if that thereby men remain healthy, it is not good to alter it; for that cuſtome (as is wont to be ſaid) is nature it ſelf. Thirdly, good and tolerable cuſtome is to be continued. Notwithſtanding, if one were wont to be drunken every day, or to drinke in the morning faſting, who is it that can commend the ſame: Even ſo is ſobriety to be adjudged of faſting. It is alſo to be underſtood, that all they that be wont to eate twice a day, and would accuſtome themſelves to eat but once a day, that the ſame might cauſe ſome inconvenience unto them, and ſo to the contrary; for the ſtomach cannot tolerate it. Fiftly, all they that uſe to eat at a certain houre, and ſhould ſuddenly alter it, do ſtand in danger that the ſame will not proſper well. Sixtly, although that the accuſtomed meat and drink be ſuch that it be not much to be commended; notwithſtanding it ought not ſlightly to be changed into other meats and drinks which be taken to be healthier..

The tenth rule requireth the dreſſing of meats; to wit, that each meat be boyled, roſted and dreſt as it ought to be, ſo that the ſtomach get no loathing thereby, and the ſame meat may the better be digeſted. Thirdly, delicate ſawces for each meat in particular provoketh one to eate more than is good for him; therefore they ought to be omitted and forborn. Fourthly, ſtinking and putrified meats, be it fruit, fleſh, fiſh, or whatſoever elſe, howſoever they be dreſt, can bring none other but badneſſe with them.

Hereof is now ſufficiently ſpoken for the preſervation of good digeſtion, and how the bad digeſtion of the ſtomach is to be amended. For that what might fall therein, their ſickneſſes following ſufficiently declare.

Of the debility of the ſtomach in general. §. 4.

OF theſe debilities or infirmities of the ſtomach there be three principal accidents, under which are all other comprehended. The firſt, the Grecians doe call *Bradypepſian*, which is ſlowe in digeſtion. The ſecond *Apepſian*, which is when the ſtomach cannot digeſt. The third *Dyſpepſian*, which is when the digeſtion is utterly ſpoyled, and the meate do turn into bad humors, which is when the ſtomach is wholly weakened and departed from his natural actions, and hath loſt the ſame; which default may be provoked through inward and outward cauſes; the outward cauſes be the motions of the mind, as anger, care, ſorrow, rough winds, and groſſe meats which be hard of digeſtion; as old beef, bacon, old, unleavened bread, Haſel nuts, old Cheeſe, cold herbs and fruits whereof hath been uſed much a long time, as Gourds, Melons, Muſhromes and Apples, &c: Item, all exceſſe, windy meats and drinks, potteges, Muſtes, and all overmuch watered wine, or water drunken alone (if it be not of great heat) and to eat before the former meat be digeſted.

Item, blowes or fals in and about the ſtomach, bathing in very hot or cold times; alſo inward and outward heat and cold of nature, great exerciſe, extreme venery which infeebleth much and weakeneth the natural powers. Likewiſe over much ſleep and reſt; alſo to ſtudy too much and ſtraight after meat.

The inward maladies of the ſtomach be theſe; over great heat, cold, drought, moyſture, windes, impoſtumes, and ſuch like; Alſo through the infirmities of other parts; as if out of the braines there do fall any rheumes into the ſtomach, or when the heart beateth, the Liver is obſtructed with any cholerick humors, the Milt with melancholicke humors, and the ſtomach is too much overcharged. When as then the property of each member is weiged, then may eaſily be diſcerned what annoyeth the ſtomach.

If then the debility of the ſtomach be cauſed through heat, that is to be knowne by the ſtomach; alſo there is ever more thirſt with it, and all cold things are welcome to the Patient, and hot things are loathſome.

Or if this debility do come through any ſlimineſſe, then is there heavineſſe in the ſtomach, drought, bitterneſſe, and wambling. When as this proceedeth of colds that may

the

stomach sad: for that the thirst is small, the digestion little, and no desire of meat: meate is well tomd, but cold is tedious unto him. If it be of flegme, it is knowne by dead sleepe, swelling, much spettle, quick passage of the meat through the body, and almost the manner of one that hath taken somewhat he doth belch with a sawce taste, and sad like. But if this infirmity of the stomach do come of any melancholy, then is there also drought, heavinesse, and wambling, with it, the teeth will be loose, the Patient will be plagued with unnatural lust of eating, the Milt doth swell, whereof great heavinesse doth follow of the mind. If so be that the same be caused through drought, then ensueth great thirst thereby, drought of the tongue, binding in the body, unlustinesse, and harme through dry meats. If it be caused through moysture, then is there little thirst with it, but lothfulnesse of all moysture; all drought doth good to the Patient, and there is much spetting with it. Or if these humors be mixed, that is easily to be perceived through the signes aforesaid; like as every accident bringeth with it a proper declaration.

But before we come to any particularities, we will here discover one thing, which is to be observed that it can preserve the stomach from all diseases, and suffereth nothing to remain therein, because it expelleth all humidity and uncleannesse from the stomach, and cleanseth the same: they which use it often get never any more pain in the stomach: it purgeth myrrh, it strengtheneth the heart and head, it cleanseth also the reines and the wombe exceedingly; which are the pils of Amber called *de Succino*, which are thus prepared: Take the white or other Amber and Mastick, of each one quarter of an ounce, aloes five drachmes *Agaricus*, one drachme and a half, right Aristology half a drachme, all being all beaten small and tempered with the syrup of Wormewood, make thereof a masse of Pils, and forme seven Pils of one drachme, take alwayes two or three of them when you go to bed.

Of a weake stomach through cold. §. 5.

Of this is to be noted, that (to speak naturally) the stomach in the Summer and in the harvest is coldest of all, and that by reason that the heat is drawne into the outward members, and therefore is so much the weaker about the stomach. Contrariwise (as we have mentioned before) the stomach in winter and spring time is hottest of all, because the outward cold driveth the heat inward; and therefore then people are to eat so much the more. For in the debilitie of the stomach regard must be had of the times. Now for to write of the coldnesse of the stomach, so it is, that (besides all the foresaid signes) the meat will scarse settle it self in the bottome of the stomach, so that the same otherwhiles after the Patient hath taken it, hath no rest ere and before he hath vomited out the same again undigested; and although it be digested, yet happeneth it slowly. Also if one feel with the hand thereon outwardly, then may it be perceived to be cold there; It is also full of wind which is expelled upwards and downwards. There be yet more other signes here before rehearsed of a cold stomach; when as then the cold of the stomach is small and of no continuance, then is the Patient every morning to take *Trociscos de Rosis* two or three drachmes in one ounce of *Aqua cidonior.* wherein Comin and *Annos* be boyled.

The aforesayd *Trochisci* are thus prepared; Take Roses three drachmes, *Lignum Aloes*, Mastick, Indy *Spica*, Cassy wood, Squinanth and Wormewood, of each one drachme, beaten altogether small, and tempered with old wine, and then formed. These *Trochisci* are very good taken with half an ounce of the spirit of wine.

They are also to be fed with light meats, which have but little moysture and superfluity; Also their meat must be strewed with Galangal, Pepper, Ginger, Cloves, *Annos*, and such like.

Before meat the Patient is to exercise himself well; they that use this water, must alwayes drink more thereof after meat than before. After meat he must sleep much, and drink neat old Renish wine; but eat lesse than he was wont, for the weaknesse of the stomach cannot digest much meat. Meats which be requisite for him, are Muttons, Kids, Hens, Pullets, Foules, Partridges, Feasants, Pigeons, Quailes, and such like; yet rather rosted then boyled and drest with spice; also rere egs and such like. But if this weaknesse of the stomach hath long continued, then may be used one of these Sugar plates following (which one will) one quarter of an ounce or more at once. Or if so be that it be made after the manner of a conserve, then to take one ounce at a time daily with wine, viz. *Diatrion*,

Piperon, Diagalanga, Diantison, Diamenthe, Caryophilatum, Rosata novella, Diacinnamum, Diolibanum, also the warm Dragagant cakes, the which also do strengthen the stomach and procure digestion. But especially is the Confection *Diacinamomum* commended for a blessed medicine for all moist, bad, and spoiled stomachs, as that consumeth all superfluous humidity, helpeth digestion, and strengtheneth the eye-sight, therefore be there two sorts here described.

Confectio Diacinnamomi.

Diacinnamomum.

TAke of the most purest Cinamom, ℥. 15. grosse Cinamom, Cumin, and Electuarie, ana. ʒ. ß. Galangale, ʒ. 7. Cloves, long Pepper, *Cardamomum*, Greins, Ginger, *Lignum Aloes* Mace and Nutmegs, ana. ʒ. 3. Saffron, ʒ. 1. white Sugar, ℥. 3. When you will make Tabulats thereof, then take one pound of Sugar, one ounce and a quarter of the foresaid spices, and seethe the Sugar in Wormwood water as behoveth. Another with Rubarb.

Take excellent Rubarbe one quarter of an ounce, *Angelica*, *Rapontica*, of each half a draph. Cinamom three drach. Nutmegs one drach. and a half, Cardamom, long Pepper, white *Diptamni*, and Zeduary, of each half a drach. Galangale two scruples, Calamus half a drach. Ginger two scruples, Pimpernel roots, Mastick and Cucubes, of each one scrup. Saffron ten grains, Sugar eight ounces, boyl the Sugar with Wormwood water, and cast a plate of Sugar of it.

In like manner is the confection of *Aromaticum rosatum* not only commended for the debility of the stomach, but also for many other diseases, like as here and there the same be discovered, for which purpose it is also prepared after sundry sorts, like as be some here expressed,

Confectio Aromatici rosati.

TAke fifteen drach. of red Roses, Licorice seven drach. Lignum Aloes and yellow Saunders, of each three drach. Cinamom, Mace, Cloves, of each two drach. and a half, *Gummi Arabicum*, and Dragagant, of each one quarter of an ounce, Nutmegs, Cardamom, Galangal, of each one drach. Musk one scrup. Indy, Spica, and Amber two scruples, temper them altogether: and if you will then cast a plate of Sugar of it, take one ounce of these Species, and twelve ounces of Sugar, decoct them in Rose water as is accustomed. Thus is this confection at the Apothecaries made, and not onely for his pleasantnesse, but also for his commodiousnesse used daily; for that besides that it doth strengthen the weak stomach, and comforteth the heart, the brains, the head, and the liver; it driveth out also the bad and superfluous humours of the stomach: it helpeth the digestion of the stomach, and especially in them which be a foot again after a long continued and lingring sickenesse.

Another which is common at Augusta Vindelicorum.

TAke Roses one ounce, Licorice three drachmes, Cinamom two drachmes and a half, Cloves, Mace, of each one drachme and ten grains, red Corral, Cardamom, Galangale, of each half a drachme, *Spec. Diarrhodon Abbatis* one scruple, Indy Spica, long Pepper, of each ten grains, *Lignum Aloes* one drachme and a half, Greins eight grains, shaven Ivory one drachme, Gum, Dragagant, of each three scruples and a half, Nutmegs two scruples, Musk ten grains, Amber one scruple, make a subtile powder thereof. Or if you will have Sugar plates of it, then do as before. Item, take beaten Calamus half an ounce, the juyce of Wormwood as much as is needful to make plates of Sugar: and if you desire to have this strong, then seethe it in Wine, and give it him at two or three times.

Or take Cinamom one quarter of an ounce, Ginger, Nutmegs, Cardamom, Galangal, Cloves, of each one drachme, Mace, Lignum Aloes, of each half a drach. Annise one drach. the skins of Hens Mawes washed with Wine and dryed, three drach. white Sugar 34. ounces; seethe the Sugar in good Wine, and thereof cast Sugar plates.

Another.

Take Cinamom three drach. Galangal one drachme, Sugar six ounces, but boyl them to sugar with one ounce of Rose water, this Confection doth make also good appetite. In like manner you have also in the first part the twelfth Chapter, and 12. S. 4. confection *Diamargariton frigidum* which is very good for this. Item, take Ginger one drach. Cloves and Galangal, of each half a drach. Pepper prepared Coriander, of each one scruple, Annise, Fennel, *Amomi, Spicæ nardi*, Cardamom, of each three scruples and a half, confected Citron pils one ounce, Rose water one ounce and a half, Licorice half a drachme, Sugar-candy half an ounce, Currans one ounce; pownd all that is to be pownded, but keep the Citron pils and Currans very small; then seethe the Sugarcandy, and temper it with ounces of white Sugar with Rose water, and so make tabulats thereof.

Confected Annise seeds are also very good for all debility of the stomach, it helpeth digestion, it expelleth the pain and winde of the stomach, the same doth Fennel seed also. But there is yet a better for this, to wit, confected Cumin and Caraway seed, for that the same have also power to warm the stomach.

Certain Powders for meat.

Take prepared Coriander, and Cinamom, of each half an ounce, long, white and black Pepper, Cloves, Galangale, and Ginger, of each one drach, and a half, Annise, Fennel, of each three drach. Saffron one drach. Sugar as much as all the rest; make a powder thereof, or a confection, which you had rather have. Item, take Cinamom, Mace, Cloves, Pepper, Cypers roots, of each a like much, Sugar as much as you please. Item, take Cinamom two ounces, Nutmegs one drachme, prepared Coriander seeds, Roses, red Coral, of each one scruple, Sugar four ounces; temper them all together: it is of a temperate nature. For this may also things be used, which are described in *Aromatico rosato*, *Electuario de citro*, to powder.

Here follow now certain stomachical medicines against all coldnesse, windinesse, and humidities of the stomach, and all other inward parts of the body: Take Annise, Fennel, and prepared Coriander, ana. ℥. 1. Caraway, ℥. ß. Licorice (beaten small) ℥. 1. Ginger, Calamus ana. ℥. 3. Galangale, Zeduary, of each one drac. and a half. Cloves one drach. temper all together. One may take thereof every morning the weight of two drachmes.

Some do take the four seeds confected with Sugar: others do let them to be all together confected with Sugar, that it might be so much the more pleasant to take. Some temper amongst it Cucumber roots, because that they (besides all their vertues) cause the winds to depart, and dry up bad humours. Item, take Licorice cut small one ounce, Galangal one quarter of an ounce, Calamus half an ounce, Mace three drach. Cinamom and Nutmegs, of each one drach. and a half, confected Annise seeds four ounces, Caraway, Fennel, prepared and confected Coriander, of each two ounces: cut all that is to be cut, and temper all together. Or take cut Licorice, prepared Coriander, Fennel, and Caraway, of each one quarter of an ounce, Gentian, Calamus, and Ginger, of each three drach. Pimpernel roots or the seeds, and Rue seed, of each one drach. cut all that is to to be cut, and temper them all together, as before.

These foresaid stomachical compositions are very commodious for the common people, and also commodious for all the foresaid infirmities, but especially the Gentian doth expel all slimy and venemous matter of the stomach. This is to be used in the morning on tosted bread, mollified or soked in Wine, and to fast three hours afterwards.

In like manner you shall finde before in the first part the 12. Chap. and first §. a good Medicine for the stomach, which may be well added unto these: Calamus and Cinamom tempered together are also special good for this purpose.

This Confection following is also highly commended for all feeble, cold and moist stomachs, as also for the strengthening of the Liver, Milt, Heart, Brains, and whole body: it increaseth Venery, maketh fat and merry, and is also good against the beating of the Heart. It is called *Electuarium de Çitro*, or Confection of Citrons: Take Citron pils, Zeduary, *Doronicum*, Amber and red Coral, of each one drach. Silk-worms nests cut very small, red and white Behen, *Lolium*, Rosemary flowers, and Calamus, ana. ℥. ß. two

Electuarium de citro.

Harts bones, and Pearls two ſcruples, Rubies, Jacints, Smaragdes, Marjoram gentle ſeeds, and Stechas floures, of each one ſcruple, ſmall filed Gold and ſilver, Bugloſſe flowers, Tormentil, red Styrax, burnt Ivory, Baſil ſeed, and long Pepper, of each half a drachme, Muſk, and Amber, of each one ſcruple, dry mints, and [illegible] of each two ſcruples, and a half. Conſerve of Bugloſſe one ounce, white Sugar 8. ounces: ſeeth the Sugar meetly thick in Bugloſſe water, and fo make a confection thereof, [illegible] as ſhall hereafter in the laſt part is declared. It alſo conſumeth obſtructions, for that it ſtrengtheneth and warmeth the ſtomach marvellous well.

Another. Take Ginger one drach. Cloves, Galangal, and Cardamom, of each half a drach. Zeduary, long Pepper, prepared Coriander, of each one ſcruple, Annile, Fennel, Anneſe, Spikenard, Cardamom, and Juice, of each five grains, confected Citron pils [illegible] Raiſins (the ſtones taken out) of each one ounce, Sugar 12. ounces, decoct in roſe-water: cut and beat the Citron pils and Raiſins, and temper the reſt amongſt them: take prepared Coriander and Cinnamom, of each half an ounce, long white and black Pepper, Cloves, Galangal, and Ginger, of each one drachme, Annile, Fennel, of each three drachmes, Saffron one ſcruple, Sugar twelve ounces, make it (as before) all Confection.

Take the whites of 24. Egs ſodden meetly hard, Hony twelve ounces, ſtir them apace a good while together, until it wax thick, afterwards put thereto half a drach. of Zeduary, Cinamom, Cloves, Spica, Licorice, Ginger, Pepper, Galangal, Roſes, and red Saunders, of each one drachme beaten ſmall. Hereafter ſhall be deſcribed in the deſcription of the gravel a conſerve of Horſe-Radiſh-roots, which is alſo very good for a cold ſtomach.

Item, take clarified Hony twelve ounces, clarified juice of Quinces one ounce and a half, Vinegar three ounces, ſeeth all theſe together until they be meetly hard, and temper amongſt it half an ounce of Pepper, Ginger one drach. uſe thereof about the weight of half an ounce alwaies before meals: with this alſo enſuing may be made a plaiſter to lay over the ſtomach, to wit, Mithridate, Treacle, and *Diarrhodon*. They are alſo good for a weak ſtomach, for that they dry and further the digeſtion of the ſtomach, if one take thereof one drach. in a draught of Wine.

All confected things, as roots, Fruits, and all ſuch like, which be warm of nature, are good for a cold ſtomach, as is confected Ginger, which not onely warmeth the ſtomach, but alſo all inward parts, and doth reſtrain the vapors from aſcending and drawing up towards the head. Calamus is paſſing good for a cold ſtomach. Elecampane roots alſo ſtrengthen the ſtomach, help digeſtion, drive out all venemous humidities, and warm the ſame. Confected Nutmegs do conſume all moiſture of the inward members, they do warm and ſtrengthen the ſtomach, and are good for the digeſtion of the ſame. The like do alſo confected Orange pils, Citron pils, roots of *Eringus*, and Walnuts, all which be deſcribed in the laſt part of this our book of Phyſick. The herbs and flowers which be warm by nature, are Eyebright, which is alſo very good againſt all Agues that be cauſed of putrifaction. Conſerve of Betony, and of Gilloflowers do the like alſo, if that one take thereof half an ounce or more daily before meales. They do alſo ſtay the aſcending vapors of the ſtomach, and ſtrengthen the ſame. The like alſo doth conſerve of marjoram, Hyſſop, Piony, Sage, Lavander, Spikenard, and Roſemary.

All aromatical Wines are much commended for this, not onely for the ſtomach, but alſo for other parts to be uſed outwardly. They do alſo take away the inſatiable hunger. Secondly, there can be thought no better thing for the ſtomach than good old ſtrong wine for common drink: But if the ſame cannot be had, then may be uſed in the ſtead thereof, ſome mead, or Hony water. In like ſort alſo *Mixta aromatica*, and other ſirupes more, which ſhall be deſcribed hereafter.

The rich and very dainty perſons may alſo get Hyppocras made, whereof you ſhall finde many kinds deſcribed in the eight part; eſpecially this following called *Stillatitia* uſed much in *Italy*. Take Cinamom, and Cloves, of each one drach. Pepper, Grains, and Galangal, of each one drach. and a half, Cardamom one drach. and a half, one quart of Wine, Sugar or hony, as much as you pleaſe: make Hippocras thereof, as is taught in the eight part.

Amongſt the moſt uſed Wines made of herbs, are theſe enſuing warm of nature. Wine of Eyebright cleanſeth the ſtomach of all humitidy, withſtandeth the Ague, and is of a temperate nature.

The

The Wine of Hyssop warmeth also the stomach, and all inward members. The like do also Rosemary wine, and Marjoram wine, which also provoke appetite. Mastick wine, and Wormwood wine, are very good, especially if there be any Mastick decocted in the common wine. Betony wine, and Gillaflowr wine are very good against windnesse. The herb Bennet wine and Clary wine are also very good for this purpose. Item, take Must as much as you think good, let it work four daies one after another, then put therein a small bag, with the leaves of the right wild Vine, and let them also work together as before, whereof will be a very pleasant wine. You have the like before in the second part, the sixth Chapter, and 5. §. of the panting of the heart through cold, a spiced wine, beginning thus: Take Ginger two ounces, &c. What a vertue also the Elecampane wine hath (which is very common) shall be amongst other discovered in the eight part.

Here you have also some more such like drinks for a proofe. Take Sirupe of Mints, Cinamom water, ℥. 3. ß. oyl of Cloves, 2. drops, oyl of Vitriol, 3. drops, temper all together. The oyl of Vitriol is very sharp and perilous, as is rehearsed in the description thereof.

Take water of Currans four ounces, temper therein as much Saffron as the bignesse of a Pease, drink it luke-warm in the morning, likewise also after noon and after supper: is especial good against all pain of the stomach. The wine may also be tempered with Currans water. Item, seethe Wormwood in wine or water, and drink it: it is very good for poor folks.

Item, in the second Part the fift Chapter and 5. § you shall have a pectoral water, beginning: Take new Figs, &c. which also doth cleanse the stomach from all excessive humidity. In like manner doth also a forcible Capon water in the second Part, the first Chapter, and 4. §. which doth strengthen the stomach and the heart marvellous mightily. Chervel water, Larks spur water mixed, or each apart, strengthen the stomach.

The vital waters and other waters are very requisite also for this, whereof many be described in the eight part.

Of sirupes which do strengthen the stomach. Sirupe of Citron peels doth strengthen and help digestion, sirup of Wormwood doth make appetite, sirupe of Mints is good for diseases of the stomach which proceed of cold, sirupe of Fumitory helpeth all obstruction. *Oxymel Compositum* and of Squils be good to break all tough slime. Ginger and *Calamus* steeped in wine or Vinegar are also very good, if one eat a spoonful thereof. Some do put Gentian roots unto it, for such as can away with bitternesse. Also twice a day you may eat six or eight peeled Almonds, therewith to dry the stomach, and every third day once to eat a few water Cresses tempered with wine. Also if there be any new Figs to be had, then eat four or five in the morning fasting.

Amongst all these foresaid remedies there be many which may be used as well to the old, as the new diseases of the stomach, like as each one may know for to rule himself thereafter.

What then belongeth to the order of life we have spoken thereof at the first: but if need were (whether it be of superfluous moisture, binding the body, or other debility of the stomach) to purge, then must good heed be taken of such things as be contrary to the stomach, and might distemper it: to wit, wilde Saffron seed, Polypody roots, and seeds of *Lapis Christi*, (which are enemies to the stomach, and accounted but Quacksalvers remedies) but in this is providently to be dealt, and after the taking of some preparative potions, he is to use the last mentioned Sirupes, or these ensuing, and such like purgations. Take *Hiera Picra* one ounce, Turbith half a drach. Ginger one scruple, and three ounces of the before mentioned Wines. Make also a potion thereof: also therein may be put into this a little Cinamom for the tastes sake.

Another.

Take of the Confection of *Diacatholicon* five drach. *Diaphenicon* two drach. sirup of Treos and Rubarbe, of each half a drachme, Spica two grains: both beaten small, temper them with *Decoctione Fructuum* (which is described before in the third Chapter 5. §.) wherein some Spikenard is decocted. If you had rather use pills, then take pills *De Agarico*, *Hiera Picra*, or *Indæ*.

Item, other that be lesse laxative, and do strengthen the stomach. Take *Mirobalani Chebuli*, and *Indi*, Rubarbe, Cinamom, Cardamom, Cloves, and Galingale, of each one

one druth. Aloe one drach. and a half: theſe being beaten ſmall togeather, temper them with the juice of Mints wherein *Agaricus* hath been four and twenty hours ſteeped: of theſe pils may one ſwallow two or three morning and evening, eſpecially if the pain of the ſtomach have long endured. Theſe following do ſtrengthen and aſſwage the pain of the ſtomach: Take *Pillula Alophangina* one drachme, *Opii* and Bevercod, of each one grain, make five pils thereof with *Oxymel*. Item, take waſht Aloe one ſcruple, and make two pils thereof; take them one hour before meat, and eſpecially before that he be purged.

Pils which will not purge, but onely ſtrengthen.

TAke beaten Maſtick and the juice of Wormwood, of each a like quantity, let it covered cloſe in a warm place until it be dry, that one may make pils of it, whereof every day two hours before noon, you may take one pill.

Now we will declare what is to be uſed outwardly for ſuch bad ſtomaches: for which we have expreſſed many plaiſters, as hereafter do follow. Take Pitch, and Roſin, of each one ounce, Maſtick, Mints and Cloves, of each half an ounce, *Trochiſci de Bolo*, and *De Terra ſigillata*, Amber, Bloodſtone, Dragons blood, *Hypociſtis* and Mommy, of each one drachme, *Gallia Muſcata* and red Styrax, of each half a drachme, the juice of Quinces, as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter with it. This is not onely good for the ſtomach, but is alſo much better for that flux which cannot be ſtopt or ſtayed.

Another. Take red Styrax, Spica, Squinant, Wormwood, Calamus, Maſtick, of each a like much, temper them with old wine and the juice of Quinces unto a plaiſter, and lay it on the ſtomach. Item, take Maſtick, Galangale, Zeduary, Ameos, Mints and Wormwood, ana. ℥ ß. Turpentine and Wax, ana. ℥. β. temper them with the oyl of Maſtick to a plaiſter.

Or take oyl of Maſtick, oyl of Wormwood, of each one ounce, oyl of Mirtles half an ounce, Cloves, Cinamom, Galangale, of each half a drach. Lignum Aloes and Ginger, of each one ſcruple, vinegar one ſpoonful, Wax as much as will ſuffice. Another. Take Bayberries and Maſtick, ana. ℥. 1. Cinamom, Lignum Aloes, Cypers roots, Saunders and Cucubes, ana. ℥. ß. Mints, Wormwood and Roſes, ana. ℈. 4. Spica, Mace, ana. ℈. 1. *Gallia Muſcata*, ℥. 1. Galangale, *Calamus* Comin, Frankincenſe, ana. ℈. 3. *Laudanum* one quarter of an ounce, Roſin and oyl of Maſtick, as much as ſufficeth to make a plaiſter: then ſpread it on a piece of leather, and ſo lay it upon the ſtomach.

Item, take Wormwood and Roſes, of each one handful, Mints half a handful, *Calamus*, *Lignum Aloes*, ana. ℥. 1. ß. yellow Saunders, Galangale, and Nutmegs, ana. ℥. ß. waſht Turpentine with wine, ℥. 2. Maſtick, ℥. 3. and oyl of Maſtich, as much as is needful to make a plaiſter.

Another. Take the juices of Mints, Wormwood and Marjoram, of each two ounces, Frankincenſe and Maſtick, of each half an ounce, Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, of each two drach. temper them with Turpentine until they be thick, as a plaiſter ought to be, then ſpread it on leather, and cover it with red Syndal: you may alſo temper a little Laudanum amongſt it, and ſo lay it thereon. Item, take Mints and Wormwood, of each one drachme and a half, red Coral half a drachme, Laudanum three drachmes, Wax an ounce, Turpentine half an ounce. Firſt, melt the Wax, Turpentine and Laudanum, and then mingle the reſt amongſt it. Item, take the uppermoſt leaves of Wormwood, Mints, Roſes, of each half an ounce, Cinamom, Galangale, Mace, Nutmegs, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one drachme, Maſtick one quarter of an ounce, Frankincenſe one drach. and a half, and Marmalade three ounces: pownd all ſmall which are to be pownded, and afterwards temper the reſt in it with Malmſey. This ſo tempered, ſpread it on leather (as is ſaid) and ſprinkle it with beaten Cloves and Maſtick, of each half an ounce; then with oyl of Mints make a plaiſter thereof.

Yet another: Take Maſtick, Cinamom, Cloves, Violets, *Spica*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Gallia Muſcata*, *Calamus*, and Galangal, ana. ℥. 1. ß. red and white Saunders, prepared Coriander and Sorrel ſeeds, ana. ℥. 1. Laudanum, ℥. ß. boyled Pitch (as is taught in the Introduction) ℥. 1. Muſk two grains, and then make it to a plaiſter with oyl of Maſtick.

Another; Take Maſtick three ounces, Galangale, *Ameos*, Zeduary, of each half a drachme, dryed Mints and freſh Wormwood, of each one drac. Turpentine half an ounce,

and

wound them all together, and temper them with the oyl of Maſtick unto a ſalve, and ſpread it then on Fuſtian.

The plaiſter of Bayberries, which is called at the Apothecaries, *De Baccis Lauri*, is alſo ſpecially commended for a cold ſtomach, it is made as followeth; Take Frankincenſe, Maſtick and Myrrhe, of each half an ounce, new pownded Bayberries one ounce, Cipres roots, Coſtus roots, of each three quarters of an ounce, clarified Hony eight ounces: ſeethe it till it be thick, and then temper all the other things amongſt it, and ſo make a plaiſter thereof. This foreſaid plaiſter is not onely good againſt all pains of the ſtomach, but alſo for the bowels, for the liver, kidnies, bladder, belly, and all other parts of the body, where is any pain through cold winds. And how much more Cipres roots you put unto it, ſo much the ſtronger do you make it to expell the winds, and eſpecially it is very good for the dropſie called *Tympanites*, a Tympany.

Item, take Cloves, Maſtick, Spica, Galangal and long Pepper, of each one quarter of an ounce, Wax, Laudanum, Ammoniacum, of each one drach. oyl of Spikenard as much as ſufficeth for a plaiſter.

Here followeth now all that is to be outwardly applyed upon the Stomach.

TAke a great Onion and make it hollow, and put therein Saffron flowers about one drach. and a half; this Onion muſt then be woond wet in towe, and afterwards roſted in aſhes.

This being done, you are to make it clean, and ſtamp it to pap; lay thereof upon a cloth, the thickneſſe of a finger, and then lay it upon the pit of the ſtomach, and as often as it is cold, take another again which is warm. This is paſſing good for a cold ſtomach.

Alſo you may ſeethe Maſtick in wine, and of this Wine muſt you lay upon the ſtomach with a cloth, as hard as you can ſuffer it.

Item, unwaſhed Sheeps wool kemmed muſt you let ſoke upon thick red Wine, wherein is oyl of Spikenard, and ſo laid warm upon the ſtomach, the ſame taketh away the pain of the ſtomach. Or ſteep the foreſaid wool in oyl of Maſtick, oyl of Wormwood, or oyl of Spike, then wring it out, and ſo lay it very warm upon the ſtomach.

Another; Take Ginger, Mints, Southernwood, Coſtus roots, to wit the ſweet root, Wormwood, wild Thyme, and Maſtick, of each half an ounce, Frankincenſe one quarter of an ounce Spikenard, Cloves, Lignum Aloes, Caſſy wood, of each half drach. let all theſe ſeethe together in nine ounces of Sallad oyl and three ounces of good Wine, untill the wine be clean conſumed; afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth, and then lay it upon your ſtomach like as is before ſaid.

For this is alſo very good Pellitory of the wall, with oyl of Spike, of Maſtick fryed, one drachme, of Saffron put thereto: likewiſe a Swallowes neſt boyled in Wine untill it be clean through mollified and diſſolved, and ſo laid warm upon the ſtomach. Or take water of Mints, Wormwood, and Malmſey, of each ſix ounces, Cloves, Mints, Cinamom, Lignum Aloes, Galangal, of each half a drachme, temper them all together, and make a piece of felt wet therein, and ſo lay it warm upon the ſtomach, like as is taught before.

Item, lay upon the ſtomach a young naked child, or in ſtead of him a young naked Dog; they do both of them warm the ſtomach, and ſtrengthen the ſame. The ſame doth alſo a Cuſhion of fine feathers: likewiſe alſo a warm hand holden upon the ſtomach. It is alſo found good to rub the ſtomach with vital waters. One may alſo make a cloth wet therein, and ſo lay it warm upon it.

Bags to be laid upon the Stomach.

TAke Mints, Wormwood, wild Vine leaves, Roſemary and Pennyroyal, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloves four ſcrup. Nutmegs, Mace, Maſtick, of each two ſcrup. Galangal half a drachme, Roſes and prepared Coriander, of each two ſcruples, Galia Muſchata one drachme, beat them all together groſſe, and make a bag with it.

Another; Take Wormwood, Mints, wild Vine leaves, and white Mints, of each one drach. Cloves one drachme and a half, Nutmegs and Mace, of each two ſcruples, Galangal

Galangal half a drachme, prepared Coriander and Roſes, of each two ſcruples and a half, Maſtick, Cinamom, Calamus. of each one ſcruple, Gallia Muſcata four ounces, Laudanum one quarter of an ounce; make therbof with red ſilk a bag to apply unto the ſtomach.

Or take this next following; Take Lignum Aloes, Wormwood, white Mints, Betony, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Cipres roots, Coſtus roots, Caraway, Fennel, Roſes, and Brionie, of each one drach. Jujubes, Mace, Cinamom, Cloves, Spica, Nutmegs, white and long Pepper, of each half a drachme, Calamus, Caſſy wood, and red Corral, of each two ſcrup. this being all beaten groſſe, make a bag thereof for the ſtomach.

Oyntments and Oyles for all cold Stomachs.

TAke Oyl of Maſtick, Wormwood, Spikenard, of each one ounce, Cloves, Maſtick, Ameos, of each one drachme, beat them well together, and make an oyntment thereof.

Item, take oyl of Maſtick, and of Wormwood, of each one ounce, oyl of Myrtles half an ounce, Cloves, Cinamom, and Galangal, of each half a drachme, Lignum Aloes and Ginger, of each one ſcruple; make an oyntment of it with a little Vinegar.

Or take Roſes five drachmes, Wormwood one quarter of an ounce, Spica one drach. Cloves two ſcruples, long Pepper half a drachme, Maſtick, rumpled Mints, of each one drachme, theſe being well beaten, then take oyl of Maſtick three ounces and an half, oyl of Roſes ℥.6.ß. Wax ℥.1 ß. (but the oyl and the wax muſt be leyſurely molten together) and then temper the reſt together unto an oyntment, wherewith you are to anoint all the breaſt very warm. And if it be in winter, and that the party muſt go abroad, then lay upon the breaſt anointed two or three leaves of writing Paper, for it preſerveth natural heat, and defendeth the ſtomach from all outward cold.

Another; Take diſtilled oyl of Maſtick, or in the ſtead thereof oyl of Camomil, Wormwood, Mints, Quinces, and Roſes, of each one ounce and a half, Mace, Maſtick, Nutmegs, Cloves, Cardamom, Grains, Galangal, and Lignum Aloes, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Corral, prepared Coriander, Roſes, Mints, Wormwood and Camomil, of each two drach. and a half, crums of new Rie bread which have been ſteeped 24. hours in ſharpe Vinegar four ounces; take them out and beat them to pap; afterwards melt three ounces and a half of Wax in oyl, and then temper it unto a ſalve.

Another which is uſed in Italy; Take oyl of the bloſſoms of Orenges one ounce, powder of Benſeine one drach. and a half, Cloves, Mace, of each half a drach. Laudanum one quarter of an ounce, temper them all to a ſalve.

Another; Take oyl of Quinces, of Spikenard and Maſtick, of each two ounces and a half, red Styrax, Squinant, Cipres roots, red and white Corral, Roſes, Maſtick, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloves, wild Vine leaves, of each half a drachme, Wax and Roſin, as much as is needful to make a ſalve. This doth ſtrengthen the ſtomach, withſtandeth the wambling, and is alſo good for all humidity of the ſtomach.

Item, take oyl of Maſtick, Spike, oyl of Quinces, of each three ounces, oyl of Wormwood one ounce and a half, Maſtick, Cloves, Nutmegs, wild Vine leaves, Mints and Myrtle ſeeds, of each one quarter of an ounce, Wormwood, Roſes, red and white Corral, of each one drachme with a little Wax and make an unguent thereof.

Another; If one can get none other thing, then take green or dry Wormwood, ſeethe it in Sallad oyl with a little Wine, untill the wine be conſumed, and anoint therewith the ſtomach.

Oyl of Maſtick is thus prepared; Take oyl of Roſes ſix ounces, good wine four ounces, of groſſe beaten Maſtick one ounce and a half: let this ſeethe together untill the Wine be decocted:

This oyl doth not onely ſtrengthen the ſtomach, but alſo the brains, ſinewes, joynts, and the Liver, aſſwageth all pain and all ſwellings in all the parts of the body.

To make Oyl of Quinces.

This oyl of Quinces is alſo (next to the oyl of Maſtick) very highly commended, for it is coſtly and good for all debilities of the ſtomach, it allayeth all wambling, ſtrengtheneth the digeſtive vertue, and alſo the knewes, &c. and it is thus prepared: Take Quinces that be yet ſcant ripe, cut them with the pils in peeces and take out the ſeeds; then take juice of Quinces, of the one as much as the other in a glaſſe, and powre into it as much oyl as there is of the juice, but rather unctue oyl then other; this being bounden tight, then ſet the glaſſe the ſpace of fifteen dayes in the Sun, afterwards let it boyl two or three houres in water, and then wring it hard through a cloth; this muſt be done three or four times one after another, and ſo kept cloſe ſtopped.

For a concluſion of this weakeneſſe of the ſtomach through cold, ſome do uſe this brief mean. Firſt, they do ordaine a Cliſter made in this manner following; take Linſeed and freſh Butter, of each ſix ounces, of well waſhed Turpentine diſſolved in Wine or any decoction (wherein be much Annis ſeed ſodden) one ounce; let the patient alſo drink much of ſome decoction of Cloves, Galangal, Cinamom, Balſam fruits, and Calamus: lay then laſtly this plaiſter following upon the ſtomach. Take Rue one ounce, Wormwood four ounces; this being beaten together, temper it with hony, and then lay it warm upon the ſtomach.

Of the debility of the ſtomach through heat. §. 6.

If ſo be that this weakneſſe of the ſtomach and bad digeſtion of the ſame be with great thirſt, without appetite, with ſour foul beſchings, and with great drought of the mouth, it is then very eaſily to be adjudged that the ſame is cauſed through heat. If there be Choler mingled amongſt it, then followeth wambling and parbreaking, and that after the taking of light meats, as Eggs, Fowles and other good fleſh. The mouth is bitter, and ſometimes there cometh a mooring pain; he deſireth all cold things, and all which is hot goeth againſt him. The digeſtion of the ſtomach is ſtrong, if the heat endure not too long, which otherwiſe ſpoileth the ſame. Theſe are the ſigns of the Gall or *Bilis*, which troubleth or inflameth the ſtomach, and (as is ſaid) moleſteth the ſame with vomiting and a ſharpe ſcowring. Now for to remedy this pain of the ſtomach, it is to be marked whether the ſick perſon were not wont to eaſt, and if he were, he is then to uſe this ſirupe, which is neceſſary for it; Take the juice of foure Quinces eight ounces, white ſugar four ounces, Vinegar two ounces, ſeethe them to a ſirupe; this ſirupe doth not only cool unnatural heat of the ſtomach, but alſo ſtrengthen it for to effect her work, and expelleth the windineſſe of the ſame. For this is alſo very commodious the ſirupe of Verjuice, or *De Agreſta*, which doth alſo the ſame.

Item, the ſirupe of Pears, Peaches, and eſpecially of Apples, which is deſcribed in the ſecond part, the 6. Chapter and 4. §. which be alſo theſe following that be made of the juice of Bayberries, Sorrel, Roſes, water Lillies, Lemons, Citrons, Myrtle ſeeds, and the juice of Pomgranats. Item, *Oxyſaccharum*, Julep of Roſes and Violets, ſirupe of Orenges are alſo highly commended for this, which be every where deſcribed.

Item, ſirupe of Roſes laxative, *Oxymel*, ſirupe of Endive and of Vinegar or theſe following; Take Endive, ſmall Endive, and Lettice, of each one handfull, the ſeeds of Melons, Cucumbers, Gourds and Pompions, of each one quarter of an ounce, Wormwood one handfull, Roſes, Violets, of each one ounce, peeled Barly one handful, the juice of Pomgranats four ounces, Vinegar three ounces, Sugar as much as you think good, make a ſirupe thereof.

Item, Hony of Roſes expelleth all cholerick matter from the ſtomach, and doth ſtrengthen the ſame; and if it be needfull to uſe any purgation for this, then ſhall you find good inſtruction for it where we ſhall treat of *Cholera*, but chiefly is Caſſy commended for it, becauſe her cooling operation is very fit and meet for the ſtomach, for it cleanſeth the ſame from all moiſture, and therefore are the confections of Caſſy and Manna which be deſcribed hereafter in the binding of the body, eſteemed very meet.

Item, the Tabulates *Diarurbith cum Rhabarbaro* and a certain powder more, which

is expressed in the same place. Amongst the simples are Sene leaves the very principal, which have a property to purge the hot Cholers; the like doth also Aloe, Coloquint, the juice of wild Cucumbers, *Epythimum*; and twenty or thirty seeds of *Palma Christi*, which be very good, but that they be somewhat prejudicial to the stomach.

Agaricus is somewhat too strong, for if the same be not well prepared, then is it venome in the body. Lawrel and the flowers of *Mezereon* be exceeding sharps and perilous to be taken. The Polopay root is very safe, but yet somewhat hurtful to the stomach. The yellow Mirobalans above all other do purge *Cholers*, and loose very necessarily. There be of such laxative simples many more, but we have onely here recited here these simples for example, whereby to choose that which liketh him best, and to forbear that which is to be eschewed. When he hath purged, then it is counselled by divers that this potion following be taken after it. Fumitory, Violets, Wormwood, of each one ounce, let these seeth so long in water, until about four ounces do remain of it. You are then to steep in this decoction one quarter of an ounce of yellow Mirobalans the space of a whole night, and being wrung out, then are you to temper amongst it one drach. or one quarter of an ounce of *Hiera Picra*, and in the morning early to drink it warm.

The order of Dyet.

THe patient is to be sustained with such meats as be somewhat sowre, and that have also an astringent vertue, as flesh boyled with unripe Pomgranats, or for lacke for his meat Verjuice, wine of Pomgranats, juice of Orenges, Lemons, and Prunes of Damask, Lettice, Purslain, both of them made sowre with Vinegar, and so used.

Barly pap, Quinces, Rosted Pears, or stued Pears strewed with Fennel or Annis seed, eaten after meals, do shut up the stomach; The like do also wilde dry Pears.

Before in the first part, the twelfth Chapter, and first §. you have an especial good stomachical powder which is very good for all pains of the stomach which proceed of *Choler*.

Item, take Roses ten drach. burnt Ivory three drach. prepared Coriander seed five drach. give him half an ounce thereof with sirupe of Pomgranats, or sirupe of Quinces. For this, are also good these confections following, as Triasantalon, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Rosata novella, and Aromaticum rosatum which is wholly of a temperate nature.

Confected things which do cool the stomach.

THe Conserve of Raspes and of Lettice are both of them good for to cool the stomach; they make also a desire for meat, and do quicken the appetite. Musk pears do stay the vaporing or fuming up into the head. All preserved Cherries, Barberries, Cicory roots, unripe Grapes, for what they be good, and how they are to be confected, shall sufficiently be taught in the last part. Item, take new conserve of Roses four ounces, sirupe of Apples as much as you please; temper them all together, and take half an ounce fasting in the morning. Or take Mastick one drach. Roses burnt Ivory and Mints, of each half a drach. prepared Coriander one quarter of a ounce, red Coral one drach. and a half, Marmalad six ounces; make these with the sirupe of Apples a little soft, and stamp them all together in a mortar, and mix them all well together. Marmalades without spice (whereof be divers described in the last part) be also good remedies for the stomach, they stay the Flix, strengthen all inward parts, and make appetite. The conserves of Peach blossoms is also good. Conserves of Roses delay the sharpnesse of the cholerick matter which causeth vomit. Conserves of Cicory are also made for this.

Of the Trochisks these are special good, *De Spodio*, *Diarrhodon*, *De Camphora*, *De Barberis*.

And as touching his drink, he must eschew all strong Wine, and drink a smal thin Wine. Cherry Wine cooleth and moisteneth the stomach and all inward parts through his temperate nature. Julep of Violets, and all other cooling potions may be used. Hereafter in the Treatise of Melancholy, there shall be described a very pretious Wine, beginning thus: Take pickt Currans, &c. which may be also very commodiously used for this.

Now for to come to the things which one may use outwardly, we will speak first of the plaisters, and describe some of them.

Take the juice of Plantain and Rose-water, of each six ounces, Vinegar one ounce, red

red and white Saunders, red Coral, and prepared Coriander, of each one quarter of an ounce, Quince kernels, Sorrel seed, of each one drach. this being beaten small together, make a plaister thereof with Barly meal, yet let it not be too hard, and lay it on the neck of the stomach.

Another. Take red and white Saunders, Sorrel seed, bay berries, Quince kernels, and the juice of Quinces, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Mastick one ounce; pownd all that is to be pownded, seethe it by a mild fire or on hot ashes untill the juice be wasted, then strain it through a cloth, and make thereof a soft plaister with Wax as much as is needful for it. This plaister following is cooling and astringent.

Take Roses, burnt Ivory, Mastick, Coriander, Myrtle kernels, and the juice of Sloes, *Sandaraca* and Dragons blood, of each half a drach. Laudanum one quarter of an ounce, *Galia Muschata* half a drach. Pitch and Rosin, of each three quarters of an ounce, Wax as much as is needfull for a plaister; let all these be molten together in ℥.4. of the juice of Quinces, and seethe it slowly untill all the juice be consumed, and it will be like to a soft plaister: it strengtheneth the weak stomach of heat, of Cholera, and of an Ague; it quencheth thirst, stayeth excessive vomiting, scowring, and also the pain of the stomach.

Out of all the foresaid things may you make salves with oyl of Roses, Violets, Quinces, and Mastick (which you please) untill that the salve be soft enough. In like manner is the salve of Roses also especially good for the heat of the stomach. The stomach is also to be anointed with this oyl following; as the oyl of Quinces, oyl of Mastick, and chiefly when there be Vine tendrels decocted therein.

Of Bags, Applications, and Fomentations for the stomach.

TAke red and white Saunders, red and white Coral and Citron seed, of each one drach. prepared Coriander one drach. and a half; these being all stamped together grosly make a bag thereof.

Take Rosewater, Endive water, and water of Mints, of each twelve ounces, the juice of foure Quinces two ounces, of red and white Saunders, prepared Coriander, red Coral, and Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, Wormwood half a handfull, wherewith you may foment, and put the decocted herbs in a bag, and so apply them to the stomach.

Of the debility of the stomach through drought. §. 7.

WHeresoever is any weakness of the stomach caused through drought (whereof hath been spoken at the first) it causeth great thirst drought of the tongue, and falling away of the whole body, as also contrarywise they find ease when they find moist things. In this disease is the patient to drink Milk and Barly water, for the same do cool, moisten, and cause the body to increase again. In like manner he is also to be fed with moistning herbs, as Lettice, Mallowes, and such like: also with Veal, Lamb, River fish, Eggs drest with wine are also good for him, for that they yeeld good nourishment. Item, there be very good and commodious Pullet broths drest with cooling herbs, Capon water, Marchpanes, and other things more, which before in the Consumption or *Phthisis* in the second part the fifth Chapter and 22. §. and afterwards in the sixth part of the Ague *Hectica*, are expressed, all which be prepared for to moisten. He shall also oftentimes bath before meals and after meals, but a good while after. His drink must be small wine. Rest is good for him, and much motion is hurtfull, he is further to rule himself in all things as for the Consumption, and as is taught for Ague *Hectica*. But in case there strike great heat into it, then use the salve of Roses and Saunders, the cooling salve *Galeni*, oyl of Roses, of Violets and Waterlillies, and such like. But this plaister following is highly commended: Take new sliced Gourds, Purslain and Willow leaves, of each two ounces, white Saunders one quarter of an ounce, Camphire one drach. Rosewater as much as is needfull: temper them and lay them upon the stomach. You may lay also a bladder of cold water upon the stomach.

But this is here to be noted, that the cooling things must be laid upon it in such manner, that the places adjacent about it, to wit, the Midriffe, the Liver, and the Milt, may not thereby be harmed, and lose their natural action; for which, it is also advised that when the same is perceived, that the same place be anointed with warm oyl.

Of the scalding in the throat, and of the hartburning. §. 8.

ALthough this hartburning be causèd diversly, yet nevertheleſſe doth the ſame come alwayes for the moſt part through heat, or through aſcending vapors, through ſtrong wine drunken, Spices, fat meats, and ſuch like, againſt which theſe things inſuing are to be uſed; to wit, conſerve of Betonie, Gilloflowers, and the wine of both theſe: Alſo the firſt ſtomachical medicine deſcribed above in the 5. §. Some Marmalade, and preſerved ſowre Peares. Some do hang about their necke for this diſeaſe the herb Agrimony. Others do hold in their mouth the ſtone in the Carps head. Others do eat five or ſix Peach kernels, or bitter Almonds upon it, &c. of which every one may chooſe that which liketh him beſt.

Of inappetency or loſt appetite, and whereby it may be remedied. §. 9.

OF all the foreſaid debilities of the ſtomach, like as alſo in the diſeaſes incident unto it, the Appetite commonly is taken away, except the infirmity of the unnatural hunger. Yea, there is ſometimes ſuch lothing of meats therewith, that they cannot abide to ſmell them. The cauſes thereof are divers; the firſt is heat, wherein the Patient hath very ſmall deſire to eat but great liſt to drinke, with drouth of the tongue, and lothing of all warme things; if it be mingled with *Cholera*, then is there alwayes bitterneſſe with it, with a wambling. Or if ſo be that there be any *Phlegma* with it, then doth the Patient alwayes find ſome kind of brackiſhneſſe in the mouth.

Secondly, this may alſo be cauſed through cold, whereby the conſtringent vertue and taſte of the ſtomach are deſtroyed. Theſe are the ſignes; ſmall thirſt, much ſpettle and other filth about the mouth of the ſtomach; the Patient doth feele heavineſſe or pinching. Otherwhiles he parbraketh ſome *Phlegma*, be it ſweet or ſowre he ſhall feel it in the mouth. All warme things are welcome unto him; cold things go againſt his ſtomach. This diſeaſe may alſo be well cauſed by eating too much cold fruit, or drinking of water. Thirdly, the hot Agues do alſo take away the appetite. Fourthly, impoſtumes of the ſtomach, of the liver, and of the milt, which be not with out an Ague. Theſe may be perceived by ſwelling and pain of the ſame parts, whoſe remedies are taught in the deſcription of the ſelfe ſame members. Fiftly, this is alſo cauſed through a tough ſlimy matter which lyeth in the mouth of the ſtomach, and there doth take away the appetite. The ſignes of them are theſe: if one do caſt up again all that he hath eaten, be it ſowre, ſweet, hot, cold, like as Olives, and ſuch like. And albeit they do remain in the ſtomach, yet do they make great pain and diſtention. Sixtly, there appeareth a certain debility of the retentive power in the fleſh, in the ſmall veins, in the muſcles, and other members, whereby (as behooveth) they cannot draw their nouriſhment unto them, ſo that the ſtomach may alſo thereby bear the leſſe meat. The ſigns whereof are theſe; the Patient is meetly deſirous of meat, but when the ſame is ſet before him then can he eate but very little of it. Seventhly, it is ſometimes cauſed, for that melancholy very ſlowly or nothing at all hath his courſe towards the mouth of the ſtomach, which was wont there to excitate appetite to meat; which may well be perceived hereby, if he be given to eat ſowre meats; by which meanes the appetite partly returneth again. The cauſe may alſo be wormes, whereof ſhall be ſpoken hereafter. Ninthly, it may well happen for that the Melancholy too abundantly runneth towards the mouth of the ſtomach, whereof the ſigns be vomiting of melancholick humors, and ſowreneſſe of the mouth, black colour of the face, debility of the ſtomach and heart. The tenth cauſe is, when women begin to bear, whereof the ſigns be ſufficiently knowne. Eleventhly, the over hot time and ayr may likewiſe cauſe the ſame, like as doth alſo exceeding cold and much watching; which cauſes and ſigns may be learned of the Patient, & demanded of them that do tend him. Twelfthly, through great vexations of the mind, as anger, ſorrow, care, anguiſh, great joy deſire of Venery, which cannot be obtained, as well as that which may be obtained. Thirteenthly, this loſt appetite may be cauſed through any corruption in the ſtomach, which may be perceived through ſtench of the breath, or through the ordure. This is alſo otherwhiles cauſed by reaſon of the ſcowring called *Diarrhea* with intolerable ſtench. There be alſo many more cauſes: but the above ſaid ſhall be ſufficient unto us for this time. Now we will proceed to prepare remedees for thoſe loſt appetites, whereby otherwiſe, people might periſh at length.

Firſt if ſo be that this loſt appetite proceedeth through heat and *Choler*, then is the Patient to be brought to vomiting, for that by reaſon that the matter is light and liquid, therefore may it eaſily be expelled, and for to prepare for the ſame, let the patient take *Oxyſaccharum* and ſyrup of Vinegar which ſhall immediately hereafter be deſcribed, and thereupon uſe this mild and gentle purgation.

Take Fomitory and Wormewood, of each two ounces, put them in water until that there remain about four ounces, then ſteep therein one ounce of groſſe beaten Myrobalans one whole night, afterwards wring them well out, and ſo give it to him.

Alſo one may purge with the confection of *Hamech* and Rubarb. This ſyrup following is very much welcome unto the ſtomach; Take the juyce of Apples that be ſomewhat ſowre, and the juyce of Quinces, of each eight ounces both well clarified, then ſeethe them together with eight ounces of Sugar unto a ſyrup, whereof every morning and evening give him two ounces at one time. Alſo Marmalade may be uſed alone. But if you would have it ſtronger, then take eight ounces of the foreſaid confection, and temper it with a little wine; and when the ſame is a little cold again, then mix amongſt it one ounce of beaten Roſes, *Species Trifandali*, half an ounce, *Spica*, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each one quarter of an ounce. For this be alſo good, Services, Pears, Syrup of Mulberies, ſyrup of Vinegar, *Oxyſaccharum*, *Oxymel*, confected Coriander, Melon ſeed, and alſo that is ſowre.

On the outſide ſhall you apply as followeth: Take a Quince pear, cut it very ſmall and take out the coare, and let the ſame boyle in oyl of Roſes, afterwards beat it very ſmall, and temper therewith the ſeeds of Butchers broome, Barberies, Roſes, and red Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, the Pils of Graps three drachmes beaten ſmall, then ſpread it on leather, and weare it on your ſtomach.

Vinegar eaten with Lettice is alſo very good; ſo are alſo Quinces, a little Sorrel, Verjuice, Limons, the juyce of Citrons, Orenges, ſowre Apples, Pomegranates, and Mulberies that are, and all, yet ſcant ripe. Alſo all they that have loſt their appetite of eating, muſt beware of all fat fleſh and meat, that is dreſt with much oyl and butter.

You ſhall have alſo a further reſolution or adviſe in the ſixt part, where we ſpeake and diſcourſe of Agues, what is needful to be done for the defect of the appetite.

But if ſo be that this loſt appetite do proceed of cold, then are theſe preparatives to be uſed. The ſyrup of Citron pils, Wormewood and Mints, of each half an ounce, tempered in Barley water, and ſo drunken four or ſix mornings one after another.

For to purge uſe *Pillulæ ſtomachicæ*, *Hiera Picra* ſharpned with a little of the *Troſciſci Alandali*; this is paſſing good if one have a fowle matter ſtinking in the ſtomach. Afterwards he may take any of theſe confections enſuing, *Diacymimum*, *Aromaticum Roſatum*, *Diatrion*, *piperion*, *Diacalamintha*, and ſometimes ſome Treacle; alſo Marmalade with ſpices, Green Ginger, and *Chebuli*; the ſtomachical powder which is deſcribed in the firſt part, twelfth chapter, and firſt §.

In like manner alſo the *Salſamentum Regium*, which is thus made; Take Fennel and Salſamentum Regium, Parſley ſeed, Cinnamon, Cloves, of each a like quantity; let them ſeethe well in Vinegar, then put unto the broth a good deal of Sugar, and ſo uſe it for all other meat in ſtead of ſauce; This hath an eſpecial operation to quicken the apetite.

For this may alſo be uſed Onions, Garlick, Spices, confected Cinamon, and Annis ſeeds, roſted and ſtued Peares ſtucke full of Cloves. And this ſalve for the ſtomach may alſo be made thus; Take Sallade oyl ſix ounces, Mints, Wormewood, Marjoram gentle, and Marſh Mints, of each one ounce, Nutmegs, Cipres nuts, of each one quarter of an ounce, Annis, Fennel, Cloves, of each half a drachme, white wine ſix ounces; cut and beat all groſſe together, and ſo let it ſeethe until the wine be decocted away; afterwards wring it out hard through a cloth, and annoint the place therewith warme. Afterwards ſtrew this powder following upon it; Take Frankincenſe and Maſticke, of each half an ounce, Cypres roots one quarter of an ounce, Mints, Wormewood, and Nutmegs, of each one drachme, and then apply unwaſht ſheeps wooll upon it meetly warme.

Foraſmuch not onely here but in other places more, the ſyrup of Vinegar is ſpecified: therefore we will here deſcribe it after two ſorts, like as the ſame is uſed at the Apothecaries: the firſt is called *Syrupus Aceteſus ſimplex*, and is thus prepared. Take good ſharp Vinegar three ounces, Sugar five ounces, clarify it with the white of an egge, and let the vineger be decocted to a ſyrup. This ſyrup is very good againſt all corrupted humors: for it doth attenuate all thick ſlime, and cauſeth all tough matter to avoid, ſoftneth

the

the hard, and expelleth all bad humors: it openeth all obstructions, and provoketh urin; in fine, it is good for all bad corruptions of the body, and is also very good for all pestilent Feavers, for it quencheth the thirst.

The other syrup of Vinegar do the Physitians call *Syrupus Acetosus compositus*, or *Acetosus cum Radicibus*, and is made thus; Take fair well water about one quart, the roots of Fennel, Smallage and Endive well cleansed, of each one ounce and a half, Annis, Fennell, and Smallage seeds, of each half an ounce, beaten grossely; let them seethe unto the half, then wring out hard all the liquor, and put thereto eighteen ounces of white Sugar, twelve ounces of strong Vinegar; seethe them to a syrup. This syrup doth cause grosse humors to avoid, and chiefly the cholerick slime which will hardly be expelled from the Lights; It openeth also all the oppilations of the Liver, Lights and Kidneyes.

Of the Wambling, and the loathing of meat. §. 10.

ALl they that have lost their desire and appetite to meate, have commonly such a loathing of all meate, that they can neither abide to see nor to smell it. This debilitie of the stomach do the learned call, *Subversionem*, *Fastidium*, *Nauseam*, and the Grecians *Anorexian*, which is, when all things do go against the stomach, and hath no delight in any, after which followeth wambling, and then *Atrophia*, when the Patient cannot sustain himself any longer. Also when one careth for no meat, and when the stomach is molested with continual wambling and parbraking, and yet notwithstanding cannot cast up, the body falleth away, and doth utterly come to the consumption *Tabes*; for this *Atrophia* is a spice of a consumption. So that these things, as inappetencie, or losse of appetite, wambling and loathsomnesse, do commonly depend on each other, and are almost caused of one manner of cause, therefore have we described them beside each other. The causes which provoke this losse of appetite and wambling, may well be these hereafter following, to wit, when one beholdeth some loathsome thing or any other filth, as when an other vomiteth, whereby the imagination is moved, and the stomach also urged to vomit, and yet nevertheless cannot by any meanes parbrake at all; as it cometh often to passe, when as any be stricken hard upon the stomach. Also the same may be caused through over great heat or cold; Also if one have overcharged himself with meat or drink, and chiefly with Porke, with Eeles, with water Fowles, and with excessive Wine, or such like, and then thereupon followeth no exercise, whereby such crudity might be digested.

These diseases may also be caused through some bad and slimy humors which are in the stomach, whether it be through mixture of heat, *Cholera*, or cold *Phlegma*, or otherwise; the which notwithstanding, how late soever that it be, do trouble the stomach, cause wambling, but not so forcibly that the stomach is able thereby to expell them.

The signes thereof are for the most part apparant to the eye, and to be enquired of the sick person. If it be long of the stomach, then is some heat to be perceived in the feeling of the stomach, which also is by the complexion augmented, as old age, the time of the year. And if otherwhiles there be somewhat parbraked or vomited up, and that the same cometh through cold, then causeth it neither thirst nor heat, the Patient desireth rest and quiet. If so be that it do come through heat or cold, then do come all things for the most part by the foresaid feebleness of the stomach, for which are the remedies here expressed to be used; yet is this here especially commended.

But if so be that this wambling or loathsomeness do proceed of *Cholera*, with heat and bitterness of the mouth, drought of the throat and tongue, then prepare the matter with syrup of Vinegar, and with *Oxymel simplex*. The vomiting and purging must be brought to passe through these meanes following; take Violets, Burage flowers, and Bugloss flowers, of each half an ounce, 15. or 16. Damask Prunes, seethe them together with 18. ounces of water unto the half, then lay to steep therein a whole night, half an ounce of yellow Myrobalans, Rubarb, ℥. 1. or more, afterwards wring it out very hard, and drink it betimes in the morning. After purging strengthen the stomach with syrup of Apples, of Pomegranates, or of Quinces which is made of Sugar. And for this is to be used also the confection *Triasantalon*, conserve of Roses, or *Rosata Novella*. First, he must eate Lettice, Purslain, and Sorrel, with Vinegar, and Strawberies if they be ripe. His meat must be tempered with the juyce of Sorrel, Orenges, and the juyce of Limons.

But if this wambling or this loathsomeness do proceed of cold, then must the matter be prepared with *Oxymel diureticum*, or with syrup of Wormewood, and with wine of

wormwood

Wormewood, and afterwards muſt the patient be conſtrained to vomit.

For to purge muſt be taken *Diatarbith* or *Hiera Picra*, which is ſharpned with a little *Eſula* and Maſtick; after purging, Marmalade with ſpices is to be uſed, and *Aromaticum roſatum*, *Diapliris* with Muſcus, or *Letitia Galeni*. Alſo make a ſauce of Parſly, Sage, Mints, Cloves, beaten together, and tempered with Vinegar. Moreover, all manner of other meanes are to be uſed to quicken the appetite. Outwardly is the ſtomach to be annointed with oyl of Maſtick and Wormewood.

Plaiſters and other things more which be fit for this, are to be found in the treatiſe of the debility of the ſtomach. But if this diſeaſe be cauſed through repletion of the body; then is the cure to be begun with letting blood, and afterwards to purge (whether it came through heat or cold) and ſo to proceed with other things.

Of Wambling or vomiting through weakneſſe of the Stomach. §. 11.

AS we have ſpoken of the lothſomeneſſe of meat; ſo we will now make mention of the third, which is of the vomiting. This is partly a deſire, and partly a conſtraint of vomiting. But to ſpeak adviſedly of it, there be two kinds of vomiting; to wit, that which is called of the Grecians *Anaſtrophe*, and of the Latineſts *Inverſo* (which is a turning upſide downe of the ſtomach) wherein all that is beneath in the ſtomach is yeelded upward by vomit; the other manner of vomiting is called *Cholera*, or *Cholerica paſſio*; the which not onely with parbreaking, but alſo with a ſtrong ſcowring doth take one, whereof we will now write. Concerning the firſt kind of vomiting, it is thus deſcribed; Vomiting is a motion of the ſtomach, whereby it doth caſt upwards that which is groſſe, and all that is hurtful unto it. The cauſes of this caſting are many; namely, to ſtrike on the ſtomach, to fall, or ſuch like, or upon any other parts, which have ſome ſymphathy with the ſtomach, as the braines, and other ſtrong motions. Item, when it happeneth to thoſe that are upon the boyſterous ſea; or if there fall into the ſtomach any corrupted humors, and there deſtroy the digeſtion of the ſtomach. Alſo this parbreaking may be cauſed through ſome kind of meat which provoketh vomit, as we have ſhewed heretofore. Item, all things whereof nature hath a loathing, as Frogs and Snailes, &c. Alſo the Cough may otherwhiles be too ſtrong, and ſo provoke one to vomit. Likewiſe alſo impoſtumes, tumors of the ſtomach, or the Lights; for nature cannot ſuffer, nor abide any matter. Laſtly, all ſuch vomits do come alſo through debilty of the vertue retentive, and violence of the vertue expulſive, or if any one have taken neeſing roots, or any ſuch like.

The ſignes of the parbreaking are theſe; when one beginneth to feel a wambling and when the lower lip begins to quiver, the uppermoſt intrailes begin to ſtirre, and feele the pain of the head and heart; giddineſſe, and when the mouth is full of ſlime; the which be for the moſt part all the ſignes, that the ſtomach is charged with *Cholera*. But if the cauſes of parbreaking proceed of outward things, then are they to be demanded of the ſick perſon and of them that be with him. Or if any do come of any ſtinking matter which is in the ſtomach, that is to be perceived by the ſtench of the urin, or by that which is caſt up, or by the ſtench of the ordure, wherewith the matter is otherwhiles admixed, and the Patient ſhall well feel the ſame in his mouth, like as we have ſufficiently ſpoken thereof already.

But before we come to the remedies of theſe diſeaſes, it is firſt needfull to add ſome common rules for this parbreaking.

Whereof the firſt is that whenſoever the parbreaking doth chance naturally, and the Patient findeth eaſe by it, that it is not then to be prohibited, in caſe that the natural ſtrength be not thereby enfeebled, which is then to be holpen by all meanes poſſible.

The ſecond rule is, when nature beginneth to expel by vomit all that is hurtful for her, that then it is yet more to be procured. Thirdly, perſons that be narrow in the breſt, and have a long lean neck, weak ſight, and feeble braines, they are by no meanes to be brought to this vomiting. Fourthly, if one would have any body parbreak, which is very hard to be brought unto it, then is he firſt to eat much meat and other things, which cauſeth the humors to be looſe, and alſo to drink much whereby the vertue retentive is weakned, and the expulſive ſtrengthened, whereby the vomiting may be more eaſily effected, but this is of no value for the Ague. Fiftly, rough and groſſe things taken are not to be expelled through parbreaking, that the throat (through which the ſame is to paſſe) be not

hereby bruiſed. Sixtly, the vomiting is very dangerous for the ſtomach. Seventhly, in them that have an impoſtume in the ſtomach, it is very dangerous to provoke vomiting. Eightly, odoriferous things are very acceptable unto the ſtomach, and aſſiſting, eſpecially when they be admixed with alimental meats, therefore be they commonly joyned with thoſe things that provoke vomit. Ninthly, to withdraw the matter & hunours of theſe exceſſive vomitings, are the outward members to be bounden, to wit, the armes and legs, and alſo to ſet the feet in warme water. Tenthly, when it is ſeen that this vomit happeneth in a violent diſeaſe, after the manner of *Criſis* or ending of the diſeaſe, then is the ſame not to be ſtayed at any hand, if ſo be that it come not too vehemently whereby nature might be weakned, but then is the ſame to be cured with his contraries. Eleventhly, for this unmeaſurable and exceſſive vomiting may the matter be conveniently drawne downwards by Cliſters.

Theſe now be rules which are to be obſerved in all manner of vomiting. When as the vomiting proceedeth of hot cauſes, which is preſaged by the bitterneſſe of the mouth, deſire and longing for cold things, then is the matter to be prepared with *Oxyſaccharum*, or ſuch like ſyrups, and to provoke vomiting by drinking warme water, and oyl of Violets, and by putting a feather into the throat. But if the ſame will not be, then are you to purge, eſpecially with yellow Myrobalans, and afterwards to ſtrengthen the ſtomach, whereof we have given good advice before.

If the Patient be of a plethorick conſtitution, then muſt there be no neglect of opening the *Baſilica*, for thereby ſhall the matter be diminiſhed, and the whole body cooled.

But the principalleſt things that be requiſite for this, are Roſes, Saunders, prepared Coriander, Violets, ſour apples and Peares, Peaches, Quinces, Camphir, bloſſomes and pils of Pomegranates, Coral, Bolus, Dragons blood, the rindes of a medlar tree, Quince tree, Oke, and Plume tree; Vinegar, the juyce of Sorrel, ſodden juyce of Quinces, the juyce of Medlars and of Services, ſyrups of Roſes, Violets, Raſps, Citrons, Limons, Oranges, and ſuch like. Of the foreſaid things you may, if you pleaſe, make confections, Conſerves, Syrups, Potions, or any thing elſe what you pleaſe. It is eſpecially obſerved, that Purſlain eaten with Vinegar, taketh away parbraking through heat. But there is to be layd upon the outſide of the mouth and the ſtomach and pit of the heart, this plaiſter following; Tak the pils and bloſſomes of Pomegranates, the ſeeds of Butchers broome, and of Myrtles, of Roſes and Bayberries, of each half an ounce, Maſtick, Mints, of each two drachmes and a half, *Lignum Aloes*, one drachme, juyce of Quinces and of wild Peares, of each a like quantity, or ſo much as is needful for to make a plaiſter with it. And to the end this may be the more piercing, mix therewith one ounce and a half of Vinegar, and then ſpread it on a cloth, and lay it thereon, as is ſayd. But if the juyce of Quinces and wild Peares be not to be gotten, then take the juyce of Plantain inſtead thereof; Or heat Vinegar, and wet therein a peece of felt or a ſponge, and ſo lay it over the ſtomach either hot or cold, and then lay on the top thereof a Roſecake, which is made wet over the vapor of Vinegar; but annoint the ſtomach before with the juyce of Mints, and then ſtrew the powder, of Roſes and Myrtle ſeed upon it.

Here before in the twelfth rule is ſpoken of a Cliſter whereof you have one here for example; Take Mallowes, Hollihock roots, Violet leaves, and Beetes, of each one handful, peeled Barley and Bran, of each half a handful, eighteen or twenty Prunes, let them ſeethe, then take 16. ounces of this decoction, and put therein an ounce of Caſſy, and of *Succus Roſarum* half an ounce; temper all together, and uſe thereof two or three one after another, until the powder be well opened.

But if the parbraking be cauſed through cold and *Phlegma*, and the patient do not vomit much nor often, and that nature be not much diſeaſed, then muſt be given to the Patient *Oxymel* of Squils, *Syrupus de Calamintha*, or warme water, wherein Dill, field Mints, and Sage are decocted. And afterwards he is to purge with *Hiera Picra*, which is ſharpened with a little of the *Trochiſci Alhandali*, or with pils of *Aloe lota* or *Stomachici* tempered together, or each apart.

Vomiting muſt be furthered or procured; and although to this end there be many medicines deſcribed, notwithſtanding is this hereafter following not to be omited; Take the juyce of Squils, the juyce of Onions, of each one ounce and a half, Sugar three ounces, ſeethe theſe ſo thick that it will make Tabulats, or Sugar Plates, each of the weight of three drachmes. When you will uſe them, then diſſolve them, and drink them, and then looke if you can vomit afterwards, the Squils have an eſpecial power to vomit.

When

When as then the matter is throughly purged, then to comfort the ſtomach with ſirup of Quinces, with *Acina*, and with ſirupe of Mints and Wormwood. His meat muſt be dreſt with good Spices, his drink ſhall be good old and pleaſant Wine. He muſt anoint the ſtomach with the oyl of Maſtick, and with the oyl of Spike tempered together, or each alone, then ſtrew thereon powder of Maſtick, and lay a clean cloth upon it.

This plaiſter enſuing may alſo be made and prepared for the ſame; Toſt white bread ſo hard that you may pownd it, and temper it with Vinegar and the juice of Mints, put thereto one ounce of Maſtick, more or leſſe according to the quantity of the white bread; make them warm, and then temper therewith a little oyl of Spike and Maſtick, and ſo lay it warm on the pit of the ſtomach. Or take toſted bread as before, and temper it with the juice of Mints, and ſtrew half an ounce of this powder following upon it: Take Mints, Ginger, Wormwood, Cipres nuts, Cinamom and Spike, of each one drach. Frankincenſe, Maſtick, of each half an ounce, and make a powder thereof; it warmeth, ſtrengtheneth, and aſtringeth. There may alſo be made of this foreſaid powder Confections, Plaiſters, Oyls, and all whatſoever one will.

It happeth alſo ſometimes that with this vomiting a laske or flix is adjoyned. For to ſtay the ſame are theſe things following good, parched Creſſes ſeed, Cipres Nut leaves, Myrrhe, Lignum Aloes, red Styrax, Amber, Laudanum, Indy Spica, Spica Romana, Calamus, Cloves, Mints, Wormwood: Citrons, Lemons, Orenges, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Rue, *Agnus Caſtus*, toſted bread, Gallia Muſcata, and Alipta, and almoſt all kinds of Spices. Alſo Treacle taken with the juice of Mints ſtayeth vomiting.

Item, make a plaiſter of Maſtick, with a little ſodden Turpentine, and lay it on the ſtomach; for this are you to ſet boxing cups upon the ſhoulders.

For this alſo is Marmalade with Spices very good, and preſerved Quinces, and theſe are comon means againſt the vomiting through a weak ſtomach; but it through heat or cold. You ſhall alſo find many more deſcribed in other places of this book, amongſt divers ſickneſſes, as before in the ſecond part, the fifth Chapter and 2. §. is diſcovered for the ſpeeding of blood, and ſuch like. We will now paſſe over to another manner of parbreaking through *Cholera*.

For all diſeaſes and ſlimes and filth in the ſtomach, I have uſed my vomiting potion with good ſucceſſe, which is thus made.

℞. of caſtoreum, Angelica roots, ana. ℥. 3. powder and ſearce them, and with hony make an electuary not to thin. Take thereof ℥. ß. or ℈. 2. mix it with white wine ℥. 4. or 6. Stibium powdered very fine ℊ. 3. or more, let them ſtand in a glaſſe Bottle, or vial four or five hours, then ſhake it together and drink it, and provide a fat Hen, ſeethe her in water with a cruſt of bread onely and let the party drink the broth off, as he vomiteth, and make thin poſſet ale to drink. If the party vomits not, put hony into ſome poſſet drink and it will make him vomit, for it is not good that the party ſhould purge with this medicine, and not vomit.

Of Parbreaking or Vomiting, with the Laske or Scouring. §. 12.

THis malady do the learned name after the humour whereby it is cauſed, *Choleram*. The later Phyſitians call it *Cholericam Paſſionem*, and it is thus deſcribed: *Cholera* is a very ſharpe, troubleſome, and heavy diſeaſe, which immediatly moleſteth one with the Rheume, whereby vomiting, great flix, or ſcouring, Collick, pain of the bowels, and an Ague is bred. Or, Cholera is a violent ſickneſſe, with vomiting, great ſcouring or laske, with Cramp in the ſinewes, Thighes and Legs, whereby all outward members are cold, and the pulſe is ſmall and ſlow.

Or Cholera is ſuch a malady, whereby one immediately doth ſcour and rid upward and downward many kinds of humours and ſlime, with the meat; ſo that he detaineth nothing in his body. This ſickneſſe cometh firſt of ſpoyled and corrupted meat, which remaineth too long in ſome place of the body, as in the ſtomach or bowels, and thereby cauſeth a bad alteration, and alſo giveth little nouriſhment. Alſo this ſickneſſe is ſometimes cauſed of cold and wateriſh humours, which gather themſelves together in the bowels, and in the ſtomach, that do debilitate the retentive vertue of the ſtomach above and beneath: but the ſickneſſe for the moſt part is cauſed through much *Cholera* and red gall, that do lye and bide in the ſtomach and bowels, that within the ſpace of one hour the

parbreaking and going to the ſtool do ſo haunt a body, that otherwhiles the ſtrongeſt body on the third day is deprived of his life, and this is worſe then all other. The ſigns of a cold cauſe are theſe, before the ſickneſſe be upon one, much windineſſe is felt in the bowels: alſo ſome dayes before the ſickneſſe, he feeleth pain and ſhooting about the Navel, whereupon preſently enſueth a vehement laske or flix, with vomiting of much ſlime and other illfavored matter. This is alſo the ſooner cauſed, if the patient have uſed great ſtore of Phlegmatical meats.

That which is cauſed through heat is hereby known; there falleth much Cholera into the ſtomach and bowels, with great and mighty parbreaking, and alſo with great thirſt, and if one drink cold water, then doth the vomiting ſtay until that the water be warmed in the ſtomach. The flix is ſo vehement, the patient ſometimes thereby ſwouneth, and alſo utterly looſeth the pulſe, with an unſtedfaſt heat, and bereaving of his ſenſes.

When as then it hapneth that one feeleth a continual pain in the ſtomach or bowels, with great heavineſſe of mind, and perceiveth parbreaking and vomiting; then is ſuch verily to be taken for Cholera: for this, there is to be given to the ſick body luke-warm water to drink very often. And if ſo be that this parbreaking and ſcouring continue ſtill, then give him warm water to drink again, as before, and that ſo long till you find that he have avoided ſome corrupted meats, ſlime, or ſome of the gall. This will free the Patient of more other ſickneſſes.

For this are more other things to be uſed; to wit, that expell this ſharpe matter: ſo that *Phlegma* with things neceſſary for it, and *Cholera*, with thoſe that help it, might be taken in hand, becauſe parbreaking will be cured by parbreaking, and ſcouring by ſcouring. When as then the ſcouring is ſtayed of both ends, then is the patient to bath one hour long; afterwards to eat a little, and that light meat, becauſe the ſtomach is very much weakned. After that, he is to eat a little Marmalade, which is tempered with prepared Coriander, and ſo go to ſleep. He is to uſe this Marmalade as long as the ſcouring or parbreaking endureth.

His diet muſt be Hen broth, decocted with Verjuice, ſteeld Goats milk, Barly and Oaten paps, ſodden Lettice and Purſlain; but principally if there be any heat and bitterneſſe of the mouth remaining: but if ſo be that there be any cold in the ſtomach, then are theſe herbs at no hand to be uſed. When as the patient beginneth again to feed well, then be good for him all field foules, and chiefly Partridges which have a proper hidden vertue to ſtrengthen to ſtomach. Amongſt other meats may well be uſed Lemons, Citrons, Orenges, Verjuice and ſuch like.

Item, all ſowre fruits, Services, unripe Medlars, ſowre Pears, Apples, and Quinces. Alſo he ſhall eat (although not gladly) ſops of white bread in the juice of Pomgranats; and if ſo be that he vomit up the ſame, yet muſt he take more again, and do this ſo long till that he do hold and retain it.

As long as he is not through whole, then is he to drink ſteeled water with ſirupe of Quinces, or old conſerve of Roſes. When he beginneth to be whole, then is he to drink good reliſhed wine, which is tempered with the juice of Pomgranats. And if ſo be that he parbreak it up, then let him drink of the ſame again, but a little at once, that the ſtomach be not overcharged.

Here followeth now what is to be uſed for this ſcouring and parbreaking, and chiefly when it is ſeen that theſe diſeaſes do increaſe. For which one is not to be diſcomforted, but much more beſtir him to help the ſick perſon with theſe remedies following: Firſt you muſt give him one or two drachmes of *Trochiſcos de Olibano*, with water or juice of Pomgranats: and afterwards to bind his legs faſt; like as is taught before againſt the parbreaking, when the vomiting getteth the upper hand; ſo muſt his arms likewiſe be bounden, when the ſcouring getteth the maſtery. But above all, ſleep is paſſing good. Item, Roſe water laid very cold over the legs, or from the upper part of the thighs downward wetted and waſhed therewith, and the feet ſet in it, is alſo very good.

In like manner is this plaiſter enſuing forcible to aſſwage the pain, and to warm and ſtrengthen; Take rinds of the Medlar tree, of Quinces, and of an Oaken tree, the ſeed of Butchers broom, bloſſoms and rinds of Pomgranats, Myrtle ſeed, *Sarcocolla*, Maſtich, Camomil, and Melilot, of each a like quantity; make a plaiſter thereof with the juice of Quinces, or of wild and ſowre Pears, and ſpread it on a cloth. But if the ſcouring be ſtronger then the parbreaking, then lay it warm upon the belly. But if the parbreaking be foreſt of all, then lay it upon the ſtomach. Others do make two plaiſters, as hereafter followeth.

Take *Laudanum*, Maſtick, of each one ounce and a half, Frankincenſe half a drach. red and white Saunders, red Coral, ſeeds of Butchers broom, of each one ſcrup. yellow Roſe ſeed, the juice of Sloes, *Hypociſtis*, bloſſomes and pils of Pomgranates, of each half a ſcrup. beaten ſmall together as much as is needful for a plaiſter; ſpread thereof upon a cloth, and lay a great plaiſter thereof over the ſtomach, before and behind upon the back about the Kidneys. Item, take the juice of Plantain and Roſe water, of each three drachmes, Vinegar half an ounce, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, of each half a drach. Lentil meal as much as as is needful for to make a plaiſter withal.

Another called *de cruſta panis*: Take Maſtick, Mints, burnt Ivorie, red Coral, red and white Saunders, of each one drachme, Cruſts of white bread two ounces: ſteep them half an hour in Vinegar, afterwards beat them all together, and temper amongſt it oyl of Maſtick and oyl of Quinces, of each one ounce, Barley meal as much as doth ſuffice for a plaiſter, and lay it warm upon the ſtomach. This taketh away the parbraking within the ſpace of half an hour.

For this vomiting and ſcouring I have only my vomiting potion mentioned in the 11. Chapter aforeſaid. §. 4.

Hereafter follow more Salves *and* Oyles:

TAke oyl of Maſtick and oyl of Roſes, of each a like much, temper therewith a little Vinegar, and anoint the ſtomach with it. Item, take oyl of Maſtick, of Quinces, and of Mirtles, of each ℥. ß. Roſes, red Coral, and Mints, of each ℨ. ß. Nutmegs, Mirtle ſeed, of each two ſcrup. and a little Vineger; temper them all with Wax, and make a ſalve of them or a plaiſter. You have a ſalve alſo here before in the tenth Chapter, and §. 5. beginning thus: Take Comin and Caraway, &c. which is eſpecial good againſt parbraking being rubbed warm upon the Stomach and the Navel. You may alſo rub alone upon it the juice of Plantain tempered with Roſe water: but to make it thick, mingle therewith Lentil meal. Take oyl of Wormwood ℥. 1. oyl of Quinces, Mints, and Maſtick, of each ℨ. Malmſey ℨ. ℥. let them boyl until the wine be waſted, and when it is almoſt cold, then temper therewith *Species Diagalanga*, *Aromatici Roſati*, *de xylo aloes*, of each ℨ. 1. and Wax as much as ſufficeth for a plaiſter. Item, take red Saunders and Roſes, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Gallia muſcata*, and Camphire, of each ℨ. 1. Roſe water ſix ounces; temper, and then lay it on the belly; for it aſſwageth and cooleth. Item, Roſe water alone made cold in ſnow, and laid upon the belly, and when it is warm, laid cold again upon it, is very commodious for this purpoſe.

Another. Take Bayberries, Medlar leaves, Frankincenſe, Tormentil, groſſe Marjoram, (or them that one can beſt get) of each half an ounce; cut and ſeethe it in red Wine, and afterwards lay it as a warm plaiſter upon the ſtomach with Tow wetted therein: This is eſpecial good for all them that cannot keep in their meat. This enſuing is alſo accounted to have a marvellous operation: Take the juice of Crabs, make a double cloth wet therein; if his body be hot with an Ague, then lay it cold upon it; but if the body be cold, then apply it luke-warm upon it. Item, take toſted bread beaten ſmall four ounces, Maſtick one quarter of an ounce; make it meetly hot, and lay it warm in a bag upon the ſtomach: It taketh wind away, and alſo the Collick in the belly.

Another. Take Roſes, bloſſomes of Pomgranates, of each one handful and a half, *Gallia muſcata* ℨ. 1. ß. the juice of Sloes, Mirtles, Frankincenſe, of each ℨ. 1. Wormwood, *Hypociſtis*, Cypres roots, Cloves, Maſtick, of each ℨ. ß. red and white Coral, *Spica*, of each 1. ℨ. toſted bread ℥. ß. Camphire ℨ. ß. beat it ſmall together, and then put it into a bag, and ſo apply it.

In the mixture of other things is oftentimes mention made of the *Trochiſci* of *Gallia muſcata*, or *Alipta muſcata*: And becauſe that their deſcription is but brief, we wil here adde it unto the reſt.

Gallia muſcata is made thus: Take Lignum Aloes five drachmes, Amber three drach. Muſk one drachme, Dragagant diſſolved in Roſe water, as much as ſufficeth for to make *Trochiſcas* with it, and keep them well. The *Alipta muſcata* is thus prepared: Take pure Laudanum four ounces, liquid Styrax one ounce and a half, red Styrax one ounce, Lignum Aloes half a drach. Amber one drachme, Camphire half a drachme, Muſk half a ſcruple, and a little Roſe water, and prepare them thus: In the Dog dayes muſt you ſet the Styrax and Laudanum with the Roſe water together in the Sun, let them there dry

together until they be hard as dow; afterwards ſtamp them in a mortar, and temper the reſt amongſt them, then form Trochiſes of them, and keep them very well, like as you do the other. For this parbraking is alſo uſed fomenting upon the ſtomach; therefore make or chuſe your ſelf that which you deſire of theſe things which be preſcribed. Take the things which we have ordained for the firſt bags beaten groſly, ſeethe them in the juice of Quinces, and in Roſewater, of each ſix ounces, red thick Wine eight ounces, Vinegar two ounces; make therein a cloth or ſpunge wet, wring it well out, and hold it very warm upon the ſtomach.

Another; When the ſtomach is utterly ſpoiled, ſo that the patient can neither abide meat nor drink, then may it be ſtrengthened again with theſe fomentations enſuing. Take Balm, Wormwood, groſſe Marjarom, field Mints, Fennel, and Dill ſeed, of each a handfull, Maſtick, Galangal. Nutmegs, Squinant, Myrtle ſeed, and Coriander of each three drachmes, wild Vine leaves and the bloſſoms, half a handfull; beat all groſſe together, and ſeethe them in thick wine, and uſe it as aforeſaid. Item, take garden Mints, Balm, Wormwood, and Roſes, of each one handfull, Camomil, wild Vine leaves, Betony, Roſemary, of each half a handful, Calamus half an ounce; beaten all together groſſe, put it into two bags, each one quarter of a yard long; then ſethe them in red Wine, and a little water, and then laid upon the ſtomach, ſometime the one, and ſometime the other. This fomenting muſt be ſo continued the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, and afterwards are you to uſe the preſcribed ſalve with the ſpices, and wear one of the foreſaid plaiſters upon it.

But if ſo be that the ſcowring or lask of the belly will not ſtay, then muſt boxing cups be ſet upon the ſhoulders unpickt, and taken off and on. The like is alſo to be done for continual vomits, and to ſet a great cup upon the Navel, to the end thereby to draw the matter downwards; And in caſe that the ſick body can ſleep with theſe cups ſo faſtned, it is ſo much the better. There is alſo oftentimes to be holden before his noſe, Saunders, Roſes, and ſuch like things for to ſmell unto them. Alſo ſome doe counſel to take for this ſcowring (if it continue) the ſtalks of Tamariske being ſcraped clean, and to powder them, and then put thereto as much Harts tongue as theſe foreſaid powders, the quantity of two handfuls, pouring then upon it three pints of wine; of which wine he is alwayes to drink his firſt draught ſitting at the table. This wine is alſo eſpecial good for the Milt or Spleen.

If there befal ſwooning, then muſt there be given to the ſick body two graines of Muſk tempered in Wine, for this ſtrengthneth much the vital ſpirits. In like manner is Hen broth and Lamb broth good for him, tempered with a little of the juyce of Quinces. Let the Patient alſo have roſted Pullets cut in peeces under his noſe; for the ſmell thereof doth much comfort. Alſo let him chew Frankincenſe, and ſwallow downe the ſame treſtably. At the laſt temper together fine Bolus and Camphir, of each one ſcruple, and temper them with old wine, and drink it; it doth coole and ſtrengthen the ſtomach.

All that is hitherto rehearſed, is to be uſed whileſt the parbraking yet endureth. But if it ſtay, and the ſtomach begin to retain the meat, then is the Patient to drink good and old ſtrong wine, and compoſe himſelf to ſleep, and alſo take of the *Trochiſces de Carabe* the weight of half a drachme, which is thus prepared.

Take fine Bolus and frankincenſe, of each one ounce and a quarter, Cucubes, Cardamom of each two drachmes and a half, Camphir, *Gallia Muſcata*, Cloves of each three quarters of an ounce, make thereof *Trochiſces* with old Wine; theſe are eſpecial good againſt parbraking. Item, take the juyce of four Pomegranats as much as you pleaſe, and when it hath ſtood one night, and the clear is poured off, then ſeethe it to the thickneſs of Hony. When it is taken from the fire, and whileſt that it is hot, put ſome Mints unto it, ſo let it cool, then take out the herbs again. This may be uſed warm, or how one will, and is called at the Apothecaries *Rob de granatis*. After the ſame manner you may alſo make *Rob* of the juyce of Quinces. For this is alſo requiſite the ſirupe of Verjuice, and of Mirtles. But if ſo be that there cannot be gotten any of the foreſaid things for the foreſaid ſirupes, then take Wine, Plantain, and Roſe water.

Now for as much as in this our Method we are come to the Lask or Flix of the belly, which is commonly cauſed through a weak ſtomach and diſeaſed Liver, therefore it is now requiſite that we diſcourſe of all other ſorts of Lasks whatſoever; but firſt of all we will make a general diſcourſe of them.

Of the Flix, Lask, or scowring by stool. §. 13.

FLix, it happeneth often in hail people, who have a plethorick body, and do eat and drink much, that they get a Lask, which cometh not often upon them, continueth not long, also not otherwise then of a strong nature, who seeketh to unburthen her of superfluities, like as it cometh to passe, that thereby the patient findeth great ease. This scowring hath no need of any remedy, unlesse it be caused of over-great weakenesse, for the which the same counsel is to be used which is prescribed against the flix of the belly *Lienteria*, so that at this present there is nothing more to be written thereof. If so be then that this scowring of the belly be taken for a disease, then is it first to be understood, that the same it caused through many inward members of the body, and also of divers other causes, like as shall be hereafter taught immediately, that the same cannot be ascribed to any one thing. And for that we should not describe this kind of lask by peece-meal here and there, we will now here ascribe this flixe to the stomach (as is already expressed:) the which if it be no evident cause of this scowring, yet notwithstanding it is a great help to the same: we will then afterwards adde unto it all that appertaineth unto it; as the constraint to the stool, and binding of the body, and all that is good for it. But first of all we must here rehearse certain rules which are to be observed for all sorts of lasks: whereof the first is, that no scowring or lask is to be stayed before the fourth day, if so be the Patient be able to suffer the same without extreme faintnesse. Secondly, when you will ever use astringent remedies, then must the same be alwaies done before meat, to the end that the meat which is taken after them might be stayed until it were digested. Thirdly, this is to be noted of all binding meats, of Chestnuts, and such like. Fourthly, when the lask is of heat, then are the remedies to be used which are cold of nature, and for the scowring of cold, contrary remedies. And because that in the cold scouring the digestive vertue is very feeble, warm things are to be used, according to the importance of the case. Fifthly, if so be that there do come a cough to this scourings, then are all sowr things to be forborn, and all those which bind much. Sixthly, it is very good for all lasks to force the body to sweating, and to anoint it much with oyl of Camomil and Dill, thereby to draw out the matter, and to open the pores. Seventhly, cups are to be set upon the belly, and kept upon it four hours long. Eightly, he is to be restrained and kept from all Fruits, except Chestnuts, which may bind if they will. Ninthly, rest and sleep are especial good for all flixes; so is also contrariwise bad, great labour, and other motion of the body. Tenthly, when, as in the red or bloody flix the uppermost guts are excoriated, then is the remedy to be ministred in at the mouth: and if the lower guts be perished, then must Clisters and suppositories be ministred beneath. Eleventhly, if the excoriation of the bowels be above and beneath, then are the remedies to be used above and beneath.

And that we may come to the original, the learned do name three Species of flixes or lasks, as namely, *Lienteriam*, *Diarrhœam*, (under which is contained the fluxe of the Liver) and *Dysenteriam*: but what difference is between these lasks, that shall in their proper description be declared.

First, this is here alwaies to be noted, that all Lasks be moved of inward or outward causes, as unhealthy meats, unruly life, eating of any venemous things, also heat or cold of the same. The inward causes may proceed out of the head, as if any humors do fall out of the head into the lower parts of the body, be it into the stomach, or into the uppermost or nethermost bowels: likewise also into the small veins *Mesaraica*, into the Liver, Milt, and sometimes also into the whole body, like as when the same is too full of humours, or too much wasted away, even as it may be seen in the consumption *Phthisi. Hectica*, and the pestilent Fever, out of all which the expert Physitians do take and discern sundry signes and observations.

Of the Lask Lienteria *of* Cholera *and heat.* §. 14.

THis is an infirmity of the retentive vertue of the stomach, with the slipperinesse of the guts, whereby it hapneth that the meat taken very suddenly without digestion, like as it was received, passeth away by the stool.

The cause of this scowring may be great cold and moysture, which doth so benum natural heat, that the meat cannot digest, neither can the stomach retain and keep it.

Contrariwise, may this lask be also causèd through outward heat, which doth so discusse the natural warmth, and cause it to evaporate, that thereby the digestion is utterly overthrown. In like manner also, this flixe cometh through stripes, falls, thrusts, and bathing in cold waters, distemperature of the stomach, and of other parts, debility of the retentive and strength of the expulsive vertue, a cold complexion, (for that it is seldom caused through heat) impostumes of the stomach, which expelleth the meat and drink, and things whereby the stomach is hurt. Item, it doth also come to passe, that the bowels be too slippery, or that there is too much meat, or that it be hurtful, whereby it doth make a great disturbance in the guts.

If so be that the meats be not kept or holden in the stomach, but before the due time, without great alteration, though the laske be expelled, with a gnawing in the stomach, and with thirst, and what before meat there commeth forth a little corrupted matter, then may it be well concluded that it is *Lienteria*, which is caused of *Cholera*. To cure this, and all other scowrings (of whatsoever causes they proceed) this commeth to be followed is to be observed, to wit, that all those things wherewith you purpose to stay it, are to be used before meat, then doth the same presse the meat downwards, and incrassateth the laske, like as in the former 11. §. hath been taught.

But to proceed with this lask (wherein the meat is not digested) first giveth the sick body the juice of Pomegranats, burnt Ivory, and Roses, of each one drachme. For this is also good, boyled Verjuice, Raspes, Butchers broome, and the juice of Quinces.

Whilst that the body is strong enough, and the sickneese hath not as yet gotten the mastery, and that he may tolerate it, then must the *Cholera* be purged, and especially with yellow Myrobalans, afterwards he is to use cooling, astringent, and binding things, and to be forbidden all that is hot. These syrupes ensuing are passing good, as namely, syrup of Verjuice, Quinces, Pears, Apples, Pomegranates, and Raspes, moreover certain Simples also which are worthy to be remembred, like as *Hypocistis*, blossomes of Pomegranates, Gals, juyce of Sloes, Roses, Araby, Gum, sealed earth, fine *Bolus*, burnt Ivory, Camphire, Pomegranat seeds without juyce, Purslan seed, seeds of Sorel, Coriander, Plantain, and Myrtles, the yellow seed of the Rose, Saunders, Coral, Dragons blood, Poppy seed, Horsetailes, Knotgrasse, wilde Vine leaves, the juyce of sharp Plantain and the seed, and chiefly when they be parched, and such like more.

The fruits which are fit for this didease be Quinces, Services, Medlars, wild Pears, black Cherries, unripe Mulberies, and such like Fruits more, which do bind and cool. You may also give *Trochiscus de Spodio*, two or three drachmes, mingled with the water of Knotgrasse, or Plantaine, and because that we have before spoken much of them, and shall be used often hereafter, we shall here learne how to prepare them; Take Roses, burnt Ivory (which is *Spodium* whereof they have their name) Sorrel seeds, the seeds of Butchers Broom, blossomes of Pomegranates, and Gum of Araby, of each a like quantity; make thereof *Trochiscos*, each of the waight of a quarter of an ounce, and give them to drinke, as is said, with one ounce of the juice of Quinces.

Another; Take Roses one ounce and a half, burnt Ivory one ounce and a quarter, the seeds of Sorrell three quarters of an ounce, Purslan seed, prepared Coriander seed, and peeled Butchers broome seed, of each two drachmes and a half, Starch, blossomes of Pomegranates, and Barberies, of each one quarter of an ounce, parched Gals one drachme and a half, temper all together with Verjuice. These Trochisks are good for all Agues which be caused of *Cholera*, and that have a laske admixed, also for all cankers of the stomach, and continuall thirst.

Other Trochiscs. Take fine *Bolus*, sealed earth, Coral, Saunders, Sumach, Barberies, Quince kernels, blossomes and Pils of pomegranats, Gals, of each one drachme, beat them all small together, and temper them with the juyce of Plantain and of Wormewood, and then form them into Trochisces when you will use them; then take a drachme or two thereof with milk wherein glowing pipples are slaked. But if then this scowring and the Ague do not wear away with all the use of these foresaid things, then take fine *Bolus*, sealed earth, and burnt Ivory, of each one quarter of an ounce, Amber, Roses, blossomes of Pomegranates, the juyce of Sloes, *Hypocistis*, and Cinnamom, of each one drachme and a half, make them into powder, take thereof five drachmes, Buttermilk six ounces, and give it him at one time, to wit, before noone.

If so be that the stomach be hurt through the choler, (which may be perceived hereby, if there come any corruption or matter with the stoole) then take Barly water and Honey

water

water of each three spoonefuls, and give it the sick body to drinke, it cleanseth all that is excoriated. Afterwards he shall use this following to heal withall; Take dragagant, Gum, Mastick, Frankincense, Amber, of each one drachme, stamp all these into a subtile powder, and make thereof Pils with the juyce of Wormewood, whereof he is to take twain every morning.

Plaisters are also very requisite for this, whereof here follow twain; Take the juyce of Medlars, Services, green Pomegranate Pils and the flowers, of each one ounce; of Prunes, whereof the stones be taken out, the juyce of Quinces, red Wine, of each six ounces, Oyl of Myrtles and Quinces, of each three ounces, Mastick, *Calybanis*, yellow Rose seeds, Sloes, and Rye meal, of each one quarter of an ounce, the middle rind of Chestnuts, three drachmes, Wax as much as is needful, and a little Vinegar; spred it on a cloth and lay it over the whole belly.

The second. Take the juice of Plantain three ounces, Rose water, Vinegar, of each one ounce, Butchers broome seed, Barberies, Myrobalans, *Chebuli, Indi, Emblici, Bellerici, Citrini*, of each two ounces, red Coral, red and white Saunders, yellow Rose seed, Mastick, of each one drachme, blossomes and pils of Pomegranats, Gals of each half an ounce; Lentil meal as much as is needful for to make a meetly soft plaister. This plaister is of a marvellous operation if there be any unnatural heat with the lask.

His dyet is to be all manner of sowre and cold things, wherewith he must also dresse his boyled and rosted meats. He must temper his drink with Rose water wherein Butchers broome seed hath been steeped; parched Rice decocted in Goats milk, and parched Barly sodden in Almond milke are very requisite for him. All that which is hot of nature, and laxative must he forbear; as also all that doth augment *Choler*, &c.

But if this scouring be caused through weakenesse of the retentive power, be it of the stomach or of the bowels, then are those parts to be comforted, and that with odoriferous and binding medicines, as followeth; Take Cypers roots, Mastick, Galanius, Smallage, and Comin (which hath first been steeped in Vinegar) Gals, Cypers nuts and the leaves, Myrtle seed, Raisins stones, dryed Pomegranate kernels, Frankencense, and Mastick, of each a like much; make a powder therof, and give it in the morning fasting to drink one quarter of an ounce, with good wine or steeled milk. Outwardly annoynt the stomach and the whole belly with oyl of Mastick or Wormewood, and weare upon it a plaister of Mastick; He is also to use Marmalade.

But when this scowring causeth no gnawing or griping in the stomach, nor yet pedeth any corrupt matter from it, but onely a tough slimy substance, and when there is no great thirst with it, but only some belching; then is it a certain signe that this scowring is caused through *Phlegma*. For this the Patient is to use all such things as extenuate and loose the slime, as Mustard seed, salt fish, and such like. Afterwards shall he force himself to vomit, with salt, Vinegar, sodden hony, or with some other thing which expelleth flegme. And if that will not suffice, then use this following.

Take Aloes one ounce, the inside of Coloquint, and Indie salt, of each half an ounce, Turbith one drachme; make Pils thereof; and you are to take of these but one Pil at once. For this disease are the purgations commodious, which hereafter be described against the pain of the stomach through *Phlegma*.

Some other doe write a more proper cure, to wit, Take syrup of Wormewood and Mints, of each three ounces, temper them, and drink thereof at each time two ounces, with three ounces of the decoction wherein Pease, Mints, and Spike were boyled. Afterwards, purge with the Pils called *Stomachica*; Also use vomiting herewith, as is before recited; for it is very commodious in this case, if it weaken not too much. For his meat he is to use all dry things, as rosted field fowles, and chiefly rosted Larks, Turtle doves, and such like as do not suddenly passe away; yet alwayes a little at once, and no more then the stomach is well able to bear.

This medicine following is not onely for *Lienteria*, but also for the lask called *Diarrhœa*, very good; it draineth the meats received in the stomach, which also with the bowels; it doth warme, strengthen and dry.

Take Cypers nuts and the leaves, dryed Mints, Mastick, Frankincense with his rindes grosse Cinamom, Mace and Galangal, of each three drachmes, Cresses seeds, Comin and prepared Coriander (altogether a little parched) of each half an ounce, *Landanum*, ana scyllitick, *Ambra*, Citron Pils, of each one drachme and a half, *Lignum Aloes* and Spica, of each one drachme, make thereof Trochisses of the weight of one drachme and a half, and

give,

give the Patient thereof at every time, as wel before dinner, as before supper, with some milk, wherein pibble stones be slaked. Also you may minister of this powder alone one dracht or two, or a confection of it with Sugar.

This patient is also to use some sowr and sale things before and after meat, as Capers and olives, which be requisite also for this purpose. For these cold flegmatick scowrings be these simple, warming, and binding remedies very good; parched Comin, Ameos, Anise, Frankincense, Myrrhe, Styrax, Mastick, Nutmegs, Cypres nuts, Laudanum, parched Rubarb, Wormwood, Mints, lignum Aloes, roots of Cypres, Bucks and Hares rennet. Of confections and confected things he may use confected Ginger, Diagalanga, Diatrion piperibus de Cymino, Marmalad with Spices, and sometimes Treacle and Mithridate. Item, there is also very profitable for this, strong Wine, as Muscadel, Malmsey, and such like, and otherwhiles a good pull, or harty draught drunk thereof.

But for a common drink he shal use cleer white Wine, which is meetly strong, which can well heat and dry the stomach.

Hereafter be many things described, which may be used with advantage for this scowring, with this condition alwaies, to discern warmth and cold.

Of the Lask Diarrhæa. §. 15.

THis loosenesse of the belly is thus described; *Diarrhæa* is a watersh Lask, with griping, but without excoriation of the bowels, and without heat caused diversly, whereby the body is consumed and diseased. This scouring is caused of all humours of the body, that is, of Blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and of *Melancholia*, and proceedeth not alwaies from some particular part of the body, but rather from the whole body, as through weaknesse of nature, in such as let hands and feet fall through great weaknesse.

The learned do discover six kinds of causes of this *Diarrhæa*; whereof the first is caused of the Gall and the Liver: the second of the stomach onely, but sometimes out of the Liver also, which two are the principallest members, amongst which the other four be comprehended. Thirdly, this scowring is also very wel caused through the obstruction of the small veins which are called *Mesaraica*. Fourthly, of the Milt. Fifthly, this Lask is also sometimes caused of the brains. Sixthly, through windinesse, whereof we shall hereafter write more at large.

When as now this scowring is caused of the Liver and Gall, then is *Cholera* very abundant; or if the same be but very little, yet is the same so hot and so sharp, that nature cannot abide her gnawing and heat, but seeketh to expel the same by all means possible, so that the perfect digestion might not thereby be weakned; therefore you have for this first infirmity these signs following, to wit, when the meat digested passeth away with a subtile, ill coloured and whitish watrishnesse, then it is a sign that the Liver is feebled and overcold. For this, there is to be given to the Patient the confection of Iron dross, which is *Scoria Ferri*, or some other things, which warm the Liver, and strengthen it. For which, you shall find here before sundry remedies, where we have spoken of *Liniaria*, which do warm and strengthen the inward parts in such like lasks, which you may use at this present, each alone, or mixed: here follow the remedies which be requisite for this intent.

Take *Trochiscos de Spodio*, Rubarb, and winter Cherries, of each one scruple, beat them all small, and make thereof with Agrimony water six or seven pils, take them every morning with Smallage water. Item, take Mirtle seed, and Nut blossoms, of each one drach. Amber, Zeduary, of each one scruple, beat and temper them all together, and part them in five equal parts.

This plaister following is also to be prepared; Take Annis, Comin, Cresses seed parched together, and Frankincense, of each 3. drach. the juice of Wormwood ℥. 1. ß. Rose water two ounces, strong Vinegar one ounce, beaten Cypres nuts, as much as sufficeth for to make a plaister with it; these being made, then lay it warm upon the Liver and stomach, and upon the parts adjoyning.

You may also use this salve following; Take oyl of wilde Roses one ounce and a half, oyl of Spica one ounce, Mastick and Rubarb, of each one drach, a little Wax, melt the same in the oyles, and when it beginneth to cool, mix the rest with it.

Item, take Spec. Triasantali one drach. fine Bolus, *Trochiscos de Spodio*, of each half a drach. Mastick one scruple, oyl of Wormwood, of Capers, of each half an ounce, a little Wax, make a salve of them.

But

But if this ſcowring do proceed of heat, then are cooling and binding medicines to be uſed for it, like as here before in *Lienteria*, where is ſufficiently diſcovered *Triaſantali*, *Diagredium*, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Corral, and prepared Coriander, of each half a drachme, Quince kernels, Sorrell ſeed, Raiſin ſtones, of each one ſcruple, Cinnamom, Frankincenſe of each five graines, Conſerve of dry Roſes one ounce, Roſe water two ounces, white Sugar nine ounces; ſeethe the Sugar in the foreſaid water, and make a confection of it. Item, take old conſerve of Roſes, and Marmalade, of each one ounce, ſyrup of Myrtles, as much as ſufficeth for to make therewith a confection. Another. Take the Species of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, prepared Wolves liver, and Rubarb, of each half an ounce, Sugar which is clarified with Roſe water, as much as you pleaſe; make a confection thereof, or caſt Tabulats of it. You are alſo to mix amongſt it as much burnt Ivory as you pleaſe.

Or take at the Apothecaries the confection called *Diacraconia* or *Diacroconia*, and Currans, of each one ounce, Rubarb, prepared liver of a Wolf, of each one drachme, burnt Ivory half a drachme, *Philonium Perſicum* one drachme, *Syrupi de Byzantiis*, as much as is needful, for to make therewith a confection, then take alwayes thereof about the third day one quarter of an ounce, or a little more at once.

This following is alſo very good; Take old conſerve of Roſes four ounces, Marmalade two ounces, prepared Coriander one drachme, Nutmegs half a drachme, confected Myrobalans *Chebuli* one ounce, cleanſed Piſtacies half an ounce, Almonds three drachmes; beat them all ſmall together, and then make a confection of it with the juyce of Quinces; ſyrup of dryed Roſes doth commonly ſtay all ſcowrings.

Take cleanſed roots of Burres, and ſeethe them until they be mellow, afterwards fry them in Butter, and eat them. Item, take a Nutmeg be it great or ſmall, let it ſweat well in hot aſhes, and eat it as it is, or ſtrew it upon a roſted Partridge, or ſome ſuch like thing. Or take a turtle Dove, prepare it, and fill it with new wax, with Mirtles, and Butchers broomeſeed, let it then be roſted by a mild fire, and afterwards eat it, it bindeth marvelously. It is alſo required by expert Phyſitians, that new laid egs are to be fryed in Wax. Others take an Eg and roſt it upon a hot tyle, and ſtrew it upon the powder of Nutmegs.

But if it be not given in due time, then doth it bring more dammage then commodity.

This powder following are you alſo to prepare; Take *Species e Aromatici Roſati*. ℥. 1. Cinnamom one drachme and a half, prepared Coriander two ſcruples, Roſes and red Corral of each one ſcruple, Sugar four ounces. Item, take parched Creſſes ſeed and Maſtick of each one drachme, give him this with the ſyrup of Quinces. Some do give Creſſes ſeed alone, with the ſyrup of Quinces.

We will now recite certaine Potions; Take Myrtle ſeed one drachme, give it him with rain water or Plantain water three ounces, and let him drinke it. Or take Liverwort one handfull, Endive roots, Fennell, Smallage, Butchers broome, Sperage, and Parſly, of each two handfuls, Agrimony half a handful, Currans one ounce, cut all that is to be cut, and let it be ſodden in Puller broth or water, until that the third part be waſted, then drink thereof a cruſe ful, and temper amongſt it half a drachme, of prepared Fox liver. Item, take Tormentil one drachme, give the Patient to drink thereof four or five times in red Wine.

Or take the rinds of a Peare tree one handful, a good pint of red Wine; let them ſethe together ſo long as one may ſeethe an hard Egge, and drink a good hearty draught of it very warme. But for his accuſtomed drink he may prepare this following; Take about 35. Sloes, and pour upon it about a good half pint of ſeething Wine, afterwards cover it cloſe, and let it be cold together; this being done, then pour altogether into three pintes of Wine, and drink thereof a good draught.

A roſted Quince peare eaten early in the morning, is alſo very good. Some do ſay that one muſt drink Beer or wine which hath ſtood a while upon *Bolus*. For this, is alſo ſteeled water good, wherein is ſlaked Steel, Iron, Gold, Silver, or Pibble ſtones; yea, all the Patients meat is to be dreſt with it.

Item take of the Pizzel of a Hart as much as you pleaſe, ſhaven or grated ſmall, and put it in your drink. Item, take a dryed Otters liver, beat it to powder, and drink thereof the quantity of a Bean with warme milk, or with red Wine, it is ſaid that it is tryed.

Likewiſe is commended Plantain decocted in Vinegar, and the broth being drunken:

The

The water alſo of Oaken leaves doth ſtop much, being drunken warme. The like doth alſo the juyce of Sloes, with the ſtones of Raiſins being beaten together, and the water diſtilled thereof and drunken. You have alſo in the firſt part, the firſt Chapter, and 3. §. a good water of the crums of burnt bread which is eſpecial good for this ſcowring or lask.

This plaiſter following is alſo eſpecially commended for this; Take broad Plantain 12. ounces, the leaves of the Pomegranate tree, Comfry, Daſyes, and the leaves of *Palma Chriſti*, of each two ounces, (being all green) the ſeed of Butchers broom, Gals, Myrtle ſeed of each one ounce, prepared Coriander one ounce, ſealed earth half an ounce, Dragons blood one quarter of an ounce, fine *Bolus*, three drachmes, Saffron half a drachme, Mace three drachmes, Gum, Dragagant, both parched, of each half an ounce: firſt beat the leaves, and ſeethe them in three pintes of water, then put unto it three ounces of red Vinegar, then let it ſeethe well again, and ſtrain the decoction, then ſtamp that which is boyled with all the reſt. Laſtly, temper half a drachme of Camphire with it; and make a ſupple plaiſter of it, and lay it over the whole belly.

If ſo be that this ſcowring proceed from the ſtomach (even as it may as well as from the Liver) then hath the ſame the like cauſe, to wit, *Phlegma* and *Cholera*. And hereby it may be diſcerned that it proceedeth from the ſtomach, if ſo be that there appear no feebleneſſe of the Liver, and if ſo be that which the Patient doth avoid be very white and thin, and that the ſtomach be grieved. The chief cauſe is, that many ſuperfluous humors do aggravate the ſame; or, that there is much meat and drink together in the ſtomach, and eſpecially when as both theſe things do concur, to wit, many ſuperfluous humors, and much meat and drink. So that then the meat and drink is of neceſſity for a time expelled out of the ſtomach, be it through weakneſſe of the retentive, or through the efficacy of the expulſive vertue, or that digeſtion be of it ſelf ſo faint, that the meat thereby as half digeſted muſt paſſe through the ſtomach. And to find good advice for this, the ſtomach muſt be ſtrengthened and heated, for which is very meet Marmalade with Spices, but eſpecially this podwer following; Take Pomegranate kernels parched and beaten ſmall one drachme, Caraway, Coriander, both ſteeped in Vinegar, dryed and parched, of each two ounces and a half, *Lignum Aloes*, bloſſomes of Pomegranates, and Butchers broome, of each one drachme, make powder of all theſe, and give a drachme of it at one time.

Item, take *Myrobalani Chebuli*, which be a little parched, one quarter of an ounce, Myrtle ſeed one drachme, ſyrup of Myrtle one ounce, uſe this as occaſion ſerveth. Item, take the ſhales of yellow Myrobalans which be parched, one quarter of an ounce, beat them ſmall, and give them to drink with two ounces of Plantain water. In fine all ſorts of Myrobalans a little parched, are good for all ſcowrings of the belly, of whatſoever cauſe they do proceed.

Afterwards, you are to uſe the confections of *Diacalamintha*. In like manner alſo Anniſeed, and roſted haſel nuts. Of the foreſaid haſel nuts one may make milk with ſteeled water, and alſo the ſame being confected with Sugar. Afterwards you muſt annoint the ſtomach with oyl, as namely with the oyl of Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and ſo cover it warme. The Patient muſt ſeethe Maſtick with red wine, and drink the ſame, if ſo be that the ſame go not clean againſt him.

But if this ſcowring do come through *Cholera*, it may be perceived by the yellow excrements which do ſmart much in the fundament, as alſo by the thirſt, and by the Ague; then are you to give him *Trochiſcos de Spodio*, with parched Barly broth, which is made as followeth; Take parched Barly beaten, and poure ſo much water upon it until it be well covered, then let it boyl until it be very thick, and afterwards wring it out. Of this decoction are you to take four ounces, and two or three drachmes of theſe *Trochiſcos*, and then mingle it with ſo much Ivory and Gum, as one can drink at one time. Item, take one drachme, and a half of Myrobalans, *Chebuli*, and *Indi* of each one ſcruple, parched Rubarbe four ſcruples, Dragagant half a drachme, ſteep all theſe in two ounces of the juyce of Quinces, one ounce of Endive water, and half an ounce of the water of Pellitory, wring it out hard, and take it luke warme.

Item, take Rubarb one drachme or one and a half, parch it, and pownd it to powder, and drink it with three ounces of Plantain water.

Take of the beſt Rubarb one drachme, and a half, parch it, and beat it to powder, the Pils of Myrobalans, *Chebuli* one drachme, Maſtick three drachmes, the juyce of Quinces half an ounce, the water of broad Plantaine three or four ounces; temper them together, and

and drink it fasting in the morning. Some that be prone to this scowring, do accustome every week two times to eat one drachme of Rubarb parched. Item, take the confection of *Micleta* ℥.1.β. *Trochiscos de spodio* ℥. 1. temper it with ℥.3. of rain water, and drink it early in the morning. Take yellow Myrobalans and Rubarb, of each one drachme, Dragagant and Gum, of each one scruple, parched together, Cucubes, fine Bolus, of each half a scruple, beaten small together, then temper with it sufficient syrup of Myrtles, and when as then you would use it, break it as is aforesaid.

A powder wherewith the patients meat is to be strewed; Take good Rubarb one drachme and a half, yellow Myrobalans one quarter of an ounce, both parched, fine Bolus one drachme, yellow Saunders, red Coral, of each one scruple, prepared Pearles one drachme, *Trochiscos de spodio* one drachme, make thereof a subtile powder. You may also take the weight of one drachme and a half with Plantain water.

For this be also Clisters requisite, as hereafter follow; Take the broth of Lambs head and a Calves head one pint, seethe Oaken-leaves in it, broad and picked Plantain, of each one handful and a half, parched Barly half a handful; let them seethe unto the half, then take of this decoction, and put unto it the yolks of a couple of Egs brayed well, oyl of Roses two ounces, oyl of Violets two ounces, and then minister this Clister warme.

Item, take prepared Coriander, Myrtle seed, Acorn cups, the seed of Plantain, and juyce of Sloes, of each one handful, Fennel, Comin, and Annis, of each half a handful, pils of Pomegranats two handfuls; let them seethe together in sufficient water: then take of this decoction twelve or sixteen ounces, oyl of Roses three ounces, Hony of Roses one ounce, Deers suet two ounces; melt it, and make a Clister of it. Also the decoction of Rice is good, if the cause of this lask be in the lower guts.

Hereafter be described commodious pils; Take the stones of all Myrobalans, beat them when they will be parched, Rubarb parched, fine Bolus, and Amber, of each a like quantity, make a masse of pils of it, with Dragagant and Gum, dissolved in Plantain water; but if there be an Ague with it, then use Barly water.

Or take one quarter of an ounce of Rubarbe, which is parched, burnt Ivory one drachme, make of it as is before said.

Item, field steel one drachme, Cypers nuts one quarter of an ounce, Mastick, Amber, Comfry, Daysies, Plantain seed, of each one scruple, Gum and dragagant both parched, of each half a drachme, Cinnamom, Galangal, and Graines, of each two scruples, make pils thereof with the juyce of Plantain, for they do bind much.

Others more. Take unsalted Deers rennet one drachme, *Trochiscos de spodio, de Carabe, De Terra Sigillata*, of each one scruple, well parched Rubarb, Plantain seed also parched, of each half a scruple, beat them small together, make pils of them, with the juice of Plantain; when they be tempered with the syrup of Myrtles, then do they bind the more.

Item, take *Hypocistis*, blossomes of Pomegranates, Butchers Broome, Barberies, Sorrel seed, of each one drachme and a half, Purslan seed, and Plantain, both parched, of each one quarter of an ounce, Dragons blood, Worme-eaten Galles, the juyce of Sloes, yellow seeds of Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, Henbane seed one scruple, *Opium* two scruples and a half; make pils thereof with the juice of Plantain, and forme seven of a drachme. But note yet, that they be very strong, and that one must not use many.

This following is more gentile; Take Gum, Mastick, Frankincense, Amber, of each half a drachme, temper them with the syrup of Roses unto pils, and take alwayes thereof twice a day, a little or much before meat, according as the scowring is violent.

For this scowring is alwayes good all rost meat, fryed Egs, Rice, and Lettice, (if it be with great heat) Calves feet, conserve of Rosler fruits, Musk Peares, before meales old conserve of Roses, conserve of water Lillies, Marmalade, preserved Bayberries, and also preserved Sloes.

The drink for this Patient must be steeled water, wherein Myrtle seed is decocted, also Harts tongue, Wine drunken warme. These syrups following are very good, as namely, syrup of Myrtles, dryed Roses, Mints, and also of Hony of Roses; for it hath a mild binding, and an astringent vertue, like as verjuyce hath also.

The smoke or reke of frankincense is also very good. Milk put into Clisters when it is steeled is commended for this purpose. Note ye, that all that we have sufficiently written of before is also good for the red or bloody flix, whereof wee will shortly hereafter speak and discourse.

Of the ſcowring which proceedeth of the Liver and Stomach. §. 16.

IT cometh alſo verily to paſſe, that the Liver and the Stomach do cauſe this ſcowring, which is then very dangerous: ſo that the Dropſie called *Tympanites* is wont to follow it. Therefore is an order made and ordained, what one ought to obſerve for this. Wherein firſt it is needful that he forbear all meats and drinks which be laxative, or do in any wiſe moleſt the body, as Spinage, Beets, Mallows, Mercury, well boyled Coleworts, and ſuch like.

He muſt alſo be reſtrained from new wines, and them that be not very old. Likewiſe alſo of all ſharp, ſalt and ſowr things, as Radiſhes, Onions, Garlick, hard meats, unleavened bread, and that which is not well baked. And he muſt eſchue fruits, and ſpecially them that be laxative, as Figs, Grapes, Prunes, and ſuch like. In fine, for this ſickneſſe the patient is to be kept very ſober in eating and drinking, and feeding, and feed onely upon that which is light of digeſtion. He muſt alſo abſtain from all violent motions, and that chiefly after meat, from venery, much watching, and anger. All his meats (be they ſodden or roſted) muſt be dreſt with Deers ſuet. Secondly, he muſt beware of many kinds of meats, eſpecially againſt night. Thirdly, before every meal he muſt eat a roſted Quince, Pear, or four or five Medlars. Fourthly, Lentils are very hail meat for him, if they be dreſt after this manner: Let them firſt ſeethe a little in vinegar, after that boyl them with two parts of water and one part of Vinegar. Fifthly, every evening he is to take three of theſe pils enſuing: Take parched Dragagant and Gum, of each one drach. Butchers Broomſeed, Mirtle ſeed, Acorn cups, burnt Ivory, Squinant, Roſes, Cypers roots, of each two ſcruples, whereof make pils with the juice of Daiſies. Before noon he is to uſe this confection enſuing: Take Marmalade without ſpices three ounces, prepared Coriander and Maſtick, of each one drachme, temper them with the juice of Quinces, and uſe each time half an ounce or more.

Alſo once every eight daies take two of theſe pils: Take *Trochiſcos de Spodio*, one quarter of an ounce. parched Rubarb, ℥. ß. burnt Ivory and parched Dragagant, ana. ℥. 1. Hares rennet, or the rennet of a young Goat or Kid, ℥. 1. ß. make pils thereof, and uſe them as all the reſt.

This plaiſter alſo following is to be made, and worn upon the navel: Take two ounces of Roſin, Cypers nuts one drach. and a half, Plantain ſeed, the juyce of Sloes, burnt Ivory, Roſes, Iron droſſe that is prepared, of each one drach. Mace two ſcruples, but the Roſin muſt be boyled in red vinegar. When it is ſufficiently ſodden, and almoſt cold, then temper all the foreſaid Species with it, ſpread it upon a piece of leather the quantity of a quarter of a yard four ſquare, and lay this plaiſter upon the navel downwards. As often as the patient goeth to ſtool, he is to fume his fundament with this powder enſuing. Take *Colophonia*, *Gallia Muſcata* and red Styrax, of each half a drach. *Lignum Aloes* one drach. red Coral, burnt Ivory, *Sandaraca*, of each two ſcruples: pound them all together, and temper them all together. Afterwards ſtrew ſome of it upon hot coals. It is alſo good advice, that there be alwaies boyled, in his meat, as much Comfrey as the bigneſſe of a great finger.

Laſtly, he muſt continually wear this bag enſuing upon the ſtomach. Take Mirtle ſeed, prepared Coriander, Marjoram and Nep, of each one handful, Mace half an ounce, Maſtick, *Gallia Muſcata*, red Styrax, red Coral and *Sandaraca*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Lignum Aloes* one drach. and a half, parched Comin half an ounce, temper them, and uſe it as aforeſaid.

Thus far have we ſpoken of this Scowring, and of both the cauſes of it, as of the ſtomach and of the liver, and alſo how they both do come together.

The third cauſe of this *Diarrhœa* is the obſtruction of the ſmall veins, and are called of the Grecians *Meſenterion* or *Meſenaon*, for that as the ſtomach and the entrails have done their duties, ſo if theſe veins do not ſuck out the nouriſhment, then doth nature expel the meat in manner of a thick pap, with pain in the right ſide and in the bowels, and ſo out of the body, eſpecially if one have eaten much groſſe and ſweet meat before. Alſo this ſcowring may be well cauſed of an impoſtume, which might be about the ſmall veins, or about the upper guts, at which time is commonly perceived an Ague, heat and pain: which obſtruction doth alſo proceed for the moſt part, of groſſe and tough humors.

For

For this diſeaſe vomiting is one of the beſt remedies. Alſo this ſirupe following is to be uſed: Take the roots of Smallage, Parſley, Butchers broom, Sperage, graſſe and Cicory, of each one drach. the ſeeds of Smallage and of Parſley, Cumin and Fennel, of each one ounce: let this ſeethe well together, and wring it out, and to this Colature add half a pint of hony, and boyl it again, and clarifie it as behoveth. Give thereof to the Patient every morning four or five ounces Alſo the ſeeds of Smallage, *Ameos* and Parſley decocted in Wine may be uſed for this, being given the Patient to drink: in like maner parched Rubarb with wine or Endive water. This patient ſhall alſo oftentimes, but at each time eat a little, and take ever after it ſome penetrating things, as *Diacalaminthum* one drach. and a half before meat, and half a drach. after meat. His drink muſt be likewiſe old white wine. Alſo to take otherwhiles ſome Treacle is very commodious. It is alſo very good that the belly be ſtrongly rubbed before and after noon with a rough cloth.

The fourth cauſe of this lask proceedeth from the milt, the which may be known hereby, to wit, when his excrements are a black and dark gray, if the pain be in the left ſide, if the Patient be melancholike, quiet and tractable. When the matter is very ſharp and blackiſh, then is there great danger with it. But if it happen in the end of a quartain Ague, or of any other ſickneſſe, then doth it bring eaſe with it, and is a ſign of health. What is fit for this, you may ſee hereafter, where we diſcourſe of the Milt.

The fift cauſe proceedeth from the brains, which may be diſcerned by the pain of the head: alſo by the rheume, and by the ſlime of the mouth, which after ſleep runneth out of the ſame, and is alſo expelled by ſtool. Theſe diſeaſes are to be cured like as all other rheumatick diſeaſes, whereof you finde ſufficient diſcourſe in the ſecond Part, the 12. Chapter, and 2. §. But it is eſpecially commended, that parched Melilot ſhall be laid upon the forehead. Otherwhiles a bag with Cammomil and Roſes, and ſo to govern himſelf, as aboveſaid, in the ſecond cauſe of the ſtomach.

The laſt cauſe is windineſſe, which puffeth up the ſtomach, ſpoileth digeſtion, and provoketh a ſcowring, like as hereafter ſhall be taught in the deſcription of windineſſe of the ſtomach. It is alſo counſelled to every ſuch Patient (like as is often ſhewed before) that he muſt be very ſober in eating and drinking, yea he muſt ſuffer hunger as much as is poſſible, and that he exerciſe himſelf well before meals, and uſe the confection *Diacymininm* or *Diacalamintha*, which do ſtrengthen his ſtomach, and let him govern himſelf in all things elſe, as hath been ſaid before in *Lienteria*.

Of the Lask Dyſenteria, *called the red Flix.* §. 17.

THis name *Dyſenteria* is of the Grecians ſo called, being an ulceration or excoriation of the Entrails, and is thus deſcribed: *Dyſenteria* is a pain of the Entrails, which inflameth, fretteth and excoriateth the ſame; ſo that with the matter of the ſcowring, blood is avoided; and it cauſeth much gnawing, which maketh the Patient to go often to the ſtool.

Or thus; *Dyſenteria* is a ſcowring, with an exulceration of the bowels, which is increaſed through outward cauſes, as heat, cold, drink, hard meat. The cauſes of this noyſome ſcowring are ſharp humors, which paſſe through the bowels, and there exulcerate the ſame, fret and take away their fatneſſe. Item by the taking of too ſharp medicines, as *Diagridion*, *Eſula*, and Neeſing woort, or when too much of theſe hath been taken at once.

Alſo this ſcowring is occaſioned, when the body is overcharged with *Choleta*, *Melancholia*, or *Phlegma*, of which ſuperfluities, if the expulſive vertue be ſtrong, nature ſeeketh to unburthen her ſelf. Likewiſe alſo, when the meat in the ſtomach, or humors in the veins do putrifie.

In like manner alſo of great and long alteration of the ayre, be it in hot ayre, dry ayr, or when theſe meet together; like as dry ayr it ſelf is wont to cauſe *Choleram*. Item, of the uſe of ſuch fruits which do quickly putrifie; therefore it is not commendable, and eſpecially that children ſhould eat the ſame.

The ſigns of this red ſcouring or bloody Flix are theſe, which do not come ſuddenly upon one: alſo before it getteth the maſtery, it provoketh pain and gripings in the bowels, and alſo round about the ſtomach. This ſcouring likewiſe burneth and pricketh ſore, whereupon doth firſt follow the ſcraping of the bowels; mixed with a little blood, until it corrode ſomewhat deeper into the bowels; then is the pain felt more

above

above the Navel: and if ſo be that the diſeaſe be in the great guts then is the pain felt moſt under the Navel. Alſo the ſcraping of the lowermoſt guts are much fatter then of the uppermoſt: and it doth come alſo in greater abundance, with many more ſuch like demonſtrations.

But there be deſcribed two ſorts of *Dyſenteria*, whereof the firſt is here before diſcovered. The ſecond hath the name of *Dyſenteria* unjuſtly, by reaſon that it is without ſcraping of the bowels, and very ſuddenly falleth upon one, with much blood. This with good right is to be called rather an Hepatical Flix than *Dyſenteria*: but we will here firſt of all write of the right *Dyſenteria*, and afterwards of the Flix of the Liver.

If we deſire to prevent this red Flix or *Dyſenteria*, then is the ſame to be done both through outward and alſo inward means. But firſt we will ſhew what is beſt to be uſed inwardly for it: wherefore you are firſt to keep in your memory the common rules which have been rehearſed before in the Lask *Lienteria*, to wit, that all thoſe things wherewith you will ſtay this ſcouring, be alwaies miniſtred before meats, for that after meat theſe binding medicines cauſe a ſick body to ſcour the more.

For this ſcouring or red Flix all expert Phiſitians do uſe commonly at the firſt parched Mirobalans, and chiefly the yellow, ſteeped in Plantain water, and put alſo unto it parched Rubarb, beaten to powder. But the ſame muſt not be infuſed but in ſubſtance and powder, like as you have ſeen before in ſome potions, for the ſcowring of *Cholera*.

Item, take parched ſeeds of Fleawort two ounces and a half, ſeeds of Plantain one ounce and a quarter, Gum, fine Bolus, of each three drachmes, in the juice of Quinces defecate.

Or take dryed Quinces, beat them to powder, and give thereof one drach. and a half, with Plantain water, once or twice a day, wherewith you may alſo temper parched Nutmegs, and the ſeeds of Plantain. Item, take parched Gum one ounce, ſealed earth three quarters of an ounce, fine Bolus half an ounce; make powder thereof, and give of it, ℥. 1. ß. at once.

Item, take Shepheards purſe, S. Johns wort, and Pennyroyal, of each a like quantity: make a powder of it: and give two drachmes thereof at once in the morning early, with a new laid egge: this ſtayeth the ſcouring evidently. Burnt Harts horn waſht in Roſe water or Plantain water, a drachme, or a drachme and a half, taken with wine wherein a little Dragagant is diſſolved, is a very expert medicine, if it be taken twice a day. The like alſo of one drachme of the rennet of a young Hare taken with wine.

Another: Take broad Plantain ſeed, and Colombine ſeed, both parched and beaten to powder, of each a like quantity, and give each time thereof two ſcruples or one drach. with red wine.

Item, take ſmall beaten Bloodſtone, well waſht in Plantain water, three drach. red Coral one drachme and a half, roots of Tormentil, and *Trochiſcos de Spodio*, of each one drach. ſhaven Ivory, burnt Harts horn, of each two ſcruples, prepared Pearls one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus half a drachme: beat them all ſmall, and take two drachmes of this powder in the morning with Wine. You may alſo ſtrew the meat with the ſame.

Item, burn Frogs to aſhes in a pot, and uſe thereof as before, for they have a marvellous operation to ſtanch blood.

In like ſort may for many purpoſes be uſed Mirtle ſeed, the ſeeds of Butchers broom, Pomegranate kernels, ſealed earth, fine Bolus, and other binding medicines, which are to be beaten to powder, and as the caſe requireth, may be uſed well enough for the red flix.

Here followeth now a notable confection againſt all ſpecies of ſcouring, and the ſame may be uſed after what ſort one will. Take pils and bloſſomes of Pomegranats, Gals, and Acorn cups, of each one quarter of an ounce, Raiſin ſtones, Mirtle ſeeds, hazel nuts, dry Pomgranate kernels, yellow Roſe ſeed, the juice of Sloes, Butchers broom ſeed, of each two ounces, red Coral, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, white and black Poppy ſeed, parched Gum, the ſeed of Fleawort, Starch, Dragons blood, of each one drach. and a half, Sugar ſix ounces; temper them well together, whereof you may make a confection with Sugar, or with Plantain water, or Tabulates; or ſtrew the powder alone upon the meat.

meat. You may alſo make pils thereof, which are to be uſed in the morning betimes, and in the evening two hours after ſupper; but of the confection may be uſed three or four times a day, like as neceſſity requireth, at each time one quarter or half an ounce.

Here followeth yet another, which may be uſed after the ſame manner: Take Butchers broomſeed, fine Bolus, and Gum, of each three drachmes and one ſcruple, Dragons blood, and burnt Ivory, of each one drachme, and ſeven grains; Cloves ſtrigs, Annis, of each four ſcruples, *Hypociſtis* one ſcruple and three grains, Blood ſtone two drachmes, and a half, red and white Coral, of each two ſcruples, Amber one quarter of an ounce, Gomfry, Daiſyes, Roſes, of each one quarter of an ounce and one ſcruple, bloſſomes of Pomegranats, Dragagant, of each one drachme, and ſeven grains, Myrtle ſeed three drachmes and one ſcruple, Quince kernels, white poppy ſeeds, of each five drachmes, Knotgraſſe, Sorrel ſeeds, yellow Roſe ſeed, broad Plantain ſeeds, and Calamus, of each one drachme, and ſeven grains, one pound or more of Marmalade, diſſolved with Sugar or Hony, and the other ſpices tempered amongſt it.

Another. Take Marmalade boyled with hony, and white bread well toſted, of each four ounces, red beaten Saunders one ounce, then put thereto a little red Wine, and temper them all together, whereof the Patient may take otherwhiles the weight of half an ounce. Spread it alſo upon a cloth, and lay it upon the ſtomach. This hath been approved. Take old conſerve of Roſes, and Marmalade, mix them both together unto a confection made with ſteeled Goats milk.

Take ſteeled Quince Peares, or Marmalade, three ounces, Maſtick, Mints, and Mace, of each one drachme; temper them all together with a little of the juyce of Quinces, and make Trochiſcos thereof half an ounce in weight, and you ſhall alwayes take one of them before meat.

Or take old conſerve of Roſes three ounces, Marmalade two ounces and a half, red Coral one drachme, Tormentil, *Biſtorta*, *Trochiſci de Carabe*, fine Bolus, of each half a drachme, prepared blood ſtone one quarter of an ounce, temper all together with the ſyrup of Myrtles.

Item, take old conſerve of Roſes three ounces, Marmalade two ounces and a half, conſerve of Bugloſſe and Burrage, of each one ounce, prepared Bolus one drachme and a half, Coral and Roſes, of each half a drachme, prepared Pearls two drachmes and a half, *Biſtorta* one drachme, Tormentil two ſcruples, beat them all ſmall and make a confection of them with the ſyrup of Quinces.

It is to be noted, that the old conſerve of Roſes is very good for all manner of looſeneſſe of the belly. Some commend that which is made with Sugar alone, and not with Hony. Others uſe both kinds, according as the ſcowring is with heat, or with cold.

Conſerve of *Cornus*, called at the Apothecaries *Rob de Cornubus*, hath great force in binding, for all kinds of looſeneſſe of the belly, and alſo for womens exceſſive menſtrual flux, and for all other ſorts of bleedings, and it is thus prepared; Take ripe *Cornus* fruits, boyl them ſo long in red Wine, until they may be driven through a hairen Searſe or ſtrainer, and then let that which is ſtrained, ſeethe until it be thick by a mild fire, ſtirring it alwayes continually, untill it be a thick conſerve, and preſerve the ſame.

Mithridate and Treacle do alſo ſtay the ſcowring, like as doth alſo the conſerves of white Lillies, if there be a great heat withal. In like manner conſerves of Barberies uſed with meat in manner of a ſauce.

Hereafter follow yet other things more, which may be taken for this confection; Take *Trochiſci de Carabe* three drachmes, Dragons blood and fine Bolus, of each half a drachme, Plantain ſeeds or Endive ſeeds half a drachme, Sugar four ounces; ſeethe them all together with Roſe water and make Tabulars of it.

This enſuing is taken to be a very good and approved remedy. Take a Nutmeg, burn it at a Wax candle until the oyl drop out, pownd it to powder, and temper with it the whites of two Egs, and as much Bean meal as will make a dough. Afterwards make pellets of them as big as a Nut, and put them on a ſtick and roſt them ſoftly until they be throughly dry, whereof give to the Patient in the morning and alſo at even-ſong.

But if you will have the ſcowring ſpeedily ſtopt, then take the more Nutmegs, and the leſſe meal.

In like manner are alſo highly commended hard ſodden egs eaten out of vinegar, and ſtrewed

ſtrewed with powder of Nutmegs. But ſome prefer roſted Egs alone.

Dryed Peaches boyled in water and eaten, do ſtay the red flix. Others do confect Peaches in this manner; Cut the Peaches in two peeces, and take out the ſtones, tye them to a thread and dry them in an Oven. And when you will uſe them, then infuſe them in water. Then be they good for the ſtomach, ſtay the ſcowring, quench thirſt, moyſten the throat and drought of the tongue.

Concerning the drink and ſuch like, ſteeled milk is very good for children. Item, Roſe water 6. ounces, Cloves, Maſtick, Butchers broom ſeed, of each one drachme; pownd them ſmall, and put it into a glaſſe, and let it ſeethe in water, and give the children one ſpoonful of it.

Another drink; Take Glew that is burnt in a baking Oven four pound, pownd it ſmall and pour fair fountain water unto it; let it ſeethe a waume or two. Laſtly, ſlake 3. or four times in it glowing ſteel; afterwards ſtrain it cleer out, and make Almond milk with it. Item, the juyce of Sloes, and of Barberries are very commodious, each apart or mingled together or drunken with wine, like as is taught in the 15. §. of the ſcowring *Diarrhœa*, and of the Sloes. You have alſo in the firſt part and 3. §. another water of Sloes, which may be uſed alſo for this red and bloody flix.

Syrup of Mints is much uſed for all looſeneſſe of the belly; therefore it is not amiſſe to ſhew at this preſent, how it is made after two manner of wayes. Take the juyce of ripe Quince Pears, the juyce of ſweete, meetly ſweet, ſowr Pomegranates, of each four ounces and a half, infuſe therein four ounces and a half of rumpled Mints the ſpace of four and twenty houres with half an ounce of Roſes, afterwards ſeethe them all together by a mild fire until the half be boyled away, and then wring it through a cloth. Further, put good hony unto it, or Sugar, ſix ounces, and let it ſeethe well and thick; laſtly, hang in it a peece of ſilk with *Lignum Aloes* five grains, Amber three grains, Muſk one grain. This ſyrup doth not only ſtop all ſcowrings, but is alſo good for all diſeaſes of the ſtomach which proceed of cold, and it doth alſo take away all wambling and vomiting.

The other is made thus; Take clarifyed juyce of Mints, ſweete and ſowre juyce of Pomegranates, let this ſeethe all together with ſufficient Sugar, unto a ſyrup.

The ſyrup of Quince Peares is alſo of the ſame efficacy, which is alſo made diverſly, as followeth hereafter; Take the ſeeds of broad Plantain two ounces, Cipres nuts, the middle rinds of an Oaken tree, Cheſtnut tree, and butchers broome, of each two handfuls, Myrtle ſeed one handful, ſowre Quinces, Services and Medlars, of each ſix, the juyce of Sloes half an ounce, *Hypociſtis* one ounce; ſeethe them all together in Plantain water, and make thereof a ſyrup with ſyrup.

Another; Take rain water or Roſe water ſixteen ounces, and ſeethe therein one ounce of Myrtle ſeed, Roſes, Sumach, the juyce of Sloes, *Hypociſtis*, bloſſomes of Pomegranats, burnt Ivory, of each half an ounce, ten or twelve unripe Services, Licorice, Dragagant and Gum, of each half an ounce; pownd all that is to be pownded, and when it is ſodden away unto twelve ounces, then ſtrain it thorow a cloth and put a pound or twain of Sugar unto it; then let it ſeethe again together, clarifying it unto a ſyrup.

The third ſort of ſyrups is called at the Apothecaries *Mivæ*, which is alſo made two manner of wayes, as followeth; Take of the juyce of Quinces ſtrained well, twelve ounces, ſeethe it away unto the half, and then pour good wine unto it, and nine ounces of Sugar, then let it boyle again unto a thick ſyrup. This ſyrup ſtayeth the laſk and comforteth the ſtomach.

The other ſort of *Mivæ* is called *Mivæ Citoniorum aromatica*, for that it is prepared with good ſpice, like as followeth; Take of the juyce of ſowr Quinces ſeven common pounds, old wine half as much, clarified hony two pound and four ounces, or one may take Sugar inſtead of hony; let them ſeethe away ſcumming it, and afterwards hang in this ſyrup bounden in a cloth, Cinamom, Cardamom, of each one drachme and a half, Cloves one drachme, Ginger, Maſtick, of each two ſcruples, Saffron one drachme, Mace two ſcruples, Muſk half a drachme, *Galbia Muſcata* one drachme; this being all beaten groſſe together, wring it often out, that the force of theſe may come into the ſyrup. This ſyrup is much warmer than the other, and therefore it is not to be aſed for the looſeneſſe of the belly which commeth through heat: otherwhiles it ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach, the [illegible], and all inward members; it cauſeth appetite to meat, it helpeth digeſtion, and taketh away the vomiting.

The ſyrup of Myrtles will we add unto it, for that the ſame is very fit for all ſcowr-

tings

ings or ſixes. Take Myrtle ſeeds twelve ounces, the juyce of Sloes and Butchers broom ſeed, of each fifteen grains, Roſes one ounce, burnt Ivory and *Hypociſtis*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Mints one drachme; ſeethe them all together in rain water unto the half, then ſtrain it through, and put unto it ſix ounces of the juyce of Quinces, hony twelve ounces, but clarify it well, and let it boyle unto the conſiſtence of a thick ſyrup.

Another which is very common at the Apothecaries. Take Myrtle ſeed ten drachmes, white Saunders, Butchers broome ſeedes, bloſſomes of Pomegranates, of Barberries, of each fifteen drachmes, Medlars ſix ounces and two drachmes, juyce of Pomegranates, juyce of Crabs of each twelve ounces; boyle the foreſaid ſimples in theſe juyces, and with thirty ounces of Sugar make a ſyrup of them.

For this are alſo fit theſe uſual Syrups following, viz. the ſyrup of Raſps, *Oxyſaccharum*, of dry Roſes, and of Peares, for therewith will the ſharpneſſe of the matter be delayed.

Cliſters are alſo fit for this diſeaſe (whereof ſome be here ſet down.) Firſt, they are to be made, which the Phyſitians do call *Lavativa*, which be thoſe that do waſh the bowels; for which there is none other to be uſed but barley water onely. Secondly, if it be deſired to have them cleanſe more, then temper with it ſome hony of Roſes or a little ſlight Sugar. The third ſort is binding and aſſwaging the pain; Take a handful of parched Barley, ſeethe it well in water, take of this decoction twelve or ſixteeen, ounces, ſlight Sugar three ounces, oyl of Roſes two ounces, and two yolks of Egs. This Cliſter may be often uſed.

It is to be noted that there is to be taken for it oyl of Roſes, which is made of Roſe buds, ſo that it is better for this purpoſe. You have alſo a Cliſter before in the fifteenth §. which was made of the broth of a Lambs head. For ſuch a one you may uſe ſteeled water, and to ſeethe therein the ſeeds of Plantain. But if ſo be that then the ſorapings of the bowels paſſe not away withal, there muſt be tempered amongſt it one ounce of Deers ſuet, and a drachme of Dragons Blood.

For to know whether the uppermoſt or the undermoſt bowels in the red or blody flix be periſhed, take a handful of Dogs dung, and diſſolve the ſame in ſteeled milke and give it to the patient; then if ſo be that he preſently with pain, purulency and blood avoid the ſame again downward, and be mixt with the excrements, then it is a ſure ſigne, that the diſeaſe is in the lowermoſt bowels. But if he go much to ſtool after the pain (the blood being ſeparated from the excrements) and if the pain be about the Navill, then it is a ſigne that the place of this flix is in the uppermoſt bowels.

If you deſire to ſtay the bloudy flix, then are theſe things following to be uſed, to wit, ſteeled water, the juyce of Plantain, the juyce of the herb Mullin, and the juyce of Sloes, wherewith one may temper a few paper aſhes, and one or two yolks of Egs ſodden hard, the powder of ſealed earth, or fine Bolus, and the oyl of Myrtles, of which you may chuſe that liketh you beſt and can get ſooneſt.

This Cliſter enſuing dryeth and healeth; Take unwormeaten Gals, Butchers broom ſeed, and Bolus of each one quarter of an ounce, Deers ſuet or Goats ſuet one ounce and a half, two hard ſodden yolks of Egs well beaten one ounce, of the juyce of Plantain and rayne water, as much as is needful for to ſeethe the premiſſes in it. Or take the decoction of Butchers broome ſeed. This Cliſter is the Patient to keep with him as long as ever he can.

Another. Take peeled Lentils, Millet Roſes, bloſſomes of Pomegranates, and Gals, of each one handful; ſeethe theſe together in a pint and a half of water unto the half, take thereof ten ounces, of the oyl of Roſes one ounce, paper aſhes one drachme, and Deers ſuet one ounce, and the yolk of a roſted Egg, and make thereof a Cliſter.

Suppoſitories. Take white Henbane ſeed, *Opium*, white poppie ſeed, burnt Ivory, bloſſomes of Pomegranates, and Frankincenſe, of each a like quantity, boyled Hony one ounce alwayes to a drachme of the premiſſes, make Suppoſitories of it. They be ſtrong, they thicken the humor, procure ſleep, and take away the pain, but they be not to be uſed but when the pain is tollerable. Theſe Peſſaries may be made for women to be uſed in the Mother. Take Frankincenſe, Linſeed, and Sarſſon, of each one drachme, temper them well together and bind it in a fine cloth with a threed at it, that it may be well pluckt out again. In great extremities may the ſtupefactives be uſed, which do numm the ſinewes, yet are they not to be uſed unleſſe all inward and outward remedies have been applied.

But firſt of all are outward medicines and afterwards inward to be adhibited. Like

Likewiſe the remedies which be miniſtred by the mouth, are firſt to be tried, and afterwards from below.

Pils for all manner of fluxes of blood.

For this are theſe Pils enſuing alſo uſed. Take the bloſſoms and pils of Pomgranats, Mirtle ſeed, Comfry roots, Dragons blood, fine Bolus, the juice of Sloes, Roſes, Argal, Hipociſtis, Butchers broom ſeed, and Saffron, Gallia Muſcata, Gals, Cinamom, burnt Ivory, Mace, and Gum, of each one drach. *Opium* one drach. and a half: make of them with the juice of Plantain, as ſmall pils as Hemp ſeeds, and give thereof nine or eleven at one time. Item, there was a woman which voided eighteen pound of blood at three times, and ſhe was cured with *Philonium Perſicum*, which was tempered with the juice of Plantain and parched Rubarb. But in theſe weighty matters an expert Phyſitian is to be ſent for, becauſe (as we have told already) there is no jeſting with this *Philonium*.

For this red flix, uſe the Maſtick pils and diet, mentioned in the 15. §. precedent.

What ought to be outwardly uſed for this diſeaſe.

FIrſt of all it is good to bind the arms, but not the legs; then is alſo a bath to be made, wherein be decocted the leaves of Quinces, Pears, Medlars, Service tree, Cornus leaves, Butchers Broom, Gals, Myrtles, Acorn cups, Roſes, and ſuch like binding things, wherein the ſick perſons are to be ſet even up to their Navels. Thus may you alſo ſeethe the foreſaid things, and wet clothes in the decoction, and then lay them warm upon the belly; or in the ſtead of them to uſe the juice of Plantain, or any other juices of binding herbs, as Butchers broom ſeed, or Mirtle ſeed: and temper alſo the powder amongſt it, whereof be made *Trochiſci de Terra ſigillata.*

Theſe ſick perſons do complain alſo of great pain, when the ſharp humour ſcoureth through the excoriated bowels. Now for to aſſwage the ſame, you are to take of the firſt mentioned things, which you will; but you muſt put alwayes Camomil and Melilot unto it, and afterwards let them ſeethe in wine or ſteeled water, and then lay them with a cloth wrung out, or with a ſponge upon the pain. You may make alſo three or four bags of the foreſaid things, and ſeethe them in wine, and ſo lay them warm upon the pain, and when the one is cold, then to lay another upon it again.

There be alſo fumigations uſed for this ſickneſſe, for which is to be taken Ciprés nuts, Myrtle ſeed, Butchers broom ſeed, Pomgranat pils, and Worm-eaten Gals, of each one handful; the juyce of Sloes, prepared Coriander, Hypociſtis, Plantain ſeed, Roſes, Frankincenſe, *Sandaraca*, *Gallia Muſcata*, Bloodſtone, and Marjoram, of each one handfull, Cinamom, Maſtick, and parched Caraway ſeed, of each one drach. Colophonia, one ounce and a half; make a powder of them, and ſtrew thereof upon the cools, and receive the fume from below.

Another; Take Marjoram, ſeeds of Butchers broom, Myrtle and Coriander, of each one handful and a half, bloſſoms and pils of Pomgranats, Hypociſtis, and yellow Roſe ſeeds, of each half a handful, roots of the herb mullin, roots of Carduus Benedictus, the rinds and roots of the Mulberry tree: make all theſe to powder, and then make alſo a bag for to ſit upon, and take therewith the firſt above mentioned things, and boyl them in wine.

For a plaiſter; Take a ſhive or twain of Rye bread, toſt it well, and beſprinkle it with Vinegar or red Wine; afterwards beat it, and put unto it Gals, Acorn cups, the bloſſoms and ſhales of Pomgranats, and the rinds of the Medlar tree, of each ℥.2. Roſes, Storax, the juice of Sloes, fine Bolus, ſealed Earth and Dragons blood, of each ℥.1. make them all to powder, and put it then amongſt the foreſaid bread. Further, make a plaiſter with a ſufficient quantity of the oyl of Myrtles, Roſes, and Roſewater, with as much Vinegar as ſuffiſeth, and ſo lay this plaiſter warm upon the ſtomach.

This patient may alſo uſe ſuch ſalves for this diſeaſe, as do hereafter follow. Take oyl of Roſes, of Myrtles, oyl of Quinces, and of Maſticke, of each half an ounce, Gals, Roſes, bloſſoms of Pomgranats, Myrtle ſeed, fine Bolus, Dragons blood and Maſtick, of each ℥.1. Wax as much as is needfull for to make a ſalve. This following is ſtronger; Take Maſtick ſix ounces, oyl of Quinces and of myrtles, of each three ounces, Maſtick, the juice of Sloes, and Dragons blood, of each three quarters of an ounce, red Coral, Amber, ſealed Earth, of each half an ounce, the innermoſt pils of Cheſtnuts, prepared Iron droſſe, of each one quarter of an ounce; fine Bolus, Pomgranats pils and Frankincenſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Roſin half an ounce, Wax as much as ſufficeth

for

for to make an oyntment thereof, wherewith the belly must be anointed 3. or 4. times a day. This ungnent is specially good against excessive flowing of the flowers in women, the same being laid upon the Hips and upon the Thighes.

Item, take Rosin three ounces, the seed of Butchers broom, prepared Coriander, and Myrtle seed, of each half a drach. Mastick two scruples, Hypocistis, red Saunders, of each half a drach, oyl of Myrtles and of Quinces, of each one ounce and a half: melt the Rosin in Vinegar, and make a plaister of it, or a salve, and anoint therewith the whole Belly, and about the Ribs.

Boxing cups are also very meet for this purpose set on unpickt upon the Navel, upon either side of the Navel one: this will draw back the blood. Let them also remain theron the space of four hours.

Some also do advise for to open the Median, other the Liver vein, thereby to delay the sharpnesse of the humour, and to withdraw it, and also to cool the Liver with it; but it is somewhat dangerous, and ought not to be effected at any hand, except it were for some great cause, and therefore is here the counsel of a learned Physitian to be required.

For a lotion of the feet you are to take of the forementioned things, and therewith to rub the shins and the legs.

In fine, what simples soever are to be used for this red or bloody flix through heat or cold, are these; to wit, in heat, take the blossoms of Pomgranats, Galls, Butchers broom-seeds, the juice of Sloes, of Roses, Barberries, Quince kernels and the rinds, Pomgranat pils, sealed Earth, Bolus, burnt Ivory, Hypocistis, Pomgranat kernels, Sorrel seed, Plantain seed, Raisins stones, and all binding Fruits, as unripe Melons, unripe Mulberries, unripe Sloes, Medlars, Services, the fruit of Cornus, and such like. Of compounded things be Trisantalon, Diacodion, old conserve of Roses, and many other more which are before mentioned. Simples, which bind and warm, are Nutmegs, Cipres nuts and the leaves, Frankincense, Myrrhe, Laudanum, red Styrax. Amber, Ameos, Cinamom, Annis, and such like. The compounded be *Diamintha*. *Diacinnamomum*, and all that are of the like nature.

The other kind of Dysenteria *or bloody Flix.* §. 28.

IT hath been shewed before, that the learned have described yet another manner of bloody flix, the which by the unskilful is wrongly called by the name of *Dysenteria*, for it cometh without any scrapings of the guts, and with much more blood then the former. Wherefore it is rather to be taken for a flix of the liver then for ought else. This flix is also threefold: first, idle persons that are full of blood, and that eat and drink much; also they that omit their wonted exercises, are very subject to this infirmity, for these of necessity must have overmuch blood, which nature seeketh to expel as she doth all such things that in any way are troublesome unto her, but especially in the Liver, although that some other inward parts might cause the same.

The signs of this flix are first clear blood, which with a great quantity doth suddenly passe away at one time, and returneth again afterwards. It may also be well caused of strong medicines, which may be understood and known of the Patient.

Secondly, it may also happen through weakenesse of the retentive vertue: for if there be no perfect digestion, then seemeth the blood like unto water wherein flesh had been washed, and so is avoided with the ordure by stool. In like manner it may be caused also very well through melancholy, and in the scouring is the blood blacker. But if it come through the inward piles, then is the blood clear, yet somewhat blackish. Sometime it is caused through some vein, which causeth to break within the body: And then doth this scouring come very suddenly, little or much, according to that the vein so broken is great or small. The difference between all these flixes of blood is, that the Heparicall flix is without pain, where to the contrary, all other are not without pain and anguish of the place, from whence the blood issueth.

Now for to cure this bloody flix, plethorick persons who be infected with this scouring must betake themselves to all manner of sobriety in eating and drinking: open a vein, use some exercise, and purge if need require. But if so be that the same be caused through any strong medicine received, then is this scouring to be stayed by taking 3. 3. of Creffes seed with strained milk, or through any other binding medicine before mentioned.

This plaiſter following is to be applyed on the Liver: Take Roſes, red Saunders, of each half an ounce, Spike one dranh. Barly meal two ounces, Wine and Vinegar, as much as will ſuffice for to make a plaiſter, lay this warm upon it. If this ſcouring proceed through heat, then give him *Triſantalon*: Or if it come through cold, then give him ſome warming Confection, and other things more which be rehearſed before. Secondly, if there run any black blood amongſt it, then open the Median. It is alſo good for this, that the body be well rubbed morning and evening about the place where the diſeaſe is, ſo that thoſe things whereby theſe parts are nouriſhed, might be drawn thether. But if ſo be that there be any vein broken, then look what is written of the caſting up of the blood, which is cauſed through a broken vein, in the ſecond part, the fifth Chapter, and 18. §.

Of all bloody Fluxes in general. §. 19.

FOr a concluſion of all theſe bloody Fluxes, there is to be added unto them, to wit, if ſo be that through any exceſſive ſcouring, (of whatſoever occaſion it be) the patient fall into a ſwound (like as it hapneth) what is then to be done in it? Firſt of all, he is to be cheriſhed with water, and more other means are to be uſed for it, as in the ſecond part, the ſixth Chapter, 2. §. hath been ſaid of ſwouning.

Further, the patient is to be nouriſhed with good meat, and Wine, to wit, with roſted Pullets, Turtle Doves, and other Doves, Cloves, Roſe water, Galangal, and Lignum Aloes, which be very meet for him. When as then the ſwouning is paſt, then all means to be ſought for to ſtay his ſcouring, and to bring the patient to reſt and eaſe. There is alſo to be given unto him one drachme of Treacle, or Philonium, and if ſo be that he can abide it, then let him bath, even as is here before admoniſhed.

Item, we will moreover add hereunto a general rule, how a man is to govern himſelf in theſe bloody fluxes.

Firſt, he muſt beware of all moiſt meats, becauſe that thereby the moiſture of the body is augmented; but there is much rather to be all that is dry, like as hard baked bread, and ſuch like, without much ſalt, and much fat. Alſo all things are to be dreſt with ſteeled Water, Oaten pap, Barly pap, and Pullets broth are not forbidden, neither yet ſlices of bread baked in fat or butter. He ſhall alſo eat white bread; and red Wine is better for this ſickneſſe then white; but if you get no red Wine, then take old white Wine which is not ſo ſour, and temper the ſame with ſteeled water, temper therewith alſo parched Gum, Bolus, and burnt Ivory.

In like manner alſo temper ſome juice of Barberries in his drink, or in ſtead thereof, uſe wine of Barberries.

Almond milk made with ſteeled water may he alſo drink, but not to drink much of it for all looſeneſſe of the belly.

And whereas in this ſickneſſe the patient commonly loſeth his appetite, yet are there ſo me Phyſitians who permit the patient to eat what he moſt longeth for, albeit they do counſel moſt of all for bread and other meats, which be moſt neceſſary for this ſickneſſe. Between meals be conſerve of Roſes and Marmalade very commodious to be eaten.

For in this ſickneſſe is the patient to be kept quiet, warm, and well covered, and ſuffered to let his ordure and excrements in a bowl under him, then to riſe often, for the leſſe that he is ſtirred, the ſooner will the ſcouring be ſtaid.

All that is too hot and looſeth much, is forbidden in this infirmitie, whether it be Spice, or any herbs; likewiſe alſo very ſtrong Hony, Milk, Fruit, Cheeſe, Fiſh, and all doughie meats.

Of the Conſtipation or binding in the Body. §. 20.

WE have hitherto diſcovered many kinds of things which do ſtay the flix or loſe. But it is well known to all men, that the health of man is oftentimes neglected, through Conſtipation of the body, and when the excrements have not their natural courſe; therefore it is the principal determination of all famous Phyſitians, to keep open the body for all manner of ſickneſſes, whereby the ſuperfluous matter and bad humours may be avoided, even as every where may be ſeen throughout this whole Book. And albeit this binding of the body proceed of divers

divers cauſes; yet it is not needfull to diſpute further thereof, becauſe that in certain ſickneſſes which becauſed through this conſtipation, is ſufficiently ſpoken of it. We will here therefore ſpeak of the binding of the body in healthy perſons.

For this is firſt needfull a common and neceſſary rule, to wit; all that is taken to looſe the body, it be done faſting; that is, when the ſtomach is emptied of other meats, and that one faſt an hour or twain after it; for if ſo be that the meat be mixed with the medicine, then can it not perform his operation as it behooveth, for it will thereby be hindred and enfeebled. Secondly, to begin alwayes with the weakeſt and eaſieſt things; and if they work not ſtrongly enough, then are after that more forcible things to be uſed. And ſo, have no eaſier things can be uſed, then Suppoſitories and Cliſters, therefore we will firſt of all begin to ſpeak of them.

Suppoſitories to provoke Stooles.

There be made many kinds of Suppoſitories, whereof theſe are the eaſieſt; Take Honey as much as you pleaſe, ſeethe it hard, and to prove if it be ſodden enough, let a drop fall upon a cold ſtone, or upon an Iron, which being cold, will ſpring in peeces if you ſtrike upon it; if that it do not cleave, then is it ſodden enough. Afterwards temper amongſt it ſalt and meal, and pour it on a ſtone table, or on a Tin trencher, and roll up the Suppoſitorie as thick as you will have it; then cut it off and make both the ends even by the fire or candle, and afterwards reſerve it in Sallan oyl, or in Lillies oyl. Theſe Suppoſitories are to be put into the fundament, and to be kept therein as long as is poſſible. In like manner doth alſo this enſuing; Take two parts of meal and one part of ſalt, make a Suppoſitorie thereof with the white of an Egg, and keep it warm.

Some uſe in ſtead of this Suppoſitorie, that which followeth hereafter; They take the white of an Egg, and ſtir a good deal of ſalt amongſt it, and a little Soot; then they make in a fine cloth the quantity of a Nutmeg, and bind it faſt, and let a thread being anointed with fat or oyl, put the ſame into the fundament, and when one is to go to the ſtool, then pluck it out again.

Other Suppoſitories, which are to be uſed at the Apothecaries, are theſe; Take Species Diatragacanthi frigidi ſimplicis one drach. Salt half a ſcruple. Hony one ℥. ſeethe theſe all together and make Suppoſitories of them. Theſe may be uſed with all ſafety. But if you will have them yet ſtronger, then put half a drach. of Sal gemmæ unto it.

The foreſaid Species Hieræ be thus made: Take Cinamom, Maſtick, *Nard*, Saffron, Saffron, Ballam wood, and Cathe wood, of each one drach. Aloes ℥. make a powder of them. There be alſo Suppoſitories to be made (if there can nothing elſe be gotten) of ſalt Lard cut in long ſlices; of Allom cut alſo of the longeſt faſhion; and of Sope, &c. For young children are alſo Suppoſitories made of freſh Butter, Figs, roots, and ſuch like. Alſo there be made for eſpecial ſickneſſes many kinds of them, which be not here ſpecified.

Cliſters be marvellous requiſite to open the Conſtipation of the body, and to them then the Suppoſitories: becauſe that through their moiſture and ſlipperineſs they enter further into the bowels, and do there ſupple, ſoften, and provoke the going in of the ſame. Of theſe Cliſters we have every where deſcribed divers in this our book; but we will here certain more, which do open the body without any pain. Take Mallows and Beets, Mercury, of each 2. handfuls; ſeethe them together and wring them out. Take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, 3 yolks of Eggs, oyl of Violets, or Lillies ℥. 4. Sal gemmæ ℥. β. temper them together, and miniſter it warm.

Item, take Mutton broth, Veal broth, or Hen broth, as much as before, melt therein freſh butter, and Ducks greaſe, of each one ounce, Saffron half a dram, dry'd Dill and Lillies, of each one ounce and a half, Indy ſalt one drach. and then temper them together, this is ſomewhat ſtronger.

There may alſo be taken in ſtead of the foreſaid oyl, Sugar and oyl of Violets, of each two ounces; but if ſo be that the pain be great, then may be tempered with it of the juice of Philonium, and one ounce of the oyl of Mandragora. In ſum, all common Cliſters for this which be made of freſh broth, Sallad oyl, oyl of Violets, boyled Mallows, Pellitory of the wall, Camomil, Melilot, and ſuch like ſoupling things.

Some uſe alſo theſe things following in the ſtead of Suppoſitories; Take new Milk and

and Butter, of each two ſpoonfuls, make it warm, and uſe it as a Cliſter.

There be alſo many caſſe Conſerves and Confections which do alſo looſe the body, like as conſerve of Pellitory, which by long continuance doth looſe if one take it alone. Firſt you have before in the firſt part, the 12. Chapter, in the 2. §. a conſerve of Currans, and others which be very requiſite. How commodious alſo the Caſſia is, hath in many ſundry places been ſeen; yet hereafter enſueth a very notable and ſafe Confection of Caſſia and Manna for to keep the body open. Take Damask Prunes one ounce, Violets one drach. and a half, fair Well water nine ounces, ſeethe them together unto the half, and temper in this decoction Caſſia two ounces, four Dates half an ounce, Manna one ounce, ſirupe of Violets two ounces, Sugar candy, and Sugar pennets, of each half an ounce; bruiſe the four Dates in the docoction, and then boyl them thick with other confections, pour then the diſſolved Manna unto it, that through ſeething it looſe not the force. This confection is requiſite for all dainty perſons which are bounden in the body, for it hath no unpleaſant taſt, it doth looſe very gently, expelleth *Choleram*, and aſſwageth an Ague.

Alſo for a gentle laxation one may eat Caſſie out of the pipe one ounce, caſting away the ſtones.

For the ſame purpoſe are theſe Confections following alſo fit: Take a quart of good Rhenish wine, ſteep therein the ſpace of 6. hours half an ounce of Sene husks, and ℥. i. of Sene leaves, let them boyl well; temper afterwards in this wine Currans powded half one pound, fat Figs ℥. 3. rub theſe through a Strainer, being done, put four ounces of Sugar candy unto it, and then let it boyl untill it be meetly thick. Laſtly, you are to mix with it half an ounce of Cinamom, whereof you are to uſe half an ounce at a time.

Theſe laxative confections following are commonly ordained in Mineral baths: Take rinds of yellow Mirobalans, and of Indy, of each ℥. i. bruiſe them well with Currans, Sene husks ℥. 2. Polipody roots one ounce and a half; let this ſeethe together unto the half in the water of Betony, Sage and Bugloſſe, of each ſix ounces, water of Mints three ounces, temper amongſt them *Agaricus* one drach. and a half. Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, Ginger one ſcruple, Thyme and wild Thyme, of each half a handful. When it is well ſodden meetly well, then let it ſtand a night, and in the morning wring it out, then put four ounces of Caſſie amongſt it, the juice of Currans, (which is *Laxativum de Passulis*) two ounces, beaten Cinamom one ounce, *Spec. Letitiæ Galeni* one quarter of an ounce, Sugar ſix ounces, ſeethe them with Betony water unto a ſirupe, and make a confection of it.

Some Dates be alſo a bleſſed medicine, for they purge very mildly, and therefore may be ſeldom uſed alone, but what force and vertue they have, is ſufficiently ſhewed in the firſt part of this book.

The laxative confection of Prunes (called *Diaprunia lenitiva*) is very pleaſant and mild, it doth not onely looſe the belly, but delayeth *Choleram*, it quencheth thirſt, and is good for all heat, but eſpecially when the Ague is in his prime, and it is thus prepared: Take fifty Prunes (the ſtones pluckt out) ſeethe them in ſufficient water, then bruiſe them through a Strainer, that the skins may tary out: afterwards put the broth or liquor into the ſame pot where they were ſodden on the fire again, and put unto it three quarters of an ounce of dried Violets, and leon ſeethe up twice or thrice, then ſtrain out the decoction, and put it unto the foreſaid bruiſed Prunes. This being done, put ſix ounces of Sugar unto it, and let it ſeethe again until it be thickiſh, and then take ſome of the boyling, and therewith temper Caſſie and four Dates, of each one quarter of an ounce finely, mix all together, and let it boyl ſoftly untill it be as thick as a confection.

Moreover take pownded Rubarb half an ounce, freſh conſerve of Roſes two ounces, temper and uſe thereof about one quarter of an ounce at a time.

Now is meant any confection which is not onely more meet for this matter, but in many other cauſes more, then that which is called at the Apothecaries *Electuarium de Succo rosarum*, and is therefore worthy to be reherſed.

Take Roſes and Prunes (having both of them their ſtones taken out) of each two ounces and a half, Violet water ſix ounces, water of blew flower delice, and Pompeon water, of each three ounces, Mercury water two ounces, Sugar pennets four ounces, Raſis of the Prune ſix ounces, peeled Melon ſeed, Pompeon ſeed, Gourd ſeed, and peeled Cucumber ſeed,

seed, of each one ounce, Diagridion one drach. and a half beaten small; boyl these fruits in the waters, then drive them through a strainer, and boyl them with the Sugar, and when it is almost cold, then add the seeds cut very small, and the Diagridion beaten finely. This confection is very good for all hot Agues: for it easeth thirst, watching and bitternesse of the mouth, and doth cause much urine to be avoided.

There be also many kinds of Spices prepared, whereof Confections and other things be made of which we will hear describe some: to wit, *Diaturbith cum Rhabarbaro*, which is thus prepared: Take *Turbith* and *Hermodactyli*, of each one ounce, Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, *Diagridii*, ℥. ß. white and red Saunders, Violets and Ginger, ana. ℥ ß. Annise, Mastick, Cinamom and Saffron, of each one drach. and a half, Sugar fourteen ounces and a quarter of an ounce: make of all these premisses a powder or Confection. *Diaturbith cum Rhabarbaro.*

Another: Take Rubarb half an ounce, Cloves and Galangal, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Hermodactyli* and white Sugar of each three drach. *Diagridii* six ounces, Sene leaves one quarter of an ounce, Indy Spica, Saffron, Ginger, Annise and Mastick, of each one drach. lastly, make a powder of it. Both these are fit for to purge all bad humors, be they *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, or *Melancholia*.

The purging Tabulats of Ginger be made thus: Take beaten Ginger one quarter of an ounce, Cinamom and Cloves, of each one drach. Nutmegs and Galangal, of each one scruple, Saffron fourteen ounces, *Turbith* half a drach. *Diagridion* one drach. Sugar two ounces, make Tabulats of it: exhibite not above one quarter of an ounce at once, for they be meetly strong. The like purging confections you may finde very many in well furnished Apothecaries; to wit *Diaphœnicon*, *de succo Rosarum*, &c. Take *Epithymum*, Polypody roots, and Thyme, of each one drach. Sene leaves three quarters of an ounce, Annise three drach. Cinamom and Annise, of each one drachme, the powder of Dill leaves one quarter of an ounce, make them into powder: take a drach. of it, tempered with broth. *Tabulats of Ginger laxative.*

In *Italy* they have a powder called *Pasaphan*, which is there much in use, and is thus made: Take Sene leaves three drach. *Turbith* one quarter of an ounce, good Rubarb one drach. Liccorice, Annise, Fennel, of each half a drachme; Indy Spica five grains: beat all powdered, and then given one drach. at the most with wine or with any kind of water. *The powder Pasaphan.*

This powder is very common at some Apothecaries, and is thus prepared: Take *Turbith* an ounce, Cinamom and Ginger, of each one quarter of an ounce, Galangal, Cardamom, Cloves, of each half a drach, Annise, ℥. ß. *Hermodactyli*, *Diagridii*, Sene leaves, ana. ℥ ß. Sugar, ℥ j. temper these together, and give him a drach. of the powder.

Medicamen de Turbith is also common, whereof here do follow two sorts: Take white Ginger, Mastick and *Turbith*, ana. ℥ ß. Sugar, ℥ j. ß. mix these to a subtil powder: other take *Turbith*, ℥ ß. Ginger one quarter of an ounce, Mastick ten grains, this being beaten small and tempered well together, purgeth slimy humours which may well be given to young children, women in child bed, old folks and all persons, one drach. at the least at one time. Of all which may be given according to the ability of the person more or lesse. *Medicamen de Turbith.*

The powder called *Natvis Sena preparata*, is not onely laxative, but also purgeth well the head. Take Sene leaves one ounce and a half, Ginger and Nutmegs of each two drachmes, Cinamom and Argal, of each one drach. and a half: make a powder of it, and give one drach. of the ounce. *Natvis Sena preparata.*

Another: Take *Turbith* one quarter of an ounce, Ginger, Cinamom, Mastick, Galangal, Cloves, Annise, *Hermodactyli*, and *Diagridii*, of each one drach. Sene leaves one ounce, Sugar one ounce: or put unto them as much Sugar as you think good, for the Sugar it is not to be taken above one drach. Item, take Sene leaves half an ounce, Ginger, and Cinamom, of each one drach. Sugar one quarter of an ounce: make the subtile powder, and strew it upon a slice or shive of toasted bread, that hath been steeped in milk, and so eat it. But if it do not loose, then eat another slice of bread and the next morning. It is surely good.

Amongst the things that one do drink, some join Mercury leaves into Salad, for they gently loose them that be apt to go to stool. Item,

Item, Oares, Mirobalanes, ſtuld Prunes ſtrewed well with Sugar, do looſe the body very muddy. Likewiſe alſo Damask Prunes ſtewed with Raiſins, do looſe alſo if one ſup up the broth withal, five or ſix Figs eaten before meat, do open the body.

Item, Currans waſht in ſweet wine, and ſteeped therein, and afterwards dryed and ſtrewed with Sugar, are alſo very good for this purpoſe. Or take Raiſins (as is ſaid) which be ſteeped, half a pound, beat them and wring them through a hairen ſtrainer, Sugar two ounces, Sugar of Roſes, and hony of Roſes, ana. ℥. 1. ß. ſeeth them well by a mild fire unto a confection, then take of it as often as you will the quantity of a nut.

Alſo you may ſteep theſe Currans in oyl of ſweet Almonds ſtrewed with Sugar and then eaten, for much Sugar hath a laxative nature, and eſpecially in young children.

Now will we write of certain laxative potions, of which be divers ready at all well furniſhed Apothecaries to be had; and albeit you may uſe the ſame alone, yet notwithſtanding have all Phyſitians ordained, that the ſame ſhall be commonly tempered and taken with purging medicines, whereof here ſhall follow ſome, which the Apothecaries at *Augusta* have at all times in a readineſſe.

Firſt, they have a drink which they call *Decoctionem communem*, which is a common decocted potion, made after this manner: Take ten or twelve Prunes, Licorice, Currans, Anniſe ſeed, and Fennel, of each half an ounce, flowres of Burrage and Bugloſſe, of each one dreach and a half, powr a quart of water unto it, ſeethe it ſo long until a third part be waſted, then ſtrain it through. This drink enſuing is of a temperate nature, and is ſomewhat more cooling, and the ſame is to be uſed in the Summer.

Take Currans, Licorice, Prunes, Jujubes, Violets, Barley, peeled Melon ſeed, Pompion ſeed, Gourd ſeed, and Cucumber ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, boyl them together in water like as is ſaid before.

Take Fumitory, Betony, Mints, Mugwort, of each half a handful, flowers of Burrage and Bugloſſe, of each half a ℥. Anniſe, Fennel, Aſarabacca, of each half an ounce, wild Saffron ſeed three quarters of an ounce, Calamus one ounce, Polipody roots, Agarick of each one quarter of an ounce, Sene leaves one ounce, the ſeeds and roots muſt be beaten groſſe, (letting them ſeethe firſt a little) afterwards put unto it the herbs, flowers and Agarick, and ſo let them ſeethe again: when it is then cold, wring it out hard, and keep it well very cloſe ſtopt in a cool place. In like manner there is prepared a ſtronger which is called *Decoctio aperitiua major*, and is made thus: Take Endive, Cicory, Fumitory, of each one handful, Agrimony Windweed, and Harts tong, of each half a handful flowers of Burrage and Bugloſſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Thyme and wild Thyme, of each two drachmes and a half, roots of Fennel, Smallage, Paſſely and Caſſil half an ounce, Anniſe and Fennel ſeed, Melon ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſliſted Licorice half an ounce, roots of Cypers, rinds of Tamarisk, of each three drachmes, Sene leaves two ounces, Polipody roots one ounce, *Agaricus* half an ounce; ſeeth them all together in water like as is ſaid before, then wring it well out. You are to ſteep in this decoction Rubarb three drachm. and a half, Indy Spica one ſcruple, ſal gemmæ half a ſcruple, Cinamom two ſcruples, let them ſtand together to ſteep all a whole night, afterwards ſeethe it once in boyling water, ſtrain it very well out, and put ſix ounces of Sugar unto it.

A decoction of Sene leaves called *Decoctio Sennæ*: Take Sene leaves two ounces, and Sene husks one ounce, roots of Cicory, Agrimony, Hyſſope, of each a handful, Polipody one ounce, ſeethe them together in a quart of water until the third part be conſumed away, then wring it, and keep it in a cool place.

Another, *Infuſio Sennæ*: This decoction is much uſed for the Pocks at *Augusta*, and alſo which it is moſt meet: Take the husks and leaves of Sene, of each five drachm. Ginger two ſcruples, Burrage flowers, Violets, Roſes, of each one ſcruple, Polipody one quarter of an ounce, Currans half an ounce, ten or twelve Schesten, ſliced Aguiſter half an ounce; powr upon them fifteen ounces of boyling water, and let it be ſteeped all night of ſeven hours by the warm aſhes, afterwards wring it out and keep it well, whereof is commonly three or four drachmes taken, and ſteeped in Fumitory, or *De Buzzacho* water one drachm and a half, or two drachmes tempered together, three or four dayes one after another.

These be alſo uſed many other laxative potions, like as this Wine following: Take

Sene leaves two ounces, *Thymus* and *Epithymus*, of each one ounce and a half, flowers of Burrage and Buglosse, of each three handfuls, Harts toung, and roots Cicory, of each two handfuls; Rosemary, Steechas, of each one handful, Roses and Balm, of each three handfuls: these are to be put dry and sliced into a little runlet, and powr fifty quarts of Mash upon it, and then let it stand and clarifie, when as need doth requite, then may you take a good draught of it before meat.

Item, drink Pullet broth wherein Prunes are decocted, and to eat the Prunes is very commodious. But this broth relaxeth better when it is boyled with Currans and with Sugar. In like manner new Whay well salted and drunken warm doth loose, but better if it be sodden with Prunes.

In like maaner also you are to take Wormwood, Hony, and Sugar according to the ability of the person, seethe this together in water, and drink a good draught thereof. Item take Sanicle with the roots, seethe it well, and drink off four ounces, tempered with Hony of Roses.

If so be that pils cannot be used, then take four ounces of water wherein Mallows were before decocted, and dissolve Sugar therein or Hony of Violets, and so drink it. Or else Linseed, Hops, and Burrage, all together, or each apart, decoct them to a potion, this looseth also. The same doth also one ounce of Polipody, and half an ounce of Fennel seeds decocted together. Item, take conserve of Eldern one ounce, or two ounce and a half, dissolve it in fresh broth one pound, and drink fasting a good draught thereof. Fumitory and Goats milk boyled together doth not onely loose the belly, but also cleanseth the blood.

The decoction of Charvil and of Larks spurs do also open the body. Item, the decoction of Coleworts, of Beets, and of Lentils, in every of these are you to temper the quantity of an hasel nut of fine Turpentine, and to drink it warm, which is also good for the excoriation of the guts.

The decoction of Crevises, and of all other fishes, are also very good for relaxation, but sweet oyl of Almonds is most commodious for this purpose, more sure and most pleasant being taken with Sugar. It allwageth all griping of the belly, and of the breast; which oyl is thus to be made.

Take Almonds as many as you please, make them clean, beat them small, roll them a little on hot ashes, or on a small fire, stirring them alwaies about; put them afterwards very hot into a strong bag, which is made wet in Rose water, and presse it out forcibly, then have you a fine and clear oyl, whereof may be used for aged folks four or six ounces tempered with course Sugar, for children, and also for the first born, each according to his age. *Oyl of Almonds*

Thick or puddle Wine, doth not onely bind the body, but doth opilate also the Liver, the Mile, and the kidneyes, this do they which drink much of it, therefore it is to be refused.

Of all laxative medicines and potions, Manna is not the basest, but is highly commended above all other things, for it is one of the blessedst medicines, like as is mentioned more at large in the Introduction. This Manna is ministred diversly, according to the ability of the person, like as water of Burrage, fresh broth, and such like. You may also give of this Manna to young children, to each one acording to his age, be it in their Broth, Milk, or Pap.

In like manner is Cassia also a very notable and laxative medicine, even as is shewed here before at large in the Introduction: for it is much more commodious to be taken in the form of a conserve, than in any kinde of potion, by reason that there must be put into it so much moysture, thus will we here prescribe for an example how the same is to be used: Take the roots of Polipody chopt small one ounce, seethe them in the water of Burrage eight ounces, and dissolve therewith one ounce and a half or two ounces of Cassie, letting all that is black be washed clean off, and then drink this warm, it looseth very gently. *The use of Cassie.*

Before in the first part, in the first Chapter and 3. 5. you have a good mead of Sene leaves for children and other persons very necessary to be used, yet this following may be prepared. Take Sene leaves half an ounce, Ginger and Annise, of each one quarter of an ounce, beaten Licorice, 3, 3, seethe them all together in 16. ounces of water even to the half, drink the one half in the morning, and the other half in the evening.

Also

Alſo there be certain Sirupes uſed for the looſing of the body, whereof the chiefeſt is the laxative ſirupe of Roſes, which is before deſcribed in the firſt part.

Sirupe of Sene leaves.

Alſo there is made a ſirupe of Sene leaves, as hereafter followeth. Take right Endive, Cicory, Agrimony, of each half a handful, Venus hair, Harts tongue, of each half ſo much, ſeeds of Melons, Pompeons, Cucumbers, and Gourds, of each one drachme, wild Saffron ſeed, Polipody roots, ſeeds of Endive, Cicory, and Licorice, of each two ſcruples, Barly one ounce, winter Cherries, Windweed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Fearn roots, Smallage, Fennel, and Sperage, of each half an ounce, Currans three drach. ſix or ſeaven Prunes, flowers of Burrage, Bugloſſe, and Violets, of each half a drachme, ſeethe them all together in a quart of water almoſt unto the half, wring it well out, and then lay to ſteep in this decoction one ounce of Sene leaves, prepared *Agaricus* half an ounce, Rubarb three quarters of an ounce. When it hath ſtood ſo one night, and is wrung out, then temper with it, *Syrupum Capillorum Veneris*, which is the ſirup of Venus hair, the ſirup of Violets, of each one ounce, white Sugar three ounces, let this ſeethe by a ſoft fire unto a ſirup: Laſtly, put more unto it half a drachme of beaten Cinamom, and one ſcruple of yellow Saunders, and ſo keep this ſirupe until that you will uſe it.

Of this ſirupe you may may boldly give one ounce, or an ounce and a half, or more, unto all delicate perſons, yea to women alſo with child, and that with freſh broth, or any diſtilled water, for it is very ſafe.

Another Syrupe. Take Endive, Liverwort, Venus hair, all green, of each one handful, red and white Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, Melon ſeed, Gourd ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, Pompeon ſeed, and Burrage, ana. ℥ ß. Sene, *Epithymum*, of each one ounce, Rubarb three quarters of an ounce, Turbith ℥ ß. Indy Spica, ℥ ß. Ginger ℈ i. Sugar ℥ 12. diſſolved in Endive water, make a ſirupe of it like as is taught in the firſt part, the firſt Chapter, and 6. §.

Hony of Roſes looſeth alſo very well, eſpecially that which is made of the juice of Roſes, even as it is deſcribed in the firſt part, the fourteenth Chap. and 4. §.

For this are alſo ſundry pils prepared, and that after this manner following: Take Bdellium and Aloe, which have been ſteeped the ſpace of three daies in Sheeps milk, of each one quarter of an ounce, temper them, and form pils of them, uſe thereof one ſcrup. or half a drach. at once, they will do you much pleaſure. Item, take before ſupper one drach. of waſht Aloe.

This ſalve following is alſo laxative, if that the belly and the navel be annointed with it: Take the ſalve of *Agrippa*, and the confection of *Hiera*, of each half an ounce, the juice of Swines bread and Scammony, of each three grains, *Euphorbium*, Turbith, Coloquint, ana. ℈ i. beat them all together. Item, take Pitch and Frankincenſe, of each alike quantity, caſt them on hot coles under a cloſe ſtool, and ſit over it with the bare buttocks, it looſeth.

For a concluſion, there is to be found through this whole book, how that the body is to be looſed and opened for all manner of ſickneſſes; but this is onely ſpoken of all them who be in health, and cannot go to ſtool.

To keep the body ſoluble.

SEethe beets in water and honey, and drink the ſame. Alſo ſeethe Garlick, Mallowes, Mercury in hony and water, and uſe it morning and evening, or as you pleaſe.

Alſo ſeethe Coleworts a little while in water, take of that water ℔ 2. and with hony and ſalt drink it.

Of the ſtraining or unſeaſonable deſire of going to ſtool, which is called Tenaſmus. §. 21.

FOr as much as through both the foreſaid maladies, as well of the exceſſive going to the ſtool, as through binding in the body, this ſtraining which the Grecians do call *Tenaſmus* and *Tenaſmus*, may be provoked: therefore we cannot omit, but add the ſame unto the reſt, and is thus deſcribed.

Tenaſmus is a diſeaſe or malady in the end of the Arſegut hard by the Fundament with great

great pain, and continual desire to go to the stool, where notwithstanding the Patient can be discharged and rid of very little or nothing at all. We do call these kindes of scourings properly a straining to go to the stool; for it commeth for the most part alway with such a force, that it driveth out the Arsegut, and the fruit of women conceived. The cause of this scouring may be as well inward as outward cold, like as when any one doth sit upon cold stones, or it is gotten of the cold ayr, or in the water: contrariwise also it may be caused through heat and drought. Item, of any sharp rheume of the stomach or Liver, of corrupted meats, or much moisture, through the use of much fruit, through Worms, impostumation of the bowels, binding in the body, swelling of the Pyles, and also of any tough and subtile *Phlegma*. The signs whereof are easily to be discerned by the report of the Patient, and view of the place, and ordure. Now as touching the remedies, Clisters are best of all for it. If this malady do come of cold, then make the Clister thus: Take Mints, Marjoram, Cammomil, Melilot, field Mints, Southernwood, of each one handful, decoct them in sufficient water. Take of this decoction twelve or sixteen ounces, oyl of Cammomil, and of Lillies, of each one ounce and a half; then make this Clister very warm; but if there come any binding or stopping with it, then temper therewith *Benedictam laxativam*, or *Hieram picram*, three quarters of an ounce. The herbs and all that be decocted for this Clister, stamp them all to pap, and temper them with oyl of Rue and of Lillies, and let it boyl a little while, and lay it upon the place where the pain is, and when it is cold, then lay on another that is warm, doing this three or four times one after another. When as then this straining of going to the stool is red, then are you to use this following. Take steeled Cow milk or Goats milk, Mutton broth, or Veal broth twelve or sixteen ounces, melt therein one ounce, or one ounce and a half of Sheeps suet, and two ounces of the oyl of Roses, then temper them together, and use this Clister oftentimes.

Item, take twelve ounces of Malmsey, the yolk of an Egg, let them boyl together in a drinking pot or kan in a Kettle of water until it be very hot, then give it afterwards unto the Patient, it is a very safe remedy. When all necessary medicines have been used to this kinde of lask, and yet pain doth not diminish in ten dayes, then may one use the Clister which is described in the 17. Section, beginning thus: Take peeled Lupins, &c. and that two or three times as the case shall import. If these scourings be of a cold cause, then rost Millet or Panick with salt, and lay upon it, or fill three bags with bran, let them boyl in wine or water, lay one of them upon the belly, another upon the back beneath, and the third upon the fundament, as warm as may be possibly suffered, and when they be cold make them warm again. Afterwards annoint the place with warm oyl, or with the salve *Marciaton*, and sprinkle wine upon a hot stone, then lay a cloth upon it against the burning, and sit upon it with the buttocks as hot as may be suffered. Others do counsel for to foment the fundament with red Wine, wherin the herb *Verbascum* hath been sodden, and afterwards to sit upon a hot Oak or Cypers wooden boord. Some do commend for this a Poplar boord: if one cannot get such a one, then a Firr boord, and as soon as one is cold, then to take another warmed again, and using this so long until he feel the warmth within the belly. Then is the fundament to be annointed with molten Harts suet, or to fume it with Pitch, like as not long ago hath been rehearsed. Item, take Hollihock roots, Linseed, Fenegreek, Cammomil, Melilot, the upper sprigs of Coleworts, of each three ounces, pownd them all together, and seethe them in reasonable water. You are therewith to wet a Spunge, wring it out, and sit thereo; and lay it upon the fundament, yea, to sit also in the water. Item, take the seeds of Plantain, prepared Coriander, Mirtle seed, Acorn cups, yellow seeds of Roses, Cipers nuts, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Gum, and Dragagant, (both parched) of each one ounce, beat them together, and put them in a bag, and seethe them with Wine, then must you sit thereon. Item, seethe oaken leaves with water in a bag, and hold the fundament unto the heat of it, and when it is cold, make it hot again, and do this oftentimes one after another.

For a salve: Take oyl of Roses one quarter of an ounce, Saffron 15. grains, Sheeps suet, Deer suet, of each one ounce, make a salve thereof, it doth marvellously take away the pain.

Another. Take Frankincense, *Lycium*, Saffron, Gum, *Opium*, ana. ℥. 1. unripe oyl of Olives, *Colophonia*, ana. ℥. 3. Wax as much as is needful for to make a salve with it, the Lard of a Bore, and of all four footed beasts: also the fat of all Fowls is especial good to be used for this disease.

You

You ſhall take for a plaiſter Hollihock roots, Linſeed, Fenegreek, of each one ounce, ſeethe them well, and pownd them together, and temper amongſt it half an ounce of pownded Camomil, the yolks of two Eggs, and lay it againſt the fundament. For this may you alſo take Garlick boyled to grout, the heads of Leeks fryed in Butter, with oyl of Roſes, and a little Wax made into a ſalve may alſo be uſed for this purpoſe.

For this is alſo requiſite the fume and vapour of divers things, as the leaves of a Pear-tree, of Medlars, Quinces, Dragons blood, fine *Bolus*, bloſſomes of Pomegranats, and ſealed earth, whereof you may ſeeth (which you pleaſe) with Wine. When as then the Patient hath been at ſtool, then is he to receive beneath the vapour of this wine powred on a hot ſtone. Item, take a hot brick, ſprinkle it with Wine and Maſtick, uſe it as before. Or make a fume with *Colophonia* or Pitch.

This Confection alſo following may be uſed; Take Mirtle ſeeds, Pomegranate bloſſomes, Roſes, and Pomgranate pils, of each half a handful, Butchers broom ſeeds, Sorrel ſeeds, the ſeeds of Plantain, yellow Roſe ſeeds, Barberries, white Saunders, Maſtick, burnt Ivorie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Annis, ſeeds of Endive, Cypres roots, and Frankincenſe, of each one drachme and a half, prepared Coriander, Cinamom, red Coral, of each half a drach. the juice of Sloes, *Hypociſtis*, Storax, Cypres nuts, parched Gum, of each one drach. white Poppy ſeed 3. drachmes, pownd all that is to be pownded, and with diſſolved Sugar make thereof a confection: you are alſo to put unto it ſome juice of Pomgranates. Item, take the bones of the head of a freſh taken Pickrel, the weight of a drach. and a half, ſtamp them ſmall, and drink them with Wine, or any freſh broth. This is taken for to be a moſt ſure experiment.

Suppoſitories which are to be uſed are theſe; Take Frankincenſe, Myrrhe, Gum, Linſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Opium*, Saffron, of each half a drachme, temper all theſe with the white of an Egg, and make thereof ſhort ſuppoſitories, then bind thereon a ſtrong threed, ſo that you may pluck them out when you will. Some do put Smallage unto it. Theſe are now the principal remedies for this ſcowring; but if ſo be that there be other cauſes with it, as worms, obſtructions, and ſwellings, whereof we have here before made mention; you may read of either in his proper deſcription.

And for a concluſion, all bitter, ſharp and ſowr things are to be refrained, for that all ſuch make the going to the ſtool, gnawing, excoriating, and painful. Pullet broth, Barley pap, oaten pap, and ſuch like light meats, are very commodious for him, and above all things muſt beware of cold.

For the Tenaſmus.

℞. of the rindes of Pomegranates, and rindes of the aſh-tree, ſeethe them in wine and drink it.

Or ℞. of Olibanum, Ameos: ana. ℥. 1. and with honey make a ſuppoſitorie.

Or take Cuminſeeds, Anniſeeds, Dill ſeeds and Colophonie, and put them upon a chafing diſh of burning coales, and let the party ſit over it when he goes to ſtool, and receive the fume.

And anoint the reins of the back unto the Fundament with warm honey, and ſtrew upon it the powder of Colophonie, the powder of penny royal ſeeds, hyſſop ſeeds and organ ſeeds, and bind it on with a roller.

Of the pain in the ſtomach in general. §. 22.

THeſe kinds of Lasks and bloody flixes have a while ſeduced me from the infirmities of the ſtomach, and becauſe theſe Lasks (as hath been ſhewed) for the moſt part proceed from the weakneſſe of the ſtomach, with an infection of the Liver and other parts more, it would in no wiſe have been decent to have treated of them elſewhere. But now we purpoſe to proceed with our intent, and write of the pain in the ſtomach, and of all that appertaineth unto it.

The pain of the ſtomach may be cauſed of divers and ſundry means, to wit, of ſome outward blowes, falls, wounds, of a piercing cold, or extream heat, of a bad digeſtion, that hath long continued, of overmuch meat or drink, eating either too hot or too cold things, or of winds contained in the ſtomach: and in fine, of all the four humours of the body, alſo with or without an impoſtume. And indeed in this pain of the ſtomach, and alſo in all pains of the Liver, it were very needful to uſe the counſel of an expert Phyſitian, that might diſcern and know whence theſe infirmities proceed, and whereon each ſymp-

toms

come dependeth. For if in this point any errour be committed, then is this malady imparted unto all the parts of concoction. Wherefore great heed must be taken what ought to be used in every accident, for as their causes be divers, so also do they differ in their signes.

If this infirmity be procured by some outward occasion, that is to be known of the Patient himself; or if the cause be a bad digestion of the stomach, that is perceived by the sowr belchings. If it come by overlading of the stomach and bad digestion, then doth the Patient find a heavinesse in the stomach, with wamblings and vomitings, and good ease after them. If it be caused of heat, then feeleth he a gnawing, heat, drought, and sweetnesse in the mouth, because it proceedeth of bloud. If it be procured of choler, then hath the Patient a bitternesse and a taste of Verdigrease in his mouth. The pain that cometh of phlegme, hath alwaies a salt taste with it. Also the spettle may shew what the cause is, whence this infirmity might proceed.

Melancholy is known hereby, that there is neither heat, nor pain with it, but onely a sowr and a bad savour in the mouth, which also otherwhiles is perceived by that which is brought up by vomit; unto this is commonly adjoyned a hardnesse in the spleen, and a pain in the left side. But if this pain of the stomach proceed of winds, then may you perceive a wambling and belching, or breaking of wind upward.

These are the commonest signes of all pains in the stomach, and first we will write of the pain in the Stomach that is without an impostume.

Of the pain of the stomach without impostumation through heat. §. 23.

FOr all pains of the Stomach where there is great perturbance, great wambling, parboiling and vomiting, it may be justly adjudged, that it doth proceed of an hot occasion, for which, vomiting (by taking of luke-warm water) is to be provoked; or if the same be too weak, then to put some Sallad oyl unto it, or oyl of Dill, or oyl of Violets: the same doth also the seed of Orage, tempered with Vinegar. But there be in other places other remedies more described for to purge the Patient by vomiting; and if this ease him not, then it is needful that the Patient be purged; but first he is to take some preparative potions, even as hereafter follow.

Take husked barley two ounces, Endive and small Endive, of each one handful, Roses, seeds of Melons, Gourds, Cucumbers, and Pompeons, and the juyce of Pomgranates, of each one ounce, Sugar nine ounces, make a clear sirupe of it, until there remain about twelve ounces, give alwaies two ounces of it at once with Barley water, or Endive water.

For this is also *Oxysuccharo* good, made with the juice of Limons or the juice of Roses, wherein is decocted a little of the juice of Wormwood taken with Barley water. When as these potions be taken, then is to be given for a purgation one ounce of *Hiera Picra* with Endive water; or if the Patient fear the bitternesse, then may he take this following.

Take Violets and Burrage flowers, of each half an ounce, nine or ten Prunes, sowr Dates one ounce, Currans one quarter of an ounce, seethe them in twelve ounces of water, so that there remain after the straining out four ounces of the decoction; then lay to steep in this warm Colature one ounce of the rindes of yellow Myrobalanes, let it stand the space of one night upon warm ashes, being strained through in the morning, temper half an ounce of Cassie with it.

There is also to be given daily to the Patient, bread which hath been steeped in the juyce of Pomegranates, and *Syrupum Acetosum, de Cydoniis* with it, and (as is said before) Mutton broth and such like. Moreover, the Julep of Roses, of Violets, wine of Pomgranats, Verjuice, with water wherein Lettice, Purslain, and Endive were boyled, be very good for this malady. After purging, the Patient may drink otherwhiles Buttermilk and Well water, if so be no impostumation in the stomach do let the same. He may also eat well Lettice and Purslain with small Vinegar, Melons, and Cucumbers; all his other meats must be light of digesture, as Hens, Pullets, Partridges, and small fishes dresst with Vinegar, Citrons, Oranges and Limons be very meet for him.

White clear wine is tolerable for this if it be well watered, but if so be that there come a drought with this heat, then must moyst things be ministred, as namely Mallowes, Spinage, and such like. And further also to use water baths: in fine, all that wanteth for this

this is to be taken and had in the fifth Section; where we have discourſed of a weak ſtom-
paired unto all the parts of concoction. Which cannot
to be healed in every accident, for as then
ſigns.

Of the pain of the Stomach Without impoſtumation through cold. §. 24.

If so be that this pain of the ſtomach be bewrayed through belching, then is it eaſily to be marked, that the ſame pain is cauſed through ſome wind, which is ingendred through cold: but therefore are we here to ſhew whence the ſame is cauſed. But as much as concerneth the Belching, it ſhall hereafter be ſpoken of.

Of the pain in the ſtomach through wind. §. 25.

THis is the malady of the ſtomach, the which we call Belching, and the Latiniſts do call it *Ructum*, the which is none other but the wind which nature expelleth through the mouth, and it is thus deſcribed.

Belching is an aſcending wind which cometh out of the ſtomach, and is not digeſted, but is driven out through the expulſive vertue of the ſtomach.

This is cauſed of a flegmatick matter, or meat which is reſolved in the ſtomach into wind, through the feebleneſſe of natural heat, and is expelled out of the ſtomach: like as for example we apparently ſee, that in time of great heat, or great cold, the weather is leaſt of all cloudy or foggy.

The cauſes of theſe belchings may well be a feeble heat of the ſtomach, which cannot digeſt ſufficiently. And albeit there be warmth enough, yet hath he nothing but windie meats to work upon; and the belching which proceedeth of great heat, happeneth two or three times one after another. The windy meats are theſe, *viz.* porredge of Beans, Peaſe, Rye bread, Swines fleſh, Cheſtnuts, Figs, dryed Cherries, Muſh, and ſlender meats, which do abate the natural heat; alſo roſted Eggs, Onions, Radiſhes, and all ſuch be of ſuch natures.

This belching may alſo be cauſed of ſuperfluous meats or drinks, for if they cannot be conſumed, then do they ingender wind.

Alſo this may well be cauſed by a cold rheume, which falleth alſo into the ſtomach through want of ſleep, through ſome unnatural heat or cold, through over hot or cold baths, through mighty motions, and through thruſts upon the ſtomach, and alſo by bruiſing or wounding of other parts, which hinder digeſtion.

The ſigns of this belching are theſe: Firſt, when one hath neither ſmelling nor taſte before he have taken his meat. Secondly, the ſtench declareth an ulceration or ſtinking matter in the ſtomach. Thirdly, if the riſing of the meat taken, be ſowr, and the ſame cometh up again with it; then is it a ſign of a bad digeſtion. Fourthly, if the belching do come after *Aſthma*, or after an heavy breath, then is it good and profitable. Fifthly, in like ſort it is very fit, if that any wind comprehended in the ſtomach be belched up. But if the wind will not avoid the ſtomach, then is there ſome other infirmity to be looked for. Sixthly, the reaſonable belching (if ſo be that the digeſtion be not thereby annoyed) is very commodious, and the digeſtion much holpen with it. Seventhly, all they who have many ſowr belchings, do not lightly get any pricking or ſhooting in the breaſt. Eightly, all they which be awaked out of their ſound ſleep, do not well digeſt, and be much ſubject to belching, and that more or leſſe according to the meat received. Ninthly, the belching which taſteth like Verdigreaſe betokeneth a great heat and a ſtinking matter in the ſtomach.

And now to proceed to the remedies for the belching, there be firſt certain ſure rules to be kept and obſerved.

Firſt, if there ingender any wind in the body which nature would willingly expel, then is it not to be detained at any hand; notwithſtanding, for reverence ſake, to forbear it in the preſence of other folks. Secondly, one ought to beware of all ſurfetting and ſuperfluity of meat. Thirdly, all cold is to be refrained, and eſpecially coldneſſe of the feet. Fourthly, all they that be plagued with ſowr belchings, are to uſe *Diatrion Piperon*, and ſuch like, and to drink it with Wine; but they who have onely certain vapours aſcending from the ſtomach, they are to be holpen with Wormwood or *Hiera Picra*. Fifthly, all they that do belch of an ill ſtomach or bad digeſtion, they muſt live very ſoberly. Sixthly, fobriety and warmth of the ſtomach is paſſing good for all belching from the ſtomach.

Now

Now if that this belching do proceed of a cold ſtomach, then is the Patient to be kept marvellous ſober, and to eat nothing but light meat, and therewith to uſe one of theſe things following, as *Diacymininm*, *Dianiſum*, *Diagalanga*, *Diapiperon*, *Aromaticum roſatum*. Or let theſe confections be made: Take *Species Diacinamomum*, *Diambra*, *Diagalang*, of each one drachme, Sugar ſix ounces, ſeethe them with the water of Mints or Hyſſop, and make Tabulats of it. This being made, then uſe one quarter of an ounce of it, or half an ounce at once. It expelleth all winds of the ſtomach, it conſumeth all cold matter of the bowels, and is very commodious for the ſtomach and the Liver, taken before meat. Item, take pownded Galangal one drachme, drink it every morning with wine. Item, Cinamom chewed long in the morning doth alſo avoid all wind. In like manner the confection of Bayberries doth vehemently expel all winds out of the ſtomac, and out of all other parts. Or make this following; Take Annis, Spikenard, Mace, Lovage, and ſeeds of Rue, of each half a drach. Comin one quarter of an ounce, Sene leaves one ounce, Argal one drach. and a half, hony of Roſes four ounces and a half, Sugar half an ounce, the Sugar and Hony ſhall be boyled uncil they be thick, in the water of Hyſſope, and temper the reſt amongſt them; take ſometimes alſo half a drach. or one drachme of fine Treacle, or Mithridate in good wine.

Potions, and ſuch like.

TAke an old Cock or Hen, ſtop it full of Cinamom, Cloves, Ginger, and Zeduary, as much as you think good, let them ſeethe well, and drink of this broth every morning ſix ounces at one time. Or drink in the morning a good draught of wine, wherein be ſteeped Nutmegs, Galangale and Cloves. A little *Aqua vitæ* is alſo very good. You may likewiſe uſe for this vital waters, conſerves of Betonie, of Eyebright, Gilloflower wine, Betony wine, and wine of Eyebright, are very meet for all cold diſeaſes of the ſtomach. Cypreſſe nuts, Cypreſſe roſin, Saffron ſeed, Saltpeter, Bayberries, Cauly wood, Mellilot ſeed, Cardamon

they be very strong and draw down the wind, and the ordure very vehemently. This powder following is also very good for all winds; Take Marjoram, Rue, Mints, Ameos, Mastick and Frankincense, of each three drachmes, Cloves, half a drachme, make a powder of them, and give thereof one drachme at the same time.

Another, Take Cinamom one ounce, Ginger three quarters of an ounce, Cloves, half an ounce, Galangal, one quarter of an ounce, Nutmegs three drachmes, Cardamom one drachme and a half, Mace one drachme, Pepper one quarter of an ounce, *Spica* one drachme, Comin three quarters of an ounce, Saffron one drachme and a half, Sugar one ounce and a half: Take one drachme thereof with good warme wine.

Here followeth that which is outwardly to be used.

TAke Mellet and salt, parch them well, then put unto them Parietary and Nettles, and lay them upon the stomach. Or seethe Rue, Marjoram, Camomil, and Mints in wine, and wet a spunge in it, or woollen clout, wring it out, and lay it warme upon the stomach. You may also seethe the same herbs in Sallet oyl, and anoint the stomach with it, and then lay it warme thereon with undrest sheeps wooll.

Another oyntment: Take Rue one handful, Bevercod one quarter of an ounce, Annis one ounce, Aristology two ounces, red wine three ounces, Oyl of Bayberries four ounces, pownd them all grossely that are to be pounded, and let them seethe upon hot ashes, until the wine be boyled away: then wring it through a cloth, and with Wax make a salve of of it for the stomach.

These oyles following are very necessary for him: to wit, Oyl of Rue, of *Mandragora*, of Penniroyal, of Dill, of *Spica*, and Bayberries, mixt together of each alone. This plaister following is very good for to consume the wind of the stomach, of the Liver, and of the Milt: Take *Ammoniacum*, *Opopanacum*, Turpentine, Rosin, of each half an ounce, Cardamom, Cypres roots, Savin tree, Saltpeter, Bayberries, Cassy wood, Melilot, Fenegreek meal, Smallage seeds, Marjoram gentle, of each one drachme: melt and pownd them as behooveth, and then temper them with the oyl of Spike and of wax, as much as is needful for to make a plaister, spread it on leather, and cover it with fyndal, and so lay it over the stomach. You shall have also hereafter a good plaister against the obstruction of the Liver with cold, beginning, Take Roses five drachmes, &c. which plaister is also for this purpose.

This fomentation is also marvellous meet for this: Take Wormwood, Mints, Marjoram, rumpled Mints, Fennel seed, Dill seed, and Comin, of each one handful and a half, Mastick, red and white Coral, *Gallia Muscata*, of each one drachme, Roses two handfuls, Squinant and Myrtle seed and Coriander, of each one handfull and a half, Vine leaves one handful and a half, (but not Bryony) cut them all grosse, and then seethe them all in three quarts of wine unto the half (except the *Gallia Muscata*) this is to be put last of all unto it, when as the decoction is strained. Then foment the stomach with it with a great spunge. These bags are also to be made: Take the seeds of Smallage, Annis, Silver mountain, Fennel seeds, Stone Parsly, and of Rue, of each one handful, Marjoram, white Water Mints, of each one handful and a half, Hyssop, Pennyroyal, Stechas, Rue, field Cypres, of each one handful, Wormwood two handfuls, Calamus, Cinnamom and Cloves, of each one quarter of an ounce, Mace 3. drachmes, cut it and beat it all together, and afterwards put it in a bag. Item, rub the stomach with *Aqua vitæ*. This is also very good and commodious: Item, set a great boxing cup upon the stomach unpickt, &c. But you shall incontinently hereafter see more of this where we do speak of the griping and pain of the belly, because that they do both proceed out of one kind of cause.

Of the swelling or puffing up of the Stomach, §. 26.

IF the swelling or puffing up of the Stomach be caused of wind, that is easily perceived through the forementioned reasons. But because that it may also happen very well through impostumation and other occasions, and that the same is to be outwardly seen and known, therefore are we here to adde unto this somewhat thereof. When as then any winds do stick in the stomach, that will passe neither upwards nor downwards, then will they of necessity puffe up the stomach, and extend it with great pain: and if the same proceed through any impostumation one may well perceive the same outwardly;

they

wardly; what then the causes and signs of these winds be, that is sufficiently discourse in the forementioned third part, and 25. §. But as concerning the impostumation, we will shortly hereafter speak of it: and if so be there be any malady of the Milt with it, then look into the description of the infirmities of the same, and mix the same things with it which do serve for it.

Of the pain of the Stomach through Phlegma. §. 2.

If so be that the pain of the stomach do come through *Phlegma*, and with a salt humor, then is the Patients mouth salt, and hath also heat and thirst with it. And in case the same be caused of any other kind of *Phlegma*, then is there no thirst with it, but onely anguish and drouth, and one may know by the tongue the taste of the matter which causeth this pain. Or is the *Phlegma* much abounding? then will the appetite be lost, with other causes more, whereof we have spoken already. For this, is first counselled to take *Oxymel* of Squils, with the decoction of Hyssop, and that afterwards he is to be urged to vomit, with Mustard, Hony, Saltfish, Radish, and Garlick: or use this decoction; take Squils two ounces, seeds of Orage three ounces, Radishes four ounces, Vine ar two ounces, and a quart of water, let these seethe together unto the half at least. When you have eaten before two or three slices of a Radish, then drink two ounces of this decoction, tempered with one ounce of Sallet oyl, and a short time after see if you can cast up somewhat. But if the stomach be not therewith sufficiently cleansed, one may perceive by it, to wit, by reason that thereby followeth not any ease at all. Then be these Syrupes following to be prepared; Take Mints, Wormwood, Hyssop, Venus hair all green (if so be that they be to be gotten) of each a handful, Parsly roots, Fennel roots, of each one ounce and a half, Annis, Fennel, *Ameos*, Licoriee, Corans, Vinegar, of each one ounce, Hony and Sugar, of each six ounces, make a clear sirup of it. For this, is *Oxymel* of Squils also good.

As it is needful in all other sicknesses that the *Phlegma* be purged; so is it also needful in this, as thus: Take Burrage, and the flowers of Bugloss, of each half an ounce, Annis one ounce, Licorice, Corans, of each two ounces, roots of Polipodie half an ounce, seethe them all in water so long that there remain about five or six ounces; then steep therein one ounce of the rindes of Mirobalans *Chebuli*, whilest that the decoction is still hot, and so let it stand all night in warm ashes, afterwards strain it out, and take three or four ounces of this decoction, and put thereto half a drachme of *Turbith*, and one scruple of Ginger, and then give it him early in the morning; or give to the Patient of the purging Marmalade like as it is described in the last part of this book. For this is also to be given three or four drachmes of the rotules of *Diaphenicon*, or the *Electuarium* or *Diasena*. But if one be had rather take pils, then let him use some of these following, to wit, *Pilulæ de Aloe Lota*, and *Cochiæ*: afterwards must the stomach be warmed with all kind of good Wines, as Hypocrasse, and such like. Also with losinges of *Diatrionpiperum*, *Diagalanga*, &c. Item, confected Ginger, Annis, Comin, and Mints, mixed or confected with Sugar. All his meats are to be strewed with Ginger, with Cloves, Galangal, Pepper, and Cinamom, and they are also to be dresst with it.

This confection following is marvellous good for all feebleness, cold, and bad digestion of the stomach, and also against all hoarseness. Take Comin which hath been steeped in Vinegar and is dryed again, five drachmes, Annis, Smallage seed, dryed Mints, Marjoram gentle, *Calamus*, Rosemary, Marjoram, and Pennyroyal, of each three drachmes, Cloves, Cardamom, Nutmegs, of each one quarter of an ounce, long and common Pepper, of each two drachmes and a half, *Lignum Aloes* one drachme and a half: temper them together, and make a subtile powder of it, and afterwards with Hony, into a confection. The *Trochisci de Rosis* do hinder the matter that it run not again (after purging) towards the stomach. If that half an ounce of it be taken with Wine, it comforteth, asswageth the pain, and very much amendeth digestion. Item, anoint the stomach with oyl of Spike, Mastick, or oyl of Wormwood. For a plaister, may be used that which is described before in the 3. §. beginning thus; Take Mastick three ounces, &c. If there be great cold approaching, then give the Patient one drachme of Mithridate or Treacle, with Annis and Wormwood have been decocted.

The causes of their impostumation, which growth afterwards unto an impostume, all which do make pain in the stomach, is through the falling down of some bad humors into it: so that if the foresaid humors be not

Of the pain at the Stomach through Melancholie. §. 28.

THe pain of the stomach bringeth with her, together with the foresaid signes, a lowr smatch also upon the tongue, great desire or longing for meat, but without digestion, with disquietnesse, lasks, and vomiting, which do commonly come all together. For these kinds of Maladies do people come commonly to be wonderful feeble and void of might, for that the heart which is neerest unto it cannot tollerate this overlading and burthen. Thus then to remedy these grievous melancholick humours which do sink into the stomach, these syrups following are to be used; Take Burrage roots, Parsly roots, and Fennel roots, of each one ounce and a half, the inner part of Squils one ounce, Mints, Hyssope, Harts tongue, Venus hair, being all green, (if they can be gotten) of each one handful, Fennel seed, Annis seed, *Cassata*, Licorice, Coraus, Vinegar of each one ounce, Hony and Sugar, of each six ounces, make thereof a syrup.

Another. Take Licorice and Raisons, of each one ounce, flowers of Burrage, Bugloss, Fennel, Annis, Fennel roots, and *Cassata*, of each half an ounce, Ginger one quarter of an ounce, Hony and Sugar, of each six ounces, make forthwith a syrup of it, or in stead thereof use *Oxymel* of Squils, with water of Burrage, which taketh away the belching of the stomach.

For to purge, this following may be used; Take water of Burrage, and Bugloss of each one ounce, Annis one quarter of an ounce, Licorice, and Coraus, of each one ounce, Thymus and wild Thyme, Polypodie roots, of each half an ounce; seethe them together, and steep therein one ounce of *Myrobalans Indi* the space of a whole night, then wring it well out, and then temper with it one drachme of Azur stone prepared, and give to the Patient betimes in the morning.

There may also be used for to purge the confection of Sene leaves, afterwards strengthen the stomach with the confection *Aromatica Carpobilata, Diaphœnix cum Moscho, Laetificantes Galeni, Diatheamarum*, and annoint the same with the foresaid Oyl. His meat shall be measurably with spices. He must drink but little old Wine. He must use moderate exercise, and bathe often. All that is outwardly to be done is to be taken out of the 44.

But if so be that there be any belching proceeding of unnatural heat, (which nevertheless chanceth very seldome) then is the Patient to use the syrup of Wormwood, or Wormwood wine, or Wormwood water. In like sort also he is to purge afterwards with *Hiera Picra*, and not to disquiet himself, for that these medicines be hot of nature, because they do purge both *Choler* and the stomach. Otherwise must this Patient be ordered as in the debility of the stomach through heat is taught in the 6. §. And good heed to be taken that the digestures vertue may be strengthened. Set also a great boxing cup upon the belly without pricking the space of an hour, yet otherwhiles taking it off, and afterwards annoint the stomach with the foresaid Oyl, or some other oyl, wherein Fennel, Rue, or pennyroyal, is decocted.

The Asiology hath also a great power to expel all wind and pain of the stomach. And as concerning the order of life, or diet there is always to be used all light meats, and white wine, and therewith sobriety.

Of the pain in the stomach through the impostume. §. 29.

THese impostumes which the Greeks do call *Apostema*, and the Latinists *Abscessus*, are like a separation from that which is whole and firm in a mans body, or a separation into two parts, and doth make an exulceration, which we do call in our common speech an impostume, as a word lent us from the Grecians themselves; but in our English tongue we do call an impostume a Botch or a Boyl, which commeth to a head, which breaketh out and healeth. The difference between an impostume and an exulceration is, that the impostume breaketh out and healeth speedily, but an exulceration endureth long and corrodeth, like as the same may also happen in an impostume.

The causes of these impostumes may be blowes, falles, and other outward injuries, all which do make pain in the stomach, which groweth afterwards unto an impostume, through the falling down of some bad humors into it: so that if the foresaid humors be

not drawen thence, then there befalleth more harm unto it. And that we might write ſomewhat of it, we will firſt begin with the impoſtume.

In caſe then that with the pain in the ſtomach there be an Ague, and an impoſtume, which may outwardly be felt through the heat and otherwiſe; then may it eaſily be adjudged that this diſeaſe is cauſed through heat and *Cholera*. It hapneth alſo that the pain is ſo vehement, ſo inſolerable, and the heat ſo abundant, that it ſeemeth that the Patient would burn: So that he loſeth his ſenſes, and thereby hapneth alſo to fall into a frenzy or ſome other madneſſe, with a forcible vomiting and parbraking.

For this muſt the Liver vein or Median be opened, and afterwards theſe Refrigeratives to be forthwith layd upon it. Take Roſe water ſix ounces, the juice of Quinces one ounce and a half, red and white ſaunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, Camphire one ſcruple; temper them all together: This is (as it is ſaid) to be uſed at the beginning. Afterwards, if the cauſe requireth, there muſt be ſundry plaiſters made ready. The firſt is this inſuing: Take red and white Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, the ſeed of Plantain, of Purſlain, and Wormwood, of each one drach. and a half, barley meal two ounces, Camphire one ſcrup. Oyl of Roſes and Quinces, of each one ounce and a half; let them ſeethe all together until it be thick. But in the increaſe of the pain, then temper amongſt this plaiſter the greaſe of Ducks and Hens, as much as is needful: and when as this malady is at the higheſt, put Smallage unto it, Dates, Fenegreek, *Bdellium*, and Vinegar, of each one quarter of an ounce, and then mix it as is aforeſaid.

But if the diſeaſe begin to wax old, that the heat were gone, and yet there remain nevertheleſs a hardneſs of the ſtomach, then be one of theſe plaiſters following to be laid upon it: Take Violets two drachmes and a half, Roſes five drach. Spike and Maſtick of each three drach. Cypers roots, Squinant and Calamus, of each one quarter of an ounce, Fenegreek meal two ounces and half, Cammomil, Holſihock roots, and Barly meal of each one quarter of an ounce; temper them all together with the muſtilage of Lineſeed unto a pap. This pap is alſo good for all hard ſwellings of the ſtomach, and of the Liver; it aſſwageth the pain, and ripeneth all impoſtumations. Or in the ſtead of this you may alſo uſe this plaiſter of *Melilote*, *Diachilon*, or *Cerotum de Hyſſopo*, and four hours after meat, when the meat is digeſted, the ſtomach is to be annointed with the oyl of Maſtick and Wormwood, and further the place covered with ſheeps wool. Item take Pitch and Roſin, of each two ounces, *Colophonia* one ounce and a half, Maſtick and Frankincenſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Aloe one ounce and a half, mollet Lard one ounce, oyl of Maſtick four ounces, green Wax as much as ſufficeth for a plaiſter: you may alſo make a ſalve of it, and it is very good both

It is alſo needful for to purge, which muſt be effected with milde Cliſters, whereof divers ſtand here and there declared. Afterwards give the Patient one ounce of Caſſia, or two ounces of Manna, diſſolved in Endive water. And if this do not ſufficiently relax then give him every day one ounce, or one ounce and a half of Caſſia. And in caſe that the Ague do not remit, then open a vein, and purge once again, as before. Take three drach. of peeled Gourd ſeeds, make thereof milk with Barly water, and three drach. of Roſe water, like unto Almond milk. Seven daies after, give him half a drach. of *Trochiſci de Roſis*, tempered with Endive water. He is afterwards to take every day this enſuing: Take of the water of Smallage and Fennel water, of each one ounce, the juice of Wormwood one quarter of an ounce, Maſtick one drach. temper them together, and uſe one of the preſcribed plaiſters. Barly paps, Oaten paps, and otherwhiles ſtued ſpinage may be well eat. Or Burrage boyled in Hen broth and Almond milk, is very meet for him. Stued Peares, Apples, Quinces, and ripe Plums may he alſo eat. Water or Sperr water muſt be his drink. In fine, ſuch kind of ſick folk muſt be kept very ſober, for that is the beſt medicine for this ſickneſſe.

pains in the ſtomach my vomiting potion, mentioned in the eleventh Chapter, Section doth good, as I have often proved when all other meanes would do no

Of the impostumes of the Stomach which be of a cold nature. §. 30.

IF so be that this impostume of the stomach do proceed of a cold and moist cause, which may quickly be perceived through the small pain, the bad digestion of the stomach, small Ague, little thirst, and much spettle; then is the patient to be holden very sober in meat and drink, and beware of vomiting and purging: but at the first must be given him one drach. or one drach. and a half of these *Trochisces* following.

Take Squinant, Cassie wood, Rubarb, and Calamus, ana. ℥. ȝ. Saffron, Myrrhe, *Costus*, Annis, and Pepper, ana. ℥. ı. *Bdellium*, ℥. ȝ. Mastick one quarter of an ounce, *Ammoniacum*, ℥. ı. form *Trochisces* of it with vine cuict.

Afterwards you may use this plaister following: Take Cammomil and Melilot, ana. ℥ ı. Fennel, Roses, Cipers nuts and the leaves, ana. ℥. ı. Fenegreek meal, Oyl of Cammomil, and oyl of Roses, ana ℥. ı. temper them together unto a plaister.

Or make this plaister following; take Cammomil, Melilot, Priests crown, Pennyroyal and Dill, of each half a drachme, Wormwood and Spikenard, of each three drach. Mastick one quarter of an ounce, Oyl of Roses four ounces, make a pap of it with the mucilage of Hollyhock roots.

But when this disease is increasing and at the chief, then put *Ammoniacum*, *Opopanacum* dissolved in wine, and liquid Styrax, unto it, of each half a drach, Hens and Goose grease, of each one ounce, oyl of *Spica* six ounces, and make a plaister of it. This is forcible to maturate all impostumes. For this is also good the plaisters *de Melilото*, and the black *Diachilon*.

For the common man, take oyl of Wormwood and Goats dung: temper them unto a plaister: Or take Oyl wherein Wormwood hath been decocted, Mallows boyled in Mutton broth, and drest with butter.

Now for to expel this cold matter, this sirupe following is to be used; Take Mints, Wormwood, Venus hair, being all green (if they can be gotten) of each three handfuls, Roses one ounce, Annis one quarter of an ounce, Cipers nuts, Spikenard, of each one drach. Hony of Roses twelve ounces; then make a sirupe of it, like as in the first part of the first Chapter, and §. 6. is taught; give thereof every morning, and in the evening before supper half an ounce, with the decoction of Mints and Mastick. For a purgation he is to take one ounce of *Hiera Picra*, tempered with three drach. of Cassie and Sugar, or dissolve it with the foresaid decoction, and then drink it. Afterwards the Patient is to take every third day this prescribed Laxative.

Heed is also to be taken therein, when as the impostume in the stomach will break out, which may be well perceived hereby; to wit, if there be great pain about the place where the impostume is. Likewise when the Patient doth eat sowr and harsh things: if in going to the stool, or in any thing that he vomiteth there be seen any corruption. Item, if there come any stench out of the stomach, and that the pain diminisheth somewhat after he hath vomited: for this the stomach is to be cleansed well in Summer season with Barley water, and that in the mornings especially, and at afternoon, taking every time five or six ounces. Or take water wherein Gum and Licorice have been decocted.

For this is Whay also very requisite. He is two hours afterwards to take one quarter of an ounce of this powder following, tempered with four ounces of the juice of Quinces, or sirupe of the same in water, wherein Butchers Broom seed, Mirtle seed, and Purslain seed have been decocted. In the winter must the stomach be also cleansed at the same time with Barly water, wherein Hyssope, Squinant, Hony, or Hony of Roses were decocted, and thereupon to use this powder following.

Take Roses, blossomes of Pomegranates, and Amber, of each half an ounce, fine Bolus three quarters of an ounce; mix them well together being beaten small. This patient may also wear this plaister ensuing upon his stomack: Take fine Bolus, Mony, Myrrhe, Mastick, and Aloe, of each half an ounce, Pitch or Rosin as much as is needful for to make a plaister.

of

Of exulcerations in the ſtomach. §. 31.

WHat difference there is between the impoſtume and the exulceration of the ſtomach, we have ſufficiently declared in the 29. §. therefore have the learned by good reaſon written of theſe two kinds of diſeaſes ſeverally. As much as concerneth the exulceration, the which the Latiniſts do call *Ulcera*, they grow otherwhiles of the impoſtumes, and chiefly if they be hot. For if the ſame be not throughly healed, then doth this exulceration follow. The ſame be ſometimes cauſed through cholerick and ſharp rheumes, which fall out of the head into the ſtomach, and there then through their ſharpneſſe do excoriate the ſtomach; like as the ſame hapneth oftentimes to the Lights. Alſo theſe exulcerations may be cauſed of ſome ſharp and corroding meats; like as through the exceſſive uſe of muſtard, or the ſeeds, much ſalt, and ſuch like. For if there come of this ſharpneſſe into the ſtomach, then doth the ſame gnaw and corrode it. Now for to ſpeak of the ſigns of it, the diſeaſe it ſelf ſheweth ſome, and doth demonſtrate unto others the place. If there be a pricking pain, then doth it caſt out the meat back again, as a thing which is noyſome unto it, ſo that it cannot ſtay in the ſtomach: whereby alſo the retentive vertue is infeebled. Item, if the Patient do take any ſowr meat or drink, then doth the pain increaſe, which would not have hapned if he had uſed milk, butter, or any other ſweet meat. Item, if one do ſmell any kind of ſtench thorow the belching, with drouth of the mouth, and thirſt, which proceedeth out of the ſtomach; then it is a token of an exulceration in the ſtomach. Item, for that this exulceration is ſo neer the heart, there do come alſo great ſwoonings, ach of the head, and the loſſe of underſtanding. But the ſigns which do manifeſt the place of the ulcer, are theſe; namely, when the neck of the ſtomach is excoriated, then doth the Patient feel pain in the ſwallowing down, and eſpecially if it be any thing which is ſowr or ſharp that he ſwalloweth: which pain he feeleth alſo even to the poine of his ſhoulder blade, but chiefly in the mouth of the ſtomach, and pit of the heart. Item, if the diſeaſe be in the mouth of the ſtomach, which is very ſenſible, then is the pain greater, and eſpecially if one do ſwallow down any ſharp and ſalt meat, whereby the breath alſo will be much indammaged and hindred. But if the diſeaſe be in the bottom of the ſtomach, then doth one feel no pain in eating and drinking, but after that it is received: ſome ſignes likewiſe of it may be perceived in the excrements; they that deſire to have more other ſigns, may read in the diſcourſe of the Rheumes. But before we come to the remedies of this ulcer in the ſtomach, there be certain common rules to be noted, whereof the firſt is: If this diſeaſe muſt be holpen, then is the ſame alwaies to be begun with drying things. The ſecond; albeit that it is needful to uſe drying things, yet nevertheleſſe muſt heed be taken that there be no ſharp drying things uſed, as Copperas, burnt Copperas, Verdigreaſe, and ſuch like, becauſe they be of a venemous nature. The third; all ulcerations of the ſtomach can be hardly cleanſed of the corruption, like as any other which may be outwardly ſeen, but it muſt be done onely with things which do drive it downwards out of the ſtomach. The fourth; theſe ulcers are not through any vomits to be cleanſed, for that the tough corruption is hard impacted in the ulcer, and would through vomiting be drawn all together, the which the purging medicine doth not, for that it ſtirreth the ſtomach not ſo ſore, but driveth out the matter gently downwards. The fift; in the exulcerations of the ſtomach may not any ſtrong medicine be given, that they be not the more harmed by it. The ſixt; without a perfect mundification, can no incarnation take any place in any ulcer. The ſeventh: all which is given to ſuch Patients, is to be done in the morning early, or muſt be diſpatched before ſupper time, to the end that the medicine through the night not be hindred. The eight, whether this ulcer be in the neck, or top, or in the bottom of the ſtomach, there muſt be ſomewhat alwayes added unto the incarnatives that be clammy, as Gum, and Dragagant: to the end that the foreſaid medicines might ſticke the better, or cleave to the place infected. The ninth; becauſe that the ſtomach ſo infected is of a bad digeſture, you are to give him to eat a little, and likewiſe light meats. Now when then this malady ſhall be known through the foreſaid ſigns, and is yet new, then is there to be uſed none other but aſtringent and drying things, for which theſe *Troches* following are to be made: Take Roſes, bloſſomes of Pomegranats, Frankincenſe, Bucherr Broyſſed, burnt Ivory, and Dragons blood, of each a like quantity, make *Trochiſces* of the weight of a drachme, and give one of them every morning faſting

one every evening two hours before ſupper, with the juice of Quinces or ſuch like.

But in caſe that this exulceration of ſtomach be of continuance, then it is to be feared that there is ſtill ſome corruption in it. For this, there are to be uſed certain dayes together mundifications, as Barly water, or Mead, and alſo incarnatives. Afterwards are Barly water and ſirupe of Quinces to be uſed, and aſtringent things to be eaten after, as Medlars, Services, and ſuch like.

Or uſe in ſtead thereof Oxyſacchara and Oxymel, of each ℥. 1. temper them with Barly water, and uſe it (as is ſaid.) Then take ℈. 1. of *Trochiſcis de Carabe*. Item, there is alſo good for this diſeaſe one drach. of Hiera Picra, often uſed Barly water or Mead. And if the body have need of any laxative medicaments, then uſe thereto Caſſie, or any mild Cliſter.

With this diſeaſe doth come otherwhiles the laſk, which is to be ſtayed with *Trochiſci de Spodio*, or *De Carabe*. Note ye alſo here, that many of theſe things (which be deſcribed in the ſecond part, the fifth Chapter and the 17. §. againſt the bloody flix) are very requiſite for this diſeaſe.

This patient is to order himſelf alwayes (as is recited already) with all light meats, as Pullets, Hens, Partridges, new layd Egs, Barly paps, and Oaten paps. In like manner Lambs feet and Sheeps feet uſed in this diſeaſe, are very meet. Buttermilk is alſo good for this. His drink muſt be ripe wine, without any ſharpneſſe, alſo Barly water tempered with a ſtopping ſirupe, which liketh you beſt.

Of the ſtinking breath through the exulceration of the ſtomach. §. 32.

WHereas be ſuch cholerick humours in the ſtomach, there is commonly a foul ſtench with them, which may be perceived by the breath, and that for the moſt part with thirſt, drouth and bitterneſſe of the mouth, the which diſcloſeth it ſelf more before then after meat. For this is alſo good the ſirupe of Vinegar and *Oxyſacchara* mixt with the ſirupe of Wormwood: this is not onely good for the cold, but alſo for all hot exulcerations. This Patient is alſo to be purged with Aloe, and yellow Mirobalanes. Afterwards he is to uſe, the *Roſulæ Triſantali*, Peaches, dryed Melons, Pompeons, Apricocks, Quince pears, Lettice with vinegar, Barly, and other ſowr things, which be very good for him. Fiſh, Milk, ſalt fleſh, Onions, Garlick, and ſuch like ſhall he forbear.

But in caſe that this foul ſtench of the ſtomach do proceed of cold humours, then is the ſirupe of Wormwood to be uſed certain dayes together, tempered with one third part of *Oxymel* of Squils: and afterwards the Patient muſt be purged with the pils *Stomachice*. And further to uſe the Tabulates of *Diagidonga*, of *Diambra*, *Diaplum*, and ſuch like, which be hot of nature. Confected Mirobalanes, and eſpecially *Bellirici* and *Chebuli*, Conſerve of Roſemary, or confected Ginger, are all very good. He muſt waſh his mouth often with odoriferous waters, and cleanſe the teeth very well. As much as concerneth meat or drink, we have made before in the firſt part, the thirteenth Chapter, and 3. §. a very long diſcourſe of a ſtinking mouth and breath. Item, yet more which may there be uſed in the ſecond Part, the fift Chapter and 25. §.

Of the ſchirroſity of the ſtomach. §. 33.

IT cometh alſo oftentimes to paſſe, that the ſtomach hapneth to harden, without any exulceration, which that it may outwardly be diſcerned, the cauſes of this hardneſſe or ſchirroſity, may be as well through cold, or through wind, whereof is ſufficiently written before in the 25. and 26. Section. Alſo this hardneſſe may be well cauſed through melancholy, the which through ſowr ſmatch of the mouth, and ſowr belchings may be known, even as the other proceeding of *Phlegma*, by drouth, and tough ſpettle, without heat and thirſt. For this purpoſe is this ſalve following to be made: Take oyl of white Lilies, Rue, Camomil, and wormwood, of each one ounce, the greaſe of Hens, Kytes, and Geeſe, of each half an ounce, the ſalve of Diachea one ounce and a half: annoint the ſtomach warm with it, and cover it with warm fleſh cherps wool. Alſo you may prepare for this uſe this plaiſter following: Take Camomil, Cumin, Caraway, and Cruſes ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Frankinſenſe, Maſtick, *Bdellium*, of each half an ounce, Spikenard, and ſaffron, of

each

each one quarter of an ounce, the dregs of Sallad oyl and Wax, as much as is needful for to make a plaister, spread the same upon leather, and wear it on the stomach.

Or make this following: Take Wax one ounce, Turpentine half an ounce, Ginger and Cyperus, of each one quarter of an ounce, Aloe, Galbanum, of each three drachmes, oyl of Galangal, as much as will suffice for to make a plaister. It is also very needfull for to comfort the stomach, whereof hath been sufficiently admonished before.

Of the Hickcough in general. § 34.

THis disease of the stomach, which we call the Hickcough, and is called in Latine *Singultus*, is a common disease, known unto all men; it cometh seldom, and departeth quickly, and there is no great cunning to drive it away; for it is oftentimes driven away with a bit of bread, or with a draught of wine, or water, as also through the keeping in of the breath, through neesing, through great motions, through wrath, mirth, and other alterations more of the mind: like as if any one be frighted, or see any haynous thing, if any body cast cold water into his face, if one do bind hard the outward members, or if one set boxing cups upon the stomach, which are all together small means and without danger.

But there cometh otherwhiles such a Hickcough that ceaseth not, whereby the heart, the brest, and the lights are weakened; against which, the expert Physitians have found out these remedies following.

But we will first of all discover the nature of the Hickcough, and his causes, which be described as hereafter followeth. The Hickcough is a motion of the natural expulsive vertue of the stomach, which is caused through the feeling of any thing that is hurtfull, and that the stomach desireth to expell. This Hickcough may also be well taken for a cramp of the stomach, for they be both caused through the repletion or inanition of the stomach. And like as the cramp is none other thing, but a shrinking or drawing of the sinews back to their beginning, so is this none other thing, but a distention or contraction of the stomach unto the place of her beginning: but herein do they differ, that by the Cramp the sinews are contracted, and by the Hickcough the neck of the stomach. The cause of the Hickcough are two things, namely, repletion and windinesse, and contrariwise also inanition, as already hath been said, which we will also comprehend in this §. Secondly, the causes be also outward and inward. First if the stomach be not well defended and kept from cold: also if the outward members, to wit, the head, the hands, and feet, do suffer too great cold, which draweth up from thence toward the stomach. In like manner, this Hickcough is also caused well through intolerable heat, whereby the stomach getteth a bad quality, to wit, too hot, or too dry.

Item, if the head be sore wounded, that the brains be thereby perished. Item, if the stomach be much overcharged with meat and drink, or that any kind of corrupted humours be gathered therein. Moreover, the Hickcough may be caused through any kind of sharp and biting meats. For if the stomach feel that it hath ever any thing in it that may hurt her, then doth she use two means to discharge her thereof, which is, through vomiting, or through the Hickcough. It seeketh also thereby to cast out that which is inclosed in the innermost plights of the stomach, that nature desireth to drive that out through the Hickcough, which otherwise through vomiting she doth easily bring to passe, this doth daily experience teach us: for if one take any thing which is raw in sharp & as chiefly Pepper being beaten small) and drink wine upon it, and the same cometh afterwards into the plights of the stomach, then will the Hickcough be caused through the heat thereof, and the stomach seeketh through the Hickcough to expell the same. Wine again

by reason that this is caused through inward occasions, then doth it sometimes come through the stomach onely, and through other infected members, to wit, through impostumes of the head, of falls, and blowes, through the breach of the skull, and impostumes of the liver, and when the same is over heated, that it sendeth sharp pricking, & hot humours towards the stomach: or that the same run thitherwards from other parts. Item, if that this Hickcough do onely proceed of the stomach, then cometh it of rough cold, bitter, and biting humours, whereby some bad impostumes, or exulcerations be provoked. Item, this Hickcough is also caused through great unmeetness or inanition of the stomach, which cometh through lingring sicknesse, long abstinency, great labour,

much

much purging, continual lasks, and much parbreaking. But if so be that it cometh suddenly upon one without any long precedent sickneſſe, and that a body find himself well before meat, and after meat ill at eaſe, if he have well eaten and drunken, and thereupon do reſt a long time, then it is a ſure ſign that this Hickcough proceedeth of the fulneſſe of the ſtomach. But if they be cold or tough humours, which provoke this Hickcough, then are all warm things very welcome to the patient, and he feeleth alwayes ſome kind of cold in the ſtomach. Or if it be cauſed through heat; then deſireth he all cold things, and feeleth alwayes a gnawing pain in the ſtomach. With the impoſtumes are alwayes Agues, pains, and in appetencie annexed: alſo the Patient after parbreaking, and after the laſk, feeleth himſelf ſomewhat enlightned. When as then the impoſtume is broken, that may be perceived by tart and ſour things that one taketh. All other ſigns of this ſeveral malady which is outwardly, may be required of the patient himſelf, and of ſuch as ſtand by. In like manner, if the breath ſavour, then is it a ſign of ſome kind of foul ſtinking humour, or meat, which putrifieth in the ſtomach. If it come through cold of the ſtomach, that may be known through feeling, and all that is cold, is prejudicial unto him, and all warm things be acceptable. Or if this Hickcough be cauſed through repletion and fulneſſe, with anguiſhes, ſtraines, and with many belchings, then may it be perceived what humors they be, by the ſweetneſſe, and bitterneſſe, and ſaltneſſe.

Of the Hickcough through repletion, and through winds.

WHen as then the hickcough cometh on any body, after that he have eaten groſſe meat, and hath drunken, then it is certain enough, that it is cauſed through repletion of the ſtomach, through coldneſſe of the matter, and of winds, which the Grecians do call *Empneumatoſin*, which is a diſtention. For this the ſtomach is firſt to be unburthened through vomiting, and to induce his body through looſeneſſe; for which, there is to be taken Hiera Picra, Rubarb, and Agaricus. And if ſo be theſe mild things will not help, then are you to uſe theſe precious pills following; Take burnt Ivory, ſeed of Endive, of Purſlain, and Lignum Aloes, of each one drach, and a half, ſowre Dates half an ounce, Rubarb one ounce, this being beaten all ſmall, and if ſo be that you will, then put Vinegar unto it, or the ſirupe of Mints. Or if you had rather have the ſame ſoft like a ſirupe, then take ſo much the more Vinegar, or ſirupe with it, and take every day half an ounce of it.

For this is alſo commodious the conſerves of Bayberries, *de Baccis lauri*: ſo is alſo the confection *Diacymini*, *Diatrion pipereon*, bare and confected Annis ſeeds, confected Ginger, Comin, Caraway, Galanga, Mints, Ameos, Maſtick, Cloves, Frankincenſe, Marjoram, and field Mints, through all which things, Powders, Confections, Conſerves, and all that one will, and may be made. You have alſo certain good things in the firſt part, the 12. Chapter, and 17. §. which be very good for this uſe. But above all, Cloves are very good for to ſtrengthen the ſtomach, and to conſume all bad humours, which cauſe this Hickcough. The ſirupe of Mints is alſo highly commended for this purpoſe.

This Confection following may alſo be prepared: Take Spica, Squinant, Calamus, Annis, Fennel, Mints, Wormwood, and Coſtus, of each one drach, Saffron, Lignum Aloes, and Cloves, of each two ſcrup. Maſtick and Roſes, of each one drach, and a half, Opium, prepared Coriander, white Poppy ſeed, Cuſſy wood, ana. ʒ. β. the muſcilage of Fleawort, as much as will ſuffice for to make lochings with; but they be more meet and pleaſant, if they be made with Sugar, taken to every ʒ. of powder 12. ʒ. of Sugar, if one will make Sugar lochings with it.

If ſo be that then the hickcough plague one too ſore, then take *Spec. Diatarg.* ʒ. i. *Philonium* ʒ. ß. temper it, and take it with Wine in the morning.

This following is to be drunken; Take Comin, white Mints, of each a like quantity, and a little Frankincenſe; ſeethe it in water, and drink of it oftentimes warm, it expelleth the wind and cold matter of the ſtomach.

Item, the ſame doth alſo the water of Rue, being drunken faſting, or prepare this wine following: Take *Diapamum* beaten ſmall half an ounce, Treacle ʒ. i. temper them together with ounce of wine. For his meat, all common Veniſon, and all kind of Birds, as Pullets, and Pigeons, &c. be very fit, but they be alwayes better roſted then ſodden. And all that he eateth boyled, is to be dreſt or ſtued with Spices.

But if all the foreſaid things will not yet drive away the hickcough, then is there to be

be given to the patient *Trochisci de Olibano* five drach. Blecampane roots ʒ. 3. dryed Rosemary, and Rue, of each one quarter of an ounce, seed of Mints, or the herb, ʒ. 3. and a half, make thereof Trochisks with sirupe of Mints, and give thereof ʒ. 1. ß. at once.

Others do commend this following: Take Costus roots, Saffron, Roses, Mastick, and Spica, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Asarabacca* one drach. Aloe, *Opium*, of each half a drach, make also *Trochisci* of it, with the mucilage of Fleawort, and give him one drach. thereof. These *Trochisci* are to be taken alone, when the hickcough shall get the mastery.

Outwardly are these things to be used: Take the decoction of Comin, white Mints, and Frankincense (like as is said for the drink) make a spunge wet in it, and (being wrung out) lay it oftentimes warm upon the stomach. Aqua vitæ is also commodious for this, Vital water, oyls and other things, (like as is described before in the pain of the stomach.) In like manner one may foment the place with warm water of Rue, or that which is more fortible, must the same be well rubbed with, as is before rehearsed.

Item, there may moreover be taken for this purpose, dry Wormwood, Mints, and Comin, pownded together, sowed in a bag, and so layd upon the stomach. Also the stomach must be anointed with warm oyl to wit, oyl of Wormwood, Mastick, and such like, and rather to wear over it this plaister following: Take Frankincense, Mastick, Wormwood and mints, of each half an ounce, Laudanum ʒ. 1. ß. Annis, Fennel, Cloves and Spica, of each one drach. make a plaister of them with Wax, for to be laid upon the stomach. Also regard is to be had unto the patient that he incline himself as much as is possible to sleeping, and fasting. And if so be that he be somewhat lean, then is he to bathe otherwhiles, for that the same consumeth the cold matter which doth cause the Hickcough.

Of the Hickcough, caused through emptinesse and inanition.

IF so be that this Hickcough do come after an Ague, by the disquietnesse, vomiting, thirst, and drouth of the mouth, then is the patient to take oftentimes a little warm water: and if so be that the Hickcough will not thereby avoid and carry away, then is he to take Barly water, with oyl of sweet Almonds. For this is also requisite Barly pap made with milk: also warm milk as it cometh from the Cow, Pullet broth, here sodden Eggs, Wine which is not too strong: the mucilage of Fleawort with the Julep, and the juice of Pomgranats being drunken is also good for this intent.

Also, anoint the backbone from above till beneath, or rather the whole body with Sallad oyl, or oyl of Roses.

Boxing cups set upon the stomach, and behind upon the back, be much commended for this disease: also the rubbing of all the outward members.

Lastly, we are to think upon the young children, who were wont to be vexed much with the Hickcough. In case they be still nourished at the breast, and do not digest well through any peireing cold, or that their milk doth come to curd in the stomach, then are they to use none other medicine, but that their stomach be anointed with this oyl following, tempered together, or each alone, and then to lay a warm cloth upon it, to wit, oyl of Mastick, of Wormwood, of Dill, and Bevercod, and that the Nurse that giveth suck, do eat light meats.

Of insatiable hunger in general. §. 35.

OF all other accidents of the stomach, there cometh also an insatiable hunger, which the learned do divide into four parts, and some into five, which parts are comprehended in the first, and so we will also let it rest.

The first, the Greeks do call *Cynorexia*, the Latinists *Canimus*, which is dogs hunger.

The second *Bulimos*, some have alledged this for Dogs hunger, which we also esteem to be the same.

The third is, *Syncopalis*, which bringeth swouning with it. The last is, the lost or foyled hunger, whereof we now intend to write.

But this is not spoken of the hunger which cometh through long fasting, or great wasting of the blood, fits, or of strong purgations, but only of this unsatiable hunger, called Dogs hunger. If so be then every such patient shall observe this decreed order,

Of the dog's hunger, or the unſatiable appetite of meat.

THis hunger is (as is ſaid) an unnatural luſt or deſire of meat, and hath his name of the Dog (an unſatiable beaſt) and ſo greedy in eating, that he muſt caſt it out again, and ſet forth immediatly to fill himſelf again. All ſuch manner of hunger may alſo come unto men, and that as well through cold, as through heat of the air, hard running, great labour, long watching, forcible Agues, great laſks, of worms, or the ſtomach, or bowels, which conſume the meat. In like manner alſo of any kind of humours which do fall into the ſtomach, and there enfeeble the retentive vertue; and do drive down the meat oftentimes with vehemency, or that the expulſive fore be too extreme ſtrong. This malady cometh commonly after a fervent Ague, and much vomiting. It doth alſo happen through overmuch heat of the ſtomach that is long continuing, wherby it digeſteth much, and alwayes deſireth more. The other principal occaſion is cold, which ſticketh faſt in the mouth of the ſtomach, whereof cometh alſo an unnatural deſire of meat. And how much greater that the cold is, ſo much the greater is the hunger, and that ſo long, until all the vertues of it be weakened.

The third occaſion may be ſome ſour humour, or of Phlegma and Melancholia, which may be retained in the mouth of the ſtomach, and doth there provoke this luſt and deſire of meat. The ſigns of this unnatural hunger which is cauſed through warmth of the time, through great labour, and ſuch like, as is diſcovered before, alſo through unnatural cold, much watching, &c. and all other outward accidents, which are to be demanded of the patient himſelf. Or if this diſeaſe be cauſed through worms, ſuch hath likewiſe his ſure ſigns, which be mentioned in their place.

If ſo be that this hunger then do proceed onely through heat of the ſtomach, or through heat of the whole body, then is there great thirſt with it. And if it be cauſed through any humours, debility of the retentive, or vehemency of the expulſive vertues, which be to be ſeen by the meat, that avoideth undigeſted through the ſtool.

But if this diſeaſe be cauſed through Melancholy, then is there with it a pricking, or gnawing, with a drouth of the mouth, the patient ſleepeth but little, and that with terrible dreams, and hath all fantaſies in his head. When as then this malady cometh through cold, then doth the patient alwayes feel himſelf troubled after meat, and that he muſt by and by vomit up the ſame again, or the ſame paſſeth from him downwards undigeſted. Preſent regard is to be had that the body be not filled full of bad humours, whereby the conſumption might at leaſt enſue, and *Lienteria*, yea the Dropſie it ſelf. And if this ſhould ſo continue a certain time, then followeth at laſt *Bulimos*, and afterwards *Syncopis*, (whereof we have ſpoken before) which taketh people out of the world.

If ſo be then this unnatural hunger be cauſed through any outward or accidental occaſion, the ſame are to be prevented with contrary remedies, to wit, with alteration of cold dwellings into warm, of great labour into reſt and ſleep, &c. In caſe then that this hunger be cauſed through coldneſſe of the ſtomach, then are warm things for purging and other warm remedies to be uſed which might expell the cold matter from the ſtomach, whereof we have written here before in the 5. §. and of all that ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach.

For this it is alſo required by all the learned, that theſe kinds of patients ſhould eat boyled Rice, with the fat of Mutton ſtued, or that is dropt off from roſt meat. All fat things moderately uſed are very good for him, as Sallet oyl and ſuch like. But if this malady do come through cold ſour *Phlegma*, then it is good that he boyl Marjoram in all his meats. He may alſo uſe Muſtard, Honey, Nuts, Almonds, Onions, and Garlick; he may alſo the ſpace of certain dayes eat Goats milk, with the oyl of Violets, becauſe that theſe fat meats do drive above in the ſtomach, therefore they do ſupple the mouth of the ſtomach, and do make a loathſomneſſe and feeding. The ſame is alſo eaſing good, that ſuch do drink much cold and ſtrong red wine [illegible] which is alſo very good, to ſlake hunger with. Alſo for this Dogs hunger, are warm Confections to be uſed, as namely, *Ireos Galeni, Diaſpiritus cum Muſco, Diatragacanthum frigidum Trajani magni*, good confects, Ginger, Hippocras, and other ſpiced wines not ſweet, made ſweet rather with Honey then with Sugar.

But this is not ſpoken of the hunger which cometh through long faſting, of great ſcouring, of the bloody flix, or of ſtrong purgations, but onely of this unſatiable hunger which is called Dogs hunger. If ſo be then every ſuch patient ſhall obſerve this decreed order,

then

then will this hunger abate very much, and also thorowly be cured in time.

But it is not that this hunger proceed of heat, and the meat do not molest him, neither yet is it known above nor beneath (like as it was wont to be) if after a lingering sickneſſe, he were overcharged with meat, and if the ſtomach and all the whole body, be waxen hot, they are nourished with meats which be not easy to be digested; as namely old Beef, Mutton, Pork, and also all kind of Pottages, of Peaſe, and Beanes, of Rice, and wheat boyled in milk, grosse fishes, Trypes, feet and Livers of all beasts; also hard soddenness; and in ſine, with all that is hard of digeſtion, which lyeth long in the ſtomach, and wherewith the ſtomach may be cloyed. Also his meats ought to be dreſt with ſome cold things, for which Lettice, Cucumbers, and Gourds be very good. He is to keep himſelf also in cold air, his drink muſt be alwayes good Claret wine. And for a concluſion, he muſt eſchew all ſpice and ſtrong wines. But if ſo be the ſtomach be too much overcharged, and too much hindered, then is the Patient to be forced to vomit, through ſuch meanes as be before ſome times expreſſed.

The ſtomach is outwardly to be annointed with cold oyles, likewiſe also with unguent of Rose, with the cobling ſalve *Galeni*, with the white Camphire ſalve, with Vinegar and Rose water, wherein is a little Allom diſſolved. And if ſo be that the ſame be not any thing which hindereth it, then let the Patient bathe in cold water. And if ſo be that this hunger be caused through melancholy, then prepare this Syrups following: Take the roots of Sperage, Fennel, Parſly, Smallage, Butchers broom, Thyme, Comin, Burrage, Bugloſſe, Harts tongue, Raiſons (the ſtones taken out) flowers of Burrage, and of Bugloſſe, of each half an ounce, Endiuy half a handful, Hony eighteen ounces; make a Syrup of them, and give him each time one ounce and a half, or two ounces. For to purge uſe the Confection of Sene leaves, or this potion following. Take Sene leaves, Polypody roots, and Annis, of each half an ounce, Corans one ounce; let them ſeethe together in eight ounces of water unto the half, then temper therein beaten *Euphorbium* one quarter of an ounce, Sene powder, an d prepared *Agaricus*, of each half a drach. Cloves half a ſcruple, make thereof a potion. And if need be, open the Salvatella upon the right hand. There is alſo to be ordered in his dyet, as is before rehearſed, and all things are to be uſed which may provoke appetite, as hath been ſhewed before in the 5. It is alſo ſaid that hard roſted Eggs after other meat, be very meet for this purpoſe. And if he ſleep alſo very well (like as is briefly ſpoken of before) that if one recover after a long continued ſickneſſe, that there doth follow a very great hunger; but they are to have no hard or groſſe meat given them, as Beef, great fiſhes, unleavened bread, or ſuch like, becauſe that their digeſtion is as yet very feeble, whereby they might eaſily fall again into a new diſeaſe; but then are they to be kept with ſubtile meats, as with fat Pullets, Capons, Fowles, Butter, and ſuch like, and all unnatural and unmeaſurable eating is to be withſtood and repugned as much as is poſſible.

Of the Cow hunger which is called Bulimos.

The unnatural and unſatiable hunger *Bulimos*, is as much as to ſay with the Grecians, a very great hunger: which name the ſuperſtore have ſomewhat altered, and ſaid thereof *Bulſpeid*. And it is thus deſcribed, *Bulimos*, which is a hunger of the members, whereby the ſtomach is ſatisfied. And this is alſo a great diſeaſe of the ſtomach, which alſo hath his beginning from the ſtomach it ſelf. But in no wiſe may be Dogs hunger to be ſo things following, or with, although they have both of them an inſatiable luſt and deſire of meat, yet with the Dogs hunger is not onely a deſire, but alſo the eating and feeding is ſo much the greater. In the Cow hunger is that ſuch, that the Patient who hath lately eaten, is moved immediately to eat again, whereas nevertheleſſe all luſt to eat again, and to eat much, is taken away. But there is no ſuch hunger in the ſtomach, which is to be ſatisfied with meat, but the inward pains which by defect of meats without intermiſſing, and when the ſtomach is again ſilled with overmuch meat and choaked, then will it be overmuch diſtended and out of order, ſo that no diſeaſe go then any of digeſtion.

Secondly, in the dogs hunger are the parts of the ſtomach and other parts be ſtrong and ſtrong and able; but in this Cow hunger are they withered and weak. And becauſe that ſuch ſickneſſe is cauſed as well through heat as through cold; therefore muſt we ſeverally write thereof.

The greateſt occaſion of this *Bulimia*, is, when winter time is, the ſtomach is cooled too much

much with cold, then driveth the humors towards the ſtomach, out of the veines, inhe inward parts, filling them therewith, ſpoyling the appetite, and alſo depriving the ſtomach therewith of all her force and vigor; in the mean while the other parts remaine empty and hungry, deſiring much their food and ſuſtenance. Hence then this infatiable hunger doth proceed; ſo that this is properly an hunger of the members, and is no hunger at all of the ſtomach. If ſo be that then any one, as is ſaid, bee ſo extreamely cooled, and although there come ſuch a luſt of feeding upon him, yet it is very quickly ſlaked. This diſeaſe bringeth otherwhile ſuch a qualme with it, that the patient is cauſed to caſt ſome cold ſlime or corruption; and then will all outward members (which be defrauded of their nouriſhment) be infeebled, impotent, overcold, and the paſſe very ſmall. The ſick perſon hath ſowr belchings from the ſtomach, and a foul ſmutch in the mouth. The urin is bleak, likewiſe the ordure bleak coloured, thin, and alſo otherwhiles hard, becauſe that the Patient can eat very little, or nothing at all. Now then, whether this diſeaſe be cauſed or not, through great cold of winter time, or cold ſlime of the ſtomach, the Patient is certain dayes together, to take morning and evening a draught of Diacymi *Compoſitum*, or of Squils, with water wherein Galangal is decocted; afterward he is to vomit and purge with *Myrobalani Chebuli*, *Bellirici*, and *Emblici*. The like alſo with the pils *Fetidæ*, *ſtomachicæ*, or with theſe following; Take Turbith, *Agaricus*, of each one drachme, *Spica* and Ginger, of each one drachme; temper them together, and take one drachme of it at once, and afterwards he is to uſe this confection following, namely, *Diamoſchus*, *Diambra*, *Trioniperon*, *Dyacymino*, *Diagalanga*, and that eſpecially after purging. All his meat muſt be alſo dreſt and ſtrewed with ſpice, and alſo boyled rather alwayes roſted then boyled, Rue water drunken is alſo very neceſſary, but chiefly good old wine, which is ſomewhat binding by nature.

Before dinner and ſupper, the ſtomach is to be well annoynted with the oyl of Maſtick and oil Spike temperedtogether. Alſo to bathe in water, wherein wormwood, Melilot, Camomil, and butchers broom hath been decocted.

What is more to be uſed for this, look in the ſame Chapter, in the 5. §. which remedies be moſt fit for it. Theſe kind of Patients are alſo to be ſprinkled oftentimes with Roſe water or fair Well water upon their bodyes and their faces, that the natural heat may be driven inward, and the inward members may be ſtrengthened. They are alſo to hold oftentimes ſpice before their noſes, and to uſe it in their meat. His wine muſt be alwayes ſtrengthened and enabled with Cinamom, Pepper, Cloves, and with Spice and with them and with Vinegar is he to ſprinkle a hot ſtone, and to receive the vapour of it. The Chamber is to be fumed with *Lignum Aloes*, or with *Muſcus*, *Ambra*, black and white Frankincenſe *Dandanum*, Maſtick, Galangal, with Citron peeles and Orange peeles, *Gallia* and *Alipta Muſcata*, with each alone, or with which you pleaſe.

But if this diſeaſe come through heat, then is this unnatural hunger of the members cauſed of the reſolved humors of the veins and other members which paſſe into the ſtomach, and there oppreſſe the ſtomach, with loathſomneſſe and irkſomeneſſe of feeding. But they are to waſh their mouth very often with a little *Oxyſacchara*, or with verjuice. Likewiſe alſo to uſe Julep of Roſes with a little Camphire, or ſirrup of Roſes with Sanders. For this is alſo meet all cooling things, and eſpecially them that have binding operation, wherof there be many diſcovered in the ſame Chapter, and in the ſixth Section.

Afterwards the Patient is to be purged with Mirobalans, with Rubarb, or ſome ſtewed in the decoction of Prunes, as alſo with *Hiera Picra*, or ſirupe of Vinegar tempered with the ſaid decoction. Afterwards he ſhall uſe the confection *Baſata Nardi*, [illegible] ſweetned. His meat muſt be dreſt with Verjuice, and with Butchers broom ſeeds, and ſtrewed with odoriferous cooling things. For his drink he is to take good clear thin [illegible] ed wiſely well with water. [illegible] good for this Patient, that he bathe in water wherein Roſes, Mirtle ſeed, and Endive hee decocted, and afterwards anoint the ſtomach even to the navel with the oyl of Mirtle, and oyl of Roſes, wherein is a little Vinegar tempered. In like manner [illegible] irrigate the members often on high with Roſe water, or cold Well water.

Secondly, in the [illegible] ſtrong and able; but in this Cow hunger are they withered and weak. And becauſe this ſickneſſe is cauſed as well through heat as through cold; therefore muſt we ſeverally write thereof.

The greateſt occaſion of this Famine, is, when winter time is, the ſtomach is cooled too much

Of

Of the swooning Hunger called Syncopalis.

The third unnatural hunger hath his name (as is said) of the swooning which it bringeth with it: and the same cometh commonly after the first described *Bulimus*, or such like sickness, for that the natural powers are very faint and debilitated.

Also because this hunger is so near unto the heart, that it cannot tolerate such debility, even as it hath been here before sufficiently taught. Also in respect hereof, for that some have so weak and so tender a mouth of the stomach, that they cannot abide any fasting: but when they begin to be hungry, and may not by and by have food, do fall presently into a swoon. When this happeneth, then are the outward members to be rubbed hard, and bounden with pain, and the face sprinkled with Rose water, or washed and quickned with other things which be mentioned in the second Part, Chap. 6. and §. 2. But if so be that his force be not quite spent, or if one perceive that the swooning will come upon him, then give him a bit of bread to eat steeped in Wine.

The fourth is a corrupted or bad hunger. But because this hunger for the most part happeneth to women with child; therefore we will not discourse here any further thereof until such time as we shall discourse of this, and other matters more appertaining to women.

In like manner also concerning the Worms, because that they do infect and frequent more the bowels then the stomach, and are thence expelled; therefore we will discourse of them in the description of the bowels.

The twelfth Chapter.

Of the Liver.

ALbeit now the Liver have the seat in the third part of mans body, that is under the Midriffe or *Diaphragma*, about the stomach, for which cause we continuing our method, ought to have written thereof before the stomach; yet we have declared sufficient causes in the beginning of the tenth Chapter, and shewed for what cause it hath not yet been effected. This most noble member whereof we are now to discourse, which we call the Liver, the Grecians *Hepar*, and the Latinists *Jecur*, hath her situation (as is said) on the one side of the stomach, which it toucheth in a wonderful (and yet nevertheless in a natural) manner, with five branches, like as it were five fingers, wherewith she stretcheth also a little towards the left side, and is also by nature one of the most needful and worthiest members which is given for the nourishment and feeding of mans body, therefore are all beasts that do blow endued with it. This great excellent gift have the heathen people also acknowledged, but they shamefully and unthankfully abuse this wonderful creature of God in their sacrifices: in which amongst the entrails they behold the Liver especially, supposing thereby to learn and understand things for to come, even as they, whether it be through natural causes, illusion of the divel, (for through the teachings of their sacrificing priests) have published and made known many kinds of wonderful things.

The substance of the Liver is a compacted flesh, of a red colour, not much unlike to congealed blood, full of veins and arteries, and is of a warm and moist complexion, like as is also the blood. Also of her self she is without sense or feeling, like to half a circle, and (in regard of the whole body) she is much bigger then in other beasts, and especially in such as banquet every day, and make good cheer, or be fatted by nature. The Liver is the beginning and the seat of all fulness, a fountain of all the veins, the Kitchen of the blood, which she afterwards in most wonderful manner doth spread abroad, and distribute throughout the whole body, whereby all the members be nourished, sustained and strengthened. This her admirable operation is not amisse to be compared with Mosts subterranean grottes, that feedeth in self in the bottome; Also there is often some light which surrounding that we do call the flowr of the Wine. Lastly, there is some-

what

what more which vapoureth out within the year, which is waterish. Even so fareth it with the Liver, which draweth first all manner of mixed moisture unto her, and the greatest and the muddyest; to wit, *Melancholia* sendeth she towards the Milt or Spleen; that which is light, hot, and fiery, as *Cholere* is, draweth to the Gall; the excessive watrish moysture which remaineth still in the rest of the body, and all that is not meet for the blood, that do the Reines draw to them, from whence the same cometh into the Bladder, and is afterwards voided out for urin.

This excellent member is (like as the whole body of man) subject to divers diseases: amongst which, the most principal are these, namely, when the arteries and veines be obstructed, whereof then be caused all kind of sicknesses, inflammations, schirro fities, lasks, or bloody fluxes, diseases of the Kidneys, and of the conduits of the urin, thirst, yellow Jaunders, and lastly, divers sorts of Dropsies, whereof we will speak more at large hereafter.

Of the confections of the Liver in generall. §. 1.

FIrst, all men that have any infection of the Liver, are called *Hepatici*, notwithstanding that some do make somewhat else of it, and it is described thus; *Hepaticus* hath his continual pain about the place of the Liver, with swelling, and hardnesse. The face loseth his natural colour; there is also an Ague, and thirst with it, with drouth of the tongue and the mouth. But this is to be thought again upon, that the Liver it self is insensible, and therefore feeleth no pain. But this sensiblenes or feeling have the inward & adjacent Tunicles, and all that belongeth unto them: which pain doth proceed through a cold, or hot Liver, or some impostumation, whereof the Physitians have their proper signes, which we shall declare in their convenient places. But the common people, yea also the unlearned Physitians do not know so quickly the sicknesse of the Liver, and that because of her manifold accidents and *Symptomata*, which be incident unto it, whereof we will describe the most needful, with all their necessarie remedies.

Of the obstruction of the Liver in generall. §. 2.

FOrasmuch as the common causes of the obstruction of the Liver (like as is already discoursed) are in the veins and arteries, and that as well through heat, as through cold; therefore will we first of all make some declaration in general of this oppilation, before that we come to the principal. This obstruction or oppilation is thus described; *Oppilatio* is an obstruction, and such a disease, as hindreth the blood, and other humors, that should have their passage and course through the veins, which may be provoked through these causes following in the Liver: to wit, if a body do gird himself too hard, and hath his clothes too straight about the Liver. Item, through [illegible] thrustings, and such like, through use of grosse meats, as Pork, Beef, Cheese, vnleauened bread, boyled seeds, as Rice, Wheat, &c. All manner of Pap, and other oppilative Potages. Item, through outward cold, through inward tough slime and grosse blood, which happeneth to lye before the orifitts of the veins, through wind, impostumes, and through other diseases more of the Liver. The common signes next after the forementioned, are these, that alwayes his excrements or ordure is very thin and watrish, the urin also sheweth thin, cleer, and yellowish. Also there is pain in his right side, and he feeleth a debility in the whole body, which may best be known when one must ascend staires or hils, and that then the breath is very short, with other signes more, whereof we shall admonish where we shall write of the impostume of the Liver. Albeit that we shall hereafter make mention of the order of dyet in a hot or cold Liver, and that we have also in generall do write of the disease of the Liver, yet will we here notwithstanding briefly rehearse this rule.

To wit, that they all that have any obstruction in the Liver, are not to eat any thing but light meats, as young Mutton, Hens, and such like, which is often shewed before, and shall be hereafter shewed again. Also all their meat is to be dresst with Parsly roots, and herbs. They are also to use much Peasepotredge. And if this disease proceed of a cold cause, then are you to add Parsly, Fennel, Southernwood, Sperage, or Capers. His meat must be boyled rather then rosted. Also he must beware of all grosse meats, old flesh, great fishes, and of all fishes which have no shels. He is to use no baths, plaistring, nor any thing else before and ere that the second digestion be past. All strong inordinate exercises immediatly after meat must be eschued. And although the urine were very thick, yet

yet must he forbear as much as is possible, and chiefly from drinking of wine; howbeit nevertheleſſe a clear, white, and well savouring Wine is in one sort permitted. This may suffice at this present.

The causes of a hot Liver are many, as namely, the hot time, great labour in the heat of the Sun, and especially without drinking, excessive Venery, application to hot medicines, suffocation of the mother or womb, continual use of all hot meats, as Spices, or Wine made with Spices.

These are now the signs of a hot Liver, to wit, a red and yellow urine, yellow ordure, great thirst, loathing of meat, and a swift pulse. All cold things are acceptable to the Patient, and warm things be noysome. He is much enclined to vomiting, and that which he parbraketh is lead coloured, and sometimes yellow and green. Also the heat of the Liver may be felt with the hand. They which be of hot nature, and young withal, and in a hot time of the year, are most subject to this disease. And when to this heat there cometh drought, that the mouth and the tongue be dry, then is it well to be seen that this disease proceedeth of an unnatural heat, whereby there followeth forthwith Obstructions, Impostumes, Exulcerations, Tumors, Schirrosities of the Liver, and such like diseases.

Of the oppilation or obstruction of the Liver through heat. §. 3.

FOr this obstruction of the Liver these simples are good: amongst which notwithstanding some be moderately warm, but they can thereby do no hurt, because that they be forcibly deoppilate. They may be mixed with other things, viz. with tame and wilde Endive, small Endive, Priests crown, Liverwort, Melon seed, Pompion seed, Gourd seed, Cucumber and Lettice seed, seeds of Purslain, of Endive and small Endive, water of the roots, and herb of Cicory, Sorrel, Cicory, Burrage, Venus hair, small Housleek, Harts tongue and field Cypers: of all which, one may prepare what he will. Item, the sirup of Vinegar drunken with Endive water. In like manner may be given to the sick person to drink Barly water, the juice of cooling herbs, as of Endive, Nightshade and *Cichorea*, with the sirup of Sorrel and Sugar: for that these things do open the obstructed Liver, and cool the same. You may also use for this purpose these things ensuing: Take *Aqua cichorea*, and sirup of Violets, ana ℥ 3. sirup of Endive, ℥ 12. temper them together, and if you think that the choler is tough and thick, then temper amongst it one ounce of Vinegar, and use thereof as often as you please, each time one ounce and a half, with some of the foresaid waters. Or take the sirup of Vinegar, the sirup of Endive, ana ℥ 6. and temper them together. If the body be sore bound, then put thereto one ounce of the sirup of Violets. Or if you think that the *Cholera* be burnt, then put the juice of Burrage and of Fumitory unto it.

And if there be any Ague with it (as is commonly doth happen), then is this obstruction not onely commodious, but also most necessary, that the bad cholerick humours may the easier be expelled; for which these things following are very meet, *viz.* the sirup of *Diarrhodon, de Byzantii, de Raditibus, de Chichorea*, taken with the distilled waters meet for them, to wit, water of Venus hair, of Harts tongue, of Agrimony, of Wormwood, of Endive, of Cicory, or with the waters wherein the foresaid herbs are decocted. Item, Cassie with *Hiera Picra, Electuarium lenitivum, Rhabarbarum, Agaricus*, sirup of Roses laxative, *Pillula de Rhabarbaro*.

But seriously to take in hand this matter, it is above all works needful to purge, which is thus to be effected.

Take the flowers of Burrage, of Bugloſſe, Violets, Currans, and Endive seeds, ana ℥ 6. boyl them together as behoveth: of this decoction take three or four ounces, and temper therein three drachmes of Cassie sowr Dates, ℥. 5. beaten Rubarb, ℥. 2. these being tempered, take them in the morning early. Sowr Dates are especial good for this, because they cleanse the hot Liver, and also cool it. Or take the flowers of Violets, of Burrage, Prunes and sowr Dates, ana. ℥. ß. *Spicanardi* one scruple: let them seethe together in sufficient water. Then take 3. or 4. ounces of this decoction, and temper amongst it one ounce of Cassie, and one drachme of Rubarb steeped in Endive water, make a drink of it. If so be that the sick person be meetly strong, then in stead of the Rubarb you may temper with it three or four drach. of the confection *de Succo Rosarum*.

Another: Take sirup of Violets half an ounce, Barly water three ounces, Rubarb one

one drachme steeped in a little Endive water, *Spica* three drachmes, confection *de Succo Rosarum*, one quarter of an ounce; temper them together, and give it him in the morning betimes. If the humour be grosse, then take in the stead of the Rubarbe, *Agaricus* and Rubarb, of each half a drachm: for the *Agaricus* hath an especial operation in the opening of the obstruction of the Liver.

For this is also requisite divers Sirups, which be daily used at most Apothecaries, and also described in this book; to wit, above all other, both sorts of *Oxymel*, the Oxymel of squils, Sirups of Endive, of Barberries, their confections, and all that is made of it, *Oxysaccara*, Sirups of Violets, and of *Roses*, and principally if there be tempered with it Roses, burnt Ivorie, and Saunders.

Item, take Sirups *De Bizantio* two ounces, Honey of Roses one ounce, water of Endive, Fennel, and of Wormwood, of each two ounces, make a *Julep* of it: take at one several times. Another; Take Endive water six ounces, water of Liverwort three ounces, seeth of Gourds, Melons, and Cucumbers (slightly beaten with the pils) of each two drachmes, Venus hair two handfuls, and ten or twelve winter Cherries: let these seethe all together in sufficient water, until that a third part be decocted, and in seething put one quarter of an ounce of red Saunders; afterwards strain it thorow a cloth, and seethe in the same decoction three ounces of Sugar, and then make two Potions of it; they do cool, cleanse, and strengthen the Liver, the Kidneys, and all the intrailes marvellous much.

Item, take of a green Gourd, and set it in an Oven when the bread is taken out a good while afterwards make a hole in the bottom, and receive the water which shall run out underneath, then put as much Endive water unto it, and make a Julep of it as you think best. The wine of Pomgranates is very good for this: in like manner also, Butter-milk for all diseases of the Liver is highly commended. Venus hair one ounce and a half, or two ounces taken in the morning and evening, cooleth, openeth, and easeth all disease of the Liver. In the moneth of June is the water thereof to be distilled.

Note also, that whereas there is a great heat of the Liver present, there must one refrain from drinking wine, and also from all drinks wherein is Honey admixed. But let us use all that rooteth.

Make also this *Julep* following. Take the water of of Bugloss, Venus hair, and of Endive, of each nine ounces, the juyce of Pomgranats two ounces, white Sugar six ounces and a half; seethe all these together unto a potion. Or take *Julep* of Roses, temper them with Endive water, and clean well water.

Although for great heat we have forbidden Wine, yet nevertheless Cherrie Wine is permitted, because it is of a temperate nature, and doth moysten the Liver, and also cooleth, and therefore these Patients are to have otherwhiles at their desire a draught of it. This confection following is to be used, to wit, *Triasantali Diarrhodon* without Sugar, conserve of Roses, of Violets, preserved S. Johns Grapes, or *Ribes*, Barberies, and Peaches preserved, the conserve of water Lillies doth also cools much. Also the conserve of Cicorie with the roots, and preserved Grapes, are good for this purpose.

Or have this confection following prepared; Take peeled Melon seed, Cucumber seed, Gourd seed, and peeled Pompeon seed, of each three quarters of an ounce, seeds of Endive, and Sorrel, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pine nuts, which have been steeped four hours in Rose water one ounce, Sugar eight ounces, or as much as you please; seethe the Sugar with Rose water, and then make loosinge of them.

Now for to keep an open body, these pils are to be prepared. Take one drachme of Rubarb, burnt Ivory one scruple, make nine pils thereof with the syrup of Roses, and take them in together at one time.

Other pils for the obstruction of the Liver caused through *Phlegma*, which falleth out of the head into the breast and Liver. If you will let the sick person take these pils two hours before he goe to bed; Take pils *De Hiera composita* two scruples, and let the sick person sit the next day in a bath of water.

Take also sometimes one drachme of these *Trochisci* following, to wit, *de Berberis*, *De Camphora*, *De Spodio*, and *De Sandalis*, with water of Endive, and make pils thereof.

We will also here repeat these things which are to be used outwardly; Take Sanders red and white Saunders, of each one drachme, Camphire half a drachme, beat them to powder, Vinegar four ounces or more; temper this together, and wet a cloth therein, and lay it upon the Liver; when it is dry, then make it moyst again in the same.

Or take the juyce of nightshade and Endive water, of each three ounces, Rose water one

seed ounce and a half, vinegar one ounce, red and white Saunders I and the seeds of Ci-
trons beaten, of each one drachme, tempered, and used as before. Item, take one quarter of an ounce of strong wine, four ounces of Nightshade water one ounce and a half, Saffron five grains, mingle them well together, and therewith lay it warm over the whole Liver. Another. Take Endive water two ounces, Red rose water and Nightshade water, of each three ounces, water of Wormwood two ounces, the seeds of Lettice and of *Calamus*, of each one ounce and a half, red and white Saunders, of each one drachm, Camphire one scruple, temper them well, and then apply as before. Another, which is yet stronger. Take water of Endive, and of Fennel, of each three ounces, water of Burrage, and of Bugloss, of each two ounces, *Species de gemmis*, of each one drachm, *Diarrhodon*, *Trisantalon*, of each one drachm and a half, red Coral half a drachm. Camphire one scruple, temper them and use them as the other. Take Roses, red and white Saunders, Wormwood, Squinant, burnt Ivory, and Seeds of each a like much, beat them all to powder, when as you will use it, then temper half an ounce with Fennel and Endive waters, of each four ounces. Item, take the water of Nightshade, of Endive, of Liverwort, of Fennel, and of Wormwood, of each four ounces, *Species Trisantali*, *Diarrhodon*, burnt Ivory, of each half a drachme, Saffron one drachme, vinegar two ounces, temper them and use them as the other. Another which is temperate. Take water of Bugloss, of Citory, of Balm, of each six ounces, *Spec. de gemmis temperat.* one drach. Saffron one scruple, Vinegar one ounce, Barley three ounces, temper them all together. But it is to be noted that those coolings must be used with discretion, that they do not cool the breast too much, and procure a Cough, the which might easily be procured.

For Obstruction of the Liver or Gall.

℞ of Fennel roots, Parsley roots, Succorie roots, red dock roots, ana. M. i. bark of the tree the outward rind scraped away, p. i. boyl them in a gallon of water, skim it and put to it of maidenhair, Sydrach, Licoras, Annise bruised, ana. ℥. i. boyl them to three pints, then put to it red Saunders powdered ℥i ß. seethe it again until one third part is consumed, then strain it and put into the liquor of Raisons stoned lb. i. Currans bruised Capers half a pint, boyl it again until the raisons are sofe, take hereof two spoonfuls 3. or 4. times every day.

Also take the roots of Brionie M. ß. boyl them in hogs lard, and therewith anoint the Liver morning and Evening.

℞ of Diatrion santalorum ℥ ß. Diamargariton Frigidum, Diarrhodon Abbatis, of each ℥ ß. Conserves of Succorie, violets, ana. ℥ i. ß. Sugar dissolved in Endive and Succory water, q. s. make thereof losinges. Dose ℥ ß.

Here now follow Plaisters and such like.

℞ Barley meal three ounces, Roses one drachme, white Poppy seed half a drach. the juyce of Wormwood and of Nightshade, of each one ounce and a half, Vinegar three ounces, make pap thereof with the oyl of Roses.

Or take white Poppy seed one ounce and a half, the juyce of Wormwood three ounces, juyce of Nightshade six ounces, vinegar one ounce, and Barley meal as much as sufficient.

This plaister is also highly commended. Take dryed Violets three quarters of an ounce, Roses two drachmes and a half, *Spica* and Mastick, of each one drach. and a half, Camomile flowers, Barley meal, Hollhock roots, of each ten ounces, Squinant, Cipres nuts and Calamus, of each one drach. make a pap thereof with Well water, and lay it every day over the Liver.

The common plaister of Saunders, which is to be found at the Apothecaries, is also very fit for this use.

℞ Salve. Take oyl of Roses, of water Lillies, and Spica, of each half an ounce, Barley meal, Ivorie, of each half an ounce, red and white Saunders, seeds of Plantain and of Endive, of each one drach. *Spica*, Agrimony, of each one quarter of an ounce, Mastick two scruples, Wax as much as is needfull for to make a salve of it. Item, take oyl of Roses two ounces, oyl of Violets and of Spica, of each one ounce, vinegar half an

quince, Roses, burnt Ivory, Squinsle, red and white Saunders, of each half a dram, Camphir, two scruples; then make a salve of it with molten Wax. The fomentings [illegible] described before in the first Chapter, and first of Also the cooling [illegible] and other of Roses, are marvellous good for this disease.

[illegible] Ye shall ether; Take the oyl of bitter Almonds, and white wine, of each a like quantity, of Cypress nuts a quantity, Wormwood, Camomil, and Agrimony, and chafe it warm upon the place of the Liver.

Another outtich is very forcible: Take the salve of Saunders, and the cooling Salve of each one bunce and a half, oyl of Roses one ounce, if it be too [illegible] water as hard as you will with Wax. [illegible] of Burrage, and of Bugloss, of each one ounce and a half, of Violets and of Quinces, of each one ounce, of Diacodium, of each one ounce, of Barley water, of Burrage, and of Bugloss, of each one ounce, of Violets and of Quinces, of each one ounce, oyl of Violets and of Spica, of each one ounce, Camphir, two scruples; then make a salve of it with molten Wax.

It is also necessary to observe therein an order of diet. If with this heat there be an Ague, then is he to be kept as one that hath an ague, and that according to the importance of the cause, like as may be discerned in the first part. Generally, Lettice, Purslain, Marjoram, and Cucumbers are very good for him with Vinegar, and [illegible] nourishments that may be dressed with them. And although the inflammation were without Ague, yet there be some day, leah and scabs with it, then be the foresaid herbs very profitable for him. In like manner also Pullets, Hens, Partridges, small birds, Kids, Mutton and Veal dresst with Vinegar, Verjuice, Orenges or Limons, Barly pap and Gruel are also very fit for his meat. The Vineyard Snailes are also very good for them. The fishes that be taken in sugar gravel waters, dresst with Parsly and Vinegar, may be very well eaten. Melons, Mirabolans, Peaches, dried Pears and Apples, Cherries, Strawberries, Raisons, a dish of [illegible] are also very good. Wine is altogether repugnant to this disease: yet being well watered, or Charrie wine, may be drinke in some moderately. Also all grosse meats are very hurtful for him; as unleavened bread, grosse flesh, Cheese, Milk, Starch, Rice, and in fine all that bindeth is hurtful for the Liver, But Buttermilk is not ill for this malady.

Of the Obstruction in the Liver through cold. S. 4

IF so be that the Oppilation of the Liver be caused through cold, then is the body black and lead coloured, and chiefly the face, the tongue, the lips, and [illegible] is not coloured, the Pulse is slow, there is little thirst, slow digesture, lead coloured white excrements that stink not much. All warm things are very meet for the Patient, cold things are utterly against him; first, if this obstruction be without an Ague, in case that it continue long, then must an Ague ensue by reason that the blood putrifies in the Liver. But if there be any humors with this cold, that is to be perceived by the water; also by the moysture and thinnesse of the ordure, and by the small thin pulse, by the swelling of the eyes and of the face, softnesse of the flesh, and lead colour, whereby they do come to the yellow Jaundies or dropsy. With this cometh oftentimes a lask or scowring, swelling of the eyelids, of the fingers, of the toes, and all outward members. If so be then that these signs chance to be or may be perceived, then may easily be adjudged that this malady doth proceed through cold causes. The cure is for this, above all other things, to be purged, and the flegmatick matter expelled; For which this preparative syrup ensuing is to be used; Take the roots of Parsly and of Fennel two ounce and a half, the roots of Smallage one ounce, Money, Vervain, and Harts tongue, of each one handful, Mace, *Cassia*, of each two ounces, Licorice, Currans, of each one ounce, White Vinegar one ounce, Sugar, of each six ounces, make a syrup of them until there do remain about a pound, and clarify it. For this is also good, the syrup of *Epatica*, of Roses, *Succus de Limonia*, and *Diacrocus Compositus*. Item, take Fennell roots, the roots of Smallage, Sarrage, Artichers broom, of each half an ounce, Agrimony one ounce, Fennel, *Cassia*, of each three drachmes, Harts tongue, Venus hair, Herb Benner, a handful, Vinegar one pound, sugar as much as you will, and make a syrup of them. And of one of the foresaid syrups you are to use certain dayes one after another, every day two ounces at once. This being effected, then is the Patient to be purged with this purgation following: Take flowers of Buloss and of Bugloss, of each one ounce and a half, [illegible] and Polipody Roots, of each half a drachme: let them [illegible] together, and put unto them three [illegible] You are to give him about [illegible] of the decoction

Or take *Pilulæ de Agarico*, or such like, which purge the flegme. When the patient is well purged, then is he to use some of these Trochisks following dissolved in water of Wormwood; to wit, *De Rhabarbaro*, *de Absinthio*, and *de Enpatorio*. Amongst the Confections these are good: *Diacostu*. *Diatalamintha Diamisum*, *Diacymimum*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Diagalangá*, *Diatheos*, and such like.

Take *Pistacia* two ounces, steep them two dayes in warm water of Agrimony, chop them afterwards small, and seethe two ounces of sugar in two ounces of Agrimony water which is meetly thick. Then temper the *Pistacia* and half an ounce of Cinamom with thereof make loosings; then take thereof morning and evening at least one quarter of an ounce. Hereafter do now follow confections and other things which one

Take one pound of well washt Currans, when they be dryed meetly well, then temper them with one ounce of beaten Rubarb, and eat thereof when you will, a good spoonful at once, and then keep it close stopt. This is very good for all diseases of the Liver, and chiefly to prevent the yellow Jaundies.

Another Confection: Take the muscilage of Hollihock roots ℥. 12. clarified hony 18. ounces, Licorice ℥. 9. Betony and Balm, of each three drach. *Cuscuta*, rinds of Tamarisk, of each half an ounce, Annis, Couchenel of each one quarter of an ounce, Ginger one drach, prepared steel two ounces and a half, and one drachme of the muscilage of hollihock roots, and you must seethe the hony to the thickness of hony, then temper the rest amongst it, and use it after that you have well stirred your self, walked, or run. Annis confected be very good for cold obstructions, and all old diseases of the Liver.

Comin and Caraway have great power to heat a frozen liver, and to open all the obstructions. Also bitter Almonds confected or otherwise. Likewise, Elecampane roots, Calamus, *Eringus*, Nutmegs Walnuts, all of them confected.

Also conserve of Eyebright, of Fumitory, of Eldern flowers, Hyssop, Betony, Lavander, Marjoram and Sage are altogether very requisite. To all which you may add *Mina Catholica*, both Treacles, to wit, the great *Diatessaron*, and Mithridate, are very commodious for this disease.

For the obstruction of the cold in the liver be these pils following very good, and especially if there be fear of the dropsie: Take Indy Spica two drach. and a half, *Spica Romana* one drach. Rubarb, *Agaricus* and *Ameos* of each one drach. and a half, Cinamom, Cloves and Squinant, of each half a drach. Aloes five drach. make pils thereof with old wine, and use thereof as often as you will, one drach. at once.

For this obstruction are these things following especial good: Take Couchenele beaten half a drach. make three pils thereof with the juyce of Lemons; then take them fasting as you please. Some advise that there must be tempered amongst it the herb Centory, and then make pils of it with the juice of Agrimony.

Potions and such like.

Wine is for this cold obstruction of the Liver, as in that of heat, not forbidden: for there be sundry wines of herbs ordained for the same; viz. wine of Eyebright or Avence, of Betony, of Harts tongue, Marjoram, Wormwood, Hyssop, and Fumitory, and such like, which be described in the last part.

It must be needful that the wine must be tempered; then prepare a water wherein Annis, Cinamom, Coriander, Fennel roots, or any of these were decocted, you may also boil Mallowes and *Cuscuta* in wine, and sometimes drink thereof.

Of spiced wines are some described before and hereafter, which do serve for the Liver well. For which be highly commended *Claretum*, *Aromatites*, and wine of Zedoary.

Besides the foresaid sirupes may these ensuing be used, to wit, the sirupe of Fumitory, of Wormwood and Mints. And if so be that the *Phlegma* be very tough, then all the Oxymels are fit for it, used with water meet for the purpose.

Of the outward Applications.

Take Agrimony two handfuls, Camomil and Venus hair, of each half a handful, Cipres roots, Maſtick, Squinant, Spica, of each one drach, red and white Sanders, Chelidonie and Wormwood, of each two ſcruples, burnt Ivory one ſcruple, muſcilage of Hollihock roots three ounces, oyl of Maſtick, Spica, and Barly meal, of each one ounce, and alſo a little vinegar: then make a plaiſter of it with the decoction of Agrimony.

This foreſaid plaiſter is good for all hot and cold rumours of the liver, and to be uſed at all times, the plaiſter of Meliloe, the plaiſter of Bayberries, and the known plaiſter *Diachilon*, are all very good for this Schirroſity of the ſtomach, of the Milt and liver.

Item, take Roſes five drach. Wormwood half an ounce, Maſtick five drach. Indie Sal. two drach. and a half, Wax one ounce, oyl of Roſes four ounces and a half, afterward, melt the wax and oyl, and waſh it with water: Laſtly, temper all other things beaten amongſt it. This plaiſter ſtrengtheneth openeth the obſtructions of the liver and the ſtomach, aſſwageth the pain which proceedeth of cold, maketh appetite, and aſſiſteth the digeſtion.

These oyls following are alſo marvellous good againſt all Oppilations of the liver; to wit, the oyl of Elder, of Bay, of Spike, and of Wormwood, tempered, or each alone, anointed upon the place of the liver.

It hapneth alſo very well, that through the obſtruction of the liver, the inteſtines are annoyed. For which you are to take the right ſealed earth, and temper it with Annis or Fennel, *Spica* of Indy, with Cinamom, of each a like quantity as the the cauſe requireth, the half a drach. of it at once with wine. But of this ſhall be written more at large where we ſhall diſcourſe of the guts.

In general, *Oxymel* is good for all oppilations of the liver (if there be any ſharpneſſe of the urine with it) amongſt which, ſome expert Phyſitians do temper theſe things following, which do take away the ſharpneſſe of the urine: as Annis, wild yellow muſtard ſeed, Silver mountain, Mallowes, Hollihocks, Fleawort, Dragagant, and ſuch like: whereof we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, to wit, in this third Part.

The order of Dyet.

BEſides all the foreſaid remedies, it is neceſſary that we do alſo write what diet the patient is to obſerve. Firſt of all, whatſoever cooleth and moiſteneth, is to be eſchewed; to wit, all habitations which lye low by the water: alſo the Southwind. All that here enſueth is hurtful for him, as Spinage, Beetes, Lettice, Purſlain, Endive, Gourds, Cucumbers, and Pompeons, as alſo all that is made of dough. Fiſh alſo is not good for him, unleſſe it were ſeldom uſed. All ſlimy parts of beaſts is he alſo to forbear, as the Trypes, &c. unleavened bread, freſh fruits, and all pottages. Notwithſtanding, Peaſe porrage, and broth of Lentils made with Mints, Parſly, Spike and Galangal be ſpecial good. He muſt alſo refrain from drinking water, if it be not tempered with wine. Alſo all groſſe Wine is naught for him. Butter and Swines ſuet is alſo not much commended. But Sallet oyl is in ſome reſpects permitted. Item, all kind of milk, and all that is boyled with it, groſſe old fleſh, and all that bindeth, it is alſo forbidden.

For his drink he is to uſe meetly ſtrong wine which is clear, and of a good taſt, and ſomewhat ſweet. He may alſo uſe otherwhiles good warming Aromatical Wine, like as we have ſhewed of late. Vinegar, Verjuice Lemons and Orenges muſt be uſe with other meats, but alwayes a little, and rather theſe: The Pomgranats, Cinamom, Pepper, Ginger, Galangal, Annis ſeed, Comin, Fennel, and ſuch like odoriferous things are very meet for him. In like manner alſo the herbs and roots of Parſly, Hyſſop, Thyme, Marjoram, field Mints, Southernwood, Sage, Baſil, Coſtus roots, yellow Rapes, and all other Turneps dreſt with oyle is to uſe. In like ſort Olives and Capers. Of all freſh Hens, Pullets, Doves, Partridges, Feſants, field fouls, and ſucking Kids, be very good to be eaten: for they may all be dreſt with ſpice, and eſpecial good to be dreſt with all meats be Parſly and wilde Turneps. Some do commend much for this ſickneſſe the Vineyard Snails, and of all fruits, the bitter and ſweet Almonds, *Piſtacia* and Currans.

Of a schirrous Liver. §. 5.

If this obstruction of the Liver, it doth otherwhiles wax schirrous and hard, that one may feel the same with the hand on the outside without any great trouble, which malady the learned do call *Schirrus*, and the Greeks *Scirrotes*. This disease is not to be cured but at the first, for when it is waxed old, then is it too late. These patients die same dye suddenly, and some lingringly; for the Liver cannot tollerate so many medicines as the Milt. This disease is to be remedied as hereensueth. The sick person is always every second day to take one scruple of *Ammoniacum*, with wards he is to purge with Manna and Rubarb tempered with Agrimony water: Worms made into pils. If it shall be needful, his Liver vein is to be opened, and afterwards is also good. He is certain dayes afterwards to take one drach. of prepared Wolfs liver tempered in four ounces of Agrimony water, and to use this certain dayes after another. It is also good advice, that this sick person do use things which do provoke much urine, and so break the stone in the Bladder, whereof shall good instruction be found in his proper place. For it is consonant to reason, that such things will also resolve and deobstruct the hardnesse of the liver. Also he is to drink daily a drach. of the seed of *Agnus Castus*, tempered with Comin and Fennel water.

Outwardly be forementioned plaisters, and especially the plaister *de Meliloto* and *Diachilon* to be applied upon it. Also you may make (if you will) a plaister of these things following: Take Camomil one ounce, Roses, Marrow of Oxe bones, or Harts bones, Ducks grease, Hens grease and Oyl of Spike, of each half an ounce, beaten Wormwood three drach. Fenegreek and Linseed meal, of each one ounce, sweet Costus roots three drach. and Wax as much as sufficeth. Or seethe Figs and Raisons, pownd them to grout, and temper amongst it Fenegreek meal, beaten Camomil, Rue and Melilot, afterwards mingle it with the oyl of Camomil, as much as will suffice for a salve.

Item, take Barly meal two ounces, Camomil and Melilot, of each half a handful, the mucilage of Hollihock roots five ounces, Cipres roots, Squinant, Mastick, and Spica, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Saunders, *Calamus*, Agrimony and Wormwood, of each two scruples burnt Ivory one scruple, Saffron half a scruple, Vinegar half an ounce, oyl of Roses one ounce, four or five dry Figs, oyl of Wormwood and of Spike, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a plaister thereof.

Some have taken the venemous herb Hemlock, and laid it as pap upon the Liver; for it doth mollifie schirrositie and hardnesse. 115

By this is also to be understood that all which is good for the obstruction of the Liver, is also very meet for this disease.

Of a cold Liver without obstruction. §. 6.

Here befal also cold diseases in the Liver without any obstruction of the same, yet are all the forementioned remedies very good for this intent. by reason that they do heat the Liver and other inward parts, but these Plasters, Salves, and other things following are especially ordained for this.

Take Mastick, Spica, Cipres roots, Squinant, *Calamus*, Saffron, Myrrhe, but the Mastick and Myrrhe are to be dissolved in Wine, then temper the rest amongst it unto a plaister and lay it upon the Liver.

Item, take the juice of Agrimony twelve ounces, vinegar one ounce, Spike and Cinamom, of each one drach. and a half; wet a cloth in it, and lay it also over the Liver.

You may also put unto it 4. ounces of Wormwood water. Or take oyl of Quinces, oyl of Mastick half an ounce, oyl of Spike one ounce, burnt Ivory, Roses, Squinant, Cuscuta, Cinamom and Spike, of each half a drach. Saffron five grains, and Wax as much as is needful.

Lastly, stir a little vinegar amongst it, and with this salve anoint round about and upon the liver twice or thrice a day, that is, upon the right side, even to the ribs.

Another: Take oyl of Roses half an ounce, oyl of Wormwood and of Spike, of each one ounce, red and white Saunders, burnt Ivory, Squinant and Comin, of each half a drachme, Cinamom one drach. Agrimony and Calamus, of each two scruples, Mastick,

and Indy Spica, of each one ſcruple, Saffron half a ſcruple, Vinegar one ſpoonful, Wax as much is needfull for a ſalve.

But if ſo be that there do remain any pain, then may you uſe theſe things following: take wheaten bread which is well bouted, put it into a bag, and ſo lay it warm upon the liver. But if the pain will not be as yet aſſwaged with it, then take two parts of Miller, and three parts of Bran, and one part of Salt; make them together warm, and uſe it as aforeſaid: Or ſet a great boxing cup upon the ſame place.

Otherwiſe, take Camomil, Balm, Dill ſeed, and Annis ſeed, of each two handfuls, Marſh Fennel, Mallowes, Hollihock ſeeds, of each half a handful, and two or three Poppy heads: ſeethe all theſe together in a good deal of water until the third part be decocted, and fill a great bladder or cloth with the decoction, and lay it on the place of the pain, and when one is cold, then lay another.

Likewiſe, Take ℥. 4. of Bran, Venus hair, Dill ſeed, Burrage ſeed, and Cumin, of each ℥. 1. Camomil, Melilot, of each ℥. handfuls; ſeethe them all together in white wine, then pownd them to growt, and temper therewith one ounce and a half of Barly meal, of Camomil two ounces; then make a plaiſter of it, and lay it warm upon it: it is very good to aſſwage and delay the pain.

Of the impoſtumation of the Liver. Sect. 7.

THe Liver may be alſo annoyed through many kinds of impoſtumes inwardly or outwardly, which be ingendred of many cauſes; as through falls, thruſts, or by too narrow girt, whereby all ſuch iſſues and impoſtumes are cauſed. Alſo theſe impoſtumes may be well cauſed through ſome Cholerick humour, and through an over hot ſtomach, through the uſe of too much ſpices, or any other hot meats, whereby the digeſtion of the ſtomach is infeebled and wholly ſpoyled. For this is eſpecial good all ſweet things, as Hony, Sugar, Figs, &c.

But if this moiſture be through cold, then doth there come a clean contrary cauſe.

The commonеſt ſigns of all the impoſtumes of the Liver be theſe, pain in the right ſide tending upwards towards the ribs and ſhoulder blade, as if it were the plurifie. The ſick perſon can hardly lie upon his ſides, and eſpecially on the right ſide; his face is very black, he loſeth appetite, his urine is blood-red, eſpecially if the impoſtume be hot: otherwhiles the cough cometh with it, as alſo the hickcough, parbreaking, ſhort breath, retention of urine, and great thirſt.

Now for to cure theſe impoſtumes, we will firſt diſcourſe of them that come through heat: for this is firſt, the Liver vein to be opened (if the Patient be able) and to let out much blood; but if the Patient be weak, then but a little, and then the oftner.

If ſo be that he be hard bound, then be gentle Cliſters to be adminiſtred, and this thing inſuing to be laid upon the liver. Take red Saunders, and Roſes, of each three drach. the juice of Endive, and nightſhade, of each two ounces, Roſe-water one ounce, Vinegar half an ounce; make them together luke-warm, and then wet clothes therein and apply them upon the Liver, and renew them once every three or four hours, and continue this three or four daies. This ſirupe following is alſo to be prepared, which is well good for the Ague, as for to open and looſe the body: Take the juice of ſmall Endive, of great Endive, Agrimony, Smallage, and Fennel, of each three ounces, water of Parſly roots, of Smallage and Venus hair, of each two ounces, clear Well water ℥. 12. Sugar eighteen ounces, white Vinegar ℥. 2. Seethe them all together, and clariſie them well, then put unto it Squinant, Spike, burnt Ivory Melon ſeed, Gourd ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, Pompeon ſeed, and red Saunders of each one drach, Wormwood three drach. then make a ſirupe of it, and take at each time two ounces of it with the decoction of Peaſe, or with Endive water.

The third day after that ſuch impoſtumes be known, then is the ſoft pap to be laid upon it. Take Barly meal, ſtewed Figs, and Dates beaten to pap, and tempered all together with oyl of Roſes and Vinegar.

For this ſickneſſe one muſt not purge at the firſt without great need be. But when the ſickneſſe is at the prime or declining, then are you to do the ſame with Manna, Caſſia, ſour Dates, and to exhibit it with the decoction of Violets, Squinant, Prunes, and Wormwood.

In like manner uſe looſing meat dreſt with Burrage, Mallowes, Hops, and ſuch like herbs.

herbs. But if the impostume be broken out, and that there do come a gentle lask or scouring, wherewith corruption also avoydeth, then is nature to work. But in case this scouring get the mastery, then is the same to be stayed with the *Trochiscis de Berberis*, and *de Terra Sigillata*.

If these impostumes do come of thrusts, or such like occasions, then open the (as I said already,) and lay this plaister following upon it: take Myrtle seed, Roses and Bayberries, of each half an ounce, Calamus, Myrtle, Mastick, of each one quarter of an ounce, Saffron one drachme, oyl of Lilies and Wax as much as is needfull; and if you fear any hardnesse of the Liver, then use the mollifying things, whereof we have spoken before. Or make this following: Take Camomil, Melilot, Rue, Wormwood, Ireos, Marjoram, Calamus, Hyssop, and Roses, of each an ounce and a half, Endive, Hollihock roots, Linseed, and Fenegreek, of each one quarter of an ounce: let them boyl all together in wine and water, make a sponge wet in it, and then lay it warm upon it. Item, in the declination of the sickenesse is this plaister following to be used: Take liquid Storax, Wax, of each one ounce and a quarter, Mastick, Saffron, Ameos, of each half an ounce, oyl of Mastick and of Roses, of each 5. drach. Wine six ounces; temper, and make it warm; the Barly for his meat, and the water for his drink, is amongst other cooling things very necessary meat and drink.

But if so be that these impostumes do proceed of cold, then do they make shew with intumifactions and debilities, they bring also rather heavinesse and oppression with them then pain. For this; take heed of letting blood and strong Clisters: but mild Clisters shall be used, and also mild purgations. Amongst other is good for these Clisters, wormwood, Barly, field Mints, Centory, or which you will, decocted with a little Coloquint. You may also use well suppositories for to keep the body loosable, and to draw down the dead and grosse flume.

Prepare also these Trochisks following: Take Roses five drach. Barberries half an ounce, Smallage seed, Squinant, Cassy wood and Calamus, of each ℥. 3. Mastick, Spike, Cinnamon, Asarabacca, Rubarb, Mather, and Lacca, of each one drach. beat them all together, and make foursquare Trochisces thereof, with the juice of Fennel the weight of which, and give thereof one in the evening with this potion following.

Take the roots of Smallage, Parsly and Fennel, of each one ounce, seeds of Smallage, Anise, Fennel, and Cumin, of each half an ounce, Squinant, Agrimony, field Cipres, Germander, Mather, Cassy wood, and Balsam wood, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Vinegar one ounce and a half, Hony three ounces: seethe them all together in sufficient water, and clarifie it as behoveth. Further, anoint the place with oyl of Spike, oyl of *Costum*, or oyl of the seeds of *Manus Christi*, and lay this plaister following upon it.

Take the seeds of Smallage, Ameos, Annis, and Cardamom, of each half an ounce, Saffron, Aloe, of each three drach. Spike, *Amaracinum*, Mastick, Saffron, and Myrtle seed, of each one drach. and a half, Turpentine, Rosen, of each three drach. Wax as much as shall suffice for to make a plaister with: melt it with a little oyl of Spike and Costus, and then temper the rest amongst it. But if so be that you will you may take and put unto it Ox dung, and Goats dung.

When the impostume breaketh, that may be perceived if the patient about the same time fall a shivering and quaking with a swooning, and vomiting, and that blood avoid both through the stool and the urine, then is this plaister following to be used: and if peradventure the openesse be not yet explete, yet doth it ripen and allwage the pain, and strengtheneth the Liver.

Take Barly meal, and Fenegreek meal, of each one ounce, Linseed meal three drach. Mill dust, Elecampane roots, the roots of Smallage and of Wormwood, of each ℥. 3. Camomil, Melilot, Violets, and Roses, of each three drach. white Lillie roots, Pigeon dung, *Spica Romana*, of each one drach. oyl of Camomil and of Violets, as much as will suffice for to make therewith a plaister; afterwards give him a drink for to cleanse him, decocted of Barly and Figs, or let him use *Mellicraton*, which is Mead.

Of the Lasks or flowing through weakenesse of the Liver. §. 8.

WE have sufficiently written thereof before in the eleventh Chapter, where we have spoken of all manner of sorts of Lasks and bloody Flixes.

Of

Of divers things which be very commodious for all infections of the Liver. §. 9.

HEre before in the third §. is highly commended the water of Venus hair for all diseases of the Liver. For this is also good Mr. Tristrams water, for it doth preserve and cure the Liver from all diseases. Item, take the seed of Endive, of small Endive, and of Lettice water, of Venus hair, and Liver-wort, red and white Saunders, of each one drach. seeds of Melons, of Pompeons, and Gourds, of each one quarter of an ounce, shaven Ivory half a drach. burnt Ivory one drach. roots of Fennel, of Parsly and Smallage, of each half quarter of an ounce, roots of Endive three drachmes, and a little Vinegar, Sugar, ʒ. i. ß.; let them seethe all together in three pints of water unto the half. This is especial good for a stuft Liver, which is caused through heat, and also for the yellow Jaundies.

Many kinds of golden waters and vital waters be also good for this, and especially for cold causes.

Look also in the first part the 12. Chapter, and first §. where you have a very good powder, beginning thus: Take the juyce of Wormwood, &c. mix it with Sugar, and use it ten daies together, it helpeth all maladies of the Milt and Liver, it preserveth also from the yellow Jaundies and dropsie.

Of the thirst, through drought and heat of the Liver. §. 1.

ALthough the thirst be a common drought of the inward members, yet nevertheless it is caused (for the most part) from the Liver, which also dryeth away through the heat, or if they be be burthened with any sickness or Ague, which verily is such an intollerable trouble, that it exceedeth all other, like as may be seen by the wretched people that be set on a wheel, who do more complain of thirst, then of their disjoynting and broken bones; which thirst is thus described.

Thirst is a desire of cooling and moysture, which is quenched with drinking. The learned do also make three kinds of differences of the thirst, the first do they take for the thirst which is gone clean, when one hath lost his thirst, and when he is afraid of drinking.

The second is the diminished thirst, when one drinketh seldom.

The third is the spoyled thirst, like as when any body desireth out of measure any unaccustomed and hurtful drink without measure, to wit, if one would drink puddle water, urine, or such like. This thirst is to be likened unto the strange lust after meat, which is caused through a bad stomach, which hath been spoken of in his place.

The causes whence this unnatural lust ariseth are many, as great labour, long conversing in Sun and about the fire, a strong Ague through drinking of strong wine, through eating of salt and smoke-dryed flesh, of Fish, Cheese, Pepper, Ginger, Cloves, and other Spices; sorrow and anger do also extenuate the body, and increase thirst, the like also do hot venoms cause. Item, if any inward parts be overheated (like as hath been said before in the 3. §.) hereby the thirst is also provoked; and especially the thirst is then great above measure in the disease of the kidneyes, which is called *Diabetes*, and when one goeth overmuch to the stool.

It happeneth also that some that have had great thirst, would tolerate the same without drinking, and are fallen into such thirst which could not afterwards be quenched, and have fallen thereby into *Phthisin*, *Hecticam*, and other consuming sicknesses.

The same signs and differences of all these causes may be demanded of the Patient himself, or the standers by. The inward causes doth every inward part yeild, as the Liver, Heart, Lights, and the Midriffe, sufficiently of it self to understand.

For this thirst are applyed certain common rules, which may be well marked. First, how that if one have a moyst body or stomach, to him is the thirst profitable; for if he refrain the same, then is the moisture of his body thereby consumed. Secondly, if the thirst be by reason that one hath drunken overmuch Wine, then is the thirsty person to endeavour himself to much sleeping, and that will quench thirst. Thirdly, a body is thirsty because he is dry by nature, and then is he to quench his thirst through drinking. Fourthly, healthful persons that have thirst anights, are to be weaned from drinking.

Fiftly,

Fifthly, sickly folks who have thirst anights, are to be weaned from their drinking anights. Sixthly, if so be that one have gotten an unnatural thirst through eating overmuch hot meats, he must quench his thirst by drinking water. Seventhly, the thirst which proceedeth of a hot heart and lights, is to be remedyed by taking in of fresh ayr, or by reason of any cooling Leeks called *Enoch*, and through much watching, for that drinking much water, and sleeping much, cause more harm then good. Eighthly, if the thirst do onely come through drought of the mouth and of the throat, then is he to addict himself to sleep after seasonable drinking, and to forbear take. Ninthly, if any horse do be thirst after much purging, he must not drink too much, lest that the natural digestion be thereby enfeebled, or that the natural heat be therewith dissipated and extinguished. Tenthly, all they that have accustomed to drink much anights, they do in time spoil all the humors of the whole body, whereby they do fall at the last into *Cachexia*, or the Dropsie, if so be that they do remain long alive.

But now as concerning the particular remedies of the thirst. The most of them are discovered in all sicknesses that cause thirst. Nevertheless, we cannot here omit to declare in general all that withstandeth thirst. And we will first begin with the potions.

Julep of Roses and of Violets are much used in all heats. Julep of Roses is made thus: Take one pound of Rose water, half a pound of white Sugar; seethe them together by a gentle fire, and clarifie them with the white of an egg, until they be as thick as a sirup. This Julep quencheth all that is of flegmatick Agues, of the Pleurisie, and also of all kind of thirst. In the same manner is the Julep of Violets to be made, and hath the same operation. It is also good for all rhumes of the breasts, and of the throat, against the cough and the thirst. Item, take fresh well water, or decocted Barly water tempered with Julep of Roses or Violets, and the like also with the juice of Pomegranates. The same doth likewise quench the thirst very much.

These distilled waters following do also quench the thirst very much; *viz.* the water of Endive, of Buglosse, of Sorrel, and such like, wherewith a little Sugar is decocted. It is also said that the Cherry Wine is of a temperate nature, therefore it doth quench the thirst in great heat, it cooleth and moysteneth all the inward parts. Item, Mead doth also quench thirst, like as the same is to be seen in the last part of this book. If so be that you desire also in quenching of the thirst, to loose and make soluble, then take 3. or 4. ounces of Endive water, and with this water draw as much Cassia out of the cane as you think good, and so drink it. It doth quench the thirst marvellous much, like as is also shewed sufficiently in the description of Cassia in the Introduction.

These sirupes following which be here and there described, may also very well be used for great thirsts: as sirupes of Violets, of Vinegar, of Citrons, of sweet and sowr Pomgranates, and especially the laxative sirupe of Roses. For hot Agues you may also use the sirupe of Oranges, of Barberries, of Cherries, of Prunes, and the juice of them all. The same confected, dryed, and all that may be made of them.

There be also many things more ministred against the thirst, as fresh Cucumbers, Gourds and Pompeps, the same being eaten or the juice drunken. For this is also Lettuce good, being eaten with Vinegar and oyl. Item, black Cherries, S. Johns grapes, and Barberries. The confection of Prunes described before in the eleventh Chapter, 20. § is also good and certain for the thirst. Item, Confected Peaches, Conserve of Roses, of Violets, and of water-lillies. A peece of Sugar dipt in water, and suckt in the mouth allayeth also thirst. Unripe Grapes chewed and contained in the mouth do the same. Likewise, some Grapes held long in the mouth, do quench thirst also. Or, if the same be bruised into ones drink; like as is more amply admonished in the beginning of this Book.

Of the yellow Jaundies, a sickness of the Liver. §. 11.

This sickness is called of the Grecians, and of all learned for the most part, *Ictus*, and in Latin *Morbus regius*, *Arquatus*, *Aurigo*, *Suffusio felis*, and of many *Iterica*. This is such a sickness, wherby that the *Cholera* or Gall doth spread it self very yellow over all the body, and appeareth with other spots or stains. Therefore is this first to be noted, that there be three kindes of *Iterici*, or yellow Jaundies, the yellow, green, and the black. The yellow is caused through yellow *Cholera*, the green out of light green *Cholera*, and both proceed from the Liver; but the black is caused through black melancholick blood of some disease of the Milt. Albeit the same may also be caused of the Liver. The causes of these sicknesses are taken to be after sundry, and especially of the yellow and green

Jaundies,

Jaundies, as of the hot ſeaſon, by great labor or great exerciſe, great heat, biting of venemous beaſts, the uſe of much heat, ſweet and fat meats, and inward impoſtumes. All which cauſes do ſo obſtruct the Liver, that ſuch matter (like as behooveth) cannot be conveyed into the follicle of the Gall whereby it is enflamed: which this obſtruction and heat may and doth come to paſſe in the veins and in all parts of the body, whereby the blood is ſpoiled and converted into a green yellow colour. The cauſe of the black *Iſterica* is an obſtruction in the Conduits of the Liver to the Milt, or in the conduits of the milt to the ſtomach, a feebleneſſe of the expulſive or attractive vertue, be it of the milt or the Liver. Item, through the uſe of much melancholick meat. In fine, it may alſo be cauſed through great heat of the whole body which enflameth the blood, or through great cold that doth congeal the blood, and maketh it black.

The firſt two ſigns are abating of the lively colour, yellowneſſe in the white of the eyes, and over the whole body and of the urine, the pulſe is feeble, the Patient thirſty, hee ſeeth appetite, his meats will be bitter, and ready to vomit. Item, if the Patient be be alſo young, cholerick of nature, hath done great labour, and eaten much hot meat, then do they altogether confirm that it is a perfect *Iſteritia*. The black *Iſteritia* is to be known by her black ſpots. The Milt is commonly hard. This ſickneſſe is then ſhort beneath, the urine is brown, ruddy, and a ſlime in the bottome. The ſick perſon is alwaies heavy & fearful without cauſe, like as al melancholick perſons are wont to be. Thus then to ſpeak briefly of this yellow Jaundies; they do alwaies come with heat and with an Ague, or alſo without any of them both, therefore we will ſpeak of the hot Jaundies.

Item firſt of all, if ſo be that there be an Ague with this ſickneſſe, then is the ſick perſon to drink Barly water with the juice of Lettice and of Nightſhade, for it cooleth unnatural heat whereby the yellow Jaundies is cauſed. There be alſo all kind of cooling herbs to be given him to eat, as Endive, Lettice, Sorrel, &c. dreſt with Verjuice or Pomegranat Wine. His drink muſt be well watred, thin wine, or common ſmall beer. Heed muſt alſo be taken at the firſt whether it be not needful to purge the party, and if need require, then is the ſame to be done in this manner enſuing: Take Cuſcuta and Morehound, of each one handful, Endive water twelve ounces, and as much white Rhenish wine; let them ſeethe together until two parts remain, then wring it out and take four ounces of it, temper one ounce of the ſirupe *de Byzantus* with it, you may put Sugar to it if you will, and drink three or four mornings thereof one after another.

Another, which is more forcible: Take Horehound, Cuſcuta, of each two handfuls, Endive water half a pinte, Wine one pinte, let them ſeethe together, and hang two drach. of Rubarb in it, wring it often out, then take four ounces of it, and temper therewith one of theſe ſirupes following, *Syrupum de Byzantiis, de Duabus, Radicibus*, or *Oxymel* one ounce, and uſe them as is before ſaid. For to purge, you may after the ſaid potions uſe theſe cooling medicines: Take common conſerves of Prunes and Caſſie, ana. ℥. 3. confection of *Pſyllio*, ℥. 2. and ℈. 1. *De ſucco Roſarum*, ℥. 1. ß. temper them together with three ounces of the water of Cuſcuta, and one ounce of the hony of Roſes; or take *Hiera Picra* three quarters of an ounce, *Diaphœnicon* one quarter of an ounce, ſirupe of Cicory with Rubarb, ℥. ß. and Endive water as much as you will. The Rubarb is not ordained for this but by good reaſon, becauſe it is forcible at the beginning to take away the yellow Jaundies. For this are all medicines good that be deſcribed not long ago in the 3. §. for the heat of the Liver.

But if the heat after purging will not yet ceaſe, then give the Patient every day one or one and a half the Trochisks *de Camphora*, tempered in one ounce of wine, or the confection *Triaſantalon*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*; but before the foreſaid things be uſed, you muſt firſt uſe theſe pils following: Take Earthworms waſht with wine, or burnt to powder in a pot as much as you pleaſe, and put as much Rubarb unto it or half ſo much, and make pils thereof, give one drach. or one drach. and a half at once, according to the age of the party, mixed with *Oxymel*.

Alſo you may give this Patient of this foreſaid powder one drach. without Rubarb. It is alſo an approved medicine, that 20. or 30. earth-worms be boyled in the water of Sperage, of Smallage, and of Parſly, and take often a ſpoonful of this decoction. Item take of the powder of burnt earth-wormes, roots of Smallage, and of Parſly, of each a like quantity; give thereof to women and young children to each according to his age: it driveth the yellow Jaundies very forcibly through the veins, and in like manner alſo the dropſie. For this you have another in the ſecond part in the third Chapter and 7. Section.

And

And so return to purging, if so be that the pils be more acceptable: then take with Aloe one drachme of four scruples, and use it after the foresaid potions which be good and sure. But if so be that the obstruction of the Liver be not opened by it, then is this medicine following to use: Take syrupe *de Bizantiis* prepared with vinegar one ounce, and a half, water of *Cichorey*, of Harts tongue, and of Cichorie, of each one ounce; drink it with three one after another; or take one ounce and a half of *Oxymel* with water of *Cichorey*, of Cicorie, and of Bugloss of each one ounce three mornings together, and one of the foresaid purgations after it. The *Oxymel* is highly commended for this sickness: The pils following are very forcible for to avoid water; take the juice of wild Cucumbers which is *Elaterium*, and the juice of Swines bread, of each one drachme and a half, *Lapidis* one quarter of an ounce, Aloe one drachme, *Diagredium* one scruple, Pease meal, Cinnamom, *Spica*, *Lignum Aloes*, of each half a scruple: make pils thereof with the juice of Smallage, and give him one drachme at once thereof at the most.

Now for to cleanse the head you are to use these things following which you can get; the juice of wild Cucumbers, and of Swines bread, of garden Cresses, Horehound tempered with womans milk, and drawn up through the nose, and afterwards to lie down upon the back. These things following do cleanse the grosse *Cholera* which remaineth still in the head, and doth take take away all the yellow jaundise with them. For this are very necessary all cooling and preparative potions, with syrup of Endive and Purslain tempered together, and chiefly if any obstruction of the Liver be present; for which the syrup following is also very fit; Take Endive, small Endive, Lettice, Cicorie, Melisse, Harts tongue, and Venus hair, of each one handful, twenty or five and twenty Prunes, seed of Melons, of Pompeons, Cucumbers, of Gourds, roots of Cypresse, of Capers, Dragons roots, of each one drachme, bear them all grosse, and let them seethe together in six and thirty ounces of water even unto the half, afterwards seethe in this decoction four and twenty ounces of Sugar or Hony, and clarify it until there be a syrup of it. Another, Take Endive, Harts tongue, and Cicorie, of each a handful, wilde Endive, and Succorie, of each two handfuls, seeds of Melons, Pompeons, Cucumbers, and Gourds, Spikenard, Wormwood, and the roots of Smallage, of each half an ounce, burnt Iron, red Saunders, of each one drachme and a half, Roses, one quarter of an ounce, white Vinegar three drachmes, Sugar twelve ounces; and then make a syrup of it. Another, Take Endive, Harts tongue, and Venus hair, of each two handfuls, Fennel seed, Parsly seed, and *Cafforee*, of each half an ounce, *Spica nardi*, *Spica Romana*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as you please; make thereof a syrup. For the obstruction of the Liver in the beginning of the 45. there is also a confection which is very fit for this purpose.

Of all drinks which this Patient may drink, there is nothing more meet for this sickness then the Whay of milk, whereof he is to drink every morning three weeks together a good draught at each time; for this Whay doth cleanse the blood, and especially if there be mixed with it the juyce of Fumitory. And the same is also good for all itches and scabs. Item, take the innermost skin of a hens gizard, also a Partridge dryed and beaten to powder; give him the weight of a drachme thereof in wine, or Cicorie water, and let the Patient fast five hours after it. Another, Take the innermost skin of a pullets gizard or crop, and the roots of Avence, of each a like quantity; seethe them in wine the space that you would seethe an egge, and drink thereof morning and evening, and fast an hour upon it. Item, take four ounces of Gentian and Fennel roots five ounces, Smallage roots two ounces, and a half, wash the same very clean, and cut them in pieces; let them seethe all together with sufficient water, afterwards wring them well out through a bag, and then let this decoction boyl until it be as thick as Hony, then give thereof two ounces at each time. This medicine is also especial good for all Phlegmatick Agues wherewith the yellow jaundies be admixed. Item for all dropsies, all pain in the Kidnies, pain of the womb, for all venome, and it is to be given them that have an Ague with any kind of cooling water, and when there is no Ague with a little wine. Some do seethe it also with Sugar the which is best of all.

Moreover there be moreover good to drink for this yellow jaundies, the water of Cicorie, of Fennel, and of wormwood, but the juice of these herbs be much more forcible. These herbs be also decocted together or each apart, and the decoction drunken warm. Item, the yellow seeds of the white Lilly dryed and powdered, and one drachme thereof taken, is an especial thing in this disease. The same vertue hath grated Ivory.

Take

Take earth wormes with great yellow knots, cut off the yellow knots, dry them and powder them, Take of that powder ℥. ß. powder of the inner rind of Barberries ℥. ß. powder of Saffron ℈. ß: mix these together, the dose is ℈. ß. in white wine. Probat. Also purge with rubarb. And take an apple and cut off the top of it, and take out the core and fill it with castle sope, as much as a halle nut and a little Saffron, so bake it in the embers, eat it in the morning fasting, do so three dayes together. Probat. it helps the black Jaundies.

After purging, and the use of all these foresaid things, then may any outward things be used whereby to weare away the yellowness of the body and consume it. For this is also much advised, that all yellow colours are to be fixed before the Patients eyes, for nature doth easier expel the yellowness out of the body. Also, take Endive water and Rose water, of each four ounces, red and white Saunders, of each one drachme temper them, and lay them over the Liver. Item, use the Saunders salve which before in the Chapter in the end of the first ℔. is described.

Or take a spoonful of good Hony, and boyl the same in a little pot of hot water, and stir the same well about, then put as much wheaten flour unto it as you can take up with the fingers, and temper a good deal of Saffron amongst it, yet more alwayes for an old man then for a young man, spread of it upon a cloath and lay it upon the navel, when it is then dry, take a fresh again. And you are to continue this certain dayes together, to wit, when the yellow jaundies be at the chief and highest, but one may not lye longer upon it then upon the other. For Bathing, take wild Thyme, water Cresses, Alochoofe, Juniper rinds, Eldern flours, let this seethe well together, and mak thereof a sweating bathe with hot stones. Item, take Mugwort, Marjoram, wild thyme, Juniper sprigs, of each one handful, chop them small, and let them seethe in two bags, then lay one upon the belly, and another behind upon the reynes, and therewith let the Patient sweat.

Also, this Lee following may be used for the head: Take Betony, Camomil, and Sage, of each one handful, Marjoram, *Spica Romana*, of each half a handful, Sene leaves, three ounces, Stechas two ounces, chop all small, and seethe them together in a good deal of water, and make Lee thereof, it will continue good a whole moneth.

For this hot yellow Jaundies is good all that which penetrateth, clenseth and openeth the Liver, to wit, Sorrel, Endive, Nightshade, winter Cherries, Orage, the juyce of Wormwood, Venus hair, roots of Cicorie and Sperage, Vervin and the water of the same herbs decocted in Well water, and clarified with Hony, or Sugar, and so made into a potion.

And for conclusion of this heat there is good heed to be taken whether the patient be abounding of blood, and hath full veines, and also hath not been let blood a long time, and so there bee nothing which hindreth the same, then is the Liver vein to be opened, and to let it bleed according to his ability. But if the yellow Jaundies be without heat and without Ague, then is it a signe that it is caused of *Cholera* and *Phlegma* together, you are first to give to this sick person preparatives, with *Syrupo Acetoso cum epithimo*, or *de Byzantijs*. He is also to drink water of *Cardous Benedictus* with a little Saffron, and afterwards purge with these things following or such like: Take *Aloe* one drachme, *Diagridii* five graines, *Agaricus* two scruples, dryed juyce of Agrimony one scruple, then make it into pils with the juyce of Endive, or use in the stead of it one drachme of the pils of Rubarb.

These pils following are not to purge but to open obstructions, Sulphur vive one drachme, the juyce of swines bread half a scruple, *Euphorbium* five grains, the juyce of Smallage half a drachme, make pils thereof, and give him half a drachme of it at once. When he hath purged, then let him take *Trochisces de Lacca*, with the decoction of Fennel, Parsly roots, of Smallage, and such like. For this is also good *Trochisces de Rhabarbaro*, Radish water, and Agrimony. Item, the juyce of Swines bread made to a syrup with Sugar which is found to be especial good, and it moveth sweat. In like manner he meet for this the great Treacle *Diatessaron*, and Mithridate, sometimes one drachme, (taking more or lesse thereof) according to the importance of the case. The simples which are meet for the yellow Jaundies (when there is neither heat nor Ague with it) be Mather (Alone take a drachme thereof every day.) Item, Gentian roots of Smallage, of Pennyroyall, *Dipsacus*, Rosemary, Cenedry, Agrimony, Annis, Fennel, Licorice, *Rapontica*, of *Costus*, *Aristology*, Alehoofe, and Piony. The compounded things be conserves of Eyebright, of Fumitory, of Elder flours, Piony and Rosemary, the herb wines, are the wine

of Betony and Gillyflowers, of Harts tongue, of Tamarisk, of *Asarabacca*, and of Wormwood. The *Oxymel* alone openeth all obstructions. But if so be that the yellow Jaundies, do remain long in the eyes, then the sick person is to smell often unto sharp Vinegar; for it provoketh the expulsive power whereby the braynes may be unburthened of all their superfluous humors, or receive the vapor into your eyes of the decoction of Hyssop, Marjoram, Mayden hair, Camomil, Dill, of all of them or which you please. You may also wash the face with it. And it is very good to smell unto Rose water of Rose Vinegar. Item, you may sometimes drop into their eyes one or two drops of the juice of Citrons, of Limons, or of Oranges. But if these juyces be too sharp, then mix them with the water of Cuscuta, which water alone is very effectual in this matter. Also for the yellow Jaundies, whether the same proceed of heat or cold, neesing is highly recommended, especially if the same can be procured and effected with the juyce of Horehound. Also all such sick persons must wash themselves with water wherein Camomil is decocted, and chiefly at the beginning of the yellow jaundies. The face is often to be washt with Rose water, to the end that the yellownesse might the lesse infect the eyes.

As much as concerneth the black jaundies, the same is to be cured with the self same things wherewith all the maladies of the mil are to be cured, whereof shall be spoken hereafter; to wit, with clisters, letting of blood, and other meanes more which may there also be read.

Of the Dropsie in general. §. 12.

THe Dropsie is a sickneesse which is caused of a cold humor that doth penetrate throughout all the members, in such manner that they thereby are all puffed up and swollen. Or, the dropsie is an error of the nutritive vertue throughout the whole body; which error is provoked by those causes which do hinder the natural concoction of the Liver.

The common signes and right embassadors of the Dropsie are first of all these following; swelling or puffing up of the feete and the legs, afterwards of the face (in men, of the role) and a little over all the whole body. Secondly, the alteration of the colour of the body into a white colour. Thirdly, when all the humors in the whole body be corrupted, the which the Grecians do call *Cacochymian*. Fourthly, by great thirst. Fifthly, lack of appetite through continual desire of drink. Sixtly, retention of stooles, of sweat, of vomiting, of the flowers or termes in women, and such like. Seventhly, small store of urin. Eightly, that these sick folkes are very slow and unhandsome for all workes. Moreover it then, (like as it is wont to happen) that there be any ulcers or sores with it; they be the same by reason of the corrupted humors which be in this place very hardly to be healed. And although this sickneesse be very hard and dangerous to be cured; yet nevertheless must the sick person not therefore be utterly discouraged. In like manner also the Physitian is through all possible meanes to indeavour himself to withstand this sickneesse. The total summe for to rid this sickneesse dependeth on three points; to wit, the mollification of the indurate Tumors which be in the bowels and other places. Or the wonderfull manner of things for to expel the humors. Lastly, he must be diligent to drive out the same by going to stoole, and chiefly through the urin. So that the principal meanes consist in this, that one do drink but little, do live sobetly and orderly, use reasonable exercise, that one do sweat much, purge often, and use Clisters; for if all this be not diligently observed, then is there not much good to be expected. For notwithstanding that all these things be adhibited and permitted, yet be there nevertheless very few helped of it. These common rules alwayes take place in all sorts of dropsies.

The learned do make three Species of Dropsies, *Anasarca*, also *Hyposarca* (albeit some do make difference between them, and so make four kinds of Dropsies) *Ascites*, and *Tympanites*, or *Tympanites*, of which we will severally write hereafter. But first we will then briefly declare thus much.

When as any one is thought to have gotten the dropsie, or that the same is yet in the beginning, for it, is the conserves of Fumitory highly commended; for it cleanseth the blood. For this is also good the golden water which is described in the eight part. The conserve of Eyebright doth open much all obstructions. For this is also very meet all that is ordained here before for the obstruction of the Lights and Liver.

Of the Dropſie Anaſarca. §. 12.

THis ſpecies of dropſie doth *Galen* alſo call *Leucophlegmatia Hydrops*, as a white watriſh dropſie, and is ſuch a dropſie wherein the water which lyeth betweene the skin and the fleſh is diſperſed through the whole body, through each member and in the face, and maketh them ſwell; ſo that the belly and navil do not ſwell alone; in which ſwelling if that it be preſſed with the finger, then doth the dent or pit remain long after in it. The privie members do ſwell, alſo a watriſh ſcouring or laske. The pulſes will be ſlow and the heat longſome and leiſurely.

The cauſes of it are bad digeſtion; ſo that all the meat and drink is at the leaſt the half part turned into a phlegmatick matter, whereby the ſame cannot as behooveth be aſſimilated to the other parts. When as then theſe foreſaid ſigns be perceived in the face and in the privities, then may the ſickneſſe be taken well to be *Anaſarca*, the which alſo of all other dropſies is eaſieſt to be cured, becauſe that it divideth it ſelf into all the parts of the body, and for that cauſe may be the eaſier overcome by nature.

For this are theſe remedies enſuing to be uſed. Firſt, if it be a Woman, and that the ſame ſickneſſe is fallen upon her, and cauſed through retention and let of her termes, or obſtructions of the Hemorrhoides; then is care to be had through all meanes to help and to provoke them. And in caſe that the ſame cannot be compaſſed and effected, then is the *Saphena* or milt vein to be opened; and likewiſe to ſet boxing cups on the thighes and legs.

But for all other ſpecies of Dropſies letting of blood is very hurtful, for that they have but little blood, yet very much moyſture; whereby the goodblood being drawn out, the water will be left behind.

For this is to be given to the Patient this ſyrup following for to open him: like as is taught in the 4. §. of the diſeaſes of the Liver.

Item, *Trochiſci de Lacca*, are eſpecially good for this; and afterwards he muſt every week be purged with pils of Rubarb.

Or take theſe pils enſuing: *Agregative* two ſcruples, *Animovini* one ſcruple, and make ſeven pils of it with *Oxymel*. The pils, *de Hiera de Aloe, de Mezereo, Euphorbij, Agarico*, are altogether meet for this uſe. It is alſo admoniſhed before to uſe reaſonable exerciſe, hunger and thirſt. More waking than ſleeping is very much commodious. Item, water bathes (if one can come to them) are alſo very good for this, which be by nature warme; or in the ſtead of them to bathe in dry baths, and then to ſweat well. Such perſons muſt alſo in warme ſeaſons, and when the wind is down, lye with their bellies towards the heat of the Sun, and let the ſame be well rubbed. Some do adviſe alſo that the armes and the legs, muſt be well rubbed.

This confection following is very fit to purge and expell water: Take Turbith half an ounce, *Hermodactili* one ounce, peeled wild Saffron ſeeds three quarters of an ounce, Ginger, Cinamom and Annis, of each one ſcruple. Violets, Cuſcuta, Sorrel ſeed, of each one drachme, hony of Roſes four ounces. Sugar two ounces; ſeeth the hony and the ſugar with a little of the water of Fumitory until you may ſcum it; when it is ſodden enough, then mix the reſt with it unto a Confection. Give thereof half an ounce at once.

Another.

TAke one drachme of Rubarb, Annis, wild yellow Rapeſeed, and Indy *Spica*, of each a ſcruple, Licorice one drachme, *Aſarabacca* half a drach. Conſerve of Marjoram one ounce, Conſerve of Roſes three ounces, *Miva cydoniorum* and *Oxymel*, as much as you will, for to make a Confection. This confection ſtrengtheneth and expelleth much the water.

Yet another. Take Elecampane roots, Ireos and Gentian, of each one drach. Ireos bulbes one ounce, ſyrup of Horehound one ounce and a half, then make a confection thereof. Take thereof as often as you pleaſe: it ſtrengheneth, doth quench thirſt and lengthen the breath.

The antient Phyſitians do adviſe much for to vomit, to wit, at the firſt in the beginning of the ſickneſſe whilſt that the Patient is in the ſtate of ſtrength, but not otherwiſe.

Some doe write, that dryed Hedghogs fleſh doth marvelously eaſe in this ſickneſſe,

if

take of the same one quarter of an ounce in wine. The like is also reported of the Wolfes Liver, if the same be taken with Rubarb and *Agaricus*, with water wherein Worm-wood is decocted.

Of the Dropsie Ascites. §. 14.

This Dropsie some do call *Asticus*, and *Abigas*. In this Dropsie the belly doth one-swell and the legs, and contrarily the upper parts of the body do dry away. Name is given to this species of Dropsies, of a hide wherein men do carry Wine or other signs this sickness is a great trouble in the belly, when one clappeth or upon it, he doth hear a rumbling or a noyse of water which is forcibly stirred the which also happeneth if the sick person do turn himself from the one side to the body is not so swollen throughout like as in the foresaid Dropsie, neither remain therein any dents or pits if one presse therein with the finger. The na- not stand so puffed up as in the *Tympanite*, the pulse is feeble, swift and small. cause of this Dropsie is feebleness of the Liver, which hath not a sanguification coction, and altereth all her moisture into water.

infection of the Liver may be caused as well of heat as of cold: also of the wa- is ingendred in the liver, that falleth down afterwards into the lower parts and ness of the belly.

this Dropsie do come through hot causes, after any pain of the Liver, after an Ague, swelling up the belly beneath the navel even to the very hip; also if one turn the sick about, one heareth the water; he hath an intollerable thirst, avoideth but little which is fiery red, with some clots as it were with small stones: then is there great fever, & but smal hope of life to be had. For if so be that one give to the patient medicines to cool the heat, then is the liver enfeebled; the water and wind augmented: if warm and drying things be used for it, then doth the heat and excessive thirst in- not to leave this sick person utterly comfortless, and to please his friends, you for the lengthening of his life moderate cold and warm things, like as is this sirup ing: Take Endive four handfuls, Maiden hair and Harts tongue, of each one hand- nel seed, Parsly seed, and *Cuscuta*, of each half an ounce, *Spica Nardi*, *Spica Roma-* ch one quarter of an ounce, and Sugar six ounces, make a clarified sirup of it. sort may also this cooling confection following be used, as *Diarrhodon*, *Diales- coma*, *Diatrisantalon*, and *Aromaticum Rosatum*, and other such like cooling things

the Wolfes Liver (like as herebefore for *Anasarca* is said) is very highly commend- this, if the same be given with Endive water, for it should (even as many think) the liver to her right state.

for to cool the heat of the Liver may this plaister following be made and applied Take the juice of Endive, of small indive, of Agrimony, of Liverwort, of each ces, Barly meal as much as will suffice to make a plaister withal.

peneth also very often that in this *Ascite* the patient is hard bound in body, who known of sufficient strength, then is he to be often purged (as is already said) ch may be effected through sundry means, as through Pils, Potions, and through , whereof therebe many herebefore described for the obstruction of the liver, also very requisite for this purpose, and amongst the rest these following may also First, let pils be made with Rubarb, which be acuated with a little *Mezereo*, and unto him once a week.

the pils of *Mezereon*, are very good for this use, but they must be taken in hand umspectly: for that the *Mezereon* is is marvellous sharpe, as herebefore in the tion you may well perceive.

Take of the foresaid *Mezereon* leaves which have been steeped two dayes and hts before in the juice of Quinces and Vinegar, and dried again, half a dracm make thereof: it expelleth water wonderfully.

he have you before in the 4. §. good pils in the obstruction of the Liver, begin- Take *Spica*, &c. The juice of wild Cucumbers, or *Elaterium* is also good for this: be given with great circumspection; for there is no man so strong that may

take above half a scruple. Our Physitians do seldom take above four grains at once in a purgation, as is before spoken of in the Introduction.

Item, take clouted Goats milk three ounces, the juice of blew Flower-deluce half an ounce; seethe it on a small fire unto the half or more; strain it and temper it in a little Sugar, and so take it. Or take the juice of blew Flower-deluce which is very clear one ounce, drink it with some Sugar, or with some Goats milk once in every 4. daies: and the days between both to drink a good draught of Beer decocted with Wormwood or Wormwood powder with 2. ounces of Sugar cast into sugar plates, and eat thereof. Item, they have an herb called *Saldanella*, the juice whereof is much used for the Dropsie: also the water and powder of the herb: or in stead thereof may be used for the dropsie of the said blew Flower-deluce for that *Saldanella*, which groweth near the sea and all salt places, is given with wine wherein *Rapontica* with a little Wormwood is decocted. What force Wormwood hath in this disease is sufficiently shewed in the end of the 9. Book. Also what vertue the wild Saffron seed hath for the Dropsie, look for the same in the Introduction; the like also of the seeds of *Manus Christi*.

A pouder to purge withal: Take beaten Irees, three drach. Ginger, ℈. 2. Annis, Anise seed, ana. ℈. 1. white sugar Candy, ℥. 1. Turbith one quarter of an ounce, *Diagredium*, G. 6. take one drach. thereof; it expelleth the water and the going to the stool very vehemently. But if there be any heat withal, then are these mild purgations to be used: Take the flowers of Burrage, Violets, Fumitory, ana. ℥. ß. Licorice, Jujubes, Currans, and Wormwood, of each one quarter of an ounce, 8. or 10. Prunes, *Spica nardi*, ℈. 1. seethe them all in whay of Goats milk, and steep therein half an ounce of the shells of yellow Mirobalanes for a potion.

Item, take 6. ounces of the whay of Goats milk, and fresh roots of the Flower-deluce which be well cleansed from their shels half an ounce, seeth the same until two parts remain, then temper them together for a purgation.

Clisters, as is before discoursed are also marvellous good for all such Dropsies, whereof certain do follow. Take *Ebulus*, Cammomil, and S. Johns wort, of each one handful: Let them seethe sufficiently in water; then take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, Sallad Oyl 3 spoonfuls, half an ounce of *Hiera Pudii*, or *Hiera Picra*, Sale one drach. temper them then together. Item, take the broth of Tripes, or any other fresh broth, Peas pottage, or any other that one hath ready in the stead of common water, and in stead of *Hiera*, take prepared Caslie for Clisters.

This following doth loose more: Take Mallows, Hollihocks, Beets, Cammomil, and the herb Mercury, of each one handful: seethe it in water or in any of the forsaid brothes, and take thereof 12. or 16. ounces, Salt, Oyl, *Hiera* or Caslie, *Hiera Picra*, *Confectio Hamech*, *Medicina Laxativa*, ana. ℥. ß. temper them together, and minister this Clister very warm. This following draweth from the head: Take Rosemary, Betony, Cammomil, and S. Johns wort, of each one handful, Polipody, wild Saffron seed grosse beaten, ana. ℥. ß. and seethe them well. This being done, take as much broth and do as is before: there may also be used in stead of common oyl, the oyl of Linseed.

If there be great griping of the belly with it, then may also be used with the forsaid herbs, Annis, Fennel, Caraway, all together, or those that one can get: Take the weight of an ounce thereof beaten together gross.

Clisters are not only good for the Dropsie, but also against all griping of the belly, against the gravel, against the obstructions, against the yellow Jaundies, shooving, and such like.

But in case that with this Dropsie there be any scouring or red flix: then are Trochisks to be given to the Patient of Barberries with Vinegar: for these Trochisks do cool, supple, and strengthen the liver, and stay the scouring. The same do also *Trochisci de Spodio*, *de Sandalis*, and the juice of Quinces, and all that is made thereof. Item, the Conserve and confected roots of Cicorie, by reason that they have a binding & cooling operation.

But if so be that the *dysenteries* be without an Ague, and there be no redness seen in the water, then may these pils following be given.

Take prepared leaves of *Mezereon* and *Sagapenum*, of each one scruple, make thereof pils with the juice of Wormwood, but give no more at once then the fourth part only, for they are rough and purge very forcibly.

Take two Gallons of strong wort, Guaiacum wood powdered, ℔. 1. boyl them until

if diſſolved ſtrain it and put yeaſt unto it, drink only of ſuch drink three weeks, and take two Gallons of Ale, Elecampane roots, M. 2. Wormwood, Rue, Savine, Ana. M. 1. Annis ſeeds powdered one pound, Licoras bruſed one pound, Gold powdered, two drachmes, Honey a pint, ſeethe these to half, drink this at an houre.

For the ſame with the Dropſie.

TAke Butter, Ale, and Pepper, ſeethe them and annoint the legs therewith.

Another; Take Barly meal, Cypres roots, dryed Sheeps dung, Borace and Nitre, take the lights of one or two Oxen, perboyl them, and apply them hot being cut ly. This plaiſter hath great force to exſiccate and dry the water. Item, Oxe dung which is dryed in an oven, pound it to powder, and make therof a mixture. Prob.

Or take of the juice of the roots of Ireos, as much as an egg shell full, and it cures any kind of Dropſie.

Another; Take fat Figs three ounces, Pigeons dung half an ounce, Nitre, Salt, of each one dram, pound all these to be reduced into a plaiſter.

Or take of the juice of Ireos roots, juice of Morel one pound, skum it and sweeten it, it cures any Dropſie that is curable.

When you may have the juices every day, then take the juice of Ireos one day, and the next day the juice of Morel; the Ireos purgeth water by ſiege, and the Morel purgeth water by urine.

Or all other salves is that of Turpe much commended, which is known as well as any, for it is nere hand to the nature of Swines bread which is not to common. For a common conjunction of the oyl of Camomil and of Rue tempered together is very commodious.

Or ſeethe the roots of elder and drink it, this is a notable medicine.

What things do move Urine.

In the beginning of the deſcription of the Dropſie, it is (amongſt other things) thus declared, that the chiefeſt mean for to cure this ſickneſſe, is to expel urine, and to avoid the ſame in great abundance, the which may be atcheived through these means following: Take Rue, S. Johns wort, Penniroyal, Sage, Morjoram gentle, Wormwood, Savine, Annis, Fennel, and Elecampane roots, of each one quarter of or an ounce, ſeethe them together in a quart of Wine, but not too long; then drink thereof in the morning three ounces, and as much more in the evening. Item, take Garlick and S. Johns wort, of each one handful, ſeethe them together in a pint of Wine until a third part be decocted; afterwards ſtrain it through, and when you pleaſe drink a little thereof, for it dryeth up the water, and expelleth the reſt through the urine.

Item, take whay of Goats milk four ounces, ſeethe 3. drach. of *Spica nardi* in it unto two ounces, and give it him to drink faſting. Or take one ounce of the juice of Nep. ſeethe in Wine wherein the flowers of Rolemary and the herb be decocted, is very good for this. Item, the Vinegar of Squils is alſo very good.

Theriſtri de Lacca, or *Crocoma*, one quarter of a ounce given at one time with any of the foreſaid juices, be eſpecial good for this.

Rubarb, *Aſarabacca*, *Diptamie*, Cinamom, Agrimony, Marjoram gentle, Rue, Mirrhe, all together, or each alone ſteeped in wine, are very fit for the Dropſie, or any other humidity.

In the deſcription of the yellow Jaundiſe in the eleventh §. haye you alſo amongſt other potions, a very good potion fit for this, beginning: Take Gentian &c.

These things following do alſo expel urine, namely, *Hermodactili*, Indy *Spica*, Licoriee, Cinamom, Fennel, Betony, Vinegar, Parſley roots, Sage, and Rolemary, ſeeth any of these things in Wine, and in three or four ounces of the ſame Wine diſſolve one drach. of the *Theriſtri de Lacca*, but above all other these here be very commodious: Item, the roots of Parſly, Fennel, Elecampane roots, *Aſarabacca*, pownded all together, or each one taking one drach: thereof, or wine drunk wherein the ſame hath been a while decocted. The roots of great Fern boyled in Wine and drunk, expel urine very much. Of herb wines are commended above all other things for the Dropſie, to wit, wine of Gilloflowers, roots of Marjoram gentle, Betony, *Aſarabacca*, and of Hyſſop, but all medled wines are contrary to this diſeaſe.

Outwardly are ſundry plaiſters uſed, and it is reported that they do bring four kinds of commodities: firſt, they do ſupple, dry, expel wind, and do ſtrengthen the belly and all the intrails, like as these following are: Take Coloquint, Hollihock ſeeds, *Diagridium*, Myrrhe, roots of Mallows and *Bdellium*, of each one drachme and a half, Ireos three drachmes, ſeeds of Mallows, and Cucumbers, Cardamom and *Euphorbium* of each

each three drachmes. *Rasis, Sal gemmæ* of each one quarter of an ounce, Goose grease, Duckes greaſe, Calves, and Hogs ſuet, as much as is needfull for to make a plaiſter of a ſalve, lay this plaiſter upon the belly, it doth ſupple much. The plaiſter of Bayberries is alſo ſpecial good for the Dropſie, and moreover much mightyer for it, if the ſame be tempered with Goats dung, or Cow dung.

If the privities be much ſwollen, then make this plaiſter following; Take Annis, Fennell, and Comin, beaten ſmall together, of each one ounce and a half, Bean meal, *Ebulus*, the juyce of Eldern leaves, and good wine as much as will ſuffice, lay it upon the belly, and over the privities.

Another; Take Barly meal, Cypres roots, dryed Sheeps dung, Borace and *Relus* of each a like quantity, beat them togather, make a plaiſter thereof and apply it to the belly. This plaiſter hath great force to exſiccate and dry the water. Item, take Cow dung or Goats dung, and temper them with the urine of a man child unto a plaiſter. Or take Oxe dung which is dryed in an oven, pownd it to powder, and make thereof a plaiſter with wine, and then lay it on the belly.

Another; Take fat Figs three ounces, Pigeons dung half an ounce, Maſtick and Spikenard of each half a drachme, pownd all that is to be pounded, and then make it to a plaiſter, with Goats piſſe.

Of all other ſalves is that of *Agrippa* much commended, which is known at all Apothecaries, for it is marvelous good for the dropſie. There is alſo another made, that is *Anthanita*, of Swines bread which is not ſo common. For a common conjunction the oyl of Camomil and of Rue tempered together is very commodious.

But it is alſo to be noted, that if ſo be that the Dropſie do come out of any cold occaſion, that then this foreſaid plaiſter is to be laid upon the whole belly, and the cooling things upon the Liver.

Sweating is very good for all Dropſies.

IT is ſhewed, that among other revelations and expulſions of ſuperfluous moyſture of mans body, ſweating is accounted one; therefore it is very needfull to write ſomewhat thereof, and how that the ſweat eſpecially for Dropſies is moved.

We have alſo written in another place of a dry ſweat bath, the which for the difference thereof we will rehearſe again.

Take a flat tub, turn the ſame upſide downe over a hot harth, and make under the tub a ſmall fire of Eldern wood, or Juniper wood without ſmoke until it be through warm. When it is then hot, ſet hoopes about it that it may be covered cloſe, then ſet the Patient in the ſame tub covered every where very cloſe, yet ſo that his head be without. Afterwards he is to rub him well, to the end he may ſweat well: dry away the ſweat and let him ſit in it as long as he can abide it. Item, take *Ebulus*, Bean ſtraw, of each a like quantity, ſeethe them together, and make thereof a ſweating bath with hot ſtones, as is accuſtomed. It is alſo good to drink a drachme of the powder of Bayberries with wine, and chiefly after the ſweating. Conſerve of Eldern (taken faſting before ſweating) after purging, cauſeth abundant ſweat, and doth expel the fountain or beginning of the Dropſie.

This following ſhould be marvelous availeable for the dropſie through ſweating; Take of the middlemoſt green rinde of the Elder eight good handfuls, *Cardus Benedictus* ſix handfuls, Roſemary three handfuls, the uppermoſt ſprigs of Elder three handfuls, chop all theſe ſmall together, then put them into a glaſſe, and powr upon it two quarts of white wine; then ſtop it very faſt, and ſo ſet it the ſpace of fourteen daies in horſe dung, and afterwards diſtil it in ſeething water, whereof give the patient one ſpoonful twice a day. But at the firſt time give him very little of it; and if he can abide it, then give him more. This hath been tryed in a thick fat woman: that ſhe muſt be laid upon a leather bed, that the ſweat through this medicine hath run ſo extreamly from her, that it muſt be laden up with diſhes.

The great Treacle *Diateſſaron*, and Mithridate, one drachme, or a drachme and a half taken with wine, or any of the foreſaid waters do vehemently expel ſweat. In like manner is very commodious for this all that is ſet down for the yellow Jaundiſe, for provoking urine, and expelling of gravel.

Certain famous antient Phyſitians do adviſe, that unto them that have the Dropſie, firſt Treacle be given, and that thereupon they ſhould be made ſweat upon a board, in

in a warm Oven, having their head out. But I cannot much approve the ſame: The like groſs means, like as to bury the ſick perſon warm in the ſaid and other things more, there be of many men many deſcribed. But I will not rehearſe them all, becauſe I have declared ſome that be more neceſſary and tollerable.

Of the Dropſie Tympanites. §. 16.

THis *Tympania* or *Tympanites*, is alſo properly called *Hydrops*, which is a Dropſie; becauſe that it is rather cauſed of winde then of water, and hath therefore her name, for that the belly as in other Dropſies, is here alſo puffed up higher; the Navel is thruſt forth on high: and becauſe all other members do conſume and wax very lean: yea for that the belly is hard ſwollen, that one clapping or knocking upon it, it giveth a clear and hollow ſound.

In theſe ſickneſſes the Patient ought not to eat at any hand any green herbs, nor yet any thing elſe which maketh or ingendreth winde, as Spinage, Beets, Coleworts, new fruits, Peaſe, Beans, Turneps, boyled Rice, or any ſuch like. He muſt alſo beware of milk, Cheeſe, Cheſtnuts, unleavened bread, and Muſt. He muſt alſo eſchue all cold, and keep himſelf alwaies warm, and to ſweat if it be poſſible, even as we have ſaid before. And the belly muſt be daily well warmed with warm Panick or Millet wherewith is mixt a little Salt: for this cauſeth the wind to break away. In like manner ſhall boxing cups alſo be ſet upon it unpickt.

All theſe things following are good for him: to wit, the Confection *Diacymininum* or *de Baccis Lauri* uſed often, and other more that be written hereafter for the griping of the belly.

But above all and for all Dropſies, the prepared Wolfes Liver is very much commended, be it powdered or eaten otherwiſe amongſt other meat: for it hath an excellent and privy vertue to expel the Dropſie.

Item, theſe things following may be uſed for all Dropſies, if there be no heat with it, as Conſerve of Eldern leaves of Betony, Gilloflowers, and of Roſemary, Fennel, Annis, Cumin, and all other ſuch like which do expel wind with moderate exerciſe. To ſuffer hunger and thirſt, and much watching are alſo good for this.

Theſe Suppoſitories alſo following are very meet for this purpoſe: Take *Sal gemma* Rue, Bevercod, *Euphorbium*, and Nettle ſeed, of each one drach. decocted Hony about three ounces, and make thereof Suppoſitories. Theſe following be not ſo ſtrong: Take Cumin, *Boreas*, Rue ſeed, of each a like quantity, Hony as much as is needful for to make Suppoſitories. Alſo let the belly be rubbed with rough linnen until it be red. And when the wind doth not blow, let the ſun ſhine upon it.

This plaiſter following is marvellous good for this: Take dryed Goats dung twelve ounces, roots of wild Cucumbers, and roots of *Ebulus*, of each two ounces, Barly meal 12. ounces, ſteeled Vinegar four ounces; make a plaiſter thereof, boyled well with ſharp Lee: this plaiſter conſumeth all windy matter, openeth the pores, and draweth all wind out of the body if it be laid warm thereon. The belly is alſo to be annointed with oyles which be of a hot nature: to wit, with oyl of Dill, oyl of Rue, of Coſtus and of Bayberries.

Of Cliſters we have ſpoken before: but for this are ſuch chiefly to be uſed as do expel the winde, as this following is: Take Ireos, Hyſſope, Smallage, Rue, Bearfoot, of each one handful, Annis, Fennel, Ameos, Bayberries, ana. ℥. ß. let them ſeethe well. Take afterwards of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, if the patient be meetly ſtrong: then put unto it of charified Hony, and oyl of Rue, ana. ℥. 1. ß. and ſtone Salt, ℥. 1. There may alſo *Hiera Picra* be put unto it; for the ſame is marvellous good for to drive out all bad humors and to leave the good.

Here do now follow certain Sirupes more which are to be uſed for al Dropſies, like as the common ſirupe of *Eupatorio*, which is good for all cold diſeaſes and obſtructions of the Liver, and therefore is good for the Dropſie: it extenuateth all tough and groſſe humors, it comforteth the Liver, it expelleth water, and hindreth all ſwellings of the inward parts.

In Italy is this enſuing ſirupe of Ireos much uſed: Take green roots of Ireos four and twenty ounces; cut them in pieces, ſteep them the ſpace of three daies in as much Well water as will cover them: ſtir them about twice a day, but that they may be covered

under the water; afterwards strain the water from them, and pour other water upon them, as before; keep the first water in a clean pot, and do the second time as you did at the first; then temper both these waters together, or seethe each alone with a little Sugar. Afterwards mix these things following with it; to wit, Scabious, and Maidenhair, of each one handful, Sperage roots Fennel roots, Ireos roots, of each half a handful, peeled Melon seed, Gourd seeds, Cucumber seeds, and peeled Pompeon seeds, seeds of Purslain, of Cicory, of Endive, and of Lettice, of each one quarter of an ounce, Fennel, Annis, Sperage seed, and Smallage seed, ana. ℥ ß. Millet and winter Cherries, ana. ℥ 3. for Dates and Figs, of each six, Licorice, Madder, ana. ℥ ß. let them seethe all together unto the half, and afterwards seethe the decoction with sufficient Sugar unto a sirupe. Some do give this sirupe a pleasant taste with Cinamon. Other do steep therein one quarter of an ounce of Rubarbe against the obstruction and debility of the liver.

The Italian Physitians do give thereof, when then will prepare any bad humor, not above one ounce at the first, and afterwards a little more, until they be wholly purged with it. It is also to be noted, that when the sirupe waxeth old, it loseth the purging vertue. Also we will now speak of the juice of the blew Flower-delure; which is given alone, it annoyeth the stomach, and causeth the red or bloody flix. Further, for this sickness is to be used the Sirupes *de Radicibus, de Absynthio, Capillis Veneris, de Buglossa*, and such like more.

When it appeareth that the swelling of the belly, of the legs, and of the privities doth decrease (be it in whatsoever Dropsie it will) then boyl *Ebulus* with the root and herb, and bathe or foment therewith the swoln places, or wash it with common Lee which is somewhat salted.

Other do advise this following; Take Marjoram, Wormwood, field Mints, Parietary, the roots and leaves of *Ebulus*, Marjoram gentle, Cammomil, and Maidenhair, all together or which you will; seethe them in Wine or Lee, and therewith bath the members, but alwaies after purging, for otherwise it is not requisite. Mark also, that for all sorts or kinds of Dropsies, the remedies are often to be altered, taking now one sort, and another time another sort: and that for this is alwaies a good order of dyet, as we shall here briefly note, and set forth.

The order of Dyet.

WE have heretofore sufficiently shewed that sobriety is good and needful for all Dropsies. It is therefore required, that one do eat but once a day. Partridges are good for him, Turtle Doves, and other young Pigeons, Kids, rostment, Pullets, Fowls drest with Verjuice, and the juice of Lemons, Barly or Spelt bread which is raised and well baked, are also good for him. He may also eat sometimes Endive, Sorrel and Cicory, with Vinegar, or a Salad with Sorrel and Parsley.

And for a conclusion, we are to say somewhat more for opening the skin in this Dropsie, thereby to let out the water. The which the learned do permit at the last, when the Patient hath his legs and privities full of water, that the same be then opened with a Lancet, thereby to let out the water, but not much at once. But in truth this is a slender help, and feebleth the sick more then it doth strengthen: for inwardly as much water hath a course unto it as may be letten out.

Other do open the legs with *Cauteriides*. The third sort do canterise the belly two or three fingers broad beneath the Navel, so that there as much as may be they do draw over and open the skin, and that chiefly in *Ascite*, where it ought most to be used. We will also note at this present, that because oftentimes before the hot *Euphorbium* hath been remembred, the same is not to be used but in the greatest extremity, even as his nature and operation are at large described in the Introduction.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the Gall.

Within the middeſt of the Liver is a bladder eſtabliſhed by nature, wherein is kept and gathered all bitter and ſharp humors which are ſeparated from the blood: which humors the Grecians do call *Cholera*, the Latiniſts *Bilem*, and we call, the Gall. The nature of this humor is deſcribed after three kinds of waies: to wit, light green *Cholera*, yellow *Cholera*, and laſtly, black *Cholera*, like as before is ſufficiently ſhewed. This black choler (by reaſon of her colour) is alſo called of the Grecians *Melancholia*, and is cold, dry, ſharp, and heavy, and alſo none other then dregs, and yeaſt of the groſſe blood: for it is nothing elſe but a yellow Cholera, that is, *Oxymel* burnt, whereby the yellow and green Cholera are eaſily altered into black Cholera; how this black Cholera doth make men mad and raging, in the firſt part, in the 12. Chap. and 8. §. is ſufficiently declared, and alſo ſhall be taught hereafter.

It happeneth either through extremity of heat or cold, that the black Cholera appeareth rather in the winter, and the yellow Cholera in Summer time. For when as the conduits which do carry thoſe ſuperfluities into the Gall are obſtructed, then is the yellow Cholera diſperſed through the whole body, with the reſt of the blood, which cauſeth the yellow Jaundies; and otherwhiles, by reaſon of their ſharpneſſe and heat, a certain Ague. Or if it get wholy the upper hand, then doth it cauſe many kinds of ill and ſharp exulcerations, whereof we are to write more at large in other places.

Thus for to remedy this *Cholera*, and the foreſaid Ague thereby, is this general rule prescribed by *Galen*.

At the firſt it happeneth otherwhiles, that the Gall doth ſend her ſuperfluity to the ſtomach, whereby the digeſtion is hindred and ſpoiled, and the Patient getteth great infirmity: for this, there is no fitter mean to exonerate him thereof than by vomiting, and that chiefly when one is faſting.

Contrariwiſe is the *Melancholia*, which through her heavineſſe deſcendeth downwards, to be purged through the ſtool, which may be moſt commodiouſly effected through Cliſters, afterwards through ſweating, and through the urine.

And how this ought to be put in practiſe, is ſufficiently declared before in the Dropſie, and yellow Jaundies. In like manner it is eſpecial good to bathe in ſweet water, for thereby will both the ſaid cholerick humors be moyſtned and cooled, if it be done in due time. This Patient is alſo to forbear Wine, even till the declination of the ſickneſſe.

And when the ſickneſſe beginneth to decline, then is he to uſe ſmall, watered, and but a little wine. All meats that moiſten and cool are good for theſe Aguiſh folk, if the ſame be orderly uſed. Theſe herbs following may alſo be dreſt in his meat; as Orage, Beets, Sorrel, Mallows, Lettice, Gourds. Alſo Barly pap (which is *Ptiſana*) and fiſh which is caught in gravelly waters. All Fowls are good for him which have a ſoft and tender fleſh, or the pinions of the groſſe and hard Fowls. The brains and feet of Swine, ſmall birds, and rere ſodden Egs be good, but chiefly the yolks which are more nouriſhing and lighter to be digeſted.

He may uſe all fruits that remain not long in the ſtomach; but he muſt reſtrain Hony, Muſtard, and ſharp meats.

This may ſuffice of the Gall, of her bladder, nature, and of the tertian Ague which is cauſed by it. Of which Ague, amongſt other, ſhall be further written in the ſixt part. The ſickneſſes beſides, which be cauſed through *Cholera*, ſhall be deſcribed more at large in their due places.

To open the ſtoppings of the Gall. Take the yellow knots of earth-worms, the inner pills of Barberries, Saffron, make a powder thereof, take as much of the powder as will lye upon ſix pence every morning in white wine.

The fourteenth Chapter.

Of the Milt or Spleen.

His third part of mans body containeth also in it the Milt, which the Grecians do call *Splen*, and the Latinists *Lien*, a known and necessary part of mans body. It hath his place in the left side over against the Liver and the Gall, next of all to the stomach. And if this were not found in the left side but in the right side (like as the same before time hath been seen) then is it reputed to be against nature.

This Milt is fastened to the back with certain sinews, where the ribs do take end: and with one end it stretcheth to the Liver in the right side. Her substance and essence is tender and soft flesh, like to a spunge; yet to be compared to the Lights, it is somewhat harder and faster, as she is softer and tenderer then the Liver. She hath also many veins and arteries, whereby she draweth easily unto her the grosse melancholick humours out of the Liver, by which she is fed and sustained. She is different in colour to the Milt of beasts; for it is black gray, of form long and thin: and of all fourfooted beasts there is none which more agreeth with the Spleen of a man, then that of a Hog.

The office of this Milt is none other but to cleanse the Liver from all melancholick humors, and that is brought to pass through the said veins, whereby she draweth unto her the same grosse humors, where she keepeth and retaineth the cleanest, and driveth from her the rest through certain passages and conduits: which if it be not performed the spleen is so weakned that it cannot perfectly draw unto it the same melancholick humours, and then there proceed out of it divers melancholick sicknesses; as namely, heavinesse of mind, desperat madnesse, and such like.

This disease of the spleen hath his certain and outward signs; as when one is sorrowful, then doth he commonly feel pain about the Spleen where melancholy hath her residence. Yea there is also written thereof, and believed by many, that if men were deprived of their spleen, then they should thereby lose all their laughing, and that their laughing and mirth doth augment according to the increase of the spleen.

Also the foresaid feebleness of the Milt causeth Exulcerations, swellings, depry, the canker, and such like. And albeit, that it do draw the melancholick humours unto it, yet nevertheless can she not by reason of her feebleness expel the superfluity of the same but swelleth, whereby an Impostume may easily follow. If then it force the biting and sharp matter excessively into the stomach; then doth it there cause the insatiable Dogs hunger, whereof we have written in the eleventh Chapter and 35. §. Or if the same harden in the stomach, then doth it cause vomiting: the bowels will thereby be made sore and deadly annoyed, and also afflicted with more other perilous accidents; by all which it may easily be perceived, how much the health of this part importeth.

Therefore it is to the contrary much to be marvelled at, that certain Beasts can be wholly without it. And so daily experience sheweth, that how much the lesse a mans spleen is, so much the faster may one run, and do the more labour.

The chiefest diseases of the spleen, be inflammations, obstructions, and schirrosities; of which the obstructions and hardenings do depend so fast one upon another, that the one cannot be well without the other. And the Physitians have also no other difference in use, than that there be used for the obstructions more outward medicines, than for the hardnesse or schirrosity, for in the hardnesse of the same must outward things be used, whether the same be caused through heat, cold, or wind, which do come commonly with it. So that the spleen in all these diseases hath great affinity with the Liver, and to all that which is ordained for the Liver, is also serving for the spleen.

And now to write briefly of the occasions of these maladies, whether the same be alwaies moved through inward or outward causes. The outward causes may be such meats and drinks as do ingender melancholick blood; as Cheese, Coleworts, salted flesh, and such like, according as hath been said in the first part, of *Melancholia*.

The inward causes do come of the Liver; or when the melancholick humours be too many; or when the spleen hath a bad complexion, whether it proceed of *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, wind, or any other occasion.

Of

Of the obſtruction of the Spleen with heat, and an Ague. §. 2.

THe obſtructed Spleen hath theſe ſigns: to wit, an hardneſſe which one may feel outwardly, with pain, ſwelling, thirſt, thin and ill-favoured colour of the urine, a heavy ratling breath, bad colour of the face and of the whole body, heavineſſe of mind, terrible dreams, and ſuch like. But with the impoſtume is alwayes this difference, that the pain is in one place onely: but in the hardneſſe of the Spleen without impoſtumation, the pain is over all the whole ſpleen. Theſe diſeaſes do alſo make the whole body lean, becauſe that the Liver doth not perform her natural digeſtion and inſtead of good blood doth ingender bad humours, wherewith the whole body is fed and nouriſhed.

If with this pain of the ſpleen through heat, be Agues and red urine adjoyned; then are theſe cooling things to be uſed for it: to wit, Lettice, Endive, with their ſeed, Saunders, burnt Ivory, the ſeeds of Melons, Pompeons, Gourds, and of Cucumbers, Vinegar, and ſuch like.

Of compounded things, the confection *Triaſantali*, &c. Theſe things following are temperate, and not onely good for the Milt or Spleen, but alſo for the ſtomach, Liver, Gall, and for all inward parts, as Camomil, Melilot, Lilly roots, Burrage, water Lillies, Fumitory, Maidenhair, and Harts tongue.

But to proceed methodically, then is the patient firſt to uſe theſe things following: Take Caper roots, rinds of *Tamariſcus*, the innermoſt green rinds of the Aſh tree, and the bloſſoms of broom, of each one ounce, Endive, Purſlain, ſmal Endive, Maidenhair, of each one handful; the ſeeds of Pompeons, of Cucumbers, of Gourds, and the ſeed of Melons, of each one ounce, Hony three ounces, Sugar nine ounces: let the foreſaid roots be ſteeped a whole night in vinegar, then afterwards make a ſirupe thereof, and give two or three ounces of it (according as the cauſe requireth) with Endive water, and that for the ſpace of four or five dayes in the morning faſting.

For this are alſo theſe Sirupes good, to wit, the ſirupe of vinegar, of *Oxymel ſimplex* and *Compoſitum*, *Oxyſaccharum*, Vinegar of Squils, and his *Oxymel*, *Acetoſum*, *Diarrhodon*, *de Pomis*, *de Terra*, *de Epithymo*, *de Pomis*, *de Drabis*, & *de Radicibus*, of Burrage, and of Bugloſſe, of each half an ounce, Currans one ounce, Annis one quarter of an ounce, Polipody roote half a drach, ſeethe the foreſaid all together in ſufficient water, untill there remain about four ounces: Steep therein a whole night *Mirobalani Indi*, then wring them well out, and drink it blood warm early in the morning.

You may alſo for both of them in ſtead of the *Mirobalani*, temper amongſt it one quarter of an ounce of the confection of the Sene leaves, or *Hiera Picra*. Alſo this following may be be uſed to purge withall: Take *Confectionis Hamech*, half an ounce, or *Diaphœnicis* three quarters of an ounce.

Item, pils of Indy, called *Pilulas Indas*, one drach. the Sene leaves may alſo be well taken, but hereafter followeth a briefer, ſafer, and a more meet way.

Take the confection of the Sene leaves, and temper it (according to the ſtrength and age of the party) with Rubarb and Burrage water, give it him warm faſting, and afterwards uſe theſe pils.

Take *Ammoniacum* one drach. *Tamariſci*, Harts tongue, and the ſeed of Agnus Caſtus, of each half a ſcruple; make nine pils thereof with the ſirupe of Vinegar, whereof the patient is to take a lurle for the ſpace of eight dayes together before ſupper, and one of them after ſupper, and then afterwards take this potion.

Take the water of *Tamariſcus*, of Harts tongue, and Cicory, of each one ounce and a half, Vinegar of Squils one quarter of an ounce, white Sugar half an ounce, then temper them together: this are you thus to drink in the morning faſting, and then take of the foreſaid pils twain, and ſo continue it during the ſpace of ten dayes. But eſpecially you are to uſe the potion, for it is the moſt forcible medicine for the Spleen that may be found.

In like manner is this alſo exceedingly commended: Take the whay of milk, ſteep Harts tongue, *Epithymum* and *Calamus* in it, and ſo let it ſtand a whole night; afterwards you may ſeethe this a little while, and drink often thereof. Likewiſe the ſeed of Purſlain, *Calamus*, and the roots of Cicory, of each like quantity, is very good being taken with the ſirupe of Vinegar.

R. of Feverfew, Tamarix, Camomil, Mullen leaves, ana. M. F. Stamp them ſmall, and

of Capers ℔. 1. clarified Butter ℔. 1. ſeethe them untill it is green, then ſtrain it and anoint the place about the ſpleen.

Or take an Oxe gall or two, and to every Oxe gall a pottle of Vinegar, boyl them to half, with the ſame foment the place, or dip a blew cloth in the ſame, and apply it as hot as may be ſuffered, renew it twice every day.

And ſeethe Aſh keyes, in wine or ale, and with Sugar drink of it firſt and laſt.

Or ℞. ſeven bats called in the Latine *Veſpertiliones*, dreſſe them and ſeethe them in Vinegar, ſtrain it very hard and drink the ſame. *eſt Cura experta.*

Or drink the decoction of the rind of the Willow tree, it mollifieth the hardneſſe and ſwelling of the ſpleen.

Coral powdered and drunk with water, drieth the moiſtnes of the ſpleen.

Or chaw Coleworts with Vinegar, and it will help the moiſt ſpleen.

Take a dry Cowtort, the juice of Nettles, oyl of Eggs and Brimſtone, make a plaiſter thereof and apply it to the Milt: It is good for the pain in the Spleen, for the falling ſickneſſe, and dropſie.

Of thoſe things which convey the medicine towards the Milt.

IT is of no ſmall importance to know the uſe of thoſe things which may convey the preparative and purgative medicines towards the ſpleen, like as hath been ſaid elſewhere: This doth Tamarisk, Harts tongue, Caper roots, Mather, burnt Squils, *Scordium*, wilde yellow Rape ſeed, Nep. *Spica* of Indy, Calamus, Ireos, Horehound, Wormwood, Agrimony, Annis, Fennel, *Cuſcuta*, the ſeed of *Agnus Caſtus*, ſmall Germander, and bitter Almonds.

When as then the ſick body hath been purged, the Milt vein is to be opened: or if the melancholick humours do abound, then is the Liver vein to be opened, for that this melancholick humour doth mix it ſelf with the blood. Some adviſe, and that not without reaſon, that Leaches ſhould be ſet in the fundament on the Pyle veins, becauſe that by nature they do draw out the black blood. For a ſtrengthening and allaying of the heat, this following is to be given, as confected Peaches, Cicory roots with vinegar, Conſerve of Roſes, of water Lillies, of Cicory, and of Violets.

For his drink, is allowed him otherwhiles a draught of Cherry wine; for it is (as is oftentimes ſaid) altogether temperate, and do moiſten the dried Spleen and the inward parts. Every ſuch patient is to beware of all ſweet and groſſe Wine, which is ſhewed before in the firſt part.

Of the impoſtume of the Spleen. §. 2.

THis impoſtume may be cauſed out of blood, of *Phlegma*, *Cholera* and *Melancholia*, as alſo of winds and obſtruction. The outward occaſions may be blowes, falls, great labour, and chiefly by that which happeneth in the heat, whereby the blood is burned: Item, of groſſe meats which make groſſe blood.

The common ſigns of all impoſtumes of the Milt are pain, heavineſſe, and ſwelling of the left ſide, which ſtretcheth it out from the bowels even to the ſhoulder blade, and ſometimes it bringeth alſo with it a healing breath.

All the four humours do bring with them their proper ſign, like as is already rehearſed, and for to remedie this preſent infirmity, this is the right way.

Firſt of all, you are to let him blood on the liver vein in the left elbow, and afterwards in the Milt vein upon the left hand beſides the fourth finger, and if ſo be that the patient may abide it, then let the blood run until it ſtanch it ſelf.

With purging, eating, and drinking is he to be kept, like as it is ſaid in the twelfth Chapter of the Liver.

Otherwiſe is this following very commodious: to wit, diſtilled water of Purſlain, Maidenhair, Willow leaves, Harts tongue, Nightſhade, of Smallage, and of Endive, of which one will, (alone or tempered together) and then the roots of Capers beaten very ſmall and tempered amongſt it.

You may alſo boyl the foreſaid herbs, and uſe the decoction of them tempered with the ſyrupe of Vinegar. The firſt 4. or 5. dayes the Milt is to be anointed with this ſalve following: Take oyl of Roſes one ounce and a half, oyl of Camomil and Vinegar, of each half an ounce, then temper it together. The ſecond or third day temper amongſt it half an ounce of the juice of Nightſhade.

The

The first day use this following: Take byl of Roses, Camomil, and the juice of Wormwood, of each alike much, anoint it very warm, and lay it upon a warm cloth. Then lay this plaister following upon it: Take Barly meal, powded Hollihock roots, of each two ounces, Roses, red and white Saunders of each three drach. roots of Endive one ounce, Vinegar, and water of Harts tongue, as much as is needfull for to make a mild plaister.

When as then the patient is letten blood and purged, and hath drunken the foresaid water certain dayes together, he is to purge again with *Cassia*, and with *Epithymo*, but if the impostume be of cold (which chanceth very seldom) then may it be known, for that it is very soft, white, and without pain. But if the same be caused through *Melancholia*, then doth the same shew it self hard, with small pain, and then may you use that *Oxymel compositum* or *Oxymel* of Squils, with water wherein the the roots of Capers, *Tamariscus*, Harts tongue, and such like be decocted. Concerning the purging of *Melancholia*, you shall shortly hereafter find perfect instructions.

Of an obstructed Milt without Ague, but yet with pain. §. 3.

FOr this is chiefly commended the *Tamariscus*, and yet above this, Harts tongue, Caper roots, hony suckles, which have altogether a marvellous power for to asswage the swelling of the Spleen. In like manner, Centory, Valerian, and *Meu*, or in stead thereof, the roots of wild Dill.

These are the principal things which may be used for the foresaid disease. Again, these things following are good for to warm the cold spleen: as Aristologie, the middlemost buds of the Ashen tree, Broom roots, Burrage, Buglosse, Ammoniack, Rue, Thyme, *Epithymum*, bitter Almonds, the water of the Ash tree leaves, Annis, Fennel, Caraway, *Ameos*, Parsly roots, the roots of Smallage, of Sperage, Squils, and their Vinegar, seed of *Agnus Castus*, Lupines, *Bdellium*, and Bevercod. Of the compounded things are the Confections of *Diacapparis*, *Diacalamintha*, *Diacyminum*, confected Carawayes and Comin, very good also. And albeit, that according to the opinion of *Galen* and others, this obstruction of the Milt when the same waxeth old, is thought incurable: yet do the successors nevertheless think that it is very curable, although the obstruction of the foresaid Milt, and the hardnesse of the same had continued three or four years. For which they do first give things to open the spleen: to wit, one drachme of Mithridate, water of Sage two ounces, and that betimes in the morning, whereupon they require one to fast 4 hours after.

Item, take Squils and *Oxymel*, of each one ounce, syrupe *de Eupatorio* half an ounce, water of Valerian two ounces and a half: give it him warm in the morning.

Or take Maiden hair, *Polytricum*, and Harts tongue, of each four scruples. Madder, Broom roots, of each two scruples, fresh well water 24. ounces, Vinegar three ounces, Licorice one drach. and a half; seethe them afterwards together by a mild fire unto the half: the patient to drink of this potion seven or eight dayes together, every morning ʒ.4. The same good and approved.

Secondly, it is to be considered, how that this obstruction is to be opened. For this, let him one do take every morning early one quarter of an ounce of washt Turpentine, and fast 5. or 6. hours upon it: or in stead of this, that he do swallow 2. or 3. pils made of *Cochiae*.

Thirdly, if so be that this grief be caused through wind, (whereof we are to speak more at large hereafter) then may one swallow half ʒ. of *Ammoniacum* made into pils. Other take *Pilulae Aggregativae*, and Ammoniacum, of each half a drach.

Fourthly, to the end that the bad humours may be expelled out of the Milt, give the patient one ounce and a half of the juyce of Horehound tempered with two ounces of Smallage water, to drink early in the morning.

Fifthly, to the end that no grievouser disease do strike into the Milt, and that the schirrosity or hardnesse might be mollified and discussed, take Hollihock roots, and Swines bread, of each three handfuls *Bdellii*, *Ammoniaci*, of each half an ounce, Centory, wormwood, Harts tongue, and *Tamarisci*, of each one handful and a half, Vinegar six ounces; seethe them all together in a pot of water, and steep a sponge therein, and lay it very warm on the left side: when the place is then very warm, cover it with a woollen cloth which is inside wet before in steeled Vinegar, decocted water of Hony suckles, and of *Tamarisci*. And if so be that this swelling do not asswage thereby, then use this plaister following.

Take

Take the prepared marrow of an Oxe, Badgers greaſe, and the oyl of a Fox, of each half an ounce, *Tamariſcus*, Harts tongue, Wormwood, Caper roots, Spica of Indy, and *Spica Romana*, of each one drachme, *Ammoniacum* one ounce and a half, *Bdellium* half an ounce, oyl of Behen two ounces, Wax as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter with it: then make it like to a half Moon, and lay it on the left ſide: and then ſhall you ſee in ſhort time that the hardneſſe will wear away.

Of hardneſſe, or Schirrus *of the Spleen.* §. 4.

ALthough the ancient Phyſitians were of opinion, that this hardning of the Milt were not difficult to be healed at the firſt, but were indeed if the ſame had long continued and were neglected, like as *Galenus* writeth, that he knew not how to cure it, neither had known any that could heal the ſame: Nevertheleſſe one muſt not deſpair, but adminiſter freely unto it all ſtrong outward and inward remedies. For how much the longer that this accident continueth, ſo much the leſſe vexation hath the patient with it. But it is not to be neglected, for this danger is with it, that if the ſame do not inveterate, then the patient might happen to fall into the Dropſie, whereby afterwards they commonly, one more, another leſſe, happen to dye with a laske or ſcouring.

The ſigns of this hardneſſe are the ſame that here before in the 2. §. and afterwards in the obſtruction of the ſpleen, are diſcovered. There is alwayes a heavineſſe in the left ſide: the whole body, and eſpecially the face, getteth an Aſh-coloured and Il-favoured colour: all the members of the will be weak, as if they were beaten in pieces. When the patient will do any exerciſe, then ſeemeth it as if his breath would depart. The ſigns of the impoſtume of the Milt are alſo deſcribed, yet the ſame may be well known by the feeling.

All that be ſick of the Milt, will alſo be lean, very lither, out of courage, do get heavy legs, a heavy tongue, and a thin urine.

If with the pain of the Milt, or the ſwelling and hardneſſe of the ſame, there be no Ague, then is the patient again in the beginning of the cure to have a vein opened, and ſpecially if it be diſcerned that the veins be full of blood; then is the *Saphea* on the foot to be opened, and after certain dayes the Milt vein on the left hand. Afterwards are certain ſirupes to be uſed which do purge melancholy: For which this following, or ſuch like is to be prepared: Take Ireos, Fennel roots, and Parſly roots, of each one ounce and a half, the inſide of Squils one ounce, Capers roots, the green rinds of an Aſhen tree, and Broom roots, of each one ounce, Maiden hair, Harts tongue, field Cipres, Germander, and Roſemary flowers, of each one handfull, Annis, Fennel, *Cuſcuta*, *Aſarabacca*, ſeeds of Purſlain, of each one drach. Licorice and Currans, of each an ounce: *Tamariſcus*, flowers of Burrage and of Bugloſſe, of each half an ounce, hony ſix ounces, Sugar nine ounces: make thereof a ſirupe, and uſe the ſame as hath been ſaid of others.

This following is to be prepared for a purgation: Take Burrage, Bugloſſe, and *Tamariſcus* flowers, of each half an ounce, Annis and *Cuſcuta*, of each one quarter of an ℥. Thyme, *Epithymus* and *Agaricus* of each an ounce, Currans one ounce; ſeethe theſe all together in ten ounces of water unto the half: then take of this ſtrained decoction three or four ounces, and temper therein one quarter of an ounce of *Hiera Picra*, and alſo prepared Azure ſtone half a drach. or in ſtead of this, one drachme of Bolus prepared, temper them together, and give it him early in the morning. Alſo you may make pils of the other things without the water.

Another. Take Capers roots, Harts tongue, *Aſarabacca*, Lupines, Cipres roots, and Endive, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Epithymum* half a drachme, Barly, Prunes, Violets, of each three drachmes: let them ſeethe all together.

Laſtly, put the Epithymum and one quarter of Sene leaves unto it: then ſeethe it untill the third part be decocted. Then take four ounces of this decoction, and temper therein half an ounce of of freſh Caſſy, beaten pils, of Azure ſtone one ſcruple; laſt of all temper it together unto a potion.

But if the patient had rather uſe pils, then take pils, *De Lapide Armeno*, or *Indo*, one drachme at one time. The Lupines ſodden alone in water, ſhould be alſo good for this.

But if this hardening of the Milt be of wind and cold, as it otherwhiles befalleth, it is thereby to be perceived: to wit, if one preſſe upon it, that then the wind will run-

Take

humble. From this amongst other things, may be given *Trochisci Caphis*, and to let his sick body drink old wine, but water he must wholly forbear. Item, if one will use water with victuals in the same first to be seasoned, and all his drink to be tempered with one of the following to be decocted in it, as Rue, *Caphi* roots, Cinnamom, Annis, *Spica* of Indy, Squinant &c.

Wee have also a little before declared, how that *Ammoniacum* is to be used: for this is also good rosted Millet, Salt, and Comfa layed warm upon it. Item, boxing cups unpist set upon the Milt. But if it be discerned, that there be any moysture in the Milt, (which may be perceived by rumbling, if it be wrung hard) then is the Patient to be purged aforesaid. For this, is also good the syrup of *Auronis*, *Compasmis*, and this fomentation following is to be used with it. Take Annis, Fennel, Caraway, wild Thyme, Violets, flowers of Burrage, *Endivia*, the roots of blew Flowerdelice, and Agrimony, of each one ounce, Camomil one ounce and a half, let them seethe altogether in Vinegar, and wet a sponge in this decoction, and keep it very warm upon the Milt before meat: afterwards lay one of the foresaid plaisters upon it.

Above all those which we have hitherto rehearsed, there be yet more good things whereof we will first discover the simples, as namely *Agaricus*, which doth open all obstructions of the Milt, and other parts, Sene leaves, *Epithymum*, and black Hellebore, of Nicolaus, the compounded medicines be *Pilulæ Indæ*, whereof we have spoken so often, which are worthy to be described here, which be prepared as followeth. Take *Myrobalani Indi*, black Neesewort, and Polipody roots, of each two drachmes and a half, *Thymum*, *Epithymum*, Stechas, of each three drachmes, *Agaricus*, washt Azure flowers, Coloquint, Indy Salt, or *Sal gemmæ*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloves, half a drachme, powder of *Hiera Picra Galeni*, three quarters of an ounce, the juyce of Smallage as much as sufficeth for to make a masse of pils. These pils are good for all melancholick accidents, for the Canker, for the Lepry, for all incurable black impostumes, for all heavinesse of mind, the quartain Ague, yellow Jaundies, diseases of the Milt & such like. One may take a drachme at once of these pils. Item, take ten dayes together the powder of Feare roots one drachme and a half, augmented still from day to day to the weight of one drachme and a half. Others do take of this foresaid powder one drachme, and of the pils *Aggregati* half a drachme, and temper them together. Item, take the juyce of Wormwood four ounces, Sugar as much as you please, and so use it ten dayes one after another. It also is not onely good for the Milt, but also the yellow Jaundies; as also for all moysture of the Liver, and for the Dropsie. Item, for all hardnesse and swelling of the same being tempered with Vinegar and so drunken.

Master *Tristram* water is also very meet for all diseases of the Milt, like as be also the most of all golden waters which be described in the eight part. Item, take Roses and Barberies, of each three drachmes, burnt Ivory, Wormwood, *Cubebæ*, Licorice, Mastick, and Squinant, of each one drachme and a half, Endive seed, Fennel, Annis, *Spica*, Agrimony, *Opium*, *Asarabacca* roots, Costus roots, peeled Gourd seed, and Cucumber seed, of each half a drachme, then make Trochiskes thereof with Endive water. They be special good for the Milt, and also for the Liver.

For potions, he may take of these things following what he desireth: as namely, both kinds of *Capillus veneris*, Harts tongue, Maydenhair, Sene leaves, Capers roots, Tamarisk, seeds of Parsly, Smallage, Fennel, Cinamom, Licorice, Currans, Annis, Fennel water, and of Caraway, wherein *Thymus* and *Epithymum* be decocted.

Against such *Memini quendam sommiare, Medicum sibi præcepisse, ut biber et urinam, ubi primum sanitatem rursum restitui.*

Take a dry Cowtord, Cabage leaves or juyce, Eggs, oyl of Brimstone, mix them, and make a plaister, and apply it to the spleen.

I have used my vomiting potion, made of Castoreum, angelico roots, Saffron and hony, and the powder of Stibium, dissolved in wine; the party must use thin broth made of a fat hen, or thin posset ale with hony in some of it. For the hony makes the Party vomit freely, upon the taking that potion; this I have used with good successe. After the vomiting the Patient must rest that night following from any Physick, and must eat no flesh, but onely water and Oatmeal sod together, and with butter let him eat it, and bread and butter and drink; this he must use for his dyet for 14. dayes or longer. Also let him have of my Mastick pill every day after the vomit; which are thus made.

ter, and butter, and bread and butter.

The Orders of Diets.

Patients to beware of [illegible] and of hard and ingrate meats: his bread must be well baked, and be of yeasted dough, but unleavened bread is better for him. All [illegible] Coriander, and Fennel-juice are to be taken in this sort. All field fowls as Pheasants, Partridges, young and old cocks, Doves, Kids, young Veal roast with Vinegar, he may eat well, but no [illegible] eggs. [illegible] all kinds of Cresses, Sage, Hyssop, Radish, Endive, Agrimony, red Peasе, and the green [illegible] of red Coleworts. He must also use oftentimes Annis, Cumin, Dill-seed, Fennel-seed, and the seeds of Sesamum, Capers, Tamarisk, bitter Almonds, the kernels of Peach-fruits, and of Cherry-stones: for this is also good, the lozinges of Cumin, and of Annis. The milts of swine are also to be eaten for the curing of the disease of the Milt, and also the milt of a sound horse dryed and beaten to powder, the weight of a drachme taken of it with strong wine, for this in like manner very commodious for this purpose. But if so be there be no heat, then may he chuse some of these things following for to drink. First, wine is not onely permitted for this hardnesse of the Milt, but also highly commended. Also all famous Physitians do advise, that the Patient must eat and drink in the wood of Tamarisk; for they say that only thereby many be holpen who have gone twenty years with a hard Milt. But if this Tamarisk-wood cannot be gotten, then are the shavings thereof to be taken and laid in his drink. And if so be that one cannot continue this forty dayes together, then he shall evidently see amendment. Ash-wood doth the same, which hath also the power of the Tamarisk. Of wines, white wine is alwayes most commended: if it be too strong, then is it to be allayed with water, that is fitted, or with rain water, or the water of Harts tongue. You have also hereafter two kinds of good wines, which may be prepared for this use.

Take Sene leaves, Batime, Maiden-hair, and the rinds of Tamarisk, of each six handfuls; Polypody roots four handfuls, prepared Coriander three ounces, Ginger four ounces, eight or ten Nutmegs, Cloves half an ounce, Galangal one ounce and a half, Citron pils one handful, shavings of ash wood as much as is needful, at the most strongest of all: make them to infect the wine thereof, and let the Patient drink the first draught thereof in the morning and evening. Another: Take the roots of Cicory, rinds of Tamarisk, Harts tongue, and the middle rinds of the Ash wood, of each one handful; pour on pot of Must or some other good wine, and use thereof as before.

And all other herbed wines which may be made, are at this present praised for the Milt; as wine of Eyebright, wine of Tamarisk, each made by it self, or both together. Item, wine of Hyssope, of Marjoram, and of wormwood, do warm the Milt, and the inward parts: the wine of Gilliflowers, and of Betony, are also good for this. Item, the Aromatical wine, and more other spiced wines, and also the wine of *Absinthium*. Reasonable exercise before meals, is also much commended: and sometimes to bathe in water wherein the foresaid herbs be decocted. To the contrary, he must eschew all troubled wines, as Must, Syder, Beer, &c. for all such do not onely obstruct the Milt, but also the Liver, the Light, and Kidneyes; which obstructions be causes of many sicknesses.

For this disease is also hurtful Swines flesh, Milk, Cheese, Rice, Stareh, Pease, Beans, Sewits, Pears, Medlars, Quinces, Chestnuts, and Peaches: therefore be they to be refrained.

We will also note some things, wherewith the sick party, and the Milt, with all other inward parts, are to be strengthened. Amongst which, is *de Mirra Cyperum* [illegible] one of the chief.

Item, this confection following, if that heat and cold be mixed together: Take Venice Treacle, Harts tongue, of each half an ounce, *Aristolochia rotunda* one quarter of an ounce, *Pentaphyllum* one ounce, seeds of *Agni casti*, and of broad Plantain, Aristology roots, Angelmony

mony, Wormwood and Squinant, of each one drach. and a half, Landpoum one drach. seed of Purslain, Sorrel, Endive, and wild Endive, of each two drach. and a half, Oxymel of Squils six ounces, water Lillies Violet seeds, and Mallowes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar eight ounces. Seethe the sugar with Vinegar of Squils untill it be as thick as hony: when it is cold, then mix the rest amongst it, with the water of Maiden hair: afterwards seethe it again with Vinegar of Squils untill it be as thick as hony: when it is cold, then mix the rest amongst it, with the water of Maiden hair. Afterwards seethe it again until all the water be decocted: when it is then sodden and well brayed, then use every morning three drach. of it. If you had rather drink it, then temper it with Sorrel water; it is a marvellous good medicine.

Another Confection: Take *Mirobalani Indi* and *Bellirici*, flowers of Burrage, Bugloss, Elecampane roots, and Folefoot leaves of each one drach. seeds of Endive, of Lettice, small Endive and Sorrel, of each one drachme, peeled Mellon seed, Pompeons Cucumbers, and peeled Gourd seeds, of each one drachme and a half, Pingles and Pistacis, of each 2 ounces, syrup of Vinegar four ounces Sugar three ounces, four Dates, one ounce and a half, make a confection thereof, and take thereof every morning before meat, as much as the quantity of a Nutmeg. This confection is very forcible to consume all melancholick humors and matters: it openeth the spleen, strengtheneth the stomach and the heart, and deoppilateth also all obstructions.

Item, Nutmegs, Walnuts, roots of *Eringus*, and Elecampane, all confected, be very meet for this disease.

Amongst the Conserves, are the Conserves of Bettony, of Gillflowers, of Lavander, of Spike, of Marjoram, Sage, Hyssop, Eyebright and of Fumitory, and all that may be made of these foresaid herbs very good. Likewise also both the Treacles, and Mithridate.

Item, you have more in the first part the 12. Chapter, and first §. a good grosse powder which is meet for this. Capers eaten with Vinegar, roots of Smallage with the herb, and Dill are also good. And let this suffice for the order of Dyet.

Here followeth now what is outwardly to be used.

This powder following is alwayes about the fourth day to be strewed upon the head the weight of four grains; and one may use it with much furtherance as long as he liveth: Take Roses, burnt Ivory white and red Corral, of each one scruple, Mace four scruples, Cloves half a drach. Lignum Aloes two scruples, then make a small beaten powder with it.

A bag for the breast: *Species de Xylo Aloes, Lætificans Almansoris*, of each five drach. put these in a red crimson silk bag, and wear it on the left breast. Concerning the oyls and salves are these most meet: Oyl of Bricks is very good for all diseases of the spleen.

Item, the oyl of Bayberries, of bitter Almonds, of Spikenard, of Wormwood, of Galangal, and of Capers. For all kinds of Salve may you make this following: viz. oyl of Lilies, Almonds, Capers, and the marrow of all kinds of beasts, Saffron, Vinegar, Gum, Wax, muscilage of Hollihock roots, of Linseed, and of Fenegreek seed.

The salve of Hollihock roots, *Unguentum Althæa*, (which is well known to all Apothecaries) is also highly commended for this disease, the description whereof immediately ensueth: Take the roots of Mallowes, of Hollihocks, of Lillies, Onions, Squils, Linseed, Fenegreek seed, Figs, and Raisins, of each half an ounce: pownd them all together, and steep it a whole night in strong Vinegar: afterwards seethe them all in water, and then stamp it to pap. This being done, mingle therewith the salve of *Althea* two ounces, Docks grease, Calves marrow, and unsalted Butter, and ℥ij. oyl of sweet Almonds ʒ.4. Wax as much as is needful for to make a salve.

For this is also good the salve *Marcianum*, and *Unguentum de Hyssopo Nebrigii*. This following is a special good salve for the spleen: Take the juice of wild Cucumbers, and of Swines bread, of each ʒ.4. put them in a glasse, and the salve of *Althea*, oyl of Capers, and fresh Butter, of each two ounces; let them seethe the space of 24. hours in hot water: strain it afterwards through a cloth, and afterwards put *Ammoniacum* unto it dissolved in the juice of Swines bread one quarter of an ounce, Wax as much as is needful for to make a salve therewith.

And

And becauſe that this ſalve cannot be made every where by reaſon of the juice, this following may be uſed: Take oyl of ſweet Almonds ſix ounces, Neatsfeet oyl two ounces, freſh Butter one ounce, the juice of Briony and Tamarisk, of each two ounces: put this in a ſpecial pot, and let it ſeethe in boyling water unto the half: put afterwards unto it the roots of Capers, Tamarisk, *Agnus caſtus*, and Harts tongue, of each one quarter of an ounce, molten white Wax one ounce; then make a ſalve of it.

Another: Take oyl of Capers three ounces, Camomil one ounce and a half, Harts tongue, roots of Capers, Endive, wild Endive, and Lettice ſeed, of each half a drach. ſeeds of *Agnus caſtus*, and Wax, as much as ſufficeth for to make a plaiſter or ſalve: laſtly ſtir a little Vinegar amongſt it. This ſalve is very good for the Milt in hot and alſo in cold cauſes: it mollifieth all hardneſſe, expelleth all winds and all impoſtumes of the ſame.

Now for to lay ſomewhat upon it, boyl Rue in ſtrong Vinegar and make a woollen cloth wet in it; wring out the ſame, and ſolay it warm over it.

Item, there ſtandeth the like a little before; Take the roots of Mallowes, &c. and that which is written ſhortly after it, even to the ſalve *Althea*, and what further followeth: ſeethe them all in water of Camomil, and lay it warm with a bag over the Milt: it helpeth marvellous well.

Take *Oxymel* ſix ounces, Capers roots one ounce, Wormwood half an ounce, beat them ſmall together; afterwards make a woollen clout wet in it, and lay it ſo upon it.

Hereafter follow certain plaiſters: Take *Ammoniacum* three quarters of an ounce, *Bdellium* one ounce and a half; diſſolve them in Vinegar of Squils, *Tamariſcus* half a 3. Harts tongue, Dill ſeed, and *Agnus caſtus* ſeed, of each two ſcruples, broad Plantain ſeed half a drach, Wax one quarter of an ounce, and Roſin as much as is needful therewith to make a plaiſter.

Another; Take *Tamariſcus*, Harts tongue ſeeds of *Agnus caſtus*, and of broad Plantain of each two ſcruples, *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium*, of each three drach. You are to diſſolve both theſe Gums in Vinegar of Squils, and when they be cold, then mix the other things amongſt it, beaten ſmall. The ſame doth alſo the *Ammoniacum* alone diſſolved in ſharp vinegar, and ſpred upon a cloth and ſo laid thereon. Other do diſſolve this Gum in the juice of Swines bread, for then it is more forcible, as is herebefore admoniſhed. Item, take oyl of Liſſies, alſo of the flowers of blew Flower deluce, and of Capers, of each one ounce, Barly meal, Linſeed meal, and Fenegreek meal, of each one drach. *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, of each one drachme and a half, *Opopanacum*, Myrrhe and Frankincenſe, of each half a drach. Make this all together with molten Wax, and Roſin unto a plaiſter, then ſpread it upon a cloth, and uſe it as all the reſt.

Item, take Rue leaves one quarter of an ounce, Boreas and Nep, of each three drach. *Ammoniacum* ſeven drach. diſſolve them in old Wine, and make a plaiſter of it, it mollifieth, healeth, and expelleth windineſſe. Or take *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, and Peach, of each one ounce and a half, *Trochiſcos de Capparis*, white Muſtard ſeed, Sulphur, wild Garlick, and Cow dung, of each one drach, Muſcilage of Fenegreek, and of Linſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce; pownd all them that be to be pownded: then firſt diſſolve the Gum in ſtrong vinegar, and work them one amongſt another: but firſt of all anoint your hands with the oyl of Barberries.

Another; Take the muſcilage of Fenegreek, and of Linſeed, of each one ounce, the greaſe of Hens, Geeſe and Ducks, of each three ounces, waſht Butter, Swines greaſe, Neats feet oyl, of each one quarter of an ounce, beaten *Tamariſcus*, Willow leaves, harts tongue, the middle rind of the Aſh tree, Capers roots, Rue leaves, and Nep, of each one drachme, oyl of Capers one ounce and a half, a little Wax and Vinegar: then make a plaiſter or ſalve of it.

Item, take an Onion, cut off a piece at the top, and make it hollow within, and fill it with oyl of Lillies, and let it reſt uncovered in aſhes, ſo long till it have ſoked up all the oyl: afterwards ſtamp it, and lay it warm over it.

All theſe plaiſters following are alſo good for it: as namely, *De Melilote*, *Diachilon magnum*, *De Muſcilaginibus*, and others. Take of the plaiſter *De Muſcilaginibus* ℥ 2. *Ammoniacum* diſſolved in vinegar, and *Marcaſite* beaten ſmall, of each five drach. temper it on the fire, and ſpread it on a leather cut after the faſhion of a half Moon, and ſo lay it warm upon the ſpleen, it is very good, and approved. We have promiſed herebefore to deſcribe

And

deſcribe the ſalves of *Dialthea*. It is alſo made after ſundry faſhions, like as we ſhall alſo teach here: Take clean Hollihock roots eight ounces, Linſeed and Fenegreeke ſeed of each four ounces, Sallad oyl ſixteen ounces, Turpentin half an ounce, Roſin one ounce and a half; the roots and alſo the ſeeds ſhall you ſteep three dayes and three nights in a quart of water: the fourth day ſeethe them ſo long, until they yeeld from them a thick tough ſlime or muſcilage: wring them hard out, and take eight ounces thereof, and ſeethe it with the oyl until all the moiſture be decocted. Afterwards put the Turpentin, Roſin, and four ounces of Wax unto it. When all theſe things be molten and well tempered, then take it from the fire, and ſtir it well about until it be cold.

The ſecond; Take eight ounces of fair ſliced Hollihock roots, Linſeed and Fenegreek ſeed, of each four ounces, ſtamp them, and wring them through as before: then put unto it four ounces of Barrowes greaſe, two beaten Onions, one ounce and a half of *Gummi Arabicum*, and let them ſeethe all together until that all the moiſture be decocted; afterwards take four ounces of molten Wax, and then temper them together, and ſtir it well about until it be through cold.

The third: Take fair cleanſed Hollihock roots twelve ounces, chop it very ſmall, and pour two quarts of water unto it, ſix ounces of Linſeed, three ounces of Fenegreek ſeed, and three ounces of Lilly roots: then pownd them all together, and when they be boyled to a tough ſlime or muſcilage, then ſtrain them through a cloth, and take twelve ounces of it, and ſeethe the ſame with 24. ounces of Bartowes greaſe until the juice be all decocted: afterwards put unto it four ounces of Wax, Fenegreek mealtwo ounces, *Galbanum* diſſolved in Vinegar, *Gummi Hederæ*, and Turpentine, ana. ℥. 1. But if you cannot get the foreſaid Gum, then take three ounces of Turpentine and temper them all together as before this ſalve is good for all ſwellings, for the ſhrinking of the ſinewes, for all tumors of the breſt; looſeth phlegme, aſſwageth the cough and all ſtiches in the ſides, as alſo the pain in the Reynes, of the gravel, and is good for all extenuations.

The fourth and laſt: Take freſh Hollihock roots twelve ounces, Linſeed and Fenegreek ſeed, of each ſix ounces, Squils three ounces, Sallad oyl 24. ounces, yellow Wax ſix ounces, Turpentine, *Gummi Hederæ* and *Galbanum*, of each one ounce and a quarter, *Colphonie* and Roſin of each three ounces; pownd all that is to be pownded, and let it ſteep together three dayes in water: afterwards ſeethe them all together, and ſtrain them through a cloth, and then take four and twenty ounces of the muſcilage thereof, and let them ſeethe all together on a ſoft fire with the foreſaid oyl until all the moyſture be decocted: afterwards put Wax unto it, and then a little of the Gum, and laſtly the Colophonie and Roſin. When it is boyled enough, then ſtir it well about and let it coole.

Of the Melancholia and moyſture of the Spleen. §. 5.

FOr as much as the Spleen (as is ſaid) is the true receptacle of the black and melancholick blood; therefore reaſon requireth that we ſhould write of what nature the ſame is, whereby other things may alſo be diſcerned which be incident to the Milt. Firſtwe have in the firſt part, the 12. chapter, and 8. §. deſcribed many kinds of cauſes of Melancholy, and in other places more, eſpecially in the beginning of the former §. and taught of the Milt, of her beginning, cauſes, and what hurt might proceed thereof: to wit, if the ſame got the maſtry, that there may follow not onely heavineſſe of the mind, frighting, and ſuch like: but alſo it might deprive the whole body of his lively colour, and cauſe all black ulcers, leapry, the canker, quartain Agues, and ſuch like: and laſtly, all manner of diſtraction of the mind, raging madneſſe, and inhumane beaſtlineſſe. Therefore becauſe this booke every where maketh mention of them, it is not needful to diſcourſe more at large thereof at this preſent. But we will onely deſcribe certain remedies which be fit for it.

Wherefore it is firſt to be noted, that all preparative and purgative things are to be uſed, that the matter may be avoided through going to ſtoole and not through vomiting, by reaſon that theſe melancholy humors are very ponderous and heavy, and will not be expelled but onely downwards.

Before we then come to any particular remedies, we will firſt diſcover what ſimples there be that do prepare theſe melancholy humors, and whereby the ſame may be expelled, viz. Burrage, Bugloſſe, *Thymus*, *Epithymum*, Capers roots, *Tamariſcus*, Harts tongue, good wine, bathing in ſweet water, Liepritie, Currans, Polipody roots, graſſe, *Chamædryos*,

Cuscuta, *Asarabacca* Gentian, Lupines, Fumitory, Calamus, *Spica nardi*, *Agnus castus*, bitter Almonds, Cicorie, Rosemary, Radish seed, Burnet, Sea Crabs, and above all a chearfull courage or light heart.

The compounded medicines are *Oxymel* of Squils, hony of Roses, syrup of Vinegar, *Syrupus aceteosus*, *compositus de Fumo terræ*, and other more. But chiefly this following is to be prepared for it: Take Citory, Rosemary, Burnet, Hops, Cinefoile, Endive with the roots, Fumitory, the roots of Bugloſſe, Burrage flowers, Liverwort, *Chamedryos*, field Cipres, Capers roots, *Tamariscus* roots, and Harts tongue with the roots, of each two ounces, Prunes, and *Sebestes*, of each twenty or five and twenty; Sene leaves, *Cassena*, *Thymus*, wilde Thyme, and Fennel, of each half an ounce, Licorice, Raisins, *Stechas*, of each two ounces: Seethe them all together in three pints of water even unto the half; adde to this decoction (being strained) Bugloſſe, and the juyce of Prunes, of each eighteen ounces, Sugar four and twenty ounces, Hony of Roses six ounces; let them seethe to a syrup.

These things following are reputed for such as expel Melancholy and do purge, viz. *Epithymus*, *Myrobalani Indi*, *Chebuli*: Polypody roots, prepared *Esulus*, Bolus, mountain Mints, Cassie, Sene leaves, Fumitory, Hony suckles, Hops, black Neesewort, Indy saffron, wild Saffron seed, *Sal gemma*. The compounded medicaments are *Diasena*, *Hiera Rufi*, *Hiera Logodion*, and such like. Item, take Sene leaves *Thymus*, *Epithymus*, *Cassena*, and Burrage flowers, of each one ounce, Annis, Fennel, and Smallage seed, of each half an ounce, Harts tongue, Maidenhair, *Chamedryos*, and Agrimony, of each one handful; let them all seethe well, and take thereof four ounces: steepe therein *Myrobalani Indi*, half an ounce, and *Chebuli* three drachmes all the night: afterwards strain it well out, and temper therewith *Diasena*, three drachmes, *Cassia* one ounce, washt Azure stone two scruples: give the same unto him in the morning, and there may lesse thereof be given at once. When as melancholy appeareth, then is the Liver vein to be opened; for that surpasseth all other things: and the same is to be done more then once, and that alwayes according to the ability and strength of the patient. Item, care must be taken to open the piles, be it with rubbing with the Launcet, or Lastly with Leaches.

For this it is also very needful that this Patient be often purged: but he must first alwayes use some kind of syrup as is herebefore expressed. Also he must use, according as the cause requireth, the syrup of Burrage, of Bugloſſe, Apples, *de Epithymo*, *Diarrhodon*, of Cicorie, Wormwood, of Roses, hony of Roses, *Oxymel* and syrup of Vinegar.

And for to purge, he must take *Mirobalani Indi*, *Chebuli*, *Citrini*, of each half an ounce, the outward rinds of the black Neesewort three drachmes pownd them together very small, and seethe them in sufficient water: strain it, and put into this decoction *Epithymum*, Thyme, Polipody roots, and Sene leaves, of each three quarters of an ounce, the seeds of Citrons one quarter of an ounce: then seeth them again unto the half, and let it stand all a night: afterwards strain it out, and wring it hard, and put as much Sugar unto it as you think meet. This being done, seeth it again, and clarify it with the white of an egge. Lastly temper amongst it the syrup of Citron pils one ounce, and drink four or five ounces of it early in the morning.

But this is here to be noted, that if this syrup be given to any body that is infected with the Pox, the same party is first to be purged with the confection called *Laetificans*, mixing with it three drachmes *Confectionis Hamech*. Afterwards give unto him the Syrup following and then the decoction of *Guaiacum*, whereof we shall write hereafter more at large.

This Patient must often before meat take *Cassia*, for it cleanseth the blood, and taketh away the sharpnesse of it.

For this, are meet also the *Pilula Indæ*, *Aggregativa*, and *De Lapide Lazuli*.

Item, Sene leaves steeped in Henbroth, strewed with a little Cinamom: of Sene leaves steeped in Whay. Item, the same boyled with the flowers of Burrage, of Bugloſſe, of Balme, and with the roots of Parsly.

The Sene leaves may also be steeped in Wormwood and with Wine: and it is good during the space of a whole moneth alwayes every other day, to drink two or three ounces of the decoction or infusion of Sene leaves, both which are described in the eleventh Chapter, the 20. §. and temper amongst it two ounces of the laxative syrup of Roses; the decoction of Sene leaves as much; use this fasting. You have also heard before

before a powder for to purge melancholy, and two kinds of confections, *Diarrhodon* called in Latine *Gratia Dei*, and whay wherein *Epithymum* hath been infused, or Polipody roots have been decocted, both more prepare to purge.

How the melancholick blood is to be purged. §. 6.

Amongst all these medicines, there be divers which do cleanse the blood. And the chief of all Physitians in this sickesse is, that all the heavy, black and unclean blood might be purged, diminished, and corrected. Howbeit, there is somewhat else which is here to be signified: to wit, for this doth Venus or Maidenhair first serve, that reduceth all bad humours and slime out of the Liver, maketh good colour, lengtheneth the breath, cleanseth the stomach, the Liver, and the Milt, and also breaketh the stone. Also take the whay of Goats milk, steep Fumitory in it, or mix the juice of the herbe amongst it, and drink of it certain daies ensuing other at each time a good draught: or else the head thereof, take the Sirupe or Conserve of the same herb, for both of them be very good. Also, make pils of pownded Mastick, and the juice of Wormwood. There be also certain Wines for the cleansing of the blood prepared, as hereafter ensueth. Take Currans three common pounds, Maidenhair five ounces and one quarter of an ounce, black prepared Hellebore two ounces and a half, and one drach. of Polipody and Hermodactili, of each four ounces, prepared Coriander, and Sene leaves, of each five ounces and one drachme and a half, Pockwood six pounds, rinds of the same three ounces. These being all well beaten together, then pour thereon two almes of whay and half an alme of Well water; then let them stand and work together at the sunne six dayes space, stirring it well every day about. When it is setled the space of three daies, and fallen down, then strain it out clear, and keep it until occasion serve to use it. Of this foresaid wine must the Patient drink at meals in stead of other wine the space of two moneths, or at the least every other day. This openeth the body very well, and therewith expelleth all grosse humours and *Cholera* out of the body. And if the wine cannot be brooked by it self, then may the same be tempered with other common wine, and drunken moderately. It expelleth melancholy, and all heavinesse of mind: it maketh merry, and of good cheer.

In the manner of all herb wines these are highly commended for this sickenesse: viz. of Burrage, Bugloss, and of Harts tongue, and of Tamarisk: which not onely take away melancholick humors, but do withstand the quartain Ague which is caused by melancholy.

Of Confections you may use *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, and *Diambos*. Also Conserve of Violets, of Roses, of Bugloss, and of Rosemary. Treacle, and Mithridate, taken the waight of one drach. is very commodious for this: for that they do both diminish melancholy, and take away the heavinesse of the mind, fear and sadnesse that may proceed of Melancholy.

The confected Citron pils do repugne all melancholick accidents, Confected Nutmegs do nourish fresh blood. For meats in stead of other sauce, Sugar is to be used. It is before discovered, that bathing in sweet water is very profitable. So are also cupping glasses set unpicked upon the sides, whereby to extract all windinesse.

It is also to use the grosse powder, which in the first Part. the 12. Chapter, and 1. Booke described, which is ordained for the memory.

The fifteenth Chapter.

Of the Bowels or Guts.

Like as we hitherto described the Stomack, the Liver, the Gall, and the Spleen, and made full declaration thereof: so will we now discourse of the next adjacent parts, before that we come to the Kidneyes: to wit, of the bowels or guts, and all that concerneth them. We affirm then that beneath the stomach the bowels have their beginning, which are parted into

The first three and uppermost are very subtile and thin; for which cause they be called in Latine *Gracilia intestina*, into the which one part of the digested meats are conveyed. The other three sorts of the bowels be the undermost, which are more thick and fleshlier than the three uppermost, whereby the sharpnesse and hardnesse of the *Stercora* should the lesse bruise them. And these six sorts of bowels have their name given them by reason of their greatnesse, and property of their operations, and not for that they be six several things: for they hold fast one upon another, so that they may rightly be taken for one Gut, which is placed in the belly after a wonderful manner with many kinds of crooks and windings about, and reacheth from the stomach even to the fundament. And to speak particularly thereof, the first which beginneth at the stomach, is called of the Latinists *Duodenum*, and that for this cause, because it is twelve fingers breadth long.

The second (which *Galenus* calleth the first) they do name *Jejunum*, which is the empty gut, because it is always empty. This gut hath some crooks and turnings, afterwards it doth reach forth straight one even to the liver.

The third is by the Grecians called *Ileon*, and by the Latinists *Volvulus*, which is the winding gut; not onely for that by his length it twisteth and windeth about, but also for this cause (as the learned write) because there be ingendred in this gut great Cholick and gripings, which do draw hither and thitherwards through their great pains, as now in one, and then in another place they be most violently perceived. Thus are these three (as is said) thin and subtile of substance, differing onely herein, that *Ileon* is not found always empty, like as the two former.

The fourth gut which they do call *Cæcum*, that is, the blind, and the *Mesenterium*, being the annexed gut, which they do call *Colonus*, for that it seemeth that it hath but one going out or issuing: whereas notwithstanding the Anatomists do attribute twain unto it; we will call it also the bag, for that it is like to a fat stomach, yet somewhat lesse, and better to receive all that must be avoided through going to stool.

The fift is *Colon*, and by the Latinists called *Chassum intestinum*. This gut is fleshier then any of all the rest, also of a reasonable length and crookednesse, in the which and especially in the end of it, the meat is converted to dung: which (before and ere that it be digested) the learned do call *Chylum*. In this foresaid gut doth the Cholick properly ingender.

The last gut is *Intestinum rectum*, which is the Arsegut, that is called *Longanum*, for that it doth not crook, and stretcheth to the end of the fundament. These are now the lower guts, and they be otherwhiles called the lower belly. But what each sort of these bowels have for a nature, property, power, vertue, and operation, were here too long, and contrary to our purpose, to decipher, because we do not here think to discourse of any thing, but onely the cures of the diseases that the bowels or guts are subject unto.

Of the pain and griping of the guts in General. §. 1.

IN both these sorts of the guts come great outward gripings, stitches, and pain, whereof there be two sorts: the one *Iliaca*, the other *Cholica*. *Iliaca* is in the uppermost small guts, and *Cholica* in the undermost bowels; which sorts of pains or stitches have their names of the bowels, or the bowels of these foresaid gripings or sicknesse. And because that in both these sorts of pains of the bowels the remedies are alike, therefore in other diseases they be greatly differing, therefore we will treat of both these severally.

Afterwards we will also determine of the Worms in the bowels, of all other diseases which are to be ascribed to the bowels, as of all the scourings, of bloody flix, and obstructions, &c. whereof we have heretofore discoursed, &c. where be many kinds of things to be found for the pain of the guts.

Of the uppermost Pain and griping of the Guts Iliaca Passio, *which the common man calleth* Cholica. § 2.

ILeos, or *Iliaca Passio*, are gripings or stitches in the uppermost small guts, which be caused of some obstruction or swellings of the guts: whereby the congested filth or corruption cannot fall down into the great guts: whereby such great intollerable pain, sickneſſe, and gripings do ensue, that the guts seem to be bored through with a bodkin, and that commonly with a continual vomiting and parbraking: yet not in all Patients.

Therefore, if so be that this pain, pricking, and obstruction do get the mastery; then doth there follow it a stinking belching, yea a parbraking of all filthineſſe and of ordure through the mouth, and that by reason the stopping beneath is so great, that neither ordure nor wind can evacuate beneath; neither can it be opened through Clisters, whereby it must needs follow, that all the belchings do draw the wind and filth upwards, and must lastly be avoided through the mouth.

Certain learned men do dispute of these causes, and that not without reason: for some do think, that it is not the right ordure which is ejected by the mouth, but that it should be onely a certain filthy and corrupted meat which lyeth stinking in the stomach, because the same cannot be expelled: but be it how it will, this sickneſſe is nevertheleſſe so terrible and painful, that certain ancient Physitians do call the same *Domine miserere*, Lord have mercy upon me. And it is a grievous sickneſſe indeed: for besides all that is said, if it come with a great heat, then it doth commonly cause an impostume in the bowels, whereby cometh the cramp, and the contracture of the sinews, so that the sick person thereby doth lose his senses and runneth mad. These and other signs which shall hereafter follow, are so deadly, that scarcely ever any one recovereth his health again.

The common people which have no understanding of natural things which pertain to mans body, do call this *Iliaca* the Mother in men, like as the common people in *Italy* do call it *Paron*, which is, Father, whereas notwithstanding men have no mother in them. The causes of this *Iliaca Passio*, are inward and outward; the outward may be through fals, thrusts or strokes on these places: or through drinking of much cold water, through much binding, grosse meats, as hard Cheese, Cow beef, or any other hard flesh which is not well sodden or rosted, salt Pork, and principally of ill boyled wood Pigions, or meats which be swallowed down not well chewd. Item, there be more things which be hurtful for this sickneſſe; as Peaſe, Beans, Medlars, Quinces, Services, Pears, Sloes, and such like binding fruits. For this pain of the belly is commonly more rife in harvest, when fruits are found most abundant, than at any other time of the year. These sicknesses may also be caused of cold and piercing winds, as the Northen winds; as also to the contrary, out of great heat and great labour: and lastly, through venim taken. The inward causes commonly proceed from other parts: as if there be any impostume present, whether it be in the Bowels or in the Liver, or in the sucking veins called *Venæ Meſaraicæ*, in the Kidneyes, or in the Bladder, or when the Bowels through some vapour fall down into the privities. If so be that the cause be in the bowels, thereof there be six: to wit, if the gut *Ilion* or *Colon* be too hot or too cold, or be straughted with any cold tough matter, or through wind, or obstructed with some hard corruption, or when the bowels be full of wreathed worms: lastly, this disease may also be caused through faintneſſe of the expulsive, or strength of the retentive vertue.

Concerning the signs, they may be demanded of the sick persons or standers by. But if there be any impostume in any other parts, it may be known by the place affected where the impostume is. The hot impostumes of the guts are discerned by the continual agues, thirst, and panting or beating of the same part; whereas to the contrary the cold impostumes be without great pain and without agues, but onely with a kind of heavineſſe and tumour: and these commonly assail a man that is accustomed to use much cold and moist meats, as milk, fish, and such like. If this sickneſſe be caused through the obdurated corruption of the bowels, then is there with it an extream pain, so that it seemeth to the patient that his bowels are cut up, and that chiefly if he have taken before any such things as may cause these bindings, and harden the filth or corruption, as inward or outward heat, and through use of dry things. Or if this disease come through wind, then

doth the pain depart from one place unto another, with a kind of rumbling, and that with such stitches, as if the bowels were prickt through with auls. And if the same be caused of cold slime, then be cold rheumes felt, and such like in the bowels and that chiefly through certain meats taken, which do increase *Phlegma*.

Of the pain or griping of the guts, which is called Cholica. §. 3.

Cholos or *Cholica Passio*, is a pain of the bowels, to wit, (as is before discoursed) of the nethermost guts, which is caused, when the superfluity which nature is enured, naturally to avoid and cast from her, is stopt and hindred, and if the corruption, winds, or worms be not expelled, as they were wont to be. But the pain of the cholick cometh commonly by fits, ceasing otherwhiles, and then immediatly returning with great intollerable pain, with heavy breath, with shivering, shaking and sweating.

The causes of this cholick are for the most part the same with *Ileus Passio*: for both of these sorts of pains in the guts be matched so near together, that they may well be called sisters. But there is onely this difference between them both, that the nethermost bowels be fat by nature, and therefore may gather fatnesse unto them, that by that means the guts are made so narrow, that the hard ordure cannot passe through them, but is utterly hindred.

The signs of the Cholick be these; when the ordure and winds are daily shut up and hindred. And although the stool be furthered through Clisters, or some other means, yet is the ordure nevertheless hard and burnt, as Sheeps dung, or Goats dung, whereby the natural appetite doth abate from day to day, until it be utterly lost. Thence followeth then so great pain and gripings about the Navel, that it seemeth that the guts be knit or haled together with strings, or pluckt asunder, and bored through with bodkins. As often as one stirreth him, or turneth from one side to the other, then doth the pain increase vehemently in this sickness; the Patient is alwaies greedy of sowr and sharp things, and hath a loathing of all that is fat.

Each humour whereof this pain is caused, is known by these signs following: If it be caused of *Phlegma*, then is the same with pain, heavinesse, and desire of all warmth. The pain is to be known by the feeling. Old folks, and such as be flegmatick by nature, are most of all subject to this passion. Also the winter, eating of much fish, of much fruit, and of much milk, excessive rioting, and great quietnes much going into the water, and such like, be to this sickness a great cause. If in case that this sickness be caused through heat, then is there a great inflammation, and with it drought of the tongue, great thirst, itch, and great heat in the urine. Chiefly if the person be young, and in the Summer time, if he be cholerick by nature, if he have used much about the fire, or much spice. Or if this pain of the bowels be caused through obstruction, it may be known by the going to the stool, and pain of the guts, to wit, as if the same were torn asunder, and struck through. And if the Patient would go to the stool with great forcement, then is it all to be avoided very like to clay, the which may be caused through long use of any old meat, through the Patients drie complexion, and through long continuing labour, and with much sweating in the hot aire.

Or, if this Colick proceed through wind, then is heard much rumbling in the bowels and puffing up of the belly, his excrements do swim upon the water because they be full of wind: and so much the more may one be ascertained thereof, if one knew that the Patient had eaten before much Pease, Beans, Chestnuts, Rapes, Figs, Must, and such like windy meats or drinks, much water, or much watered wine.

Or when this pain of the bowels is caused of any hot impostumes, then doth the patient feel hot stitches; he hath thirst and great pain, and that alwaies in one place; he hath also a red face, exturberation of the eyes, and restraint of the urine.

But if this grief be caused through a cold impostume, for it be all these things before-mentioned much feebler: being caused of superfluous meats, of much fish, of much cold and moist herbs, fruits, Swines flesh, and such like: also the stools be full of *Phlegma*.

Of

Of the difference of these pains in the Guts. §. 4.

ABove all those which before are discovered, lie these two sorts of pains in the bowels disagreeing in this: to wit, that in the pain of the uppermost guts, the extremity is much greater, and can kill a body much sooner; for that these uppermost tender and small guts are much more sensible than the nethermost great guts: Secondly, because that *Iliaca* is unstedfast (as it is said before) and removeth from one place into another: Thirdly, because this *Iliaca* is higher then the navel. And when this pain setleth there and about the reins, then it is the general opinion of all the learned, that in no wise, neither through medicines, neither through any other means this sharp matter or wind which hath no vent, lying shut up in the crooked gut *Ilion*, and there making this pain, may be made to avoid neither yet expelled, and that there will follow of it the Dropsie *Tympania*, wherein the wind doth after spread it self abroad between the skin and the flesh behind over the whole body, as hath been said more at large before in the twelfth Chapter and fifteenth §. The fourth difference is, that the uppermost pains of the guts or *Iliaca* are to be helped through medicines from above, and the undermost pain *Cholica*, through Clisters: for that the Clisters be very commodious for the *Cholera*, and very little for *Iliaca*, or nothing at all: Fifthly, if there appear other accident with it, as swouning, trembling of the heart, short breath, much waking, or cold of the outward parts; they be then alwaies the more grievous in *Iliaca* then in *Cholica*: because that it is nearer to the heart, and therefore the more perillous.

Now to come to the remedies, we will (according to the custome of the ancient Physitians) distinguish these pains of the bowels by five several causes, whereof the first is obstruction or binding of the body: the second *Phlegma*: the third winds: the fourth impostumes: the fift Cholera and heat. But we will here declare for the first certain things that be generally convenient for both these griefs: the remedies which be ordained and used in both these pains of the bowels, are also very meet for either of them; onely (as it is said) the Clisters for *Iliaca passio*, do seldom do any good: not that the same be therefore altogether forborn, for both must alwaies be first indevoured to open the passages of the guts, and as soon as one perceiveth the pain, to be presently in hand with Clisters, and also to make somewhat ready which may be laid upon the belly to warm the same therewith, like as with these things following: to wit, Pellitory of the wall, Mugwort, Southernwood, Fennel, Elecampane leaves, Wormwood, white Mints and Marjoram: of these herbs take as many and which you will, put them in a bag, and let them seethe in Wine: afterwards wring them out, and so lay them warm upon the place of the pain.

Item, take Millet or Oates, mix them with Salt, and a little Annis, Fennel, Dill, and with Linseed: parch them, and lay them on the pain: You may also make and use after the same manner a bag with Cammomil, Venus hair with Stechas. Item, take *Althea* Butter, Barrows grease, Hens and Ducks grease, ana. ℥. ß. oyl of Cammomil, ℥. 1. anoint the place of the pain with it; what is particularly to be used besides for either of these pains in the guts, shall be distinctly shewed hereafter.

Of the pain in the guts through obstruction or binding of the body. §. 5.

IN the beginning of this description of the pain in the bowels, when it cometh chiefly through the binding of the body, it is to be cured with Clisters, which hereafter be described against winds, and with the purgative medicines, whereof divers be set down in the eleventh Chapter, 20. §. And both these are to be used so often, and so long, until that the body be throughly opened.

In like manner, this Patient must indeavour himself to eat all soluble meats and herbs, viz. Mallows, and herb Mercury dresst with fresh broths, with Butter and Sallad oyl, which for this disease is not onely needful, but also much commended.

Lay also outwardly upon it this plaister following: Take Mallows, Hollihock roots, and Bearfoot, of each one handful, Fenegreek meal, and Linseed meal, of each six ounces, oyl of Violets, Hens grease, Barrows grease, and fresh Butter, of each

two ounces, four white Lilly roots rosted. All the herbs are to be sodden, and afterwards stamped, and you are afterwards to temper the rest amongst them over the fire, and then to apply them warm upon it. For this is also very good the sirupe of Violets drunken with some broth wherein Damask Prunes, Raisons and Figs have been decocted, and wherewith some Caffie is tempered. He may also use the herbs and other things stamped, whereof the Cliſters be boyled, and make a plaister thereof with Butter, oil of Violets, and with Barrows greaſe, and lay it over all the belly. He must also eschue cold aire, and must keep him alwaies warm, continuing this so long, until that you have his body very open.

Of the pain in the guts through ſlime and Phlegme.

THe other formen discovered cause is *Phlegme*, which (as is sufficiently shewed before) doth shew it self apparantly, if with a tolerable pain there be no great heat nor thirst adjoyned. And if there be any salt matter (which the Patient shall perceive in his mouth) or any obstruction of the body, stinking, belching, and great faintnesse with it, then must preparative medicines be ministred to the Patient, and such as may procure no wambling, and so begin with Sirupes following: as the sirupe of white Mints, of Wormwood, and all sorts of *Oxymel*, or any such like. Afterward is commended by the ancient Physitians the confection *De Gallia* for to purge, which followeth hereafter: Take Mastick, Cloves, Ginger, Pepper, long Pepper, Cinamom, Nutmegs, *Gallia Muſchata*, and *Diagridion*, of each a like quantity: afterwards wring out the juice of sowr Quinces, and put as much hony as juice unto it: then take of both these one ounce and a half, and put half an ounce of powder unto it which is made of the foresaid things: but let this juice and hony seethe before to the thicknesse of a sirupe, and afterwards temper the other things amongst it, whereof you are to give at once one quarter of an ounce or two drach. and a half. Also the purging confections of Quinces, which be described in the eight Part, are very meet for this purpose, and in like sorte *Electuarium Indicum*.

A purging Confection: Take Turbith one quarter of an ounce, Ginger one scruple, Mastick half a scruple, Sugar three drach. temper them well together, and then take it with what you will. But if so be that the sick body be not addicted to vomit, and that the same be not seated, then are these Pils following to be exhibited unto him, called *Aggregatæ*. Take Coloquint, and *Sagapenum*, of each ten drach. *Diagridion*, three drach. and one scruple; then make pils of it with wine, and give thereof one drach. at once: they ease very speedily the pain. For this is also very good *Benedicta Laxativa*, or *Hiera Picra* one ounce, *Hiera Picra magna* half a drach. Turbith, and Ginger, of each one scruple: then mix them together with a good draught of wine. But in case that in this cholick the purging medicines will not help, and the sickneſſe still increaseth, then make these suppositories following: and if so be that these suppositories will not sufficiently relish, then are cliſters to be used, which are the very best and safest remedies for the cholick which one can devise, therefore we will here rehearse some of them, and begin first with the mildest. But note alwaies (which is good in all cliſters that are to be used for the cholick) that the herbs, and all that is to be used with them, are to be decocted in such broths wherein Calves heads, Lambs heads and feet be boyled: for these broths be very requisite for all obstructions of the body.

Take Cammomil, Hollihocks, and Mallows, of each one handful, Fennel, Annis, Carraway, of each one quarter of an ounce: seethe them all together in Wine or water. Take 15. or 16. ounces of this decoction, and dissolve therein fresh Butter, and Sallat oyl, of each two ounces and a half, or three ounces, with the yolk of an Egg: temper them well, and minister it warm. Item, take one pound of Linseed oyl, and use it very warm for a Cliſter: Or take Mallows, Hollihocks, Beets, Mercury, Fenegreek and Linseed, of each one handful, 5. or 6. Figs cut, Annis, Fennel, of each one quarter of an ounce, Bran one handful: seeth them all together in sufficient water. Of this decoction you are to take 15. or 16. ounces, and then temper amongst it *Hiera Picra*, and Caſſie, ana. ℥ 1. oyl of Roſe. ℥ 3. and then make a Cliſter thereof.

Another: Take Mallows, Hollihocks, Mercury, and Bearfoot, of each one handful, ten or twelve fat Figs, pownded Fenegreek, and Linseed, of each one ounce and a half, Dill seed one ounce, Bran half a handful, oyl of *Sesamum*, and Hony, of each one ounce and a half, *Sal gemma* one drach. Caſſie, and *Hiera Picra*, of each three quarters of an

ounce

temper them all together in sixteen ounces or more of the foresaid decoction unto a Clister. You have before in the eleventh Chapter, and the 21. §. a Clister of Malmsey, which is also convenient for this use.

Item, take the juice of Planetarie, and the juyce of Wormwood, of each six ounces, one Nutmegg, Poeonie kernels beaten very small half a drachm, make them all together warm, and minister three of these Clisters in one day.

Another. Take Annis, and the seeds of Pellitory, of each one quarter of an ounce, Bilsbony leaves one handful: seethe them all together in wine, and take thereof 15. or 16. ounces: melt Butter therein, and Linseed, of each two ounces, then temper them together. When the patient hath avoyded this Clister, then let him afterwards drink five or six ounces of the Oyl of sweet Almonds, and that tempered with Sugar.

Item, take the oyl of Rue twelve ounces, five or six Leeks heads, stamp them and seethe them in the oyl; then strain it through a cloth, and use the oyl for a Clister.

Item, take Pellitory, Centory, Marjoram, and field mints, of each one handful, Annis, Cumin, and peeled wild Saffron seed, of each one drach. polipody roots, Turbith, and Radish seed, of each half an ounce. *Sal gemma* one drach. temper all this into a Clister, as is aboveſaid.

You are also to observe here, that these and such like Clisters shal be ministred but onely when other remedies will not avail.

Item, oyl of Camomil is more precious then common oyl: but if Camomil cannot be gotten, then is the oyl of Linseed to be used in the stead of it: Also hereafter do follow sundry remedies against all pain of the guts, which serve also very well for the *Phlegma*.

Certain Potions for the cold Phlegma.

TAke the roots of Smallage, Fennel, and Parsly roots, of each two ounces, Annis, Fennel, Caraway, Parsly and Smallage seeds, of each one ounce, Radish two ounces: make a decoction of this, and drink thereof adayes oftentimes as warm as you can suffer it. Also once or twice a day drink a spoonful or twain of Rose Hony tempered together with the foresaid Potion.

Item, seethe an old Cock until the bones fall from the flesh, and in this broth seethe Polipody roots, the seeds of Dill, and of Annis, and drink otherwhiles a good draught of it. Also you may oftentimes with the waters and seeds of the foresaid roots, foment the place where the pain is, and afterwards anoint the place with oyl of Rue wherein Annis seeds are boyled.

Some do highly commend the oyl of Sulphur. viz. to drink in the Winter one drop or two with Muscadel Wine, or with vital water. It will marvellously help and expel all gripings in the guts of a cold occasion.

TAke the confected Elecampane roots, and confected Pimpernel roots, do assuage all pains of the bowels which proceed of cold. In like manner the confected Ginger doth comfort and strengthen all inward parts, and so doth also the roots of *Eringus*, when it is confected.

Amongst other Conserves, there be also meet and commodious the conserves of Pionie, and Rosemary, of Hyssop, of Spikenard and after purging, the Confections of *Trion Dianthaton*, and such like.

Of the pain in the guts through wind. §. 7.

THe third cause of these pains in the bowels are winds. If then this pain do come of no obstruction, and yet nevertheless one feel rumbling in the belly, and heareth the wind up and down in the belly, and if the pain do come by fits, and there abateth again: against this be those remedies to be used that do expel wind. For which, the Confection of Bayberries is so highly commended, that it is thought that her like cannot be found. At the Apothecaries they call this *Electuarium de Baccis Lauri*, and it is thus prepared. Take dry Rue one drachme, Ameos, Comin, Nardus seed, Lovage seed, Lovage, Caraway, bitter Almonds, long Pepper, *Daucus* seed, white Mints, Pepper, Cubebs, Bayberries, and Bevereod, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Sagapenum*, half an ounce, *Opopanacum* one drach. all these being pounded together and molten, then make a

confection

confection of it with clarified hony, and give the patient thereof the quantity of an hasel nut with a draught of wine. Marmalade with spices is also very meet for this purpose.

Item, in like sort be both the sorts of Treacle and Mithridate, for that they do waste wind, and be good for all cold diseases of the intrailes. Item, there is also fit for this use the confection of the Horseradish, which shall hereafter be expressed.

These confections following are also very commodious: viz. *De Cumino, Diatrion Piperion, Diagalanga, Diamisum, Diacalaminthe, Diapli is, Aromaticum Rosatum*, and after them a good draught of Wine.

If you desire to make a powder, then prepare this following: Take Ginger half an ℥. Annis one quarter of an ℥. prepared Coriander, one ℥. & ß. Mace, Galangal, Cubebs and Nutmegs, of each one ℥: This being beaten all small, then put as much Sugar unto it as you please. This powder consumeth all wind, and hindreth also the generation of other. You have also herebefore certain grosse powders for the stomach, which be also very good. In like manner do Annis, Fennel seed, Caraway, and comin, (either bare or confected, and taken before meat) consume all pain in the guts. The sirup of Wormwood expelleth also winds.

For this are also very convenient clisters. If they be made of such things as do cause wind to avoid, as this following: Take Mallowes, Holihock roots, Violet leaves, Bearfoot, and Beets, of each one handful, Centory, *Rapontica*, Calamus, white Mints, Marjoram, Southernwood, Rue, and Hyssop, of each half a handful; seethe them all together in sufficient water, and take fifteen or sixteen ounces thereof, hony of Roses, and oyl of Rue, of each three ounces, *Hiera Picra* one ounce, *Benedicta Laxativa*, half an ounce, then temper them all together.

Yet this clister is to be diminished or augmented according to the ability of the sick person. Suppositories may also be used for this, which are thus to be made: Take Rue and Comin, Caraway, of each one handful, Swines bread one root and a half, *Betas* one drach. clarified hony three ounces, make Suppositories thereof. Another: Take Bevercod, Hony, Oxe gall, and oyl of Violets, of each a like quantity, let them seethe somewhat thick; afterwards wet a Suppositorie in it, bounden at a threed, and use it before: it consumeth wind exceedingly and purgeth very much.

I have used with good successe the powder of the Alhandab, cubebs, Cardamom, pepper, Mechoacan, and with Hony made into pils: sleep after you take the pils.

Or Take seah olme, herb and root, stamp it small and Hydromel, drink it.

Potions and such like.

TAke the roots of Smallage, of Fennel and of Parsly, of each two ounces, Raisins, the stones taken out, two ounces and a half, ten or twelve fat Figs, twenty or four and twenty Jujubes: seethe them all together in two quarts of water even to the half, and take thereof three or four ounces tempered with the foresaid confection. The common people and husbandmen do commonly use slight things which they can best get, amongst which may this potion following be reckoned: Take fresh Cow dung about half an ℥. temper it with good wine and wring it through a cloth, and then drink thereof, it is much commended. Other do ascribe this to sheeps dung, also Chickweed is commended for the same boyled in water and so drunken. Likewise also Wormwood wine, or wormwood sodden in water: also Mead being drunken is very good for this pain; Wine measurably drunken driveth not onely the wind out of the bowels, but also out of all parts of the body. The wines of Harts tongue and Marjoram gentle, are also much commended for these pains in the guts, and more other aromatical wines, as of Galangal, Nutmegs, and Cloves.

Item, take *Species Justini* one drach. and drink the same twice a week with one ounce of Rose water, it is also good against the gravel. Master Tristrams water is also good against all pains in the guts: likewise is also commended one drach. of Bevercod drunken with one ounce of *Melicraton*.

In the mean time may outward things also be used for this, one may take the herbs, the seed, and other ingredientes whereof clisters have been made, wring them out hard, stamp them and temper them with Butter, with Barrows grease and oyl of Camomil unto a plaister, and so lay it warm over the belly, it is very good. But if one will lay any thing

thing upon the malady: then muſt the belly be warmed well before with warm clothes, for this may be made alſo the foreſaid bags of Millet and Salt: or take unbeaten Millet, Oates, and Fennel, or Bran, which you can get: parch them in a pan, and apply it warm upon the pain.

Item, take parched Linſeed ſix ounces, parched comin one ounce, Bran half a handful, beat them all groſſe and make a bag thereof, then let it ſeethe in water or wine a good ſpace, afterwards wring it out and lay it very warm upon it.

Item, take the oyl of Scorpions, oyl of bitter Almonds, and Turpentine, of each ſix ʒ. let them melt all by the fire, afterwards temper half a drach, of Saffron amongſt it. Laſtly dip ſheeps wool in it, and lay it warm upon the grief: or take Pellitory, and pownded Linſeed, of each one handful, powr two ounces of the oyl of Scorpions unto it, and let them be made hot together: afterwards put a little Saffron unto it, and uſe it as before. Warm bread laid upon the belly or the ſtomach, aſſwageth the pain, and is good againſt the ſuffocation of the mother or womb.

Another: Take Hony, Butter, Salt and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, let them ſeethe all together a good while until it begin to be ſomewhat tough, then ſpred it on a cloth, and bind it warm upon the belly.

Item, take wild Thyme, Marjoram, Caray leaves, Camomil, Wormwood and Sage, which you will, cut it ſmall, and put it into a bag, then make it moiſt with wine or water, and let it warm in a pan and uſe it as before. Or Cow dung and Butter, of each a like much: temper amongſt it half ſo much beaten Comin. Wolfs dung is alſo very good for this uſe, a plaiſter being made of it. For this is alſo good the plaiſter of Bayberries, which is deſcribed in the eleventh Chapter and the 5. §.

Item, another ſalve alſo which is deſcribed in the third Part, in the tenth Chapter and the 5. §. Take Comin, Caraways &c. Or prepare this following: Take Gooſe greaſe, and oyl of Scorpions, of each three ounces, Saffron one ſcruple, wax as much as ſufficeth.

The oyles following are alſo to be uſed for this diſeaſe, *viz.* oyl of Lillies, Camomil, Rue, Dill, of bitter Almonds, Spike, Bayberries, and Elecampane roots, of Penniroyal, and ſuch like oyles which be warm of nature, and chiefly if Ameos and Maſtick be boyled in them.

The bathing and fomenting is alſo very profitable for this ſickneſſe, which may be made as hereafter followeth; and be prepared according as the cauſe requireth. The baths of ſweet waters are very good to aſſwage the pain, and they be eſpecially commended after the cholick, and after purging; and that faſting. After bathing is ſome Treacle or Mithridate to be uſed and taken, and to ſweat after it.

For this be alſo good Sulphurie baths which be warm by nature. Now will we declare all the foreſaid things that expel wind and conſume it, and eſpecially thoſe which may be uſed for Bathes and Fomentations, viz. Rue, Dill, Roſemary, Fennel, *Chamedryos* and filed Cypres.

Amongſt the ſeeds, Annis, Fennel, Comin, Caraway, ſeeds of Rue, Ameos, and Dill ſeed. Note ye that the patient muſt ſit no deeper then to the breaſt in this bath: and alſo may not tarry long therein, that he fall into no ſwound. Otherwiſe the bath is very profitable, for it openeth the pores, and doth conſume the wind whereby the pain is delayed. You may wet a ſponge in his bath, and lay the ſame oftentimes warm upon the belly. Likewiſe you may alſo fill a bladder and hold it warm upon the belly. If you have not this decocted water, then fill a bladder half full with Linſeed oyl, and make it warm in hot water, and ſo lay it upon the belly.

Another bath.

AFter that the body is well purged, he may ſit in a Tub with warm Sallad oyl, and when the pain is aſſwaged, then to go out of it again. But if the oyl cannot be had nor be gotten, then uſe this enſuing: Take Pellitory, Violet leaves, Rue, Camomil, Linſeed, Fenegreek, Hollihocks, and the ſprigs of Coleworts, of each three handfuls; ſeethe them all together in water for a bath. Of this may you alſo make a Lotion for his feet, be it ceaſing or warming according as the caſe requireth.

For a Fume: Take Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Lignum Aloes, and *Sandaraca* of each a like quantity, caſt it upon hot coles, and receive the fume upon the belly, or where the

pain

pain is, for it doth draw much wind unto it. The place alſo is firſt to be rubbed ſo long untill it be thorow red, and afterwards well anointed with any of the foreſaid oyls.

The wind may alſo be conſumed through good government, (if the ſame be put in practiſe) through exerciſe and ſobriety: for that where there is not much moiſture received into the body, there cannot ingender much wind. And when ſuch a patient hath recovered his health, then muſt he beware of green herbs, milk, and all other things which be windy. He muſt alſo addict himſelf to drink hony water with ſpices, or prepare this Mead enſuing.

Take two ounces of clarified hony, three pints of water, ſeethe and skum it well. When it is cleanſed, then are you to hang therein half an ounce of groſſe beaten Pepper, and afterwards let them ſeethe again untill there remain about one quart of moiſture. When it is then cold, take out the Pepper being well wrung out. For this ſerveth alſo burnt Wine, or Aqua vitæ, yet there is nothing better then good old wine moderately drunken. He is to be reſtrained from all watered wine, becauſe it ingendreth winds. He muſt likewiſe beware of all cold drinks, viz. the water of all herbs, fruit, fiſh, milk, and ſuch like.

Of all manner of pain in the belly. §. 8.

ALbeit that herebefore there be many things diſcovered for to aſſwage the pain of the belly, notwithſtanding we muſt here ſet down ſomewhat of the *Narcotica*, which be things that take away or do numbe the ſenſes, for which we adviſe in the uſe of them to begin alway with the leaſt, and ſo to come to the greateſt, ſo that nature be not violated. Therefore where great pain is, you muſt apply parched Milt, Panick and ſalt.

Item, take Camomil, Melilot, Rue, Marjoram, Penniroyal, Roſemary, Comin, Annis, Fennel and Dill ſeed beaten groſſe, which one will, and as much as one will: let them ſeethe in wine, and whileſt it is warm wet a ſpunge in it, and lay it upon the place of the pain. Make bags of the foreſaid ſeeds and herbs, and ſprinkle wine upon a hot ſtone, and warm them thereon. Or ſeethe it in wine, and then lay them upon the belly as all other. Afterwards anoint the place with warm oyl, viz. oyl of Camomil and of *Coſtus*, but if the pain be intollerable great in the uppermoſt guts that one feareth to fall thereby in a ſwound, one muſt (through extreme need) put things in practiſe which do numbe the ſenſes: for which the Confection *Philonium* is to be uſed, and chiefly with the purging Confection *Diaphœnicon*, but this muſt be done with the counſel of a learned Phyſitian, as we have oftentimes already admoniſhed, yet ſhall ſuffice half a drach. tempered with half an ounce of the Conſerve of Roſes.

Others in ſtead of *Philonium*, uſe the pils of *Cynogloſſa*, for that they be ſafer; alſo the *Triphera Saracenica*.

And albeit that through all theſe former reaſons it may be ſufficiently underſtood, how that he is to be kept with meat and drink, nevertheleſſe we will briefly rehearſe it once again for method ſake.

This patient is oftentimes and very long to be rubbed with warm clothes. He is alſo to enure him alwayes before meales to walk eaſily. He is alſo to be reſtrained from all Fruit, Peaſe, Beans, and Muſt, and all that procreateth winds. He ſhall alſo eat all light meats and dreſſe his meat with Dill ſeed, Comin and Annis; Partriches, and all other field Fowls are very good for him. The juice of old Cocks, boyled with the foreſaid ſeeds, is here much commended.

For this ſickneſſe alſo is much adviſed to eat Hedghogs fleſh roſted, which cauſeth all pains of the intrailes to ceaſe. His bread muſt be a little more ſalted and raiſed: then commonly good old clear and white Wine, if there be no Ague with it, is to be his drink.

Of the pain of the bowels through any impoſtume and other affections of the guts. §. 9.

WE have numbred this herebefore in the 4. §. for the fourth cauſe of the pains in the bowels. But in caſe this pain in the bowels be cauſed through any impoſtume and ulcer of the liver, of the ſpleen, Kidneys, or any other parts, then is the ſame to be known by the place where thoſe parts do dye: Like as by each of theſe is ſufficiently declared what is to be done for it. But if the bowels be hurt without any impoſtume

and

and that the ſame may be felt with the finger or any other inſtrument, then may you find all that is deſcribed in the 10th Chapter and 3. 5. But if in the pain of the belly through heat there ſhall appear any impoſtume in the one ſide, then muſt a vein be opened on the other ſide: for the ſame muſt not be forefollowed, for that it is much needfull. Firſt, he muſt before other things have a vein opened within the third or fourth day in the contrary ſide of the pain, and afterwards on the other ſide where the pain is felt. This being now done, then take two parts of water, and one part of Vinegar, and make a ſponge wet therein, and ſo apply it to the pain. When the ſponge beginneth to be warm, then wet it again, and reiterate this oftentimes.

Moreover, the patient is oftentimes to be purged with Manna, Caſſie, and ſour Dates, and let him be ordered like as one is to be ordered who hath an Ague. He muſt alſo beware of Vinegar, ſour Pomgranates and alſo all four things which may hurt the bowels. Boyled Barly, and Oaten paps, Mallows, Burrage, and Orange decocted in Hen broth, or eaten alone be very meet for him: and if the Ague be not great, then are they to be dreſt with Butter or with oyl. He muſt alſo keep a good diet, and muſt uſe much oyl of *Seſamum* in his meats, his drink muſt be Barly water decocted with Licorice, and all his whole government cooling and moiſtening, as followeth hereafter. Take Mallows with the roots, Hollihock roots, Bearfoot, and Violet leaves, of each one handful, Burrage flowers, and flowers of Bugloſſe, of each half an ounce, 4. or 5. Prunes, ſeethe them all together in a pot of water even to the half, and then take of this decoction 12. or 16 ounces, and temper with it two ounces of Caſſie, oyl of Violets 3. ounces, of hony one ounce, then make a cliſter of it. This is alſo eſpecially commended being made with Goats milk, Caſſie, and oyl of Almonds. When as then the impoſtume is broken up, then are you to uſe for to cleanſe it, cliſters, barly water and hony, and afterwards conſolidating medicines. But if ſo be that one perceive any parings of the bowels in the ſtools, and that with great pain, then are theſe following to be uſed.

Take ſomewhat leſſe then a pound of ſteeled water and ſeethe therein broad and picked Plantain and Roſes, of each one M. even to the half. Take 12. or 16. ounces thereof, and melt therein one ounce of Deer ſuet, three yolks of Eggs well beaten, oyl of Roſes two ounces, Tho. Sugar one ounce, and temper them all together.

Another: Take broad Plaintain, wild Tanſie, and Comfry, of each one handful, Pomgranate pils one ounce: ſeethe them all together in a pot of ſteeled water even to the half: then add to this decoction two ounces of Deer ſuet, *Trochiſcos de Carabe, De Terra ſigillata*, of each one quarter of an ounce, then make a Cliſter of it.

For plaiſters, take the ſodden herbs and the other things of the former Cliſters, pownd them to grout, and temper therewith half an ounce of the pownded red Saunders, Barly meal two ounces, and oyl of Violets as much as doth ſuffice for a plaiſter, and then lay it warm over it, it doth abate the pain very much.

Another: Take Mallows, and Hollihock roots with the herbs of Nightſhade, Violets, Camomil, and Melilot, of each half anounce: beat them all together, and temper therewith oyl of Violets, of water Lillies and Ducks greaſe, of each three drach. Linſeed meal two ounce, and then make a plaiſter of it.

If need require to purge more, then may the ſame be done with the conſerve of

But if ſo be this pain of the bowels be with a cold tumour, then muſt ſtronger Cliſters be uſed, as there be ſundry ſet forth in the 6. §. againſt the pain of the bowels through [illegible]. But firſt are the oyl of Camomil with Vinegar, and the oyl of Roſes (that it may pierce and ſtrengthen the bowels) for to be uſed: after the Cliſters expreſſed before in theſe ſorts may this plaiſter following for mollification be uſed for to riben, and aſſwage the pain. Take Linſeed meal, Fenegreek meal, Wheaten meal, and Barly meal of each two ounces, ſix yolks of Eggs, oyl of Camomil, and good wine as much as is needfull for to make a plaiſter, this muſt be laid warm upon it.

Another: Take eighteen or twenty Figs, ſeethe them well in water, crumbs of white bread two ounces, White meal one ounce and a half, unſalted Barrows greaſe, and oyl of Camomil as much as is needfull for to make a plaiſter: let them all ſeethe a little together, and then lay them warm upon it. you may alſo put warm unto it one ounce of beaten Camomil

It happeneth alſo ſometimes, that in theſe impoſtumes the urine is retained back, becauſe

becauſe that the conduits are ſtopt through the tumor: therefore if that befall, the *Sapina* muſt be opened, and the Kidnyes and the privities annointed with the oyl of Camomil, and oyl of Violets, and alſo are Cliſters and plaiſters to be uſed, like as ſhall hereafter be further ſpoken of in the provocation of urine.

Of the Pain in the Bowels through heat and Cholera. §. 10.

THis is the laſt cauſe whereby (as is diſcourſed before in the fourth §. the pain of the guts may be ingendred; and then it cometh with heat and an Ague, it is not then ſo hurtful or lingring as that which proceedeth of *Phlegma*. For this muſt the Patient firſt of all be purged with ſyrups and ſuch like things as do coole, and further be kept with neceſſary meat and drink. He is laſtly to uſe Cliſters in this manner following: firſt of all he is to take certain dayes together preparative ſyrups, as both the ſyrups of Vinegar, *Oxyſaccharn*, ſyrups of Violets, of Roſes, of Endive, and of water Lilies, with ſome decoction wherein the ſame herbs have been decocted, whereof divers be deſcribed in the third Part.

For Purging.

TAke freſh Caſſie one ounce, or one ounce and a half, the juyce of Endive well clarified and ſkummed three or four ounces: then make a potion of it, and give it him warm, or in ſtead of the juyce (if one cannot get the ſame) then take Endive water.

Another; Take eighteene or twenty Prunes, and five or ſix fat Figs: ſeethe them all together in ſufficient water, and take of this decoction three or four ounces, temper Caſſie therein, and oyl of ſweet Almonds five or ſix ounces tempered with Sugar, and the ſame drunken at once looſe the body very gently, and is alſo moſt ſure that one may give to the children newly born: Likewiſe *Manna* decocted with ſowr Dates, Prunes, and with Sugar, is alſo very requiſite to looſe and coole.

Concerning the meats, he muſt be reſtrained like as in other hot ſickneſſes, and muſt cheifly eſchew alwayes meats which make wind. But oyl of Almonds uſed in his meat, be very meet for him.

All his Cliſters muſt be made ſoluble and cooling, like as be theſe following: Take peeled Barly, Mallowes, Hollihock roots, and Violets, of each one handful; Prunes, *Sebeſtes*, of each eight or ten, the ſeeds of Melons, of Purſlaine, of Gourds, of each one ounce, Bran half a handful: Seethe them all together, and take of this decoction and put unto it oyl of Roſes, and of Violets, of each one ounce and a half, Caſſie for the Cliſter one ounce, *Electuarium de Succo roſarum* five drachmes: then make a Cliſter of it, like as hath been ſufficiently ſhewed.

But here is to be noted, that if any parings avoid with the guts, then muſt oyl of Roſes be moſt of all uſed: yet oyl of Violets doth aſſwage the pain of the guts if the ſame come through any ſharpneſſe or any heat.

Or take Mallowes, Hollihocks, Bearfoot, Violet hearbs, and Beates, of each one handfull, Barly and Bran, of each half a handful: let them ſeethe all together, and then take of this decoction twelve or ſixteen ounces, and temper Caſſie in it one ounce, *Hiera Picra* three quarters of an ounce, *Benedicta Laxativa* three drachmes, oyl of Violets three ounces, Salt one drachme or twain, miniſter it as is accuſtomed.

This enſuing is alſo ſpecial good if any body have been bounden certain dayes together: Take twelve or ſixteene ounces of Cow milk, temper one ounce of Caſſie amongſt it, and miniſter it warme.

There may alſo a cooling plaiſter be layd upon the belly, whereof there be divers diſcovered againſt the heat of the ſtomach and the Liver: yet muſt alwayes ſome Camomil, Wormwood, and ſuch like be tempered amongſt it.

For a cooling you may alſo take preſerved *Ribes*, or any ſuch like, as in the Eleventh Chapter, §. 6. is ſhewed.

Of the pain of the Belly Mixt with gnauch. §. 11.

FOr this diſeaſe is much adviſed, to take 3. dayes one after another, a good draught of the water of Eldern flowers, which helpeth marvelous well. Item, take the juyce of

Pelitory

pellitorie eight ounces, oyl of Rue two ounces: seethe the dung of a Dog in it, which hath eaten nothing but bones: strain it through, and use it for a Clister. It is also much advised for to take for purgation half an ounce of *Diaphœnicon*, and *Sebestes* one drachme and a half, *Phylonium Romanum* one scruple, *Species Iustini* half a scruple: temper them all together, and drink it, and then a little fat broth after it. But how easily an error is committed in distinguishing the pain of the guts, from the pain of the reins, and the pain of the gravel, it shall hereafter be declared, where we shall speake of the gravel.

Of the pain in the Bellies of young Children. §. 12.

WE have here briefly shewed of the oyl of sweet Almonds which is to be tempered with Sugar, and may be given boldly to new born children for the pain of the belly: This is alwayes found to be good. The water of Larks spurs is also good for the same, as well in old folks as in young children. For a small Clister, take Mallowes, Hollihock roots, and *Pyrola*, of each half a handful, Melilot and Rosemary, of each half so much: seethe them in a pint of water, and then take of this decoction little or much, according to the bigness of the child, Hony of Roses half an ounce, oyl of Camomil two ounces, Salt half a drachme; temper them all together. Item, take unto small children alwayes a spoonful of the water of black Cherries in their pap, for it asswageth the pain. Oyl of Nutmegs annointed about the Navel, and a warm cloth laid upon it: and in like manner the oyl of Scorpions is also very commodious for this infirmity. Also Chickweed fryed in oyl, and applyed warm on the belly. Also take Mints, and Mallowes fryed in fresh Butter, or Camomil and Wormwood, of each a like much: cut them all together meetly small, and put them in a little bag: then make it meetly warm in hot Wine, wring it well out, and so lay it over the childs belly. Item, cut an Onion very small, and fry it in oyl, and bind the same upon the Navel of young children and old folks.

Albeit, that it be not our intent to write much of Chirurgerie, yet nevertheless, we can not let this escape: &c. if any be wounded in the belly that his bowels issue forth, and then happen to swell, that they cannot be put back into the body, then warm them with warm milk or wine. After that may the Chirurgion well know what he hath to do.

Of the Wormes in the belly. §. 13.

FIrst of all, there is not any thing more certain, then that in mans body, likeas in stinking kennels, in Cheese, and in stinking flesh, wormes do grow, and that out of a putrified matter: But in man do they chiefly proceed through unaccustomed meats that cannot be digested: also of Surfeiting and overcharging of the stomach. Item, through bathing, and use of venery with a full stomach, through eating of fresh Beanes, of salt fish that is without scales, through Swines flesh, and such like things more. Also these wormes do grow by eating much fruit. Therefore are children most annoyed thereby about harvest.

These wormes do ingender sometimes in the stomach, and otherwhiles in the bowels: and some suppose that they onely grow in the blind gut; but they which have somewhat more carefully beheld them, do write that the long wormes do ingender in the uppermost bowels, and the small, like unto Cheese Magots, onely in the Arsegut, and in the middle most guts, should round wormes ingender called *Ascarides*. Some do take it otherwise. In fine, we will let them dispute thereof; for they do accord herein, that there be three sorts of wormes which may grow in mans body, likeas is shewed before.

And to the end that somewhat may be discoursed of these kinds of Wormes: The long ones be knowne to be in young children through their gnawing in the bowels, through a small, dry, and troublesome Cough; Moreover, they do awake suddenly out of their sleep sometimes with an outcry; afterwards they do quickly hold their peace, and have an unequall pulse. Also they have uncertain Agues, with coldnesse of the outward members, which accidents do happen unto them without any cause three or four times a day. Such children have an unnatural desire of meat, they let out their tongue, gnash with their teeth, sweat about the eyes: they be gladly quiet, they be also very quickly angry, and snapish or testy on them that do awake them, and as now they be studie, and immediately bleake again; they talk in their sleep, be frighted in their dreames, and

do

do then rub their noſe, the eyes ſink into their heads, they will be very hard favoured in their face, they feele great paine in the belly, they have much ſome and ſpittle, their mouthes will be dry yet more by day then by night, and their breath ſtinketh much.

In like manner it happeneth very well, that they avoid the wormes at their noſe, at the mouth, and through ſtooles: but amongſt people of yeares there be beſides theſe ſignes ſuch an extreame pain of the belly alſo, that they caſt their hands and feet from them as it were a Collick. And as they come into their ſtomach, then do they get a great wambling, and loathing of all meats. And when one forceth himſelf to eat, yet can he not ſwallow the meat, but muſt caſt up again preſently the meat which he hath taken: their ordure is very ſtinking, their belly ſwelleth on high, like as if it were full of wind.

Theſe be now the ſignes of the long Wormes, which ſignes though they be not alwayes apparent, yet nevertheleſſe this diſeaſe may be knowne by ſome of theſe.

The broad wormes be as well in them that have no Ague, as in them which be troubled with lingring Agues: they do alſo bring ſome of the foreſaid ſignes with them, and eſpecially theſe will be knowne as well through the great gnawing in the ſtomach, as through the unmeaſurable deſire of meat. And although they have eaten enough, and do not by and by eat again, yet then do they feele that gnawing and biting again as before. They will be alſo very lean, and dry of body. But this is the very ſureſt ſigne that the patient doth avoid through the ſtoole ſmall things, like to the kernels of Gourds. It is alſo found, that ſome not eſteeming this gnawing of the Wormes, and taking no advice for it, that the guts be bitten aſunder, and that the wormes are got into the hollowneſſe of the belly, whereof doth follow afterwards a great calamitie, as madneſſe, the falling ſickneſſe, dogs hunger, ſwouning, pain of the belly, obſtruction or binding of the body, and laſtly a painful and bitter death. Therefore is this diſeaſe not to be accompted ſmall, but rather men are betimes to uſe all requiſite remedies for it.

But if the wormes be not in the bowels, but in the ſtomach, and in the mouth of the ſtomach, then be they commonly vomited up, and they that be in the bowels are rid and diſpatch throught the ſtoole.

Of the third kind of Wormes which keep themſelves in the Arſegut, ſhall immediatly hereafter be diſcourſed. I have therefore the longer diſcourſed of this, for that it is a common diſeaſe amongſt children and common families, whereby common houſholders might know their right difference; afterwards we will write of the remedies ſerving for theſe common ſorts of Wormes: but above all, there be preſcribed by the learned certain common rules of them. The firſt is, that the lower the wormes be in the bowels (whether they be there growing or deſcended out of the ſtomach thither) ſo much the better and ſtronger muſt the medicine be which is given from above, becauſe that it may not looſe her vertue through ſo long a paſſage. Secondly, the wormes *Iſcarides* are not ſo eaſily killed through Phyſick, as other Wormes, therefore muſt ſtronger remedies be uſed for them. Thirdly, to preſerve himſelf from wormes, he is to beware of all ſuch meats as do increaſe *Phlegma*, and to purge out the ſame in aged folks, like as we ſhall ſpeak more at large thereof. Fourthly, the firſt intention of the Phyſitians is to kill the wormes, afterwards to expel them, leſt that through their ſtench they do infect the heart, the ſtomach, and the whole body. Fifthly, as ſoone as one perceiveth the wormes, then muſt he indeavour to expel them, and ſo to free himſelf from great diſeaſe. Sixthly, all remedies which be hot in the third degree, are very fit for this purpoſe, if there be not a ſtrong Ague or impoſtume with it. Seventhly, if one will expell the wormes through any meat or drink, then is the ſame to be done with an empty ſtomach, and faſting. Eightly, the wormes are moſt fitteſt to be killed through hot and bitter things, (to the contrary) through ſweet and fat things they are fed and ſuſtained. Ninthly, all they that have the wormes, may be fed two dayes with ſweet and fat things; but the third day when they be hungry and empty, are bitter things to be given. Tenthly, if one take any thing to kill the Wormes, then muſt the belly and the ſtomach be annointed or plaiſtered on the outſide with aſtringent and bitter things. Eleventhly, if ſo be that the wormes be in the uppermoſt guts, or in the ſtomach, then will they be more eaſily killed and expelled through that which is taken at the mouth. But if there be in the neathermoſt guts, then are they to be killed with Cliſters and Suppoſitories. But if in the middlemoſt guts, are to be uſed both theſe remedies.

ob The

The order how a man may preserve himselfe from the wormes.

ALl those that are to be preserved from worms are of three sorts, as children which do yet suck, children weaned: and of the age of 14. years. Now for to free the sucking children, the Nurse must eat all light meats, and refrain from all fruits, Fish, and Milk, but especialy from overcharging her self with any kind of meats. The children which do not suck must be kept after the same manner, and be restrained from all that is slimy, and also beware of fruit, and especially of those which be not ripe, and those that be worm-eaten, for they also ingender wormes in the belly. The youths and people in years are to be kept likewise as we have said. Also twice or thrice a year phlegme ought to be prepared in them, with *Oxymel* of Squils, or *Compositum*, or with the syrup of *Calamintha*, and such like. Afterwards they are to take *Hiera Picra*, with the decoction of Polipody roots, *Myrabalani*, *Chebuli*, of a little Coloquint, for to purge. They are also to use rather rosted meat then sodden. They must eschew all grosse and fat meats, for thereby do the worms grow especially. Also he must eat every day a little mustard seed.

But if so be that the worms be present, then must one look to kill and expell them by all meanes, for which purpose these hot things following be fit, viz. Wormwood, Bay-leaves, Peach kernels, Rue, white Mints, bitter *Costus*, Centory, Horehound, Lupins, Annis, Smallage seed, parched *Nardus* seed, Mints, Elecampane roots, dry Bayberies, Southernwood, Comin, Cresses seed, Caruway, bitter Almonds, *Diptamus*, Penniroyal, Gals of old beasts, and chiefly Oxe Gals, or wolfs gals, the common Wormseed, Cinamom, Gentian, the roots of the femal Fearn, and Agrimonie: of all which foresaid things, one drachme, or one drachme and a half is to be taken in winter time with wine, and in Summer with some cooling waters, and that chiefly with Purslaine and Endive water.

These things following do not onely kill the wormes, but also expel them forcibly, to wit, Aloe, roots of blew Flowerdeluce, the juyce of wilde Cucumbers, *Agaricus*, Coloquint, wilde Saffron, the fresh juyce of Elecampane roots, Turbith, and *Rabarbarum*. One may use some of these foresaid things if there be no Ague with it.

Cold simples which do kill the wormes are these: viz. prepared Coriander, Butchers broom seed, *Hypocistis*, sealed earth, Purslaine seed, seeds of Endive and of Lettice, the juyce of Plantane, rinds of Pomgranats, sowr Pomgranats, Oranges and their seed, Citron seed, burnt Harts horn, Asses milk, all that is sowr, bread infused in Vinegar, Broom seeds, Colewoort seed, dry Plantane, seeds of Orage, and unripe Sallad oyl, a good deal of it taken at once. You may boldly take these things, where as heat and the Ague is.

And further to speak of the compounded things, we will first of all take the things in hand which may be used inwardly and in heat. Take the syrup of Vinegar one ounce and a half, temper it with Endive water and Purslaine water, and drink this certain dayes together alwayes fasting. Item, Take the seeds of Butchers broom, sealed earth, *Hipocistis*, the juyce of Sloes, of each one quarter of an ounce: boyle them all together in sufficient water even to the half, and drink thereof certain dayes together three or four ounces at once. Or take Grasse roots, and Butchers broom seed of each one ounce; boyle them all together in a pot of water even unto the half, and drink thereof even as before. Another: Take eighteene or twenty *Sebestes*, Purslaine seed one drachme, Grasse roots and Millet, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar four ounces, Verjuice, and the juyce of Pomgranats of each two spoonfuls: let them seethe together, and skum them well: but if you have not this, then take in steed thereof good vinegar. Item, take prepared Coriander, and the seed of Smallage, of each one drach. and a half: calcined bones of a Stags hart 3. quarters of an ounce, red Coral one drach. Cinamom half a drach, Cassia half a scruple, prepared Pearls, half a drachme, *Diptamus*, *Ammoniacum*, field Ivory, and burnt Silk, of each two grains, eight or ten Bayberries, Sugar three quarters of an ounce: make a fine powder of of it, and give one drachme of it more or lesse.

Some Hares horne alone two or three drachmes given with Mead, doth Marvelously kill the Wormes. Or take burnt Harts horn one drachme, Pyony seed, Smallage seeds, Coriander, Coleworts seed, Nardus seed, seeds of Plantane and of Endive, of each half a drachme, *Diptamus* one scruple, red Saunders, Coral, and Pearle, of each six grains, Sugar as much as all the rest, make a subtle powder of it.

Another: Take field Ivory which is a little parched one quarter of an ounce, prepared Coriander one drachme and a half, *Diptamus* one drachme and half a ſcruple, Sealed earth one drachme, temper them all together. Item: Take Rubarb, Baſil ſeed, Plantaine ſeed Pomgranate pills, Caraway, Butchers broome ſeed, *Carduus Benedictus* ſeed, field Harts horn, and field Ivory, of each half an ounce, rinds of Mulberrie roots, Colewort ſeed, Citron ſeed, and rinds of Willow trees, of each three drachmes, Purſlaine ſeed, and *Diptamus* of each two ſcruples, red Coral and Pearls, of each one ſcruple; make a powder thereof, and then give one drachme or twain of it, viz. in winter (when there is no Ague) with wine; but in Summer, and when there is an Ague with *Oxycrate*. Item, Take burnt harts horn one drach. prepared Coriander, and Aloe, of each half a ſcruple: beat them all together, and give it him with the ſyrup of Vinegar, or graſſe water. In like manner is alſo eſpecial good for this the leaves of Smallage one drachme: or take the ſeeds of Purſlaine one drachme, Muſcus four ſcruples, red Coral, and prepared Coriander, of each one ſcruple, Orage ſeeds one drachme: make a powder of all theſe, and give thereof with ſtrong wine, or with water wherein graſſe roots and Agrimony have been decocted, each time four grains. Another: Take Orage ſeeds one drachme, Wormſeed (which is *Semen*) one drachme and a half, Graſſe roots, flowers, of Hyſſop, Southern-Wood, of each half a drachme, Licorice four ſcruples, Cinamom, and Dill ſeed, of each half a ſcruple: ſtamp each apart, and afterwards mix them together, and at the laſt put half a ſcruple of *Muſcus* unto it: then give thereof from three or ſix graines unto half a ſcruple, with warm graſſe water.

Item, take the ſeeds of Orage, of Purſlaine, wilde Thyme, and Marjoram, of each half a drachme, Wormſeed three drachmes, Licorice, and Lupines, of each one ſcruple, *Muſcus* half a drachme, *Ambra* half a drachme: mix them all together, and give one drachme and ſomewhat more at one time with graſſe water. Another: Take the ſeeds of Plantaine, and Wormſeed, of each one drachme or ſomewhat leſſe, according to the age, and give thereof as before. Item: Take Plantaine ſeed, calcined Harts horn, and Wormſeed, of each a like quantity, uſe it as the other. Or if you would make a confection, then take burnt Harts horne one drachme, prepared Coriander, Pyony ſeed, the ſeed of Smallage, *Nardus* ſeed, the ſeeds of Plantaine, and of Endive, of each half a drach. *Diptamus* half a ſcruple, red Coral, Saunders, and Pearles, of each five graines, Sugar one ounce and a half: then make Tabulats thereof with Graſſe water. Then take about one quarter of an ounce at once.

You have before in the ſecond part, the third Chapter, and ſeventh § of the hardning of the breaſt, and in the third part, the ſecond Chapter and eleventh §. a preparation of earth worms into powder againſt the yellow Jaundies, whereof may a drink or confection be made. But if the guts be diſtended, and the heat not over great, then lay this plaiſter following upon the belly: Take Linſeed meal, and Bean meal, of each one ounce and a half, Wormwood one handful, Aloe three quarters of an ounce, and make a plaiſter of it with Meade, or with the oyl of wormwood.

But if there be a ſmall ague with the worms, then may be given to people in years (each according to his age) Treacle of Mithridate: for both of them do kill the worms and expel them.

Item: Take the ſeeds of *Sophia* one drach. calcined Harts horn, Pomgranate peeles, of each half a drach. *Diptamus*, Cloves, Rubarb, of each one drach. Wormſeed half a drach. Saffron fifteen grains, Sugar nine ounces: Seethe them all together in Wormwood water, or in graſſe water, and make Tabulats thereof; or take wormſeed one quarter of an ounce, Knotgraſſe, and white *Diptamus*, of each two ſcruples, burnt Harts horn, Peach leaves, of each one ſcruple, Rubarb one drach. make them all together into a ſubtile powder and give thereof one drach. or twain at once. But if you will have a confection, then take thereto three ounces of Sugar decocted in water of Knotgraſſe, and give thereof from half an ounce unto a whole, according to the age of the patient. Item, other more which be Laxative: Take parched Rubarb and wormſeed, of each one drach. prepared Pearls one drach. and a half, burnt Harts horn one drach. Sugar ſix ounces: make a confection of it as before. Or take wormſeed half a drach. Comin one ſcruple, Cinamom two ſcruples, burnt Harts horn half a drachme, Turbith one quarter of an ounce, Sugar one ounce and a quarter: make looſings thereof, and give about one quarter of an ounce of it. Item, take Cinamom, burnt Hartshorn, Centory, and Gentian, of each one drachme, Rubarb one ſcruple, Sugar Six ounces decocted with graſſe water

water: make alſo looſings thereof, They be alſo very good, and they be all together eaſie.

The ſeeds of Rue ſhould alſo be very good for the worms: like as alſo is the Vinegar of Rue, and the common good vinegar. Take in like manner the flowers of Feverfew as much as you can gripe between two fingers, and uſe it faſting. This hereafter enſuing may be uſed for children of three years of age; Take white Diptamus, wormſeed, *Carlina*, and Rubarb, of each a like quantity; pownd them to powder, and give each time one drach. thereof more or leſſe with wine, according to the importance of the cauſe: whereupon you are to uſe for children the ſalve of Oranges, which ſhall be deſcribed hereafter, and after that, this potion enſuing: Take Rubarb two ſcruples, *Carlini* one ſcruple pownd ſmall with wormwood water. In like ſort alſo be very meet theſe pils following: Take Gentian, Myrrhe, Diptamus, wormwood, Mints and filed Harts horn, of each one drach. Turbith half a drach, Agaricus one quarter of an ounce, *Sal gemma* one drach. Ginger and Cinamom, of each two ſcruples, Aloe as much as the reſt: then make pils of it with the juyce of wormwood, and uſe oftentimes of it, about one drach. at once.

This compoſition following is moſt highly commended of the ancient Phyſitians: Take Gentian, Centory, and *Agaricus*, of each one drach. Cloves, Nardus ſeed, the roots of Coſtus, Annis, and water of Scordion, of each four ſcruples, burnt Harts horn, Roſes, Sorrel ſeed, and prepared Pearls, of each half a drachme; pownd each alone, afterwards temper them together, and ſprinckle them with the juyce of Lemons, with ſharp Vinegar, and Roſewater; of each a like quantity, and let it dry again; do ſo five or ſix times: At the laſt temper with it half a drach. of Saffron, one grain of Muſk, and make thereof ſmall looſings with the ſirup of Citrons. One may take thereof from half a drachme to a whole, whether it be made in powder or pils. Conſerve of Gilloflowers, and of Peach flowers, be alſo much commended for this purpoſe.

There may be alſo many things drunken; as the juyce of Radiſh, and give of it to a ſtrong perſon one quarter of an ounce: it is a very ſtrong and a right medicine for a Plowman. This alſo is very like the ſame; pownd Garlick, and wring out the juyce, and drink it as before.

Item, take the herb Baſil, ſeethe it in vinegar and drink of it, the worms will run quick out of your body. Another: take Rye, boyl it, and drink ſometimes of the decoction, and alſo temper your wine with it. Or take Citron pils one drachme, or one drachme and a half, give it to children in Milk; it ſhould be ſpecial good. Take the juyce of Elecampane roots four ounces, and drink it; it is taken to be a ſpecial remedy. Item, take wormſeed one ounce, Sene leaves one quarter of an ounce: pownd all together to powder, and take one drachme of it or twain, with wine, Beer, or Mead.

Item, take Pomgranat peeles beaten or ſodden in wine, and drink of it faſting about one quarter of an ounce. One drach. of pownded Zeduary drunken once or twice a day, doth alſo kill the worms through his heat.

Another; take Camomil two handfuls, twenty or five and twenty Sebeſtes, ſeethe them in a pot of water unto the half; then take three ounces of this decoction, and temper with as three ounces of *Oxymeli*, and drink of it three or 4. mornings one after another.

Cliſters be alſo very good for this if one can get Aſſes milk for it. If that cannot be gotten, then is there to be taken for it a broth which is decocted with 20. or 25. Sebeſtes and Rye, and mix with it butter and hony.

Alſo Cow milk may be taken for it alone, tempered with hony.

For to uſe outwardly, the learned have ordained divers remedies, as plaiſters, ſalves, and other means more, as hereafter followeth; Take Aloe, Southernwood, of each a like quantity, temper them with hony or oyl of wormwood, and anoint therewith the belly.

Item, rub Oxe gall upon the Navel as much as you can; if it be too thin, then temper amongſt it beaten Wormwood, Gentian, or any other bitter thing. Note alſo, becauſe that all bitter things be enemies to young children, that regard muſt be had to help them with ſalves, plaiſters, and ſuch like, as hereafter ſhall follow. For that through theſe means the Worms may be killed in young children, becauſe children have tender, ſubtile, and thin intrails, ſo that the plaiſters and ſalves may penetrate, kill the worms, and expell them, which alſo through the vinegar which is mixt amongſt it may be the eaſier effected. This ſalve following is very much approved for it: Take Wormwood,

Lupines, Silvermountain, Comin, *Nardus* seed, Centory, *Doronicum*, burnt Harts horn, and Myrrhe, of each half an ounce, Aloe one ounce and an half, *Agaricus* one drach. the juice of Oranges two ounces, oyl of Wormwood, of bitter Almonds, and oyl of Peaches, of each one ounce, an Oxe gall: let the juyce and gall be sodden together and afterwards mix all the foresaid things amongst it, and then make a salve of it with Wax: with this salve is the belly, the stomach, and back bone to be anointed. But if you will make a plaister of it, then will it be good for the stone of the Kidneyes and Bladder. Or take the juyce of Mints two ounces, Centory, Wormseed, and Lupines, of each half an ounce, Gentian, Wormwood, of each one drach. *Diptamus*, *Semen Zedoarie*, of each three drach. Oxe gall one ounce, Aloe one drachme and a half, Mastick, of Spica, and of wormwood, of each one ounce, unripe Sallad oyl, and vinegar wherein tosted bread hath been infused and is wrung out again, of each two ounces, the juyce of Oranges half an ounce, white Wax 6. ounces: seethe the juyce and the oyl untill all the moisture be consumed: when the oyl is cold, then temper the rest being beaten small amongst it, and let it seethe a little again untill it be thick. Lastly, put three grains of *Muscus* unto it, and spread this salve on a round cloth and bind it on the Navel; it killeth all kinds of worms, and also expelleth them.

Another: Take the juyce of Fleawort, wormseed, Southernwood, Centory, Swines bread, Peach leaves, Lupines, *Ebulus* roots, Pomgranat pils, of each one drachme, the juyce of Garlick two ounces, the juyce of water Cresses twelve ounces: let all these seeth unto the half, afterwards put as much wax unto it as sufficeth for to make a salve. Item, take Centory, Wormwood, and Lupines, of each half a drach, *Lignum Aloes*, burnt Harts horn, and Diptamus, of each one quarter of an ounce, Aloe as much as the rest, oyl of wormwood ℥. 4. wax as much as will suffice. Or take Wormwood, and Lupines, of each half an ℥. Cinamom, Comin, Nardus seed, Centory, wormseed, oyl of Peach kernels, and of bitter Almonds, of each ℥. 4. wax five ounces, make a salve thereof: it hath been approved oftentimes. But if so be that you will have it stronger, then take *Agaricus* unto it one drach. Aloe one ounce and a half, Myrrhe one drach. and a half, the juyce of Oranges two ounces, Oxe gals one ounce, and use it as the rest. Take Treacle half an ounce, Diptamus, Gentian, and wormseed, of each one scruple. Aloe two scruples, Oxe gals one quarter of an ounce: temper them all together, and make with beaten Coriander a salve thereof; then spread it upon a cloth, and lay it upon the stomach. Item, take Seduary roots, Gentian, Aloe, and wormseed, of each one scruple, Cloves & Mastick, of each half a drach. Treacle one drach. and one quarter of an ounce. Of the stomachic salve which is described in the eleventh Chapter and the 5. §. make a plaister of it, and lay it over the stomach; for it expelleth worms, and doth also strengthen the stomach.

Item, take Aloe, wormwood, oyl of Peach kernels, of bitter Almonds, of Mastick, and of Spica, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Hypocistis* sealed earth, and Lupines, of each one scruple, *Aloe*, *Spic. Hiera Picra*, of each half a drach. Nardus seed, *Gallia Muscata*, Southernwood, Oxe gall, Lignum Aloes, of each one scruple, burnt Harts horn one quarter of an ounce, Endive seed one drach. wax as much as sufficeth for a Salve.

Another: Take oyl of wormwood, and of Myrtles, of each half an ounce, beaten Aloe, prepared Coriander, sealed earth, and Nardus seed of each five drachmes, the juyce of Quinces and Oxe gals, of each half an ounce: seethe them with the oyl until all the moisture be consumed: afterwards temper the other ingredients amongst it.

This Salve following is very good, and common at the Apothecaries: Take the oyl of wormwood three drachmes, oyl of bitter Almonds one ounce, oyl of Mastick one quarter of an ounce, Myrrhe, Aloe, and white Diptamus, of each one scruple, wax as much as needeth.

The salve of Oranges (whereof we have spoken before) is thus prepared: Take a sour Orange, cut it up at the top, and wring out the juyce; then anoint the Temples with it, the heart and the stomach: the same is especial good for young children.

Item, take oyl of bitter Almonds, of wormwood, Oxe gals, and white Diptamus, of each one drach. Mithridate, and the juyce of Oranges, of each one quarter of an ounce: temper them together, and anoint the child therewith upon the Hart, Stomach, and Navel. Put also unto it one drachme of Aloe: it is a good and safe salve, especially if there be an Ague present with it.

Another: Take Southernwood one ounce, wormwood, and the rinds of the Bay tree,

of

of each one drach. Sugar, Colewort ſeeds, of each half a drach. Bayberries one quarter of an ounce, Aloe half an ounce, burnt Harts horn one drachme, white *Diptamus* two ℈. ſeethe them all together in Vinegar and Oyl; then ſtrain it through a cloth, and uſe it as the other. Or take Linſeed oyl one ounce, Roſin more or leſſe according to the age: melt at the fire, and anoint therewith the temples of the head, the ſtomach, and the Navel. Some do much commend the ſame, although it ſeem ſlight.

Take Aloe half an ounce, white *Diptamus* and Saffron, of each one ſcruple: mingle with a little ſharp Vinegar, afterwards ſpread it on a leather and bind it on the Navel.

Take freſh beaten Wormwood, wet it with Vinegar, and lay it warm upon the ſtomach.

Take Marrow of Stags bones, temper it with a little molten Wax, and anoint therewith a whole pack bone, and then lay it beaten upon the Navel. The juice of Radiſh ſpread upon the Navel is alſo good for worms. In like manner the oyl of Wormwood upon the Navel (chiefly of young children) is alſo good for Worms. Item, there is to be uſed *Pærotiam* for the ſame.

Take alſo follow certain plaiſters which be good: Take Wormwood two ounces, of one drachme, burnt Harts horn, and the gall of a Hare, of each half an ounce, ſuch as ſufficeth for a plaiſter.

Take *Nardus* ſeed two ſcruples, Aloe and red Coral, of each one drach. Wormwood and Maſtick, of each one quarter of an ounce prepared Coriander one ounce: make powder thereof. Item, take Rye meal three ounces, Lupin meal five drach. Saffron one drach. Vinegar, and the juiyce of Rue, of each two ounces, the juice of wormwood four ounces, then make a plaiſter thereof.

Another: Take Myrrhe, Gentian, Aloe and *Diptamus*, of each two drach. and a half, Wormwood ſeeds of Purſlain, and of Orage, Lupins meal, filed Ivory, and burnt Harts horn, of each one drach. Saffron one drach. Barly meal one ounce, the juice of Garlick four ounces: temper them all together, and put two grains of *Muſcus* unto it.

Item, take Mints and Wormwood, of each two ounces, Centory, *Agaricus*, of each half an ounce, Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Roſewater one ounce, Lupine meal as much as all the reſt: make a plaiſter of it for to lay upon the ſtomach.

Another: Take Lupine meal, the juice of Wormwood, Mints, Peach leaves, and the juice of Quinces, of each two ounces, ſealed earth, prepared Coriander, Maſtick, Myrrhe and Aloe, of each half an ounce, Oxe gall one ounce, and red Wine.

Item, take *Nardus* one ſcruple, Aloe one drachme, prepared Coriander two ſcruples and a half, Wormwood, Maſtick, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Coral one drach. make a powder thereof, and temper it with the juyce of Wormwood, and with Vinegar: wet a cloth in it, and lay it upon the belly.

Another: Take the water of Mints and of Hyſſop, of each ſix ounces, the water of Centory twelve ounces, Malmſey eight ounces, Gentian, Myrrhe and Saffron, of each one drach. Lignum Aloes, Wormſeed, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Muſcus* five grains, Vinegar five ſpoonfuls; uſe this as is aforeſaid.

If ſo that the patient be very weak, then may this following be uſed: Take Sorrel water, and the water of Bugloſſe, and of Graſſe, of each three ounces, *Spec. Candiatum*, *Diarrhodon* one drachme, water of wormwood and of Hyſſop, of each two onnces, the water of Broom flowers three ounces, Gentian, and *Diptamus*, of each half a drachme, of Aloes half a ſcruple, mingle them together.

One may alſo uſe theſe bags following: Take Mints, Pennyroyal, Wormwood, white Lillies, Southernwood, Roſes, and Plantain, of each half a handful: beat them all groſſe, and then put them into a little bag, and wear it on the ſtomach.

The patient may alſo ſmell oftentimes to the black *Nardus* ſeed, and likewiſe toſted bread which hath been ſteeped in Vinegar.

Take Feverfew, Rue, wormwood, Leeks, pownded ana. *M.* 1. leaven of brown bread, Vinegar, one pound, boyl them untill they be thick, apply it hot to the Navel.

Or drink the juyce of Alecoſt, alias coſtmarie, firſt and laſt for certain dayes.

Or drink the decoction of Centory, Rue, and Sage, ſod to the half in ale three or four mornings.

Or ſtamp Wormwood and Rue, fry it with Oxe gall, ſpread it upon Leather, and

and threw the powder of aloes upon it, and apply it warm to the Navel.

Of the Worms Ascarides *which do keep in the Arsegut.* §. 14.

MOreover, we will here for a conclusion of this Chapter, discourse of the small worms *Ascarides* which do keep themselves in the Arsegut. These worms may be perceived by the great itch that they cause there. And for to remedy this, dip a little wool in the oyl of Apricocks, or the juyce of white water Mints. Also you may mix Aloe and Oxe gall amongst it, and so thrust it into the Arsegut.

But first the body must be purged with Rubarb; afterwards are Suppositories to be made of fresh Pork and put up into the Arsegut, and all the little Worms will stick fast unto it. Some do take for this powdred Pork. Also one may anoint the stalke of Colworts with Oxe gall, and use the same as a Suppository. But above all other things is much to be commended Quicksilver mixed with Barrows grease, and to dip [illegible] in it, and so grease or anoint the arsegut within with it. But for children may Suppositories be prepared with Hony, and Salt peter, putting them up, and plucking them forth again immediately. Also, there may a small Clister be ministred of milk, with Hony, *Cress* and *Gassie*. Old folks are to have Clisters after this manner following. Take Wormwood, and Wormwood, of each one handful, the seeds of *Cassena*, parched Cumin, and the seeds of Smallage, of each one ounce, Wormwood one quarter of an ounce, Betony half a handful, oyl of Peach kernels one ounce and a half, Salt one ounce, *Hiera Picra* 3. drach. the juyce of Leeks one ounce. Of thir decoction take not above eight ounces, and make of it a Clister.

The sixteenth Chapter.

Of the Kidneyes.

IN the left side, right under the Milt, in the body of all beasts, is the one Kidney placed, and the other in the right side a little higher, so that otherwhiles it doth touch a great part of the Liver. The Kidney which lyeth in the right side, is also in all beasts somewhat greater and fuller then that which is in the left side, and is not covered with so much fat. For because it is hotter then the left, therefore doth it consume the same fatnesse, which groweth through moisture, like as it is there very needful: for there is no part which sooner waxeth fat then the Kidneyes. Both of them be made fast very strongly to the back bone. They have sundry veins from the Liver whereby they draw blood, with water, and also some part of the gall unto them, separating the same blood from the water, and keeping as much of the blood as sufficeth for their sustenance: collecting also the water together in their concavities (like as in a pot) which the gall dyeth yellow; and then through the Conduits *Ureters* (whereof each Kidney hath one by it self) descendeth into the Bladder, and from thence is ejected by the yard.

These Conduits or *Ureters* are whitish, hard, somewhat fleshy, and of the nature of the Bladder, whereby they may not suddenly be bruised through the sharpnesse of the urine, or through some other occasions. The substance of the Kidneyes is of a right well compacted flesh, fashioned partly round, and not unlike to Oxe Kidneyes (the greatnesse excepted.) These Kidneyes be also through many causes, and sundry sorts of sore diseases infected, which the Grecians do call *Nephrites*, which is, pain of the Kidneyes. But this pain of the Kidneyes doth come of many causes, as of impostumes, with heat and cold, of the gravel, and the stone, and further of many diseases, and sharpnesse of the urine, whereof we will hereafter directly write and discourse. But here, before we go any further, we will make a general declaration thereof.

First, the learned do divide all diseases of the Kidneyes into three principall sorts: to wit, if they be subject to any bad complexion, whether they have it of themselves, or be compounded with other diseases. Secondly, if they be not as they ought to be by nature. If they from the time of their birth be too great or too small, or fraughted and laden with grosse tough slime which do oppilate and stop the conduits that do descend into the Bladder.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, there may be alſo impoſtumes and ulcers. Theſe three things may be very well compounded together, whereby divers diſeaſes and pains of the Kidneyes may be cauſed. The cauſes of theſe foreſaid diſeaſes may be as well outward, as inward: the outward may be blowes, falls, unaccuſtomed exreciſe, hard riding, much going a foot, great heat or cold about the Kidneyes, to drink puddle water, to carry unuſed packs, exceſſive letherie, long uſe of diuretical meats, and drinks, The inward cauſes are a bad complexion, as if it be too hot, or too cold, too dry, or too moiſt, the putrification of natural ſeed or ſperme, impoſtumes, and other pains of the Kidneyes. The ſigns be apparent of themſelves, and to be known by the pain of each place, as if the ſame be ſmall, mean, or great. This doth otherwhiles appear through piſſing blood, or the water which is like blood, even as there were fleſh waſhed in it. But if theſe diſeaſes aſſail one with heat or cold, therefore we will alſo (according to our cuſtome) diſcourſe a little of it, and comprehend them in two eſpecial points.

Of the pains in the Kidneyes through cold and moiſture. §. 1.

THe ſigns of the cold diſeaſes of the Kidneyes, are they which have neither heat nor thirſt, nor great pain, and their water is not high coloured, but is much in quantity, becauſe the ſame could not be waſted through unnatural heat, which the Ague, winter, and the gravel augmenteth.

For theſe diſeaſes, muſt firſt a good dyet be uſed. All groſſe, ſlimy, hard meats, and all cooling things are to be eſchewed, as Endive, Lettice, Cicory, Spinage, and Beetes &c. unleſſe there be ſome hot things dreſt with them, as Parſly, Fennel, Comin, and ſuch like. Fiſh that be ſodden are not good for this, neither that which is dreſt with dough or milk, Cheeſe is alſo herein forbidden. Alſo cold clear water, thick red wine, and all fruits that make groſſe blood, as Pears, Apples, Quinces, Cheſtnuts, Dates and ſuch like. In all other things he may direct himſelf according to his old cuſtome; but he muſt not ſwallow down his meat greedily nor unchewed, that the ſtomach be not cloyed.

Great exerciſe immediately after meat is hurtful unto him. He is to keep himſelf quiet one hour and a half after meat at the leaſt, without ſleep. Alſo all moiſt and cold dwellings are to be ſhunned, like as near to the earth, or ſuch as be under it, or do lye near unto the water. But he is to provide himſelf of good clothes and of a good dry chamber. He muſt forbear all ſorrow, vexation, anger, lying long upon the back, riding and ſuch like.

Concerning the remedies, heed is firſt to be taken whether the Kidneyes be obſtructed: but if ſo be that this be, and that the patient be young, full of blood, and ſtrong, than is the Median vein to be opened on the right foot, and to let out about four ounces of blood. And afterwards this Cliſter following is to be ſet according to his age: Take Beets and Coleworts, of each one handfull, boyl them as is accuſtomed: then take thereof about 16. ounces, and temper in it *Benedicta Laxativa*, and the confection of Bayberries, of each one quarter of an ounce, courſe Sugar and Caſſy half an ounce, Salt one quarter of an ounce, oyl of *Seſamum* and of Lillies, of each one ounce and a half: temper them all together, and then miniſter this Cliſter one hour before ſupper; This foreſaid Cliſter is alwayes to be uſed every other day, according to the ability of the perſon.

After letting blood, or after the ſecond uſe of Cliſters, then may this purgation following or ſuch like be uſed: Take the confection *De Pſillio*, and *Sebeſte*, of each two drach. and a half: temper them in three or four ounces of the decoction of Parſly roots, and faſt after it at the leaſt five hours.

Or if you had rather have pils, then is the patient to take the pils *Fœtidæ* one ſcruple, *de Hiera Compoſita* two ſcruples: make five or ſeven pils thereof, and take them early in the morning.

Immediately after purging is the patient to uſe this following one whole week or twain alwayes betimes in the morning.

Take *Syrupum Acetoſum Compoſitum* one ounce, *Syrupum de Calamintha* half an ounce, Fennel, Annis, and Wormwood water, of each one ounce, afterwards drink this warm.

When theſe kinds of potions have been uſed, then is he to purge again after this manner: Take Aloe half an ounce, *Agaricus*, Coloquint, and *Bdellium*, of each one ſcrup.

Ginger half a ſcruple, *Saf gemme* five grains; form eight or nine pills of one drachme thereof, and take them betimes in the morning.

Or take the confection of Bayberries one drach. *Electuarium Indum* three drachmes, and a half tempered with wine, and uſed as before. This confection following is alſo good for this: Take the ſeeds of Endive, of Smallage, and of Sorrel, of each one drach. Millet one quarter of an ounce, Cinamon, Ginger, Cloves and Mace, of each one drach. and a half, *Oxymel Compoſitum* ſix ounces, hony of Roſes three ounces, Sugar two ounces; temper them to gether, and take a ſpoonful every morning before meat fours houre, and ſo continue it the ſpace of two moneths.

You have before in the twelfth Chapter and 11. §. a good juice againſt the yellow Jaundies, beginning, Take Gentian, &c. which is alſo very good for this purpoſe, But if you had rather have a confection, then take *Spec. de Seminibus* one drach. and a half, *Millium Solis*, Licorice, Cinamom, Ginger, Annis, and Fennel, of each half a drachme, white Sugar four ounces, being diſſolved with Fennel water, make Tabulates of it; then take thereof three drachmes alwayes before meat, and that induring the ſpace of a month. Savine drieth and warmeth well, it is good for the kidneyes, but women muſt not uſe it much.

The ſirupes which be fit for this are theſe: to wit, *Oxymel compoſitum*, *Adipa cydoniorum aromatica*, *Oxymel ſcyllicitum*, *compoſitum*, *& de Radicibus*: all theſe ſirupes do deoppilate the obſtructions of the Kidneyes. The plaiſter of Bayberries is eſpecially commended for the cold Kidneyes.

Item, take Barly meal, Frankincenſe and Maſtick, of each one ounce, Myrtle ſeed, Roſes, Camomil, of each a like much, for to mrke a plaiſter withall, lay the ſame warm upon the Kidneyes. This plaiſter ſtrengtheneth, drieth, mollifieth, and ſuppleth, and doth hinder that the diſeaſe cannot corrode any further: and it is very good to incarnate or to ingender new fleſh.

For a ſalve, take oyl of *Nardus* one ounce and a half, Saffron and Pepper, of each half an ounce, the ſalve of *Aragon* one ounce, white Wax three drachmes: melt them, and make thereof a ſalve. With theſe ſalves is the patient to be very well annointed morning and evening in the warm Sun all over the the back bone.

Another: Take oyl of Rue and of Saffron, of each two ounces, the ſalve of *Aragon* ℥. temper them together, and let the back bone be annointed with it every evening and morning: and fume the back with *Landanum*, and then lay a warm cloth upon it. Alſo to ſet boxing cups on the buttocks with picking is much commended for this diſeaſe, becauſe that the veins which feed the conduits of the urine do there end themſelves in the very buttocks.

And if ſo be then every ſuch patient do recover his health through the foreſaid remedies, yet is he notwithſtanding to uſe the foreſaid ſalve, and two or three cliſters more. And if ſo be that the ſickneſſe will not avoid with this, then take Spelt, Millet, of each 3. handfuls, made very warm in a bag, and lay the patient warm upon his back thereon, until it begin to be cold, and then annoint him on his Kidneyes with this ſalve following made very warm: Take oyl of ſweet Almonds, of *Coſtus*, and of Lillies, of each one 3. oyl of *Euphorbium* one ounce and a half, Bears greaſe, and Badgers greaſe, of each one ounce, Hens greaſe one ounce and a half, *Sagapenum*, *Storax*, *Coſtus* roots, Myrrhe and Saffron, of each one ſcruple, Wax as much as needful to make a plaiſter withall. If you occupy it, then warm as much as you mean to occupy at one time.

Of the pain of the Kidneyes through wind. §. 2.

THis pain doth not appear in one place onely, but ſpreadeth it ſelf abroad, and hath no ſigns of any impoſtume, neither of the ſtone nor ague, for the pain is more after that one hath eaten well, then before, and it is eſpecially augmented through windy things when the meat is half digeſted. Now for to remedy this pain through windy things, then muſt he beware of all kinds of Pottage, of Peaſe, of Beans, &c.

Item, from all manner of fruit, from Cheſtnuts, from Rice, from Rie bread, and from Beer; for all theſe do ingender wind in the body. Againſt which are all things to be uſed which be light of digeſture and expel wind, as Annis, Fennel, Comin, Caraway, the ſeeds of white Sefamum, *Agnus Caſtus*, and Rue ſeed; likewiſe the confection of *Diatrionpiper*, *Diatalanthum*, is very good for this.

He

He is also to be outwardly anointed upon the place of the kidneies with oyl of Rue, of *Costus*, of Lillies, and with oyl of *Sesamum*, and afterwards to wear this plaister upon it: Take Parsly, Smallage leaves and roots, white Watermints, Marjarom, of each one handful, Cumin, Caraway, and Dill seed, of each one ounce; beat them and frie them in the oyl of Dill and of Rue, then make a plaister thereof and lay it upon the kidneyes: it is not onely good for all cold pains of the kidneyes with wind, but also for the gravel and for the stone, and against all obstructions of the same which do proceed of cold.

Of the obstructed Kidneyes. §. 3.

Out of these forementioned reasons may easily be discerned, that the most causes of the pains of the kidneyes be none other than coldnesse and obstructions: for this, cold applications may be used, as the Conserves of Marjoram gentle which doth open all obstructions of the inner parts. In like manner also conserves of Betony, confected roots of Pimpernel, Eringus roots, and Calamus. Of wines be fit for this, Elecampane wine, Hyssop wine, aromatical wine, and chiefly all spiced wine as Claret wine, and Hippocras.

Item, Betony wine, *Asarabacca* wine, and wine of Marjoram gentle. In like sort also all the distilled wines, or *Aqua vitæ* of these herbs, also Mead, and Hony water. But he is much to be restrained from all puddle wines; for that they not onely obstruct the Kidneyes, but also all inward parts; they ingender gravel and the stone. Item, there is also a potion described in the 12. Chap. and 11. § of certain roots decocted, which be also very commodious for this disease.

The great Treacle or *Diatessaron*, if it be known how to give them in good sort, are highly commended for this purpose. This powder following is also good and meet for to open the obstructions of the Kidneyes, and to expel the cold: Take Annis, Fennel, Miller, Smallage seed, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Spica romana* half a drachme, Liquorice three drachmes, dragagant, Gum of the Cherry tree, of each one quarter of an ounce: beat them to powder, and take thereof about the second day alwaies one drach. with wine.

This sirupe following hath an especial propertie in deoppilating of the obstructed Kidneyes: to wit, *Mixta citoniorum*, *Aromatica*, and *Oxymel* of Squils with other more, described before.

The Simples which do open these obstructions, be Agarick, Saxifrage, *Millium Solis* Parsley of Macedonia, or stone Parsley, white Mustard seed, Nettle seed, red Peaſe Porage, Fennel roots, Parsly roots, and roots of Sperage, of Smallage, and of Butchers broom, *Spica nardi*, *Spica romana*, water Cresses, garden Cresses, and Pingles; the compounds are *Diacalaminthum*, *Electuarium Ducis*, and *Philantropon*.

For all pains and obstructions of the Kidneyes I have used my vomiting potion with good successe, mentioned in the third part, Cap. 11. §. 4. this I have given twice in one week, according to the state of the Patient. And I have prohibited the party from milk and from all diuretick medicines.

Of the pain in the Kidneyes through heat and dryth. §. 4.

The signs of these hot diseases of the Kidneyes, are such as that they may be perceived by the heat in feeling, and all cold things are welcome to the Patient, and hot things contrary unto him, unlesse the fulnesse of the body doth hinder and let them.

The patient hath also a great thirst at all times, and a bad stomach: his grine is very little and high coloured, there swimmeth otherwhiles some fat upon it, and the rather in cholerick, and hot men: with the hot pain of the Kidneyes is more danger than with the cold. Therefore must one with all delay proceed forward without all necessary remedies; and that much rather, for that through the foresaid heat (which is mixed with a tough thick phlegmatick matter) the stone of the Kidneyes might easily grow, wherein first the Liver vein is to be opened, afterwards the *Saphen*, and such Clisters to be ministred as may clense the guts, that is, such as be decocted with Quinces & Dates. This following is to be oftentimes used: Take Goats milk twelve or sixteen ounces, melt in it Goats suet one ounce, oyl of Roses two ounces, and use them as the other. For preparative potions

you-

you are to make this : Take Lettice, Purſlain, Liverwort, Shepherds purſe, of each one handful, the ſeeds of Lettice, of Purſlain, Endive, Roſes, Butchers broom ſeed, Barbefries, water Lillies, Burnt Ivory, red and white Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar, twelve ounces, then make a ſirupe of it. You are afterwards to purge with ſowr Dates, with Caſſie, with *Manna*, and with *Succo Roſarum*.

Alſo for this (like as in the pain of the Kidneyes through cold) is needful a good order of dyet. Therefore is his dwelling to be high from the ground, and not on the water, but to open towards the Eaſt and the North, and not towards the South or againſt the Weſt. His clothes are to hang looſe about the body, and not girt tight or hard. Venery is very hurtful for this diſeaſe. Out of theſe foreſaid reaſons may eaſily be noted, that ſore labour is hurtful ; as to ride hard trotting horſes, to go up hils and ſtairs, and that chiefly after meat. Notwithſtanding moderate exerciſe is more commendable than to ſit ſtill utterly unoccupied. Alſo anger, heavineſſe of mind, and all other motions of the ſame are to be eſchewed. One muſt not eat too much, for this ſickneſſe is cauſed moſt of all through overcharging of the ſtomach, or gluttony; ſleeping or waking muſt alſo be moderate : for to uſe too much of either of them is hurtful. But one muſt chiefly refrain from lying much upon his back, for thereby will the humours ſink much towards theſe parts : therefore is the firſt ſleep to be done on the right ſide, and then finiſh it on the left ſide. To his meat and drink muſt be taken ſome more heed ; he muſt eſchue all old and unleavened bread, old fleſh, and all herbs which make groſſe humours, as Beets Coleworts, &c. All hot and tart meats, as ſalt fleſh, Garlike, Onions, Leeks, and Radiſhes ſhall he forſake. In like manner muſt he not uſe the things that do vehemently force urine ; as Fennel, Parſly, Smallage, and ſuch like. But he may not eat bread which is light and leavened, and is two or three daies old, Hens, Pullets, young Pigeons, Feſants, Partridges, &c. will be his beſt meats : but he muſt forſake all water fowls. Young Bucks fleſh, Veal, Lamb, young Mutton, Conies Hares, and wild Swines fleſh may he eat very well, and eſpecially young Hogs fleſh is much commended for this diſeaſe. The fruits and herbs are Barly pap, wheaten pap, Coleworts, Spinage, Gourds, Cucumbers, Melons, Apricocks, green Fennel, and above all Sage and Betony. And in fine, all that hath a ſaltiſh and opening power, and not hot above the ſecond degree, all ſorts of Cherries, and eſpecially the kernels of the ſame, be good for to cleanſe the Kidneyes, and to break the ſtone. in like manner alſo Haſel nuts, freſh Almonds, and Figs that be well dryed, and Raiſons be altogether much commended. This Patient may eat ſowr Apples (but no ſweet) and alſo Peaches. He muſt refrain from Pears (if they be not very ſweet, and the ſtones taken out of them ;) Piſtaces, Pingles, (and ſometimes nuts) be commended : but Cheſtnuts, Medlars, and Services are hurtful. Of all milk Sheeps milk is the very beſt for the Kidneyes, and next to that Goats milk : but above all other, the whay of milk. But the firſt milk after calving or *Coloſtra* muſt be eſchewed, except that of Sheep and Goats. Butter is not much commended, but Sallet oyl is much more requiſite. Cheeſe is utterly to be refrained, for it hath an eſpecial nature to ingender gravel, unleſſe that it be permitted otherwhiles for cuſtome ſake, and that it be Cheeſe of a year old, which is dry, well ſalted, and not rotten. And alwaies in the end of the mealtide, of confected fruits, Olives and Rapes of Brimſwick are moſt healthful, and *Siſarum*, Quinces, Ginger, Walnuts, conſerves of Piony, of Burrage, Bugloſſe, of Roſes, water Lillies, and eſpecially of Cicory, which do open the obſtruction and cleanſe. Item, Vinegar, the juice of Citrons, of Lemons, half ſowr, half ſweet, Pomegranates be alſo very meet for this malady, but Verjuice is forbidden.

Of ſpices and ſeeds theſe are good, Cinamom, Pepper, Ginger, Saffron, Annis, Carraway, Lovage ſeed, *Ameos*, Rue ſeed, but a little of each for meats.

The drink for this Patient ſhall be white wine, or red wine which is not hard nor ſowr, but of a good and pleaſant taſt. The Cherry wine doth not onely cool and moiſten alone the Kidneyes, but alſo the inward parts of the body, therefore may the ſame be freely drunken. Preſerved Cherries do alſo the ſame.

Thus much have we meant to ſpeak of the order of dyet for thoſe that be plagued and vexed with the Gravel, which may be augmented or diminiſhed according to the quality of the cauſe.

How

How to asswage the pain in Kidneyes. §. 4.

WE will speak now first of all of some particular things which have a severe vertue for to conveigh the medicines into the Kidneyes and Bladder, viz. Saxifrage, *Milium Solis*, Parsley of Macedonia, and stone Parsley, *Cantharides*, the roots of Fennel, Sperage, and Butchers broom seeds of Melons, Gourds, Cucumbers and Pompeons. These following have power for to cool the Kidneyes; viz. Lettice seeds the seeds of Purslain, Endive, white Pepper seed, Tasel, juice of Quinces, broad Plantain, and such like.

The compounded things are the siropes of water Lillies, of Vinegar, and all that cooleth the Liver and the Spleen, whereof is written before. Afterwards you have in the third part in the beginning of the eight Chap. sundry things which are also good and very meet; therefore are you not to leave them unread. But if you will have yet more, then look what is written of *Diabete*.

If any body then do meet with this disease, or fear to get the same; then must he take the utmost green pils of Beans, and distil water of them, and drink thereof two ounces tempered with Sugar. Other do temper amongst it as much water of Hounds tongue, and use it every day. Take oyl of Violets, of water Lillies, and such like cooling things, and annoint therewith the Kidneyes.

You have also in the beginning of the foresaid eight Chapter, a salve called *Anodyna*, which asswageth all pains. Item, take the Oyl of Violets two ounces, Oyl of *Sesamum*, and of sweet Almonds, ana. ℥. 1. ß Butter, ℥ 1. Saffron, ℥. 1. ß. Wax, ℥. 1. ß. Dill seed, Cammomil, Ducks grease, ana. ℥. ß. three yolks of Egs; temper them together, and make a salve thereof.

Another. Take Eldern oyl, ℥. 1. oyl of Roses and of Violets, ana. ℥. ß. Ceruse one ounce and a quarter, Rose water, ℥. 1. two yolks of Egs, Wax, ℥. 5. The oyl and Wax must be molten together; and let them seethe a little: when it is almost cold, then mix the other things amongst it; and at the last the two yolks of Egs, and ten drach. of fine flour, and afterwards stir it well about. This salve is marvellous good for all hot heated Kidneyes, and especially if one after the annonting do lay water Lilly leaves upon it.

Likewise doth the Saunders salve expel all hot matter and distemperatures of the Kidneyes, like as same is described in the first Chapter and 1. §.

Item, take the Saunders salve, and of that which is called *Comitissa*, ana. ℥ ß. oyl of Violets one quarter of an ounce, temper them all together and annoint the Kidneyes with it twice or thrice a day.

The Rose salve which is described in the first part, the second Chapter and first §. and other more which be noted in the second Part, the fourth Chap. and 3. §. are all together meet for this purpose.

Item, take Roses, Purslain, of each one handful, seeth them in Cow milk, and stamp them to growt: add unto it red Saunders powdred, ℥. 2. oyl of Roses as much as you will for to make a salve of it.

Item, take oyl of Olive and fresh Butter, ana. ℥. ß. the juice of *Fenuica*, of *Milium Solis*, and Marjoram gentle, ana. ℥. 3. let them seeth together until the juice be consumed. This salve is much commended. Or take foresaid herbs, and seethe them in oyl of grease and wring them through a cloth.

Take Rose water and oyl of Roses, ana. ℥. 1. Vinegar one spoonful, the white of an egg, and bray them well together, and lay it blood warm over the Kidneyes.

If the pain will not thereby be eased, then let him wear a leaden plate, full of holes, upon the Kidneyes continually: it taketh away the heat and Venery. If one perceive any gravel in the Kidneyes, then cut a Radish in thin slices, and frie it in Goose grease, and lay it on the Kidneyes. In fine, for all such inflaming of the Reins, there is nothing better then to bathe, and chiefly in all such waters as do run over iron mines. You are also to look how to strengthen the stomach in this disease: look for that in the eleventh Chap. and the 4. §. unto the end thereof, where is shewed at large what strengtheneth the stomach with heat or with cold. For this also is convenient all that hereafter shall be written of the gravel and the stone of the Kidneyes.

Of all kind of Impostume in the Kidneyes. §. 4.

THe Grecians do call this disease *Sclerosi*. The same may also be caused through two manner of means: First, if the matter of the impostume begin to harden through great heat, and to alter into a stone: Or that at the first it be an impostume of Melancholick humours, which is especially caused of cold that hardneth the matter. The signs of the said impostumes are lorenesse, or heavinesse about the place of the Kidneyes with little or no pain at all, whereby the members do grow lean. The urine is wholly clear, raw, and very little: and although it be (as many famous Physitians do affirm) that this disease is not to be holpen, yet are you to use all things for it which be hereafter described for the hardnesse of the Milt and Liver. And first of all, he is to be purged, the *Sapheu* or Liver vein is to be opened, and afterwards the Kidneyes to be anhointed with Hens grease: with the marrow of Neats feet, or with the salve *Alisson*. And afterwards this plaister following is to be applyed upon it: Take Linseed, and Fenegreek, of each five drachmes, Mallows, Hollyhock seed, Dill seed, and Camomil, of each half an ounce, Gum, *Bdellium*, and Turpentine, of each three drachmes. First, dissolve the Gum in warm water, afterwards temper the rest amongst it, and so make a plaister of it. If so be then the Patient have any want of stool, then is Cassie or Manna to be used for it. This disease of the Kidneyes doth make also oftentimes that one cannot hold his water, yea that otherwise it passeth away from the Patient unwittingly in his sleep, whereof we will hereafter speak and discourse apart.

Of impostumes and ulcers in the Kidneyes. §. 7.

WHat difference is between the impostumes and ulcers of the Kidneyes, it is sufficiently declared in the eleventh Chap. and 29. §. because that the Kidneyes be subject to both of these maladies. Therefore we will discourse of them severally, and speak first of the impostumes, and therewith also shew all that concerneth both these diseases.

Notwithstanding that both these diseases, of *Hippocrates*, or *Galen*, and of all other learned be thought to be incurable, or that at the leastwise the same could not without great industry and long time be holpen; for which they alleage many reasons; yet are there nevertheless many kinds of means found, whereby the pain may be asswaged. And if so be that they do not grow and wax worse. Now then concerning the outward remedies of this disease, you have for it salves, plaisters, and other means before for to lay upon it, wherewith is this remedy also much commended: which is, that one is to lay tow over all his privities, being wetted in the brayed yolks of Egs, and to refresh and renew the same often.

We must also speak here somewhat of the causes of the impostume, and shew first that the Kidneyes and the bladder in this pain do depend so much one upon the other, that they cannot be discerned one from the other: therefore all that we shall write hereafter is for both these parts.

These foresaid impostumes may proceed as well out of cold as hot matter, which cometh to fall upon the Kidneyes and the bladder, and there to assemble. But if any outward cause do happen unto it, as blows, fallings, and such like, that must be learned of the sick person. If the impostume be in the Kidneyes, then is there great pain in the same place, the Patient cannot make his water, and there is a small Ague with it. Or if the disease be in the bladder, then doth there arise a very painful swelling about the privities, like to womens pangs in childbed, chiefly if there be a hot matter, which causeth also an ague. And if this do come through cold, then is the pain and the ague more tolerable, but the making of water very grievous, and this disease lingreth long. But in case that the impostume be in the right Kidney, then doth the pain draw upwards: or if it be in the left Kidney, then doth the pain stretch downwards even to the bladder; the Patient hath one while cold hands, another while cold feet; and his legs on the same side will be for the most part asleep. Also the sick person cannot lie upon the whole side, but must lie upon his back, or his side where the malady is. There doth come also oftentimes great binding of the body, with the first headach, watching, redneſſe

neſſe of the eyes and face, heavy breath, and eſpecially if the impoſtume be in the membranes. And if the Patient do ſtir himſelf forcibly, then thinketh he that the impoſtume hangeth or ſacketh.

But before we come to the remedies, there be certain rules which are to be obſerved in ſuch like impoſtumes. Firſt, in the beginning he muſt beware of giving too ſtrong purgations. Secondly, onely laxative things are to be uſed; as Violets, Caſſie, and ſuch like. Thirdly, if ſo be that the Patient be plethorick of body, you muſt open the Liver vein or Sephen. Fourthly, there muſt not be given unto him, ſo long as the impoſtume is not ripe, any thing that forceth urine; for thereby would the humours be driven to ſink the more vehemently upon the Kidneyes, or into ſome other part of the body, whereby the diſeaſe might be increaſed. Fifthly, one muſt endeavour that the humours which do flow towards the kidneyes, may be conveyed into the outermoſt members. Sixthly, and that by reaſon that the kidneyes ſhould not harden. Seventhly, when the impoſtume is teorow ripe (which may be perceived by the urine) then is there to be given him diuretical and ſtrong things. Eightly, if the body be bound, then muſt he not be let blood; likewiſe alſo if he have too many ſtools; but all accidents are to be prevented and matched before. Ninthly, becauſe that the Kidneyes be ſo far diſtant from the neck of the ſtomach; therefore are the medicines which are to be taken by the mouth, ſo to be compoſed, that their vigor, through ſo long a diſtance and paſſage, be not enfeebled and abated. Tenthly, all they that have any diſeaſe in the Kidneyes, are to eat and drink but little, cheifly if there be many humors in the body preſent. Eleventhly, if ſo be that the diſeaſe of the kidneyes may be holpen with any mild things, then muſt there be no ſtrong things to knit and draw them together that they cannot come to any corruption. Therefore are temperate things to be uſed unto it, and warm and cold things to be mixed together.

Of the impoſtumation in the Kidneyes through heat. §. 8.

AND for to come to the remedies; if ſo be that this impoſtume be cauſed through heat, then is it firſt to be opened with Cliſters, as hereafter followeth: Take Mallows, Viole leaves, and Hollihock roots, of each one handful, Linſeed, Fenegreek ſeed, ana. ℥. 2. ſeethe them altogether, and take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, oyl of Violets, ℥. 3. oyl of Roſes, ℥. 3. for to ſtrengthen the Kidneyes: make a Cliſter thereof, and you are to uſe the ſame 3. or 4. times, if it be needful. Or take Barly water, ſtoupe with the foreſaid oyl, or Sallat oyl. But if there be any laſk or ſcouring withit, then uſe binding Cliſters, and ſuch as do ſtrengthen the intrails, whereof every be divers diſcovered.

Alſo the liver vein is to be opened in theſe ſick perſons on the ſame ſide, and that in the arm where the diſeaſe is.

Secondly, if the Patient may ſuſtain it, the vein is to be opened in the hams or bending of the knee. Or if it be not to be found, then to take or open the Saphea, and that diverſe in the ſide where the impoſtume is.

Afterwards cooling ſalves are to be uſed, or thoſe plaiſters to be laid upon it which we have lately deſcribed. And if the ſickneſſe come to diminiſh therewith, then is it a good ſign: but if the pain and the Ague do continue ſtil, and the Patient cannot make any water, or that it paſſe too exceedingly away from him, then is a ſign that there is an aſſembly of corruption in the Kidneyes, againſt which you have alſo a note before, what is to be done in theſe hot kind of accidents.

For this is this plaiſter following good: Take Roſes, ℥. 1. the ſeed of Purſlain, and white Poppy ſeed, ana. ℥. ſ. Sallat oyl, ℥. 1. Barly meal as much as will ſuffice for to make a plaiſter.

Item, take pounded Cammomil, and Linſeed oyl, of each one ounce, oyl of Spikenard four ounces, Bran as much as will ſuffice for to make a plaiſter, theſe being made, apply them on the Kidneyes. Item, take the ſlime of Fleawort, and of Quince kernels, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Roſes two ounces, Endive water ſix ounces, the ſeed of Purſlain, of white Poppy, and Vinegar, of each half an ounce, Barley meal as much as is ſandfull for to make a plaiſter.

Item, take Hollihock roots, and Mallow roots, of each one handful, freſh Figs one ounce, the marrow of Veal bones, Butter, and Ducks greaſe, of each half an ounce, oyl

of

of Iweet Almonds, and of Camomil, of each one ounce and a half, Camomil and Balm flowers, of each half an ounce, Barly meal, and wheat meal, as much as ſufficeth for to make a plaiſter. This pap or plaiſter maturateth all impoſtumes.

In the beginning of theſe impoſtumes give the ſick perſons Barly water or Mead to drink, the water of Melons and Pompeons, rempered with Barly water the ſpace of one week. Other do ordain this drink: Take the ſyrup of Violets, the muſcilage of Fleawort, and Mallowes, of Hollihock roots, and the ſeeds of Cotton, of each half an ounce, Reiſons (the ſtones taken out) one ounce, Licorice three drachmes, Sugar eighteene ounces; then make a ſyrup of it, and temper a little of the juyce of Nightſhade with it, and drink it ſo with Barly water.

This ſyrup cooleth, and therefore it is very good againſt the Ague, which is alwayes preſent with this hot impoſtume: and relaxeth, clenſeth, and aſſwageth the pain. Afterwards is the body to be purged with Caſſy, ſowr Dates, Manna and ſuch like.

The Dyet.

ALl ſuch Patients as have a hot impoſtume in their Kidnyes, muſt (as is ſaid) keep themſelves very ſober in eating and drinking, and muſt eat none other but Barly paps, Hen broths made ſowr with Verjuice, ſtoved Spinage, Mallowes, Orage, Lettice, Buſrage, Almond milk, and young Pullets decocted with Gourds, &c. And this is to continue ſo long, until it be openly ſeen and known that the impoſtume is ripe. If ſo be then the patient between meales be troubled with any great thirſt, then muſt be given unto him ſugred Barly water to drink. But if ſo be that the Ague be very ſmall, and that the impoſtume be through cold *Phlegma*, then muſt he rather drink Mead. But if there be great heat with it, then muſt he leave fleſh, and Wine, alwayes at the firſt.

But if the ſame be cauſed through cold, then may watered wine be allowed, but no fleſh, at all, chiefly Pork and Beef: alſo Cheeſe, Peaſe, Beanes, vnleavened bread, and Rice, be forbidden. But all field fowles, rere Egs, river fiſh, dreſt with Parſly rootes, and ſalt, are permitted for him.

Of Impoſtumes in the Kidnyes through cold. §. 9.

WE have admoniſhed before that all ſuch impoſtumes of the Kidnyes may also proceed of cold, and wherby the ſame may be knowne. For this impoſtume are Cliſters fit to be adhibited, and then to make afterwards this potion following.

Take water Mints, Hyſſop, Wormwood, rumpled Mints, Reiſons, Ireos, of each one ounce, Caruway, Fennel, Endive, ſmall Endive, of each one quarter of an ounce, Licorice, half an ounce, Hony nine ounces, prepare it then, and uſe it as other potions.

And if ſo be that after eight dayes there be many humors preſent, then firſt open his Liver vein, afterwards the *Saphea*, and purge the *Phlegma* with *Diacarthi*, and uſe Cliſters of herbs which be mentioned in the firſt potion: but put Mallowes unto it, Hollihock roots, and Camomil: alſo oyl of Camomil and of *Nardus*. After the taking of this Cliſter the Patient is to lye very high with his taile, that the Cliſter may the better run towards the Reines.

Of the Exulceration in the Kidnies. §. 10.

THeſe Exulcerations may as well come in the Kidnyes, as in any other places of the body, where they with their matter and corroſion do take away the natural operation of the Kidnyes. The cauſes of theſe ulcers may be blowes, falles, wounds, and ſuch like, as alſo blood, and other humors, which deſcend thicherwards, and do there exulcerate and open the Kidnies and the bladder through their ſharpneſſe.

Item, if that any impoſtumation of the Kidnyes be not throwly healed: Item, through the gravell and the ſtone that do bruiſe the Kidnyes within: alſo of the uſe of all hot meats and Spices, and of eating ſalt, and by doing over great labour in the heat of the Sun. All theſe former cauſes may ingender ſome ſharp humors which fall afterwards upon the Kidnyes, and there do corrode and exulcerate them.

The ſigns of theſe ulcers are corruption, and blood, with tough ſlime, as if they were ſmall veins peeces, as it were fleſh, which do paſſe away with the urine. If ſo be that there be any heat with it, that is knowne by the thirſt and by the feeling. The ſigns of the Stone are to be found in their proper place.

If ſo be that the diſeaſe of the Kidnyes and the bladder, with other more ſuch like diſeaſes, do agree ſo neer together that the ſame may be hardly diſcerned, yet we will nevertheleſſe diſcover certain eſpecial ſigns of it.

For the diſeaſes of the Kidnyes there is no grief in making water, like as there is in the diſeaſe of the Bladder, wherein the water is made with pain and longſome. In the ulcers of the Kidnyes are alwayes found in the urine ſmall peeces of fleſh like ſmall red Corans: where to the contrary, in the ulcers of the Bladder, there avoid great and white peeces.

If ſo be that any skalineſſe be pift out with blood, and corruption which ſtinketh, then doth ſuch come out of the Bladder: like as contrariwiſe, that which cometh from the Kidnyes doth not ſtink. In the exulceration of the Bladder is loſſe of a little blood: but in the ulcers of the Kidnyes much. If ſo be then that the Kidnyes have any diſeaſe, then doth the Patient feel pain about the Reins: and in the diſeaſe of the Bladder, there doth the Patient feel pain above the privities. The corruption which cometh out of the Kidnyes is mixt together with the urine, and doth ſettle in an hours ſpace not to the bottome of the glaſſe: where contrarily all that which cometh from the Bladder doth ſeparate it ſelf forthwith from the urine, ſetling to the bottom of the glaſſe. We are alſo to alleage certain common rules for this: as firſt, if there be any young cholerick perſon which feeleth pain in the water conduits, that the ame muſt be forbidden Wine. Secondly, for as much as theſe ulcers do chiefly proceed through the falling down of any ſharp humors, then it is needful that their ſharpneſſe and heat be allayed with ſweet things. Thirdly, one muſt refrain from all hot, ſharp, ſalt, bitter, and ſowr things, and to uſe all that is to the contrary of them. Fourthly, to drink too much, whether it be Wine or Beer is hurtful, that one be not thereby conſtrained to make much water. Fifthly, Venery, great labor, and exerciſe, be very hurtful for this diſeaſe, for that the parched Kidnyes cannot be throwly healed without reſt and quiet. Sixthly, if ſo be there be nothing that may hinder the letting of bood, then is the ſame very profitable, as be alſo all great purgations. Seventhly, by reaſon that vomiting maketh the matter to have recourſe unto another place, therefore is it not to be taken to be unprofitable for this diſeaſe. Eighthly, if there be great pain with this ulceration, then muſt diligence be given firſt to aſſwage the ſame pain, and afterwards look well how to cure and cleanſe this diſeaſe. Ninthly, for to heal this diſeaſe, one muſt firſt begin with things which provok urin gently, whereby the Kidnyes may be a little cleanſed. Tenthly, all medicins which are to be taken for the diſeaſed Kidnies, whether it be by vomit, or otherwiſe, muſt be alwayes done faſting, and he muſt alſo faſt long after it. Eleventhly, after the mundificasion of the ulcers, aſtringent and healing things are to be taken prepared alwayes with exſiccative medicaments.

Thus for to heal theſe ulcers theſe are the right means: if ſo be that the Patient be hard bounden, then is he to be looſed with gentle Cliſters. Accordingly, if he be full of blood, he muſt firſt have his Liver vein, and afterwards the *Sephe* to be opened. For his drink, the Patient is to uſe Hony water, or make this drink following: Take twelve ounces of peeled Barly, Fennel roots, Smallage roots, and maydenhair, of each one handfull: ſeethe them all together in two pots of water untill that the Barly be well ſwollen. Afterwards take twelve ounces of Hony, and boyl it all together with the foreſaid decoction, but ſcum it well, and drink thereof.

If ſo be that the ulcer be great, and that there be need of ſtronger things, then put unto Hyſſope, and Horehound, of each two ounces, and a good pint of water more. But if there be but a ſmall ulcer which hath not long continued, then take Mallowes, Holihock ſeeds, the ſeeds of Melons and of Pompeons, of each alike much. But you peele the ſeeds, and give thereof three drachmes at one time tempered with Mead. Afterwards ſhall he urge himſelf to vomit once every fourth day. Let this much ſuffice briefly ſpoken of the ulcers of the Kidnyes.

Of the Pissing of Blood.

FOr as much as this pissing of blood may be causèd as well of the ulcers, in the Kidnies, as in the Liver, therefore we will describe it here in this Chapter. The pissing of blood is of two sorts: the one, when one pisseth fair clean blood: the other, when the same is mixed with matter or corruption. This pissing of of blood, cometh of inward and outward causes. The outward may be causèd through falles, blowes, strong riding, insatiable venery, great labour, of certain meats, and drinks, wounds, of a concourse of melancholick humors which are wont to be driven out through womens Terms, or through the Pyles. Of the inward causes are superfluity sharpnesse of humours and of the urine, winds, tumors, impostumes, debility of the Kidnies, and of the Bladder: then doth he feel the pain about the privities, and the blood is congealed, and separated from the urine. In case that the blood be much, and runneth out swiftly, then doth it signify a broken vein: but if it come out slow or longsome, then an ulcer: but if the urin be like water wherein fresh flesh is washed, then it is of a weakned Liver: and if so be that it do come of a superfluous blood, then is the same to be seen by the fulnesse of the body; but if it come through the sharpnesse of the humour, then doth the Patient feel a continual burning. But before we do come to the particular remedies, it is needful that we do make declaration of certain common rules. First if so be that the malady be new, then above all things is the Liver vein to be opened, and afterwards (if the cause require, and that the Patient be strong enough) the *Saphen* is to be opened, thereby to drive the blood to another place. Secondly, in the beginning are not astringent nor binding things to be used, that the blood may not congeal and coole, but he must first begin with such things as do cleanse the water conduits. Thirdly, if this pissing of blood do come as an expulsion of superfluity, or *Crisis*, then is it not to be stayed, if it be not so that thereby the natural powers be overmuch weakned. Fourthly, whensoever the the pissing of blood, whether it be causèd of the Liver, Kidnyes or Bladder, is throughly cleansed, then is the same blood to be holpen with cold and astringent things, and to mix amongst them Anodines. Fifthly, all such Patients, are to eschew all great labour, venery, hot drinks, all spices, and all hot things. Now for to come to the remedie of the same, then it is to be considered whether this pissing of blood do proceed of outward causes which may well be perceived by the sick person, and is also to be remedied. First of all, whether this pissing of blood have continued long or not. Of the pissing of blood which hath not long continued, we have hitherto spoken. But in old pissing of blood, one must begin according to the contents of the other rules, with the cleansing of the ureters, which is to be done through these meanes: Take Maidenhair, four handfuls, Melon seed one ounce and a half, Sugar and hony, of each nine ounces: make a cleer syrup of it, and give it with water wherein Melon seed is decocted.

Another which is very good. Take four handfuls of Cincofoile, Sugar nine ounces: seethe the herbs in sufficient water, then wring it, and with Sugar make therof a syrup. This syrup is to be given with water wherin Plantaine is decocted: this syrup healeth and cleanseth certainly.

If any one fall or be beaten, whereby a vein is broken in the body: the Liver vein is then to be opened, for that thereby the blood will be drawn back which doth run out of those places: but if than the blood do avoid in aboundance, and the Patient be strong enough, then is the *Saphen* to be opened the second day afterwards: and to the end that the blood which lyeth clotted in the water conduits might be carried forth, then give to the sick body a potion wherin Fennel roots, the roots of Smallage, Dragons roots, Irrys, Hyssope, Maidenhair and Ciceres be sodden, afterwards one drachme, or one drachme and a half of *Troschisti de Carabe* may be given him with water wherein the seeds of Butchers broom and such like is decocted, or the *Trochisci de terra sigillata*.

For this is also meet the confection of *Thylantum Persicum*, but it is not to be used without the advice of a learned Physitian.

Some do also take three quarters of an ounce of the conserve of Roses, and temper amongst it seven grains of Henbane seed, and two scruples of prepared Corall, which may be used with steeled water. It is also very fit to use otherwhiles one ounce, or one ounce and a half of Cassy, and chiefly if there be heat withit. We have spoken before of the letting of blood, and thereupon are to give to this sick person a profitable purgation

of

of Rubarb in substance which is beaten, and not wrung out, but in powder of Plantaine water; afterwards give him one drachme of beaten Horsetail, and one quarter of an ounce of Plantaine water, and strew all his meats with the same water.

All his flesh is to be sodden with Butchers Broom seed and unripe Grapes. He is always to beware of all sharp, tart and salt things, and lay a plaister on the place of the malady made of *Bolus* and the juyce of Sloes, *Aloe*, *Licynum*, Vinegar and Rose water. If you will have more remedies, then looke into the former §. of the impostumes and ulcers of the Kidnyes.

And although all the same were caused of other meanes, yet shall you find also three remedies fit for the same. And if so be that this bleeding be caused through sharp meat, or any composed wind, then is the Patient to order himself as of the letting of blood, and taking of the foresaid *Trochiscis* is before said. But if there be any impostume or ulcer of the Kidnyes with it, that may be seene by the matter and blood: therefore have you hereafter all that is requisite for the pissing of matter.

Let the Party be purged with some gentle medicine as Cassia newly drawne, mechoacan, Manna, or the like.

Then I have used my Mastick pils made of Mastick and venice turpentine sodden together: but above all, the powder of Hole Armenicke, drunk in sheeps milk is to be used.

If any man pisse matter. §. 12.

THe pissing of matter must proceed out of the bladder, Kidnyes or some of the uppermost parts, as from some ulcer of the sides, ulcer of the lights, the Liver &c. the which may proceed from some outward causes, as of blowes, falles, woundes, strong diureticall medicines, and such like. the inward causes may be unclean impostumes, ulcers, superfluous, tough and grosse humours, wind or stone, which do settle there and make some excoriation. The signes of these accidents may be perceived easily by the paine of the same place, and by the declaration of the Patient.

This infirmity is thus to be holpen: take peeled Melon seed, Cucumber seed, Gourd seed, and Pompeon shed, of each one ounce and a quarter, fine Bolus, *Gummi Arabicum*, Frankincense, and Dragons blood, of each five drachmes, *Opium* one drachme and a half, the seed of Smallage one drachme: make Trochiskes thereof with the muscilage of Quince kernels, and give the sick folks every day the weight of one quarter of an ounce with the syrup of Poppy heads. For this is also to be used consolidating and mundifying things, as hereafter followeth: Take peeled Melon seed, the seed of Hollihocks, and Nightshade, of each halfan ounce, Bitter Almonds, Pompeon seed, fresh Maidenhair, Ireos, and Licorice, of each half a drachme: make a confection thereof with Sugar, or with clear honey. For mundification are also fit, Barly meal, mead, the decoction of figs, of Horse hound and maiden hair decocted with milk. Now for to heal, you are to take great and small Comfrey, of each one quarter of an ounce, Dragons blood, Frankincense, Mastick, and fine Bolus, of each one drachme, parched Rubarb, the juyce of Sloes, and Myrtle seed, of each half a drachme, Indie *Opium* half a scruple, Sugar as much as you please, make a confection thereof.

This syrup following may also be prepared: Take Licorice one quarter of an ounce, Maidenhair and hounds rib, of each two handfuls, Peeled Melon seed, Pompeon seed, Cucumber seed, and Gourd seed, of each one drachme, white Poppy seed, Hollihock seed, and muscilage of Quince kernels, of each half an ounce, Dragagant and Gum, of each three drachmes, Rubarb, Roses, of each one ounce and a half, white Sugar nine ounces make a clear syrup of it. The *Trochisci de Alkekengi*, which is of winter Cherries, are surpassing good in this disease: and not onely for this, but also for all other diseases of the Kidnyes: give one drachme thereof, or one drachme and a half with Goats milk or Plantaine water. Also for this disease is Honey water to be poured into the yard, and when the Patient hath kept it in a certain season and put it out again, then is this following to be used. Take Cerusse, *Lapis calla*, Gum Frankincense, *Opium*, Dragons blood, of each half a scruple, temper it with four ounces of woman milk, and spout one quarter thereof at one time through the yard. In like manner shall he drink Basil water, and water of Horse radish, or spout it in. For this must also this order be observed, to that he now use consolidating, and then again mundifying things, and doe alter them according as occasion serveth.

Item, take oyl of Roſes two ounces, oyl of Myrtle, and the juice of Plantain, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Trochiſcorum de Terra ſigillata, de Camphe*, of each one drachme, Vineger one quarter of an ounce, Wax as much as is needful for to make a ſalve. This ſalve for the piſſing of blood and water, is to be rubbed on the place of the Kidneyes, and alſo round about the privities above and beneath, being rubbed well in, and then well covered with warm clothes.

Of outward Ulcers of the Kidneyes. §. 13.

THeſe Ulcers outwardly in the Kidneys, are wont to be cauſed if one lye upon his back, then are the places of the Kidneys red, and do come to exulcerate. Now when this is perceived, then is there a plaiſter to be made with the meal of Millet and with Pannick meal, and be laid thereon, and then are you to ſtrew it with Willow leaves, and to moyſten the heated place with cold Roſe water, or to lay any cooling things upon it. Theſe ſalves following are alſo meet for this, *viz.* ſalve of Ceruſe, Poplar ſalve, Sanders ſalve, and other cooling ſalve of *Galen*, vine leaves ſteeped in Roſe water; and thin beaten Lead alſo which is full of holes, worn upon the reins. Item, take oyl of Roſes tempered with a little vinegar and laid upon it. If that there do then appear bladder or bliſters which do break open, then are they to be cured with cooling ſalves, and dryed up with the ſalve of Ceruſe or *Album coctum*.

All theſe foreſaid ſickneſſes and diſeaſes are the true meſſengers of the moſt grievous diſeaſe of the Stone or gravel of the Bladder and the Kidneys, whereof we will hereafter further diſcourſe and write. But we will firſt of all preſcribe a brief order of dyet for all them that be infected with theſe terrible diſeaſes, as the pain of the Kidneys, impoſtumes, and ulcers.

The order of Dyet. §. 14.

ALL meats of milk, of wheat meal, of the crums of bread, barley paps, oaten pap, are very commodious for this diſeaſe. In like manner all field Fowles which are to be eaten, as Partridges, Pheaſants, Doves, Turtle doves, Kids, and young Mutton, if it be utterly without an Ague: but if ſo be that there be a great heat with it, then is how to uſe Melons and Peaches which be very ripe.

Haſel Nuts, Almonds, Piſtaches, Pingles, and ſuch like may he alſo eat. Item, young hens, new Eggs, hen-broth, wherein Purſlain, Lettice, Melon ſeed, Pompeons, Gourds, Cucumbers, or any other cooling things have been ſodden; all River fiſh that have ſcales, aſſayed, are to be toleated. Green herbs, as Orage, Mallowes, Purſlain, and Lettice, are alſo very meet for him. His beſt drink were indeed Barley water; but if he will drink Wine, and ſo there be no Ague with it, then may he drink good thick red Wine tempered with water. Aſſes milk is marvellous good for him; and if the ſame cannot be gotten, then may one take Goats milk. It is before admoniſhed that every ſick Patient is to beware of all ſharp, hot, bitter, and ſweet things, and chiefly of all fruit, whether they be green or dryed.

The ſeventeenth Chapter.

Of the Gravel, Sand, or Stone of the Kidneyes, and of the Bladder.

THis ſtone or gravel hath his principal off-ſpring in the Kidneys, in the Bladder, and ſeldom in the hollowneſſe of other inward parts, as of the Liver, &c. The cauſe of it, is commonly by inheritance, like as the Gout or Podagra, the Leproſie, and other more. Alſo theſe diſeaſes do come through a weak ſtomach and Liver, that ingender much tough and groſſe ſlime. In like ſort alſo of a foggy ayr, ſmiting by meat or drink, the feeding of overmuch ſlimy meats, the which do obſtruct not only the Kidneyes, but alſo all other inward parts, as hath been ſaid, and hinder them that they cannot have their right operation: the

the which may evidently be ſeen in young children, which are moſt ſubject to this diſeaſe, for that they eat much milk, whereby the ſtone and gravel is moſt of all ingendred, of which the groſſeſt ſinketh into the bladder with the urin, where the ſame lyeth and dryeth, and is confirmed to the hardneſſe of a ſtone, like as we for example cannot otherwiſe make then this foreſaid groſſe matter of the ſtone, then with the matter of a tyle ſtone, which is firſt a weak tough ſlimy earth, afterwards dryed, and at laſt burnt and baked in an oven to a hard ſtone. The ſtone of the bladder differeth alſo much from the ſtone of the Kidneys, for it is whiter, harder, and greater then the ſtone of the kidneys.

This foreſaid ſtone or gravel is known by theſe ſigns. Lieth he in the Bladder? then muſt the patient often rub his privities with his hand, his member is alwayes erected. Alſo in young children, they feel moſt pain about their privities; the urine paſſeth from him with labour and very great pain, and otherwhiles the Arſegut thereby deſcendeth. But if it be the ſtone of the Kidneyes, then do they feel great pain in the reins of the back, as it were the Colick or pain of the guts, becauſe that the pain draweth downwards.

As ſoon as they ſtirre themſelves, then doth the pain increaſe; they are much inclined to vomiting and caſting, their body is bound, their urine is raw and wateriſh, they are alwaies provoked to piſſe, nevertheleſſe they cannot be rid of it without very great pain: therefore can this growing and confirmation of the ſtone in theſe parts of the Kidneyes not be without great pain and grief. It is alſo evidently and ſufficiently well known to each mans eyes, where the pain remaineth in one place that the urine doth avoid with gravel, ſand, tough ſlime, yea ſometimes mixt with blood and other things, and the kidneyes be full of heat.

Afterwards this grief and pain ſtretcheth even to the conduits of the urine, and principally in fat folks, and before even to the privities, and then eſpecially when they would make water. But becauſe there be many deceived in the knowledge of the ſtone, and adjudge otherwhiles the Colick for the Stone, and ſo come to uſe contrary medicines; therefore it is not without great need that we make a declaration of both their differences.

The firſt is this, that the pain of the Kidneyes is not ſo ſharp as the pain of the Collick. Secondly, the pain of the Colick doth appear beneath in the right ſide, and ſtretcheth her from thence upwards towards the left ſide. Contrariwiſe, the pain of the kidneys doth begin from above, and ſo deſcendeth ſoftly downwards even unto the place where it doth ſettle it ſelf, and ſtretcheth her a little more towards the back. Thirdly, the pain of the kidneys is much more forcible when he is faſting, and the pain of the Colick is by faſting and emptineſſe eaſed. Fourthly, the Collick cometh upon a ſudden; and to the contrary, the pain of the kidneys cometh in a longer time. Fifthly, the Collick will be taken and driven away, when the wind and the ordure may have their expulſion or avoidance by Cliſters, but the pain of the gravel not. Sixthly, all Saxifrages and all other things that break the ſtone, are good for the Kidneys and not for the Colick. Laſtly, there is found in the urine gravel and ſand, and not in the Colick or pain of the guts.

By all theſe foreſaid declarations one may eaſily adjudge whether this diſeaſe be in the kidneys or in the bowels.

For to hinder and reſtrain the ingendring and growing of the gravel and ſtone. §. 1.

AND that we may orderly proceed herein, heed is firſt of all to be taken how the matter, whence the ſand and ſtone is ingendred, may be taken away, and how that the unnatural heat may be tempered, the which is firſt to be done through thoſe things that do purge the ſame matter, as hereafter followeth.

Take *Electuarium Indum* 3. drach. *Agaricus* one ſcruple, Ginger five grains, temper them with a little white wine, and drink it up, and faſt thereupon four hours, then drink a cruſe of ſugred Barley water, and eat four hours after it.

Or take *Electuarium Diaphœniconis* one quarter of an ounce, Turbith one drach. Ginger one ſcruple, ſalt of Indy 3. grains, give it him with water wherein *Miliam Solis* is decocted, and then made warm with Sugar.

One more milder; Take Turbith one drachme and a half, *Hermodactili* one drachme, *Diagridii* ſix grains, Salt of Indi two grains, Ginger half a ſcruple, Annis and Maſtick, of each three grains, Sugar pennets one ounce, white Sugar half an ounce, ſteep them

them all together in three ounces of the water of Smallage, or the water of Maidenhair throughout the whole night; after that wring it out well and drink it; if ſo be that there appear any phlegmatick matter, then may the patients vein be opened: but if ſo be that the matter fall into the ſtomach, then it is adviſed that the patient be made to vomit, and how the ſame is to be effected, look for that in the Regiſter; for that through vomiting, the matter will be eſpecially drawn away which would run towards the reines. For this vomiting, be Radiſhes, Orage ſeeds, the middlemoſt peeles of Elder, and *Nux vomica* to be uſed.

Some uſe Cliſters, but they muſt be very eaſie and mild; but Suppoſitories are much more praiſed for this diſeaſe. Item, all things which move urine, do alſo let and hinder the growing of the ſtone or gravel. But firſt the mildeſt are to be begun withal, like as with theſe following, as Licorice, &c. and whereas is heat, Melon ſeed, Pompeon ſeed, Gourd ſeed, Cucumber ſeed, Sperage roots or the water of them, freſh Fennel, Hollihock roots and the flowres.

Afterwards are ſtronger things to be uſed, as Smallage, Maidenhair, dry Fennel, yellow wild Rapes, *Milium Solis*, Lovage, wild Smallage, Hares tongue, wild Thyme, Piſtacies, Radiſh ſeed, Taſſels, Thiſtlin ſeed, and ſuch like, the aſhes of Hares heads, of Wagtailes, prepared Bucks blood, *Lapis Spongiæ*, and Jewes ſtone: of all theſe foreſaid things may ſirupes, Juleps, confections, powders, pils, ſalves, bathes, and ſuch like be prepared: and becauſe the unnatural heat is one of the chief occaſions of the ſtone or gravel, therefore are the foreſaid cooling things to be uſed, and alſo all ſuch medicines which in this former Chapter and 8. §. be deſcribed.

To let the growing of the Stone. §. 2.

NOw for to let that the Stone may grow no more, that conſiſteth in two kinds of cauſes, *viz.* that one prevent the tough phlegme from growing, which is the cauſe of the ſtone, and that the unnatural heat get not the maſtery.

But in this it chiefly conſiſteth, that one keep a good order of diet, and eſchew all that may cauſe that groſſe matter, as milk, and all that is dreſt with it, freſh Cheeſe, Cow beef, Swines fleſh, Goats fleſh, Geeſe, and all water fowls, all groſſe fiſh, and all other that be without skales, and all that is not wel baked, ſandy, or is ground with a new ſharped ſtone, Rice, Peaſe, Beans, Coleworts, ſowr fruits, unripe apples and pears, Citrons, &c. and hard ſod egs be alſo very hurtful, troubled water, red thick wine, Muſt and Beer are alſo to be eſchued.

But to the contrary, all light meats are to be uſed, as light and hard baked bread which is a day or two old, wherein Fennel, Annis, Caráwayes, or *Nardus* ſeeds are baked, Hens, Pullets, Partridges, Capons, young Mutton, Goats, Turtle doves, Doves, and all wild fowls, but eſpecially Wagtailes are very meet for this ſickneſſe. He may alſo eat all river fiſh which have skales, as they that are prepared with parſley. In like maner alſo poched egs. For his drink he ſhall take fair white Wine tempered with a little water, wherein the ſeed of Smallage and Fennel ſeed is decocted. Meade may alſo be uſed inſtead of his drink, and for a medicine. He may alſo drink ſometimes peaſe broth, and the broth of Lentils wherewith parſley is decocted; but he is not to eat the peaſe at all. The kernels of bitter Almonds, of Peach ſtones, of Prune ſtones, Pingles, Piſtacies, and Raiſins is he to eat: in fine, he muſt eſchew all which cauſeth the matter of the ſtone to increaſe, and to uſe all that cooleth the unnatural heat, and expelleth the matter of the ſtone, for which theſe things following are fit, and be very good, as *Agaricus*, *Hermodactili*, Turbith, wild Saffron ſeed, roots of Polipody, and the ſmell of the wine Hellebore, and alſo a little root thereof ſteeped a day and a night in water, and the ſame water drunk alſo otherwhiles.

Amongſt the compounded things there is *Benedicta laxativa* or *Inda*, which cleanſe the Kidneyes, the Bladder and Ureters of all phlegme. The ſame doth alſo Caſſie given with diuretical things, and with beaten Licorice, for the ſame dryeth not onely the gravel, but hindereth and letteth alſo the growing of the ſtone, and allayeth the heat: and if ſo be that one giveth it him with the ſeed of *Agnus caſtus*, or Licorice, then doth it help the reins marvelouſly, and ſtirreth no other humors then thoſe whereof the ſtone doth grow.

Further, there be other things more which do cleanſe the ureters or conduits of urine,

urine, and open them, as the water of Hyssope, and white water Mints, and of Marjorame, of Smallage, of Parsly, of Betony, of Pennyroial of *Millium Solis*, and above all other the water of Hollihocks. Of Syrups which be most used, are the Syrups of Hyssop *de Calamintha*, *Acetosus compositus*, *Oxymel compositum*, and all other Oxymels, but especially the Oxymel of Squils: and for example: these compounded things ensuing may be made: Take *Oxymel* of Squils one ounce, syrup of Hyssope half an ounce, water of Harts tongue, and of wilde Cucumbers, of each one ounce, and a half. This drink is to be taken certain dayes together, untill one may evidently see in the colour of the urine and in other signs, that the disease apparently frameth it selfe on the better side, by the which the Physitians have their especial markes and signes.

And in case there be such matter present which may cause the stone to grow, then are they prepared through the first recited waters, syrupes, and such like for expulsion; and when now the matter is prepared, then is the Patient to be purged, which may be done through this ensuing or such like meanes.

Take the confection *Benedicta* one ounce, or one ounce and a half, or somewhat lesse, according to the importance of the cause, then temper them together with three ounces of Parsly water.

Or prepare this following, which cleanseth much the Kidnyes, and expelleth the matter of the stone marvelously: Take Centory, peeled wilde Saffron seed, of each one drach, prepared *Agaricus*, pownded *Hermodactili*, of each four scruples, *Diagridion* six graines, Annis, Fennel, Licorice, the seed of Smallage, and Ginger, of each half a scruple, Sugar penuets one ounce: steep them altogether the space of 4. and twenty houres in 4. ounces of the water of Maidenhair, afterwards wring it out and drink it. Lastly, you are to govern your self as in all other purgations.

This following is also much commended for to prevent the gravel: Take about Saint Johns tide Mellet as it standeth and bloometh, then burn it with herb and root, and drink thereof morning and evening two or three ounces with wine, and then fast two houres upon it, and do so five or six dayes together: it is said, and also taken for to be certain, that doing this one shall be cleer and free from the gravel half a year.

Against the paine of the Gravell. §. 3.

But if in this disease there happen great pain with it through which the Physitians are much hindered, that they cannot use due remedies: then do they notwithstanding advise first of all, that at the first one is to begin with things which slay the paine, or at the least do ease it: for which are Clisters to be used made of these herbs following, as Mallowes, Hollihocks, Beets, Bearefoot, Pellitory, and such like with the oyl of Violets, with Cassie, with *Hiera Picra*, or the confection *Benedicta* tempered amongst it.

Finally, when the foresaid paine is a little swaged, then are these things following to be used. Take water Cresses, Mallowes, Hollihocks, Mercury, Yarrow, Cinquefoil, *Pimpernel*, the herb of Mew, and Rue, of each one handful, *Calamint*, Barly, of each three ounces, Linseed, of each a little: let all these seethe in sufficient water, and take twelve ounces, temper amongst it *Hiera picra*, *Benedicta* and *Diahontriton*, of each half an ounce, oyl of Camomil and of Rue, of each one ounce: this Clister looseth, expelleth wind, and easeth the paine.

Take afterwards of the foresaid herbs, but somewhat more watercresses, and Marigolds, and make a bath thereof, and set the Patient in it even up to the navel: it is also to put some stalks of Rapes unto it, then will it be the better.

Finally, take Mallowes, Hollihock roots, Watercresses, Camomil, Maidenhair, Linseed, and Fenegreek seed, of each two ounces: let them all seethe in sufficient water, wring a cloth or sponge therein, and lay it continually warm upon the place of the pain. Then herbs are you to pownd small and temper with Camomil oyl, and so lay them upon. The place of the pain is sometimes also to be annointed with these things following, the greale of Hens, or Geese, Hogs greuse, fresh butter, oyl of *Camelina* and of Violets, of each half an ounce, oyl of Camomil, and Wax, of each two drachmes, then them mele by the fire. But this is not continually to be used, to the end that the reins be not there by too much weakned and infeebled. After this annointing are these following to be layd upon it, which doe allwage the pain, and will open the conduits

conduits of urine; Take three ounces of Wheaten meal, of Fenegreek meal, of Linſeed, beaten Camomils, of each one drach. and a half, Salt one ounce, then make it to a plaiſter with the oyl of *Camelina*, and with the oyl of Scorpions, and then lay it warm upon it. You ſhall find hereafter many things more which allay the pain alſo.

Take of Parſly ſeeds powdered and ſearced ℥. 1. white Wine, Saxifrage water, ana. ℥. 4. drink it in the morning faſting, and lye in a bed and ſweat.

Of thoſe things which expel gravel and do break the ſtone. §. 4.

IF there be any fear had of the ſtone or gravel, or that one perceive it already, then may theſe things be uſed for it: Take oyl of Lillies, of Scorpions, and of Earth-worms, of each a like much, anoint the reins very fat with it by the fire, or by a warm oven. And if you cannot get this Scorpion oyl, then take onely the other oyles.

Item, eat every morning 6. or 7. bitter Almonds, of Peach kernels, like as is counſelled before.

There is alſo much commended the bone of a Hare, which we call the Hares ſpring, pownded, and the ſame drunken with freſh broth: when as any bodyes reins begin to grieve him, then is the red oyl of S. Johns wort eſteemed to be very good for to anoint him therewith.

Item, take 18. or 20. Peach kernels, one quarter of an ounce of Raiſins; eat them together, and drink a good draught upon it, of Peaſe broth ſod without ſalt or ſuet: for this is alſo much commended, the Cicers or Spaniſh Peaſe which have a ſpecial vertue againſt the gravel.

Item, take Hollihock roots two pownd; the ſame being made clean, pownd them and ſeethe them in two or three quarts of water until the half, and then ſtrain this broth through a cloth, whereof you are every morning to drink a good pull. Afterwards uſe the foreſaid potion of Cicers, and Peach kernels; and when you have a pound of this drink, then mix amongſt it one drachme of beaten Cinamom, and as much of the Swams which groweth on the wilde Roſe branches. You may alſo ſeethe Parſly roots, Sperage roots, and Fennel roots with it, and drink often of it: this eſpecially commended for them that would withſtand the gravel.

Item, take roots of Pimpernel half an ounce, *Biſtorta*, Tormentil, Polipody roots, and Annis, of each one quarter of an ounce, Gentian, Fenegreek, *Oculi cancrorum*, peach kernels, Lovage ſeed, the ſeed of Smallage, Pickrels bones, ſhales of haſel nuts, the ſeed of Mallowes, and Camomil, of each one drachme; make a powder thereof; and take thereof the weight of one drachme, or one drachme and a half every day.

The ancient Phyſitians accuſtome to make this potion following, the which they do call Williams potion; Take one handful of Alehoofe, young Acorn buds half ſo much, the herb Mouſe-ear a little, water and wine, of each a pint; let them ſeethe together until about the half be ſodden away, then ſtrain it through a cloth, and drink thereof in the evening and morning, each time about 3. ſpoonfuls, and every 14. dayes make a freſh.

How the wine of winter Cherries is to be prepared, is amongſt others declared in the eight parts; it openeth the conduits of urine marvellouſly, expelleth the matter whence the ſtone and gravel doth grow very vehemently, as well out of the Kidneyes ureters as alſo of the bladder.

And now further to come to a right proceſſe of the gravel, take at the firſt five ounces of freſh oyl of ſweet Almonds, and drink the ſame warm. Two hours afterwards take a good draught of this potion following, and afterwards as often as you will; Take Mallows with the herb and roots, and Hollihock leaves, of each one handful, Licorice one ounce, freſh Butter and clear hony, of each two ounces; ſeethe them together in ſufficient water, or in the water of Creſſes, and ſo drink thereof as is expreſſed. The next day one is to take this confection following early in the morning: Take freſh Caſſie and Benedicta, of each half an ounce, *Species Ialapini* one drach. and a half; temper them together, and then ſtrew them with Sugar and Licorice. Having taken this, then is the party to take thereupon preſently a good draught of the water of Creſſes, and through this advice hath many a one been releaſed of the gravel.

Or take of the confection Benedicta five or ſix drach. Turpentine waſhed in water of Mallowes, one quarter of an ounce; temper them all together with three ounces of Agrimony water, and then drink it as warm as you can; it is marvellous good againſt the ſtone.

Nesbissioth otherwhiles require that these Confections following are to be given to the patient: Take the confection *Benedicta* and waste Turpentine, of each three drach. and a half; Juice of stone which is prepared with water wherein Miller is decocted, one drachme, temper them all together with pownded Licorice, and then give it him with Creffes water. Men do also take sometimes for ie half a drachme of prepared blood of a Buck, which is not amisse.

Hereafter followeth one other necessary mean or processe: and first in case the stone be in the bladder, then are these pils to be prepared which do vehemently break the stone. Take the fruits of Balsam, Radish seed, & the seed of great Smallage. Some do take for this the seed of stone Parsly, *Opopanacum*, Capres roots, bitter Almonds, Saxifrage, Spignanth, Cipres nood, Judy Spica, Caffy wood, Harts tongue, wilde Rue, Gentian, Hartwort, *Asarabacca*, *Cardamom*, *Origanum*, *Styrax*, *Bdellium*, long Pepper and Castmus, of each a like much; the Gums are to be molten in sufficient Balsam, temper the rest among them beaten small, and make it into pils; take of them one drach. at once with the foresaid confection of *Benedicta* and of Turpentine, as is before rehearsed: when he is purged, then take pellitory of the wall, Mallows, of each one handful and a half, Linseed, Fenegreek seed, and Hollihock roots, of each one handful, fifteen or sixteen Sebestes, Licorice, pownded Millet, of each half an ounce: cut all that is to be cut, and let it boyl in fresh broth. Take 12. or 16. ounces thereof, and temper amongst it one ounce of *Benedicta*, oyl of bitter Almonds three ounces, slight Sugar one ounce and a half, Salt one drachme, and one yolk of an Egg; then mix them together, and let this Clister very warm.

Pils for the Stone.

And if that this purgation (by reason of the unpleasantnesse of the Turpentine) went against his stomach, then may he use one of these ensuing; Take fresh Cassie one ounce and a quarter, oyl of sweet Almonds four ounces, temper them together and drink it. Or take *Electuarium de Sebestes* and Cassie, of each half an ounce, *Electuarium Indum* one drachme and a half, mix them all together with Sugar, if you will put therewith one drachme of Jewes stone, and make it to a drink with Millet water, then doth it expel the better.

After this are you to come to the things which do break the stone easily, and open the passages of urine. For to atchive this, then is the body first of all to be purged, and afterwards are these following and elected remedies to be used.

To break the stone is this following very forcible: Take prepared Bucks blood one drachme and a half, ashes of Scorpion one scruple, ten grains of good Treacle, burnt and prepared glasse one drachme, then seethe Radishes, Saxifrages, winter Cherries in water or Wine, and take four ounces of this broth, or as much Bean water, and make the foresaid a potion, and use it fasting in the morning. In case that for all this the pain remaineth still, then take scraped Licorice and Currans: of each one quarter of an ounce, pownded Millet, maiden hair, of each half an ounce, seethe them together in water of Agrimony, Pellitory, or Camomil water; Take of this decoction two ounces and a half, Syr. *Lithontribi* one quarter an ounce, *Philonium Romanum* two scruples, good wine two ounces, Sugar one ounce; then temper them all together unto a potion, and drink it ℥. hour before meat.

Item, take prepared Bucks blood one drachme and a half, *Oxymel* of Squils half an ℥. wine wherein Radishes be decocted four ounces, then make a potion of it. Further, it is necessary that the stomach be strengthened, and the hot matter of the Kidneyes expelled, for which is meet also the foresaid Clister, if there be put unto it one ounce of Cassie more. Or use this following: Take twelve ounces of Linseed oyl, oyl of bitter Almonds six ounces, Hens grease four ounces, or in stead of that, as much fresh Butter, two yolks of Eggs, then mix them all together, and minister it warm. You may also give unto the sick body oyl of sweet or bitter Almonds, of each three ounces and a half or more to drink, for it is found, that the same taken by the mouth hath more asswaged the pain, then that which been used in the Clisters. It is in like sort found to be very good, that the place be fomented with these things following where the pain is, and after that anointed: Take Camomil, maiden hair, Linseed, and Hollihock roots, of each one handful, seethe them all together in white Wine and water; then make a spunge wet in it, and lay the same wrung out very warm upon it.

For the anointing may many things be used, or like as hereafter followeth: take oyl of

Scorpions, oyl of sweet Almonds and Butter, of each half an ounce, mucilage of Linseed, Fenugreek of each five drachmes, Saxifrage one drach, and a little molten wax, temper them all together. The last and highest mean for the intollerable pain is, that the Manna be used, which by the grievous pain takes away all sense and feeling, thus: Take the foresaid decocted decoction, and put therein of the confection of *Diatrion Pipereon* two drach. *Philoniun Romanum* one drachme, oyl of sweet Almonds one quarter of an ounce, good white Wine two ounces, mingle them all together, and give thereof to drink. Will you then make a Clister of it? then take of the foresaid decoction about two ounces, oyl of sweet Almonds four ounces, *Diaprunis* one drachme, mingle three ounces, and then minister it like as is aforesaid.

These two proceedings in this sickness, I thought good to describe thus at length, that every one might know how to chuse of the medicines following what is most needfull for him.

First, we will describe all such things which are to be eaten, and may be used in the body, and first of all beginning with the confections: Take spunge stones, Hollihock seed, Millet, and Medlar stones, of each half an ounce, prepared Bucks blood one drach, Jewes stones, and Gromel seed, of each one scruple, great and small Endive seed, and Pikes bones (which be unfodden) of each half a drachme, Sugar as much as of all the rest, boil the Sugar decocted with the water of winter Cherries, and then make Tabulates thereof, and take of them every time half an ounce.

Or take Pomate stone, Jewes stone, and burnt glasse, of each one drachme and a half, prepared Bucks blood three drachmes, Gromel seed half an ounce, beat them all small together, Sugar as much as all the rest doth weigh, make with the water of winter Cherries, or the water of Mallows, tabulates of it, and take half an ounce at once thereof.

Item take four ounces of Pistacies, steep them two dayes and two nights in the water of winter Cherries, take off the peeles, and chop them very small, Gromel seed half an ounce, roots of Cinqfoile, Harts tongue, wilde Thyme, Rue seed, of each one drachme and a half, Sugar six ounces; then seethe it with the water of Saxifrage, make tabulates of it, and use them as before.

Another; Take prepared Bucks blood one drachme and a half, the jaw-bones of Pickerels two scruples, Jew stones and Spunge stones, of each half an drachme, Meloni seed, Hollihock seed, Licorice, the seed of Smallage, Cucubes, of each one scruple, Sugar two ounces and a half, make a confection thereof with the water of Mallowes.

Fennel seed and Comin raw or concocted and eaten, be good for all diseases in the kidneyes of the stone and gravel. The confection of *Iustini* or *Lithontriphon*, as they be prepared at all well furnished Apothecaries, are also marvellous good for this use.

In like manner also bitter Almonds confected and eaten, expell the matter whence the stone doth grow.

This following is also a very sumptuous Confection: Take burnt glasse, and burnt Grashoppers, whereof the feet and wings be cast away, of each three drachmes, the ashes of a burnt Hare, and prepared Bucks blood, of each one ounce, Plantain seed, Starch, the seed of Butchers broom, of each two drachmes and a half, *Sirupi Acetosi Compositi* thirty ounces, Sugar pennets twenty four ounces, then make an electuary thereof. This foresaid confection doth cleanse all slimy matter and gravel, it breaketh the stone, and openeth all conduits of urine, if one take every morning the space of fourteen dayes three drachmes, with the water of Gromel, or Radish water.

The Confection of a calcined Hare is thus to be prepared: Take Jewes stone and spunge stones of each one drachme, the powder of a burnt Hare one quarter of an ℥. *Spec. Lithontriphon* one quarter of an ℥. Sugar four ounces; make thereof with Saxifrage water tabulates or a Confection.

This foresaid Electuary provoketh urine, and cleanseth all the ureters of all slime and gravel, and expelleth also all winds: take thereof two or three drachmes with the water of Sperage betimes in the morning, and also before both the meal tides.

Item, take yellow wild Rape seed, Comin, Balsam wood, Parsly seed, sweet Costus roots, Calamus, Annis, *Asarabacca*, Fennel and Cinamom, of each one drachme, the seed of Purslain, of Endive, of small Endive, of Lettice and *Cretæ Mastic*, of each one drachme, *Lapis Lyncis*, Spunge stones, and burnt Glasse, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as is needful for to make a Confection.

One may take a drachme or two thereof with a little water; all according to the importance of the cause

The

The Confection of horse Radishes is thus to be prepared; Take well cleansed horse Radishes, cut them in round slices, and let them stand and steep in vinegar until that they be very soft. Or pour strong wine upon it, and renew the same every day, and that the space of 10 dayes: at length seethe them away therewith, and rub them through a strainer: afterwards, take thereof one pound, and one pound and a half of clarified hony, and so then seethe together by a gentle fire, stirring them always about until they be decocted as behoveth for a confection. Afterwards let it be somewhat cold, and put the spices unto it, which hereafter in the eight part in the first Chapter of Calamus are described. Or take in the stead of the same half an ounce of Cinamom, Ginger three quarters of an ounce, Cardamom, Cuebes, Cloves, and Nutmegs, of each one drachme and a half; temper them together therewithall the forming of the horse Radishes in the beginning bated and taken away. This confection is not onely good for the stone and gravel but also for the stomach, it warmeth the inward parts, and delayeth the pain in the belly which proceedeth of cold, it is a right Treacle for the common people, and an especial medicine for the Sun dyons.

There is also another Confection prepared for this called *Electuarium de Cineribus*, this is a confection of ashes, as followeth hereafter: Take ashes of burnt Scorpions one quarter of an ounce, *Cimbucides* without heads and wings one drachme, prepared Bucks blood one quarter of an ounce, burnt glasse, ashes of water Coleworts, Hares ashes, ashes of Wagtailes, and ashes of Egg shells whereof Chickins have been hatched, of each two drachmes, Jewes stones, stones of Oxe gals, Pepper, wild yellow Rape seed, Caraway, Hollihock seed, Gum, Saxifrage and Gromel seeds, *Sesili*, Ballam fruits and the wood, *Indus*, Maiden hair, Mallows, Pompeons, Cucumbers, and Gourd seeds, of each one ℥; of Roses, as much as sufficeth for to make a confection of it, take thereof morning and evening the quantity of a hasel nut at once, tempered with the decoction of Citers.

Item take Mithridate or new Treacle, half or a whole drach. with the decoction of Citers then expel and break the gravel and the stone, and also ease the pain, especially if be used after bathing.

Amongst all other confected things, are especial good for the stone and gravel (chiefly if one want warmth) the preserved Elecampane roots, Pimpernel roots, *Calamus*, yellow Raper, Parsneps, conserves of Gilloflowers, and of Piony: the water Cresses eaten for a fasting, expelleth the stone, the gravel and urine.

There be divers powders made for this which follow hereafter: Take prepared Bucks blood half an ounce, *Lapis Lyncis*, *Lapis tam rotund*, and peach kernels, of each one drach. the seed of Parsly and Smallage, of each half an ounce, beat them all together, and temper them all together, use thereof in the morning, at noon, and in the evening half a drachme, or more at once with that kind of Bean water which immediatly is described hereunderneath, and that so long, until the stone avoid, and that you perceive no more gravel.

Item, take Saxifrage, Annis, Pepper, the seed of Smallage, Gromel seed, and Sperage seed, of each a like much, beat them all together very small, and let them passe through a searce, then take thereof half a drachme or a whole drachme with honey water, or with wine.

This following hath oftentimes been approved: Take parched Peach kernels half an ounce, Medlar stones one ounce, pownd them very small, and then give him a drach. thereof with the water of Saxifrage wherein Cinqfoyle hath been decocted.

There is also one ounce, or one ounce and a half of *Oxymel* to be put thereto, and to temper the same with any water; that also expelleth the stone: but one must beware therein for using any hot things.

This drink is also very requisite for this: Take wild Thistle roots, which be the roots of Tarel, and roots of Smallage, of each one handfull, Annis, half a drach. seethe them all together in a quart and a half of water unto the half.

Item, take Spunge stones, Jewes stones, burnt glasse, prepared Bucks blood and Sugar, of each a like quantity, give one drachme thereof with *Oxymel* or with the water of Smallage when he hath the pain.

Such these foresaid are by reason of the great help and cure that they do, called the hand of God.

Item, take the roots of Burres one drachme and a half, burnt glasse one drachme, rub

the

the ſame with Vineger, with the water of Smallage, or with any other ſuch like diſtilled waters, this is marvellouſly praiſed of all ancient Phyſitians.

Another; take Gromel ſeed one drachme, Licorice one quarter of an ounce, peeled Melon ſeed half an ounce, gum of the Cherry tree one ounce; pownd them all to powder, and give there of at each time half an ounce with a little diſtilled water.

Or take Gromel ſeed, Annis, Fennel, Parſly ſeeds, and Peeled Melon ſeed, of each one drachme, *Lignum Aloes*, winter Cherries, red Saxifrage, Sponge ſtones, and Jewes ſtones, of each one ſcruple, the ſeed of Broom and of Saxifrage, of each half a drachme, Cinamom, prepared Coriander, and red Saunders, of each three quarters of an ounce, Cloves, Galangal, Ginger, of each three drach. white Sugar two ounces, make a powder of the ſame, and take one drach. at once thereof with Mallowes water and Peaſe broth.

Another; Take Gromel ſeed, and the ſeed of Saxifrage, of each one drach. the ſeeds of Lettice, of Henbane, of Pompeons, of white Poppies, of Melons, of Cucumbers, of Gourds, (all together peeled) of each two ſcruples, pownded Licorice four ſcruples, *Trochiſci Alkakengi*, which is of winter Cherries one drach. and an half, the ſeed of Pimpernel, of Broom, of each two ſcruples, Sugar two ounces, make a powder of them.

In like manner, there be good for this diſeaſe powhded Medlar ſtones, and powdred Earth-worms of each one drach and a half well weighed, and take Fenelike with Saxifrage water. Item, ſeethe a Crab like as they be uſed to be ſod, and waſh the ſame with wine, and lay it dry, then beat it clean to powder with his ſhels, and take one quarter of an ounce thereof with wine.

Or take the powder of Maiden hair one quarter of an ounce, and drink it with the water of Strawberries, or the water of Mallowes, or the water of Parſly, it is alſo eſpecially good.

Take half an ounce of the ſhales of the Haſel nuts beaten ſmall, Sugar alſo as much, temper them together, and uſe thereof every time a drach. or more faſting in the morning with the water of Lillies; and women may drink it with wine or any thing elſe in ſtead of Lilly water. The ſtone which is cut out of one, beaten ſmall, and half a drach. there of taken every day with the water of Saxifrage or Radiſh water, doth alſo break the ſtone of the bladder.

Item, take Licorice one quarter of an ounce, Spunge ſtone, and Jewes ſtone, of each ten grains, Fennel ſeed, *Ameos*, *Mirrha*, *Annis*, the ſeed of Mallowes, peeled Melon ſeed, Pompeon ſeed, chopt ſmall together, of each half a drachme, Cinamom one drach. beaten ſmall together: there is the weight of a drachme thereof to be taken with any of the foreſaid waters. There may alſo be prepared for this theſe pils enſuing: Take burnt glaſſe, aſhes of a Hare, Spunge ſtone, and Jewes ſtone, of each a like much, make pils thereof with the water of Saxifrage: alſo three round ſlices of Radiſhes eaten every morning to be very good. In like ſort alſo the ſmall bird the Wagtail roſted, powdered, or taken as one will, is marvellous good for this, like as here before is ſpecified already.

It is alſo taken for a certain experiment, if one do accuſtome to eat Nettles, that thereby he ſhould be freed of the ſtone and gravel.

Pils for the Stone.

Now we will write of certain potions which be meet for the ſtone and the gravel: Take Turpentine which is waſhed with Mallowes water, three quarters of an ounce, *Species Iuſtini* two ſcruples, *Benedicta Laxativa* half a drach: let the Turpentine and decoction melt, afterwards temper the reſt with it, and ſo drink it as warm as you can.

Another; Take Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, Juniper berries one ounce, the bark of the Caſſie three drachmes, Jewes ſtone half an ounce, *Agaricus*, Ginger, Cinamom, Galangal and Maſtik, of each one drachme, Mithridate three drach. Mace, Cloves, of each halfa drach. ſpirit of wine one pint, and Malmſey three pints: ſet them all together the ſpace of three moneths in the Sun there to diſtil; and of this diſtillation give ℥ 2. early in the morning, or being in the bath, it is a marvellous and approved remedy.

Another; Take Rubarb, Ginger berries, Caſſie wood, and Fennel, of each one quarter of an ounce, Annis one drach. Licorice five drachmes, Jewes ſtone half an ounce, *Agaricus*, Ginger, Cinamom and Cloves, of each one drach. Mithridate three drach. Mace, and Nutmegs, of each half a drachme, Maſtick one drachme,; put all theſe together beaten in a glaſſe, and pour thereon three pounds of the ſpirit of Wine or Aqua vitæ, then ſtop it tight, and ſet it the ſpace of five dayes in the Sun; ſtir it all together very

well

well, then pour as much Malmſey unto it; and let it ſtand again eight or fourteen dayes in the ſun, ſtirring it every day well about, afterwards ſtrain it and keep it well, when as the gravell beginneth to prick, then take a ſpoonfull thereof every day, and you ſhall find amendment out of hand. This ſame may be diſtilled like as the former.

Another. Take a pint a of *Aqua vitæ* more or leſſe as you will, Malmſey four ounces, Sugar candy eight ounces, the water of Strawberries four ounces, Parſly water 2. ounces, mix them together, and take a ſpoonful thereof, or as much as you pleaſe.

It is alſo here to be marked, that you need not be afraid of *Aqua vitæ*, burnt wine, or any other ſtrong wine: for all learned do require to drink ſtrong wine as, *Vinum punicum*, Malmſey, Muſcadel, and ſuch like, againſt the gravell or ſtone, yea when the paine is at the extremeſt, yet with moderation.

Some that love diſtillations do very much commend this potion following againſt the gravel; Take oyl of Mace and cleer Turpentine, of each ten or twelve drops, Annis water and Fennell water, of each one quarter of an ounce, the ſyrup of Licorice one ounce, oyl of Vitrioll three or four drops, then temper them well together, afterwards prove it, and if ſo be that it be not ſo ſowr that it ſet the teeth on edg, then it is meetly: and if it be not ſowr enough then put two drops of the oyl of Vitrioll more unto it. It is ſomewhat perillous to deale with the oyl of Vitriol, therefore good heed is to be had and taken, like as is declared in his deſcription. Take Nettle ſeed two ounces and a half, pour wine upon it, and drink thereof. This wine is accounted marvellous good for the the gravel and for the ſtone.

Here before is oftentimes admoniſhed of Bean water, which is thus made: when they begin to be ripe, or when they be in their full juyce, then is the outermoſt green pods or peeles to be taken where the Beanes do lie, and the leaves, and all their moiſture is to be diſtilled out of them in ſeething water. This being done, then take one ounce and a half thereof, prepared Bucks blood one drachme or four ſcruples, and give the Patient thereof in the morning when he riſeth, and at night when he goeth to bed. And this is to be obſerve and continue ſo long untill that the ſtone or gravell be clean expelled, and no more gravel can be perceived; this is of all antient & latter Phyſitians taken to be a famous and certain experiment. Item, take womans milk about two ounces, ſteep therein cut ſprigs of Cypres, and ſet them ſtand and ſteep the ſpace of three or four hours in a warm place, and then drink it.

Item, take Knotgraſſe half an ounce, red Peaſe and peeled Melon ſeed, of each one ounce, let them ſeethe in twelve ounces of water even unto the half, and give thereof one ounce at once tempered with a little Sugar: the mead of hony water is an eſpecial medicine againſt the gravell and the ſtone. In like manner is alſo wine or water wherein Harts tongue and Mallowes be decocted, and alſo of both theſe diſtilled waters.

Item, take a good handful of Watercreſſes, ſeethe them in a pint of water unto the half, and drink thereof morning and evening, each time three or four ounces, and doe this the ſpace of 8. or 10 dayes together Some do alſo much commend Limons water.

Take the roots of Chervil and Saxifrage, of each a like quantity: ſeethe them in wine, and drink oftentimes thereof, it breaketh the ſtone, and cauſeth well to make water. Or take Maidenhair one handful, winter Cherries and Gromel ſeed, of each two drachmes, boyl them in a pint of white wine until two thirds remain, take three or four ounces at once, and eſpecially after a bath the water of Larks ſpur.

Likewiſe alſo the water of *Cardinus Benedictus*, if one do drink three or four ounces of it, is very good for the ſtone. Item, ſo are all theſe waters enſuing good therefore, viz. the water of Saxifrage, of Pellitory, of Cinquefoil, of Watercreſſes, of Fennel, of Radiſhes, of Maiden-hair, of Strawberries, and of Camomil.

Item, take a freſh Radiſh, cut it to thin round ſlices, and pour thereon *Vinum punicum*, or any good wine: afterwards drink thereof ſometimes a good draught.

You have alſo herebefore in the twelfth chapter and eleventh §. a good drink againſt the gravell and the ſtone, beginning, take Gentian, &c.

Item, take Maidenhair, Sperage, Taſſel leaves, water Mints, broad Plantaine, and red peaſe, of each a like quantity: ſeethe them altogether in water, then take of this decoction five ounces, and temper therewith two ounces of *Oxymel*, afterwards give it to the Patient. Further, lay him a bed and let him ſweat well; this openeth the conduits of urine, maketh all tough humors thin, and expelleth them which cauſe the ſtone and the gravel.

Further,

Further, there be divers Wines decocted and alſo unfodden, whereof we will diſcover ſome. Of all the moſt uſed are theſe following, as the wine of Winter Cherries, wine of Elecampane roots, wine of Hyſſop, wine of Harts tongue, and wine of *Aſarabacca*, which is thus to be prepared: Take Muſt, and to every quart of Muſt half an ounce of *Aſarabacca*, the herb being taken off when the root hath been a drying the ſpace of two moneths. Of this wine take every evening and every morning a good draught; it forceth the urine and the gravel, it warmeth all inward parts, it expelleth the Ague, it is good for the Dropſie, and alſo for the yellow Jaundies.

Sanguis menſtrualis exiccatus, tritus & bibitus ante omnia Lapidem frangit.

Alſo drink the Juice of *artimeſia*, ℥. 4. every morning, and it breaks the ſtone, and expels it like ſand.

And to keep the ſtone from growing, uſe my vomiting potion mentioned in the third part, Cap. 11. §. 4.

Drink the juice of Radiſh roots in white Wine, or ſmall drink, and it will cauſe urine and diſſolve the ſtone. And anoint the reins, the yard and *perinæum*, with the fat of a Conie and of a Fox, anoint with theſe fats mixed, and it will cure the Stone.

Alſo take Pellitory, Mugwort, Parſley, ſtamp them and ſeeth them in white Wine, drink it, and apply the herbs warm unto the yard and members unto the arſe. *Prob.*

Another good Wine.

TAke Strawberry leaves, Pellitory, Water creſſes, and Gourd creſſes, of each a like quantity; ſeeth them in Wine untill the third part be conſumed, then drink thereof a meetly draught when you go to bed, and in the morning when you riſe. This hath been oftentimes found very good.

All Phyſitians do conclude, that all troubled and thick Wine, much and often drunken, cauſeth the ſtone and the gravel ſpeedily to grow. Therefore muſt one alwaies beware thereof.

The Cherry wine, like as it by reaſon of the temperate nature may be uſed in all ſickneſſes; ſo may the ſame alſo be occupied for this diſeaſe, and eſpecially when the Cherries with their kernels be ſtamped in peeces, whereof it is made, then doth it drive out the gravel the better.

We will here yet deſcribe certain ſirupes which may be uſed with great commodity for the gravel, like as theſe enſuing; Take the roots of Sperage, of *Ruſcus*, and of graſſe, of each three ounces, Harts tongue with roots, *Creta marina*, Maidenhair, water Mints, Saxifrage, Pimpernel, and Yarrow, of each one handful, red Peaſe two ounces, Vinegar of Squils one ounce, white Sugar and hony, of each ſix ounces. Laſtly, ſeeth a cleer ſirupe of this, and uſe the ſame with diuretical waters.

Another.

TAke Fennel roots, Parſley roots, the roots of Smallage and of Sperage, of each one handful, the ſeeds of Parſley, of Fennel, of Smallage, of Annis, of Caruway, of Lettice, of Purſlain, of ſmall Endive, of Melons, of Pompeons, of Gourds, and of Cucumbers, of each one ounce, red and white Saunders, Roſes and Violets, of each half a dracm, five and twenty or thirty dry Prunes, Harts tongue, Liverwort, Centory and Maidenhair, of each two handfuls. All theſe foreſaid things ſeeth in ſufficient water unto the half, and then wring them out, unto this decoction put eighteen ounces of Sugar, and let it ſeeth again to the ſirupe, and then clarifie it with the white of an egg.

When outwardly ought to be uſed.

FOr the gravel and the ſtone may divers things be alſo outwardly uſed, whereof we ſhall hereafter write and diſcourſe ſufficiently; but we will firſt begin with the ſalve.

Take the fat of the kidneyes of a Weather, ſtamp it very ſmall, and temper therewith a cruſe full of the juyce of water Creſſes, or garden Creſſes and let them ſeeth together; this being done, then ſtrain it through a cloth, and anoint you therewith.

In like manner is alſo good for all gravel and pain of the reins, for the ſtone and the

conduits

conduits of urine, and for all diſeaſes of the bladder, the precious balm or oyl, which in the laſt part of this book, is the firſt of all the reſt that is deſcribed, if one be anointed therewith.

For a plaiſter is this following to be uſed; Take hollihock roots with the ſeed, Linſeed, figs, and butter, of each one ounce, oyl of ſweet Almonds two ounces, Wax as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter, and then lay it upon the kidneys: afterwards you are alſo to anoint the place of the reins with the oyl of Scorpions, and to ſprinkle ſome of that oyl therein. Item, take oyl of Scorpions 3. ounces, burnt ſponge ſtones, and burnt Wagtailes, of each 3. drachmes, Jewes ſtone one drachme, make a ſalve or a plaiſter thereof with Wax.

Item, in the former ſixteenth Chapter and the fifth Section is deſcribed a plaiſter of Radiſhes, which may alſo be uſed for this purpoſe. For this is alſo good a pap made of the crums of white bread decocted with Wine, and a little Saffron put to it.

Item, for to lay upon it; Take Pellitory, put ſome Scorpion oyl unto it, oyl of Camomil and ſome oyl of *Camelina*; fry them all together in a pan untill it be as thick as pap, afterwards put amongſt it pownded Saffron, and then lay it upon the kidneys.

Item, take Pellitory, Spikenard, *Spica Romana*, Fennelſeed, Parſley ſeed, wild yellow Rape ſeed, and *Aſarabacca*, of each one handful, pownd them ſomewhat together, and put it in a bag, afterwards let it ſeethe in Wine, and lay it over the reins.

Of bathing and fomenting in the gravel.

ALl they that can come to the warm ſulphure bathes, may frank and freely uſe them, for theſe be very neceſſary for to break the ſtone.

But if ſo be that one cannot come at them, then let this following be prepared; Take Hollihock leaves, Fennel, Parſley with the roots, Pellitory and Linſeed, of each one handful; put them together in a bag and ſeethe them in a great kettle of water, afterwards let it be meetly cold without putting any other water unto it; then ſet the Patient in it even to the navel, as long as he can abide. This is to be often uſed, and ſo long untill that the Patient do find that the ſtone weareth away.

Another, take Pellitory, Lavender flowers, Parſley ſeed, Fennel ſeed, wild yellow Rape ſeed; ſeeth them all together (as is aforeſaid) and bathe therewith. The bag is alſo to be laid upon the kidneys.

Item, take the herb Horſetail, Mallowes, wild Thyme, the ſtalks of Rapes, put them all together in a bagg, and ſeeth them in a great kettle with water; and further, let it be meetly cold of it ſelf, and uſed as before.

When one hath then bathed a certain ſpace, then are diuretical potions and ſalves of the reins to be uſed, made of ſuch things as are deſcribed herebefore.

Theſe are now the principalleſt things which of the ancient and latter Phyſitians are deſcribed againſt the gravel and the ſtone of the bladder: alſo whatſoever elſe is preſcribed for the infirmities of the kidneyes, that is for this moſt meet and convenient.

There be alſo more accidents which are wont next to the gravel and the ſtone to accord and accompany it, as *Lithiaſis*, *Dyſuria*, *Stranguria* and *Iſchuria*, and all theſe bring alſo great pain and ſometimes ſwelling, whereby the conduits of the urine be ſtopt; but becauſe that theſe altogether belong but to the bladder and the neck of the ſame; therefore will we diſcourſe thereof after the deſcription of the Bladder.

But there is yet a heavy diſeaſe which proceedeth from the kidneys, the which we are here to deſcribe, and therewith to conclude this Chapter.

When one cannot hold his water. §. 3.

THis diſeaſe the Grecians call *Diabetes*, the Latiniſts *Urinæ profluvium*, which is an unnatural flux of the urine; with the great pain which is with this diſeaſe there is an exceſſive and intollerable thirſt, the which when one thinketh to quench with drinking, then doth all that is drunk paſſe ſtraight away from him, and is without any alteration of the ſame drink piſt out again all together, whereby this diſeaſe hath his name alſo *Profluvium*.

Well now, this is a diſeaſe of the kidneyes, which is wholly to be compared with the

diſeaſe

diſeaſe of the ſtomach in the flux *Lienteria*: in which diſeaſe of the ſtomach or flux, there is no ſatiableneſſe of meat, becauſe that the meat received, forthwith undigeſted and without any alteration paſſeth out through the bowels.

And albeit (as is ſaid) this unnatural heat of the Reins commeth from the Liver, the which afterwards doth draw unto it the moiſture which is received of the ſtomach, then doth this diſeaſe nevertheleſſe for all that come from the cold of the Kidnies and of the whole body, like as may be ſeen in them who get the palſie, and cannot hold their urine. If it proceed of heat, then it is known by the pain and pricking about the Kidnies, and by the great thirſt. If of cold, that is to be perceived about the ſame parts, and in the outward members, for cold things offend him, and all warm things are acceptable.

To be ſhort, theſe forementioned things are yet the tokens that in piſſing there is no pain, and that there is ſtopping of the ſtale: when this ſickneſſe growes to be old, whether it be in aged or young perſons, then is it eſteemed to be incurable, for that it conſumeth the body from day to day, and that ſo long, until death that follow after it.

The cure of theſe ſickneſſes depend on theſe rules following, whereof the firſt is, like as this diſeaſe is cauſed moſt out of heat and dryth of the Kidnyes, ſo is the ſame to be remedied through cooling and moyſt things: Secondly, if ſo be that the retentive force of the Kidnyes be infeebled through the ſuperfluous moyſture which they do draw unto them, then are men to ſtrengthen the ſame (if it be cauſed through heat) with aſtringent and cooling things, and to alter their nature: Thirdly, becauſe that the whole body through the attraction and affluence of all watriſh moyſture, waxeth faint and thirſty: therefore it is good not to permit the ſick perſon to drink much, that he fall not utterly thereby into the conſuming ague *Marasmum*: Fourthly, if ſo be that the ſickneſſe be cauſed through heat, and that the Liver and ſtomach be alſo thereby infected, then is he to eſchew all light meats and egs: Fifthly, to the end the moiſture may be drawn to an other place, then is after much drinking of water parbraking and vomiting to be provoked: Sixtly, all that draweth the moiſture outward, as the ſweat, is here very profitable; Seventhly, like as the body in this ſickneſſe is commonly bound and obſtructed, therefore is care to be had to open the ſame with Cliſters.

And like as we have expreſſed that this diſeaſe *Diabetes* can be cauſed through heat and cold, therefore will we write diſtinctly and ſeverally thereof, and firſt begin with the cold *Diabetes*:

Of the Efflux of the Vrine through cold. §. 6.

THough now it hapeneth (like as we have diſcovered here before) that the ſick perſon do make water very much, and yet no heat perceived thereby, or that a night his urin unwitting run from him, and had alſo no thirſt, and abated not, then are all ſuch remedies to be given him which do ſtay the urine: for which theſe things following ſhall be very meet: To wit, Egs ſupt early in the morning faſting, ſteeled milk, or wherein peeble ſtones be flaked: but eſpecially is the ſheeps milk commended for it.

Some do adviſe that for this diſeaſe is every day to be takein half a drachme or a drachme of Mithridate with a good draught of Wine. Theſe pils following are alſo highly commended for this diſeaſe; Take Bevercod, Myrrhe, Hyſſop, Marjoram, Acorncups, and *Pier Arion*, of of each a like quantity, make them to powder; then take the ſyrup of Myrtles, and forme a maſſe of pils thereof: afterwards then give a drachme thereof at once, to wit, when the Patient goeth to bed. Or uſe this powder following: Take Acorncups, pownd them to powder, and take thereof one quarter of an ounce at once with red Wine before that you goe to bed. Item, take a burnt Hedg hog powdered one drac. or one drachme and a half, and give it him as before: the fleſh of an Hedg hog is marvellous good for this. Item, take Acorns one drachme, Frankincenſe three ounces, and ſix drachmes of prepared Coriander, fine Bolus and Gum, of each one ounce and a quarter, then make a powder of it, and take every morning thereof one ounce and a half with red Wine. Item, take pownded Agrimony one drachme with red wine when you goe to bed.

Outwardly may ſome of theſe things following be uſed: Take oyl of Lillies, or oyl of Coſtus, annoint the privities with it and the parts above it; but temper amongſt it ſome fine Bolus, Maſtick, Momie, Myrrhe, and make a ſalve of it. Or lay one of theſe plaiſters following upon it: Take *Laudanum* and Maſtick, of each one ounce, Frankincenſe, Cypres,

pres nuts, of each one drach. *Lignum Aloes*, red Styrax, Calamus, Galangal, Cinnamon, of each half a drachme; Turpentine one drachme, or as much as is needful, melt the *Laudanum* in a warm morter, then make a plaiſter thereof, and lay it over the privities; but firſt ſhave off the hair, that the plaiſter may be taken off without pain. Or make this following; Take *Laudanum* and Maſtick, of each two drachmes, *Lignum Aloes*, red Storax, Galangal and Quince kernels, of each one drachme, Turpentine one ounce; pownd all that is to be pownded, and add the *Laudanum* unto it as before, ſpread it on leather and apply it to the privities.

Another. Take the juyce of Mints twelve ounces, Frankincenſe and Maſtick, of each half an ounce, Cypres nuts one quarter of an ounce, Galangal, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one drachme, Cinamom, or beaten Comin ſeed as much as is needful for a plaiſter, uſe it as is before ſhewed.

It is to be noted, that the Comin ſeed muſt be parched before. What further is requiſite for this purpoſe, it may be ſought for in the third part, the 11. Chapter, and alſo in the 12. Chapter, in the firſt part, and 13. §.

For the affluxion of urine through heat. §. 7.

IF ſo be that there be with this unnatural affluxion of the urine an unnatural thirſt, and the drink forthwith piſs out again, then are theſe means following to be uſed; firſt, in caſe that the body be bounden, then miniſter to the patient laxative cliſters of the common cooling herbs, wherewith *Hiera Picra* or *Benedicta*, with the oyl of Violets be tempered: and immediatly afterwards open the liver vein, whereby all the ill accidents of the body may be defended and avoided.

And if it be needful, purge the Patient with yellow Mirobalans and with Caſſie, which both doe coole. But if you will make it that it be good for the gravel, then mix things amongſt it which expel the gravel: afterward cauſe the Patient to vomit when he hath drunken much water, like as is taught in the firſt rule.

℞. the Roſen of the firre tree made into powder 32. and drunk in ſack every morning for 2 or 3. dayes, cures the *Diabetes*, *Probatum ſuper.*

Otherwiſe is this enſuing eſpecially commended for this diſeaſe *Diabetes*; Take *Acacia* one quarter of an ounce, Roſe leaves three drachmes, fine Bolus, Gum, and Dragagant, of each half an ounce; pownd them all ſmall together, and let it paſſe through a ſmall ſieve; afterwards make it into ſmall Trochiſces, with the muſcilage of Fleawort, and give thereof the weight of a drachme with Endive water, Burrage, and Cicorie water. Item, take fine Bolus, and Sealed earth, of each one ſcruple, the juyce of Sloes, Pomgranate flowers, Mirtle ſeed, red Coral, and Roſes, of each one drachme; make a fine powder thereof when he goeth to reſt, with thick red wine: or take the innermoſt rindes of hens mawes, waſh them clean with Wine, and dry them, the powder of a burnt Hares head and Maſtick, of each half an ounce, Agrimony five drachmes, burnt powder of an Hedg-hog half an ounce, temper them all together, and pownd them all ſmall to powder afterwards give thereof one drachme and a half with red wine when he goeth to ſleep.

Another. Take Nettle roots one handful, Mervain and Caruway, of each one handful and a half, ſeeth them together in cleerled water, and drink thereof.

Item, take Sorbs and Pears, ſtamp them together, diſtil a water thereof, and drink thereof in, or mingle any other drink amongſt it.

Outwardly may theſe things following be uſed; ſtamp cooling herbs, as Lettice, Purſlain, Nightſhade, Houſleek, Roſe leaves, and Willow leaves. Or cut freſh Pompeons or Citrons in broad peeces and lay them thereon: you may alſo weare a beaten plate of lead upon the reins, the which may be made of ſheet-lead wet with Vinegar.

Alſo prepare this ſalve enſuing; Take three ounces of Poplar ſalve, oyl of Roſes, and oyl of Wood-bind, of each half an ounce, the muſcilage of Fleawort one quarter of an ounce, Vinegar one drachme, Wax as much as is needful for to make therewith a ſalve. Item, take the juyce of Lettice, of Purſlain and of Nightſhade, of each one drachme and a half, Roſe water one ounce, Vinegar half an ounce, white beaten Poppy ſeed one ounce, Wax as much as ſufficeth for a ſalve, and anoint the reins with it.

After the anointing lay then this plaiſter following upon it; Take Barley meal, Vinegar and oyl of Roſes, let them ſeeth together, and lay it thereon. Or take Nine leaves, Willow

Willow leaves, Quince leaves, Taſſel leaves, and Houſleek, of each one handful, ſtamp them well together, and put unto it ſix ounces of Barley meal, oyl of Roſes and Vinegar, as much as ſufficeth for to make a plaiſter, then lay it cold upon it.

The order of Dyet.

ALL meats that do cool are good for this Patient, as Verjuyce, the juyce of *Ruſtus*, Barly, and all that is dreſt with Barly, Almond milk, and Rice, all fruits which cool and bind, as Medlars, *Sorba*, Sloes, Cherries, ſometimes alſo plums, Mulberries, Pomgranates, and Strawberries are alſo good for him. If there be neither heat nor Ague with it, then may he have the foreſaid things dreſt, as Barley, Rice, and Almonds with freſh broth. He may alſo uſe otherwhiles Neats feet and River fiſh, but very little ſalted. Alſo hen-broth decocted with cooling ſeeds is very good for him. His beſt drink ſhall be Barly water, wherein a little Fleawort is decocted. Buttermilk is alſo good for him. The juyce of the firſt mentioned fruits may be mixed with freſh Well water, and ſo drunk: in like ſort alſo the Roſe water of it ſelf alone. Thick red wine is alſo (as before) to be tempered with freſh Well water. For this is alſo meet the ſirupe of Violets, or Julep of Violets, with ſome cooling waters, or tempered with ſome Well water.

You have alſo herebefore in the twelfth Chapter and 3. §. other Juleps and Confections more which be alſo very fit for this uſe, as *Triaſantalon* and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, therefore is he to take now the one and then the other, to the end that nature chance not to abhor and loath that which is to be taken.

For an intollerable thirſt may this following be uſed: Take burnt Ivory ten drachmes, Lettice ſeed and Purſlain ſeed, of each 15. drachmes, Coriander ſeed, yellow Roſe ſeeds, and fine *Bolus*, of each five drachmes, Pomgranate bloſſoms one quarter of an ounce, Camphire half a drach. then make a powder of it, and uſe one drachme thereof, or one drach. and a half at once with the juyce of Pomgranates.

What is further good for the thirſt, look for it in Chap. 12. and §. 10. in the third part of this book.

This patient muſt reſtrain and keep himſelf from all labour, and converſation or company of women. Alſo to eſchue all ſowr things, and to perform and do in all things like as herebefore in the ſixth Chapter, and §. 1. is taught of the effluxion of humane ſeed.

The eighteenth Chapter.

Of the Bladder.

THis inward part of the Bladder is common to all humane bodies; it is made of two ſtrong skins or membranes, whereof the innermoſt skin is twice as ſtrong as the outmoſt, and that not in vain, but to the end it might the better withſtand the ſharpneſſe of the urine. Both theſe skins are formed of a ſlippery white matter: and between both the skins or membranes there run many veins, ſinewes and arteries every way, whereby they do draw the moiſture of the Ureters, which do come from the Reins, and do carry it into the Bladder.

For the foreſaid Ureters be ſo ſmall and ſo narrow, that one cannot in a dead body diſcern nor find the ſame; like as alſo the bladder of beaſts doth manifeſt the ſame, which is ſo tight and ſo ſhut up, that no water nor wind can pierce through.

In men doth this Bladder lye with his neck (which is fleſhie) very hard beſides the Arſegut crooked, and almoſt like this letter S. great and long even to the beginning of the Yard. But in women the neck of the bladder doth lye ſomwhat higher then the neck of the womb, it is alſo ſhorter and wider, and therefore alſo they may much eaſier be holpen of the ſtone then men.

Item, in the forepart of the neck of the bladder there is a muskeliſh fleſh, the which holdeth the urine ſo long ſhut up, until a body deſire to make or let go his water. Further,

thes mens bladders be also according to the proportion of the body, much bigger then in any beasts; they can also stretch themselves very far, whereby they in time of need may retain and keep a great quantity of urine.

Whensoever this Bladder also is pricked in her membrane substance, or a hole made in it, then is it incurable; notwithstanding that *Aristotle* doth think that it hath been healed, but very seldom: for the neck of the bladder, which we have said to be fleshy, may be healed without plaister or salve, and only through the urine, like as is sufficiently made known and shewed by the stone cutters.

Amongst beasts, they only have bladders which bring forth a living creature into the world, and that have lights full of blood. But all that do lay eggs, as fowls and worms, they have altogether no bladder, the Tortoise only excepted.

This bladder is by nature ordained for a receiver of the urine, and to the body a very needful member; for if so be that nature must have expelled all her waterish moisture throughout all the whole body, not having any particular vent or passage for it, then of necessity should a body oftentimes either dry away or stifle.

To this bladder do also happen oftentimes many sundry diseases and perillous infections, as the gravel, the stone, painful making of urine, retention of the same, the Strangury, slime, obstruction through blood, the which doth not only cause heat, swelling ulcers, and deadly impostumes, but also bringeth with it many kinds of other perils: and because that we herebefore have written at large thereof, therefore will we not here rehearse them again, but only speak and discourse of those things that concern the bladder and the neck of the same.

Of retention of urine in general. §. 1.

VNder the name of the retention of urine we do comprehend all accidents, whereby the water is retained and kept back, whereof there be five kinds disclosed in the seventeenth Chapter, in the conclusion of the fourth §. and here are to be rehearsed. Amongst all these is the one more violent then the other, and for that cause are to be cured and holpen with divers and sundry remedies.

First, we will speak of the disease which the Grecians do call *Lithiasin*, which is when the stone of the bladder relying on the neck of the same, hindreth the passage of urine, or causeth such a distention of the yard and foreskin, that this and the stone together doth wholly hinder and keep back the urine, which is not without great pain and trouble to the Patient: but these meanes following are to be used in this extremity.

If so be that the Stone of the bladder cannot be expelled through the former remedies, then put back the stone and so let out the urine. First, the Patient is to be laid on high with his arse, and spread his legs abroad, and shake and rub the place strongly, that thereby the stone may be removed from the neck of the bladder, or the same is to be put back with a silver instrument, that thereby the urine might freely passe forth. But great care is to be had whether the passage for the urine be not shut up by some swelling, otherwise would the yard within thereby be bruised, and the grief made worse then before.

The second manner of the retention of urine is *Dysuria*, which is when a man doth make water with great grief and pain very slowly, the which is commonly perceived by the pricking pain and great heat in the forepart of the yard.

The third kind of the retention of urine is called *Stranguria*, which is when one is constrained to make water often, and that with a few drops at once. These two sorts of retention of urine, are so like one to the other, that few Phylitians can sever them, yet notwithstanding have they some differences.

These kinds are caused of a sharpness of some humour and of the urine, or through the debility of the muscles and of the retentive power. For if there come any sharp or corroding humour into the Bladder, then will it presently by force expel the same without any intermission.

Or if the retentive vertue of the bladder be weakened, then can it not abide the least distension in the world, but let the urine continually pass forth as an intollerable burthen.

Ischuria detaineth the urine altogether, and is caused diverslly, to wit, of heat, of the hardness of the passage, of the debility of the expulsive, and force of the retentive vertue, and of the forementioned disease *Lithiasis*.

Alſo if there be any groſſe and tough ſlime gathered together in the paſſage of the urine, or if there be any clotted blood, through blowes or falls ſetled in the bladder, which there do hinder the courſe of the urine.

In like manner alſo when the Kidneyes and the bladder do rankle and impoſtumate.

Laſtly (as it oftentimes hath been found) when the water is long held up.

And albeit there be many ſorts of this retention of urine, which at the laſt may cauſe impoſtumes, ulcers, and much pain; yet is this the total ſum and concluſion, that all of them that detain or hinder the free paſſage of the urine, do require but one kind of remedy. Notwithſtanding we will in this our diſcourſe following (as much as ſhall be poſſible) ſhew ſome differences in them.

Although there have been divers cauſes ſhewed before of this diſeaſe, yet (to proſecute our accuſtomed method) we will recite them once again; namely, if one have fallen hard, or have had a blow or briuſe on the bladder. Item, the tumors and impoſtumations which do ſtop the paſſage of the urine. Alſo when the back or any other part of the body is bruiſed, and the blood falne down into the bladder, and there lyeth clotted. Likewiſe thick tough ſlime or corruption, or other cauſes more, &c. whereof partly hath been ſpoken of before in the 16. Chapter and 7. §. and partly ſhall be treated of hereafter more at large.

The ſigns of this malady are theſe: if it proceed of any outward cauſe, that may be inquired of the patient. Or if the ſame be cauſed through congealed blood, ſtone, ſlime, or corruption, then may the ſame matter be perceived by the urine, and by the pain of the place infected, whence the matter cometh. Alſo by the ſilver probe, whereby the ſtone may be felt, or by the blood and ſlime which remaineth on the inſtrument being drawn forth.

Of the pain which is cauſed by the retention of the urine. §. 2.

WE have amongſt other things before made mention of gravel, whereby not only the patient is grieved with great pain, but alſo the Phyſitian is hindred from the application of thoſe remedies as may ſeem meet for him; wherefore it is ſpecially adviſed, firſt to delay the pain, or at the leaſt to diminiſh it; for the which theſe remedies following are eſpecially commended.

All gentle Cliſters, eaſie purgations, and above all others, bathes of warm water, wherein Mallowes, Hollihock roots, and Nettle roots, Gromel ſeeds, or any ſuch like mollifying things and Saxifrages are decocted, wherein theſe Patients are oftentimes to bathe themſelves even to the navel.

Item, take Colewort leaves, Southernwood, Rolemary, Pigeon dung, wild Saffron ſeeds beaten groſly; ſeeth them all together in water for a bath. Or take Mallowes, Hollihock leaves, Pellitory of the wall, Southernwood, *Creta Marina*, Fenegreek ſeed, Hollihock ſeed, of each two handfuls; ſeeth them all together unto a bath. Afterwards anoint the Kidneys with the oyl of Scorpions, or with any of the foreſaid ſalves.

With this bath may this powder following alſo be uſed with the decoction of Pepper: Take the ſeeds of Purſlain and of ſmall Endive, of each half a drach. Dill ſeed two ſcrup. Marjoram half a ſcruple; give this to the Patient when the pain is preſent.

Note alſo that theſe two meats be very good, both for the retention of the urine, and alſo for the ſtrangurie. And if ſo be this be holpen, then will the pain which is in the end of the Yard ſoon ceaſe.

In the deſcription of the Kidneys there may you ſee many plaiſters, ſalves and oyles, as that of *Anodynum*, and others more, which are very meet for this purpoſe.

Take a gallon of Sack, put it into a glaſſe veſſel or ſtillatorie, ſet it into a pot of water, having a long glaſſe-receiver. The firſt liquor that cometh is called the ſpirit, the ſecond is an *Aqua vitæ*, the third water is ſmall, and the fourth water is ſmalleſt, and drink 2. or 3. ounces of this ſmalleſt water, and it will cauſe urine preſently, and allays the heat of the urine.

Or ſeeth Radiſh roots in white wine, and drink it. Or bruiſe the roots of Verdine, and drink it warm with white Wine. Or ſeeth Acorns and Myrthe, and drink it. Or ſeeth the roots of Burredock in Wine and Oyl, and apply it to the yard and [illegible]. Or drink Wine with the roots of Cucumbers.

Of the stopping of the Urine through the debility of the vertue expulsive.

If any one be hindred in the making of his water, or that the same be altogether stopped without any swelling, ulcer, or pain of the Kidneyes, it is then to be censured that the same should come through the debility of the vertue expulsive, against the which these things shall be used as are diuretick, or that do provoke urine, as these pils follow. Take the seeds of Smallage, Saltpeter, Madder, great Smallage, Juniper berries, of *Ameos*, Fenel, Spick, and bitter Almonds, of each one ounce and a quarter, Myrrhe two drachmes, *Calubridæ* (the heads and wings cut away) half a drach, *Amoniacum* one drach and a half, dissolve your gum in wine, and mix all the rest being beaten small amongst it, then make pils of them of the bignesse of pease, give three of them at one time. These pils have an especial efficacie for to dry the body, so that they are accounted very good for the Dropsie. The *Stellatus Diacrisis* is also very good for this purpose, if thou give one quarter of an ounce of it with pease broth or wine, which thou wilt.

There was not long since one cured with this remedy following, who for the space of five dayes could never make his water: At first he took this clister; Take Pellitory of the wall two handfuls, Mallowes and Camomil, of each one handful, boyl them together, then take of this decoction the accustomed quantity, and temper amongst it one ounce of Oliue oyl of Camomil three ounces, Turpentine one ounce, Licorice one quarter of an ounce, minister it warm.

Secondly, this following was also ordained for him; Take Cassie and Turpentine of each one quarter of an ounce, *Benedicta laxativa* two drach. prepared Jews stone ʒ. i. make an Electuary thereof with *Oxymel*. At night he took two ounces of *Oxymel* with the water of Maidenhair, and presently after this he made water.

Item, take four or five ounces of the juyce of Pellitory of the wall, and clarifie it with the white of an egg, then seeth it with Sugar to a syrupe, and use 3. ounces thereof every morning with the water of Mallowes, or with any such like distilled liquor.

This done, give unto the patient a purgation of Cassie. Thirdly, take Coriander seeds half an ounce, Mallowes one handful, one head of Garlick, pownd them all together, and seeth them with good white Wine until that one third part be consumed, and give him thereof three ounces to drink.

Peach kernels and the kernels of Cherry stones do also provoke urine. Item, preserved Pimpernel roots, Calamus, and the roots of *Eringus* are also very good for this purpose, confected Lovage seed, Annis seeds, Fennel seeds, Caruway seeds, Comin seeds, and Fennage seeds, these do expel all urine, gravel and stone. Treacle and Mithridate do also cause one to make water. Item, the confection of Cherries with their kernels beaten in pieces, and rub it through a strainer is also meet for this use: also half a drachme of dryed Grashoppers is very fit, and a great secret in this disease. Item, the stone which is found of a living body, and used as before hath been shewed in the expulsion of gravel, is also very convenient and commodious for this intent.

Take Tormentil, Dionie, *Bistorta*, Acorns and wild Flax, of each a like much, pownd them all together, and take thereof in the evening and morning one drach. with Wine. The Spanish flyes do expel urine most violently, but beware of them because they be very sharp, and exulcerate the ureters; but the Grashoppers are somewhat milder. Item, take the roots of Pimpernel beaten small as much as one can contain between his two fingers, and drink it with Wine. The pownded shels of Hasel nuts do the like also, and the jawes of Pikerels, if thou take of each of them a like quantity.

But if the urine be stopped by reason of the stone in the Bladder, then give unto the patient two small drops of the oyl of Sulphur with Wine or Agrimony water: or beat a Radish very small, presse out the juyce of it, and take ʒ. β. thereof with wine; it provoketh urine immediatly, and breaketh the stone also. Item, drink in the morning 3. or 4. ounces of Radish water very warm, and fast two hours after it. In like manner also two in the evening two hours before supper, and walk after it.

Another. Take Mallowes and Garlick, of each a little, seeth them in Wine until the third part be wasted away, drink three or four ounces of this decoction at once. Or take *Balsamina altera* and the lesser burre leaves, boyl them together in wine, and drink it

as before. Take a great Onion, cut it ſmall, and Mallowes one handful, boyl them in wine, and drink often times of the decoction being warmed.

If a child could not make his water, then take ten or twelve bitter Aſmonds, and ten or twelve Peach kernels, and two ounces of Currans, ſtamp them all together, ſtrain them through a cloth with water like to Almond milk, and give it the child to drink like Almond milk.

Amongſt the harbed Wines are especially commended for the provoking of urine the Wine of Elecampane, of Harts tongue, of ſweet Marjoram, of Cherries, of *Aſarabacca*, and of winter Cherries, which are alſo mentioned before in the Treatiſe of the gravel. But if any one might not drink wine at all, or that he had it not, then may he drink Mede, or Honey water, which is alſo very good. What ſirupes and other things might be used for the provoking of urine, that hath ſufficiently been ſhewed before in the Treatiſe of the gravel. But *Oximel compoſitum* and the ſirupe of Vinegar and ſo this is very highly commended. Clisters are of no ſmall force in this diſeaſe, but eſpecially when they be made with *Benedicta*, and the oyl of Scorpions.

Amongſt the outward remedies are the forementioned bathings the eſpecialleſt and the moſt highly commended.

Hereafter follow the deſcriptions of ſalves and plaiſters. Take a ſliced Radiſh, ſtamp it to pap, and temper amongſt it the oyl of bitter Almonds and the oyl of Scorpions with a little Wax, then ſpread this very thick upon a cloth, and ſo lay it upon the privities. Item, take Turpentine, oyl of Scorpions and of bitter Almonds, of each a like quantity, and a little molten Wax, then temper them together, and therewith anoint the noble privities.

Another. Take the oyl of Scorpions, of *Coſtus*, of Lillies, of Dill and Dutchgreaſe, of each half an ounce, Pellitory of the wall and Saxifrage beaten, of each one drachme, Comin three drach. Wax as much as ſufficeth for a ſalve. For this you may alſo uſe the balmes and oyles which are deſcribed in the eight part, like as ſhall be ſhewed them more at large.

Here before in the affluxion of the humane ſeed, is alſo admoniſhed that the navil is to be filled with a little old ſuet, either of an Oxe or of a Hart; the which is alſo a ſure remedy for the making of water, but that is oftentimes to be uſed. The oyl of S. Johns wort ſhould alſo expel urine if one be anointed with it.

If now there be any body which cannot make water, then cut two great Onions, and put a ſpoonful of Caruwaies unto it, pour then thereon ſome Sallad Oyl; afterwards fry them all togeather, and ſpread it on a cloth two handfuls broad and meetly long, and ſo lay it as before upon the privities as warm as can be ſuffered: do this ſix or ſeven times together, it helpeth evidently. Item, take Pellitory of the wall, fry it in oyl, and ſo lay it warm on the privities. Some do write that the fat of Conies anointed on the privities and on the Kidneys, ſhould marvelloully expel urine. Likewiſe alſo the oyl of Bayberries, of Camomil and of Scorpions. The detention of the urine of what cauſe ſoever it be cauſed, this enſuing is good for it; take live or dead wood-lice, lay them over the privities before, and then pluck over the foreskin: theſe and Cony fat are by ſome highly commended: alſo the foreskin is to be put over the anointing with Cony fat.

This enſuing is alſo highly commended for Women when they cannot make water: Take filed Goats horn and Maiden hair, of each a like quantity, make them to powder, and ſtrew them on a new hot tile: put this into a cloſe ſtool and ſet the woman upon it, then ſprinkle Wine on the tile to the end ſhe may receive the vapour beneath; this is to be done twice or thrice a day, according as the obſtruction of the urine is great. But if this malady ſeem wholly to get the maſtery, then take the water of picked Plantain, make Almond milk with it, and drink thereof twice or thrice a day, it is alſo eſpecial good. And if ſo be that the ſharpneſſe of the urine had made any excoriation, then anoint the place with the oyl of Eggs. And if a woman with child cannot make her water, then is ſhe to take yellow Roſe ſeeds and ſeeth them in Wine; when the pain is ſomewhat aſſwaged, then give thereof to drink; afterwards make a little oyl of Lillies warm, and anoint therewith the Reins and over all the belly. Item, take Sage and Wormwood, of each one handful, Rie meal one ſpoonful; ſeeth them all together, and let the woman ſitting on a cloſe ſtool receive of the vapour.

You have alſo in the fift Chapter, and 1. §. ſomewhat elſe which is alſo meet for this purpoſe.

Of the retention of urine through falls or blowes. §. 4.

IF the retention of the urine come of any outward cauſe, as of falls or of blowes, then muſt good heed be taken if ſo be that thereby any coagulated or clotted blood, not only in the bladder, but alſo in any of the inward parts, came to putrifie, like as in the ſtomach, in the breaſt, and elſewhere, then may great ſorrow and trouble proceed of it, yea death it ſelf; for that there follow great faintneſſe after it, great weakneſſe of the whole body, and the pulſe will be ſo ſmall that one can ſcarſe feel it.

And to remedy the ſame, is the Liver vein of the ſick perſon to be opened, and the bruiſed place irrigated from on high, oftentimes with warm water wherein Camomil, Melilot and Roſes be decocted. Afterwards is the ſick perſon to be anointed with this ſalve enſuing; Take Myrrhe and Maſtick, of each one drachme, oyl of Roſes one ounce, oyl of Dill half an ounce, wax as much as is needful.

But if the pain will not abate and ceaſe, and that it appear that the bruiſe will come to an impoſtume and heat, and an ague ſtick unto it, then open the *Saphen*.

If the Patient be bound, then are milder cliſters and purgations to be uſed, and the patient is to keep himſelf as ſober in eating and drinking as may be poſſible the ſpace of two dayes, and afterwards to dyet himſelf like as one that hath an Ague is wont to do. The place is to be fomented with the foreſaid herbs and thereupon to anoint it with warm oyl of Violets, and with oyl of Camomil. The bladder is ſoftly to be wrung from the top even to the privities; alſo an Oxe bladder may be filled with this decoction following, and laid upon the privities.

Take Mallowes, Camomil, Rape leaves, Melilot, Violet leaves and Linſeed, ſeeth them together, and make a felt or ſponge wet in it, and lay it warm upon it. You may alſo make a bath for the loines thereof, putting thereto ſome Hollihock roots, Onions, Garlek and Colewort leaves pounded all together; ſeeth them and wring them out well, then put them in a bag which hath a hole in the middle to put the yard therein, and that he may lye upon it. Item, take Wormwood, put it in a bag, ſeeth it in wine and wring it well out, then lay it upon the privities, as is expreſſed, and admoniſh the patient that he endeavour himſelf to piſſe oftentimes.

This enſuing is not only good for the clotted blood in the bladder, but alſo for all other places of the body, be it of whatſoever occaſion it may be; Take Wormwood, Fennel, Smallage, the ſeed of the yellow root, red Storax, peeled Melon ſeed, and Radiſh leaves, of each a like quantity, make a powder of them, and give thereof between one and two drachmes with Aſſes milk, or with water wherein Fennel roots, and the roots of Smallage, of Parſley, of Sperage, or of *Ruſcus* be decocted.

Of the retention of urine through ſome obſtruction of the conduits. §. 5.

IF ſo be that it happen that this retention or painful making of water do vex or pain a body, and yet nevertheleſſe the bladder is full of urine, and that the patient had paſt any blood or matter before; then are thoſe remedies to be given him which do open, and which do attenuate the clotted blood and corruption in the bladder, and make it ſmible: therefore one muſt firſt begin to wring the privities hard, that thereby the lowermoſt paſſages may be opened, and the urine may run out. Now if ſo be that this obſtruction do come of clotted blood, of matter or of ſlime, then are Sperage water, Saxifrage water, and Radiſh water, eſpecially good for it. In like manner is alſo very good, the broth of red Peaſe, of Fennel roots, of Parſley roots, and of Smallage, of each apart, or boiled together. Alſo Limon water is very much commended for this uſe. Item Treacle, good Mithridate, and moſt of all that which is declared in the retention of the urine.

Alſo Salt water, or this following may be ſpouted into the bladder, which may draw out the urine through their ſharpneſſe; take burnt aſhes of Fern, Vine aſhes and lime, of each a like quantity, pour as much water upon it until it be covered, let it ſtand to the ſpace of 3. daies; afterwards pour it through a cight cloth, and ſpout a little thereof into the bladder. This can alſo be done with the oyl of Scorpions.

Item, take the ſeeds of Carrots, the ſeed of ſtone Parſley, and of Parſley, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Hermodactili* 3. drachmes, make a powder thereof, and give one drachme thereof at each time. Or take the ſeed of Smallage, of Parſley, or Piony, of Brooms, and

of Saxifrage, of each one quarter of an ounce, Fennel ſeed, Caraway and Annis ſeeds, of each half a drachme, Gromel ſeeds, *Spica*, Cinamom, peeled Melon ſeeds, Pompeon ſeeds, Gourd ſeeds, and peeled Cucumber ſeed, of each one drachme, Licorice three drach. Sugar one ounce and a half, make a powder thereof, and give of it every day one drach. with ſome diuretical decoction. If ſo be that the ſick perſon have no ſtooles, then is the matter firſt to be prepared with *Oxymella diuretica*, or with *Oxymel* of Squils, and afterwards to purge with *Medicamnia Turbith*, and with *Agarico*, or with *Benedicta Laxativa*, whereunto are added *Hermodactyli*: alſo theſe enſuing cliſters may be uſed.

Take Pellitory of the wall, water Creſſes, Saxifrage, and Camomil, of each one handfull, ſeethe them all together in water, and take twelve or ſixteen ounces of this decoction, *Benedicta Laxativa* one ounce, Caſſie and *Hiera Picra*, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Rue three ounces make a cliſter thereof.

For an outward application, take handfuls of Rue leaves, pownd them a little, and fry them with Butter, or with oyl of ſweet Almonds, or oyl of Scorpions, and lay it on the privities.

Another; Take Dock roots as many as you pleaſe, ſeethe them in wine, fry them, and uſe them as before. Or take wheaten bran, let it ſeethe to pap with oyl of Nuts, and uſe it warm.

Item, take Pellitory of the wall, water Creſſes, Saxifrage and *Diptamus*, of each one handful, Fennel and Annis ſeeds, of each half an ounce; ſeethe them together in white wine, wring it out hard, put it between two cloths and lay it on the privities. You may alſo put the ſame decoction into the bladder, and ſo apply it warm unto it.

Of the firſt mentioned may alſo a bath be made, whereunto diuretical medicines ſhall be added, as Camomil, Stechas, Marjoram, Mints, the buds of Colewort ſtalkes, Pigeon dung, and let the ſick perſon bathe therein as long as he can ſuffer it.

Another; Take Colewort leaves, Hollihock leaves, water Creſſes, and garden Creſſes, Pellitory of the wall, *Clavicularis*, Camomil, Smallage and Parſly roots, of each three handfuls; ſeethe them all together unto a bath, and then lay the decocted herbs upon the privities.

For a ſalve you are to uſe Dogs greaſe and wilde Cats greaſe, of each one ounce, *Armoniacum* half an ounce, oyl of Lillies two ounces, oyl of Scorpions one ounce, make a ſalve of it with Wax, and uſe it like as the other ſalves. Or take the ſalve which is deſcribed in the 3. §. beginning thus, Take oyl of Scorpions, &c.

Item, temper Balm and oyl of Roſes, of each a like much with Wax. Further, of all theſe oyles following may alſo ſalves be prepared, as of the oyl of Scorpions, of bitter Almonds, of Lillies, of the kernels of Cherries, and of Pepper; or one may alſo uſe them as they be. For this diſeaſe are all things meet that be ordained for the ſtone of the bladder and of the Kidneyes.

Of the hot and ſcalding urine. §. 6.

THere happneth alſo otherwhiles ſuch a burning with the urine, that the patient thinketh none other than that fire paſſeth through his yard. The cauſe of this is, that there be mixt with the urine ſome hot cholerick or ſalt humours, which make this ſcalding in the paſſage.

This cometh commonly of great labour, much and long walking or travelling through heat of the Sun, through much venery, through long uſe of many hot meats, or for that the conduits of the yard have ſuch exulceration within.

This infirmity is indeed not to be regarded ſlightly, for if it continue long, then doth it excoriate the yard within. The ſigns thereof be ſundry, to wit, when the patient avoideth in his water ſometimes matter, ſmall ſcales like bran, and otherwhiles alſo blood.

Theſe kinds of ſick perſons are to beware of all ſharpe, ſalt, ſour, and ſuch like meats, becauſe that thereby the pain will be augmented. But he ſhall contrarywiſe uſe all cooling and moiſtening things, as well boyled Barly, Spinage, Lettice, Purſlain, Mallows, Apples, Melons, Pompeons, Gourds; Prunes, Peaches, and Cherries, &c. Item, Lamb, hens, and Partridges dreſt with the foreſaid herbs are the beſt meat for him. Buttermilk, and that ſodden, is alſo very good.

He is to take for his drink Barly water, Buttermilk, watered wine, and freſh water tempered with ſirupe of Violets or ſirupe of Roſes, Almond milk, or Sheeps milk

which

(which is moſt meet for him) if there be one drachme or two of fine *Bolus* tempered amongſt it. Item give him ſirup of Violets with water of Melons, or if you have it not then beat the ſeeds, and make thereof a decoction; afterwards drink it with the other meats. In the morning and evening uſe this powder following: Take peeled Melon ſeeds five drachmes, peeled Cucumber ſeeds, Citron ſeeds and peeled Pompeon ſeeds, each one 3. Henbane ſeed one drachme, Sugar the weight of all the reſt, then temper them all together; take thereof every morning and evening the weight of three drachmes, with Julep of Roſes.

Another: Take peeled Melon ſeeds, ſeeds of Pompeons, of Gourds, and of Cucumbers, chopt ſmall, of each one ounce: the ſeeds of Purſlain, of Henbane, and white Poppy ſeeds, Licorice and Currans, of each one drachme, Sugar three ounces, temper them together. Item, take Lettice ſeeds and the ſeeds of Purſlain, of each half an ounce, pownded Sugar two ounces, make a powder thereof, and uſe it in all meats and drinks, it is marvellous good, yea for all old folks alſo.

Theſe Trochiſks following do cool and cleanſe the Kidneyes and the bladder of all ſuch matter which doth inflame or overheat the conduits of urine.

Take peeled Melon ſeeds, Pompeon ſeeds, Gourd ſeeds, and peeled Cucumber ſeeds, of each half an ounce, Dragagant, red Saunders, of each one drachme and a half, Purſlain ſeeds, white Poppy ſeeds, of each three drach. white Henbane ſeeds one drach. make Trochiſks thereof with the muſcilage of Fleawort, afterwards take one drachme of them and break it in Barly water, and give it early in the morning and at night going to bed. You may alſo make an electuary of it. Caſſy taken with Turpentine is alſo eſpecially good for this purpoſe. The oyl of ſweet Almonds aſſwageth and cooleth alſo the heat of the conduits of urine.

If in caſe then the Patient (becauſe of the ſharpneſſe of the matter) ought to be purged more, then is the ſame to be done with ſour Dates, *Manna*, and Rubarb ſteeped in Endive water, or with the decoction of Violets: if there be ſalt flegme with it, then give him Caſſie tempered with the whay of Goats milk, wherein Polipody roots, Annis, Violets and Burrage flowers have been decocted. When he hath thus been purged, then is the liver vein to be opened, and the foreſaid powder to be diligently uſed.

If ſo be that a child hath this diſeaſe, then take Mallow ſeeds, Dragagant, and Licorice of each a like quantity, ſeethe them in water according to the importance of the cauſe, and let him drink none other drink. If this urine be very ſharp and hot, then take ſo much the more of the ſeeds. And in caſe that a child through the ſharpneſſe of the urine had gotten ſome exulceration, then uſe this ſalve enſuing: Take Myrrhe half an ounce, Barly meal or Bean meal one ounce, temper it to a ſoft unguent with the oyl of Roſes, ſpread it on a cloth, and then lay it where it is needful.

The brayed white of an Egg may alſo be ſpouted into the privities, or take the muſcilage of Fleawort and of Quince kernels, of each one drachme, temper them with womans milk.

Or take the ſeed of Fleawort three quarters of an ounce, the ſeed of Quinces five drach. peeled Melon ſeeds, Pompeons ſeeds, Gourd ſeeds, and peeled Cucumber ſeeds, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Popy ſeeds one drachme and a half; ſeethe them all together in a pint of water until the third part be waſted, then ſtrain it through a cloth that it may be like a muſcilage, and ſpout thereof into the yard, it cooleth and aſſwageth the pain.

You ſhall uſe outwardly red and white Saunders, the ſeeds of *Roſes*, burnt Ivory, and Purſlain ſeeds, of each one quarter of an ounce, the juyce of Plantain and Roſe water, of each one ounce, Barly meal as much as ſuffiseth, then pownd then all together, and make a ſoft pap of it: you may alſo put unto it two whites of Eggs. But if one deſire to have it ſtronger, then it the juyce of Sloes and *Hipociſtis*, of each one drachme to be tempered amongſt it and ſo to be layed upon it. If ſo be that the yard have an exulceration within, then is a cloth to be made wet in Roſewater and layed upon the yard.

If any one be forced againſt his will to make his water. §. 7.

ALthough this diſeaſe which the learned do call *Diamnem*, be ſomewhat like unto *Diabetes*, and eſpecially in this, that in both ſorts of theſe diſeaſes the urine paſſeth away againſt ones will and pleaſure, yet is there nevertheleſſe a great difference between them;

them; for that with the disease *Diabetes* is a great heat of the kidneyes, her attractive vertue is against nature, whence followeth a great thirst, and great quantity of urine, all which is not with the disease *Diabetes*. For *Diabetes* is none other but a continual flux of the urine against a bodies will without any pain or heat, and who without any feeling of it. The occasions of this malady may be when the muscles of the neck of the bladder be perished, like as otherwhiles happeth in cutting of the stone. This can also chance through fals, through blowes, or through great cold, as to sit upon a cold stone, through cold sicknesses, as the Palsie or Lithargie: Item, through immoderate and exceeive drinking, and through great binding in the body. They may likewise happen unto women with child, when the child oppresseth the bladder too hard. Lastly, through some impostumes about those parts. The signs of this disease are apparent, to wit, that all warm things are acceptable to the patient, and cold things contrary are hurtfull. When these diseases (as often befalleth) are caused through cold, then is this electuary very good, which hath efficacy for to stay this flux of urine.

Take Cipres nuts, the rinds of Cipres, Frankincense and the rinds of the same, Myrtle seed, Comin, Mirobalans both fried, and dried Pigeon dung, of each three drach. Amber, red Coral, and Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, syrup of Quinces as much as is needful for to make an electuary therewith, whereof is to be taken every morning, noone and evening, the bignesse of a Chestnut, with a decoction of Cipres nuts, Sage, Myrtle seed, and such like. This electuary is also good for the laxes called *Diarrhea* and *Lienteria*.

Another; Take *Mirobalans Chebuli, Emblici* and *Bellirici*, of each three drachmes, Acorns three drachmes and a half, which have layne four and twenty houres steeped in vinegar, Cipres roots, Myrtle seeds, Frankincense, dried Elecampane roots, red Storax, red Coral, and yellow seeds of Roses, of each two drachmes and a half, Myrrhe one drach. and a half, stamp them small, and make an electuary thereof with clarified hony.

For this is also good Treacle, Mithridate, and burnt Oxe bladders, of each taken alone with wine.

Item, take the dried kidneyes of a Hare, stamp them to powder, and Dill seed, of each half an ounce, the seed of Smallage one quarter of an ounce, make a powder thereof, and give it between two and three drachmes at once with a little cold water: boyled Hedghogs flesh is also very commodious for this purpose.

If so be that the patient have any need of stooles, then is this clister following very commodious for it, for when he keepeth it very long, then doth it strengthen the neck of the bladder, and draweth it together, that it doth afterwards keep the urine the better. Take Sage, Rue, *Clavicularis*, field Cypres, Camomil, Stechas, Nuts flowers and rinds of Cypres, of each half a M. then let them seethe together, and use this Clister like as is accustomed, but mix the oyl of Bevercod and of Behen, of each two ounces amongst it, powder of rosted *Chebuli*, Myrtle seeds and Cypres roots, of each one drachme and a half, lastly temper all together.

Outwardly may he use the Mineral and Sulphurish baths, but if one cannot get them, then make a dry sweating bath with the foresaid herbs, which are named in the decoction of the clisters, which also one may use for a bath for the Reins, if the same be sodden in Wine or lee, and put Salt or Allom unto it.

The privities and bladder are also to be anointed with these oyls following, whether they be tempered together or each a part, viz. with oyl of Bevercod, of Behen and Eldern, amongst which there may be a little *Piretrum*, Pepper, and the rinds of the Cypres tree mixed.

His order of dyet consisteth principally in this, to wit, that he do not overcharge himself neither with eating or drinking, and use nothing which forceth urine, as Radishes, Cucumbers, Melons, Parsly, fruit, and such like. He is also to refrain from all clear, white, delicate Wine, and from Syder, but is rather to drink a red, thick, hard, and unwatered wine.

He must strew his meat with pownded Comin which is somewhat parched: also with a little Mustard seed, Pepper, Caraway, or which one please; and he must specially beware of all that ingendreth much moysture in the body. Rosted Chestnuts and hasel nuts be very goood for him.

Of the excoriation of the Bladder, and of the pain of the same. §. 8.

THe causes of this disease may be a precedent impostume, or some sharp humour of the body, the use of some hot meats and drinks which are salted too much, or some thing else which doth excoriate the urine, all is before discovered.

The signs of it are detention of the urine, and although the same have some small passage, yet happeneth it with anguish and great pain of the privities, and of other parts adjacent. In the urine are small skales to be seen, and other whites blood and corruption, the which doth stink. And now for to remedy this, then look what hath been prescribed against the gravel, stone, and such like; for all that is also meet for this purpose, and therefore not needful to be rehearsed at this present.

But here is especially needful a good order of diet, as hereafter followeth; all sale, sour, sharp, and sweet meats, also all great exercise must be refrained; yet all mild meats, and specially Sheeps milk is he to use.

He is also for Physick such things which do mundifie and cleanse the ulcers of their corruption, viz. *Trochisci Alkekengi* three drach. with syrup or Julep of Violets. He is also oftentimes to drink mead, *Sesquialterum Rufi* one drach. or two tempered with milk: oftentimes to be injected into the bath, or Hony water wherein Figs be decocted.

Of the impostume of the Bladder, or of the neck of the same. §. 9.

THere do come very seldom impostumations in the Bladder, or in the neck of the same; yet when they come there, then commonly be they caused through bruises, blowes, and falls upon the same place, or such like. Item, through a sweaty and bloody body which is mixed with *Cholera*, repletion of the matrix and of the kidneyes, whence the matter falleth into the Bladder, and there impostumateth: the stone in the bladder may also cause the same.

The signs of these impostumes are Agues which be caused of pain, also biting and pricking pain above the privities, swelling of the same place with heat, which is also to be perceived by feeling detention of the urine, the which the patient cannot otherwise avoid but standing onely.

Herewith cometh also oppilation of the body, parbreaking of *Cholera*, heavy breath, cold of the outward parts, swelling of the tongue, distemperance of the brains; they be also distempered through hot and diuretical things; age, hot weather, and a licentious life do trouble and harm these patients greatly.

In these impostumes be certain common rules prescribed. First, if so be that this impostume be in the bladder, in the neck of the bladder, or in the yard, then is no diuretical medicine to be given him. Secondly, the matter which causeth these impostumes, is to be derived to another place, except it were in the Plague, for then ought first a vein to be opened. Thirdly, when it is known which humour is most peccant, then must one look to purge the same with appropriated medicines: Fourthly, there be not any attractive cures (neither in the biginning nor augmenting of the impostume) to be used, to the end that by the affluence of the humour the impostume be not augmented; but onely is to use onely mild things, so that through the great binding in the body there ensue no hurt: Fifthly, repelling medicines are not to be too long used, that the matter be not made too grosse, and those parts which be cold by nature be more refrigerated and cooled: Sixthly, whensoever through cooling things the outward accidents be somewhat ceased, then are such things to be used as may asswage the pain: Seventhly, if there be but a little moisture in the patients body, then are besides the expulsive medicaments, also bathing and rubbing to be used: Eightly, if there be any impostumes in the neck of the bladder, then must one beware to use any instrument about or in it, for that in doing so you might hinder the matter greatly: Ninthly, when the detained urine, neither of it self, nor of any instrument may be letten out, then are other means to be used, whereof we have written somewhat before.

Thus for to help this disease, is in the beginning the *Basilica* to be opened, according to the prescription of the second rule, and let out as much blood as shall seem meet. But if the patient find himself meetly strong, and if so be that the matter be much, then is the *Saphena* to be opened the next day after. If the impostume be through heat, as of cold or *Cholera*, then take oyl of Roses, and unripe Sallad oyl, of each one ounce, vinegar half an

ounce

ounce, temper them all together, afterwards anoint it upon the place of the pain, and then ſtrew upon it this powder following: take Myrtle ſeed, Roſes, Dragons blood, and white Saunders, of each a like quantity, pownd them all together to powder, and lay a cloth upon it dipped in the furesaid oyl of Myrtles.

The patient is alſo to be purged with lenitive medicines and gentle cliſters, thereby to mollifie the hardneſſe of the impoſtume, and to aſſwage the pain, and ſo to open the conduits of urine.

Of all which you have had good direction before. Beſides theſe is this fomentation following very meet: Take Camomil, Melilot, of each three ounces, Hollihock roots, Fenegreek, Linſeed, of each one ounce and a half; let them all ſeethe well together in water, and then bathe the place affected therewith the ſpace of an hour; afterwards fill a bladder with this decoction about half full, and lay it warm upon the privities, then anoint the pivitie with oyl of Camomil, with oyl of Lillies, and ſuch like, even as in the impoſtume of the kidneyes hath been declared more at large.

For this is alſo very meet water baths, wherein Mallowes, Hollihock roots, Camomil, Linſeed, Melilot, Marjoram, Cipres roots, Rape leaves, Colewort, Fenegreek, ſuch like be decocted. If it be needfull to uſe warming oyls, then take oyl of Lillies, of S. Johns wort, of Rue, of ſweet and bitter Almonds, of wall flowers; all theſe oyls do allay the pain, as alſo doth the oyl of tyles, and the plaiſter of Barberries, which conſume all cold humours.

When as this impoſtume is broken, then follow the ſame courſe as hath been taught in the impoſtumes of the Kidneyes.

To conclude, theſe things following are much commended to be eaten for all diſeaſes of the bladder, viz. preſerved Elecampane roots and Pimpernel roots, which expell all uncleanneſſe from the ſtomach: likewiſe alſo preſerved Calamus, Treacle, Mithridate, conſerve of Betony, Mead and Hony water. Item, the juyce of Lemons which is eſpecial good for all bruiſings of the bladder that were cauſed of the ſtone.

The nineteenth Chapter.

Of the Matrix or Womb.

FRom the beginning of this book of Phyſick hitherto we have written and diſcourſed of all the principall inward parts of our body, concerning as well men as women; but concerning the Matrix, which is onely proper to the femal kind, have we deferred untill this preſent, and now we will intreat ſomewhat thereof.

This Matrix or Womb is the chiefeſt part whereby the generation of mankind is maintained, and ordained of God Almighty (Creator of nature it ſelf) as for a veſſel, receiver and preſervative place of humane ſeed, which is therein formed unto a living creature, increaſed, defended, nouriſhed, and ſuſtained until the opportune time of birth.

The Grecians do call this Matrix or Womb *Mestra* and *Hyſtera*, the Latiniſts *Matrix*, *Vulva*, *uterus*, and we by reaſon of her vertue, for that it incloſeth the conceived child, the Mother or Womb. This hath her place in the neathermoſt part of the belly, right under the Navel. It reacheth backwards to the arſegut, and forward to the bladder. It is divided into two parts, wherof the firſt part is her whole body, wherin (as is ſaid) humane ſeed is received, and the fruit preſerved. The ſecond part is the neck of the Matrix or Womb, which reacheth out of the foremoſt part of the privities, ſo that it is aſſimulated unto the Bladder with her neck, the ligaments wherewith ſhe is bound to the hips, onely excepted. When this Matrix or Womb with all that belongeth thereto is rightly beholden, then is it only ſhapen like to a mans member, only that the humane member dependeth outwardly, and that the womanwood lieth hidden within, whereof in the beginning of the fifth Chapter, and afterwards hath been ſpoken at length.

Her ſubſtance is inwardly fleſhy and rough, eſpecially in the bottom ſtrewed over all with ſmall knops or bunches, which be full of ſmall veins, that come and have their accourſe from all parts of the body unto the womb, and incarnal uſe do draw and keep with them the humane ſeed, which alſo yeeld forth the flowers or terms, nouriſh the conceived

conceived fruit, and maintain the ſecondine. Alſo this Matrix hath two concavities, and it is ſuppoſed that in the concavity on the right ſide Sons be conceived, and in that on the left ſide the Daughters, whereof we ſhall ſpeak hereafter more at large.

Outwardly ſhe is full of ſinews and hard, becauſe that ſhe openeth and ſhutteth too again in the bearing of children, all which muſt be atchieved and brought to paſſe through the ſinews; the ſame hardneſſe doth alſo defend her from many kinds of bruiſing.

The foreſaid ſinews be alſo cauſes of her motion, and aſcending and deſcending in the body, for that becauſe theſe ſinews are very ſenſible and eaſily harmed, therefore they do ſhrink in and draw the mother upwards with great painfulneſſe, as hereafter ſhall be ſhewed more at large.

The neck of the womb which is with ſome women long, and with ſome ſhort, whereof the right meaſure is the breadth of eleven fingers, is ſhapen of a hard muskelly and ſinewy fleſh, which ſo hardeneth from day to day (eſpecially in leacherous women or common harlots, and old women) that it is at the laſt altered into a kind of Cartilage.

This neck of the Matrix hath alſo where the Mother beginneth, an entrance which is never more opened but in the venereous act, in time of the terms, and in the birth, otherwiſe doth it remain alwayes moſt tightly ſhut, and eſpecially after the receit of the humane ſeed, ſo that nothing may go in or out. In young maidens or girles it is very thin, but in growing it waxeth thicker and bigger, *viz.* when the terms be at hand, and leſſeneth when they be paſt; the thickneſſe alſo increaſeth with the being with child, and how many times more that ſhe beareth child, ſo much the thicker doth it grow. In like ſort alſo will it be harder and thicker in time of the firſt conception, but in the growing and increaſe of the child is it dilated, to the end the fruit might have room and ſcope: but in women that never conceived, or have not born any children at all, it continueth in one bigneſſe, and is much leſſe than in fruitful women. In like manner is it alſo in children much ſmaller then the bladder, but with growing up it daily waxeth greater, yea that it is at laſt in greatneſſe far exceeding the bladder.

Theſe kinds and ſuch like ſundry motions, like as they have delight in odoriferous things, and a loathing of ſtinking things, for which it flieth, and for which it aſcendeth, cauſed the wiſe Philoſopher *Plato* to write as hereafter followeth; This part in women, which many do call *Metram* and *Hyſteram*, is a living creature, very greedy of conception, therefore if it be drawn upwards untimely, and if it remain a long ſpace unfruitful, then doth it become unwilling, it creepeth through the whole body, whereby the parts of reſpiration are ſo obſtructed and ſtopt, that the woman can get no breath, yea it bringeth with it at the laſt great danger and peril, and cauſeth many kinds of ſickneſſes. Theſe be the words of *Plato*; but this opinion is withſtood by *Galen*.

This noble part in women is ſubject to many kinds of diſeaſes and ſickneſſes, which if they do get the upper hand, do hinder the conception and the fruitfulneſſe of women; which unfruitfulneſſe is eſpecially cauſed when ſhe hath too many of her terms or too few, or when the ſame is wholly detained, whence then followeth a ſpoyl of the natural heat, the whiter, the ſuffocation of the mother, which otherwhiles ſuffeth women, the precipitation and falling out of the ſame, great pain, ulcers, impoſtumes, hardnes, and for the unnatural diſeaſe *Mola*, barrenneſſe, and if ſhe peradventure chance to conceive, an untimely birth, whereof hereafter ſhall be written, yet firſt we will begin of womens terms and flowers.

Of the Terms or Flowers of women in generall.

THat theſe Termes of women be called the Flowers, is for this cauſe, *viz.* when it is ſeen that a tree bloweth, then is it eſteemed meet and convenient to bear fruit, and contrariwiſe the tree unfruitful which bloweth not, except the figtree. So is it likewiſe with women, that all they that have their Termes are fit and commodious to conceive and bear children, the which they that have not their Flowers or Termes, can never more accompliſh. Secondly, the Latiniſts do call theſe flowers *Menſtrua*, of the moneth, and thus, for they every moneth or thirty dayes return and come againe; or for that they according to the courſe of the Moon, that is, becauſe they appear the firſt quarter of the Moon in young girles, the ſecond quarter is ſhewed that be ſomewhat bigger, the third quarter in the middle ſort, the laſt quarter in aged Women. Whereby all expert Phyſitians do obſerve in each nine that each age is to have theirs, to wit, the young people in the new and increaſing Moon, the old folk in

the

the decreaſe of the Moon: in fine, the health of all women dependeth eſpecially on this neceſſary menſtrual flux, yea all her chaſtity, fruitfulneſſe and welfare.

To the contrary, if they do not at all avoid, do flow too much, unorderly, or be loathſome of colour, then do they cauſe all miſeries, inclination to every, and many kind of ſickneſſes, like as hereafter ſhall be taught.

Wherewith it is to be eſteemed for no ſmall work of wonder, that amongſt all creatures that do live and are of the female kind (except certain Apes) only women are ſubjeſt unto this flux, and therefore have the Philoſophers many kind of diſputations, which be here too long and needleſſe to be rehearſed. But of the fountain and matter of this blood, it is with one conſent concluded, that it is a cold, undigeſted and groſſe matter, and the blood of the whole body, the which through the foreſaid veins is gathered together in the womb, and is afterwards expelled in due time as a matter hurtful and of no uſe. That this matter is alſo cold, is by this perceived, that when it paſſeth away, the woman feeleth a great cold over the whole body, this happeneth after many fathions. Of the Terms that be avoided over and above their natural cuſtome, ſhall be hereafter ſpoken of with all their appertenances. The women whoſe Terms avoid in two or three dayes, are rid of them with ſmall trouble, but if they endure long, then will they be thereby very feeble.

The firſt avoidance of their Termes is commonly about the fourteenth year, the which ſignifieth that then their natural ſeed beginneth to ripen, that the hair and breaſts begineth to grow, and they that be hot of nature do then get deſire of the man, for that the womans Terms be none other but a natural ſeed which is not yet throughly ripe, and that through his ſuperfluity of nature deſireth to be expelled. This courſe of the Terms or Flowers abateth about the age of fourty or two and fourty years, or endureth ſometimes untill the fiftieth year, but very ſeldom until the ſixtieth year, in which time women be ſtill meet and fit for generation; yet do theſe Flowers or Terms of women come ſometimes ſooner and ſometimes later, according to that the nature and complexion of the body is full of blood, ſtrong, ſuffereth much labour, is quiet and feeble. It is alſo a common rule with all them that have experience in natural things, that a woman which getteth not her flowers, like as ſome which be hot and dry by nature, is barren and unfruitful, and that for thoſe cauſes that are diſcovered in the ſeventh Chapter of the barrenneſſe of men and women, although that it chanceth nevertheleſſe (but very ſeldom) that ſuch women do conceive and beare.

This is alſo the natural cuſtome, that when a woman hath conceived, that then her terms do ſtay away, for this blood is prepared for a ſuſtenance unto the child in the mothers womb; like as alſo after childbirth the ſame to that end is turned into milk, notwithſtanding that it oftentimes happeneth that women with child avoid their Flowers or Termes after the old cuſtome until the very day of birth, as we ſhall hereafter ſomewhat intreat thereof; but theſe women do bring ſmall, ſpare, weak and not living children into the world, becauſe they have been deprived of the moſt part of their nouriſhment. It is alſo contrary to the opinion of many women, that ſhe ſhall open a vein when ſhe is half gone with child, in caſe if ſhe be not full of blood, and the veins not great, therefore is not the ſame verily unadviſedly to be done. Item, in this flowing or courſe of women there is another wonderful nature and property, to wit, that ſo harmful and venemous a matter in mans body, without any hinderance, yea for a great preferment of health, may be retained and expelled. The common experience bringeth with it, and all learned do teſtifie the ſame, that theſe womens terms do bring innumerable ſickneſſes with them, and have many noiſome properties; namely, where the ſame happeneth to fal, there grow no fruit, periſheth the vines, the Muſt will be vinegar, the herbs wither, the trees dry away, iron ruſteth, and all metals do darken and wax dim: the ſame being taken make a mad head, and chiefly the dogges: the Bees leave their hives if they be anointed therewith: women when they have the ſame, then do they darken through their breath all bright looking glaſſes, the ayr will be poyſoned with them, and children (as it is ſaid) bewitched. Now doeſt thou ſee thou ſtout high minded man, what a precious matter it is that thou haſt in the beginning of thy birth, and what the matter is that hath thee nouriſhed? That hath cauſed the ancient Poets to aſſimulate this flux unto the wars, ſaying, that *Mars* came from of the god *Jupiter*, but of *Juno* onely, meaning by *Juno* this menſtrual flox. And truly if this hurtful properey be liſtened to the wars, then is it an expert and true Schoolmaſter; for what doth more ſpoyl fruits, vineyards, Muſt, herbs and trees,

wars, then the wars? what is there which taketh away and wasteth more iron? how many bright harnasses be thereby darkened? where heareth maidenly more mastery? where are men more like to mad doggs then in the wars? how can the ayr be more venomed then through the stinking dead bodies? Here is now sufficiently spoken of this matter, now we will proceed with our medicines.

How to prefer and procure Termes or Flowers in women.

FOr the first, we will speak of the causes whereby the terms be drained, the which be outward and inward. The outward causes be sorrow, labour, hunger, care, great watchings, agues, dropsies, consumptions, and some disease of the womb. The inward causes be bad complexion of blood, cold drith, or of moysture, whereby the vertue expulsive is weakned, so that it is not strong enough for to unburthen her self of the superfluities. Or when there be any maladie in the Matrix or mother, to wit, if the neck of the womb be stopped or obstructed, and is swollen too, like as it may easily happen in the mother or in the division the same. Now for to have some certain or infallible knowledge of these things, there may outward causes be easily perceived by the declaration of the patient her self. If it come through weaknesse of the expulsive power, then is it perceived by the heat, by the thirst, by the soft and strong pulse, and other signs of heat. But if such be caused through cold, then is the woman blank, sleepy, without any thirst, the arteries of the pulse heavily, and the urine of a loathsome colour. If the disease be of any inward part, then doth the whole body declare the same through the great fatnesse or leannesse. If such be caused through any of the four humours, that doth the blood sufficiently shew, which humour beareth sway. This obstruction doth bring to women no small sicknesse, besides that, as it is said, they be barren, for that they fall thereby otherwhiles into Madnesse (which is madnesse), into the falling sickenesse, suffocation, swellings, and impostumes of the womb, and of the other parts adjacent unto it, slothfulnesse and heavinesse of the whole body, great unlustinesse, wambling and parbreaking, coughing, and a heavy breathing, the dropsie and detention of the urine, and of going to the stool, heavinesse of the mind, great pain of the head, and at last into the gout.

And to remedy all these diseases, therefore will we first of all prefer certain common rules, whereof the first is, in case that the Terms be obstructed in a dry body, then must one be aware of all those things that might cause either heat or dryth, to the end the disease be not increased thereby. The second is, if in the stay or detention of womens flowers the blood had course toward any other part of the body, then is it advised that the same blood be drawn out, which otherwise might be spoyled. Thirdly, to prefer these flowers, it is then needful that the veins be opened under the Matrix, that the blood may be drawn downwards. Fourthly, there is meet for this the strong binding of the thighes, and to hold the same a certain time bounden. Fifthly, if the disease come for that the veins be stopt in the Matrix, (be it of whatsoever occasion that it will) there is the blood to be diminished by opening of a vein, and to be diminished through laxative medicines, through abstinence, through exercise, and such like means. Sixthly all strong things, as Hellebore, *Euphorbium* and *Nardus* seed (which is wont sometimes to be adhibited from below) must be but a very little, and not to be holden long therein, to the end that thereby the Ague nor any other anguish be caused. Seventhly, all that moveth the urine doth also move the Terms. Eighthly, where there is observed no good order of eating or drinking, there can also no good advice nor remedy do any good at all. Ninthly, for to prefer the Terms, is first of all the same to be approved through gentle remedies, and at the last through stronger means. Tenthly, all warm and well savouring things are very meet for this if they be layed upon the navel, upon the privities, and upon the part about it. Eleventhly, if this disease be caused through any ulcer, impostume, Ague, or any other cause, it is first to be practised how to remedy, and afterwards to move the flowers. Twelfthly, in case it be perceived that this detention of the flowers or terms doth cause any other sicknesse or increaseth it, then is all diligence to be had to provoke the Terms: and if so be that the same cannot be effected, then may the vein be opened in the foot, and boxing cups be adhibited. Thirteenthly, because there is great space from the stomach and the liver unto the Matrix, then is the Physick so to be ordained, that the same in so great a distance be not infeebled. Fourteenthly, All that

to be put into the wombe is to be tyed to a strong threed, that one when he lift may get it out, and to the end also that through the long continuance there, it bruise not the neck of the mother, or cause not an Ague.

And to the end that we may come to the remedies for to open this obstruction, therefore first of all be the causes of these obstructions to be thought upon, in case that the same be caused of some outward accidents, like as of too great labour, great heat, of too much fasting, and such like, there is the same presently to be prevented. In hot causes are cooling things to be used: in cold warming things, which do open the obstructions. In a body that is full of blood are the veins under the Kidneyes to be opened, which be most necessary to people that have not the termes: and if so be that thereby, and other more feetings of blood is nothing profited, then is one to come to the inward and outward remedies, wherein be three manner of wayes to be followed, which shall be described hereafter, of which each one may chuse what seemeth to be best and fittest for it.

And because that it is not bad counsel to rehearse and shew the simples which stir up the termes, therefore we will here discover a good part of them, and first of those be warm by nature, and are weakest, are these, the roots of Smallage, of Fennel, of Bothers broom, of Sperage, of Parsly, of Grasse, Madder, Calamus, *Aristolochia*, Treos, Valerian, white *Dictamus*, and Elecampane roots. Item, the seeds of *Raphanus*, Lupins, seeds of both kinds of Parsly, Silver mountain, of Sperage, of Smallage, of Anise of Fennel, of Comin whether it be raw or confected, the herbs are these, Cinquefoil, Mugwort, wild Mints, Marjoram, Feverfew, Harts tongue, Spikenard, Wormwood, white water Mints, Juniper, wild Thyme, Lovage, *Cassuta*, Maidenhair, Southernwood, and waxt Turpentine.

These enluing are much stronger, as Hemlock, Rue, Centory, *Laureola*, Savin, *Euphorbium*, *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, *Myrrha*, *Opopanax*, and *Assafœtida*, the seed of Nasturtium, Mustard seed, Pepper, Bevercod, Coloquint, black Hellebore, *Pieretrum*, *Calamus*, roots of Celandine, the juice of wild Cucumbers, Licebane seeds, Boras, the galle of Hearts, of Hens, and of all other beasts.

The odoriferous things which prefer womens termes, be these, Indie *Spica*, Cinamom, Cassie wood, *Costus* roots, *Amomum*, *Muscus*, *Spica Romana*, Squinant, *Gallia Muscata*, and such like. They that may be burnt to receive the vapour thereof be these, viz. *Opopanax*, *Sagapenum*, Frankincense, *Blatta Byzantia*, *Lignum Aloes*, and red Storax.

These be now the cooling things which prefer the termes, to wit, the seeds of small Endive, the seed of Melons, of Gourds, of Pompeons, of Cucumbers, of Endive, of Lettice, &c. and other more which shall be discovered hereafter; of all which pessaries may be made to use in the womb: also plaisters, salves, powders, oyls, potions, and baths, all as the cause requireth, and that necessity compelleth like as there be many sundry described hereafter, and now we will proceed.

The first meanes for to provoke the Termes, is to be described somewhat at length, wherein there be many sundry medicines of divers and sundry Physitians ordained and added together, out of which each may choose what is meet for him; but in the other twain we will be somewhat briefer, therefore one may take out of them all that might be wanting in this, and so first begin with those things which be meet for this to bring the body into health, and to shew therewithall how such obstructions and hinderances of the termes may be taken away, for which this syrup following is to be prepared; Take Mather two ounces, Lovage roots, the roots of Sperage, Cypres roots and Grasse roots, of each one ounce and a half, Silver mountaine two ounces, Baulm two ounces, Balsam wood and the fruits of the same, of each one ounce, Spica of Indy half a drachme, Licorice, Currans, Rosemary flowers, and *Stechados* of each one ounce, Hony six ounces, white Sugar nine ounces, boyl a syrup of it, clarify it, and give thereof two ounces tempered with the decoction of Ceeres.

Another take Mather two ounces, Sperage roots, the roots of Butchers broom, and Cypres roots, of each one ounce, Corn mints, Valerian, Savine, white Water mints, and Pennyroyal, of each one handfull, Baulm two handfuls, Silver mountain two ounces, Balsam wood, and the fruits of the same, peeled Melon seed, of each one ounce, Spikenard half an ounce, Licorice, Currans, of each half an ounce, Hony and Sugar, of each six ounces, make a syrup of it, and give thereof at each time one ounce and a half, or two ounces, with the broth of Ceeres.

Another. Take the water of Smallage, the water of Lupins, of Sperage, and of Fennel,

hely, of each six ounces, Indy Spica one quarter of an ounce, Cinamom one drachme, *Ammoniacum*, and *Opopanacum*, of each one drachme and a half, Parsley seed, and Fenel seeds, *Anion*, wild yellow Rape seed and caruway, of each one quarter of an ounce, Gromell seed, stone Parsly seed and Agrimony, of each one handfull, Galangal, Cinamom and Saffron, of each half a drachme, syrup of Violets two ounces, Quince kernels, Mallowes seed, of each half an ounce, seethe them all together in two quarts of Gourds water until the third part be wasted, then strain it thorough, and then temper it with a little of the foresaid water and the syrup of Violets amongst it, and boyl it with so much honey as you please. Last of all strew some Cinamom in it, and as much vinegar of Squils, until it be somewhat sowrish, then use it as the former: this forceth very vehemently the Terms.

For this is also very good the common syrups which be alwayes prepared at all substantial Apothecaries, as the syrup of Mugwort, of Maidenhair, of Cicory, with Rubarb, and the syrup of five roots.

When as now this syrup hath been used like as behooveth, then must be proceeded: and for to proceed orderly, it is very needful that women be purged of all superfluous humours, which may be done very commodiously with the confection *Benedicta* or *Hiera Picra*, tempered with the decoction of Madder: and of the foresaid confections you may use three quarters of an ounce, or an ounce, each apart or together. Afterwards ate these laxative things to be used: Take Sene leaves, Penyroyall and Madder, of each a like quantity: seethe them in small white wine, and give thereof about three ounces at once.

Or take Pennyroyal, Nep, Southernwood, Rue, Centory and Hyssop, of each one handfull, Savin, Feverfew, of each one handful and a half, *Opopanacum*, *Ammoniacum*, Galangal, of each one drachme, Cinamom, Madder, of each one handful, Myrrhe one quarter of an ounce: seethe them all together with a quart of water until the third part be wasted, then take thereof two or three ounces fasting at one time.

Item, take the roots of Smallage, of Sperage, of Fennel, of Parsly, of *Cardans Benedictus*, of Butchers broom, of each one ounce and a half, Annis, Fennel, Caruway, and *Anets* of each one drachme and a half, Mugwort, Pennyroyal, Mints, Horehound, Feverfew, and *Asarabacca*, of each half a handful: seethe them all together in two quarts of water unto the half, wring it together through a cloth, and mix therewith the syrup of the five roots, *de Calamintha*, *de Artemisia*, of each a like quantity, drink thereof in the morning and in the afternoone.

Another. Take Mints, Balm, Pennyroyal, Marjoram and Southernwood, of each one handful, Annis Fennel, Caruway, of each one ounce, the robbs of Polipody one ounce and a half, Cicorie roots one ounce: cut the roots of the herbs very small, and seethe them in a quart of water untill the third part be consumed, afterwards strain it through, and make it as sweet as you please.

Another potion with wine: Take Savin and Mugwort, of each one handful, put two quarts of wine unto it, and let them seethe together until the third part be wasted: take thereof evening and morning at each time two spoonfuls. Do you now desire to make a common potion; then take Wormwood and Rue, of each one handful, five or six pepper corns, seethe them all together in a quart of wine, strain it then through, and drink thereof. In like manner may you seethe Mallowes in wine and drink thereof, it is also very good.

This potion following is very good and pleasant: Take a pint of good wine, Sage half a handful, Cloves, Saffron and Mace, of each half a scruple, stamp them altogether, and bind it in a fine cloth, and hang it a night and a day in wine, wring it out oftentimes, divide it into three parts, and take one draught of it five hours before meat, the other draught after noone and the last after supper. But this is to be done in the wane of the Moone, and eat very little.

Item, take Hartwort and Pepper, of each one drachme, pour a pint of wine upon it, and drink thereof in the evening and morning, it mooveth much, and cleanseth the womb or Matrix from all bad humours.

Item, take the herb Caruway one handful, Mugwort one handful and a half, Arsesmart one handful, *Asarabacca* one drachme: seethe them together in two quarts of water unto the half, and drink thereof in the morning fasting a good draughe.

Another. Take Pennyroyal one handful, Marjoram gentle as much also, Mace one drachme;

drachme, and one quarter of an ounce of Bayberries beaten groſſely: bind them all together in a cloth, and pour thereon twelve ounces of wine; but let them ſeethe together in a Can in hot water the ſpace of an hour, afterwards wring out the cloth, and drink the half of this wine in the morning, and the other half in the evening after the meale tide.

Item, take Mugwort, Feverfew, Pennyroyal, Baulme and Mallowes, of each one handful, ſeethe them together in pint and a half of wine, and uſe them as before.

Take the rootes of Cicorie four handfuls, take out the wooddy hart, and cut them ſmall, then pour two quarts of wine upon it, and let it ſeethe ſo long until the force be gone out of it, afterwards wring it out, and then ſeethe it unto a thin ſyrup, and ſo take every morning a ſpoonful or twain of it.

This following doth open much all obſtructions, and forceth the Termes: Take of the confection *Triphera* without *Opium*. Mather and Silver mountain, of each half an ounce, Fenegreek, Turkiſh beanes and Ceeres, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſeethe them all together in eight ounces of water even unto the half, then ſtrain it through, and temper in three ounces of this decoction the *Triphera* aforeſaid. The Phyſitians therefore do occupie this *Triphera* without *Opium*, becauſe it is forcible and ſtrong. Alſo they temper therewith otherwhiles one drachme of the juyce of Savin, ſometimes alſo *Mirrha*, red Storax, *Bdellium Euphorbium* or *Opopanacum*, all according to the importance of the cauſe. Item, take Caſſie wood three drachmes beaten very ſmall, and give it with wine.

One that is more feeble: Take Myrrhe, Bevercod and red Storax, of each three drach. Savin, fine and courſe Cinamom, of each one drachme and a half, make an electuary thereof with Hony, then take one quarter of an ounce thereof, and temper it in wine for a potion. Item, take Saffron one drachme or more, and drink it with wine or with Mallowes water. Saffron onely preferreth the Flowers; the ſame doth alſo one drach. of pownded Cardamony.

Here now do follow certain powders which are to be taken in the potions, and amongſt all things is nothing more to be commended then the Trochisks *de Mirrha*, which are thus prepared.

Take Myrrhe one drachme and a half, Lupins two drachmes and a half, Rue white water Mints, Candy, *Diptamus*, Comin, Madder Elecampane roots, *Sagapenum*, *Opopanacum*, of each one drachme, then make Trochisks thereof with the juyce of Mugwort, and give half an ounce thereof with the water wherein Juniper berries be decocted. Take Bevercod one drachme, powder of Mints half a ſcruple, drink it with wine, it is alſo very good for this uſe. Item, half a ſcruple of the Bloſſomes of the Nut tree taken with wine doth the ſame, S. Iohns wort doth alſo move much the terms.

Alſo theſe wines enſuing are very good for it, viz. wine of Elecampane roots, of Marjoram gentle, of the herb Bennet, of Betony, of Gilloflowers, and of Roſemary. Item, take one handfull of Juniper berries, Madder, Cinamom and Myrrhe, of each half an ounce, ſeethe them all together in Mugwort water untill the third part be evaporated, ſtrain it, and put one drachme of Boreas unto it, give thereof a good warm draught twice or thrice a day.

The ſame doth alſo the *Trochiſci Gallie Muſcate Reſis*, four ſcruples taken with warm white wine, it helpeth immediatly.

It is here alſo to be noted, if ſo be that the Patient might drink no wine, then take the leaves of blew Flowerdeluce, ſtamp them and ſeeth them in Capon broth, and let her drink it: this is alſo found many times good, and it expelleth alſo dead children.

Item, take the ſcull of a Capon before he is boyled or roſted, ſtamp it, and drink it with Pennyroyal water: this may ſuffice for the potions.

Take Pennyroyal, Italian Comin, Mints, Ireos, Hartwort, Mather and Myrrhe, of each one quarter of an ounce, make an electuary thereof with clarified Hony, take two drach. of it, and drink a good draught of Beer or wine after it, wherein Savin, Pennyroyal, Mugwort, Fennel, rootes of Sperage, of Smallage, and of Parſly have been decocted.

Item, take of the electuary *Antidotum Hamagogum* half an ounce, and give it faſting. If you had rather drink it, then temper four ounces of Mugwort water amongſt it, and uſe it againſt the time that the Flowers doe come. Treacle, and Mithridate do alſo force the Flowers very gently.

Amongſt

amongst the confections there be good for this the confected Elecampane roots, the confected *Eryngus*, conserves of Piony, and Myrrhe rosted in an apple. The Italian women do highly commend the electuary *Diacyminum*; if one do take every morning one quarter of an ounce of it, then will the terms come within the space of a moneth at they ought: it doth make fruitful, and strengtheneth the stomach. The confected *Calamus* is of great good, if the obstruction do come through cold. Fennel seed confected forceth also the flowers: likewise also Comin and Caruway; Cinamom and Saffron are also to be used in all things.

These pils ensuing are also to be prepared; Take the pils *Alephangina* half a drachme, Myrrhe two scruples, beaten and in one scruple, make fourteen pils of it with the water of Mugwort, and take the one half thereof at once; they do move the terms and the stoodes, and are also very safe.

Take *Muscus* and Myrrhe, of each four scruples, Stechas, Mather, Pennyroyal, Orrice pils, long Pepper, Cassie wood, Cassie pils, Piony seeds and *Calamus*, of each three quarters of an ounce, Indi Spica half a drach. make pils thereof with the juice of Mugwort, whereof take one drachme at once. The ancient Physitians do command pessaries to be used, as *Euphorbium* wrapt in wool. Item, take Hellebore and the juyce of Wormwood, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Ammoniacum* one drachme, temper it with Ox gall. But here ensue sundry which are safer: Take Bevetcod and Myrrhe, of each a like quantity, *Muscus* a little, then form it with the oyl of Behen as an Acorn, and tye two silkes, and put it into the Matrix before.

Or take fresh Rue, Wormwood and Coloquint, of each a like quantity, form a pessary thereof of Oxe gall. Item, take white Watermints, Swine bread, *Agnus Castus*, Rue, Sage, Mugwort, Pennyroyal, Marjoram, Radishes, Southernwood, Nettleseed, Juniper leaves, Mather, white Hellebore, Centory, Myrrhe, Bevetcod, Elecampane roots, *Sagapenum*, *Opopanacum*, of each one drachme, *Gallia Muscata* one scruple, stamp them all that is to be stamped, and then make a pessary of it with the juice of wild Cucumbers and Ox gall, and use them as before.

Another. Take Gentian and Pennyroyal, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Nigella* seeds one drachme, temper them together with pownded figgs, and with a little of the juyce of Mercury; these do make no heat like as the others.

Item, take Gentian two scruples, Coloquint and Nigella seed, of each one drachme, temper them together with the juice of wild Cucumbers. Or if you will have it stronger, then put some white Hellebore unto it: there be also sundry other made which be stronger and milder, according to the importance of the cause of the foresaid cold and warm humor, each according to his good pleasure and content. Amongst all these things, and all that may be injected into the body and neck of the Matrix or womb, this general rule is to be observed, that the same may be used as well before as after bathing.

Outwardly may one bathe and foment with all that which here ensueth; Take *Asarabacca* half a handful, *Ebulus* leaves one handful and a half, Feverfew, Mints, Mugwort, Agrimony, Marjoram and Betony, of each one handful, Camomil, Melilot and Roses, of each half a handful; cut all the herbs and seeth them, like as hath been taught oftentimes. This also very commodious and good to sit in warm water wherein Mallowes have been sodden. Or take Mugwort and Savine, of each three handfuls, Mallowes, Hollihock roots and Bearfoot, of each one handful, Fennel seeds, Parsley seeds, Annis, Dill seeds, Orage seeds, wild yellow Rape seeds, and *Asarabacca*, of each half a drachme, Camomil, Eldern flowers, Rosemary and Stechas, of each one drachme; make a little bag thereof, and seeth it in water, and then sit upon it.

Another. Take Mugwort, Savine tree, of each three handfuls, sweet *Costus* roots, Mallowes, Hollihock roots and Bearfoot, of each two handfuls, the seed of Mallowes, of Hollihocks, of Southernwood, of Linseed, of Fenegreek, of *Cusenta*, mustard seed, of Lavender and of Silvermountain, of each one ounce and a half, Parsley seed, Fennel, Dill seed, wild yellow Rapeseed, and *Asarabacca*, of each half an ounce. Camomil, Eldern flowers, Rosemary flowers, of each one ounce; seeth them as before, and then sit upon the bag. For fomentation, you are to use that which followeth hereafter; Take Camomil, Mugwort, Savine and Nettle roots, of each one handful, seeth them together in water, and receive the vapour from beneath. Item, take Rue, Sage, Southernwood and Savine, of each one handful, put them together into a new pot, and close it right, but leave a hole open above on the cover, wherein a tap may be put whilest it boyleth, afterwards draw out

the cap, and receive the warm vapour from beneath, as is said before. Or take Myrrhe as much as you will, temper it with the juice of Mugwort, and let it dry; afterward put fiftul stones horn unto it, to wit, the third part as much as there it Myrrhe, then strew this powder upon a hot tile, and receive the smoke beneath, but round about cover you close. You may also take for it, Pennyroyal, Rue, Savine leaves, and use them alone. Item, take Violet leaves two handfuls, Myrrhe half an ounce, let them seethe together in rain water, and foment therewith as warm as you can abide it. Take Pennyroyal, Nep, Southernwood, Rue, Centory and Hyssop, of each one handful, Savine, Feverfew, of each one handful and a half, Cinamom, Galangal, of each one drachme, Silvermountain and Mather, of each half a handful, Myrrhe one quarter of an ounce, beat them all grosse together, and seeth the same in a quart of water even to the half, and then use it as before; this also provoketh urine. Or take Pennyroyal, Marjoram, Sage and Mugwort, of each one handful, seeth them all together for a fomentation: for to fume, you are to take a little Coloquint, cast it upon a hot stone, and receive the fume from beneath; it greatly provoketh womens terms: but note, that Coloquint is very sharp, and that the said well savouring spices and other things be much safer for to fumigate withal. Or take Dill, Camomil, Melilot, Squinant, Cassie wood, *Costus* roots, Sulphur, Rue, Marjoram, Stechas, Southernwood, any of all these, or part of the same. To set boxing cups upon the thighes is also very behooveful and available.

Drink the juyce of Savorie in the morning fasting two or three daies.

Or take of Castoreum, Acorns, seeds of Fennel, ana. ℥. 1. powdered and searsed, and drink it with wine; if she be with child, it comforts it; if she be not with child, it brings down the Flowers.

Or take Dittanie roots, Angelico roots, *Aristolochia Rotunda*, ana. ℥. 2. Saffron ℥. 1. or 2. and with honey make an Electuary; the Dose is ℥. 1.

Also make a pessarie of oyl, Nigella and *Diagridium*, roll them hard in a cloth, and put it up that it may touch the upper part.

Or put a clove of Garlick into the Matrix, have a threed put into it, and put into the Matrix so high as may be.

Seeth a Lillie root, and oatmeal and Linseed bruised, and Mallow leaves, in new milk, and apply it warm to the secret parts and belly below.

Plaisters and Unguents.

TAke the muscilage of Fleawort and of Linseed, of each one ounce, unsalted butter two ounces, Hens grease, Ducks grease, Goose grease, and the marrow of Calves bones, of each half an ounce, *Ammoniacum* one quarter of an ounce, oyl of *Sesamum* and oyl of sweet Almonds, of each five drachmes, Wax as much as is needful for a salve; then anoint you therewith behind and before, from the navel downwards, but not before that you have used all other means of bathing, letting of blood, potions, &c. Item, take of the confection *Benedicta* half an ounce, Turbith one quarter of an ounce, *Nigella* seed three drachmes, decocted Hony as much as sufficeth for to make a plaister. This is to be layed over the privities as before.

If so be that one perceiveth the terms after the use of this foresaid means, some do advise, and that very well, that this potion ensuing is to be made; Take Mugwort, Sene leaves, and Pennyroyal, of each half a handful, Cinamom half an ounce, Mace ℥. drach. seeth it all together in three pints of good wine until about the fourth part be wasted, and this in a Can stopt tight in seething water: this expelleth the terms unto her due time.

The other orderly mean for to prefer the terms, is, that first of all the *Sapbus* or *Matrix* shall be opened, and that afterwards a long bag is to be made, and to be filled with any of the foresaid herbs, which you like best, and then put unto it one quarter of an ounce of *Gallia Muscata*, and wear it so upon the privities. Afterwards make of one quarter of an ounce of the foresaid *Gallia* with the water of Mugwort nine pils, and take three thereof at once in the morning early, then make a pessary of the length of a finger, and fill the same with pounded Mercury, and put it into the place. Set boxing cups also upon the thighes, and in the hams, and then rub the legges downwards with warm clothes.

Squinant and Madder decocted also in the water of Maidenhair and drunken, are also highly commended.

Item, take the pipes of Caſſie when the Caſſie is taken out, and let them be well ſcraped on the outſide, as many as you will, Cinamom, Mace, Saffron, *Dictamus* and Baulm, of the one as much as of the other; make a powder thereof, and take a drachme thereof every morning with water of Mints; the ſame moveth them very gently.

But as much as concerneth letting of blood (whereof mention is made before) ſome do adviſe, and not without reaſon, if in caſe that a woman hath not had her Terms a long time, that her vein is to be opened beſides her little toe, and the next day afterwards on the other foot.

The words of *Hippocrates* and of his expounder *Galen* be true, that the letting of blood and hunger do cauſe women with child to miſcarry, for that thereby (they ſay) will the nouriſhment of the child be withdrawn.

Therefore good heed is to be taken in theſe things, for that many women have this for a cuſtom, whether they be fat, groſſe, ſtrong, or lean, that they alwaies open a vein at the half of their going with child, like as we alſo have before admoniſhed in the firſt Section.

But if one will needs be let blood, then muſt after the ſame (or elſe without letting of blood) bathings be oftentimes uſed, for which is Pennyroyal to be taken, field Mints, Southernwood, Centory and Hyſſop, of each one handful, Savine and Feverfew, of each one drach. Silver mountain, Madder, of each one handful, Myrrhe one quarter of an ounce; ſtamp and chop them all ſmall, and let them ſeeth in ſufficient water: then make thereof a bath for the reins of the back, or a fomenting for the bottom of the belly. The boxing cups, whereof we have alſo ſpoken before, draw the blood downwards: Like as doth alſo the ſtrong binding of the leggs.

The third mean is as hereafter followeth; three hours after the riſing of the Sun ſhall the *Saphena* of them be opened on the right foot which have not the flowers, and about five ounces of blood drawn. The next day after is this purgation following to be given: Take *Agaricus*, Turbith and Rubarb, of each one drach. Indy *Spica*, Ginger and Mace, of each ſix grains, *Sal gemmæ* one grain, Agrimony, Mugwort, of each one ounce and a half; let them be ſteeped four hours; afterwards wring it through a cloth, and temper amongſt it three drachmes of *Benedicta Laxativa*, and then drink it betimes in the morning. The third day afterwards you are to begin to uſe this potion; Take Fennel roots, Parſley roots, Sperage roots, the roots of Butchers broom, and of Smallage, of each half an ounce: theſe being all cut ſmall together, then ſeeth them in a quart of Well water unto the half; afterwards ſweeten the decoction with Sugar, and then drink thereof five ounces, and ſo continue this the ſpace of eight or ten dayes. In the mean time is the body to be kept open with gentle Cliſters, or elſe they are every evening after ſupper to ſwallow a pill of *Alephangina* or of *Aloes*. Afterwards it is very good, that three times in 24 hours all the back bone be anointed with this ſalve enſuing; Take the oyl of wall-flowers two ounces, oyl of Saffron one ounce, the greaſe of Badgers and of Hens, of each half an ounce, Saffron, Indy *Spica*, *Lignum Aloes*, and Mugwort, of each half a ſcruple, Wax as much as is needful for a ſalve. After the foreſaid potions are theſe pills following to be uſed: Take *Pillulæ fœtidæ* two ſcruples, *de Hiera compoſita* one ſcruple, make three pills of it with the confection *Benedicta*.

And if ſo be that through all this advice the Terms do not appear, then are the tops of the thighes, hard by the privities, to be bounden hard: but if that will not help, ſet immediately hot cups behind on the calves of the legs, ſetting them up and off. Laſtly, then make this bath following. Take Pennyroyal, white water Mints, Marjoram and Smallage, of each three handfuls, Savine ſix handfuls, *Opopanacum*, Myrrhe, of each ʒ. β. Hartwort, Rue, of each 3. handfuls; ſeethe them all together in ſufficient water until about the half, but leave the herbs in it, and then make a bath of it for the reins even to the navel, and ſo ſit therein the ſpace of half an hour, or as long as you can. When you have reſted ſomewhile, then put ſome cotton (being dipped in the juice of Mercury) up into the place, and without doubt it will provoke the terms. Every ſuch woman is alſo to beware of all fleſh meats, which is from all hard meat, like as all that is made of Dough, of Peaſe, of Beans, of Cheeſe, of Milk, and all that is dreſt with them, from all ſalt, cold and binding things, and from thick raw red Wine; but Cinamon, Saffron, Ginger, and Smallage herbs and roots, Annis, Fennel, Parſley ſeed, or any of all theſe is ſhe to uſe alwayes with her meat.

But if ſo be that this retention of the terms be cauſed thereof, for that a woman had

but little blood, did great labour, were weak, lean, not long recovered from a long lingring ſickneſſe, or had lived a long time in hatred, malice, great ſorrow, and ſuch like: then is ſuch to have thoſe meats which nourish much, and ſhe ſhall omit all hatred, ſorrow, and ſuch like. She is to bathe oftentimes in water, to ſleep much, to take reſt, and to be merry. She muſt alſo refrain from letting of blood, except it be a very little. But ſhe is to uſe Piſtacies, Pingles, Almonds, and other nutritive things as is before ſaid. And although it appeared that her terms muſt be alwaies quickened through Phyſick, yet it muſt be begun with the mildeſt means, like as hath been counſelled before.

How that the exceſſive courſe of the Flowers is to be ſtopt. §. 3.

WHen this ſcourſe of womens terms getteth the maſtery, then be there very heavy ſickneſſes to be feared, to wit, the dropſie, the conſumption, *Hectica*, the pain of the back, the pain of the ſtomach, feebleneſſe of natural digeſtion, lack of appetite, and ſuch like diſeaſes more. This iſſue is commonly cauſed of outward or inward occaſions; the outward may be fals, blowes, thruſts, great running, leaping, dancing, walking in great heat, and ſuch like, all which maketh the blood ſubtile and fluxible. Item, if there break a vein open in the Matrix or Womb, through unnatural and untimely birth, through any ulcers, or through any other bruiſings in the neck of the womb, through long uſe of many hot ſpices, or of any ſubtile meat and drink.

The inward cauſes may be the ſtrength of the expulſive, or the debility of the retentive vertue.

This may alſo be cauſed of ſome diſeaſe of the Matrix, and through the moiſture of the ſame. But concerning the part it ſelf, the ſame may be too feeble, too ſlippery, too wide, and too much open: yet in caſe the moiſture of this part be cauſed of it, then is the flux of blood ſo great, that the Matrix and the parts adjacent cannot contain the humours, or theſe humors be ſo ſharp, ſo ſubtile, ſo hot, ſo venemous, ſo ſalt, ſo biting, ſo cold, or ſo wateriſh, that the ſame cannot be retained. The outward cauſes may be enquired of the patient her ſelf.

But if this diſeaſe be cauſed of the debility of the retentive vertue, then is the woman bleak or pale of colour, and weak. The ſigns of the ſame part be when as it waxeth lean, and conſumeth: each humour may be adjudged out of the property of the body, like as we have taught the ſame elſewhere, as heat, of the fulneſſe of the veins, thirſt, itch, ilfavoured or loathſome colour of the face and of the whole body.

If then ſuch proceed out of blood, then doth the colour of her Terms alter, and will be whitiſh; or if the ſame proceed of *Cholera*, then are the flowers ſomewhat yellowiſh, and if of *Melancholia*, then darkiſh, blew or black. By the foreſaid colours one may eaſily come unto the full knowledge what humours might be the only cauſe of this exceſſive moiſture, whereby may be known how to chooſe of theſe remedies following, wherewith the exceſſive courſe of the Terms may be ſtayed.

But firſt of all there be for this purpoſe certain rules to be noted. Firſt, you muſt never bathe for this exceſſive courſe of the Terms, neither yet uſe any kind of things which bringeth heat with it. Secondly, when this kind of iſſue cometh by reaſon of the fulneſſe of the body, as it were an unburthening and cleanſing of the ſame, then is it by no means to be ſtayed, if thereby be not feared a great debility. Thirdly, if ſo be that women be full of blood, and this fluxe come too abundantly, then is the *Baſilica* vein to be opened, thereby to withdraw the blood. Fourthly, in caſe that it be perceived that red *Cholera*, or any other mixed moiſture were cauſe of this flux, then is the ſame moyſture or humour to be purged with appropriate medicines, yet mingling alwayes amongſt it ſome binding and comforting things. Fifthly, infection is alſo very needful for this diſeaſe, or ſome ſuch like inſtruments to be uſed, whereby the medicine might be brought into the womb. Sixthly, if any aſtringent things may be brought into it through any inſtruments, then may they help much better and a great deal ſooner then thoſe things that be given by the mouth. Seventhly, becauſe that with this menſtrual flux, not only the vertue digeſtive, but alſo the whole body is weakned, therfore are they to be ſuſtained with light meat, as with yolks of egs, with young fleſh, and broth of the ſame, and ſuch like. Sometimes alſo with water wherein the ſeed of Butchers broom is decocted or tempered with water of Sorrel. Eightly, it is alſo good to ſet great boxing cups under the breaſts unpickt. Ninthly, this flux of the Terms is not to be ſtopt ſo long as one ſeeth that the woman hath her lively colour,

and

and doth remain strong and healthy: but as soon as one perceiveth that her strength fadeth away, then be all means to be sought for to stop it. Tenthly, if one desire to purge any of the four humors and to separate it from the clean blood, then may that best be effected by vomits, for that thereby the matter is derived to another place, and stayeth from course that they fall not downwards. Eleventhly, these women are to abstain from all heavy labour, and from all that maketh the blood fluxible and thin.

By all these forementioned propositions may be clearly seen and marked, that if any desire to cure or remedy this disease, that these women must lead an easie life, and keep themselves quiet. They must also live in such a place where it is not too hot nor too cold. They must also eschue all thin and waterish meats, viz. from fruit, except all that which bindeth; in like manner also from all meat which cause any kind of heat. But all kinds of roasted fowls, and all that maketh grosse blood, as Rice, Wheat and Lentils be good for them. They must also beware of overcharging them with meat or drink, whereof the causes be declared in the seventh rule, and afterward to put in practise these remedies following, according to the importance of the cause.

This for to speak first of the things which inwardly are to be used, hath been spoken of before, and also what order of diet, or government of life is to be observed. But in case that any do desire any amplier declaration of it, then let him look the seventeenth Chapter, and 19. Sect. where is spoken of the red or bloody flux, which also is most meet for this use. But for this menstrual flux, may this confection following be used. Take the *Species Triasantali* and *Diarrhodon Abbatis* of each one drachme, prepared fine *Bolus* two scruples, Bloodstone washed in Plantain water, and make tabulats thereof. Or use this powder following: Take *Species Triasantali* one drach. and a half, *Diarrhodon Abbatis* one drach. *de Gemmis Frigidis* one drach. and a half, prepared Coriander two scruples and a half, washed Bloodstone one drach. prepared *Bolus* half a drach. Shepheards purse two scruples, Roses, Coral, of each half a drach. Cinnamon one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as you please, then make a powder of it.

Item, take prepared *Balaustia* one drach. sealed earth two scruples, Tormentil half a drach. *Bursa Pastoris* one scruple, *Species de gemmis frigidis* one drach. and a half, prepared Pearls one drach. Rubins, Pomegranats, Smarags, Jacints, Saphirs, of each half a scruple, Roses, red Coral, Saunders, of each one scruple, Sugar three ounces, make a powder thereof, and use it in broth, or strewed in meat. The confection of the Recipe of Iron is also very profitable to be used for this disease, especially if so be that the lesser remedies will not help.

Another. Take Conserve of Roses two ounces, Bloodstone, *Trochisces de Carabe, de terra sigillata*, and *de Spodio*, of each one drach. make a powder thereof, and temper them well together; afterwards take every time thereof about one drach. Take conserve of Roses six ounces, conserve of Buttrage, Bugloss, and Balm, of each one ounce, prepared Pearls one drachme, prepared Pearls one quarter of an ounce, of the five precious Roses above mentioned, of each one scruple, Cinamom one drachme, make an electuary thereof.

Another. Take of the dryest conserve of Roses three ounces, Marmalade two ounces and a half, red Coral one drach. *Bolus Armena*, *Trochisces de Carabe* and prepared *Bolus* Armena, prepared Bloodstone two drach. make an Electuary thereof with the syrupe of Mirtles.

Item, take conserve of Roses three ounces, Marmalade two ounces and a half, conserve of Buttrage and Bugloss, of each one ounce, prepared *Bolus*, & *Bolus Armena* one drachme, prepared Pearls, red Saunders one drachme, Tormentil two scruples, red Saunders, one drach. then temper them all together with the syrupe of Myrtles unto a confection. The black confected Cherries are very good for this use, and like manner also the preserved Barberries.

Item, hold a root of Galanga long in your mouth, and chew the same small. It is also a common advice which is not to be despised, that tosted bread should be steeped in red Wine, and pounded Nutmegs strewed upon it and so eaten.

Item, take fine *Bolus* which is well washed, Mastick, yellow Amber, prepared Coriander, and Dates, of each a like quantity, then take thereof at each time half a drach, with a rere egg. This powder ensuing is also marvellous good: Take prepared Bloodstone three drachmes, red Coral one drachme, and a half, Tormentil and *Trochisces de Spodio* of each one drach. shaven Ivory, burnt Harts horn, of each two scruples, prepared

Pearls one quarter of an ounce, fine *Bolus* half a drach, stamp all that may be stamped very finely, and strew your meat therewith.

Item, take pownded Hartshorn leaves one drachme, and bestrew your meat with it.

You may also drink of this powder following one drachme, lesse or more with the water of Plantain: Take of the first budded Harts horn, burn them in a potbakers oven throughly to white chalk, or give thereof one drachme, or one drachme and a half with red wine or Plantain water. You shall also find hereafter many sundry powders and potions to drink described: Take egshels whence young chickens have been hatched, and Nutmegs, of each a like quantity, temper them together, and drink thereof the weight of a drachme with Vinegar or Wine. The part within the Walnut taken a drach. thereof doth bind much.

Another. Take Tormentil and Nutmegs, of each a like quantity, Plantain seeds half as much, pownd them to powder, and give it in the morning and evening with old Beer.

Item, take *Trochiſcos de Carabe* one drachme, beat them to powder, and make a potion thereof with Plantain water; this may be used the space of a whole week together, for that they do calm and stay the flux: the like doth allo red Coral one drachme with Plantain water taken every day alwayes before meals.

Item, take burnt Harts horn and pownded Nettle seed, of each a like quantity, and take thereof the weight of one drachme with the water of Plantain. The juice of Yarrow doth bind also in this disease, if one take a spoonful or twain thereof. These juices easing may be decocted unto the form of a sirup, for to be used in winter time: like as the juice of broad Plantain, the juice of Shepheards purse, of Yarrow, &c. For this also good the water of Eldern drunken and Galangale chewed.

Item, if a woman do flower too much, whether it be in childbirth or otherwise, and that it be be feared that she might bleed to death, then take one drach. of red Nettle seed pownded, and let her drink it with Plantain water.

Some do give chopt and boyled Poppy heads to drink, but it is not alwayes convenient: there be much safer things, viz. these ensuing.

Take fine *Bolus* one quarter of an ounce, bind it in a cloth, hang it in a pot of wine, and then drink thereof. Seethe Pimpernel in pease broth, and drink also thereof.

Or take dried Goats dung, stamp it to powder, and drink thereof; it doth not only stay the menstrual fluxes in women, but also all kind of bleeding. For this also is very meet red Rose water drunken.

Amongst Clisters is this following very highly commended. Take Swines bread, Feverfew, Balm, Rue, Scabious, Rosemary flowers, Southernwood, Cumin, Silver mountain *Daucus Anisomuba*, Ballam fruit, Cucubes, Bayberries, *Calamus*, Caslie wood, *Caſſia Fiſtula* and pipes, of each one drachme and a half, Dill seed, Annis seeds, of each one handful and a half, shaven Ivory two handfuls: seeth them altogether by a mild fire in two quarts of water unto the half, and presse it out, take twelve ounces of this decoction, oyl of *Seſamum*, of Rue, and of Pepper, of each half an ounce, Indy salt one drachme, *Diacaſſiæ*, confection of Bayberries and *Benedicta*, of each three drach. temper them well together, and minister it very warm. With this following a woman is to be purged from her breach: Take *Aloes Succotrina*, *Species Nucis*, of each one drach. *Gallia Muſcata*, and red Storax, of each three drach. Allome one drachme and a half. Of this powder is a drachme to be used at once. This Imperatives is not easily to be made, because of the manifold simples which do come therein, and it is not only good for cooling the unnatural flux of flowers, but it is also good for the suffocation of the Matrix, for that it dryeth, and it is good for a barren womb, and especially if the malady proceed of cold. Pessaries and such like, Stamp dryed Asse dung, and form Pessaries thereof with the juice of Plantain, and put it into the places.

Another. Take juice of Knotgrass and washed sheeps wool, dip it therein, and lay it on the privities.

Item, take Frankincense, Pomgranate blossoms, Galls, Antimony, and the juice of Sloes, of each a like quantity, beat new the wool within, and use it as before. For this is good also half a handful of pownded Plantain, and use it as before: or make a small Pessary of the juice of Sloes, and the juice of Pimpernel with Cotton.

Outwardly in this plaister ensuing to be used: Take the juice of Plantain two ounces, Rose water three ounces, Vinegar half an ounce, red Coral, Amber, Blood-

fine *Bolus*, Mirtle seed, Acorn cups, and Frankincense, of each one quarter of an ounce, sealed earth as much as is needful for to make it thick enough: this being all beaten small and tempered together, then make two plaisters of it, and lay the one before, and the other behinde.

The plaister *ex Galbano* may also be used, whereof here do follow two sorts. Take *Galbanum* three ounces, *Bdellium* three quarters of an ounce, stamped Frankincense half an ounce, and half a drach. Mirrhe half a drach. melt the Gums in Vinegar. But if they be not clean, then wring them through a cloth, and let the Vinegar seethe away, then make a plaister thereof with Turpentine.

The other: Take *Galbanum* as much as you will, melt it by the fire in red wine, temper fine *Bolus* amongst it, and Dragon blood, of each half as much as the weight of the *Galbanum*, then make a plaister with sufficient Wax and Turpentine.

Item, take pownded Lentils twelve ounces, Shepherds purse, and Plantain, of each 3. handfuls, dryed Asses dung, and Goats dung, of each one ounce and a half, Frankincense, half an ounce, Dragons blood, Mints, of each one ounce and a half the juice of Sloes, *Hypocistis*, *Licium* of each one ounce, five whites of egs, Bean meal three ounces, Gips 4. ounces, but steep the Gips the space of a day in Vinegar, and then make a plaister thereof with the juice of Plantain, so that it may be solden with the meal until it be very thick. Lastly, mix the rest amongst it, and when it hath stood a good while, and is well tempered together, then take it from the fire, and stir it continually about until it be thorow cold. This plaister is to be laid over all the privities and all the parts about it. The same plaister doth marvellously stop the blood of the Piles, and all moisture of the Matrix of salt and tough humours, for that it is oftentimes approved.

Item, take the juce of Plantain as much as you will, temper therein *Trochises de Carabe*, and then apply them as all the rest.

Or take Wormwood, Nightshade, and Knotgrasse, of each a like much, stamp and wring the juice out of it, then temper as much Rye meal amongst it, until it be as thick as pap, afterwards lay it over the Navel, and over the Privities. Another: take Vinegar dregs, make it hot, and wet a blew cloth in it, and lay it thrice double over the privities.

Before in the third part the tenth Chapter and 5. §. ye have a precious Salve, beginning, Tak Cumin, &c. which is also meet for this use.

There is also a Salve called *De Gallia*, which is thus to be prepared: Take Cumin, Dill seed, Caraway, Rue seed, *Ameos*, *Gallia Muscata*, of each one drach. and a half, *Epythimum* one quarter of an ounce, Indy salt two scrup. white Rosin one ounce and a half, oyl of Dill two ounces, oyl of Roses one ounce, Aloe, Cloves, of each two scruples, molten wax as much as is needful for to make a plaister of it, then lay it over the Kidneyes, and over the Privities: this Salve doth not onely stay the flux in women, but also expelleth the wind of the stomach, and hindreth parbraking. Or take *Sandaraca* one ounce and a half, pownded Cypres nuts one ounce, fine *Bolus* four ounces, Plantain seed, and Pimpernel roots, of each two ounces and a half, Starch three ounces, then make it with water wherein Acorns were decocted, unto a plaister or salve, and use it as is said. There may also be made a bath, as here followeth; Seethe the roots of *Carcuma* in sufficient water, and make thereof a bath for the reins.

It is also good to make a bath wherein Allome is decocted, or any of these things following, which one will, as Mirtle seed, the rinds and roots of the Elm tree, the rinds of the Oak tree, Pomegranat blossomes and the peels, Acorns, Medlars, Lentils, and such like.

Item, it is said that if one do burn *Ranam Arboream* to ashes, and the ashes worn on the neck, that womens terms will be stopt thereby, but it is to be proved.

In like manner do so some advise, that the mosse of the black or Slo-thorn worn in ones shoes, should also stop the same.

Item, take Shepherds purse, and binde it on the soals of a womans feet. Others advise also that boxing cups should be set under her breast unpickt, for that they draw the blood upwards, and it is also a very good remedy for to stop therewith the flowing of the terms. Likewise it helpeth also exceedingly to binde the arms hard, to the end that thereby the blood might might be drawn upwards.

Further, this setting of cups, binding, and all these things that are to be put into the places admonished before, be especially to be used, if it be perceived that through

ſuch ſuperfluous courſes women be impotent, and were afraid of preſent falling into a ſwoun. In like manner alſo it is very requiſite that ſhe ſmell oftentimes to cold things, and uſe other more binding things which be deſcribed in the firſt part, the eight Chapter, and the 7. §.

For a concluſion it is to noted, whether there be heat or cold in this woman, that the medicine may be ordained accordingly. Theſe be all warming things, and they alſo which ſtop blood, which do here follow, viz. Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Cipres nuts, *Sandaracca*, *Laudanum*, *Mirrha*, Storax, Annis, and ſuch like.

Cold ſtopping things be theſe, as Camphire, the juice of Sloes, burnt Ivory, Coriander, Dragons blood: Saunders, blood ſtone, *Hypociſtis*, fine *Bolus*, *Raſcus* ſeed, Mirtle ſeed, Gals, Pomegranat bloſſoms, the ſeed of Plantain, the ſeed of Melon, of Cucumbers, of Gourds, of Pompeons, and Pimpernel roots, &c. whereby all tempered medicines may be adjudged.

Drink the powder of Parſnip ſeeds, and nettleſeeds in wine, and it ſtayes the flux of flowers.

Or drink the powder of Coriander ſeeds in wine.

Or, drink the power of red Saunders in poſſet ale, or wine. Prob.

Make a fumigation of Broom, and let the woman receive the ſame into her matrix and it will ſtop the courſes.

Alſo, ℞. of Pomgranat flowers, Acorn cups, Cipres Nuts, Sumach, Myrtles, ana. ℥. 2. Red-roſes, M. 2. Plantain, M. 3. ſeeth them in red wine, ℔. 3. unto ℔. 2. and with a Spunge foment the Reiny and Privy parts. After the fomentation, apply this plaiſter to the reins. ℞. of Sanguis Draconis, Terra Sigillata; Bole Armenick, ana. ℥. 2. Spodium, ℥. 3. the yolk of an egg roſted, flowers of Pomegranates, ℥. 2. Roſes, Acorn cups, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Myrtles, ℥. ß. Cinnamom, ℥. 1. wheat flower, ℥. 2. Saffron, a ℥. Figs, pound, & the fleſh of Quinces and Medlars, ana ℥. 2. oyl of Quinces, oyl of Saffron, of Roſes, of Myrtles, ana. ℥. 2. ſpread it upon leather and apply it to the Reins and back.

If a woman drink the fex that runs out of the oak tree with rain water, it ſtayes the flux of blood.

Of the Whites, or white flux in Women. §. 4.

THe diſeaſe which women do call the whites, and the Phiſitians *Menſtrua alba*, hath a great acquaintance or fellowſhip with the avoidance of humane ſeed, or the running of the reins, whereof we have written at large before in the ſixt Chapter: and it is alſo very evidently declared, that ſuch kind of fluxes be cauſed through cold cauſes, which is here alſo to be noted.

But above all that which is there diſcovered do all famous Phiſitians commend, that if it proceed of heat, women be firſt of all to be purged: for which, Caſſie is paſſing good: afterwards give her every other day one drach. of *Trochiſcos de Carade* tempered in Plantain water, or a quarter of an ounce of *Triphera ex parte Phenonis* tempered with a little fine Bolus. The reins are to be annointed with the ſalve of Roſes, and with other things more which be preſcribed in the ſpermatical flux. There is alſo to be given her every ſecond or third day one drach. of the filing of Ivory to drink with Plantain water: and the cold looſings of *Diamargariton* is ſhe alſo to uſe oftentimes.

Item, take *Camphora* ten grains, bruiſe it ſmall, beaten Amber one ſcruple; drink them together with Plantain water, it is a very good medicine.

For this is alſo eſteemed to be a ſure remedy, the firſt buds of the Blackberry buſh, and the berries thereof dried, pownded, and drunken every day one drach. with red wine, or twice a day. There may alſo be made a confection of the ſaid berries when they be ripe, ſeething the ſame with honey or Sugar, and to uſe thereof daily.

But in caſe that this diſeaſe proceed of cold, whereto ſome do make ſix kinds of baths which are to be uſed one upon the other, which me thinketh to be much too ſtrong, for that they take Sulphure, Allom, ſteeled water, and ſtrong Menagegs, as Feverfew, Mugwort and Bayberries: afterwards again all things which be contrary, as Oken buds, Knotgraſſe, Squinant, &c. Therefore will we leave the ſame unmentioned: but for this muſt be taken the flowers of dead Nettles powdered, the weight of a drachme with wine. Confected Annis ſeed is alſo very commodious for this. But in caſe that the iſſue be very ſharp, then beat whites egs of with Roſe water, and make clothes wet in it, and put it up into womens ſecrets.

Of the ſuffocation or aſcenſion of the Matrix. §. 13.

THis terrible ſickneſſe is in many things moſt like to the falling evil *Epilepſie*, and the great ſwouning *Syncopi*, becauſe the *Matrix* hath great ſimpathie with the heart, the Arteries, Braſns, and with the two membranes which do cover the Braſns. This malady cometh to women through divers cauſes, and eſpecially when there is retention of their terms or flowers, yea alſo through the retention of their naturall ſeed, eſpecially to them that be accuſtomed to have the company of a man, and muſt then forbear it, as widowes, and aged maidens: for that in caſe the foreſaid ſeed be retained, then cauſeth it many kinds of winds in the *Matrix* which do compell it ſo to aſcend, that otherwhiles it oppreſſeth even the *Diaphragma*. This is then the opinion of divers learned men in this caſe: but *Galen* doth diſpute againſt it with ſtrong reaſons, that the foreſaid naturall ſeed doth much ſeldom cauſe this ſickneſſe, then the retention of the terms; chiefly in women which alſo are burthened with many bad humours, be full of blood, and brought up in idleneſſe, have accuſtomed to company with a man (like as is expreſſed) and now ſuddenly are conſtrained to watn it. Therefore is commonly ſeen, ſaith he, that this ſuffocation for the moſt part troubleth widowes. He maintaineth alſo and that by good reaſon, that the mother doth aſcend even to the *Diaphragma* (which is the midriffe) and there doth ſtridge the breath.

Thus may be cauſed through the retention and putrifaction of the ſeed, all manner of troubleſome accidents, as giddineſſe and pains of the head, madneſſe, ſhort breath, and panting of the heart, their naturall colour doth alter into a yellow pale, yea ſometimes into redneſſe of the face and of the eyes, they gnaſh with their teeth, draw their hands and feet awry, they do alſo feel that there aſcendeth ſomewhat upwards out of the belly, and commonly then do they preſſe down their belly with their hands; they alſo do ſit commonly with their bent knees on the ground; they loſe their ſpeech: and nevertheleſſe when one calleth them by their names, then do they hear it, but they cannot anſwer, and do lye oftentimes, that neither breath nor pulſe, nor any like can be perceived in them, yet are taken to be dead: and alſo ſomtimes they are ſo taken or aſſailed with theſe kinds of maladies that they depart out of this world: nevertheleſſe they alwayes retain their memory and knowledge; and when they come again to themſelves, then do they rehearſe all that is ſpoken and done. So that this diſeaſe (like as is rehearſed) is in many things to be compared with the falling ſickneſſe, onely that they do not ſome. In like manner it is not unlike the Palſey, but onely that there is no long breath with it, and very like the ſleeping ſickneſſe *Lethargo*, but that there is no ague with it. Amongſt all the foreſaid ſigns is there no worſe then the retention of the breath, for that the ſame cannot be long holden up without death follow after it; for that a body cannot live without breath.

This grievous accident may alſo be cauſed through a ſtrong cold, which doth ſo ſore aſſaile a body, that thereby all his breath and pulſe will be ſo drawn inward that by the feeling it can be at no hand perceived, as we have alſo admoniſhed here and there in the firſt part amongſt the diſeaſes of the brains. In fine, the mean to remedy this terrible diſeaſe conſiſteth in three ſeveral things.

The firſt what is to be done in the haſty accident for to hinder the ſtifling.

The ſecond (if ſo be that this diſeaſe be cauſed through retention of the ſeed) what is to be uſed for it.

The third, in caſe that this be cauſed through retention of the terms, or through any other bad humours, how one is to behave her ſelf therein. When as this diſeaſe cometh with hinderance of the breath, then is ſpeedy help needfull: therefore is cold well water, or Roſewater, to be caſt by and by into her face, and to hold the mouth and noſe to the end it may compel the breath backward, and break out with force: alſo the hands, feet, buttocks, and thighs, are to be rubbed hard with vinegar and ſalt, and afterwards to be bounden very hard. Another woman muſt make her finger fat with odoriferous oyl (as oyl of Lillies, or any other) and therewith anoint the neck of the womb or Matrix, and rub the ſame ſoftly, to the end that the Matrix be thereby drawn downwards. Further, there is a little neeſing powder to be blown in the noſe, to the end that through the ſtrong motion of neeſing the mother may be drawn downward. They are alſo to be called head and lowdly by their names, and to keep away all pleaſant favours from their noſe,

noſe: but the places are to be fomented, anointed, or fumed with all odoriferous things. Alſo a great boxing cup is to be ſet upon the ſame place unpickt. You are alſo to hold all filthy loathſome ſavours before the noſe, as *Aſſa fœtida*, *Galbanum*, Bevercod: alſo the ſmell of old clots, of ſhooes burnt, of haire, of feathers, and ſuch like that may be ſpeedily, are you to let her ſmell unto. For that (like as we in the beginning of the deſcription of the Matrix or mother have admoniſhed) the mother doth flie and avoid by nature all ſtinking things, and to the contrary loveth all odoriferous fumes and ſavours: yet are theſe ſtinking things not to be uſed but in extrem need: for that all that ſtinketh very loathſome, doth alſo weaken and infeeble nature. Amongſt theſe foreſaid things is Harts haire alſo very requiſite. The chiefeſt odoriferous things which are to be uſed beneath is *Muſcus* and *Ambra* meet. And if one can get it ſuddenly this powder following is to be taken.

Take red Storax, *Lignum Aloes*, and Cloves, of each one drachme, Muſk, Amber, of each half a drach. make all to powder, then bind it in a cloth and put it up into their places.

Item, take one ounce of the oyl of Lillies, *Muſcus*, and Saffron, of each three grains, bruiſe them well together and dip a taint in it, and put it into the place, or fill a ſmall bag with ſalt, and uſe it as before.

You are alſo to make a fume with theſe things following, to receive the ſame through an Ammel: Take Caſſie wood, Cinamom, Thyme, *Gallia Muſcata*, and ſuch like. But if theſe will not help, then uſe one of the ſtrong peſſaries and others which be deſcribed before in this Chapter and the ſecond §.

Verùm (ſalvo pudore) præſentiſſimum Remedium eſt, ſi maritus ungat penem cum Oleo Caryophyllorum, admixto parùm Olei amygdalarum dulcium, ad caliditatem prioris temperandum, & cum uxore coeat, Matrix enim ſubitò deſcendit.

When as now this patient beginneth to recover again (being a Maiden) and enclined to this grievous ſickneſſe, then is there no better remedy, then that ſhe induce her ſelf into the ſtate of matrimony: if not, then is ſhe to refrain from all theſe things, which do increaſe natural ſeed; as fleſh, wine, and other, like as before is deſcribed in the firſt Chapter, and the 4. §. and the ſeventh Chapter and the 8. §. For this is alſo the letting of blood very meet, the uſe of all cooling meats, and the abſence of men. All mineral baths which do dry, be alſo very fit for this uſe, and ſhe may alſo uſe therewith theſe confections following.

Take freſh roots of Polipody ſix ounces, Sene leaves, Violets, Prunes, Sebeſten, four Dates, and Currans, of each one ounce and a half; ſeethe them in two quarts of water unto the half, afterwards wring it out; and whileſt that the decoction is yet warm, ſteep therein ſix ounces of the ſeeds of Fleawort, ſo long that the muſcilage may be drawn out of them, then put twenty four ounces of white Sugar unto it. Likewiſe alſo the pith of four Dates and Caſſie which are prepared with the foreſaid decoction, of each three ounces; then ſeethe them again together by a mild fire until that it be thick, and temper it with theſe things following beaten very ſmall, burnt Ivory, Rubarb, red and white Saunders, Roſes, Violets, white Poppy ſeed, Purſlain ſeed, Endive ſeed, Lettice ſeed, ſmall Endive ſeed, of Fennel, Dragagant, Starch, ſcraped Ivory, Gum, Hollihocks, Fumitory, Lettice, and Annis ſeeds, of each a drachme and a half, *Diagridion* two drachmes and a half, Mirobalani Indi, Emblici, of each three drachmes; temper them all together in a mortar, and give from half an ounce unto ſeven drachmes.

This foreſaid electuary is ſo highly commended, that it is called the gift of God. Theſe are alſo [illegible] every day, but onely once or twice to be uſed, with a decoction of Mugwort and S[illegible], and then to faſt ſix hours upon it.

This being done, there ſhall a round plaiſter be laid upon the Navel *De balſamo*, and not to take it off, before it fall away of it ſelf, whereof there two divers ſorts diſcovered before in the 3. §.

Laſtly, theſe pils enſuing are to be uſed: Take Silvermountain, Madder, Penniroyal, the innermoſt rinds of Caſſie pipes, Pomgranat kernels, Piony roots, and Calamus, of each three drach. *Muſcus*, and *Spica* of Indy, of each half a drachme; then make pils thereof with the juyce of Mugwort, of them is ſhe to take every day, or leaſtwiſe about the other day, if ſhe do not uſe the confection, and that before ſupper. But the ſame is not to be given if the terms be preſent, but when they be paſt, if you will have them milder, then put one drach. and a half of Aloes unto them.

But in caſe that this aſcenſion of the Mother be cauſed through the ſuppreſſion of the

terms,

tunes, and that a woman be come to her self again, and that it is feared that it will return again by reason that the cause is not yet taken away, and that it be certain that this disease were caused through the retention of the terms, or of the natural seed; then must diligence be used that the terms be preferred and moved, whereof we have before given a full instruction.

Item, if this suffocation of the Matrix proceed through obstruction or hinderance of the terms, then give her one quarter of an ounce of powdred *Agaricus* with wine or with Hony water, for it is a sure mean for it. It is also very good for the same, that there be taken one drachme of the pownded *Agnus Castus* with one ounce of the hony of Roses, especially if the disease do come through the detention of the seed: the *Trochisci de Myrrha* do also move much.

Secondly, the *Saphea* is also to be opened in the foot, and afterwards one drachme of pownded Betony with the water of Feverfew. In like manner also boxing cups are to be set upon the thighes picked or unpicked. Cut a piece of bread round like to a Dollat, and set three Wax candles in it of the length of a finger, set them so burning upon the navel, and then whelme over it a glasse of a quartern long, then do the candles go out, and the glasse doth draw the Mother or Matrix perforce into her due and wonted place; and this hath been oftentimes approved.

Item, anoint all the belly with oyl of Mastick, and make a pot-lid warm, winde it about with clothes, and hold it warm to the belly.

Item, take Bevercod and *Assa fœtida*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Philonium Romanum* one drachme; temper them together, and give it fasting, and drink upon it a good draught of Muscadel or Malmsey, it helpeth marvellous well.

The same vertue hath *Triphera magna*, the weight of a drachme and a half drunken with wine in the morning early. Likewise is also good for this one drachme of pownded Piony seeds drunken with hony water.

If the Matrix or Mother begin to ascend, then is to be taken one quarter of an ounce of yellow Rape seed with the mater of Mugwort.

For a plaister, you are to take *Galbanum* one drachme and a half, *Bdellium* one drach. Mugwort, Feverfew, of each half an ounce, oyl of Lillies one ounce; dissolve the gums in the oyl, and when they begin to be cold, then temper the powder amongst it: with this salve they are to anoint them beneath and above the navel, and then to lay a plaister of *Galbanum* upon it.

Item, take *Assa fœtida* one ounce, *Galbanum* two ounces, melt them in vinegar, and spread them warm upon a leather of a quarter long, then lay them over the navel: the *Galbanum* is also good used alone. Whensoever you will lay any thing upon the place of pain, then take the roots of Lovage, cut them very small and put them in a bag. Cometh the pain of the Mother through cold? then seethe it in wine; but if it be through heat, then seethe them in water, and lay it on the place of the pain. Could you not get these roots, then take Acorn buds, it is also good.

Neesing and parbreaking is much advised for this, but especially heed must be taken to the strength of the patient.

And in case that the same Woman must live without a man, then is she so much the oftener to use anointing with the odoriferous salves with the fingers beneath, and use therewith all things which do diminish natural seed, as Rue, *Agnus Castus*, and such like, as elsewhere hath been shewed. Besides all these, you may look all that hath been said before in the second §. of the terms in women.

Of the descension and falling down of the Mother or Womb. §. 6.

Like as the Womb or Mother in women ascendeth, so doth it also descend, so that it cometh so low, that she being turned about, it dependeth, and with a long end hangeth out of the body, like as is wont to happen with the Arsegut, whereof we have written in the tenth Chapter and the second §.

The causes of this disease may be outward and inward: the outward may come of falt, heavy birth, long sitting upon a cold stone, or in the water, through hard going to stool, through strong neesing, through running, leaping, through use of much cold salve, and such like. The inward be when the body is pestered and full of humours, which afterwards

afterwards do fall even to the womb, which do ſo unknit and diſſolve the bands and ſtrives of the ſame, that they cannot hold the mother any longer; like as oftentimes befalleth in the palſie and falling ſickneſſe, alſo in ulcers and impoſtumes of the womb. The ſigns of this diſeaſe be manifeſt, if the ſame be cauſed through any outward cauſes, the ſame may be inquired of the patient her ſelf. Otherwiſe it is to be conſidered whether the woman be fat, moiſt, live in quiet, is wont to eat much fruit, or much fiſh, &c. They have alſo oftentimes pain about the privy members, and in the neither part of the backbone. There cometh alſo ſometimes an Ague with it, retention of the urine, and hardning of the ſtool. Some get alſo much trembling, the cramp, and great fear, without any manifeſt cauſes, with many more grievous accidents. Now in caſe that the deſcenſion of the Mother do yet remain ſomewhat inwardly, then muſt a Midwife behold and ſearch her: to wit, then ſhe muſt put one finger into the neck of the womb or Matrix: if the paſſage be ſmooth and open, then is the mother not fallen down; but if ſhe find therein any ſtop or let, then is it a ſure ſign that it is deſcended: and if ſo be the Matrix or mother continue long out of her natural place, then is it unpoſſible that ſhe ſhould be reduced again into her due and natural place, and more unpoſſible if the ſame depend out of the body.

Thus for to remedy this diſeaſe, then may one chooſe out of theſe things following thoſe which are thought to be beſt and moſt meet, according to the quality of the diſeaſe. Firſt of all take three boxing cups, and ſet the one upon the Navel or under the breaſts, and the other two above the privities unpickt; theſe may draw the Matrix again into her accuſtomed place. The Midwife may alſo anoint the body within with oyl of Maſtick, and do whatſoever is poſſible by manual operation to ſet the ſame again into her natural place.

Secondly, take a glowing brick, and ſtrew thereon this powder following: Take Tormentil, the juyce of Sloes, and *Biſtorta*, of each threee drachmes, the peeles and bloſſoms of Pomgranats, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Aſſa fœtida* one ounce, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Galbanum, of each two drachmes and a half, Cipres nuts, Gals, Myrtle ſeed, of each five drach ſtamp them together, and mix them well together: this fume is ſhe to receive from beneath, but heed muſt be had that it come not into the noſe: for to hold to her noſe ſerve none other but well ſavouring and ſweet ſmelling things, *Ambre*, Muſk, and Violets, and all ſavours which are moſt acceptable unto her. Theſe bad ſavours (as is ſaid before) cauſe the Mother to aſcend again. This ſame is alſo uſed whilſt that the boxing cups are faſtened.

Item, take a ſtinking egg from a brood hen, and dip cotton in it, and then lay it upon the dependant neck of the Matrix, then will it forthwith be drawn up again.

Or take Camomil, Manjoram, and Caraway, of each one handful, Linſeed one handful and a half, ſeethe it in water, and receive the vapour thereof. If ſo be that there be heat with it, then are you to uſe this vapour following: Take Houſleek as much as you pleaſe, beat it groſſe, and afterwards lay it upon a hot ſtone, and let the woman receive the vapour thereof.

Thirdly, then is this fomentation to be made: Take three ounces of Roſes, Myrtle ſeed, Violet leaves, Marigolds and Feverfew, of each one handful, Aſſa fœtida ʒ. 3. break them all together, then put them in a bag and ſeethe them in red wine, and lay it after the vapour received upon the foreſaid place.

Or take the bloſſoms and pils of Pomgranats, Cipres nuts, the rinds of Medlars and of the Service tree, of each one ounce, Allom one ounce and a half, ſeethe them all together in red wine, and foment therewith the places and the parts adjacent of the Matrix. Some do alſo adviſe to take Oxe tongue tempered with red wine, and to receive the vapour of it from beneath.

Fourthly, let every day the neck of the Mother and all parts about the Mother be anointed with the ſalve *Alchea*, but temper amongſt it ſome marrow of any beaſts, the fat of ſwittles, and oyl as much as you pleaſe; do this in the evening when ſhe goeth to bed. You may alſo of ſuch like things make a plaiſter, & apply it all the whole night as before.

Or take of Myrtles, of Lillies, and of Maſtick, of each two ounces and a half, Aſſa fœtida, Biſtorta, and Tormentil, of each ʒ. 3. the gums is to be molten, then pownd all that is to be pownded, make a ſalve thereof, anoint therewith the body outwardly, and alſo the kidneys.

Laſtly, Take the yolks of two well boyled eggs, put unto them one ounce and a half of the oyl of Roſes, freſh Butter half an ounce, make a ſalve thereof, and uſe it as before.

The

The dependant Matrix is to be washed often with wine which is steeled.

Also the oyl of sweet Almonds may be used for this purpose.

Fifely, take *Assa Fœtida* one ounce, Mastick, Frankincense, Myrtle seed, Galangal, and Cypres nuts, of each one drachme, stamped together very small mix it with the oyl of Myrtles, and annoint therewith a Pessarie, afterwards put it into the places.

Sixely, take Rosin two ounces, Frankincense, Mastick, and Cypres gum, of each half an ounce, temper it together, and let it melt: make it then with the oyl of Mastick to a plaister, and weare it upon the privities: it will stay and let that the Mother or Matrix cannot fall any further out of the body. Or take Mastick one ounce, Frankincense half a drachme, Cypres nuts, Galles and Myrtle seed, of each one drachme, pilles and blossomes of Pomgranats, and Turpentine, of each one quarter of an ounce: pownd all that is to be pounded, and temper it all together with Turpentine and oyl of Mastick, as much as will suffice for to make a mild plaister, spread it on a cloth of a quarter long, and half a quarter broad, wear this plaister continually between the navell and the privities.

The common people do much commend to sit upon Oaken Boards, and to receive the fume of dryed Caruway from beneath: cakes baked with dryed seeds of *Verbascum*, and to eat them: to eat Annis seeds: to annoint the dependant Matrix oftentimes with the juyce of Sloes; and above all, vomiting and parbraking, thereby to draw the Matrix upwards, are very good.

Above all these which be before discovered against the descension of the Matrix, are these things ensuing also very good: Take burnt Date stones beaten small, and strew of this powder upon the dependant member.

A stronger. *Mumia*, *Licium*, *Hypocistis*, pownded Gals, of each two scruples, burnt and small beaten, Oyster shels two drachmes, and a half, then make powder thereof, and use it as is before said. Item, take a wax candle of the length of six fingers breadth, and one finger thick, annoint it with oyl of Lillies, and put it up into the place.

Item, take Cypres nuts, unwormeaten Oaken leaves, Squinant, and Camomil, of each half an ounce, Roses one quarter of an ounce, Hares hair cut small half a drachme: stamp all to powder, and put it in a bag of the length and breadth of a finger, then steep it in warme wine wherein Camomil hath been decocted, and so put it up into the body.

This woman is also to sit up to the navel in a bath, wherein Allume and other astringent things have been decocted, and let her sit therein about an houre.

Other do counsel to use this bag following: take Oaken buds, Medlar leaves, Service leaves, the uppermost sprigs of Ladies thistles, Cypres leaves, of each one handfull, the sprigs of Myrtles, Valerian, wild Mints, of each two handfuls, chop them all small afterwards put them into a bag, let it seethe well, and sit thereon when you are in the bath.

For a conclusion, there serveth for the instent all that is prescribed before in the tenth chapter and second §. of the falling out of the Arsegut, for that both these diseases have one kind of cause. Likewise also there are many things specified in the third part, the third chapter, and second §. of the tumorous breasts, which are meet for this purpose, like as also hereafter of women in childbed shall be said.

So much be then spoken of the suffocation and descention of the mother: now we will proceed to other accidents which also concern the Matrix or mother.

Put a grain of musk into her navell, and a little bees wax made broad to keep it in.

Or take woodbind leaves, Rosemary Flowers and buds, ana. lin. ß stamp them, and put them into clarifyed hony, boyl them, then strain it, and drink of it as the fit cometh.

I have used my vomiting potion with good successe which is mentioned in the third part. cap. 11. §. 4.

Of the pain in the Mother or Matrix through Wind. §. 7.

First of all each one may well be assured which hath any understanding, that every unnatural accident which this part in women, to wit, the Matrix (whether it be of outward or inward causes) is subject to, cannot be with out pain, which the Grecians do call *Hysteralgia*. Amongst these, the causes be most winds, which cause no lesse pain in this place then they do in the guts, whereof we will at this present write and discourse. The causes of this may be blowes, thrusts and fals. Item outward cold, which con-

fesh

feth an obſtruction in the neck of the mother, whereby the winds be detained. Theſe winds be alſo cauſed ſometimes through hard and paineful bearings, or through the long uſe of windy meats, as Rapes, Cheſtnuts, Rye bread, and ſuch like. The ſignes of theſe winds be pain in the Matrix, and other parts adjacent, ſwelling up of the belly, and that the pain is now here now there.

To remedie this diſeaſe, ſome famous Phyſitians do adviſe that the body is firſt to be purged through ſome common cliſters, through Caſſie, or through the powder of *Hiera Picra*, and that afterwards one quarter of an ounce of *Triphera magna*, ſhall be taken in the morning with good wine, for the ſame is eſteemed eſpecial good.

Theſe winds be alſo cauſed oftentimes through vomiting and parbraking.

Secondly, take forth two ounces and a half of *Oxymel*, and three ounces of the water of Camomil, afterwards ſet a common cliſter.

Thirdly, foment the belly with wine wherein Camomil is decocted. Laſtly may *Triphera* or *Phyloninm* is uſed.

The foreſaid *Phyloninm* is very good, but (as is oftentimes admoniſhed) men muſt deale providently in it, for the *Triphera* is much ſafer.

Afterwards do the famous Phyſitians command to proceed with theſe things which do follow.

Take *Turbith* one drachme or four ſcruples, according as the woman is ſtrong, Ginger one ſcruple, give it her with the water of Mugwort, or with common well water, wherein Mugwort is decocted: this is a very excellent medicine for to aſſwage all pains of the Matrix.

If ſo be that one peradventure fear any miſchance, becauſe the winds of the Matrix do oftentimes cauſe it, then take Caruway ſeed which is ſteeped in Vinegar, and dryed again and powdered, one drachme, *Ameos*, Ginger, Bevercod, of each one ſcruple, temper them together, and give one drachme thereof with wine certain dayes together. Or take Gentian the weight of one drachme with wine, which eaſeth them marvellous much, for that it expelleth not onely the pain, but alſo preventeth that there return no pain unto it.

In the twelfth chapter and 11. §. you have a potion with Gentian and others, which may alſo be uſed for this with great advancement.

Amongſt the remedies which may be outwardly uſed, firſt is bathing good, whereto this following is to be prepared; Take Marjoram, field mints, Southernwood, Fennel, and ſuch like things which expel wind, ſeethe theſe in water for a bath.

Or if ſo be that bathing is not meet, then uſe fomenting of warm wine, wherein Camomil is decocted, and afterwards annoint the belly with the oyl of Eldern. Item, take oyl of Maſtick one ounce, melt therein one quarter of an ounce of *Laudanum*, and annoint you therewith, yet the oyl of Lillies and Wall-flowers paſſeth all.

Item, rere ſodden egs brayed well with ſweet milk, and ſome Saffron tempered amongſt it, and then layed upon it, are highly commended for this uſe. It is alſo ſaid, that if black Hellebore be layed beneath before the Matrix, then doth it draw all moyſture unto it. But the Phyſitians do ſeethe Hellebore, and make a cloth wet in the ſame decoction; this cleanſeth the Matrix from all wind, without any moleſtation. This plaiſter following is eſpecially commended for all winds and ſwellings of the Matrix: Take *Bdellium* and *Ammoniacum*, of each two ounces, *Agnus Caſtus*, Centory, Southernwood, Marjoram, field Mints, *Ameos*, and Caſſie wood, of each one drachme and a half, Turpentine as much as is needful for to make thereof two plaiſters, then lay one before and the other behind.

Of the paine in the Mother through cold. §. 8.

TAke *Doronicum*, Zeduary roots, the ſeeds of Smallage and Cinamom of each one quarter of an ounce, Frankincenſe half a drachme, Bevercod one drachme, white Sugar one ounce, temper them and ſtamp them all together, and give thereof a ſpoonfull with wine. In the firſt part and the twelfth chapter, there is a remedie for the memorie, to wit, of a groſſer powder, which is alſo marvellous good to warme an ſtrengthen the cold Matrix. Item, take one drachme of Treacle, Saffron four grains, temper them in two ounces of Mugwort water, and then drink it faſting, and faſt three hours upon it. Mithridate is alſo very good for all diſeaſes of the Matrix, and chiefly for them that proceed of cold. There is more good for this, Bevercod about the weight

niper

of a deachme tempered with oyl of Camomil, and the belly annointed with it. Pepper Iuniper Berries eaten be alſo very good for this diſeaſe. The firſt Balſam (which is deſcribed in the eight part) is alſo eſpecially good for the ſame, all plaiſters, oyls, ſalves and fomentations, which be deſcribed in more other places, may be alſo uſed for that.

The ſimple things which be meet for a cold Matrix be theſe, to wit, Mugwort, Rue, Sage, Savin tree, *Aſa fœtida*, Madder, Iuniper, Pennyroyal, field Mints, white water mints, Calamus, *Serapinum*, and all that warmeth the Kidneyes.

For the falling down of the mother, my vomiting potion is very good, mentioned part 1. cap. 11. §. 4.

Alſo take Apoſtelicon and warm it, then touch the Matrix with it, and it will aſcend: touch it therewith 3. or 4. times, and as need requires.

Make a bath with Nettles, and touch the Matrix with the Nettles and it will aſcend.

Or of Harts horn leaves, of Bayes, of Myrtles, ana. 3. ii. powder them and let the woman drink it in broth or wine.

Of the paine in the Mother through heat. §. 9.

THere commeth alſo otherwhiles a great paine in the Matrix through heat, ſo that there muſt oftentimes things be uſed which take away and dead the ſenſe, like as the injection of Henbane ſeed, of Poppie ſeed, but it muſt be providently taken in hand, and not to uſe the ſame but in great heat. But if you will any thing that is more weake then ſeethe the Poppie heads in water, and inject the decoction thereof, and foment it therewith on the outſide. Warm ſweet milk injected alſo is good for this purpoſe.

Of the contraction of the Mother, or the neck of the ſame §. 10.

IT chanceth alſo ſometimes that the neck of the Mother is cloſed clean up, waxeth narrow, and ſhrinketh up. And for to mollify or ſoften the ſame, take Hollihock roots as many as you pleaſe, ſeethe them in Swines greaſe, or in Turpentine, to the end it be a ſoft plaiſter: then dip a clout in it, and put it up into the neck of the Matrix. The ſame doth alſo the water wherein Hollihock roots be decocted. In like ſort alſo the oyl of white *Narciſſus*.

Of the Schirrus, or hardneſſe of the Mother. §. 11.

OUt of theſe forementioned accidents of the Matrix, whether it be through heat or cold, cannot theſe parts be hardened any way, but as the Spleen is hardened: for which theſe meanes enſuing be very good: Take Aloe one ounce, Maſtick one quarter of an ounce, *Galbanum* diſſolved in Vinegar one ounce: and being ſtrained, temper the reſt amongſt it, and then make it with oyl of Camomil and Wax into a meetly hard plaiſter. The plaiſter of Melilot is alſo good for this uſe.

Item, ſeethe Figgs and Fenegreek as much as you pleaſe in Barly water, and make thereof a Semicupe. This foreſaid bath is good both for the paine and the heat alſo. There may alſo be uſed all that is before admoniſhed in the Sixteenth chapter and firſt §. Theſe herbs following do carry all other medicines towards the Matrix: as Pennyroyal, Roſemary, Savin tree, Juniper, Rue, Bevercod, Yarrow, Cinquefoil, *Myrrha*, Sage, Madder and Lupins. But becauſe that all theſe foreſaid things doe alſo leade all things towards the Bladder and the Kidneyes, ſo doe they the ſame alſo to the Matrix.

Of the impoſtume in the Mother, or in the neck of the ſame. §. 12.

IF ſo be that theſe foreſaid diſeaſes, as the retention of the terms of natural feed, or any other ſharp humour, whether it be blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, or *Melancholia*, winds, or any other cold moyſture, the which falleth down to the Matrix, then may they ſoone cauſe an impoſtume: notwithſtanding the ſame can proceed well of any outward cauſes, as of blowes, falles, leachery, through a miſchance, through the ignorant dealing of the Midwife, and ſuch like things more, the which doe bring with them either heate or cold. The ſigns of a hot impoſtume, be Ague, great paine between the navel and the privities, and round about the reins, much watching, unquietneſſe, and paine in making water and

going

going to stoole, swift Pulse, pain of the head and of the eyes, heavy breath, pain of the stomach with much parbraking.

These Impostumes will be very hardly cured, and the harder if they are situated deep in the Matrix: but generally they are to be cured, like as the impostumes and ulcers of the reins are taught to be healed, viz. as in the sixteenth chapter and 6. 7. 8. 9. §. hath been declared.

There be first certain rules to be noted, whereof the first is, that one must endeavour to carry away the matter from thence which descendeth thitherwards. Secondly, the Liver vein is to be opened, and afterwards the vein in bending the knee, or if one can neither see nor find it, then is the *Saphen* to be taken. Thirdly, if so be that this impostumation be in the Matrix, or in the neck of the Hunt, then be the terms in no wise to be moved, but onely (like as is said) to withdraw the matter into another place. Fourthly, after the letting of blood is the Patient to be purged. Fifthly, vomiting and parbraking is very commodious. Sixtly, if it be possible she is to refrain the space of three dayes from eating and drinking, or at least keep her self very sparing, and especially in drinking. Seventhly, she must watch as much as is possible. Eighthly, after that the body is well purged, then is the Matrix in the beginning of the sickenesse to be delaied with such kinds of plaisters as derive the matter from that place. Ninthly, amongst these foresaid remedies, temper alwayes somewhat which may asswage the pain. Tenthly in the declination of the disease are those things good which do ripen and mollifie the matter until it issue and break out. Eleventhly, if so be that this impostume would not be matured and brought to matter, then is the same to be effected with Fenegreek, with Hollihock roots, with Camomil, with Wheat flower, with Pigeon dung, and with some Saffron being made to a plaister and layd thereupon. Twelfthly, the astringent remedies are not long to be used, to the end the impostumes be not hardened according to all these foresaid rules, every one may know how to order her self in the curing of this disease.

If this impostume do come through heat, then is heed first to be taken whether the sick person be bound in her body: if it be so, then are mild clisters to be set, or Suppositories, and afterwards to open a vein, as hath been shewed in the second rule. She is also to be fed with Barly paps, stued Spinage, and such like things: and to prepare the matter, give unto her the julip or syrup of Violets at certain times to drink, and afterwards purge her with Cassie, sour Dates or *Manna*, and also move her otherwhiles to vomit. Afterwards unto the reins, the kidnyes and the hips, are cooling salves, plaisters, and such like things to be applied, and so to coole them as much as is possible: for which you are to use this salve following: Take Dragagant and Gum, of each one ounce, dissolve them in wine, and temper therewith washed Ceruse, the Litharge of Gold, Starch, Dragons blood, fine *Bolar*, and Roses, of each one drach. burnt Copper two scruples, oyl of Roses and Wax, as much as sufficeth for to make a salve therewith: but if so be that one cannot apply the same to the malady, then seethe them all together with milk (except the Wax) and then dip a cloth therein or a spunge and lay it upon the disease.

If you had rather have somewhat else, then take the syrup of Fleawort alone, or temper in with oyl of Roses, with broad Plantaine water, with the water of Nightshade, and with the white of an Egge.

There may also a great tent of Cotton be made, and the same dipt in this receipt following, and put into the neck of the Matrix. Take wax and oyl of Violets, of each half an ounce, let all melt together, and whilst that it is yet warm, put thereto the juyce of Plantaine, of Nightshade, of each one ounce, Camphir half a drachme, then temper them well together in a mortar, and use it as is aforesaid. If so be that there be any great pain with it, then use oyl of Roses brayed with the white of an egge, and tempered with hens grease: but if the pain will not asswage and cease therewith, then is the vien in the ham to be opened, and with the foresaid decoction, Poppy seed is to tempered. In like manner *Sesil Album* is to be tempered with womans milk which giveth suck to a daughter or maiden child, and to be injected.

This plaister is also very good for it: Take Camomil, Melilot, Hollihock roots, Linseed and Fenegreek, of each one ounce, eight or ten Figges, six or seven Dates, stamp and sharpen this all together, and make a plaister thereof with water wherein Mirtles be decocted, and with oyl of Roses. As the greatest extremity there is to be put some it a little *Opium*, Poppy seed, and Henbane seed. If so be that the impostume will be long a breaking, then temper amongst it one ounce and a half of pownded Pigeon dung. Mustard

gmos

boyled half an ounce, Fennel seed three quarters of an ounce. But if this impostume be in any place where it may be seen, or where one may come by it, then is it to be opened through other meanes: when it is open, then cleanse it with Barly water or Hony water, wherein, Hyssop, Savin, Madder, Mugwort, and such like be decocted. And if so be that the place must be incarnated, then take Aloe, Myrrhe, Frankincense, *Sarcocolla*, Dragons blood, litharge of Gold, and prepared *Tutia*, of each a like quantity: make then a salve thereof with Wax and oyl of Roses, and use it according as opportunity serveth. And as before hath been said, cooling plaisters are to be used for it, and make any of these things following, viz. Roses, Lentils, blossomes and peeles of Pomgranates, the muscilage of Fleawort, Nightshade, Tassel, fresh sliced Gourds, and Saunders: all these are to be tempered with barly meal, and sodden to a plaister, and then to be layed over the privities.

Afterwards in the beginning of the disease, the juyce of broad Plantaine is to be injected oftentimes into the Matrix.

And to the end the Matrix inwardly may be perfectly mundified, prepare this water following: Take Gals, Lentils, Pomgranate blossoms, Butchers broom seeds, Roses and Saunders, of each a like quantity, seeth them in water, and inject the decoction into the place.

Or take Hyssope, Wormwood, Hony of Roses, seethe the same in White wine and milke, and use it as is afore-said.

When the Matrix is cleansed from all uncleanesse, then is this bath to be used for to heal and to cause the flesh to grow: Take Centory six ounces, Ireos, Comfrey, Cassie roots, and Agrimony, of each three handfuls, *Sarcocolla*, Gum, Dragons blood, *Mummy*, Olibanum, and Frankincense, of each one drach. seethe them all together in sufficient water unto the half, then put thereto prepared refuse of Iron 1. ounce and a quarter, then let it seeth a while and wax cold that it may be used for a bath. Of all the former things may plaisters, salves and pessaries be made, for they are to that intent very meet and profitable. Or if you will have a mean and milder bath, then take Mallowes, Violet leaves, Mercury, Plantain, Lentils, Fenegreek, and Colewort buds, and make a bath of it.

In like sort sodden Allume is available for this purpose, for this bath is generally commended of all learned men.

But when the Ague and the most pain is somewhat past, and the impostume remaineth still, which may be perceived when the Ague returneth, and the pain and hardnesse between the navel and the privities continueth, then are mollifying things to be used as these Pessaries following: Take Ducks grease, the marrow of Harts bones, Nears feet or Calves, Saffron, and yolks of rosted egs; of each a like quantity: dissolve them together in wine, and temper therewith the bottom of oyl of Lillies, then dip a taint of wool often therein and put it into the place: it swageth the pain and allayeth the hardnesse. But of this hardnesse we shall shortly hereafter speak and discourse somewhat more at large.

If this impostume be caused through cold, then doth the same happen through abundance of much *Phlegma* in the body, and that through continuall use of meat and drink whereby the *Phlegma* is augmented, whereby such like humours do fall downto the place, and there do putrify and rankle. This impostume doth appear with a swelling about the privities near the navel, and that with a continual ach, and yet no great heat: the woman is sleepy, and very lither: and these signs be the more certain, if the time of the year and the age of the Patient do agree with them.

In this, neither cold nor repelling remedies are meet but maturatives, and such as dissolve *Phlegma*, sobriety, plaisters meetly warm, discussive and ripening seeds, layings of Camomil, of Melilot, Savin, Marjoram, Mugwort, Linseed, Fenegreek, added with the foresaid oyles and greases, and they may also be sodden and injected. Also for this are meet salves and plaisters which do warm moysten and ripen, whereof we have before admonished, and shall again hereafter.

The third manner of the impostumation of the Mother, is such a bad and hard disease, and much worse then any of the former, especially when it is confirmed and waxen old, for then it is not to be cured, but at last there cometh the canker of it, whereof we will immediately hereafter speak and discourse at large. But to do some ease for it, is the place to be anointed with warm and maturative oyles, marrows and greases of beasts, and the decoction of Linseed, of Fenegreek seed, and oyl of Camomil, of Dill or of Lillies

to be injected. Alſo they are to weare plaiſters *de Bdellio*, of liquid Storax, and *Ammoniacum* thereon, and to uſe theſe fomentations and bathes following: Take roots of Hollihock two ounces, Camomil, Melilot, Mallowes, Violet leaves, and Fenegreek ſeed, of each one ounce, let them ſeethe well in water, and of the ſodden herbs ſhall you make plaiſters with ſome of the foreſaid greaſes, viz. with ſwines greaſe, hens and ducks greaſe, &c.

Uſe alſo this ſalve following; Take oyl of Lillies and of Eldern, conyfat, the fat of Quailes, Neates feet oyl, and oyl of Harts feet, oyl of ſweet Almonds, and Butter, of each one ounce, annoint therewith the neck of the mother within and without, then annoint therewith a peſſary of cotton and put it therein. And if ſo be the ſame do not content thee, then looke into the eleventh chapter, the 29. and 30 §. of the impoſtume in the ſtomach.

Item, of the impoſtume in the Liver, the 12. chapter and 7. §. and 14. chapter and 25. §. of the impoſtume of the milit, where you ſhall find a ſufficient direction for it.

☞ Take of Venice Turpentine, ℥. 4. Wax ℥. 2. Sallad oyl ℥. 6. Sack ℥. 2. boyl them on a ſoft fire until the Sack is almoſt waſted: then put thereto of red Saunders pouldered very fine and ſearſed, ſeethe them again a little until it lookes red, ſtill ſtirring it, then ſtrain it, and uſe it warm, it heales any hardeneſſe or Ulcer or other evill in the mouth of the Matrix, or in the Matrix.

Of the canker and Vlcer of the Womb or Matrix. §. 13.

WHat the difference is between the impoſtume and ulcer, is before in the ſeventh Chapter and nine and twentieth §. ſufficiently declared of the impoſtume of the ſtomach. But the ulcers of the Matrix be very noyſome and perillous (as we have before alledged) and ſo qualifyed, that very eaſily they may come unto an incurable canker; for this ulcer and the canker have a great communion one with another: this difference is between them, that where the canker is, there muſt alſo be an ulcer, but not every impoſtume the canker. Thus may ulcers be holpen with the things ordained for the clefts of the Arſegut, and of the womans places: where to the contrary, the canker of this place is eſteemed by all learned Phyſitians for to be incurable. The cauſes of theſe ulcers and canker of the Matrix may be (as we have already ſhewed of the ulceration in the noſtrils in the firſt part) of wounds, of thruſts, of blowes, of falls, of ſome unclean impoſtume, of ſome ſharp humours which do extoriate and exulcerate the Matrix, or the neck of the ſame within. The canker is commonly cauſed through melancholick blood, which maketh a hard impoſtume, and beginneth firſt onely of a ſmall hardneſſe, as the bigneſſe of a Peaſe or Beane, and afterwards increaſeth, the which laſt filleth the veins adjacent alſo with melancholick, thick, and black blood, whereby it will be harder and greater from day to day. The heat augmenteth with pricking until that it break out, whence then iſſueth a black green matter, and otherwhiles like as it were Wine lees, and ſometimes like to water, the which ſtinketh none otherwiſe than as it were a Carrion, and corrodeth more and more, for that is the nature of cankers.

The ſigns of theſe ulcerations be pain, pricking, panting of the mother, and ſome deſcent of purulent matter according to the quality of the ulcer. But if it be cauſed through any outward occaſion, that may be underſtood of the ſick perſon her ſelf. Or if it come through ſharp blood, then is the pain ſharp, pricking with great heat and Ague. Or if it be cauſed through *Phlegma*, then is the pain not too great, the place anguiſhed, and impaireth ſlowly. If there run any cleer blood out of it with white corruption, then is there a ſmall vein broken in the impoſtume. If the matter be like water wherein fleſh hath been waſhed, then is it a ſigne that this diſeaſe is cauſed through long retencion of womans terms. If this impoſtume be cauſed of *Cholera*, then doth green matter run out of it. The ſigns of the canker have we diſcovered before.

In theſe kinds of ulcers and cankers in the wombe, do the learned preſcribe certain rules, whereof good heed is to be taken. Firſt in caſe this ulceration be very moyſt, there are drying things to be uſed for it. Secondly, if there be with the ulcer a venemous quality adjoyned, then is this the moſt principal meanes of healing, that the venemous quality may be taken away. Thirdly, that ſuch kind of meat and drink be uſed as do cleanſe and make a good blood which is moſt commodious for to cleanſe the ulcers of the womb, for

thereby

thereby will the venemous matter be beſt of all taken and drawn forth. Fourthly, theſe ulcers have no need of maturatives, for that thereby the venemous matter increaſeth. Thirdly, the Phyſitians muſt uſe ſuch things as doe diſſolve and dry: and laſtly, incarnatives. Sixtly, if this ulcers can be ſeen, then is the ſame to be refreſhed with clean and fine clothes continually.

And now to begin with ſome medicines: Heed muſt firſt of all be taken of a good government of life, ſo that all that one doth eat, drink, or uſe (according to the ability of the Patient without the making of any heat (may be drying things, and commonly ſuch things be ordained for this purpoſe as are warm in the firſt degree, but ſtrongly drying. Quietneſſe in this diſeaſe is better then motion. Hereby may it eaſily be marked and underſtood, that all cold and moyſt meats be hurtful for this Patient, viz. Fiſh, Crabs, milk, and all that is dreſt with milk, much pap, fat, and ſuch like be naught for her. Their moſt commodious drink ſhall be a thin, red, and hard wine, which is very drying and diſcuſſive; the ſame may be tempered with water wherein Maſtick, two kinds of *Conſolida* (if ſo be that the naure can abide it) and Feverfew be decocted. Secondly, concerning the other Phyſick (if that nature may abide it) the vein on the right foot is to be opened againſt evening, yet is good regard to be had to the ſouning, for that the letting of blood in the neithermoſt parts doe bring more debility with it than that of the upper parts. After the letting of blood, this potion following is to be given unto her 2. morninges together: take *Benedicta Laxativa*, half an ounce, *Agaricus* one ſcruple, Ginger and Graines, the juyce of Feverfew two ounces and a half, temper them together, and afterwards ſhe is to govern her ſelf even as the order is after purging. Thirdly give her this potion enſuing the ſpace of certain dayes together, until that the urine appear of a good colour and very clean: Take *Oxymel* of Squils half an ounce, *Syrupus de Byzantiis*, and ſyrup of Vinegar, of each three quarters of an ounce, Lovage and Agrimony water, of each one ounce, Cicory water two ounces, this is to be drunken early in the morning: ſhe may alſo ſleep well upon it, and faſt four hours after it.

This being done, miniſter unto her, *Pillulas Benedictas* four ſcruples, or one drachme and a half, formed with the juice of Mugwort, you may alſo temper one drachme of it with the foreſaid water, and drink it: and if ſo be that the cauſe require ſtronger remedies, then take *Pillulas de Opopanacum*, and *de Hiera Compoſita*, of each half a drachme: make pilles thereof as is aforeſaid. With this purging one muſt diligently have regard whether this ulcer or canker be ſo neer in the neck of the Matrix that one may come to it with the hand; likewiſe if the matter doe ſtick, to the end that according to the quantity thereof might be knowen what medicines ſhould be uſed: but be it howſoever it will, Honey water is alwayes good for it. You may alſo cleanſe the diſeaſe therewith where the ulcer is, and afterwards ſpread thereon this ſalve following: Take *Aloe*, Dragons blood, *Myrrha*, *Sarcocolla*, and Frankincenſe, of each a like quantity, Duckes greaſe as much as is needful for to make a mild unguent of it.

But this following is ſtronger: Take oyl of Feverfew flowers and of Saffron, of each half an ounce, oyl of Wal-flowers (eſpecially if there be great pain with it) two ounces, *Sarcocolla*, *Myrrha*, and *Opopanacum*, of each one drachme, Turpentine three quarters of an ounce, *Muſcus* one grain, white Wax as much as is needful for a ſalve; afterwards temper them all together in four ounces of the juyce of Smallage until all the juyce be conſumed, then annoint therewith a peſſary made of cotton, and put it into the place, and refreſh it oftentimes: it is very commodious for it, and found oftentimes good. But if this diſeaſe be very deep inwardly, then doth need require that the body be cleanſed with neceſſary things, to wit, with Hony water, and afterwards uſe the peſſaries which are deſcribed in the fifth chapter and 2. §. beginning thus: Take Ducks greaſe, &c. and uſe them four or five times a day, or make this following: Take Smallage, Feverfew, and Mugwort, all together, or each alone, ſtamp them together, make a peſſary thereof, and annoint it with *Hiera Picra*.

You may alſo take the juyce of theſe foreſaid herbs, and make a cloth wet with it, and lay the ſame upon the back, the hips, and on the bithermoſt part of the back-bone. For this cauſe, this following is ordained: Take Hony water, ſeethe therein Ireos and Wormwood, or ſeethe Agrimony in Barly water, and temper clarifyed Hony, or Hony of Roſes amongſt it. If ſo be that the cauſe require ſtronger remedies, then take ſix ounces of Wine, burnt Allume, Verdigreaſe, of each half a drachme, temper them together, and let them ſtand ſo five hours, afterwards inject it.

This following is also good, and chiefly to dry the ulcers, and to draw them together; Take Gals, Pomgranat pils and the blossoms, and Allom, let it seethe together with a little Agrimony: and if you think that there be any vein broken within the ulcer, then temper somewhat of these things following with it, as Dragons blood, Myrrhe, Frankincense, fine *Bolus*, Saffron, Hartwort with Rose water, or with Plantain water.

A bath for the reins is very necessary for this purpose, whereto you may prepare this following; Take Valerian roots, Mew, and roots of Smallage, of each four handfuls, *Myrrhe* and *Opopenacum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, the roots of Yarrow 4. handfuls, seeth them all in sufficient water, and sit therein to the Navel. Besides all this there is another bath highly commended, wherein the roots of wild Cucumbers be decocted. For this is also very good that which is described in the 12. §. beginning thus, Take oyl of Centory 6. ounces, &c. But in case this ensuing matter remain stinking, and that there be heat with it, then use the other pessaries made of cotton and Roses, that are there discovered; but the ulcers must be cleansed before by the injection of honey water. Lastly, if so be that the hardnesse do continue, which may be perceived by feeling, as also by the pricking, by the pain, and by the issuing out of the matter, then is one to beware that there be no sharp medicines used for it, for that thereby the malady will be much the rather augmented, for all which is discovered in the fifth Chapter and 2. §. of the injection of the muscilage of Fleawort, and juice of Housleek, for that is also the liver vein to be opened, and the salve of Ceruse to be used. This person must also beware of all which augmenteth melancholy, whereof you may find a sufficient discourse in the 11. Chapter and 8. §.

Of an unnatural birth, called Mola. §. 14.

IT chanceth also sometimes, that in certain women which have no company with a man, yet their belly swelleth up no otherwise then as though they were with child, and all the signs of being with child agree also with it, for that their Terms be absent and stayed; they feel also some stirring in the Matrix, their breasts will be hard, the appetite of meat leaveth them, their natural colour will be pale, all which signs are common to women with child: notwithstanding they bear no child which bear this *Mola*. This *Mola* groweth after two sorts in the womb: the one will grow to a peece of flesh without any figure, half putrified, and is also no right flesh, but rather a spongeous masse of wind, of water, and of some other superfluous blood, which through the accustomed terms cannot be expelled, and the same then being mixed with the natural seed, groweth otherwhiles to such a hardnesse, that the same cannot be cleft asunder with any hatcher. Secondly, it may also be ingendred of the said blood and the concourse of certain tough humours, and so make a false shew like women with child.

Nevertheless the expert Physitians do distinguish three several signs, whereby bearing women, and they that be burthened with this unnatural masse, are to be known, for that first the moving of this *Mola* or unnatural masse is not like that of a child, because it is a thing which hath no life. Secondly, the belly of women which bear *Mola* is much harder, and not so movable from one place to another as theirs is that be with child. Thirdly, this masse falleth from the one side to the other. Fourthly, if a woman be burthened with *Mola*, then be her hands and feet very feeble and limber, and it seemeth also that her fingers be shorter, all which cannot be perceived in bearing women. Fifthly, the woman that beareth *Mola*, is not so merry as one that is with child. Sixthly, a woman with child is commonly after nine moneths delivered; but in the *Mola* is no certain time, for that it is found that women therewith have gone two years, four years, and also longer, yea their whole life time, that no physick hath holpen them. And from these that be cured, there avoideth oftentimes (as is said) a loathsome peece of flesh, and that with such pain as if she were delivered of a child. It avoideth sometimes into blood, otherwhiles to wind, and their belly falleth away as before. This is such an accident, that it ought not slightly to be regarded, for that thereby it may easily be marked, that the Matrix is utterly rotten and spoiled, therefore do these women easily fall again into the foresaid malathies; or if not, into an unnatural flux, ulcer, or impostume of the Matrix.

Lastly, they commonly fall into the Dropsie, *Ascites* or *Timpanites*, or into some other pestilent soundnesse, whereof they die. Nevertheless must the Physitian not doubt of the cure, but as soon as he knoweth certainly that the woman be burthened with a

Mola,

Mola, and be not rightly with child, then is the woman to be commanded that she stir not too much, and lie for the most part upon the back, and with her legs higher then the body, and to constrain her self otherwhiles to vomit and parbrake, and refrain from all cold and moyst meates, for which this potion following is to be made: Take S. Johns wort, Savine, Rosemary, field Mints, and corn Mints, Lovage, Mugwort, Pennyroyall, and Mather, of each one handfull, Fennel, Squinant both kinds of parsly seed, *Calamus*, and wild Galangal, of each one drachme, Radish four ounces, seethe them together in sufficient quantity of water for a potion and use thereof every day three or four ounces, this potion melloweth that masse, and expelleth the humour whereby it might be increased.

There is also to be tempered with this potion one of these Trochisks following: Take Cinamom, Myrrhe, of each two drachmes and a half, Rue, Savine, field Mints, Pennyroyal, (all together dryed) Mather, *Sagapenum* and *Opopanacum*, of each one drachme, Cardamom, Juniper tree, Rosemary, of each one drachme and a half, form the Trochisks, of the weight of a quarter of an ounce. This afore prescribed is to be used the space of ten dayes or more.

Other do advise for a thing of smaller importance, to wit, that the woman two moneths every morning early, should take three ounces of warm Feverfew water, and to fast four hours at least after it.

Secondly, that she every fourth day when she drinketh of the water should take one of these pilles: Take *Galbanum* one quarter of an ounce, flowers of Mugwort, Saint Johns wort, and *Asarabacca*, of each one scruple, dissolve the Gum in good wine, and make thereof six Pilles of a drachme. She is also to purge once in fourteen dayes with three quarters of an ounce of *Benedicta Laxativa* tempered with two ounces of Feverfew water. Or if she had rather pilles, that she swallow one drachme of *Pillulas Fœtidas*. Fourthly, she is alwayes to weare this plaister following upon the belly the breadth of a finger beneath the navel reaching up towards the hips: Take *Galbanum* one ounce and a half, *Gallia Muscata* one quarter of an ounce, *Alipta Muscata* one drach, white Wax three drachmes, dissolve the Gum in good Wine, and then make a plaister thereof.

Fifthly, she is to use this bath ensuing for the reins thrice a week, twice a day: Take *Gallia Muscata* one quarter of an ounce, *Colophoniæ* half an ounce, Saint Johns wort flowers, Betony, Mugwort, and Feverfew, of each three handfuls, *Bistortæ* five handfuls, seethe them together in sufficient water until it savour well: shee is to sit therein up to the navell. These be very excellent remedies for to bring the mother to good health again, to strengthen all the parts of generation, and to ease their maladies.

In fine, all those things may be used for this intent, which are prescribed for the expulsion of the dead child out of the mothers body, and for the secundine, and such like things more.

For the *Mola* make an Electuary of English Dittany leaves taken green and dryed in the Sun, Angelico leaves, green and dryed, ana. ℥. 1. Saffron, ℥. 6. powder and searse them, then with clarified hony make an electuary, take a drachme, or two or three drach. in the morning fasting in a draught of white Wine. *Prob.* do so twelve or fourteen dayes together.

What commonly is good and profitable for the Matrix. §. 15

ELecampane roots, the greater Pimpernel rootes, the roots of Eryngus, and Ginger, all preserved, conserves of Betony, of Gilloflowers, of Spikenard, of Lavender, and of Betony, wine of Elecampane rootes, of Avence, of Betony, and of Rosemary. The oyles are these, oyl of Lillies, of Rue, and of Bayes. Item, the juyce of Gentian and of other rootes which are described in the twelfth chapter and 11. §.

We have now almost written of all especial accidents and diseases of the womb, whereon naturally dependeth the whole state of humane generation. But if so be that this part of the body be not sound, and without all infirmities, then is the humane seed (be it as commodious as it will) neither rightly conceived, nor duely contained: and though it be received and contained, yet doth either a mischance follow after it, or at the least a feeble and weake birth. Unfruitfulnesse ensueth also thereby, as we very largely have shewed in the seventh Chapter before: so that it seemeth not to stand without reason,

that many Philoſophers and learned men have diſputed and concluded: By what means this part once infected might be eaſed and prepared to fruitfulneſſe, to which end it was firſt created, whereof, as alſo of the conception of fruitful women, of their infirmities, of their delivery, and of all that concerneth them, ſhall be ſpoken in this Chapter following.

The twentieth Chapter.

Of all that concerneth fruitful and child-bearing Women.

WHen as in women (as ſometimes hath been ſaid) this veſſel of conception is by their terms well cleanſed and freed of their forementioned and all other diſeaſes, or if ſome diſeaſe now preſent can be remedied, then need not any one in this place take care for barrenneſſe. What might move their terms, is ſufficiently ſhewed before in the ſeventh Chapter, yet notwithſtanding we purpoſe here to ſpeak of divers things which are very commodious for conception: amongſt which the firſt is ſirupe prepared as followeth. Take Madder, Mugwort, of each half a handful, Mints, Wormword, Fennel roots, Squinant, Marjoram, Calamus, Nep, Annis, of each half an ounce, Cloves, Bugloſſe flowers, and Balm flowers, of each three drachmes, Cypres roots, Galangal, Fennel, *Ameos*, and Silvermountain, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cinamom and Raiſins, of each five drachmes, Honey as much as is needful: ſeeth them all together, and make a ſirupe thereof, as hath been taught in the firſt part, the fift Chapter, and 6. §. Laſtly, put unto it Maſtick, Ginger, Mace, Cloves, ſcraped Ivory, Saffron, Nutmegs, *Doronicum*, Zeduary and Baſil, of each half a drachme, and beat them all together ſmall.

The ſecond is a powder which they may uſe with their meat: Take Nutmegs, Cubebs, and Ginger, of each half a drachme, long Pepper, Maſtick and Cinamom, of each one drachme, Galangal two ſcruples, the ſeeds of the Aſh-tree, ſcraped Ivory, Silvermountain, red and white Behen, of each one ſcruple, beat them ſmall, and mix them all together.

The third is this ſalve following, *Gallia Muſcata*, Nutmegs, Bevercod, Hares rennet, and *Laudanum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Spikenard, oyl of Maſtick, and oyl of Mirtles, of each three drachmes, Wax as much as is needful for a ſalve, anoint the place of the mother with it every other day. The laſt is a confection prepared as followeth.

Take wilde yellow Rape ſeed, and tame Rape ſeed, ſcraped Ivory, white and red Behen, Silvermountain, and ſeeds of the Aſh, of each half a drachme, Cinamom, *Doronicum*, Mace, Cloves, Galangal, long Pepper, Roſemary flowers, Balſome wood, *Blatta Byzantia*, Pennitoyal, and Marjoram gentle, of each two ſcruples, Balm, Bugloſſe, Citron pils, of each one ſcruple, Indy *Spica*, Ambra and Pearls, of each half a ſcruple, theſe being mixed and pownded all together very ſmall, take eight ounces of Sugar, or ſomewhat more, ſeeth it in Malmſey, and make an Electuary or tabulats of it.

To help Conception. Let the woman receive the fume of Darnel and Frankincenſe into her Matrix.

Or, uſe a Suppoſitory of Laudanum, or emplaiſtered, or a fume of it, which helps the cold and moiſt Matrix.

To know whether a woman be with child or no. §. 1.

WHen a woman hath layen with a man, if that her places after the action be dry, the *Labra* and ſides of the ſame ſmaller and harder, then is it a ſign that ſhe retaineth ſhe received ſeed, and (if the ſame paſſe not from her in ſeven daies) ſhe remaineth with child.

Item, take Lettice, ſeethe it in water, and let her drink three or four ounces of that devotion, if ſo be that ſhe parbrake the ſame up again, then hath ſhe conceived. Take a ſteel needle, ſtick it in a new wooden diſh, and let the woman make water in it, if there hang a little cloud at the needle, then is ſhe with child. Or let her drink Mead faſting, if ſo be that ſhe vomit the ſame up again ſhe will prove with child.

Another: Take Mace one quarter of an ounce, saffron beaten small one drachm, well water fixteen ounces, Honey two spoonfuls, boyl them all together as long as a buvace a boyl an egg hard, let her drink the third part thereof when she goeth to bed, and the space of three daies together; if so be that thereby she find no other then is she undoubtedly with child: which of these thou mayest believe, experience will teach thee.

The common signs that a woman hath conceived, be these, to wit, when her terms without ague and cold be stayed, for then the blood is divided three manner of waies, the subtilest doth feed the fruit, the middlemost doth by certain veins passe towards the breasts for a preparation of the milk, the grossest remaineth in the Matrix, which will be expelled in and after the delivery.

Item, when a Woman is conceived, then doth she finde great wambling and distempe rature in the stomach, inappetency to meat, vomiting, with other symptomes more, as hath been shewed in the former Chapter, the 1. § of *Mola*. she findeth also com- monly the tenth day great headach, giddinesse, and darknesse of the eyes.

It is also said, if a woman perceive immediately after she hath layen with a man small pain and cold about the reins, that it is a sure sign of conception.

To know whether a woman be with child of a Boy or a Girl. §. 2.

Albeit there be divers signs whether a woman be conceived of a Boy or a Girl, yet are they not so sure that one may stedfastly believe them; for example, it is adjud- ged that those women which bear a boy, have the right breast sooner hard and round then the left, but experience teacheth the contrary, and so it is with all the other signs; wherefore it seemeth superfluous to spend any time in this behalf: but because we are now come to the conception of mankind, we will speak of the symptomes and signs which are perceived in the woman with child.

Of those things which commonly appear in Women with child. §. 3.

Those that have conceived a man child, are for the most part better of colour, lustier, nimbler of their joynts, and lesse troubled in the bearing then of a maiden child: they have also a better appetite to their meat; they do feel the most burden in the right side, in which place they also perceive the first motion and stirring of the child: the pulses be on the right side more swift and strong then on the left. When they rise from sitting, then do they lift up themselves with the right hand; the right eye looketh more lively then the left, and in going they commonly set their right foot forwards. But when they bear a maiden child, then judge all the foresaid signs to the contrary, they are paler, leaner, more pensive, and more troubled in the bearing. The man child stirreth lower in the mothers body, and (as the common opinion is) most of all in the right side. The legs and places do otherwhiles swell. It is also affirmed, that if milk be dropped on her urine, it should swim on the top. Likewise if she bear a son, then perceiveth she on the 40. day the milk to come into her breasts with a kind of tickling. And when she is with child with a daughter, she findeth the same about the 90. day. *Aristotle* nevertheless acknow- ledgeth, and divers more, that this (as we have said before) is not alwaies certain, but with the motion in the right or left sides of a man or maiden child it seldom happeneth to the contrary, as may appear in beasts, which at one time commonly do bear two young ones, as Goats, Sheep, &c.

At what time, and in what manner the child groweth in the womb. §. 4.

Albeit this concern no Physick, but is rather a work of nature than any part of our Science, yet doth our method require that we should shew in what time, and also how the child doth increase and grow in his mothers body.

First, there is also (as hath been said before) a great difference between boyes and girls, to wit, the man child receiveth both form and life much sooner then the maiden child; yet the perfect fashioning of a man or maiden child is in manner as followeth: In the first six daies the seed doth swell like a bladder full of wind, or a windy egg, nine daies after that doth this bladder draw blood unto it, whereby in twelve daies the liver,

the Heart, and the brains are so evidently formed, that they severally may be seen and perceived about the 27. day. It is called of the Grecians *Embryo* or *Fœtus*, that is, a fruit whereof afterwards a perfect man is formed; the other members are fashioned within 18. dayes following, so that the sum of all this time amounteth to 54. daies, in which space the life is for the most part also received, although the child (by reason of his weaknesse) seem rather to be still than to move even to the 90. day. When as now unto this number which maketh in all 135. dayes, it added as much more, then (saith *Hippocrates*) you have the true time of the birth, which is just nine moneths, counting thirty dains for every moneth; but as we have said before, all things are longer deferred with a girl than with a boy, for they commonly be not born before the tenth moneth.

Secondly, some suppose that if a man-child be born in the seventh moneth (as it otherwhiles befalls) that the fruit was perfectly formed at the first in 30. daies, and began to live and move in the 40. But a maiden child born in the 7. moneth receiveth her perfection in 35. daies, and beginneth to stir about the 60. day, and both of them are perfected in a 100. daies: but a man child which hath not been born until the ninth moneth, that getteth his perfect form in 45. daies, and stirreth about the 100. day, is born into the world about the 300. day. But the maiden children are fully fashioned about the 60. day, they stir about the 80. day, and are brought into the world about the 279. day. The cause why men children are sooner fashioned in the mothers womb, is, because the seed and the right side wherein they are conceived are hotter.

Thirdly, we read, that in the first moneth the conception should be nought else but a collection of blood, in the second moneth a forming of the body, in the third moneth a perfect body, in the fourth moneth the nails do grow, in the fift moneth it getteth the perfect signs of a man or a woman child, in the sixth moneth do the veins begin to appear, in the seventh moneth doth the marrow grow in the bones; in the eight moneth are the bones hardned and strengthened; in the ninth moneth doth it get a full proportion of a man or woman, and prepareth it self for birth. *Albertus Magnus* in the ninth book and fifth Chapter *De Animalibus*, sheweth divers more divisions of the kinds, and concludeth with these words following: *That which the Physitians do write of this matter, is not sufficiently approved: and they are not alwayes found to speak the truth.* These are the words of the foresaid *Albertus*. Now that this is true, appeareth by the difference of the foresaid computations. It differeth also sometimes according to the health and debility of the Parent, whereby the fruit of necessity is governed, and is brought into the world sooner or later; wherefore it may justly be said, that in this matter no certainty may be found.

The order of dyet for women with child. §. 5.

WHen God hath endued a woman with his gracious blessing, that in the state of wedlock she should conceive with child, then let her take heed that she cast not away the gift of God voluntarily by some great misdiet, but that she acknowledge the goodnesse of God, and live in such sort, that by her dyet the conceived fruit be not onely not harmed, but cherished and strengthened, and fall not into any mishap or mischance whatsoever. To this end we will at this present prescribe certain rules: first, a woman conceived shall alwaies contend to be loose in body, for the which she is to eat every morning before breakfast some ripe stued Prunes, especially if she be bound. Also she is to beware of all manner of needlesse labour, of leaping, dancing, vomiting, coughing, much venery, and especially presently after meals; also of great sorrow, frighting, fear, anger, and such like. Neither may she bath her self, unlesse it were some few daies before her childbirth, for then is it very commodious, as hereafter shall be shewed more at large. All manner of cold, all kind of stenches, all sharp and bitter meats, as Capers, unripe Olives, Radishes, French beans, Lupins, red Pease, Rue, white water Mints, Pennyroyal, and whatsoever else might provoke her terms, is hurtful to her.

Contrariwise, she may use all manner of wholesome accustomed meat, and drink good red wine, or meerly strong beer, for the red wine is meeter for her than the white. Item, ripe fruits that are somewhat astringent, and that do strengthen the stomach, are very meet for her, as Quinces, Pears, &c. if she desire any other commodious meat, she shall not so strictly be kept from it, but that she may use a little of it at once. But if so be that she do long for some unnatural and unaccustomed meat, then is she

to be dealt withall as hereafter in this next §. shall be shewed.

For to strengthen her, serveth the warm coniection of *Diamargaritum*, for it comforteth the stomach and the Matrix. For the same purpose serveth also this wine following, a little drought otherwhiles taken of it: Take Ginger and Cloves, of each one drach: roots of Lovage, Spikenard, white Pepper, of each half a drach: Comin, Galangal, Annis seeds, of each half an ounce, red Wine three pints, Sugar as much as you please, make Hipocras: If the woman be hot by nature, then do lay that wine with the decoction of Currans: what she ought to observe besides this, may you find every where in the discourse of conceived women.

Of the strange longing of women with child. §. 6.

ALbeit that this disease of this unnatural appetite, which otherwhiles happeth to women with Child, of some foul or unusual meats, as Chalke, Coals, Lime, Earth, Tar, raw flesh, fish and such like, which is sometimes rather an imagination, and an idle or vain conceit of some untoward women: nevertheless the Philosophers do alledge a certain natural causes thereof, and affirm therewith, that this unnatural lust doth also come sometimes upon them which be not with child; yea also that men be otherwhiles plagued with it, although very seldom: wherefore this longing (by good reason) may also be reckoned amongst the unnatural hungers, and may be called a corrupting, as we before in the eleventh Chapter have moved somewhat thereof, and have alwayes hitherto determined to write somewhat thereof. This unnatural longing do the Greeks call *Citta*, the Latinists *Pica* and *Malacia*, that is, a desire of bad meat, and is thus described.

Citta is a bad action of the stomach, wherein the party is greedy to eat unnatural and foul things. The causes of this unnatural desire are very bad humours, and especially *Melancholia*, which lyeth in the stomach, where the same is excitating this unnatural longing. In women with child, the matter of the terms doth cause it which cometh into the stomach; and because the same is of sundry natures, therefore do they also get divers lusts. But in those that be not with child, it doth come through retention of the terms, when those humours happen to ascend into the neck of the stomach, or by the obstruction of the liver or the milt, whereby the said Melancholick humour doth stir up this unnatural longing. The same bad melancholick humours may also be burnt in the stomach, as may appear in the quartain ague.

And for to remedy this disease (especially in women with child) must first heed be taken to their meat and drink. Rosted Lamb, Hens, Pullets, Patridges, and all kind of field fowles are very meet for her: yea also otherwhiles Bucks brains and Sheeps brains, whether they be rosted or sod. Her drink shall be good white wine.

After meat shall she eat rosted Pears, Hasel nuts, Marmalade, confected Pomgranats, and Chestnuts. Give her sometimes also Marmalade with spices, which you shall find described in the last part. Of the confection *Diantha* is every morning about half a quarter of an ounce to be used.

Item, give her oftentimes the *Syrupus de Mentha*. In like manner is good for her the *Mala* of Quinces, temper them both as much as you please, and take three spoonfuls thereof before meat. It is also much advised for this woman that she must otherwhiles incline her self to parbreak and vomit, as with clear warm water and sirup of vinegar, whereof we will hereafter speak more at large, because that women conceived are much addicted unto it. But in case that they incline themselves to vomit, then is their stomach to be anointed with this salve following.

Take Mastick and oyl of Spike, of each a like quantity, Vinegar a little, lay this plaister following upon it, the flowers of Bugloss, of Balm, of Saunders, Citron pils, of each a like quantity, with oyl of Mastick and wax wrought together; or a bag made of the foresaid, except the oyl of Mastick and Wax, and so layd upon the neck of the stomach. But if it happen that they at any time desired that which might nourish them, and that they were detained from it, or that the same could not be gotten, whereby it came to pass that they were disquieted or vexed, then take presently a spoonfull of Hony, scrape a little Nutmeg in it, and so give it her.

If so be that any man, or woman (being not with child) were taken with such unnatural lust, they are to take these things following fasting, as *Oxymel Compositum* two ounces with water of Cipres roots, or the decoction of Cardamom, or take one ounce and a half of *Oxymel* of Squils with the foresaid water: afterwards to provoke vomit are they to use

uſe, this hony water following, wherein Muſtard ſeed, the ſeeds of Orage, or Dill, Onions, and Radiſhes is decocted.

For to purge, take *Pilulas Stomachicas*, or *de quinque generibus Mirobalanorum*, which you will one drachme, whereupon theſe confections following are to be uſed, viz. *Diaplum*, *Diamuſcum*, and *Diambra*. The ſtomach is to be ſtrengthened with theſe things following.

Take Acorn cups one quarter of an ounce, Raiſins with their ſtones ſeven drachmes, Annis three drachmes, *Mirobalani Indici*, *Bellirici*, *Emblici*, of each five drachmes, prepared refuſe of iron one ounce and a quarter, four quarts of wine which is ſomewhat ſtrong, and as much water; ſeethe them all together unto the half, and then ſtrain it through a cloth, and let the patient drink it out now and then in the ſpace of eight dayes.

Item, take Cardamom, Grains, Cubebes, of each alike quantity, white Sugar as much as all the reſt: give thereof every morning one drachme and a half, with luke-warm water, afterwards uſe the foreſaid confections, and anoint the ſtomach, and keep your ſelf with eating and drinking like as is ſaid before.

To help the longing, and preſerve from Abortion.

Re. of the leaves of Angelico, Engliſh Dittany leaves gathered green and dried in the Sun, Harts horn, ana ʒ. 1. Saffron, ʒ. 3. powder them very fine and ſearce it, and with hony or Sugar make a thick electuary, let the patient take hereof ʒ. 1. at one time or two drachmes.

If ſhe abounds with evil humours which cauſes the diſeaſes, you may give one drachme of this electuary with Aloes ʒ. ß. or ʒ. 1. or ß. let her take at night to bedward, for two nights together if need be.

This electuary comforts the weak child in the womb.

Of the vomiting in women with child. §. 7.

WIth this vomiting are commonly women with child oppreſſed, untill that they do begin to feel the milk, and about the time they were wont to get their flowers, or when the childs hair beginneth to grow, then have they it moſt grievous. Alſo it is the more troubleſome, for that as then all ſtrange luſts do come unto them; nevertheleſſe it oftentimes hapneth not long after they have conceived, that they as then are moſt inclined unto it. It is alſo otherwhiles commodious for them, as we have ſhewed before.

But if ſo be that it do get the maſtery, and that thereby the food be drawn away from the fruit, then muſt one do his beſt for to ſtrengthen the ſtomach, & to remedy the vomiting: for which there be many remedies in the eleventh Chapter and eleventh §. deſcribed againſt the debility of the ſtomach, out of which may be eaſily choſen what is meet for women with child, but eſpecially theſe things following be adviſed for ſafe things, as the ſirup of Raſpes, Marmalade, and ſirup of Quinces, which the ancient Phyſitians do ſo highly commend, if a woman with child do uſe the ſame much, then will the fruit be ſubtiller and whiter, Annis, Fennel, Coriander, whether they be confected or not, are good againſt vomiting.

Item, take a hard ſodden egg, and keep it very warm upon the mouth of the ſtomach. For this is alſo paſſing good the ſirup of Verjuice.

When a child is weak in his mothers Womb. §. 8.

FOraſmuch as there is no doubt that the conceived children be alſo ſick in their mothers body, therefore it is no ſmall queſtion how they are to be holpen. For ſeeing all ſicknеſſes are known through feeling and ſight, the which cannot be done by children in their mothers womb, for this cauſe this matter is troubleſome to the Phyſitians.

But amongſt other ſigns whereby it may be known, whether the child be ſick in his mothers body or no, it is the very certaineſt if that the woman with child have her terms oftentimes and much; for that there can follow none other thereof, but a debility of the child, becauſe that his ſuſtenance and nouriſhment is taken and drawn from him.

Secondly, when the milk runneth from women with child, then is it a ſure token of the debity of the child; alſo that the child is not ſtrong enough to draw his nouriſhment unto it.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, if a woman do get a ſtrong ſcouring, then is it ſo much to be doubted of a miſchance, but it dependeth eſpecially on two things, under which all other accidents (be they how they will) are contained, which is heat and cold, by which all the reſt may eaſily be adjudged.

Firſt (for to write of the debility of the child through heat and dryeth) is the mother to be purged of *Cholera*, viz. with this following, and ſuch like; Take conſerve of Prunes without any other addition half an ounce, warm whay of milk three ounces, give it unto her in the morning betimes, and let her faſt upon it the ſpace of five hours. Or take prepared Caſſie one ounce with four ounces of Sorrel water or Barly water.

If you will have a ſtronger; Take two ounces of *Manna*, temper them together in three or four ounces of whay, and uſe it as before. Or if you will you may ſteep in the former a drachme of Rubarb, and wring it out well; or half a drachme of Rubarb beaten to powder given without ſteeping. All theſe medicines be very ſafe for the child and the mother.

Concerning the order of diet, it is to be cooling and moiſtening, as with Lettice, Beets, &c. like as is oftentimes admoniſhed.

Alſo Barly water and Barly paps are to be uſed, the fleſh is to be dreſt with vinegar and verjuyce, with the juyce of Lemons, and ſuch like that ſhe eateth

Afterwards ſhe is to drink every morning a good draught of whay, in ſummer cold, and in winter warm. Or take water of Endive and of Violets, of each two ounces. Or if you will have that which cooleth more, take ſirup of Roſes and of Endive, of each half an ounce; Succory water two ounces, temper them together,

Theſe things following are yet more forcible then the former: Take ſirup of Vinegar half an ounce, ſirup of Citrons one ounce, Bugloſſe water and water of Sorrel, of each one ounce and a half, temper them all together. You may alſo drink one ounce of the conſerve of Violets, tempered with three ounces of Endive water.

The cliſters with thoſe things which force urine and blood, and alſo all things which cauſe vomiting muſt be forborn; But if it be needful that one purge more, then ſhall the former ſuffice. But theſe three things are eſpecially to be ſhunned.

One muſt alſo do his beſt for to defend and reſiſt all bad properties, and to ſtrengthen the ſame, which may be done in this manner following, to wit, that the woman every day three or four times do drink half an ounce of the ſirup of Lemons with Barly water, it cooleth and quencheth thirſt.

Item, take water of Citruls and Violets, of each ſix ounces, water of Sorrel twelve ounces, red Saunders, Roſes, burnt Ivory, and the ſeed of Sorrel, of each one ſcruple Saffron half a ſcruple, Vinegar three ſpoonfuls, temper them all together, and make a cloth wet therein; afterwards lay it beneath on the privities, and behind on the rump. Alſo take then one ounce of ſmall cut Pompeon peeles, oyl of Roſes, and of water Lilies, of each one ounce and a half, ſmall freſh Houſleek one ounce, temper them all well together, and anoint the foreſaid places with it three or four times a day.

But if this debility do come through cold and moiſture, then is this thus to be remedied: Take Bugloſſe water, the ſeeds of wild Saffron, groſſe beaten *Agaricus*, and Hermodactils, of each one ſcruple, Cinamom, Ginger, Roſes, and prepared Coriander, of each four grains, let them ſteep together one whole night, afterwards wring it out, and drink it in the morning early.

Another; Take the water of Feverfew and of Balm, of each one ounce and a half, Zedoaria *Lactiva* one ounce, white Sugar half an ounce, temper them together, and let them ſtand the whole night, afterwards ſtrain it through a cloth, and uſe it as the other.

For this is alſo a good order of diet to be obſerved, wherefore theſe patients are to uſe nothing elſe but that is warm and dry of nature. And ſhe is to boil in all her meats ſage, Mints, Roſemary, and ſuch like, which have no nature of opening. Their drink is to be mouldy ſtrong red wine tempered with a little ſteeled water, for it hath power to ſtrengthen all the inward nouriſhing parts, and all veins.

One muſt alſo deviſe how to amend and cleanſe theſe bad humors, which is thus to be effected: Take Sage water four ounces, *Mirr* of Quinces one ounce, then mix them all together.

Item, take *Syrupum de Adpio* one ounce, water of Balm whereon Mallos is decocted, 3 i. temper them together, and ſo give it her to drink.

A

A better: Take *Mixa Citoniorum aromatica* one ounce, water wherein Myrtle seed is decocted three ounces, temper them to a potion. There may also be used in the morning early for a strengthening, half an ounce of confected Calamus. Likewise *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Rosata novella*, and conserve of Roses tempered with powder of Mastick, and with Mints water being drunken.

If it be needfull for to purge, then is one to use the former purgations without giving any stronger thing. This ensuing is also very commodious: Take the juyce of red Mints four ounces, *Agaricus* one drachme, let it steep together two dayes and two nights, then temper Ginger and Roses therewith, of each four grains, *Manna* half an ounce, let it stand drying in the warmth; afterwards make pils thereof, and use them oftentimes, for they purge the watery humours without any anguish.

Now for to remedy the venemous matter, for which you have hereafter three kinds of applications: Take Roses, Cipres nuts, burnt Ivory, and *Sandaraca*, of each one drach. Rosin three ounces, but you are to seethe the Rosin in red Vinegar un til that the vinegar be spent: afterwards temper the other ingredients amongst it, and make two plaisters of it, one quarter and a half of a yard long, and lay the one behind and the other before upon the place of the Mother.

One more forcible: Take oyl of Quinces, Roses, and of Mints, of each one ounce and a half, Comfry, Bloodstone, red Coral, *Sandaraca*, and burnt Date stones, of each one drachme, Wax as much as is needful for a salve, anoint therewith the place of the Mother and of the kidneyes; both these have so strengthened the fruit in sundry women, that they have fully born the same, which are accustomed to lye in too soon of all their former children.

Thirdly, take the water of Tassel and water of knotgrasse, of each six ounces, water of green Cipres nuts, or their decoction four ounces, the juyce of Sloes, burnt Ivory, and Roses, of each one drachme, Frankincense, *Sandaraca*, and Colophony, of each one drach. and a half, the juye of Quinces six ounces, temper them well, and make a cloth wet therein eight double, and lay it warm upon the back.

Of mischances or untimely Births. §. 9.

THis untimely childbirth or mischance, may befall at any time without any difference after that women have conceived: as when the seed is not yet come to any perfect shape, or when the fruit hath some members, but yet before it come to be a perfect child, or is brought into the world before the due time, being not throughly born, or when it is violently or otherwise expelled. And it fareth therewith as it doth with the fruits of trees, when they begin first to bud and to fashion, then do they hang on brittle stalkes, so that otherwhiles they may be blown off and spoyled with a small wind; but being waxen great, then is there to be come greater force of winds or otherwise before they will fall off.

Lastly, when they be waxen very ripe and seasonable, then do they fall off of themselves.

In like manner doth it also happen with the conceived seed or fruit, which is at the first so weak and tender, that if a woman chance to leap, to fall, or to labour hard, the seed received is thereby divers times ejected.

Wherefore also between four and seven moneths she may purge most safely, and use Physick if need require: for before the 4. and after the 7. moneths must she forbear it (if possible it may be) for then it is perillous.

But to return to our purpose. We have shewed before, that if a woman hath retained humane seed the space of seven dayes, that it is a token of conception; but if it vade or avoid within seven dayes, then do the learned call it *Effluxionem*, which is an effluence or running out. But if so be that they detain it any longer time, and this effluance chance within forty dayes, then is it an *Abortus*, that is, a mischance: and within this time of forty dayes, do most mischances happen.

Thus if a boy be conceived, and void away within forty dayes, then is there none other shape to be seen thereof, but in case it be cast into cold water, there doth it make shew as a small bladder, and making it open, then is the fruit found in it as a great Criket, with all his several members, and likewise also the humane member.

And if a maiden child conceived chance to avoid or passe away within three moneths, then

then can no direction or token be seen, for that it consumeth in the water; but in case that it do come to the fourth moneth, then may some direction be seen thereby, but it soon consumeth and passeth away: for that (as we have said before) the girles receive their perfect fashion much later then the boyes, as also they be born for the most part in the tenth moneth. But when they be now come both into the world, the girles grow much faster then the boyes, and also do come sooner to their time of generation, and leave off much sooner, especially they that get many children one after another.

The causes of these mischances or untimely births, do the learned alledge to be of many sorts, which may nevertheless be comprehended in four principal Articles, viz. of outward causes which proceed of the conceived fruit, when the Matrix hath any kind of disease; or if the humane seed be of no good disposition. Amongst outward causes be these, leaping, running, wringing, and chiefly in lying together, bathes, anger, sorrow, fear, trembling, loud calling, strong labour, surfetting of meat, and diuretical things, as Fennel, Parsley seed, and all other things which expel the stone. All hot spices, as Ginger, Galangal, Cinamom, Annis, and such like. Item, all that purgeth violently, as *Aloe*, *Epithymum*, Coloquint, Scammony, and *Euphorbium*. In like manner all scouring or laxes, the bloody flix, or the flux of the terms.

The same may also happen if a woman have any strange lust or longing, which she cannot come at or get it, and more other such like causes, whereof we have spoken before, whereof it is better to be silent then to disclose the same.

Also the conceived fruit otherwhiles falleth downwards before her limited time, whether it be for that it is sick or dead, for that it remaineth not with the face towards the back, with the hands upon the eyes, and the elbowes upon the knees, as the natural situation of it is.

Likewise also if the fruit through any disease of the parents, be infected whether in the seed or otherwise, wherewith also the fourth cause is approved. But if the conceived seed find any disease in the Matrix (be it whatsoever sickness or disease that it will) then must the fruit inherit it.

This reason following is also occasion of an untimely birth, to wit, when a woman is much and unmeasurable lean, conceiving she will very seldom have full birth; but if the Mother be exceeding lean (whence the fruit must suck and draw his nourishment) then will it be infeebled or diseased, and constrained to passe away, as hereafter shall be more amply said and taught.

Women which be meetly fat or lean, and nevertheless get a mischance every third or fourth moneth, that cometh (beside the former causes) some of slimie waterish humours which fall down into the veins and sinewes, whereon the secundine is fastened, whereby they do slack, are loose, and can sustain the burden no longer, without falling out of the mothers body.

By the breasts may also a mischance be perceived, for that when they be small, weak and slack in women with child, then is a mischance to be looked for and expected. When a child beginneth to come to his perfection, then hath it need of much nourishment. And if there be any disease or infirmity there, then will the breasts be small, soft, and slack, whereof the fruit must pine and dye. Or she will be impatient, striveth and struggleth so long until the secundine breaketh, and the fruit falleth away.

Also if a woman be pregnant with two children, and one breast only (whether it be the left or right) came to be small and slack, then is it a sign of the destruction of the child on the same side.

It is also found that certain women through stench of the snuffing of a candle or lamp, have gotten a mischance. Let this suffice of the mischance or untimely birth: we will now teach how the same is to be remedied.

How a mischance is to be prevented or hindred. §. 201.

We have before shewed that women conceived sometimes do get their Termes, whereby that weak and spare, yea also dead children be brought into the world, which happeneth not without great perill of their life; wherefore we must voice and discourse somewhat thereof.

Firstly, the Termes do come by reason with pain of the back-bone, of the belly, and the privities, which be altogether signs of a mischance to come; for (like as we have said) thereby

thereby is the nouriſhment drawn away from the fruit; whereby it is not only infeebled, but alſo urged to paſſe away.

And to obviate or prevent this, all child-bearing women are firſt to beware from over-hot, cold, and overmoiſt ayr. All meat and drink which be too fat, too ſharp, and too bitter, ſhall ſhe alſo eſchue, as Radiſhes, Parſley, Smallage, Fennel, Peaſe broth, Cinnamom, Saffron, Galangal, Nutmegs, and ſuch like ſpices. She is alſo to uſe oftentimes thick red Wine, but ſhe is to eſchue all great exerciſe of going, running, leaping, accompanying of a man, anger, and all overburthening: and therewith have regard that ſhe alwayes have a ſoluble body, and if ſo be that be wanting, then is ſhe to uſe ſome meat or drink which do looſe the body, as the decoction of Mallowes, or Mercury, or ſtewed Prunes.

Otherwiſe ſhe is to leave all cliſters and other diuretical medicines. But if the body be obſtructed too much, then is ſhe to eat Caſſie wood out of the pipes, or new prepared Caſſie, and that eſpecially if ſhe have any iſſue or moiſtneſſe in the neck of the Matrix; for that the Caſſie doth cleanſe the *Cholera* and *Phlegma* without any trouble: you are alſo in due time to put Rubarb unto it; yet Manna is more commended for it: pownded Rubarb is alſo to be given to conceived women as it is; for ſo it is more effectual then if ſhe took the infuſion only.

Item, if ſo be that there appear in the neck of the Mother ſome ſlimineſſe or moiſtneſſe in the laſt moneth, then is ſhe to uſe all things roſted, baked, and to do ſuch exerciſes before meat as ſhall be drying; alſo take Pomgranate peeles, pownd them groſſe, and ſeeth them in oyl of Lillies, and inject that into the Mother. That is the right mean for to ſtay the ſlipperineſſe of the Matrix.

Afterwards take Maſtick, *Mirrha*, and *Gallia Muſcata*, of each half a drachme, Goeſe greaſe one ounce, dip therein unkembed ſheeps wool, and put it into the places. Hares rennet, or the rennet of any other beaſt is marvellous good for it, whether there be any heat or impoſtume inſtant.

Burnt Ivory and the powder of Zeduary tempered together and ſtrewed on the meat doth alſo ſtay the miſchance.

To this end is alſo to be ſeen what is written before in the ninth Chapter and 3. § of the exceſſive terms, all which is alſo meet for this uſe.

But ſhe may uſe theſe things following, as the confection of Pearls, of which *Avicen* deſcribeth alwaies to eat one tabulat before meat and thereupon to drink a good draught of Wine, as ſhe may do it very commodiouſly between both meal-tides twice or thrice a day.

Secondly, take the water of Mints, of Daiſies, and water wherein Cypres nuts be decocted, of each one ounce, Sugar half an ounce; drink this early in the morning all together at one draught, whether it be cold or warm.

Thirdly, take crap'd Ivory, red and white Coral, Maſtick, Mints, the inward red peeles of Cheſtnuts, Acorns, Mirtle ſeed, and Cypres nuts, of each half a drachme; make pils thereof with the juice of Comfrey, whereof three are to be taken in the morning with the foreſaid water before meat, and that afterwards ſhe hath taken one of the foreſaid tabulats.

Fourthly, take Cypres nuts, pownded Gals, Mirtle ſeed, juice of Sloes and *Hypociſtis*, of each half a drachme, Bloodſtone, Amber, Dragon blood, and fine Bolus, of each one drachme and a half, refuſe of Iron which hath been long decocted in vinegar, half an ounce, the innermoſt red peeles of Cheſtnuts one ounce, three or four whites of eggs, pownd all that is to be pownded, and rub it all together a long time in a leaden mortar, then anoint therewith the whole belly from the navel to the privities four times a day.

Fifthly, make this plaiſter enſuing; Take Dragagant and Gum, both of them roſted, and *Bdellium*, of each one quarter of an ounce, the juice of Sloes, Frankincenſe, *Hypociſtis* and *Sandaraca*, of each one drachme, fine *Bolus* and Dragon blood, of each one quarter of an ounce, Wax half an ounce, Paper gleu diſſolved in red vinegar two ounces, make a plaiſter thereof, and lay upon the privities, let it lye ſo, and if the ſame muſt be taken off for any certain cauſe, then lay it on again by and by; and if there be too little Wax and oyl of Maſtick, then take as much as is needful for it.

Another. Take Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Dragon blood and fine *Bolus*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Comin 3. drachmes, Pitch one ounce and a half, three ſmall Cypres nuts,

nuts, Wax and oyl of Maſtick, as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter; ſpread them on a cloth, and uſe it as is ſaid before.

Make alſo this ſalve following: Take oyl of Nuts four ounces, Barrowes greaſe one ounce and a half, three ſmall Cypres nuts, Maſtick one drachme and half, let them ſeeth ſoftly the ſpace of five hours, and therewith anoint the place of the Matrix, which is between the navel and the privities, and behind upon the back over againſt it.

It is alſo written, that it is wonderful good to wear alwayes a Diamond on the finger.

Item, if a woman with child be burthened with an Ague, and that a miſchance be doubted, then take Barley meal, the juice of Sloes and of Honſleek, as much as you pleaſe, make it to a plaiſter with vinegar, and then lay it oftentimes upon the belly: this plaiſter is alſo to be laid upon the liver. In caſe that now the woman with child be aſſailed with pricking, then have you before in the ſecond Part, the fourth Chapter, and 12. §. how that might be remedied: ſtamped Crabs, the juice thereof wrong out, and tempered amongſt womans milk; it defendeth alſo the untimely birth of women, and it is ſaid that it is a ſure remedy for it.

If ſo be that a miſchance be feared through much wind, then give one drachme of good Mithridate with the water wherein Comin hath been decocted, twice a week; for thereby the fruit will be preſerved and retained.

Theſe confections or tabulats following are to be uſed: Take Pearls and *Pyretrum*, of each one drachme, Ginger, Maſtick, of each half an ounce, Zedoary, *Doronicum*, the ſeed of Smallage, Caſſie wood, Cardamom, Nutmegs, Mace and Cinamom, of each one quarter of an ounce, red and white Behen, long and black Pepper, of each three drachmes, ſaffron one drachme, Sugar eighteen ounces or leſſe, decocted with the water of Bugloſſe, or water of Mints.

To prevent Aborſion.

TAke the skin of a Snake which is found in hedges, which the Snake ſlippeth, and put it into the Matrix, or dip the ſame skin in the juice of Quinces, and ſhe will not miſcarry, it being applyed to the Matrix. And let her eat of *Spodium* and Zedoarie.

Or let her take of my Electuary mentioned in the end of the 6. Section of this Chapter.

Alſo ℞. of barley meal, juice of morel, juice of Houſleek and vinegar, and therewith make a plaiſter, and apply it to the belly, and remove it often; and this will keep the child from the Fever in the womb, and put of it upon the liver part of the woman; this will keep the child.

How a dead child is to be expelled out of his mothers womb. §. 11.

OF this we will firſt have remembred all that is deſcribed before in the 19. Chapter, and 14. §. of the unnatural excreſcence *Mola* in the Matrix, whereof that in the ſecond § of provoking the terms, and before of the miſchances, and all that is diſcovered of the preſerving of the birth, is alſo meet for the expulſion or delivery of a child, ſo that between theſe is none other difference then that this following is ordained rather for perfect children, of which women do commonly lye in within five or ſix moneths. Now for to prevent the ſame, are theſe remedies following commanded to be preſently uſed, but firſt of all you muſt know whether the child be dead or not, to the end there be not a ſick child expelled for a dead child; the which is to be known by this, and eſpecially if it hath been dead two or three dayes. Firſt, the mother doth get a great pain in the finews of the eyes, which be *Optici nervi*. Secondly, ſhe doth alſo feel pain behind in the neck, ſtretching downward along the back bone, becauſe that the Matrix is faſtened unto it. Thirdly, ſhe doth feel great anguiſh and pain beneath. Fourthly, if a woman lye from one ſide unto another, then doth the burthen alwaies follow towards the lower ſide, which is of all other a ſure token of a dead child, and that the ligament of the ſecundine have no more force to hold the dead fruit in one place. Fifthly, there is a great pain about the privities, and over all the neck of the Matrix. Sixthly, the thickneſſe of the belly which was above is wholly ſunken down. Seventhly, they do feel continually a cold about the privities. Eighthly, if one hold a warm hand long upon the belly and feel

no ſtirring, then it is a ſure token that the child is dead. Theſe be now the ſigns of a dead child before it begin to putrifie.

When it hath been dead three dayes, then beginneth it to ſtink; the woman is full of agues, and getteth a ſtinking breath; out of the Matrix runneth a foul ſtinking matter; the belly will be heavy, and ſtinking winds, which do ariſe in the mother, cauſe ſwelling thereof: and laſt of all, there will be foul and ſtinking peeces of fleſh expelled through the neck of the mother. When all theſe things be ſeen, then hath a Phyſitian none other thing to do but to drive out the dead child. It is alſo needful before all other things, to preſerve and ſtrengthen the heart from all filthy ſtenches, which may be brought to paſſe with this powder following, taking the ſame oftentimes with broths, for that it ſtrengtheneth the vital ſpirits, and alſo the heart: it doth alſo withſtand the aſcending vapours.

Take white *Diptamus* one drachme and a half, Citron peeles, and the peeled ſeeds of the ſame, of each half a drachme, prepared Pearls four ſcruples, prepared Coriander one ſcruple, Roſes two ſcruples, Sugar two ounces and a half; temper them all together to powder, and uſe thereof about one quarter of an ounce at once. Or take this following; Take white *Diptamus* and Zeduary, of each one ſcruple, prepared Pearls, and *Species de gemmis frigidis*, of each half a drachme, mix them together, and give it her to drink at thrice; it withſtandeth all ſtenches that they infect not the heart. The fine Treacle doth alſo drive dead children out of the mothers bodies.

In like manner alſo the juice of Vervein, or the herb ſtamped and drunken with wine, driveth forth alſo the dead fruit; ſo doth Hyſſop alſo.

Take *Trochiſcos de Gallia* one drachme, give it with ſmall white Wine, they expel the dead child and the ſecundine, and make an eaſie birth. Item, take the innermoſt skins of the mawes of Hens or of Capons, waſh the ſame in Wine, dry them, and pownd them to powder, give one drachme or one drachme and a half thereof with a draught of Wine, or with ſome broth, or with Roſe water. Or take Betony and Rue with the roots, of each one handful, pour thereto one ounce of the juice of Salomons ſeal, white Wine one pint; let it ſeeth well, then ſtrain it through a cloth, and ſo give it her to drink. Seeth Juniper berries in Honey, temper ſome wine with it, and ſo drink it together. Another; Womans milk drunken ſhould alſo expel the dead child: likewiſe alſo the precious ſtone *Jaſpis*. This is a common medicine which followeth hereafter: Take *Borax* one drachme and a half, Cinamom and Saffron, of each one ſcruple, ſtamp them together, and give it with ſweet Wine or Mugwort water to drink, it helpeth much to bear eaſily.

It is alſo ſaid, that Linſeed paſſeth all things to make women to be eaſily delivered, for if they drink the water which is decocted therewith, and put the ſame with cloathes beneath into the body, or bathe therein, then muſt the dead fruit avoid. Or take *Myrrha* as much as the quantity of a haſel nut, ſtamp it, and give it with Wine, or with water of Mugwort; the ſame expelleth much, whether that the child be dead or alive. The ſame doth alſo dogs milk tempered with hony. Item, take one ounce of Goats milk, diſſolve therein two ſcruples of *Galbanum*, and ſo give it; it expelleth marvelloully. Or if the woman be ſtrong, then give her as much of the juice of Garlick as will go into half an eggſhel with wine or hony. If from a woman through frighting or otherwiſe the child avoid, then take a Crab, ſtamp it, and wring out the juice, and then temper it with the water of Mugwort, and ſo drink it.

For pils; Take *Trochiſcos de Myrrha* one ſcruple, *Galbanum* half a ſcru, plenifie five pils thereof with Pennyroyal water. Another; Take the fruit of the Savine tree one quarter of an ounce, *Aſſa fœtida*, *Ammoniacum* and Madder, of each half a drachme; make eleven pils thereof, then take thereof at each time one, and that thrice a day.

For to uſe outwardly, take theſe things following; fume the woman beneath with the horn of the Aſſes foot, which hath an hidden nature for to expel the fruit; but if ſo be that one can get no horn of the Aſſes foot, then is horn of a horſes foot to be burnt. The ſame operation hath alſo the ſeed of *Baſilicum*, if it be fumed and received beneath: likewiſe alſo the fume of *Laudanum*; or take *Myrrha*, *Galbanum*, and Bevercod, of each a like quantity.

One may alſo hold before the privities Swines bread, or cotton wool made wet in the juice of the ſame: and to put it before into the body is alſo marvellous good for this purpoſe. Item, take black Hellebore, Licebane, Hartwort, Coloquint and *Ammoniacum*, of each

one

one quarter of an ounce, Oxe galls one ounce: the Gum is to be dissolved in the water of Mugwort, afterwards temper the rest sodden well amongst it; Or take *opopanacum* and Mugwort, of each a like quantity, and make a plaister thereof with the juyce of Mugwort; if it be too soft, then put a little wax unto it, and so lay it warm upon it.

Out of all these forementioned things may you also make pessaries, and put them in the body before. For this is also good the plaister *de Galbano*, whereof there be two kinds in the nineteenth chapter, third §. Another; Take unkemned sheeps wool, spread it with Butter and Hony upon it, and apply it. Some do advise to hold a Snakes skin to the privities, for they say when it beginneth to warm, that nature will cause the dead fruit to follow presently.

For this are also baths prepared; Take Mints ten handfuls, seethe it in sufficient water, and sit therein up to the navel; this worketh marvellously, especially if thereupon be laid the juyce of Swines bread as is before said; likewise doth also drive out a dead child, the plaister *de Radicibus* layd upon it, and the decoction of Garlick.

℞. of Polipodium, Mallow leaves, seethe them and apply them warm to the Mother part, then seethe Artimesia and apply it to the navel, and as far as the Mother part and upon her thighes, and she will forthwith be delivered, if it be of a dead child, but let it not lie too long lest the mother follow it. Or rost leek leaves in the embers and apply it warm to the navel, but let it not lye too long.

Or let her drink the juyce of Leeks two spoonfuls, and she will be delivered speedily, and bring away the secundines.

If the child be dead, let the woman drink dogs milk with Hony and wine, and she will soon be freed.

Or seethe Savory in wine and drink it. Or drink Vervein with water or wine, and it will cast out the dead child.

Or put a Partridg Egg in the mother and it will make it larger. Also sow-bread which way soever it be used expels the dead child and secundines.

Or let the Midwife dip her hand in the oyl of Peter, called *Petroleum*, and put it into the mother part, and annoint the inner part with it, and it will bring out the dead child or after birth. And cause sneesing with powder of Pepper.

Use the electuary mentioned in the end of the 6. §. of this chapter. It will also help the throwes, and mitigates the paines after birth being taken in white Wine warm.

A preparative for an easie child-birth and delivery. §. 12.

ALl creatures have their certain time of bearing except woman onely, for that women may be delivered of a child in the seventh or eighth moneth, also in the ninth and tenth moneth, as we have sufficiently written before: yea it hath been also found that they have deferred both to the eleventh moneth, and also sometimes to the twelfth moneth.

It is also read of a woman that happened to lie in of a child in the thirteenth moneth after that she had conceived: yet it oftentimes cometh to passe that they be deceived in their reckoning: therefore it is not needful to dispute much of the time, for when the fruit is ripe (as is commonly said) then doth it fall off. Our purpose is here onely to discourse and shew through what meanes a fruitful woman is to be prepared, for to bear easily and with small pain. For because that on the child-birth dependeth the maintenance of humane kind, and that women in their child-birth are to expect all sundry mishaps, therefore have many famous Physitians thought thereon, and diligently studied, how fruitfull women might be prepared unto their child-birth, and therefore have described these notable meanes: first, how the obstruction is to be opened, and how the paines are to be provoked. Afterwards if a child in necessity of birth, or delivery chance to dye, how the same shall be expelled, whereof also hath been spoken in the former 11. § and of other accidents more which are to be exepected after child-birth.

When as now the time of child-birth is at hand, and that a woman is almost past her reckoning, then is she to eat and drinke well without excesse, and to use such meats which might nourish well: viz. good Mutton, Veale, Hens, and Capons: all kind of field fowle, Eggs, good broths, with spices, as with Cinamom, Saffron, &c and to drink good wine. But she must especally take care, that she alwayes have an open body: therewith is she to bath certain dayes together in this bath following: take Hollihock roots with the leaves

two M. Mallowes and Betony of each one M. Mugwort, Marjoram, Mints, and Camomill, of each half a M. grosse beaten, Linseed two M. make two baggs thereof, and seethe them in a great kettle with water: afterwards let it be meetly cold, and then set the woman in it: the one bag must lye behind upon her back, and she must sit upon the other, or hold it upon the Navell, after bathing take oyl of sweet Almonds, of Lillies, and of Violets, of each half an ounce, Linseed, Hollihocks roots, Fenegreek, Butter, and Hens grease, of each one quarter of an ounce, Quince kernels, and Dragagant, of each one ounce, you are to stamp the seeds, and cut the rootes: afterwards seethe all together in rain water, and take out the muscilage, temper the same with oyl, then let the powdered Dragagant, and Hens grease seethe so long until the muscilage be consumed, and then make a salve of it: with this salve are you to annoint warm beneath the whole back, both the sides, and all the whole belly, even to the privities.

Another: Take oyl of sweet Almonds, of Lillies, and of Violets, of each half an ounce, Ducks and Hens grease, of each three drach. white Wax as much as is needful: but if these salves cannot be gotten, then is oyl of Lillies alone to be used in their stead.

Also this ensuing may be prepared. Take the muscilage of Linseed, and of Hollihock roots, fresh Butter, the grease of Hens, of Geese, and of Ducks: oyl of Lillies, and of sweet Almonds, of each half an ounce: let them melt by the fire and temper it well together. Or take Hollihock rootes with the leaves one handful, cut it small; Venice soape one ounce and a half, and one pot of good fresh beer, let it seethe together unto the half, then will there be a Salve of it: with this foresaid salve is the woman to be annointed about her privities 5. or 6. weeks before her time, every day after bathing. These and such like meanes do open and soften the obstructions of the Matrix; so that thereby in necessity of birth, the throwes will not be so great, nor yet any thing like so painful.

When as now the time of childbirth and the throwes be instant: then may one chuse of these things following, that which according to the importance of the cause is supposed to be most requisite, first of all outwardly. There be sundry famous Physitians which account it greatly available to hold certain things before the privities, or bind the hip, with many strange ceremonies more, which are therewith to be used. But if these kinds of things happen with misbeelef, and that amendment be found thereby, then may they be taken for approved. Amongst the same things which seem also to be like unto truth, are Agrimony with the roots holden before the *Matrix*, and immediatly after birth to cast it away, to the end that the *Matrix* be not drawn down. Also Swines bread bounden upon the thighs. Item, Henbane roots, roots of Polypody, and of *Bistorta*, should also be very good for it; but what Loadstone, Smaragde, the Eagles head, and Corall, and chiefly if with the end wherewith it hath stood fast, it shall be turned toward the *Matrix* (may well help for childbirth: I cannot comprehend nor understand it: therefore each one may hold and censure the same as he list. That which followeth hereafter, is more like to be true. Take the roots of Polipody, and Mallowes, of each one handful, cut them small and seethe them very mellow, and lay them warm upon the privities; put also as much Mugwort unto it, whereof a woman shall presently fall in labour, and after delivery, it is immediatly to be taken away. The common people do commend to lay pownded Bayberries upon the navel. For to further birth thereby, to take inwardly is much praised in time of this great need, the rinds of Cassie, the uttermost being black scraped off, the weight of three quarters of an ounce, and beaten very small, given to women in red Wine, or with the decoction of red Pease. Item, Saffron drink with wine helpeth also much to very speedy birth, and to diminishing of the pain, the same doth also Cinamom drunken with wine. Item take Boreas and Cassie pipes scraped well, stamp them very small, and temper them, and give thereof one drachme, or one drachme and a half, it is very forcible. There is also good for this that which is described in the 191 chapter and 2. §. for preferment of the terms, like as is also that which is discovered for the expusion of a dead child. Item, take Hony one spoonful, put two spoonfuls of water unto it, and give it to drink, Fenegreek decocted with Hony is also very good for it: in like sort do the common people commend for it very highly the decoction of red Pease, or Cicers drunken. Take also Bevercod, *Asarabacca*, of each one drachme pownded small, and give it with the decoction of red Peason. In this manner also may be used the seed of Silvermountain.

This ensuing is commended for a forcible and sure powder meet for this purpose. Take good Cinamom and Myrrhe, of each half a drachme, give it with small White wine,

if

it is especial good if a woman have once sneezed, or hath once vomited.

Take Cinamom one drach. Saffron half a drach. Cassie wood, and straped Cassie pipes, of each two scruples; stamp it very small, and give it 4. or 5. times with the decoction of red Peason. Or take Myrrhe, Bevercod, red Storax, of each half a scruple, Cinamom and Savine tree, of each half a scruple, give it so unto women to drink, or make pils thereof: this is commended above all other things; as this also following is: Take *Myrrhe*, roots of *Cyprus*, and red Storax, of each half a drach. *Ammoniacum*, Savine tree, of each half a drachme; stamp them very small, and give it three or four times with the decoction of red Pease: of this also may you make pils.

For this is also good *Trifhera magna* one drachme, or one drachme and a half; for it maketh women not unfruitful, as some women do falsly report, but doth advance fruitfulnesse. Some do advise, when a woman is past her time, that her mother vein or *Sciatica* upon the foot is to be opened, for that the birth will thereby be the easier, and it cleanseth the child; but how far this is from the opinion of the ancient Physitians, we have sufficiently declared before.

Other do advise to seeth a Swallows nest in water, and strain it through a cloth, and then to take four ounces thereof, it will accelerate the birth. The fume also of a Mules foal, of Comin, of Colewort stalks, of Myrrhe, of Mirtle, of Steeres gall (which one will) received beneath, but above all Bevercod, and *Assa fœtida*. Some say, that one should give one spoonful or twain of the juyce of Sloes, and alledge also therewith, that it is not to be taken but when a child is ready to be delivered. But we have here many better and more apparant things.

To cause easie birth, and to make the child dead or alive to come forth.

TAke roots of *Aristolochia rotunda*, of Dittander, of each a drachme; drink it in warm white Wine.

Or else take of our Antidote against the Plague two drachmes; this is approved: use it if need be every day. Or let her take a pessary or mother suppository made of the root of Madder.

When the throwes do not continue in women bearing. § 13.

ALL that hath a strong odoriferous savour, as *Muscus*, and such like, is to be kept from women with child, and to be taken away, for that it doth hold back the throwes, and hindereth the birth or delivery. But for to advance birth, take Betony three handfuls, Mugwort one handful, Camomil, Pennyroyal, and Hyssop, of each one handful, Linseed grosly beaten two handfuls, cut all the herbs and fill a bag with it, let it seeth well in wine and water. This being done, then foment with this decoction the privities with a sponge five or six times, afterwards anoint the place with the oyl of Wal-flowers into the neck of the mother, if so be that the same can be conveniently done by the Midwife, whereby the woman will be stronger, and the birth be advanced, especially if the child be rightly placed.

And if so be that this will not yet help, then make this potion following, and give her thereof a good draught every two hours: Take Betony one handful, Mugwort, pennyroyal, and Hyssop of each half a handful, a pint of Rhenish Wine, or somewhat more: let them seeth together until about the fourth part be consumed: strain it, wring it out, and put unto it half a drachme of Saffron. Amongst each draught is to be put half a drachme of this powder following; Take of the black scraped Cassie pipes one drach. and make a subtile powder thereof, in like sort have you yet more before.

This following will be also much commended; Take white beaten Amber half a drachme, and give it with the water of Lillies, or with the decoction of red pease: it quickeneth mightily the throwes. It doth also chance sometimes that the throwes do avoid at the mouth; for which, take three or four skeanes of boyled warm linnen yarn, and let the woman with child receive this vapour; for thereby will the throwes fall downwards: every one may conceive thereof what he list, it is very like a grosse medicine for clowns.

Of the perillous and hard Childbirth in general. §. 14.

IT is known to all the World more then sufficiently, how hard and sowr that some women lye in labour, before that they can avoid the child and secundine; so that it happeneth otherwhiles that young and strong women do die with the fruit. These perils have many occasions, so that otherwhiles the women themselves, or the child be a cause thereof. Such anguish may also proceed from the Matrix, or from the neck of the same. In like manner the same may be well caused through some obstruction of the Matrix, or through any other disease, as an impostume and such like, in the foresaid parts; this also may be brought to passe through the rudenesse and unhandsomnesse of the Midwife. When as these foresaid reasons be declared, then may the cause easily be adjudged of this grievous and perillous childbirth.

If the disease be of the woman, then hath she had a great former sickenesse, or she is diseased through hunger; she may be also too young, and have conceived before the due age; or she may be too old, or not have born before at any time, in which the places will be hardly opened; also if a woman be dismayed, or never wont to bear child, be also too fat of body, and is overcooled, then can she hardly be delivered of the child.

Secondly, the fruit it self may cause also a grievous labour, like as is said (yet without foundation) that boyes be easier born into the world then girles. Item, if the child be too grosse of body or head, and therewith be very small and weak, that through his feebleneſse it cannot help it self to the birth. Item, if the child be dead, have two heads, or the like double members. Item, if the child with his hands and feet, and not with the head, doth lie in the birth place like as behooveth, and as is natural. Further, the Matrix may be by nature too narrow or too dry, so that with no moisture the passage can be made slippery. Item, if the woman before in the neck of the Matrix have had any exulceration, whereby the muskles could not stretch abroad, or that as yet there be some ulcer in the neck of the mother: or if it cometh by the secundine, then is the same so thick and so strong that it will not break. This grievous and very hard labour may also be caused by the stopping of the body.

If now this heavy labour do proceed of the forementioned diseases, sicknesses, hunger and such like outward causes, that may be very well perceived of the woman. The signs of a feeble or dead child are to be found in the 8. and 11. §. But if there be of none of all these signs any instant, and if that a woman is not strong, and that a child in delivery remain in the birth place, and cannot be brought into the world, then is it a certain sign that the after birth (like as is said) is too strong and not yet broken.

Thus be all perillous accidents of childbirth so joyned to each other, that all of them for the most part are cured with one kind of remedy, whereof we have written much before. And because we have especially admonished here of the secundine, therefore doth our old order require, that we should also discourse somewhat particularly thereof. But because nature observeth this method, that it first expelleth the child, and afterwards the *Secundina*, which is the secundine, therefore we will also first of all write perfectly of the child, and afterwards of the secundine, with all which is ordained for the same. Lastly, we will shew and declare all that is meet for both of them.

When a woman cannot be delivered of a child. §. 15.

THe causes of this hard and longsome childbirth are before sufficiently discovered: when as then a child appeareth with a hand or a foot before, which doth happen very seldom without swelling of the neck of the Matrix, and of the parts adjacent, then take Pennyroyal, Mugwort, and brown Betonie, of each a like quantity, hack it all together, and let it seeth in milk, lay it then under her, before the birth, as warm as she may abide it, about the member of the child, the same driveth away the swelling: or set seething water under it, when the child feeleth the warmth, then doth it draw the member back again. This and the like things should Midwives know, on whose knowledge and experience, is very much depending, that very renowned advice which is discovered in the 13. §. of Amber, when the throwes will not continue; also there is laid unto it scraped Unicorns horn. Some be of opinion, that first of all the woman should take a spoonful of oyl, with twice as much water.

Other

Other do also advise, that one should seethe half a drach. of Mace, and so give it: this forceth also the secundine. If that then a child will not frame himself to birth in his mothers womb, and nevertheless the throwes and the right time of birth be instant then take a little Lilly water, and as much good Rhenish wine, and so drink it together, it will frame it self the better afterwards. For this is also good the juice of Sloes, whereof we have spoken before. Another: Take fresh well water, and hony as much as you please, temper them together without seething or skumming, and so give it to drink, this quickneth the throws and pain, so that she will be the sooner delivered of child for that the pain expelleth the child and the secundine. Or take the flowers of Cypres, seeth them in wine, and drink a good draught thereof; this should be very certain, especially if the herbe or flowers may be gotten fresh. Item, take well pownded Linseed, seethe the same in wine, and give the woman a good draught thereof. In like manner may she well drink wine, which is decocted with Plantain. Wine wherein Vine leaves have been steeped, should also expel birth. *Boreas* the weight of half a drach. drunken with wine, is also very advancing for it, as we have admonished before. A stronger. Take Saffron, and Pearls of each one scrup. *Borras*, ℈. 4. give this also with hony water if the throwes come not; but if so be that the throwes be instant, then give it with Mugwort water, or with sweet wine, it expelleth very swiftly. Now for to use outwardly may one chuse out of these things following for a time that which one will, as the seeds of Garlick, Savintre, Mugwort, S. Johns wort, Pigeon dung, the horn of an Asses foot, or of a horses foot, Ox dung, Wormwood and Rue; of all which tempered, or each alone, also to bathe, to make salves, plaisters, and such like. Item, take round Hartwort, Aristology, Savin tree and Cresses, of each a like, stamp and temper them all together with an Ox gall: then afterwards make a great taint moist therein, and put it before into the places, it helpeth much to birth. This following doth also expel a child whether it be living or dead, and also the secundine very vehemently: Take Savintree, round Hartwort, *Asarabacca*, and Dragon roots of each a like quantity, pownd them all together, and temper them with hony: afterwards give to the woman thereof the weight of one quarter of an ounce, with water wherein Lupins be decocted, and if so be that this expel not sufficiently, then take *Opopanacum*, and Oxe gall, of each one quarter of an ounce, Bevercod one drach. give it to the woman to drink with water wherein the Savintree and Fennel is decocted: and although all these foresaid medicines be meet and convenient for to expel the Secundine with them, yet we will nevertheless in particlur as we have promised, write and discourse thereof.

Of the secundine or afterbirth, and how the same is to be expelled. §. 16.

THis afterbirth do the Latinists call *Secundinam* which is as much to say, as the second, because it cometh away after that she is delivered of child, and of such like, wherefore, it is by us properly called the afterbirth or secundine. This foresaid afterbirth or secundine hath this use, to wit, when that in lying together both the seeds of the man and woman be tempered in the Matrix, and become like unto milk, then cometh about the same a caule or velme, which groweth by little and little with the fruit, and is augmented with it. The same is by nature ordained, that the fruit may be therewith, as it were with a cloth covered, enclosed about, guarded and defended, until the day of the birth, which presently after the birth of the child (if all things happen aright) doth avoid; or remaining behind, it bringeth very great peril with it, as we have said before, that amongst other accidents there to follow agues, stinking breath, pain of the head, swooning and such like.

If in case then that these afterbirths do thereby tarry behind, for that a woman is waxen too weary and feeble through the former hard labour, then must some what be given her, whereby she may get some strength, and might comfort her heart, as *Diamargaritum*, *Manus Christi*, and *Diaphiris*. She is also to be caused to neese, and to hold in her breath, whereby the undermost parts of the belly be pressed down, and stirred up to expel that which remaineth. And if so be that the secundine will not follow, then let the woman rest a little, anoint the belly and all other parts about it with oyl of Lillies, and oyl of Eldern flowers: also to keep the belly very warm, and then to use those things which are specified in the delivery of children in the 11. §. and also whatsoever shall be prescribed hereafter. All those that esteem much of precious stones do counsel, that when the afterbirth wil not follow, that then to the woman is to be given of the pow-

of the Aggat, and that thereupon the ſecundine muſt follow. It is alſo commanded to the contrary, that whenſoever a woman is in labour, that then ſhe is to put away from her all manner of precious ſtones, becauſe that they do defer this childbirth. It is alſo ſaid that corn flowers with Lilly water, do expel the ſecundine. We have alſo ſaid before, that half an Eg-ſhel full of the juice of Garlick given with Hony water, doth expel the dead child and after-birth: but this advice may we leave for country people. Neeſing, is alſo eſpecial good for delivery and avoiding of the after-birth.

For to uſe outward things therefore is much commended to make a lee of aſhes, and to ſet the feet deep in them, they ſhould draw the after-birth downwards. Item take Beech aſhes, and pour ſeething water unto it, then let the vapor aſcend from beneath upwards, and the after-birth will follow. Take Peacocks feathers, or if you cannot get them, then take Hens feathers, kindle them, and let the fume aſcend from beneath.

Item take Hollihock roots, ſeeth them very mellow, and then temper it with Barrows greaſe, with Gooſe greaſe, and therewith annoint the neck of the Matrix within. This draweth not onely the after-birth but alſo all other uncleanneſſe: for this is alſo chiefly good whatſoever before is deſcribed for the advancement and lightning of childbirth, and alſo for womens terms.

How that the afterthrows are to be eaſed. §. 17.

TAke Squinant and Spikenard, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſeethe them together with water of Mugwort even to the half, and drink thereof two or three times, it allayeth the pain. Item, take Malmſey, or ſome other good wine, and make a caudle thereof with the yolks of Egs and Cinamom. Or take Saffron, ℥. ß. Mace, ℈. 1. *Triphera magna*, ʒ. ß. take this at two times with warm wine, for this *Triphera* hath ſuch power, that it doth preſently aſſwage the pain. In like manner, this may be anointed in the neck of the Matrix very commodiouſly. Further, you have before in the 19. Chap. and 7. §. of the pain of the Matrix through wind, of *Triphera* and *Philonium*, and preſently afterwards a powder with Turbith. Alſo how this Hellebore is to be uſed, all which things be very commodious for the afterthrowes. Item, take ſmall pounded Woolblade, temper them as a dough, and bake cakes thereof, and give it to the woman to eat. Take good fat Figs, cut them to pieces, and groſſe beaten Fenegreek, of each one handful; let them ſeethe together, and the woman to ſit oftentimes over it, or to foment her beneath with clothes. Item, take the yolks of Eggs, temper them with the juice of Mugwort, and bake cakes thereof, and lay them behind upon the back. The ſame doth alſo Hollihock roots, or the leavs, if it be beaten, and with warm wine laid upon it, and oftentimes renewed.

For the exceſſive flood after birth. §. 18.

FOr this you have before in the 19. Chapter and 3. §. of the aſſwaging of the exceſſive terms of women many kinds of remedies which be alſo very meet for all women in childbed. Yet of the Phyſitians of *Auguſta* be theſe following ordained for very eſpecial remedies: At the firſt are theſe women in childbed (be it what it will) to take with broth faſting one drachme of the ſame powder with white *Diptamus*, that not long ſince hath been deſcribed in the 11. §. Afterwards ſhe is to uſe this coſtly confection: Take conſerve of Roſes one ounce, conſerve of Burrage, of Bugloſſe, and of Baulm, ana. ʒ. ß. prepared *Bolus*, ʒ. ß. prepared Pearls, ʒ. 1. good Cinamom, ʒ. 1. ß. temper them all together. Item, take conſerve of Piony, it cleanſeth after birth. Let her uſe alſo this powder following: Take prepared *Bolus*, ʒ. 1. Sealed earth, ℈. 2. Tormentil, ʒ. ß. Shepheards purſe, ℈. 1. *Species de gemmis frigidis*, ʒ. 1. ß. prepared Pearls, ʒ. 1. Roſes, Coral, and Saunders, ana. ℈. 1. Cinamom, ℈. 2. ß. Sugar, ℥. 3. temper them well together, and take it with Henbroth. This following is yet more forcible in ſtanching. Take Bloodſtone waſhed with Plantain water, ʒ. 1. ß. red Coral, ʒ. 1. Tormentil and *Trochiſcos de ſpodio*, ana. ʒ. ß. ſcraped Ivory, and burnt Harts horn, ana. ℈. 1. Prepared Pearls, ℈. 4. fine *Bolus*, ℈. 2. *Burſa Paſtoris*, and red Saunders, ana. ℈. 1. Cinamom, ʒ. 1. Sugar, ʒ. 6. make a powder thereof or loſings.

Be ſure you ſtop not the flouds after birth, for thereby you ſhall endanger the life of the childbed woman.

Of the superfluity of milk. §. 19.

When as now a woman is delivered of Child, and that the milk so excessively abounded, and ran over, that the child could not sufficiently suck or draw it out, nor were to be found that it might come thereby to clot or to impostume, then must she be helped by drugs, to which end divers be described in the third Chap. and §. 5.

Of divers other accidents after the birth. §. 20.

It happeneth many times that a woman after that she is delivered of child, her legs and feet happen to swell. For this, take Wormwood, Cammomil, Centory, Yarrow, Southernwood, and Spikenard, of each a like quantity, seethe it altogether to a bath for the feet, and use it a few times. In like manner manner you have also before in the third Part and fifth Chapter, in the description of the places in women and their accidents, divers things which be meet for this purpose. Item, take Cammomil and Linseed, of each one handful, put them in a bag together, and seethe them in wine, afterwards lay it over the swelling.

Or take a great Onion, roast the same in ashes, afterwards stamp it to a grout, and make a plaister thereof with sufficient Butter, and use it. These two last things may also be laid upon the belly against the after throwes.

As much as then concerneth the descension of the neck of the Matrix, the unnatural heat thereof, and such like accidents which women in childbed bed be subject to, for that are divers remedies to be found before in the description of the places, nevertheless we will add somewhat more, and therewith conclude.

If so be that a woman with child come to be broken, then take Comfrey four handfuls, beth heal one handful; seethe them together for a bathe for the loynes, and let her sit therein over the privities.

Item, take a long peece of Allume, and put it into the body before, then shall the rupture go together again, and the entrance will be so narrow as ever it was before.

Or take two ounces of Coperas, four ounces of Gals, one ounce and a half of Gum, seeth them together in sufficient rain water, and wash you therewith, but this is none other but as it were a right writing Ink.

Look also further, the first Chapter of the third Part of the ruptures of the Navel, and all that which shall be written of the ruptures, where one may chuse what seemeth best for every one.

The plaister *Diachilon*, whereof we have so oftentimes admonished, is thus to be made: Take Fennegreek, Linseed, and Hollihock roots, of each four ounces, seethe them together and draw out the mucilage, as in the first Part the third Chapter, and 7. §. is taught: put thereto nine ounces of Sallad oyl, Litharge of Gold three ounces, then seethe them together again until the mucilage be spent, and make a plaister thereof: this plaister mollifieth all hardnesse of the Liver, of the Milt, and stomach, and of all other parts. There be also two sorts prepared, which are called *Compositum*, and *Magnum*, which be both also more strong then the former, but they be not so much in use.

There hath also oftentimes been spoken of the sirupe *De Radicib.* the one called of two kinds of roots, which is thus made: Take Parsley roots, and Fennel roots, of each two ounces, let them seethe in sufficient water, afterwards strain them through a cloth, and make a clarified sirupe thereof with twelve ounces of Sugar.

The sirupe of five kinds of roots is prepared in this manner: Take the roots of Smallage, of Fennel, of Parsley, of *Ruscus*, and of Sperage, of each one ounce, seethe them very mellow, and then make a sirupe thereof with 12. ounces of Sugar. Both these kinds of sirupes be good against all kind of Agues which proceed through putrifaction of phlegme and choler.

The fourth Part of this general Practise of Physick, doth intreat of the outward Members.

ALthough the Physicians, and especially the Anatomists do comprehend all other parts of mans body, which be not declared in the former three parts of this Practise of Physick, in this fourth Part; yet will we divide them into principal parts; that is, the Arms and Legs. These be the especialleſt outward members of man, as arms, hands, fingers, and nails: afterwards the Legs, thighes, knees, the shins, the ankles, the feet and the toes. Then be now the diseases which be generally incident to both these parts. First, that which the Physicians do call *Gutta*, and we the Gout, is divided into four principal Chapters, according to the member which is infected with it, viz. *Chiragra*, which is the right Gout: *Chiragra*, which is the Gout in the hands: *Ischias*, the Sciatick: Lastly, *Podagra* the Gout of the feet. Of all which we will orderly discourse and write afterwards of Luxations, Dislocations, Extenuations, Bruises, and fractures of bones, and by what means each disease is to be holpen. Therefore will we in the name of God begin according to our old custome and method, with the highest parts, which be the Armes, and what is annexed unto them.

The first Chapter.

Of the Arms. §. 1.

THese Arms be divided into three parts. First, they have their beginning at the shoulder blade with the Arme pits, reaching unto the Elbow. All which with the other part of the Arms be called by the Grecians and Latinists *Brachium*. The second part reacheth forth unto the hands and wrests of the arms; the third part is the hand unto the end of the fingers.

As much as concerneth now the first two parts. They be subject unto all outward and inward accidents or diseases: as bruises, fractures, wounds, impostumations, luxations, diseases of the veins and of the sinews, and to such like accidents more. All which diseases (according to the quality of the cause) are to be holpen with letting of blood, salves, plaisters, bathes, fomentations, &c. whereof in many places before, and also shortly hereafter in the Gout, and in the Sciatica shall be more ample declaration made: so that at this present it is needlesse to write any further thereof.

Of the Armpits. §. 2.

AS much as concerneth this part of the arms, we have thereof sufficiently spoken before, as also of the veins of the Armpits, and for what cause they ought to be opened, hath been sufficiently declared in the Introduction; we will here discourse of the lothsome stench of the Armpits, and chiefly in hot and fat folks; because that they have also much hair in this place, and be moist of nature; and how nearer that the stench is to the nose, so much the lothsomer is it. This stench is augmented through great labour at hot times, through want of shifting and alteration of clothes, through great incontinency,

continuely, and through some corrupted humours of the body. Which stench if it do continue very long, it is a sure sign of an incident palsie.

That for to remedy this stench, it is behoofull (according to the quality of the person) that the Armholes are to be purged and let bloode, and that they afterwards do bathe in these odoriferous herbes, as Mint, Melilote, Lavander, Irene, and such like.

This being done, the Armholes and the whole body are to be fomented with these things following: Take Annis, Comin, and Roses, of each two ounces, Cipers roots one ounce, Spikenard, and *Spica Romana*, of each one quarter of an ounce, pounded *Iren* one ounce. Seethe these all together in two quarts of water until about a third part be consumed, and then use it warm with clothes wet therein, and keep the body very clean with clothes and linnen. Afterwards use some these things following: Take the litharge of gold one quarter of an ounce, Allom one drachme, Roses and Myrrhe, of each half a drach. beat them all to powder, and wash the Armpits with wine, and then strew the powder upon it: the Litharge of gold doth the same of it self tempered with Rosewater, in like manner also the Myrrhe.

Item, take Coperas one ounce, seethe the same in three ounces of water, let it be cold and anoint the stinking place with it. Take Thistle leaves one handfull, seethe the same in a pint of wine and drink thereof, it taketh away the stench throughout the whole body.

Item, take Litharge of gold one ounce, Frankincense half an ounce, pound them all together small when you go to bed, and temper a little thereof with wine, anoint therewith the place, and then in the morning wash it with vinegar. You may also use for this the oyl of Spike.

And if so be that the humours then be so sharp that they excoriate the place and bite open the skin, then wash it with warm water, and afterwards strew the place with burnt Allom.

Marmalade with spices doth also expel all stench.

Of the Hands. §. 3.

Anaxagoras was wont to say, that men above all creatures were most reasonable, for that they onely had hands. But *Aristotle* contrarieth this with great reason, and saith, because that mankind is the most sharp witted amongst all creatures, therefore hath nature given him hands, which be none other then instruments of a reasonable creature for to use them whereto he desireth; so that these most noble and necessary members be made for to comprehend, to hold, to cast, and to labour, &c. In like manner also through their feeling to adjudge all that is hard, soft, hot, cold, thin, thick, and such like. Besides this, in stead of all weapons wherewith all other beasts be indued, that they may thereby seize upon all manner of weapons wherewith either in time of peace or war to guard and defend the body.

Item, with these hands be all renowned feats and cunning, and also all hurtfull works achieved and brought to passe, as is daily seen. It appeareth also by daily experience, that commonly the right side is more forcible and much nimbler than the left, not that it is in every body, or must be, for that it is oftentimes found to the contray, whether it be through the custome or otherwise, that some do most of all help themselves with the left hand, and be much nimbler and active with it.

Further, the hand is commonly divided into two parts, as the palme, the fingers, and one may if he will accompt the nailes with it. They be filled every where full of sinewes, wherewith they most commodiously and speedily be ready to all manner of actions. Inwardly in the palme of the hand be many kinds of lines or strakes seen, the which like as the *Chiromatici* do say, be signs of good and bad luck or fortune, whereof we will not here write any further, because that these South sayers art is by many learned regarded as lyes, for that they have no foundation, therefore be they also justly to be mocked and scorned, like as they be also taken and acknowledged of all upright Christians to be ungodly, and adjudged to be an illusion of Sathan. Thus may this suffice of the hands.

For to keep the Hands clean. §. 4.

It becometh all men very well, with honesty, that they have alwayes clean hands, and that chiefly when they sit a table, whether it be that they tast any meat, or carve for others;

others; and for to come unto it, the same are to be washed with fair water and Venice sope. If you will make them smell well, then look what is written thereof in the first Part, in the first Chapter, and second §. Or prepare in stead of the sope this: Take a handfull of Hony, two yolks of Eggs well beaten, and a little Rose-water and Lilly water; temper them, and frote them to pap, and therewith anoint the hands, and afterwards wash off with fair water.

Or take the whites of Eggs well beaten, put thereto a little wheaten flower, Rose-water, and Orange peels pownded small as much as you will. The juyce of Citrons is very good for it, and if one cannot get it, then may the juyce of Lemons or Oranges be taken in stead of it. It is also of special good against all roughnesse of the hands, and all other parts of the body.

Or take the water of Lovage, and pownded Angel, temper them together with the white of an Egg, as much as you please of each, & anoint them as before is specified.

For to make perfumed hands and gloves. §. 5.

TAke clean Barrows grease as much as you please, and lay the same eight dayes in water, set on the fire, putting every day fresh water or ice unto it, and wash it well; afterwards five other dayes in fresh milk, washed also daily. Then after this wring it out clean, and put it into a pot, & put Rosewater unto it, the water of Eldern flowers, of Plantain, and of Lavander, of each a like quantity. After wards put odoriferous spices unto it, as Cloves, Cinamom, Nutmegs, and so let them seethe together softly until the water be wasted away. At the last you are to put unto it *Civet, Ambre*, golden water, or any other well favouring things, stir them a long time well together, this salve is also good for all scabbinesse and scurfe, &c.

For scabby Hands. §. 6.

FOr this may the foresaid salve or Pomander be used which is described in the first part, the tenth Chapter, and first §. For this is also very good the Gum of Dragagant dissolved in Rosewater, and the hands rubbed with it.

It hapneth also many times that the hands be full of the dry scurfe, like to that kind of itch which the Latinists do call *Impetigines*; for which this following is to be used, and not onely for the hands, but also over the whole body, whereas is the dry stuffing. Open some eggs, put out the whites and the yolks, the egg shels are to be laid in a cool place where they will not be bedusted, then will there gather amongst it a little water, which you are to put into a little glasse, and to anoint therewith the place that is scabby.

Item, seethe Elecampane in the creame of milk, which is also very meet for this purpose.

Or seethe these roots with Butter and Milk, and when they be mellow and sodden to pap, then temper some salt amongst it, this is alwayes found to be very good.

You have a sure salve for this before in the first Part, the third Chapter and tenth § beginning thus: Take Turpentine, &c. Some do advise to take the Livers of Tenches, and to put the same in a glasse stopped tight and set in a warm place, and to anoint it with the water that cometh thereof.

Item, the juyce which is wrung out of Orange peeles, should be marvellous good for this purpose.

Another; Take the oyl of Juniper, and oyl of Argal, anoint the hands with it and all other scabbinesse.

For chops in the Hands. §. 7.

TAke four ounces of Sallad oyl, or oyl of Roses, Wax one ounce; melt them together and anoint the hands with it. Item, take oyl of Roses, white Wax, Mastick, Frankincense, and Hens grease, of each a like quantity; pownd all that is to be pownded, then temper them all together, and make a soft salve of it.

For

For itchie or scabby hands. §.

TAke three ounces of sweet Butter, Turpentine two ounces, washed together certain times with vinegar; and then temper with it half an ounce of salt, and three drach. of dry Ceruſſe. Item, take a good peece of Rie bread, laying in the space of certain hours in fresh water untill it be well mollified, then wring it out through a course cloth, and wash your self therewith.

This following is also good and sure; Take Turpentine two ounces, fresh butter one ounce, oyl of Roses half an ounce, the juyce of Lemons or Oranges three quarters of an ounce, the white of an Egg well brayed, salt one drachme, then temper them all together with a mild fire or upon warm ashes. If so be that you will have it thicker, then put a little Wax unto it.

Or take the middlemost rinds of the Juniper tree, and Barrowes greaſe, of each alike much: seethe the same together in Goats milk, and salt it well.

Take the oyl of Roses and liquid Storax, of each alike quantity, melt them together: this is especial good, and hath a good savour. Item, take fresh Elecampane roots, Mallowes, Duck roots with the leaves, and Fumitory, of each one handful, Bran one handful, seethe them all together in three pints of water unto the half, and therewith wash the hands. Or take Sulphur vive half an ounce, small bruised Litharge of Silver three drachmes, dried Ceruſſe one quarter of an ounce, Barrowes greaſe one ounce, Camphire half a drachme, the juyce of Oranges half an ounce, temper them together and keep it in a glaſſe.

With this following be many people holpen whom nothing would help. Take the roots of Docks and Elecampane, of each one ounce, Cuckowpit and Comfry, of each half an ounce, Agrimony, Self-heal and broad Plantain, of each one handful, Vitriol half an ounce, Allom and Sulphur vive, of each one ounce, Saltpeter one quarter of an ounce, Roses one handful, Pomgranat pils half a handful, wine and water, of each one quart, sharpe vinegar twelve ounces; let it be all together infused, and then afterwards boyl it; in which are the hands to be bathed every morning and evening the space of six dayes. And afterwards be the hands to be moistened with a cloth dipped in this decoction following: Take washt Ceruſſe one drachme and a half, Allom, white Copperas, and Mastick, of each two scruples, Camphire half a drachme; this being all beaten small together, then bind it in a fine cloth, afterwards steep it in two ounces of Rosewater, and four ounces of Plantain water, whereof we have admoniſhed before and taught in the former 6. §.

As much as now concerneth all itch or scurfe, thereof we will by Gods help speak sufficiently in the fift part.

Of the Fingers. §. 9.

IN the last 6. §. we have generally written of the hands; but now will we think upon the fingers, which be called by the Geeians *Dactyli*, and by the Latiniſts *Digiti*; by nature have all men five on each hand: otherſome six, which be therefore called by the Latiniſts *Sedigiti*.

The first of these is the Thumbe, which is called the greateſt and smalleſt; by the reason of his shortneſſe is he verily the smalleſt, but by reason of his thicknesse and strength is he indeed the greateſt, and therewithall so forcible, that he is a helper to the rest of the fingers, that without the same they be very impotent, because that he lying above the fingers, in holding fast shutteth them up. This have also the most cruel Tyrants acknowledged, who commanded to chop off the Captives thumbes and not their hands, to the end that they might not handle their weapon, nor do any other labour.

The first finger afterwards is called the forefinger, in Latine *Index* that we do therewith shew and point at all things.

The third do we name by reason of his place the middlemoſt, which the Latiniſts partly call *Infamem*: the cause of this name will we conceal at this present.

The fourth is the gold finger or *Annularis*, for that commonly the same is wont to be garniſhed and deckt with golden rings.

Lastly, followeth the small or ear finger. These five fingers have fifteen bones, each three; albeit some do ascribe to the thumbe but two bones. Through these bones and moving of the sinews, these fingers have two small joynts, amongst which the thumbe hath

no

no more but one: all which bend onely inwards, whereby they be meet for all cunning and ſubtile actions. But what miſchances and diſeaſes theſe parts be ſubject to, we will now write and diſcourſe thereof.

Of the numbneſſe of the fingers in part or in all. §. 10.

THis numbneſſe bringeth with it a hardning of the ſinewes, and is cauſed through heat, cold, or drieth; this numbneſſe muſt be holpen immediatly, or the fingers will forthwith looſe their motion thereby.

For this diſeaſe muſt he kept eſpecially a good diet, and firſt of all are cold windy dwellings to be eſchewed, and the whole body, chiefly the hands and the feet to be kept very warm, and then to refrain from all groſſe binding and cooling meats, as old Beef, Skins, Paunches and Sinewes of all beaſts.

Item, all that is dreſt with dough, all fiſh, and eſpecially Eeles, Tenches, and Crabs muſt he refrain. He muſt alſo forbear milk, Cheeſe, and all old baked bread: from all kind of Beans and from cold herbs, as Lettice, Purſlain, Beets, Pears and ſuch like; red groſſe thick wine is alſo not good for him: and if it be poſſible he is utterly to refrain wine, whether it be drunken watered or unwatered. Alſo he is not to overcharge himſelf with meat or drink at any hand. And he is above all to beware of vinegar, and from all ſour things. Alſo long ſleep is hurtful for him, and eſpecially ſleep by day; otherwiſe he may live according to his old cuſtome.

As much as concerneth the uſe of Phyſick, he may take of theſe pils following four or five every day two hours alwayes before ſupper, and to continue this a certain ſpace: take Aloe two ounces, ſteep it two dayes in the water of blew Flower-deluce, *Agaricus*, and *Turbith*, of each one drachme and a half, *Hermodactyli* one quarter of an ounce, Maſtick one ſcruple, Ginger, Annis, Cinamom, and Mace of each half a ſcruple, *Diagridii*, 2 β. then pownd all ſmall temper them together, and faſhion ſix pils of each drachme.

Secondly, take oyl of Myrtles, and of Maſtick, of each one ounce and a half, burnt Ivory, Amber, red Coral, and *Sandaraca*, of each one drachme, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, of each half a drachme, Paper glew three quarters of an ounce, Dragagant and Gum, of each half a drachme, diſſolve the glew in ſtrong red Vinegar, with half an ounce of Wax. When it is almoſt cold, then temper the other ſpices with it, and make a tough ſalve of it, that it may be ſpread on leather, lay it within upon the bending of the hand, and round about the thumbe.

Thirdly, take a piece of Milſtone, let it be through hot, lay it in a great pan, and beſprinkle it with good Wine and ſharp Vinegar tempered together: and do this ſo long until there be about twelve ounces powred upon it.

Over this vapour be the hands to be holden being well covered, to the end that they may ſweat well; afterwards dry them. This is to be done once every morning, and afterwards to bind up the hands in a piece of Fur.

Fourthly, take oyl of *Camelina*, and of ſweet Almonds, of each two ounces, Calves marrow, Badgers greaſe Ducks greaſe, ana ℥ 1. *Bdellium* half an ounce, *Galbanum* one ounce and a quarter, Saffron half and drachme, diſſovle the gum in white Vinegar, and then make a ſoft ſalve of it with Wax: with this ſalve are you to anoint all the hands and fingers morning and evening.

Fifthly, take one ounce of the gum of a Cherry tree, Beverood and *Galbanum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sallad oyl ſix ounces, Calves marrow, Gooſe greaſe, and Hens greaſe, of each one ounce, white Wax one ounce and a half, Saffron two ſcruples *Lac ammi Albas* half a drachme, and *Muſcus* two grains: diſſolve the gum in white Vinegar, and temper the fat amongſt it.

Laſt of all, put all the other things beaten ſmall unto it. When as the patient hath uſed all theſe foreſaid fomentations, ſalves and plaiſters, the ſpace of ten or twelve dayes, then are the hands to be anointed with the firſt deſcribed ſalve.

When the fingers be numbed through bruiſes. §. 11.

THis cure or healing is commonly committed to the Chirurgions: but if the Sinewes be not utterly chopt off, then is there ſtill ſome hope of health. Now for to remedy this, the patient is (like as is ſaid already) to keep himſelf ſoberly, and to beware

of

of much Wine, of Vinegar, and Venery, from ſtirring the bruiſed hand too much, and not to waſh them with cold water, but is to uſe theſe fomentations following: Take a peece of a Milſtone, make it very hot and put unto it as is before ſaid, then cover the hands very warm. This being done, then are they to be anointed with this ſalve being made very warm. Take oyl of *Behen*, of *Coſtus*, and the ſuet or fat of a Lyon, or inſtead thereof mans greaſe, the fat of a Bever, of each five ounces, Saffron two ſcruples, the marrow of an Ox one ounce, pownded *Hermodactyli*, Piony roots, *Serabic* flowers, and Southernwood, of each half a drachme, Wax as much as is needful for to make a tough ſalve. This being done, then be the hands to be covered warm with unkembed ſheeps wooll, and the bruiſed fingers are to be bounden and to be put into warm gloves, to the end they may be kept from all manner of cold. When as this hath been obſerved the ſpace of eight daies, then is the fomentation to be omitted, and to uſe this ſalve following; Take oyl of *Nardi* one ounce and a half, oyl of *Euphorbium* one ounce, oyl of Saffron, and of Pepper, of each half an ounce, *Serabes*, Swines bread, white Pepper, *Hermodactyli*, Piony roots, and Southernwood, of each one drachme, *Galbanum*, *Storacinum*, and *Ammoniacum*, of each one quarter of an ounce; ſeeth the oyl and the Gum eaſily together. When it beginneth to be cold, then temper the powder in it, and make a ſalve of it, wherewith anoint the hands twice a day, and keep them alwayes warm.

Of the Fellon or Ancome in the Fingers. §. 12.

THis impoſtumation which ſome do call *Panaricium*, and we a *Fellon* or *Ancome*, is none other but a ſharp and hot impoſtumation of the fingers, which bring ſuch a pain with them, that the Patient thereby, neither by night nor by day can reſt or ſleep, neither can get any eaſe by any means, until that the ſaid impoſtome be opened.

This impoſtumation is firſt to be remedied with cooling things that do alſo thereby mollifie and ripen, like as this ſalve following; Take the oyl of Maſtick, and untripe Sallad oyl, of each one ounce, cleanſed *Antimonium* half a drachme, prepared *Tutie* 3. drachm. white Wax half an ounce, Roſin half an ounce, the Wax Roſin, and Oyl are to be molten together, and the reſt to be tempered amongſt it; afterwards anoint the fingers with it often.

Item, take Sulphur, Garlick, *Carni*, the ſoot of a Chimney, and Salt, of each a like quantity; pownd all to pap and bind it upon the hand. Yet one more; Take the innermoſt skins of Eg-ſhels, lay them upon the finger, and this former ſalve upon them, wherewith we will commend, and commit the cure of this accident unto the Chyrurgians.

Of the Nailes on the Fingers and Toes. §. 13.

THeſe Nailes are the outward parts of the ſinews, and have their root and foundation, and do grow out of the ſuperfluity of the ſame, which increaſing conſiſteth not at all in the depth or breadth, but only like to hair in the length. *Ariſtotle* ſaith, that the fingers and the toes are given only for a defence: but *Galen* addeth unto it, that they be therefore made, for that therewith all ſmall and ſubtile things might be opened. Theſe Nailes have of themſelves no ſenſe or feeling, therefore do they need no great remedies; and for that cauſe will we only admoniſh here, and diſcourſe of the impoſtumation of the roots of the Nailes.

And if ſo be that there be then any impoſtumation in the roots of the Nails, or there happen any other harm unto them, then take *Sarrocolla*, Maſtick, and Frankincenſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Comfrey, burnt Allom, Hartwort, of each one drachme, *Ammoniacum*, *Myrrha*, Verdigreaſe, and white Copperas, of each one ſcruple; pownd them all to a ſubtil powder, and ſtrew upon it. This powder dryeth, conſumeth all bad fleſh, and it healeth alſo marvellous well; this may you alſo uſe on the Nailes of the Feet.

The

The second Chapter.

Of the Legs and the Feet.

IN this second part of the outward members we will only add and write this, which is, that these Legs like the Arms also be divided into three parts; whereof the uppermost part is the whole hip even to the knees: the second part is from the knees even to the feet: the third part is the feet with all that is annexed unto them. As much as now concerneth the diseases of these three parts, they are to be holpen and healed with the same remedies which be ordained for the Arms. But the Leggs be subject to other more especial accidents, as broken veins called *Varices*, wherewith commonly the thighes, the knees, and the calves are burthened, like as we will admonish thereof in the fifth Part, Chap. 1. and §. 5. amongst other swelings. And albeit that it first of all behoveth to discourse of the uppermost part of the legs: yet will we nevertheless defer it, until that we come where we shall write of the Sciatick, or Gout of the hips, because that we will observe our method.

Of the Knees. §. 1.

AS much as concerneth the knees and other members more, the which have no several description; therewith is to be dealt, like as is said in the Chapter of the Arms: but that only for all diseases of the Knees, the oyl of Tiles is highly recommended.

In like sort also this salve following is very requisite for all diseases of the knees, and of all other members, whether they be bruised through thrusts, through exulcerations, or wrinchings: Take the juyce of Sage, of Betony, of Rosemary, and of Camomil, of each one ounce: seeth these juyces in eight ounces of good Wine, until the Wine be almost wasted, then put pownded Mastick unto it, and Frankincense, of each three drach. and let them seeth again until they be meetly thick: afterwards temper therein one scruple of Saffron, oyl of Roses, of Earthworms, and of Mastick, of each one ounce and a half, oyl of Junipers, pownded Linseed, and pownded Juniper berries, of each one quarter of an ounce, then temper all them together. And if so be that it be too soft, then put a little Wax unto it.

When as any body hath any cold defluxion fallen into his knees, that he can neither go nor stand, then is this following especial good, and also many times approved: Take the oyl of Tyles, and of Turpentine, of each one drachme, oyl of Argal half a drachme, oyl of *Euphorbium* one scrup. oyl of Dill and of Juniper, of each one quarter of an ounce; make a salve thereof with a little Wax, and anoint the knees warm with it.

You shall also find hereafter divers sundry remedies for this in the description of the *Podagra*, and of *Arthritis*, which may also be used unto the knees. As much as doth appertain unto the veins of the knees hath been written before in the Introduction.

Of the Shins. §. 2.

IT cometh then oftentimes to passe, that there riseth upon the Shins certain ulcers which are not so soon to be healed, but continue, and do corrode also hitherwards and thitherwards, and make very great scabs; for which this following is to be used and thus prepared: Take Wax and Rosin, of each one ounce, sheeps suet two ounces, Pitch, and Sallad oyl, of each 3. ounces, Mastick and Frankincense, of each 3. drachmes and a half, washt Litharge of Gold one ounce and a half, Ceruse one quarter of an ounce; let the oyl and the Rosin be sodden together, and then melt the Wax amongst it. When it beginneth to be cold, then temper all the other things pownded small amongst it, and so keep it in a pot. At the first wash these ulcers thrice every day with warm sweet Wine, and then anoint it afterwards with the said salve.

Item, Take Ceruse, Antimony, Litharge of Gold, and burnt Lead, all of them washed, of each one ounce, molten suet 3. ounces, Frankincense, Momie, *Sandaraca*, *Sarcocolla*, burnt Allom, and Dragons blood, of each one ounce and a half, oyl of Roses, and of Vinegar,

negar, of each three quarters of an ounce, Wax and Rosin, of each one ounce, make a plaister of it. This plaister is very good for all depascent ulcers which be caused of a burnt melancholick matter, it expelleth heat, it dryeth, it asswageth the pain, it maturateth all hard byles and pushes, and especially it healeth all ulcers of the Shins.

The plaister *Sparadrapum* is also used for this, which is thus to be prepared: Take three ounces of Sheeps sewet, oyl of Roses and Ceruse, of each one ounce, Vinegar four ounces, Litharge of Gold one ounce and a half, Rosin and Turpentine of each one ounce: let the byl and the fat seethe well together, afterwards put the Vineger and all other things unto it, and then add as much molten Wax unto it as will suffice for to make a tough plaister of it.

This plaister is also very good; but the Patient must above all things beware of overmuch going and wearying the Legs.

Of the Feet. §. 3.

THe Feet be as foundations of the whole body, which also do in like manner divide into three parts, viz. the insteps of the Feet, the Plants or Soles, and the five Toes which be not unlike to the fingers, but that they be a little shorter: and that the great Toe doth shut up and close the rest of the toes, as the thumb doth the fingers. They be very helpful and commodious unto men that they may stand the faster, and the better bear the burthen of the body.

The Feet and the whole legs do otherwhiles get the cramp, or a contracture of the sinewes, whereof we have written much before in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter, 14. and 15. §. They do oftentimes stink very much: and to remedie it there is nothing, but oftentimes to change ones Socks, and to bath the feet in water wherein Nut leaves, Cypres leaves, Allum, and other well savouring and odoriferous things be decocted. You have also before in the second §. of the first Chapter, where is discoursed of the stench of the Armepits, further instructions. For this it is also meet to keep clean the place between the toes, and to use oftentimes warm foot baths, and then to strew burnt Allum between the toes, which dryeth the stinking, and also keepeth them clean.

And because the Feet be much subject to be frozen, which yeeldeth no small hinderance to a body in going, therefore we will discourse some-what thereof.

Hereupon do some lay playing cards wetted, and affirm that they heal this disease in every respect whether it be open or not. Some do counsel that a blew woollen clout should be burnt to powder and strewed upon it. Item, take the whites of five Egs, and beat them in a little Barrowes grease, and annoint the frozen place with it; but I take the yolks to the better. This following is best of all: Take Turpentine, and put meerly much Salt unto it, stir it so long until it be thick like unto dough: after that spread it on a cloth, and lay it thereon the space of eight dayes: at the least twice a day: if it be used immediatly after that the feet be frozen, then doth it cleanse the same, and healeth it presently.

Touching cornes which come upon the Feet, so it is, that in the middest of the same there groweth a small black or white callositie, like as it were a wart, the which through his hardnesse maketh so great a pain, that one can hardly tread or goe upon it. Whereto some of these remedies ensuing may be used: Take the Gall of a Picknel, and lay it upon it, or annoint it therewith. Item, make a plaister of red sealing Wax, and lay it thereon. Others do goe somewhat rougher to work with it, and doe take yellow Arsenicke, which is Orpiment (Copperas, and Allum, of each a like quantity, and temper it unto a salve with hony, and annoint it therewith. Or they do take one quarter of an ounce of *Galbanum*, and let it steep so long in vinegar until it be as soft as a salve, and lay the same so long upon it until the Cornes weare away. But this following is sometimes found to be good, so that the whole Corne falleth away thereby, and is also very safe: Take of the plaister *Diachilon magnum*, and Pitch, which is Shoomakers Wax, of each like much, make a plaister of it; spread it on a cloth and lay it upon it the space of three or four dayes beneath on the plants of the Feet, and goe upon it, afterwards take fresh again so long until they be throughly whole.

You shall find more other good things in the first part, where we doe discourse of them which be also very commodious for this purpose.

The

The third Chapter.

Of the pain in the Joynts in general.

NExt to the forementioned diſeaſes and ſickneſſes which the armes, hands, legs, and feet be ſubject unto, there be divers more and much ſtronger diſeaſes then the former, in the Joynts, which be alſo very needful to be deſcribed. But we will above all diſcourſe generally of them, and divide this matter into two parts; whereof the firſt part is called by the learned *Gutta*, wherein ſhall be ſhewed all the cauſes, ſigns, orders, and other things which be commonly requiſite for all pains of the joynts. The ſecond part ſhall we comprehend under a general Gout, or *Arthritis*, under which is contained all pains of the joynts: for moſt famous Phyſitians do ſeverally write of them, and afterwards we will ſpeak of three other ſundry Species of the Gout, which only light upon certain places of the body, as *Chiragra*, *Iſchias* and *Podagra*.

All ſorts of Gouts may manifeſt themſelves in whatſoever part of the body they will; yet are they ſo like one another, and ſo allyed together, that many learned men have written of them all under one, and have only excepted *Iſchias*, to be another kind: which errour grew on this foot; for that all the ſorts of it do after one and the ſame manner pain all the joynts of the body. Nevertheleſſe, we will as much as is poſſible, and as much as the cauſe requireth, make a ſeveral declaration of each by it ſelf.

Of the Gout in general called Gutta. §. 1.

LIke as we have before admoniſhed, ſo do the learned comprehend all diſeaſes and defluxions which do fall into all the joynts under the name of *Gutta*, which is a paſſion or pain of the joynts which falleth into them and the ſinews of mans body by ſome humours or wind from above, or from the next adjacent place; or which is cauſed through bad diſpoſition of the whole body. This grievous pain may alſo be cauſed ſometimes through a fracture of a bone, through wrenchings, through great ſtirrings with a fall hereof, through falls, blowes, thruſts, through exulcerations, and through great outward heat or cold: by which means all the joynts are weakened. For this alſo helpeth much all cold and wateriſh meats if the ſame be well uſed; as fruit, great fiſhes, and eſpecially if they be without ſcales, ſwines fleſh, water fowls, and ſuch like. To be idle, and to live without any exerciſe. Alſo exceſſive venery, eſpecially after one hath eaten and drunken. Obſtruction of any accuſtomed courſe, as of the Pyles, of any open ulcers, or detention of the Termes and ſuch like, whereby nature was accuſtomed to cleanſe her ſelf. Item, it is alſo found by experience, that ſome do inherit this diſeaſe from their anceſtors.

In fine, there be two principal cauſes whereby theſe kinds of diſeaſes be provoked; as firſt of all the ſhew of theſe defluxions. Secondly, the increaſing of theſe defluxions from above. Thirdly, feebleneſſe of the members which receive this ſuperfluity.

The ſigns of the Gout are manifeſt of themſelves; to wit, if one feel great pain, and that at ſundry times on the places where theſe defluxions do fall, otherwhiles with ſwelling, and ſometimes without ſwelling, and whether this proceed of heat or cold, that may be perceived by feeling. If it then come through any outward cauſe, that may be demanded of the ſick perſons themſelves, or if it come through any repletion of the body, that appeareth by the ſigns of the veins, groſſeneſſe of the body, fulneſſe of the pulſe, ſloth of all the members, by the diminiſhing of underſtanding or memory, loſſe of appetite, and by the feebleneſſe of the ſight. If this diſeaſe be cauſed through blood, then it is commonly in fat and repleted bodies, with pain of the head, with great unluſtineſſe, with unquiet ſleep, with diminiſhing of the underſtanding, with wearineſſe, with redneſſe of the whole body and urine: there is alſo heat with it, panting and ſwelling, and then is the place infected, eſpecially if one have lived ſumptuouſly.

Item, all cold things are welcome unto him, and all warm things painful, and if they be uſed too long, alſo hurtful: Yet this the rather in young perſons being full of blood by nature, and if he dwell in a hot countrey. If this diſeaſe be cauſed of *Phlegma*, or of

of cold humours, then is there neither panting nor great pain with it, but remaineth for the moſt part in one place without removing hitherwards or thitherwards; neither is there alſo any great redneſſe or heat with it, and for the more certainty that the ſame is cauſed through *Phlegma*, if the ſame be ſo found in an old perſon in winter time, after that he hath eaten much cold and moyſt meats and drinks, or hath much and long frequented water. After all warm things be acceptable unto him, and all cold things noyſome.

If ſo be that this diſeaſe proceed of *Cholera*, then is there a ſtrong heat with it, that one can hardly ſuffer it in the feeling, alſo a great pain without ſwelling, with drought and affection. With this will the Patient perceive a bitterneſſe of the mouth. And theſe things will be the rather confirmed if the Patient be young and cholerick by nature, or if it be Sommer time; alſo being hot and dry weather, &c.

This pain of the joynts proceedeth very ſeldom, or alſo never through melancholy, if it be not mixed with ſome ſubtil moiſture, then is there very little pain with it, and alſo little help for it whatſoever is done unto it: for the place of this diſeaſe will be hard, remaineth black without any redneſſe. And it happeneth not but in old folks about winter, &c. If this be cauſed of wind, then is it ſwollen, thick without great pain, which oftentimes removeth from the one joynt to the other, and the Patient hath uſed much meat and drink before which do ingender wind. If there be any humours mixed amongſt theſe winds, then muſt it be conſidered and paſſed upon the forementioned ſigns, whereby will very ſoon be perceived what humour hath mixed it ſelf amongſt theſe winds, according to which every one may know how to diſpoſe and govern himſelf.

Like as then hitherto in divers places certain common rules have been made, ſo will we proceed here alſo: whereof the firſt is; For as much as the Gout *Arthritis*, *Podagra*, and ſuch like, appear moſt of all in harveſt, by reaſon of the fruit eaten the whole Sommer, therefore muſt all fruits be eſchewed. Secondly, for as much as venery is ſo hurtful for this diſeaſe, and increaſeth it very much, the ſame is to be refrained as much as is poſſible. Thirdly, a quiet idle life, and ſleep by day time do hinder that the ſuperfluity cannot be conſumed. To the contrary, too great ſtirring and exerciſe, whereby the members be over-heated, are alſo oftentimes the cauſe of this pain of the members; therefore is the ſame as much as is poſſible to be eſchued. Fourthly, all Wine, and eſpecially ſtrong Wine is very hurtful for all them that be plagued with the Gout. Fifthly, all ſwoning and drunkenneſſe make bad digeſtion, whereby alſo the pain of the Gout is augmented. Sixthly, they that be hot of nature, and addicted to the Gout, are to refrain from all plegmatick meat which is dreſt with ſundry things, and alſo from all meat which doth make *Cholera* and blood, for that when theſe two humours come together, then do they bring groſſe & undigeſted defluxions in the joynts, whereof then the Gout is cauſed. Seventhly, there be ſome through purging and letting of blood that are freed from this diſeaſe, which may moſt commodiouſly be done in the ſpring of the year. Eightly, the Sun hurteth them much that be troubled with the Gout. Ninthly, all great groſſe fiſhes, and eſpecially Eeles be hurtful for the Gout. Tenthly, ſucking Pigs, all water fowls and all Hens are eſpecially hurtful to the lower members. Eleventhly, milk and wine eaten together be very noyſome for all members, and very hurtful for the head. Twelfthly, the drink which is taken without thirſt bringeth much hurt to the body. Thirteenthly, like as great ſurfetting with meat is very hurtful for all the joynts, even ſo doth a moderate eating refreſh them. Fourteenthly, the going too much, or weary walking, and hanging down of the legs, eſpecially preſently after meat, is very hurtful for the joynts. Fifteenthly, to lie upon the back is alſo hurtful. Sixteenthly, anger is enemy to this diſeaſe. Seventeenthly, the great ſenſibility of the joynts, and eſpecially of the feet, cannot ſuffer any pain. The foreſaid 17. rules are only ordained for this purpoſe, to free one from the Gout; but as much as doth concern the means whereby theſe joynts are to be ſtrengthened and preſerved, that the ſame do not receive thoſe defluxions whereon dependeth the principal means to free one from it, are in theſe rules following to be obſerved. Eighteenthly, it is very requiſite that the feet be often bathed in Allom water. Nineteenthly, Sage decocted in Beer, and the ſame drunken oftentimes, is commended, as it were a very good medicine and receipt which hath an ineffable operation in all diſeaſes of the joynts. Twentiethly, Almond flowr, Camomil, Myrrhe, Melilot and Roſes be very commodious for the joynts. *Calamus* and ground Ivie have an eſpecial vertue for to ſtrengthen all the joynts; the ſame doth alſo the Indian Nut kernel. One and twentiethly, Vervein laid upon the feet and ſo worn, is very good for the *Podagra*.

Theſe things following do ſtrengthen much the ſinews. The root Behen and his oyl doth warm the contracted ſinews; in like manner alſo *Bdellium* and *Calamus* laid upon it with oyl of Citron peeles, of Camomil, of Bevercod, Cypres roots, Caſſie wood and Cypres: alſo oyl of *Coſtus*, and ſuch like oyles are marvellouſly praiſed and commended for the ſinews, and Centory in Cliſters. Item, feet water made of the aſhes of a Bay-tree. For a ſalve, the mother of Sallad oyl is good, and the dregs of the oyl of Lillies, and of all other oyles which be warm by nature. *Opopanacum* is alſo much commended, but *Pyretrum* and Pepper above all other to warm the ſinews. For this be alſo dry ſweet bathes good, or natural Sulphur bathes. After purging is Treacle and Mithridate much commended in all cold Gouts, drunken with Wine wherein Sage hath been decocted.

But as much as concerneth the curing of theſe joynt diſeaſes, it is not needful to diſcourſe any further of them, becauſe that we hereafter will write of this matter at length. Therefore we will proceed in the name of God.

An Oyntment for all manner of Gouts.

TAke in the Summer time of all the 3. ſorts of Snailes, and fry them in a frying pan, and thereof make an oyntment to anoint the place affected with the Gout.

Or anoint the place with the juice of Onions, and ſtrew the powder of black Pepper thick upon it, then ſeeth Cumin and Calaminth in Wine, and dip a ſponge in it, and lay it upon the Peppered place, it conſumes and draws out noyſome humours.

Or ſtamp the root of Ebulus with hogs lard, and apply it as a plaiſter.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Gout in the Joynts, Arthritis.

THe ſecond deſcription which ſpeaketh commonly of the pain in the joynts, whereof we have briefly admoniſhed before, is that which the Latiniſts do call *Morbum articularem*, and the Grecians *Arthritim*, which is as much to ſay, as the pain of the joynts, or an inflammation of the joynts, which proceedeth from within the body, and the Tendones be annoyed, hurt and pained. In fine, it is none other than a diſperſed *Podagra* over the whole body: the which at one time cometh behind in the neck, another time in the ſhoulder blades; then again in the back bone, and in the hands, in the fingers, and in the elbowes: the which alſo ſometimes creepeth into the nethermoſt joynts, as in the legs, the knees, in the feet and toes. And although in this diſeaſe, like as alſo in other diſeaſes more, there be many ſundry remedies ſought by many ſundry careful Phyſitians, according to the quality of the cauſe, and place of the pain; therefore is there but one general rule to be obſerved. Firſt, how one ſhall be preſerved from this diſeaſe. Secondly, how that the ſame is to be cured and taken away altogether. And becauſe the time of the year importeth not a little therein, therefore is choiſe to be made of it.

In Summer the matter is thus to be handled. This kind of patient in the beginning of Summer is to be purged with that which enſueth: Take *Agaricus* one drach. Sugar one ounce, Hermodactils one drach. and a half, water of field Cypres 3. ounces, make the water warm, and ſteep the reſt 24. hours in it; afterwards wring it hard out, and drink it warm in the morning, and then faſt ſix hours upon it.

Afterwards is this potion following to be uſed at leaſt eight daies together early in the morning, and to faſt four hours after it: Take one ounce of the hony of Roſes, the water of white water Mints, and the water of field Cypres, of each one ounce and a half; temper them together. He may alſo take to prepare the humour, hony of Roſes, *Syrupum de Stœchade*, and ſome of the foreſaid waters. The ninth day ſhall he ſwallow theſe pils following: Take *Pillularum de Hermodactilas* and *Fœtidarum*, of each half a drachme; make thereof ſeven pils with the ſirup of Roſes, and take them early in the morning.

And

And if so be that one would take no pils, then take five drachmes of *Hieralogodion* and Turbith beaten small, half a scruple, *Diagridion* two graines, Ginger three graines, temper them together, and take it so, or put some distilled water unto it;

Some expert Physitians do advise much to this Clister: Take Ireos, the roots of wilde Cucumbers, field Cypres, and Saint Iohns wort, of each two handfuls seethe them all together in sufficient water: then take of this decoction twelve or sixteen ounces, and temper therewith *Hieralogodion* one ounce, oyl of Rue three ounces, Hony of Roses one ounce, the yolk of an egg well brayed, Salt one drachme, use it once a day.

In harvest is the Patient once every fourteen dayes to take one drachme of these pills following: Take Aloe two ounces, *Agaricus* and *Hermodactils*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Coloquint one drach. and a half, Ginger, Cinamom, *Asarabacca*, Cloves and Mace, of each one scruple, Turbith and *Epithymus*, of each one drach. Saffron one scruple, stamp each alone: afterwards temper them together, and pour sufficient field Cypres water upon it, and then set it out to dry in the Sun. Lastly pour more of the same water upon it, and let it dry again, to the end you may fashion pils of it.

Secondly, there is to be considered how that next after purging, between the spring and harvest, the matter might be derived toward another place, and so to expel it, which may be best of all done by those meanes which force urine, whereto these things following are to be used. First the Patient is to drink about the space of fourteen dayes, every morning five ounces of *Asarabacca* sugered: or in the sted thereof the water of Madder which is better. There is also good for this both these things following: Take Pease meal one scruple, old Treacle half a drach temper them together with two ounces of Smallage water, and so drink it, and fast five hours after it. Item, take *Trochisci de Eupatorio*, half a drach. Gromel seed, Cinamom and *Carui*, of each five graines, *Benedicta laxativa*, one drach. and a half, temper them together with two ounces of strong white Wine, then drink it and fast five hours after it.

All that shall be hereafter mentioned consumeth the defluxions which be still setled in the joynts: then is the place of this disease to be rubbed softly, and annointed with this following, according as the Patient can suffer it: Take unripe Sallad oyl two ounces, well parched Salt one ounce, annoint the joynts very warm with it, and then wrap them in warm clothes. The joynts are to be also fomented with light red wine and Vinegar powdered on hot stones, that they may sweat well. They are also to be annointed with this following: Take *Sagapenum* one ounce, *Bdellium* and *Ammoniacum*, of each half an ounce, *Sandaraca* one quarter of an ounce: the Gum is to be dissolved in a little red Vinegar, and with Wax make a salve thereof.

Another: Take oyl of Roses and of Camomil, of each one ounce, three yolks of Eggs, Saffron three graines, temper them and use them together. After the annointing you are to strew the powder of earth wormes upon it, and cover it close with sheeps wool. Or take oyl of Foxes, oyl of earth-wormes, and washt Turpentine, of each one quarter of an ounce, Salt three drachmes use them as before: You are also to annoint the same places with warm oyl of Roses.

This following is also very highly commended: take Venice Sope 3. ounces and a half, cut very thin, and then let it seethe a waume or twain in six ounces of the water of Fumitory, afterwards you are to put unto it the oyl of *Euphorbium*, and of S. Johns wort, of each half an ounce, oyl of Juniper one ounce and a half, oyl of earth-wormes, one ounce, let it then seethe until that the water be sodden away: afterwards you are to put unto it Masticke and Frankincense, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sulphur vif. *Euphorbium* and *Piretrum* of each two drach and a half; use it as aforesaid.

The oyl of Earth-wormes is especial good for all pain of the joynts and for all frozen sinewes; the which is thus made: Take Earth-wormes three ounces, wash the same with Wine, and pour unto it twelve ounces of Sallad oyl, Wine 6. ounces: seethe them together by a gentle fire until the wine be sodden away, afterwards strain them through a cloth.

For this disease be all warm baths also requisite, and if they cannot be gotten, then are the same to be made by the advice of a learned Physitian, yet the most commodious time of bathing is from the middest of April to the end of May.

And because that these defluxions be more manifest in the Spring and Harvest then in any other time of the year, unto which times we have appropriated all these foresaid remedies: therefore will we now teach what is to be done unto it in winter.

For this is purging to be used again, and that in this manner following. When as September is half past, then are these pils to be taken once in the morning: Take *Pilulas de Agarico, & de Hermodactylis*, of each half a drachme, Indy salt two grains, make seven Pils thereof with the Confection of Roses. The day after is this following to be drunken, the which is thus 8. or 10. daies together to be continued: Take the sirupe of Wormwood, and *Syrupum de Eupatorio*, of each three quarters of an ounce, water of Hops, or field Cypres, of each one ounce and a half, temper them together: afterwards is this following to be drunken; Take the confection *Benedicta* three drachmes, *Indæ* two drachmes and a half, water of blew flowerdeluce two ounces; temper them all together, make it warm and drink it.

Afterwards are the foresaid pils which be ordained to be used in Harvest, beginning; Take Aloes, &c. to be used throughout all the Winter.

As much as concerneth other things, those remedies are to be used which be ordained to be used in Summer, onely that they must be used in more quantity; like as it is advised in Summer to take one drachme, in Winter one drach. and a half, and so also with bathing and otherwise.

You shall hereafter have many sundry things which may be used against the Gout, or joynt diseases, *viz.* Confected Quinces, Marmalade, and all that may be made of Quinces, except that there be no spices with it if the disease be with heat. For this be things also good which shall shortly after be ordained for the Gout *Podagra*. If so be that there be no special heat with it, and that wine may be used without any great danger, then is it his nature that it strengtheneth all outward members, if the same be moderately drunken. Amongst herb wines are these following much commended for it, viz. of Rosemary, of Wormwood, of Sage, and of Clarie: all which not only drunken, but also the joynts anointed with it, or the vapour thereof received into the diseased joynts, do also strengthen the same.

When one is come to his former health, then must one look to it, and also beware and take heed from all those things which are wont to cause those kinds of defluxions into the said joynts. To which end you may look all the rules in the first Chapter, which be described in the first §. Take good Turpentine the quantity of a Bean, or instead of that *Opopanacum*, or *Sagapenum*, which you will in the like quantity.

There is very meet in like manner, if one take early in the morning half a scruple of *Lignum Aloes*, with an ounce of the water of field Cypres. It is also much advised to take twice every week one drachme of good Mithridate, or instead thereof one Mirobalan *Chebuli* chewed and eaten: or one day Mithridate, and the other day one Mirobalan. All these foresaid things be not onely commodious, but also very safe. Let this suffice now generally spoken of the joynt disease *Arthritide*, and we will now proceed with the *Chiragra*.

The fifth Chapter.

Of the Gout in the Hands, Chiragra.

FOr the second sort of the Gout will we describe the *Chiragra*, the which we do properly call the hand Gout. But because that betwixt the Gout of the hands and that of the feet there is none other difference, but that the one cometh in the hands, and the other in the feet: therefore will we here refer us to the Gout of the feet, where we will thoroughly discourse of these two kinds of infirmities.

The first Chapter.

Of the Gout of the Hips *Sciatica*, commonly called Sciatica.

Before in the first Chapter and last § in dividing the sorts of the Gout, and in the description of *Sciatica* in the kind *Ischias*, I have set for the third sort the which of the Physitians that do not well understand the Greek, is called *Scia* and *Sciatica*. This Gout of the hips is a long lingring pain, and especially when it cometh into the bones of the hips; notwithstanding that it doth otherwhiles appear in the uppermost parts, which is caused of a cold moisture that falleth down from above. And because that her grose tough-nesse cannot easily be consumed, but much rather augmented from day to day and made worse, therefore falleth it at the last into the knees, the legs, into the feet, and so out at the toes. The same tough humors do cause also oftentimes through their great grosse, and tough slimigesse, that the hip bones be elevated, although otherwhile they return again to their naturall places, and that when the ligaments of these joynts through this waterish moisture happen to be loosed or resolved, and afterwards wax hard again, and shrink up as before. But if this foresaid hip bone be long elevated, then doth it come easily to passe, that thereby the whole leg cometh to extenuate, whereof then a more impotency or lamenesse might follow; so that this disease afterwards very hardly but by actuall cauterization may be holpen, whereby the matter may be drawn out with cautery, which, when one is minded to use it, is to be done beneath the knees in the Calves, and that in the leg so diseased.

But before and ere we come to the remedy, we will first prescribe a general rule how to govern himself in this order of dyet, which not onely in this, but also in other sicknesses (according to the importance of the cause and place) may be diminished, augmented and altered.

This that followeth here is ordained for them, in whose bodies all grosse, cold, tough and flegmatick humours tempered with *Cholera*, do abound.

But these must first eschue all cold ayr, low dwellings, and especially they which do lie near the water side. The windows of his dwellings are also to open against the South and East (if it be fair weather) and the rest remain shut. And if so be that the time of the year will permit it, then is his chamber to be alwaies kept warm, with a continual fire, and to be hang the stone wals with Tapestry, or to let it be wainscotted, or fenced with boords. In like manner he is also to keep his head well from cold, and to beware of great exercise, especially if he feel any pain, and that so long as any pain is instant, and until the joynts be strengthened.

What concerneth further the meat and drink, one is to keep himself therein moderately, and to use all such sorts of meats and drinks which do yield small sustenance or nourishment, and be meet rather to make one lean than fat, and especially if there be any debility of the stomach, or any wambling with it. He is also to chew his meat well, and to eschew the variety of drinks. Otherwise he is to use those meats which be warm and dry, and that are drest and strewed with any drying and warming things; as with Pepper, Salt, Cinamom, Nutmegs, Fennel, Parsley, Annis, Hyssope, Mints, Thyme, and such like things more. His bread must be a little more than common bread, leavened and salted. He is also to eat no other flesh but Hens, Pullets, Pigeons, Pesants, and all kinds of field Fowls: yet for the most part rather rosted then sodden. Veal and Mutton is also very healthy for him. Amongst herbs be Colworts, Fennel, yellow rapes, &c. be very good for him; but all cold herbs must he eschue, or at least use them very seldom and little, and being alwaies tempered with some warm herbs: red Pease, Lentils, and Rice drest with fresh flesh, may he eat. Amongst fruits there be none that be more requisite than Figs, Raisins, Hasel nuts, Almonds and such like. The sweet odoriferous Grapes be not much forbidden him. He is also to be restrained from butter as much as is possible, because of her slime and moist nature: but rather in stead thereof to use the oyl of sweet Almonds, Sallad oyl, or oyl of Walnuts, Vinegar, Verjuice, Limons, Oranges, as their juice be not commended, and if one will ever use them, then must some

other warming things, as Salt, Pepper, Cinamom, be tempered with it in eating of other meats. Also fish and doughy meats be very hurtful unto him. The best drink that he can drink is Hony water, which may be prepared as followeth; Take twelve quarts of water, and one quart of Hony, let them seethe together until eight quarts remain; if you put Annis unto it, then will it be the better. Certain later Physitians do advise (and that with good reason) that these Patients should drink the decoction of *Guaiacum*; and how the same is to be prepared, that shall you find described hereafter in the first part, in the discourse of the Pocks. Out of these so remembred medicines it easily may be noted and marked, that it were very good utterly to forbear wine: but if it cannot be given to chase it thin red wine, or the flower of Betony, and *Origanum* of Crete decocted with Annis water.

Further, it is not very good to sleep much, and chiefly in the day time immediately after meat, for that ingendreth much lime and other rough moisture. One hour and a half after supper is he to go to bed, and to lye first upon the right side, afterwards upon the left. Through much lying upon the back do the defluxions fall to grow prejudice behind in the neck, and in the back bone. His sleep shall also not endure longer then 7. or 8. hours, and the rest of the time is to be spent in watching.

Purge the body with convenient Purges. Then take of Petroleum, ℥. 6. Trotter oyl, ℥. 3. powder of Castoreum, ℥. 2. Aquavite in a cold cause, or else no Aquavite, bath and anoint the grieved places therewith. Prob.

Use rose water in stead of Aquavitæ in a hot cause.

Also seethe the mosse of trees in water with oyl of Roses in a hot cause, and seethe mosse of trees in water with oyl of Camomil in a cold cause, and apply it hot like a poultice.

Of the pain in the Hips or Sciatica *through heat.* §. 1.

TO remedy the manner of this pain, is but a little different from all other joynt diseases, because that they alwaies for the most part proceed of cold, and do ly deep in the joynts of the Hips. For the which in this disease all diuretical medicines be hurtful, because that thereby the matter will be made so much the grosser and tougher, so that afterwards it can by no means be consumed. Now when this disease is caused through heat, wherein commonly a cold flegmatick matter is mixed with *Choler*: yet notwithstanding *Phlegma* getting the mastery, the same may easily be perceived by the high coloured urine, and other signs more. Therefore for a beginning is the liver veine to be opened in the arm, and that in the same side where the pain is; afterwards the vein, (which is named of the disease, *Sciatica*) and standeth as described in the Introduction, upon the foot, and so let out 4. or 5. ounces of blood. But good heed is to be taken therein unto the strength and power of the Patient: for that, like as we have said in other places, the veins in the lower parts do weaken the body more when they be opened, then those in uppermost parts.

Other do counsel, that first the vein in the foot is to be opened: and if so be that the pain do not cease in some daies after it, that then the same vein should also be once opened in the other foot; and beware of going the space of eight daies. Likewise is also much commended to set boxing cups upon the hips, or above the Hips, according to the importance of the disease.

Take a piece of raw Beef well powdered, of the Buttock Beef, cut pieces of it as broad and long as the sole of your foot, and lay it to the soles of the feet. Prob.

Or, dissolve Gum, Armoniack in Vinegar and therewith anoint the Hip.

Of the pain in the Hips or Sciatica *through cold.* §. 2.

BUt if so be that this pain of the hips proceed through cold, like as for the most part it is wont to do, the which the bleakness of the face, the lingring pain, the belching of the stomach, the wambling and the falling down of all cold humors doth shew: then is the Patient to be respected and taught to order himself accordingly; yet have you for an example, this ensuing. For

For a preparative of the matter, make this ſirupe following, and then take three of about two ounces at once, according to that one is bound or looſe of the body: which faſt after it.

Take Fennel roots, Sperage roots, Parſly roots, Smallage roots, and Polipody roots, ana ℥. 1. the ſeed of *Anethum*, wilde Sage, Gromil ſeeds, Nettle ſeed, the roots of Saxifrage, and the ſeeds of ſtone Parſly, ana ℥. 1. Harts tongue, two ounces, Juniper berries, *Hermodactyli*, and Turbith, ana ℥. ß. Hony 18. ounces, Radiſh water 24. ounces, make a ſirupe thereof.

Take all the foreſaid things, and put unto it Ginger, wild Saffron ſeed, of each one ounce and a half, *Agaricus* three drachmes, ſtone Salt two ſcrup. Mace two ſcrup. and a half, *Sirupus de Stecade* three ounces, Hony as much as before, Roſemary water, of Calamint and of Sage as much as will ſuffice; afterwards ſeethe a ſirupe thereof. At the laſt put a little Cinamom, Maſtick, Cloves, Nutmegs, and Mace unto it; alſo a little Muſk and Ambar.

For to purge; take the Confection of *Indi*, three drachmes, or half an ounce, *de ſucco Roſarum*, ℥ 1. ß. water wherein Ginger is decocted, ℥. 3. give this betimes in the morning, and then ſleep one hour after it: afterwards take a draught of Barly water after it. But if you had rather take Pils, then take *Pilulas fatidas*, and *Hermodactylorum*, of each apart or mixed, ana. ℥. ß.

This alſo enſuing is to be prepared: Take the water of Piony roots; and the roots of *Narciſſus*, of each two ounces; drink this for the ſpace of certain daies, early in the morning. Thereupon you are three hours after it, to ſwallow theſe things following; take *Pilulas fetidas*, and *de Succhocolla*, ana. ℥. ß. Swines bread, ℥. 1. make thereof 12. pils with the juice of Smallage.

Other to take waſh Aloe, ℥. ß. *Agaricus*, ℥. 1. make thereof with the ſirupe *de Acetoſo* a maſſe, of 3 ß. Pils; other take of it about the third or fourth evening juſt before ſupper according to the quality of the cauſe.

Sharp Cliſters with Salt, with *Hiera*, with Coloquint and other appropriate things, be exceeding requiſite for this, as alſo are theſe enſuing: Take unwormeaten Hermodactyls one ounce, field Cypres, *Stechados*, Saint Johns wort, *Cami*, and Rue ſeed, of each one handful and a half, Cammomil, Melilot, and Dill ſeed, of each one handful, Saffron flowers one drachme; ſeethe them all together in ſufficient water, and take twelve or fifteen ounces of this decoction, Bevercod oyl three ounces, Indy ſalt one quarter of an ounce, *Hiera Colocynthida* half an ounce, temper them, and ſet it meetly warm. Theſe Cliſters are very meet for to draw the cold matter from the hips, and to expel winde.

Another: Take Coloquint, ℥ ß. Turbith, wilde Saffron ſeed, and Polipody roots, ana ℥. 1. ß. *Aſarabacca*, field Cypres, *Stechados*, Briony, white Pepper, and Rue ſeed, ana ℥. 1. ß. boile them all together, and take of this decoction as before, and put unto it oyl of Coſtus, and of Bevercod, ana ℥. 1. ß. Salt-peter four ſcruples; but uſe it not too often, and lotment the Hip therewith. Or take Briony, Sage, both or one of both, and the bird. Take the pickle of Herrings, or ſalted Limons 12. ounces, oyl of Bevercod, ounces, minister this cliſter like as the reſt. Theſe Cliſters be much commended of al later and ancient Phyſitians: but they bruiſe otherwhiles the Arſeguts within, which are hard to be healed afterwards.

Another. Take Elecampane roots as much as you please, and boyle them in ſtrong Lee, Johns wort, Cammomil, Centory, Dill, Mallows, Briony roots, and Fenegreek, ana. ℥. 1. Annis, ℥. 3. Coloquint one quarter of an ounce, ſtone Salt, ℥. ß. Bran half a handful, oyl of bitter Almonds, and clarified Hony, ana ℥. 1. mix them together.

For a fomentation you are to take Pyony ſeed, Briony roots, and *Hermodactyli*, ana ℥. ß. Johns wort, Artichocke leaves, *Stechados*, and the herb Calamus, ana ℥. 4. and 8. or 10. heads of white Poppy; ſeethe them all together in 3. pints of water even to the half, and put unto it one ounce and a half of Saffron flowers, and afterwards make a great cloth or a ſponge wet in this decoction, and foment therewith twice a day the hip and all the buttock 3. or 4. times together.

Immediatly after fomenting is the Hip to be annointed all over with this following. Take unripe Sallad oyl, Ben oyl, oyl of Roſes, four ounces, oyl of Coſtus and of Saunders, of each one ounce and a half, *Sanderum* one quarter of an ounce, Frankincenſe, *Hippociſtis*, Pyony ſeed, and *Hermodactyli*, of each half a quarter of an ounce

numbe, Salepetre, and Saffron, of each one drach. *Sarapinum*, *Opopanacum*, and Rosin, ana. ℥. ß. Beeswax as much as is needful for to make a salve: temper them all together by the fire. This salve expelleth the pain. The same is also well to be used without fomenting. powik, anodos.

Another: Take oyl of Foxes, ℥. 3. oyl of *Pierotrum*, of Bevercod, Badgers grease, ana ℥. ß. of Artichock roots, *Agaricus* and *Stechados*, ana ℥. 1. Lettice seede, Purslain seed, and the seeds of small Endive, and of water Lillies, of each one quarter of an ounce, Saffron, ℈. 1. white Wax as much as sufficeth for to make a weak salve with it, afterwards seeth to the ounces of the juice of Solomons seal until the juice be well wasted; then anoint the whole Buttock with it onely at night; for it is somewhat cold of nature: according to which one may know how he should govern himself.

Item, take Turpentine, and small pounded *Hermodactyli*, of each a like quantity; make a salve of it, and use it as the rest. But if you had not this salve, or desired not to use it, then may you anoint the place of the pain with the oyl of Lillies, of Spica, of Costus, of Foxes, and Bayes, and such like warm oyls, whether it be each apart, or tempered together.

Of plaisters, these following be good. Take *Apostolicon* one ounce and a half, *de Mastichinum* half an ounce, *Opopanacum* and *Galbanum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Piony roots, *Hermodactyli*, Calamus, and white Henbane seed, of each two scrup. Saffron half a drach, then make a plaister thereof with wax, and spread it upon two round pieces of leather a span in bredth, and as now lay one upon it, and then another, and wear them alwaies upon it, until one will use the fomentation at nights. Item, take *Ammoniacum*, ℥. 6. *Sagapenum*, *Bdellium*, and *Opopanacum*, ana ℥. 1. ß. Swines bread, and *Hermodactyli*, ana ℥. 1. ß. Coperas, ℥. 1. ß. Wax as much as is needful; make a plaister or salve of it.

When this sickness beginneth to decrease, and yet nevertheless there doth remain some wearisomness or anguish of the joynts, then is this plaister following to be made and to be laid behind upon the rump, and the whole buttocks: and if the same do make an itch, then is the same to be taken off again, and the place to be rubbed with rough clothes, and then to lay the same plaister again upon it, until that the joynt be well strengthened. Take Pitch six ounces, black Sope one ounce and a half, *Hermodactyli* and Ayony seed of each one drachme, Rosin one ounce, Roses, Mastick, and the juice of Sloes, of each four scruples, *Euphorbium* one scruple, burnt Coperas one drachme, Wax as much as will suffice for a plaister. In fine, all warming plaisters are very meet for this. The nature of Turpentine is, that it helpeth this *Sciatica*, through a secret operation. But because the same cannot be layd upon it, or anointed, therefore is it to be tempered amongst the foresaid oyls first mentioned, or any of them that one will; as the oyl of Saint Johns wort, which is especially commended for it. Some lay a sheeps skin upon it, like as it cometh out of warm lee wherein the leather dressers have it lying. Item, seethe Cumin in water, and make a spunge or twain moist in this warm decoction; wring it out, and foment the Hip therewith. Or take Betony, Sage, both or one of both, seethe them in Wine or Must, and whilst, and it is yet hot, temper this powder following in it: as *Chamedrys*, Betony, Centory, Hartswort, Gentian, ana. ℥. ß. use them with a spunge as is before said.

Another. Take Elecampane roots as much as you please, seethe them well in Wine, stamp them in Swines grease, and lay it upon the place. This is also good for all Sylet of the Pocks.

This following is highly commended. Take Elecampane roots pounded small, 8. ounces, of the best Sallad oyl that may be gotten 24. ounces, Malmsey one quart; seethe them all together until the wine be consumed, and use it as before.

Take a hot loaf and lay upon it, or let the warm reek or vapor go upon it, until the place of the pain begin to sweat, and do this certain times together. After all this foresaid fomenting, anointing, plaistering, and applications, it is firmly advised again to use these pils not for the purging, but onely to strengthen the pured diseased. Take well boyled Turpentine, ℥. ß. field Cipres one quarter of an ounce, *Hermodactyli* ℥. 1. make of them eight pils, and take one every morning and evening. Or take these following which be almost of the same nature: Take the juice of field Cipres, *Hermodactyli*, ana ℥. 1. boyled Turpentine, ℥. ß. make pils thereof with the stripe of Betony, and use them as is before said.

Further

Further, it is alſo needfull that thoſe parts which cauſe theſe defluxions be ſtrengthened, the which may be done as followeth: For ſtrengthening of the ſtomach he is oftentimes to uſe Mace, Cloves, Mints, Indy *Spica*, Squinant, Cypres roots, and *Lignum Aloes*, with his meat, and to uſe the Confection *Aromaticum roſarum*, and *Diacalaminthum*, Betony, Balm, and ſuch like, with his accuſtomed meat. The compounded things are the Confection *Diambra*, *Diamoſchu dulcis*, and *de Xilealoe*, and that eſpecially after ſupper. The kidneyes will be ſtrengthened with Almonds, Hafel nuts, Pingles, dry and ſalt Cheeſe, and ſuch meat that is dreſt with ſheeps milk; but they are to beware of much lying on the back, and much venery, eſpecially preſently after meat. Item, of diuretical things, as Parſly ſeed, Annis and Smallage ſeeds, &c. Theſe be now the three principal parts and cauſes of the defluxion. The other parts are not ſo highly to be regarded.

And for to conſume theſe kinds of defluxions be all Phyſitians of an opinion, that there is no better advice then to bathe in natural warm Sulphur bathes, Copperas bathes, Lime bathes, or Aſh bathes. For that theſe do pierce through the whole body, dry exceedingly, and do conſume alſo all moiſture. And if ſo be that one cannot get into ſuch natural bathes, then are Lees or bathes to be prepared of the foreſaid things, but the body muſt firſt be well purged. And if the patient cannot bathe, or will not bathe, then are theſe things following to be uſed, which vehemently conſume all moiſture: Take *Sanguis draconis*, Frankincenſe, and the juyce of Sloes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Lee as much as will ſuffice for to diſſolve theſe things, and temper them withall in a mortar, then anoint the joynt therewith twice a day. This following is milder: Take pownded Cypres nuts three ounces, Meal duſt one ounce, temper them together with the juyce of Bay-leaves, as aforeſaid.

Item, take ſteeled water ſix ounces, pownded Roſe two ounces Maſtick, and prepared Iron droſſe, of each one ounce, parched Salt three drachmes, temper them together in a mortar with the juyce of Taſſel leaves, or with water wherein the ſame herb is decocted, is good and approved. But if the pain continue, then is there no other remedy (as is aforeſaid) but to uſe cauterization, which is alſo effected with plaiſters which raiſe bliſters: but before this is to be begun, the ſame is firſt to be tryed with the foreſaid ſtrong ones, and afterwards this ſalve following is to be uſed: Take white Muſtard ſeed, and Pigeons dung, of each a like quantity: then ſeethe Figs in a little water until they be almoſt dry, then pownd them together for a plaiſter which is afterwards to be opened, and the water to be let out. If ſo be that this help not at one time, then is it once again to be uſed: and if the pain ceaſe not then, and the joynt be eluxated, then is it to be cauterized which is burned; that will be done of an expert Chirurgion or learned Phyſitian. For a concluſion, may powder be uſed, which ſhall be ordained for the gout in the feet, which beginneth thus: Take two kinds of *Chamedryos*, &c.

And if one which is cured fall again into the ſame paſſion, like as is wont to happen, and eſpecially in thoſe who have taken ſmall advice and but little purged, then is this order to be followed. In the beginning of the pain, take Cipres nuts three ounces, Barly meal one ounce and a half, Roſes one ounce, Maſticke, Myrtle ſeed, and *Sarcocolla*, of each two drach. and a half, ſeethe this all together in hard white Wine vntil it be meetly tough like a plaiſter, then lay it warm upon it. This enſuing is yet more forcible: Take *Sanguis draconis* one ounce, Camomil, Melilot, and Dill ſeed, of each half an ounce, Meal duſt three ounces, Roſes one ounce, ſeethe them all together in wine, as in the laſt is beforeſaid, then ſtir amongſt it the yolks of three Eggs, and uſe it as before.

But when the pain is increaſing, then put unto one of theſe foreſaid one ounce of the fat of Sheeps wool: but when the pain is at the extreameſt, then are things to be uſed which do aſſwage the pain as followeth: Take oyl of Roſes, and of Camomil, of each 3. ounces, ſix yolks of Eggs, let them ſeethe very ſoft, ſtirring them alwayes about. Laſt of all, put one drachme and a half of Saffron unto it, and uſe it as before ſaid. Or take Cow milk twevle ounces, Barly meal three ounces, Maſtick half an ounce, Saffron one drachme. You are to let the meal and the milk ſeethe thick, afterwards temper the reſt amongſt it. This is eſpecial good if there be any heat with it.

But if the pain begin to diminiſh, then are drying things to be uſed for it; Take Myrtle ſeed, Maſtick, *Sarcocolla*, Plantain, Piony ſeed, *Hermodactyli*, and field Cipres, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſtamp to alto powder, and temper it with one of the foreſaid bloods which you will, and you ſhall find a luckie operation.

The seventh Chapter.

Of some accidents which this pain of the Hips doth cause.

WE have in the beginning of this *Sciatica* declared, that the legs happen otherwhiles to extenuate, and especially when the member is eluxated or out of joynt, and hath so continued a long time, whereof there followeth further a numbnesse and lamenesse: for which by good reason we ought to admonish somewhat thereof before we begin to discourse of the feet.

Of the eluxation of the joynts. §. 1.

THis eluxation of the joynts do the Grecians call *Exarthrema*. The Latinists *Elusationem*, and it is thus described: *Exarthrema* is a writhing aside of a joynt out of his natural place into another, whereby the free motion is hindered. This disease cannot be cured but by mannal operation, and by the knowledge of all the parts of mans body, whereby each member which is eluxated by thrusting, falls, or by loosenesse of the ligaments in the *Sciatica*, and strengthenings of the diseased member, is restored: and although it chiefly concern the Chirurgions, nevertheless we will here discourse somewhat of the eluxation of the hips in the *Sciatica*.

This plaister following doth marvellous much withstand all defluxions which fall down into any joynt, and do weaken the same. But first of all are the places of this disease to be rubbed with this water following, which is to be distilled out of a Calves gather in seething water or *Balneum*, the which is so much the better, if so be that there be Sage, Briony, Juniper berries, and such like (according to the quality of the cause) added unto it. Afterwards boiled Tansie laid warm upon it is very requisite, the plaister whereof we have spoken before, is thus prepared: Take *Colophonia* and Pitch, of each one ounce, the Muscilage of Hollihocks three quarters of an ounce, *Galbanum*, *Myrrha*, *Ammoniacum*, and Frankincense, of each three drach, Polopody roots, Misciedeu and Hartwort of each one quarter of an ounce, Wax one ounce, Turpentine three quarters of an ounce: the gums are to be dissolved in vinegar, and then to put the Wax, Pitch, and Turpentine into it, and then let it melt by a soft fire, and to seethe it so long until that all the muscilage and vinegar be wasted away, afterwards temper the rest being beaten small amongst it: this being now all done, then spread this plaister upon a cloth or leather, and lay it upon the place of the disease.

Another; Take Hollihock roots three ounces, small Acorn buds three quarters of an ounce, fresh Self-heal flowers one ounce and a half, cut all very small and stamp it: then take unripe Sallad oyl, and oyl of Myrtles, of each three quarters of an ounce, thick red wine twenty four ounces, Self heal water twelve ounces; seethe all together so long until the wine and the water be consumed. Then wring it out with a presse, and put frankincense and Myrrhe unto it, of each one drachme, Bucks suet one scruple and a half, Turpentine half an ounce; then let them seethe again until all the moisture be consumed.

Lastly, put unto it small bruised silver skum which is sifted through linnen, and Sealed earth, of each half a drachme, *Minii* two drachmes and a half, Wax as much as will suffice for a plaister: this plaister is not onely good for all Eluxations, but also for all fractures of the bones, for it asswageth all pain, and strengtheneth the sinews.

Item, take a young oaken pole, and shave off the outward most rinds, afterwards the white: these white rinds are to be sodden in Beer, and then a woollen cloth made wet therein, and so laid warm upon it. If you have no beer, then take wine or water.

Of the extenuate and withered Limbs. §.

WE have before declared in the descriptions of the pain of the hips or Sciatica that after eluxation of the joynt, if the pain continue long, the legs become quickly to extenuate, and afterwards to be lame.

Now

Now for to remedy these accidents will we here discover certain things, which it can not otherwise well be but that both these diseases, extenuation and leanesse must succeed one upon the other; for that because the veins be bereft of their due nourishment, the sinews and the tendons be stiffened, then must necessarily ensue thereof such infirmities and debilities, and cramp them to grow, then rempe the molten grease amongst it and the herbs, and cramp them to grow, then rempe the molten grease amongst it and the herbs, and cramp them to grow, then rempe the molten grease amongst it and the herbs

therewith the diseased place morning and evening, both these be marvellous good, and also very meet.

Item, take the grease of a Beaver, of a Hulton, and of a Badger, of each half an ounce, Sage, Pellitory, and Hollihock roots with the leaves, of each one handful; seethe well the herbs, and stamp them to grout, then temper the molten grease amongst it, and anoint the lame plabe with it.

Take ayl of Tyles and oyl of Almonds, of each alone, tempered together, and anoint therewith the members. The Mithridate and both the Treacle do bring the lamed members to right again, and to their former force, being well applyed outwardly as taken inwardly: but especially these oyls following be good for it, viz. oyl of Juniper, of Nutmegs, of Pepper and blew Flower-deluce. Item, take a young Fox, make him clean, and chop his flesh very small, afterwards distill out the water, and put therein one dram of smalled bruised Camphire: put it into a glasse stopt well, and leave it five dayes in the earth where as Ants have their abode. Last of all, anoint you therwith in a warm bath, afterwards use this salve following: Take a young Fox made very clean and burnt to ashes, take thereof the half, and temper therewith one quarter of an ounce of bruised Camphire, oyl of Balsam half an ounce, Dogs grease two ounces and a half, Snailes grease one dram: and a half; melt these salves all together, and anoint you therewith after bathing. Both of the foresaid salves are to be used against lamenesse through heat and cold, for that they be of a temperate nature, and of the same nature is this also ensuing.

☞ Take Rice as much as you will, steep it a day and a night in a sufficient quantity of Goats milk, afterwards distill it like as all other waters. This being done, distill it over again, and make oftentimes the lame members moist in it.

Seethe Vervine, Rosemary, Mallowes, Rue, Wormwood, Southernwood, Sage, Hyssop, and Barberries or leaves in water, so much as the parties withered limbs may stand in it in a vessel; then put into the decoction an Oxe gall, or two, or three, and of Castoreum ounce one, or more, let the parties members be put into that decoction as hot as he can suffer it, and let him remain two hours or more, then let him go to the bed and sweat. After you have used this every day twice for 7. or 8. dayes, then you must purge the party with convenient purges.

Of the extenuated or withered members especially. § 3.

FOr as much then as we be entred into this matter, therefore will we not discourse of the same severally. Albeit this extenuation of the members may rather be named of their occasions then of the *Sciatica* alone, notwithstanding we will not here discourse of the consumption *Hectica*, *Apoplexia*, or of the Pockes, but onely of the extenuation of some parts, whether it be of the *Sciatica*, or of any other cause whatsoever, for which these salves following be good; Take wilde Cats grease, Harts suet, Bears grease, Swines grease, the marrow of Neats feet, Hony, Dogs grease, and Badgers grease, of each a like quantity; seethe all together with Wine untill the same be throughly wasted, afterwards pour it through a cloth, and anoint the withered Limbs with it.

Item, take Bevercod one ounce, long Pepper one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Wax, of Camomil, and of Bevercod, of each half an ounce, Wax one ounce, make a salve thereof; or take Sage, Mallowes, Nettles with the roots, Camomil, and sprigs of Juniper, of each one handful, fresh Butter, and Dogs grease, of each three ounces; chop the herbs and seethe them to grout that one may wring them through a course cloth, then put the greases unto it, and let it seethe again together unto a salve. When now you will use the same, then are you first to go unto a sweat bath, and afterwards your self to be anointed before a warm fornace or fire upon the place of the disease twice a day: but you are to use the sweat bath but thrice a week, and do this the space of fourteen dayes. This foresaid salve is good for all scabbinesse. The salve *Dialthea* is fit for this same disease, whereof there be four kinds described in the third Part, the fourteenth Chapter, and 4. §.

This ensuing is also very requisite; Take living Crabs and Earthworms, of each a like quantity, dry them in an oven, and stamp them to powder, afterwards temper them with as much Swines grease, and make a salve thereof. For this are also good two precious Balsam oyls, whereof one is described in the second Part, the sixth Chapter, and 4. §. and the other in the eight Part, beginning: Take Myrrhe elected, &c.

Item

Item, there is yet more good for this; oyl of Tyles, and oyl of ſweet Almonds. This enſuing is alſo accompted for ſure, and is many times proved.

Take Earthworms, put them in an earthen pot ſtopt with a cover on the top, that the Ants may run in and out, then ſet it ſo in the earth where the Ants abide the ſpace of 3. or 4. daies, and there will ingender a water of it, with this water anoint the withered limbs very warm, this ſhould be certain and approved.

In caſe alſo that the withered members be oftentimes rubbed with diſtilled Calves-feathe-water which is deſcribed before, then ſhall one find amendment.

But if this lameneſſe and extenuation be cauſed through heat which happeneth ſeldom, then have you a bath for it, which ſhall be preſcribed againſt the *Podagra*. Item, the ſalve alſo of Earthworms, of Caſſie, and other things more be meet for this intent, therefore it is needleſſe to write here any further of it, but this foot-water following is eſpecially ordained for it.

Take Feverfew, *Stechades*, and Cowſlips, of each one handful and a half, the roots of *Eringus*, and Mallowes, of each two handfuls, Mather, Hartwort, of each one handful and a half, *Peucedanum* half a handful, cut them all groſſe and let them ſeeth together, afterwards waſh the feet and the lame hands with it. You may alſo uſe a ſweat bath, for that ſtrengtheneth the lame joynts very much.

Of the hardneſſe of the joynts. §. 4.

THere cometh ſometimes alſo a hard ſwelling in the joynts, whereby they loſe their motion and bowing; for which theſe plaiſters enſuing made hard or ſoft are to be uſed: Take the grounds of the oyl of Violets which lye beneath in the pot two ounces, two ounces of the oyl of Lillies, oyl of white *Camelina*, and oyl of ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce and a half, Saffron one ſcruple, Badgers greaſe one ounce, white Wax one quarter of an ounce, Roſin as much as will ſuffice.

Item, Take the plaiſter of *Oxyerotevm*, *Sagapenum*, *Opopanacum*, and *Ammoniacum*, of each half a drach. Roſin three quarters of an ounce, white Wax 3. drach. the gums are to be diſſolved in ſharp Vinegar, then put the plaiſter, Wax, and Roſin unto it.

If there be any hard byles with it, then take *Ammoniacum* one ounce and a half, *Pinetum*, and *Euphorbium*, of each one drachme, Saltpeter half a drach. make a plaiſter thereof with Wax and Roſin.

Herewith will we now conclude the third ſort of the Gout, and come to the fourth ſort which is the chiefeſt.

Take Pitch, Roſin, ana. half a pound, Sheeps ſewet tryed ℥. 4. melt them, then put into it of Frankincenſe half a pound, Saffron powdered ℥. 3. or 4. *Ladanum* ℥. 4. ſeeth them, and therewith make plaiſters.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Gout or Podagra in the Feet.

THe fourth ſort of the Gout, as we have admoniſhed at the firſt, is the well known Gout of the Feet, *Podagra*; in which we alſo contain the Gout of the hands *Chiragra*; for that under theſe two forts of Gouts there is no great difference, but that the one doth manifeſt it ſelf in the hands, the other in the feet; and this kind of Gout is thus deſcribed. *Podagra* is a defluxion which very painfully aſſaileth the ſinews with heat And cold, wherewith alſo the parts adjacent, the joynts and the legs be plagued with ſwelling and pain.

As much as concerneth the name of this diſeaſe, which the Latiniſts have taken from the Grecians, this name *Podagra* is nought elſe but a ſnare wherewith Birds be taken by their feet, and therefore is this diſeaſe of the Gout likened unto this inſtrument, for that it doth catch men by the feet, and holdeth them caught therewith. The Poets do alſo call this diſeaſe *Scopulum Ixionium*, which is a ſtonie humour; for

that

that the ſame will in the hands and feet alter into a ſtone, ſo that the ſame may at laſt be taken out without any pain: and like as we have admoniſhed before, this diſeaſe cometh not only in the feet, but alſo in the hands, which is called by the Grecians *Chiragra*, which is a pain of the hands.

The cauſes of this gout are manifold; to wit, inward, and alſo outward; the outward may be cauſed through great heat, which cauſeth the matter to melt. Item, through great idleneſſe, or through great labour preſently after meat: Alſo through venery with a full ſtomach, and that ſame eſpecially doth cauſe the *Podagra*. Alſo the learned do certainly affirm, that no man can be plagued with the *Podagra*, ſo long as he hath not yet uſed the venerial act. *Galen* doth alſo confirm the ſame ſaying, that he never knew any man which was infected with the Gout, either of the hands or feet, before that he hath had to do with women. Dainty eating and drinking is alſo a great cauſe of the *Podagra*.

And that all this is ſo, we will ſhew an example. *Plinie* writeth that theſe diſeaſes were very ſtrange and new in Italy in his time; for which cauſe it is named with that outlandiſh name *Podagra*. But what made them at that time and new, but that at the ſame time the Romans lived very moderately in eating and drinking? *Hippocrates* writeth, that no Eunuch, nor any woman as long as ſhe hath her terms, can get the *Podagra*, neither yet can be bald: Touching which, *Galen* his interpreter ſaith, that the ſame in the time of *Hippocrates* was true: for that the people in thoſe dayes did meetly much labour, and did eat and drink ſoberly. But now he ſaith, that people do lead another life by going idle and rioting: for that one doth find now adaies Eunuches which be ſubject to the Gout without lying with any woman at all, which they do get only through their ryoting and quaffing. And ſo is it with women which do alſo ſpoyl themſelves through a diſordered life, that they get their terms very little or not at all.

And to the contrary meaſurable labour, by moderate eating and drinking, yea by hunger and abſtinence from Wine, the *Podagra* tarrieth away and is left behind, the which I have ſeen by a Citizen in my time of *Landsborough* called *Lucas Keſſelin*, who living again according to the pleaſure of the world, got the *Podagra* again. And when he was beſt in health, then did he ride otherwhiles a horſeback with two ſervants who muſt lift him up upon the horſe: but when he came in poverty and drank no Wine, and lived hardly, then did the *Podagra* ſeek another lodging. So that he being fifty years old, was fain to trot up and down the countrey with a Pedlars pack on his back over high mountains for to get his living.

This hath then his original cauſe; for if there be no ſuperfluous humours fallen down into thoſe places, then would there be no pain nor grief; neither would theſe defluxions ſetule themſelves in the joynts, if the body were not overcharged with ſome ſuperfluity. Now the mean to keep the body free from all ſuperfluous humours, is, that the body be kept with moderate exerciſe, to the end the meat may be well digeſted.

Hereby appeareth now ſufficiently, that the gout is not cauſed ſooner of any thing in the world, then of idleneſſe and of exceſſive ryot.

When as now the *Podagra* is cauſed of any inward occaſion, then doth it happen thereby that one having weak legs and feet, the matter whether it be blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, or *Melancholia*, each alone or mixed, might lightly fall into them, whereby it may well be underſtood, that the *Podagra* can be ſhort, long continuing, hot or cold.

It is alſo ſometimes an inheritance of the children from the parents, and hath his vertue in both the ſeeds, and is imparted unto the children, ſo that the goury fathers and mothers may alſo ingender goutie children.

Now may we alſo write ſomewhat of the ſigns which do not only ſignifie the gout of the feet or *Podagra*, but alſo all pain of the joynts.

If this diſeaſe be cauſed through blood, then doth it appear with redneſſe, and with great continual pain and ſmart; the urine is thick and red, the pulſe ſtrong and full, and the pain is more in the morning then in the evening. And if the Patient be by nature full of blood and ſanguine, then doth the ſame pain increaſe daily. The ſame happeneth alſo when the party is young, hath lived eaſily, and of it be in the ſpring time.

The ſigns, if the gout proceed of *Cholera*, then is the pain ſharp, the place of the pain is yellowiſh, the urine very red and thin, the ordure is alſo yellow and thin, the pulſe is ſwift, the heat is great, and chiefly on the place of the pain, as one may perceive in feeling of it; which doth yeeld more aſſurance if the patient be young and choleriek of nature,

ture, and if he have done great labour before, or if the weather be hot and he hath taken much hot meat and drink.

If this diſeaſe come of *Phlegma*, then is the pain not very great: alſo the part of the pain is not altered of colour, the urine is whitiſh and thick, the going to ſtoole is ſlimy, and the body in feeling is alwayes cold. And this manner of Gout is commonly alwayes in bodies which be cold of nature, and that in winter time, and after a diſordered life in eating and drinking.

In Melancholick bodies of the Gout commeth very ſeldome wherewith is alſo great pain, the Patient will be lean, the urine thin and crude. And this commonly happeneth in thoſe bodies which be of a melancholick nature in the beginning of Winter. Sometimes this diſeaſe proceedeth through wind, whereby is a great and exceeding pain, the which by windie meats is increaſed and augmented.

How the Podagra is to be prevented. §. 1

WHen any one doth perceive and is aſſured, that this his ſickneſſe or diſeaſe commeth through heat, and that the time be at hand wherein he was wont to be aſſailed with it, then muſt he before whileſt that he is well or in good eſtate (if he will by any kind of meanes be freed) be purged with thoſe medicines which expell *Choleram*, and muſt refrain wine, even as all Phyſitians do adviſe, and in ſtead of theſe uſe ſome thin mead or drink, the decoction of Cinamom: for that mead is not onely good for the *Podagra*, but alſo requiſite for all infirmities of the joynts. But if this Gout be cauſed through hot *Cholera*, then is Barly water rather commended, or water wherein Prunes be decocted. Item, temper freſh well water alſo with the juyce of Pomgranates. This alſo enſuing may be prepared: Take two ounces of Sugar, one handful of Barly, Raiſins one handful, ſeethe them together in three pints of water unto the half: and if one will drink wine, then is there one half of this foreſaid water to be tempered amongſt it, or to drink ſome middle ſort of cleer Beer. Further he muſt forbear all Hony meats, and all fleſh. Alſo he is to eat and drink very little; but he is to ſuſtain himſelf with Barly pap, Oaten pap, bread and Butter, and ſuch like meates.

But what greater damages be found in this diſeaſe through ſurfetting is ſufficiently ſhewed before.

The members alſo which are accuſtomably plagued with this pain, are to be reſtrained from overmuch motion, or from wearying himſelf too much, and that eſpecially if the Patient be groſſe and full of blood, and hath not a long time been let blood nor purged.

Of divers meanes Whereby to free one from the Podagra. §. 2.

THeſe pils following are very highly commended, as that through the uſe of them many gouty people be not onely freed, but alſo healed all together: Take *Myrrha*, *Aloe*, *Lignum Aloes*, Cinamom, Maſtick, and Rubarb, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Muſcus*, five grains: make 36. or 40. pils with *Oxymel*, or as many as you pleaſe, whereof you are to take two or three every other day, and to continue thus the ſpace of thirty dayes: afterwards, take every week once as much. But if ſo be that the *Podagra* do come in the mean while, then are pils to be uſed after the firſt manner.

Firſt, take *Aloe*, Rubarb, *Species Hiera Galeni*, *Pillulæ fine quibus*, of each one drach. and a half, field Cypres four ſcruples ſteeped in wine: make pils thereof with Lavander water, and uſe them as all the reſt: they be ſtronger then the former.

Theſe Pils following hath the Emperor *Carolus* uſed againſt the *Podagra*: Take yellow *Mirobalani Chebuli*, and *Indi*, of each one drachme, oyl of ſweet Almonds, one quarter of an ounce, the juyce of Roſes, of Burrage, and of Fumitory, of each two ounces; temper them together, and let them ſtand in ſteep 24. hours, afterwards make it hot and wring it well out. This being all well done, then ſteep therein again half an ounce of Rubarb, *Indi Spica*, half a ſcruple, Malmſey a ſpoonful, Wormwood water one ounce; let it then ſtand thus together ſteeped the ſpace of ten hours, and afterwards wring it out hard.

Thirdly, take *Agaricus* one ounce, ſtone Salt four ſcruples, Ginger one ſcruple, Hony of Roſes three ſcruples, *Oxymel* of Squils one quarter of an ounce, ſteep all together 24. hours in white Wine and wring it out well.

Fourthly,

Fourthly, take *Aloe* which is washed with Endive water, and *Manna*, of each one ounce, fresh Cassie two ounces, *Bdellium* two scruples, temper them well together in the foresaid boyled and steeped Colatures, Lastly, all being well tempered, then set them all together in the Sun stirring it often about, and when it is well dryed, then form pils thereof.

Of these pils shall you take one every morning: they have a marvellous efficacie in preventing the *Podagra*: so that it is said, if one do not ryot, that one shall be holpen thereof in fifteen dayes. In the first part of this book, in the twelfth chapter, in the description of the Balsam you have a very costly salve, beginning thus. Take Bayberries, &c. which freeth one marvellous much of the *Podagra*. Item, if one set his feet in warm Smiths water, or foment them over the vapour of the same water: it is also very good to chew every morning a little Mastick.

☞ Use the oyntments and meanes mentioned in the 6. chapter before going §. 1. And purge with convenient purges.

How the Podagra is to be purged. §. 3.

IF so be that the *Podagra* be caused onely through *Cholera* and heat, then is this Syrup following to be prepared: Take Endive three handfuls, Roses one ounce and a half, red, white, and yellow Saunders all together one ounce, seethe it well, and wring it out: then put unto this decoction twelve ounces of Sugar, and seethe it to a syrup like as all other syrups be decocted: give thereof one ounce and a half with Endive water four or five times together, and then take these pugations ensuing after it: Take of the Electuary of the juyce of Roses five drachmes with the foresaid water, which is especial good for the joynts.

Or take fresh Figs half an ounce, Currans five drachmes, the rinds of yellow Mirobalans one ounce, let them steep a whole night, and seethe them a little: then take of this decoction three ounces, and temper therein of the foresaid confection of Roses, and give it very warm early in the morning. Or if you had rather have pils, then take *Aloe* one drach. *Diagridii* five graines, Roses three graines, *Hermodactili* half a drach: make pils of it with the juyce of Roses; they be much commended.

If there happen great pain with this kind of hot Gout, then may two kinds of plaisters be prepared for it, whereof one is to be layd upon the place of the pain, therewith to stop the defluxion, and the other on the top of it for to asswage the pain. The first is thus made: Take Myrtle seed, the seed of *Ruscus* and *Bolus*, of each half an ounce, red and white Saunders, the juyce of Sloes, Pomgranate blossomes and peeles, Gals, of each one drachme, Rose water and Plantaine water, of each three drachmes, oyl of Roses one ounce and a half, Barly meal as much as will suffice for to make a plaister or pap. The other: Take red and white Saunders, Starch, and washt Ceruse, of each one quarter of an ounce, Poppie seed half an ounce, Camphir, one scruple, oyl of Roses three ounces, unsalted Butter one ounce and a half, the seed of Fleawort one drachme and a half, and two yolks of Egs, temper them all together, and lay them upon it as is before said. An easier. Take the oyl of Roses thre ounces, Vinegar half an ounce, temper them all together, and anoint the place of the pain with it; it asswageth the pain, and hindereth the defluxion.

Now when as these defluxions do first of all begin, then be salves, Oyles, and other things more used and applyed unto it, for which you may take one of these ensuing which you please: Take small pownded *Bolus* two ounces, Rose water, and water of Nightshade, of each one ouuce, two or three drops of Vinegar: temper them well together and strike it thereon with a feather, or dip a cloth in it and lay it over the swelling; when it is dry, then take fresh, but alwayes warm. Item, take oyl of Roses, seethe Eerah-worms in it; Mastick is also especial good. This following should be a special secret; seethe Earth-wormes and Froggs in oyl of Roses until they be almost all consumed. then wring them out hard through a cloth, and anoint it very warm on the place of the pain. This ensuing is not unlike to the former: Take of the oldest Sallad oyl that you can get, twelve ounces, and twelve water Frogs, chop them very small and seethe them well; when they be almost sodden enough, then temper therewith the juyce of Housleeke, and the juyce of Stonecrop, of each two ounces, then let it seeche so long until the moysture be wasted away: afterwards wring it out, and use it as before.

Some

Some do commend above all things the muſcilage of Frogs to be laid warm unto it, which is thus made: Take in the Spring green Frogs before they begin to caſt their ſperm, take out the bowels, and hang them on a thred to dry in the Sun until they begin to be ſomewhat dry, then pour Sallad oyl unto them, and let them ſeeth meetly well together, then wring them out, it is eſpecial good for the ſinews. Item, take Badgers greaſe and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Frankincenſe half an ounce, Wax as much as will ſuffice for to make a ſalve of it. Or take Poplar ſalve two ounces, ſmall pownded *Bolus*, and oyl of Roſes, of each half an ounce, temper them together unto a ſalve. This enſuing is alſo good for it; Take four yolks of eggs, Saffron one drachme, oyl of Roſes two ounces, temper them well together, and uſe them as before. A principal good one: Take Vine Snailes as many as you will, put them into a pot, and lay a tin lid upon it; afterwards whelme the ſame pot over another pot, and then ſet it over the fire, to the end that they may roſt by little and little. This being done, the oyl will drop into the nethermoſt pot, and with this oyl anoint the hot gouts thorowly. Item, ſeeth ten eggs very hard, cut them overthwart, fill the whites with pownded Myrrhe; afterwards bind them together again, and lay them the ſpace of 15. daies in a celler, or longer; then will a water drop out of it, which you may anoint upon the gout as a ſalve. In like manner freſh Caſſie is alſo much commended, with the muſcilage of Fleawort, for all pain of the joynts through heat.

This enſuing aſſwageth the pain marvellouſly: Take the ſeed of Fleawort two ounces, ſeeth it in ſufficient water until it be very ſlimie, afterwards wring it out very hard through a cloth: In this muſcilage or ſlime melt one ounce and a half of Wax, Sallad oyl three ounces, let it then ſeeth a good while, ſtirring it alwayes equally about until it be cold.

Another of like forte: Take oyl of Walflowers two ounces, oyl of ſweet Almonds, and oyl of *Camelina*, of each one ounce and a half, Butter one ounce, Saffron one drach. and a half, white Wax one ounce and a half, Dill ſeed, Camomil, and Ducks greaſe, of each half an ounce, three yolks of Eggs, then temper them one amongſt another, and make a ſalve thereof.

Item, take wheat bran two handfuls, Vinecuict as much as will ſuffice for to make a poultice of it, Salt one quarter of an ounce; let it ſeeth a little together, and then lay it warm upon it, you ſhall hardly find any thing elſe that doth more aſſwage the pain. Item, take Barly meal or Peaſe meal, and pownded Roſes, of each three ounces, white Wine as much as will ſuffice for to make a pap thereof, then let it ſeeth a good while: if you will, you may alſo put a drach. of Maſtick unto it.

Some do ſeeth Bran in three parts of water and one part of Vinegar, and ſo lay it upon it, and let it lye five or ſix hours upon it.

This alſo enſuing is thought to aſſwage all whatſoever; Take three ounces of unripe Sallad oyl, Saffron one drachme, four yolks of eggs, oyl of Roſes four ounces: let the oyl ſeeth a good while, and when it beginneth to be cold, then temper the yolks amongſt it, ſtirring it alwaies well about: afterwards Starch and Barly meal, of each one ounce and a half, and at the laſt Saffron: if you will have it more forcible, then put Butter unwaſht and *Bdellium*, of each one drachme: then ſteep them all together until the ſame be thorowly conſumed, and afterwards temper the reſt with it. Item, take the crums of white bread, ſteep them a good while in ſweet milk, and then ſeeth them together to pap: now when it beginneth to cool, then temper a yolk or two of eggs amongſt it, and a little oyl of Roſes, and ſo lay it upon the ſwelling and pain. Some do temper Butter, Ducks or Gooſe greaſe, and Sugar alſo amongſt it.

Another: Take Plantain ſeed, and Linſeed, of each two handfuls, ſeeth them very ſoft until all the water be almoſt gone, then temper amongſt it crums of white bread as much as you pleaſe: afterwards ſtamp them well together, and temper it with the oyl of Roſes; and when the pain is very great, then is the juice of cooling herbs to be tempered amongſt it, yea very well three or four greins of *Opium*, and one drachme of Saffron, like as the ſame may be very well done in the foreſaid crums of white bread.

This alſo following is very good; Take Camomil, and Melilot, of each one ounce, Mallowes, and Hollihock roots, of each half a handful, Fenegreek meal, Linſeed meal, and Barly meal, of each one ounce: cut the herbs ſmall, and ſeethe them mellow: afterwards wring them out, and ſtamp them well: laſt of all, mingle with the ſaid

meals oyl of Roſes, and oyl of Camomil, of each five ounces or more, then make pap therewith, and lay it over the pain, and renew the ſame oftentimes. Item, ſeeth wheat meal and red Wine to pap in freſh ſweet milk: for this, is alſo good Bean meal decocted to pap in freſh ſweet milk. Theſe four oyles following be alſo commonly uſed for the Gout; to wit, oyl of Lillies, of Camomil, of ſweet Almonds, and of Walflowers, with which we do commonly temper Caſtle extracted with vinegar, like as before there is alſo mention made of the oyl of Poplar buds.

Or take pownded Henbane ſeed, put it into a bag, and let it warm well, and ſo lay it upon the pain. Item, in great outward pain take Cowmilk ſix ounces, *Opium* half a ſcruple, crums of Rie bread, and theſe being well powdred as much as you pleaſe, make a ſoft plaiſter of it. In like manner you may alſo uſe the juice of Nightſhade and of Plantain being tempered all together, or each apart.

By all theſe foreſaid remedies may eaſily be marked, that all theſe ſimple things following be eſpecial good for the hot *Podagra*; as namely, Nightſhade, Houſleek, Lettice, Endive, *Mirtus*, Muſcilage of Fleawort, Vinegar, Roſe water, Bolus, &c. in the 16. Chapter, and 4. §. of the hot Kidneyes.

Of the old Gout or Podagra, *and of his pain.* §. 4.

IF there be found with the pain of the Joynts, neither redneſſe nor heat, and the Patient be of a cold nature, and that one be cold in the feeling, then may it eaſily be perceived that the cauſe proceedeth of cold. For this the Patient is to prepare himſelf to purge with theſe potions following: Take Sage, Cowſlips, and field Cypres, of each one handful, ſeeth them all together in ſufficient water until the third part be waſted. Unto this decoction put twelve ounces of Sugar, and then make a clarified ſirup of it. If the matter be fluxible of it ſelf, then is this following to be prepared; Take Calamus and Gentian, of each two ounces, Hartwort one ounce; S. Johns wort, Sage, field Cypres, Cowſlips, Bayberries and *Chamædryos*, of each one handful, Annis, Fennel, and Piony ſeed, of each one ounce, Baſil ſeed, Cinamom, of each half an ounce, ſeeth them all together in ſufficient water even to the half; afterwards wring it out, and make it with ſix ounces of Honey, and nine ounces of Sugar unto a clarified ſirup; give them one ounce and a half with ſome diſtilled water in the morning faſting. For a purgation is this following to be uſed; Take *Turbith* half an ounce, *Hermodactils* one quarter of an ounce, *Diagridion* one drach. Maſtick half a ſcruple, Sugar one ounce: then make a powder of it, and give thereof the fourth part at once, but no more for it is very ſtrong. If you will, you may make pils thereof without the Sugar: but the pils of *Hermodactyli* exceed all other pils, *viz.* in purging all phlegmatick humours. They have alſo an aſtringent vertue, whereby they obſtruct the conduits where the defluxions take their courſe, Treacle and Mithridate are to be taken of gouty men one drachme, or one drachme and a half with great avail twice a week.

Item, take field Cypres pownded very ſmall half a drachme, Turpentine 3. drachmes; temper them together, and take it with a wafer, or with freſh broth: it is alſo good for all lameneſſe. Theſe Patients are alſo to be bathed and fomented with this enſuing; Take Sage, Roſemary, Pennyroyal, Rue, Mints, Horehound, Matjoram gentle, Marjoram, Lavander, and Pomgranate peeles, of each one handful, ſeeth them all together in good Wine: afterwards ſtrain the broth through a cloth, and put three ounces of butter unto it, and then put the feet therein, whether it be with pain or without pain, and lay the decocted herbs very warm upon it.

Item, when the place of the pain is fomented with boyled Fenegreek, then will the pain be thereby aſſwaged. Or take ſtinging Nettles, ſeeth them in water and foment with the damp of the ſame, and ſo lay the herbs warm upon it. The oyl of Foxes is alſo marvelous good for the *Podagra*, and for all pain of the joynts, like as is alſo the oyl of Tiles, and oyl of Sulphur, which be both hot and piercing.

Hereafter do more plaiſters and other things enſue to be laid upon it; and that after the place of the diſeaſe hath been fomented or anointed with any ſalve, and the aſſluxe of humours is ſomewhat ceaſed: Take boyled Alehoof and lay it therein and hold it till the feet.

Further, it is much advifed, that for the cold *Podagra*, there ſhall be two kinds of Plaiſters prepared, Firſt, take Cypres Nuts, Maſtick, Myrrhe, and Frankincenſe, of each one

quarter of an ounce, Gum, Dragagant, of each three drachmes, Sage water six ounces; Vinegar half an ounce: pownd all small that are to be pownded, and then make a meetly soft pap of it, or a plaister with Barley meal, and lay it upon the place of the pain.

Another: To Take the muscilage of Fenegreek, and of Linseed, of each one ounce, salt Butter, oyl of white *Camelina*, or oyl of Roses, and burnt ashes of Colewort stalks, of each two ounces, Wax as much as will suffice for to make a plaister or salve of it: lay it or spread it upon the pain of the disease, it asswageth pain; the plaister *Diachilon* is also to be used for it.

Item, take soft Storax, Bevercod, *Euphorbium*, *Myrrha*, *Aloe*, and the juice of Sides, of each a like quantity, Wine as much as you please; let it seeth well together, and then wet a cloth therein and lay over it. Or dip a cloth in the warm decoction of *Ebulus*. Before certain plaisters are described, of the crums of white bread, temper with one of the same one drach. and a half, or two drachmes of the powder of *Hermodactyli* and so lay upon it.

Item, seeth Onions in water, and make a cloth wet in it and lay it thereon. Or rost certain Onions, stamp them very small, spread it on a cloth and lay it thereon.

The common people do use Cow dung, and lay it thereon instead of a plaister; Also the distilled Cowdung may be laid upon it. Item, take the decoction of Rape, and lay it thereon. You are also to pownd Turneps, and to temper them with oyl of Roses, and to lay the same upon it. In like manner temper sodden, stamped and well salted Turneps, with about so much Bran as Turneps, and with sufficient oyl of Violets, make a plaister of it. Item, take a bag filled with Linseed, seeth it well, and lay it over the pain. These be now simple things which warm the joynts; to wit, S. Johns wort, *Hermodactyli*, *Ammoniacum*, *Euphorbium*, *Myrrha*, Squils, *Asarabacca*, Bevercod, liquid Storax, Cresses, Cowdung, Marjoram, Mints, white Mustard seed, Pine Apples, Capers roots, field Cypres, Camomil, Blecampane roots, *Gallia*, Radish, Rue, *Sagapenum*, and Vinegar of Squils, &c.

Some do advise, that for the *Podagra* there be made an issue, which is a running hole into the leg, which is alwaies to be kept open, whereby the matter may have issue. How this is to be done, shall be taught in the sixt Part, in the discourse of the Plague.

Others do raise blisters the breadth of four fingers under the knees on the outside of the leg, opening the same, and letting the water to run out: whereof we have in other places more of this book made declaration.

For the swellings and hardnesse of the joynts by means of the Gout, use *Emplastrum Diasseron*.

℞. of yellow Wax ℥.4. marrow of the thigh bone of a Cowe, fat of Ducks and of Hens, muscilage of Marshmallowes, and muscilage of Fenegreek q.s. Hyssop juice, as much as of the muscilages, oyl of Lillies ℥.2. and a little Turpentine if you please.

An especial and well approved Remedy for the Gout. §. 5.

First is this powder to be prepared; Take two kinds of *Chamedryos*, which is field Cypres and *Chamedryos*, Gentian, Centory flowers, *Rapontica*, the right *Aristologia rotunda*, (whereof is sufficient store brought out of Switzerland) of each a like much; stamp each apart: afterwards temper them together, and use it thus. After the necessary purgation, whereof we have sufficiently spoken before, take the space of fourty dayes together, one drachme every morning of this said powder in the Sommer time with small Beer, and in Winter with Wine or Meade: Afterwards use no more but half a drach. and so prosecute this course the space of a whole year.

If so be that the body be bound in the mean while, then is the Patient to use twice everymoneth these pils following; Take Mastick, Myrrhe, Cynamom, Aloe, and Rubarb, of each one scruple; being all pownded small, then make ten pils thereof with Hony of Roses, and take two or three at once. They be very weak, so that one may use the more thereof if he please. In the mean while the Patient must order himself very moderately in eating and drinking. Through this be many gouty persons throughly healed of the *Podagra*.

The direction for the Gout, sent to Charles *the Emperour.* §. 6.

THis advice or remedy was sent to the Emperour *Charles* his Majestie of famous memory, from *Fransisco Toraltus*, a Lord in the Kingdom of *Naples*, who had bin most miserably the space of fourteen years of the Gout: Take clean milk of a black Goat, and turn it with Figmilk, or if you have it not, wherewith you will; strain out the whay, and let the rest seeth in an earthen pot; scum it well, and let of three parts twain seeth away, and then strain it once again, to the end there remain no curds in it at all: afterwards, take the uppermost of Burrage a good part, and according to that where is much Whay, with some other things more which be meet for the *Podagra*, and according to that the *Podagra* doth proceed through heat or cold, let it steep well therein: afterwards strain it through a cloth, and drink of it once or twice a day. But if so be that the pain be intolerable great, then steep in the foresaid Whay wherein the Burrage and other things be steeped, one drach. or one drach. and a half of *Agaricus*: Take of this Whay ten or twelve ounces according to the quality of the sickness, and according as he can easily go to stool, and temper amongst it *Oxymel* of Hony of Roses, or (which is better) *Oxymel* of Squils two ounces: you are to drink of it in the morning as warm as you can, and to fast four hours after it at least. Further, he is in the mean time to exercise himself with walking and going: afterwards he is during the space of five or six daies to drink of this Whay without *Agaricus*, and that is to be done once every moneth.

And he is especially to endeavour himself to drink this in winter, for that it is sufficient if he do this twice a year. And this is especially to be done when one perceiveth that the *Podagra* is instant, thereby to be free: and although it appeared already, yet are you to proceed forward with it. What remedies are then to be used for it, may be seen and chosen out of the forementioned things. The letting of blood must be principally in the beginning of the spring, and before the pain ariseth; like as one may see and read more at large in the 2. §.

But above all things is a good dyet commended: for if the same be not kept, then may all other things help but little. This is now the principallest and the total of all, that *Toraltus* communicated to the Emperours Majestie.

The order of dyet which is to be observed in this disease, may you perceive by all that which hath been said before, whereof also you shall find all things more amply described in the beginning of the sixt Chapter, where we have discoursed of the pain of the hips, that above all other things, Wine is chiefly forbidden unto all gouty people, as hath been before expressed. The decoction of Cinamom, Mead, &c. are they to drink, as is there admonished.

When any one doth go but ill after the Gout of the feet. §. 7.

THis debility of the feet doth sufficiently shew, that there is still some flegmatick matter present which ought to be expelled, whereto these pils ensuing are to be prepared: Take prepared Aloe half an ounce, Coloquint one drachme, *Diagridion* half a drachme, *Hermodactyli* half an ounce: temper them all together, and make seven pils of one drachme thereof: Afterwards, take every fourteen daies six thereof, and fast six hours upon it. In the mean time is he alwaies the fifth day to take one of them before supper.

Secondly, he is to use this confection following; Take *Species de Xiloaloe*, *Species Diatrionpipereon*, of each one drach. white Saunders, Violet and Sorrel seed, of each one scrup. Sugar six ounces decocted in water of *Asarabacca*, or water of Parsley; make Sugar plates thereof, and then take daily before noon and after noon, or at leastwise once a day of it, 3. drachmes at the least, and continue this the space of one whole moneth.

Thirdly, take one pinte and a half of Smiths water, and seeth therein fifteen or sixteen Cypres nuts, fourty or fifty Gals, *Hermodactyli*, and Piony roots, of each one ounce, until the third Part be wasted away. He is afterwards to rub the sick person from the knees unto the soles of the feet, letting it be made moist, to wit, once a day alwaies before meat.

Fourthly, take unripe Sallad oyl one ounce, *Sandaraca*, Mastick, and burnt Ivorie, of each one drach. temper this together, and therewith anoint after the former rubbing all the

the parts very warm which be weakened through the Gout, and continue it thus with rubbing, until they be thoroughly ſtrengthened again, and grow to be well.

Fifthly, when the ſick perſon hath uſed certain dayes to waſh and anoint, and findeth nevertheleſſe no perfect amendment: then is this ſalve following to be uſed, like as the other precedent: Take Dragons blood, fine Bolus, *Sandaraca*, the juyce of Sloes, Maſtick, Frankincenſe and Myrrhe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sealed earth and Starch, of each one ounce, the juyce of Plantain and of Roſes, of each one ounce and a half: then temper them a long time together in a mortar unto a ſalve.

Theſe be now the very beſt and neceſſarieſt remedies, which of all ancient and later Phyſitians be preſcribed for all the joynts of the body; God Almighty the chief and beſt Phyſitian give his bleſſing unto it.

What things they be which convey the medicines towards the joynts. §. 8.

AMongſt all other things which be written of the joynts, we have yet to ſpeak of this: which be the things that convey the medicines towards the joynts; amongſt which, the chiefeſt that are to be eſteemed, be roſted Squils, Ginger, Calamus, which is the right *Acorus*, Pennyroyal, *Opopanax*, both of the kinds of Germander, the ſeed *Amomum*, and other more.

The ninth Chapter.

Of the outward accidents of the Joynts and Members.

FRom the third Chapter hitherto we have diſcourſed of many kinds of diſeaſes of the outward members, which are moſt of all cauſed through outward cauſes and defluxions: here will we now in this laſt Chapter adde certain outward accidents; as, when the outward members or joynts be beaten or ſtrained.

Secondly, we will alſo admoniſh ſomewhat of the fracture of the bones. And becauſe that by this there falleth otherwhiles ſome putrifaction of the bones, therefore will we here alſo diſcourſe ſomewhat of it: and becauſe that all this cannot be effected without great pain, we will ſhew withal, how that the ſame pain is to be aſſwaged. Laſtly, how that the numbneſſe and unſenſibleneſſe of the members may be prevented and cured.

Of ſtrained members. §. 1.

IF any one have ſtrained any one member through falling or beating, and the ſame happened to ſwell without great heat, then take the ſalve *Dialthæa* one ounce, oyl of Camomil and of Dill, of each half an ounce, Wax a little, and anoint the place therewith.

Another. Take ſalve of Agrippa, of *Althæa*, and of the white ſalve which followeth hereafter, of each half an ounce; temper them together, and anoint the place affected with it; for which the Alabaſter ſalve is alſo good.

Item, take Barly meal, Fenegreek and Linſeed, of each one ounce, Mallowes one handful, Wormwood half a handful, Camomil and Melilot, of each one handful and a half: the herbs and flowers are you to ſeeth well, and then ſeeth the meal amongſt it: then are you with oyl of Roſes to make a ſoft plaiſter or pap of it.

Item, take Bean meal three ounces, Camomil, Roſes, Wormwood, and Bran, of each one handful: the herbs and flowers are you to ſeeth to pap in good red Wine; at laſt let the Bran alſo ſeeth with it, and then with oyl of Roſes make a plaiſter or pap of it. For this diſeaſe, it is alſo good to open the Liver vein and let out five or ſix ounces of blood according to the ability of the Patient. You may alſo lay freſh Cowdung upon this diſeaſe, and anoint the place about it with *Bolus* which is tempered with Vinegar: The expert Phyſitians do adviſe, that Cowdung ſhould be tempered amongſt oyl of Roſes.

Item, take the whites of Egs brayed well, and temper amongſt it the powder of Wormwood as much as you pleaſe, and ſo lay them upon the bruiſed place.

The golden waters are also commended for this, but they be hot; but if so be that there be great heat with it, then need not one stay to open the vein, like as we have said before. But these diseases would be alwaies suppressed with cooling things: for which you have five kinds of white salves: Take Sallad oyl three quarters of an ounce, white Wax and Ceruse, of each two ounces, the white of an egge: the Wax and oyl are to be melted by a soft fire, and afterwards to be well tempered with the Ceruse, and the white of the Egg. This is not onely good for bruised members, but taketh away all the blew spots which be come of fals, blowes, and such like occasions. This is the common white salve which is alwaies ready at the Apothecaries, and is called *Unguentum Album*. The other salve. If so be that you desire to have this forementioned salve more cooling, then temper half a drachme of Camphire well amongst it, and this is then called at the Apothecaries *Unguentum Camphoratum*. The third white salve with Camphire. Take six ounces of the oyl of Roses, the whites of three eggs brayed well, white Wax one ounce and a half, Ceruse six ounces, Camphire broken in Rose water one drachme; melt the oyl and the wax together, and then afterwards temper the Camphire and the whites of eggs amongst it; afterwards put the Ceruse unto it bruised very small, bruise litharge of Gold wash'd in Rose water one drach. and a half, washt Ceruse half an ounce and half a drach. oyl of Roses three ounces and a half, white Wax about three quarters of an ounce; then melt the oyl and the Wax together, and temper the Ceruse and Litharge amongst it until it be throughly cold. All these foresaid Unguents do cool all hot swellings, of whatsoever causes the same may proceed: they do repel all raw places, and they do also cool all the heat of scalding or burning. The fift is *Unguentum de Cerusa*, whereof we have admonished so often in this book. The same is thus described by *Mesua*: Take Ceruse and Litharge of Gold, of each three quarters of an ounce, burnt lead, litharge of Silver, of each half an ounce, Mastick, Frankincense, of each two drach. and a half, oyl of Roses and Vinegar, as much as sufficeth for a salve: first pour the dry things into the mortar, and rub it very small: afterwards pour some Vineger, then some oyl unto it, stirring it well alwayes about until it be thick enough. This salve is also good for all salt *Pilegma*, and for all dry itch.

☞ For a strain or bruise, fry stone horse dung with *Aqua vitæ*, and apply it hot. *Pro.*

Of the fractures of bones. §. 2.

THese fractures of bones do the Grecians call *Catagma*. And although the setting, splinting, and binding of this fracture, and what else belongeth unto it, concerneth more the Chirurgions then Physitians: nothwithstanding doth our common order and method aske a meanes wherby this disease might be holpen. Of which there is not a little spoken before, where we have discoursed of the lamed, extenuated, bruised, and strained members, which all together with the fractures of bones have a great communion, because they be also caused through such like occasions. First of all it happeneth oftentimes in this fracture, that the marrow in the bones (whereby they be sustained and nourished) is consumed and dryed away: for which, you have a salve in the second Part and the fourth Chapter, of the marrow of a young Fole, which is marvellous good for it.

In like manner there is also described before in the seventh Chapter, and 2. §. yet one more of the marrow of a Stone horse, and other more which be there recited for the extenuation of the members, and all that is necessary for such like accidents. You have likewise four kinds of *Dialthea* salves in the third Part, the 13. Chapter and 4. §. which be altogether meet for this. Neither is the crook back or crooked breast ought else but an eluxation or fracture of the back bone and ribs, as in the second Part may appear at large, which may there be seen. The plaister of a Ram is marvellously commended for this, which is described in the third Part, the third Chapter, and 1. §.

And for to augment the remedies which may serve for these fractures, we will adde plaisters, salves, sparadraps, applications, and all kind of things that are requisite for the fracture of the bones, which the Chyrurgions may use.

Take Wax five ounces and a half, *Ammoniacum* and *Galbanum*, of each two ounces; dissolve the Gum in Vineger, strain them thorough a cloth, let it seeth until the Vineger be wasted away, and melt the Wax amongst it.

Then take Camomil, Balm with the roots and Mallowes, of each one handful; chop

chop them and stamp them well, afterwards seeth them in two pound of May butter, and a pound and a half of Dogs grease, as long as one may seeth an egg hard: this being done, wring it out hard, and stir the molten Wax with the Gums amongst it. When it is almost cold, then take one ounce and a half of Bevertod, oyl of Camomil two ounces and a half, of Bayes fifteen ounces, temper all together and keep it in a pot; this salve do the Chyrurgions esteem to be an especial secret. And if you will use it, then take not too much at one time; make it warm and rub well the place with it; afterwards lay this searcloth following upon it.

Take Wax, three ounces, Rosin one ounce and a half, Mastick one ounce, *Galbanum*, and Frankincense, of each three quarters of an ounce: dissolve the *Galbanum* in a little Vinegar; stamp all that is to be stamped; melt the Wax and Rosin in an ounce of oyl, strain it afterwards through a cloth, and have a cloth ready as big as the searcloth must be. Lastly, take it therein, and after the anointing apply it upon the place affected.

Others: Take four ounces of Sallad oyl, melt therein half an ounce of Wax: when it is almost cold, then stir half an ounce of pownded Mastick amongst it, and use it as before. Item; Take white Wax, and Frankincense, of each half an ounce, of oyl of Linseed four ounces; melt them all together and draw a cloth thorough it. Item, take Wax and fresh Butter, of each a like quantity, melt them together: these two be especial good against all swellings.

Another. Take Fenegreek meal as much as you please, seeth it in water and put pownded Comfrey unto it, until it be as it were grout, then apply it to the fracture. Item, take litharge of Gold, fine Bolus, and Comfrey, of each three ounces, Bean meal one ounce and a half; pownd them all together, and pour good Vinegar unto it, and let it stand so one night: afterwards put molten Wax and Rosin unto it, of each 3 ounces, Sallad oyl twelve ounces, then temper them all together on the fire, and let it seeth well until that the Vinegar be consumed: When it is almost cold, then stirre 3vi. of pownded Dragagant steeped in wine or Vinegar amongst it, that it be like unto Gelly. Or take Rosin five ounces, Saffron, *Euphorbium*, and long Pepper, of each one drachme, *Aqua vitæ* one ounce and a half, stamp all that is to be stamped; dissolve the Rosin in *Aqua vitæ*, and then let it seeth altogether until that the *Aqua vitæ* be boyled away, then take Wax as much as is needful for a plaister: this plaister is also very good for all other ruptures.

Item: Take Turpentine and Wax, of each four ounces, *Galbanum* three quarters of an ounce, *Ammoniacum* half an ounce: dissolve the Gums in Wine, and then temper them all together; when it is almost cold, then put one quarter of an ounce of Myrrhe, and as much Turpentine unto it, and make a plaister of it. In like manner you have in the third Part, and the third Chapter, one more beginning thus; Take Dragons blood, &c. And yet one other in the second Part, the third Chapter, and 5. §. beginning thus; Take Pitch, &c. Item, one more in the first Part, the 11st Chapter, and 1. §. which be all together very good for the fractures of bones.

For the putrifaction of the bones. §. 3.

Take burnt Lead two ounces, Myrrhe half an ounce, Aloe, *Opopanacum*, Iron drosse, burnt Squinant, and the rinds of the Pine tree, of each one drachme, then make a powder of it, and strew it upon the putrified bone; for it separateth the same, and healeth marvellously.

Take *Canterbury* bels, pownd them small, and strew this powder also upon it. The same operation hath the water also wherein *Sal Armoniack* is decocted.

Here follow some especial things for the pain of the Joynts. §. 4.

It happeneth also otherwhiles, that in the uttermost parts of the members, as in the hands and feet, there cometh great pain, whether it be of the foresaid causes, or of something else that hath fallen, or been laid upon them, which may well be caused both of heat and cold.

But if so be that heat cause this pain, then doth it appear with redness, with hardness,

land with swelling, which is also a sign of some impostume to come. But if it be caused through cold, then is the pain without any redneſſe or heat: but with deafneſſe, pensiveneſſe, paleneſſe, and sometime with a dry itching scurfe.

When as these signs be present, they give commonly to understand, that there might follow of it a palsey or *Paralysis*, and an extinguishment of all natural heat.

If this diseaſe come through some outward causes, then look on the same parts, whether they be redder than any other. Then is it to be anointed with cooling oyls, as with oyl of Roses, of Violets, of water Lillies, and such like.

The letting of blood is very good for this: as if the pain be in the feet, then open the vein in the arm on the same side, &c.

If it be caused through drith, and that neither redneſſe nor whitneſſe can be perceived, and nevertheleſſe the member seemeth to be paler from day to day; then let warm water fall from on high upon it, and afterwards let it be anointed with the salve which is molten together of oyl and white Wax.

But if you have this salve stronger, then use that *Anodinon* which is described in the second part, the fift Chapter, and 18. §. or any other which be specified in the pain of the *Podagra*. But if the place be somewhat greater or swollen up, and that in feeling it be found somewhat cooliſh, then is it to be rubbed oftentimes with warm clothes that the pores or vents might open, and afterwards let this fomenting be made ready. Take Camomil, Marjoram, and *Sisybades*, of each one handful; seeth them, and hold the member over the vapour. Or take a spunge being made wet therein, and so lay it warm upon it: you must also let warm water upon it from on high: Afterwards anoint the member with oyl of Wal-flowers, of Costus, of Lillies, or any such like, which be warm by nature. In eating and drinking he is to keep himself sober, and to exercise himself much, and to bath. And if so be that this will not help sufficiently, then is he to be purged of all flegmatick humors, as with the pils *de Hermodactylis*, *Fœtidis*, and *Medicamine Turbith*. Lastly, and in need he is to use those things which be described in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter, and 13. §. of *Paralysis*.

Of the unsensibleneſſe, shaking, and numbneſſe of the Limbs. §. 5.

OF all these diseaſes we have in the first part very largely and amply written: likewise also every where in the fourth part: which means may also be used in all these accidents: but especially there be very good for this two sure golden waters, which shall be hereafter described in the last part amongst other vital waters, whether it be that they be used outwardly, or drunk inwardly; for they be good for all diseaſes of the outward members and joynts, like as is this also following: Take dry Willow wood, and burn it in two pots, one above the other, like as the oyl of Juniper wood is wont to be made, and with the oyl that runneth out into the nethermost pot, anoint the place affected the space of 9. daies.

Another; take Quinces which rot upon the tree, Bevercod, Bayberries, Sage, and Juniper berries, of each a like quantity; stamp them, and cut them meetly groſſe; afterward seethe it all together in good wine, and then rub the joynts with it. These two things aforesaid be very highly commended of the common people.

If so be that there be any thing discovered, not onely that concerneth the fractures of the bones, but also this whole fourth part of the joynts and outward members, wherein may be any want; thereof must advice be had with expert Physitians and Chirurgions, and so we will conclude therwith this fourth Part.

The

The fifth part of this Book comprehendeth all the Accidents and Diſeaſes, which do ſpread themſelves abroad over the whole body.

IN the foreſaid four parts we have moſt of all deſcribed all outward and inward parts of mans body, with all their accidental diſeaſes: this fifth part ſhall diſcourſe of thoſe things which ſpread themſelves abroad over the whole body: amongſt which, outwardly is the skin which covereth the whole body; inwardly are the veins, the blood, fleſh, ſinewes and bones. Item, other accidental things more, as heat, cold, *Phlegma*, *Melancholia*, faintneſſe, leannelſe, ſleep, ſweat, and ſuch like.

To the Skin well we aſcribe many kinds of diſeaſes, to wit, what may hurt the ſame inwardly and outwardly; as all impoſtumes, ulcers, or boyls, warts, ſpots, bliſters, clifts, itchings, ſcurfe, ſwellings, *Varices*, Carbuncles, and ſuch like. Item, many other corroding ulcers, as Fiſtulas, Cankers, Graingreen, Pocks, Leproſie, *Cacoetes*, and many other incurable ulcers. Afterwards we will diſcourſe of ſuch things as hurt the skin on the outſide, as burning or ſcalding by fire, by water, or Gunpowder, ſplints, thorns, all kinds of wounds, and whatſoever may appertain unto them. Laſtly, of *Cicatrices*, which be left behind after the cure of the forementioned accidents.

The firſt Chapter.

Of the Skin.

THe Skin is by nature given to all living creatures that have blood in them, not onely for an ornament and defence, but alſo as a garment of the whole body, which in one place is found thicker, thinner and ſofter then in another.

The outwardmoſt Skin is of it ſelf inſenſible, and more fine and thin in mankind, then in any other creature. The Skin within the hand, on the forehead, and for the moſt part over the whole face, and on the heels, can hardly be fleyed off, by reaſon that they be throughout knit and woven with ſinews and muſcles. In like manner, if there be no fleſh with it, and that it were wounded, it would not be poſſible to heal the ſame together again; like as may be ſeen in the eyelids, in the foreskin, and other places more of the body.

What diſeaſes or accidents this skin is ſubject to, we have diſcovered it before, and will alſo write ſomewhat more of it hereafter.

Of the inward cauſes which harm the Skin. §. 1.

FOraſmuch as this fifth Part of our Practiſe of Phyſick doth not diſcourſe of any other matter but of ulcers, anguiſhes, and impoſtumations, and ſuch like accidents which harm the the skin; therefore we will diſcourſe and write ſomewhat of it in general at the firſt, notwithſtanding the difference which is between the ulcers and impoſtumes; like as in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 29. §. is declared.

Thus

These will we under the name of impostumations contain all that proceedeth and followeth after, which the Physicians do thus describe.

An impostume is a disease or malady which altereth one member or part of the body from his natural kind, into an unnatural constitution. Or an impostume is an unnatural tumour or swelling of a member, through wind, blood, or water, which hath drawn one of these matters unto it.

This impostume may be caused of all the four humours, and also of a several humour, or of mixed humour, and that in this manner: when any part is badly qualified, be it of whatsoever cause it will, or that any bad humours, winds, waters, or other superfluities have accesse from any other part which is stronger then that whither they be sent, which is not able enough to expell the affluent humours from him; then there do they remain, and putrifie, and at the last impostumate.

When as such kinds of impostumes be called onely of blood, then do the Grecians call it *Phlegmonem*, which is an hot swelling, with great pain and beating.

For if any swellings be caused through *Phlegma*, or any other waterish moisture, then be they called *Oedema*, and it is a soft tumour without pain, and it is sometimes seen in dead bodies, in Hydropical persons, and in those parts which are extenuated.

If any swelling be caused through pure *Cholera*, then is the same called *Erysipelas*, which is the Rose. Of *Melancholia* cometh a hard swelling called *Schirrus*, the Canker and such like; which maladies do mix themselves oftentimes with divers other swellings, ulcers, and such like; as we shall especially write hereafter, and discourse of divers and sundry of them. But (as is said) we will begin with the first.

Of the Warts. §. 2.

HOw ill favoured this excrescence of the skin is to the sight, is sufficiently known unto all men, whereof there be also many kinds, some altogether dry, hard, black, and cleft or chops; others be moist, running itchie, and where pain is to be felt in handling them. Their principal cause is a very burnt melancholick blood. Therefore ought such things first to be used as withstand the ingendring of melancholick blood, as we have elsewhere shewed, and shall hereafter declare more at large.

But amongst the things which may outwardly be used, be these following; Take Willow rinds and burn them to ashes; afterwards mix it with sharp vineger, and anoint the Warts with it, especially if they stand in secret place, or rub them with Asses milk, afterwards lay the foresaid on them being spread upon a cloth, then will they fall off without pain.

Item, take the juice of Celendine, and the juice of Purslain, of each one ounce, oyl of Sulphur one drachme and a half; then temper them together, and anoint them therewith. The same doth also oyl of Sulphur alone: Take the juice of Marigolds, and temper it with salve unto a plaister. Some do take Cranes eyes, and temper them with the juice of Onions and Salt unto a plaister, and so bind upon it. It is also said that red sealing Wax is very good for it; Take a garden Snail, strew it with Salt, put it into a glasse, then cometh there an oyl of it in the space of two daies, then anoint the Warts therewith and they will fall off.

You may also anoint them with the oyl *Camelina*. If they be so great that they may be tyed with a horse hair or any strong silken thread, then tye the thred from day to day fast about them, until they dry away and fall off.

With this are you also to note, that when there be many Warts together, like as commonly happeth, you must begin first at the greatest, for that they have such a sympathy one with another, that when the greatest (being as the mother) hath her nourishment taken away, thereby the rest may easily be killed.

Item, burn them with a Rye straw, and take afterwards pownded Saffron, seeth it in Sallad oyl, and then put Salt unto it and Swines grease, to the end it may be as a salve, and then lay it upon them.

For this is also meet all that which is discovered in the fourth Part, the second chapter and 30 §. for the Corns. The warts require also a moderate dyet, and that he forbeare all that ingender melancholick blood.

Of the Meaſels, red Gum, and of the ſmall Pocks in general. §. 3.

CHildren are for the moſt part ſubject unto theſe diſeaſes, and all ancient folks otherwhiles. And like as the ſame be perillous in young children, ſo be they more perillous in ancient people. They do come alſo through many kinds of means, ſometimes like red ſpots; alſo with wateriſh bliſters which outwardly appear clean over ones body upon the skin as big as Millet ſeed, which at laſt dry away and fall off. Theſe be alſo (to tell the troth) not without great danger, eſpecially if they happen through cold not to break out: or if they have appeared already upon the skin on the outſide and be ſtrucken in again; for thereby do they make a narrowneſſe of the breaſt, a ſhort breath, hoarſneſſe, diſeaſe of the throat, or of the mouth, and anguiſh of the whole body with great Agues.

The learned have ſought out the cauſes of this breaking out of the ſmall Pocks, Meaſels, and ſuch like; therefore be they of opinion, that one bringeth the cauſe of this ſickneſſe with him out of his mothers womb when he is born. For that becauſe as the fruit is nouriſhed of the fineſt blood of his mothers Terms: ſo doth the uncleanneſſe of that blood remain in the pores of the children, and in other places more, which nature afterwards driveth out in due time.

And becauſe that all humane creatures be through ſuch means and nouriſhment ſuſtained and fed in their mothers womb, therefore doth it ſeldom happen that any kind of people can be old, without getting theſe Pocks or Meaſels, whereof this common falſe opinion is ſpread and grown amongſt many people, that all children muſt once have theſe Pocks or Meaſels, whereby many mothers which have many children, if any of them get the Pocks or Meaſels, let them run one amongſt another, whereby one child is infected of another, and ſo do catch the Pocks or Meaſels: ſaying beſides the truth, that it is better that they get them in their childhood, then when they be grown in years. But this is none other (like as I have ſaid) but a falſe opinion, for one may be freed of this ſickneſſe, through a good diet.

There be alſo other cauſes more concerning theſe maladies, viz. ſtincking aire, which doth heat the blood and other humours of the body, and troubleth them. Like as to be long converſant in the warm Sun; alſo to overcharge him with ſuch meat which quickly corrupteth in the ſtomach, as fiſh and milk eaten together, through much bad blood, through omitting an accuſtomed letting of blood, and ſuch like cauſes more.

The ſigns of theſe ſickneſſes be pain of the back, itch of the ears and of the noſe, which come of the vapours of the corrupt matter, and are partly peſtilential; therefore they have a frightful ſleep, and the pricking may be felt over the whole body. With this they have alſo a ſlothfulneſſe in all parts, redneſſe of the face and of the eyes, and ſomewhat ſwelling; and they be ſo long pinched with ſleepineſſe, until the Pocks do break out upon them every where.

And although (like as we have admoniſhed) the Meaſels and the Pocks have one kind of cauſe, yet we will diſcourſe of each apart, as much as is poſſible.

Of the Meaſels.

This is (as we have ſaid) a common infirmity of children and it alſo aſſayleth ancient and full grown people, ſo that they over the whole body (ſome leſſe, other ſome more) are beſprinkled with red ſpots. There is alſo great heat oftentimes with it, & a gurgling in the breaſt. In this ſickneſſe muſt one beware eſpecially of cold, yea of open aire, and of hot meat and drink. And ancient perſons are to order themſelves, as we ſhall here in diſcourſe of the ſmall Pocks. Common people do eſpecially commend the decoction of Eldern flowers, and the ſame rubbed upon the heared parts. But what is convenient for this purpoſe, you may make choyce thereof according to the importance of the cauſe, out of the deſcription enſuing of the ſmall Pocks, what ſhall like you

Of the small Pocks. §. 5.

WHen as Children be assailed with these foresaid Measels or Pocks, and they will not break out, then take oyl of Camomil and good Wine, of each one ounce and a half, Saltpeter one drachme, seethe it together until all the Wine be wasted, and anoint the whole body with it when it is very well warmed. This potion following is very good for all aged people, and also for all young children. Take Citron peels one quarter of an ounce, four Dates one quarter of an ounce, Cicory roots half an ounce, the flowers of Bugloss and Burrage, of each half a handful: seethe them together in a pint of water until about the third part be consumed; afterwards strain it, and temper amongst it *Acetositatis Citri* two ounces, *de Corticibus Citri, de Succo Acetoso*, of each one ounce: give oftentimes a little of it, for it is very meet and pleasant

Item, take Olive leaves two handfuls, Agrimony one handful; seethe it all together in good Wine, and drink thereof every morning three or four spoonfuls: it drieth up all affluent humours. But when these Pocks begin to fall away, then are these means following to be used, according to the importance of the cause: Take Cerusse half an ounce, oyl of Roses one ounce and a half, Camphir the quantity of a Pease, Saltpeter half a drachme, and two or three peeled Almonds, wherewith you are to chafe the Camphire. Afterwards temper one amongst the other, and therewith anoint the place of the Pocks: Or take Sallad oyl, and Cerusse as before: then temper them together with a little Vinegar and Rosewater, and use it as before. Some do also advise to take strong lee, which is hereafter described against the burning of Gunpowder.

Another sort of the small Pocks, which be called Swines Pocks. §. 6.

LIke as we have said before, these kind of Pocks be much like to the other before mentioned, and proceed also of the same cause, saving onely that these whereof we now write, be bigger, broader, and and also with great anguish of the breast and of the breath: therefore may all be used for this, that is expressed for the troubled breast in the second Part, the fifth Chapter, and 9. §. aswell in old as in young people. But especially is this salve following to be ordained for it: Take fresh Butter, Oyl of sweet Almonds, and Goose grease, of each half an ounce, Wax as much as is needful Some do put unto it half an ounce of Turpentine, and one ounce of liquid Storax; this is especial good, and also approved oftentimes.

Aged people be much advised to eat none other thing but Barly pap, or Oaten paps, and to drink Barly water. Take fourteen or fifteen Figs, Pistacies one quarter of an ounce, Fennel seed, the seeds of smallage and *Lacca* of each three drachmes, Lentils one ounce and a half, Dragagant half a drachme, Roses, Saunders, burnt Ivory, and Quince kernels, of each half an ounce; seethe them all together in three quarts of water, until a third part be wasted, and then drink a good draught thereof in the morning and evening. He is also to use oftentimes *Oxysacchara*, conserve of Roses, conserve of Raspes, the sirup of Sorrel, of Verjuyce, and of Quinces, to make the blood thick with it, and to cool it. There is especially commended for this, the water of Lentils when it is boyled in the third liquor, to wit, the two first being powred out. If now it be feared that the Pocks should hurt the eyes, then is this following to be used for it: Take *Lycium*, the juyce of Sloes, and Saffron, of each one drachme, Camphire one Scruple; temper this all together in Rosewater, and drop it oftentimes into the eyes. If so be that now any Pocks or any redness be perceived on the apple of the eye, then use *Stefalbum*, and that according to the quality of the cause; for which you may look into the Register, where you shall also the manner to make it. But if there do come any exulceration in the throat or mouth, then cleanse the same with Barly water, wherein sirup of Mulberries, wine of Pomgranats, and such like be decocted, and drink the same also softly. The juyce of Mints is also to be drawn up through the nose, tempered with Saunders Verjuyce and Vinegar; the same also fumed is good for it. Now when as the Pocks do anguish the Lights, then use *Diapapaver*. If there be any hoarseness or roughness of the throat, then look what is good for it in the place where we discourse of it; For which is also this gargarisation to be made with Licorice, Jujubes, Sebestes, and Figs decocted in water, and a little Dragagant dissolved in it, and then to cleanse the mouth with it, and sometimes to swallow down some of it. When as there is no Ague with, then is it very

very good that one drink warm Goats milk. Now for to free the intrails from the Pocks, rosted Quinces are to be taken with Sugar, or the syrup of the same. If a scowring happen with it, look what is described in the third part, the eleventh chapter, and 13. §. Lastly, all renowned and famous Physitians do advise (against the opinion of the common people) that one should about the seventh day open the Pocks, if they be ripe, with a golden needle, for to let out the matter, to the end that through their sharpnesse they should not eat inward, and leave great Cicatrises behind them. Make also a powder with Salt, Lentils meal, Bean meal, Pease meal, litharge of Gold and Cerusse: strew the parts with it, to the end that thereby the matter may dry. All which cannot be hurtful.

If so be that after healing of the Pocks there do remaine great dents, pits, or scars, then may these things ensuing be used.

Take *Sarcocolla*, Melon seed, washed Rice, whites of Eggs, Chalk, Bolus, or white Sugar: temper them with the oyl of Roses, or the oyl of Lillies, and therewith anoint the Cicatrises. Or instead of the oyl, take Hens grease.

Item, take the Caule of a young Goat or Kid, pour Goats milk upon it, then set it so in the Sun, and pour fresh milk every day upon it the space of one week; afterwards lay it the space of four daies in Rose water, and then hang it up to dry. This being done, shread it small, and put it into a silver beaker, and set it in boiling water: when it is molten, then strain it thorough a cloth, and anoint therewith the marks and small Pocks.

Of clefts in the Skin. §. 7.

YOu have in the first Part, the ninth Chapter, and 1. §. of the clefts in the lips. Item, in the third Part, the fifth Chapter, and 2. §. in the description of the places in women. And in the tenth Chapter and 11. §. of the clefts in the Arsegut. Also in the fourth Part, the first Chapter, and 7. §. of the clefts in the hands: all which remedies there described may be used for this our intent, and also all these that follow.

Take the green rinde of the Elder, steep it in a sufficient quantity of Sallad oyl, boyl them together, wring them out hard, and with wax make a salve of them. This salve is also very good to be used against the burning fire.

Item, take oyl of Roses, white wax, Frankincense, Mastick, and Hens grease, of each half an ounce, Ginger half a drachme; melt the Wax, the Oyl, and the grease together, and temper the rest amongst it.

Of the Itch in the skin. §. 8.

BEfore we begin to write of the Scabs, we will first intreat of the dry itch of the skin. This is called in Latine *Pruritus*, which is a desire to rub and scatch, either the whole body or some part of it, by reason of the great itch, which is caused of some sharp humours, which do yet lye under the skin.

Also, if the humours (which are stirred up either by heat or by labour) be so tough, that they cannot transpirate through the skin and the pores of the same, then do they cause an itch. Also Lice, Fleas, Ants, and Woodlice, do cause an itch. If one do but seldom change his apparel.

The inward causes may be an over-great heat of the liver, which doth ingender sharp and adust humors; also, debility of the vertue expulsive, as doth appear in aged folks. The signs of this itch are manifest, as that a body cannot sleep for it, and is hindered from doing his businesse aright.

Now to come to the remedies of the Itch, the Patient shall have a vein opened, be purged, and almost observe the same order which hereafter is prescribed against scabbednesse. A sweating bath and water baths are specially commended for this purpose, which being once used, and not turning away the itch, shew that the humours in quantity do abound which cause the same. This bathing is to be reiterated, and the body to be rubbed where it itcheth most with this receipt following: Take white Roses two ounces, beat them thoroughly with Vinegar, and adde one ounce of Bran unto them. The next day following bath again, and rub your body with pownded Smallage, with green Nutshels, or with Fenegreek. These itchy Patients are to forbear all manner of Salt and hot things, and especially all that might inflame or burn the blood.

If

If this itch be about the yard or member of a man, then take a quarter of an ounce of Ceruse, Sulphur viv. one drachme and a half, *Opium* half a drachme: make a salve of it with Vinegar: some do add two scruples of beaten Licebane unto it. If this itch be in the Arsegut or in the womb, then take burnt Allum one quarter of an ounce, Argal one ounce, temper them with Vinegar, spread it on a cloth and so apply it.

Put white Mercurie ℥. 2. into a quart of spring water, let it infuse and dissolve of it self; then after three dayes wash the itchie place with it. *Prob.*

But purging with convenient medicines is good for this

Of Scabbednesse. §. 9.

SCabbednesse is of divers kinds, some with scales, some with blisters, some with matter, and some without matter, some dry and red; but all of them with an intolerable itch, according to the nature of the humours which cause the same, and are mixed with the blood.

The cause of this infirmity, are the uses of all kind of hot, sharp, salt, and bitter meates, as spices, strong wine, oyl, Hony, want of change in apparel, to lie or deale with them that be scabbed, with many other inward causes, that proceed of an inflamed and corrupted blood.

The signs of all manner of scabbednesse are apparent, but of what kind of humour the same is caused, shall appear by these reasons following. If it be caused of blood, that may be known by the repletion of the body, rednesse of the parts, and if the blood or matter do issue forth in the scratching: the Patient hath a sweet tast in the mouth. But if this scabbednesse be caused of Salt phlegme, then is the skin yellowish, scaly, and reasonablely full of matter. The Patient cannot be quiet for the itch, and after scratching findeth great pain and smarting. If it proceed of *Cholera*, then perceiveth he not onely a great drought of the joynts, but also in the scabs themselves, with pricking, burning, and small store of moysture: or if it be caused of Melancholick, then is the skin blackish, dry, with many scales, and without matter.

Now for to cure this common and well known grief, are these rules following to be observed diligently. First because the common cause of this disease is grosse and foul blood, first of all a vein ought to be opened. Secondly, after the letting of blood, is the body to be purged, and especially with Myrobalans, and Fumitory. Thirdly, because the itch and scabbednesse are ingendred of salt, sharp, sweet, and spiced meates, are the same wholy to to be forborn. Fourthly, venery is to be shunned, because thereby the humours is drawn to the outside of the body, where it doth raise hot and stinking vapours, that disperse themselves under the skin. Fiftly, bathing, inunction, and whatsoever else may be used outwardly, doth small ease, unlesse the body be first throughly purged. Sixtly, in eating and drinking refrain all salt, sharp, sweet, and hot things. Seventhly, sowr and moyst meates that do not suddenly putrify in the stomach, are good for him. Eightly, because Peaches and some other herbs, also fish, milk, and such like do corrupt the blood, they are to be shunned. Ninthly, the Patient must forbear scratching as much as is possible, for thereby little pushes are turned into great scabs. Tenthly, the moyster that the scabbednesse is, the stronger remedies doth it require.

As concerning the cure of this infirmity, the opening of the Median or Liver vein is not to be omitted, and that as long as the Patient can endure it. Then is the humour to be prepared with *Oxysaccharo*, syrup of Fumitory, and Pease broth, afterwards to purge with Cassy, with sowr Dates, Mirobalans, with Dodder, or with Rubarb infused or sodden in whay of milk, but above all other things is Fumitory commended, whether it be the juyce, the syrup, the conserve, or decoctive potions, or whatsoever else may be made of it.

Sene leaves do the same, whereof thou may use those two kinds of potions in his scabbednesse which are described in the third part and 20. §.

Item, take pownded Sene leaves one drachme, strew them upon stewed Currans, and so eat them daily: use them so long, until thou be loose in the body, and as thy stomach will suffer thee. Some do commend the golden water which is described in the last Part, if a little of it be taken either inwardly, or anointed on the scabbednesse outwardly. After that the body hath been throughly purged, it is a common order to bath, otherwhiles in fair water, otherwhiles also in natural dry baths, each as you like it best. But those that

cannot intend to travel to the dry baths, may take Salt, Allum, Brimstone, Argal, and such like according as the scabbednesse doth require, and so with water make a bath of them.

There are also many kinds of salves and oyles ordained for it, whereof divers shall be specifyed at this present: Take litharge of silver finely powdered two ounces, Vinegar 4. ounces, boyle them together until one third part be wasted, then add 2. ounces of oyl of Olives unto it, one ounce of Ceruse, then boyle them together until they be thick, stirring them continually.

Another: take Ceruse two ounces, litharge of Silver one ounce, Mastick, and Frankincense, of each two drach. beat them all together to fine powder, and mix them with 3. ounces of the oyl of Quinces, and in the tempering of them pour now and then 4. or 5. drops of Rose-water and Vinegar unto them.

In like manner you have also in the 4. Part, the 9. chapter and 1. §. five kinds of white salves, which one may also use with all security for scabbednesse.

Item, in the first Part, the third chapter. and 10. §. there is a good salve beginning thus: Take Turpentine &c.

Item, take Bryberries, Vinegar, and oyl of Olives as much as you please, and temper them all together to a salve, it is very good and safe. Take the roots of *Bistorta* one drachme, prepared *Sarcocolla* two drachmes and a half, *Sandaraca* four scruples, prepared *Tutia* one scruple, Turpentine washt with water of Fumitory four ounces, Camphire, half a scruple, temper amongst it six ounces of the next following salve of Elecampane roots.

Take the juice of Elecampane roots, and of Dock roots, of each three ounces, Saltpeter, *Sarcocolla*, the litharge of Silver and Mastick, of each 15. grains, Copperas and Allum (called *Jamenum*) of each two scruples, mortifyed Quicksilver one drachme, the Butter, Pitch and Turpentine, must you melt together, and afterwards temper the other ingredients amongst it, and let it seethe with a soft fire until all the juyces be consumed: you are then to anoint the Patient therewith by a good fire, and that especially on the places where the most scabbednesse is: this salve draweth the corruption outward.

Another: Take washt Turpentine two ounces, washt Butter one ounce, Salt half an ounce, the juyce of three Limons, two yolks of Egs brayed, oyl of Roses half an ounce, or as much as is needful for to make a thin salve: then temper it all together, it is a safe salve.

In the fourth Part, the seventh chapter, and third §. you have also a good salve, beginning thus: Take Sage, Mallowes, &c. which one may use very safely for all manner of scabs; or take Dock roots, pownd them very small, temper Vinegar amongst it, and salt it well; with this are you to rub your self well in the bath when you will goe out of it, without wetting your self after it.

Item, take Dock roots, and Hollihock roots, of each two ounces and a half, Hellebore roots one ounce, Smallage half an ounce, seethe them all together in fresh well water until the third part be wasted: strain it, and put into this decoction one ounce and a half of Salt, Salt-peter one quarter of an ounce, fresh Butter, and oyl of Roses of each two ounces: let it seeth the second time until all the moysture be consumed, afterwards temper amongst it washt Turpentine one ounce, Treacle 3. drach. the juice of Limons, or of Oranges two ounces; lastly, temper them all together.

Item, take the juice of Mints, liquid Storax, of each one ounce and a half, Salt 3. ounces, oyl of Roses two ounces and a half, and make a salve thereof.

The plaister *Diachilon* may also be well melted in oyl of Roses for the same use, Sulphur vive tempered with Turpentine, is also much commended for this. Or make it thus; Take Sulphur vive half an ounce, Salt as much also stampt small together, Sallad oyl two ounces, then make it to a salve with Wax, as thick as you desire. Take Ashes, Salt and Sulphur, of each one ounce, bind them all together in a fine cloth, and then seeth it in four ounces of Sallad oyl, and rub the scabbednesse therewith.

Another. Take Turpentine which is washt well with Rose water two ounces, oyl of Roses, oyl of Costus, and fresh Butter, of each half an ounce, Sulphur vive three drach. Salt-peter one quarter of an ounce, and two yolks of Egs, then temper it upon warm ashes. Item, take washt Turpentine six ounces, Quick Lime two ounces, Soot of the chymney one quarter of an ounce, and temper them all together.

This salve following is much stronger then the forementioned: take the salve of Elecampane

campane roots, not long ſince deſcribed, 9. ounces, Myrrhe, Swines bread, Hartwort pownded all together very ſmall, of each one quarter of an ounce, Bean meal two ounces, Sene powder one quarter of an ounce, *Sal gemmæ*, two ſcruples, temper them all together unto a ſalve.

Some do take freſh butter and Swines bread, of each 4. ounces, Ceruſe three drachmes, Quick-ſilver one drach. ſtir them ſo long together that you ſee the Quick-ſilver the more, and therwith anoint the place infected once a day.

Other do make it thus: They do take pownded Bayberries, and freſh May butter, of of each four ounces, and melt it by the fire: when it is a little cold, then mix one drach. of Quickſilver amongſt it, and afterwards the Bayberries, juyce of Nightſhade, and juyce of Mallowes, of each three quarters of an ounce: if one cannot get the juices, then take the pownded herbs, and if ſo be that the ſalve be not tough enough, then put a little Turpentine unto it.

Item, take mans greaſe, Roſe water and Quickſilver, each according to his weight, like as it is ſaid before in this laſt ſalve, and anoint therewith the ſcabbed place once a day.

Another. Take a ſmall Cruiſe full of rain water, and put therein one drachme of *Mercurii ſublimati*, ſo let it ſeeth together in a glaſſe with a narrow neck by a ſoft fire: and when it is cold, then temper therewith the juice of Limons, and Roſewater, of each half an ounce, and uſe it as before. Some do take *Aqua vitæ*, and therein do they ſeethe a little Quickſilver, and therewith anoint the ſcabs.

Item, take Swines greaſe two ounces and a half, oyl of Bayberries one ounce, mortified Quickſilver, Frankincenſe and Maſtick, of each one drach. Salt two ounces, the juice of Plantain and of Fumitory, of each one ounce and a half: laſtly, temper one ſcruple of Orpiment with it.

Or take Barrowes greaſe twelve ounces, Quickſilver mortified with vineger half an ounce, oyl of Roſes one ounce, Frankincenſe, Maſtick Myrrhe, *Sarcocolla*, and litharge of Silver, of each half a drach. Turpentine 3. ounces which is waſhed well in the juice of Fumitory, Wax half an ounce; the two laſt are to be molten together, and temper the Barrowes greaſe amongſt it, and at laſt the other powders: then ſtirre all well together until it be cold. With this ſalve is the Patient to anoint himſelf twice a day the ſpace of five daies, and the other ſix or eight daies afterwards, then is he to waſh him with this water following:

Take Dock roots and Elecampane roots both cut, of each ſix ounces Bran ſix handfuls, Mallowes, Violet, leaves, and Fumitory, of each twelve ounces, ſeeth all together in ſufficient water, that one may bath therein, ſit in it meetly warm, and comming out of the bath, lay your ſelf about the ſpace of an hour in bed.

But here is to be noted, that ſalves which be tempered with Quick-ſilver, are more meet for the Pocks then for ſcabs, as hereafter ſhall be ſhewed in more ample manner.

If any body be plagued with a troubleſome ſcabbedneſſe, which proceedeth from a ſalt melancholick matter: then take the juyce of Elecampane rootes, and Dock roots, of each half an ounce, liquid Storax, black Hellebore, and prepared Tuttie, of each two ſcruples; temper theſe all together in a leaden mortar, four or five hours together unto a ſalve.

It happeneth alſo otherwhiles, that by ſome diſeaſe of the ſtomach or of the Liver, this diſeaſe doth grow, and doth ſo ſpread it ſelf over the whole body, that one ſuppoſeth certainely that it is a right Leproſie. For this do all expert Phyſitians know good advice, with letting of blood and purging at the firſt. And for this kind of ſcab is this remedie following found, wherein I my ſelf have found marvellous operation: take oyl of bitter Almonds ſixteen ounces, fiftie common Crevets, pownd them, and let them ſeeth in the oyl: afterwards wring them hard through a cloth, and temper amongſt it eight ounces of the oyl of Egs, and anoint you therewith twice a day. For this is alſo good Sallad oyl, wherein Frogs be decocted. Item, take a water Snake, cut off the head and the taile, and caſt it away, afterwards cut the reſt in ſmall peeces, and ſeeth them in oyl and ſtrain it.

In like manner you have alſo in the fourth Part, the firſt chapter and 8. §. againſt the ſcabbed hands a ſalve, beginning thus: Take Dock roots, &c. which is very meet for this kind of ſcab, and exceedeth alſo all others. The oyl of Eldern flowers doth cleanſe, and mollifieth and taketh all ſcabbedneſſe away from the hands. The oyl of Egs is very

commodious

commodious of it self for all sharp scabs, likewise also the oyl of Tiles, Juniper oyl, whether it be drawn out of the wood, or out of the seed, doth expel all infections of the skin, although it were a Canker, or any old ulcer. Also, oyl distilled out of Wheat is much commended for the same.

We have also in the fourth Part, the first chapter, and 6. §. other remedies more against the scabbednesse and the soreneſſe, which may be used for this, and over the whole body. Also the maiden milk is very good for this, which is described in the first Part, the 5. chapter, and 1. §.

Of Tumours. §. 10.

BEcause we have sufficiently before discoursed of scabbednesse, thereof we will now speak and discourse of certain swellings, which assaile the skin and the flesh under it. And because there can be no impostumes without swelling or rankling, as also all swelling may be caused of blowes, fals, wounds, fractures of bones, and such like: therefore it is needlesse to spend any longer time therein, every one may himself seek in the Register for the member, wherein every such swelling doth manifest it self, where they be found perfect direction for all: wherefore we will onely here declare certain common rules.

First, is a Nutmeg very good for to cleanse all corruption of the blood, and that especially for the swelling of the Milt: conserve of Eldern berries doth also cure all inward swelling. In like manner doth conserue of the same flowers expel all scourings of the belly. Four or 5. Figs eaten twice a day are also very meet in all swellings. Amongst oyles which may be anointed on the outside, are these following: to wit, oyl of Mints, of Dill, of Lillies, and Tiles. And amongst all salves, the salve of *Althea*.

There is a kind of swelling, which is soft, without pain, and which spreadeth it self far abroad, which the Grecians do call *Oedema*, which ingendereth of wind and cold humours: with this manner of swelling are commonly hydropical Patients troubled, and those that have the Consumption, or any other long lingering disease. This swelling is also the foresaid sickneſſe no cause of the same, but onely an accident; so that the same hath no need of any special remedy, but onely to apply unto it *Oxyrrhodinum*, tempered with salt, or salted Sallad oyl.

Of all Botches, Byles, and other hard swellings. §. 11.

NOw if there appear any hard swellings, Botches, Byles, Wens in any place of the body, and that at last there befal with it heat, or redneſſe with pain, without inclining nevertheleſſe to impostumation; then do the Grecians call the same *Phlegmonas*: But this name comprehendeth many kinds of swellings, for that by the name *Phlegmone* be understood all the swellings of the groines, the *Bubones* and such like more, because that they be caused of one kind of cause, viz. of blood and *Cholera*. These swellings may also be caused of falles, of blowes, or of thrusts, through which the humours be drawn towards the bruised place, and there being gathered together, do make such umours, impostumations, and other swellings. Besides that it happeneth so much the sooner, if a man be plethorick and full of blood.

The signs of these foresaid swellings, are heat, redneſſe, paine and beating, which is the deep in the flesh, the whole member where this impostume is thereby appeareth distempered with heat and inflammation, with great swellings and desire of cooling. And when as the member is more sinewie wherein this impostume cometh, so much greater is the paine; and how much more fleshy it is, so much is the pain and the pricking lesse, and cometh easier to a perfect impostumation. Now for to remedy these kinds of swellings, must we note certain rules:

First, if the Patient be plethorick, then is one of his veins to be opened, and that always in the side where the swelling is not, and according to the situation of the place where the swelling appeareth. Secondly, if the matter be hot, then must one give the Patient those medicines which allay the heat. Thirdly, when the matter is well purged, then are repulsive remedies to be used upon the swelling, if it be not that the swelling stand in such a place whereby nature is wont to expel all superfluity from her. Fourthly, amongst the things which hinder repulsion be gross and tough humors, cold and abundance of the matter.

Fiftly, if ſo be that a ſwelling be great, and it ſeem to be inclined to impoſtumation, then are no repulſive things to be uſed, but onely maturatives. Sixtly, when it is certain that the impoſtume is ripe, and full of corruption, then is the ſame to be immediatly opened, and eſpecially if it ſtand neer ſome noble part: for that if one delay the opening too long, then might the matter eat inward, and do more hurt. Seventhly, the healing of this hot impoſtume, conſiſteth onely in ſtaying of the affluent humours and in diſcharging the matter preſent.

Now for to heale this impoſtume, one muſt imitate the firſt rule, and in the beginning open the vein on the contrary ſide. But if ſo be that the tumour have already continued three or four dayes, and the ſame were very big, then is the vein to be opened on the ſame ſide where the ſwelling is. The Patient is alſo to be purged with fowr Dates, with Cassia with ſyrup of Roſes, with the confection of the juyce of Roſes, or ſuch like, and lay upon it repulſive medicaments for to leſſen the power of the ſwelling, as cold herbs, Purſlain, Gourds, Endive, and Nightſhade pownded, and their juyces.

When as now the cauſe is come to the ſtate, and to the higheſt, then are maturatives to be uſed, whereof here be divers diſcourſed.

Some Pock Phyſitians do adviſe, that do not know better, or they that gladly hold the matter long in their hands, that the ſwelling is the ſpace of thirty dayes together to be fomented with *Marchaſita*, but that is very needleſſe.

This confection following is of the ſame quality, and therefore to be alſo omitted. Take *Scrophularia*, Polipody roots, Betony and ſwines bread, of each one druch, pownd them ſmall together, and being tempered with three ounces of Sugar, make a ſalve thereof. For to apply unto it might this foreſaid be borne withall in ſome ſort, for that it mollifyeth all hard ſwellings, like as many other plaiſters do.

Take the muſcilage of Hollihock roots, of Fenegreek, and of Linſeed, of each one ounce and a half, Barly meal two ounces, oyl of Lillies and of Hens greaſe, of each one ounce, Butter half an ounce, Saffron half a ſcruple, and one yolk of an Egg: ſeethe the muſcilage with meale by a mild fire, and at laſt ſtir the yolk of the Egg amongſt it. This plaiſter mollifieth all ſwellings which be mixed with cold and hote it ſwageth alſo the pain in all the ſinewy parts, and ſuch like things more. Will you now uſe it for all cold ſwellings: then temper amongſt it *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, and liquid Sorax, of each half an ounce, wherewith it is very commodious to mollifie and ripen all hard ſwellings.

Another. Take Camomil one handful, ſeeth it in good Wine even to the half, then temper amongſt it Sallad oyl and Butter, of each one ounce and a half, and as much Barly meal until it be a pap: then lay it upon the tumour: it ripeneth and mollifieth all hardneſſe.

Item, take Camomil, Melilot, Roſes, Dill ſeed, Fenegreek, Hollihock ſeed, and Line ſeed, of each one handful, oyl of Lillies, and unſalted butter, of each two ounces, Saffron one ſcruple, temper them together by a ſoft fire unto a plaiſter, it mollifieth all hardneſſe and eaſeth the pain.

Another. Take Camomil, Melilot, Mallowes, and Hollihock flowers, of each one handful, Barly meal one ounce, oyl of Lillies and of Camomil, of each one ounce and a half: ſeeth the flowers in ſufficient water unto the half, wring it out well, and powder it: put then the oyl and meal unto it: this plaiſter hath the ſame operation with the other. Yet one more which is very good.

Take Hens greaſe, Gooſe greaſe, and marrow of Neats feet, of each one ounce, Muſcilage of Hollihock roots, of Fenegreek, and of Linſeed, of each one ounce, *Galbanum*, and *Ammoniacum*, of each one ounce and a half: diſſolve the Gums in two ounces of oyl of Lillies, and then melt them with the greaſe and ſlime. Then powder 24. or 25. fat Figgs amongſt it, and ſtir them all together, and lay thereof upon the ſwelling. For to anoint, is this following to be prepared: Take Beane meale, Allum, Polipody roots, Swines bread, wild Cucumbers, Hartwort, *Scrophularia*, of each a like quantity beaten, Sallad oyl as much as is needful for to make a ſalve thereof. This is a very ſtrong ſalve.

Take well decocted Roſemary rootes, and temper them with Hony: Item, take oyl of Roſes one ounce and a half, waſhed Turpentine two ounces, *Mirrha*, half an ounce, the yolks of 2. eggs, Barly meale as much as is needful for to make a ſoft plaiſter with it. This plaiſter cauſeth all ſwellings to ripen: take Violets and water Lillies of each

one

one ounce, oyl of Quinces half an ounce, Starch, two ounces, Camphire one ſcruple, fine Bolus one drachme: make a ſalve thereof for to uſe for all hot ſwellings. Item, take Pitch, Turpentine, and Roſin, of each one ounce and a half, Wax one ounce, Sallad oyl three quarters of an ounce, let them melt together by a mild fire. The plaiſter *Diachylon* doth alſo much mollify all hard ſwellings.

In the ſecond Part, the ſecond chapter and 7. §. you have many excellent things which alſo may be uſed for this purpoſe.

But if ſo be that theſe hard kind of ſwellings, and impoſtumes be ripe, which is thereby eaſily to be known, when the heat, the ague, and other accidents do diminiſh; alſo, when the hardneſſe is mollifyed, then muſt the ſwelling be opened, and ſo kept with taints, and to cleanſe it well, ſo that for certaine dayes together all the matter and corruption may run out: lay alſo clouts on every time with red or any other amper wine, wherein Roſes and Camomil have been decocted.

If ſo be that now after the healing like as it happeneth ſometimes in theſe kind of hot ſwellings, there remain ſome pain which keepeth the Patient diſquiet, then lay beaten yelks of Egs upon it, tempered with oyl of Roſes.

Or take crums of white bread, and pour ſeething water upon it, then wring it out againe and temper them with oyl of Roſes unto a pap.

Item, ſeeth Mallowes in common water, ſtamp them, and temper them with Bran and oyl of Violets: to all theſe forementioned things are you to temper alwayes ſome Saffron, becauſe that it hath an eſpecial power in allaying all paines.

In this diſeaſe of ſcabs and boyles, purging is very good. Alſo pownd Billow rootes green with hogs lard and apply it, and it will break and heale the boyle.

Or take of the yellow ſalve of made of Hony, Wax, Roſen, Turpentine and hogs lard, and apply it when the byle is broken, this heales it. *Prob.*

Of the Roſe, a certaine Impediment, called Eryſipelas. §. 12.

Amongſt the hot ſwellings whereof commonly the foreſaid impoſtumes are cauſed, is alſo the Roſe or *Eryſipelas*, which is none other thing but an inflamation of the skin, which in this country we call the Roſe.

The Latiniſts do call it *Ignem ſacrum*, which is the whole fire, for that when the Roſe appeareth in any place of the body, then doth it come with a burning heat, with an ague, and with a dry redneſſe. And to know this impediment from all other inflamations, lay your finger upon the chiefeſt place of the redneſſe, wring it ſo eaſily, if ſo be that then the place whence you lift up your finger, that you had ſo wrung do ſeem white, and in the twinkling of an eye ſeeme red again, then is it a ſure ſigne of the Roſe. This ſwelling commonly aſſaileth one with a quivering, with heat, and cold, it infecteth alſo onely the skin without piercing (as other ſwellings) into the fleſh, or very ſeldome, and when the inflamation of the Roſe goeth inward into the body, then is it a very bad ſigne.

Now for to heal this infection of the Roſe, muſt heed be taken to theſe orders following. Firſt, cannot one doe better, then to purge this hot cholerick matter (whence this ſwelling hath his foundation) with neceſſary medicines: Secondly, theſe cholerick humours (which be as it were a skum of the blood) be not onely a cauſe of this Roſe, by their abundance, but alſo by their heat and inflamation; wherefore it is not hurtful for to open a vein, thereby to cool the blood. Thirdly, the cooling of this inflamation may alſo be uſed in all places by laying on of ſome repulſive things, to the end that the hot matter be not repelled and driven to any noble part, as to the braines the heart, &c. whereof ſome great miſchance might enſue.

Fourthly, no cold things are to be uſed for this ſwelling, if the body before be not purged. Fiftly, it is not needful for to ripen theſe ſwellings, but onely to coole them. Sixtly, if this Roſe be without any mixture of other ſwellings, then doth it not hurt although one drink cold water, but it is rather a medicine in this diſeaſe. Seventhly, if the ſwelling is cauſed of a red *Cholera*, then is it ſo much the hotter, therefore ſtrong cooling things are to be uſed. Eightly, if ſo be that this ſwelling be tempered with another ſort of ſwelling, then is the ſame ſo long to be cooled, until one perceive that the member hath gotten again his natural colour. Ninthly, if the place of the ſwelling ſhall ſeem black and brown, then uſe no cooling things more, to the end that thereby it come not to impoſtumate and rankle.

And to prevent theſe things, this is to be done: firſt of all purge the Patient for to expel the *Cholera* with Caſſie, *Electuario Lenitivo, Diaphœnicone, de Succo Roſarum, De Sebeſte*, as is ſhewed at large in the third Part, the twelfth chapter, and 6. §. But it were not amiſſe alwayes to add ſome Rubarb unto either of theſe medicines.

But above all, he muſt beware of the uſe of Scammony, or *Diagridion*. But take 24. or 25. Prunes, ſowr Dates, one ounce and a quarter, ſeeth them well in ſufficient well water, then take of this decoction three ounces, and ſteep therein one drachme of Rubarb throughout the whole night, afterwards wring it out in the morning, and mingle one ounce of the ſyrup of Violets with it. Or as much as you think good, and ſo drink it warm. If this purgation be too weak, then take ſome of the forenamed, and eſpecially *De Succo Roſarum*, and temper therewith one quarter of an ounce. It happeneth alſo oftentimes, that through the taking of any medicine, pain and marvellous accidents are perceived, then is the Patient to take warm water, or this enſuing.

Take Annis, and Fennel, of each half a drachme, Roſes, Violets, flowers of Burrage and of Bugloſſe, of each half a handful, Saffron three grains, ſeeth it together with water, and drink a good draught thereof, or lay it upon the ſtomach.

Afterwards ſet a boxing cup (unpickt) upon the heart, and two behind upon the back, and if ſo be that the age, and the repletion of the body may ſuffer it, then is the Liver vein to be opened; otherwiſe may it be omitted, for that in this diſeaſe letting of blood is not alwayes neceſſary.

His whole order of dyet muſt be cooling things, whereof wine is much forbidden, and in the ſtead thereof, is there nothing more requiſite then Barly water. There may alſo be uſed ſometime the ſyrup of Endive, of Vinegar, of Sorrel, and of Poppie heads: or the ſyrup and Julep of Roſes, and of Violets is alſo much commended: and if ſo be that the long uſe of Barly water went againſt him, then may he drink Well water: as herebefore you have ſeen further direction in a hot ſtomach and Liver.

For to uſe outwardly: Take Lettice, which is ſomewhat groſſely beaten, and lay it upon the heat of the ſwelling: or in the ſtead thereof, take Lettice water. In like manner may you alſo uſe this following, whether it be tempered, or each alone, being made wet with a ſpunge, and ſo laid upon it: viz. water of Endive, of Corn Roſes, of water Lillies, of Violets, or the decoction of Roſes.

Item, lay Creame of milk upon it, tempered with Bran, or crums of white bread ſteeped in milk; and in like manner alſo *Oxyrrhodinum*. Or take the juyce of Plantain, and juice of Houſleek, of each a like quantity, and temper ſome Vinegar with it. Some do uſe for it the right writing inke. Take Plantaine one handful, Nightſhade and Violets, of each half a handful, Linſeed and Fenogreek meal, of each half an ounce, let it ſeeth to gether to growt: afterwards temper the yolk of an Egg amongſt it, and uſe it as the other.

Another: Take Barly meal two ounces, Linſeed meal and Roſes of each one ounce and half, red and white Saunders of each one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus and Camphire, of each one drachme, the juyce of Nightſhade and of Houſleek, of each two ounces, and a little Vinegar: temper them all together with the oyl of Roſes unto a ſoft plaiſter.

This oyl following is alſo very good to aſſwage heat, viz. oyl of Roſes, of water Lillies, of Violets, and of Poppy heads. Nevertheleſſe, there is here to be noted, that all oylie and fat things be not very meet for this: ſo that they are not to be uſed for this diſeaſe, but onely for to mix them with other things.

For to anoint withall, take ſmall pownded litharge of Gold, temper it unto dough with oyl of Roſes, afterwards put a little ſharp Vinegar unto it, and ſtir it ſo long together until that the Vinegar be well tempered amongſt it: this is chiefly to be anointed upon the Roſe there where there be any bliſters apparent, three times a day. The ſalve of Roſes, and the cooling ſalve *Galeni*, be very good for this, eſpecially if there be a little Camphire tempered with both theſe.

Alſo this ſalve following may ſometimes be anointed upon it; Take the oyl of Roſes, of Camomil, of Eggs, and juyce of Plantaine, of each a like quantity, temper them all together.

Or take this following: Take the juyce of Plantaine four ounces, Roſe water, and oyl of Roſes, of each one ounce and a half. If you deſire to make a ſalve thereof, then let it ſeeth until all the juyce be waſted, and then put ſome Wax unto it: Otherwiſe may

you dip a cloth therein and lay it thereon, and as then, the last described pap over it, beginning, Take Plantain a handful, &c.

Item, take Barley meal, Hony, and the juice of Apples, of each a like quantity, let them seeth together unto a pout, and use them as the other. You may also use fomenting, where Rosen, Camomil and Houslock be decocted.

Of the swellings of the Groyns, Armpits, and Eares. §. 13.

WE have here before in the common description of the impostume and swelling admonished, that there is also comprehended by the same name, the swelling of the Groins *Bubones*, as also the Carbuncles or Plague sores. But because these swellings do commonly appear in man and woman in the armholes, or in the groins: therefore have we in the third Part, the second Chapter, and first §. written thereof at large. And it is also so with all other anguishes, Byles, *Fonunculi*, but that they be somewhat more tolerable.

Of the Carbuncle or Plague-sore, a perilous swelling. §. 14.

THis Impostume do the Greeks call *Anthracem*, which is a Cole; the Latinists call it *Carbonem* and *Carbunculum*, which name we have retained in our speech, howbeit that some make a difference betwixt *Anthrax* and *Carbunculus*. This impostume is described as followeth.

Anthrax is an hot impostume, by which the place where it appeareth is inflamed, burneth the grosse blood, and causeth a black cole or core with an intollerable pain. And there is also in truth no worse impostume amongst all the rest then this *Anthrax*, as all well learned Physitians do write thereof, and as daily experience bringeth with it.

The signs whereby these two impostumes be known, is first a redness of the member, with a small blackish, dark blew, or pale push, whereon a scale groweth, under the which there is some matter or corruption gathered. But by reason these hot Carbuncles, or plague-sores, for the most part, and most perilously make shew in the time of plague (where shall be written at large of this matter) therefore will we not divide the matter for all those that are taken with them at other times, we do remit to the sixt part of this book, providing there to teach at length whatsoever shall seem needful for it; therefore will be the briefer at this present.

First must they which be infected with this disease, cause a vein to be opened, and that on the contrary side, if so be that he be full of blood, and of humours; afterwards upon the same side: and if that cannot be compassed, at least wise there to set boxing cups; afterwards the Patient is to be purged with the Whay of Milk, with *Epithymo*, with Agarick, or with sowr Dates.

For to comfort him withal may he use Citrons, Limons and Oranges. In eating and drinking is he to keep himself, as one that is full of the ague, and according as the heat is great. Outwardly is he not to use cold things, as in the Rose, for that the matter is somewhat thicker: But one may make a plaister of Gals, Plantain, Lentils, of crusts of bread, or Bran, tempered with Vineger, Allom molten in Vineger, and then laid with clothes upon it: for this are also good Pomgranates cut in peeces, and decocted mellow in Vineger, and laid upon it as a plaister; for thereby will the heat and the pain be swaged. Now for to cause this pain to ripen, make a plaister of Figs, of Currans, of Nuts, of Barly meal, decocted with Wine and oyl.

Round about the Carbuncle lay the salve of fine Bolus, made of Vinegar and Rose water, to defend the parts adjacent from heat.

When as now this anguish is broken up, then is it to be healed and cleansed with the mundificative which is described in the second Part, the second Chapter and 9. §. and to use drying things so long, until that they be thorowly healed, which may be effected with the salve *Basilicon*, which is thus made; Take Ceruse five drachmes, Litharge of gold one quarter of an ounce, the Litharge of silver one drach. and a half, Dragagant one drach. make a powder thereof, and temper it with an ounce of white Wax, and 3. ounces of Oyl of Roses, unto a salve. *Salve Basilicum.*

Of all manner of old Ulcers and old Sores, §. 15.

THeſe ulcers or old Sores, whether they be cauſed of Impoſtumes, windes, or any other occaſions, be alwayes called by the Latiniſts *Solutionem Continuitatis*, which is, a ſeparation of a continuity, which alwayes happeneth in all ulcers and ſores, where the skin and the fleſh parteth aſunder: whereof there be found many kinds, as we alſo have deſcribed many of them before, and ſhall do hereafter again. But this preſent §. ſhall tell onely of all old ulcers in general: for which ſome of theſe rules following are to be obſerved.

First, if one ſee that an ulcer or wound do yeeld much thin matter, then is it a ſign that one is to uſe drying things. Secondly, if ſo be that the matter be tough and thick, then are *Abſterſiva*, which are mundifying things, to be uſed. Thirdly, when theſe kinds of Ulcers be dreſſed, then is heed to be taken that the ulcer be not blown upon with the South wind, that there come alſo no cold, nor moiſture unto it, and that eſpecially when the ulcer is moyſt and hot. Fourthly, for all wounds dry things be good, and that the rather if the ſame be deep. Fiftly, becauſe there can be no good fleſh ingendered, unleſſe that the wound be firſt well dryed and cleanſed, therefore ſuch things muſt be uſed for it at times, otherwiſe would the matter be augmented in the wounds, and be unpoſſible for to engender fleſh. Sixtly, there will be no fleſh at all engendred, if it be not that the ſalve be like to the nature of the ulcer: therefore in all dry parts of the body dry things are to be uſed, and in moyſt parts, moyſt remedies to be applyed. Seventhly, it muſt be looked too, that there be uſed no oyles in any ulcer, for that they bring a putrifaction in all deep wounds and ulcers, and eſpecially in warm time of yeare whether it be in dry or moyſt complexions. Eightly, it is needful, that in all qualities of the members which be hurt with any wound, or ulcer, where fleſh muſt be engendred, the blood muſt be well cleanſed, becauſe that is the ſubſtance out of which the fleſh muſt grow: and this not onely in the ſame member, but alſo over the whole body. Ninthly, the drying medicines ſhall be no higher then dry in the firſt degree, for that when the ſame dry too faſt, then will the young fleſh be conſumed and dryed away. Tenthly, all drying medicines be very meet for all dry complexions: like as to the contrary, all moyſt medicines be moſt neceſſary for all moyſt natures: whence it then followeth, that dry bodies or dry parties will be cured with dry medicines, and moyſt with moyſt. Eleventhly, if the wounds or ſores, be moyſt by nature, then be dry remedies to be uſed for it. Twelfthly, if there be two kinds of ulcers, which be like one another in the matter, and the one were in a dry body, and the other were in a moyſt body, then in the ulcer in the dry body, are ſuch things to be uſed which be more dry, and in a moyſt body apply remedies which do dry leſſe, for to heale the ſame: therefore is Frankincenſe, and ſuch like to be uſed in in moyſt bodyes, becauſe that it dryeth not forcibly. And on the contrary, Hartwort, Ireos, and ſuch like things, which do dry forcibly are to be uſed in dry bodies. Thirteenthly, the Ulcers which yeeld a thick matter and be ſwollen are to be cured with ſuch drying things which do not bite, as Pomgranate peeles, decocted Plantain and ſuch like.

Now concerning the cure, there ſhall be by each deſcription eſpecially declared, how that the purging, letting of blood, and ſuch like ſhall be uſed: Here will we onely diſcourſe, as much as concerneth all old ulcers, what plaiſters, ſalves, and other applications are to be uſed for them.

Take old Barrowes greaſe, Butter, Bucks ſuet, Hony, Wax, and Roſin, of each a like quantity, and a little Wine; melt the ſame by the fire: afterwards take Sallad oyl as much as is needful for a ſoft plaiſter: this being done, then wring it through a cloth, and let it be cold. This ſalve and all other ſalves which here enſue, may be freely uſed in all ulcers, obſerving alwayes the difference between heat and cold. Take Sallad oyl and Vinegar, of each two ounces, Wax half an ounce, Bruiſed Litharge of Gold one ounce and a half, Verdigreaſe one drach. let the Vinegar be hot, and temper the other things amongſt it, then ſeeth it together until that it be red.

This enſuing is very like unto it: Take oyl and Vinegar, of each two ounces, Wax half an ounce, the Litharge of gold one ounce and a half, Maſtick and Verdigreaſe, of of each one drachme, ſeeth the oyl and Vinegar ſo long till the Vinegar be all waſted, and until the ſalve waxe red.

Item,

Item, take oyl of Roſes three drach. oyl of Camomil one drach. Ceruſe one quarter of an ounce, Dragon blood and fine Bolus, of each half an ounce, Camphire one drach. litharge of gold half a drach. prepared Tutty one quarter of an ounce, Coral one drach. Wax as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter; then ſpread it upon a leather, and lay it upon it.

But before that there be this or that laid upon it, the ulcer is to be oftentimes waſhed with this enſuing: Take white Wine four ounces, Roſe water two ounces, the white of a hard ſodden egg bruiſed ſmall, burnt Allume one quarter of an ounce, Verdigreaſe one drachme, ſeethe them all together by a mild fire, and let it afterwards ſettle; then ſtrain it, and keep it well ſtopt: and if it be too ſtrong, then take more wine and Roſe water unto it.

This plaiſter following is called at the Apothecaries *Baſilicum*, and of the Chirurgions, the water plaiſter. The ſame is eſpecial good for all dry ſores, which be without matter or moiſture, and eſpecially for the ſinewes, for that it dryeth, cleanſeth, and cauſeth the fleſh to grow, and is thus prepared.

Take Wax, Roſin, Oxe ſuet, Pitch, Turpentine, Frankincenſe, Mirrhe, and *Colophonia*, of each a like quantity: but firſt you are to melt the Wax, and then the Pitch amongſt it: afterwards put the Turpentine into it, and then mix the Mirrhe and the Frankincenſe pownded ſmall amongſt it. Now when it is cold, ſo that it may be handled with the hands, then muſt it be wrought thorowly with wet hands. Out of this will alſo a ſalve be made with oyl, like as before in the 14. §. you have ſeen another.

Item, in the ſecond part, the third Chapter, and 9. §. is there one more, which beginneth thus: Take clarified Hony, &c. which may be uſed for all hot and cold ulcers.

The Chirurgions do uſe this following under the name of the green plaiſter: Take Dogs greaſe, Wax, Roſin, and Barrows greaſe, of each one ounce, Nightſhade and Mallows, of each one handful; ſeeth the herbs to pap in Goats milk, until it be altogether thick, afterwards pownd it altogether, and temper it with another.

Whereſoever there be any Bliſters which will impoſtumate or rankle, which the Chirurgions do call *Coſſes exulcerator*, thereto are theſe ſalves enſuing to be uſed: Take lytharge of Gold as much as you will, ſteep the ſame the ſpace of two dayes in Vinegar, and pour off the Vinegar three times, and pour freſh upon it again; ſtir it oftentimes about, and then let ſtand in the hot Sun; afterwards ſtir it and bruiſe it the ſpace of two or three hours in a leaden mortar, putting unto it in ſtirring it, now and then, white Vinegar, Violets, and oyl of Violets, until it be thick; then at the laſt put two ounces of Ceruſe unto it, the juice of Plantain and of Houſleek, of each half an ounce, Camphire half a drach. and two whites of egs, ſo make thereof a ſoft ſalve, and anoint therewith all Bliſters which be cauſed of heat, and all other exulcerations of the skin. The next day after is this diſeaſe to be waſhed with this water following; Take Dock roots, Mallows, and Violet leaves, of each one handful; ſeethe all together in fair well water, and ſtrain it thorow a cloth, afterwards temper it with Roſe water as much as you pleaſe, and uſe it oftentimes.

Of a ſtinking and running ulcer. §. 16.

Theſe ulcers or ſtinking ſores do come of groſſe and tough humours. When one will heal them, then is the Patient to eat none other but light meats, and to drink thin drink, and to purge the watery and melancholy humors, to the end that thereby all affluous humors may be taken away. In like manner is the Patient to be let blood, if there be ſome other thing that letteth it, and to cut out all foul ſtinking fleſh, or to bite or eat it with ſome cautery, that there may grow new and good fleſh in it, for the which theſe things following are very commodious. Firſt, for to cleanſe the ulcers, is ſpecial good the ſalve *Mundificativum ſapti*, which is deſcribed in the ſecond Part. Item, the ſalve of the Apoſtles, which may be found in the Regiſter, and is marvellous good for all kind of ulcers.

Salve Baſilicum otherwiſe.

This following is alſo much commended: Take Plantain water, wine of Pomgranates, and Hony of each two ounces, Verdigreaſe and Allume, of each one ounce and a quarter, boyl them together until it become thick, then apply it to the ulcers. Item, take unripe Sallad oyl one ounce and a half, burnt Lead three drach. prepared Tutty three quarters

ters of an ounce, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and *Sarcocolla*, of each one drach. and a half, ſeeth all together in 6. ounces of water of Plantain until the water be waſted away: if you will make a plaiſter of it, then put as much wax unto it as is needful. This ſalve is to be laid with plegents in the ulcer. This enſuing doth cleanſe and conſume all bad matter of the ulcer. Take quick lime four ounces, oyl 16. ounces, Deer ſuet 3. ounces, Wax as much as ſufficeth for a plaiſter or ſalve: melt them together, and ſtir it ſo long until it be cold. Another. Take ſmall ſifted Oatmeal eight ounces, the juice of Marjoram and of Nightſhade, of each four ounces, freſh Barrows greaſe 6. ounces, temper them all together, and then lay it ſo thereon, the ſame doth ripen, cool, and mundifie.

The plaiſter Gratia Dei.

There is alſo well prepared a very coſtly plaiſter, which is called *Gratia Dei*, which is eſpecial good for all ſtinking ulcers, freſh wounds, and for all bad fleſh; iron, glaſſe, wood, poyſon, bones, and all that doth hurt in the wounds, doth it draw out and healeth it, which is made thus: Take Turpentine one ounce, Roſin 6. ounces, white wax 2. ounces, Maſtick half an ounce, Vervein, Betony, and the great Pimpernel, of each half a handful: ſtamp all the herbs, and ſeethe them in ſtrong wine, until the third part be waſted: afterwards ſtrain it and wring it out. Then are you to ſeethe in this decoction the Wax, Roſin, and Maſtick, ſtirring it alwaies about, until it be well mixed together, then ſet it from the fire, and put the Turpentine and the reſt into it, then ſtir it very ſtrong, ſo long until it be thorow cold.

The black plaiſter.

The Chirurgions have alſo a plaiſter which they do call the black plaiſter, which is very good for all wounds, ulcers, and Fiſtulaes, and is thus prepared: Take Amber, Verdigreaſe, Sulphur, Lytharge of Gold, Lime, and Bayberries, of each a like quantity, pownded very ſmall, clarified Honey, as much as is needful for to make a plaiſter or a ſalve.

Salve of Egypt.

The ſalve of Egypt called *Unguentum Ægyptiacum* doth alſo cleanſe exceedingly all Fiſtulaes, ſtinking ulcers, and cleanſeth them of the bad fleſh, and is thus prepared: Take Verdigreaſe five drach. clear hony, ℥. 1. and three quarters, ſtrong Vinegar 7. drach. then ſeethe them together until it be thick enough. It is an eſpecial good ſalve for all ſtinking ſores, to conſume the ſame to dry.

Item, take Verdigreaſe half an ounce, Saltpeter one ounce, bruiſe them together upon a ſtone, and ſet it on fire with a paper, then will the Saltpeter be burnt: all that remaineth on the ſtone are you to lay with the ſtone and all, in a moiſt cellar, and the ſtone lying awry, then in time will there be an oyl run out of it, then temper this oyl with Roſe water, or with the white of an egg; it is too ſtrong alone, but it healeth paſſing well.

Item, theſe oyls enſuing be alſo very good for ſuch like ulcers, viz. oyl of egs, of Dill, of Lillies, of blew Flower-deluce, of Wallflowers, and oyl of Tyles.

Amongſt the waters and ſuch like be alſo good the two aforeſaid golden waters, which we ſhall deſcribe hereafter in the laſt part, and M. Triſtams water, one of theſe which one will, drunk or applyed to the ulcer.

For this may alſo be uſed a certain lee tempered with Sallad oyl, which hereafter ſhall be deſcribed againſt the ſurbing with gun-powder.

Or make this following; take ſmall cut Hartwort one quarter of an ounce, *Aſſa fœtida* one drag. Centory one drach. and a half, quick lime half a drach. lay them all together to ſteep in a pint of lee, afterwards ſeethe it until a third part be waſted, wherewith the ulcer is to be waſhed luke-warm. Item, pownd honyſuckle to powder, and let it boil well in wine, afterwards lay this wine upon the ulcer.

The red powder.

The Chirurgions have alſo ſundry powders in uſe, amongſt which there is one very common, which they do call the red powder, and is prepared thus: Take *Colophonia* one ounce, Comfrey, Bloodſtone, or Argal, Dragon blood, and Momy, of each half an ounce, make a powder of all theſe: the ſame doth heal all ulcers, wounds, and Fiſtulaes, when they be cleanſed from all foul fleſh. You may alſo uſe it in all wounds. Item, take Bean meal half an ounce, mill duſt ʒ. drach. Maſtick ʒ. ß. Dragagant, Gum, Momy, fine Bolus, and Dragon blood, and ℈. 1. temper them all together, and ſtrew it in the moiſt ulcers. Of this powder may one make alſo a plaiſter, puting wax and Turpentine unto it, which moſt mightily doth dry all ulcers. It is alſo much commended that all they which be troubled with an old ulcer, ought to take one drach. of Mithridate or Treacle, more or leſſe according to the ability of the perſon, and ſhut with the water of Pimpinory: the like may be alſo uſe the ſtomachical powder which is expreſſed in the firſt part the ſecond Chap. and 1. ß. beginning thus: Take Sweet lemons, &c. which powder if ſo be that the Patient do uſe diligently, he need not fear at all of any bad ulcer. The Roſemary Wine is alſo much

eſteemed

eſteemed, for that it conſumeth all exceſſive moyſture of the body, and keepeth the body in good healeth. Item, if one waſh the ulcer there-with, then will it both cleanſe and heal it.

Of the broken veins called Varices. §. 17.

OF theſe *Varices*, or broken veins, is very much admoniſhed in the fourth part in the beginning of the ſecond Chapter. And although theſe broken veins do appear moſt in the Hips, and in the legs; nevertheleſſe the ſame do alſo happen indeed in other parts of the body, where they be ſeen knobbed, green, and black. Theſe ſaid veins of the breaſt, do ſtick full of Melancholy blood, and are very ill to be healed.

They which labour much with the legs, travel much by land, do bear heavy burthens, and do eat many melancholike meats, are for the moſt part troubled with theſe broken veins.

Concerning the means whereby theſe broken veins are to be healed, is that at firſt the *Baſilica* be opened, and that the patient be purged with ſuch medicines as expell melancholike humours, whereof there be ſundry expreſſed here and there in this Book, and that is alſo oftentimes to be done, and he is to beware of all groſſe meats.

When as this hath been continued a long time, then are the broken veins to be opened, and the blood to be let run clean out of it. Some do alſo uſe the actual cautery; yet muſt the uppermoſt vein be opened where it firſt beginneth, and afterwards to lay upon it this ſalve or plaiſter: Take Ceruſſe, Antimoy, Litharge of Silver, and burnt Lead, of each one ounce, Sheeps ſuet four ounces, Frankincenſe, Momy, *Sandaraca*, *Sarcocolla*, burnt Allom, and Dragons blood, of each three drachmes oyl of Roſes, and Vinegar of Roſes, of each three drachmes, white Wax and Roſin, of each half an ounce: temper them together, and then make a ſalve or a plaiſter thereof: this is alſo good for all old ulcers, for it dryeth and ſwageth the pain.

Item, Take Frankincenſe, Maſtick, Myrrhe, and Mony, of each one drachme and a half, the juyce of blew Flower-deluce two drachmes and a half, Hartwort, Southernwood, and prepared Earthwormes dryed to powder, of each one drachme bruiſed ſmall, Litharge of gold half an ounce, burnt Copperas, burnt Lead, Gals, Cipres nuts, the roots of *Curcuma*, white and red Coral, and Roſes, of each two ounces, Deer ſuet, and oyl of blew Flower-deluce, of each one ounce; pownd all that is to be pownded, but the Roſin, the Turpentine, and the oyl are to be molten by the fire, and ſo tempered with the reſt to a ſalve. Some do take Lupine meal, and make a plaiſter with water wherein *Tamariſcus* is decocted, or with Goats dung and Wine. Alſo the uppermoſt members from whence the heavy blood falleth down, are to be ſtrengthened, and their diſeaſe cured.

The ſecond Chapter.

Of depaſcent Ulcers in general. §. 1.

FOr as much as we be now come to write of thoſe Ulcers which do not continue in a place, but corrode hitherwards and thitherwards corrupting the skin, the fleſh, yea ſometimes the bones; therefore is it firſt to be known that theſe ulcers be called *Phagedenæ*: but for the more difference, ſuch like ulcers have their ſeveral names; amongſt which *Herpes*, *Phagedæna*, and *Cancer*, be the chiefeſt; the firſt whereof, to wit, *Herpes*, doth yeeld much thin and watrie moiſture; the *Cancer*, groſſe and tough matter, and *Phagedæna*, middle between thin and thick matter; but *Herpes* is not alwayes an open ulcer, but creepeth in time hitherwards and thitherwards like a Snake, whereof this diſeaſe alſo beareth her name; the one place healing, and the other excoriating; *Phagedæna* is a great ulcer, and corroſeth very deep into the place and on every ſide of it; *Cancer* (which is the Canker) ſhall hereafter have his proper deſcription. And albeit, theſe ſores (as is ſaid) do ſomewhat differ; yet are they for the moſt part comprehended all under the name of a Fiſtel, and it is thought that the *Fiſtula* is alwayes a cauſe of the other: therefore we will alſo firſt of all write of that.

Of the Fiſtula. §. 2.

THis name of *Fiſtula* (or Fiſtel in Engliſh) have the Latiniſts firſt of all given unto this ulcer, which doth ſignifie a Pipe: for as a Pipe is long and hollow, ſo is the nature of this ulcer alſo, being deep and having in the beginning but a ſmall iſſue; for which cauſe it is deſcribed, as hereafter followeth. A Fiſtula is an ulcer, the which round about it hath a callous skin, deep, and long, penetrating into the body, and very crooked, which be hard to cloſe up or to heal; and the which ſometimes alſo in ſtead of good matter, do yeeld a ſubtile moiſture.

It is found alſo that theſe Fiſtels do appear very little above in the skin, and nevertheleſſe do lye with their roots deep and hidden in the fleſh, wherefore they be alſo the more dangerous to be healed, like as you may ſee in the ſeventh Chapter and eleventh §. of the Fiſtel in the corner of the eyes. Item, where we diſcourſe of the impoſtumes of the eares, and alſo of the Fiſtel of the gums which are all together deſcribed in the firſt part, and in the ſecond part, the third Chapter, and ninth §. In like manner alſo in the third part, the tenth Chapter, and twelfth §. of the *Fiſtula* of the Arſegut. The cauſes of theſe Fiſtels may be precedent impoſtumes badly cured; or for that one hath ſtayed too long from opening of them, whereby the matter hath eaten inwards, and ſo is turned into a Fiſtel. In like manner may alſo a Fiſtel grow of a wound which is not well mundified, alſo of fractures of bones, or any other bad humours of the body which lye hidden under the skin, and under the fleſh, which do there corrup tthe ſame, and be changed into a Fiſtel.

The ſigns be theſe, viz. when one wringeth them, then be they without pain, if it be not that they ſtand ſome where about a ſinew, or had ſome corruption in them. If ſo be that this Fiſtel be onely in the fleſh, then will the matter be white in a ſhort ſpace. Or if the Fiſtel be old, then doth it yeeld a long ſpace thick and troubled matter: or if the Fiſtel be in a ſinew, then is the matter thin and black, and if one wring it, then doth there run out bloody matter. If ſo be the ſame be in the bone, then doth there run out thin and yellow matter. And if ſo be that it pierce into the hollowneſſe of the bone, then iſſueth a fat oyly water, whereby may eaſily be gueſſed that the marrow is ſpoyled, with other more ſuch like ſigns, which be diſcovered in the ſame places.

Now for to heal theſe Fiſtels, muſt certain articles be noted: Firſt, becauſe all Fiſtels proceed moſt of a wateriſh moiſture, therefore are all drying things to be uſed unto it, and the patient is to eat thoſe things that make good blood. Secondly, by reaſon that the material cauſe is rooted in the body, it is neceſſary to have the ſame prepared and expelled. Thirdly, in old and very deep Fiſtels, it is ſureſt of all (if one will heal the ſame) that they either by inciſion or by an actual cautery be taken away even to the bottom, as to the contrary, the potential cautery becauſe of the ſinews is dangerous and hurtful. Fourthly, all Fiſtels that go into the bone will never more be healed, if the bone be not firſt ſcaled. Fiftly, they that do go into the fleſh, muſt of neceſſity be dilated and opened, to the end that they may be the better mundified and dryed.

The cure of this Fiſtel is of great importance, ſo that the patient is to order himſelf in eating and drinking, according as the firſt rule giveth notice, and to uſe all drying things for it: alſo he is to lead his life in a dry dwelling, and there to ſettle himſelf. Fiſh and ſuch like things be noyſome for him, good fleſh rather roſted then ſod is commodious for him; his drink ſhall be good wine; but becauſe of the ſharp matter, the ſame is to be ſomewhat watered. And for to prepare the matter of the Fiſtel, take *Oxymel* of Squils, or *Diureticum* and ſuch like, which may alſo be uſed in the Fiſtel it ſelf.

Theſe be then the things which may be uſed outwardly: Take Frankincenſe and Aloe, of each one ounce, ſcummed Hony five ounces, ſeethe the Hony until it be thick. When it beginneth to be cold, then temper the powders amongſt it; at the laſt put one ounce and a half of molten *Aſſa fœtida* unto it, and rub it a good while in a mortar: This is a paſſing remedy to heal the Fiſtel, and alſo to cure all old ulcers, for that it cleanſeth the ſame, it conſumeth all corrupted fleſh, it ſeparateth all ſcurfe and corrupted bones.

Item, take Turpentine which is oftentimes waſhed with Sorrel water four ounces, the yolk of an Egg, temper them together, and put ſix ounces of the juyce of Smallage unto it, let it ſeethe together till the juyce be conſumed: then add half a drachme of Saffron

unto

unto it: this cleanseth and consumeth all that doth any hurt in ulcers or wounds, and it maketh also flesh to grow.

Next unto this plaister and salve may you use the water which not long since in the first Chapter and 16. §. is described, beginning thus; Take small beaten Hartwort, &c.

The Chirurgions have also a kind of plaister which is not onely good for all Fistels, but also for all wounds, and is thus made.

Take Vervein, Betony, *Herbæ Vulnerariæ*, Bugloss, Agrimony, *Consolidæ Saracenicæ*, Yarrow, Pimpernel, the great and small Plantain, of each one handful, pownd them all together, and wring out the juyce: afterwards seethe it in three pints of good wine, and wring it through a cloth, then put it into a kettle, and put a pound of Turpentine unto it, Wax 4. ounces, *Colophonium* 8. ounces. This being all done, seethe it sufficiently, and when it beginneth to be cold, then stir two ounces of pownded Mastick amongst it.

For this is also very good the plaister of *Gratia Dei*, the foresaid water of Hartwort, the salve of the Apostles.

Item, take the urine of a man child, and rub it a long time in a leaden mortar until it be thick, afterwards let it dry unto a powder, and then strew this powder on the Fistel. The powder of Ireos strewed also thereon causeth flesh to grow: the powder of Honysuckles is also very good for this use; Rosemary wine, and such like more that be discovered in the 16. §. be very good. Celendine pownded small, and so laid upon the Fistel, or the juyce of the same dropt therein doth heal the Fistels. For this may also be used the oyl of old linnen, as been said in the first Part.

Item, make an oyl of water Cresses, and spread it or lay it upon the disease, wherewith it is mundified. Thus much be written of the Fistula, now will we proceed to speak and discourse of the running ulcers.

Of the corroding ulcers, called Herpes. §. 3.

THe name of this ulcer is as much to say as a Snake, like as we have admonished already, for that it creepeth forwards like as Snakes do, and remaineth not in one place, but windeth it self hither and thither, infecting most of all the skin onely, without eating deeper inwards. The cause of this ulcer or sore, is the same with that of the other, to wit, superfluity of *Cholera*, if she meetly remain and abide in her proper nature, that is, if the *Cholera* be not mixed with any other humour: or for that when this *Cholera* doth spread it self over the whole body, then doth it cause the yellow Jaundies, which by nature is of two sorts. When as now this *Cholera* is thick and grosse, then will the whole skin even to the flesh be thereby damnified, and this ulcer will be then called *Herpes exedens*, which is the corroding *Herpes*. The other sort of *Cholera* is subtiler, which remaineth (as is said) in the uppermost part of the skin, which doth singe the outside as if it were a fire, the which without any addition is callep *Herpes*, or *Herpes miliaris*, as having the name of the Milet seed, for that this exulceration is like unto it.

The signs of these ulcers be these: the member loseth his natural colour, and waxeth black, soft, and stinking; also if the pulse and the pain diminish, and in the mean while the ulcer doth so corrode, that if it be not looked to in time, the member must be cut off, or the party must look for death thereby.

The remedies of these ulcers (saith *Galenus*) be these which are wont to be used for the corroding *Erisypelas*, wherefore we may write so much the lesse thereof. But if it be perceived that it begin to putrifie, then temper sealed earth and fine Bolus with Vinegar together, and spread it round about the ulcer, and also in it. But if this will not help, then be the corners round about the ulcers to be scarified, or lanced, and also to set boxing cups and horsleaches thereon, which may suck out the bad blood; this plaister following is also to be laid upon it: Take Pease meal, or Bean meal and salt, temper them all together with the sirup of Vinegar, and lay it as a pap unto it: the scarified place must also be washed twice a day with Vinegar, and then to anoint this salve following over it: Take *Assa fœtida*, Nettle seed, and Hartwort roots, of each half an ounce, Verdigrease one quarter of an ounce, temper it with vinegar to the thickness of Hony, and anoint therewith the whole disease, and the places about it. And to the end that these ulcers may not corrode any further, then take Verdigrease, Allom, & Hony, of each a like quantity, & use it as is beforesaid. The selfsame taketh away all bad flesh, and sustaineth the new flesh. But in case that through these foresaid things the rotting ceased not, but daily

did

did corrode more and more, and the ſtench increaſed, then ſhall you ſtrew thereon this powder enſuing, to wit, pownded Hartwort and Gals, of each a little quantity. Or take Dragagant and Copperas, tempered together with vinegar, and iffo be that this foreſaid do not profit, then ſtir the edges, yea the whole accident to be cauterized with corroſives or hot irons: then take the roots of Celeadine, unſlackt lime, Copperas, Myrrhe, Hartwort and Verdigreaſe, of each a like quantity, tempered with the juyce of Plantain, or pownded Orpiment alone tempered with the ſame juyce. When as then the corroſives have done their work, and the cruſts or ſtakes be yet hard, then muſt they be anointed with freſh butter until they do fall away of themſelves, and afterwards thoſe things to be uſed which are wont to ingender ſkin and fleſh.

The other ſort of theſe ulcers is *Herpes miliaris*, whereof we have admoniſhed before. Some do call it *Formica*, that is, the Ant. This ulcer is alſo of ſundry natures, and that according to the nature of the humour, whereof it is cauſed. It is alſo comprehended in three ſorts or ſpecies: the one, which runneth hither and thither, which is cauſed of a ſubtile moiſture, and is alſo quickly conſumed: the ſecond, that creepeth forward hither and thither, which is very hurtful: the third is of a groſſe and hot *Cholera*, which entreth ſomewhat deeper into the fleſh, and is mixed with ſome *Phlegma*, and thence commeth the *Formica miliaris*, which is hotter and harder to be cured. Out of all theſe foreſaid reaſons be the ſigns apparant, and before ſufficiently rehearſed and diſcovered.

Now for to remedy this accident, is this the briefeſt way; that firſt of all be preſcribed to the patient a good order of dyet, like as is done in the Agues. For purging is he to uſe four Dates, Caſſy, *Epithymum* with Rubarb, ſteeped in Endive water, or whay of milk. If it be *Herpes miliaris*, then take *Diarrubith*. Further, you are to take Gals, Pomgranat pils, and fine Bolus, of each a like quantity; afterwards temper it with Roſewater and a little Vinegar, and then anoint it thereon with a feather.

Item, take the heads of ſalted fiſh, roſt them in an earthen pot upon the fire, until they be almoſt burnt, and then mix them with ſtrong wine, ſpread it upon the diſeaſe; or take ſheeps wool, and fry it until it be black, then pownd it; and temper as much Roſewater amongſt it until it be thick, and anoint therewith the foreſaid accident clean over, twice or thrice a day, and then lay a white or blew cloth upon it. There be yet divers other ſorts of impoſtumes and ulcers, which be of the ſame nature, differing in names and cauſes; but becauſe we do comprehend them amongſt the forementioned, therefore will we omit them, and eſpecially becauſe they may all be cured and holpen with theſe foreſaid remedies.

Of the hard Tumour Scirrhus. §. 4.

BEfore we come to the third corroding ulcer, namely, the Canker; we muſt firſt of all admoniſh of this tumour, which the learned do call *Scirrhus*, of ſome *Schirſi*, whereof we have alſo made mention before in the third part, the twelfth Chapter and the fifth §. and that by reaſon that this *Scirrhus* hath great alliance with the *Scirrhus* of the Liver. This *Scirrhus* is of two ſorts, and both thoſe are of the unnatural tumours of the body, whereof one is ſo hard, that it yeeldeth not at any hand; yea it is without pain and feeling, which is alſo accompted for incurable. This ſwelling is of colour like lead or aſhes, and is cauſed onely through Melancholy, the which is (as it were) dregs of all humours. The ſecond hath but a little ſenſe, and alſo ſome pain; for it proceedeth out of *Melancholia* and *Phlegma*, which be tempered together, and is of colour like to the other. The ſame may alſo be cured, but not eaſily, as before we have ſufficiently written in the firſt Chapter, and 11. §. This foreſaid hardneſſe may be well cauſed of ſome former impoſtume, which is not well cleanſed or healed: whereas the corruption remaining doth clod and harden. The difference between this *Scirrhus* and the Canker is, that in the compaſſe of the Canker, there is heat, beating, and opening of the veins: whereof there is none with this *Scirrhus*: for that *Scirrhus* is without heat, without pain, and without any ſenſe or feeling, and alſo incurable. But for as much as this *Scirrhus*, doth appear as well in other places of the body, to wit, in the liver, milt, and ſtomach, &c. and that we have written ſufficiently in ſundry places thereof, therefore it is not needful for to diſcourſe here any further of it, but to proceed with the Canker.

Of

Of the Canker. §. 5.

THis corroding ulcer, which is taken to be a kind of Fistel, hath her name of the Sea Crab, which men call in Latine *Cancer*, which the Italians call *Grantzo*, and the Grecians *Carcinoma*, not onely for that it creepeth hither and thither, but also like as *Galen* witnesseth, for that many times this Canker hath been seen, and especially in womens brests, in all sorts like unto the Sea Crab; for the veins do reach into the Canker (being filled with black blood) no otherwise, but as they were the feet of the Sea Crab. This Canker is in the beginning very easie to be healed: but if it grow old, and hath rooted in too long, then hath it never been seen that the same could be healed without incision. The cause of this Canker is a superfluity of melancholick humours. Others do suppose that it is raised of melancholick humours which be burnt by *Cholera*, or be partly tempered therewith: whereof the Physitians do make two kinds of tumors; the one being a melancholick and hard swelling, without any ulcer, and with a little pain, as before (in the discourse of *Scirrus*) we have shewed. The other sort is a corroding ulcer, as we have before declared. The signs of a beginning Canker be these: the same beginneth first as a small beane, round, and dark of colour, being tempered with green and black colours, and appearing with some heat and pain: it remaineth also immoveable in the same place where it beginneth: but herein hath the Canker a difference with the *Scirrho*, viz. that the Canker is caused of burnt Melancholick being tempered with burnt *Cholera*; and the right *Scirrhus* of a thick melancholick humour tempered with *Phlegma*. Secondly, the Canker causeth also great pain and beating, whereof *Scirrhus* is free. Thirdly, the Canker hath black and not red veins about it, as the *Scirrhus* or the *Plegmone* hath. Fourthly, the Canker beginneth first to grow of it self: to the contrary, *Scirrhus* doth alwayes come after some impostume. Fifthly, the Canker is very sensible, and the *Scirrhus* without any sense or feeling at all.

For this hard Canker, which is not yet exulcerated, be these rules ensuing ordained. First the Patient is to beware of all meat which ingendereth burnt *Cholera*, of all spices, and of all things which do heat the body. Secondly, he is to eat no meat, but that which maketh good blood. Thirdly, if at the first and in the beginning of the Canker he lay thereto all that which is necessary for it, then may the Canker be holpen; but the old Canker can be cured by no manner of meanes without incision. Fourthly, necessity requireth in this sickness, that the body is to be opened with the decocted *Epithyme*, which is also very meet for the lengthening of life, although that it cannot yeeld perfect health. Fifthly, in the beginning is the Median to be opened. Sixthly, when a woman that is under fifty yeeres of age, hath the Canker, and hath not her termes, then must it be indeavoured that she get the same. Seventhly, if it be a man, then is he to open the Hylas. Eighthly, it doth not help to purge once or twice, but the same is to be done oftentimes; for that the humors which cause this disease are not easily taken away. Ninthly, by this foresaid order, and through all means which be possible, you are to endeavour, that the hard Canker be not opened.

We must also ordain an order of dyet. First, regard must be had, that the Patient have his dwelling in a temperate ayr, which is somewhat warm and moyst. Also he is to take heed of all hot meats that may inflame the blood, and whereof heavy thick blood might ingender, as Colewort, Lentils, Beef, Milk, Hares, Geese, salted or smoaked flesh, Beans, Pease, hot spices, Onions, Garlick, Leeks, Mustard, Cresses, Radish, and such like. Also the Patient must beware of doing any kind of labour in the Sun, or of overheating of himself by any meanes, and of drinking strong grosse wine. But to the contrary, he must endevor himself for to eat and drink none other thing but good hail meat, as Rabbets, Hens, Lamb, Mutton, and Partridges: he may also eat all kind of River fish, which have scales. Item, Parsley, Burrage, Purslain, Lettice, Bempseed, and such like, for also are forbidden him fresh sodden Eggs, Oaten-pap, and Barley-pap is also very good for him. His drink must be clear white Wine, which shall be always somewhat weakened, and use that as the former. Or make a powder of Chervil, temper it with Endive, his whole government must be moistning and cooling; and if so be that there be any heat with it, then may he eat and drink Buttermilk. And like as the first rule giveth to understand, the Median is in the beginning to be opened, and to let out as much blood as the ability of the Patient can suffer: and further to observe all things that the former rules do teach.

We

We have not here to tell of any other remedies, becauſe that we have already written, in four places of the Canker, viz. in the firſt Part, the eight Chapter, and 5. §. Item, in the ſecond Part, the third Chapter and 10. §. of the Canker of the breaſts, Likewiſe alſo in the third Part, the 10. Chapter, and 12. §. of the Canker of the Arſegut. Alſo in the third Part, the 19. Chapter, and 13. §. of the Canker of the Matrix: In all which places one may moſt plentifully ſee by what means theſe diſeaſes are to be remedied. Nevertheleſſe, all that which followeth hereafter is very commodious to be uſed, *viz.* the plaiſter *Gratia Dei.* But before you uſe this plaiſter, ſome do adviſe, that round about the Canker ſhould be well and deep ſcarified, or to ſet Leaches about it, and to waſh the ſcarified place three or four times with a ſharp lee, wherein Lentils be decocted, and afterwards to fill the ulcer with flat plegents, which be anointed with the ſalve of Egypt. But you ſhall underſtand that the foreſaid ſalve, like as alſo pownded Agrimony, or the juice thereof, (which be much commended for this diſeaſe) cauſe the good fleſh to ſeparate from the bad.

Take Lupine meal, Linſeed meal, and Barley meal, of each 4. ounces, the juice of Wormwood, and Salt, of each half an ounce, Sope and Lee, of each a little; ſeeth them then together to pap. Item, take pownded Allom, and the powder of Earth worms, of each one ounce. Or take freſh Earth-worms, pownd them with the Allom, and ſo lay them upon the diſeaſe.

Item, take Wine lees, and Allom, of each a like quantity, and ſo lay it upon the Canker, and chiefly upon the diſeaſe *Herpes*,

For this is alſo meet the ſalve of Roſes, which is diſcovered before in the Introduction. Likewiſe alſo the ſalve of *Turia*, which is called *Diapampholigos*; or this following, Take Litharge of gold, and Ceruſe, of each a like quantity, put them together in a leaden morter with oyl of Camomil, and Roſe water, and rub it ſo long until it be as thick as ſalve: this is as meet for the hidden and ſecret Canker, as for the Canker exulcerated. This enſuing doth alſo withſtand the Canker that it grow no further, whether it be exulcerated or not: Take ſealed Earth, fine Bolus, and Ceruſe, of each a like quantity: temper it with the juice of Lettice, or with the juice of Houſleek, and then ſtir it well together in a leaden mortar as before, and ſpread it on the Canker. The muſcilage of Fleawort is alſo very good being tempered amongſt it. The oyl of Sulphur, the oyl of Juniper, whether it be diſtilled of the wood, or of the berries, tempered together, or each apart, be very good for the Canker.

This powder following is alſo uſed to be ſtrewed on this diſeaſe: Take burnt bones of a ſound man, Cinquefoil, the roots of *Mandragora* and Orpiment, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a powder thereof, and beſtrew therewith the open canker: The Orpiment is very venomous and ſharp; notwithſtanding it is commended above all other for the Woolf, the Fiſtula, Canker, and in the Ulcer *Herpes exedens*, if one know providently to uſe it. This Orpiment was wont to be tempered with the juice of Plantain, or with the juice of Nightſhade, and to make a cloth wet in it, and with the powder of the ſame to beſtrew the ulcer, and then afterwards to lay the wet cloth upon it. But when you will uſe this Orpiment, then anoint the Canker round about with fine Bolus, which is mixed with the juice of Nightſhade, for to free the place from any inflammation. If ſo be that the ſore be thereby diſtempered and ſwollen up with heat, then lay one day or twain the foreſaid cooling herbs upon it, and the pain will aſſwage therewith.

If you will know whether the root of the Canker be taken away, that is to be known hereby, viz. if it ſtink no more, and if there begin any fleſh to grow, like as is wont to happen in all other ulcers when they grow full of fleſh, and be covered with the skin. It is a great abuſe that ſome ſuppoſe, that there is to be laid upon the Canker of neceſſity the fleſh of Hens, Capons, &c. the which the Canker ſhould eat up, and ſhould leſſen the malady.

There is alſo uſed in the exulcerated Canker *Mercurius Præcipitatus*, for that it is not ſo ſtrong as the Orpiment. But the foreſaid waſhing with Vinegar, Lee, and plaiſters, is much more ſurer and rather uſed. Item, take the roots of *Verbaſcum*, and Dock roots, of each half an ounce, the dryed ordure of a ſound man one ounce, make thereof a powder, and uſe that as the former. Or make a powder of Cheruil, temper it with Hony and lay it thereon, it healeth much. The water of *Cardous Benedictus* ſhould have a great vertue againſt this diſeaſe.

For the heat and inflammation of the Ulcers. §. 6.

First, for this inflammation may those things serve, which before in the first Chapter and 10. §. are ordained against the Rose. In like manner also all that which presently hereafter against the burning of fire and water shall be described, and especially this ensuing: Take oyl of Eggs, and oyl of Roses, of each one ounce, Vinegar half an ounce, black Hellebore ten grains: this being well tempered together, it is especial good for all inflammations of all ulcers.

Other more: Take Woolblade, pownd it very small and temper it with Vinegar, then lay it upon the heat: Or steep Quince kernels in water and anoint the heat with the mucilage.

Take Corn Roses, and Water Lillies, of each a like quantity, beat them and lay them thereon; if you cannot get them, then take their water. For this is also good, the leaves of the Mulberry tree: likewise also Poppy leaves decocted in rain water.

In like manner also broad Plantain, and *Bursa Pastoris* laid thereon after the same order.

The herb *Cardous Benedictus* decocted and laid thereon, is also good: the juyce of Sloes spread upon the heat, doth take away the inflammation. But if so be that the inflammation hath gotten the upper hand already, then is this following very good: Take rain water one ounce, and put therein one quarter of an ounce of Quicksilver, and let it stand so certain hours together; afterwards take a feather and anoint therewith the disease once or twice a day, then shall the Canker begin outwardly, and in other places more to separate, till that the foul burnt flesh will fall out: afterwards use the salve *Apostolorum*, or the salve of Egypt with flat pledgents therein, and that twice a day; afterwards lay some of the plaisters upon it which be described against the wild fire.

Item, for the cooling of this burning, take the oyl of Eldern flowers six ounces, the oyl of Johns wort one ounce, oyl of Turpentine half an ounce, let them so mixed the space of certain dayes stand in the Sun, and then keep it until the time of need.

There be many more sundry things which be very requisite for this, especially in the time of the plague, therefore we will not rehearse them at this present.

The third Chapter.

Of the Pox, and of the lamenesse which is caused thereby.

This sickneſſe and infection of the whole body of man, is placed by good reason next to the above mentioned ulcers, because they exceed all other ulcers, except the beforesaid in badnesse: the which now adaies when I did write this, hath been known about the space of threescore and ten years, and from the time that King *Charles* of France, 1494. did besiege the City of *Neapoli*; so that this disease until this present day is yet therefore called the French Pox, and in Latine *Morbus Gallicus*. But the same sickneſſe was known long before in *Spain*, whither long before it had been brought out of the Indies, and out of the New found lands; like as also until this time it is called by some *Indica Hispanica*: so that before that any one could cure this disease, people were burnt, lanched, and cauterized most miserably, and rather spoyled then healed; but daily experience brought by little and little more help and amendment for it. And like as the Quicksilver and such like means were not so sure; there hath been found out at last the use of *Guaiacum*.

Now concerning the remedies of this disease, I will first of all prescribe a processe of the ancient Physitians (the which in those daies was found good) and is as yet not utterly to be rejected, and afterward alledge three of the most famous Physitians for this sickneſſe, whereunto we notwithstanding shall at the last adde certain good things more, whereof each may chuse which one thinketh him to be most meet, and according to that the disease doth require.

An order and cure of the ancient Phyſitians. §. 1.

AS ſoon as a body can perceive that he is infected with this diſeaſe, then is he to keep himſelf warm, to ſweat much in hot bathes, to uſe cupping, to be let blood twice: afterwards he is to remain in a cloſe chamber, and to let himſelf be twice a day anointed with this ſalve over all his joynts, and then to ſweat upon it the ſpace of two hours: and becauſe that every one cannot abide to ſweat, then muſt heed be had to the ſtrength of the Patient, to the end he fall not thereby in any ſwooning.

Purging is alſo needful for this Patient, which may be done as hereafter followeth: Take white Turbith half an ounce, Ginger one quarter of an ounce, Galangal, and Maſtick, Cloves, and Cardamom, of each half a drach. *Hermodactyli*, *Diagridion*, and Sene leaves, of each half an ounce, Sugar three ounces: take one drachme thereof, or one drach. and a half at once, and faſt five hours after it. They write that this powder may boldly be given, and that it may be uſed alſo in other ſickneſſes. It is nevertheleſſe very ſtrong, eſpecially if one take one drachme and a half thereof: but in mine opinion two ſcruples is ſufficient in weak men, and a drachme ſufficient in a ſtrong body for to purge ſufficiently.

The foreſaid ancient Phyſitians do alſo adviſe, that one muſt take one quarter of an ounce of prepared black Hellebore, (viz. a ſtrong body) ſteeped in Goats milk, and ſtrained, and then drunken, for that it cleanſeth and healeth the Poxe; it is very good, but for ſtrong perſons it is ſtrong enough.

For as much then as theſe foreſaid medicines be very ſtrong, therefore can I not omit to add certain things of the later Phyſitians unto that of the ancient, and to teach a ſafer mean, which all they which needs muſt uſe Quickſilver, ſhould obſerve. For this you have firſt in the third Part, the 11. Chapter and 20. §. the manner to make the infuſion of Sene leaves, and how the ſame ſhould be drunken with ſome kind of ſirupes. Theſe potions may one drink 3. or 4. times, every day once early in the morning: and afterwards (as the ancient Phyſitians do adviſe) the Patient is to purge with pils *De Fumo terræ* one drachme, this is the common doſe of them, but it may be augmented or diminiſhed, according to the ability of the Patient. You may alſo ſteep Fumitory in Goats milk, or let them ſeeth together, and drink thereof in the morning and evening: or you may drink the water of Fumitory alone, for the Fumitory doth cleanſe the bloud marvellous much.

When as now the Patient is well purged, then is this ſalve enſuing to be prepared: Take Frankincenſe one ounce, Ceruſe one ounce and a half, Litharge of gold two ounces, Dragons bloud one quarter of an ounce, pownd them all together, and ſift it through a Sieve; afterwards take 16. ounces of molten Barrows greaſe, and ſo pour it as long as it is upon cold water, and ſo let it ſtand: this being done, then temper therewith one quarter of an ounce of Quickſilver, ſo long until you can ſee it no more. Some do kill the Quickſilver in Turpentine, or vinegar of Roſes, but it is needleſſe: now then how this ſalve is to be uſed, that have we ſhewed at the firſt. They divide the ſame in four, five, or ſix parts, and they ſpend in the inunction every day one part, according to the ability of the perſon. But becauſe that after this inunction the mouth will be ſore, they do uſe for it Allom, and Barly water, and let the Patient waſh his mouth therewith: Or they take a pinte of Wine, and half as much Vinegar, half an ounce of Allom, two ſpoonfuls of Hony, and temper them together. With this do they gargariſe the mouth when the tongue is excoriated, to wit, with a ragg which is tyed to a ſtick, which hath been deſcribed in the firſt Part, the firſt Chapter, and 3. §.

Before times the ſick perſons which were infected with this diſeaſe, were wont to be more plagued with lameneſſe, and for that do they uſe this bath following; Take refuſe of iron, make them glowing hot, and then caſt them into a cloſed tub, afterwards take Camomil, Marjoram, and Thyme, ſeeth them, and make with both the vapours a bath; then dry off the ſweat with warm clothes, continue this the ſpace of eight dayes together, or ſo long, till that you be whole, at each time, the ſpace of an hour.

Item, take ſmall pownded Frankincenſe, temper it with two ounces of *Aqua vitæ*, ſtirre it oftentimes about, and then anoint therewith the members which be lame. If ſo be that the Patient have any ulcer, then take four ounces of Barrows greaſe, Quickſilver one ounce and a half, ſalt Lard, Dogs greaſe, Bears greaſe, and Badgers greaſe, of each three

quarters

1688
1666
06222

quarters of an ounce, temper them all together. But note, that you muſt uſe the ſalt Lard in no other ſalves, but when you have old ulcers in hand.

For the foreſaid old ulcers is this powder following to be uſed: Take Salt, and white Argal of each a like quantity, burn them together in hot aſhes.

Alſo ſtinking ulcers be made wet with this enſuing: Take half an ounce of *Mercurii Sublimati*, Allom three quarters of an ounce, Ceruſe one ounce, bruiſe all together very ſmall uppon a ſmall Marble ſtone, put a pinte of vinegar unto it, and make a cloth wet therein, and therewith waſh the ulcer. Take *Mercurius Sublimatus* half an ounce, *Aqua vitæ* twelve ounces, then anoint the ulcers with it: this is very ſtrong.

Of the lameneſſe, and of the extenuation of the members, hath been ſpoken before in the fourth part, the ſeventh Chapter and 2. §. for the lamed member of the Pox. This is in fine the means whereby the ancient Phyſitians were wont to heal the Pox.

How to decoct Guaiacum. §. 2.

BEfore that we come to the curing of the Pox which is uſed in our time, which happeth for the moſt part by the decoction of *Guaiac.* called *Lignum Guaiacum*, and *Lignum ſanctum*, we will firſt of all teach how this dyet drink is to be decocted and prepared of *Guaiac.* as followeth hereafter.

Firſt, take ſmall filed or ſhaven *Guaiac.* 16 ounces, *Stechas*, field Cypres, rinds of the ſame beaten ſmall 12. ounces, *Carduus Benedictus*, S. Johns wort, yellow Lillies and Betony, of each one handful, firſt put the wood and the pownded rindes in a leaden earthen pot, and then poure thereon ſeven quarts of water: let them ſtand in ſteep together the ſpace of a whole night, being ſtopt tight too: afterwards ſet the pot to ſeeth eaſily, when the fourth part is conſumed add the herbs unto them, then put two quarts of Wine unto it, cover the pot cloſe, and let them cool. The rindes, wood, and herbs, are to be dryed, and well kept for to have the ſame uſed again another time, as ſhall hereafter be taught.

The ſecond manner: Take rindes of *Guaiacum* eight ounces; *Guaiacum* four ounces, pownded ſmall together, Well water five quarts, let them ſtand and ſteep together about the ſpace of 24. hours, then ſeeth it all together until about the third part be waſted. Take it afterwards from the fire cloſed very tight, and let it ſtand ſo aſteep the ſpace of twelve hours; ſtrain it thorow a cloth, and wring it well out, afterwards pour unto it as much white Wine (which is not ſweet) as the potion is, then caſt two ounces of Hermodactils into it, and keep this potion as before.

The third ſort: Take four quarts of Reniſh wine, and eight ounces of grated *Guaiac.* pownded rindes four ounces, Betonie, and pownded Licorice, of each one ounce, then let it ſtand aſteep the ſpace of 24. hours, and afterwards ſeeth it to the half: ſtrain the potion through a cloth, and drink thereof morning and evening the ſpace of fourty dayes, each time four or five ounces.

The fourth potion: Take three quarts of Wine, raſped *Guaiac.* eight ounces, pownded rindes four ounces, Licorice two ounces; let them ſeeth well together, and afterwards powre 4. quarts of Wine upon it, and let it ſeeth again until the fourth part be waſted.

Theſe be now the moſt uſual manners to make this decoction, yet may the ſame be altered according to the importance of the ſickneſſe, and according to the ſtrength of the Patient: now followeth here what order the Phyſitians now adaies do obſerve in healing the Pox.

Another manner to heal the Pox. §. 3.

BEfore the Patient begin to drink, he ought firſt to be purged, for which the Caſſie is moſt meet: alſo he is to be let blood. But eſpecially this is the moſt fitteſt mean: Take Sene leaves, Polypodie roots, and Currans, of each three quarters of an ounce, ſeeth them all together in ſix ounces of Fennel water until the third part be waſted. In this decoction are you to ſteep the ſpace of a whole night Rubarb and *Agaricus*; of each one drachme: afterwards wring it out, and put unto it one ounce of the hony of Roſes, whereof you are at leaſt every morning to take one draught 3. dayes together, and afterwards to obſerve this order following.

The next day after the taking of theſe potions, muſt he in the morning betimes drink four ounces of the decoction of *Guaiac.* as is taught before in the ſecond §. and that as

warm as he may abide it; then is he to sleep or rest one hour. He is to drink so much again and rest, and do this the third time. But after the third draught, he is to arise, and shall according to the old custome break his fast, and that of such meates which be light of digesture. His drink that he is to drink on day times, is thus to be prepared:

Take the wood and the rinds whereof the first drink hath been decocted, and then pour water and wine unto it, as is said, and let them seeth together until the fourth part be consumed, and this must be his daily drink, but this may be altered diversly, according to the quality of the cause.

Against the evening he is to drink of the first potion a good draught very warm, and an hour afterwards he is to go to supper, and so continue this until the fift day: but the sixt day is he to take the potion with Rubarb. The seventh day he shall take none other but a spoonful of this composition following: Take small powdered *Guaiac* one ounce, Mace half an ounce, hony of Roses two ounces, temper them together. The eight day he is to begin again as before, to drink of the first decoction, and so continue the space of ten dayes together, unlesse it be found good to augment and increase it. The eighteenth day is he to take again the infusion of Rubarb, and the two dayes following: Then is he to use none other thing but Hony tempered with the powder of *Guaiac*. Afterwards he is every day three hours after every meale-tide to take three ounces of this potion following.

Take Juniper berries and Bayberries, of each two ounces, Mustard seed half an ounce, pownd them all grosse, and seeth them in four pints of water unto the half.

As long as one doth use these things, he must keep himself out of the ayre, and remaine in a warm chamber, for that thereby the matter of the Pox is expelled outwards towards the skin: and when you find that it breaketh out, then is he to wash himself with these things following: Take a quart of Vinegar, Allum, and Verdigrease, of each one ounce, eight well brayed whites of Egs; pownd all that is to be pownded, and then wash him with this Vinegar when he hath thus washed him therewith, and especially where there be any scales, then are they to be let dry, and the scales will fall off of themselves. Thus fareth it with this second cure, which is very safe, without any defect of the inward or outward parts, by which meanes there be a great number cured.

And as we have said, his meat must be light of digesture, viz. young flesh, egs, and all that is drest therewith: also all other things which make good blood: but Milk, Cheese, Fruit, and such like be very highly forbidden in this disease. For this may also be used the golden water, which standeth described amongst other in the last part, whether it be drunken, or anointed outwardly upon it. So is also Treacle highly recommended for the same.

The third cure of the Pox. §. 4.

THis cure ensuing have I tryed my self in a woman which had used many sundry cures, and could not be holpen; but by this meanes following she grew to be so healthy, that I knew her twelve yeares after alwayes in very good health, without any hinderance by the same disease. First of all in this disease (like as in all other such like) the Patient is to be purged, and that according to the ability of the person and strength of nature. Further, in eating and drinking he is to order himself like a woman in Childbed.

After the purgation, he is to take a good warm draught of the first and strongest decoction, which is before described. Having taken the same, then is he to be covered warm, to the end he may sweat well, even so much as his power may well permit. The sweat is to be dryed well with warm clothes; and it were very good that the clothes wherewith he hath been once dryed should be washed every time, and that he put on a clean shirt every morning; for if the Patient keep him warm and clean, then may the potion have her operation the better.

At meales, and throughout the whole day may he use this potion following: Take boyled rinds and *Guaiac*; lay them to steep as before, and seeth them. This may also be done even to the third time, and then to mix all the three decoctions together. When one hath about two quarts of the very strongest decoction, then must he set again to steep with fresh *Guaiac* and rinds, to the end that one may betimes have more drink in a readinesse. If so be that the Patient have any outward sore or scabbednesse, then is he to wash the same with the dregs of this potion, or lay it upon it with a cloth: and if so be that the sore be somewhat deep, then be pledgents to be laid into it, which be made wet in the dregs of this decoction.

This

This is so to be done in the morning after ſweating, and in the evening one hour before ſupper. And if so be that these pledgents were baked therein, like as is shippeneth also, then must they to be wetted with a little of the warm potion, and then to lay fresh to as again: The clothes wherewith his sores be once dresst, are not to be used again without washing. Now when as these sores be almost healed, and the flesh would grow too proud, then a fine powder to be pownded of the rinds, and to be strewed oftentimes thereon: and also to be letten lye upon it, until that there fall off dry scals: this powder dryeth much with all pain. But if so be that it be a rich person, that had need of the use of this potion, then is he to take of the best Rhenish wine, for that is more piercing than any other, and also not too hot.

Of the fourth cure of the Pox. §. 5.

The first here to be noted, that in all these medicines ensuing, no proper or due rules are prescribed, for that they be not set down by one Physitian onely, but gathered together out of sundry mens works, according as the cause requireth, wherefore every one (as he thinketh best) to chuse that which liketh him best. And for that cause be all these remedies ensuing ordained most for them which could not be healed by the former decoction.

First, it is needful that the Patient above all things, and before he use any syrup or potion, do take one ounce of well washt Turpentine, with a little fresh broth, or with a Pannitory made warm: for this prepareth the way for all other Physick, to penetrate the letter through the whole body. So that it hath been found before time, that thereby the working of the medicine hath been perceived even to the great toe. Whereby it may be known, what a power Turpentine hath to open the way for Physick. This Turpentine is also given with the decoction, or with Malmsey, and it may also be made much stronger.

Take Turpentine as much as you will, and put it in a glasse: afterwards set it in the warm Sun, and temper a little Sugar from day to day amongst it, then stir it well about: This is especial good for the head, for the breast, for the paine of the belly, for the gravel and for the laxation of the body.

And to come again to our purpose: This syrup following is especial good for the Pox: Take Sene leaves, *Epithymum*, yellow Mirobalans, Sebestes, Licorice and *Raponticu*, of each half an ounce, field Cypres three drach. Polipody roots, Fumitory or the juice thereof, Hops or their juyce, of each 12. ounces, flowers of Burrage, of Violets, and Colmin of each three drachmes, cut all that is to be cut, and let it seeth together in 5. quarts of wine, until about a quart remain: afterwards take of this decaction a pint, and temper therewith the syrup of Fumitory, and of Hops, of each two ounces, *Oxymel* of Squils one ounce and a half, syrup of Violets one ounce, good Sugar as much as you please: then take thereof three ounces at once, and that with Endive water.

You have also take this decoction with the infusions of Sene leaves, or water of Fumitory certain dayes together, augmenting or diminishing the same, according as you would have it for to purge; this being done, you are to purge with Cassie or any other thing, according to the quality of the cause foresaid.

You may also in the third Part, 14. chapter, and 5. §. many kinds of things which be all good for the Pox.

Of the letting of blood we have also spoken before, which also doth much good in this sickneſse, because that the bad blood is thereby diminished.

But therein is no certain order to be given, but you are to order your self therein according to the quality of the cause and ability of the person, But it is alwayes especial good that the Hemorrhoides be opened: for if they bleed not too much, then do they preserve one from the Pox and Leprosie, as we have taught in the 10. chapter, in the beginning of the 5. §.

Before that now the inunction or *Stricado* be used, it is first exceeding needful that one foment the joynts, and that he take for it Calamus, Marjoram, Garden Mints, Horehound, Hayberries, Southernwood, and Dock roots, of each one M. cut it all together, and seeth it in well water until about the third part be consumed; with this decoction before and in the anointing, foment the members which are to be anointed, and afterwards

after with warm cloaths dry up the sweat, and then anoint them; this is to be pursued, as long as the anointing endureth, which is commonly four or five dayes, and until the skin doth became in the teeth, the mouth, and the flesh of the teeth exasperate, and the pituite gushed out exceedingly begin to issue and run, then is the unction to be stayed. For this purpose many kind of salves prepared, and chiefly this following is to make. Barrows grease six ounces, Quicksilver killed with the juice of Sage three ounces, black Sope three quarters of an ounce, Argal beaten small one ounce; make a salve thereof, anointing therewithal in a morning the space of half a day, that it may be very well tempered. This following is very much used at *Augusta*; Take fresh Butter half an ounce, Barrows grease two ounces, Treacle and Mithridate, of each one quarter of an ounce, mortified Quicksilver one ounce and a half, prepared Litharge of gold and Salt, of each one drachme and a half, oyl of Foxes, and good *Aqua vitæ*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Saffron five grains, afterwards temper them all together: This salve is called *Unguentum Mercuriale*, and is by reason of the Treacle and the Mithridate much safer then the simple salve. Item, take Barrows grease one ounce and a half, Turpentine and Quicksilver of each half an ounce, powder Bayberries one drachme and a half, oyl of Juniper one drachme, oyl of Bays one drachme, and bruised Cinoper, of each one quarter of an ounce, temper it together. Item, take Barrows grease 4. ounces, Quicksilver two ounces and a half, seeth them together in sufficient Vinegar, and put unto at the ashes of Beer hen wood, burnt, oyl of Bay one drachme and a half, Mastick one ounce, Frankincense one ounce and a quarter, temper them all together so long, until that the salve be blewish, and then anoint therewith the Patient but once a day, for that the salve is strong.

Note also, that in case if any body be anointed too much with Quicksilver, then is the joyce of the great Pimpernel to be given him to drink, wherewith some be holpen, in whom the Quicksilver was seen to lye in the veins.

And because there appear sundry accidents through the unction, viz. Ach of the teeth and gums, rawnesse and swelling of the throat, excessive slabbering, weaknesse of nature, binding of the body, and such like, therein one must be provident.

First, the pain of the gums is to be remedied with the juice of Wormwood, wherein whites of Eggs be brayed; to wit, if one wash the teeth and the flesh of the teeth with it, and cleanse the throat also with it. It helpeth likewise for this to cleanse the mouth oftentimes with sheeps milk.

Secondly, take Rose water, and Honey of Roses, or other clear Hony tempered with Whay.

Thirdly, this ensuing is much commended; Take the juice of Laurel, and cleanse therewith the mouth. Each one may try this that will.

Some do advise, that the mouth must be cleansed with cold water, or with the joyce of Nightshade, for that thereby will the flux of the mouth be stopt.

Fourthly, chew Linseed, or the roots of Woolblade.

Fifthly, this disease is to be eased with a kind of fomenting of the members, which have been anointed before with warm water, wherein Rosemary and Sage is decocted.

Sixthly, it is needful, that the Patient live very soberly, and do use good strong broths, and other forcible things, and that all his meats and drinks be also mixed with all that which doth strengthen and fortifie the heart.

Seventhly, there is to be used for this, Conserves of Roses, of Buglosse, of Burrage, *Manus Christi*, with Pearls, and such like things that strengthen the heart.

Eightly, there is a common Clister to be set with Hen-broth, Sugar, yolks of Eggs, and with Salt, thereby to resist all accidents and obstructions of the body; and in great weaknesse of nature, is here to use Sugar of Violets.

Ninthly, prepare this salve: Take Gum, Bears grease, and Oyl of Roses, of each a like quantity; temper them together with a little oyl of Balsam; then is the Patient to anoint therewith his face, both the temples of the head, and his hands: for thereby shall he get again his natural colour.

Now to prevent those foresaid accidents, give the Patient one ounce and a quarter of Cassia, to wit, after the fourth unction. And when he beginneth to slabber, then hold again from anointing, until two dayes afterwards; then purge him again after the third or fourth *Stricado*.

When

When you do prevent the matter in that manner, then will the gumms of the mouth not be so hurtful. Item, the sore and foul gumms this following very good: wash the mouth often times with Vinegar, wherein some Allom is molten: In the evening and morning, let the teeth be anointed with the salve of Egypt: but beware of swallowing the same salve down, for the rotting or putrifying of the gums, read in the first Part, the 13. Chapter, and 7. §. what is written there against the foul Gumms.

Item, take Hony of Roses and the juyce of Mulberries, of each one ounce, Plantein one 8. ounces, Allom one quarter of an ounce, then temper them together, and use it to the washing of the mouth. You may also see boning up upon the shoulders by a perfect reach the making of a corrosive to be used at need.

For the Pox that have continued long. §. 6.

If so be that this sickness be so stale or old that it be not well to be helped, then give the Patient a Pill with Quicksilver, which is tried with the juyce of Limons and with Rubarb, viz. of each about one scruple; if the pain be very great, then temper with *Opium*, and Saffron, of each two grains. This is to be done always about the third day, when he goeth to bed, or that he let himself be anointed the space of eight days, where otherwise he ought to be anointed the space of three or four daies. But always after the fourth inunction is the Patient to be purged, and to omit the same day (the inunction), and afterwards to go on with the inunction unto the end of the same eight days: and when the eight daies be compleat and ended, then is he to drink the decoction of *Guaiac*, made after the common manner. When as the third part of this decoction is spent, then put unto it two ounces of *Raponticæ*, Turbith half an ounce, *Cardui Benedicti* half a M. Agaricus half an ounce, Semblaves half a M. the rinds of *Granates* four ounces, good strong Wine, one quart, then let so much thereof seeth away as there is wine put unto it.

If so be that this will purge too strong, then give him rather the potion of Senne leaves, which is described in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 20 §. every second day. These pils also ensuing may be used for purging: Take *Raponticæ*, Rubarb, Manna and Aloe, of each one drachme, Ginger and *Spica* of Indi, of each six grains; temper them all together with the sirup of Fumitory, and make six pils of one drach. weight, and take thereof every evening twain. The pils *Aggregativæ*, and *de Lapide Lazuli* are also good for this purpose.

If there be great pain with it. §. 7.

If now there be great pain with it, then take Frankincense, Litharge of Gold, Argal, Mastick, Ceruse and Allom, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Bay and *Aqua vitæ*, of each one ounce, Barrows grease five ounces, mortified Quicksilver one ounce and a half, then temper them together unto a salve. This Salve doth mellow all sores, and cleanseth all ulcers.

Item, take Sallad oyl, the oyl of Foxes, or oyl of Costus six ounces, and seeth therein one drach. of Quicksilver; the same flyeth away, but the force of the Quicksilver remaineth still. This oyl swageth all pain of the Pox marvellously.

Or take the spirit of Wine, which is four times distilled, six ounces, Quicksilver which is mortified in Copperas water, one ounce and a half, yellow Saunders three quarters of an ounce, Allom two drach. *Lignum Aloes* one drach. *Masticis* eight grains, *Ambræ* five grains, steep all these things together in the spirit of Wine, and make a cloth wet therewith, and wash all the places, where the pain is: Or make a cloth wet, and lay the same upon it, and especially upon all the joynts.

Another. Take oyl of Roses four ounces, wash Earthworms and Turpentine, of each half an ounce, Salt two drach. let it seeth well together, and so lay a cloth dipped in it upon all the joynts: you may also temper the oyl of Foxes amongst it, and then it is not only good for the sinews, but also especially for all pain of the Pox.

Of the Byles in the Pox. §. 8.

If there appear any blisters or byles in this sickness upon any, then annoint the same three times a day with a salve which is before described in the first Chapter,

and twelfth §. beginning thus: Take ſmall pownded Litharge of Gold, &c. But the expert Phyſitians for the Pocks do deem that there is nothing better for the Byles of the Pocks then unſleckt Lime tempered with black Sope, for that this openeth the ſkin, and thereby will the pain alſo be taken away.

You have alſo in the fourth part, the firſt Chapter, and ſecond §. in the deſcription of *Stratica*, two very good and fine ſalves made of Hollihock roots, and Blecampane roots, for to mollifie all hard nodes or knots. The gray plaiſter *Diachilon* may alſo be uſed very well for it. But in caſe that the ſame be ſo hard, and ſo irremediable, that they muſt be opened by a potential cautery, we will put a meet Chirurgion in truſt with the ſame, yet we will here teach the making of a corroſive to be uſed at need.

Take Vine ſticks, burn them to aſhes, and aſhes of Beech wood, of each a like quantity, powre ſufficient water upon it, and then let it run four times through a bag. Of this lye take three quarts, and put unto it blew willow aſhes, unſleckt Lime, aſhes of the Vine and of the Beech tree, of each half a pound: let this ſtand ſo the ſpace of 8. daies in a wooden veſſel, ſtirring it about every day 3. or 4. times; afterwards filter it ſo long until it be very clear. This Lee are you then to ſeethe in an iron pan upon a good fire, ſo long till it be ſodden thick enough. Now for to know whether it be enough, ſtick a quil into it, and if the feathers do fall off, then take the pan from the fire, and hold it on one ſide, to the end it may run all together, and may be hard. It is alſo here to be marked, that when as in ſeething it beginneth to make bladders, or bubbles (like as pap is wont to do) then is it a ſign that it is ſufficiently decocted, and then caſt it on a board, and cut it parcelwiſe. When it is through cold and waxen hard, then keep it in a glaſs ſtopt very cloſe and tight, in a dry place.

Another: Take unſleckt Lime, Vine aſhes, Willow aſhes, Argal, and burnt Salpeter, of each alike quantity, pownd it all ſmall, and put it in new a pot: afterwards pour ſharp Lee upon it, and ſo let it ſtand three daies ſpace, but ſtir it oftentimes about: filter this Lee ſo often that it be very clear, at the laſt ſeethe it and keep it as before.

For all open ſores in the Pocks. §. 9.

TAke Ceruſe as much as you pleaſe, and Sallad oyl as much as is needful, and a little Vinegar and Roſewater, bruiſe them together upon a rubbing ſtone, anoint therewith the running ſores of the Pocks, and other.

Item; take oyl of Roſes, Saltpeter, and peeled Almonds, of each a like quantity, Camphire a little, then rub it altogether as before.

For this may you alſo according to the importance of the cauſe temper ſmall bruiſed Tutty, for that this healeth marvellous well all ſores, and eſpecially thoſe which do ſtand about the throat: but if it be feared that they eat too deep inwards, then are they to be anointed before and after meat.

For the ſcales and other ſpots. §. 10.

TAke oyl of *Camelina*, and Oyl of ſweet Almonds of each four ounces, Butter and marrow of Oxe bones, of each three ounces, the greaſe of Geeſe and of Ducks, of each one ounce, white Wax two ounces, make a ſalve thereof. This ſalve hath a marvellous vertue in mollifying all ſcales, impoſtumes, and other ſcirrhoſities which proceed of melancholy, and all hardned ſinews. Will you then have this ſalve to aſſwage the pain more? then temper the brayed yolks of three egs amongſt it, and one drach of Saffron. If you then deſire to have it pierce more ſtronger, then take *Bdellium* and *Ammoniacum*, of each one ounce: diſſolve them in Vinegar, and put them amongſt it; then ſeethe them until that all the moiſture be conſumed, and ſtir it together one amongſt another.

Now for to heal all cicatrices, marks and ſpots, uſe this enſuing: Take a pound of Sulphur, beat the ſame groſſe, and ſeethe it with water in a covered pot; but look to it, that there go no vapour out of it: afterwards hold the member over it, and receive the vapour thereof: afterwards anoint it with ſweet Butter. You ſhall alſo find good things for this in the deſcription of burning,

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Leproſie.

ALL famous Phyſitians do eſteem no diſeaſe upon earth to be more terrible and hurtful than the right Leproſie: for this malady doth ſo vehemently infect the body, that it not onely enfeebleth all the members of the whole body, but ſpoileth and putrifieth alſo the ſame on all ſides, that the members will fall parcelwiſe from the body: and it taketh away utterly his whole natural eſſence, for that his noſe will be crooked, broad, and fain down, his lips great, thick, and ſwollen, and his ears ſharp; ſo that theſe people beſides that they be diſdained and deſpiſed of all the world, as if they were the filthieſt creatures on earth, they muſt live and dye in miſery. And to the end that we might partly learn to know the miſery which is cauſed through the Leproſie, theſe are the moſt common ſigns; the falling out of the hair of the beard and the eyebrows, hoarſe ſpeech, a ſhort, heavy, and ſtinking breath, great continual thirſt, hardning and ſwelling of the ſpleen, unnatural heat of the Liver and of the Kidneys, wherewith is commonly gravel alſo: the Patient wil be vexed with terrible dreams, and wil be much plagued (as it is commonly ſaid) with the night Mare. He will alſo be vexed with much wind of the belly, and with great binding. Alſo the fingers and toes do rankle and ſwell, the nails to fliver and cleave, and ſpoil, that at laſt they do fall out. Whereſoever they have any openneſſe, there runneth out alwaies a black, loathſome and ſtinking matter. Otherwiſe they have over the whole body a hot, irkſome and itching ſcabbednſſe with bliſters and ſcales, which for the moſt part do appear in the throat and in the noſtrils, whereby they do take away the breath from the Patient. He getteth thick cornels or knobs on the skin of the thighes, legs and feet, which do get a numbneſſe, whereby the natural colour is altered into a dead black and blew colour. The eyes do alſo get another form or faſhion, whereby their lively ſight is darkned.

Theſe be now (like as is ſaid, and ſhall yet be ſaid) the moſt common ſigns of the Leproſie, eſpecially of that which the learned do call *Elephantiaſin*, whereby all the foreſaid ſigns do ſhew themſelves not all at one time, but alwaies in a good part of them. It happeth alſo well, that otherwhiles but one member onely, or ſome of the body is infected with this diſeaſe, and not the whole body.

We will alſo diſcover ſomewhat here of the cauſes of this ſickneſſe. It may be cauſed of a bad air, as in time of the plague, by converſing or dwelling beſides Lepers, or by much ſpeech with them; for that through their venomous breath may one be eaſily infected. And this is ſuch a diſeaſe, whereby the one is not onely infected of the other, but the children alſo do inherit the ſame from their parents; ſo that whether the man or the woman be infected with it, the other will ſoon take it alſo. This miſerable ſickneſſe is wont alſo to be cauſed of great anger, long ſorrow, fear, and faintheartnedneſſe, whereby much melancholy blood is ingendred, and then out of it the Leproſie. Item, of the long uſe of melancholick meats, as Peaſe, Beans, &c. old cheeſe, Goats fleſh, Bears fleſh, Foxes, Aſſes, and meaſelly Swines fleſh, all old ſalt fleſh, groſſe fiſh, milk and fiſh eaten together, and ſuch like things more. Item, through too hot a Liver, whereby the blood is burnt. The Leproſie divided by the learned into four parts, and each ſpecies of the ſame called after a certain beaſt, for that it hath a little likeneſs to the nature of the ſame beaſt: whereof the 1. is *Leonina*, of the Lions, the 2. *Tyria*, of the venemous ſnake *Tyro*: the 3. *Alopecia*, of the Fox: the 4. *Elephantiaſis*, of the Elephant.

The firſt ſpecies hath her name of the Lion, for that they that be therewith infected, be raging mad, as otherwhiles the Lions be. This ſpecies is cauſed through an overheated and burnt blood, whereby they alſo get a deformity of the face, which is horrible to look upon: they do cry out, and beat their bodies ſo vehemently that their own skin doth thereby harden: they be alſo ſo hungry and thirſty that they cannot be ſatisfied: they are alſo deprived altogether of ſleep, until that at laſt they be very mad and diſtraught.

Concerning the ſecond ſort, it is well known throughout all the world, that the Snakes do at a certain time renew themſelves, ſtrippe off their skinne from them, and

do get a new: the which alſo hapneth in this ſort of Leproſie, otherwhiles 10. or 12. times a year, ſo that their skin goeth off with great heat and ſharp pain, out of which runneth a ſubtil matter which infecteth the parts round about it: and this not onely therefore, but alſo for that this kind of Leproſie doth infect and hurt all other people dwelling by. This Leproſie is alſo contagious, that all whatſoever he ſpoileth doth ſtink none otherwiſe than do the holes of theſe ſorts of Snakes *Tyri*.

The third ſpecies which is called after the Fox: it is very well known that this beaſt is ſubtil and ravenous, alſo frequenteth unknown and ſecret holes: alſo commonly twice a year cometh to caſt his hair, and at laſt conſumeth utterly.

This ſpecies of Leproſie is alſo of this nature, that the Patient can by no means be perſwaded for to uſe any counſel, but feareth alwaies that he ſhall be extenuated. At the firſt have we admoniſhed, that the parties beard and the hair of his eyelids will fall out: the ſame hapneth in this alſo, for that becauſe his meat and drink can alter into no natural nouriſhment, therefore will not onely the nouriſhment of the hair be taken away, but alſo the ſuſtenance of the whole body, whereby the Patient muſt extenuate and conſume.

The fourth ſpecies receiveth her name of the Elephant: the cauſe of this Leproſie cometh through the uſe of all bad and melancholick meats, the which cannot ſuſtain a body, nor ingender ſound fleſh, but do rather ſpoil and deſtroy the ſame. In like manner do they alſo clean change the natural colour of the body, and make the ſame a dark gray, like as is the colour of the Elephant. Other are of opinion that this name proceedeth of a lothſome ſight, for that this diſeaſe hath a lothſome ſight. In like manner alſo for the altering of the voyce, which ſeemeth like to the voice of an Elephant, with other more ſuch like things. But for that at the firſt in all ſuch leaprous people the head oftentimes and the whole body do ſwell ſo, that one may ſay very well that he is like to an Elephant: their face is ſometime ſo terrible to look upon, that one ſhould be affrighted of the ſame, as of a terrible beaſt; for that their face, fingers and toes be full of ſores, and thoſe ſo great as a Nutmeg or Bean, and of the colour of a Mulberry, which is not as yet throughly ripe. When as theſe come to impoſtumate, then do they yield (as is ſaid) a ſtinking matter: the eyelids do alſo ſwell ſometimes ſo thick as a finger, afterwards they do ſplit and cleave. But this is not all, for they do hurt alſo the mouth, the throat, and the noſe ſo wonderfully that the Patient can hardly get his breath, and do alter afterwards commonly into the canker, and into all ſuch peril, that he cometh to ſtifle thereby. The ears be alſo commonly full of ſores and ſcales, and be alſo ſometimes eaten up that they fall off, yea they do ſo eat inward that they make the Patient utterly deaf. The arteries and other veins of the neck will be apparantly filled full of thick and clotted blood, whereby the voice will be hoarſe, and ulcers and bliſters do appear in the joynts with a great hardneſſe of the ſpleen, and is almoſt a general numbneſſe of all the members, ſo that they cannot uſe them. Laſtly (which is moſt of all to be wondred at) this ſickneſſe doth commonly cauſe the great rupture *Burſi*, whereof we have written in the third part, the firſt Chapter, and 8. §.

Out of theſe four ſpecies of Leproſie may each expert man well gueſſe, that the firſt ſpecies is cauſed through a burnt cholerick melancholy: the ſecond ſpecies out of a phlegmatick melancholy: the third out of melancholy which is mixed with blood: and the fourth of a burnt melancholick matter: therefore this laſt kind of Leproſie is much worſe than any of the reſt. This may ſuffice of the nature and cauſes of the Leproſie. Now we will come to the Phyſical means which may be uſed againſt it.

For this above all are theſe rules to be obſerved.

Firſt, although the Leproſie hath ſetled her root, yet letting of blood is good, but very little, like as alſo no ſtrong purgations be good; for when this ſickneſſe is confirmed, then is the matter without the veins and in the outward members, out of which it is not to be expelled.

Secondly, this ſickneſſe is not to be driven away, but onely at the firſt through the purging of the melancholick, and other bad humours.

Thirdly, I take that there be much ſpoiled blood inſtant, then is a vein to be opened, whether it be in the arm or upon the hand. But if there be not much blood inſtant, then is letting of blood to be omitted.

Fourthly, both the veins of the throat (whereof we have written in the Introduction) are to be opened in great hoarſneſſe, and that eſpecially if one be afraid of ſtifling.

Fiftly,

Fifthly, there be in the beginning no ſtrong medicines (eſperially Hellebore) to be given, for that this matter is not to be purged, but it is rather to be put in practiſe with mild things which do purge melancholy.

Sixthly, each one that is infected with this diſeaſe ſhall beware of tenety. Seventhly, neither bathes nor ſalves are to be uſed before and until that the patient be duly purged, for the groſſe matter doth obſtruct the pores.

Eightly, the fleſh of the Snake of *Tyrus*, and all things wherein the ſame ſhall be tempered, are very meet for leprous people, and adviſed to be uſed by all learned men.

For the Leproſie.

TAke of my Lixivium mentioned in the 1. Part, 1. Chapter, and 4. §. make it hot and waſh the Leprous party therewith very hot; do ſo for 2. or 3. dayes 3. times every day.

Then take my yellow ſalve made of Hony, Wax, and Roſin, Turpentine and hogs lard, and anoint the leprous parts with it as hot as may be ſuffered, & let it lye thick upon the ſores, then cover it with clean white paper and bind it and ſow it up with cloth that the papers move not; let it ſo remain 3. dayes, then dreſſe it again, and in 2. or 3. dreſſings you ſhall have fair skin, and the leprous ſcurfe will be gone.

And purge the party with Sene, and Anniſeed decocted in ſmall ale ſod to the half.

Or purge with Confectio Hamech.

This is my own experiment which I have proved ſeveral times with good ſucceſſe.

Of means and medicines againſt the Leproſie. §. 1.

THe famous Phyſitian *Galenus* doth write thus; the Leproſie is an alteration of naturall warmth, which appeareth with terrible and itching ſores. And yet in another place he doth admoniſh that (in the beginning of *Elephantiaſis*) he hath healed it through letting of blood, and through ſtrong purging of melancholy: therefore muſt theſe ſickneſſes at the firſt (and as ſoon as they can be perceived) be remedied; for which one is to imitate this proceſſe enſuing: and although the ſame be more inclined to the healing of *Elephantiaſis* then to any of the other kinds, nevertheleſſe the ſame is meet to heal all Species of Leproſies.

An order of Dyet. §. 2.

FOr as much as melancholy is of a dry and cold nature, therefore muſt (to the contrary) warm and moiſt things be uſed for to mitigate the matter according as the humour is weighty, mean, little, and venomous.

Firſt, then concerning the aire, the patient is to keep himſelf in a meetly warm and moiſt aire, and that eſpecially about rocks that are lying towards the Eaſt, the South, or towards the North, and alſo about ſo ſpringing fountains. But if the wind cometh to blow over ſome odoriferous trees or flowers, then is it the better: but if one cannot get ſuch an aire, and that the year be very hot, then ſprinkle the chamber with freſh water wherein Violets, Waterlillies and Lettice be decocted. Alſo lay theſe Trociskes inſuing upon hot coales, therewith for to fume the chamber: Take Violets and waterlillies, of each one ounce, the ſeeds of Lettice, of Endive, and of ſmall Endive, of each half an ounce, the ſeeds of Mellons, of Pompeons, of Gourds and of Cucumbers, all together peeled, of each one drachme and a half, Starch half an ounce, Camphire one drach. make Trociskes thereof with the juyce of Lettice, each about half an ounce in weight. When the ſame be dryed, then pownd them to powder, and let the patient therewith fume his dwellings, viz. in the morning, at noon; and in the evening.

Although now his dwellings were ſitnated towards the North, and towards cold winds, yet is this fumigation very requiſite for him, but the leaves of Apple trees, or ſweet Pomgranats or of Almonds, or ſuch like decocted amongſt them are to be put unto it: alſo all his linnen, and eſpecially his ſhirts are to be waſhed with the ſame water. In like manner alſo are his clothes to be fumed.

Further, this bag enſuing is to be prepared for to ſmel unto it.

Take

-ing Take sorted earth and fine Bolus, of each one quarter of an ounce, the flowers of Burrage, Buglosse, of Basil, of each one drachme and a half, Violets and Waterlillies, of each one quarter of an ounce, Camphire half a scruple, wild Vine leaves, Broom flowers, and Quince seed, of each three quarters of an ounce, pownd each alone, temper each alone, temper them very well one amongst another, and then bind it in a fine cloth. He must also beware of all such clothes as do weing the head and the breast too hard, or be too narrow. The hands and the feet are in sommer with linnen, and in winter with good warm sheeps pelts to be kept warm, and also the head preserved from all cold.

Concerning his meat, it should be very good that all his bread were kneaded with water of Purslain, of Lettice, of Endive, or with some such like waters, a little salted, but meetly baked, and not eaten before it be two dayes old. All his flesh must be light for to be digested, as namely, Pullets, field fowles, fat Ducks, Partridges, Pheasants, Finches, wood Pigeons, and such like. Amongst all other flesh is good for him the flesh of young Goats, Lambs, Calves, young swine, of young Muttons, Harts; and especially of young Conies, young house Doves and Hares, shall he not eat, because that the melancholike humours by them are ingendred. All river fish which is not slimy, is very good for him rather sodden then rosted. All fruit that is sweet, as Cherries, Cresses, Hasel nuts, Almonds, Muscadel grapes, and other sweet grapes, shall not onely be permitted, but much rather be advised for to use them. In like manner fresh Figs, and water drunken upon it, Peaches, sweet Apples, and sweet Pomgranats are very good in this sickness: but all sour fruit is to be forborn, for that vinegar and all whatsoever is sour doth harm much the melancholike person. Walnuts, Chestnuts, Quinces, Servises, and such must he forbear. The decoction of red and white Pease, and these green herbs, viz. Spinage Lettice, Beets, Endive and Purslain be very good for him, and especially if some Fennel be chopt amongst them. Item, ripe Melons, because they cool and moisten, are not ill for him. Milk is also for this sickness not discommended, all hot Spice. as Pepper, Cinamom, Galanga and Ginger are hurtful unto him, for that the matter thereby is the more burnt. But for to prevent the consumption, this powder following is to be prepared; Take Saffron one drachme, Cinamom two drachmes, Mace three drachmes, the seed of Violets, of waterlillies, of Sorrel, and of Endive, red and white Coral, red and white Saunders, of each one drachme, pownd each alone, and temper them together.

Item, he may also use Hens grease, Ducks grease, Calves suet, Mutton suet, if it be not much salted, for all these suets be much better in this sickness then butter. Leeks, Garlick, Sives and Radishes are to be refrained, or at leastwise used very seldom. In like manner also salted fish, salted flesh, and such like. The stomach, the liver, the heart, and chiefly the spleen of what beasts soever they be, he is not to eat, howbeit the brains of beasts being sodden are not ill.

As concerning his drink, he is to beware drinking of all kind of red thick wine, and also of all white wine which is strong, and ascendeth or climeth into the head, but a milde, white, and sweet Wine which is not strong. And if this kind of wine cannot be had, then is his wine to be tempered with good well water or fountain water. When it is cold weather, then may he use Hony water, which from twenty quarts of water and one quart of Hony is decocted unto the fourth Part. When the Grapes be ripe in the forepart of winter, then is alwayes this wine following to be prepared: take one hundred quarts and an half, or two hundred quarts of sweet Must, and steep therein twelve ounces of green small Endive, cut very small, Elecampane roots eighteen ounces, the seed of Dock and of Sorrel, of each one ounce, then put it all together in wine, and let the wine stand over a year and be very clear. If the wine be now too strong, then temper in their drinking good well water with it, or let it seethe together. Of this wine is he to drink all the whole winter even to the end of March: but from the moneth of March until the end of the moneth of September, then take Must and fountain water, of each one hundred quarts, Liverwort, water Cresses and Garden leaves, of each six ounces, green Citron leaves 12. ounces, cut them very small, and let it seethe all together. When this potion is cleansed, then drink it as before.

The patient is also to see to it that he eat not without hunger, nor drink without thirst, and especially if his stomach be not well framed; To the contrary, he is not to fast any longer then till he feeleth that the meat in his stomach be clean spent. Many dishes or messes be not good for him, but all spoon meats that are thin are very meet for him. He is to beware of all dry meats: He is also to hold him sober in drinking, that the meat come

not

ness swim in the stomach. If so be he find after meat that his meat doe trouble him, then is he to take this following to parbreak it out again: Take three ounces of water wherein Radishes be decocted, white Sugar and Hony, of each half an ounce, *Sal gemmæ* three grains, Comin five grains, Vinegar two ounces, temper them together and drink it luke-warm. But in case that the vomiting will not yet follow after it, then thrust your finger or a feather in your throat as deep as you can, which is made fast with a cord. If it will not yet be, then must it be looked to, that the meat come not to rot in the stomach, and thereingender an Ague of it, which is to be done with this potion following: Take fresh prepared Caffy which is prepared with water of Violets one ounce, water wherein the herb Mercury hath been decocted three ounces, then make them warm together, and drink it at one good draught.

Of sleeping and Waking. §. 3.

They that be burthened with this disease, ought to sleep the space of eight hours at the least, and to go to bed one hour after meat, and to turn oftentimes about from one side to the other. The head is to lye very high, and to sleep half sitting. When it is cold weather, then is he to cover his whole body, and especially his head very warm. Reasonable exercise is very good for him, if so be that he can exercise himself. His head must he let be oftentimes and softly rubbed. Last of all he is to beware of all motions of the mind, as from anger, sorrow, and such like; for that these things do augment the burning of the melancholy.

Let this suffice to be spoken of the order of diet, whereof we shall hereafter discourse more at large, and teach also how this matter might be diminished and expelled.

Of letting of Blood. §. 4.

WE have before expressed in the general rules how that letting blood in the confirmed Leprosie may not avail, except it be seen that the patient be very full of blood: for which, setting of boxes is also very commodious, whether it be in the neck, the shoulders, the thighes, or upon the calves, and upon other places more according to the importance of the cause. But if so be that the Leprosie be not rooted, then is first the letting of blood to be used, and that for an unburthening of the noisom matter.

But if now the patient be very plethorick, and the veins be full of blood, then must one open the patients Median in the left arm, and let out three or four ounces of blood. Or if there appear such fulnesse of blood about the liver, then is the liver vein to be opened in the right arm. But if there be any fulnesse in the veins about the head, then is the head vein to be opened, and that upon the hand about the great thomb. This letting of blood is in the beginning of the Leprosie, one of the most principallest medicines and means, because that the burning blood can through no more commodious way be expelled.

After letting blood (or if it be not esteemed needful) do all learned commend the potion of *Epithymus*, whereof there be three sorts in the first part, the twelfth Chapter, and eight §. is described, whereof the patient shall take in the morning betimes 4. or 6. ounces very warm, and then to sleep one hour upon it, for it is a very mild laxative, and afterwards he is to fast six hours after it. But if you desire a weaker potion, then take fresh leaves of Polipody, pownded Sene leaves, *Thymus* and *Epithymus*, of each one drachme, *Mirobalani Indi* one quarter of an ounce, Whay five ounces, Annis, Cinamom, wild yellow Rape seed and Mace, of each half a scruple, and beat it small, and steep it the space of twenty four hours in warm whay, afterwards wring it out, and so give it to drink. Item, take the Confection of Sene leaves 3. quarters of an ounce, and tempea it with whay of Goats milk: this is a safe and elected medicine. This following is somewhat stronger: Take Sene leaves one drach. Indy salt, prepared Azur stone, and fine Bolus, of each two greins, then give it warm with three ounces of the water of Hops. Or take two ounces of the juyce of the leaves of Polipody, temper it with one ounce of good wine unto a potion. If you will have this more pleasant, then take the distilled water which is distilled out of the leaves and roots of Polipody.

Had you rather take pils? then let these following be prepared; Take Polipody, *Thymus* and *Epithymus*, of each five grains, prepared Azur stone, and fine Bolus, of each half a scruple, Annis, Mace and Ginger, of each two grains, Indy salt three grains, then

make

make them of 7. or 9. pils, and that with the juyce of Roſes for to be taken at one time. After this may one bring together many purging things, but theſe beforeſaid be ſufficient for a pattern and example.

This clyſter may be made thus: Take Burrage, Bugloſſe, the uttermoſt of the *Agaricus*, Elecampane roots, and freſh Polipody, of each one handful, then ſeeth them all together in ſufficient water unto the half, then take thereof twelve or ſixteen ounces for a clyſter, without any other addition.

Another. Take of this foreſaid decoction 12. ounces, Butter half an ounce, then temper them all together: or take good ſweet Wine wherein Mallowes and Violet leaves have been decocted 4. ounces, confection of Sene leaves and Caſſy, of each half an ounce, Indy ſalt one ſcruple, temper them well together, and then ſet it very warm as a clyſter.

Here followeth a ſtronger: Take Cyloquinto, *Mirobalani Indi, Emblici, Epithymus, Thymus*, Fumitory, and Sene leaves of each one handful, ſeeth all together in ſufficient water even to the half, and uſe them without any other addition for a clyſter. There may alſo be taken ſix ounces of the decoction wherein an Hedghog is boyled, and putting thereto 4. ounces of the oyls of Violets, Indy ſalt one drachme, confection of *Hamech* three quarters of an ounce, and temper this together unto a clyſter.

But this following is the middeſt, and notwithſtanding the moſt commodious: Take whay of Goats milk 12. or 16. ounces, Caſſie one ounce, and ſet it warm.

If it be ſeen that the matter do annoy more the head then any other member, then is this laxative potion to be uſed: Take the confection of *Diaſatyn* and *Hamech*, of each three drachmes, the decocted or diſtilled water of Betony, water of Violets, or of the Savin tree, of each one ounce and a half, temper it all together.

If ſo be that the breſt be moſt of all infected, then take *Agaricus* one drachme and a half, *Mirobalani Indi* one quarter of an ounce, freſh Polipody, and the huſks of the Sene leaves, of each one drachme, Fennel water, and water of Hyſſop, of each two ounces: make it warm, and ſteep the reſt the ſpace of 24. hours in it: afterwards drink it warm in the morning early.

Or if ſo be that theſe melancholick humours do bruiſe the Liver moſt of all, and the reſt of the intrailes, then is this following to be uſed: Take Annis, *Spica*, Violet ſeed, *Cuſcuta* ſeed, Sorrel ſeed and Maſtick, of each half a drachme, Roſes, and the leaves of the wild Vine, of each four ſcruples, ſeeth them all together in ſix ounces of water even to the half: Take of this decoction and temper therein of the confection *ad melancholiam Avicenna*.

Theſe be now the things whereby all ſuch noyſome humours may be diminiſhed. Firſt it is to be conſidered how the groſſe melancholick blood might be drawn from the vital parts to the outſide: for this is very good after the uſe of the former purgation that the Patient do forcibly ſtir and exerciſe himſelf, viz. to go afoot, and to clime up to the mountaines, whereby natural heat might be provoked, and the matter conſumed.

Secondly, it is very good that he be rubbed from the neck along the back bone downwards, and from the ſhoulders to the hands, and from the thighes to the feet with hot clothes until the skin be very red.

Thirdly, he ſhall bathe in this bath following morning and evening: Take freſh or dry Fumitory twelve ounces, the Elecampane leaves, Violet leaves, and ſmall Houſleech, of each ſix ounces, Camomil, Melilot, and *Spica Romana*, of each eight ounces, ſeeth them together in ſo much water as is needful: in this ſhall the Patient bathe, and be ſoftly rubbed.

Fourthly, prepare this ſalve following: Take oyl of *Seſamum* ſix ounces, Camomil, Dill ſeed, Burrage flowers, and Fumitory, of each one drachme, flowers of Elecampane, and Dock ſeed, of each one drachme and a half: pownd them all ſmall, ſteep them and ſeeth them all together in the foreſaid oyl unto the half: afterwards anoint therewith the body twice or thrice a day, and eſpecially the whole back bone, and alſo all other parts which are infected.

There is alſo uſed for this hot and bliſtering herbs, viz. pownded, wherewith the members may be rubbed, whereby the bad humours be drawn outward toward the skin: theſe herbs be Marjoram, Pennyroyal, wild Thyme, Nepe and Crowfoot, which have an eſpecial power for to draw out the melancholike humours towards the skin, changing them into water, through the bliſters which appear after this chafing.

Some

Some do use *Cantharides*, but they are too strong, for they expel urine very violently, yea that the blood followeth with it, and do excoriate the conduits of the urine if the same be used at any one time in many places.

For this is also good boxing cups set on the outward members, and the skin pricked. If so be that there be any other sorenesse or imposthumation with it, then have you before in the 2. §. how the Patient is to be ruled, the which is very meet for this.

But in these cases there is nothing better then to open the hemorrholdes, which may be effected by the rubbing of fig-leaves, or by the rubbing with the leaves of Comfrey; also with rubbing with an hairen cloth which is steeped in an Ox-gall.

There may also a small boxing cup be set upon the fundament, and when as the Arse gut doth appear and come forth, then may the veins which do as then appear be opened with a lancet, and to let them bleed so long, until that the thick and grosse blood do alter into clear and thin blood. This is also to be done foure times a year, for it is very commodious.

How to expel the matter of this sickenesse by urine. §. 5.

AFterwards it is also very meet, that this noysome matter be driven out through the urine, for which you are to use one ounce or more of the potion of *Epithymo*, or of the water wherein *Epithymo* is decocted, whereof the Patient is in the morning and also at afternoon to drink, for that it driveth out a black and melancholike matter.

Or take in the morning early one ounce of the juyce of Smallage. Item, take 3. ounces of the juyce of Pease, or the decoction wherein pease be boyled.

There is also Azure stone sodden in the water of Millet, and take thereof 3. ounces: Take Indi Spica one quarter of an ounce, *Mirobalani Indi* three drachmes, seeth them in nine ounces of Fennel water even to the half, afterwards strain it through a cloth, and wring it out hard, and then drink it.

The flowers of Broom be also taken for this, Madder, Valerian and Mew, of each one handful, let them seeth altogether in eighteen ounces of water unto the half, and thereof drink four or five ounces with pownded Licorice and Gromel seed, of each half a drachme tempered therewith.

Wherewith the Mouth and other parts are to be washed. §. 6.

TAke the decoction of Linseed four ounces, and *Oximel Compositum* two ounces; temper them well together, and wash the mouth oftentimes with it alwaies twice before supper, and two hours before dinner. You may also after the same manner chew Swines bread and spit it out again; or instead thereof chew Agaricus, which is more forcible and more safe.

Item, prepare this gargarisme ensuing; Take *Mirobalani Indi*, Violets, Burrage flowers, and Bugloss flowers, of each one drach. the roots of Polipody one quarter of an ounce, Indi Salt one drachme, the Husks of Sene one quarter of an ounce: seeth them altogether in twelve ounces of water even to the half, and use it warm alwayes one hour before noon, and an hour before supper; to wit, ten or twelve times together. This ensuing is also much commended for the Leprosie, if it be often washed therewith in the beginning: Take Myrrhe and *Sarcocolla*, of each three drachmes, Ireos, roots of Fumitory, of Mew, and Hartwort, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, black Hellebore two ounces, the seeds of Mallowes, of Hollihocks, of Fumitory, and the leaves of Elecampane, of each three handfuls, cut them and stamp them together, afterwards let them seeth in two quarts of water unto three pints.

In like manner there is also much commended for this the golden water, if that one do take a little and oftentimes thereof, and do anoint the Leprosie therewith. The oyl of Tiles is also much commended in the beginning of the Leprosie.

But because the most principal cure of this Leprosie consisteth in consuming of the melancholike matter of this sickenesse, and that the blood must be well cleansed therefore will we to that end describe certain good things, beginning first with the least.

Whereof

Whereby the blood in the Leproſie ſhall be cleanſed. §. 7.

TAke the water of Hops, and of Fumitory, of each one ounce and a half, temper them together, and give it in the Summer cold, and in the Winter warm.

Item, Take the Whay of Goats milk, or of Sheeps milk, and drink thereof in the morning like as is ſaid before. This following is alſo more forcible: Take four ounces of Cheeſe whay made of ſheeps milk, and the juyce of Fumitory, temper them all together, and ſo drink it warm. Theſe three things have an eſpecial property with the breaſt, with the livet, and with the ſtomach, and do conſume all burnt humours of the ſame.

Item, Take the ſirup of *Epithymo* one ounce and a half, the water of Elecampane, of Sorrel, and of ſmall Endive, of each one ounce and a half, temper them together, and drink it certain dayes together: the ſame expelleth the groſſe matter. This following is alſo meet for the ſame; take *Syrupum de Thymo, Acetoſum compoſitum, de Byzantiis*, of each half an ounce, water of Smallage and of Fumitory, of each one ounce and a half, and uſe them as before.

This enſuing is eſpecial good for the melancholy which is cauſed through burnt blood, and where it may evidently be ſeen, that heat of the Liver, of the breaſt, and of the head is with it: Take the ſeeds of Melons, of Cucumbers, of Pompeons, and of Gourds, of each three drachmes, flowers of Violets, of Burrage, Bugloſſe, and of ſmall Endive, the ſeed of Sorrel, of ſmall Endive, and of Waterlillies, of each one handful and a half; Fumitory flowers, Elecampane roots, red and white Saunders, burnt Ivory, red and white Corral, of each one drachme, the juyce of ſweet apples ſix and thirty ounces, freſh Mallows, Endive, Sorrel, Hops, Purſlain, and Lettice, of each three handfuls, Dock leaves, Elecampane roots, *Biſorta*, Swines bread, and Gentian, of each one handful, wild Vine leaves, ſmall Houſleek and Liverwort, of each three handfuls; ſeeth this all together (except the juyce of Apples) in four quarts of water unto the half, afterwards wring it out hard and ſtrain it; this being done, then put to this decoction the juyce of Apples, and three ounces of ſharp Vinegar, white Sugar ſix and thirty ounces, then ſeeth them altogether (alwaies skumming) by a mild fire, until that about the third part be waſted, whereof you are to keep the one half, and the other half are you to ſeeth to a ſirup; for that of the firſt is every day to be taken five ounces, and of that which is ſodden to a ſirup two ounces, with water of Agrimony, and Fumitory: to wit, of each one ounce and a half. This hath done marvels, but it muſt be continually uſed the ſpace of ſix weeks or two moneths.

This ſirupe (as alſo all other) is alwayes to be taken when the meat is digeſted in the ſtomach, and afterwards to ſleep an hour or twain, and then without doing any great labour, to faſt five hours after it. In Summer it is to be taken cold, and in Winter lukewarm.

For to conſume the remanent matter. §. 8.

WHen you do perceive that this matter is much diminiſhed, then give the Patient during the ſpace of a moneth, alwaies early in the morning one drachme of pownded Nep with Sheeps Whay, for it is a ſafe remedy.

In like manner you may give unto this Patient ſome dayes together one ounce of the juyce of Marſh Mints or of white water Mints, and that eſpecially in the beginning of this ſickneſſe.

The Powder of burnt Hedgehogs fleſh hath an eſpecial power for to conſume this matter, if that one take the weight of a drach. oftentimes with Whay, or give him oftentimes half a drachme of Treacle with decoctions of Hedghogs fleſh. Theſe be now ſufficient and ſure things choſen out of divers others.

If ſo be that there remain any bad matter in the joynts, then muſt the ſame (if one will have perfect health) be alſo conſumed, to the end that thereby (the ſame there remaining) the whole body be not infected again. For which theſe two bathes are to be uſed at the firſt: take Marjoram 12. ounces, Bayberries, the ſeeds of Licebane and Muſtard ſeed, of each ſix ounces, Sulphur vive 4. ounces, the Earth called *Sinopida* two ounces; then ſeeth them all together in much water unto the half, then bathe therewith the ſpace of five or ſix dayes twice a day. When the Patient cometh out of the bath, then is the whole body

to

to be anointed with Treacle, and the same to be rubbed in well. Afterwards he is to go to bed, and to sweat well upon it, and although he could not sweat well at the first, yet give him after bathing half a drachme of the Treacle *Diatessaron*, with a little water of Violets, and then cover him close.

When he hath thus bathed, then is he to use this bath following: Take Fenegreek, and the seeds of white *Sesamum*, of each twelve ounces, the roots of Lillies six ounces: then let them seeth together to a bath as before, yet in bathing is the body to be rubbed with black Sope, and then to lye abed as is said.

When as now the matter is sufficiently prepared through bathing, and drawn towards the skin, then doth the cause require that it might be consumed, whereto stronger medicines be necessary, like as this ensuing may be prepared: Take Verdigrease, Orpiment, Copperas, and white *Calmia*, of each six ounces, unsleckt Lime twelve ounces, the roots of Crowfoot eighteen ounces, Allom four ounces, Sal-armoniack eight ounces, pownd them all together, and then distil them in a helme, as strong water is wont to be made, and anoint therewith all scales and blisters every where.

The third day are you to anoint them with this following; Take one ounce and a half of Starch, and washed litharge of gold two ounces, unsleckt lime one drachme and a half, Dragons blood half an ounce, Vinegar as much as is needful for to temper together, afterwards temper them together in a leaden mortar.

Other do use this following: Take the swet soot of a chimney two ounces, litharge of gold one ounce, Frankincense half an ounce, Mastick five drachmes, oyl of Juniper, and oyl of Wheat, of each four ounces, yellow Wax two ounces, pownd all small that be to be pownded, and then temper therewith two ounces of the oyl of Violets, afterwards put unto it the gold litharge, the Mastick, and Frankincense, and at last a little Vinegar, yet stirring it alwayes about. Other do temper amongst it six ounces of the juyce of Cucopit roots.

What is to be used for the Scales. §. 9.

If that there be any scales upon any sores, then are they to be anointed with this salve following: Take the oyl of *Sesamum*, Asses sewet, of each six ounces, the yolk of an egg, Camphire half a drachme, then temper them all together with sufficient whites of eggs, it is also good against all heat of the joynts, it healeth and causeth the flesh to ingender.

If so be that these foresaid scales will not fall off of themselves, then do some take them off with Rasors, even to the root, yet not altogether at one time, but one before, and another afterwards. The blood do they stanch with pownded litharge of gold. They do make also a salve with fresh Hares blood, or with a young mans bloud, which is very meet for this.

The anointing with this salve is to be done but once in three dayes, and then to wash the party with some water wherein Bran is decocted. You have also more at large of these things in the Chapter where the Pox be discoursed of.

When as after all this the matter proceedeth well the space of two or three moneths, then is one not to foreslow purging in the mean whiles, but to take good heed to these two things ensuing.

First, to the stopping of the nose, which maketh an unseemly speech, and for to let that, make a long taint of Cotton, anoint it with the salve of Citron (which one findeth commonly ready at the Apothecaries) strew thereon small pownded litharge of gold, or Hartwort, or in the stead thereof take the confection of *Aurea Alexandrina*.

Further, you are to spout in the nose some luke-warm Wine, amongst which a little Vinegar of Squils is tempered.

Secondly, because that the hair of the eyelids fallen out do give a great deformity, therefore it is to be looked to, that the same be made to grow again, whereof you may read in the first Chapter and 8. §.

But this ensuing is especially commended in the deformity; to wit, that the eyebrows be rubbed until they be red, and then are Leaches to be set upon it: and when as they be fallen off, then have this salve following prepared: Take fresh Venus hair, and *Laudanum*, of each a like quantity, seeth the same in oyl of Bayberries, and a little Wine, afterwards wring them out, and therewith anoint the eyebrowes, and all other infected places.

If ſo be that there appear any new matter, or any new impoſtume, then muſt one begin to bathe with the laſt foreſaid decoction, and in like manner alſo to anoint with the foreſaid things, for that in ſuch lingring ſickneſſes, muſt the remedies ſo oftentimes be reiterated as the diſeaſes make return.

For to ſtrengthen the Heart, the Liver, and the Braines in the Leproſie. §. 10.

BEcauſe that by the foreſaid parts and other more this Leproſie taketh her beginning, therefore are the ſame to be ſtrengthened: for which this following is very good, to wit, the confection of *Lætificans Almanſoris*, whereof give every day (half an hour before noon) one quarter of an ounce with Endive water, the waper of Water Lillies, or with water of Agrimony.

Secondly, the great Treacle is very forcible, for it ſtrengtheneth the natural heat and the vital ſpirits, that it may the more mightily withſtand all venome, if one take half a drach thereof with any diſtilled water.

Item, take the confection *Diambra*, *Diamoſchu*, and *Manus Chriſti* with Pearls, likewiſe half a drachme of *Lignum Aloes*, tempered with two ounces of water of Water Lillies, and drunk in the evening when one goeth to bed.

There is alſo highly commended to take oftentimes one ſcruple of Pearles with one ounce of Baſil water.

What concerneth the Skin. §. 11.

WHen as the skin through great unnatural heat is annoyed and hurt, which may be perceived by the corroding and by the ſharp matter, then is the ſame place to be anointed with the juyce of Lettice, of Purſlain, of Water Lillies, and alſo with unripe Sallad oyl; but if it be cauſed through cold, that thereby the natural heat be extinguiſhed, then is there no better thing then to bathe the place with ſtrong red Wine warmed.

But if the diſeaſe of the skin do not import any thing, then is it better that it be bathed with a mild Lee, with Nep, or garden Mints; and if this corroding do increaſe, then uſe this precious ſalve enſuing: Take litharge of Gold and Ceruſe, of each two ounces, oyl of Roſes two ounces and a half, the juyce of Rue four ounces, Starch as much as ſufficeth, then ſtir it the ſpace of certain hours in a leaden mortar, at laſt temper one quarter of an ounce of ſmall bruiſed Camphire amongſt it.

Of the actual and potential cauterie. §. 12.

THeſe actual and potential cauteries are both of them commended by the Phyſitians in the extreameſt need, to wit, upon the head, and in the neck, and in more other places, but becauſe it may not be effected without danger of ſome other parts (like as alſo they themſelves do acknowledge) therefore we will not write any ampler thereof at this preſent.

If any one be ſo hardly aſſailed of the Leproſie, that he be no otherwiſe to be holpen but by cauterization, he may take the advice of thoſe men that have experience in it. And becauſe that all which we have hitherto written is more meet for the *Elephantiaſis*, (like as we have declared at firſt) nothwithſtanding it is alſo good for all ſpecies of the Leproſie, therefore followeth hereafter all that which is commodious for all ſpecies of this ſickneſſe.

What is requiſite for every ſort of Leproſie. §. 13.

FOr this, hath Treacle the higheſt commendation: in like ſort the confection of *Hiera* and Hedghogs fleſh (whereof we have admoniſhed before) whether it be roſted, fryed, or ſodden. Alſo the fleſh of the venomous Snake *Tyrus* is commended by *Galen* and other famous Phyſitians more. But becauſe that we (God be praiſed) have not this Snake here in this Realm, it is not needful for to write much thereof, but to ſpeak rather of thoſe things that are to be gotten in this countrey, and may give eaſe, as the powder of burnt Hares one drachme and a half, with four ounces of wine drunk three dayes together. Take in like manner as much powder of Squils, or the juyce of the ſame, with the ſyrup of Squils, and then temper half a drachme more or leſſe of *Aſſa fœtida*, with Hony

amongſt

strength in it. Item, take powded Comin five drachmes, with clarifyed Honey.

Thus may also be more written, yea a whole book full of the Leprosie, and how that every accident of the same is at the beginning to be eased; but if so be that the foresaid remedies will help the sick person, then be the accidents the easier to be holpen: for which we have also in many places written much of the foresaid diseases, which altogether may and ought to be used for this, and therewith we will conclude.

Of the bad Ulcer Cacoete. §. 14.

FOr a conclusion of these corrodings, impostumes, and ulcers, we will also briefly write of those which the Grecians do call *Cacoete*, which is a species of the Canker, and so venemous, that it continueth with a body all his life time: for notwithstanding all the cures which may be done for it, yet is it all in vain, and it doth remain incurable, and moreover (like as is said) is very long continuing: yet do some commend this ensuing for some especial thing.

Take *Soldonella* half a drachme, powdred Rubarb two scruples, give the same to drink sixtimes with white Wine: when this is taken, then give to the Patient the next day afterward the sirup of Wormwood, and of Cicorie, with Rubarb, of each one ounce: and so continue every other day. Afterwards anoint the place of the disease with oyl of Roses, or oyl of sweet Almonds.

The fifth Chapter.

Of outward infection and woundings of the Skin.

IN the beginning of this fift Part we have before declared many things whereby the skin is infected and annoyed within. Now doth our method require, that we should write somewhat of the outward accidents of the skin, which be hurtful to the same, and also to the flesh underneath it, and we will also begin with the least, which is of burning or scalding.

Of burning or scalding with fire, hot water, and of burning with Gunpowder. §. 1.

IF there be any burnt with fire or scalded with hot water, then have the things or medicines whereby both these are to be cooled and healed, small difference: but concerning the burning with Gunpowder, of that we will write after another manner.

Of the burning of fire, or scalding with hot water, there cometh at the first an excessive pain, and divers blisters whereout water doth run.

Secondly, if one will heal these sores, then is there first to be spread thereon a pap of the powder of Saunders, with Rose water, and tempered with a little Camphire, or with the water of Nightshade.

Or temper fine Bolus with Vinegar, with Rosewater, and with water of Nightshade: these things are to be laid upon it so long, until the pain be almost gone. For this may also be used the salve of Poplar, mixed with the white of an egge. And if so be that the blisters do not break of themselves, then are they to be opened with a needle, to the end that the flesh next underneath be not harmed thereby.

This is now a necessary and common manner of doing, viz. at the first: but what is next to have more done in it, that shall hereafter follow.

And because that such kind of diseases may be rather healed with salves then otherwise, therefore will we first of all begin with them.

These things following are to be used immediatly after the burning, and until the pain be at the extreamest: Take oyl of Roses and unripe Sallad oyl, of each three ounces, white Wax, washed Litharge of gold, and Ceruse, of each one ounce, Starch 3. quarters of an ounce; melt the oyl and the Wax together, and then powr it hot upon cold water: afterwards wash it three times, and that with Nightshade water: at last temper the other things amongst it. But if you will have it more drying, then may you mix powded Cypres nuts amongst it, as many as you please.

Item, take Butter, or Swines greaſe, eight ounces: let it be hot, and pour it upon cold water: afterwards let it be ſtiff again, and then put it into a diſh: ſtir it well about, and pour of the water unto it until it be through white: at laſt ſtir one ounce and a half of Peter oyl in it, and therewith anoint the burning.

But if ſo be that the burning be two or three dayes old, then take of the foreſaid ſalve, and ſpread it upon linnen as a plaiſter, and lay it ſix or ſeven times a day upon it according to the importance of the burning, for that how much the oftener it is refreſhed, ſo much the better and ſooner is the ſame alſo to be healed.

If ſo be that the burning be great and deep, then do not bind it tight to the end the heat may paſſe out the better.

Item, take Butter wherein an egge is baked and burnt, pour it upon cold water: when it is ſtiff, then waſh the ſame eight times with cold water, and at the laſt twice with Vinegar. Now take two ounces and a half of this Butter, put thereto the whites of two egs well brayed, Linſeed oyl half an ounce, then anoint it on the burning.

Commonly the oyl of Roſes is good for burning being tempered with ſalt, Linſeed oyl, Inke, and *Oxycraton.*

Item, take oyl of Roſes one ounce, three yolks of egs, mix them well together: you may alſo add four or five graines of Saffron unto it.

Another. Take oyl of Roſes three ounces, *Bolus* one drachme, make it very hot; afterwards dip a cloth in it, and lay it thereon as hot as the Patient can abide it. But if the pain be abating, then is there a ſalve to be choſen of this Lime enſuing: Take unſlect Lime, pour water upon it, but thruſt not the hand into it, but ſtir it well about with a ſpoone until that it ſcum; afterwards ſtrike it off with a feather, and temper it with Sallad oyl: at laſt anoint it on the burning; the ſame is very highly commended.

Or take unſlect Lime, and with Sallad oyl make a ſalve of it as thick as a pap, and anoint therewith.

Item, take oyl of Roſes two ounces, unripe Sallad oyl one ounce and a half, white Wax half an ounce, let it ſeeth a little all together; afterwards pour it upon cold water, and waſh it therewith. This being done, temper ſmall bruiſed Ceruſe amongſt it three quarters of an ounce, Frankincenſe and *Sarcocolla*, of each one drachme, prepared Lime half an ounce, Saffron half a ſcruple, waſhed litharge of gold, three quarters of an ounce, then temper them all together.

This following is a well approved ſalve for burning: take quick Lime which is ſlaked with good wine, let the lime dry well and put in as much Linſeed oyl until it be as it were a dough: afterwards anoint the burning with it, and then lay none other upon it.

But if ſo be that it wax dry and hard, then ſpread more upon it and take it not off, for that the burning will be ſuddenly whole, and when it is healed, then falleth it away it ſelf. This is thus by ſome to be aſſured: nevertheleſſe it is perillous not to looke to it in long time, for that there might ſome other thing ſtick unto it.

For this is alſo fit, the oyl of Saint Johns wort alone or tempered with waſhed lime, and ſo ſpread upon the burning, for it cooleth marvellous much. Item, take of oile Roſes three ounces, white Frankincenſe one ounce, Ceruſe three ounces, the whites of three egs, Camphir one drachme, make thereof a ſalve.

Another. Take oyl of Olives four ounces, pownded Frankincenſe half an ounce, the innermoſt rinds of Eldern, one quarter of an ounce: ſeeth them all together with a little Vinegar, until that the Vinegar be throughly waſted, then ſtrain it through a cloth and uſe it as before.

Item: take old candle tallow, Goates ſuet, and Linſeed oyl, of each a like quantity: let them melt together, and put thereto the whites of Hens dung, as much of the one as of the other things; let it ſeeth well together, and then ſtrain it through a cloth, afterwards lay it upon the burnt place, and let it lie thereon a day or twaine; then waſh it off with luke-warm water, and lay again a freſh plaiſter upon it.

For this is alſo good all the white ſalves which are deſcribed in the fourth part, the ninth chapter, and 1. §. Item, yet another ſalve which is to be found in the firſt Part, the ſeventh chapter, and 17. §. This ſalve following is alſo very good for all ſorts of burning. Take oyl of Roſes two ounces, the yolks of ſix egs ſtamped well together, and temper ſome Saffron amongſt it, afterwards ſpread it on a cloth and lay it upon the burning; it healeth very ſpeedily.

Another.

Another. Seeth Muſtard ſeed in the cream of milk, then pownd it to pap and wring it through a cloth, afterward anoint therewith the burning. After the ſame manner is Linſeed alſo to be ſodden, ſtrained and uſed.

Or take Oaten meal, boyl it in Cream, and uſe it as the reſt: this is eſpecial good for ſcalding with hot water.

Item, take the juyce of Rapes or of Onions, each apart or mixed together, and anoint the burning oftentimes with it, and lay the leaves of the Cherry tree upon it.

Take the juyce of an Onion, and oyl of the kernels of Apricocks half an ounce, temper them together. The ſirup of *Oxycraton* doth cool much the burning. Ink tempered with the water of *Cardnus Benedictus* is much commended for this, if one make a cloth wet therein and lay upon it.

Item, the leaves of Water Lillies laid upon the burning do cool and alſo heal. Of the inflammation and heat of the ulcers which is cauſed within, you have heard before in the ſecond Chapter, and ſixth §.

Of burning with Gun-powder. §. 2.

IF any have a ſhotten pellet cut out of his body, then is this oyl following to be laid upon it: Take oyl of Eldern flowers 12. ounces, oyl of S. Johns wort one ounce, Turpentine half an ounce; temper theſe together, and ſet them certain daies in the Sun: this hath a marvellous efficacie and vertue.

Another. Take oyl of Roſes, Nightſhade water, Roſe water, water of Lillies, and oyl of Saint Johns wort, of each a like quantity, and waſh therewith the Wound oftentimes.

Item, for to cool the inflammation, take the water of Nightſhade and of Saint Johns wort, of each eight ounces, Allom half an ounce, Ceruſe, Litharge of ſilver, and Verdigreaſe, of each one drachme, pownd them all ſmall together, and temper them well together, and then lay it as warm upon it as may be ſuffered three or four times together.

Or take Linſeed Oyl, unſleckt Lime, fine Bolus, and Rie meal, of each a like quantity, ſir them well together, then ſpread them on the burning: it draweth out the heat and the powder.

Item, take good Hony eight ounces, let it ſeeth and be well ſcummed, then put thereto half as much ſharp Vinegar of Roſes, and ſeeth it all together until it be brown: afterwards put a ſpoonful of beaten Allom unto it, and keep it well; for the elder it is, ſo much the better it is.

There is alſo prepared for this two kinds of Lee; the one which is made of quick Lime, and laid upon it with a wet cloth; the other is, if one temper ſtrong lee with Sallet oyl, and lay it thereon: this lee is very good for all heat, whether it be through burning with Gunpowder, or otherwiſe for all inflammation which doth appear outwardly.

For all ſcalding. §. 3.

TAke Ceruſe one ounce and a half, Camphire half a drachme, Roſe water three quarters of an ounce, Starch half an ounce; bruiſe it, and temper it well together in a mortar with the white of an Egge unto a thin ſalve; ſpread it thereon and round about the ſcalds, and they will dry and fall off. Before in the third Chapter and 10. §. you have yet more other fit remedies for it.

The sixth Chapter.

For to draw Splinters and Thorns out of the Skin.

IF that any Splinter or Thorn do stick in the skin, then must one look to pull out the same immediatly; otherwise it must ranckle out with great pain.

Thus for to remedy this; Take Oxe suet, Wax and Rosin, of each a like quantity, *Pirola*, Beets, Lovage, Lady mantle, and Sanicle, according to the quantity of the former; pownd them together, and wring out the juyce; afterwards put it amongst the molten Wax, Rosin, and suet, and then boyl it until all the juyce be wasted, and there become a salve of it.

Another. Take two parts of Sallad oyl, and one part of Rosin, or Turpentine, and as much Wax, let it melt together, and stir it well until it be cold.

For this is also good, the plaister *Apostolicon* and *Gratia Dei*, that are described before.

Item, the juyce of Barberries tempered with Barley meal, is also good for it. *Serf de Thure* draweth out the Arrowes, like as before is shewed.

The roots of Beets, of Polipody, decocted with their leaves and laid thereon, draw also much.

If so be that any body in spinning get a shive in their finger, then take picked Plantain leaves, wring out the juyce, and lay it upon it, it will quickly draw out the shive that sticketh in the hand, and heal it.

The seventh Chapter.

Of Wounds and all that concerneth them.

AMongst all outward accidents which harm the skin and the part adjacent, are the wounds also to be accounted: for which you have before (in the common description of ulcers) certain rules which be also necessary for all wounds, and may be applied unto them: therefore they are to be added here.

In all wounds (whereof soever they be caused, whether it be of pricking, cutting, shooting, or falling) the Chirurgion must first look that he cause the blood to be stanched: but if that be not performed, then doth the Patients strength and power wear away, and at last his life also. Therefore will we first of all write and discourse thereof.

For to stanch blood. §. 1.

TAke Gum of Arabia, and Dragagant, of each one drachme, red Coral, Bloodstone, burnt Ivorie and Camphire, of each half a drachme, make this powder with water of Plantain unto a dough, and lay it upon the wounds. Some do also temper it with Bole armoniack and Momy, which is not amisse.

Item, take Frankincense, Mastick, and small cut Hares hair, of each a like quantity; make a soft salve thereof with the white of an Egge, and lay it upon the bleeding.

Or take Dragons blood, unsleckt Lime and Frankincense, of each a like quantity: this are you to use if there be any great vein perished: but if the great veins be hurt the long way, then use burnt Copperas with it.

Item, take the white of an Egg, fine Bolus, Dragons blood, Bloodstone, and Frankincense, of each a like quantity; make a plaister of it, and then spread it upon Tow, and so lay it upon the wound.

Or stamp Peach kernels, and make a plaister of it with the white of an egg.

Item, take yellow Rose seed, pownd it to powder, and temper Vinegar therewith unto

in a pap, and ſo lay it upon the bleeding wound, it will ſtop it.

Reſolve Copras in Vinegar, and ſet it certain daies in the hot ſun, or let it ſeethe, afterwards wet a cloth therein, and ſo lay it upon it.

The parings of Parchment boyled in Lime, and laid upon it, are alſo very forcible to ſtanch blood. Burn a bat to aſhes and ſtrew it into the wound.

Dryed Swines dung pownded to powder, doth alſo ſtanch blood.

Item, take Egſhels, and lay it ſo long in ſtrong Vinegar to ſteep, until that they be very ſoft, and then let them be hard again; afterwards pownd them ſmall, and uſe them as the other.

Mans hair alſo burnt, and beaten to powder, ſtaunceth much the bleeding at the noſe, and all other manner of bleeding.

The juice of Shepherds purſe ſtancheth and cooleth all hot blood. In May are you to take Comfrey with the leaves, and ſhred it ſmall; this being done, diſtil it like other water, and drop in the wound.

The ſame do the Chirurgions aſcribe to Maiden milk, which is in the firſt part, the 8. Chapter and 1. §. deſcribed.

Item, for to ſtanch the blood at the noſe, hold upon the forehead a cold flint ſtone, Bloodſtone, Calcedony or Carnoyl ſtones, or put in his hand the roots of Corn Roſes; a man is to hang his privities in ſtrong Vinegar, or a cloth wet therein and laid thereon, the bleeding will ceaſe immediatly.

For to ſtanch the blood you may alſo look into theſe places following, as of the bleeding of the Eares in the firſt part, the 9. Chapter, and 4. §. of the bleeding of the gums, in the firſt part, the 17. Chapter, and 7. §.

Item, of ſpetting of blood, in the ſecond Part, fift Chapter and 11. Section to ſtanch the bleeding of the Hemorrhoides, in the third Part, the 9. Chapter, and 4. Section, of piſſing blood, in the third Part, the 16. Chapter, and 11. Section, and of womens terms in the third Part, the 19. Chapter, and 3. §.

Of the clotted blood in the body. §. 2.

IF ſo be that a wounded man, or one that hath taken a fall, hapned to bleed inward; then are all means to be ſought to expel the ſame with all ſpeed; for otherwiſe it muſt inwardly corrupt and putrifie, whereby very perillous agues and other deadly diſeaſes might ingender, whereof in the ſecond Part, the fift Chapter, and 17. §. (of the ſpetting blood) is ſufficiently written. The common people do adviſe, that in this diſeaſe one is to drink his own urine, whereby the clotted blood ſhould be expelled. The like doth alſo the wine of Harts tongue, and all other vulneral potions which hereafter ſhall be deſcribed.

This plaiſter following is much commended: Take Goats Milk and Hony, as much as you pleaſe, let it be very warm together, and ſtir fine Bolus therein until it be a ſalve, and bind that upon it, whereby the congealed and clotted blood will be expelled.

Of the ſtitching of wounds. §. 3.

THis ſtitching of the wounds is committed to the Chirurgions charge, according to the importance of the cauſe: but I will add this onely unto it, and ſpeak of thoſe things that do heal the wounds together without ſtitching.

Take Maſtick and Dragons blood, of each one quarter of an ounce, Frankincenſe one drachme, Mill duſt and Bean meal, of each one ounce and a half; make them all to powder, and temper them with the brayed whites of Egges and Roſe water unto a pap. Afterwards ſpread it upon two long clouts which be ſomewhat ſtrong, and that are as long as the wound is, and lay one upon each ſide of the wound, upon the whole fleſh: this being dry, then ſew the wound ſo cloſe together, as you pleaſe, the needle not going through the skinne, but through the clouts onely.

The golden ſalve (is alſo much commended) called *Unguentum Aureum Meſue*, which is made thus.

Item, take yellow Wax three ounces, Sallad oyl twelve ounces, Turpentine one ounce, Roſin and Colofonie of each one quarter of an ounce, Frankincenſe and Maſtick of each half an ounce, Saffron half a drachme, let Wax, Turpentine, and oyl melt

melt together, and afterwards put the Roſin unto it: and when it beginneth to be cold, then temper amongſt it the Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Saffron: this joyneth the the wounds together, and healeth them. In the firſt Part, the ſeventh Chapter and tenth Section, there have you a water deſcribed, beginning thus. Take Litharge of Silver, &c. which is very much renowned for this purpoſe. So like ſort M. Triſtrams water, and other golden waters, with four kinds of Balms which are to be found in the laſt Part.

Of freſh wounds. §. 4.

THeſe forementioned things be verily the chiefeſt, which may be uſed without any delay for all freſh wounds. When as now the blood is ſtaunched, and all finiſhed that is needful to be done, then are theſe things enſuing commended highly. Firſt M. Triſtrams water is thought meet to heal all freſh wounds, which may alſo be done with all golden waters, whether it be that one take them inward, or lay them outwardly upon them. The oyl of Tyles ſhould not onely heal, but alſo preſerve the wounds from all putrified fleſh; this is alſo aſcribed to the oyl of Linnen. The oyl of S. Johns wort is alſo much commended, and the oyl of Roſes; for that they have an aſtringent vertue and efficacy. Likewiſe the oyl of Spike, and oyl of Lead. It is alſo ſtreightly commanded, that all new wounds ſhall be waſhed with Wormwood or with Rolemary: for that both theſe keep the freſh wounds clean, and far from all putrifaction, and are alſo healing.

But if any one be but a little wounded, ſo that it be not needful to go to a Chirurgion with it, then uſe this ſalve following. Take Turpentine which is 3. times waſhed in Wine, and ſtir the yolk of an egg amongſt it, Barly meal one quarter of an ounce, Saffron five grains; temper them together. This ſalve is good for all pain, although it be alſo in a ſinewie part: it maketh fleſh ſpeedily to grow. It is alſo not unlike to *Unguento Mundificativo.* This plaiſter following will heal the wound in twenty dayes, without matter and without pain. Take Wax half an ounce, white Coral three drach. *Colofonia* and Momy, of each ſeven drachmes, Myrrhe two drachmes, Camphire, Loadſtone, of each half a drachme, oyl of Egs as much as is needful for to mix amongſt all thereſt.

This ſalve is thus to be uſed, if any one be cut or thruſt, and if this plaiſter be laid upon it within twenty four hours, then ſhall the wound within twenty dayes without any corruption or any other addition be healed. If ſo be that then it be a thruſt that goeth quite through, then is one to have four plaiſters in a readineſſe, and to lay two upon it before noon, and two at afternoon, without putting any thing elſe unto it. But if ſo be that it be but a wound, then are two enough: to the end that there remain no clotted blood within, is this powder following to be given to the Patient; take Momy one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus and Dragons blood, of each one drachme, give thereof to the Patient evening and morning, the quantity of an Haſel nut.

Many kinds of vulneral potions. §. 5.

EVery Chirurgion will ſhew his cunning in this; for each one hath a ſeveral potion which he keepeth as a *ſecretum ſecretorum.* Alſo it is indeed of great importance, when as the inward parts be periſhed, or if there be any blood inwardly congealed, it can in no better way be holpen then by this means: wherefore we have here rehearſed certain of theſe vulneral potions, whereof Chirurgions do much eſteem. Take wild Beets (which is *Pàrola*) with their roots one M. *Conſolida ſaracenica*, the roots 2. M. Mugwort without roots four M. and powre thereto one quart of Wine in a new leaden pot; then ſtop it tight, to the end there flye no vapor out: afterwards let it ſeeth together by a ſmall fire, until about the third part be conſumed, drink thereof morning and evening, according as the diſeaſe is great, and according as the body is hot or cold, take ſtrong or ſmall Wine. But in winter when the herbs be dry, then take one ounce of Mugwort, *Conſolida ſaracenica* half an ounce, wilde Beets two drach. and ſeethe it as before in a quart of Wine: this is an approved potion for ulcers, wounds, and all other diſeaſes, being uſed inwardly, and alſo outwardly. This plaiſter following is alſo to be uſed with it: Take clarified hony eight ounces, Wheat flour two ounces, Linſeed oyl three ounces, fine Bolus one ounce and a half, then make thereof

thereof a plaister, and lay it thereon. Item, take *Consolida saracenica* with yellow flowers, Mugwort, wild Beets and Lady-mantle, of each one M. seethe all together in a quart of Wine, whether it be Malmsey, or any other good Wine. This potion hath been approved oftentimes, and was found very good.

Another: Take wild Beets, wilde Tansie, Sanicle, and Agrimony, being all gathered at a full Moon, dryed in the ayre, and then stamped to powder, whensas you will use thereof, then take an earthen pot which will hold a quart of moysture, and put therein of this foresaid powder, as much as you can gripe at two or three times between your two fingers, and according as the wound requireth: afterwards pour unto it a pint of wine, and cover the pot very tight with a slice of bread, then let it stand the space of a good hour in a warm place until it be cold, and give thereof to the wounded person twice a day. You may also strew of this powder in the wounds. Yet another: Take *Consolida saracenica*, Agrimony, wild Tansie, Mugwort, Cicory, Southernwood, and wild Beets, of each a like quantity, dry the herbs in the shadow and stamp them to powder: afterwards take a quart of Wine, and put thereto an ounce of this powder, then seethe it in hot water, until the breadth of three or four fingers be consumed: afterwards put thereto a spoonful of *Asarabacca* pownded small, and give thereof to the Patient when he goeth to bed three or four ounces at one time. Another: Take Sanicle, Avence, Agrimony, Bugloss, Vervein, Cicory flowers, *Consolida saracenica*, Betony, Hysop, Sage, Mugwort, wild Tansie, wild Beets, and S. Johns wort, of each a like quantity: seethe them all together in wine, and give the Patient thereof twice a day, at each time three or four spoonfuls.

Item, take *Consolida saracenica*, Agrimony, Sanicle, wild Tansie, Plantain, and Beets, of each a like quantity, let it seeth together in Wine, and give thereof warm. Divers such like potions are described in the third Part, the third Chapter of the fractures of bones.

Of the plaisters for thrusts and wounds. §. 6.

First, to write of the Plaisters for thrusts, there be many kinds prepared for it, as hereafter followeth: Take Wax one ounce and a half, Colofony and Momy, of each two ounces, Frankincense one ounce, Camphire one ounce and a quarter, bruise it small, and afterwards melt the Wax and the Colofony, temper then the rest amongst it, and work it well together, anointing the hands well with oyl of Eggs. Another, which is approved: Take Turpentine four ounces, Colofony and Rosin, of each two ounces, white *Cadmia* ℥. 1. Loadstone, ℥. 1. Frankincense, ℥. 2. Mastick and Momy, ana. ℥ ß. Juniper oyl one quarter of an ounce, oyl of Egs and Camphire, ana. ℥ ß. dissolve the Gum in Wine or Vinegar, and strain it through a cloth into a pan, afterwards let it seethe together, then put thereto the *Cadmia* and Ceruse: when it hath sodden well, then put the Loadstone unto it, and let it wale once again: afterwards add the Frankincense, Mastick, and the Mummy unto it. This being done, let it seethe a little more, and when it is waxen luke warm, then put the Camphire well bruised unto it, and then work it further well together unto a plaister.

Item, take Wax, Rosin, Turpentine, oyl of Eggs, and Sallad oyl of each four ounces, oyl of Roses one ounce, seethe it all together unto a plaister, and then at last put in one drachme of Camphire: but if it be too hard, make it softer with oyl of Roses.

Another: Take Wax and Colofony, of each one ounce, Momy one quarter of an ounce, Frankincense, Myrrhe, and Mastick, of each half an ounce, white Coral three drachmes, Loadstone one drachme, white *Cadmia* one quarter of an ounce, Dragons blood one drach. Camphire one ounce, make thereof a plaister. For this is also very good the plaister of Master *Flakenstone*, which is described in the second Chapter and the fifth section.

Item, take Wax two ounces, Turpentine, and *Gummi Halem*, of each one ounce, Dragons blood, and Hartworth, of each half an ounce, *Gummi Ammoniacum* one ounce, Ceruse one ounce and a half, Frankincense, Momy, Mastick, and Juniper-berries, of each one ounce, Allome one ounce and a half, make a plaister thereof.

Another, Take Wax four ounces, Momy, Colofony, Mastick, and Frankincense of each one quarter of an ounce, white Coral three drachmes, Camphire half an ounce, oyl

of Egs one ounce, melt the oyl with the Wax upon a mild fire, and then let it be somewhat cold, afterwards temper all the other things (beaten very small) amongst it. This being done, let it seeth softly, stirring it round about, at last temper the Camphir with four spoonfuls of the oyl of Juniper amongst it.

Item, take oyl of Roses and Wax of each four ounces, Deer suet two ounces, Frankincense and Myrrh, of each half an ounce, *Galbanum*, Mastick, and Turpentine, of each half an ounce, make a plaister of it. This ensuing is not onely good for wounds, but also for all ulcers: Take Turpentine and Wax, of each four ounces, Mastick two ounces, Rose leaves, 16 ounces, brown Betony, the greater Pimpernel, spiked Plantain, Nightshade, Divels bit, Vervein, and Storks bill, of each eight ounces, add a quart of wine unto it: seeth first therein the Roses alone: this being done, pour it through a cloth and wring out the juyce well: afterwards take the other herbs, and put them also into a kettle, with two quarts of Wine, afterwards let them seeth together even to the half, then wring it well out, and let the decoction be very hot that the Wax may melt in it, then put the Rose wine with the Mastick also unto it, then seeth it to a plaister, and work it very strongly with the hands, but you must first anoint them with Butter. This foresaid plaister is not onely good for wounds, but also for all ulcers. Also you have in the first Chapter, and 15. §. many things which are also very meet for to cure the wounds.

The Chirurgions have yet a black plaister in use, which is made thus: Take Frankincense half an ounce, Momy half an ounce, Colofonie three quarters of an ounce, oyl of Egs half an ounce, Camphir one drachme, white Wax three drachmes: melt the Wax and the oyl of egs with the pownded Colofony, and then temper the other things pownded amongst it. If it be too hard, add a little Turpentine unto it.

Item, take clarifyed Hony eight ounces, fine meal two ounces, Linseed oyl three ounces, fine *Bolus* one ounce and a half, make a plaister thereof, and lay it upon the wounds: for this is also requisite the plaister *Gratia Dei*.

Vulneral Salves. §. 7.

THere be also many kinds of Vulneral Salves prepared, amongst which this ensuing is one of the principallest, which is called *Unguentum Fuscum*, and is made thus: Take oyl of Violets nine ounces, Wax two ounces, Colofony one ounce, plume Allom three quarters of an ounce, Pitch, *Sagapenum*, and *Gummi Arabicum*, of each one ounce, Mastick, *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, *Opopanacum*, Frankincense and Turpentine, of each three quarters of an ounce, the oyl of Violets and Wax are you to melt and to let it seeth throughly; afterwards temper the Pitch and the Colofony with the dissolved gums amongst it, and when it beginneth to be cold, then mix the rest with it. This salve is somewhat attractive, cleansing, and also healing.

This ensuing is said to heale all wounds: Take Turpentine three ounces, Wax seven drachmes, oyl of Camomil, and oyl of Roses, of each one ounce and a quarter, Frankincense and Mastick, of each one ounce, Myrrh and Rosin, of each half an ounce, good red Wine and Vinegar of each three quarters of an ounce: let the gum be steeped the space of 24. hours in the Vinegar and Wine, afterwards melt it upon the fire with the Wax and oyl, then let them seeth until the wine be almost all wasted, when it beginneth to to be cold, then temper the rest amongst it, and work this salve with your hands, yet the same being first anointed with the oyl of Mastick.

This salve cleanseth all wounds, it causeth the flesh to grow, and healeth also very much. Another, which is also very good.

Take Lovage, *Bistorta*, Sage, Plantain, Yarrow, Elecampane leaves, wilde Tansie, Sanicle, Cinkquefoyl, wild Beets, Mallowes, Betony, Agrimony, Vervein, and *Consolida saracenica*, of each a like quantity: shred all these herbs, and then put sufficient sweet Butter unto it; Afterwards stamp all these herbs together, and let them so stand certain dayes.

This being done, make it afterwards warm, and presse it out hard and then let it seeth so long together until the juice of all the herbs be consumed, then put unto it One suet, Harts suet, Bucks suet, the marrow of an Oxe, Wax, Rosin, and Turpentine, of each a like quantity, according to the quantity of the Butter and afterwards

wards melt them all together: when it beginneth to be cold, then put unto it Frankincense, Myrrhe, Fennegreek meal, Allom, Verdigrease, and Mastick being beaten small all together, then stir it much together. Another which is briefer; take Oxe suet, Harts suet, Wax, Turpentine, Hony, Lovage, Violets, Betony, Agrimony, and wild Tansie, of each as much as you please, stamp the herbs and wring out the juyce, afterwards seethe it in the suets until it be as thick as a salve: Item, take Rue, Sulphur, *Chamaleon niger*, of each a like quantity, and Oxe suet, as much as will suffice for to make a salve.

For to draw matter out of the Wounds. §. 8.

TAke Wax one ounce and a half, Rosin three quarters of an ounce, Harts suet one ounce, Turpentine and Sallad oyl, as much as is needful for to make a salve or plaister; or take clarified Hony, and Turpentine washed with wine, of each half an ounce, oyl of Roses two ounces, let it seethe together until it be thick. This cleanseth the wounds of all kind of matter, and withstandeth all affluxions. But if there be any heat with it, then take in stead of common Hony, Hony of Roses, but temper not the same with it, until the other be first boyled.

Of the Taints. §. 9.

IF you think that the wounds will heal too soon, then cut a dry root of Gentian, for a taint as big as you please, and use the same in stead of a taint; for when the same waxeth moist, then doth it swell, and holdeth open the wounds as long as you please, and it is wholsome of it self. Anoint also the taint with the same *Apostolorum*, or *Aegyptiacum*, which be both very meet to keep open all wounds and ulcers, and also to cleanse them.

For foul flesh. §. 10.

NOw these two be contrary; of the first mentioned salve the plaister *Gratia Dei* letteth no foul flesh grow in the wound; so also doth the oyl of Tyles.

Item, take burnt Allom, and fine Bolus, of each a like quantity, and strew it therein. Or take Verdigrease, and Trochiskes *de Chelidonia*, of each a like quantity; make powder thereof and strew it therein. For this is also very meet, burnt Harts bones two parts, Salt one part, and use them as before. Take the juyce of *Narcissus*, of Plantain, and garden Mints, and the juyce of Rue; all these juyces or those that you can get may you take and use.

Item, burn Birchen rinds to powder, and temper it with burnt Allom, or use each alone. If so be that then there grow any worms in the wounds, then temper the juyce of Rue with vinegar and drop it therein.

To stanch the Synovia. §. 11.

TAke the white of an Egg and put a little Saffron amongst it, afterwarward beat them wet together with a piece of pownded Allom the bigness of a Hasel nut, and lay it upon the place whence the *Synovia* issueth.

Another, Take the white of an Egg, and mingle therewith Allom, and Salt, of each one drachme beaten small, and then use it as the other.

Item, burn Lentils to powder and strew it therein; afterwards take Turpentine and Sallad oyl, let them heat together, and then mix therein the burnt Lentils unto a salve or plaister, or take Hempseed, pownd it until it yeeld oyl, afterwards lay it in a fine cloth over the disease and bind it unto it. Item, take the water of the greater Pimpernel and drop it therein. Item, take Strawberrie leaves, and apply them unto the place. Or take the fruit of Roses, dry them, stamp them to powder and strew it therein.

When a wounded member is lopped. §. 12.

FOr this do the Chirurgions use this enuing: Take Cow dung and Goats dung, make a plaister of it with the oyl of Earthworms, and so lay it warm unto it: by this means do the shrunken sinews wax loose. But look in the fourth part the seventh Chapter, and

second

ſecond §. what is written of the lameneſſe and extenuation of the members. The like alſo in the 5. Chapter of the Pox, where you ſhall find good direction of this matter.

To cauſe the fleſh to grow in wounds. §. 13.

THe Grecians and the Phyſitians do call the things which cauſe the fleſh to grow *Sarcotica*, which be for the moſt part dry in the firſt degree: for if they be overmuch drying, then will they not onely dry the humours which do fall into the wounds, but the blood alſo, and the whole ſubſtance of the part. This ſalve following is very requiſite for it: Take Hony ſix ounces, ſeethe and ſcum the ſame until it be a little thick; afterwards temper therein Myrrhe, *Sarcocolla*, and Aloe, of each one drachme and a half, pownd all together to powder.

Item, take the Lytharge of Silver, refuſe of Iron, Centory, Aloe, Frankincenſe, and Maſtick, of each a like quantity, make a ſubtile powder of it. For this is alſo meet the plaiſter *Album coctum*, *Triapharmacon*, and *Apoſtolicon*, which all together ingender fleſh, and are preſcribed for the ſame intent. For this alſo be theſe plaiſters following to be uſed, viz. *Emplaſtrum griſeum*, or *de lapide Calaminari*, which is thus made; Take prepared *Calaminari* half an ounce, Lytharge of gold one ounce, Ceruſſe one quarter of an ℥. *Tuty* half a drachme, Maſtick one drachme and a half, Myrrhe one drachme, Camphire two ſcruples, make thereof a plaiſter; if it be too hard, put more Turpentine unto it: this plaiſter dryeth, cauſeth fleſh to grow, healeth and cicatriſeth all wounds. The other; Take prepared *Calaminari* four ounces, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Dragagant of each one drachme, the Lytharge of ſilver half an ounce, Wax three quarters of an ounce, Roſin half an ounce, prepared *Tuty* two ſcruples, and oyl of Roſes as much as is needful, this is ſomewhat weaker then the other. The ſalve of *Tuty*, *Diapompholigos*, is very meet for this uſe, ſo is alſo the ſalve *Apoſtolorum*.

Of that which cauſeth the Skin to grow. §. 14.

AT laſt if you perceive that the fleſh is grown ſo high, that there wanteth onely cicatriſation, then are things to be uſed which have an aſtringent vertue, and which do dry exceedingly without corroſion. For which be moſt fit all the ſalves of linte which be deſcribed in the fifth Chapter, and firſt §. In like manner alſo the five white ſalves which be diſcovered in the ninth Chapter, and firſt §. and the laſt mentioned *Diapompholigos*. This powder following is exceeding good for it: Take Lytharge of ſilver, burnt Allom, waſhed Lime, burnt Lead, Gals and Pomgranat peels, of each a like quantity, ſtrew it upon the wound; for this alſo it is very fit that the wounds be waſhed with Wormwood wine, or Roſemary wine. Concerning the wounds of the head we have written ſomewhat in the deſcription of the ſcull in the firſt part, the fourth Chap. and 1. §.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Cicatrices and ſpots of the Skin.

WHen there hath been any body wounded, or hath had ſome other exulceration healed, then will there remain on the ſame place ſome cicatrice or mark. For as hath been admoniſhed at the firſt, the skin doth never more heal of it ſelf, but there muſt grow a new skin. Alſo it happeth otherwhiles that new-born children do bring ſpots into the world. And becauſe that the ſame are placed in the face they do make a great deformity, therefore we will alſo diſcourſe of them.

Amongſt the Grecians be thoſe ſpots that be called *Leuce*, and by the Latiniſts *Vitiligines*, which be white ſpots of the body. Item, there be alſo black ſpots of the Leproſie. Of the ſpots which appear in the face we have written in the firſt part, the 5. Chap. and firſt §. which remedies may alſo be uſed over the whole body. But becauſe there be ſo many kinds of ſorts, we are to write the more at large of them.

Of

Of the moles or marks that children are born withall. §. 1.

IT hapneth also many times, that new-born children do bring with them into the world certain spots or moles, which are caused by some frighting, strange lusts, and such like, which women (being with Child) may get, as by experience hath often times been seen. They in the morning fasting Mustard seed, and anoint therewith the spots; do this oftentimes, then will the spots wear away: but look diligently unto it, that it come not into the childs eyes; also breath not into his eyes.

There come also otherwhiles certain markes and other red spots of the skin, for which, the *Basilica* is first to be opened, and afterwards some cooling sirupes, and other cooling potions, but we will write and discourse severally thereof.

Of red spots through heat. §. 2.

OF these spots we have before admonished in the first Chapter, and 4. §. that all that may be used for it which is ordained for the Rose, or *Erisipelas*. But if so be that this be caused through some uncleanesse of blood (as it commonly hapneth) and that notwithstanding there be no special heat instant, then can no better thing be used for it then the sirupe of Fumitory, and all that may be made of that herb; for that herb hath an especial vertue to cleanse the blood, and to take the itch of the skin. Afterwards are you to use this salve following: Take unslect lime, and prepared *Tutty*, of each one drachme, oyl of Saint Johns wort two ounces, and a little Wax, then temper them all together. Or take Camphire, and bruise it with an Almond, then temper the same with Rosewater, and anoint the spots therewith. Take oyl of Eggs as much as you please, and temper amongst it a good part of bruised litharge of silver, then anoint therewith the spots; this driveth them away how lothsome soever they be.

For this is also very fit the oyl of Juniper, and the oyl of bitter Almonds, and of each alike, or each apart. Also you may use for this maidens milk, *Lac virginis*, which is described in the first part, the fifth Chap. and 1. §. Item, take Hellebore two ounces, stamp it to pap, and put thereto as much of the juyce of Agrimony, and a little Rosewater, then rub the spots with it. Or litharge of silver, take burnt Allom, burnt Lead, washed Lime, Gals, and Pomgranat blossoms, of each one drachme, and make a powder thereof.

Of spots which come by falls. §. 3.

THere in the first Chap. and 6 §. is a salve described, beginning thus: Take the cauls of Goats, &c. which is especially good for all spots, and very safe.

Of spots by stripes or falls. §. 4.

FOr this, you have in the first part, the fifth Chapter and 5. §. two good remedies, without which, you may use these ensuing, which may be rather used upon the whole body then in the face, because that Orpiment is somewhat venomous; Take the juyce of Marjoram gentle two ounces, Orpiment half a drachme, oyl of Camomil one ounce, make a salve thereof. Item, take Wormwood three handfuls, *Asarabacca*, and Plantin, of each two handfuls, Salpeter, and wild yellow Rape seed, of each three drachmes, Comin, and Sulphire vive powaded small, of each three drachmes, Saffron one drach. two well brayed yolks of Eggs; make a plaister of it with the juyce of *Solidago media*, until it be decocted hard enough. But if the foresaid spots be without heat, then are to be used for it all kinds of fat of beasts, and of all fowles, or the plaister *Diachylon* molten amongst it, and so used. Item, take fresh Butter, and the decoction of Mallowes; temper the Gall of Capons with the white of an Egg, and use it as the other. In the fourth part, the 7. Chapter, and 31. §. is a salve beginning thus: Take Sage, and Mallowes, &c. which also is very good for all kind of spots.

These things following be also much commended, as the oyl of bitter Almonds, of Juniper, Citrons salve, the fatnesse of an Asses neck, and M. Trittrams water.

And

And herein ſhall we will deſcribe a ſtrong ſalve, which taketh away all ſpots, and ſoft-
neth all hard ſwellings, and doth alſo conſume the ſame. Take the roots of wild Cucum-
bers, the roots of white Beben, the litharge of gold, and Argal, of each one drachme and
a half, *Sagapenum*, and Pigeons dung of each one ſcruple, oyl of *Saſamum* three ounces,
oyl of Juniper, and oyl of wheat, of each two ounces and a half, white wax one ounce and
a half, ſeeth them together in four ounces of the juyce of Orenges, until all the juyce be
ſpent: take afterwards the white of an Egg, ſmall bruiſed Camphire one drachme, Vine-
gar 12. ounces, waſh the reſt with it, after that all is well tempered together; and after-
wards uſe this ſalve.

The ninth Chapter.

Of inward things which ſpread themſelves over all the body.

WE have taught before of all outward accidents, which outwardly do in-
fect the skin: but now will we write of thoſe things and parts which
are ſpread within through the whole body, which hold the ſame to-
gether, underprop it, and ſuſtain the body upright; theſe are the
bones, veins, and arteries, with the blood that is in them, and all that
concerneth them; how the ſame is to be cleanſed, and when it run-
neth overmuch, how it ſhall be ſtopped; how it ſhall be letten
out, and his naturall heat cooled. There ſhall alſo be diſcourſed of the ſweat, as alſo
perfluity of all humours. Afterwards we ſhall diſcourſe of the ſinews, of the tendons and
ligaments.

Item, of the fleſh, and chiefly of that which we do call the muſcles. For as much as
weariſomneſſe, fatneſſe, leanneſſe, ſleep, pain, *Phlegma*, or ſlime, with many other cold
diſeaſes, as well as the blood, *Cholera* and *Melancholia*, may be diſperſed in the whole
body, and that the blood hath no certain place in the body, as the *Cholera* in the bladder
of the gall, and *Melancholia* in the milt: (of which two hath been written in other pla-
ces) therefore we muſt not pretermit to write of the nature of *Phlegma*, and muſt firſt be-
gin with the bones.

Of the bones. §. 1.

THe bones of the whole body be (as it were) the foundation and ſtay of the body,
and alſo the hardeſt parts which be in it. Theſe are ingendred of the heat of the
body, which drieth the moiſture, and hardneth the bones. *Plato* ſuppoſeth that their be-
ginning is of the marrow, which ſhould be ſo dried away, and hardned through heat: wherefore *Empedocles* doth aſcribe the moſt part of them to *Vulcan*, that is, the fire. By
nature they be dry, earthly, cold, hard, without blood, and alſo without feeling. They
do get their beginning of the uppermoſt part of the back bone, which ſtretcheth it ſelf
even to the thighes. They be alſo hard knit together, and bounden through the ſinews
& ligaments, that there is not one amongſt 248. (or as *Albertus* reckoneth, amongſt 276.)
that are in mans body, the which is not faſtened to another bone. When theſe bones
be broken, then do they not grow together again in the own ſubſtance, but by a certain
liquor, which the Grecians do call *Poros*, the which hardneth there ſo ſore, that therewith
the whole fracture groweth together again. But whenſoever that theſe bones do break,
or get any other diſeaſe, then look what we have written thereof in the fourth part, the
ninth Chapter, and ſecond §.

Of Napta. §. 2.

IT hapneth alſo ſometimes that in certain places of the body ſuch a matter is gathered,
that doth ſo harden and grow out of ſome bone, that it ſeemeth to be a right bone,
which in Latine is called *Napta*, and although this ought to be cured by Chirurgery, we
will nevertheleſſe ordain this for it: Take Frankincenſe one ounce, Maſtick five drach.
Ceruſſe three quarters of an ounce, quickſilver half an ounce; temper them all together
with four ounces of Swines greaſe, and rub therewith the *Napta*, at the fire very hard, not
regarding what pain ſoever it doth.

The

The tenth Chapter.

Of three kinds of Veins in general.

THe Veins are described by *Galen* in this manner: The Veins (saith he) are a fat of the bloud, tempered and mixed of blood and natural spirits, moist and warm, with great sensibility. And under this name are comprehended three sorts; to wit, bloud veins (called by the Latinists *Venæ*) Arteries and pulse veins, *Arteriæ*, or *Venæ pulsatiles*, for that they beat continually.

Secondly, the nature of these veins is warm and moist; what difference there is between both these sorts of veins, besides the beating, that shall appear in this description following; the Anatomists do accompt 365 veins in a mans body.

Thirdly, there be sinews, which be also comprehended under the name of veins, which have no fellowship at all with the blood veins, but only that they do lye spread over all the body, whereof in case that one lose her motion and feeling, then will forthwith the whole body, or some part of it (according to the quality of the disease) be without might, and and deprived of all motion.

Of the bloud veins. §. 1.

NOw for to describe these three sorts of veins, we will first of all admonish of the bloud veins, which are called of the Physitians and Anatomists *Quietæ*, which are still veins, and that by reason they be naturally quiet and without motion; for when they be moved, that is done by some outward cause.

Albertus and *Aristoteles* would maintain and defend against *Galenus*, that these veins did take their off-spring from the heart: But according to the opinion of *Galen* and *Hippocrates*, have they their beginning in the Liver, which question we will leave to the Anatomists to be decided. But we will shew here in brief what hath moved *Hippocrates* to ascribe the beginning of these veins unto the Liver, viz. for that in all creatures (which have blood) there is no greater vein then the Liver vein, which appeareth none otherwise but as the body of a tree, which is thickest beneath in the ground, and at his beginning, and besides his root stretching forth wide and abroad, and the branches above do spread themselves again in many sprigs or twigs. And thus it is also with the arteries, wherefore the foresaid authors have also affirmed, that the Liver is none other thing but like to a root and fountain of all other veins, so that she doth impart her bloud first of all to the heart, as to the most noble part of the body. This is now sufficiently spoken in general of the bloud veins, whereof we will speak and discourse more at large hereafter.

Of the Arteries. §. 2.

WHereof *Galen* writeth thus; the Arteries are vessels of the thin and clean blood, wherein are more natural spirits or ayr, more heat, dryth, and feeling, then in the bloud veins, which remain alwaies panting and beating.

They have their off-spring of the left concavity of the heart, and the first branch a little off from his root is parted in twain, whereof the one part goeth upwards, and the other downwards, where (in both places) the foresaid bloud-veins are spread abroad, with divers small veins, so that there be few arteries without veins. This altogether is most diligently described by *Aristotle*, *Galen*, *Albert*, and also of *Walter Riif*, and at last with lively figures it is apparant to the eyes.

These arteries or pulse veins be by nature (as is said) much hotter, dryer, thicker, fuller, and harder, then the bloud veins: partly like unto the nature of the sinewes they also receive some blood, but it is subtiler and fairer then the blood of the veines; they be also much more replenished with vital spirits then the veins, which is also a cause of their continual panting and moving, which happeneth so forcibly, that the same is outwardly felt over the whole body, and especially on the hands, feet, temples of the head, and on other places more may be seen and felt. All Physitians may decide thereby,

whether the nature be strong or feeble, and all according as the pulse beateth swift, slow, hard, soft, steddy, or very trembling.

The ancient Physitians have been of opinion, that both these sorts of veins, and especially the arteries (if they be cut or chopt off) could not be consolidated again, yea that the heart veins be utterly incurable. But *Galenus* acknowledgeth utterly that the same could hardly be effected in men that be old, but in young people otherwise. Of women and young children doth he admonish that one should not be discouraged; for that he had (saith he) healed enough himself that were wounded after this manner. For this he also before many good remedies in the second part, the fift Chapter, and 18. §. if a vein be broken in the breast or any other place, which may also be used inwardly and outwardly for this purpose.

In like manner you may also use for it this confection insuing; Take Henbane seed, and white Poppy seeds of each one ounce and a quarter, Sealed earth, and red Coral of each five drachmes, old conserve of Roses, the older the better, four ounces; temper all together, and take thereof morning and evening each time half a drachme and no more; this is very good and also forcible for all kinds of bleeding. When as now the veins do swell be it of whatsoever cause it will, then anoint them with Treacle or Mithridate.

Of the Blood. §. 3.

IT is sufficiently known that mans body is joyned together of four kinds of humours or complexions: to wit, of blood, *Cholera*, *Melancholia*, and *Phlegma*: but amongst these is the blood one of the best, partly, for that it is the matter of the vital spirits, wherein life it self hath his being, or for that it is to be compared with the beginning of life, because it is by nature warm, and moyst: or because it hath more vertue to nourish and to sustaine, then any of the other humours.

In fine it is such a Jewel of nature, that if the same be taken away then death doth ensue.

Cholera and *Melancholia* have their proper places or residencies in the body, wherein they do gather themselves, as we have of late declared, from which places they do also shew their power in the ingendring of sicknesses.

But the blood and *Phlegma* are so divided into two parts of the body, that one cannot so soone open the skin in any place, but immediately the blood doth issue forth, and that the veins be the vessels and habitation of the blood, hath been declared before: without the which there can also be no blood found, except in the least concavity of the the heart. Whereof *Albertus* hath been of none other opinion, but that the veins do begin there, and not in the liver.

The nature of the blood is hot and moyst: yea so hot, that in the whole body there is nothing hotter: and to the contrary nothing colder then the *Phlegma*.

Therefore this hot and moyst blood is given to all living creatures, not onely for a nourishment of all members of the body, but also to maintaine them by their natural warmth, and no otherwise. For example, good wood is laid upon the fire for to warm a whole chamber with it; in like sort also, as the fire is abated and his burning taken away, if the same be overcharged with too much wood, or if the wood be too moyst, also if the wood be pluckt away, or too little laid upon it: so is it with the heat of the heart, that if the same be too much, or too little; likewise overcold, unmeasurable hot, or is too feeble. When the heart shall feele these kinds of diseases then will all the other members of the body be partakers thereof.

It is also the opinion and censure of all learned that the blood is the most principal meanes in the mothers body, whereby the heart as the chief part of the body, hath his beginning.

Concerning his nature and property, then is this not a small miracle of nature, that it hath no feeling of it self; nevertheless it is cause of the same and of life also. And it is found by daily experience, that if there run much blood from any creature, that thereby come swoonings, yea the life it self runneth out with the blood.

Neither is the blood alike in all men, nor in all members; it getteth also, through age many kinds of nature. In children it is thin and watrish, in youth hot and sharp, in men at the fullest and best of all, and all these foresaid very much and abundant.

In age there is but a little, thick and black, and cleaving very suddenly as well inwardly as outwardly upon the body.

In

In like manner it is alſo ſure, that how fatter a body is, ſo much the leſſer blood hath he, for that is through the fatneſſe conſumed, as is ſeene, that all fat hath no blood in it. Contrarily, how much the leaner, ſo much the blacker is the blood. Beſides theſe is alſo womens blood much groſſer and blacker then mens blood, and women have alſo leſſe blood in the outward then in the inward parts.

Moreover, there is no creature fuller of blood amongſt all them that have received life, then women, wherefore nature doth unburthen them every moneth of all their ſuperfluities of the blood, and they are leſſe ſubject then men unto all ſickneſſes which proceed of blood.

Albeit it happeneth (yet ſeldome) that they bleed at the noſe, or by the Hemorrhoids, then do they quickly find, that they have their terms the leſſe.

Secondly, the blood alſo in the Heart, Lights, and arteries, is much ſubtiler then that in the veins: The groſſe blood is drawn away by the fleſh, whereby the foreſaid blood is more ſubtile, thin and ſcummy. The upright good blood, which is without any diſeaſe, is light red, ſweet in taſt, and not too thick, and in that eſtate it may be ſuſtained and augmented by good meat and drink, if one take abundantly thereof: but to the contrary, it will be diminiſhed through want of thoſe things. The blood doth eſpecially increaſe by good ſtrong wine moderately drunken, it maketh the ſame alſo faire and freſh, and eſpecially the wine which is thick red, for that wine behoveth not to be much digeſted.

In fine, according to that the food is good or bad, thereafter is the blood qualified: for the farther it is ingendred from this proper nature, ſo much the black it is. If the ſame ſpoyle through abundance, then will in the broken veins be knots called *Varices*, whereof we have written in the firſt chapter and ſeventeenth §. of the 5. Part: or it will be expelled through the bleeding at the noſe, or through the Hemorrhoids: alſo it is oftentimes altered in impoſtumations and corruptions. What diſeaſes are cauſed of the corruption of the blood, that ſhall hereafter be taught and declared.

Amongſt all living creatures is the blood of man the moſt ſubtile: as to the contrary, the Aſſes blood the moſt groſſe. So long as it doth remain in the body, it doth keep his warm and moiſt nature: but as ſoon as it is out, then doth it thicken, yet one mans blood more then another, whence afterwards you may ſeparate the little haires or *Fibræ*. The blood of a Steer is ſo hard, that being drunken it is a deadly poyſon.

Contrariwiſe, certain beaſts blood doth not thicken at all, viz. Hares blood, Conies blood, Harts and Hinds blood, the blood of Roes, of Swine, of Goates, and ſuch like more. The Philoſophers opinion is, that all groſſe thick blood doth give ſtrength, ſubtile and thin blood, wittineſſe, little blood, feare, and very little wit.

But for concluſion, this enſuing is a marvellous property of the blood, that nature hath placed ſuch power therein, that the countenance of a man is altered in the twinckling of an eye, as happeneth in great anger, ſhamefaſtneſſe and ſuch, through the concourſe of blood.

Contrarily, if the ſame depart from the face, it ſheweth feare and fright. And in theſe alterations of the paleneſſe and redneſſe, doth keep ſuch a difference, that therby may be adjudged and known, how the heart and mind of man is diſpoſed within.

Whereby the blood may be cleanſed. §. 4.

Albeit that we have taught enough for all ſickneſſes, which be cauſed through the uncleanneſſe of the blood, by what meanes the blood may be cleanſed, yet can it not but be neceſſary to diſcover certain things here which be meet for the ſame. And firſt, what things they be: the confected Nutmegs are eſpecially commended for this, becauſe they make very good and haile blood. Nevertheleſſe it is not adviſed, that they which be of hot nature ſhould uſe the ſame unleſſe it be very ſeldome.

We have alſo declared in other places, that there is nothing that cleanſeth the blood more then Fumitory, and all that is made of Fumitory, as conſerve, ſyrup, juyce, water, and eſpecially if the ſame be decocted in Whay of Goates milk.

Roſemary is highly commended for it. In the firſt part, the ſecond chapter, and firſt §. is a powder deſcribed, beginning thus; Take Sene leaves which is alſo marvellous good for this purpoſe. Concerning the drink, we have told before that there is nothing better then good red wine.

Amongſt

Amongst herb-wines, the Burrage Wine, Wine of Bugloſſe and of *Tormentill* is commended for this: may you look alſo into theſe places enſuing, where there be diverſe and ſundry things deſcribed, whereby the blood may be cleanſed, as in the third Part, the 10. Chapter, and ſixt §. Item, in the fifth Part of the ulcers and of ſcabbedneſſe, which be commonly cauſed of unclean blood, as alſo of the Pox and the Leproſie, hereafter ſhall be ſpoken of in the deſcription of *Phlegma*.

How the abundant bleeding is to be ſtanched. §. 5.

Alſo there is nothing to be written of this abundant bleeding, but onely to alledge certain places where diverſe and ſundry remedies are ſet down for to ſtanch blood withall: as in the firſt Part, the 8. Chapter, and 7 §. Item, in the firſt Part, the 9. Chapter, and 5 §. Alſo in the firſt Part, the 13. Chapter, and 7 §. Item, in the ſecond Part, the fifth Chapter, and ſeventeenth §. Item, in the third Part, the eight Chapter, and 4th §. Yet again in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 16. §. Item, more in the third Part, the 14. Chapter, and 11. §.

And if ſo be that this bleeding come upon women in childbed too faſt, then look for it in the concluſion of the third part, and before in the ſeventh Chapter, where certain precious mineral potions are deſcribed, in which places there may good means be found according to the importance of the bleeding.

How to let out ſuperfluous blood. §. 6.

IT is no leſſe needful in many men to take away the ſuperfluous blood, whereby nature is overcharged, and many ſickneſſes cauſed, then in others to increaſe it, and this happeneth moſt conveniently through letting of blood, through application of boxing cups, or through faſtning of leeches.

Of the letting of blood we have ſpoken at large in the Introduction, and alſo written of the ſixteen veins of the body which are wont to be opened, and likewiſe in what ſickneſſes each of them is to be opened, whereby each one that readeth it, ſhall find a good direction.

The ſecond means whereby this noiſome blood may be taken away, are the cups, whereof we have diſcourſed at large in the foreſaid Introduction. Alſo in like ſort of the ſetting on of the Leeches, thither do we direct the Reader, and ſo conclude this Chapter.

The eleventh Chapter.

Of the natural warmth of mans body.

BEcauſe we have now written of the veins, and alſo how the ſame do ſpread themſelves throughout the whole body, and other things concerning this, therefore we will admoniſh of the natural heat, which with the blood is imparted unto all parts of the body, for that the blood and the natural heat be ſo linked one with another and befriended, that one cannot continue without the other, but death muſt preſently enſue. Yea there is alſo none other thing that giveth ſhape in the beginning to all living bodies, and afterwards cauſeth them to increaſe to the hour of death, but this natural heat which is born with us.

This is the only cauſe of all working: and it is known, that all that groweth and increaſeth, yea alſo all herbs and plants muſt have their nourihment thereby, and each according to the right property of his nature which giveth to each thing according to his need both moyſture and drouth: but how were it poſſible that the ſame may be concocted and altered for the ſuſtenance and increaſe of mans body, if there be no natural warmth within it? This natural warmth doth maintain all health, and conſumeth all bad humors, it conſumeth alſo meat and drink, whereby all inward parts do receive their power and ſtrength, and alſo are made apt to do all things whereto they were created.

The

The hardned skin will be mellowed and made thin through this natural heat, all wounds and ulcers be brought to natural matter, it swageth the pain, it looseth and softeneth all contracted sinewes. Item, this natural heat is that which causeth the wounded bead to heale, and freeth it from all his heavy accidents, dryeth the moysture of the same, expelleth all corrupted bones, and taketh away the venom of all corroding ulcers. This naturall warmth doth warm all frozen members, it helpeth all diseases of the Mattix and privities, &c. The same natural heat doth heale all broken bones. But how may that be better seen then by daily examples, which we have daily before our eyes, and as it appeareth in old folks; for it is seen that how much the natural heat abateth in them, so much the weaker and the more incurable do they wax of all diseases: and most manifestly in the dying, where it is cleerely seen, that how much the more the natural heat doth abate, so much the nearer is death at hand. Therefore must heed alwayes be taken that it be kept in his natural being: for if so be that the same bee too great or too small in any body, then can follow none other but heavy sicknesses, and at length death it self. The like may be seen in the Palsey, and in the Plague. Therefore we will here discover certain things which sustain this natural heat, and do increase and strengthen the same, and afterwards shew what is to be used against unnatural heat. First, there be certain spiced Wines, Claret Wines, Hypocras Wines, and such like commended for it, but they must be used with providence, to the end that according to the quality of nature and of the age they may be prepared, that they heat not overmuch: for that the right nature of wine is, that it being moderately drunken, doth preserve and sustain the natural warmth, and strengtheneth the powers of men. The same doth also Elecampane Wine, and confected Nutmegs used morning and evening after meate. The conserve of Rosemary doth warm all those which be halfdead. But what need is it to write so largely thereof, seeing there is no sickness, which cometh through cold described in all this book, wherein hath not been taught how this weak natural heat, might be holpen: Hereafter also shall be spoken of the *Phlegma*, and by that meanes also of cold, and what is to be done for these cold diseases where further advertisement may be sought for.

Of Unnatural heat. §. 1.

IN all hot diseases which have been discovered hitherto, be meanes every where declared, wherewith this unnatural heat might be quenched and slaked. But we will here not onely alledge the passages where the same is taught, but also declare what may be meet for it. For this are sundry things described, as the cooling salve *Galeni*, the salve of Roses, the salve of Saunders, and the Pomade. For this is also good the Poplar salve, all which you may mix as you please, or use each alone.

In like manner these oyles following, as of Poppy heads, of Roses, of Violets, and of water Lillies, which do coole more then the oyl of Roses, or oyl of Violets. For an outward application, take the water of Corne Roses, and of Nightshade of each two ounces, sealed earth, and fine *Bolus*, of each one drachme, Camphir ten graines, temper them all together and lay it upon the forehead, or where the heat is.

One may use inwardly the conserve of Bugloss, of Burrage, of water Lillies, of Violets, of Cicorie, of red and white Roses, confected Cherries, and conserve of Barberries.

Item, confected roots of Cicorie, Framboys, confected Peaches (which one may use in all hot sicknesses) and Prunes that be confected. Item, fresh Cassie is very necessary in all unnatural and sharp heat.

The sowr Dates do coole and purge very mildly, and they do also quench the thirst. The simple things be Lettice, Endive, Cicorie, and bread that is steeped in cold water, Quinces, Limons, Oranges, Pompeons, Melons, sweet Wine, Peares, Apples and Cherries, &c.

These foresaid things are not only to be used in hot sicknesses but also to take them moderately being in health in hot times. There is also a syrup made of the juyce of Oranges, of sowr Pomgranates, of white Roses, and of Sorrel, the which do coole much in the time of the Plague, and in all pestilential sicknesses, which do inflame the heart and the stomach.

The syrup of Roses laxative doth especially coole all heat of Agues: Likewise also the syrup of Verjuyce, of Violets, of Endive, and Vinegar.

In like manner also *Oxyeration*, *Oxyſaccharu*, Julep of Roſes, and of Violets: the Honey of Roſes hath a meetly cooling nature, therefore the ſame may alſo be uſed in hot Agues.

When the Patient deſireth to drink in great heat, then be ſome of theſe foreſaid ſirupes to be tempered amongſt it, for which the ſirupe of Violets, of Burrage, and of Roſes, be the moſt principal, if the ſame be tempered with Well water, or any cooling potion. The ſame doth alſo freſh Well water alone.

Item, Barly water, or Henbroth dreſſed with Endive, watred wine, Henbroth with Sugar and Barly, and the water of Larks ſpur drunken three or four times a day; theſe beforeſaid do take away the unnatural heat, whether it be in the Plague, or in any other hot agues.

Take water of Larks ſpur and of Bugloſſe, of each two ounces, Cicorie water one ounce, drink twice thereof morning and evening: it ſtrengtheneth and cooleth alſo the heart in all hot things.

Take a handful of Raiſins, ſtamp them to pap, and pour upon it eight ounces of water of Bugloſſe, Cinamon one drachme, then wring it through a cloth, and afterwards take it, or give it to drink with Almond milk.

But if ſo be that ſome unnatural heat do aſſail you without any ſpecial ſickneſſe, then is this enſuing to be uſed for it: Take a black Cockrel of a year old, chop it alive one part from another, take the Liver, and ſtamp it very warm in a mortar, then temper with it womans milk of one that giveth ſuck to a boy, afterwards wring it together through a cloth, and give thereof to the over-heated body two or three ſpoonfuls. Some do commend this very highly, and it may be tried without peril.

Item, the juyce of green Nutſhels be very good againſt all accidents which may be cauſed of heat.

The twelfth Chapter.

Of the Sweat in general.

After the deſcription of unnatural heat, we are to write ſomewhat alſo of the ſweat (which is contained in the corrupted blood) and pierceth through the whole body. The ſame is thus briefly deſcribed of *Galen*. Sweat is a cleanſing and an exceſſive moiſture which is mixed with the bloud as the Whay is with the milk. Other do expound it more at large. The ſweat (ſay they) is a moiſture, which is cauſed of the vapours of the body, which ſpreadeth it out to the uttermoſt parts of the body, and penetrateth out through the skin, whereby the blood is unburthened of much uncleanneſſe, whereof there be two ſores, the one natural, which in great ſickneſſes is a good ſign or *Criſis*, which kind of ſweat doth break out alſo upon men through great labour, or in Sommer time, and is a wholeſome and healing ſweat, which bringeth great eaſe and lightening with it. The other kind of ſweat is unnatural and alſo hurtful, as is ſeen in them which ſuffer great pain, or that lye a dying: therefore it is not unjuſtly ſaid (as alſo the truth is,) that ſweat is a ſign of all the moyſtneſſe which reigneth in the body. For when as the ſweat breaketh forth exceſſively, then is it a ſign of great abundance of ſubtile moyſtures, and of the ſtrength of the expulſive vertue. Like as to the contrary, a little ſwear giveth knowledge of the roughneſſe and thickneſſe of the ſame, or debility of the expulſive power. If ſo be that the ſweat be red, then is it a ſign that the bloud hath the maſtery: but if ſo be that the ſweat be yellow, then hath *Bolera* the preheminence; or if it be white, *Phlegma*, and if it be blackiſh, *Melancholia*. And if ſo be that the ſweat ſtink, then muſt the blood alſo in the veins whence the ſaid ſweat cometh, ſtink alſo. Item, theſe differences may be perceived by the tongue, that when one will prove his ſweat, and the ſame be ſweet, then is it a ſign that the blood reigneth: and if bitter, then *Cholera*, &c.

The cauſes of the ſweat be over-hot ayr, great labour, warm weather, bathing, to go too hot clothed, and a moyſt body. But commonly it is cauſed through great rioting which is lately committed: the firſt cauſe will be taken away, if one beware of labour, and tarry out of warm ayr, &c. The ſecond through purging; but the ſweat may come

of whatsoever cause that it will, it is alwayes very profitable for a moyst body, and healthful; therefore is the same to be required in many sundry perilous diseases, viz. in frantick nesse, *Phrenitide*, in which the sweat is especially very meet if the same be effectively expelled.

The Physitians which be very expert have taken through the sweat no small signification of life or of death, and especially in those dayes which they call *Critici*, which be these ensuing, that do yeeld also a good prognostication of health. The 3. 7. 9. 14. 17. 20. 21. 24. 27. 30. 31. 34. and 40. the other which cometh between these foresaid dayes do signifie to the contrary a long continuing sickness. This sweating is also very often common with all Agues, and especially in all hot Agues, but after a several or different manner; for if the sweat be cold, and that it be onely about the head, in the face, and in the neck, then it is a very bad sign; if it come with a sharp Ague, then it is a sign of death, or cometh it with a mild Ague, then doth it signifie a lingring sickness; by which it also signifyeth that where the sweat doth break out, there the disease and the sickness is. Moreover we will add this unto it, that when the blood is unmeasurable moyst, thence springeth alwayes a very greivous sickness, for that thereby it will be watrish (like as the Whay of milk) retaining nevertheless the red colour, whereby it cometh also that a body sweateth blood otherwhiles.

For sweating be also these rules ensuing prescribed. First the sweat is not to be moved before, and ere that the matter be purged whereof that this is provoked, and so long as the Patient feeleth ease thereby, and be not over much weakned. Secondly in consuming maladies, as *Hectica* and *Phthisis*, sweating is not meet. Thirdly, if the sweating get so much the mastery, that a body is thereby weakned, then is the sweating to be caused to cease by uncovering or taking away the coverings. Or doth it come through over much heat: then is the Patient to live soberly, and fast. But if so be that it do come through repletion of the body, then is the same moysture or humour which causeth the sweat to be purged. Afterwards is the body to be annointed with this salve following: Take Roses one ounce, red Saunders, blossomes of Pomgranates, Galles, and Mirtle leaves, of each half an ounce: seeth all together in four and twenty ounces of water until the third part be spent: afterwards strain it through a cloth, and put unto it six ounces of the oyl of Roses, and then let it seeth so long until all the water be consumed, afterwards strain it through a cloth.

With this salve is the Patient especially to anoint the side and the breast. He is also to drink oftentimes Julep of Roses, and of Violets, and to moysten the breast sometimes and the sides with cold water, and also to sleep alone, but upon no bed which is filled with feathers, and that but light covered.

This sweating causeth also sometimes swouning which is not without danger. This Patient is not to be bounden, rubbed, nor to keep in his breath, like as is done to others which fall into a swouning by some other cause; for that the foresaid things do drive out more matter and sweat out of the body. For this also is wine to be eschewed, for that it expelleth also sweat: but the face is to be sprinkled with Rosewater, and with well water. The Patient must also refrain from over hot labour, and not to cover himself too much, he must set his bed in a cold place, and hang the same with cold odoriferous things, as Roses, Saunders, Camphir, Quinces, Waterlillies, and such like.

Whereby the sweat is provoked. §. 1.

AT the first are the pores to be opened, as doth the oyl of Camomil, and of Dill, if one be anointed therewith: or take Pepper, Cinamom, Calamus, *Rapontica*, *Piretrum*, Rubarb, Costus, Cassie wood, Balsam fruits, Marjoram gentle, and the juyce of white Mints: temper some of these foresaid things together and seeth them with Salt oyl in wine, anoint you there-with, it causeth a man to sweat.

Further, these things following are to be used before one go to bed, therewith to expel the sweat, to wit, half a drachme or a whole drachme of Treacle or Mithridate, take an Onion, and put good Treacle unto it, afterwards rost it soft in hot ashes, and eat a good deale thereof, then lay you in bed to sweat therewith, and afterwards dry your self clean with dry clothes.

For bathing, he is to take the quantity of a nut of conserves of Rosemary, or conserve of Pumitory, both of them do expel sweat; the conserve of Eldern is berries the common peoples physick for this purpose.

Item, take Roſe water, Wormwood water, and Rue water, of each a like quantity, and uſe hereof every morning a good draught: or take one ounce of Ginger, and ſteep it in a pint of red Wine; afterwards ſtrain it without wringing, and then drink five ounces thereof: it cauſeth alſo to ſweat well, and that eſpecially in quartain Agues: how to the ſame to abate the heat, then temper amongſt in julep of Violets. *Oxymel ſimplex* doth alſo move ſweat.

But if one cannot ſweat, then take two or three brick ſtones and make them very hot, and wrap them in a wet cloth, and lay firſt one, and then another to the feet, under the arm-pits, or the ſides of the Patient, or between his legs; then will the vapour cauſe the Patient to ſweat. And if ſo be that there be a ſtinking ſweat inſtead like as the ſtench of the armpits, whereof we have written in the fourth Part, the firſt Chapter and 2. §. and in the ſecond Chapter, 1. in the third §. then may one with the foreſaid, uſe this enſuing: Take white Copperas half an ounce, ſeethe it beyl ſo long in a pint of water as one would ſeethen egg hard, or ſomewhat longer, and waſh you therewith. Alſo the ſweat will be expelled by anointing with oyl of Quinces, or by taking of Marmalade with ſpice.

Of the ſweat-bath and others. §. 2.

IT is very common that ſweat is uſually provoked by bathes, which is attempted after divers manners, and muſt be done for many kinds of maladies, as we have declared in many places; for which now that bathing is noiſome and bad, we have alſo taught here and there, as the ſame may be looked for in the Table.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the Sinews.

IT is a queſtion amongſt certain learned men whence the ſinews (which the Latinists call *Nervos*) have their beginning. *Ariſtoteles* was of opinion that they came from the heart, although it cannot be perceived that there-hence any ſhould come: but *Galenus* with his followers do ſay, that the ſinews take their beginning in the brains and the back-bone. And this opinion is not without a foundation and ſure ground, becauſe that as ſoon as the ſinews be inflamed with an unnatural heat, the brains thereby are ſo infected, that commonly theſe men be diſtraught of their wits and underſtanding, yea waxe childiſh, and as the Phyſicians name it *Delirii*. *Albertus* doth reckon to be in mans body 77. ſinews, as well great as ſmall, hard, ſoft, and other; and therein do all learned agree, that they be all of a cold nature, yet the one leſſe then the other, and alſo without blood, wherefore ſome call them the white veins. Amongſt theſe be three principal ſorts: the firſt which we chiefly call *Nervos*, which is ſinews; the ſecond, *Tendones*, which be the tendones; the third *Ligamenta*, which be ligaments or binding ſinews. The firſt ſort have their beginning in the brains, of both the skins of the brains, and in the backbone, the which *Albertus* calleth the Vicegerent of the brains, for that they be both almoſt of one nature. Theſe *Nervi* or ſinews, the which by the Grecians is as much to ſay as bending, be by nature a little warmer and alſo dryer then the veins or any other ſinews, they are alſo more ſenſible then the arteries, and of ſuch power that they frank and freely impart unto the whole body all motion and feeling.

Theſe foreſaid ſinews are by nature ſo placed in the backbone, and his holes, which be 60. in number, and that they be ſpread over the whole body, giving each part his ſenſe and action; ſo that each may adjudge what is hurtful for him, or paineth any whit. They do ſpread themſelves abroad over the whole body, to wit, out of the backbone, as it were a ſpring, which with many ſundry ſpouts or gutters is derived hither and thitherwards in a pleaſant garden, for to moiſten the ſame, and to impart her water unto it: So is alſo our body naturally nouriſhed with theſe ſinews and all other veins, which (like as is ſaid) receive their beginning out of the brains, and ſo deſcend even to the feet beneath. And although this diſperſion be ſo bountifully and pleaſantly performed, notwithſtanding there come no ſinewes into the bones, except the teeth, neither yet in the griſtles

griffes nor in the fatneſſe, nor in the ligaments (which be knitters of the members or joynts:) therefore all theſe foreſaid parts have no feeling or motion neither need they any.

When as now the forſaid ſinewes are ſpread abroad every where in the muſcles or lacerts, which (as is ſaid) are inſtrument whereby we have all our motion, yea in other places, where need requireth, the other ſort are, to wit, the tendones. Theſe be of right compacted ſubſtance, eaſily cut in the length, yet very hardly or ſcant at all. When as they alſo (like as is oftentimes admoniſhed) be wounded, then are they healed with great trouble. They can alſo abide no fire, like as the ſinewes do: for whenſoever they be wounded or hurt, then doth the ſame member loſe his accuſtomed action, or will at the leaſt be much weakned. It is alſo much to be wondered at, to wit, when a ſinew is hurt, then there followeth much pain and miſhap after it: and being hewed or cut quite aſunder, that then the Patient knoweth not of any pain.

The tendones or lacerts be amongſt theſe three ſorts of ſinewes the moſt hardeſt: contrariwiſe, the ligaments be the moſt ſofteſt, as ſhall be ſhewed hereafter. Theſe tendones be alſo not ſo ſenſible as the right ſinewes, and be alſo much bigger.

The third ſort of ſinewes the Grecians do call *Syndeſmoi*, the Latiniſts *Ligamenta*, (which be bonds or knitters) *Albertus* doth call them *Cordæ*, that is, Cords: theſe have no feeling where they hold faſt in the muſcles or bones, but they bind onely the muſcles and bones together.

Let this now ſuffice of the nature of the ſinewes, and they that deſire to have ampler direction thereof, let them look into *Ariſtoteles*, *Galenus*, *Albertus*, and other *Anatomici*, which have written thereof very largely.

Of hurt and wounded ſinewes. §. 1.

Commonly the perished ſinewes do require ſuch remedies as are wont to be uſed for the increaſe of the infeebled warmth, and do dry hard and draw, yet without any corroding and bad property.

The wounds are alſo to be kept open long, and if ſo be that they be too narrow, then make them wider, to the end that all bad matter may run out. Beſides that, all diligence is to be be uſed for to aſſwage the pain. If now there be any ſinew pricked in letting of blood, or otherwiſe, then take oyl of Camomil, of Roſes, and oyl of S. Johns wort, of each one ounce, three well brayed yolks of egs and Saffron one ſcruple, temper them all together, and lay it thereon.

For the Pain. §. 2.

If ſo be that there be any great pain in the wounded ſinews, then uſe theſe ſalves *Anodyna*, wherby the pain may be aſſwaged, whereof you may find ſufficiently written in the firſt part, the fourth Chapter and twelfth §. in the ſecond part, the 7. Chapter: in the third part, the ſixteenth Chapter and 4. §. alſo in the third part the 17. chapter and 2. §. This enſuing is alſo very meet for it: Take oyl of Lillies, one ounce and a half, oyl of Dill and of Camomil of each one ounce, white Wax as much as is needful for to make a ſalve.

Another *Anodynum*. Take Wallflowers three ounces, oyl of ſweet Almonds, and oyl of *Hypericum*, of each one drachme and a half, freſh Butter one ounce, Saffron half a drachme, white Wax one drachme and a half, oyl of Dill, of Camomil, and Ducks greaſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, one well brayed yolk of an egge, then temper them together unto a ſalve. For this you have alſo before in the third chapter and 7. §. a ſalve, beginning thus, Take oyl of Roſes &c. and other things more, which do much aſſwage the pain.

Item, take the matrow of Calves bones, and very old Sallad oyl, of each four ounces, Earth-wormes waſht in wine two ounces, ſeeth them together in water meetly well, afterwards ſtrain the broth thorow a cloth: it is marvellous good for the ſinewes, for that it aſſwageth all pain, and mollifyeth the ſinews.

Theſe foreſaid things be not onely good for paines of the ſinewes, which be cauſed through wounds, but alſo for all other pain of the ſinewes, as this following is alſo: Take Henbane ſeed half an ounce, black Poppy ſeed, one quarter of an ounce, Saffron

one ounce, *Hermodactyli* two ounces and a half, small bruised crums of bread four ounces: temper them all together, and so lay this warm upon it, and that thrice in four and twenty hours, afterwards anoint the place with oyl of Foxes, or with any such like oyl which shall hereafter be discovered: After that strew the powder of Earth-worms upon it; or temper the powder with Hony, and use it as before. It is also good for all pain of the members, and hardning of the sinews. There may also a plaister be made of the foresaid Earth-worms, and apply it. Cow dung tempered with oyl and layd warm upon it, is also good.

Item, take oyl of Foxes three ounces, Sallad oyl four ounces, Earth-worms washed in Wine two ounces, let them seeth all together, like as is said before, it strengtheneth marvellous much all bruised sinewes, and warmeth also the same when they be wounded. Oyl of Bricks is good for all pain and all diseases of the sinewes. In like manner the three sorts of Balsam oyl which be described in the last part,

When the sinewes be resolved and limber. §. 3.

TAke Turpentine which is many times washed with Rosewater two ounces, pounded Frankincense, and Corns of the same, of each two drachmes and a half, make a salve thereof. This doth also a salve which is made with washed Lime and Sallad oyl, or oyl of Saint Johns wort. Item, there is also good for this all vital waters.

For Sinewes that be shrunk, or for the Cramp of the sinewes. §. 4.

ITem, take one ounce of the plaister *Diachilon*, *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium*, of each one quarter of an ounce, steep these two gums four and twenty hours in Vinegar, and afterwards let them seeth until all the Vinegar be spent, then mix the plaister amongst it, and also five drachmes of Beare grease; when it is now sufficiently boyled, then work it well together with the hands, the hands being first made wet in Vinegar; this plaister doth mollify and digest.

Or take the seeds of Hollihocks, of Flax, and of Fenegreek, of each two ounces, oyl of Lillies, and of Olives, of each one ounce, Wax as much as is needful for a salve: this salve softeneth all manner of hard nesse of the sinewes and of the joynts, it asswageth the pain, it strengtheneth the extenuated members.

Take the oyl of Behen two ounces, *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, of each two drachmes, Saffron two scruples, white Wax as much as will suffice for a soft oyntment: at the last add one ounce of Neates foot oyl unto it.

Item, take oyl of Spikenard, oyl of Saffron, of each six drachmes, Bevercod, *Ammoniacum*, *Sagapenum*, Badgers grease and Bears grease, of each three drachmes, marrow of Oxe bones half an ounce, Wax as much as will suffice, besprinkle them all with Vinegar of Squils.

If you would have it digest and dry stronger, add unto it Pellitory of Spain, Bevercod, *Euphorbium*, and roots of Costus, of each two drach. Saltpeter half a drach. make it all into an oyntment: this oyntment is good for the Palsey and coldnesse of the sinewes, but especially for the shaking in the fit of an ague. This salve *Dialthaa* is very good for the contraction and shortning of the sinewes.

Item, take Camomil flowers, sprigs of the Juniper tree, Sage, Mallowes, Southernwood, and Nettle rootes of each one handful, shred and beat them very small, and put unto them sixteen ounces of fresh Butter, Dogs grease twelve ounces, boyl them together until all the juyce of the herbs be consumed, then strain them, and add unto them molten Wax three ounces, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, of each one ounce, dissolve the gums in Vinegar, and mix them with the rest: when it beginneth to coole, stir amongst it oyl of Bevercod six drachmes, oyl of Camomil two ounces, oyl of Bayes eight ounces; lastly, temper them well together. The Apothecaries do call it *Unguentum Nervinum*, but it is not used every where.

Item, take Wax, Pitch, and marrow of Oxe bones, of each one ounce, oyl of Roses two ounces, mix them all together and put unto them the powder of Earth-worms, and so anoint the place agreeved with it. As concerning the Cramp (which is nothing else but a contraction and conclusion of the sinewes) hath been spoken in the first part, the 12. Chapter, and 15. §. where also I shewed what might be used for it. And this following

is very meet for the same: Take the juice of broad Plantain, boil it with strong wine, and binde it upon the place where the Cramp is. Item, take the roots of water Lillies, cut them in round slices, and so apply them, it hath been approved oftentimes. When the Cramp cometh in one foot, then bend back one of your toes, or bind it hard with a whipcord: but the best counsel is, to arise presently and walk, and to keep the foot warm. Cramp rings are also worn for it, but I find no great good in them. These oyls following are very commodious for the Cramp, to wit, oyl of Lillies, of Rue, of Wallflowers, and of Turpentine, which is made as followeth. Take Turpentine three pound, put it into a body, make fast the head and the receiver unto it very close, distil it in sand or ashes with an easie fire. First, there cometh over a clear water with oyl, next a yellow oyl, lastly, a dark and grosse oyl, keep each apart, for they are good for all cold griefs, and especially for them of the sinews. There is also good for it the oyl of Lyes, oyl Quinces, which also comforteth the sinews. The oyl of Cammomil is not onely good for the sinews, but also for all the joynts. The oyl of S. Johns wort is especial good for the same. The ridge in the back-bone being anointed with the oyl of Juniper, restoreth motion into all parts. Oyl of Bayes, of bitter Almonds, and of Bevercod, have an especial vertue to soften the hard and contracted sinewes.

Now follow those things which may be used inwardly.

Both the kinds of Treacle, and the Mithridate are marvellous good for the infections of the sinews.

Item, take *Calamus*, flowers of Stechados, of each three ounces, Currans, Fennel roots, Parsley roots, of each one ounce, Centory, Coloquint, *Hermodactilis*, of each half an ounce, boyl them in a quart of water unto the half, and strain them out hard, then put to ounces of Hony unto it, and let them boyl together again until they be reasonable thick, afterwards put unto them fine powder of prepared Agarick one ounce, *Turbith* half an ounce, Ginger and *Diagridion*, of each one drach. and a half, Spike of Indy one drach. make an Electuary of them. This Electuary purgeth all phlegmatick, tough, green, and wateriſh matter from all the parts of the body both inward and outward. It asswageth all pains of the joynts, sinews, and such like. Give of it at once four or five drach. with the decoction of Ginger, if phlegme do abound. Contrariwise in a cholerick body give it with the water of Succory very warm, and let him fast six hours after it, and before he be set down to dinner, let him drink a good draught of Mead: For the same purpose also serveth the confection of *Diacorum*, and especially the first of them which are described in the last Part. Likewise the conserve of Lavender, of Spikenard, of Sage and the preserved roots of *Eringus*.

His common drink shall be Mead, or Hony water. Amongst the herbed wines are these commended, the wines of Elecampane roots, Rosemary, Sage, and Wormwood. These wines are all very good for the sinews not onely taken inwardly, but also the infected places chafed and fomented outwardly. Common clisters are sometimes used for to comfort the sinews, whereof there be divers described almost every where, and such as may be used according to the place infected. But a little Coloquint is for the most part added unto them all.

This contraction and induration of the sinews doth in time turn to a perfect lamenesse, whereof hath been spoken before in the fourth Part, the seventh Chapter, and second §. and after that in this fift Part, in the second Chapter, of the Pocks, in which places you may find sufficient store of remedies to content your self.

These things following are very hurtful for the sinews; the continual use of strong wines, venery, idlenesse, slothfulnesse, warm water; and especially in them that are wounded in the sinews.

The fourteenth Chapter.

Of the flesh and Muscles or Lacerts.

WE must now speak of the flesh of the body which covereth the bones, veins, sinews, and in fine, all that is comprehended in the skin. First, in respect of those parts which we call Muscles or Lacerts, the flesh in Latin called *Caro*, is very little in quantity; for the number of Muscles is so infinite, that it hath been unpossible for the ancient Physitians to name them all. Some did take them to be in number five hundred, *Albertus*, 529. The flesh and Muscles are ingendred of blood: they are warm and moist by nature, and soft in handling, and those that are coldish by nature (without any evident heat) they have much and very soft flesh. That which we call flesh, is placed every where between the muscles, onely differing in this, that the muscles are contained in a thin subtile membrane, to the end that the sinews with their small twigs might the better passe through it, and impare their motion unto the muscles. This flesh is otherwhiles changed into fat, to wit, in fat men, or in them that live delicately; or else sometimes it decreaseth and the muscles also upon divers occasions. They that are very fleshy have also big veins, full of black blood, with great entrails, and a big belly. These persons are especially commanded by all learned Physitians, that they shall not purge themselves in Sommer time.

The other kind of flesh, namely Muscles and Lacerts, are peradventure so called, because they are not unlike to the Evers; for *Lacerta* in Latin is a Lyzard or Euet in English. *Aristotle, Albertus, Galenus*, with divers other have written very curiously of the veins and sinews, and have shewed how they are dispersed and spread over all the body, and how by the Muscles they move and stir every member severally, whereof we need not at this present make any further mention. But to speak of them in brief: the body of the muscles is made of three several kinds of substance, for their beginning and the very head of them is full of sinews. Their middle (which is called the belly of the muscle) is flesh. Their tayl, or the ends of the Muscles is harder and more sinewy then the head, whereof the Tendons are made. In fine, these Muscles do consist of sinews, of flesh, of ligaments, and veins, so that by the multitude of these sinews, are all the parts of the body, moved inward and outward, upwards and downwards, quickly or slowly, too and fro, all as a man will himself. Besides this, they are according to their situations of divers proportions, as long, thick, broad, &c. and so strangely coadunated and conjoyned, that their use may easier be perceived by their motion, than by sight, or by any other means whatsoever, but especially, in the face, in the forehead, and in the lips. These muscles may not be wounded without great danger, for by reason of the sinews which passe through them, by those wounds very great and heavy accidents must needs ensue. But the greatest danger is wounding, hurting or in any way harming them of the back, for then can the Patient neither make water, nor go the stool, nor do any other businesse at all aright. By these means cometh the Cramp, the falling sickness. I will not speak of the great misfortune that might follow if the same do putrifie. Because therefore the muscles are very sensible, they do find by overmuch labour, by long walking, by running, and such like, a great debility, wearisomness, and pain; so do the sinews also and the Tendons themselves. But it were in vain to shew at this present how all the infirmities that the muscles are subject unto might be remedied, because the same hath been sufficiently spoken of in those places where we have intreated of Ulcers, Wounds, Pocks, Leprosie, and such like,

The

The 15. Chapter.

Of the fat of mans body.

AEr the description of the flesh it is very needfull that we [illegible] discourse of the fat in mans body. This fat is a divition [illegible] fulfilment in the skin and other parts, heaped insensibly [illegible] together: this insensiblenesse hath the fat of the blood [illegible] is ingendred: for that the fat is none other thing but [illegible] which also is insensible. By nature it is moist moist, [illegible] fat of all beasts, and also the fat of men is wont to be used for ma-ny kind of diseases as may be seen here and there in this Book: and (as it is said) the fat hath his beginning of the fattest part of the blood, which runneth through the veins towards the skin and letting it self on the same and on the sinews (both which are dry by nature) for to moysten them. But if it happen to touch the parts that be cold and bloodlesse, then doth it come to congeal, and so wax hard there: therefore that doth most of all happen in cold bodies, viz. in women, and in all such beasts which have kept all winter, and be unmeasurable fat: where to the contrary, all that be hot by nature, wax lean and weak. Amongst all parts of men and beasts there are none that be fatter then the kidneies, and that chiefly on the left kidneies more then on the right: yet especially in sheep, wherein also the kidneies be otherwhiles so abundantly covered with fat: that they cannot make water, but are constrained thereby to dye.

Of the troublesomnesse of Fatnesse. §. 1.

THere is no better disposition of the body, as well amongst new born children, as other ancient people, but that a man be meetly fat, not too lean, nor too fat: or if so be that any of both must be, it is alwayes better to be lean then fat: for that if a body be over-burthened with fatnesse, then happeth it amongst other inconveniences, that a body is alwayes slothful, unfit for labour, and for walking. I say nothing of other diseases and sicknesses which fat people be more subject to, then the lean. This excessive fatnes commeth of blood, whereby all the parts of a mans body be fed and sustained: the fat bodies have alwayes narrow veins, and arteries, and therefore also little blood and fewer vital spirits; so that when they begin to be old, the natural heat is wholly abated and very lightly might be extinguished, or at leastwise spilt and lost. Wherefore *Hippocrates* also saith by good right, that they that be fat by nature, do dye much sooner then they that be lean. But they that are between both by nature (saith he) and afterwards wax fat by their dainty and bountiful diet, they alwayes keep their great veins, although they increase in the flesh and fatnesse, therefore in them is lesse danger, although they be fat, and that their natural heat be corrupted in them. Also the Philosophers do conclude (which we also daily see before our eyes) that both humane and bruit beasts bodies which are very fat, do remain unfruitful. For they have but little and weak natural seed, because that (as is said) leannesse is to be commended far before fatnesse of the body. Therefore must all men which are inclined to be fat, use these things following: Take *Sandaraca* three quarters of an ounce, drink it in the morning with water, and with *Oxymel*.

Item, take the rinds of yellow Mirobalans, (roast them as though that they were half burnt) one quarter of an ounce; stamp them all to a subtile powder, & then give it to drink with Plantain water. Look also into the second part, the third Chapter, and 2. §. for the Pils which marvellously hinder fatnesse.

Item, take every morning a crust with vinegar, wherein a little Pepper is tempered, drink it very warm. But if one fear that it might hurt the sinews, then it is to be forborne.

The

The fifteenth Chapter.

For great Leanneſſe.

The reaſon why leanneſſe is better for a body then fatneſſe, we have diſcovered before: nevertheleſſe if the leanneſſe were exceeding much, then is it very dangerous for healthy folks: for it behoveth no great proof that the body waxeth lean, when it wanteth food, for when the meat doth not digeſt, and is not conveyed to the appropriate members, or when people be overcharged with intolerable labour, with great ſorrow, and ſuch like. Likewiſe do ſome alſo fall into great leanneſſe, for that their body is too cold and too dry; other will alſo be lean, for that the digeſtive and nutritive vertues, or any of both theſe be weakened.

Item, this extream leanneſſe is cauſed alſo of the conſumption *Phthiſis*, whereof we have ſufficiently writren before, and alſo in the fourth part, the ſeventh Chapter, and ſecond §. For this may firſt be uſed all that is forbidden in the exceſſive fatneſſe: neither is counſel to be deferred over long in this diſeaſe of leanneſſe; for when as the leanneſſe beginneth to root, then doth the ſame not onely provoke *Phthiſin* which is the conſumption; but alſo other more deadly accidents: ſo that not onely all the fleſh of mans body will be conſumed, but alſo all the vertue and ſtrength.

And what might be uſed for this falling away, is to be ſought for in the two forementioned places, there is eſpecially commended (amongſt other outward remedies) the rubbing with the flat of the hand of all outward members. All they that are wont lightly to parbreak, may not be purged in Winter, when this leanneſſe is not cauſed through ſome hot Agues, but that the meat received is not by nature conveyed toward his due place; ſo that (like as it is wont to chance oftentimes) the ordure is caſt out of the mouth, then is the patient to uſe good white wine for his drink, yet tempered with water wherein Fennel ſeed is decocted. For his meat be Hens, Capons, or rather the broth of them, that is wrung or ſtamped out of their fleſh. This patient is alſo to foment often his privities and there about, with a ſponge dipped in the decoction of theſe things following: Take Fenegreek ſeed, and of the white *Seſamum*, of each four ounces, Mallows and Smallage, of each three handfuls, *Bdellium* half a drachme, Comin three drachmes, Caraway, Dilſeed, *Anneos*, Fennel, of each half an ounce, field Cipres, Centory, of each half a handful cut that is to be cut, and ſtamp the reſt, let it ſeethe in ſufficient water. You are alſo to uſe a warming plaiſter for the ſtomach, whereof there be ſeen in the third part, the eleventh Chapter, and fifth §. and elſewhere deſcribed.

This plaiſter enſuing is alſo good for it: Take 12. ounces of the broth wherein ſheeps fuet hath boyled a good while, Sallad oyl and Butter, of each 2. ounces, Saffron 6. grains, Salt one drachme, ſlight Sugar one ounce and a half, temper it, and ſet this Cliſter one hour and a half before ſupper; at which time he is to uſe the powder which is deſcribed in the third part, the 16. Chapter. and 3. §. beginning thus, Take Annis, Fennel, &c.

The ſeventeenth Chapter.

Of Weariſomneſſe.

WE have taught in the deſcription of the Muſcles, that the wearineſſe of the body is cauſed through great labour, which weakeneth the ſinewes and the Muſcles, as daily experience doth teach us: and when a man is weary without this cauſe, as though one had beaten his members in peeces, then doth it ſignifie a great imminent diſeaſe. The learned do divide this weariſomneſſe into many kind of ſpecies, as they that come of ulcers, wounds, and ſuch like, which may be apparantly perceived

This doth come through great coldneſſe of the matter, which is very eaſily to be cured, by warm dwellings, by rubbings, by ſweet bathes, and ſuch like; which do warm the members,

members, open the pores, and make the matter in the ſinews and muſcles ſubtile. Nature is alſo to be kept warm with eating and drinking: wherefore every ſuch Patient is to keep himſelf with good white wine which is not too ſtrong, and to uſe other things more, which ſhall ſeem meet for all cold diſeaſes, whereof we (for a concluſion of this fift Part) ſhall write immediately hereafter. Now we purpoſe only to ſpeak of the wearisomneſſe which is cauſed of great labour: for the which there is no better nor ſafer remedy then reſt and ſleep. But this following may be uſed for it; Take Rue as much as you pleaſe, temper it well with Sallad oyl, and therewith anoint both the feet; it is very good.

Item, take a little Salt in a cloth, bind it faſt together, and dip it in the water, caſt it into the fire, let it roſt until it be black and run together; afterwards pownd it and temper it with Vinegar, wet therein a woollen clout, and rub therewith the ſoles of the feet.

The eighteenth Chapter.

Of Sleep.

IF it be well conſidered what ſleep is, then doth it not bear in vain the high title which is attributed unto it: and becauſe that the ſleep doth alſo oppreſſe the whole body, paſſeth through each part of the ſame, and bringeth it to reſt, therefore it is by good right placed in that degree. Concerning his title the learned do write as followeth. Sleep is a continuing and a moiſtening of natural heat, an elected reſt of all the members, which doth none otherwiſe cover and ſuppreſſe all motions of the mind, then as the aſhes do the fire, which by a little ſtirring or uncovering of it, will immediatly burn again. And if ſo be that this reſt which is imparted to the body, be ſleep, and is as it were a remedy of labour, then may it well be thought, that they that cannot reſt at all do ſleep unnaturally, for that it taketh away the wits and all actions of the mind: wherefore ſleep is called of *Ovidius*, and *Seneca Tragicus*, a compeller of all miſhap, and a reſt of the mind, the beſt part of life, an image of death to come, and Deaths brother. And further, this ſleep is a confuſer of the true and falſe viſions, a haven of life, a taker away of wearied ſight, and with the Poets, the pleaſanteſt amongſt all goods, yea the onely giver of tranquillity on earth. For ſleep driveth away ſorrow, it is the remedy for ſorrow and care, it freeth the heart, and bringeth all things to reſt. The foreſaid ſleep is a quickening of the weary and weak members, a ſtrengthener of the labourer. It maketh the King and his Subjects merry, ſorry, and bleſſed. And to conclude, it is then ſo needful for nature, that without ſleep this life cannot be upholden. You have before in the firſt Part, the 12. Chapter and 6. §. alſo in the 10. §. of the Lethargie; and in the ſix natural things in the firſt Part, Chapter 5. and 10. §. all which may ſerve for this intent. Yet theſe be the things which provoke ſleep, viz. Conſerves of Water Lillies, ſirup of Poppy heads, which may be uſed for this purpoſe: Lettice eaten in the evening for Sallads is alſo good: The Conſerve of Piony ſtayeth all fantaſies and fear by night, which will hinder men of their ſleep: Sirupe of Citrons, Wormwood Wine, oyl of Dill, oyl of Poppy heads, and alſo that which is beaten out of the heads, and the temples of the head anointed therewith, are very meet for it.

What hindereth ſleep. §. 1.

THere ſhall not here be written of *Lethargo*, which is a ſpecies of the Palſey, and deſcribed in the firſt Part, the 12. Chapter, and 10 §. but of that ſleep which cauſeth a body to his great hinderance to ſleep too much, in ſome kind of grievous agues, phlegmatick ſickneſſes, ſweating ſickneſſe, and ſuch like.

Now for to keep ſluggards and ſleepers waking, thereto are merry folks fit to company with one, pleaſant ſpeech, muſick, and play, if the Patient have any deſire of it: the rubbing of the arms and legs, with or without footwater, cold water, Hony of Roſes holden in the mouth: in like manner alſo the anointing on the temples of the head with cold water, and the ſame ſprinkled in the face.

The

The nineteenth Chapter.

Of Pain.

WE will not here diſpute of the outward pain of the body, or the inward pain of the conſcience, whereof the Philoſophers and Divines do write. Our book doth only ſpeak of Phyſicks ſickneſſes, wherein the pain is ſuch an accident of humane debility, that there cometh not one ſo ſmall a ſickneſſe wherewith there is not otherwhiles ſome pain, like as may be ſeen by all the foreſaid infirmities: and as is here in particular diſcourſed of all ſickneſſes, and to each is attributed his proper remedy for to aſſwage at leaſt the pain of the ſame, if it cannot be cured: wherefore we will ſend the Reader, and every one that hath occaſion to take advice therein, to the titles of all diſeaſes that do moleſt the body with pain.

The twentieth Chapter.

Of Phlegma.

AS we have oftentimes admoniſhed before, that the body of man and the moſt part of all other living creatures are made and ſuſtained of many kinds of humors, that ſo long alſo as the ſame be equally tempered, do bring health with them; contrariwiſe, if that one do reign above another, it doth cauſe a ſickneſſe.

Of *Choler* when it getteth the maſtery, then do hot ſickneſſes grow out of it, as may further be read in the deſcription of the Gall. In like manner alſo it is taught in the Chapter of the hot ſtomach, and in other places more.

Of the burnt black blood of *Melancholia* hath been ſpoken in the firſt Part the twelfth Chapter, and eight §. and in the ſecond Part, the fourth Chapter, and 9. §. Item, in the fifth Chapter and 15. §. alſo in the third Part, the 11. Chapter and 28. §. and in other places more.

Concerning the clean blood, thereof hath been written not long ago in the 10. Chapter and 3. §. ſo that we by good right may alſo write of the *Phlegma*, becauſe that the ſame doth no leſſe penetrate the body then the other.

This bodily humour which is called of the Grecians *Phlegma*, and of the Latiniſts *Pituita*, is a wateriſh moiſture which runneth through the veins of all the body with the blood, whereby the brains, the neck, the members, the ſinewes, and other parts (which draw that humour unto them) be nouriſhed, moiſtned and cooled: wherefore it were not good that the ſame were wholly expelled by purging.

Alſo *Phlegma* doth appear by the ſlime, matter, ſnot, ſpettle, and ſuch like that man avoideth.

In fine, all that is cold of nature and moyſt (ſaith *Galenus*) we do call *Phlegma*, it preſerveth alſo his nature in ſuch proportion, that it is no moiſter nor colder in the body: and although the ſame be alſo throughly concocted, yet nevertheleſſe doth it remain alwaies cold, and that not onely in the body, but alſo when it is driven out of the body with purging medicines, ſo that it can be warmed by no meanes.

This cold moiſtneſſe (next to the blood) is the higheſt eſteemed, as it is (becauſe of the forementioned reaſons) moſt needful to all living creatures.

But this is onely ſpoken of that kind which the Phyſitians do call the ſweet *Phlegma*, for that it is of ſundry natures, viz. thick, thin, and like to molten glaſſe or gips: that which is tart and ſowr, is undigeſted and crude. The ſalt wateriſh moyſture or *Phlegma* when it is putrified, then doth it cauſe ſundry ſickneſſes, as unhealthineſſe of the whole body, cold ſwelling, ſluggiſhneſſe, much ſleep, and head-ach; and eſpecially where it doth abound greatly, then doth it cauſe ſowr belchings of the ſtomach, the Gout, and diſeaſes of the ſinews: all which ſheweth that this wateriſh moyſture muſt be purged;

what

what Physick ought chiefly to be used to expel *Phlegme*, is sufficiently declared over the whole book. But for the better satisfaction we will here describe the best of them.

First, there is nothing more fit, then that all men that spend their life in dainties and idleness (whereby they do gather much waterish humours) might observe such an order of dyet which might be clean contrary to their former life, as you shall find described in the discourse of the sicknesses which be caused through *Phlegme*.

The selve the simple things which consume *Phlegme*, viz. Pennyroyal, Marjoram, Hep, Sage, Marjoram gentle, Hyssop, wild Thyme, Rue, Fennel roots, Smallage, Parsly roots, Sperage roots, Pepper, Ginger, Cloves, Maiden-hair, Hony, Squils, Vinegar, and most of all whatsoever is warm, and dry by nature. Also such also purge *Phlegme*, Gallie doth by a secret vertue expel it gently; *Agaricus* hath power to drive out all thinnesse, to attenuate the thick, and to open obstructions, and not Gumme *Elpherdium* is used onely at the greatest need: the juyce of wild Cucumbers *Elaterium* expelleth waterish humours most forcibly; but it cannot well be used without danger above the quantity of four grains. In like manner also the leaves of *Mezereon* four grains, or six at the most.

The seeds of *Palma Christi* do some use to the number of thirty when they be peeled, but it is very much: they do purge the *Phlegma* very well, but with great pain and torment of the Patient, for that they do purge upwards and downwards, and are very hurtful to the stomach.

Now when the *Phlegma* lieth deep in the body and in the joynts, then will it by Colocynthe be drawn forth best of all.

The *Myrobalani Chebuli*, *Emblici*, and *Bellirici* do purge very mildly, and that chiefly from the head and the brains.

The seed of wild Saffron doth expel all moysture, and especially the dropsie, one quarter of an ounce, or 3. drachmes given at one time. Turbith is also especial good for it, but it is seldom used alone, but tempered with other things that hereafter ensue, viz. with the leaves, Polipody roots, *Salgemme*, *Struthus*, *Iris*, *Ebur*, *Nux medica*, *Sebi*, Nettle roots, Ginger, Goleworts broth, sugar, Hyssop, Agrimony, Pepper, Hartwort, Centory, Hellebore, *Piretrum*, burnt Squils, *Sarcocolla*, *Opopanacum*, and *Sagapenum*.

Amongst mixed and compounded things which do expel *Phlegma*, be first these simples following, as both the syrupes of Vinegar, both the Oxymels, and *Oxymel* of Squils, *Oxysaccharum*, *Hydromel*, *Syrupus de Calamintha*, *de Pulegio*, and syrup of Wormwood: all these do expel *Phlegma* through the mine.

Item, you have more in the second Part, the fifth Chapter, a very good potion for the hoarse and dry cough, called *Decubio pectoralis*, which doth consume the cold slime. The Confection *Benedicta*, *Hiera Picra*, *Pillulæ fœtidæ*, *de Euphorbio*, *Cochiæ*, *seu quibus de Hermodactylis majores* of *Mesues*: all these do expel and purge. Item, *Diacurcuma*, *Rhabarb.*, and *Medicamenta Turbith*, and other more.

For a purging potion is this ensuing to be prepared: Take burst tongue, Agrimony, and Maidenhair, of each one handful, Anise, Fennel seed, *Epithymum*, *Agaricus*, Centory, Parsly seed, wild Saffron seed, Turbith, seed of Smallage, and Senne leaves, of each one quarter of an ounce, seeth them together in sufficient water: or take *Mirobalani Chebuli* and *Emblici*, of each half an ounce, and lay it all together in a warm place to steep: afterwards wring it out, and make three potions thereof: then temper of the foresaid syrup or Oxymel therewith one ounce, or one ounce and a half, and take thereof every morning.

There is also prepared for it this laxative confection: Take Cinamom, Cloves, and Nutmegs, of each half a drachme, Mace, Cardamom, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each one scruple, Ginger one drachme, Turbith three quarters of an ounce, *Diagridion* 3. grains, Sugar six ounces, dissolved in the juice of Quinces, boyl it to the thicknesse of Hony, and then temper the rest amongst it: when it is now almost cold, then take three drachmes thereof, or half an ounce at ounce; but in hot weather it is not to be used, it purgeth *Phlegma* and *Cholera* marvellously.

These things following be also very good, to wit, conserve of Rosemary, of Sage, conserved Ginger, *Calamus*, and Nutmegs, &c.

Item, Treacle and Mithridate one drachme thereof taken otherwhiles. *Tysane* or Barly pap is also very good.

For drink, is Wine meetly good to be drunken, for that it consumeth slime, and amendeth

deth all diseases which spring of *Choler*: the same doth also Betonie Wine, Elecampane Wine, the wine of Avence, of Hyssop, of Rosemary, of Sage, and of Wormwood, the Claret Wine, and other spiced Wines, whereof shall be spoken more at large in the last Part. likewise also all vital and golden waters, the sowr juice of Pomgranates used in meat, or tempered in drink, is very good. In the first Part, the second Chapter, and second §. be two pectoral potions discovered, which be very meet for it. Now for to use outwardly, you have in the first Part, the second Chapter, and 15. § a salve of Rosted Goose, which is marvellous piercing, and consumeth the tough slime. The salve of Roses doth also delay all flegmatick defluxions.

Item, oyl of Camomil and oyl of Rue anointed on the outside, or used with Clisters.

Thus much be now spoken of the cold *Phlegma*; concerning the hot *Phlegma*, that cometh the pestilencial Agues, and other sicknesses which are caused through heat.

The 21. Chapter.

Of the cold Diseases.

EVen as we have discovered throughly in the discourse of the cold *Phlegma*, what here and there throughout this whole book hath been declared to be fit for this purpose, the same shall also be done in the discourse of divers cold sicknesses, of whatsoever occasion that they may be caused, as of age, of defluxions of the stomach, of the Matrix, of the breast, or howsoever the same might be: first of all therefore we will here teach what might be used for them.

First, there is good for it the conserve of Eyebright, which dryeth the brains. Item, the conserve of Hyssop and of Betony, of Gilloflowers, of Lavender, of Spikenard, of Rosemary, of Marjoram gentle, and of Sage. In like manner also confected Ginger, *Calamus*, Elecampane roots, and confected roots of the greater Pimpernel.

The confections be also good which be made of the Horse Radish, the Marmalade with spices, both kinds of Treacle, the Mithridate, and confected Annis seeds be also good. Rosemary Wine is for this a very forcible and healthy drink. Item, Elecampane Wine, Hyssop and Lavander Wine: and for moistnesse of the head is very meet the Wine of *Asarabacca* roots: moreover, all other spiced Wines, as Hippocras and Claret Wine be much commended for it; and if there were any body which could drink no Wine, he may drink common Meade.

Oyl of *Spica* is much commended, anointed outwardly upon it, against all cold diseases of the brains, of the stomack, of the liver, of the spleen, and of all the intrails. In like manner also these oyles following, viz. of blew Flowerdeluce, of Bevercod, of Bay, of Walflowers, of Wormwood, and above all others the oyl of Tiles or Bricks.

In fine, all that is before described for the cold *Phlegma*, and in other places for all cold sicknesses, may serve for this intent, and so we will conclude this fifth Part.

The ſixth Part of this Book maketh mention of all ſuch ſickneſſes as are incident to the whole body.

WE have treated of many kinds of ſickneſſes in theſe former five Parts of this Book of Phyſick, all which pinch and pain one certain part of mans body, and alſo ſometimes indeed the whole body, for that nature hath ſo knit and combined all the members of the body one unto another in unmeaſurable ſhape and uniformity, that as there is any member anguiſhed with pain or any diſeaſe, even then all the other members impart therewith: ſo that whenſoever the head, the heart, the ſtomach, the Liver, or any other ſuffereth, all the other members (one leſſe, another more) muſt be partakers of this foreſaid anguiſh, and in ſuch meaſure are all of them grieved according to the quantity of the infirmity. And for as much as the Ague is ſo ſpread throughout the whole body, that (as it is commonly ſaid) there is not ſo ſmall a corner free; yea further (as all famous Phyſitians witneſſe and alledge for an infallible ſaying and *Axioma*) that there is no diſeaſe ſo ſmall which bringing with it an alteration of nature, that is without the Ague or Fever: therefore will we comprehend them all in this ſixth Part, that thereby we may alſo detect the noiſome Plague or Peſtilence which is alſo a ſpice of an Ague, and alſo ſome other, whereof hitherto in our former parts we have not ſufficiently declared.

The firſt Chapter.

Of all manner of Agues in general.

THeſe very common and manifeſt diſeaſes are called of the Greeks *Pyretos*, that is, fiery, and with the Latiniſts *Febris*, that is, a ſeething or boyling, and in our vulgar tongue we name this ſickneſſe the Ague, that is, a ſuperfluous, hurtful, and unhaile heat, that ſometimes often, and ſometimes more vehement then before cometh again, and returneth. Or an Ague is an unnatural mixture of naturall ſpirits in a hoter and dryer nature then is neceſſary. And in another place, The heat which diſeaſeth the whole body, we call the Ague. Again, the Ague is an alteration of naturall warmth into a fiery warmth, and therefore is a hot and dry diſeaſe. The old Maſters or Phyſitians named all ſuch ſickneſſes Agues, when any ſtood and complained of grief without any outward ſwelling, without the Roſe, without anguiſh, and (to be brief) without any ſore outward.

So if there were any that were pained with the ſtitch in the ſide, with an inflammation of the lungs, and ſuch like, then had they their ſpecial names, whereby they account the Ague not to be a particular malady, but incident and caſual or *caſum*: ſo that they held opinion none to be right Agues but ſuch where the bad humours in the veins were inflamed, and yet the outward members felt not any painfulneſſe.

And theſe Agues are of ſo many kinds, that *Hippocrates* in deſcribing them in a manner, forgetteth his old and brief cuſtome of writing, where he ſaith thus: Some are long,

long, byting, and yet mild: other without biting at all, but coming again; ſome ſtrong and mighty; other that quickly inflame the body: ſome continuing at all times, are ſmall and dry; other that bring no manner of belching or vomit with them. Some are full of filthineſſe and very il-favoured; other that taketh one with moiſture and ſweat. In like ſort they have many kinds of colours, ruddie, Saffron yellow, and ſome have very bleak colours.

It is not then a great wonder that the cold with the heat do ceaſe at certain hours; as at one time it continueth, and at another time cometh again the third or fourth day, or twice on the third day; ſo that otherwhiles it hangeth on a body a whole year, yea ſometimes ones whole life long. Any one may decipher the ſpecies of Agues as he will, yet nevertheleſſe in truth there be but three ſorts of mingled Agues, and even ſo they come alſo through three manner of cauſes: that is, out of *Cholera*, out of a black and melancholick humour, and out of *Phlegma*. For every one of theſe hath at the firſt two kinds of properties, as an intermiſſion, at one time ceaſing and remaining ſtill, or continuance at all times induring alike, which are divided into many ſorts, and alſo mingling themſelves wit others, according as the matter or humour is much or little, or more or leſſe putrified, and alſo even as the places or parts be enclined whence the Agues grow and ſpring.

All ſuch unnatural mixtures and *Intemperies*, whereof we in the firſt Part, in the firſt Chapter and 1. §. and then afterwards in the ſecond Part, in the beginning of the ſixth Chapter, and of the Heart, have briefly written, with thoſe as are needful to be rehearſed again, are eight in particular, whereof the hot and dry mixtures are the moſt perillous and noyſome, which being firſt kindled in the Heart, and then ſpread throughout or over all the whole body, are now called the Agues.

They are alſo of this nature (eſpecially the Ague of one day) that if one give not the Patient ſomewhat to eat, then preſently they are of more force and power: for hunger (in this Ague) otherwhiles dryeth the Patient ſo vehemently, that therby (as in other dangerous Agues) he will be ſo grieved in his head, that he ſeemeth to be out of his wit. The ſecond *Intemperies* is almoſt like to the firſt, ſpecially concerning the Ague, but that it is hot and moiſt. The third, whereas the moyſture or the drouth (be it in what kind of Ague that it will) prevaileth the one over the other, but not ſuperabundantly, or above mean and meaſure, this is the beſt. But when this uniformity is overthrown and broken, then is it beſt for all unnatural mixtures that they be hindred, whereby (as hath been ſhewed) they come not to laſt long. Of like nature is that, that with cold and heat keepeth a juſt mean or temperature: But where the drouth ſurpaſſeth the moyſture, thereout cometh *Intemperies*. The fourth is a juſt mean, to wit, containing the equal meaſure in all that hath been ſaid, yet alwaies inclining a little to the contrariety.

The other four mixtures are alwaies either cold and moyſt, cold, moyſt, or dry and cold. For theſe mixtures of the humours are the very ſame whence all Agues ſpring in ſuch a wonderful manner, that it is not poſſible for the Phyſitians to diſcern them, but only Quotidians from the tertians and quartain Agues, whereon depend all other mingled Agues, for that they out of this *Intemperies* do flow as it were out of a fountain, and are to be eaſily perceived and known. So that Phyſitians when as ſuch Agues raign, muſt have ſpecial care of theſe three things; to wit, of the ſtrength of the Patient, the occaſion of the Ague, and to know the ſpecies of the Ague.

But for the better underſtanding of all thoſe things, we will briefly declare certain ſpecies of Agues, which *Galen* hath collected out of many and divers other Writers, and we will firſt begin with the very laſt.

The

The second Chapter.

Of the one daies Ague, called Ephemera.

Ephemera, of the Greek word is that Ague called, which usually endureth but 24. hours. These species of Agues come onely in the veins, where they enflame the vital spirits, whereof we shall more at large speak hereafter. *Putrida Febres* are Agues where the humours do putrifie in the veins; amongst which are some that do cease a certain time, whereof the chiefest are the aforesaid three sorts, that is to say, the quotidian, the tertian, and the quartain Agues. The quotidian Ague is bred and ingendred of *Phlegma*, the tertian of *Cholera*, and the quartain of *Melancholia*. *Continua Febris* is an Ague that alwaies without ceasing remaineth continually without intermission. *Causos* of the Greeks, and of the Latinists *Ardens Febris*, is called a burning Ague. This Ague continueth alwaies after one manner, until that through the health or death of the Patient it be ended. It is such an Ague as burneth still after one manner, and is the very hotest of all Agues: it maketh the tongue black and dry, it bringeth great thirst, and desire of cold things. If you will now read more of this unnatural heat, then look in the first Part, the 11. Chapter, and 1. §. where it is in particular described.

Emphysodes, that hurteth the mouth through her heat, and maketh it full of blisters, whereof it hath this name given. *Lypiria*, this cooleth the Patients hands and feet, but inwardly the whole body is inflamed, his water and going to the stool stopped and stayed, whereby also cometh thirst and hardening of the tongue; the pulse will be feebled and small, and the natural heat decayeth, and that no otherwise, then as it were altogether extinguished.

Rhodes, that is as much as a Flix or Lax, which happeneth unto one with great vomiting, cold, shaking, thirst, disquietnesse, and feeblenesse of the pulse.

Astringens, that is, astringent or binding, is contrary to the other before mentioned, for that thereby the body will be stopped, the vomiting stayed with a strong pulse, it endureth also long, it wasteth the body and maketh it lean.

Xanthes, that is, mixt with the yellow Jaundies, for it bringeth them with it. This inflameth the Liver, and dryeth the tongue in such manner, that it is terrible to behold: what might be further written hereof, that may you learn in reading over the description of the Yellowes.

The Pestilent Agues do come with great heat and intolerable thirst, the going to stool is with much noise and great stench: also the urine stinketh much: the pulses are so feeble, that one can scant feel them, as shortly shall be written more at large.

Languida Febres, are slothful Agues, that distemper the head, stuffe the nostrils, stop the urine, and going to stool.

Paricodes, that is, when as with the shaking there is a great heat attained, the pulse feeble and scarse to be felt: moreover, the belly doth swell, with much rumbling noise, the tongue will be very moist, whereby nevertheless the Patient will complain much of bitternesse and drouth of his mouth.

Quotidiana, is the quotidian Ague, that at a prefixed time either in the day or in the night returneth again.

Tertiana, is the tertian Ague, wherewith the Patient is one day free, and is on the third day vexed therewith.

Quartana, is the quartain Ague, which ceaseth 2. daies, and returneth the fourth day.

Hepialos, is a phlegmatick Ague, whereof the Patient sometimes of cold, and otherwhiles of heat complaineth. Some name this also of the similitude that it hath with the molten glasse *Vitrium*. Other name it the raw and unconcocted Ague.

Hemitritæa, is the half tertian Ague, that is a very strong Ague that never ceaseth altogether, but happeneth one day gentle, and the other day harder.

Errabunda, are erring and wandring Agues, that keep no certain time nor measure, and these thereby do cause the melancholick humours to rot and foister in some place of the body, which otherwise in another place are not touched or moved at all, whereby all such Agues of necessity are ingendred.

Hectica, (whereof also cometh *Marasmodes*) is such an Ague as infecteth the parts of the body, like as the *Ephemera* doth the vital spirits, and as the *Putrida* or rotten Agues do the humours. Of this Ague proceedeth the Consumption, which not onely wasteth the flesh, but also the marrow in the bones, as we shall hereafter both of this and other Agues declare more at large.

These are now the most principal sorts of Agues, and at this present shall these brief notes suffice. We will now proceed with those things that furthermore do appertain unto Agues. Wherefore chiefly it is to be observed, that every one of them by the Physitians is divided into four parts. The first they term *Accessum*, which is the beginning of the Ague: thereupon followeth *Incrementum*, the increase. The third is *Status*, that is, when the Ague is in the highest degree, and standeth still. The last part is *Declinatio*, that is, the decrease, or declination; of which parts of the Ague we have elsewhere more at large given intelligence.

There hath been also a great debate amongst the learned, whether men might know every kind of Ague in one day of four and twenty hours: some thought that no man could rightly judge of the Ague before the third day. So that *Galen* in divers places derideth them, and confuteth their opinion with many profound reasons. The simple or compounded Agues (saith he) are to be known, but the compounded very hardly: yet it is not unpossible to discern them in one day.

Many Agues, and most of all other maladies whatsoever may well be known, the second, third, (or at the longest) the fourth day: for there is no disease that in 3. or 4. daies might not apparantly be judged: so also are all agues according to the humour into which the blood is altered, qualified, and do also give a certain sign of their nature. If *Phlegma* be cause of the Ague, then of necessity will it indure very long, and longer if it proceed and come of the melancholick humours; but if it ensue from *Cholera*, then can it not tarry long, seeing it doth vehemently waste the same.

To conclude, all easie agues are ended in four daies: as also all violent agues can kill a body in four daies, which may be seen in the pestilent feavers.

Thus far have we generally spoken of agues, now will we shew the means and remedies for the same, and will first begin with the commonest, and with the best known: amongst which the most part of the foresaid agues are comprehended.

The least of them all is the first recited ague, *Ephemera* or *Diaria* in Latine, for that the same seldom holdeth the Patient (not disorderly eating and drinking) longer then a day, that is, 24. hours, because it is not fixed so fast in the heart, but onely in the *Spiritus vitalibus*, which we call the Vital spirits. This Ague hath no corrupt or rotten humors that can be incended, or can provoke any swelling of the outward parts.

To conclude, this ague is likened unto a hot ayr that quickly loseth her efficacie and power.

This Ague is thus described; *Ephemera* is an ague wherein the vital spirits are incended, and so spread over the whole body without any long permanence. And that is a certain token of such kind of Agues, that they must alwaies have some cause going before, whereby it is procured; as namely, wearinesse, much watching, wrath, great sorrow, and such like vexation of the mind.

Item, the heat of the Sun, cold, great labour, drunkennesse, venemous ayr, and heat about the privities, be it through swelling, or any other occasion, conversation with sick men, or those that be diseased in the lights, use of indigestible meats, and such like.

The tokens whereby they are known are needlesse to rehearse, by reason that they may be perceived and known of the Patient, thereby the better to remedy the same.

For amongst all others, this disease is never more apparant then in the urine, and by the pulse: for that in this ague the urine is commonly higher coloured then accustomed, and the pulse much swifter; as anger also is deformed by his own pulse.

Item, great sorrow, and a disquiet mind have also their own signs. Also by what observations, and how the *Cholera*, the melancholy, the *Phlegma*, and the blood is known: we have taught in their due place.

Those that are troubled with the agues that breed through any swelling or ulcers, they feel a continual swift, and hard beating pulse: they are very hot burning with a ruddy countenance and white urine.

And to conclude, they are all commonly Ephemerish agues that have the pulse equal. And albeit the same sometimes be unequal, yet is it scarcely to be perceived very ill to be.

These

These are now the most usual and convenient signs of this Ague, which we have said are very easie to be holpen if men look unto it betimes: for being delayed too long, then fall the diseases into agues that are worse, and be of longer continuance: as namely, in *Putridas*, and *Hecticas*, so that many by negligent delaies fall into their perpetual destruction.

Therefore use these remedies following for it: first, a bath whereby the pores are opened, that thereby all noysome vapours might exhalate. For when as they are shut up, or through exterior cold closed together, then must all such infectious humours remain in the body, whence divers perillous agues are caused.

For all those that are infected with the ague through any swelling of the privities, is the ayr hurtful either before or after the bath: but above all things it is in other agues to be shunned. But if any one will tarry long in the bath, then must he be gently anointed by the hand with Sallad oyl, especially such as got their agues through labour and travel.

The diet of the diseased must be such as may ingender good blood, of a light digesture. Those that through the heat of the Sun, or by wrath or anger are fallen into this ague, they must use cooling and moystening things; if through cold, warm things; through watching, sorrowes, and cares, moystening things, and such as will provoke sleep. All those that are thus afflicted, may well use Wine that is small or watered; for such is alwaies more fit then water alone, because it expelleth water and sweat.

But in all these points is to be observed the age of the Patient, his strength, his custom of living, the season of the year, and the nature of the country, and such like.

All those are forbidden Wine that in this Ague proceeding of the heat of the Sun, have a swelling of the privities, or of any other part, till such time as all such inflammations be ended: The like also for all such that have their pores obstructed, and be therewith strout and corpulent of person. All such as through overwatching, or through great sorrow are fallen into a small Ague, must after their bathing be fed with moyst meats, that are light of digestion, and make good blood. To those that by reason of long watching are feeble, may the wine be allowed without further regard or care, unlesse they had much headach, or feel great motion of the pulses in the temples of the head, these common rules must also be observed in other feavers.

All those that get the Ague through wrath, sorrow, or deep speculation, they may drink Wine well enough: in like manner also the idle headed, but onely when their fit or madnesse is past, before which it is very dangerous to use the same.

This also is a common rule, first alwaies to seek remedy for all those accidents that are most troublesome, or to take away the cause of the sickneſse by his contrary, as labour by rest; wrath, sorrow, and madnesse, with merry and pleasant conceits; watching with sleep; those that get it through much speculation must wholly leave it off: even so must it be with the swelling and inflammation of the privities, that the same may heal, and the pain be assuaged.

Here hast thou briefly set down, what order of dyet and other things are to be observed in any accident whatsoever. Now will we learn you after the briefest manner we can, what things are to be used in any of the foresaid causes.

When as then any body through the heat of the Sun, or through a bath, falleth into an Ague, then must you anoint his head with the oyl of water Lillies, Roses and Violets mingled together, or each alone: you may also make a decoction of cold herbs, or oyl of Willowes, or of any of the foresaid oyles mingled with it; and then let it drop from on high on his breast. If the Patient have great thirst or drought, then give him to drink Well water, or Almond milk.

When the Ague is past, then let him bathe as hath been above said. But if the Ague proceed of outward cold, then is sweating good for it: or can he not sweat? then may he use warm bathes, wherein hath been decocted wild and garden Mints, Smallage, Fennel, and Parsley, with the roots.

Also anoint the head with the oyl of Dill, of Camomil, and with oyl of Behen: but he must forbear the drinking of water. Likewise lay the Patient in a meetly warm chamber, anointing his body softly, and when the ague is past and gone, then may the Patient use to eat all manner of land fowles, and such like food. Is he then corpulent and full of blood? then open a vein, and let him use in this bath stone Rue, Camomil, Fennel, and Stoneclevers, &c.

Or come these Agues through the use of any hot meats? then use cold things; as Lettice, Purslain, and the juyce of Pomgranates.

Purge with Cassie, Manna, sowr Dates, or with Conserve of Prunes. Take also of the Confection of *Diatrionsantalon*, Endive water, *Oxysaccharum*, Julep of Roses, Barley water with a little Camphire, Lettice, Purslain and such like cold herbs, or the juyce of them. If this ague come of drunkennesse, of strong wine, or such like drink, then must the Patient purge himself to vomit, or to purge with the foresaid cold things. If there be ad joyned a great pain of the head, then must you anoint it with the oyl of Roses, or with some juice of cold herbs.

Or if this issueth through great sorrow, fear, slight, over-much watching, madnesse, wrath, or such like, then remedy these things as is said, by their contraries; to wit, mirth, musick, comfort, sleep, and with such like: he must also shake off and forget all causes of sorrow and fear.

Likewise this Parient shall smell unto Roses, Violets, and Saunders, and wet clothes in the mucilage of Fleawort, and the juice of cool herbs, mingled with a little Camphire, and lay them upon his head. When the Ague proceedeth of wrath, especially in young folk, then is the Wine to be refrained.

These Agues also proceed as well of exceeding joy, as they do of great wrath, albeit the same chanceth seldom; yet it is by the foresaid means in like sort healed.

These Agues may also come very easily through excessive labour, by reason that the same heateth the vital spirits.

For the same must be prescribed light meats, rest, bathes, measurable sleeping.

Or if these Agues be caused of overmuch sleep and rest, as often it falleth out, then shall he constrain himself to watch, and let his body be rubbed over with hot clothes.

These Agues are very subject to all fluxes of the belly, and dysenteries of what cause soever the same doth proceed.

For this are all astringent and binding things to be used, and to do all that is fit to be done in such like sicknesses.

Also Cotten dipped in the oyl of Mastick, or oyl of Quinces, and laid over the stomach, but upon the liver and heart cool things.

If the Patient should thirst or hunger, then shall he use, and especially at the beginning, Barly paps, Otcen paps, water bathes, and rest: and for his drink he shall take water mingled with the juice of Pomgranates. But if he be cloyed with too much meat, then causeth it lightly an Ague to follow; for which Clisters, purgations and sobriety are to be used: but if there be any sowr belchings upward admised, then use *Diagalanga*, or *Diatrionpiperon*, and anoint the stomach with the oyl of Mastick, the oyl of Wormwood, or with oyl of Spike, laying sheeps Wooll thereon. Afterwards when the ague hath left him, let him use sleep and sobriety.

The agues which proceed of any Impostumes, Ulcers, Pleurisies, puffing up of the Lights, swelling of the privities, which is caused of pain, *Cholera*, heat, and thirst (more then the foresaid agues are) these shall you remedy thus: first, search out of what humours they grow; if of blood, then must the Patient open a vein, thereby to ease the impostume or any other hot swellings: or do they come of *Cholera*? then must the Patient be purged: and moreover the ulcers or impostumes must be cleansed, ripened, and healed.

It happeneth also, that as young children have the Worms, they also fall into such an ague: for this all such things are to be used as are ordained and thought most meet for the destroying of Worms, and especially a salve, beginning thus; Take oyl of bitter Almonds, &c. Thus have we sufficiently spoken of *Diaria* Agues, and mentioned how they are to be dealt with.

The

The third Chapter.

Of the continual Ague, Continua, in generall.

Galen termeth these continual Agues *Continuas Febres*, which from the first time that they enter upon a man, endure continually without intermission, if they be not through health or through death dissolved, albeit otherwhiles they were a little fainter or slower: yet nevertheless sometimes many dayes, yea weeks, endure still. Of these are chiefly twaine, the one that increaseth the third day, which is more perillous then the other, to wit, then those that change their nature the second day: and by reason of this alteration, the Physitians do give these agues divers names, whereof the principallest is *Typhodes*, that is burning, which greatly agreeth with the half tertian Ague. Then is there *Synochus*, which proceedeth of a superfluity and inflammation of the blood mixt with *Cholera*, taketh hold most of all upon the bodies of young temperate and hot persons, whereof we shall hereafter speak more at large. The signs of these Agues be, that 24 hours long their fit continueth, inconstantly beginning and increasing. The pulses of them are swift and hard, the urine is redder then it was before; these things following are all to be observed, and well to be remembred that in dry and hot weather they are few, yet strong and bad Agues do raign, but without any sweat at all: In wet weather are these Agues most rife, and that with sweat.

For so much as these continual Agues are first of all described amongst hot Agues, therefore here we will admonish the Reader, that we make this our discourse so much the longer, to the end we might declare the matter more openly; and that such hot agues whereafter follow, may thereby the better be known, and easier cured, and that especially in this §. wherein shall be taught the meanes which are to be kept in meat and drink, in vomiting, and sleep, also what might revive those that are so diseased whereby they should be eased in great heat, and after what order they should govern themselves, their Ague being gone.

The Ague that is continual, Continua. §. 1.

The occasion of all such mighty Agues is the putrifying of the humours within the great veins: and the cause of the putrifaction aforesaid is a stay and detaining of superfluous tough humours that are caried in the body, the heat whereof approching to the heart inflameth the same. This commonly happeneth in all such bodies that are filled with tough humours or that the veins through heat of the same are over dryed. This Ague also may ingender of venemous ayre, as in the time of pestilence is to be seen. Item, through great cold (whereby the pores be shut up) through sore labour in the hot Sun, through much watching, through great anguish, grievous thoughes, and through a great flux of the belly.

The common signs of this mightie ague, are the pain of the head and great heat (easily to be felt) watching, great thirst, swift and unequal pulse, red, thick, and yellowish urine, the Patient rageth in his sleep, his senses are troubled, and complaineth of terrible dreames. If he be young, and the season of the year be hot, and that he dwell in a high and hilly Country, then are all these receited signs the likelier to be certain and true.

The order of dyet in time of hot Agues. §. 2.

If so be that these Patients desire to be rid of these agues, then is it very needful that they have a good government or order in eating and drinking, and they must have special care to be fed with such meates, through which they may be cooled, the blood purified and moystened, whereby the heat and drought may be withstood. In like manner shall the Patient be kept in the beginning of his sickness (whilst he is in strength) for meat in eating and drinking, and encrease the same according to opportunity. Like sort with the letting of blood if the Patient be red in the face, his veins full and young, then is he to be let blood (in a very hot ague) until he fall into a swoune.

But if the patient be so weak, that such forcible letting of blood may hurt him: then

let it be done at divers hours, every time a little, two or three dayes together, for some are to be dealt withal more gently than other, and require that the *Salvatella* upon the right hand (to wit, by the little finger) may be opened, and that there shall above five ounces of blood be let out.

We have before given order what kind of meat this Patient is to use, that the same must be cooling and cleansing the blood, as Cicorie, and Endive with the roots, water Cresses sodden in his meat: and in like sort also a Sallad made of the same herbs and rootes, with oyl and Vinegar; and there is chiefly to be put into the same Sallad, Liverwort (that useth to grow besides the water Cresses) which is passing good. Also the juyce of Oranges, Pomgranates, or Limons are to be used with his meat; and amongst other herbs, Spinage, Beets, and Turneps, with their leaves are excellent good. Item, Lettice, Endive, and Parsley, and mingle amongst them sometime a little Marjoram, Pennyroyal, and wilde Thyme, and Hyssope (but once) for that it is warm of nature. Of fruites let them use Damask prunes, Oranges, and Pomgranates. And of flesh let him be served with that of Calves, Hens and Capons, the which are to be bruised and eaten with the broth, also make sops with Vinegar, mingling the yolks of Eggs and Sugar amongst it. Item, Partridges, Fesants, field fowls, and such like are not hurtful: it is also to be noted, that with the flesh is to be sodden Parsley rootes, Cicorie rootes, and Verjuyce, with a little Marjoram and Hyssope. Moreover, the seeds of Lettice, Melons, and Cucumbers, are passing good; yet not all together, but sometime of the one, and sometime of the other. Peeled Barly sodden with Hen broth is much set by; and also Hen broth alone, wherein a little bread is soked.

Item, shives of bread soked in water and the water poured out, and afterwards the juyce of Pomgranates poured thereon, and bestrewed with Sugar, it is very good meat for all such maladies. Some are of opinion that the flesh of a Magpy, is a certaine good medicine for the Ague; and some suppose that young Magpyes with the feathers distilled, and the water of them given to the Patient to drink, and it were not amisse, that in the distilling of them, there were put the rootes of Parsley and of Elecampane.

For these hot agues may fountain water be drunken, or any other clear river water, that hath been sodden once before, or poured a good while and often out of one pot into another. Or you may mingle with this water julep of Violets, or julep of Roses, and so drink it unsodden: Barly water is a very fit drink for all such maladies, and may be mingled with the foresaid julep.

Wine (though very little) is otherwhiles permitted; and also Sugar water, and sodden Henbroth (the fat blown off) is very good.

Common rules for Agues. §. 3.

ACcording to the prescribed ordinance or government of the life, we are to shew in like manner the remedies and cures. But first we will declare certaine rules, which in all hot Agues must be observed; that thereby for all such maladies a better order may be had and kept. The first rule is, how to discern easily that the Patient cannot come to his health, until the putrified matter of the Ague be purged away. Secondly, the eyes are to be fixed upon the matter that ingendreth the Ague, that the same be prepared for purging, the Ague which is present be corrected, and that which is to come be hindered. Thirdly, when this putrifyed matter is to be taken away, then must care be had how to open the obstructions, which are the foundations of the ague, for otherwise there can no good be done. Fourthly, if the ague be forcible and hot, and the Patients strength very small to resist the same, that it is impossible for the Patient to tolerate the violence of the ague, then must the Patient not be suffered to use many cold things before, that thereby the natural heat be not quite extinguished: but if he be strong and may withstand the sickness, then cut off the cause, expel the matter, keep the Patient sparingly and let him not use over cold things. Fifthly, if natural strength in the ague be very weak, then must the Physitians strengthen the same, cools the unnatural heat, and with meat and drink comfort the debility of the body. Sixthly, the cooling of the Ague is not to be ceased with drying or binding things, unless it be when the material cause is expelled. Seventhly, if the nature and malisy of the Ague be doubtful, then must the patient live sparingly, and especially when the ague assaileth that it may find an empty stomach. Eighthly, all fresh fruit are very hurtful, by reason that they will soone sink and putrifie in

in the ſtomach. Ninthly, while the Patient is in good ſtrength, and hath blood enough, or is full of humours, then firſt of all let him blood, and eſpecially when as his urine is red and thick, and when it is doubted, that the *Cholera* will get the upper hand. Tenthly, and if ſo be (as is rehearſed) that nature be of ability, then uſe thoſe things firſt which loſe the body mildly: afterwards open a vein, and then purge. Eleventhly, in theſe kind of Agues there is no ſtrong purgation to be miniſtred. Twelfthly, if by the wambling or pain of the ſtomach it be perceived, that the corruption falleth into the ſtomach, then ſhall you miniſter to the Patient a vomit: but if through the rumbling of the belly it be perceived, that the matter be fallen down into the bowels, then is it to be expelled with purgations. Thirteenthly, thoſe medicines that might hurt the bowels, be noyſome and not commodious, in caſe that the Patient have not uſed preparatives before, be it in heat or cold; or in caſe that the corruption made not the Patient ſtark mad, or that he were in doubt to fall into a greater miſchief. Fourteenthly, as the blood prevaileth and that a vein muſt be opened, then is the preparation of the matter to be expected by reaſon that the ſame concerneth the other bad humours, and not the blood. Fifteenthly, when the Criſis is near hand, you muſt forbear to miniſter any medicine.

But if the ſame be unperfect, then is it to be ayded, and to help nature in that, which ſhe cannot perform of her ſelf, that is, in ſtrengthening her, and in right uſe of the medicines. Sixteenthly, if the letting of blood be thought meet, then is the ſame to be done at the firſt, for otherwhiles it will not do ſo well: for when the Patient is over weakened, then might the ſame be a mean of his death. Seventeenthly, the Patient is to be purged when the Ague is weakeſt. Eighteenthly, wine bathes and fomentations are to be abſtained in forcible and ſtrong Agues, and rather drink cold water, which hath great efficacie to coole the heat of the Ague, but not to expel the putrifyed matter through the pores, or through the urine. Nineteenthly, when the principal parts of the body (as the Heart, the Head, the Liver) be ſtrong, and the Ague is vehement and hot, then may one boldly give the Patient water to drink, yet not if he be in yeares, for thoſe are not very ſtrong of nature. Twentiethly, if there be much blood, much tough ſlime or phleam, and binding of the body preſent, then firſt of all let the Patient blood, afterwards attenuate the matter, and laſtly open the pores and warm them. One and twentiethly, above all things have regard to the ſtrength of the Patient, and if he be ſtrong enough and that he have need of purging, then is the ſame to executed without any care: But if his ſtrength be ſmall, then let it alone at any hand, except it be ſome gentle thing, and after that he be ſomewhat ſtrengthened. Two and twentiethly, if in the *Febris putrida* be any obſtruction, then heed is to be taken to open the ſame, the which if it be cauſed of ſome humours, then are they to be evacuated. If thoſe humours be tough and groſſe, attenuate them. And if the Ague be mixt, then prepare your medicines accordingly. Three and twentiethly, becauſe the cold attracted ayre penetrateth to the heart, and other inward parts, let him thereby be refreſhed, opening all manner of windowes about him. Four and twentiethly it happeneth otherwhiles, beſides the grieviouſneſſe of the diſeaſe, and the preſence of divers accidents, that ſometimes there are thoſe things given to the Patient that are hurtful for the Ague, as in the ſwounings in the Ague, for the which of neceſſity Wine and freſh broth are to be given to the Patient: wherein is to be conſidered, that the greateſt extremity is firſt to be eaſed. Five and twentiethly, if need require that much blood or humours are to be taken away, and that the ſtrength of the Patient will not abide it, then muſt the ſame be done by little and little at divers times, and not at one time, even as is before expreſſed at large. But if the ſtrength of the Patient will permit it, then is it to be done at once. Six and twentiethly, in theſe forcible and vehement Agues muſt the Phyſitian be provident and warie, how to expel and purge: for it is better to leave one part of the matter in the body, then to expel it all at one time. Seven and twentiethly, the Phyſitian muſt alwayes be bold and liberal in comforting the Patient: for although healthful meates breed ſome inconvenience, yet are they better then too much abſtinence. Eight and twentiethly, miniſter alwayes unto the Patient for his mouth ſuch things as will keep the throat moyſt, that through great heat it dry not too ſore; the which is accompliſhed by the muſcilage of Fleawort, the juyce of Pomgranates, the muſcilage of Quince kernels, by Purſlain and Licoriee, which things alſo are good for to quench thirſt.

Of common things for hot Agues. §. 4.

AFter the description of the common rules (which are to be noted) we will now treat of this, namely, when it is found that an Ague doth approach, then muſt the Patient take four ounces of the water of *Carduus Benedictus.*

Item, take the rootes of Cicorie, cut them, pownd them, and wring out their juyce, drink a ſpoonful half an hour before the Ague aſſaileth: but it is to be noted, that the inward heart of the root is to be taken away. Or take pownded rootes of Cicorie as many as you think good, and pour wine thereon, boyle them in *Balneo*, and then drink thereof three or four times, to wit, morning and evening: it is alſo paſſing good for ſuch as are ſwollen with the Ague. Chervell water is very good to drive away the Ague.

A marvellous water of the ancient Phyſitians: take a ſpoonful of Fennel ſeeds, and as much Salt, pownd them together; and let it run through a ſearſe or hairen ſeive, then take good Vinegar, and the urine of a man child, about ſix ounces of each, give to the Patient thereof three or four times, to wit, when the Ague beginneth to aſſaile, and have regard that he vomit it not up again. This do all the Phyſitians uſe, but hereafter follow many better and fitter things.

Out of the foreſaid things eaſie is it to be noted, that for all hot agues theſe waters enſuing are paſſing good, as water of Endive, Cicorie, Burrage, *Cuſcuta*, Sorrel, Maidenhair, and ſuch like.

All anguiſh diſeaſes may freely uſe theſe ſyrups, or any of them which one liſteth, as ſyrup of Vinegar, of Verjuyce, Violets, Cicorie, with Rubarb or without, of Citrons, Roſes, Endive, or of Sorrel.

Item, *Syrupum de Juniperi, de Bizantijs, Acetoſum compoſitum, de Raphanis, Oxymel*, and *Melicratum*, and if there be not much *Choler* abounding, then uſe the Hony of Roſes, which is good for all agues: take thereof which you will, and mingle it with the water of Liverwort, of Endive, and Fumitory, Sorrel, or with water of Maidenhair, and ſuch like. Of theſe confections following, you may uſe which you pleaſe, as *Diarrhodon, Triſantali, Trochiſcos de Spodio, cum Semine Acetoſæ, de Eupatorio, de Berberis*, pownded, and mingled with any of the foreſaid waters, and drunken, and the Whay of milk is chiefly commended. Theſe are the meates that an anguiſh body may well and commodiouſly eat and uſe.

Of the loathing of meat in them that be aſſayled with the Ague. §. 5.

FOr as much as in all hot agues the appetite of feeding is taken away, whereby nature is ſuppreſſed and waxeth faint, and thereby ſcarce able to reſiſt the ague, therefore it is very requiſite that herein good counſel be had and taken.

For this you find in the third part, the eleventh chapter, and ninth §. what is to be done herein; likewiſe you may uſe for it any of theſe things enſuing.

Take Conſerves of Roſes two ounces, Confected Citron rinds, ſyrup of Apples as much as you think good: mingle them together, and uſe thereof falling at each time half an ounce.

There is alſo a confection or compound, that is called the Kings ſauce, the which is very good to provoke appetite, and the ſame is to be made with Sorrel, Cinamom, Cloves, and Vinegar. Others make it of Vinegar, Sorrel, Fennel, and Parſly.

The third ſort, take the juyce of Parſly, Sugar and Vinegar. Item, one may compound ſyrup of Vinegar with *Oxymel.*

In like ſort there is good for it both the ſyrups of Mints. After meales it is very good to uſe prepared Coriander ſeed, Annis ſeeds, and Almonds confected. Item, Cinamom, Marmalade, Conſerves of Roſes, and hony of Roſes, roſted or baked Peares, are very excellent good.

Every ſuch Patient is to be outwardly anointed with the ſalve of Saunders on the place of the Liver, and on the Kidnyes, with the cooling ſalve of *Galen.* This water here next following is alſo very ſoveraign to be uſed thereto for the waſhing of the feet.

℞ Take Sage, Camomil, and Bayberries, of each a handful, Marjoram half a handful, Citron rinds, and Orange pils, of each half an ounce, a pint of ſtrong Wine and

common

common Lee, as much as will ſuffice: let them all ſeeth together, and uſe it oftentimes, for it will provoke appetite.

For the thirſt in hot Agues. §. 6.

BEcauſe continual Agues provoke great thirſt, therefore we will not ceaſe to give ſome knowledge and caveat how the ſame may be holpen and remedied, the which will be effected with Barley water, and with cold and moiſt things, and alſo with ſuch loſinges as be prepared and made with the mucilage of Fleawort, the mucilage of Quince kernels, and with Dragagant.

Sugarcandie, and the kernels of Pomgranates, are alſo very often to be uſed, and he ſhall receive the cold and moyſt ayr. Before in the third Part, the 12. Chapter, and 10. §. there are alſo divers things declared, being all very good to ſlake or quench the thirſt.

Item, take ſirupes of Violets one ounce, Barley water three ounces, Cinamom water one ounce, oyl of Vitriol three or four ſcrupules, mingle them togethed, they will become a red potion with a tart or ſharp taſte; but becauſe there are other more pleaſanter things, do I counſel you to leave out the oyl of Vitriol.

Of purging and ſuch like. §. 7.

AND for the expulſion of this matter or corruption in the beſt manner, thereto is very ſoveraign wafht Aloe which is deſcribed in the Introduction. The common plague pils be alſo paſſing good for the ſame, the which pils are called *de Fumis*, and are to be mingled with Rubarb.

Alſo once a week at the leaſt, let the Patient take in ſome cooling and laxative medicine, as namely, conſerves of Prunes, and Caſſie, the which are good in old maladies; and therefore is commonly to be given an ounce and a half, with half a drach. of Rubarb. *Manna* is excellent good for it, and the confections of *Diamanna cum Rhubarbaro*, the which are to be had in all well furniſhed Apothecaries ſhops. There are ſome that give counſel (and that very well) that the next day following the Patient is to take three ounces of laxative ſirupe of Roſes mingled (if it pleaſe him) with ſome diſtilled water. Alſo there is good for it the loſinges *de ſucco Roſarum*, *Diaphœnicon*, *de Pſillio*, & *Diacatholicon*: or uſe this potion following; Take fowr Dates one ounce, break them in Cicorie water, and ſtrain it through a cloth. This done, mingle Caſſie and conſerve of Prunes, of each half an ounce, half a drach. of beaten Rubarb, and five grains of *Spica* amongſt it. Take this in the morning early, and thereupon faſt afterwards ſix hours.

There are alſo cooling cliſters uſed for it which the Phyſitians do call *Lavativa*, (that is, cleanſing Cliſters) by reaſon that they are for none other purpoſe, but to ſtrengthen the bowels, to make them ſlippery, and to warm them, as theſe enſuing: Firſt, take Barley water and Sugar, or broth made of ſheeps purtenance, wherewith is mingled freſh Butter, or Hogs greaſe: otherwhiles Beets, and Mercury. Likewiſe there are many cliſters of Sallad oyl, and oyl of Violets, and alſo (in the pain of the belly) of Linſeed oyl without putting any other thing thereto, but twelve or ſixteen ounces taken at one time for one cliſter. And when the going to ſtool and urine are to be provoked, then uſe hereto freſh broth that is moſt common and fit, wherein Barley is ſodden and is mingled with oyl. Or if you will have it ſtronger, then take an ounce of any of theſe confections mingled amongſt it, as *de Sebeſtis*, *Hiera*, *Diaprunis*, Caſſie, Thomas Sugar, oyl of Violets, Hony of Roſes, or of Violets.

For the vomiting in the Agues. §. 8.

ALL thaolie of hot Agues may eaſily be brought to vomit, and that chiefly after their taking of any medicine, and to prevent it, look into the third Part, the 20. Chap. and 7. §.

For the loſſe of Sleep. §. 9.

THey that are plagued with the Agues are eaſily barred from their natural ſleep, and to further the ſame, look into the fifth Part, the 18. Chapter, where is ſufficiently treated what hereto belongeth.

For

For to relieve them that be ſick of the Ague. §. 10.

FUrthermore, there are many things that revive theſe Patients whereby their heavineſſe (that proceedeth from the heat of the Ague) might be clean taken away; to wit, that freſh linnen and ſheets be given often unto them, their beds often rouzed and made, alſo ſet in their ſights glaſſe bottles filled with fair water, put often fair water out of one pot into another in the preſence of the Patient. Urge him to ſmell often to a glaſſe filled with fair water, Roſe water, and good Rheniſh Wine, and give them Pomegranates, Oranges, and Rheniſh wine to ſuck upon, and eſpecially before meat. Let their hands and face be often anointed before and after meat with ſome pleaſant odoriferous things.

For the relief or comforting of the ſick. §. 11.

THeſe kinds of hot maladies require alſo, that ſometime the diſeaſed have ſomewhat given them, whereby the natural ſpirits may be revived, quickened, ſtrengthened, and cheriſhed. Therefore it is requiſite that we write ſomewhat thereof.

Hereto is very ſoveraign the black confected Cherries, red and dryed Cherries with the Conſerves of the ſame, and all that may be made of Cherries.

The confected Muſcadel pears, with or without wine, according to the quality of the Ague, are paſſing good.

Item, conſerve of Barberries, and the ſirup of the ſame, are alſo very good for it: And in like manner all that may be made of Raſpes.

Item, Conſerve of Bugloſſe, of Burrage, and of Roſes, of each apart or mixed together.

Sugar of Roſes melted in Well water, and ſo drunken, is alſo paſſing good for the ſame: and in like manner the Sugar of *Manna Chriſti*.

Some uſe for laying a ſhive of bread ſoaked in Roſemary wine, for that it ſtrengtheneth and quickeneth appetite: but it is better for the cold then for the hot Ague. If ſo be that the Patient do get bliſters in the mouth, or the tongue fur, and the throat do burn, as chanceth oftentimes, then look into the firſt Part, the 13. Chapter, and 2. §. where you ſhall find very good remedies for the ſame.

Ordinances for all thoſe that are recovered of a long ſickneſſe. §. 12.

NOw if it come to paſſe, that ſick folks begin to amend, and the diſeaſe wear away, the breath beginneth to be free, the pain to ceaſe, the ſleep to come, and have luſt and appetite to their meat, then may be freely ſaid, that the Patient beginneth to recover: then is the Patient to be kept very ſober in his dyet of eating and drinking, and not feed upon any other meats then are requiſite for ſuch like diſeaſes, like as Barley grout, Currans, and broth wherein the roots of Parſly and Cicorie are ſodden, for that all theſe things do ſtrengthen and moiſten. There muſt alſo be uſed outwardly for the ſtrengthening of the ſtomach, oyl of Mints, of Maſtick, of Wormwood and of *Spica*. You may alſo make a ſalve for the ſtomach, with the foreſaid oyles, being mingled with Cloves, Nutmegs, and Cinamom, and with a little molten Wax.

Item, the plaiſter of Maſtick, and other plaiſters more, that are ſpecified in the deſcription of the ſtomach, are very good for it, being laid on the ſtomach outwardly. Concerning the Patients binding of the body, you may uſe any cooling things, ſpecified in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 20. §.

Above all the reſt that is ſpoken of before, for the recovery of all diſeaſes, it is paſſing good to alter the place or ſituation, eſpecially to draw near to the mountains or hills, whereas it is dry, and far from the ſea, and from all noyſome and ſtinking lakes.

Aromaticum Roſatum doth ſtrengthen wonderful much.

The

The fourth Chapter.

Of the half third daies Ague, called Hemitritæa.

THis disease is also a kind of continual ague, the which is one day slacker then another, and appeareth in the outward members, at one time with great heat, and another with great cold; therefore must you have daily care to mark how it taketh one, and what humours there be that do reign most of all in the same Ague, that there may the better order be taken for redresse thereof; like as in the beginning of the continual agues, and hereafter shall be taught in the description of the Quotidian, Tertian, and Quartain agues. The mixture of these agues is of *Chalera* and *Phlegma*, for which cause it is joyned half with a tertian, and half with a quartain ague, whereby groweth a continual ague. And when the *Chalera* getteth the upper hand, then is the tertian the more stronger: and when there is most of the *Phlegma*, then is the quartain the mightiest.

So that when they are both of equivalent efficacy, then it is only called *Hemitritæa*; that is, when both these humours do work equally, and have their operations alike.

There is for the heat of these agues given commonly to the Patient Barley water that is sod with Melon seeds, Gourd seeds, Endive seeds, and such like. For the cold, is Pepper, Cinamom, and Annisеed, and the Wormwood much praised, especially *Oxysaccharo*, be it of whatsoever humour this ague doth proceed.

The fifth Chapter.

Of the Tertian Ague.

LIke as we have in the former Chapter made mention of the tertian Ague, and have numbred the same amongst the hot agues (whereof we now do speak) so doth our method now require to adde these and all other hot agues unto them.

This ague doth alter her self into many kinds of sorts and species, according as it mingleth it self with other agues, which oftentimes happeneth. But if this Ague remain in her own property, then do the learned call it *Exquisitam*, and *Legitimam*, that is as much to say, as neat of it self and unmingled: and it is such a kind of Ague, wherein the property of the person, his age, the time of the year, the state of the body, and the whole former order of dyet do agree one with another, and accord with the humour which causeth this Ague. This exquisite tertian ague cometh not above seven times, and is wholly without peril.

The second sort of this Ague, they term *Tertianam Nothem*, or *Spuriam*, that is as much to say, as a bastard tertian Ague, whereof we will speak and declare hereafter apart. Now to speak of the right nature and property of the tertian ague, they are commonly subject unto (which are cold of nature, and of a middle age, because that in them the Gall most aboundeth) also in Summer time when the *Chalera* raigneth, there happen many hot and burning *Causones*, whereof we shall hereafter make mention.

This tertian Ague raigneth most in hot dry countries, in hot dry swellings, and in hot ayr. All bodies that do labour sore in the Summer, watch much, live in great sorrow, are nourished with subtile meats and such like, are most subject to these sorts of Agues: as also all they that use too much Physick, they that are hot and dry of nature. And although all species of the tertian ague (as also the *Exquisita*) are the very hottest; yet have they nevertheless with the ague *Causone* this difference, that the foresaid tertian ague forceth much gall with the blood into the veins, and there inflameth the same.

To be brief, these are called *Tertianæ exquisitæ*, for that they come upon the third day, expelling the *Choleram* through vomits, going to stool, and through sweat.

And whereas none of these foresaid things appear there at all, then it is to be called only *Tertiana*; for that the same thereby onely differeth from the *Exquisite*.

For when this tertian ague maketh appearance, which continueth many houres, to wit, the

the whole ſpace of the tertian Ague, the which remaineth continually 28. 30. 36. or 40 hours, the ſame do the learned term *Tertianam extenſam*, that is, a lengthened or extended tertian ague.

In like manner they term that *Tertianam duplicem*, which is mingled with the quotidian Ague.

Item, *Hemitritæum* whereof we have declared before, and many more that we omit for brevity ſake.

It commeth to paſſe that all Tertians approach with a greater and with a more trembling cold, and have commonly this nature that they do not continue long nor yet (as is alſo ſaid) keep not their fits above ſeven times. And if there be any that giveth occaſion by ſome ill diet that the ſame continue any longer, yet doth ſhe alwayes alter her own nature into another ague, the which may be prevented through good government of life. The occaſions of this ague are partly declared before, to wit, ſore labour, or great exercile, and that chiefly at hot times, long uſe of things that increaſe the *Choleram*, and inflame the humours, as Garlick, Pepper, and all that is dreſt therewith, alſo Ginger, and fined ſtrong wine, and ſuch like.

The ſigns of the very true Tertian ague are theſe, when it doth aſſaile you with great ſhaking and cold, which is more violent in this Tertian, then in any other ague.

Afterwards the heat followeth upon it, a ſtrong ſwift pulſe, and drouth of the tongue, and of the whole body. The patient feeleth a pricking over all his body, as if he were prickt with nailes: the urine is red as fire, and you may perceive the heat by the feeling: there is great diſquietneſſe with it, and no ſleep at all; yet without any pain in the head unleſſe it be not an exquiſite tertian, but a mingled ague. Alſo if there be any great thirſt, madneſſe, and frowardneſſe with it, there cometh a ſweat in the end unto it: and theſe ſigns are the more ſurer, if the patient be young and cholerick, in the ſummer time, in a lean body, and that hath lived very continently, and is much inclined to vomit *Choleram*.

It is firſt to be conſidered, that all the common rules that we have before collected in deſcribing the contiual Ague, are alſo very requiſite herein, as theſe rules following ſhall further declare.

Firſt, the exquiſite Tertian or third dayes ague that proceedeth of red *Choler*, muſt be well moiſtened and cooled.

Secondly, for as much as the *Choler* is the hotteſt and dryeſt humour of the body: therefore it is requiſite that it be expelled which is fallen into the ſtomach by vomits: and that which falleth down lower, is to be expelled and purged by going to the ſtool, be it by potions or cliſters.

Thirdly, all moyſtening meats are very good, except ſuch as putrifie quickly in the body.

Fourthly, the recovery for this and all other putrified agues conſiſteth herein, that all putrified humours muſt be clean purged out, and the unnatural heat quenched, for if in the exquiſite Tertian, the corruption be leſſe then the heat, then the more diligence ought to be had for to cool the ſame, then for to purge the humor.

Fifthly, if the patient be much bound in body, then is he in the beginning to be opened and looſed with moderate cliſters, that the bad humours may be ſomewhat expelled and diminiſhed.

Sixtly, becauſe all fruits are hurtful for all agues, therefore they ought to be forborn.

Seventhly, two or three hours before the ague commeth, the patient is to eat ſomewhat, and likewiſe alſo when the ague is departed.

Eightly, when by the preparative medicines the humour is made to vaniſh a little, and to be concocted (which may be perceived by the urine) then is it high time that the ſame be purged, and that by that way whither it moſt inclineth.

Ninthly, if after the aſſault of the ague, and after the departure thereof there followeth ſweat, then muſt the ſame be ſuffered to take his courſe, unleſſe that ſome ſwouning, or ſuch like accidents are feared.

Tenthly, at the beginning of the ague the patient muſt ſhun drinking and ſleeping, to the end that the humour thereby be incloſed in the body, and that the drinking hindreth the vomiting up of the humour.

Eleventhly, the letting of blood is never good for the third dayes ague, before that the patient have had it three or four times.

Twelfthly, there are no Mirobalans to be given to the patient at the beginning of

this

this Ague because they purge at the first, and afterwards bind the body.

Thirteenthly, he ought also to be secluded from *Diagridium*, for it inflameth.

Fourteenthly he must not take any sowr thing with any thing made of Barly, for that the one spoyleth the other, albeit either of them by themselves are commodious.

Fifteenthly, Rubarb purgeth *Cholram*, but it warmeth somewhat, and leaveth a heat behind; therefore the same is to be taken in the water of Endive.

Sixtenthly, if it be perceived, that there do any hot vapors ascend into the head, they are forthwith to be withdrawn, by a moderate Clister, thereby to draw them downwards, and to strengthen the head, that it receive not them so speedily.

And to come to the cure thereof, it is requisite that we make some mention of such things as are declared in the foresaid rules, which I hope shall never a whit mislike the Reader: This is the opinion of all expert Physitians, and the nearest way, and above all other (so far as is possible) to coole and moysten the body: for because this ague is hot and dry, therefore must it be cured and corrected with contrary things, to wit, with cold and moyst things.

When as the *Cholera* lighteth in the mouth of the stomach, then must the same through vomits be expelled: but if it descend, and fall into the bowels, then must it be purged downwards, albeit the nature of an exquisite Tertian be such that it commonly expelleth the same of it self, either by sweat or by urine. The *Cholera* is also lightly to be purged downward, and that through a mild Clister, whereof there be divers described before in the third Chapter, 7. §.

And if so be that need require any stronger, then take of the foresaid decoction twelve or sixteen ounces mingled with *Benedicta laxativa*, Cassie, and course Sugar, of each half an ounce, confection of Bevercod two drachmes, *Sal gemma*, one drachme, Sallet oyl, and oyl of *Sesamum* of each one ounce and a half, mingle them all together, and exhibite this Clister at least an hour before meat.

For the provoking of urine, there is a potion to be made, wherein Smallage and Dill hath been steeped.

If you would use stronger, then look in the third Part, the eighteenth Chapter and the first §. &c.

When as the humor is purged through Clisters, and is expelled through the urine, then do some famous Physitians give counsel, that the Patient should open the *Salvatella* upon the hand, and afterwards to purge him with milde and cooling medicines, as hereafter followeth.

Take sowr Dates and Cassie, of each a quarter of an ounce, Rubarb one scruple, Whey of milk three ounces, mingle them together, and drink it, and fast six hours after it.

Take of the decoction of fruits, called *Decoctio fructuum*, four ounces, steep two drach. of Rubarb in it all night: early in the morning wring it out hard, and mingle therewith two ounces of Manna, one quarter of an ounce of *Diacatholicon*, take it fasting: but of the *Diacatholicon* may you take more or lesse, according to the ability of the Patient. There are more such like in the description of the continual Ague.

After purging, let him drink five or six dayes one after another, of this potion following: take *Oxysaccharo* one ounce, syrup of Violets half an ounce, water of Sorrel and of Cicorie, of each one ounce and a half, and mingle them together.

But when as you perceive that the corruption beginneth to be concocted, then may he give to the sick body without fear the juyce of wormwood, drest in this manner; take the highest sprigs of Wormwood, pownd them to pap, and then strain out the juyce: and afterwards take every morning hereof a spoonfull and fast two hours after it; so do also at nights two hours after supper. Some do use to steep the Wormwood in *Melicraton*, and drink thereof.

This following is an especial medicine for the grief of the stomach of *Cholera*, to wit, to use often bathing in fresh water, for thereby is the *Cholera* wasted, cooled, and moystned, if the same be used twice a day and he may remain therein so long as it liketh the Patient, but it must alwayes be used with moderation, and at oportune times.

Secondly, he must observe such an order of dyet, whereby the *Cholera* may be avoided, whereof is sufficient mention made in the description of the Gall and stomach.

But briefly to expresse the meaning of *Galen*, which is, that in *Tertian exquisita* such government is to be kept, that the Patient drink no wine so long as his disease indureth: but

but the diſeaſe being cleane gone, that then wine is to be taken watered.

All cold and moyſt meates are perfect good for this maladie, wherewith the Patient may cheriſh himſelf as long as he thinketh meet, and as his ſtomach can digeſt them.

Amongſt all green herbs, theſe be good; Orage, Blites, Docks, Mallowes, Lettice and Gourds. Likewiſe alſo Barly paps, and all river fiſh: and amongſt Fowls, let thoſe ſuffice as have ſoft fleſh, and of other the wings onely.

Item, all wood Fowls, the braines and feet of hogs, rere ſod Egs, and eſpecially the yolks be better then the whites.

He may uſe all fruits that are not hard of digeſtion: but he muſt forbear at any hand Hony, Muſtard, ſalt meates, and all hard meates. All this hath *Galen* left behind and deſcribed for a dyet in the mixed tertian Ague.

Here is to be noted, that at all times the Patient ſhall eat at leaſt four or five hours before that the Ague approacheth, that it may find an empty ſtomach; and in like manner he ſhall not eat until two or three hours be paſt after it.

The ſixt Chapter.

Of the counterfeit and baſtard tertian, that is, a falſe third dayes Ague.

THe third dayes Ague which the Latiniſts tearme *Notham, Spuriam*, that is a baſtard tertian, is ſo called, by reaſon of a due cauſe which proceedeth not of meere *Cholera*: and becauſe that the *Cholera* is mixt with *Phlegma*, ſo that both of them are converted into one kind of humour. And the difference of them which is between the late deſcribed *Hemitritæa* and this *Notha*, is, that the firſt appeareth in the beginning with two kinds of humours, as the *Notha* cometh with one onely, and hath but one kind of putrifaction of two ſeveral humours.

The ſigns whereby this counterfeit tertian may be known from the exquiſite tertian, are theſe.

Firſt this *Notha* (as is aforeſaid) is not exquiſite, but mixed. The exquiſite tertian cometh not above ſeven times, except the Patient or the Phyſitian have committed an errour, whereby it is continued. And the baſtard tertian heateth not the body ſo greatly, and all the ſymptomes are not ſo vehement as accuſtometh in all other Agues: for this Ague laſteth longer then twelve hours, and otherwhiles remaineth two moneths, ſpecially in old phlegmatick perſons, and that in winter ſeaſon.

Theſe ſignes, alſo following do manifeſt how to know the difference between it and the right tertian Ague, to wit, that the humour or matter of this Ague departeth not ſo ſoone, and abateth not the body ſo quickly, neither doth this Ague end with ſuch a ſweat.

Theſe are the common rules to be obſerved for this Ague: Firſt, even as this counterfeit tertian Ague differeth from the right tertian Ague, ſo require they ſeveral kinds of cure. Secondly, as the ſame is mixed with *Cholera* and *Phlegma*, ſo muſt alſo the medicines that ſerve for the ſame, be mingled, and muſt be both digeſtives and purgers. Thirdly, for that the ſyrup of Vinegar doth attenuate *Phlegma*, and doth digeſt *Choleram*, therefore is the ſame very commodious to be uſed for it. Fourthly, becauſe the ſame Ague cometh not ſo ſpeedily to the ſtate or higheſt, the Patient may eat and drink moderatly, leſt for want thereof he loſe his ſtrength, and may expect the ſtate of the Ague.

And to ſpeak farther hereof, it appeareth plainely, that touching theſe Agues, the old proverb may be verified, where men uſually ſay, the Ague hath three deadly enemies, namely purging, faſting, and letting of blood: which three in truth do not onely gull theſe baſtard tertians, but alſo all other Agues. But in this Ague, whereof we have ſpoken, which is not ſo exquiſite and pure as the former, there muſt be regard taken that the ſickneſſe increaſe not, leſt therby the ſick perſons be quite overthrown, becauſe (as aforeſaid) there are two ſundry kinds of impediments at hand, it is ſcarce poſſible therein to keep a meane: yet ſpecially is abſtinencie good; that the more the ſame is uſed ſo much the more will the ſickneſſe be diſcuſſed and ſpent, but the ſame feebleth greatly the ſtrength of the Patient: for how much the greater it is ſo, much the more doth it abate and

weaken

weaken the Patient. But to the contrary, the more that the Patient feedeth so much the more doth the malady increase, wherefore speciall care is to be had, what thing is to be done or left undone whereby is most requisite and profitable, so that in strong nature obstinate, and in weak good nourishment be prescribed, which must onely in this, but in all other maladies is to be specially observed and kept.

In this counterfeit and mixt tertian ague, at the first the Patient is not to bathe, but onely when it beginneth to abate: and the Patient must not have every day meat to eat, but every other day, and must keep himself quiet, cover close his breast, and otherwhiles use a Clister.

Item, for purging you must take half an ounce of Cassie, Diapadon two drachmes and a half, and whay of milk three ounces mingled together. For a preparative of the humour, use this potion following: Syrup of Vinegar one ounce, *Syrupus de Imperatore* half an ounce, mingle them together with water of Sorrel, of Citory, and of Fennel, of each one ounce, drink it off in the morning fasting cold or warm: this is commonly not to be taken, till his urine begin to wax paler, and certain small cloudes be perceived in the bottome.

Afterwards, let him take these things following; take Cassie prepared with Citory water three ounces, Rubarb and *Agaricus*, of each one scruple, *Spica* of Indy, and Ginger, of each four graines, decoction of Melons, Gourds, and Citruls three ounces, mingle them together with the rest, and so give it him warm.

There is also to be used for these agues, letting of blood, and that at the very beginning. The whole ordinance or government of diet must not be cold nor moyst, as is said of the right tertian, but must be such that it warm, digest, and open. It is also very good to dresse all his meat with Parsley, Fennel, and such like things, and his Barley pape with some Pepper. Item, let him use Horny water, wherein Hyssope, Marjoram, and Spiknard hath been steeped or sodden. Also all things that provoke urine (except such as warm and dry too fast) are passing good, and likewise *Syrupus acetosus vel pectoralis*: if you desire more other things, then looke what is before written thereof.

And you must not faile, but to give every seven dayes once to the Patient for this ague the juyce of Wormwood. *Oxymel* is also passing good, and especially that which is made of Squills, which openeth all obstructions. Some also accustome to give for these species of agues, Mithridate or Treacle, according as the same is over hot or cold. To conclude, vomit after meat is so requisite for all agnish persons, that thereby onely may be freed and holpen.

Some will have many things to be used for this Ague, as there be many will give counsell thereto, when all meanes and wayes have been tryed, then take two ounces and a half of the salve of Poplars, and mingle it with Cobwebs, and so lay them upon the pulse three hours before the Ague cometh. Some bind it upon the pulse before the ague cometh with Cinquefoil. Item take, a handful of Eldern leaves, Lavander, and Sulf, of each a little, mingle them well together with Sallad oyl and so lay it upon the pulse, this should also drive away the Ague.

The seventh Chapter.

Of the burning Feaver, called Causon

IF this ague is rehearsal made amongst other Agues in the first chapter of the sixt part, that it is (like to the right Tertian Agues) the hottest of all other agues, even as we have also said in the fifth Chapter, in which two places her properties are expressed: for the observation therefore of our accustomed methode, we will here shew and rehearse somewhat thereof.

First, this ague is thus described; *Causon*, that is a burning Feaver, is a very forcible and continual Ague, and proceedeth of a red *Cholera*, which putrifyeth and enflameth in the veins neer the heart, in the Liver, and in the mouth of the stomach, or about any part of the body. The occasions thereof are sometimes the very hot time, great labour that is done in the heat of the Sun, hot meates, wrath, inflamation of the Liver, and of the blood in the veins, and other causes more, that are rehearsed in the two places aforementioned.

The

The ſigns of the ſame ague are a continual heat, and never ceaſing burning, and that rather inwardly then outwardly, with many more terrible accidents: alſo, there is great drought of the tongue, which at the firſt is yellowiſh, and afterwards burnt and waxeth blackiſh with great thirſt, without any ſweat (if a *Criſis* be not at hand) the pulſes beat freely, the eyes are hollow, the appetite faileth utterly, and the water or urine in this ague is fiery, and yellow of colour: yea, it chanceth otherwhiles that hearing, ſeeing, and ſpeech is taken away by this ague, with a great binding of the body.

In theſe perillous Agues that commonly make a diſpatch of one in four, five (or at moſt) in ſeven dayes through death or health: theſe common rules following are to be obſerved, and alſo all thoſe that are herebefore noted in the third chapter, and third §.

Firſt, haſten to expel and mitigate the humour.

Secondly, when the urine is yellow, or yellowiſh, and the pulſe ſlow, then muſt you not let blood; for that the *Cholera* thereby will be the more inflamed, becauſe the moſt blood which delayeth *Cholera*, might thereby be drawn out.

Thirdly, if the urine be red and thick, and the pulſe ſtrong and mighty, then firſt of all muſt you open a vein.

Fourthly, if it do ſeem that it is good to let blood, then muſt it be done at the firſt: for afterwards it is not allowable, leaſt that thereby great feebleneſſe, yea death it ſelf be procured.

Fiftly, when the heat is almoſt paſt, then are you to give the Patient to eat and drink ſparingly, yet in ſuch meaſure, that the natural ſtrength be not thereby too much enfeebled: otherwiſe force the Patient (although againſt his will) to uſe cooling meats.

Sixtly, you muſt alſo give the Patient oftentimes cold water to drink, and let him ſuffer no thirſt.

Seventhly, when his noſe or any other part happen to bleed during his ſickneſſe, then muſt you ſpeedily ſtanch the ſame, that he loſe no manner of ſtrength thereby.

Eighthly, that the hot damps of the *Cholera* may not aſcend into the head, the ſame therefore muſt be cooled with the oyl of Roſes, Vinegar, Saunders, and with Roſe water. And when as the Patient cannot ſleep at al, or happeneth to fall into any frenzie, the ſame muſt be cured with meet things, as may be found out in the regiſter.

Ninthly, firſt of all muſt this *Cholera* be expelled (be it by vomits or ſtooles,) and ſeek afterwards to coole the great heat which cannot more conveniently be done, then that there be ſufficient cold water given to the Patient to drink.

Tenthly, even as before we have expreſſed, theſe diſeaſed are commonly much bound in the belly, which muſt be prevented the firſt or ſecond day with mild cliſters.

Eleventhly, the Patient muſt alſo have a drink given him wherein Prunes and ſowr Dates have been ſodden, alſo heed muſt be taken that he go twice or thrice a day to ſtool.

Twelfthly, the heart muſt be comforted (which is inflamed with this heat) with cooling cordial matters without all delay. And theſe are the common rules which are to be obſerved in this burning Feaver.

Concerning his order of dyet, his dwelling place ſhould be coole, airie, and be ſprinkled with water and Vinegar. His head muſt be ſet with Vine branches, Willow boughs, and other coole green things; for the ſame do coole and alter the ayre that by the lungs is drawn towards the heart, whereby the heat of the heart is chiefly cooled.

Secondly, even as is expreſſed in the third rule, if the Patients urine be red and thick, then muſt his Median or *Baſilica* be opened, and the ſame day or the day following muſt he uſe theſe medicines following, thereby to prevent all terrible accidents of the heart.

Take flowers of Burrage, Bugloſſe and Violets, of each half an ounce, twenty or five and twenty Prunes: ſeeth them all together in ſufficient water till the third part be ſodden away, then take three or four ounces of his broth, and put therein Caſſie and ſowre Dates, of each three quarters of an ounce, Rubarb ſteeped in Endive water half a drach. afterwards give it to the Patient early in the morning.

Item, to coole and prepare the humour, make this ſyrup; take great and ſmall Endive, Lettice, Purſlain, Agrimony, Liverwort, ſprigs of Poppie leaves, and green Maidenhair, of each a handful, Violets, Waterlilies, Roſes, and *Lens Paluſtris*, of each one ounce ſeeds of Lettice, Endive, Purſlain, and of ſmall Endive, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſeeth them all together in ſufficient water till there be eighteen ounces remaining, then put as much Sugar thereto, and let it ſeeth again and clarify it; put thereto Endive water, Roſe water, and the juyce of Pomgranates, of each ſix ounces, burnt Ivory,

red and white Saunders, Camphir, and white Poppie-seeds, of each a dragme and a half: then afterwards seeth them all togethet into a syrup, give thereof foure times in a day and twenty hours, tempered with Barly or fountain water: and when you perceive the next day that the ague is abated, and thereby make shew as though the fourth day it would end, then must you now give the Patient no more boyled prunes, as the first rule sheweth: for rums of white bread soaked in fountain water are good for him. Likwise Almond milk is also good for him, if the same be made with Melons or Cucumber seeds. You may also mingle amongst his drink syrup of Sugar, mucilage of Endive, of Purslain, and Melone seeds: and in like manner the syrup of Poppie heads, and chiefly of black Poppies. But in case there light upon any young Patient any intolerable thirst, and thereby longeth to drink cold water, then must you also him have it, and that so much as he may drink up at a good draught: and then afterwards if the thirst and heat yet continue with the Patient, give it him once again to drink. But note that old folks have not any such drink. Secondly, good heed must be taken that none of the principal parts thereby be damnifyed: but onely let such have it as it is meet for. Thirdly, it must not be given at all if the ague proceed of any cold humour. Fourthly, it must not be ministred when the natural strength is much decayed. Fiftly, if there be no great obstruction at hand. Sixthly, if the sickneſſe be not increasing, but decreasing. Seventhly, it is not tolerable, unleſſe the thirst and the lust to drink water be very extream. Eightly, if there be any fear of any great feebleneſſe, then must you mingle that water with the juyce of Pomgranates, or with Verjuyce. Hen broth, wherein Lettice, Purslain, and Cucumbers are sodden, is also very meet for him.

Item, raw Butter milk well sugared and crummed with white bread in it, is marvellous medicinable. But if there come any sweat, then must speciall care be had that the Patient continue in it, and sweat as long as his strength will abide it. With the blood must be dealt as said in the eight rule.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Ague which is called Synochus.

Amongſt all other continuall agues is this also comprehended which the Greeks call *Synochus*, whereof we have also spoken before in the third chapter, that the same groweth through the superfluity of the blood being mingled with *Cholera*. The learned describe two manner of these agues: whereof the one is provoked of the blood that is not putrifyed, and the other sort of a putrifyed and noysome blood in the veins. The cause of the first ague is, if the party be by nature sanguine and full of blood, and therewithal useth daily meates that ingender much blood: as namely, good delicate flesh and wine, yolks of egg, and such like, little or too much, lacke of exercise, vapours of superfluous and evil blood, that draweth upwards and never findeth any issue, because the pores and all inward passages are obstructed. The signs of this ague are, when the pulse doth beat like strong and swift; if the heat be not extream, then may it best of all be perceived in the palm of the hand: the urine for the most part is like unto that of healthful persons, yet the same is often red and thick, and specially in a corpulent body. Herewith may appeare also a redneſſe of the body, and of the face, with a fulneſſe of the veins, and there is no cold nor shaking, but a troublesome breathing; otherwhiles they fall into a dead sleep, as it were into a *Lethargus*, whereof we have spoken in the first part, the twelfth Chapter, and tenth §. Before that any do fall into this ague, he feeleth first a great wearisomeneſſe over all his body, and an itching of the nose, ach of the head, and in his sleep he seeth many red and bloody fantasies: above all this the speech is troublesome unto him. For this bloody ague are described these rules following. First, it is the opinion of all learned Physitians, that all such Patients are to be letten blood even until they begin to fall into a swound. Secondly, if it appeare very wateriſh and cholerike, then must the same be cooled and thickned. Thirdly, if the same be too grosse and too thick, then must the same be made subtile and thin. Fourthly, the body must after letting of blood be well frothed, that the pores may be opened. Fiftly, when as the letting of blood is neglected

neglected (and the Patient yet strong enough) then is the same to be done still, yet at all times with the counsel of a learned Physician. Sixtly, if the Patient will not abide letting of blood, then must alteration, penning, and expulsive things be used, whereby the superfluous humour and blood may be abated. Seventhly the letting of blood and drinking of cold water work an effect so much, that you need not use any other things. Eightly, this ague requireth great abstinence, if nature may abide it. Ninthly, when this ague procedeth of surfeiting in meat, then must the letting of blood not be used before the 2. or 3. day; notwithstanding that the malady is such wherein the opening of a vein may not be omitted, for that it quickly annoyeth; wherefore must the first rule be forthwith applyed, by letting him blood in the Median so long till he begin to swoune. And if the same cannot be effected at one time, then is the same to be done at sundry times, every time a little. Afterwards let the Patient use cooling things, as namely, syrup of Verjuice, of Purslain, of Pomgranates, and of Limons, or of Sorrel: much cold water is also to be given to the Patient to drink, yet with such direction as before in the description of the ague *Causon* hath been shewed.

Let him have bread to eat that is steeped in the juice of Pomgranates or Verjuice.

Barley water is the most commodious drink that he may drink, and Syrup of Roses may be mingled amongst it; if he go not to the stoole, then make him a chicken broth wherein Mallowes are sodden.

Purge the Patient also with sowr Dates, with conserve of Prunes, Cassie, or with Manna, and so proceed with cooling things, till the heat be clean extinguished.

Of the Ague Synochus, with putrifyed blood. §. 1.

THe other sort of this continual ague is also very strong, proceeding of a putrifaction of the blood. And hereof is a disputation also amongst the learned: for some say that when as the blood cometh for to putrify, that then it is no longer blood, and therefore this ague *Synochus* cannot be ingendered of blood. The causes are the same that are of the other, but that onely with the former there are many inward vapors without any putrifaction of the blood. In like manner the signs of both these agues are the same, but that in the first the heat is greater, and all other symptomes more violent then in this. In fine, herein do they both agree, that there is never any increasing or abating of the fit, as may be observed in other continual agues. Now to cure this ague, the Patient must be let blood out of hand, if the stomach be not overcharged with meat, and that the age and strength will permit the same, and thereupon purge, as is taught for the former ague. And if it fall out (as it accustometh to fall out) that with this ague there were adjoyned a feebleness of the Liver, then must these Trochiskes following be prepared for it.

Take burnt Ivory, Dragagant and starch of each a drach. seeds of Purslain one quarter of an ounce, Licorice one quarter of an ounce and one scruple, make thereof then Trochisks with Dragagant dissolved in Endive water; they do coole and comfort the stomach, and also the Liver.

Another. Take two scruples of Roses, two scruples and a half of Barberies, seeds of Melons, Cucumbers, Citruls, Purslain and burnt Ivory, of each a scruple, Dragagant, Gum, and Almonds, of each half a scruple, Rubarb Saffron and Camphir, of each seven grains: make thereof Trochisks, and minister one drach. of them at once with Barly water; you may also mix the aforesaid Trochisks with conserve of Roses, and so use them.

For this are also commodious the losinges *Diatrion santalon*, *Diatragacanthum Frigidum*, and that for both sorts of these agues, because both of them do ask one and the same kind of remedies.

Of the order of dyet. §. 2.

BOth of these agues do require a sparing dyet, as Barly pottage, Oaten paps, Hen brothes, wherein Lettice or Verjuice is sodden, and such like. One may also seeth Lentils by pouring out the first broth thereof, and dressing the second with Parsley and and a little vinegar, or juyce of Pomgranates. The broth of red Pease with Sugar, stewed apples, and peares, and fresh Gourds drest with Almond milk are speciall good. He may also eat otherwhiles Melons, Citruls, Endive, Lettice, and Purslain. But if the Patient be bound in the body, then may you seeth in the Almond milk, Spinage, Mercury, and such like: or take conserve of Prunes, sowr Dates, Cassy and Manna, of which you will; also mild Clisters may be used and taken for this purpose.

And

And if the Patient have great head-ach, then delay the ſame with oyl of Roſes, Vinegar, or with *Oxyrrhodino*. In like manner may you alſo uſe a little oyl of Violets, or oyl of water Lillies being dropt into his eares, and to hold Roſes, Camphir, or Saunders before his noſe. If the Patient cannot take any ſleep or reſt, and that no lithargy be feared, then is the juyce of cold and moyſt herbs to be uſed, and in like manner of ſmall and great Houſleek, of Nightſhade, Lettice, Purſlain, and of Poppie leaves, or Poppie heads, Popular ſalve, and ſuch like, dip a cloth therein and lay it upon his forehead. The very beſt and moſt uſual drink that can be uſed in this ſickneſſe is Barly water; but in great heat you muſt mingle therewith (as is ſaid) the juyce of Pomgranates, verjuice. Item, cold water with ſyrup of Pomgranates, or any other cooling ſyrup. And if there chanceth any ſwouning called *Cardiaca* with it (whereof we have admoniſhed in the 2. part the 6. chapter) then is the ſame to be holpen with cooling and fragrant things, even as hath been ſhewed in the foreſaid places, and eſpecially apply this plaiſter following to the Liver. Take red, white and yellow Saunders, of each three drach. Roſes and Barly meal, of each one ounce, Camphir a quarter of an ounce, make a plaiſter thereof with Roſe water. If ſo be that he fall into a great ſleep, then muſt you chafe the hands and the feet very vehemently with vinegar, pouring the ſame alſo upon a hot ſtone, that the vapour thereof may aſcend into the noſe; you muſt alſo call earneſtly upon him, pull him by the hair or by the noſe, and uſe ſuch like things more for the ſame, as be ſhewed in the firſt part the 12. chapter, and 10. §. for when as theſe vapours do aſcend forcibly into the head, then is the dead Palſey to be expected. Whereas is unquenchable thirſt, there muſt the water be mingled with vinegar, and hold theſe loſinges following under the tongue: Take the juyce of unripe Grapes, of Sorrell, of Lettice, wine of Pomgranates, and white Vinegar, of each an ounce, put thereto white Sugar and Sugarcandy, as much as is thought meet, letting it ſeeth ſo long together as ſhall ſuffice to make loſinges of it. Here is now ſufficiently treated of the *Synochus*, and of other hot agues.

The ninth Chapter.

Of the Quotidian Ague, Quotidiana.

THe cauſe of this daily ague proceedeth of a putrifyed *Phlegma*, and ſlimy corruption, which nature forceth towards the exterior parts of the body, and there ingendereth ſuch a cold, which may be called rather a ſhaking then right cold, wherewith ſo burtheneth and ſuppreſſeth nature, that therby the pulſes are faint, and unnatural heat ſtirred up, and the pulſes are found unequal. When as the cold avoideth, then by and by followeth the heat, which is ſhorter then the cold, continueth longer becauſe of her ſlowneſſe, and by reaſon of her toughneſſe; whereby this ague cometh to her ſtate very ſlowly, and declineth very ſodainly: ſo that it happeneth therein as if one lay green wood upon the fire, where the moyſture withſtandeth and ſuppreſſeth the heat, and remaineth ſo long without burning till all the moyſture be conſumed, and then ſodainly burneth away as long as there remaineth any wood.

The occaſion of this ague is outwardly cold and moyſt ayre, the long uſe of cold and moyſt meat, as fiſh, fruit, and ſuch like, and unaccuſtomed idleneſſe, to bathe much in ſweet waters and great rioting.

Item, if the body be overcharged with overmoyſt and ſlimy humours that putrify in the body, go out of the veins, and ſend ſtinking vapours towards the heart, whereof an ague might enſue. This ague is alſo very eaſily by her ſigns to be known from the tertian ague, for it beginneth not by and by after the firſt day with cold, but beginneth by little and little: alſo the pulſe altereth not, as it doth in the tertian ague. The Patient complaineth of no great heat, of no ſhort breathing, neither of any great thirſt. His urine is like unto the urine of ſuch as have new gotten the quartain ague, not knowing of any ſweat at the beginning, but in time doth he perceive it: ſo that theſe ſigns are ſo manifeſtly differing from the tertian ague, that they ſeeme to have no communion at all.

Alſo one may perceive by this Patient that the heat is ſomewhat mixt with a vapour, which appeareth outwardly, alſo the pulſes of this Ague be much fainter then the tertian

or quartain agues. The tongue is moyſt, and he is quickly provoked to vomit, whereby he caſteth up much filth: and in like manner is the going to the privie cold by nature, moyſt, undigeſted, wateriſh, and full of vapors. The urine is white and thin, and otherwhiles thick and troubled, and the whole body full of wateriſh humours. All bodies that live in quiet, are fat and moyſt, haunting daily riotouſneſſe and ſurfetting, much bathing in freſh waters, and ſuch as have their habitations neer to moiſt places, are moſt of all ſubiect to this diſeaſe. To conclude, this ague long enduring is not without peril of life.

Now to remedie and cure this ague the better, you muſt above all obſerve theſe rules following: Firſt, this Patient is to uſe that which warmeth and attenuateth the humour.

Secondly, if the Patient can hardly caſt or vomit, then is it a ſign that the tough phlegme of the ſtomach muſt be incided.

Thirdly, you are in the beginning of the ague to force the Patient to vomit, whereby the matter or humour might partly be abated.

Fourthly, theſe inciding and attenuating medicines muſt be uſed from the beginning to the very ending of the malady, yet now and then, as the Phyſitian thinketh meet.

Fifthly, all kind of agues in the beginning do accord with theſe three things, to wit, that the nature, be brought through eaſie means to be laxative, to provoke vomit, and moreover to uſe ſuch things that do incide and attenuate the matter and expel urine.

Sixthly, for as much as the debility of the ſtomach and of the Liver is an occaſion of many filthy humours, therefore need requireth that you ſeek to comfort and open the ſame, and alſo the ſpleen.

Seventhly, for that this ague from the beginning till it come to the higheſt ſtate, requireth much time; therefore you are to conſider of the Patient accordingly, and to give him much or little meat.

Eighthly, one muſt in the beginning of the ague, and likewiſe as often alſo as it aſſayleth keep the Patient awake, and that ſo long till it begin to decline, that the expulſion of the humours be not thereby hindered.

Ninthly, he is not to be fed ſo long as the fit of the ague endureth, but a good ſpace before, and afterwards, unleſſe that ſome debility and weakneſſe require the contrary. And how theſe agues are by medicines to be cured, that is before in the fift part, the 20 chapter ſufficiently taught and expreſſed, whereby every one may govern himſelf: and eſpecially theſe pils here following are to be prepared for theſe phlegmatick agues: Take the rinds of *Myrobalani Chebuli*, Rubarb, Cinamom, Cardamom, and cloves of each 1 drach. Aloe three drach. beat all theſe together very ſmall, and with the juyce of Mint, wherein a drach and a half of *Agaricus* is ſteeped: then make pils thereof, and every morning and evening, take half a drach at once.

You are alſo to receive a potion that is deſcribed in the third part, the twelfth chapter beginning thus, take Gentian, &c.

You are in general at the firſt to uſe alwayes for theſe agues *Oxymel* and other things more that provoke urine, as hath been taught in the third part the 18. chapter.

This Patient is alſo to uſe none other meat then ſuch as doth ſeparate the tough phlegme and expelleth it. In like manner when the ague is at the ſtate, then muſt care be had for the mouth of the ſtomach, like as there are therefore divers medicines ordained in the deſcription of the ſtomach in the third part, the 11. chapter. Vomiting is for theſe agues paſſing good, for thereby will many ſlimy humours be expelled: And how to provoke vomit, you may ſearch and find in the firſt Regiſter.

The tenth Chapter.

Of the Quartain Ague, Quartana.

WHen as theſe Quartain Agues are mixt with other agues then hath the beginning of Melancholy, as the Quotidian ague of *Phlegma*. And becauſe the black melancholick blood hath his reſidence in the Milt: it will commonly be felt in the ſame place at the beginning. This ague is (as her cauſe is) cold and dry. Albeit the ſame humours are very groſſe, cold, and heavy, yet doth their cold nature not appeare forthwith, to wit, in the beginning, or the firſt day, but by little and little, as it ingendereth: ſo that the cold (when the ague is at the higheſt)

higheſt) doth not otherwiſe ſhew it ſelf, then it doth unto ſuch as are ſtiffened by extream cold in the hard winter; and it is to be likened by a ſtone, muskle, or bone, which lying in the fire and being hot, you cannot well know the heat till you feel it.

So fareth it alſo with melancholike humours, when they happen to kindle, then remaineth there no moiſture till they be clean burnt: and therefore are they the longer before they kindle then any other, for that (as is ſaid) the corruption cometh to kindle by little and little.

By the foreſaid occaſions it cometh to paſſe alſo that pulſe beateth very ſlow, faint and longſome, yea in young folks ſo very faint, that they may be likened to old folks: for as this Ague beginneth to increaſe and attain to the higheſt, then will the pulſe be the more ſwifter and forcible, yet not ſo ſtrong as it is in the Tertian Ague, whereof we will further write and make mention.

The cauſes of this quartain Ague are (even as aboveſaid) firſt the melancholike blood, time of the harveſt, and after that the winter, for that at theſe ſeaſons theſe humours are not onely ſtirred, but alſo augmented more vehement and durable, ſo that otherwhile they endure untill winter; whereas to the contrary the ſame are ſhorter in ſommer, and the rather, if the nature of the country be inclined that way; and the time of the year otherwhiles is ſuch, that it ingendreth foul blood, whereby then ſuch and other Agues are cauſed. Wherefore good heed muſt be taken to all theſe foreſaid things; and in like manner whether the Patient be not of a melancholike nature, and hath not uſed before to eat ſuch kinds of meats, whereof this melancholike blood is ingendered or increaſed, as bread of Millet, Lentils, Beans, Cheſtnuts, ſalt Cheeſe, ſalt fiſh, Beef, Hares, Harts, Cabbages, and ſuch like. Item, all other things that inflame the blood, as Garlick, Creſſes, Pepper, Muſtard, ſtrong and ſpiced wines, burnt wine, and all kinds of hot ſpice or fruits; but eſpecially great labour, travel in the heat of the Sun, long anger, great ſorrow, and long former Agues, whereby the blood and other humours are burnt and putrified, and are altered by the great heat into *Melancholiam* before they be expelled, whereof you have further inſtruction in the deſcription of Melancholy, and of the ſtomach.

Item, have ſpecial care whether the Milt of the Patient be not ſwoln, or have any other infirmity, Or whether the Patient have before had no erratick Ague, for that the quartain Ague never cometh alone, but commonly alwayes after another Ague.

You muſt alwayes mark well, whether the urine be white, thin, and wateriſh; in theſe things, as alſo in the pulſe and cold doth it altogether differ from the tertian, but regard not you the vomiting of the gall, for that is the onely nature of the tertian ague: but if you find by the motion of the pulſe or otherwiſe, after the ague is gone, or if there be any ſigns of the ague, then is there no doubt at all but that it is a quartain Ague.

Now to cure this ague, we will firſt of all ſhew you certain rules; and for the firſt, if the pulſe be forcible, and beateth ſwiftly, the water be red and groſſe, the Patient be young and full of blood, then ſhall you not omit, but open the *Baſilica* or Milt vein on the left hand: but if the blood be red and clear, then ſtop it again; but if it be thick and black, then let it run, and that ſo long as the parties ſtrength be able to bear it. Secondly, if ſo be that the Patient have not much blood, let him then not bleed at all. Thirdly, you muſt not give to any that is taken with the Ague any ſtrong purgation at the firſt, by reaſon that all melancholike humours are very tough and groſſe, and the ſame may not be purged in the beginning, but mild purgations muſt be uſed, and gentle cliſters. Fourthly, all meats and drinks that are prepared daily for the Patient, ſhall be laxative, that he may alwayes have ſome evacuation. Fiftly, againſt ſuch time as the Ague approacheth, the patient muſt at any hand refrain food, that nature thereby may work the better on the matter of the Ague, alſo the eaſier expel and withſtand it. Sixtly, he may not bathe until the Ague begin to decreaſe. Seventhly, he muſt forbear all fruits, by reaſon of their groſſe moiſture that lightly doth putrifie, and may provoke obſtructions. Eighthly, theſe Patients muſt take heed of the cold air, and ſettle themſelves in temperate dwellings. Ninthly, they that have any obſtruction in their veins, are to uſe ſuch meats and drinks that warm and moiſten. Tenthly, becauſe that this humour is compact, and the ſtate therof a great while after it beginneth, the Patient is not to be kept overſparingly, but let him be cheriſhed with meat, that he may retain his force and ſtrength, and expect the iſſue of the diſeaſe. Eleventhly, for this kind of ſickneſſe you muſt not give any overhot and dry things, for fear that the Ague be not thereby doubled, prolonged

and altered into a continual ague. Twelfthly, you are not to use overcold remedies, because they do thicken and harden the matter, wherefore mild means are alwaies to be used and taken.

Out of these foresaid rules it is easily to be understood, that no strong medicines are to be used in the beginning of this ague, except that one see that there is great store of blood at hand, at which time the Median may be opened in the right arm.

Also if the blood be black and thick, as it happeneth to be of such that have a diseased spleen, then may one let it run the longer; but if it be red and clean, then must it be presently stopt.

The ordinance and government of his life must be such, that he feed not upon any thing that provoketh or breedeth wind, but use all meats that ingender good blood, and keep the body open and soluble: and if any defect be hereof, then must a mild clister be ministred. Also, he shall forbear swines flesh, and all meats that are slimy and hard of digestion, and of all that which might make the body cold and dry.

His drink must be thin white wine, his meat all manner of field fowls, but no water fowls; fish of light digestion, and not slimy, salt meats and mustard may be also use. Also he may sometimes use the confection *Diatrion pipereon*, or *Diaspoliticon*: and although the patient did drink every day a little pepper with water, it were not amisse. This Patient shall not wholly forbear from riding, walking, and from baths, if he hath been accustomed to it, yet is the bath not very good for him.

If this quartain ague be not very strong, nor yet continue long, then can it not hurt, if the patient upon his free dayes do execute his affairs and businesse. But about the time as is supposed that the ague is come to the highest state, then must the patient feed very moderately, yea more sparingly then ever before, keeping himself very quiet, and annoint the belly with such things as may keep the body open and soluble: and also use such things as provoke urine, whereof you shall find good instruction at due time and place.

And as soon as one perceiveth that the humours begin to avoid, then are those things to be used that expel melancholy, and that not once, but as often as need shall require.

Also to provoke him to vomit, and that after meat, and (if need be) let him take a little black Hellebore therewith to ease and further the vomiting.

But they that cannot vomit must be purged; Treacle is also passing good for them: yea it is to be noted, that none of these foresaid things may be used before the sickness be at the highest, for thereby might of a single quartain ague be made a double; and lastly of a double quartain a three double ague.

Gal. writeth (out of whom this counsel is gathered) that he knew a Physician, who (before the quartain was at the highest) gave his patient Treacle, whereby the same ague so increased that he dyed thereof.

When as this order hath been observed in this ague, then do the later Physicians teach that these things following are very fit to be used.

Take Ginger one ounce, cut it small, and then seeth it in red wine until there remain five ounces, then mingle therewith one ounce and a half of the Julep of Violets, and so drink it, to wit, two hours before the ague cometh upon you, and the same will make you sweat throughly.

Item, take an ounce of the juice of Plantain two hours before the fit of the ague approcheth, it will remove the ague. The water of *Cardus Benedictus*, or the herb sod in Wine and drunken, cureth the ague. The common people take the powder of this herb and throw it upon a shive or twain of bread that is soked in burnt wine or *aqua vitæ*, and so eat the bread before the ague come. *Oxymel scilliticum compositum* openeth all obstructions in the quartain and tertian ague.

Some commend the wine of *Asphodelus* roots, for this root hath the nature of the Hellebore, it drieth all inward parts, and provoketh urine, and will therefore also expel the ague. The like vertues are ascribed to the wines of Harts tongue, of Hyssope, and of *Chamæpitys*. The Syrup of *Oxysaccara* is also passing good.

The

The eleventh Chapter.

Of the Consumption or Ethick Hectica.

THis is one of the moſt perillous Agues that may light upon a man, for by her hot and dry operation ſhe dryeth up all natural moiſture of mans body. This *Hectica* is not ſatisfied with the hurt that it doth to all natural moiſture and vital ſpirits, but it dryeth alſo all nourihing parts, and all the fleſh of the whole body, yea the marrow of the bones alſo, ſo that it may duely and rightly be called the conſuming Ague.

This deſtroying heat beginneth firſt in the heart, of the Ague which is termed *Cauſon*, that is, the burning Fever, whereof we have written in the ſeventh Chap. which continueth there ſo long until it conſume the very ſap and moiſture of the heart. And albeit it doth not conſume and waſte all the moiſture of the heart, yet doth it burn and ſpoil the ſame. For it fareth with the heart as with a wick in a Lamp, that at the beginning doth burn light and clear; but the longer that it burneth, the harder, and the more burnt, the drier it waxeth, where by a little and a little it loſeth light and extinguiſheth: and albeit more oyl be poured unto it, yet burneth it not then the brighter, but the flame remaineth ſmall and ſlack, and the longer that it burneth, the darker it is, till at the laſt all of it goeth clean out of it ſelf. So fareth it alſo with this *Hectica*, with or without an ague, as plainly may appear in very old men, which are commonly ſaid to dye like a lamp or candle. This is to be noted alſo in children, that ſometimes alſo uſe to abate and fall away.

This Conſumption, namely that which is without an ague, is called of the Greeks *Marasmodes*, that is a Conſumption; and of the Latiniſts *Senectus*, that is, old age, whereby we may call it the infection of the heart, whereof we have ſpoken in the ſecond Part, the ſixt Chapter §. 9. In like manner in the deſcription of the Conſumption, in the fifth Chap. §. 22.

When this *Hectica* ſpreadeth her ſelf over all the whole body, drying it altogether up, then is it (as we have already told) called *Marasmodes*.

This ſickneſſe is incurable, and above all mens help, for that the natural heat would quickly like a tree (through very great age, or in them that lie about the fire) through extream heat be dryed away.

The cauſes of this *Hectica*, are all outward things, which do heat the parts of the body, whereby many agues might be provoked, whence at the laſt this conſumption is founded and ſpringeth.

Item, the hunger and thirſt, if they be not remedied betimes, the which for the moſt part happeth to cholerick and lean men, who falling into a quotidian ague, are thereby ſpeedily turned into a burning, and laſtly into this ague *Hectica*.

Item, the periſhing of the lights may very well be a cauſe of this *Hectica*, whereby is hindered that the freſh air may not cool the heart ſufficiently, and there be other more occaſions, whereby the heart may be inflamed.

We will now admonith ſomewhat of her ſigns. They that fall into *Tabem*, that is, into a Conſumption, are eaſily to be diſcerned; for before that one come to feel their pulſes, one may ſee how their eyes be ſunk and fallen into their heads.

The apples of their eyes will be dry in this agony and wrinkled, and the fleſh round about their eyes fallen away, ſo that one may otherwhiles almoſt ſee the bones of their brows.

It ſeemeth alſo otherwhiles, that their diſeaſed perſons face is ſo beſulted with dry duſt, as if it is in them that have gone the whole day through the duſt in the heat of the Sun. Alſo the lively raddineſſe and colour over all the whole body is vaniſhed and gone: and likewiſe the skin of their forehead is hardened and ſhrunk, that they ſeem to cloſe their eyelids very badly: and ſleeping, they lie with their eyes half open, which can be no due ſleep, but rather an over-great watching, and the fleſh in the temples of the head doth ſo waſte away, that there ſeemeth to be a great hollowneſſe. To conclude, there remaineth no more then the very skin & the bones, ſo that when one ſeeth their naked, he would judge

morning

none other than that the carkaſſe were covered with a dry skin, and that all the intrails are taken out, or lye hid in the breaſt: and when as one toucheth the skin and plucketh it hard, then ſhall he find it, through dry, and it ſeemeth that by plucking it will follow. Theſe ſick perſons have a hard pulſe, and at the firſt touching of them doth one perceive ſmall heat, but when you hold your hand long upon them, then may you feel the heat under your hand increaſe, and divers ſuch like ſigns more.

Of this malady *Hectica* and *Tabes* is a great diſputation, whereof here we will not make many words, but will commend that matter to the learned: yet nevertheleſſe before we come to the cure, we will briefly admoniſh thus much, that ſuch as be of a moiſt nature in the beginning of the Conſumption, are not aſſailed with this Ague *Hectica*, but they onely that be dry of nature, and ſomewhat hot, and therewith do great labour, watch much, and live in carefulneſſe, where their natural moiſture is waſted and ſpent, theſe preſently are taken with this ague *Hectica*, and ſpecially ſuch as chafe much, live in extream ſorrow, or frequent great heat. And although this ſickneſſe when it hath long endured, and is once rooted into the body, be thought incurable, yet nevertheleſſe men muſt not diſdain the help and means which God the Lord hath ordained for the uſe of man, but pray heartily unto him that he will bleſſe them for the glory of his holy name.

Wherefore theſe rules following are to be obſerved and imitated, for thereby may be gathered a perfect cure of this ſickneſſe. Firſt, it is needful for the languiſhing perſons that they uſe all things that may moyſten and cool. Secondly, becauſe theſe diſeaſed perſons muſt neither be purged nor warmed, therefore the warm bath is alſo hurtful, for thereby the heat is increaſed. Thirdly, all their meat and drink muſt be cooling and moiſtening, or at the leaſtwiſe temperate, as barly pap, *Ptiſana*, henbroth, and *Panada*. Fourthly, the curing of this *Hectica* is like to that in the drouth of the ſtomack, whereof we have written in the third Part, the ſecond Chapter, and ſeventh Section yet are cooling things hereto required, by reaſon of the great heat of the ague. Fifthly, if need require that other meats are to be miniſtred unto him which are not cooling, as namely Wine and freſh broth, yet nevertheleſſe therewith are cooling things to be uſed.

Sixthly, if the ague proceed of any impoſtume or bruiſe of ſome other part, then ſpecial regard be had for the healing thereof, and that the liver be cooled and brought in courſe. Seventhly, a good cool aire is one of the principal helps, and therewith freſh linnen alſo that is waſhed in water, where Roſes, Willow leaves, or *Theobiſis de Camphora* be ſteeped. In like manner Roſewater is very commodious for it. Eightly, the ſmell of Camphire, Roſewater, freſh Poppy heads, Roſes, Saunders, and ſuch like, is very requiſite and profitable for this Patient. Ninthly, all cooling plaiſters (wherein no aſtringent things are intermingled) are to be laid on his breſt. Tenthly, if this diſeaſed perſon deſire to have health, then muſt he (ſo far as is poſſible) incline himſelf to ſleep, and to all quietneſſe and reſt, and keep himſelf from thirſt, hunger, penſiveneſſe, anger, hatred, and much ſorrow. Eleventhly, he muſt not ſleep upon any thing but a mattreſſe. Twelfthly, it is alſo marvellous good for this ſickneſſe to keep by the noiſe and ruſhing of waters, or by ſpringing fountains. It is very good to hang up all green things about his bed, or to ſprinkle his chamber with the water wherein ſuch herbs are or ſhall be ſodden. Thirteenthly, Goats milk or aſſes milk, whereof that is beſt of them that are fed in a medow where cool herbs grow, is a moſt ſoveraign medicine for this malady. Fourteenthly, womens milk ſurpaſſeth all other milks. Fifteenthly, buttermilk is likewiſe very good for this ſickneſſe. Sixteenthly, to conclude, for Conſumptions are all manner of milks from the beginning to the ending of May very excellent good; and all good freſh henbroth ſodden with Lettice, Purſlain and verjuice, is exceeding profitable for the Patient.

But above all things ſpecial care is to be had that he obſerve and keep a good diet, wherefore he is to eat and drink but little, uſing alwayes ſuch meats as do nouriſh well, to wit, Eſcants, Partridges, young Quails, and ſuch like, as hens fleſh, Veal, Mutton and Lambs broth, &c. wherein Lettice, Purſlain, and ſuch like cooling herbs are ſodden.

And as we have declared before, let him uſe alwaies Goats milk or Aſſes milk, and above all womans milk, for all theſe are ſo highly commended for this diſeaſe, that it is not poſſible to tell of any thing that may exceed them, to help and cure this malady. Let him uſe any of theſe, or any other good milk in ſuch meaſure that he be not cloyed by taking too much thereof at once, but to take it the oftner, and namely, betimes in the morning

morning meetly warm, or when it is new milked, and that about 2. ounces thereof at once, and then afterwards in the day time four times more, about three or four ounces at once, so that 5. draughts be taken within 24. hours.

His meat must be (as is said) Barly pap that is dresst with fresh broth, and pap of starch, or that is made with grated bread, and wherein also one of the foresaid herbs are sodden, sometimes one of them, and sometime another. Pease broth wherein Hens or any other thing is sodden, or of it self, is passing good.

The very best drink for this disease is Barly water wherein sugar pennets is dissolved: and to retain the patients strength, you are to permit unto him thin white Wine, that which is very clear, being mingled with fair water, when he sitteth at meat: but the meal-tide being past, let him drink nothing but Barly water.

They that are quelled with this malady, have for the most part alwayes a very dry mouth, dry tongue, and great thirst, whereto prepare these confections following, and hold them in his mouth to refresh the same therewith; Take the seeds of Fleawort and Quince kernels, of each three ounces, steep them 7. or 8. hours together in luke-warm water, presse out the muscilage, put thereto afterwards the juyce of Pomgranats two ounces, Sugarcandy one ounce and a half, starch as much as is meet for to make it in form of a confection. If you will have it to drink after the manner of a Julep, then leave out the starch, and put thereto the water of Purslain and of Citruls, of each 8. ounces, and so let it seethe a little together; and lastly clarifie it with the white of an Egg. If one hold green Lettice or Purslain in his mouth, that refresheth it much.

You have also in the third part, the 12. Chapter and 10. §. and afterwards in the seventeenth Chapter and 7. § very many things which are all good against the thirst, where you may have choyce of that which is best for this malady.

These cooling and comfortable medicines following are to be daily used for refreshing and comforting, namely, conserves of Roses, conserves of water Lillies, and the sirups of them both, conserves of Cicory. In like manner also the roots of the same in a Sallad or confected, are very meet for it.

The confected Citrons, and the juyce thereof; the juyce and sirup of Orenges, conserves of white Roses, and all that is made thereof, is for this purpose highly commended, for they cool more then red Roses.

Secondly, the Kidneyes, and back bone are also through this malady very much tormented with a great heat; whereto is very commodious the salve of Roses, wherewith he must be anointed 6. or 7. times in 24. hours. Also it is very good to moisten the back bone often with milk, and also to anoint it with oyl of Roses or with oyl of Violets.

Thirdly, there happeneth otherwhiles to this Patient (that is feeble already) a sore sweat, which may cast the patient altogether down, which may by the foresaid means be hindred. But if that will not help, then besprinkle the face and the whole body often with this water following; Take 12. ounces of Rosewater, one quartet of an ounce of Camphire, Purslain seeds and red Saunders, of each a drach, one quarter of an ounce of starch, mingle them all together.

This drink following is also highly commended: Take 6. or 7. river Crabs, lay them in a quart of water, then cast therein a handful of ashes, and let them stand 4. hours long, afterwards rub them well therewith, and wash them clean with fair water 3. or 4. times, and so seethe them, and take the tayles of them, chop them very small, and seethe them again with a quart of Barly water till they be almost consumed; then strain the broth through a cloth, and give thereof 3. or 4. ounces every time to the Patient to drink when you will. But if you will have this water to cool more mode and nourishment, then seethe the Crabs whole and unrent, and not so long time as is aforesaid.

After this manner may you also dresse a Tortoyse that dwelt in fresh water, and is exceeding good for this disease.

The small fishes that are taken in fresh waters, are very commodious for this disease, if they be taken without spice.

In the description of the consumption *Phthisis*, in the second part, the 5. Chapter, and also are many kinds of remedies prescribed for this *Hrtisan*, and afterwards also in the 6. Chapter of the panting of the heart through heat, are divers cullises described that are very good and profitable to be drunken.

You may also prepare these confections following for the same: take of the white

flesh

fleſh of a young Hen or Capon ſix ounces, ſtarch one ounce and a half, new oyl of ſweat Almonds ſix ounces, five whites of new laid Eggs; let the oyl, ſtarch, and Eggs ſeethe together on a ſoft fire untill it be thick, afterwards mingle the fleſh of a Capon being chopt ſmall amongſt them, and make cakes thereof, where of the patient may uſe a little at each time, and as often as him pleaſe, which alſo is as good as if he took much at once, ſeldom, and better. Or prepare this following: Take white Poppy ſeeds, peeled ſeeds of Melons, Citruls, Cucumbers, and of Pompeons, of each a quarter of an ounce, Almonds, Hafel nuts: Piſtacies (all of them ſhaled) and Sebeſtes, of each 3. drachmes, Pingles that have been ſteeped 24. hours before in Roſewater 5. drach. conſerves of Burrage, Bugloſſe and *Species Diarrhodon Abbatis* of eachone quarter of an ounce, conſerve of Roſes five drachmes, *Manus Chriſti* with pearls and ſugar pennets, of each half an ounce, roſted Capons fleſh two ounces, white fleſh of Hens that is ſtuft and dreſt with Bugloſſe, Baulm, Burrage, and Endive three ounces; cut both of theſe ſmall, and then mingle therewith *Species Diambra* and *de Gemmis*, of each half a drachme, *Doronicum*, Saffron, Cinamom, Roſes, and red Coral, of each five drach. *Species Diatriaſantalon*, and grains, prepared pearls a quarter of an ounce, Sugar ſodden as thick as hony, as much as need requireth for to make a confection, mingle them well, and uſe it, as the aforeſaid, one quarter of an ounce at once.

There is alſo uſually made for this a confection of oyl of ſweet Almonds, ſtarch, and Sugar. The preſerved Gourds are alſo wonderful good againſt this unnatural heat.

Of the Ague Hectica, *with a pain in the breaſt*, Empyema *and* Phthiſis. §. 1.

IN this compounded Ague, which it placed amongſt the *Putridæ* or putrified Agues, there doth appear beſides the former ſigns, cold, and a very ſtifneſſe of cold, which cometh at uncertain times, ſometimes by day and otherwhiles by night, and that alwayes unſtedfaſt, which happeth by the diverſity of the humours; whereof now the one and then the other is ſtirred up and inflamed. The corruption which is gathered together in the breaſt, out of the head, or out of the veins, doth chiefly cauſe this conſumption, which lyeth there putrified and mingled with the blood, is caſt out and expelled; and albeit that this kind of conſumption and alſo the former be incurable, yet you muſt be marvellous diligent by theſe means following to accompliſh health as far as it is poſſible.

Firſt, therefore you muſt refrain and ſhun all things that are ſharpe and ſalt, as Muſtard, Radiſhes, Onions, Garlick, and ſuch like.

Item, all flatulent and windy things, and all that is cold by nature and hard of digeſtion, as unſodden milk, porredge of Peaſe or Beans, unleavened and dough baked bread, Verjuyce and Lemons &c.

His drink muſt be good common clear Beer, or any thin red ſweet Wine, but he muſt refrain from ſtrong wine and beer: but if he cannot bear wine nor beer, then give him to drink good ſugred Barly water.

Young Lambs fleſh, young ſwine, Muttons of a year old, and Calves, are very wholſome meat for him. Alſo Larks, wood fowls, Partridges Feaſants, and Hares; and ſpecially river Crabs ſod in Barly water or milk, are paſſing good.

Colewarts ſodden, ſtrew Barly dreſt with ſtarch, Calves feet ſodden in Vinegar, the lights of all beaſts, but chiefly of Foxes and hogs, rere ſodden Eggs, or the ſame dreſt with other meat, freſh Butter and Cheeſe but little ſalted, milk pap, three or four dry Figs eaten before meals, and ſweet Pomgranats roſted in the warm aſhes, are all of them much nourſhing. After meat let him alſo eat three or four roſted hafel nuts, and Saffron and Cinamom in his meat exchſurably.

Theſe confections following are alſo moſt commodious for him: Take white Poppy ſeeds an ounce, roſted fleſh of a Capon 4. ounces, ſtarch three quarters of an ounce, prepared Pingles 4 ounces, peeled Almonds 3. ounces, Roſes three drach. yellow Saunders and Mace, of each a quarter of an ounce, Cinamom three quarters of an ounce, Cloves half an ounce, *Lignum Aloes* two drachmes and a half, Nutmegs a drachme, Amber two ſcruples, Muſk 6. grains, freſh oyl of ſweet Almonds 4 ounces, Sugar which is ſodden with Roſewater and Baulme water, as much as need requireth for a confection; mingle all theſe well together beaten and ſhred ſmall, take thereof every morning and evening half an ounce every time before meat.

And when as this diſeaſe falleth out of the head into the breaſt, and that this Ague doth

Hectica

Hectica hath from thence her beginning, then muſt ſpecial care be had for to comfort the brains, which may thus be compaſſed. Firſt, let the head be ſhaven bald, and then upon the naked ſhaven head lay this plaiſter following: Take *Landanum* a drachme and a half, Roſin and red Storax, of each three quarters of an ounce, Maſtick, Roſes and white Coral, of each half a drachme, *Sandarach* a drachme and a half, Mace, two ſcruples, Cloves 1. ſcruple; diſſolve the gum and Roſin in vinegar that is not too eager, then mingle it all together with molten Wax, and make thereof two round plaiſters, which you may lay thereon, now one and then another.

Secondly, take a little piece of Maſtick, chew the ſame once a day at the leaſt a long time, and then ſpet out the moiſture, and about the third evening let him alwayes afterment ſwallow a piece of Maſtick.

Thirdly, the 5. night when he goeth to bed let him take a drachme and a half of this confection following: Take of the confection *Diapapaver* half an ounce, Frankincenſe and *Sandarach*, of each 8. grains, and mingle them all together.

Fourthly, take of the confection of *Ech de Pino*, and *de Papavere*, of each an ounce, prepared Fox lights one quarter of an ounce, Irecos two ſcruples, flowers of Centory half a ſcruple, make a confection thereof with Vine cuict, whereof the patient is to take every morning two or three drachmes, and likewiſe at night as much more, to wit, two hours after meat. Alſo you may drink it mingled with warm barly water, or with ſweet wine, and ſo drink it. Alſo the Patient may take of this confection into his mouth, and ſo ſwallow it up oftentimes.

Fifthly, take two ounces of Currans, a drachme of ſliced Licorice, Hyſſop and Horehound, of each 2. ſcruples, yellow ſeeds of Roſes 2. drachmes, prepared Fox lights one drachme and a half, Dragagant and Gum, of each a drachme, melt the gum in Vine cuict, half a ſcruple of Saffron, white Pepper five grains, and white Sugar thrice as much as all the reſt do weigh, make it to powder, whereof let him eat a ſpoonful after dinner and ſupper.

Sixtly, when as the patient hath uſed ten dayes long the foreſaid three things, then let him take theſe things following other ten dayes: Take diſtilled Colewort water two ounces, water of blew Flower-delice flowers, and of Horehound, of each half an ounce, powdered Elecampane roots and Mouſe ear that groweth on the mountains of each a ſcruple, which the patient muſt take luke-warm early in the morning, and faſt four hours after.

Seventhly, take Knotgraſſe, Mouſe ear, Roſes, red Coral, Bloodſtone, and yellow Amber, of each one ſcruple, Dragagant half a ſcruple, Honey of Violets, and Sugar pennets, of each three quarters of an ounce. Afterward ſeethe the honey and Sugar until it be thick, and then mingle them with it, and take thereof an hour before ſupper a ſpoonful, and again as much when as at midnight.

Eightly, (this being done) you muſt uſe this confection following: Take freſh roots of blew Flower-delice one ounce, freſh Elecampane roots half an ounce, Comfry, Daiſies, juyce of Sloes, Dragagant and Gum, of each a ſcruple, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, and Sarcocolla (prepared with womens milk,) of each half a drachme, Bloodſtone, yellow Amber, Dragons blood, prepared Fox lights, Centory flowers, Mirtle ſeed, Knotgraſſe, Mouſe ear and Briony, of each two ſcruples, diſſolve all the gums in the muſilage or juyce of thoſe ſeeds that were ſteeped in warm honey water, let them ſeethe therein, ſcumming it alwayes: and when it is ſod to pap, to wit, the herbs and the roots, then ſtrain the juyce through a cloth, and put thereto two ounces of ſweet wine, Currans half an ounce, and 10. or 12. Dates; pownd all the ſame very ſmall, and mingle then the Gums with the reſt of the foreſaid things, alſo half a drachme of Saffron, powdered Saxifrage a drachme and half; whereof give the patient a ſpoonful in the morning, and half an hour before both his meals, half as much, and let him ſwallow it down with a little ſod Lettice. This cleanſeth the breaſt, engendreth flegm, and withall dammifieth not the breath.

Ninthly, when the patient hath uſed this confection four dayes long, then let him take of theſe pils following, to wit, in the morning three, and three more before noon, and alſo before ſupper other three more. This muſt he continue four dayes, or longer, even as the cauſe requireth. Take Lungwort, Knotgraſſe, Comfry, Daiſies, of each a drachme, Saffron, bicorne, Saxifrage, of each one ſcruple, fouch, ſealed

earth

earth, prepard Tuty, and Dragagant, of each two ſcruples, make pils thereof with the juyce of Comfry, and form 8. to a drachme.

Tenthly, if occaſion ſerve that the heart muſt alſo be ſtrengthened, and to quench and refreſh all drouth, and to cool and moiſten all heat, for which you ſhall take new conſerves of Roſes two ounces, conſerves of Bugloſſe one ounce, burnt Ivory, Roſes, ſeeds of Endive, of Purſlain and Lettice, of each a drachme and a half peeled Melon ſeed, Pompeon ſeed, Gourd ſeeds and peeled cucumber ſeeds, of each five drachmes, ſugar pennets two ounces, ſtarch one ounce, prepared crabs tailes (as in this Chapter not long ago is taught) four ounces, pownd all very ſmall, and mingled into a confection, then when he hath uſed the pils, let him take a ſpoonful thereof, and that in the morning early, and likewiſe again an hour and a half before both mealtides, and after them half as much.

Laſt of all, this patient muſt lay this ſmall bag upon his left breaſts: Take Violets, water Lillies, burnt Ivory, Roſes, red and white Coral, Harts bones, and *Doronicum*, of each a drachme and a half, the Jacinth ſtone, the Smaragde ſtone, and Saphire ſtone, of each half a ſcruple, pearls a drachme and a half, three leaves of beaten gold, and Mace one drachme and a half, ſaffron a ſcruple, Cardamom and Galangal, of each five grains, pownd each alone, and then mingle them all together, and laſtly make it into a ſilken cuſhion or little bag.

But if you covet to have the brains ſtrengthened, then look in the beginning of the firſt part for the pain of the head, and after that where the brains are deſcribed.

The twelfth Chapter.

Of the Ague Maraſmode.

OF this Ague and of the nature thereof we have in the former deſcribed *Hectica* made a plain demonſtration. This is of ſome taken for to be a ſecond *Hectica*.

In fine, they are both ſuch kind of Agues, that there is ſmall help of man to be had againſt them.

This properly is that which the Phyſitians call *Senectam*, that is, the old age, to wit, a conſuming of the whole body. The cauſes of this is, that the heat and the drouth get the maſtery, which might be cauſed when one is faſting and hath a cold ſtomach; In like manner alſo when one is overheated, and ſtraightway drinketh cold water upon it: Alſo the hot air and the heat of the time may well provoke and raiſe that which waſteth, dryeth up, and oftentimes expelleth the natural heat, whereby the body is ſuſtained, whereof the cold and drouth do follow.

Moreover, this ſickneſſe may be cauſed of the debility of natural heat which cannot nouriſh the whole body; and in like manner of cold vapours that aſcend towards the heart, and over-cool the ſame. Likewiſe of all cold cauſes that lye hidden in the body, as may be ſeen by very old folks.

Theſe are ſigns of this malady that it is without any Ague, but with a ſlow pulſe, with an extenuation of the whole body, without heat, and in feeling may a general cold be perceived: the urine is thin, white and waterish.

In fine, there are no other ſigns to be found then age, as are to be ſeen in very old folks.

Now to come to the remedies of this kind of conſumption, this patient ſhall uſe as neer as he may, all warm and moiſt things. He muſt often bathe himſelf in freſh warm water, and uſe many moiſtening cliſters, as the broth of Lambs heads, of tripes, of Hens, and the like: for theſe are very commodious for him, becauſe they moiſten the bowels, and refreſh and nouriſh the liver.

But you muſt put hereto neither ſalt nor any ſpice, that they be not too ſharp, and may be held in the longer. You muſt alſo take for this Cliſter not above 6. ounces of broth at once, but in four and twenty hours you are to miniſter three or four.

Alſo the rubbing or harping of the external parts after meals is greatly commended: and as much in the Ague *Hectica* is very hurtful; ſo is it in this diſeaſe *Marasmode* very

very commodious. Further, all light meats are passing good for him that are not slimy, as fresh broth, rear eggs, with a thin and pleasant Wine being measurably used, and such like.

Item, all the salves, plaisters, and other things which are prescribed for the Fever *Hectica*, may also be used in this sickness.

But for these diseases special heed is to be taken of cold, and of all things as in time they consume the radical humidity.

Those that will have any further declaration of this infirmity, let them read that which hath been said in the description of the consumption or feaver *Hectica*.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the long lingring Agues.

THe long continuing of Agues dependeth upon three kinds of causes.

First, when any one hath an outward sore which hardly will be cured.

Secondly, if the Patient or Physitian ever mistake, or keepeth some bad order.

Thirdly, this is also procured by some outward occasion, as by the time of the year, by continual rain, by the nature of the Countrey, by the unhealthfulness of the dwelling place, by great care and troubles of mind.

But when it is known that there are none of these foresaid occasions, then must it of necessity depend on the fourth cause, that is, on a grosse, tough and slimy humour. If therefore you will have remedy against the continuing of Agues, then must you cure and take away the foresaid causes with their contraries. For that these long continuing Agues are commonly caused by an obstruction of the liver, whereto these things following are principally good, to wit, *Syrupus Diarrhodon, de Cichorio, de Lupulis, de Eupatorio, de Capillo Veneris, Oxymel compositum, de Byssantiis, de Radicibus.* Item, the decoction of *Adiantum*, Harts tongue, Agrimony, Wormwood, Endive, Cicorie, of all, or of some of them. The common pestilential pills, called *Rasis*, and Rubarb, Cassie, *Hiera picra*, conserve of Prunes, *Agaricus*, and sirupe of Roses laxative, are also excellent good.

Item, you must boyl also Parsly roots with your meat: the Wine shall be mingled with water wherein Cinamom, Annifeed, Coriander, and Fennel roots are sodden.

You must anoint the liver with the salve that is described in the third Part, the twelfth Chapter, and 3. §. beginning thus, Take oyl of bitter Almonds, &c. in which place you shall find many more other remedies against the obstruction of the liver through heat and cold. For the liver being deoppilated and opened, then will the long lingring Ague be easily mitigated.

The fourteenth Chapter.

Of swellings that follow after the Ague.

IT cometh oftentimes to passe that some have their feet swolne after the long continuing of an Ague, then use a bath to sweat in, and take one ounce of the distilled water of Camomil flowers which hath been drawn onely out of the yellow seeds of the flowers. You must boyl in the water of this bath Sloe-leaves, and therewithal bathe and sweat. In the bathing you shall forbear from drink: but this bath is more commodious after some phlegmatick Agues, then after any hot Agues: and what order of dyet is to be observed after a lingring ague when the Patient beginneth to recover, hath been sufficiently shewed and declared in the third Chapter, and 12. §.

The

The fifteenth Chapter.

Of the Plague.

His moſt noiſome, terrible, and perillous malady of the Plague, is called of the Greeks *Epidemia*, and of the Latiniſts *Lues*, *Peſtis*, and *Peſtilentia*, which laſt name we alſo uſe. This malady is deſcribed by *Galen* after this manner.

The Plague is a ſickneſſe that doth infect all, or at the leaſt very many men, and is cauſed of the venemous ayr.

Or thus, The Plague is a diſeaſe that either ſpeedily killeth, or ſoon forſaketh a man.

And where ſuch ſickneſſes get the upper hand, there diſtreſſe and miſery abounddeth, for it hath been ſeen by experience that it hath made away men, cattel, and fowles of the ayr, yea many thouſands of fiſhes in the waters, and that not only villages and townes have been deprived thereby of all their inhabitants, but alſo great Cities and Countries have by the ſame been made deſolate.

The cauſes of the Plague. §. 1.

OF the natural cauſes of the Plague, there are as many opinions amongſt the Philoſophers, as there are cauſes that procure it; as namely of venemous vapours of the earth that are infected by ſome earthquakes: or if a countrey be hot, moyſt, full of ſtenches, full of lakes, or ſtill ſtanding waters, and cloyed with ſtench of dead bodies, as it oftentimes befalleth after great wars and ſlaughters; but eſpecially is the ayr infected as is above ſaid through ſin, whereby it may diverſly be venomed.

Alſo when the ayr is warm and moyſt, and that it doth rain much in time of heat, with a Southernly wind, whereof we will not at this preſent make any further diſcourſe; but they that deſire to have any ampler deſcription hereof, may read over the Philoſophers, and other learned Phyſitians.

But howſoever this is the moſt certain cauſe of this ſickneſſe, that God the Lord for our manifold ſins and wickedneſſe, to wit, idolatry, incredulity, and ingratitude, hath uſed this Plague and many afflictions more, as hunger, war, and ſhedding of blood, to puniſh the foreſaid ſins and tranſgreſſions. Theſe are his rods and ſcourges (even the miniſters of his wrath) to chaſtiſe the wicked world, as (through his Prophets) he hath foreſaid and threatned the world, and as both holy Scriptures and heathen Writers teſtifie, that it hath afterward enſued accordingly.

Signs of the Plague to come. §. 2.

FIrſt, it is a certain ſign that the ayr is infected, and that a Plague is to be expected, if in the end of the Sommer there appear Comets, or any other impreſſions, which men call flakes of fire, ſtars that fall or ſhoot, and ſuch like in the element, which proceed of vapours that are drawn out of the earth into the ayr, and there are kindled, whereby both men and cattel are infected.

Secondly, when any unaccuſtomed heap of beaſts are ſeen, as of Frogs, Toades, Graſhoppers, Mice, and Wormes, which oftentimes have been approved heretofore.

Thirdly, when in the Winter the South or Eaſt winds abound, miſty or foggy weather full of vapours, and glowing or drowſie, and like as it would rain, and yet raineth not at all: theſe are ſigns that the ayr is not as it ſhould be. Alſo if the ſpring of the year be cold and dry without rain, the wind Southernly, the ayr foggy and lowring, and ſtandeth ſo at a ſtay eight daies long, and then altereth into warmth: if theſe alterations often chance, then is it a certain and infallible ſign that the Plague is at hand. In like manner alſo is it a ſure token of the Plague to enſue, when in the Sommer time it is hot adaies and cold anights.

Item, when the Sommer is not hot, but gloomy and cloudy, and one day hot and another day cold, then muſt we look for a plague in harveſt. In like manner alſo if two or

three daies be very hot, and afterwards very cold, as it often chanceth, then doth it proghosticate a plague.

How to prevent the Plague. §. 3.

THere is no more Christian nor certain means for to escape this great punishment, then for a man to reconcile himself to his heavenly Father, and to pray unto him with much contrition and hearty repentance of his sins, that it would please him to withhold his threatenings and punishments for our due deseres, and that we acknowledge him from the bottom of our hearts to be the right only and true Physitian that will and can preserve us, be it living or dying, in perpetual health and welfare.

Yet notwithstanding hath he not in vain created natural means, nor forbidden us to use them, but rather all things, as Physicians, Physick, roots, herbs, seeds, and the aires, yea all that is above and under the earth for the benefit of man, and to serve him: therefore we ought duly to accept and receive the same as a most godly benefit and noble blessing of so good a God, and in no manner of wise to despise the same; and therefore are all learned Physitians most highly to be esteemed, that have found out so many meanes for all kind of diseases, as also for this present infection, and have revealed and made them known to mankind.

And to the end men may have a good instruction how this sickness may be holpen with the foresaid remedies, there shall be observed these three principal points: the first whereof is for the healthy, that thereby they may know what order is to be kept, whereby they might be freed from this venemous contagion.

Secondly, we are to shew, that if any be taken with the Ague, or other signs, with sores or biles, or not at all, what ought to be done to them, or what is to be left off.

Thirdly, we will speak of all such as keep those that are so diseased, and are to minister and serve them, for the which there be many approved and famous medicines selected, both by the ancient and latter Physitians; our most loving and merciful God give us his gracious blessing and prosperity to finish them.

First then it is generally concluded by all learned men, that forasmuch as the heart requireth a sweet, clean, and healthy ayr; like as the body requireth meat and drink; also that nothing is more venemous, noysome, nor hurtful for the same, then a foul stinking air; for thence cometh it especially, if a loose and unstayed life, either in excesse of meat, drink, exercise, incontinencie, wrath, and such like be adjoyned, that the venemous ayr with other infections, the sooner hurt the heart and inner parts, and by their contagion disease the whole body, and lastly bereave man of his vital breath.

How the healthy may be kept and preserved from the infection of the Plague. §. 4.

EVen as we have oftentimes heretofore admonished, so will we now shew by what means the hail and healthy may in the time of the Plague be freed and preserved from this contagious malady; therefore it is first of all needful to observe a good dyet in eating and drinking: and further, a fair clean dwelling which must be smoked and perfumed, thereby to correct and take away the corruption of the ayr.

For this must be used all fragrant things, to keep the body loose with laxative medicines, and to comfort the heart with cordials, and alwaies to take somewhat whereby all the parts of the body and the vital spirits might be comforted and defended against the venemous ayr, and contagion of others that we might be conversant withal, with many more things as shall hereafter appear.

And first of the order to be observed in dyet. It is passing good, and very needful for every body that wisheth to live out of the danger of the Plague, to take great heed that his body be not pestered with over many humours, nor overcharged with meat and drink, but to live very soberly, and that all such meat as he taketh must be more drying then moistening, for that whereas there is an unmeasurable fulnesse of the stomach, there are many bad humours ingendred, which afterwards by this contagion very easily are infected. Neither ought any body to eat before that he feel and find that his former meats are digested, and when nature by hunger or thirst requireth food, then satisfie her without longer delay: for as the overcharging of the stomach is a great cause of corruption, even so also doth an empty stomach procure bad humours. It is likewise very commodious, that

that all the Patients meat be rather cold then hot in operation, which must be dreſſed with ſowr and eager things, as we ſhall hereafter inſtruct you more at large. His bread muſt be of good wheat, well raiſed, baked, and ſeaſoned. Of fowles, the Partridges, land fowles, Pullets, Hens, Capons, and young Pigeons.

Item, young Weathers and Veal, yet rather roſted then ſodden, or elſe if it be ſodden, then muſt it be dreſt with ſowr things. And for that the Plague oftentimes infecteth all fourfooted beaſts, as Oxen, ſheep, ſwine, and ſometimes the very birds of the ayr, therefore great heed muſt be taken then that neither the fleſh nor the milk of them in any way be uſed: alſo the Magiſtrates ought not to permit any of the fleſh of thoſe beaſts ſo infected, to be ſold.

Note alſo, that in the time of the Plague all ſowr things are very wholſome, and therefore Vinegar is highly commended with all kind of meats, and eſpecially vinegar of Roſes, or of Gilloflowers, or of Framboyes. Item, horſe radiſh with Vinegar and Sorrel beaten for ſauce, Pomegranates, Saint Johns grapes, or *Ribes vulgaris*, Verjuice, preſerved Cherries, conſerves of Barberries, and all ſirupes that are made of theſe foreſaid things, unripe Grapes dreſt with their meat, new Limons and Citrons, thoſe are all very good to be uſed in time of the Plague.

Item, for all ſuch as have no pain in their eyes, nor ache in the head, are roſted Onions (or the ſame ſoftened in fair water) paſſing good: but Garlick above all the reſt (being dreſt in meats) is wonderful good, and much eſteemed for a preſervative againſt this kind of infection. Therefore it is commanded that men dip their bread in Vinegar, wherewith the juice of wild Thyme and of Garlick is tempered: alſo to eat the kernels of two or three Nuts dipped in the ſame.

And you may uſe this ſauce following with your meat: Take Vinegar and juice of Limons, temper it as you think good with pownded Walnuts, and with a little grated bread, and you may alſo (if you pleaſe) put thereto ſome Saffron and Cinamom. And you may make a temperature alſo with Currans and vinegar, fleſh broth, Cinamom, poched eggs are alſo permitted if they be uſed with yerjuice.

Of fruits, all that be ſowre are onely tolerated. And you may ſtrew this powder following upon the meat; Take prepared pearls one quarter of an ounce, red Coral and fine Bolus, of each half a drachme, Cinamom two drachmes and a half, and then mingle them all together.

The meats that are forbidden to be uſed for the healthy, are theſe, to wit, Milk and all that is dreſt therewith: all ſweet fruits, ſtewed apples and pears are allowed; muddy or ſlimy fiſh are eſpecially prohibited, as Eeles, Tenches, and ſuch like; but ſuch fiſh as are taken from ſandy ground are not bad: old powdered fleſh, or ſalt fiſh are alſo ſuſpected. But be it fleſh or fiſh, let the ſame be alwaies dreſt with ſome ſowr thing, as with Vinegar, the juice of Limons, Verjuice, and ſuch like.

Or you may uſe theſe ſawces following; Take the juice of Pimpernel, of Sorrel, Bugloſſe, of Scabious, of Rue, of Lettice, of Endive, of Baulm, of Elecampane, all together, or ſome of them, as it pleaſeth you, and mingle them with vinegar and bread, as you think good.

Item, Capers with the juice of Limons or of Citrons, is alſo a healthy ſauce to be uſed. All water fowls, as Ducks, Geeſe, Hernſewes, and ſuch like, let him not eat; notwithſtanding that the Ducks blood is thought to be a preſervative againſt venome.

And for your drink, you muſt not uſe any but onely to ſlack thirſt withal, or according as the party hath eaten: the beſt drink is white cleer and thin Wine (which is not ſweet) being tempered with ſteeled water, or that wherein Gold hath been extinguiſhed. But there can be no better thing then to drink fair fountain water which is tempered with vinegar and Sugar, or water wherein the juice of Pomgranates is mixed. You may alſo make a drink of Barberries, and Juniper berries, whereof you need to take but now and then a little draught. And you muſt alſo note here, that it were not amiſſe to drink every mealtide a draught of Wormwood or Sage Wine, or inſtead of them to take a bit of bread that is ſteeped in the Wine of Elecampane and wine of Zeduary.

Theſe are the ordinances that in the time of the Plague are to be kept and obſerved in meat and drink, having alwaies a good regard (as we have already ſaid) of the time of the year, of the conſtitution of the Patient, of his accuſtomed manner of diet, and ſo forth, whereby either of the foreſaid things may be uſed or omitted.

How

How their dwellings ought to be §. 5.

IT is also very needful for a preservation against this sickhesse, that the house and all the chambers (as well as the body) be kept neat and cleane. Therefore every houshold-er ought (who love the health of himself and his family) to look diligently that his house or place of his dwelling be kept cleane. All tame beasts, and especially swine ought to be kept farre apart from all your dwelling houses. Your house is to have many windowes in it, and that such windowes as do stand towards the West and South must you keep close and shut; but the windowes that be towards the East and North must be opened wide, so that the Plague be not in those quarters neer hand. Warm stoves are very unhar-ful, and especially if they do lie low; but in the chimney it is best to burn dry wood, and most of all Juniper wood, dry Vine branches, Firwood, Ash, Oakes, Cypres wood, Bay-trees, and Rosemary sticks, and that according to the nature of the place where every kind of wood is best to be had, and chiefly the Beech tree for that there is no kind of wood that more taketh away the venemous vapour or infection of the Plague then the Beech tree doth.

Moreover, you must cause the house to be swept wherein you dwell at least twice a day, and be sprinked with vinegar or Rose water, and to smoke it with some of these things following, to wit, with Juniper berries, Hyssop, Marjoram, wild Thime, Mints, Rosema-ry, Marjoram gentle, and Basil, with Lavander, Pennyroyal, and apple parings, or such like. And for rich men you may make divers compounded things, whereof we will write at large, which you may use as need shall require.

First there are perfumes which the Apothecaries do call *Ozyleses*: for this must you use Juniper, yellow Saunders, Paradise wood, Frankincense, and Juniper berries, of each 3. drachmes, Amber, Juniper, Gum, *Sandaracha*, and Rosemary flowers, of each one drachme, Nutmegs and Cloves, of each one drachme and a half; pownd them all together to pow-der, and then put to it of *Laudanum* one ounce, and a half, *Benzoin* and red Storax, of each a quarter of an ounce; black Frankincense three drachmes, Tilly coles that are to be sprinked and moystned with *Aqua vitæ* being beaten small, half as much as all the rest; afterwards make the mortar and the pestle very warm, and then put therein the *Lauda-num* with a little Turpentine, temper them together till they be as soft as dough, and mix then therewith all the foresaid things, and make hereof a strong dough with mollify-ed Dragagant, and rouse it one a table that is rubbed over with oyl of Spike, and make the candles as great and as small as you list to have them, making them underneath with three feet that they may stand, and let them dry in the Sun: and when you set those candles in a close chamber to fume, they will for certain expel all the venemous aire of the Plague.

These things following are used for this at Augburch in high Duchland, to wit, *Lauda-num* 2. ounces, black and white Frankincense, of each 1. ounce, red Storax half an ounce, *Benzoin* 3. quarters of an ounce, Cloves, Roses, Cinamom, black Coriander, Mastick, *San-daracha*, Cypres wood, Bayberries, yellow Saunders and Nutmegs, of each one drachme beaten small, liquid Storax 2. ounces, Wax one ounce, Turpentine 2. ounces and a half, burnt wine or *Aqua vitæ* as much as is needful; the *Laudanum*, Storax, Wax, and Tur-pentine is to be molten in a warm mortar, and hereof may you make candles as is before taught; if the dough be hard, then make it soft with burnt wine. Another: take Paradise wood, Saffron, Cinamom, Cloves, yellow Saunders, and Roses, of each half a drachme, Mastick, red Storax, and Frankincense, of each a quarter of an ounce; pownd them very small, and then make it up with liquid Storax, into dough, but temper not too many Tilly coles amongst it that the vertue of the other things be not thereby abated, and form them as before.

Or take *Benzoin*, *Gallia Muscata*, red Storax, and roots of Costus, of each half an ounce, *Diptamus*, Tormentil, Citron peels, and Setwal, of each a drach. red and white Behen, of each half a drach. red, yellow, and white Saunders, Roses, of each half a drach. pownd all that is to be pownded melt, the *Laudanum* with Rose water in a warm mortar, and then form candles thereof, as is aforesaid; these candles are special good against the pestilent ayre. But for that the right Costus roots and Behen are ill to be gotten, are these candles but seldome made.

These following are also used: take *Laudanum*, red Sorax, Myrrhe and Mastick of each

each a quarter of an ounce, Roſemary leaves, and wild Galangal, and Roſes of each half an ounce, Cinamom, Cloves, yellow Saunders, and Nutmegs, of each a drach. Tilly coles moyſtened with burnt wine, or *Aqua vitæ*, 4. ounces, then form them as before.

Yet other; take Cypres wood and Juniper, of each half a drach. ſmall beaten Juniper berries (the kernels taken out) Roſemary leaves, and wild Galangal, of each 3. drach. black and white Frankincenſe, of each half an ounce, *Laudanum* 3. quarters of an ounce, Tilly coles as aforeſaid.

In the ſtead of theſe fuming candles, men uſe to make alſo cakes of all the foreſaid doughes (but onely the coles left out) and in winter time you may uſe them layd on the coles, or on the hot furnace of your ſtove.

Item, take yellow Saunders, *Benzoin*, and red Sorax, of each a quarter of an ounce, white Frankincenſe, one drach. Nutmegs and Cloves, of each half a drach. Roſes, Coriander, and Sugar, of each a ſcruple, beat all ſmall to powder, and then mingle them together with Dragagant diſſolved in Roſe water (as before is taught) in a morter, and in Sommer then prepare them with freſh Roſes, to wit, that each cake be covered with a Roſe leaf, and then preſſed flat; but if you would have them coſtlier, then put unto it 4 grains of Musk and, 2 grains of Amber, diſſolved in Roſe water, and then will they be exceeding pleaſant.

Theſe are alſo uſually made at Ausburgh: take *Benzoin* three quarters of an ounce, the rootes of Cypres half a drachme, red Storax, and white Saunders, of each three drach. Cloves and prepared Coriander, of each a drach. Calamus and Frankincenſe of each half a drach. Musk two graines, white Sugar 6. 3. then make cakes thereof with diſſolved Dragagant.

Item, take beaten Cypres and Juniper wood, of each 3. drach. Roſemary flowers and Juniper berries, of each a quarter of an ounce, white and black Frankincenſe, of each half an ounce, beat them very ſmall, and temper them with as much *Laudanum*, that it cleave together, or with diſſolved Dragagant, Turpentine or Storax.

Or take Juniper berries, Bayberries, Roſes, Wormwood branches, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Cardamom, Rue, and Cloves, of each a like quantity; then mix them together with diſſolved Dragagant as aforeſaid, then lay it on the furnace in your ſtove.

Here followeth now a very coſtly water to temper with theſe kinds of cakes, Candles and Pomanders.

Take good Roſe water one pint, Lavander flowers 3. M. Cloves and Cinamom, of each half an ounce, yellow and white Saunders, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, Mace a quarter of an ounce, Roſes one M. *Benzoin* and red Storax of each 2. drach. pownd them ſmall, and pour the Roſe water thereon, or Muſcadel wine, or any other ſtrong wine, eight ounces, *Aqua vitæ*, one ounce: let it be cloſe ſtopt one moneth or twain, and ſo ſtand in the Sun; afterwards diſtil it in ſeething water, ſtopt very exceeding tight and cloſe, with a helme, and with that which is ſtilled temper Musk and Amber, and then ſet it in the Sun again.

This Roſe water following is alſo very excellent for the ſame, or any ſuch like intent: when you will diſtil the Roſes in common ſtils, then muſt you not ſet them in ſand but in aſhes, and then put ſome Roſes unto it, and caſt on it the powder of Cloves, then lay on it more Roſes, and ſo do till the Stil be full; then put on the helme, and make it tight and cloſe, taking heed of burning. And if you will have it ſtronger, then put to them more ſpices, as *Benzoin*, and ſuch like. Laſtly, then may you ſtrengthen the ſavour of the water diſtilled with Musk and Amber; both of theſe waters may alſo be uſed for other things as is aforeſaid. But if you would ſpare this labour, then may you uſe the foreſaid things, each apart or mixed together (as you pleaſe) with hot coles, and ſo let it ſavour and fume. In like manner may you prepare theſe powders following; take *Benzoin*, red Storax, Paradiſe wood, Musk, Amber, Cloves, Frankincenſe, Myrrhe, Maſtick, and *Gallia Muſcata*, which or as many of them as you will; pownd them to powder; for this powder you muſt omit the coles, the *Laudanum*, and the other diſſolved things, the which otherwiſe are commonly uſed in the compoſitions before. Item, take grated or powdered Cypres wood a M. alſo of prepared Cypres half as much, beaten Roſemary, half as much as of the Cypres, black and white Frankincenſe, of each half an ounce, Bayberries, theled clean a quarter of an ounce, being groſly beaten, mingle them well together, and ſtrew a little of it on the coles; for it is a moſt pleaſant ſavour.

And if you fear that ſuch odoriferous ſavours were too hot in Sommer, then may you put

and cheese some of the leaves and seeds of Myrtle, also you must put the chamlets of Camphire, Sanders and Citron peels, sprinkle it also with vinegar of Roses mixed. Instead of this strew the chamber with Rose leaves, and let them be swept out mighty, that they be no cause of stench; and before you go to bed you must fume the chamber well.

It is also very meet that you keep lying in the chamber where you sleep, odoriferous Quinces, Citrons, Apples, Pears, Oranges, and such like. When they begin to rot, then must they be had away, and other laid in their places.

Also in Summer you may prepare this powder following: Take Roses, Myrtle seeds, Citron peels, red, yellow, and white Sanders, Sorrel seeds, and wild Vine leaves, of each one drach. and a half, Myrrhe, Paradise wood, Dragagant, and Gum, of each two drach. Camphire a drach, all stamped small, and put them together. You may also make it up into cakes with dissolved Dragagant. If it be in Winter, then take Myrrhe, Paradise wood, Mastick, red Storax, and Frankincense, of each a drach. Cloves, Citron peels, and the roots of Cypres, of each half a drach. Camphire a scrup. *Gallia Muscata* ten grains, Musk and Amber, of each 5. grains; beat them together into a powder. You may also make cakes of it with liquid Storax and Rosewater: if you will put *Laudanum* to it, then make the same warm as aforesaid, and fashion your cakes as big as you will have them. For the common people and for the husbandmen the Bay tree is very good, or if the country yeeld it, Juniper wood with his berries, and with dry Hen dung fumed: or take pounded Wormwood and Bayberries, of each alike. The rich folks do use to lay also with their clothes odoriferous bags, for which all the powders that are before mentioned for fumes, and hereafter for Pomanders, are very good, excepting the *Laudanum*, the which is not to be powdered, and other more such like things. This following is very common in *France*; Take Ireos four ounces, Roses two ounces, wild Galangal, Cloves and Marjoram gentle, of each two drach. yellow Sanders, and Benjoin of each 2. ounces, red Storax half an ounce, then mingle them all together, and put them in a bag: if you will you may put thereto Musk and Amber, or Camphire. In the first Part, the 12. Chapter, you have also an especial bag to strengthen the head, as thus; Take Ireos, &c. the which is very commodious for this our purpose. Also you have in the second Chap. and elsewhere, applications for the strengthening of the heart, the which are not only profitable, but also very needfary for this intent.

It is therefore very ill done (yea a ten

quent common barbing boules, for that the Plague can by no means be looser going, by reason that as well the corrupted is let forth, and may easily be received of the healthy: nemous vapour of the infected is let forth, and may easily be received of the healthy:

What exercise is to be used in the Plague. §. 6.

In the time of infection the healthy are to exercise themselves moderately, and rather use easie walking then a great pace, that thereby the venemous ayr may not overmuch be drawn into the body, as it happeneth to such as at such times do greatly labour and travel; but when a man abideth in a clean place, void of pestilent ayr, and will exercise his body according to his old accustomed manner, that cannot but be thought passing good.

Of the sleep in this sickness. §. 7.

AT such time as the Plague reigneth, some think that it is better to sleep by day then by night, even seven or eight hours long first upon the right side being mostly well covered, and his head raised high. But seeing the same is not accustomed with us, which sleep but little in the evening, and sleep the foresaid time of seven or eight hours. If he could not sleep a nights, then that he about 12. a clock, being two hours after his meal compose himself to sleep. Others counsel to sleep a night and a day, and so forth, but not very long, for that through much sleep the blood is corrupted, the which must always be inclined to drowsiness, or else it may be [illegible]. They also forbid sleeping by day, and that chiefly in Winter. Also you must take heed of exercise and overmuch watching, for that greatly dryeth and weakeneth nature.

Of Purging and Vomiting. §. 8.

Are must also be had that the body be not too much bound: and if the going to stool come of it self, it is the better; if not, then must the party be holpen with suppositories, and mild Clisters, with Cassie, Manna, new Dates, and such like means, whereof we have here and there spoken at large, but especially in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and §. 20.

Other would have that young choletick bodies should generally be purged in the summer, and in the beginning of winter, with the foresaid cooling and laxative things, and also with yellow Mirobalans boyled with Plum-porredge: but in the end of Autumne, and in the Winter with stronger medicines, to wit, with Agarick, with Turbith, and with Polipody: but they must be used with great heed and discretion.

Touching letting of bloud: When the party is once purged, and above sixteen years old, being full of blood and strong, and without any obstruction of the livers, then may he have a vein opened. In like manner also women, if their terms and flowers be stopped, and if they be without piles in the fundament, then may they in May and in Autumne let bloud, and if occasion serveth, once a moneth, to wit, in the Liver vein, or Milt vein, every time three or four ounces, for this taketh away the boyling of the bloud and the *Cholera* in the veins. Yet for this infection must sometimes one, sometimes more be opened, but especially that which is fullest of bloud.

But great regard must (as hath been said) be taken of the age and weakneſſe of the patient, also whether a woman have conceived or not, or whether she have her termes or not, or have the Hemorrhoides or not, with many such circumstances more, that the weakneſſe of the party thereby be not augmented.

Above and beside all this must the patient abstain from venery as much as may be.

Of the motions of the mind. §. 9.

NOw concerning the motions of the mind, as sadneſſe, fear, sodain motions of the mind, and such like, they do greatly alter and spoyl the bloud, whereby it may the sooner receive the peſtilent ayr, and anger especially inflameth the heart, like as also doth overmuch gladneſſe: notwithstanding moderate gladneſſe is most commodious for the heart.

Of bathes and other common causes. §. 10.

AT such times take heed of bathing, for that thereby is the body moistened, the pores opened, and all the members made the readier to receive the infection of the Plague.

It is therefore very ill done (yea a temptation of God) in the time of the plague to frequent common bathing houses, for that the Plague can by no means be sooner gotten, by reason that as well the pores of the infected as the sound are opened, whereby the venemous vapour of the infected is let forth, and may easily be received of the healthy: wherefore it is much better (as the custome of the country is) to refrain wholly from bathing.

In like manner is it not good at such times to wash the head: for thereby are the vital spirits weakened, but only to comb their heads with an Ivory comb.

But the hands must often be washt, sometimes with Wine, and otherwhiles with vinegar, and especially with Roſe vinegar.

How one shall govern himself without doores. §. 11.

IT is very good that at this time every man adversum quod dicis within doors, and not keep company himself with many men: for among so many there will those that be infected, and those that are healthy, whereby the diseased infect the healthy with their breath: but for that it is impossible to forbear it, because that every man hath business without, it is therefore best that every one defend himself from all ill vapours. Wherefore such must observe the following rules, to wit, that he in the morning betimes before he goe abroad, or settle himself to work, take a dry Figge, a piece of Nutmeg, and a piece of Angelica root, and a little salt. This composition is also very much approved, that men have used the same every where for all manner of Plagues that ever happened before the birth of Christ, and the same was found out by K. *Mithridates* that waged wars with the *Romans*. Some adde to it a few Almonds, and make it to a confection with clarified Honey. It is also good for all such as be given to the bimenesse, that they eate in the morning fasting a piece of the root of Gentian, and specially when he hath use of the preservation. Others do also give counsel to smell unto a Limon, Lime, Nut, Pome-water, or Orenge, but it is not for children or full grown persons, for children it is altogether unfit, and

It is also very good before the going forth in the morning to break ones fast, and then also to take a little Unicorns horn, Tormentil, Scordium, Angelica, Dictamus, Zedoary, or a bit of Zedoary, and hold it in your mouth, or rub the mouth with Vinegar wherein Worm-wood hath been decocted.

For this also confected Calamus is much commended, taken before the going out into the air, for it hath an especial vertue against all venemous air. Also some do counsel not to go out of doors before that the mouth and nostrils be cleansed with [illegible] mixed.

The composition following is commended for a preservative if you can be [illegible] with it. Take the juice of Garlick and Rue vinegar of each one ounce and a half, Treacle three quarters of an ounce, Beyvend two drachms, myrrh, saffron and Rosewater with anoint the mouth, lips, and nose.

Some do use this salve following, therewith to anoint the nostrils before they go out of the house, the which is not good only for the healthy, but for all such as have already infected, take Treacle three quarters of an ounce, Saffron and Camphire of each a scruple, the juice of Lemons and Vinegar, of each a like much as may suffice to make [illegible]

Or in the stead of these, he may wear the cordial child which is described [illegible] face with the cordial bag in this manner: Take Burrage, &c. It is also counseled to wear gold rings wherein are set precious stones as Rubies, Carbuncles, Saphires and Jacinths both within the house and without doors.

It is also much forbidden that any stir out of doors before the Sun rising, and also before the going down thereof to repair and keep himself in his perfumed house or chamber.

Further is very good to carry some odoriferous thing in their hands, when one must deal with other folk, that through this pleasant smell the brains and the heart may be comforted and defended from all pestilent and contagious vapours.

It is also not amiss for the common people that they carry in their hand a little box of Juniper made full of holes wherein a little sponge moistened with vinegar and Rosewater, and strewed with the powder of Cloves, be held in the hand all the Sommer time, whereto also some leaves of Rue may be added daily refreshing them, and that they continually smell to the same. In this manner also maist thou hold some fruits in thine hands, as Peales, Pears, Quinces, Oranges, and such like, but if it be in winter, then take Marjoram gentle, Rue, Balm, *Valeriana*, Juniper berries, or some other thing steeped in vinegar, put it into thy nose, and use it as is aforesaid. Also thou maiest bestrew thy moist sponge with Saunders, Camphire, and Saffron, Paradise wood, Cloves, or Ireos. But the rich and able folk do use *Poma Ambra*, which we call Pomanders, whereof there are made many sorts, as here may appear.

Yet men must note here that all such strong odours, whereas there is any pain of the head proceeding either of heat or cold, then are they neither so good nor so often to be used, but in such sort as hereafter followeth, whereby the same pain as it often falleth out, be not augmented, and women must beware of these smels, and especially those that are vexed with the suffocation of the Mother. And if it be in winter, and the patient be cold of complexion, then are you to prepare these Pomanders: Take *Galia Muscata*, Roses, Cloves, Zedoary, Mace, Nutmegs, and Paradise wood, of each one drachme, Saffron a scruple, red Storax a drach. and a half, *Ambra* and *Musco*, of each 5 grains, pound them all together except the two last, and then make hereof with prepared Drags, [illegible] a Pomander, even as is taught in the first Part and the 2. Chapter.

Item, take yellow Saunders a quarter of an ounce, Paradise wood a drachme and a half, Roses, Cloves, Zedoary, Mace, and Nutmegs, of each half a drach. Cloves, Cardamom, Coriander, and black Coriander, of each a drach. all of them beaten to fine powder, *Laudanum* one ounce, *Benioin* half an ounce, dissolve them with Rosewater and make thereof an odoriferous Apple or Pomander: and if then you put thereto Musk and Amber, it is at your choyse and pleasure. This Pomander is special good against a bad [illegible] ayr, and this following may also be used in winter: Take *Laudanum*, and red Storax, of each half an ounce, Cloves, and Cinamom, of each a drachme and a half, Nutmegs, yellow Saunders, Roses, Basil, and yellow Amber, of each half a drachme, pound them all together, but dissolve the *Laudanum* in warm Rosewater, and then make hereof a Pomander. Also the mortar (wherein these things have been tempered) must be wiped about with a little kemmed sheeps wool, and then wrap the Pomander therein afterwards bind it up in red Sarsnet, and then they will keep their scent the longer.

half an ounce, Storax, a quarter of an ounce, red yellow Saunders, white Frankincense, and yellow Amber, of each half a drach, Cinamom, Cardus and Cubebes, of each a drach, Musk and Amber, of each 10. grains, make them up to a Pomander with a little liquid Storax, and

Lilly flowers, Mints, Violets, wild Vine leaves, Roses, Myrtle seed, white and yellow Sanders, dryed Quinces, dryed Prunes, of each half a drachme, Saffron

and Burrage flowers, of each half a drach, yellow Sanders 2. drach. trees 3. drach. Cinamom, Citron peels, of each 2. drach. Musk 10. grains, make them up to a Pomander with Dragagant dissolved in Rosewater, and at the last add a little

Musk. There are also divers pomanders prepared that are good at all times; amongst the following are to be used in the time of the plague.

Take a quarter of an ounce, red and white Saunders, of each a drach. and a half, Cubebs one scruple, Ambra half a drach. Musk, 9 grains, Paradise wood two scruples, Citron peeles half a drach. Cinamom, Mace, and Nutmegs, of each a scruple, red storax half an ounce, Ladanum one ounce, beat them very small, but dissolve the Ladanum with liquid Storax, and then make thereof a pomander.

Another, take Roses, Violets, and flowers of Buglosse, of each 2 scruples, Myrrhe, Calamus, Nutmegs, Spica of Indy, Sanders and Mastick of each a scruple, Musk and Amber, of each half a scruple, red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each a drach. Roses 3. drach. juyce of Purslain and of Oranges, of each 2 ounces, water Lillies, and parched Coriander, of each one quarter of an ounce, red coral and burnt Ivory, of each half a drachme, syrup of Citrons, and fine Bolus, of each half an ounce, Sealed earth a quarter of an ounce, pownd all that are to be pownded except the Amber and Musk, set them in the Sun in a close stopped pot, or on a warm furnace until all the juyce be dried in, afterwards take 4. ounces of Laudanum, that is dissolved in Rosewater and vinegar, and Turpentine washed in Rosewater as much as is needful for a masse, and hereof make them Pomanders. Item, take Roses, Cloves, Mace, Spica of Indy, water Lilly flowers, Violets, Marjoram, Asarabacca and Stechas, of each half a scruple, red and white Saunders, red and white Coral, the seeds and peeles of Citrons and Cucubes, of each 15. graines, Saffron, *Ambra*, of each one scruple, Camphir, Frankincense, mastick, fine Bolus and sandaracea, of each half a scruple, Paradise wood one drach. *Muscus* 3. grains, *Species Cordialium* half a drach. *Laudanum* 1 ounce and a half, dissolve it in Rose water, and with the rest make a Pomander. Yet another, at all furnished Apothecaries you may find divers preparatives of Pomanders so that thou needest to add nothing but Musk and Amber, of the which we will describe 4. sundry sorts.

Take Laudanum three ounces, red Storax 3 drach. Marjoram gentle, Roses, Camphire, red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each a drach. and a half, Cinamom, Nutmegs, Cloves and Mace, of each a drach. Paradise wood 2. scruples, dissolve the Laudanum (as is aforesaid) and then make thereof Pomanders, until such time as you would add some other thing to it. The second is made as followeth: take Laudanum and *Benzoin*, of each three drach. Paradise wood, and Cinamom, of each a drach, and a half, Cloves, Nutmegs, and Cucubes, of each half a drach. red, white, and yellow Saunders of each a drach. Saffron a scruple, pownd all that is to be pownded, and form thereof a Pomander as before, and if you list you may prepare it with Muscus, Ambra, and Camphir.

Thirdly, take red Storax, and flowers of Buglosse, of each 2. scruples, Cloves 1. drach. white and red Behen, of each a scruple, Paradise wood, 2. scrup. Myrrh, Calamus, Nutmegs, Ssica of Indy, Frankincense, Juniper gum, and Mastick, of each half a drach. red yellow, and white Saunders of each a drach. Roses 3. drach. Coriander a drach. and a half, make it up as aforesaid. Fourthly, take Roses 2. drach. yellow and red Saunders, of each a drach. and a half, a scruple of Camphir, Amber half a scruple, Muscus 4. graines Paradise wood 2. scruples, Citron peels half a drach. Cinamom, Mace, and Nutmegs, of each a drach. red Storax half an ounce, Laudanum an ounce, afterwards make a Pomander, thereof as before.

Some

Some take an ounce of pure *Bandanum*, and cut the same as small as may be, and mix therewith pownded Citron peels and their seeds, of each a drach. Saffron and Camphire, of each half a drach. and tye them all together in a peece of farsnet, or if you will you may make a pomender of it, tempering it with the juyce of Basil.

Preservatives, or preservatives that defend men from the Plague. § 12.

Here are divers things that men (being in health) may use in the time of the Plague, whereby they be not so soond infected of other men, for the which first of all these simples are for the most part good, to wit, Citron seeds, Scabious, Pimpernel the great, Malerian, Cicory, Sorrel, and both their waters, Elecampane, Dictamus, Gentian, Tormentil, Cardus Benedictus, Angelica, and Bayberries, one of these things holden in the mouth, taken in powder, or drunken, are all especial good against the Plague, and may be used in many other compositions, as may be seen by these following. All famous Physitians do for this sickneſſe counsel, first, that men should speedly fly far from the contagious places, and return back again with leysure; for he that is far off from the Plague, shall not be infected therewith, even as no man is slain in the wars, that is not present there. Also it is to be noted as hath been already said) that men ought to be well bodied, and freed from all superfluous humidities and uncleanneſſe. Therefore men that are above the age of 11. yeares, are to be oftentimes purged with these common pils hereafter described. Also care must be taken that the heart and all other principal parts of the body be comforted and kept dry, which may be done by the right Bole armoniack. In like manner also with Mithridate and Treacle, if that every week, or at the least every 10 dayes a drach. in weight be taken with the water of Sorrell, sweating after it: and keeping within doores all the day after.

Here is also to be noted, when any one would take of this Treacle or Mithridate, than he have eaten nothing afore, nor eat any thing afterwards in 5. or 6. hours. But amongst all other medicines and preservatives, these last beforementioned pils beare the prick and price, which are to be had at the Apothecaries, called Pestilentiales Rufi, Communes, de Tribus, and sine Cura, which the principal Physitians have described and commended so highly, that it hath never been seen that such as used the same orderly were killed of the Plague, which also any one may at all times, be the person young or old, use without any danger: for like as it is with a pot beginning to seeth, it casteth up scum, and is cleansed through scumming, even so do these pils take away all superfluities and uncleanneſſe which is gathered together about the principal parts, and preserve the blood from all kinds of putrifactions. These pils are made in this sort: take Aloe one ounce, Myrrhe and Saffron, of each half an ounce, beat them all together with good pleasant wine, hereof are you to take every week a drach. or every third day three pils as big as a great Peaſe, and thereupon drink a prety draught of white wine that is delayed with Rosewater or with Sorrel water, yet ought women with child to abstain from them. These pils are of great force in time of the Plague, and do also drive out all superfluities of the stomach.

Others take Aloe 3. quarters of an ounce, Myrrhe 3. drach. Saffron 1. drach. Rubarb a quarter of an ounce, prepared *Agaricus* 1. drach. Cloves, Citron seeds, and the peels, and Spica of Indy, of each a scruple. Tormentil and red Saunders, of each a drach. and a half, fine Bolus 3. drach. Camphire 10. graines, pownd them well all together, and make pils hereof with the syrup of Citrons.

Item, take the juyce of Sorrel, the juyce of Bugloſſe, and of Cicorie, of each 2. ounces, fine Bolus 1. ounce, mix them all together, and stir them often in 24. hours, afterwards add these things following. Aloe 3. ounces, Camphire 2. scruples, Saphires, Jacincts, and Smaragdes, of each half a scruple, Pearles 1. drach. Citron seeds a quarter of an ounce, Paradise wood, Basil seed, Amber, red Coral, and Zeduary, of each 8. graines, Roses, Violets, Sorrel seed, Burrage flowers, and flowers of Bugloſſe, of each half a scruple, stamp them all together, and mingle it well, and afterwards set it in the Sun or in any other warm place till all the juyce be dryed away. This being done, then pour more juyce thereon again, and do so 3. times. Now when you desire to use hereof, then make 7. pils of one drach, with some *Aqua compoſita*, and take hereof every morning or evening one pil, and that before meales.

These following are also highly commended; take of the common Plague pils (that are

are herebefore described 4. ſcruples prepared Agaricus half a drach. Zeduary and Angelica of each 1. drach. Rubarb 1. ſcruple. *Trochiſci ex Alhandal* 5. graines, then make pills hereof, with water of *Cardunus Benedictus*: take of theſe pils 1. drach. once a week 3. hours after ſupper, and in the morning drink a good draught of the decoction of Peaſe, and eat ſomewhat 3. hours after.

Some uſe theſe pils following: take Aloe and Agaricus of each one drach. Myrrhe and fine Bolus, of each a quarter of an ounce, Saffron a drach. then make pils hereof with Baulm water, or water of Bugloſſe, and ſo uſe them as hath been ſaid.

Theſe pils following do not purge, but defend the heart and all inward parts from all bad infections: take Paradiſe wood half a drach. burnt Harts horn two ſcruples, red Saunders one drachme, Tormentil, Citron ſeed, *Terra ſigillata*, and red Coral, of each half a ſcruple, Sorrell ſeeds. Diptamus, and Zeduary, of each a ſcruple, fine Bolus three drachmes, *Species de gemmis frigidis* a drachme and a half, Lignum Balſami half a drachme, Camphire four graines; then make hereof pils with ſyrup of Citrons, or with the juyce of Ribes.

Theſe following are yet more forcible; take Paradiſe wood half a drach. Tormentil, 2. ſcruples, Diptamus 1. ſcruple, Zeduary, and *Lignum Balſami*, of each half a drachme, Saffron one ſcruple, Cloves 5. graines, Vervein half a drach. burnt Harts horn 2. ſcruples, red Saunders 1. ſcruple, red Coral and Sorrel ſeeds. of each half a drach. fine Bolus three ounces, *Species de gemmis frigidis* 3. drach. Camphire 4. graines, make pils thereof with ſyrup of Citrons, or with the juyce of Ribes.

Others that are good for the heart: take Citron ſeeds 2. drach. Jacincts, Smaragdes, Doronicum, and bones of a Stags heart, of each 1. ſcruple, Zeduary, wood of Paradiſe, of each 2. ſcruples, the rootes of five leafed graſſe, or Cinquefoile, of each a quarter of an ounce, : then make pils hereof with the ſyrup of Citrons.

Of all theſe foreſaid pils may be uſed which you pleaſe, and when you pleaſe, therewith to comfort the heart, and defend it from all ill ayre.

There are alſo divers confections prepared for preſervatives, that you may uſe inſtead of pils, to wit, morning and evening, whereby nature is ayded, thereby the better to withſtand the peſtilent ayre.

For theſe: take *Terra Sigillata*, white Diptamus, fine Bolus, Myrrhe, Wormwood, Rue, Scabious, Pimpernel, Sorrel, and Zeduary, of each a drachme, Ariſtology, Tormentil, and Bayberries, of each a drachme and a half, 5. or 6. kernels of Walnuts, ten or twelve new Figs, Mithridate and Treacle, of each one ounce, Saffron and Camphire, of each a ſcruple, Unicornes horn, prepared Pearles, bones of a Stags heart, burnt Harts horn, and Smaragds of each one drach. and a half, peeled ſeeds of Citrons half an ounce, Mace one drachme: pownd all that is to be pownded, and then temper all together with ſyrup of Citrons, to the conſiſtence of a confection. This confection killeth all venom of the Plague, and preſerveth men very marvellouſly from her infections, if they take thereof in the morning and evening, to wit, in winter time with a draught of Malmſey, and in Sommer with Roſe water. But if you have not theſe confections, then uſe that of Nuts and Rue, that herebefore is deſcribed in the 11. §.

Another confection that is moſt excellent: take Juniper berries, Cloves, Elecampane rootes, and Nutmegs, of each one drach. Ariſtology, and Gentian, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, Purſlaine and Sorrell ſeeds, *Doronicum*, red and white Behen, *Spodium de Cannia*, bones of a Stags heart, Paradiſe wood, red and white Coral, ſhavings of Ivory, Bayberries, Maſtick and Rue, of each 2. ſcruples, Figs, Raiſins, and Dates, of each one ounce, Saffron two ſcruples, Cinamom and Licorice, of each half an ounce, Tormentil, and rootes of Avence, of each three drachmes, white Diptamus, Almonds, Pingles, peeled Melon ſeed, Gourd ſeeds, Citrul ſeeds, and peeled Cucumber ſeeds, of each one ounce, prepared *Agaricus* three quarters of an ounce, the root of *Peucedanus*, *Terra ſigillata terra S. Pauli*, and fine Bolus, of each two drach. Momy and Zeduary, of each one drach. Camphire, half a drach. *Species Diatriaſantalium*, and Diarrhodon, of each two drach. Citron peels, Smaragdes, of each a drach. Muſcus, a ſcruple, Treacle, *Diateſſaron* and *Mithridatum*, of each an ounce, pownd all that is to be pownded, and hereof make a confection with ſyrup of Citrons. Item, take conſerve of Roſes, of Violets, of Burrage and of Bugloſſe, of each half an ounce, Smaragdes, Jacincts, and Pearles, of each one drachme, bones of a Stags heart, field Gold, Citron ſeeds, fine Bolus, and ſealed Earth, of each half a drach. pownd all that is to be pownded, and then make thereof a confection with ſyrup of Citrons.

Another;

Another; take conſerve of Roſes, of Bugloſſe, of each an ounce, and half, Doronicum, bones of a Stags heart, Jacincts, Smaragdes, Saphirs, of each half a ſcruple, yellow Saunders, Cinquefoil and Paradiſe wood of each 3. drach. Sugar one ounce, wine of Granado, and ſyrup of Limons, of each half an ounce, 10. or 12. gold leaves; then mingle all together to the conſiſtence of a confection.

Another that is very good and approved: take Conſerve of Roſes, of Bugloſſe, and of Borrage, of each ſix ounces, *Doronicum*, Zeduary, Baſil ſeed, Mace, Saffron, and Adiantum, of each one drach; bones of a Stags heart, Jacincts, Smaragdes, and Saphires, of each a ſcruple, Pearles one drach. 6. leaves of beaten gold, ſyrup of Apples and of Citron peeles, of each 2. ounces, Violet water three quarters of an ounce, white Sugar four ounces; ſeeth the ſyrup and Sugar with water enough, till it be as thick as Hony, and afterwards temper the ſpices therewith: then beat it well together, and put thereto Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, that hath been ſteeped 24. hours in Malmſey; Laſtly add thereto Muſk and Amber, of each 4. grains; this being done, mingle them all together, and keep it ſafe (being well ſtopt) in a glaſſe.

Item, take Mithridate and Treacle, (that at the leaſt is 10. yeares old) of each half an ounce, Citron ſeed, and fine Bolus of each half a drach. Roſe water, (with the which *Muſcus* is diſſolved) as much as is needful for a confection; hereof may you uſe every day 1. drachme.

All that are ſound and whole, as alſo thoſe that are infected, may uſe the weight of a quarter of an ounce of this confection following, morning and evening, without any danger; take Jacincts, Granadoes, Smaragdes, Saphires, Pearles, bones of a Stags heart, and Paradiſe wood, of each half a dr[illegible] red and white Saunders, red and white Coral, burnt Ivory, Tormentil, fine Bolus *Terra ſigillata*, Camphire, and ſmall field gold, of each one ſcruple, beat them all together very ſmall and then take Sugar ſix ounces, that is ſodden with Roſewater to a ſyrup, then temper it ſo thick as you will have it, with ſyrup of Citrons. Men may uſe alſo otherwhiles in ſtead of this confection, two or three dayes together of this drink following, which is alſo a wonderful preſervative againſt the Plague, and may be uſed as well of young as of old folk, yea alſo of young children, and women with child; take fine Bolus a drach. and a half, beat it to fine powder, and drink it with white wine and Roſewater, very warm in the morning; and eight dayes after you muſt take a drach. of Treacle or Mithridate, in the winter with wine, and in the Sommer with Roſe water.

Theſe foreſaid medicines are not good againſt the Plague to come, but alſo againſt that that hath already infected.

And foraſmuch as thoſe foreſaid confections are made of many coſtly things that may be too deare for the common people; for this cauſe have we of purpoſe deſcribed the the confection of Nuts and Rue, which they may uſe in ſtead of theſe. Or take the kernels of Nuts, Rue, and Juniper leaves, of each a like quantity, pownd them all well together, and with vinegar make thereof a confection, whereof every morning you may take the bigneſſe of a Nutmeg.

In like manner may one alſo prepare this following; take 28. or 30. Nut kernels, and 40. or 42. Figs, Wormwood, Rue, Scabious, and Sorrel of each half a M. Ariſtology 2. drachmes and a half, Tormentil, Pimpernel, and white Diptamus, of each one drach. fine Bolus half a drachme, red and white Coral, Sorrel ſeeds, of each half a drach. Citron ſeeds one drachme, Juniper berries three drachmes, chop and ſtamp all that muſt be ſtampt, and hereof with clarified Hony make a confection; hereof may one take at one time the bigneſſe of a Walnut.

Alſo make another, which is called the confection of Juniper berries as followeth; take Nut kernels, Juniper berries, of each two ounces, beat them well together, put thereto 4. ounces of clarified Hony, and temper with it, Cinamom, Ginger, Mace and Cloves, of each a drachme, white Diptamus, Tormentil, Zeduary, Citron peels, Rue, *Carduus Benedictus*, and Saint Johns woort, of each a quarter of an ounce, Cardamom, Paradiſe wood, black Coriander, *Angelica*, white and red Behen, fine Bolus, and ſealed Earth, of each a drachme, then mingle them all together. If the quantity of Nut kernels, Juniper berries, and hony be too little, then may you take twice ſo much. And for the common ſort it is alſo excellent good, that every morning he do take eight or ten Juniper berries that have been ſteeped in vinegar.

Now follow certain powders that preſerve men from the Plague; but (as hath been

ſaid before) great regard is to be taken in time of the Plague, that the heart may be defended from all peſtilent infections as much as is poſſible. To the end are all the above-ſaid medicines, as many powders, confections, cordial waters, and other ſuch like as hereafter follow preſcribed: Take Rubies, Granats, Jacincts, Smaragdes, and Saphires, of each half an ounce, white and red Coral, and ſhaving of Ivory, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, ſhaven Harts horn, and Sorrel ſeeds, of each half an ounce, prepared Pearles a quarter of an ounce, Saffron ten grains, beaten gold four leaves; mingle them all together.

Item, take prepared Rubies, Saphires, Jacincts, Emrodes, and Pearles, of each half a drach. red Coral, burnt Ivory, ſhaven Ivory, Unicorns horn, Diptamus, Zeduary, Cinamom, and Tormentil of each 2. ſcruples, Doronicum, Ariſtologie red, white and yellow Saunders, Citron peels and Sorrel ſeeds, of each half a drach. Saffron 2. ſcruples, white Amber one ſcruple, red and white Behen, of each two ſcruples and a half, Sugar ſix ounces, and a half: mingle them all together, and then take half an ounce thereof every time.

Theſe following do the Apothecaries call Species liberantes, that are very much eſteemed, and much uſed at Aausburg, by reaſon they defend the heart and all inward parts very marvellouſly againſt all venemous ayre; they are made in this manner; take prepared Bolus and ſealed Earth, of each 3 quarters of an ounce, Tormentil, Sorrel ſeed, ſeed of Endive, peeled ſeeds of Citron, and prepared Coriander, of each 3. drach. red, white, and yellow Saunders, prepared Pearles, red and white Coral, yellow Amber, ſhaven Ivory, bones of a Stags heart, (that hath been ſteeped a while in Roſewater) red and white Behen, Doronicum, Cardamom, Mace, Paradiſe [illegible] Cinamom, Saffron, Zeduary, and Caſſiewood of each a drach. Emrodes, Saphires, [illegible]nates, and ſilk Wormes neſts chapped as ſmall as may be, of each a ſcruple, Camphire 14 grains, Muſk and Amber of each ſix graines, Sugarcandie and Sugar pennets, of each a quarter of an ounce beat all very ſmall, and mingle it together; ye ſhall give one drach. of this powder in the Winter with wine, and in Sommer with Sorrel water.

The Emperours powder againſt the Plague: take Pimpernel, Gentian, Tormentil, Dragon, Rue, Wormwood, Nut kernels, prepared Granats, and Juniper berries of each a like much: make them into powder, and uſe it upon a toſted peece of bread. If you will make a confection of this powder, then put thereto Roſe vinegar, and Treacle, as much as ſhall ſuffice.

Another powder: take fine prepared Bolus 1. ounce and a half, Cinamom 1. ounce, Tormentil, and white Diptamus of each half an ounce, Pimpernel, Angelica, and Gentian, of each a quarter of an ounce, prepared Coriander 3. drach. Saffron, Sealed earth, Citron peels, red and white Behen, red Coral, yellow Saunders, ſhaven Ivory, and prepared Pearles, of each a quarter of an ounce, burnt Ivory, Paradiſe wood, and bones of a Stags heart, of each 2. ſcruples, Granates, Saphires, Jacincts, Emrodes, and Rubies, of each half a drach. Spike of Indy 3. graines, Amber 6. graines, Muſk 2. graines, Camphir 6. graines, Sugar as much as all the reſt do weigh; temper then well together and make them into a ſubtil powder, and uſe it as before.

Another like unto this; take fine Bolus very ſmall beaten 2. ounces, Tormentil, Doronicum, Diptamus, and red Saunders, of each one drach. ſhaven Ivory, burnt Ivory, and Citron peels, of each half a drach. Pearles 2. ſcruples, Rubies, Emrodes, Granates, Saphires and Jacincts, of each one ſcruple, bone of a Stags heart 1 drach. Unicorns horn, half a ſcruple: temper them together and give half a drach. hereof at once. You may if you will put Sugar unto it.

Item; take Citron ſeeds, and Sorrel ſeeds, of each 2. drach. Diptamus, Gentian, and Tormentil, of each 2. drach. and a half, fine Bolus, and Cinamom of each 1. ounce, Pearls, Saphires, and bones of a Stags heart, of each one drach. red, white, and yellow Saunders, and ſmall Baſil ſeeds, of each a drach. and a half, make powder thereof. But if you will make a confection of it, then take an ounce and a half of the foreſaid powder, and twelve ounces of Sugar; and when you have taken of it, then drink a draught of Sorrel water after it.

Montagnana writeth, that he never ſaw any that ever dyed of the Plague, which diligently uſed this medicine.

Of all theſe foreſaid powders may alſo Manus Chriſti, or Sugar cakes be made. The

common custome is to take one ounce and a half of powder, and 12. ounces of Sugar. When the Arch Duke *Maximilian* that now is Emperour of Rome, took his journey into Spain, then was this powder following ordained for him, as a preservative against all bad air: take Zeduary, Cloves, Nutmegs, Myrtle kernels, Cinnamon, and Ginger, of each a quarter of an ounce, Gentian, Diptamus, Tormentil, Elecampane roots, and Aristologie, of each a drachme and a half, Nutmegs, Sage, Rue, Balm, Borage seeds, Citron seeds, Sorrel seeds, Basil seeds, Bayberries, Mastick, *Dracunculus*, Franckincense, fine Bolus, sealed earth, and burnt Ivory, of each half a drachme, bones of a Braggart, red Coral, and Pearls, of each one scruple, conserve of Bugloss, and of Burrage, of each ℥ß, Rosewater and Scabious water, of each three ounces; then mix with them pellets of Camphire, and boil them with 28. ounces of white Sugar to the consistence of a confection: and when the same beginneth to be cold, then temper the species with it, and so make *Manus Christi* of it.

These Sugar cakes following are very common at *Heydelborough* in high Germanie. Take Saffron, Dittany, of each a quarter of an ounce, *Lebenester* 4 scruples, Zeduary, and Citron peels, of each one drachme, *Doronicum*, *Angelica*, and Pimpernel, of each half a drachme, Cochenele two scruples, Cinamon 2 drachme and a half, Cloves one drachme, Unicorns horn half a drachme, Smaragdes ten grains, *Musca* two grains, beaten gold 3 leaves, white Sugar 8 ounces; dissolve the Sugar in water wherein red crimson silk is sodden, and make hereof *Manus Christi*.

This following do the Physitians call *Alexipharmacum*, that is, such a medicine that can expel all manner of venome, and whatsoever else is hurtful to the body: Take Sallet oyl of one hundred years old or more, and if you cannot get such oyl, then boyl it until it waxeth eager and sharpish, 30 ounces, Turpentine 3 ounces, *Euphorbium*, and Bedegard, of each half a drachme, dew worms (washed in wine) half an ounce, afterwards put therein 80. or 90. Scorpions, and in the Dog dayes take the Adder that is called *Vipera* cut in in pieces, and let the oyl seethe in boyling water the space of four hours, afterwards set it ten dayes in the hot Sun. This being all done, add to it Zeduary, Gentian, Tormentil, white *Diptamus*, Aristologie, and Rubarb, of each half an ounce, Mallow leaves, St Johns wort, and Daneweed, and Rosemary of each half a handful, Treacle and Mithridate, of each half an ounce, then pownd all that is to be pownded, and temper them together; and then being close stopt, bury it in horse dung for the space of 3 moneths. Lastly, presse it through a strong strainer, and all that you can get out shall reserve in a pelter bottel.

This medicine must be used in manner as followeth; to wit, that you take it cold, and not warm. It sufficeth also to anoint the heart, the pulses, and the temples of the head but thrice a day, leaving two hours onely between every inunction.

At Pisa is a custome that the Magistrates every year give to the University two prisoners that have deserved death for to Anatomize, which is a good means to prove this medicine. When as they give unto one of these prisoners one scruple of Rats-bane, and 2 hours before his death anoint him with this salve as is aforesaid; then find they indeed that such men might afterwards live 5. dayes longer. These foresaid receits have been of others described but falsly.

This mixture following is highly commended to anoint withal: Take Amber half a drachme, Annis seed half a scruple, Paradise wood, Laudanum, red and white Behen, of each a quarter of an ounce, Mace, and Citron peels, of each two drachmes and a half Nutmegs, white Coral, red and white Saunders, of each one drachme, beaten Gold six leaves, Basil water, water of Saffron flowers, and Rose water wherein Musk is dissolved, of each 5 ounces, Vinegar two spoonfuls, Malmsey two ounces; temper them well together a great while, and anoint oftentimes the pulses therewith, the temples of the head and the face, and reserve it being stopt very close.

In Saxonie they have a salt of Wormwood called Sal Absynthii, which will free and defend men from the plague without any further care.

We will also here describe certain drinks against the plague: First, it is not unknown what power there is in the compounded Aqua vitæ against the plague, and against all venomes, as is sufficiently rehearsed in the eight Part.

An approved water; Take Tormentil, Valerian, Pimpernel, Dragon, Diptamus, Sealed earth, fine Bolus, dry Vinegar dregs, and long Pepper, of each half an ounce, Saffron a drach. Amber half a drach, Treacle one ounce, Nux vomica, and Carduus Benedictus, of

each

each three quarters of an ounce; pownd them all small together, and pour as much thin white wine upon them as you please; let it so stand 4. dayes, and of this drink a spoonful at once, sweat upon it, and fast five hours after it.

For the common people you may prepare this following: Take Valerian, the roots of great Borres, *Bardana*, *Diptamus* of Candy, Gentian, *Bistorta*, Tormentil, and Pimpernel of each alike much: beat all together grosly, and pour Aqua vitæ upon it so much as will cover it; infolace it 14. dayes long, stirring it about every day. This being done, then shall you not take above a spoonful of it at once. Also you may distill it, and use it by itself: but by my counsel this should not be used in Summer.

This drink following hath been approved of many thousandes. Take in May the roots of great Burr, called *Bardana* 16. ounces, of the middle rind of the Ash tree two M. chop it small together and distil it: give of this water to drink 3. or 4. ounces; to wit, when he is thought to be infected of the Plague: it is also wonderful good against all byting of mad Dogs.

Another: Take Rue, Wormwood, Roses, and Juniper berries, of each a handful, 20. or 25. kernels of Nuts; stamp these all together to pap, pour wine and vinegar thereon of each one pint and clop it tight: then let it festre in *Balneo* four and twenty hours: this being done, then strain it, and of this give every morning fasting two spoonfuls to drink.

Item, take 15. or 16. heads of Leeks, peel off the uppermost shales, and stamp them small, and afterwards mix thin white wine with them, and vinegar of Rose, of each a good pint or a pint and a half, and good Treacle one ounce, and keep it close stopt in a glasse. And when you will use it, then give thereof a spoonful or twain to drink in the morning betimes. It driveth out sweat, and expelleth venemous air. This Syrup following is highly commended: Take Citron peels, roots of Capers, Vervein, red Saunders, and burnt Ivory, of each a quarter of an ounce, Cloves, Bugloss, Balm, Burrage, Calamus of each half an ounce, Sorrel, Liverwort, and Mallows, of each three drach. Cicory seeds, Melon seeds, seeds of Pompeons, Gourds, of Cucumbers, and Violets, of each two ounces, Tymus, *Epithymum*, of Polipody, *Mirobalani*, *Chebuli*, and yellow Mirobalanes, of each one ounce, *Agaricus* and Rubarb, of each half an ounce, the juyce of Fumitory, of Wormwood, of Daneweed, and of broad Plantain, of each six ounces, the juyce of Quince 18. ounces, *Diagridium* a quarter of an ounce, white Sugar 24. ounces; make hereof a Syrup: and when it is almost sufficiently decocted, then pour thereto 4. ounces of the juyce of Quinces, and then let it boyl till his consistence. This Syrup is marvellous good in the time of the Plague; for it drieth the body moderately, and cleanseth also the same of all superfluous humours; it strengtheneth the heart, the liver, and also the inward parts; you may take of it one ounce and a half, or two ounces every week with the water of Bugloss, early in the morning, and then to sleep thereupon a while, or at the least to lye still an hour after it.

Hitherto have we described many medicines, whereby the healthy (in time of the plague) may be preserved. All these things must be used in good order, like as these medicines following also, to wit, that you use sometimes the one, and sometimes the other, and not always one, and the self same, that nature not accustome her self to it, and in the end do think the remedy to be rather a food then a medicine, so that it by that means cannot have her operation.

The fixteenth Chapter.

When any are infected with the Plague.

NOw this Chapter shall onely intreate of those that are already infected with the Plague, be it by what means soever they have first gotten the same; as with Agues, swellings, plague sore, or such like.

Of the Ague in the Plague. §. 1.

THe Plague commonly cometh always first with an ague, whereupon presently followeth the Tokens or Carbuncles.

Of the causes of these twain hath been spoken before; whereby it hath also been said, that

that in time of heat, as in the dogge daies (when the heat of man is drawn inward) that the heart as then is inflamed through an unnatural manner of heat: the also the outward ayre (wherein we continually abide) increaseth the heat, and the heart is so set on fire, that the heat spreadeth over the whole body, and thereby quickly causeth a pestilent Ague, especially if there be such humours in the body that are subject to inflammation, but if the body be not thereto inclined, then can there be no cause, how violent soever it be) of such infection.

Of the signs whereby this sickenesse is known. §. 2.

EVen as all other sicknesses have their certain signs whereby they are known, so is it with this venemous Ague, which manifesteth her self with 7. kinds of accidents; whereof the first is, an unnatural cold and shaking, wherepon straight way followeth a great heat; albeit the same oftentimes altereth, so that sometimes first the heat and afterwards the cold ensueth. Secondly, let this happen how soever it will, there followeth alwayes after it a great and intollerable thirst Thirdly, bitternesse and unsavorinesse of the mouth. Fourthly, losse of appetite. Fiftly, heavinesse of all parts of the body, with wearisomenesse and sleep. Sixtly, a binding of the body and the going to stoole by constraint, and with great stench: the urine also cometh with great quantity and stinketh much: lastly, bereaving of sleep. And albeit these foresaid signs manifest sufficiently the violence that nature suffereth, it is to be wondered at nevertheless, that at the first neither by the nature and quality of the ague, nor by the pulse, nor by the urine this infection is to be discerned, for it often happeneth that the urine of all men so infected is very like the urine of the sound, and that the heat is also much slower and obscurer then that of any other agues, and the pulse also quiet and scant to be felt.

Now when all these signs or any of them shall appear, or that there be a Plague sore, or other signs more, then all ancient and later Physitians conclude with one consent, that there is nothing more profitable and requisite then that the Patient do sweat well, and be dealt withal, as hereafter followeth.

By what meanes the Patient is provoked to sleep. §. 3.

FIrst they ordain these confections following whereof shall be taken the quantity of a hasell nut: Take one ounce of Treacle, Pimpernel, Gentian, *Bistorta*, Tormentil, Sage, Rue, Wormwood, Juniper berries, and Nut kernels, of each one drachme, stamp them all together, and then with vinegar make it into a confection. Or use this confection following, called *Benedicta*, one drachme, warmed in Sorrel water, or in water of *Cardous Benedictus*, at what time soever you will, and then cover him very well, and let him sweat three or four hours (if he be able) for the more he sweateth the better hope is there of his recovery. But if the Patient be under the age of twelve yeares, yet above five yeares, then must you give him half a drachme, and further deale as is above saide. It is also needful if the patient may abide it, that he sweat morning and evening. This confection is made as followeth: take of the best Treacle and Mithridate, of each half an ounce, Pimpernel and Angelica, of each ten graines, Cardamom five graines, Cinnamom three grains, Cinnamom ten graines, put them all together. But if you have none of this confection at hand, then a drachme of Treacle or Mithridate with any of the foretaid waters, or take of the golden egg, which is described after two manner of wayes, as followeth.

Take a new laid Hen egg, and make a little hole in the top that the white may issue out, and the yolk tarrie within, then fill it up with good powdered Saffron, and stop the whole on the top again with the white of the egg, and egshel, then roast it by a meane fire so long as the shell will hold, and that it be a clean brown. This being done, take off the shell, and pownd the inner part very small, then mingle it with white mustard seed, Dittany, and Tormentil of each a quarter of an ounce. Now drink daily a drachme of good Treacle to it in weight as heavy as all the rest, then temper all together and drie it in the sunne together, and make hereof a hard confection, which must all the golden egg, and will remain good twenty or thirty yeares.

The second; take all that is before rehearsed except the quantity of the Treacle, and put thereto Angelica, Pimpernel, Zedoary, Caroph. and good Treacle of each as much

as

as of the other, and that in weight; but I think that there is too much Camphir, and too little Treacle.

Whereas it is not a little available to know how this confection is to be used, therefore you shall understand, that whensoever this sickneſſe first beginneth with cold, then must you (if it be a man) before that twelve hours be past, give to him the weight of a ducat, to a woman as much as a Rhemish gildern weigheth, and a child or a boy half as much, with a small wine. But if this sickneſſe taketh one with heat, then take in the place of wine water of Cicory, or if you cannot get it, then take half wine half Vinegar, and sweat upon it. This confection may be used at all times against all bad humours and venom, yet then must the *Nux vomica* be left out.

In the fifth part the twelfth chapter 1. §. is likewise shewed how to provok sweat. The ancient Physitians accustomed to use this powder following for to cause sweat: Take *Valerian* rootes three quarters of an ounce, Gentian, white *Dictamus*, and dry Rue, of each one ounce, good Saffron one drach. red Coral and Mace, of each a drach. and a half, temper it and pownd it all together, and give one drach. thereof with a draught of wine.

A marvellous oyl for to procure sweat: take a glasse bottel as big as you will, fill the same half full of Elder flowers, and put thereon the third part of Hollihock flowers, or flowers of *Ebulus*, and again thereupon a third part of flowers of Saint Johns wort, so that with these three things the glasse be full; this being done, pour thereon old Sallad oyl (the older the better) and at last stop it very close, and so let it stand all the Sommer a sunning, with this oyl must you rub the body very warm three or four times a day. It hath been approved, that this oyl through the abundant sweat that it provoketh, expelleth all contagion of the Plague.

Here follow now Diaphoretical potions; take Rue, Wormwood, and the uppermost tops of the black Berries, of each a handful, Celendine a handful and a half; pour thereon a pint of vinegar, afterwards stop the pot very close that there come out no vapour, and then let the third part seeth away; then strain it out, and keep it close stopt, and when any are infected with the Plague, or in any wise poysoned, then give him of this drink to wit, 2. or 3. ounces and let him sweat after it, and not sleep at all.

The water of *Gratiola* is also very good against all venom, and therefore good to be used in time of the Plague whethere there appear any swelling or any other accidents or not. Some also commend this composition following to be an especial remedie, and it is indeed not to be disdained. Take a great Onion, cut off the top, and make a hole therein, and then fill him with Treacle and the juyce of Rue and vinegar, of each one drach. then close the top too againe with the peece which you clipt and cut off, and fasten with two sticks, and wind it in wet towe, this being done, rost it in the hot ashes till it be very mellow, afterwards stamp it to pap, and then strain it through a cloth, and it will be a broth, then preserve this broth till time of need. If one then be found that he be poysoned, then give him a drachme thereof, and hold toſted bread sprinkled with vinegar before his nose that he cast it not up again, and let him lye down upon the bed that he may sweat. But it is to be noted, that sleep in sweating is forbidden and hurtful, wherefore the Patient shall not sleep till the sweat be gone, that the venom hasten not toward the vitall parts, afterwards he may sleep, that he wax not impotent and weak, yet he is rather whiles to be awaked. And if the age or might of the Patient will permit it, then ought he to be let blood, that the contagious matter which corrupteth the blood, and hurteth the principal parts, might be let out, and the inflammation lessened.

Herein do many Physitians and Barbers dote and erre very absurdly, which straight way as soon as they suppose it to be the Plague, not perceiving any sign thereof, begin their cure with letting of blood. For albeit that it may not be delayed too long, yet ought it not rashly to be done by reason of the former cause.

When the patient thus sweateth, then must the same be wiped from his face with a cloth, and held before his nose Rose vinegar, Rose water, and such like: also let the eyes of the standers be cleansed and perfumed with fire or sprinkled with vinegar, but especially head must be taken that the sweat strike not again into the body. As he hath now sweat, and is wiped clean, then must he be laid in another bed, for the exchange of beds is very good; for thereby they are the lesse infectious, which otherwise receiveth filth more and more, and is more hurtful for the diseased person.

Some are of opinion that the Patient should not take any thing within an houre after his

his sweat, that nature first might be able to indure and beare it the better.

Besides the ayring and sprinkling of the chamber, it is good to insel for the rich, that there be a cloth wetted in Rosewater, and hanged in the night before the bed of the Patient: and when it is dry that it be moystened again.

How to comfort those that are infected with the Plague, §. 4.

Forasmuch as there are many causes in this sickness whereby the Patient may be weakened, which the disease of it self bringeth with it, as great heat, much watching, thirst, pain, sweat, and such like things more: wherefore good regard must be had how the heart might be comforted, and natural strength be maintained; for the which this water following is ordained for the common sort of people, which not onely strengtheneth, but also driveth out the sweat: Take now the distilled water of kernels of Nuts 4. ounces, powdered Vervein one drach. good Treacle 2. scruples, Saffron 7. graines, then mingle it all together, and so give it warm.

It profiteth much also that the Patient alwayes have in his hand odoriferous things, wherewith the heart, the braines, and all inward parts may be comforted, and the bad vapours taken away; for the which this Pomander following is very commodious.

Take red, white, and yellow Saunders, and Roses, of each one drach. Saffron and Camphir, of each one scruple, Musk, and Amber, of each 5. graines; then make thereof a Pomander with Dragagant that is dissolved in Rose water, and then bind it in red sarsnet as is before mentioned.

Of these Pomanders, as well hot as cold of nature are here before divers described, where we have treated of the preservation of the healthy. And these sweating Patients must not abstain from meat, for that the emptinesse of the stomach is very hurtful for them; and what meat and drink is good for them, that shall be shewed hereafter. If the sick person be so weak and feeble that he may not be let blood nor purged, then give unto him this drink following, that shall do him good: take white *Diptamus*, Tormentil, white Coral, Gentian, fine Bolus, Sealed earth, and Vervein, of each one drach. beat them all very small together, and take thereof one quarter of an ounce, good Treacle one drach. juyce of Scabious 4. ounces, vinegar half an ounce, but if you cannot get the juyce, then take the water of Nut kernels, and let him drink it warm: yet in Winter give him wine instead of these waters. The next day give to the Patient fine Bolus tempered with as much conserve of Roses, and 4. ounces, of Scabious water after it. Sometimes also must the common pils be used.

There is also to be made this cordial confection as followeth; take prepared Rubies, Jacincts, Granates, Smaragdes, fine Bolus, Pearles, bones of Stags heart, fine field gold, and small field Unicornes horn, of each one scruple, raw silk that is cut very small, Roses, Amber, Citron peels, and shaven Ivory, of each half a drach. white Sugar dissolved in the juice of Limons as much as you please, seeth the same as thick as Hony, and mingle the rest amongst it to a confection. give this to the Patient 2. or 3. drach. with fresh broth, for it strengtheneth marvellous much all the vital parts, it resisteth all vapours and breaketh the force of the ague.

In like manner there are cordial waters to be outwardly applyed, whereof some shall be shewed hereafter.

Take Rose water 16. ounces, water of Endive, Bugloss, Nightshade, Baulm, and of Sorrel, of each 8. ounces, vinegar, and good white Wine, of each three ounces, red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each 1. quarter of an ounce, Coral, and Roses, of each 1. drach. burnt Ivory, Saffron and Camphir, of each half a drach. then mingle them all together and so wetting in it a double cloth, lay it over the heart.

Or take water of Bugloss, and of Sorrel, of each 3. ounces, water of Willow leaves, Roses, Wormwood, Grasse, Baulm, and of the wild Vine leaves, of each 2. ounces. *Species Cordialium temperatarum* a drach and a half, Saffron 8. greins, Myrrhe, *Diptamus*, Gentian and Paradise wood, yellow Saunders, Basil seed, red and white Behen, Jacincts, and Smaradges, of each half a scruple, juice of Limons 3. ounces, vinegar one ounce, Malmsey 5. ounces, put them all together.

Item, take the water of Bugloss, of Scabious, Violets, and of Burrage, of each six ounces, Rose water wherein Musk is dissolved eight ounces, *Species Cordialium* one ounce and a half, Camphir half a scruple, white Coral four scruples, prepared Pearles, 2

drachms

drachme and a half, beaten Gold 8. leaves, Malmsey 4. ounces.

Note that you must temper the water and the Malmsey together, and when you have taken 3 ounces of the same, then must you take a drach. of this powder and mix it with it, and use it as is before rehearsed.

Another: take Sorrel water, and *Cardans Benedictus* water 4. ounces, vinegar of Gilloflowers one ounce, *Sperma de gemmis frigidis* a quarter of an ounce, Saffron two grains, Camphir 5. grains, Malmsey half an ounce, temper them all together.

When as these Cordial waters are layd on the heart, then may you anoint the sick bodies left breast pap with this salve following: take 1. ounce of the best Treacle, juyce of Limons and vinegar, of each half an ounce, Saffron and Camphir, of each 1. scruple; then mingle them together, and spread it on a cloth or on a red crimsone lour.

This following is stronger; take good Treacle 2. ounces, Rubarb and *Carlina*, of each one drach. and a half, old oyl of Olives 12. ounces, fourty or 45. Scorpions: pownd all that is to be pownded, and then let it seeth in water in a pot alone five or 6. hours long; afterwards strain it through a cloth, and first anoint the heart, the pulses, and the temples of the head. Afterwards he must be anointed upon all outward signs or sores of the Plague, and at the last round about the neck: and this anointing must be done once every six hours very warm: the chamber must also be kept and continually sprinkled.

We have also made mention here before in the sixt part, the second Chapter, and tenth §. and shortly after in the ague *Hectica*, of many things wherewith sick folks are to be comforted and revived.

What is to be done after sweating §. 5.

When as the Patient hath sweat, is wiped, and layd in fresh bedding, then do some counsel to give him out of hand one drachme of fine Bolus, to wit, with Rose water if a great heat be adjoyned, or with wine if without heat, and that not at one time onely, but every day; but it importeth very much whether you have the right fine and ordinar Bolus or not, for there are many kinds of earths used in stead of it.

Further, let him take immediately after this sweating, to wit, three mornings (one after another) of these syrups following, for the cooling of these hot agues, to warm the same first in hot water, and in case that he afterwards feel a sweating again, then let him forthwith continue in his sweat if he can abide it.

Take syrups of Limons one ounce, syrup of Cirons half an ounce, water of Carduus Benedictus, of Sorrel, and of Burrage, of each one ounce, mix them all together for a potion.

And if so be that after the use of these 3. potions the Patient should be purged (which in the ague is seldome needful) then must it be done with this following.

Take of the common Plague pils ten graines lesse then a drachme, and ten grains of Agaricus, Rubarb one scruple, then make hereof small pils, and give them to the Patient at one time.

Another regiment when any one is infected with the Plague. §. 6.

First these pils following are to be given to the patient in the morning betimes; take of the common plague pils a drachme and a half, that are formed with syrup of Cirons, and then let the patient (if the infirmity may beare it) sleep afterwards a little; the next day after shall be three or four dayes after other alwayes in the morning betimes, take a drach. and a half of fine Bolus powdered either with wine or with Rose water, as the time of the year requireth.

This is a marvellous good medicine and without all danger, but onely that it somewhat bindeth the body, which may be prevented with mild clisters, which must be made of oyl onely. It is not amisse for this intent to use these confections following every other day, which strengthen the body, and make it sound; take good Treacle one drach. prepared Smaragdes 7. graines, then mingle it with wine, and so give it him.

But if the party can hardly take this, then let him use one of these Sugar plates following; take Jacinths, Granates, Rubies, Smaragdes, and Saphires, and bones of the Stags heart of each one drach. red and white Saunders, and red Coral of each one scruple, burnt Ivory, fine Bolus, prepared Pearles, Sealed earth, and Unicornes horne, of each four

four ſcruples, field gold one drach. Sugar ſod in Roſewater 16. ounces, make it up into *Manus Chriſti*, or Sugar plates, and take 2. or 3. drach. of them at once.

As ſoone as the patient feeleth himſelf infected, let him preſently take this potion following, and if he vomit not the ſame up again, but ſweate after it, then is it a good ſign of amendment, and a manifeſt token of health.

Take white *Diptamni*, Tormentil, white Coral, Gentian, fine Bolus, ſealed Earth, and burnt Harts horn, of each one drach, Smaragdes, Camphir, and prepared Pearles, of each half a drach. Myrrhe, Saffron, and Citron ſeeds, of each one ſcruple, beat them very ſmall and take of it a quarter of an ounce, Treacle a drach. and a half, Sorrel water, and good white Wine, of each one ounce and a half, mix them for a potion, and give it to the Patient warm lying in his bed, that he may ſweat well, and that as long as he may ſuffer it: afterwards wipe him well, and lay him in another bed. But if the time of the year be cold, and the ague not very hot then may you put the more wine to the foreſaid potion: and contrariwiſe, if it be hot weather, and the ague hot alſo, then let Sorrel water be mingled therewith.

But ſpeciall care muſt be had that the patient caſt not up the potion again, for the which it is good, that there be a great cup under his ſtomach, without opening the skin, and ſome good ſavour be holden before his noſe, his hands dipt in cold water, or ſmell to toſted bread that is moyſtned with vinegar, and ſuch like things more.

Some forbid that men in ſweating ſhall neithre eat nor drink, which were ſomewhat indeed if the Patient be ſtrong enough: but when he is feeble, then have you for this a good direction before.

How to purge thoſe that are infected with the Plague. §. 7.

IN the end of the foreſaid fift §. we have declared, that purging for this ſickneſſe is not greatly commended: nevertheleſſe if great need require, then is there nothing more fit then the common Plague pils, with ſomewhat tempered therewith. This potion following may alſo be given him with all ſafety, for that it doth cleanſe the blood of all ſuperfluities: Take of the confection *Triphera Perſica* and *Manna*, of each three quarters of an ounce, Rubarbe on drachme, then mingle them together in four ounces of Sorrel water. Or take Caſie and ſowr Dates, of each three quarters of an ounce, Confection of the juyce of Roſes one drachme, then temper them together with Sorrell water.

Item, take *Triphera Perſica* half an ounce, prepared Agarick and Rubarb, of each 1. drachme, and mingle them as before.

Another. Take the confection *Diaſena* and *Triphera Perſica* of each three drach. *Confitionis Hamech* a quarter of an ounce, *de ſucco Roſarum* half a drachme, mingle them with the decoction of fruits, or with Bugloſſe water.

But if the Patient be ſo feeble that you dare not give him a purging medicine, then let him have a Cliſter of freſh broth or herbs, with Caſſy, the yolk of an egge, courſe Sugar, oyl of Violets and ſalt. For all ſuch diſeaſes are the conſerve of Burrage, and Bugloſſe, very commodious, even as they are alſo for all peſtilent agues, for they are both very comfortable; they revive the heart, reſiſt venom, take away all weakneſſe, make men glad, and cleanſe the blood.

We have before in the 4. §. written of other things more that alſo do comfort the patient. This ſhall ſuffice that we have ſpoken of the beginning of the Plague: we will now proceed and make mention of other accidents of theſe diſeaſes, and teach their due remedies.

Of the unnatural hent in the Plague. §. 8.

AMongſt the other ſeven accidents of this contagion (that we have heretofore ſpoken of, and are alwayes permanent with the peſtilent agues) there is commonly great headach adjoyned. Now to ſtrengthen the head and braines, have we ſet down many goodly inſtructions and directions, in the firſt part, the firſt chapter, 2. §. and alſo afterwards in the headach of heat.

This potion following may you uſe for the ſame; take Tormentil, burnt Harts horn, red Coral, and fine Bolus, of each one drachme, prepared Pearles half a drachme, Camphire four graines, beat them all together to powder, and then give thereof the

weight of a drachme, tempered with Sorrel water. For this also serveth this Julep following; take the juice of Balm, of Burrage, Bugloſſe, Sorrel and of Cicorie, of each one ounce and a half, Roſewater and white Vinegar, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, the juice of Citrons or Limons half an ounce, Sugar as much as you pleaſe: ſeeth the Sugar to a ſirup, and when you will uſe the ſame, temper it with Barly water unto a Julep. Or take Conſerve of Roſes four ounces, conſerve of Bugloſſe two ounces, *Species Triaſantali* one ounce and a half, burnt Ivorie, Sorrel, Melon ſeeds, peeled Gourd ſeeds, Citron ſeeds and Cucumber ſeeds peeled, and chopt ſmall, of each one ounce and a half, Sugar one ounce, Pearles four ſcruples, and ſix leaves of beaten gold; then temper them well together for a confection: hereof may the Patient uſe as often as he will.

For this alſo is good the Conſerves of Burrage and Bugloſſe, of water Lillies, of the juice of Oranges, and all that therewith may be made.

Of the unſatiable and great thirſt. §. 9.

THe ſecond accident of theſe peſtilent Agues is thirſt, that by little and little getteth the upper hand, ſo that the diſeaſed falling into a frenzineſſe thereby, ſeek to leap into the water, or into Wells, thereby to cool themſelves, and quench their thirſt.

To cool the ſame, and to allay it, you may uſe this Julep following; Take water of Sorrel, of Scabious, of water Lillies, and of Endive, of each ſix ounces, Granado wine four ounces, Vinegar two ounces, the juice of Limons two ounces and a half, white Sugar as much as you will; ſeeth it for a Julep, and then let the Patient drink hereof as much as he thinketh good.

Another; Take Bugloſſe water, and of Sorrel, of each ſix ounces, water of Cicory, Endive, and Willow leaves, of each four ounces, ſirup of Citrons two ounces, ſirupe of Vinegar, and of *Oxyſaccharo*, of each one ounce, Granado wine eight ounces: let them boyl a little all together, except the Granado wine: this being clarified, put the Granado wine unto it. In like manner is alſo good the ſirup of Citrons, Limons, S. Johns grapes, or berries, Roſes, and Endive, being mingled with ſome cooling water; or elſe with Well water or Barley water. Item, Well water which hath been once diſtilled: but above all things that can be deviſed, is nothing better to quench the thirſt, to withſtand poyſon, to comfort the heart, then the juice of Limons, or the ſame being pared, and cut in ſlices, and ſtrewed over with Sugar, and ſo to uſe them, and to take the liquor of them with a ſpoon.

Item, Take Quince Kernels one ounce, let them mollifie one whole night in eight ounces of Sugar water, then ſtrain them: this being done, then temper therewith one ounce of the ſirup of water Lillies, and oftentimes uſe it.

As for the thirſt, you have divers remedies thereto in the third Part, the 12. Chapter, and 10. §. which are altogether very good. And afterwards yet more, to wit, in the 17. Chapter in *Diabete*, and alſo in the deſcription of the Agues.

Of the bitterneſſe in the mouth. §. 10.

THe third accident is the bitterneſſe of the mouth, which proceedeth of an inflamation of the Gall, whereof we have written more at large in three other places, to wit, in the third Part, the eleventh Chapter, and ſixth Section. Alſo in the 15. Chapter, and 10. §. Item again, in the third Part, the 12. Chapter, and 16. §. in which places you may read it.

All ſuch Patients muſt often hold the leaves of Sorrel in their mouthes, or chew the ſeeds of the ſame.

They may alſo very well hold in their mouth Gum Arabick, and ſwallow it down by little and little.

Of the Want of Appetite to meat. §. 11.

THe fourth accident in this Ague is the loſſe of appetite: whereas this ſickneſſe requireth that the Patient in this malady, more then in any other, ſhould be fed and kept in full ſtrength and power; therefore it is needful in this diſeaſe, that the appetite be ſtirred up: whereof we in the third Chapter, and fifth §. and before that in the third Part, the 13. Chapter, and 9. §. have treated at length.

Eſpecially

Especially you may prepare this stomachical unguent for it: Take Marmalade two ounces, Mastick, *Spica* of Indy, Roses, red Coral, of each one drachme, *Agaricus* one drach. and a half, beat them well all together, and then anoint the stomach therewith, or lay it on plaisterwise. Make also these Sugar plates following: take Marmalade made with Sugar two ounces, burnt Ivory, Mastick, water Lillie flowers, and Roses, of each one scruple; rub the Marmalade in a mortar with sirup of Citrons, and form the cakes of the weight of half an ounce: then take thereof at all times, to wit, morning and evening.

Of the weakneſſe and ſleepineſſe. §. 11.

THe fifth accident: Albeit we know well that nature grievously striveth with this malady, and thereby is wearied, weakned, and void of all strength, that is no wonder: for that cause it is highly commanded that men must have especial regard to the strength of the Patient, for the which also are divers means set down how to preserve his strength: so that it is needlesse to rehearse the same at this present. Also it hath been shewed in the fifth Part, the 17. Chapter, and in more other places.

Of the binding in the body. §. 13.

THe fixt accident is the binding of the body, which is augmented by the heat. And to remedy the same, are no strong things required; for strong purgations are not good in this sickneſſe; yet if great need be, you have had before in the seventh §. also in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 20. §. of the binding in the body divers fit remedies, amongst which many easie and cooling purgations may be chosen: wherefore those that will cure this sickneſſe, let them beat 4. ounces of *Sebeſtes*, and steep them in water, and then give to the Patient many times of it to drink. But if you will have it more forcible, then steep with them the leaves of the lesser Ivie.

Of the loſſe of ſleep. §. 14.

NOw the seventh accident of these pestilent Agues is losse of sleep. For this must you take Violets, water Lilly and Elecampane roots, of each one drachme, seeds of Dill and Saffron, of each one scruple; make them into powder, then bind them up in a cloth, and hold it continually before the nose, and smell to it. But of this have you further discourse in the fifth Part, the twelfth Chapter, and fifth Section; the which you may read over, and use it for this purpose.

When a Plague ſore appeareth. §. 15.

WHen these foresaid means have been used, and that there appear a Plague sore; then must you follow such things as hereafter shall be set down: but before we intreat of that, it is not demanded in vain whence this Plague sore *Anthrax* proceedeth, and of what nature it is; whereof the learned do write in this manner. *Anthrax* proceedeth of grosse and hot humours: which when they begin to putrifie, then do they alter into a very hurtfull poyson: sometimes it is red, otherwhiles yellow, sometimes black, which is the very worst and most venemous. For this manifesteth that nature is not strong enough to expel the venemous matter into the utmost and superficial parts, whence of necessity followeth, that the foresaid venemous humours are dispersed to the noble parts of the body inwardly. To remedy the same you shall begin with the letting of blood, and that upon the same side where the Plague sore is now. Afterwards you must use boring and prick the same deep, whereby the grosse blood may be drawn out. Lastly, you must purge the Patient with some of these foresaid purgations that are set down before in the 7. §. And especial heed is to be taken, that for this Plague you use not thereon such means as men use to do in other swellings, that the matter might be expelled; but attractive things are to be used in this, for to draw the matter outwards, and that chiefly in the only place of the Plague sore. In like manner you must lay no hot nor moyst thing thereon, that ingenders matter or corruption, but rather such things as dry greatly, and are reasonable cold by nature, that they may slake the heat, and hinder the vapour thereof.

But if that there appear any redneſſe in any place of the body that would not impoſtumate, then are you to uſe theſe things following: Take the inſide of a Radiſh, the Radiſh leaves, Eldern flowers, and Bayberries, of each half a handful, ſeeth them all together to pap, and then put half an ounce of white Muſtard ſeed amongſt it, afterwards make a ſoft plaiſter thereof, and lay it on the redneſſe. Item, take a black Cockrel, pluck him alive over all his belly, and then bind his belly over the redneſſe, or over the ſwelling, for the natural warmth of the bird will draw out the venome into him. Other ſlit his belly alive, and ſo lay it thereon living. Or take a living Pullet, cut him up underneath, and ſo bind him open againſt the ſwelling: hold the head in thy hand, and ſo let him die. Then ſhortly after take another, and do as before. Further, lay thereon ripening things and cure it, as the other ſwellings. Some lay thereon live Frogs.

Or take beaten Tormentil and Ginger, of each a like quantity, and put thereto as much Treacle: afterwards put it into an Onion made hollow, and roſt the ſame in a mild fire, or among the aſhes: laſtly, ſtamp it to pap, and ſtir three yolks of Eggs amongſt it, and then lay it thereon.

And the better to draw out the redneſſe and ſwelling, the old Phyſitians accuſtomed to make a plaiſter of Eldern leaves, of Scabious with the root, (to wit, of each alike) and to mingle the ſame with leaven, and ſo lay it thereon.

Some do counſel alſo that you may temper therewith Salt, Salt-Peter and Comfrey. And if you will have it yet ſtronger, then are you to put pownded Muſtard ſeed thereto, and in like manner Pigeon dung, for that draweth out the ſwelling exceedingly, and maketh it great; all which aforeſaid things you muſt often cauſe to be renewed.

This next following hath very great force to draw out the venome: Take coals of the Tillee tree, and make them glowing hot, afterwards ſprinkle them with wine and vinegar; when as they are ſlaked, then bind them warm in a cloth that is wetted in the foreſaid vinegar and wine, and wrung out again, then lay theſe coals warm thereon, and when as the cloth is waxen yellow, then put it away, and take another.

Item, take the roots of Crowfoot bruiſed ſmall, and apply it on the place where the pain is, and the venom ſhall be drawn out very much. Others do uſe this thing following, which is alſo marvellous good to draw out the Anthrax, that is, the Plague ſore. Take a great Onion wherein Treacle is roſted (as is lately taught) or lay thereon a plaiſter of *Oxycroceum*, which is alwaies found ready at the Apothecaries, and temper as much *Diachylon cum gummis* thereto. You may alſo make this plaiſter of leaven, Eldern flowers, and Treacle tempered together: for as it is admoniſhed, this Treacle is above all other things to be commended for this ſickneſſe, both inward and outward. Alſo all Chirurgions are here to be admoniſhed, that they have care to open theſe ſwellings before they be maturated, be it by the actual cautery, or by inciſion, and that they hold open the ſame as long as is poſſible.

Item, the foreſaid plaiſter of *Diachilon* only is alſo very good for to maturate and ripen it.

Or take the common plaiſter *Diachilon* 3. drach. and the juice of Celendine, and make thereof a ſalve with a little Wax. Or ſeeth Coleworts with a little Bacon, and lay that thereon, and when you ſee that the ſwelling beginneth to impoſtumate, then are you to uſe theſe plaiſters, ſalves, and other things following; Take Hollihock roots, Scabious, and Mallowes, as much as need requireth, ſeeth it, and ſtamp it all together to pap, and make thereof with Barrowes greaſe a mild plaiſter. Or temper wheat meal with Sallad oyl till it be a pap, and lay the ſame thereon.

Another. Take Mallowes, Hollihock roots, Linſeed, beaten all together, and wheaten meal of each a like much; ſeeth them all together, and pownd it to grout; then mingle it well with Saffron and ſo lay it warm thereon. Now when as the ſwelling is once maturated, then you muſt open it out of hand, be it with an actual or potential cautery, or by inciſion, and ſo keep the ſame open. In the mean time while this ſwelling is a healing and runneth as yet, you muſt daily give the Patient a ſpoonful or twain of Scabious water, or Roſewater with fine Bolus, and ſometimes *de Speciis liberantes*, that thereby the poyſon may be expelled from the heart. This plaiſter following doth alſo ripen very much: Take the middlemoſt rinds of Eldern, ſtamp them very ſmall and temper them with white Vinegar, afterwards ſtrain them through a cloth, and put thereto white Muſtard ſeed beaten, but not too much, for it is very ſharp, and make a pap thereof, and lay it on the ſwelling. Some ſuppoſe that this ſwelling of the Plague doth ripen much if one rub it

ver by day and night with a Saphire ſtone: but they that have proved it, and found it to be true, may write *probatum eſt.*

If the Plague ſore be of a very bad nature, then muſt the ſame be burnt out of hand, or a corroſive layd thereon; but if it be of no maligne nature, and not too hard, then muſt you uſe drying things that corrode not.

Others bind Pullets or young Pigeons upon it: and after that they have ſet cups or Horſeleaches thereon, wherewith they intend to draw out the venom, to ſtrengthen the part, and to allay the pain.

Some have alſo for a cuſtome, when as the Plague ſore doth ſhew it ſelf any where, that they make an iſſue with a corroſive on ſome place of the patients leg, and keep the ſame open, whereby all venemous matters thereby might have their courſe. When as now the Plague raigneth throughout a whole realme or countrey, then is it no bad counſel to do the ſame, when the patient hath firſt been purged: and the ſame might be done on the right leg, four fingers broad under the knee, on the outſide of the leg. And this is alſo good for them that are troubled with the Gout. You may uſe alſo in ſtead of the actual or potential cauterie theſe ſalves following: take Canthatides two ounces and a half (the heads and wings pluckt thereof) pownd them ſmall to powder, and temper it with one ounce of Barrowes greaſe, molten wax, and hony, of each half an ounce, Camphir and Dragons blood of each a drach. and a half. This being well mingled, you muſt then ſpread thereof as much as will cover half a Doller upon a cloth, and lay it over the place where the plague ſore appeareth, and it will in ſix or ſeven hours draw a bliſter, then open the ſame that the matter may run out. This being done, let not the patient ſleep in 10. or 12. hours, nor drink wine in 3. dayes. And for as much as through theſe accidents there is commonly great anguiſh and paine, then you muſt for allaying thereof uſe this potion: take Treacle and Mithridate, of each half a drach. juyce of Scabious four ounces, temper them all together, and give it the patient to drink meetly warm.

Now to kill the Plague ſore: take 2. or 3. yolks of new laid egs, and temper therewith about half an ounce of pownded ſalt, and lay it thereon new every quarter of an hour. This reiterating muſt be ſo often done, becauſe theſe plaiſters are infected themſelves through the venom, ſpecially when the ſore is broken. And if this be not enough, then take therewith Scabious, Comfrey, and Mallowes, of each as much as you pleaſe, and thereof make a plaiſter. And if that the ſore would corrode further, then take fine Bolus, Dragons blood, vinegar, Roſewater, and the whites of egs, as much as you pleaſe, and ſpread or lay the ſame plaiſterwiſe round about the ſore.

Another; take ſoot of the chimney, beaten ſalt, Sage, and Wheat that is chewed in the mouth, of each a like much, and make a plaiſter thereof with black Sope. And if ſo be that this Plague ſore will not be killed through theſe foreſaid things, then put thereto ſome Scabious and Comfrey, and then cleanſe afterwards the ſore with *Mundificativum de Apio*. Take Lovage 1. ounce, Barly meal 2. ounces, ſeeth them together in water to pap, and put thereto Sallad oyl. You muſt alſo often waſh this Plague ſore, to wit, with water of *Cardinus Benedictus*, for that cleanſeth and healeth. Theſe ulcers do many times ſpread wide abroad, whereby the fleſh about is ſpoyled; for this, you muſt uſe ſtronger remedies, as the ſalve of Egypt, *Mercurium præcipitatum*, or that which is better, burning with an hot iron or gold, whereby all putrifying is taken away, and the part fortifyed: for the actual cautery is an effectuall remedy that ſtrengtheneth the parts that be of a cold nature, and doth defend them from putrifaction. Some alſo do ſcarify the ulcers round about with a razor, and then ſpread fine Treacle therein. But as the black edges of theſe ulcers increaſe notwithſtanding all theſe applications, then is it a ſign that this venom is very ſtrong, wherfore muſt you burn it deeper, and anoint the ſcars with ſweet Butter, or with pap of Hollihock rootes, or of Mallowes, and Butter together. But when the ſwelling or ulcers do yeeld matter, then muſt you lay no more maturatives thereon, that thereby the matter augment not, and the healing be the more hindered. Laſtly, you muſt have care to ingender fleſh and skin, whereof we will write and treat further in their due place.

When as this Anthrax or Plague ſore is throughly killed, then take Scabious, Comfrey, of each a handful, and a little Salt, then temper it together with freſh Barrowes greaſe, and lay it warm thereon, and charge it new 3. or 4. times in a day and a night.

Another; take Scabious four handfuls, Treacle one ounce, Barrowes greaſe one ounce, and a half, ſtamp the herbs and make a plaiſter thereof, and refreſh it often, even as is aforeſaid.

aforesaid: You are to cleanse the ulcers with salve of Turpentine, juyce of Scabious, also the yolks of egs especially when all other accidents are past. This plaister following is also especial good; Take green Rue one handful, leaven half an ounce, Pepper one drach. Salt a drach. and a half, three or four dry Figs, pownd them all well together, and make a plaister thereof, and refresh it twice a day. It is of a wonderful operation: for it will separate the bad flesh from the good, and that in the space of 2. dayes.

When these swellings come to impostumate, and have need of cleansing, then are you to use the salve *de Apio*, and therewithal you may prepare these things following: take Turpentine (that hath been often washed with water and Scabious ℥. ounce, Saffron 7. graines, and temper amongst it the yolks of 2. egs.

Or use this thing following to cleanse and ingender new flesh: take Turpentine that is washed with the juyce or water of Scabious 4. ounces, Barley meale one ounce, 2. yolks of egs, Saffron, *Sarcocolla*, Mastick and Frankincense, of each half a drachme, temper it all together. Thirdly, take small beaten *Sarcocolla* half an ounce, and hony of Roses as much as need requireth for to make a mild salve thereof, and use it so long till it be throughly whole. For this also may you see what hath been written in the 5. part the first chapter, 16. §. and further in the 5. part. the 7. chapter, and 14. §. where this matter hath been treated of at large.

When as there is no Plague sore perceived. §. 16.

IF there appeareth no Anthrax or Plague sore, and yet nevertheless the pulse and the urine sufficiently shewed that a pestilent Feaver were at hand, and that the patient by reason of his age and power may suffer well the letting of blood, then must his Liver vein be opened in the right arme. Other do counsel when as the ague endureth, and his strength good, that the *Salvatella* on his left hand should be opened and to let out 4. ounces of blood.

For letting of blood in the Plague. §. 17.

WE have before declared that amongst all other remedies for this swelling the letting of blood is beneficial, but to the end when need requireth it be not omitted, you shall observe these instructions following. When as after sweating you find that any thing appeare (be it a black blister, or any thing else) and that the patient is above 13. yeares old and be strong, then must you let him blood on the same side, and underneath the swelling, and make a good issue that the blood may issue forth the better. If the swelling appeare behind the ears, which the Physitians do call *Parotidas*, or *Gemellos*, even as we in the 1. part, the 9. chapter, 4. §. have shewed, then must you open the head vein on the same side in the arme, and if it will not bleed, then must you open that vein in the other arme. Or if the swelling appeare in the armepits, on the breast, or on the ribs, then must you open his Liver vein in the arme on the same side. Some give counsel that there should be put thereto 3. or 4. Leeches one hour after, that they might suck out a good deale of that venemous blood. But if this Anthrax or Plague sore be any where about the privities or in the groynes, then must you let him blood in the vein upon the foot, or between the great Toe and the next unto it. And if that will not bleed, then must you open the vein in the other foot, and let out more or lesse according to the age and ability of the patient. Some have also anointed the swelling behind the eares with Hens grease: afterwards you must give him the confection *Philonium Persicum*, yet at all times by the counsel of a learned Physitian: also in like manner the *Trochisci de Carabe*, and herewith we will conclude.

The government of life in the Plague. §. 18.

AS much as first belongeth to the meat: you must note, that it is not needful that one need in a pestilential Feaver to forbeare meat, as in other hot and strong agues, as in the Pleurisie, or continual Ague, and other such like; but that need requireth here, that there may be often given to the patient (yea as some suppose every three or four hours) to eat and drink in the time of the Plague. And it hath indeed been found, that all those that have forced themselves, to eat, were much sooner cured then the other; wherefore do they well, that feed such a patient often with light meates, that are dry

and cold by nature, whereby they may withſtand the heat of the ague by their cold, and the moyſture of the bad and ſlimy humours by their drith. Theſe are ſtrained Peaſe, Barly pap, Oaten pap, Haſel nuts, Capon broth, Hen broth, or of any other young fleſh, wherewith Bugloſſe, Burrage, and ſuch like herbs are ſodden, whereof you may make *Panadella* with grated bread. And it is to be generally noted, that you may dreſſe all his meat with ſowr things, as with vinegar, Verjuyce, juyce of Limons, and ſuch like. But if the freſh broth be too ſweet, then may you therewith temper two yolks of egs, which are firſt to be beaten with Roſe water, and ſo make thereof a ſowriſh broth. All ſowr things are alſo good for it, for that they provoke appetite, which preſently is taken away in theſe agues by the putrifaction in theſe diſeaſes, which ſpecially feebleth the ſtomach, inſomuch as very often they are addicted to vomit, whereby the patient will alſo be weakned; for if the patient can keep no meat in his ſtomach, then can the body retain no nouriſhment of the meat that is taken. But to return again to the wholſome meat for the Plague, there are alſo good ſmall Damask Prunes, Conſerves of Cherries, Conſerves of Raſpes, and ſuch like. Alſo all green herbs are to be ſtewed, to wit, Burrage, Lettice, Sorrel, with a little beaten Sanders added thereto. The juyce of Limons, of Oranges, and of Citrons, is a ſpecial ſauce for all his meates.

The moſt commodious drink that he may drink is Barley water, the juyce of Limons, Oranges, Sorrel, Pomgranats, or tempered with the ſyrup of the ſame. Alſo it may be ſodden like a Julep, and the ſyrup tempered amongſt it. The common ſort may ſeeth amongſt it Berberries, Sorrell with the rootes, or Quinces chopt ſmall. But when the patient is wearie of this drink, then may he uſe a draught of Almond milk, or thin beer, and he may alſo drink for this ſickneſſe Well water tempered with Roſe vinegar. Diſtilled waters of Carduus Benedictus, Sorrel, Burrage, or water of Bugloſſe are very good for him. Item, water wherein unripe Grapes are ſodden, or mixed with Verjuyce; alſo the ſyrups of Roſes, of water Lillies, Violets, and of Cicorie, and their Juleps, are much commended for this ſickneſſe. And with all theſe foreſaid meates and drinks is *Manus Chri.* prepared with Pearles, for this maladie much commended. Item, conſerve of Violets, of Roſes, of Gilloſlowers, and ſpecially conſerves of Cuckowbread, taking the bigneſſe of a Walnut of it.

Contrariwiſe, the patient muſt utterly forſake Wine, and all meates that are dreſſt with Spices, Fiſh, Milk, and all roſt meat are hurtful unto him, and after meat the patient muſt keep himſelf very quiet.

Of a convenient ayre for the Plague. §. 19.

THe ayre that is good for ſuch folkes, muſt be cold and dry, becauſe the ſickneſſe requireth all coole things, and that by the drouth all putrifaction may be withſtood. Therefore muſt the chamber (as is ſaid) be ſprinkled with Roſewater, and with Vinegar wherein Saunders and Camphire are tempered. Item, the chamber muſt be ſprinkled with all cold and fragrant herbs and flowers, and in caſe there be any bad ſavors or vapors in the chamber, then are the fuming candles, or odoriferous cakes to be uſed; whereof we have largely written before and ſhewed how they are to be made. Beſides theſe, it is alſo good counſel that there be kept a good fire burning in the ſame houſe, to wit, of Juniper wood, or any other ſweet wood. But if ſo be there be no bad ayre in the patients chamber, then are you not to kindle any fire in that chamber, but uſe any cold and odoriferous things, and you may hang clothes that are made wet in Roſe water, or Roſe vinegar, and wrung out again here and there about his bed or couch.

How they ſhall govern themſelves that eſcape this ſickneſſe. §. 20.

AS for all them that recover from this Plague or any other lingring ſickneſſe, all things are good that ſtrengthen the ſtomach, and provoke appetite to meat, and mildly open the body, and theſe confections following; take *Mirobalani Chebuli, Indi*, Rubarb, Cinamom, Carduus Benedictus, and Cloves, of each one drach. Maſtick a quarter of an ounce, Aloe 3. drach. mingle them all together with the juyce of Mints wherein half a drach. of Agarick hath been ſteeped, then take thereof morning and evening the bigneſſe of a Cheſnut. For this may you alſo look the foreſaid third Chapter;

and twelfth §. where you may find a further diſcourſe of theſe cauſes: and further if it be needful (as is rehearſed) then look into the ſecond Part, the 11. Chapter, where touching theſe things a perfect direction is given.

The ſeventeenth Chapter.

An Exhortation for them that keep theſe Patients.

FIrſt, they that aſſiſt and keep them that are infected with the Plague, muſt have care that the Patient be laid upon a high couch or bed, that the venemous damps and ſtenches may reſt above, and be the leſſe hurtful to the ſtanders by. And it were alſo not amiſſe that there be a burning fire alwaies between the Patient and the ſtanders by. If there be a chimney in the chamber, then look what is ſpoken thereof before.

Secondly, when one cometh near or toucheth the Patient, then muſt his mouth be kept cloſe ſhut, and draw his breath only at his noſe.

He ſhall anoint his noſtrils with Wine wherewith fine Treacle is tempered. The ſtanders by are alſo to uſe every other day the Plague pils every time a drachme, or a drachme and a half. He muſt alſo take oftentimes Mithridate.

Thirdly, fine Bolus preſerveth men from all infection of the Plague, if a drachme and a half of it be taken with Wine and Roſewater.

Fourthly, if you take as much of the golden Egge as the bigneſſe of a Haſel nut one day one, and another day another; to wit, pils, or any ſuch like. All they that viſit them that be ſick of the Plague muſt waſh their mouthes with Vinegar, wherein Wormwood and Rue is ſodden, before they come at them, and eat ſome Garlick with a bit of bread. Further, they ſhall alway hold a Pomander in their hand before their noſe.

All what is deſcribed in the beginning of the Plague, to wit, how the healthy are to govern themſelves with them that have the Plague, is alſo very requiſite for this purpoſe.

All that is hitherto ſet forth for this diſeaſe are very paſſing and good means, which God through his gracious goodneſſe hath ordained and created for the good and welfare of man, wherefore he will of us for theſe his benefits be praiſed, and be acknowledged for the only Phyſitian both of the body and of the ſoul: and eſpecially to pray unto him for his bleſſings, and thank him for the gifts received, for without him all Phyſick is in vain, and of no effect.

The eighteenth Chapter.

Of the Scurvie, Scorbuticus Morbus.

THe Scurvie which is called in Latine *Icteritia nigra*, or *Scorbuticus Morbus*, is none other but a ſpreading abroad of melancholick humours throughout the whole body, chiefly cauſed and proceeding of the obſtruction of the ſpleen. Theſe ſickneſſes are for the moſt part incident unto them that lead an idle life, and feed on groſſe meats and drinks.

They that are burthened with this diſeaſe have commonly a bleak and leadiſh colour, their breath ſhort with an oppreſſion at the heart, and a loſt appetite, wearieſomneſſe of the whole body, the gums are blew and ſwollen, quickly provoked to bleed and putrifie; otherwhiles blew or greeniſh ſpots over all the body, ſtiffneſſe in the knees, and moſt commonly they have black ſmall ſpeckles like Fleabites upon the ſhins; and above that their urine is commonly brown red.

Thus to cure this ſickneſſe the Patient is firſt to receive an eaſie purgation, as the potion made of *Diacatholicum laxativum*, of *Benedicta laxativa*, or of Sene leaves: this being done, then

then may one open his Median vein and let him bleed well, if he otherwise be full enough of blood.

The next day after you must prepare for him this green potion following, whereof he must every day three or four times take a good draught; to wit, in the morning and before noon one time, after dinner two times, and after supper and going to bed a good draught more.

Take *Becabunga* and Watercresses, of each two handfuls, stamp them in a stone or woodden mortar to pap, pour thereto a pint of wine, and a pint of small Beer; afterwards stirre them all together, and strain them through a cloth, then give thereof to the Patient to drink as is aforesaid; and you must continue this till that the Patient be thorough whole.

Another; Take the roots of Horseradish, which is called *Raphanus sylvestris*, as much as you think good, grate the same, or beat it small to pap, and poun into it the moyty Whay of milk, and the other half Rhenish wine; or you may take some small beer as much as you please, and then mingle it with stamped Horseradishes; afterwards strain it through a cloth, and drink thereof three or four times a day, as is aforesaid.

Item, take Scurvigrasse two handfuls, or as much as you please, stamp it to grout in a stone or woodden mortar, temper it with as much small beer and wine as you think meet, or after as you can drink it, for the stronger the better: lastly, strain it through a cloth, and drink thereof as above.

And if it come to passe, that in this sickneesse of the Scurvy, the gums of the Patients mouth were utterly spoiled and putrified; then wash the mouth with wine, and anoint the gums with sirup of Mulberries and with Hony of Roses; and if need so require, then must you anoint your gums with the salve of Egypt, called *Unguentum Egyptiacum*. This may suffice for the cure of the Scurvy.

The nineteenth Chapter.

Of the detestable sickneesse, Drunkennesse.

IT will perchance offend the gentlemen drunkards, that I have here put their sickneesse of drunkennesse after the infectious Plague, and Agues, and that I have compared their sickne sse to those: but I will omit here the losse of everlasting life, disdain of humanity, and credit, consumption of worldly wealth, strife, murther, blasphemy of God, disclosing of secrets, whoredom and many more ungodly works that ensue thereof: wherefore we will here only treat of the hurt that the body may hereby take thereof, and let other judge afterwards, whether this sickneesse be not worse then the Plague it self. For *Solomon* speaketh not in vain, that Drunkennesse hindreth all wisdom, which cannot be otherwise confirmed then that it maketh a man a fool; darkneth it not the understanding? infeebleth it not the brains, the memory, and all the senses? bringeth it not more forgetfulnesse with it, then is perceived in young children? Behold only how the hands, the feet, the head, yea the whole body tremble and quake; how the sight is darkned, the tongue stammereth, and how that there is not one member of the body that is able to discharge his duty aright. Yea, say they, this sickneesse hath neither need of the Physitians nor Apothecaries counsel, make there of as weighty a sickneesse as you can, it may be holpen with a very pleasant medicine, that is, with a sweet sleep. Whereto I say and answer; Oh good drunkard, there followeth with the time some other thing thereof, to wit, that thereby the good complexion of your Liver is spoyled, so that it doth not ingender any good blood, but other bad humors whereby the dropsie afterwards ensueth, or it doth so inflame the same with his slimineesse, that the whole body will be filled with *Cholera*, that lastly spoyleth and fireth the whole masse of blood, whereof then is caused fearfulneesse, frightings, speaking in the sleep, heavy dreams, the losse of all good colour, of natural seed, unfruitfulneesse, leprosie, and lastly, a madneesse it self.

Item, the Palsie, Lethargy, the falling sickneesse, and divers such cold diseases. Is there not provoked through this drunkennesse a corruption of the stomach? the parbreaking of slimy and grosse humours? weakening of all the members, the gout? and to conclude, an untimely death? so that it hath been seen, that some in their drunkennesse have remained

remained dead. Who is it then that doth not take this drunkennesse and swelling or gulling, for the most contagious, perilous, and sodainest sickness? Wherefore to help this extream sickness, there is no restainer nor speedier remedy, then *Sobrietas*, which is sobriety, and fasting or abstinence; and albeit that this receit seem to be altogether bitter, sour and unpleasant for these Ale knights, yet notwithstanding it will expel the foresaid malady, it sharpeneth the understanding and wits, it maketh a good stomach, whereby good blood is ingendred, and bringeth to the body none other but health. I conceive that it strengtheneth the vital spirits of all healthy bodyes, causeth godlinesse to serve their Creator, to seek his glory in holinesse and righteousnesse, and to obey his commandements.

Whereas then some have so weak a stomach, that they are of necessity constrained to drink Wine; notwithstanding are so feeble of brain, that how soberly soever they drink it, it disturbeth their heads and maketh them drunken. For this purpose may these things following be used; to wit, juyce of Quinces, or raw Quinces well chewed, and the juyce taken down; likewise the juyce of Citrons, and Lemons, or of their sirups, do hinder drunkennesse: Hony is also much commended if it be taken after much drinking of Wine; for thereby will the vapours of the wine be so driven downwards, that it cannot weaken the understanding nor the brains. Bitter Almonds confected, Conserves of Gilloflowers; after that you have drunken much, do prevent drunkennesse. In the old time men did make a Garland of Saffron flowers and did wear about it on their heads; the same vertue is ascribed to the blew Violets. And it is said that white Coleworts cut into Sallads and the same eaten, or the seeds thereof chewed in the mouth should hinder drunkennes: for the juye of Coleworts, or the pith of the stalks doth stay the vapours of the wine from ascending into the head. The precious stone Amethist should also preserve man from drunkennesse.

But for to defend and prevent all contagions that proceed of drunkennesse, we will add some things more. First, he must be urged to vomit with *Oxymel* of Squils, with Radish seed, with a feather dipped in oyl and put into the throat, and thereupon he must fast and sleep; and after he awaketh again, you must froth his members, to wit, his hands and feet, with warm water, wherein is sodden Roses, Cammomil and a little salt, and tempered with some oyl of Violets, whereby the vapours may be drawn downwards.

Item, lay a cloth upon the head that is made wet with the juyce of Cucumbers, Purslain, or in any of their waters; the Patient must keep himself herein very sober, and use light meats, Coleworts, Lentils, young Pullets, and young Pigeons drest with the juyce of Lemons, and Pomgranats: the prepared and confected Coriander is also very good, and sleeping thereupon until all the wine be digested, which may be seen by the concoction of the urine. It chanceth oftentimes that drunken folks have great thirst, which if it cometh not through the abundance of wine, then give them fair fountain water to drink, and sour fruits to eat.

You have also an especial thing in the first Part, the 12. Chapter, and 4. §. which is good for drunkennesse and thirst after drunkennesse. There is also a great difference in drunkennesse, and that according to the nature of them that are drunken.

He that is sanguine doth sing, dance, laugh, and is merry; he may be compared to children that soon laugh, and for the most part know not why nor wherefore: and when as a long time they have been merry, then begin they to sleep till they have slept it out.

The Cholerick man is in his drunkennesse angry, raging, clamorous, addicted to fighting, and will not be corrected nor admonished of any body, one cannot bring them to bed, they have much babling, and are much bragging.

The *Phlegmatici*, they will be weary, Lazie, sleepy, and keep themselves quiet.

The *Melancholici* are sorrowful, bewaile sometimes their sins, their friends disease, and that is the greatest impefection of their drunkennesse: they are therein like to the Apes, but in this they are all alike, that they stammer with their tongue, they reel, and tarry not by their right wits.

How hurtful also drunknnesse is, doth appear in many places of this our Book of Physick, where we admonish all men to refrain it, and that not onely of this unmeasurable drinking, whereof we now make mention, but also where all expert Physitians do forbid wine. And we will for a conclusion add this to the rest, that the Rape wine and Beer, wine drunken after meat, doth make one more drunken and sleepy, then any other kind of

Rhenish

Rheniſh wine. And it is a common opinion that watered wine doth ſooner infect the head, then pure wine. But this is to be underſtood of groſſe and thick wine, which by the putting to of a little water is the more ſubtiller, whereby the vapour ſooner fumeth into the head.

You have alſo many remedies before in the firſt Part, the firſt Chapter, and 8. §. that are commodious for the pain of the head through drunkenneſſe.

The 20. Chapter.

Of Frighting and Fear.

LEt no man wonder that we ſpeak of Frighting amongſt other ſickneſſes; for it is not onely found by experience, that through many ſorts of diſtemperature of the blood many ſundry ſickneſſes are provoked, but alſo a ſudden death it ſelf; whereof cometh not onely the forementioned, but alſo thereby is cauſed an ineſtimable fear and faintneſſe of heart, whereby they become moſt unfit for all worthy and knightly proweſſe, and are deprived of all counſel and indeavours. Of this faint heartedneſſe and fear, the Philoſophers do write, that the ſame for the moſt part do raign and dwell in the heart of ſuch as are of a cold nature, which being ſodainly and haſtily ſet upon, their ſubtilleſt blood runneth with ſuch a ſtream to the inward parts of the body, and towards the heart, that it ſeemeth, that the natural heat ſhould be ſuffocated; whereby cometh ſuch bleakneſſe and quaking, yea ſometimes ſwounings, debility of the ſinews and muſcles, that it makes frighted perſons very feeble and weak, whereby alſo the motions of the muſcles are ſo diſturbed, that both ordure and urine ſlides from them, their teeth chatter for cold, they are thirſty, and the whole body ſhivering and ſhaking.

For this are two principal and alſo certain remedies (even as *Horatius* ſaith) to wit, that one ſhould build a wall of ſteel about him, that is, ſhall alwayes have an upright conſcience, that cannot accuſe him of any miſdealing.

Secondly, that he fear God, and have righteouſneſſe alwayes before his eyes; which medicines do ſo free men of all frighting, that (like as *David* ſaith) it will alwayes go well with him: and know for certain, that God of his goodneſſe hath with his holy Angels (as it were a ſtrong tower) compaſſed him round about, whereby he will defend him.

But the faintneſſe of heart is alſo to be holpen with natural medicines. Note therefore, that when the blood through frighting is ſtirred, and runneth towards the heart (as it indeed hapneth) then muſt of neceſſity the trembling and quaking follow after it: for which you have in the ſecond Part, the ſixt Chapter and ſeventh §. a very good Eldern water, and many other things deſcribed. When a woman (with child eſpecially) is frighted, then do ſome bid, that there ſhould be taken a quarter of an ounce of clarified hony, and therewith ſome ſcraped Nutmeg, and ſo eat it all together.

Wine moderately drunken, maketh the fearful and faint hearted men, ſtout and couragious.

And it is a common cuſtome, if any be ſore frighted, that he be admoniſhed to make water, and if there be any that after ſuch frighting can come hardly to himſelf, and fall into a ſwoune, then is he t o uſe thoſe things that ſtrengthen the heart, for which there are many remedies deſcribed in the ſecond Part, the ſixt Chapter, and firſt §. and alſo afterwards in the deſcription of the heart.

The 21. Chapter,

Of Trembling.

Forasmuch as the trembling or quaking is a ſign or token of fear, (yea for the moſt part is cauſed thereby) therefore it might be needful to write ſomewhat amply thereof: But we have made in the firſt Part, the twelfth Chapter, and 12. §. a long diſcourſe thereof, and therewith alſo ſhewed, that this is a diſeaſe of the Brains.

Alſo of the trembling and panting of the heart, hath been ſpoken at large in the ſecond Part, the ſixt Chapter, from the third §. unto the ſixt §. Wherefore I do ſuppoſe, that it were needleſs to diſcourſe any further thereof at this preſent.

The 22. Chapter.

Of the Impediments that come of Falls.

Into what diſeaſes men may fall by falls, ſtumblings, blowes, pinches, and ſuch like, is ſufficiently known to all men: whereof we have alſo written in divers places, and eſpecially in the ſecond Part, the 5. Chapter, of the vomiting of blood: and alſo in the 18. §. of the clotted blood, where very good remedies are deſcribed, and therefore here but a few declared.

But if any be bruiſed much through a fall, then have the Chirurgions a ſpecial experiment, that they ſpeedily flea off the skin of a Weather, the which they muſt lay warm round about the bruiſed or wrenched member, and keep it warm, and this ſhould help in one day.

Brimſtone ſodden in ſtrong Wine, is alſo very good: In like manner pownded Garlick tempered with Barrowes greaſe.

Item, take Bran of Rye meal, the roots of *Ebulus*, of each a like quantity, ſeeth them together in a little Vinegar, and ſo bind it upon the wrenched or bruiſed part.

There was once a child fallen out of his Cradle, who thereby had got a ſwelling on his arm, which was healed by anointing it with oyl and ſalve of Roſes.

For this alſo do ſerve all golden and waters of life, principally if any ſwooning were at hand, the ſame waters drunken and laid upon the bruiſed member, and anointed doth heal.

And if the dead Palſey or falling ſickneſſe joyn with it, then look into the firſt Part, the 12. Chapter, in the end of the 13. §. where are ſhewed ſome good remedies commodious for this purpoſe.

And if the joynts be removed from their natural places, then read the deſcription of the Crook back in the ſecond Part, the fourth Chapter, and 2. §. In like manner alſo of the diſlocation in the fourth Part, the 7. Chapter, and 1. §: where very good remedies are deſcribed.

The end of the ſixth Part.

The

The seventh Part of this Book speaketh of certain Poysons, and Venoms, of Plants, Mettals, and Beasts.

THe miserable life of man is not subject to sicknesses and diseases enough, as well inwardly as outwardly, but there must be divers venemous things to hurt and annoy the same, which are almost among all creatures, and with such hurtful quality indued, that they bereaven men of their lives, some sooner, and some later. But God of his goodnesse hath ordained innumerable and wholsome means for it, and that almost in the smallest creatures, as in Herbs, Roots, Earths, and other: amongst which the simplest in sight have otherwhiles the most vertue to resist the strongest poyson; preserving both man and beast from death, even as hereafter may be seen in many places, which ought to admonish us to praise and thank God Almighty for our health, and to acknowledge him to be the fountain of all goodnesse. And to speak and treat thereof in this our Book of Physick, we purpose to rehearse them in this seventh Part, wherein shall be only admonished of such poysons as are known in *Germany*, and (as one may speak) are every day before our eyes. For what poysons are or may be found in the East, and in *Africa*, it were superfluous to speak of them at this present.

We will part these poysons or venoms into three kinds; whereof the first shall be the vegetables, as Herbs, roots, Plants, Seeds, Juices, and such like: the second sort are the venemous Mettals; the third sort are certain Beasts, and whatsoever else cometh from them, whereby men are harmed: so that the summe of this seventh Part consisteth in two things.

First, to know all the venoms whereby heed may be taken to eschew them.

Secondly, if it so chance that any one have taken any of them unwittingly, or were ministred unto him by another; how that one may help him, and shew how that venome might be withstood, and how to extinguish his deadly quality. For it is very needful that every Physitian or housholder be provided with good remedies against all manner of venome, whereby he as soon as need requireth, may have somewhat in readinesse that he may minister against the venome so taken. For in all such causes there serveth no delay; as there be but a few venemous beasts and other, which if they be not remedied out of hand, do so infect, that afterwards they remain irremediable, as we have also shewed in other places.

And therefore must we watch and meet with these venemous and hurtful things, imitating the first rule, if any man be poysoned by meat or drink, then is a vomit the principallest remedy. Or if he have received any venome through thrusting or biting, then must you set cups or boxes with pricking thereon, scarifying or cauterizing the sound flesh about the wounds, and at the last if need be, cut off the whole joynt or member. And those thrusts and bits are to be cured by some injection and application, so to hinder the violence and operation of the poyson. The poyson taken inwardly is subdued through art and sharp wine, and other means; and lastly through purging, sweating, and such like, as hereafter shall be taught. Regard is also to be had of the quality of the venom, and of the strength of them that have taken it; that the strongest poysons may be expelled with the strongest remedies, and the smallest venoms with mild medicines and remedies. Also regard must be had to the time of the year, and to the age of the poysoned person. This is now briefly prefixed for a Preface, we will now proceed to the remedies.

The

The firſt Chapter.

All thoſe things that are good againſt Poyſon.

ALL that by the learned may be uſed againſt Poyſon, ſhall here be deſcribed and ſpecified, and we will ſhew and name thoſe things that are well known, and eaſily gotten. For what may it profit us to counſel any man to take the gall of an Elephant, the blood of a Crocodile, and the Eggs of a Tortoiſe in the Sea?

Firſt, Verjuyce (which is of himſelf good alone) or ſirup made thereof, is very good, for it withſtandeth all Poyſon.

The roots of Valerian, brown Betony, and Rue, of each a drachme, taken with Wine, is alſo good againſt poyſon. Conſerves of Gilloflowers and their Wine are alſo good for the ſame: the Bevercod, the conſerves and wine of Burrage do alſo withſtand poyſon. In like manner alſo the juyce and the ſirup of Citrons, and all that is made thereof.

Cardinus Benedictus leaves are alſo marvellous good againſt all venom (it is ſaid that *Frederick* the Emperour was the firſt that brought the ſame herb out of Greece into Germany) for the juyce, water, powder, and ſeed of it are all good againſt poyſon.

Fennel ſeed is alſo much commended, Sealed earth (if it be right) is of all Phyſitians accompted for a noble medicine againſt all venom.

Pentaphyllum and wild Radiſh are alſo much commended.

Wine of Hares tongue is alſo uſed for the ſame, albeit the ancient Phyſitians do make no mention thereof.

The Conſerves of Elder-flowers is alſo very good, and is accounted a conſerve for the common people.

The Conſerves of Hyſſop, and the wine of the ſame, doth alſo contend with venome.

Nep, Comin, and Caraway, are more ſtrong then the Fennel ſeed, *Agaricus* is good if a man will purge.

Angelica is of all Phyſitians accounted good againſt all manner of venom, and recommended by the name *Luſtrpivium*.

Enula withſtandeth all venom. The *Oleander* which the Greeks call *Nerion* and *Rhododendron* is alſo commended. The long Hartwort is alſo good. Rue hath an eſpecial efficacy againſt all poyſons: and in like manner the ſeeds of wild Rue; Roſemary is alſo praiſed of ſome: the learned write not any thing thereof. *Sagapenum* and *Serapinum* is alſo accounted good ſome.

Wormwood, and all that is made of Wormwood is marvellous good againſt all venom.

The compounded things that are commodious againſt all venom, ſhall hereafter follow.

An Exhortation for all thoſe that are afraid to be poyſoned. §. 2.

AMong the Phyſitians were wont to have an old Proverb, and to ſay, that Venome is ſo proud that it dwelleth commonly in Gold and Silver: whereby they meant, that great perſonages that eat and drink out of Gold and Silver, are in greater danger to be poyſoned then the common people that do eat and drink out of earthen diſhes; wherefore muſt ſuch high perſonages that are afraid to be poyſoned, diligently take heed of the meat and drink that they eat, and that are dreſt of divers things.

Alſo they muſt not take too much of all ſweet, ſalt, and ſowr drinks, and they muſt not eat too eagerly nor too haſtily, and they muſt at all times have great regard of the faſhion of their meat and drink.

But the moſt ſureſt way is, that before the meal-tide he take ſome thing that may reſiſt venom, as Figs, Rue, pomions, each by himſelf or tempered together. The Citrons, Rape-ſeed, Nep, or any of thoſe that are deſcribed before, the weight of a drachme taken with wine, now one and then another, is very much commended. Sometimes alſo two Figs with a little Salt, then again Mithridate or Tiriacle, and ſuch like more may be taken before the meal-tide.

When any body perceiveth that he hath taken Poyson. §. 3.

BUt if one be ſure and perceive, or certainly know that he hath taken poyſon, then muſt there be no long diſputing what is to be done: for in caſe that one will be long a counſelling what ſhall be done, then will the venom in the mean time infect his blood and other vital parts: whereby the party may be neglected, and afterwards [illegible]. Therefore muſt the common means be uſed (as is ſaid before) to provoke him to vomit and caſt, and that through the taking of luke-warm water tempered with Sallet oyl, or with ſweet Butter.

There are here and there in this Book divers remedies expreſſed, whereby vomiting is to be furthered, which may be uſed for this purpoſe, and you may ſeek for them in the Table. And as ſoon as the Patient hath vomited, then are you to cauſe [illegible] have a looſe and open body, which may ſoon be brought to paſſe with a ſtrong Cliſter, whereby the remaining ſharpneſſe of the venom, that might remain behind in the ſtomach, or in the bowels, might be driven out and expelled.

The ſignes when one is poyſoned. §. 4.

ALbeit that the ſigns of thoſe that be poyſoned, and the nature of the Poyſon taken, or the biting of a venemous beaſt are divers (as ſhall hereafter be more at large declared:) nevertheleſſe can it not be but good and requiſite to comprehend them all under one.

Firſt they get a vehement pain in the ſtomach, in the belly, and in the bowels, pain of the Liver, the kidneys, and the bladder. Often they get a hoarſeneſſe, gnawing and biting, ſhivering, cold, dumbneſſe, and convulſion of the ſinews, feebleneſſe of the pulſe, the Lethargie, ſwimming of the head, darkneſſe of ſight, and a ſhortneſſe of breath, yea that they ſeem to choke, great thirſt, bleeding, lack of appetite, great heat, feebleneſſe of the face, loſſe of underſtanding, of might, and more ſuch like ſymptomes; yet hereby cannot ſufficiently be known the nature of the poyſon that hath been taken.

For example, if any man hath taken *Cantharides* (which are Spaniſh Flies) he getteth diſeaſes in the tongue, in the ſtomach, and in the kidneyes, the bladder is inflamed, he can ſcarcely make water, to wit, without infinite pain, blood, and great ſharpneſſe. The Caterpillers of the Fir tree called *Bupreſtes*, and the *Salamandra*, do alſo cauſe the foreſaid accidents:

Item, all thoſe that have taken *Opium* do fall into a very deep ſleep, or altogether into a malady, that is called *Lethargus*, to wit, the ſleepy ſickneſſe, they get bleak ſpots, they wax ſluggiſh, cold and ſtiffe, and are deprived of all their ſenſes.

The like chanceth to them that have taken the juice of *Mandragora*, or the juice of Hemlock.

The Henbane ſeed maketh men not onely fooliſh and raging, but as it were mad, or as if they had taken *Aconitum*: they be not onely choaked that have taken *Aconitum*, but alſo thoſe that do take Toadſtooles, Ceruſe, Gippes, and Oxe blood: but (as it is ſaid) we ſhall hereafter further diſcourſe and admoniſh at large of this matter.

Here we will moſt of all intreat of thoſe poyſons eſpecially that grow, and whatſoever alſo proceedeth thereof, and adde unto them their Latine and Greek names.

The

The second Chapter.

Of the venemous Plants and such like.

THE *Mandragora* is not otherwise in Latine nor in Greek, and is by good reason placed amongst the venoms, for that by her nature which is cold in the 3. degree, it ohth choke one: and when one taketh too much of the juyce, then causeth it a sleep unto death. It is also very dry, yet may with discretion the weight of 1. drach be given thereof as need requireth; for the learned write, that if any man be too sore frighted or feared, so that he must be cut or burnt, then must there be given 1. drach. of this root unto him, and he shall then fall into so deep a sleep, that he shall 3. or 4. hours long remain unsensible, in which space the Chirurgions have time enough to do their work.

But what the Toothdrawers or Mountebanks do with this root of *Mandragora*, (making the people beleeve that they grow under the gallowes of the urin of the hanged theeves, having the form of a man) is known to all men.

Henbane is called of the Greeks *Hyoscianus*, and at the Apothecaries *Insquianus*, which is almost as much to say, as hogs beanes, and that by reason that this herb is deadly poyson for swine, if they be not presently well washed, and drink much, or do eat Creuets, which have a special operation against this poyson.

This Henbane is of three kinds: the one hath red flowers and black seed; the 2. hath yellow flowers and yellow seeds, and are both by their very cold nature venemous; the third hath white flowers and white seeds, and is also cold in the third degree, which of the Physitians is very aptly used in some causes; but if you cannot get the white, then take the yellow, and leave the black. You may make of the new seed a juyce, which is dryed in the sun, but it may not be kept above one yeare. When you have taken this juyce, then will it make one frantick, and as he were drunken, but by certain medicines the same will quickly away. You must take therefore the milk of an Asse, or in stead thereof Goates milk, or Cowes milk.

Item, Hony water is very good for it, if he drink much thereof; when you are weary thereof, then cease, and then drinke again afresh. Water wherein Figs were sodden, is also very good for this. Cucumber seeds or Pingles sodden in wine and so used, are good for this purpose. Item, wine that is somewhat salted, and tempered with Barrowes grease, is also not ill.

Item, there is very commodious, for it Nettle seed, Cicorie rootes, white Mustard seed Creses, Radishes, Onions, or Garlick, any one of these taken with wine, and then afterwards the patient laid to sleep, even as one that is drunken.

Coriander is a known seed, called in Latine *Coriandrum*, and in Greek *Corion* or *Coriuon*. The learned have divers opinions of it, *Dioscorides* writeth, that it is cold, but *Galenus* and his followers do reject this opinion, and saith, that it is hot, or at least somewhat warming. And albeit this seed be somewhat venemous, yet may the same easily be corrected, to wit, when it hath been steeped in Vinegar, and is dryed again, and then may it be used in many medicines as you may find every where, &c. Take prepared coriander &c. The nature of his venom is, that when one eateth too much of this seed, or drinketh too much of the juyce, then will the head be thereby so out of frame, as if a man were drunk; it maketh one hoarse, and as if he were dumbe, or if he speak, yet are they but unreverent words. In fine, it is not without great danger; for it hath been often found, that after the taking of the juyce death hath followed, therefore it is good counsel that you use of this a little, and but seldome: yea some will correct the Physitians that daily use this seed for strengthening of the head, by reason that it is much contrary to the head, and noysome. Now to take away the venom of the seede, you are first to cause the patient to vomit, and that with oyl called *Irinum*, or in stead thereof with oyl of Olives, both of them taken with the warm decoction of Wormwood. Also you may fry an egge or two in this oyl, and mix it with pickle of salt fish, and so drink it, or the pickle alone, well salted Henbroth, or Goose broth. In like sort sodden wine mingled with lee, are very good for it.

Nardus seeds or *Nigella* seeds, called in Greek *Melanthion*, and in Latin *Nigella*, by reason

reason of his blackneſſe. There are four kinds of it, two black, the which (by reaſon of their pleaſant ſmell) are planted in the gardens: another which groweth of himſelf in the fields; the 4 ſort is yellowiſh and hath no difference from the black kinds. The nature of them all is hot and dry, which maketh them venemous, when one taketh too much thereof he is in danger of death. And herein is a wonderous work of nature, that contrariwiſe it reſiſteth poyſon and in old time (by reaſon of his pleaſantneſſe) was baked in bread. For what diſeaſes then this ſeed is good, that is ſhewed and taught in more other places.

Milk thiſtle. This root the Greeks call *Camaleonta*, for that the leaves do alter their colour after divers ſorts, according to the nature of the ground, now black, and then green, now blew, and then yellow, and into divers other colours. In Latine this herb is called *Cardnus Sutinus*, that is Sowthiſtle, for that it killeth hogs if they eat this herb mingled with Barly meale. In like manner it killeth Rats and Mice if they eat thereof, and drink not thereafter immediatly. The Apothecaries call this herb *Cardopatium*. Becauſe that this is hurtful to the ſaid beaſts, therefore cannot it be but hurtful to men if they eat too much thereof. And the ſame is manifeſted by his nature, for that it is hot in the ſecond degree, and dry in the third, yet this root is often uſed for many things, and highly commended, and that moſt of all againſt the venom of the Plague. There are two ſorts, black and white Milkthiſtle, both of one nature; notwithſtanding these is here to be noted, that the black is to be uſed onely outwardly.

The Yewtree do the Greeks call *Smilax*, and the Latiniſts *Taxus*. This tree is well known, it groweth proſperouſly in cold and ſhadowie places, for ſuch is his nature. That he is placed amongſt the venoms, is not without cauſe, for it hath been tried, that if bottles be made of it, and the wine kept therein a certain time, it killeth a man. In like manner doth the fruit of the ſame tree which groweth in Spain. Moreover it is ſaid that whoſoever ſleepeth under the ſhadow of this tree, or upon the leaves, and ſpecially upon his bloſſomes, muſt die, for that the whole body will thereby be overcold, that a man muſt die ſodainely. His leaves are not hurtful for the wild beaſts, but onely for ſuch beaſts as do not chew their cud, as the ſwine, Horſes, Aſſes, &c. they are killed with it. It is ſaid alſo, that if a copper naile be ſtrook into his ſtem or body, then will this venom vaniſh away. His ſmoake ſhould kill Mice, and his venom will alſo be taken away by the ſame means that hereafter is preſcribed againſt the venom of Hemlock, where you may ſeek and find the ſame.

Wild Cucumbers and their juyce *Elaterium*, whereof is ſo many times admoniſhed that men muſt deale with it warily, and uſe but a very little at one time, except it be in gleetiſh ſickneſſes, as the Dropſie, and ſuch like, the Greeks do call this herb *Sicyagrion* which is wild Cucumbers, for that the ſame are like to the tame Cucumbers. When theſe wild Cucumbers are ripe, and ſoftly handled or wrung, then break they open, wherefore you muſt look to your eyes for they are hurtful. In Latine it is called *Cucumis Anguinus*, and *Elaterium*. The Apothecaries and common people call it a wild Cucumber. His juyce is *Elaterium*: it is made as well of the roots as of the leaves: but it is not ſo forcible as that which is made of the fruit. Of all medicines, there is none that continueth longer good then the ſame: for *Theophraſtus* writeth, that it hath been found good and forcible 200 yeares, and it ought not to be uſed until it be 3 yeares old, it is hot and dry by nature, for which cauſe *Dioſcorides* doth place it amongſt poyſons. It is ſo vehement, that when a woman uſeth it in peſſaries it killeth the fruit. But we have written of it alſo in the introduction.

Fleawort. The Greeks do call the ſeed of this herb *Pſyllium*, and the Latiniſts *Pulicaria*, by reaſon that the ſeed is like to Fleas, or that it hindereth the breeding of ſuch vermin: the Apothecaries do keep both the Latin and the Greek names. It is (as ſome ſay) cold in the ſecond degree, and is meaſurably dry and moyſt. Others do aſcribe great cold unto it, wherewith this following doth agree. Albeit this ſeed be comodiouſly uſed as many places of this book may witneſſe, yet hath it nevertheleſſe his venom, to wit, when one uſeth too much thereof, for that it maketh the whole body cold, ſluggiſh, feeble and numb. Againſt this may be uſed that which is preſcribed for Coſtander.

Crowfoot the Greeks do call *Batrachion*, the Latiniſts *Ranunculus*, that is Frogwort, either becauſe it willingly groweth (as Frogs do) in moyſt places, or for that the Frogs gladly hide themſelves under it. Some call this herb *Flammula*, by reaſon of his burning nature; for being applyed green, it doth noo ogely excoriate the place with pain,

but also if the flowers ly long thereon, it maketh a hard eſcar: the beggers have learned this ſo well, that therewith they open their legs, and make them ſore, that they are loathſome to behold, to the end that thereby they may get the greater almes. As much as appertaineth to the venom of this herb, it is by nature hot and dry, ſo that it burneth not only the outward parts, but alſo the inward parts, when it is taken inward. The root dryed provoketh neeſing, if one hold it a good while at a tooth, it dryeth ſo much, that it falleth to peeces.

Apiaſtrum, which the Apothecaries do call *Apium riſus*, is alſo of the ſame nature. We call it water Crowfoot, it is with us very ſharp, but much ſharper and more venemous in the Iland *Sardinia*. All that eat thereof are deprived of their underſtanding, the ſinewes of their mouth and their lips are ſo mightily convulſed that the patient ſeemeth alwayes to laugh, when nevertheleſſe he dyeth; whereof the vulgar proverb is ſprung, *Sardinius Riſus*, which is, Sardinias laughing, that is as much as when one laugheth where he had more need to weep.

Now to cure this venom, you are to give to the harmed abundance of hony watter and milk to drink, and anoint the body with ſome warming ſalve, or to put the patient into a bath of warm water, among which oyl is tempered, and in fine to uſe all things for this purpoſe that is to be uſed for the cramp and convulſion of the ſinewes.

Nightſhade do the Greeks call *Strichnos* or *Trichnos* and the Latiniſts *Solanum*, the which name the Apothecaries have turned into *Solatrum*. Hereof are 4. kinds deſcribed by the learned, whereof the firſt is garden Nightſhade, which may be eaten among other potherbs. The 2. ſort are the winter Cherries, whereof we will not write any thing. The 3. doth provoketh ſleep. The 4. ſort maketh men mad and out of their wits, wherefore it is called in low Duch, Dolcruyt, that is Maddingwoort. The Nightſhade that provoketh ſleep, is cold in the third degree, like to *Opium*, whereof we will ſpeak ſhortly, but it is not altogether ſo cold; and albeit that ſometimes the root of this herb is taken for the dropſie, yet notwithſtanding ſhall the ſame be forborn, for it hath often happened, that when one hath taken too many of the berries that thereby is become raging and mad, yea ſtiff over all his body, as though all his joynts were diſlocated. This ſtifneſſe accuſtometh commonly to endure three dayes, ſo that ſome doctors accuſtome to uſe the ſame to bring men into a miſbeleef, as Plinie writeth. If one take the weight of a drach of this root, it maketh a man lufty, friendly, and raiſeth wonderful fantaſies, ſo that they ſeeme to be fooliſh, and to have forgot all ſhamefaſtneſſe. And ſuch as take two drach thereof, they will be wholly mad and raging; and if one take half an ounce, then will death follow, for the ſaid Pliny writeth, that the Greeks with ſuch like meriments have plaid the fooles: whereby may eaſily be noted, that theſe two ſpecies of Nightſhade ought not to be uſed for any medicine inwardly. And this foreſaid making mad is nought other then the Greeks call *Dorycnion*, which was uſed in old time for the poyſoning of arrowes. The taſt of this herb is like milk, it provoketh hoarſneſſe, it burneth the tongue by his ſharpneſſe, it expelleth blood by vomit, driveth out matter and filth by ſtoole, even as they that have a red or bloody flix. Thus before theſe and ſuch like accidents do appear, one may uſe theſe remedies following, to wit, that the patient take much Honywatter, wherein Violets are ſodden, and then vomit it out again. In like maner and you to uſe the milk of an Aſſe, Goates milk, or new warm wine, wherein Anniſ ſeed is steeped, or hereto with bitter almonds are mingled. The water wherein Muſſels, Crabs, and ſuch like are ſodden is very commodious to be drunken for it, yea muſſels themſelves eaten raw, and likewiſe cliſters: and in fine all that may draw the venom out of the body.

Neeſingwort is of two ſorts, to wit, white and black. Hellebore the Greeks call *Helleborus*, and the Latiniſts *veratrum nigrum*, whereof we have at large diſcourſed in the Introduction. We take this herb name of the operation, becauſe it urgeth neeſing. The ancient Phyſicians make much ado with it, and commit many follies by it. Both theſe roots are in uſe, yet is it with them as with other things, that whoſoever taketh thereof too much is in peyſon, and bringeth himſelf into the peril of death.

These roots are hereby known to be venemous, when as they are digged up, and ſhot the vapour of them caſteth into the face of the digger, that thereby he hath great pain in the head and ſwelleth much: wherefore it muſt be digged up ſpeedily, and the digger ought to ſtand with his back to the wind, and to eat ſome Garlick before, and then drink a good draught of wine. Some ſay Blackneeſingwort killeth horſes, oxen, and ſwine, and purgeth downwards. White neeſingwort is not ſo hurtful for to vomit and purge upwards.

The Physitians specially forbid that none of these rootes should be used in women, old folke, nor children, nor in them that have a short breath.

Poppie heads, and the juyce of them, called *Opium*, the which is known with as very well is called of the Greeks *Mecon*, and of the Latinists *Papaver*. Some of them have red flowers, which are Corneroses, the which if one plant, they bear white, gray, and black seeds, of which the white are the best, and the black the worst. All theis natures are cold until the fourth degree, therefore not onely the seed, but also the whole herb provoketh sleep. There is also a yellow sort; but the same is hot and dry by nature. And by reason of the extream cold, is this herb numbered amongst venome, (not if it be measurably used) that bringeth any hurt with it, for that the seed thereof is baked in bread, but onely when one taketh too much thereof, and that chiefly of the black, which is much stronger then the white, in provoking sleep, for thereby is the sleepie sickneſſe *Lethargus* caused. And of that black Poppie seed, or of these heads (the which grow not in this gonntrey, but elsewhere) is the juyce made, dryed, and afterwards is called *Opium*, which is used in many places of this book. But if you are to use it inwardly, then must it (as we have often admonished) be warily taken in hand: for if there be too much given thereof at once, then doth it cause a man to sleep so long till he die; therefore there are a number of antient Physitians that affirm that none ought to use little or much of it, to wit, inwardly, but to leave and refuse it as a very hurtful poyson; but if it happen that any have taken thereof too much, then are you to give unto him salt with *Oxymel* to drink, even as is to be done when any body is poysoned with Toadstooles.

Toadstooles do the greeks call *Mycetes*, the Latinists *Fungi*, whereof are many kinds and some when they are dreſt cannot hurt, yet at all times give no good nourishment, for that they are hard of digestion, and are avoided downwards, as they were taken. In fine, all learned men agree in this poynt, that some through a secret nature and other through their quantity, kill one no otherwise then as if they were strangled with a cord or rope. Wherefore it is rather a bravery and an intollerable lightnesse of them that eat the same, and put their health in danger, then any part of wisdome.

Do not we read of the Emperour *Claudius*, and of whole families, that meeting together at bankquets, and eating of Toadstooles, have dyed instantly; Wee speak not here of those that eat the same moderately, and onely for pleasure, and yet that they do no great good to those that use them: for they augment the cholerick humours, and inflame all other bad humours of the body. One may know them hereby, that in dressing they wax hard; they also get a venemous nature if they grow about rustie iron, or any foul thing. Item, by any venemous beasts, as Adders, Snakes, Toades, and such like, when they have their holes thereabout, and so infect the same.

Wherefore it is to be well noted, that when any have taken thereof, and find any hinderance of the breath, or otherwise find himself ill at ease, that then the patient must immediatly be caused to vomit, whereby the poyson may be cast up; which may be done by the taking of the pickle of fish and lee mingled together, for by the decoction of Marjoram and Hyssope. The force of this venom may also be allayed by Hens dung taken with vinegar.

Esula, all the venemous herbs that give milk, are 7. in number described by the ancient Physitians, and all of them are called of the Greeks by one name, *Tithymalon*, and of the Latinists *Herbe lactarie* as milk herbs, the Apothecaries call it *Esula*: of these herbs there are some species unknown, wherefore we will not waste much time in describing them: altogether (yet the one more then the other) are hot in the fourth degree, and dry above measure; so that if one break a sprig thereof, and holdeth the same to his tongue the space of many hours, he cannot be rid of the burning. Also if you lay the pounded herb on the whole skin, then beginneth the same forthwith to inflame and burn, so that it seemeth that a cole fire lyeth thereon.

In like manner also doth this roote manifest his venom first in the digging up, whereby the digger and also the preparer are to expect more danger then hath been told of. Beesingwort, and by reason of her great venom, is this root but seldome used by famous Physitians for the purging of superfluous *Cholera* and *Melancholia*, even as you may see in some places of this book: but how a man shall prepare this root, that have you before in the Introduction.

The herb Wolfsbane, and specially the root, is of the ancient Physitians and Poets accounted

accounted the most venemous Plant, so that when they will once talk of Poyson, they call it *Aconiton*, with which name the Greeks and the Latinists call Wolfs-bane, which is of two sorts, whereof the one is called *Pardalianches*, for that it choketh the Panthers, and hath a root that at the end is like the tayl of a Scorpion, which is called of the Apothecaries *vua vrsina* or *Lupina*. The other sort is called of the Greeks *Lycoctonon*, which is Wolfs bane, for that specially more then any other beasts, it straightway strangleth the Wolf, notwithstanding that it also killeth the Foxes, Swine, and all other wild beasts, if the powder of this root be strewed upon any thing that they come to eat. In fine, of all venomes there is none that sooner killeth and taketh out of the world, and that not onely when one taketh it inwardly, but also when one toucheth it. For if one touch any the cruel therewith about their members, then must they die the same day. His nature is to corrode continually inward, and maketh the parts that it toucheth stinking. Both of these sorts grow much in Germany in the vallies and on high hils. And verily there is another wonder of nature with it, to wit, that this venom most mightily withstandeth all other venomes: as for example, when one taketh this Wolfsbane or Monkes hood, then must he expect none other but present death, unlesse there be a another poyson before in the same body, as if one were stung before with a Scorpion.

Wolfs bane finding another poyson in a mans body, opposeth it self against it after a most vehement manner, and expelleth it, yea and combateth against it no otherwise but as a warrior that omitteth all other things, and setteth onely upon his enemy, in which strif they remain both slain, and the man retaineth his life. As soon as one hath received this poyson of Wolfsbane there cometh a swimming upon him: chiefly if he would arise his eyes will run, he feeleth great anguish in the breast, and in all inward parts: his breath will be short and grievous, therefore it is needful that you endeavour to expel this poyson by vomits and Clisters. First, there is good for it sodden Marjoram, Rue, Horehound, Wormwood, and Wormwood wine, Houseleek, Southernwood, Milk thistle, wild Cypres, and more such like. In like manner also the right Balsam, if you give it with the weight of one drachme, with Hony, or with milk, Bevercod, Pepper, and Rue of each one scruple, may be taken with wine for this purpose.

Also the rennet of a young kid, of a young hare, or young Roebuck drunken with vinegar, is also very good.

The wine wherein a peece of glowing gold, a peece of silver, or a glowing iron is quenched, is also highly commended for it. Or lee and wine, wherein a hen is sodden. Fresh broth made with Beef, mingled with wine and drunken. The herb of wild Cypres is also very requisite for it.

Hemlock is well known every where, and is called of the Greeks *Conion*, of the Latinists and Apothecaries *Cicuta*, but by us it is called Hemlock. It killeth men, and that very extreamly, if any one take of his juyce. It is a very cold herb, and therefore very venemous. With this herb have the Athenians gotten the name of Tyrants, for that therewith amongst many other they murthered *Socrates*.

Against this poyson it is very good that one do drink much strong wine, and that betimes before the poyson passeth to the parts of life.

It is also taken to be certain and sure, that if his juyce be tempered with wine and drunk, that there is no counsel nor help to be expected against it.

Outwardly the Hemlock is to be used in some accidents with advantage, as hath been shewed in divers places of this booke.

Of all they that receive this poyson, their head seemeth to run round, and their sight so darkned, that at last they can see no more, they wax hoarse, they lose their understanding, the outward parts wax cold, and are convulsed as if they had the Cramp, the pulse will be still, the breath tarieth behind, and they dei miserably. Wherefore (as in all other venomes) the patient is straightway to be made to cast and vomit, to minister Clisters, and continually ply him with wine, giving him Asses milk, Cow milk, Wormwood, and pepper, tempered with wine and Rue. Item, juyce of Mints tempered with wine, is here much commended. In like manner also *Amomum*, Cardamom, or Storax, the weight of half an ounce, Pepper with Nettle seed, and Bayberries drunk with wine. Item, Vine suict excessively drunken and vomited up again, is against this sort of poyson much commended.

Dogs bane is called of the Greeks *Ephemeron*, for that it killeth a man in one day. And that

that we may make difference of this about from such as are not venemous, namely from the bine confuse, we will add Colchitum with it, by reason of the country where it groweth in great abundance, and most venemous, the Latinists call the same Bulbum agreste, and the Apothecaries Hermodactylum. They grow almost in all medowes in Germany, and are sweet in the mouth, whereby the ignorant (by reason of their pleasant taste) may be easily deceived, and allured to eat thereof, whereby they are in danger of death: for as soone as they come into the stomach, by and by they feel a burning and a pinsing all the whole body, as if they had been burnt with Nettles, they feel afterwards gnawing in the bowels, the stomach will be hot and oppressed, and in time there commeth after it, so that the scrapings of the bowels and blood doth follow, and lastly death it self. For this are all remedies good that are prescribed against the venom of toadstooles, to wit, vomiting and Clisters. It is good before the venom get the mastry to drink waters wherein is sodden Oaken buds, Acorns, Pomgranates peeles, or wild Thyme, and is mingled with milk. Item, you may also use one of these juyces following, as the juyce of Cicory, of Blackberry leaf, of Myrtles tempered with wine, the inward parts of Chestnuts powdered and mingled amongst it is also very good. In like manner it is especiall good to drink Marjoram with Lee. And above all things, there is nothing better then Goat milk, or the milk of a Buffel drunken in great abundance, and held in the mouth: for if one have such milk, it is no counsel to seek any further for any other things.

The third Chapter.

Of the venemous Mettals, and such like.

AS we have spoken in the description of the forefaid venemous plants onely of such as are well known in this countrey, so we will here treat of certain mettals, and of all that commeth thereof and teach also thereby when any body is poysoned therewith, how that venom is to be resisted. Ceruse, the Latinists call it Cerussam, and is taught by Dioscorides that the same is made of lead by the vapour of the vinegar. That art was found long ago, but now at this time is it made more easie. The Ceruse taken inwardly, is deadly. Through the taking of Ceruse followeth hoarseneesse, cough, drouth of the tongue, coldnesse in the outward parts, losse of understanding, and the members will be thereby weary, sluggish, and feeble. These accidents are to be holpen by these meanes following, as with Hony water, with sodden Violets, or Mallowes water, with warm milk, with beaten seed of Sesamum sodden in wine, with Lee that is made of Vine ashes, with oyl of Marjoram, or with Oleo Irino, or with water wherein Peach kernels are sodden; Pigeons egs with Frankincense, sodden Barly and Prunes, you may give any of these these things which you will, and as often as you will, and cast them out again. In like manner there is good for this Scammonea sodden with hony water.

Gips is very like unto Chalk, for it is made of many stones by Calcination, and also digged out of the Earth. His nature is, that when it is made soft with water, it is immediatly altered againe into a hard stone; the same doth it also in the body of man whereby it strangleth presently: wherefore all that is prescribed against the venom of the toadstooles, is also good for this. Item, oyl that is sodden with Mallowes in stead of water, by reason that it is fat, provoketh a slippery passage for vomitting, and hindereth also the exulceration of the passages. Likewise there is also good the oyl of hony water, or dry Figs sodden therein and so drunken. The lee which is made with the ashes of the fig tree is marvellous good for it: or in the place thereof you may take the ashes of Oaken wood, and eat figs. Also you may use the ashes of the Vine, and temper the same with wine and drink much thereof, and then cast it or vomit it out again.

Lime and Gips are very like one to another; and they match one another with their venom. The red myne, whereby some do understand the red lead, and some simple, or mine of the Quickfilver, Sandaraca, Auripigmentum, which is Orpiment, they are for the most part all of one nature, that they torment the intrailes with an intollerable paine, and in case that there be no remedie had for the same in time, then doth it kill him. We will also add to the former the yellow, red, and white Ratsbane or Arsenicum. For this is

conditions all that expelleth venom, abateth his sharpnesse and looseth the belly, wherof there is much written before. The juyce of Hollihocks and of Mallowes is special good for the reasons that they are both of them mollifying. For this also you are to give him a potion wherein Linseed, and Rue are sodden, or milk tempered with hony water must be drunk unfeasurably. In like manner also all fat flesh broth.

Quicksilver is called in Greek ὑδράργυρον, which is water silver, and in Latin Argentum vivum, we call it in this country Quicksilver, and is of Plinie called a venom exceeding all other venoms. It doth also manifest the same in mans body, not onely taken inwardly, but also anointed over the outside. That it is such a poyson not onely of the blood but also of the veneriall pocks, and of other maladies more, as you may see and read before in divers places of this book. Some do say, if one drink it, it presently runs through the body: but if any such thing happen, yet notwithstanding there remaineth somewhat thereof behind in the body that doth hurt the same and the intrailes. For the remedy of this poyson, one must drink much milk, and then vomit the it again: or in stead thereof Wormwood wine, or water wherein Smallage, the seeds Clary, and Marjoram, or Hyssope are sodden. For this is also very requisite small field-gold, which doth draw the Quicksilver unto it in a wonderful manner, as by experience may daily be seen at the goldsmiths and other, how quickly it cleaveth to the gold, and when it is warm it mingleth it self with the gold, where nevertheless all other things that are cast upon it are expelled from it, and swim on the top of it, and letteth them not fall to the bottome. There may also be well used, against the venom of Quicksilver all that standeth written against the litharge of gold. Further it is well known to all the world that there is no stronger venom then the Mercurius sublimatus, like as all Chirurgions and Pokmasters do find by experience, when as they do use the same in any ulcer. How one shall prepare the litharge of silver, Plinie doth teach the same diversly, we will here admonish of his poyson: when the same is drunken, then doth it make in the body, and in all the intrailes, not onely an anguish, but also an extream pricking and pain, it pierceth the low end parts, by his weight, it stayeth urine, it swelleth the body, and procureth a leaden colour. When as the patient hath vomited exceedingly, then are you to give him wine to drink with the seeds of Clary sodden in it, Myrrhe, Wormwood, Isop, seeds of Smallage, pepper, Ligustrum or dryed Pigeons dung.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the venomes that come of Beasts.

WHat great commodities Almighty God hath given unto us in Beasts is sufficiently known unto all the world, and the same is to be seen in the foresaid parts of this book, and in divers medicines. For behold what is more base and lesse esteemed then the Earth-worms that breed in the stinking dunghils, and also live therein, nevertheless they are used in grievous sicknesses both inwardly and outwardly with great good. The venemous Scorpions and Vipers are wholsome medicines against venom and other diseases, and yet more such like, whereof one might write whole books, as the books of all Physitians and Philosophers do testify; yea it hath been found oftentimes that the ordure of some beasts hath holpen in deadly sicknesses.

But to the contrary, there are four little beasts not fearful but hurtful, against which hurts and harms there are here very good remedies taught to defend and preserve one from them. For what is more frendlier beast towards men then the dog; what beast is more obedient, and can be lesse without the company of men; Yet it is not unknown to all men how hurtful and perilous the biting of a mad dog is; for if there be not presently very good remedies used against it, then will the same man be mad also, and all other men that shall be bitten by the said mad man. Wherefore we will in this fourth chapter speak of certain venemous beasts and worms, whereof by the grace of God (in regard of the South countries) have but a few in Germany. Wherefore we will omit *Basiliscus, Amphisbæna, Cerastes, Dipsades*, and such like venemous beasts more, which are to be found onely in Africa, and admonish of those that are known of us, and add unto them the remedies that are requisite against their venom.

The first are the Ants or Pismires, which truly are provident and laborious little beasts, whereof we will not here describe the nature, but will discourse so much as serveth to our

our purpose. Then it is found, that men through their pissing feel in their skin, that which is greater than is the stinging of Nettles, for the place thereof swelleth. They annoy also thereby all herbs and trees. And for to drive away the same from thence, you are to take Cow dung, and temper it with vinegar, and therewith annoint the body of the tree, or take Pitch or Rosin for it. They shun also the smoak of Brimstone, and the fume of Marjeram in such sort, that thereby they forsake their holes. Some affirm the same also of Cicory, or (that is better to be believed) of *Esula*, which herbe and the smoak of the sulphur doth not onely hunt them away, but also killeth them. These Ants and their egs are also used in phyfick.

When any man is stung with Bees, Waspes, or Hornets, then doth he not onely complain of great pain and hear, but also of great swelling of the place where he is stung, wherein you may use this following most commodiously: or stamp Hollihock leaves and lay them moist thereon. You may also do the same with the flowers of Baulm. The same doth wild and tame Rue, the milk of new Figs, salt fish, and the pickle of the same.

Item, sea water, when the place is often moistened therewith. Take Treacle or Mithridate as big as a hemp seed, and annoint it thereon, or if you have nothing else, then take the moist earth out of the garden, and anoint it therewith. It is said that if one be once bitten of a scorpion, that then never afterwards neither Bee nor Waspe will bite him. The same is also written of the worms that grow on Coleworts, when they are tempered with oyl, and anointed therewith. This is also worthy to be thought upon, that when one beareth any odoriferous things, that then the Bees are the readier and greedier to sting the same party than otherwise. Although that there be no *Cantharides* or Spanish flies in Germany, yet are they common at all Apothecaries. They are also very much used of the Chirurgions, and of other, as may be seen before in many places: but by reason that some most unprovidently take the same in hand, and also will use them inwardly, therefore I cannot conceal their poyson. These Spanish flies breed of the Caterpillers or little worms of the figtree, Pear tree, Fir tree, and Rose tree, &c. and when one drinketh them, then follow there afterwards all manner of painful symptomes, for that one may feel from the mouth even to the neck of the bladder a sharpnesse and a great exulceration: and he supposeth that he alwaies smelleth pitch, the right side swelleth inwardly, the urine will hardly voyd, and passeth away with blood, and in going to the stool there avoideth the scrapings of the bowels, like to them that have the bloody flix. They lye in great smart, are also feeble and impotent. The head swimmeth so much, that otherwhiles they fall to the earth, until at the very last they are bereft of their understanding. And to remedy these grievous accidents, there must be given to the patient Sallad oyl or some such thing to drink for to bring him to vomit: and when this is done, then are you to minister unto him a clister that is sodden with Rice, Hollihock roots, Fenegreek, Linseed, Mallows, and such like. If one may get the right *Nitrum*, then is it very commodiously used with *Oxymel* (our Salt-peter is not right *Nitrum*) whereby the rest that remain sticking in the stomack and in the bowels might be washed off and expelled. Afterward you are to give him wine and sodden Must to drink, wherein sodden Pingles or Cucumber seed. This may also be effected with milk or honey water: and in like manner also Goosegrease and sodden wine. There is a pap of Barley meal to be laid upon the swoln place, made with hony water. It is also to be noted, that at the first there must no plaister be laid thereon, for that will do more hurt than good.

When all hath been done that is aboveſaid, then are you to anoint the body with oyls that be warm by nature, and then to bathe after it, so that thereby all that may hurt the body might be drawn out. You must also see that the patient have alwaies a loose body. He may eat Cockrels, young Bucks or Kids, and Swines flesh that is very fat: And he shall also seeth Linseed with it, for that mollifieth and dampeth the eagerness of the poyson. He shall drink excessively sweet wine. The rinds of Frankincense and sealed earth, the one or the other, the weight of a quarter of an ounce taken with Must, is also much commended. Item, there is good for it the decoction of Penniroyal. Item, Orage, stamped Rue, and the juice of the same drunken with wine. In like manner also Cow milk, that is described in the third part, the twelfth Chapter, and eleventh Section beginning thus, Take Gentian, &c.

But above all these are the Antidota good, as also both the Treacles, the Mithridate, Alexipharmacon, and such like.

It hapneth also oftentimes, that the people that travel through the country do unawares drink an Horsleech, which according to the old wont without intereasing sucketh blood within the body but if it remain hanging within the throat, then may it be seen. But when this hapneth, then must good heed be taken that you venture not to get it out with any tongs or other things, for that commonly they leave their teeth sticking in the flesh, whereby afterwards grow grievous impostumes, and it booteth not thereto that they be cut off, they leave not therefore their sucking: and if they fall deeper into the body, and come to hang at the mouth of the stomach, that is easie to be known by their drawing. Thus for to cure that accident, he is to drink pickle of fish, or any other salt water holding it in the mouth and to gargarize therewith. Item, Angelica sodden with Beets. Further take Rue, seethe it in vinegar, and drink it, or hold it in the mouth, according to the place where the worm is fastened. Or take vinegar that is heated with a glowing iron, melt Butter therein, and give the Patient to drink of this vinegar: For this is also very good the meal of Lupines tempered with water, and the same holden in the mouth. The Woodlice are a filthy stinking vermine, nevertheless they are said to be good against all venome, which if they be burnt, and the fume of them received, they cause the Horsleeches to fall off.

The Flea is a vile troublesome and bloodthirsty little beast, which vexeth both man and beast: To drive them away or to kill them, there is no fitter means then that you keep the chamber alwayes very cleanly, sprinkle it with water, and sweepe out the same clean, for that they do grow out of dry dust. Item, you may also use these things following; Seethe Coriander in water, and therewith besprinkle the chamber, and also let the linnen be washed therein. This same driveth also lice away; yet note that of late was written of the Coriander, that thereby the head take no hurt. Item, take Coriander, wilde Thyme, seed of Tribulus Aquaticus: and Eldern leaves, seethe them in water enough, and besprinkle the chamber therewith; this driveth away and killeth the Fleas. The same vertue is ascribed to the smoak of Penniroyal, and the powder of Rue strowed in the chamber; and all those things that may be used for Lice and Woodlice.

The Italians and other nations more have a mind to eat Frogs, which other nations do abhor; but we will dissuade all the world from them, and especially such as breed in stinking ponds and waters, and are dun, which are not like the right frogs, for they provoke a swelling of the whole body, with a bleak and yellow colour, like unto the Holly tree: thereupon followeth a short stinking heavy breath, hoarsnesse, and effluxion of the natural seed. Now then for to remedy this mischance, you must let the Patient vomit mightily, and drink over much wine. For this also may you give him of the Cipres root beaten a quarter of an ounce.

Further, you are then to admonish the Patient that he endeavour himself mightily to run, and walk much, or take some other exercise in hand, thereby to sharpen the body; and he shall bathe every day.

We have said before, that there is no more perillous venome then that of a mad dog. And concerning the madnesse of a dog, it is most perillous in hot times; as when the Sun entreth into *Leo*, to wit, in the moneths of July and August; which 30. dayes we do not onely call the Dogg dayes of the Dogg star, but also for that dogs in those dayes are most inclined to madnesse, and then hurt men most of all: wherefore the hunters during these 30. dayes ought to give to their hounds meat tempered with hens dung. This madnesse ceaseth also of it self when it beginneth to freze, and that but seldom.

The signs of a mad dog are these, he will neither eat nor drink, and he foameth at the mouth and nose, beholdeth every one overthwartly, and with a heavy look, and biteth as well men as beasts.

If a man be bitten by him, then is there at the first no other accident perceived, but onely that the wound cleanseth it self, and is very painful.

Afterwards there followeth thereby a marvellous extremity, which the Greeks do call *Hydrophobos*, which is the fear and fright of the water, which oftentimes in the dogs and in men is so forcible, that they come out of their wits. Notwithstanding that they fear most of all the water, yet nevertheless they throw themselves into it and drown themselves.

This fear of the water they get not all at one prefixed time, but they get chiefly the same (that neglect the bitt most) about the 40 day, some after the sixt moneth, yea some also very well a year afterwards.

The

The ancient Physitians do write that this frantickneſſe of the biting of mad dogs hath manifeſted it ſelf 7. years after that they were hurt by them.

They that are infected with this diſeaſe, do alſo get a convulſion in all the ſinews of the whole body, and chiefly of the face, it will be red, and thereby cometh a great ſweat, and extream feebleneſſe.

Some can abide no light, and others are vexed with intolerable headach, many howl like Dogs, and bite all others that they can come by, who will be afterwards as mad as they. The ancient Physitians write alſo that they be very few that do recover. Yet for this hath been found many wholeſome remedies, whereof we ſhall ſpeak hereafter.

There are two kinds of means; the one common, which is good aghinſt all bytings and ſtinging of all venemous beasts: the ſecond, that is good alone againſt all byting of mad Dogs, if one do but preſently put in practiſe. But if it be deferred too long, it is uſed in vain. Firſt, there are ſome things that a body muſt provide to have always in a readineſſe, that the ſame may immediately be adhibited.

Take for this Crevets, and burn them with as much of the roots of Briony to aſhes; then pownd them ſmall and preſerve them. Secondly, have always in a readineſſe ſome ſmall beaten roots of Gentian; and then if there be any bitten, caſt in 12. ounces of ſtrong Wine, two ſpoonful of the Aſhes of Crevets, and a ſpoonful of the foreſaid roots, and then drink this at 4. times, to wit, in the mording early.

Item, for this is alſo commended the ſhels of the Lobſter if they be powdered in drink.

Item, one other more that is made of Crovets, and is very like to the former, to wit, as hereafter followeth. Take Crevets that are taken in July and Auguſt, burn them alive to powder in a luted pot, and then give the powder in drink with Treacle, to wit, one drachme and a half with water of Scabious.

Take alſo 2. or 3. drachmes of this powder, and drink it certain dayes together with the water of Fumitory.

Another; Take Gentian, and Myrrhe, of each one drachme, Aſhes of Crabs a quarter of an ounce, give thereof every morning with Wine: or if the Patient be full of heat, then take fountain water inſtead of wine.

Item, the juyce of Balm is alſo very good for this, or to beat the leaves to powder and drunken with wine. In like manner one may alſo twice a week take a drachme in weight of the great Treacle, or of the Treacle *Diateſſaron*, be it with Wine or any other diſtilled water.

You have alſo in the ſixt Part, the 15. Chapter, and 12. §. a water of the great Bur, which is alſo wonderful good againſt the byting of a mad dog.

Now a dayes is much commended (and that by experience) the juyce of Quinces if one take thereof once a day 3. or 4. ounces, that the ſame will marvellouſly preſerve one from this venome.

And now to preſerve this juyce, you muſt let it ſeethe ſo long by a milde fire till that the ſkum is ſeparated and taken away; then you may preſerve it in a glaſſe with a narrow mouth, and pour thereto a little Sallad oyl: it is alſo good for all other venomes.

It is alſo written that clarified Hony taken daily, ſhould preſerve one that he cannot be annoyed with the byting of mad dogs. In like manner if one eat the Liver of the ſame mad dog, that the ſame ſhould preſerve the bitten perſon from all ſymptomes.

The wilde Roſes powdered and drunken, are alſo found very good for it.

Beſides all theſe foreſaid remedies, one may uſe things that cleanſe the infected blood, which one may do with theſe medicines following, if the ſame be drunken 14. dayes together; Take ſirup of Fumitory, of ſweet Apples, and of Pomgranats, of each half an ounce, water of Fumitory, Bugloſſe, and Cicory, of each one ounce, mingle them together and drink it faſting. Afterwards uſe this purgation; take new Caſſie three quarters of an ounce, confection of Hamech one quarter of an ounce, Inda one drachme, make a Bolus or bit thereof with Cinamom and Sugar, ſwallow it down in the morning, and faſt ſix hours after it. For this is ſpecially commended, *Hiera* with Coloquint: for this is alſo good thick milk; called *Lac ſciſtum*, for that it looſeth, and doth withſtand the venome. And as ſoon as the body is purged, and after that all the foreſaid remedies have been uſed, it is then requiſite, that one think upon the byting or wound. Firſt, the byting is not to be healed, but it muſt be well rubbed with Garlick, vinegar and ſalt, ſo long till it come to bleed apace,

Some

Some bind thereon living Hens and Pullets; but look what is written thereof in the description of the Plague, whereas we have spoken of the Plague before.

Make also a salve of the juyce of Onions, juyce of Rue, Vinegar and Hony, wherewith anoint the wound 3. or 4. dayes together keeping it clean, the which will bring all things in security.

This doth also Garlick fryed with Butter and layed thereon. Or an Onion made hollow and filled up with Treacle, and rosted in the ashes, whereof we have before admonished. And you may also take two handfuls of Rue, fry it twice in Butter, and apply it twice a day to the wounds. Others take Garlick, Rue, salt, Frankincense, Myrrhe, of each a like much beaten all together, and a plaister made thereof with wine.

Take Chet vil seed, seethe it in fair water and drink thereof, wash the wound also therewith: this is good without and within.

The powder of Marvein is also commended, for it that is gathered between both our Lady dayes for to strew on the wound.

There is also good for it all Nettle waters drunken, likewise the Nettle seed stamped to grout and laid upon the wound. The Fennel root is used after the same manner. These are now things that may be used outwardly, and that not onely 3. or 4. dayes as some suppose, but also some dayes together with other things more.

For as we have admonished before, this venome doth otherwhiles not appear in a twelve moneth after it: as may be seen, if one be bitten with a mad dog, and handleth a Raven within a year after, that the same foul will be mad, or the man will be mad again.

It is also especially good that the wound be anointed within and round about with Treacle or Mithridate. For this also are requisite the peels of new Melons and Pompeons beaten and mingled with wine, and laid over the wound.

Item, new Onions tempered with Vinegar, or if the same cannot be had new, then are the same to be sod, and to drink the decoction, and lay it also on the wound, or tempered with hony and wine, and so let it lie three dayes thereon.

The kernels of nuts being chewed by not fasting and laid upon the wound, should do marvellous much good.

Or take great roots of Smallage, seethe them in water and drink the decoction thereof: stamp the roots and lay them on the wound.

Item, Rue mingled with Salt, these and the like things may be used at the first without all danger. But in case that the venome of this mad beast lyeth hidden and dead a while, and the Patient thereby supposeth to have escaped all peril, the which nevertheless yet sheweth it self afterwards, wherefore there are divers that have a manly heart, and had rather live a painful life, then to die a painful death.

Of the actual cautery and Incision.

SOme that will play surely, and will prevent all these before mentioned mischiefes, do begin this cure at the first by incision and adustion, so that they cut out the sound flesh round about the wound according to the situation of the member, and also draw out the blood, and make the wound much wider; for how much larger the wound is, so much the better will the blood be drawn out, and the better is the wound to be handled, which is to be committed to the expert Chirurgions: but burning is better then cutting for it, and it is commended to be more surer and more forcible, because the fire tameth all venomes, and letteth not the same pearce any deeper into the body; and also the wounds heal not so fast, which must be kept open so long as may be.

These things following are very requisite for to keep the wounds open, as all salt things, pownded wild Garlick, juyce of Onions, and pownded Wheat that is made moist. These things make the wound wider; and after such kind of incision or adustion set on boxes, and scarifie the sound flesh, that thereby the infected blood may be sucked out. And if it be perceived that the wound heal too fast, then must the same of necessity be opened again with fire, or with incision, that there be no venome included. How the wounds are to be cured, that is known to all Chirurgions.

To conclude, this is to be added in case that neither the easie remedies now mentioned, neither yet the incision nor adustion had been used at the first, then are they to be omitted and left altogether, and not put the Patient to such pain in vain, for then cannot the venome that is spread over all the whole body, be drawn any more to the wound, neither be drawn out.

An order of dyet for them that are bitten by a mad Dog.

All they that are bitten with a mad Dog, muſt uſe thoſe things that do withſtand poyſon, and interrupt the violence thereof, that the ſame penetrate not to the inward parts. For this doth firſt of all ſerve ſtrong wine ſodden throughly, and Milk for his drink; and alſo good broth, wherein is put into his meat, Garlick, Onions, and Leeks: let him uſe Treacle and Mithridate ſometimes. He ſhall feed every day upon eager and ſharp meats that do hinder the venome. Sweating before and after meat is alſo very good for him. But above all things is the Ellebore highly commended, if he uſe the ſame but eight days: for it is proved already that thoſe that were vexed with the fear of the water, that they were onely cured by the taking of Ellebore, when as they had uſed all other means and remedies before.

Toads are beaſts well known, that are full of cold venome. Againſt this is to be uſed all that which is deſcribed againſt the venome of the Frogs that haunt ſtinking pools.

That Lice be loathſome and filthy vermine and beaſts, is known to the whole world, and hath ſufficiently been ſhewed in the firſt part, the third Chapter, and eight §.

Milk that is turned doth ſometimes very quickly ſtrangle them that do drink the ſame, for that through her joining it ſtoppeth the pipes of the Lights. Againſt this muſt the whay of milk be tempered with Vinegar, and given to the patient to drink, and the patient compelled to receive it. The ſame doth alſo dryed Nep, and the juyce thereof. In like manner alſo Angelica tempered with vinegar and water.

Item, Thymus with wine and lee, and ſome anes with it. All ſalt things muſt be ſhunned, for thereby will the milk be turned more. In like manner muſt heed be taken from vomiting, for the blood might very well ſtrangle one.

Oxe blood is very groſſe when it cometh firſt from the Oxe, it will be ſoon hard and clotted: this ſtrifleth a man alſo if he drink thereof, for it fetcheth it ſelf at the *Uvula*, and ſtrangleth a man, it refrigerateth the ſinews of the throat, whereby the ſame is ſtopt, the tongue will be red, and one may ſee ſome part of the blood licking between the teeth. He muſt alſo be kept from vomiting, for the clotted blood remaineth in the throat. In this muſt the blood be reſolved and the body opened. And for this are ſpecial good great Figs that are not very ripe, and yet full of milk, when they are given with Vinegar and water. The juyce of Beab ſtraw with Vinegar, and Gooſe greaſe eaten, or uſed otherwiſe is alſo very good. All they that do recover of it, do avoid much filth and other matter through their ſtooles, and the belly and ſtomach muſt be often anointed with Barly meal and Hony tempered together.

Caterpillers (which are the right deſtruction and ſpoil of all Plants and Gardens) are alſo in ſome ſort venomous, yet the one more then the other; but they that live on the Fir trees are the moſt venomous. If it chanced that any body ſwallow one of theſe, then preſently doth he get a great pain throughout the whole mouth, and therewith a ſwelling of the belly, of the tongue and the ſtomach, with a pain in the belly, that it ſeemeth that his belly is full of Worms, his whole body will be burning, and getteth a great diſtemperature in the ſtomach. This venome is to be remedied with thoſe things that are ordained againſt the venome of the Spaniſh Flies; but in the ſtead of Sallad oyl, the oyl of Quinces is much better.

Snakes and Adders are of divers ſorts throughout the world, and Africa, Media, Ecbatana, and Troglodytis are marvelous much Plagued therewith, even as now adayes Italy is in ſome places. Wherefore may Duch men and Engliſh men account it for a bleſſing of God, that they cannot ſay as men do of Africa, that there are more men ſlain by venome then by the ſword. And becauſe this ſeventh Part diſcourſeth onely of poyſon of venomous beaſts, we will add here to the reſt all the principalleſt things that are ſet forth by the learned againſt the byting of ſnakes and ſuch like venomous beaſts.

Wherefore we will ſpeak firſt of the root of Aron, that is, Cuckopit; when Snakes are ſmoaked therewith, then will they be all as if they were drunken, and remain ſtiffe. In like manner, when this root is beaten to powder, mingled with oyl of Bayes, annointing the place therewith where they do ule, then will they be hunted away. This root is alſo to be drunken in red wine againſt all venome.

If the fruit of the tree Platanus be taken with Wine, then doth it withſtand all ſtingings of Snakes and Scorpions.

Elecampane roots drunken in Wine, are alſo good againſt the ſtinging of venemous beaſts.

The root of *Mandragora* is alſo good for it, principally if any muſt be cut or aduſted, for theſe venemous beaſts bitings, for it bringeth the Patient into a deep ſleep, and maketh him wholly inſenſible, even as before we have taught.

If *Galbanum* be ſet on fire, then doth the ſmell of the ſame drive away all manner of Snakes. The leaves thereof layed in wine, and dranken thereof, are alſo good againſt all kinds of poyſons.

The leaves of the Aſh tree wrung out and the juyce thereof drunken, and laid upon the biting, withſtandeth the poyſon of Snakes as vehemently as any thing in the world may. For this tree hath ſuch antipathy with the venom of Snakes, that the Snakes ſhun the ſhadow of this tree. *Plinius* writeth alſo, that if one compaſſe them in one place with fire, and another place with Aſhen wood, that they had rather run into the fire then be touched with that wood. This bad worm doth alſo not creep out of his winter hole, before and until that the Aſh tree beginneth to blow, the which is a marvellous work of nature. Moreover the Aſh tree ſhall not let his leaves fall before and until that the Snakes be cropen again into their holes.

Right Balſam is commended againſt all venom of Snakes: but by reaſon that we have not the ſame, there are many kinds thereof diſtilled, wherein every one is to uſe all diligence that he can to attain to the right Balſam as neer as he can poſſibly: whereof you ſhall find divers deſcriptions in the laſt Part, where you ſhall alſo have living and golden waters which are very commodious for it. And for that England and Dutchland (as is already ſaid) are almoſt free from theſe bad beaſts, we reſt contented with the eaſieſt and beſt known things: in like manner leave the Balſamum artificiale to the charge of the Chirurgions. *Teucrium* do the ancient Phyſitians ſay to be the moſt precious remedy againſt the venom of Snakes, whether it be taken in drink or laid upon the bite. In like ſort the great *Teucrium*, whether the ſame be taken green, dry, decocted, or the juice thereof.

Mugwort is alſo taken to be very good for the byting of Snakes, if the ſame be laid in wine, and ſome thereof drunken and laid upon the wound.

Betony and all herbs of that vertue, as Gilloflowers, &c. the ancient Phyſitians do write to have ſuch power againſt the biting of a Snake, that if this herb be laid round about her, ſhe had rather be killed then creep over the ſame herb: for which cauſe the wine and conſerve of this herb are highly eſteemed; ſo is alſo the powder and ſeeds of the ſame.

Bevercod is good for many things, as is ſufficiently before declared in the deſcription of other ſickneſſes. And amongſt other it is alſo good againſt the biting of Snakes, and biting of other venemous beaſts, if the ſame be mingled with other things, according to the importance of the beaſt that hath ſo bitten. This if it be uſed in time of need, you may take thereof half an ounce with wine.

Bucks and Goats hair ſet on fire driveth away all Snakes.

Pennyroyal withſtandeth all Snakes by nature, by reaſon of the ſavour or ſmell: wherefore it is to be ſtrewed upon the place whereas the Snakes have bitten one, and to be dranken with Wine.

Purſlain eaten and applyed alſo upon the ſore, draweth out the venom. It is alſo good for all other kinds of poyſon if one drink the ſap thereof with Wine or Hony: but the wild Purſlain is the beſt.

The juyce of the flowers of Selfeheal drunken with Wine, ſhould be good for all the venom of beaſts.

The nuts of the great and ſmall Cypres trees, which may be had at every Apothecaries, ſtamped and drunken with Wine, are alſo good for this. In like manner the ſame Cypres herb (which is to be found in many gardens) is very highly commended, for that it withſtandeth all poyſon of Snakes if it be drunken with Wine.

Nardus ſeed is renowned to drive away Snakes by his ſmell and ſavor.

Dill mingled with Rue and Swines bread, with Pepper, and ſo given to eat, is good againſt the byting of Snakes.

Acorns are alſo good to be drunken againſt this venom.

Hens eggs hard ſodden, and tempered with Creſſes are good, being laid upon the byting of Snakes.

Vervein ſteeped in wine and drunken, is very good likewiſe if it be laid thereupon.

The

The root of Gentian is in divers manners good against venom, as before hath been declared, but chiefly against byting of Snakes; it is commended above all others if one take a quarter of an ounce thereof with wine.

Pease meal tempered with Vinegar, drunken and laid upon it, is also very good.

The smoke or fume of Asses lights will also drive away venemous beasts.

Venemous beasts cannot abide the smoke of Ferne, wherefore it is good that it be strewed upon the places where they haunt.

Fennel, and especially the seed of wild Fennel drunken with wine, is much commended for it.

Hair of Womens heads burnt, hath a marvellous power to drive away Snakes and Spiders.

Galbanum is a gum that driveth away all venemous worms.

The herb Cuckowbread, the weight of a drachme drunken with Wine, hath many times been approved.

Barly meal laid on with vinegar, withstandeth venom. Some do give the root of Celendine, the weight of 3 drach. with Wine, or make thereof a salve, and lay it on the venemous biting of a Snake.

The brains of a Cock or Capon are also a good for this being used in meat.

The seeds of Mew is amongst other seeds most commended if the same be drunk with bitter Almonds, or the juyce of this herb with bitter Almonds and with wine. In like manner also, if one be anointed with the oyl thereof, then doth it preserve him against the biting of Snakes.

Hares rennet is very forcible against the venom of Snakes, and also for more other things.

Heath *Erica* is much commended against the venom of Snakes.

Harts horn hunteth them also away through his smell.

The round and long Hartwort, the weight of two drachmes drunk with Wine, or tempered with vinegar and laid thereon, is also much commended.

Dogs Garlick that groweth in Vineyards, is also very forcible against the venom of Snakes.

Clevers have also a special force against Snakes and their venom, if one drink the weight of a drach. of them.

Melilot hath this nature also, that it is said, that there was never seen a Snake to have come near this herb. In like manner the seed of it is much commended being taken with wine.

Garlick driveth away all Snakes through his savour and smell: it is also very good against all venemous stingings of beasts; and if one mingle it with bread and Hony, then may it be eaten for that intent.

Coleworts with Barly meal laid thereon, or the juyce thereof tempered with Vinegar and Fenegreek seed, is also very commodious.

Corn Mints do also drive Snakes away.

The dung of all four footed beasts tempered with Wine, and laid thereon, is also commended.

Crabs that are caught in fresh water, and in the Sea, are also very commodious for this, as we have admonished in other places more.

Wild Thyme hath also great vertue for it when the leaves thereof be drunk with wine: and the smoke thereof driveth them also away.

All pickle of salt fish is also highly praised for this use, as hath been taught elsewhere.

The roots of Lovage with Barly meal, or tempered with wild Baulm and laid thereon, is also very commodious.

Bayberries tempered with Wine and drunken, is good against all cold venom.

Eringus the weight of a drachme drunken, tempered with water, and layed thereon, is also good.

A live Mouse applyed to the place hath a special vertue for to draw out the venom; howbeit Hens, Pullets and Frogs are also very commodious for it, as we have oftentimes shewed before.

Must drunken is an utter enemy to Snakes; for is also sodden and falsified wine.

How forcible Nuts be, not only against Snakes, but also against all venom, is one

use

are them with Figs and Rue, we have oftentimes declared before.

Orpine which the Greeks call *Anacampseros*, is marvellous, for his leaves are venom to all fourfooted beasts, and yet a medicine for men against the venom of Snakes, sodden with Rue in wine.

Earwax rubbed on the byting asswageth the pain out of hand.

Pioney roots, whereof there are two sorts, are both of them good for this purpose.

Pepper is for all cold poisons measurably used, taken for a special medicine, even as we have declared in other places more.

Pistacies are also very good against all poyson.

That Rue is good against all venom, and against the byting of Snakes, we have already said in many places.

The ashes of Foxes that die in their dams bellies, is commended to be marvellous forcible for it.

For this is likewise commended the Madder.

Radishes sodden with water and vinegar, and laid thereon, are accounted very good.

Great Centorie, which is called *Repentica*, the weight of a drachme of it given with Wine.

The Water of Lakes spurs is said (being drunken) to be good against the byting of all venemous beasts, if the byting be washed with it. The same is also to be used against the Plague.

The juyce of white water Mints a quarter of an ounce drunken with three or four ounces of Wine, and the byting washed therewith is much commended.

The seeds of yellow Rapes or Turneps, and also the roots and the herb carried about one, will preserve him from the byting of Snakes: and if any body be bitten, then must the seed with the grease of any bird be stamped and laid thereon. The seed of the common Rapes is very good against venom, being taken in the stead of Treacle.

Salt is very good against all poison.

Sugar is to be tempered with oyl, and laid thereon.

Swines bread hath a great vertue against all venom, as we have admonished in more other places.

The juyce of Scabious is also taken to be very good against all venom of Snakes and Scorpions.

The three sorts of Dragons do drive away all venemous beasts if one carry the root about him. It is also good (being drunken) for them that are bitten of them.

Leeks are also good when they are tempered with vinegar.

Mustard seed is to be mingled with vineger, and applyed thereon.

They flye from the fasting spettle of man, and if they get it in their mouth, they must dig thereon.

Southernwood strewed on the place where the Snakes haunt, or where fume and smoke thereof is, driveth them away. Also Southernwood is good against all venom, being taken inwardly and applyed outwardly.

Codwort (which in Latine is called *After*) is also for this highly renowned.

Serpentaria Canadensis, as the sent thereof is very acceptable to all men, so contrariwise there is nothing that Snakes may lesse abide.

Tunica sina is good against all poyson.

Woodlice (albeit they be loathsome worms) nevertheless they are above all things commended of the renowned Physitians against the poyson of Snakes, and also against all other poyson.

If the venemous snakes ever come to sent or smell the leaves or wood of Juniper, then creep they away: they are also good against all venemous beasts.

Lysimachia is also commodious for all these things.

The juyce of Onions applyed to the biting of a Snake and tempered with Hony, is very good against all venome.

The Gnats that plague beasts and men with their sting in Sommer, and in like manner all plants are repelled by the smoke of Pomgranate peeles, and of *Galbanum*, also by the smoke of *Nardus* seed, and Lupins.

But for so much as (through the grace of God) we have no Scorpions here in England nor in Dutchland, therefore it is no great need to write much thereof, by reason that all

that

that is written againſt Snakes is alſo requiſite for the ſame; yet cannot we conceal this miracle, that the Scorpions themſelves are a remedy againſt their own poyſon, if the ſame be beaten and laid thereon, or if they be roſted and eaten.

In like manner you have their oyl, and other their vertues more deſcribed here and there throughout this whole book.

Spiders are well known beaſts, whereof there are many ſorts deſcribed by the ancient Phyſitians, which as they do differ in faſhion, colour, and in weaving their webs, ſo they do alſo differ in poyſon.

Albertus doth deſcribe eight kinds of them, which we have all here in this Countrey. Some do live by catching of Flies: others by catching of water Worms and ſmall fiſhes. Some are alſo enemies to the Toad and Snake; for that it hath been ſeen that ſuch Spiders have letten themſelves down by one of their threds upon the heads of ſuch beaſts, and leave them not before and until they have killed them.

Other are deadly enemies to the young Evets, which through their ſpinning do bind the mouth too, and do ſmother them, and hale them into their nets, that thereby they might ſuck out all the moyſture of them; and by the diverſity of the venemous nouriſhment altereth alſo their venemous nature, whereby the ſame is ſometimes more forcible or more mild.

And alſo their manner of dwelling is not all one: there dwell many in houſes, other in the fields and in the hedges: ſome dwell willingly by the water ſides, but we will not write here any more of their natures, but diſcover their venomes.

Of all the venomes of the Spiders, that which the Greeks call *Phalangium* is the moſt renowned, and albeit that the ſame is not known in England nor Dutchland, yet we will deſcribe the nature of this venome, whereby one may be taught to aſſwage all the leſſer ſtingings, and the harm that may come thereby, and how the ſame may be cured. The Greeks call this ſpecies of Spiders the Wolf, for a difference from all other Spiders that are not ſo noyſome.

Theſe Spiders are hairy, and have a great head. The ſhe Spider (which only ſpinneth) bringeth three hundred young ones at one time, and ſhe receiveth alſo the reward of her noiſome fruitfulneſſe, to wit, that ſhe is killed of her own young ones, and afterwards ſucked out, which they would alſo do to their father if he with might did not withſtand them.

If then any body be ſtung with this *Phalangio*, then will the place of the ſtinging be red, nevertheleſſe without pain or heat, howbeit that it yeldeth ſome moyſture, and as ſoon as there is uſed any medicine againſt it, then beginneth the body to ſhake, the ſinews of the knees and the inward parts will be feeble, and they will be convulſed as if it were the cramp, they take a great anguiſh in the members, the Patient can ſcarcely make water nor go to ſtool, he getteth a ſweat throughout all his body, his eyes run and are dimme.

Againſt this muſt the aſhes be uſed that are burnt of the Figg tree, tempered with ſalt and wine, and ſo laid thereon. Item, Hartwort, Barly meal, and Vinegar, tempered to pap.

You are alſo to waſh the ſting with ſome water wherein Smallage was ſodden. To bathe often is alſo very good. For this one is to take a quarter of an ounce of any of theſe ſeeds following with Wine, to wit, the ſeed of Southernwood, Annis ſeed, Hartwort ſeeds, the rindes of the tree *Platanus*, or the ſeed of Melilot. Item, the fruit or rinde of *Tamariſcus*, or wild Cypres ſodden in Wine.

Some will ſay, if one take the juyce that is ſtrained out of Crabs with milk and ſeeds of Smallage, that thereby the Patient will immediately be whole.

Plinius writeth of the water of Smallage, that the ſame hath a ſpecial vertue againſt the ſtinging of the Spider.

And there may be uſed againſt the Spider Marjoram, *Nardus* ſeed, Southernwood, *Hyacinthum*, juice of Mulberries, field berries, and Framboys, being tempered with hony and Wine, or each alſo alone.

Woodlice, albeit that they be good againſt divers other venoms, yet nevertheleſſe are they very loathſome to all men, ſhrewdly byting, and bloodthirſty, whereby they take away a bodies ſweet ſleep, and eſpecially vexe the young children, for which there hath been much counſel ſought to drive them away.

For

For this is very good the ſmoke of the great Fern. Item, if Horſeleeches be caſt on the fire, and they be fumed with it. Birchboyes ſet in the chamber drive them alſo away.

The water that we uſe daily for our neceſſity hath by nature no venom in it, yet if one drink it too cold, likewiſe ſtrong Wine, and by and by after bathing, or after that one hath run hard, there doth there enſue great pain and ſtitches, which diſeaſes may be expelled thorough letting of blood and purging.

Of the Worms that breed in the belly grow divers diſeaſes. In like manner alſo of ſuch that grow in the fingers, in the arſegut, in the wounds, and other places more. What is to be done thereto, that have we ſufficiently declared elſewhere.

Thus for a concluſion of theſe venoms of beaſts, and of the ſeventh Part of this book, there is yet ſomewhat to be added that ſome account for witchery, to wit, when there is given to any body that which excitateth love, by which commonly ſuch miſeries do follow, that they that receive the ſame become mad and fooliſh, like as daily experience doth teach us.

Ovidius writeth, that *Philtra* do weaken the wits, and by their vertues they make men fooliſh and mad. This do we call the lovers herb, as if witchery had power to command one to love another.

This witchery (or rather this poyſoning) do women uſe moſt of all, intending thereby to conſtrain men that they ſhould love them. The ungodly heathen that have excelled therein, and chiefly the *Theſſalonians*, have taken great delight therein, and alſo ſtrange miſbelief, that are rather to be concealed then diſcloſed.

It is very difficult to ordain any certain remedy for it, becauſe it cannot well be known (for that there be ſo many kinds of them) by what means it hath been put in practiſe, ſo that the ſame muſt rather be judged by the ſigns apparent to the eyes, then by any other ſigns: yet have I found out two things deſcribed by famous Phyſitians, which are very good for this purpoſe: but the firſt thereof is very ſtrong, and is not to be uſed without counſel, but the other is ſomewhat ſafer and eaſily approved.

Take a Valerian root with the herb, five or ſix roots of *Gentiana Cruciata*, a ſmall handful of the roots of wild Cucumbers, and a quart of Wine with half as much water: afterwards ſeeth it ſoftly about a quarter of an hour, and drink thereof morning and evening: And you are to ſeeth therewith a little Cinquefoyl.

The other: Take the middlemoſt green rindes of Eldern ſhread ſmall one handful, let it dry well, afterwards ſeeth it in a pint and a half of Goats milk till about the half, ſtrain it, and drink it as aforeſaid. Hereof will ſome ſay, that the ſame purgeth all things whatſoever hath been given unto any body by women to this intent, although it had been done three years before.

The end of the ſeventh Part.

The

The eight and last Part of this Book, containeth sundry things.

THE eight and last part of this general practise of Physick is ordained for those things that do not concern any special diseases, which are before sufficiently described, but that are meet and good for to help sick persons, to strengthen the weak, and to maintain health; which also may be used in the kitchin for pleasure, and for other purposes more; as Electuaries, Potions, conserves, and confections, of all kinds of fruites, of Flowers, of Roots, and of other Plants, Oyles, Syrups, and Juyces; Golden and vital waters; Herbed and Aromatical wines, and such like; whereof otherwhiles hath been admonished, how that the same may be prepared, to the end that the vertue of them all might be known. Wherefore we will also declare their vertues and operations.

The first Chapter.

The Confection of Calamus.

THis very precious and necessary confection, is prepared after sundry maners; for besides this, that it is very common, it is also very pleasant and aceptable. But first of all there is to be noted, that the ancient Physitians had another root, and not the yellow Lilly root, which we have now in use; ye a ours is not to be compared to the old Acoro neither in vertue nor in operation. The learned do esteeme the Calamus to be the right Acorus, which is also very requisite for this confection. Other be of opinion, that it is the great Galangal, which is also good for it; wherefore (in mine opinion) this first confection is to be used rather then the other following. And if so be that you had rather have it with the taste of Sugar then of hony, then boyle Sugar to a syrup. First, we will describe one of the confections of Mesua: whereof there is alwayes one found ready in all well furnished Apothecaries shops, and afterward, one other for to move, whereof each one may take that liketh him best: take the roote of Secacul, or in the stead of it, take of our pownded Calamus, and prepared Pingles, of each six ounces; seeth the roots in faire well water, and stamp them in a morter, afterwards put six pond of the best well scummed hony unto it, and then seeth it all together by a soft or gentle fire, untill the moysture of the roots be all consumed, and stirr it about, to the end that the roots burn not; when as it is decocted enough, then take it from the fire, and temper these things following amongst them, pownded very small; to wit, Pepper one ounce, long Pepper, Cloves, Ginger, Roses, and Mace, of each half an ounce, Nutmegs, Galangal, and Cardamom, of each three drach. temper them well together. This confection is marvellous good against all diseases of the sinewes, it sharpeneth the wit, it asswageth the head-ach, and is also good against all old sicknesses, but especially against all rheumes, which fall out of the head into the breast.

The second, take Calamus which beareth the yellow Lillies, which groweth in moyst places, and is faire and of a horsefleth colour, 16. ounces, make it very faire and cleane, afterwards cut it in thin slices, and seeth it so long in faire water until they be mellow, then

then strain the water well from it, and pour a pot of red wine unto it, and let it boyle well, then pour the wine from it, and stamp it all unto grout an put six pound of clarifyed hony unto it, and let it seeth well with the wine to a confection, at last put unto it 6. ounces of Ginger, Cloves Nutmegs, Mace, Cardamom, long Pepper, and Galangal, of each one ounce and a half, Pepper three quarters of an ounce, beaten all together very small.

The third, take Calamus prepared as before, and chopt small two pound, clarifyed hony 4. pound, seeth the rootes very well in red wine, afterwards put them to the hony, and let it so seeth by a mild fire until it be very thick, then temper therewith small chopt Almonds 11. ounces, Ginger 4. ounces, Pepper half an ounce, long Pepper and Cloves of each one quarter of an ounce, Cinamom one drach. and a half, Galangal, Cucubes, Cardamom, Nutmegs and Mace, of each one drach. stir them so long together with a woodden pestle until that it be cold.

The fourth; take dry sliced Calamus one pound, and seeth it in two quarts of small wine; afterwards pownd it to grout, and take hony or Sugar two pound, let it seeth till it be thick, when it is a little cold, then temper with it small cut Ginger six ounces, pownded Cloves, Nutmegs, Mace, and Cardamom, of each one drach. and a half, long and common Pepper, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, Galangal one drachme and a half, Greines one quarter of an ounce, temper them all together

The fift; take Calamus, cut it in shives, and take twenty ounces of it, seeth it in three pints of red wine, so long until all the wine be consumed; stamp it, but not too small, then take a pint of clarified hony, and let it boyle by a small fire, afterwards put the prepared roots unto it, and 8. ounces of small sliced Ginger, then let it boyle again by a mild fire, unto a confection, when it is luke-warm, then temper with it common and long Pepper, Cloves, Cinamom, Nutmegs, and Ginger, of each half an ounce, Galangal, Mace, Cardamom, Cucubes, and Greines, of each a quarter of an ounce, beaten small together, temper them so long until they be all waxen cold.

The sixt with Sugar: take Calamus as before 12. ounces, seeth it in Muscadel until that the wine be wasted, stamp it to grout, and put thereto 4. pounds of common clarifyed Sugar, with as much wine or water, then put the rootes unto it, and let it seeth until it be thick; when it is a little cold, then temper amongst it Ginger very small 4. ounces, Cinamom, Cardamom, Nutmegs, Mace, Cloves, Calamus, and Cucubes, of each three drachmes, temper them well, and let them seeth so long as one will seeth egs hard, then keep it in a gally pot.

How to make Verjuyce for the Kitchin, and for Physick. §. 1.

VErjuyce is to be prest out of the best Grapes a good while before they be ripe, and if so be that one will keep it long, then must the same be sodden; but if so be that you will use this Verjuyce in the kitchin, then temper a good deale of Salt amongst it, and stir it the space of a whole hour, afterwards put it into a small vessel, and cast some unripe Medlers into it, then shake it well about to the end it may work and be clear. But if so be that you will keep the Verjuyce for Physick and without Salt, then fill a glasse with a narrow neck, and pour upon it some Sallad oyl, then will it remain good the space of a whole yeare.

There may also be made of this unsalted Verjuyce a syrup called de Agresta, to wit, in this manner; take the juyce of unripe Grapes, when it is first prest out, 5. parts, white Sugar 3. parts, and let it seeth softly unto a syrup; further, then clarifie it with the white of an ege. This syrup is marvellous good in great heat, it swageth thirst, allayeth all wambling, parbraking, and lask, which is caused of the gall; it is also very meet in all hot cholerick agues, and above all measure good for all women with child, which be inclined to vomiting, for that it strengtheneth the stomach, and withstandeth all venom.

The second chapter.

Of the artificiall Balm which may be vsed in stead of the right Balsam.

BEcause that the right balsam is no where to be gotten, or although it be brought unto us, yet common people cannot have the same, by reason of the dearenesse; wherefore have many Physitians endeavoured themselves for to distil such an oyl, which might have the same efficacie and vertue; and verily the Physitians and Chirurgions have found therein an especial operation, wherefore I cannot permit the description of some of them.

First, this ensuing is a very precious remedie against the pox, against all diseases of the mother, and of the stomach.

Take faire clean oyl of Turpentine ℥.16. stop it very close; afterwards take Lavander, Sage, Betony, Roses, Rosemary, Mints, and Bayleaves of each a small handful, rootes of Angelica, of Ireas, of Valerian, Elecampane rootes, and Diptamus of Candy, of each one drach. flowers of Burrage, of Bugloss, of Lavander and flowers of Spike, of Sage, flowers of Camomil and Stechas, of each, one quarter of an ounce, Annis one drach. and a half, Piony roots, Licorice and Spica of Indy, of each one drach. peels of Citrons and of Oranges of each two scruples, stamp them all small together, and then pour unto it the oyl of Turpentine, and let it steep the space of a whole day, with meerly much water with it, that it be covered therein; afterwards distil them again in water, at the first with a gentle fire, until it be warm, and that so long as any oyl or water doth come out of it; afterwards separate the oyl from the water.

Secondly, if you will distil it once again, then put to the foresaid water and oyl three ounces of liquid Storax, and distil it as before.

Thirdly, take red Storax two ounces, Frankincense, Myrrhe, Lacca, Mastick, Bdellium, and Benzoin, of each one ounce and a half, stamp them all together and distil it as before. Fourthly, take Ginger, Galangal, Zeduary, and Gentian, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cucubes, Cardamom, Greins, and Pepper, of each one drach and a half, selected Rubarb and Saffron, of each half a drach, Nutmegs, Mace, Cloves, and Calamus, of each one ounce, stamp them all small together, and put it into a glasse bottle; then put unto it again the foresaid oyl and water, let it so stand and steep, and distil it afterwards, then separate the oyl from the water, and keep it well stopt.

You have also in like manner in the 2. Part, the 6. chapter, and 3. §. an artificiall Balm, which was ordained for the Emperour Ferdinandus, and another in the 1. Part, the the 12. chapter, called *Hypobalsamum*.

This following is also highly renowned; take selected Myrrhe, Aloe, Indy Spica, Dragons blood, Frankincense, Bdellium, Balsam fruit, Saffron, Mastick, Gum. Stechas, red Styrax, Laudanum, and Bevercod, of each one quarter of an ounce, Turpentine ℥ 3. and a half, yellow Cowslips half a handful; further, distil them all together as is before said.

These three last be very forcible against all Palseyes, if the lame members be anointed therewith, and if that one do drink a drop or twain thereof with wine, it is also very good. These Balms be also good for all fresh wounds, so that they may be healed in two or three dayes therewith. They be also very good against all diseases of the sinewes.

Another which is common with all Chirugions; take selected Myrrhe, Aloe, Spica, of Indy, Dragons blood, Frankincense, Momy, *Opopanacum*, *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, *Sarcocolla*, *Laudanum*, Balsam fruits, Saffron, Mastick, Gum, and liquid Storax, of each a quarter of an ounce, fresh Bevercod 2. drach. and a half, Muscus half a drach. Turpentine 4. ounces and a half, pownd all that which is to be pownded, and add the Turpentine unto them with a little water, and distil all together in seething water, as is said before.

Of Beer. §. 1.

COmmon beer is made in the country of many kinds of Grain, as of Oates, of Barly, and of Wheat; whereby it is also of sundry natures: that which is made of Barly is cold of nature, in a comparison of wine, that which is made of Barly and Oates, is lesse binding, and maketh also fewer winds, and doth also nourish lesse; that which is brewed of Wheat or of any other grain, is hotter, warmer, and more binding, the thicker it is, the worse; the thinner the better; that which is well Hopt, causeth one to pisse freely, and looseth the body, but it is not wholsome for them that

have a weak braines; and that is unwholsome wherein the seeds of Rue be decocted, for that the drunkennesse of such beer weareth away much slower then the drunkennesse of wine, for that it maketh grosse vapours in the head, and a tough slime, which will hardly be digested. If it be not well sodden, then doth it cause much wind, puffeth up the belly. But very old and well sodden beer doth make people fat, increaseth the blood, and (in women that give suck) the milk, and that specially if the same be brewed of good corn. Thus for to keep beer long, take about half a pound of prepared Coriander seed, put it in a barrel of beer, and seeth the same in 2. quarts of the same beer, afterwards strain it through a strayning bagge, and powr it again into the vessel, yet make it tight, and let it stand so for a day and a night. Some do take a new earthen pot, knock the same in peeces, and cast it into the vessel, and put also unto it a new layd egge.

The third Chapter.

of Claret Wine, Hyppocras, and Herbwines.

These aromaticall wines and such like have no certain description for that each one maketh them according to his one good liking and pleasure, that one putteth much spice unto it, the other much Sugar, and another lesse of the one or of the other. Some do also make them with hony, like as hereafter some do follow for an example.

Take elected Cinamom three ounces, cleansed and small cut Ginger and Greins, of each one ounce, Galangal one ounce and a half, Nutmegs, Cloves, Cardamom and Cucubes, of each one quarter of an ounce, being pownded all together grosly, pour a quart of wine upon it, and stop it tight, afterwards set it a whole night in a warm place. This being all done, then take four quarts of wine, and one quart of clear scummed hony, pour the hony unto a little wine, and so let it seeth softly together: afterwards then pour the four quarts of wine unto it, and all the steeped spices, and let it coole a little, then pour it through a straining bag, and that so oftentimes together untill the wine run clean through it. This Clarret wine may be put into a little vessel, and the spices through which the wine hath run, are to be hanged in the vessel in a long bag, then will it remain good a long time. This potion is very good against all cold and moyst diseases of the head, of the braines, and the stomach. It is also good for all cold women, and for all old people: it strengtheneth the digestive vertue, provoketh natural heat, and consumeth the *Phlegme*.

Another: take Species de gemmis frigidis 3. drachmes, Aromatici Rosati 1. drachme, Cinamom one quarter of an ounce, white Sugar 7. ounces, good strong wine one quart, steep them therein, and pour it oftentimes thorough, as is said before. Of this Clarret wine are they to drink oftentimes which have a weak stomach, and an obstructed Liver, or to steep sometimes therein a peece of bread.

A common Clarret wine: take Cinamom, Pepper, and Greins, as much as you please, clarifyed hony also as much as you list, pour it all then together thorough a wollen bag, as before. You may also take Cloves, Nutmegs, and other Spices, in like manner also Sugar in stead of the hony.

You have also in the third Part, the 11. chapter and 5. §. a Clarret wine called Stelladia which is much used in Italy. There is also another sort made which is almost like unto some of the former, but there be not so many Spices taken for it; to wit, but half an ounce of pownded Ginger, Cardamom one drachme, and Sugar half a pound or more, unto a quart of wine, and so filtred together.

There is also an aromatical wine which is called Hippocras, made thus; take Cinamom 2. ounces, sliced Ginger one ounce, Greins one quarter of an ounce, Galangal, Cloves, Nutmegs, Cucubes, and Cardamom, of each one drachme, of these grosse pownded spices you shall take unto a quart of wine one ounce and a half, according to that you will have the Hyppocras strong, Sugar half a pound or more; then set it in a warme place to steep a whole night, and afterwards pour it through the bage as all the rest. There is commonly taken for this, red wine.

The

This Hippocras hath the same vertue as the Claret wine hath: yet are all young people to refrain from such like drink, and from Malmsey and Muscadel, to the end that they do not increase heat by heat. This Hippocras and Claret wine may also be well made for all weak bodies, that it be somewhat laxative.

But if so be that therebe any sick persons which be forbidden wine, or if that he drink not the same willingly by nature, and that nevertheless the decoctions did not agree with him, then may this potion following be made, called *Hippocras fontis*: Take Cinnamom, Pigs, Cloves, and Ginger, of each one quarter of an ounce, Grains one drachme, good well water 1 quart, which is coloured well with red Saunders, and then put the spices beaten grosse into it, and let it boyl a little. If you will have this potion sweeter, then put in some Sugar in the seething, or some Hony, and then let it distil through the bag, as is said before.

You have also in the third part, the 11. Chap. and 4. §. another aromatical Wine, which might be placed among these: In the end of this part shall more aromatical wines be described.

Of Clisters and their use. §. 1.

If one know how to use these Clisters aright, and to prepare them, then can there be no more profitable, nor yet safer medicine invented. Therefore there be before and almost in all sicknesses so many kinds ordained, and thereby taught how that the same shall be prepared, that it is almost needlesse to write any more of them. Nevertheless to prosecute this our method, we will here discover certain common and milde Clisters. In small Agues, and when the Patient is weak or scant as yet recovered of some long sickness, then are these ensuing to be used.

Take Mallows, and Violet leaves, of each one handful, boyl them well together: take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, mingle Cassie, Hony, and course Sugar of each three quarters of an ounce with it, oyl of Olives three ounces, Salt one drach. or somewhat more, temper them all together, and minister it reasonable warm: for such like Clisters may you take Hen or Mutton broth.

Another that relaxeth and cooleth: Take Violet leaves and Mallows, of each one handful, Mercury, Beets, and water Lillies, of each half a handful, Lettice and Purslain, of each somewhat lesse: seethe them in sufficient water, and take thereof as much as is before, oyl of Violets four ounces, Salt one quarter of an ounce, and minister it meetly warm.

In hot Agues: Take Beets, Mallowes, Mercury, and Violet leaves, of each one handful, boil them all together in sufficient water, and then take thereof twelve or sixteen ounces of Cassie, Hony, Salt and Oyl, as is said before.

When the Patient doth complain of great pain and wind in the belly, then boil therewith grosse pownded Fennel seed, Annis, Cumin, and Caraway.

There is also an especial Cassie prepared for a Clister, in this manner following: Take Violet leaves with the flowers, Mallowes, Mercury, Beets, and Melilot, of each half a handful, seethe the same in a little water, strain it and wring it out, then wash therewith the Cassie out of the Pipes, for to get all the black out of them, and then afterwards seeth it short, until it be thick, when as then you have six ounces thereof, then put nine ounces of Sugar unto it, and let it seethe until it be thick enough. This Cassie doth loose very mildly.

Of confected seeds. §. 2.

Here we will now speak onely of all seeds which be confected with Sugar, as Coriander seed, Fennel seed, Annis, Cumin, Caraway, and such like. Item, of some Fruits, as Almonds, Pingles, Pistacies, Hasel nuts, Cucubes, and of other more confected roots, which may be confected with Sugar: and because the same by reason of the Sugar and otherwise are very pleasant, whereby they will not onely serve for the Kitchin, but also for Physick, wherefore we will here describe the nature and operation of them all.

We have in the seventh Part often admonished of Coriander, and given a caveat of his venom, that the same ought not to be used unprepared; otherwise it is by all Physitians advised, that morning and evening confected Coriander should be used; for it dryeth up

the ascending vapors of the stomach, it strengtheneth and dryeth the brains, it is good against all swimming of the head, and against the Palsie; it is good for the stomach, and procureth sleep, insomuch as then these vertues be ascribed to the Coriander, to which the Sugar addeth only the pleasantnesse: you may look what the Table saith of all the other seeds.

The confected Annis seeds are good for them which have a stinking breath and cannot sleep, it provoketh urine, it quencheth natural thirst, it taketh away the windinesse of the belly, it is good for all pains of the stomach, against all diseases of the Liver, of the Lights, of the Matrix, and it helpeth the digestion. It is also good against all hoarsnesse, shortnesse of breath, and especially for all cold diseases of women, and for all them which be much plagued with the Whites. Lastly, it augmenteth also much the milk in women.

The confected Fennel seed is good against all poyson, and especially against the venome of Snakes, it moveth womens terms, it warmeth the back, it asswageth the pain of the same, it breaketh the stone, it expelleth urine, the stone, gravel, and the slime whereof the gravel is ingendred: it increaseth womens milk, it cureth sour belchings of the stomach, it is good against all wambling and vomiting, it allayeth the Cough, and all hoarsnesse of the throat. But above all is this Fennel seed commended against the darkness of the eyes, for it preserveth people from all velms on the eyes, it sharpneth the sight if one take the same morning and evening, to wit, after meals, and cheweth the same long.

Comin doth grow much in Apulia, it hath the same vertue with the Caraway. It is also very good for them which be plagued with the gravel, and can hardly make their water.

The Caraway seed is hotter and dryer by nature than the Annis or Fennel, therefore it is stronger and more forcible; and especially doth it warm the stomach, and all inward parts, it openeth all obstructions, it forceth urine, it breaketh the stone, it expelleth sand and gravel, it driveth out winds, and it taketh away all pain and chollick of the belly.

The confected Almonds are good against all diseases of the Lights, and the throat, against all dry Coughs, and narrownesse of the brest, it strengtheneth all weak people, and all them which do consume away. The bitter Almonds do expel urine and gravel, they do dry the brains, and do hinder the ascending vapors, they withstand all drunkennesse, and be good against many diseases of the brest, and of the lights.

The hasel nuts have in some sort the same nature with the Almonds: but they with the red shales have an especial operation and vertue for all scowrings and lasks, and especially to staunch the bloody Flux. All sorts of hasel nuts be more wholesome confected with Sugar than otherwise, as one may see and read in many places of this book.

The Pingles be also of the same nature with the Almonds: and be especial good for all lean folks, for that they strengthen much: yet are the kernels to be laid 24. hours before to steep in Rosewater, and then to be dryed again, for they augment much humane seed.

Of the confected Spices, Peels, Roots, and such like. §. 3.

THe Ginger, the Cinnamom, the Cloves, the Nutmegs, the Mace, Cucubes, Orange peels, Citron peels, Marjoram, and the sliced Licorice, are likewise confected with Sugar. These foresaid do keep all alike the properties of their natures, and be special good in time of the Plague, for that they make good breath, which will not lightly be infected.

It is also to be noted, that all that which is to be confected for Physick, must be covered very thin with sugar, but onely the spices may well be confected somewhat thicker.

The common baked Ginger sugar is thus prepared: Take one pound of Sugar, and seeth it with Well water, clarifie it as the sugar is wont to be boyled for baked sugar, and when it beginneth to be cold, then mix five drachmes of pownded Ginger amongst it, and when you see that it beginneth to be thick, then pour it upon a stone or a table, which is made fat with a little sallad oyl.

Yet another baked Sugar: Take Ginger two drachmes and a half, Cinnamom one quarter of an onuce, Cloves one drachme, Mace and Nutmegs, of each half a drachme, Sugar one pound, seethe it, and do as before. You have in like manner also in the third part, the 11. Chap. and 20. §. a baked sugar, which purgeth mildely, whereof one may take a quarter of an ounce at once.

The

The fourth Chapter.

Of preserved Fruits, Flowers, and other things.

TO the end that all Fruits, Flowers, Rindes, and in fine, all that is preserved with Sugar or with Hony, be not parted from the former, therefore we will in this Chapter comprehend all that is preserved in Sugar, or decocted, as Conserves, and also declare their vertues.

How to conserve the Elecampane root. §. 1.

IN the spring of the year is this root to be digged out of the ground, and the outtermost peels to be cut off, the root made very clean, afterwards cut it in somewhat thick shives or slices: this being done, then seethe the same very softly in two kinds of water one after the other, to the end the bitternesse may be taken away, and be very mellow. Then lay them on a clean cloth, to the end they may wax somewhat dry. Put them in a leaded pot, and pour meetly hard sodden Sugar upon them (but that it be not too hot) until the roots be covered. This shall stand so a day and a night, then shall the Sugar draw all the moisture unto it, which as yet is in the root, and afterwards pour the Sugar off again, and boil it unto a syrupe: this being done, then pour it lukewarm upon it, and do this so often as the roots give any moisture from them.

These preserved Elecampane roots be a very good medicine for all cold diseases of the bladder. They take away the piping of the breast, and the shortnesse of breath. They be also good against the Cough, the spetting of blood, against the pain of the sides: they strengthen the stomach, and the digestion: they cleanse also the same from all unclean humours: they break the stone, and move womens terms: they separate also all tough phlegme of the breast, they heal the ulcers of the Lights, and all inward parts, and especially they warm the stomach and the Matrix.

To preserve black Cherries. §. 2.

TAke black Cherries as they come from the tree, and then cut off the stalks, for two pound of Cherries take one pound of Sugar, and seeth the same and clarifie it: when it is then half boiled, put in the Cherries, and then let them seeth all together softly, to the end the Cherries do not break, and that so long, until that the Sugar be drawn between the fingers with small threeds. And when as now the broth is almost cold, then put the Cherries in a leaded pot with the stalks upwards, for so they will remain good a whole year. And in this manner shall red Cherries also be preserved.

These Cherries be not onely acceptable for them that be sick, but also good for all kind of heat, they moisten the dry mouth, the tongue and the throat, they quench thirst, they make appetite, and refresh debility. The conserve of Cherries is thus prepared.

Take black Cherries as many as you please, let them seeth well in wine, wring them through a cloth, or through an hairen strainer, and afterwards let it seethe again until it be thick, stirring it alwaies well about. Unto three pounds of this juice put two pounds of Sugar, and afterwards seethe them together to the full thicknesse. There may also a Conserve of Cherries be made with spices, as hereafter followeth:

Take of the forefaid Conserve whilst that it is yet warm one pound, and temper pounded Cinnamom amongst it, and Nutmegs, of each one quarter of an ounce; Ginger and Galangal, of each one drachme, Cardamom, Cloves, Mace, and Lignum Aloes, of each half a drachme. This latter conserve doth strengthen the heart more than the former.

Conserve of Eyebright. §. 3.

TAke Eyebright in July with the white flowers, strip the flowers and leaves from the stalkes; afterwards chop them small, and take one pound thereof, and temper amongst it two pound and a half of Sugar, and then set it in the Sun and stirre it well

oftentimes about. This is the conserve of Eyebright, which is very commodious for the eyes, as in the first part is sufficiently declared. It sharpeneth also all dark sight, it dryeth the braines of all cold superfluous humours, it strengtheneth the Liver, and openeth all obstructions, it expelleth the yellow Jaundise, and the ague that proceeds of an unclean stomach. In conserving of all flowers and herbs is to be noted, that all they that are hot and dry, as Lavander, Marjoram, Balm, Sage, Mints, and such like, one is to take to one pound of them, two pounds and a half of Sugar; but to all that is moyst, as Burrage flowers, and Buglosse flowers, &c. is put two pound to be taken.

Conserve of Betony §. 4.

BEtony is very highly and worthily reputed of all Physitians, whereof there be three kinds, to wit, brown Betony which is the upright Betony, and also the conserve which we will here describe. The 2. kind ate our Gilloflowers. The 3 sort be the Cowslips, whereof we will speak hereafter in their due place. The conserve of Betony is therefore not unjustly commended, seeing their vertues ensuing be ascribed unto it. Some do write that it is good against the cramp, against the palsie, and against the falling sickneſſe; it is also good against madneſſe, against spitting of blood, and against the Sciatica; this herb is also good against all pain of the stomach, of the kidnyes, and of the bladder of the Liver, milt, and all inward parts, it expelleth urine, it looseth, and it helpeth digestion: it is also good against belching, it cleanseth the breast, it withstandeth the dropsie, the ague, it moveth womens termes. In fine, it is especial good for all inward sicknesses: lastly, it is also good against all venom. If that one desire to make a conserve of it, then take onely the flowers for it, which are to be pownded together with Sugar, like as is taught at the first.

How the greater Pimpernel roots are to be preserved §. 5.

TAke the rootes of the greater Pimpernel which be about one finger thick, wash them well, scrape them, and cut them in peeces about the length of a finger: but cut them longwise, and take out the heart of it, then pour fresh Well water upon it, and let them seeth like as is said of the Elecampane rootes, but they must not utterly lose their bitterneſſe. This being done, pour decocted Sugar, or hony unto it, and when it is waterish, then boyle it again, and that so often as is needful. These rootes expel urin, gravel, and the stone, they strengthen the kidnyes and the bladder, they cleanse them from all uncleanneſſe, they asswage all paines of the bowels, which do come through cold causes, and they be good against the suffocation of the mother in time of the Plague, they be good against all bad ayre, if they be holden in the mouth.

How Peares are to be preserved after two wayes. §. 6.

YOu may take such Peares as you think good which be new gathered from the tree, but note other but those that be sound. If they be too hard, then let them lye in a warm place the space of 3. or 4. weeks, until they begin to be somwhat mellow: but handle them not too much, for that thereby will they quickly rot. If so be you will preserve them, then have an earthen pot ready and lay in the bottom of this pot some dryed Vine leaves or Nut leaves, and thereon lay of Peares, &c. leaves and Peares until that the pot be full: afterwards fill up the pot with old wine, and lay some heavy thing upon the top of it, that the Peares may not swim. These Peares may be used for meat, and also for sick persons for to comfort them. The common People which have no wine may do it after the same manner with water. But if you desire to have them of a better tast, then take Ginger which is made very fair, cut the same small and strew it between each row. Item, take a new pot and put Peares into it (like as is said before) make the pot close too as is possible; afterwards lay it so in a vessel with wine, then will they remain fresh and good the space of a whole year. These Peares may otherwhiles be rosted in the ashes, and strew them with Fennel seed; and also after supper to eat them, thereby to close up the stomach, to the end the bad vapours may not ascend towards the head: they strengthen also the braines, and be special good for the sight.

If one will preserve Musk Pears, then are they to be gathered in fair dry weather, and in the decrease of the Moon, and when they be very ripe, then take of the very faireſt and ſoundeſt of them, pare them very thin, cut off the ſtalks and the flower on the top; then make ready a clean ſirup of white Sugar, which is well boyled; when you will take the ſame off from the fire, then lay the prepared Pears therein, and let them ſeethe two or three warmes together afterwards cool a day and a night. This being done, ſeeth the Sugar once again, and then take warm pour it upon the Pears, and do that ſo long until that you ſee that the ſirup waxeth no more, otherwiſe they cannot continue. If you will have them pleaſant, then put Cinamon unto them, and they will be the better for the ſtomach. Theſe do comfort and refreſh all ſick folks that do loath meat, and they do cloſe up the ſtomach againſt the aſcending of all bad vapours; if they be eaten at the firſt ſitting down to meat, then do they bind the belly. But if one can get no muſk Pears, then may other be taken in their ſtead which be likeſt of all unto muſk Pears in ſmel and taſte, and to prepare them as is expreſſed.

How Oranges are to be preſerved. §. 7.

This Apple is wont very ſeldom to be confected, but his peels very often, the which are thus prepared; Take freſh Orange peels, cut the white out, and cut the yellow longwiſe: afterwards let it ſeethe ſo long as one would ſeethe an Egg hard, and afterwards let the broth run off. This being done, then pour Sugar upon it which is well boiled until that be well covered, and ſo let them ſtand the ſpace of eight dayes in the ſame, then be they prepared. Oranges are prepared as followeth: Take the outtermoſt of freſh Orange peels, and cut the yellow the longeſt way, afterwards ſeethe the ſame in water until that the bitternelle may come out of it. Pour the liquor from it, and then let it ſeethe again until that they be through mellow (to wit in good wine) then ſtamp them to gooſe, and at laſt put good Malmſey unto it, and ſo much Sugar as you pleaſe, and ſo let ſeethe well together ſtirring it alwayes well about. Some do lay them to ſteep in a lee, and afterwards ſteep them in water. But it is not ſo good, for that their force will be thereby much abated; ſo that it is better, to ſeethe them in two or three waters, to the end that they may loſe their bitternelle: they ſtrengthen the heart and the vital ſpirits, and therewith alſo the ſtomach; they do help the conſumption, and dry the braine.

Conſerve of Burrage. §. 8.

AMongſt the learned there is a debate, whether the name between Burrage and Bugloſſe, be exchanged, but therein is no great importance, by reaſon that both of them are of one nature, to wit, that the ſame are to be uſed in all venomous and peſtilential Agues, they do ſtrengthen the heart and all vital ſpirits: they withſtand all venome, and all heavineſſe of mind, and they do alſo cleanſe the blood from all melancholy. In fine, they cool all inward parts. This Conſerve is made of the blew flowers, as we have taught before.

How Calamus is to be preſerved. §. 9.

TAke fair perfect Calamus, pour fair Well water upon it, and let it ſeethe together, until it be through mellow, and that it loſe ſome of his bitternelle: afterwards make cleane roots fair from the outwardmoſt peels, and from all other uncleannelle. If ſo be that ſome do ſwell too thick, then cut them longwiſe; and in caſe that they be too bitter, then let them ſeethe once again in water: and then afterwards lay them to dry in a ſieve. The Sugar is certain times to be decocted, like as is taught before, until that all the moiſture be waſted. This confected Calamus is moſt in all his force like unto the Ginger, and eſpecially it is very good for all debility of the ſtomach that is buttered with cold humour, for that it conſumeth the ſame humours, and beſides this, ſtrengthen the ſtomach; if it be taken in the morning, then doth it keep folks from all peſtilential air, and maketh a ſweet breath. It expelleth water, and is eſpecially good for all diſeaſes of the bladder and the kidneyes. It forceth the ſtone, and the gravel, and it provoketh womens terms. It is warm and dry by nature, and hath an eſpecial operation for to open all obſtructions, &c.

This

How Citrons are to be preserved. §. 10.

A Common manner to preserve Citrons in Sugar or in hony, is this, that one peele off the yellow rinde, and cut the white pith in round or long peeces, and then to saperate the sour with the seeds from it. Further, the same is to be boyled in a water or twain, to the end that the bitternesse come from it, and therewith may be mellow and soft; afterwards is boyled Sugar to be powred luke-warm upon it, and deal with them, like as is taught of the Elecampane roots. This preserve is very good against all venome, it strengtheneth the heart, and all vital powers; it is moist and cold in the first degree, and it is very safe so be taken.

How Citron peeles are to be preserved. §. 11.

TAke the peels of Citrons, which be not peeled too thin, but that there remain some of the white with it, and do therewith as is said of the Orange peels. These peels be warm and dry unto the third degree, wherefore they are but seldom to be used; but in cold sicknesses they do help digesture, they withstand all melancholick humours, and also all diseases which may proceed thereof.

How Berberries be preserved. §. 12.

YOu must take of the very fairst Berberries that you can get, and wash the same very clean; afterwards seethe them in a sirup of good Sugar, and when the sirup is sodden short enough, then cast the Berberries unto it, and let it seethe so softly a short time, so that the berries do not break, and then preserve them in a glassed pot. They be good against al heat and al other inflammation of the blood, and especially of the stomach and Liver; they comfort sick persons in great thirst, they moisten the dry tongue, the throat and al the mouth. There is also a conserve made of this fruit, and that in this manner following; take Berberries as before, and seethe the same in wine; afterwards strain them through a sieve, or fearce, or through a cloth, and then let it be sodden unto a conserve, stirring it alwayes about. This confection stoppeth the bloody flix, and cooleth the blood which is inflamed of *Cholera*, it obstructeth womens terms, and maketh appetite to meat, it is alwayes somewhat stronger then the conserve of Raspes. Otherwise hath it the same vertue or operation: the Apothecaries do call it *Rob de Berberis*.

Conserve of Fumitory. §. 13.

THis bitter herb fumitory, is very wel known; if you wil make a conserve of it, then take the flowers of it, and pownd the same with Sugar, as other Conserves, and as we have taught of Eyebright. This confection is especial good for all them which be full of unclean blood, and also for all them that be plagued with scurfe, with the Pox, and with such like uncleanneſſe; it keepeth men in health, and also from all venomous air. Of this Conserve may freely be taken as much as the quantity of a great nut, before that men will bathe, for that it expelleth out the sweat, and all bad humours of the body: therefore it is also good in the beginning of the Dropsie, for that it openeth the liver and all obstructions of the inward parts; it driveth out the yellow laundise by the urine, and is very commodious for many other things.

How the Conserve of the fruit of the wilde Rose tree is to be made. §. 14.

WHen as the fruits of these wilde Roses (which be called Prickpinckle) begin to ripe, then take as many as you please, and seethe the same with red Wine unto [illegible] afterwards strain it through a sieve, or fearce, and so let it seethe well without putting any other thing into it, with a continual stirring about, as other Conserve. This Conserve hath a marvellous operation for to stop the fleaxing or lask, it is also good for all wambling of the stomach, others do make unto a Conserve, with Mush half dissolved, wherewith they seethe it again, and cast certain slices of Marmalade unto it, which is especial good for a cold stomach.

This

This conserve is more in use with the common people, then at the Apothecaries, wherefore we will speak the lesse thereof.

How Apricocks are to be preserved. §. 15.

THe skins of these Apricocks are to be pluckt off softly, then pour upon them Sugar decocted hard, not over hot; then let it stand to the space of one day, or somewhat longer, afterwards seethe the Sugar again, and that so long as the Apricocks do yeeld any moisture from them. Their vertue and operation are like to Peaches.

Conserve of Eldern berries. §. 16.

FIrst for to write of the Conserve of Eldren berries, the same is holden by the ancient Physitians, and also amongst the common people, almost instead of Treacle, and that not without cause, as you shall hear hereafter, and is thus prepared: Take ripe Eldern berries, strip them with a caul from the stalks, wring out the juyce and let it seethe by a milde fire unto a pap. This Conserve is to be taken against all inward venome, it cureth all ulcers and swellings, it expelleth by sweat all bad humours and corruptions: wherefore it is to be taken before that one go to the bath; but this cannot be done but onely after purging, and that fasting. If this be so used, then doth it consume the Dropsie at the beginning. It hath also been found, if that this conserve be spread upon the Rose, that thereby it will immediately wear away.

If thou wilt make Conserve of the flowers, then take the flowers when they be very ripe, shake them from the stalks, and let them dry between two clothes; afterwards shread them small unto a pound of flowers, take two pound and a half of Sugar, pownd them well together; afterwards set them in the Sun, and stir them oftentimes about. This Conserve openeth the Liver, driveth away all swelling of the belly, and all beginning of Dropsies, &c.

How Ginger is to be preserved. §. 17.

TAke fair white Ginger, of the faireſt races, and lay the same to steep the space of certain dayes, or so long until that the uppermost peeles will be pared off, then take them off, and make them very clean, afterwards pour fresh lee upon them, and let them steep, to the end that they may swell throughly: and when as they be waxen very mellow (which may be perceived by cutting them through) then pour off the lee, & wash them wel with fresh water, prick them oftentimes with a small knife overthwart, and afterwards lay them a day and a night in sweet water, to the end that the sharpnesse of the lee may be taken away, and do this so long until you can perceive no sharpnesse of the lee any longer; then spread the Ginger upon a four cornered linnen cloth, that the linnen may draw the moisture out of it; but if so be that the cloth be throgh wet, then lay it on another dry cloth again. Some do spare this labour, and lay it upon sieves; when it is very dry, then have a dry sirup ready, which is made of Sugar, or clarified Honi, and then do therewith like as is taught of the Elecampane roots, but above all have good regard that the sirup be not powred too hot upon it, for that thereby the Ginger will shrink, yea be hard and unpleasant: then keep this Ginger in a gallie pot. This confected Ginger is very good for all cold phlegmatick sicknesses, and for a cold weak stomach: it taketh away all vapours that do ascend from the stomach towards the head; it warmeth all the body, and all inward parts. At evening when one goeth to bed a good peece taken of it doth dry marvellous much the brains: Thereby will also the parts of generation in men and women be strengthened. But this may be gotten preserved green out of the Indies, which is much better then that which is preserved in this country. The same was wont beforetimes to be preserved after an easier manner, to wit, in this manner following: Take white Ginger as much as you please, bury it the space of 14. dayes in moist sand, and wash it afterwards with a sharpe lee, lay it afterwards again the space of 14. dayes in Rosewater; this being done, make a sirup of Sugar, or of hony, or both of them tempered together, cleansed and scummed well, and then lay the Ginger in this sirup: but I cannot commend this manner of doing.

How

How Raspes are to be preserved. §. 18.

YOu must take the Raspes as they do hang upon the hedg, wash the same very clean, and make them fair, if there be any uncleanneſſe with them, then make ready a clarified ſirup of Sugar, and when as now the ſirup is almoſt boyled, then caſt in the berries, and let them ſeethe ſoftly therein a good while that they may not break, and do not alſo cool. Their conſerve is made as followeth: when the berries be very ripe, then ſtrip them from the ſtalks, and wring the juyce through a clean cloth; afterwards let it ſeethe ſoftly ſtirring it alwayes about until it begin to be thick, then put as much Sugar unto it as you pleaſe, and ſeethe it away like as all other Conſerves. You may alſo boyl this juyce without Sugar, and it is alſo better for Phyſick. The Apothecaries do call the ſame *Rob de Ribes*. This conſerve hath an eſpecial vertue to ſlake thirſt, and to moiſten the dry tongue, and all other inward parts, it maketh appetite, and that eſpecially in hot times. In like manner may alſo this decocted juyce be tempered with wine, and uſed as a ſauce amongſt other meats.

How the Conserve of Hyſſop is to be made. §. 19.

IN July, take the flowers of the herb, and Sugar alſo with it, pownd them well together, like as we have taught of Eyebright. This conſerve is very good for the breaſt, the lights, and ſuch like parts; it is alſo good againſt the cough, the narrowneſſe of the breaſt, and againſt the ſhort breath; it conſumeth and dryeth all cold rheumes: it exceedingly warmeth the breaſt, it ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach, the head, and the brains: it taketh away all aſcending vapours; and is good againſt all poyſon, and alſo very meet againſt all coldneſſe of the inward parts.

Of the Conſerves of Lavander and of Spikenard. §. 20.

BOth theſe herbs are found to agree ſo near in operation that the Spica is called the male, becauſe it hath bigger leaves and ears, and the Lavander the female. Of both theſe herbs are the flowers onely taken, and for every pound of flowers two and a half of Sugar, or otherwhiles three pound of Sugar, becauſe they be ſtrong: beat them well together. This Conſerve is very good for all cold diſeaſes of the ſtomach, and for all windineſſe of the ſame, it eaſeth the pain in the belly, and the aſcention of the Mother, it openeth all obſtructions of the Liver, it maketh urine, it dryeth the cold and moiſt brains, it is good for the ſinews, Palſey, and lameneſſe that proceedeth of them, it reſtoreth the loſt ſpeech, it taketh away all cold rheumes that fall out of the head into the eyes, teeth, and other parts, and this conſerve is eſpecial good againſt the corruption of the gums.

How to preſerve the Eryngus *root.* §. 21.

THis herb is called of the Phyſitians *Eryngium*, the roots onely of this herb be preſerved. The ſame are digged up in the ſpring time or in harveſt, waſh and ſcrape the ſame well, afterwards cleave them in the length and take out the heart, then cut them in mean peeces, ſeethe them and prepare them as you did Calamus and the great Pimpernel roots; or you may leave them long, put onely the pith of them out and ſtick it about with Cinamom and cloves, which giveth it a pleaſantneſſe. Theſe roots be alſo very good for them that have any diſeaſe in the Liver, they do take away all pain of the Milt, the kidneys, and back, they drive away the Chollick, they move urine and womens terms; they be alſo good againſt all venome, and againſt all purſiveneſſe in the breaſt, they free one from the cramp, and of the falling ſickneſſe, they do warm the parts of generation, and be eſpecial good for a cold ſtomach.

Conſerve of Marjoram. §. 22.

OF this herb are the leaves onely to be taken, and pownd them with Sugar like the Eyebright: This Conſerve is of a dry and of a warm nature, it is eſpecial good for all moiſt and cold diſeaſes of the brains, of the head, and of the ſtomach, it open-

eth

openeth all obstructions of the Liver, and all inward parts, it doth strengthen the heart, and it hath the same vertue with the conserve of Lavender and of Spikenard.

Conserve of Balm. §. 24.

A Conserve of this herb is especial good for all byting of Scorpions, of Spiders, and of Wasps, and is also good for all byting of mad dogs, the same eaten or laid upon it; it moveth womens termes, it asswageth all sooth ach and pain of the joynts, it healeth one from the poyson of Toads or Snakes, it stayeth the scouring *Dysenteria*, and taketh away all collicks, it driveth away all pensiveness, it strengthneth a cold stomach, it warmeth the breast, and giveth a light breath, it cleanseth all ulcers, and it is good against all dark sight: of the white flowers of this herb is also a conserve made like as of all other flowers, which nevertheless is not much in use.

How Nutmegs are to be confected. §.

OF Nutmegs take the very best, lay them to steep in sharp lee which is made of woodashes, and let them lye so long therein, until they be throughly steeped, yea mellow and soft, afterwards pour away the lee, and peele off the uppermost gray skins. This being done, poure fresh water oftentimes upon it, to the end that the sharpnesse of the lee may be drawn away again; then let them dry in the shadow in a Sieve, prepare afterwards a syrup of Sugar which is well decocted, and so pour it luke warm upon them; and if it wax waterish, then seeth the same again, and that once every three or four dayes until that the syrup continue thick. These Nutmegs be of a dry and warm nature, they strengthen the head, the braines, the heart, and all viral spirits, they increase naturall heat, and all naturall powers, if so be that one take the same in the morning fasting, and in the evening after meat. They do consume all noysome and superfluous humours of the inward parts, they do strengthen the stomach and make fresh blood, they yeeld a good and odoriferous breath, they ease all swellings and hardnesse of the Spleen, and they be especial good against all cold diseases of the Liver: but they be not so good for the Lights: they have great power for to dry a moyst head. Now a dayes be they brought out of Indy preserved green, which be much better and forcible then they which be preserved in this country.

Conserves of Gillowflowers. §. 25.

DIvers kinds there be of these well known flowers, the red well savouring be the best to make a conserve of: cut the undermost white from it, and use the leaves alone; and the white are you to cast away: the same is to be pounded with Sugar like to other conserves. This conserve hath the same vertue that the conserve of Betony hath, for they are also a kind of Betony. These Gillowflowers are especially commended against all venom: this conserve is also very good for the head and braines, drying and warming the same, it allayeth also the shaking and shivering of the Quartaine Ague: it is also somewhat bitter, and is therefore good against all Wormes taken fasting, it is good against the pain of the teeth, it withstandeth quakenesse, and breaketh the stone. This may also be used as a preservative in time of the Plague.

How Walnuts are preserved. §. 26.

ABout Saint Johns tide take green Walnuts and prick them through with a bodkin, and peele off the green bitter shels from them; afterwards lay them eight or ten daies in fresh water or in running water which is more better, and they need not so much time also for it. When as now they be quite rid of their bitternesse, then let them seeth softly, untill they be somewhat mellow, but not through soft: and afterwards let them dry in a Sieve, then stick their holes with Cinamom, Cloves, Orange peeles; also seeth the Sugar somewhat short as we have taught in the preserving of the Elecampane rootes. Some do prick it without, but they put Cloves, Cinamom, Galangal, Mace, Cucubes, and Cardamom, in the syrup, each according to his good liking: but if so be that

that you will preserve them with hony, then it is not needful that one peele the nuts. These Nuts be commonly used at banquets, notwithstanding they be also good for Physick; they that be preserved with spices, do help digestion and warm all inward parts; they close up the stomach after meat, and do stay the ascension of the vapours, yet they are very seldome used in this book. Here we will also admonish and teach how that one shall keep ripe Walnuts a long time fresh, that the hernels may be peeled: for this are you to take good new nuts, bury them in sand, and when you will use them then wash away the sand. Or take a new pot, and strew therein a lay of dryed Vine leaves, and then a lay of Nuts, and so forth, until the pot be full, wherein they will last long and keep their taste.

Conserve of Bugloss. §. 27.

WE have before admonished in the description of the conserve of Burrage, that both of these be of one nature and of one operation, wherefore it is not needful to discourse thereof more at large.

How Apples are preserved. §. 28.

APples may be preserved as we have written of Peares, some do pour upon them wine lees, and they wash them when they will use them; Apples do coole the hot stomach, they do attenuate the tough slime and quench thirst.

Conserve of Pionie. §. 29.

TAke the leaves of Piony flowers (which do blow in May) and pownd them very small, unto a pound of flowers, take two pound and a half of Sugar, and set it the space of three moneths in the Sun, stirring it about every day. This conserve is very good against all vexasies, against the hag or night-mare (as some tearm it) against the falling sickness, and swimming of the head, against the diminishing of the sight, and all diseases of the braines; it moveth womens terms, and cleanseth them after childbirth: it is also good for the gravell, and for the yellow Jaundise, it suppresseth the vapours of the stomach, it refresheth women that be vexed with suffocation of the Matrix, it is also marvellous good against the pangs of children, and it letteth the growing of the stone in them: if so be that the children be too small, that one cannot give it them, then are the nurses that give suck to use this conserve in abundance.

How to preserve Peaches. §. 30.

WHen the fruit is ripe, then is the same to be plucked off with the hand that it may not be bruised; those Peaches are esteemed to be the best to preserve which be ripe about Saint Johns tide, and be somewhat smaller then the other; the uppermost skin is ta the first to be peeled off with a knife, and the syrup (like as is said of the musk Peares) to be sod until they be thick. They have almost the same nature that the musk peares have, they comfort and strengthen the sick persons, they be good at the first, they moysten the dryed tongue, they do coole all inward parts, and be very good in all hot sicknesses. In this manner be the red and wine Peaches preserved; peele the same and take out the stones; afterwards lay them in an earthen pot, and pour upon them clarifyed and thick hony. These Peaches be not so pleasant as the other, but they be well as forcible as the small, and they may also be prepared with Sugar. And because that some people may may not abide the tast of hony, it may be washed off before they be used with water; it is also in the third Part (where we speak of the bloody Flix) declared how these Peaches are to be dryed and used.

Item, the hurt which these Peaches do through their cold and moysture, that will be remedied through eating of their kernels, or with a draught of wine.

The flowers and Blossomes of Peaches may also be preserved with Sugar as other flowers: this conserve is very necessary for children against the wormes, because that children can hardly use Wormseed by reason of the bitternesse: and this conserve doth not onely expel wormes, but letteth that none other can come to ingender.

And

And if one have suspition of Wormes then it is advised that it be given, for that it strengtheneth the stomach.

For to make a Conserve of Prunes. §. 31.

TAke of the great Damask prunes or other great horse prunes which be somewhat sowrish, as many as you please, cut them o pen and pluck out the stones, then let them seeth in a pot, afterwards strain them through a strainer, and then let it seeth again unto a pap, this cooleth all heat and quencheth the thirst in agues. If you will have a laxative conserve, then take sweet Prunes. There is also made at the Apothecaries a laxative conserve called Diaprunum solutivum, which you are to seek in the Table. Some do take for the first described Prunes conserve of the one half of Sugar, whereby it is also pleasant, but it is in hot sicknesses much more commodious to be used without Sugar.

But if you will onely preserve Prunes, then take the foresaid Prunes of Damask, and then pour as much clarifyed hony upon it which is not too hot, stirring it alwayes well about. If it be seen that the hony be watterish, then must it be decocted again, like as it is oftentimes admonished before.

How Quinces and other things are to be preserved. §. 32.

OF these noble and odoriferous Quinces have many ancient and also latter Physitians written much, and used after sundry manners, whereby itis now come to passe, that there is scant any household of account where one findeth not alwayes something prepared of Quinces, wherefore we will discourse somewhat ampler thereof, and first of all describe divers confections.

The Apothecaries do call the one Diacydonium simplex, for that there is none other but Sugar or hony in it, and is thus made; take Quinces as many as you please, whereof the kernels be put out, and cut them very small, afterwards seeth them in Well water to the end they may be soft; then strain them through a Strayner or Sieve, so that there remain nothing but the parings in the Sieve. Then take three pound thereof, Sugar or hony that is well clarifyed about four pound, or as much as you please, then seeth them together unto a conserve or confection, stirring it about continually.

Another; take cut Quinces which be cleansed from the seed, put them into a pot and cover it on the top with a pewter potlid, turn it afterwards about into another pot which is full of water, and let the same seeth, that the vapour may ascend, and the Quinces, through the vapour of the neathermost pot, may be mellowthat they, afterwards may be driven through a Sieve; take 4. pound thereof, Sugar three pound, and let it seeth so together to a conserve. Some do take but half so much Sugar as Quinces, but therein may each one do his pleasure, how lesse Sugar that there is with it, so much the better be they for Physick. Other do boyle or foment the Quinces with good old wine, which is also not to be rejected. This following is more forcible; take as many Quinces as you will, grate them very small, and presse out the juyce, afterwards pour it upon other sliced or cut Quinces, and then let them all together seeth throughly with Sugar or hony. This is an especial medicine for to strengthen the stomach, it stoppeth all scowring and wambling, it strengtheneth the inward weak parts, besides the digestive and retentive vertues, and it provoketh apperite. But note this well, if one will stop the scowring, that one must take it before meat, and against the vomiting after meat.

At the Apothecaries is prepared a Dyacydonium compositum, or cum speciebus, as hereafter followeth; take thick sodden juyce of Quinces, wherein is neither Sugar nor hony 18. ounces, clarifyed hony one pound and a half, seeth it meetly thick. When it is now waxen luke warm, then temper these spices following (pownded small) amongst it; to wit, Cinnamom three quarters of an ounce, Ginger half an ounce, Pepper and Galangal, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloves and Nutmegs, of each one drach and a half, Indy Spica, Lignum Aloes, Mace, and Cardamom, of each one drach. Zeduary half a drach. afterwards pour it into boxes, and make a hole or twain above on the top. It is also well advised that one take Sugar in stedd of hony.

If you will have a purging conserve of Quinces or Marmalade, then take of this foresaid conserve (whilst that it is yet warm) with the spices 22. ounces, and temper half an ounce of pownded Diagridion amongst it, and stir it very long, to the end it will be tempered,

pared. This foresaid conserve of Quinces with the spices is more forcible for all the foresaid diseases, then the other, it causeth the winds to avoid, it expelleth all bad smels, it maketh a good colour, it strengtheneth the naturall powers. For the kitchin and for housekeeping may this ensuing be prepared, pare as many Quinces as you please, grate them even to the coare, and put all that is grated into a strong cloth, afterwards wring the juyce well out, and keep it in a pot. This being done, take other Quinces, pare them and cut them in 4. peeces, put out the seed, and seethe the same in water until it be almost as mellow as a pap, and all the water consumed, but put out the seeds clean, and put it in a pot apart, and pour water upon it, then let it seeth well, and strain it through a cloth. Tye also a course cloth over an earthen pan, and say therein a good deale of mellow Quinces, and rub them through it, so that the best may go thorough, then take afterwards faire white Sugar, and pour thereon some of the decoction of Quinces, let it seeth meetly hard, (then needeth not the conserve of Quinces to seeth so much) then take of this decoction of Quinces one part, and 2. parts of the other, and let it seeth until it be half thick enough, afterwards put the Sugar unto it, and then let it seeth thick enough, stirring it continually; when as it beginneth to be cold, then put it into the poxes. And if this Marmalade be not faire enough, then take off the uppermost skin with a knife. It is also to be noted, that if it be not decocted drie enough, then can it not last above a yeare.

Now for to make a cleare and perspicuous Marmalade; take faire great Quinces, wash them veay clean, grate them very small, wring out as much juyce as you please; take afterwards other Quinces, cut them in six peeces, put them into a pot, let them be vapoured with hot water, like as we have taught before, until that they be through mellow, then take half a potful of the former juyce, and pour it upon the former stewed and cut peeces, break it well together, and then put the rest of the juyce amongst it, wring it through a thin cloth, until it be clear; of this Juyce shall you not seeth more at once, then for to fill a box therewith, and put white Sugar unto it (beaten very small) as much as you please. If the juyce be troubled, then let it passe once or twice through a cloth, or so long untill it be through cleare; afterwards seeth it speedily away over a slight fire; when it is boyled enough, then pour it into the box or wherein you will, which might be made wet as before; and when they have stood one night, then may they be taken out. Note also here, that you must not take too little of the pap of the vapoured Quinces, for that the Marmalade should be very tough, and if one let the same seeth long, then would it be very brown.

If you make course Marmalade, then take the Quinces that remain, whereof the best is strained out, and rub it through a haire Sieve, and afterwards put more vapoured Quinces unto it, and let it seeth away with hony or Sugar. This serveth to dresse withal or otherwise.

A Marmalade not sodden; take 20. or 25 Quinces, pare them, and cut the half thereof in small peeces, the rest grate small, and presse the juyce well out; pour that unto the cut peeces, and strew them until all be soft; afterwards wring them through a cloth, and stir as much pownded Sugar amongst it, as you please, and then put them in a box, and so let it dry upon an oven.

Item, take ripe Quinces which be not stony, pare them, and cut out round peeces so deep, till you come to the stones. You are to grate these Quinces, and to wring out the juyce, to the end that you may have a good deale of it, then pour this juyce upon the peeces that you cut out, and then let it seeth until it be through mellow; then put cleare decocted Sugar unto it as much as you please, and then dry them by a soft fire, then put them in the boxes, and let them dry well.

Another: take 4. ounces of fresh Quince kernels, let them steep a day and a night in Well water, or in the juyce of Quinces, in a warm place, afterwards wring out the slime through a clean cloth, and then put thereto 4. pounds of the juyce of Quinces in a leaden pot, and let it seeth all together by a soft fire; yet it is to be strained thro through a cloth again, and afterwards also take 3. pounds of Sugar, and seeth it until it be thick enough.

Yet another course Marmalade: take of the pith whence the best juyce is wrung out, and put warm water unto it, and seeth it well, then rub thereof through as much you can, and put cleare hony unto it as much as you please, and then put Pepper unto it and seeth it very thick.

If you will know when these Marmalades be decocted enough, then let some fall upon cold Iron, and be cold, if it be enough, then will it easily part from the Iron, and remaineth not hanging on the fingers, but it goeth clean and dry off.

All these sorts and marmalades, or conserves of Quinces are very good for the stomach, and help the digestive power. The same may moreover be tempered in Malmsey, in Claret Wine, and Hypocras, and may also be used instead of a sauce with meat.

It is also here to be noted, that all Marmalades, which are prepared with Wine, Spices, and such like, are good onely for old folks, and for cold women, and for all them which be cold by nature. Contrariwise, they that be prepared with water and juyce of Quinces, be meetly hot, because the fruit is cold in the first, and dry in the second degree: wherefore they be meet for all people which be hot by nature, and for them whose gall overfloweth much in the stomach.

Snow-white Marmalade, is also to be made in this manner; Take pared Quinces, cut them in four or five peeces, and cut them out within: afterwards put hony unto them, and let them stew in a pot, until that they be mellow: then take them out, and let them be cold, and stick them about with cut Cinamom and Cloves, put hony unto it again, and then set it so in a cellar that it may remain moyst, and lay some heavy thing upon it, that they swim not.

Item, take Quinces as many as you please, prepare them as before, pour wine unto it, but let them not be stewed too mellow, especially if one will keep them a certain time: let them afterwards dry upon a cloth: if you will stick them about as before, that is wholly in your power; if not, bind in a cloth Cinamom, Cloves, Mace, and lay it in the decoction; afterwards take one part of wine, and two parts of hony, and let it seeth so long until that all the wine be wasted, then afterwards pour hony upon it, but not too hot, to the end that thereby they be not too hard.

Before times, these were wont to be made in this manner following; take a rough cloth, and rub off therewith the uppermost parings of the Quinces, or pare them very thin, and then cut them in four peeces, and take out the coare within, afterward pour upon them two parts of wine, and one part of hony which is clarifyed, then seeth them so long until the skin do wrinkle, then be they enough; put them out, and let them be cold, lay in a pot, and strew some spice upon each row; afterwards pour the decoction sodden short luke warm upon it. Item, take Quinces, take out the coares; and lay them in a pot close one to another, and let them stand stewing in an oven, until that they be mellow, so that they may easily be pricked through with bodkins; afterwards let them be cold, and then put them again into another pot, and pour clarifyed hony upon it, lay some heavy thing upon it, that they swim not about, then will they remain good a whole yeare, and have the same vertue of the common Marmalade. You have also before in the description of Peares, how that they shall be made close in a pot, and should then be laid in a fat of Wine, you may also put the same in practise with the Quinces.

Lay the Quinces all the winter in small chopt straw, and cover them well, but lay none other fruit with it, and keep them from the ayre. Other do take Locks, some bran, or hay, but the very surest is, if one will keep them the whole yeare, that they be covered in their leaves, and afterwards cover them with Loame, let them dry, and set them somewhere in a cold dry place. There may also be made many kinds of things of Quinces, viz. the Syrup of Mivа, and oyl, and also the seeds thereof be used and the peeles.

Conserve of Roses.

COnserve of Roses which is ready at all Apothecaries and common in all houses is thus prepared; Take red Rose buds, which be pluckt in dry weather, as many as you please, clip them off under the white with a pare of sheares, then lay them on a clean cloth, and one double cloth over them, that they may be well covered; let them lye so till upon table two or three dayes, that they may weather a little, and afterwards stamp them in a mortar to grout; and to one part of the pownded Roses, take two parts of Sugar, and stamp them well together: afterwards put this conserve in a glasse, and stop it close the space of three moneths in the Sun, yet stir them about once every day, with a woodden spatine; if so be that you think that they will be too hard, then set them afterwards in a cellar, that they relent somewhat.

It is here also to be noted, that if so be you cannot get the right red Roses, then take the Carnation coloured, yea also the wild Roses, of the which I have found my self, that the conserve it self is of very good taste, and moreover very forcible in working. This conserve of Roses hath an especial vertue to strengthen a weak stomach, and to allay all cholerick humours; it strengtheneth the brains, it quickeneth and strengtheneth the heart, it cooleth the heat, and all inflammation of the inward parts. This Conserve of Roses may well be tempered with Rosewater or Well water, and be wrung thorough a cloth, and so in all hot agues to comfort the sick persons with it: it moisteneth also the dry tongue, the throat, the breast, and the lights, and especially that which is new made; that which is oldish hath another nature of binding in all scourings and fluxes, it swageth the pain and sharpnesse of the same.

The purging Conserve of Roses is made thus: Take 12. ounces of Sugar of Roses, and temper amongst it at the least half an ounce of small pownded *Diagridion*. This conserve of Roses is also very good in sundry sicknesses, and especially in lingering diseases. There is half an ounce thereof given, or at the most three quarters of an ounce at once, when as the *Diagridion* hath been tempered amongst it at the least two moneths before.

The white Conserve of Roses is made like to the red. Some do make all Conserves of Roses with Hony instead of Sugar, but this Conserve is hotter, and is seldom used.

There is also Conserves made of Damask Roses, after the foresaid manner, which is very pleasant, and looseth mildly.

Conserve of Rosemary. §. 34.

THis Conserve is very pleasant, not only for Physick, but the flowers and the herb is also used in the Kitchin, with wine and otherwise. But as much as concerneth the Conserve, the Apothecaries do call it *Conserva Anthos*, and is made thus: Take flowers of Rosemary which are to be gathered in the spring, and in harvest, pownd them to pap, and to one part of these flowers, take three parts of Sugar, and pownd it very well together, then set it in the Sun, stirring it oftentimes about.

This Conserve is warm by nature, it attenuateth also all tough, grosse, and flegmatick matter of the inward parts, it dryeth and strengtheneth the brains, it refresheth the heart, and maketh it merry; it strengtheneth the mortified natural heat, it expelleth the yellow Jaundise, and withstandeth the Dropsie, it warmeth and cleanseth the breast, it maketh a good breath, it dryeth out phlegme, and strengtheneth digestion, it withstandeth all venome that might hurt the heart, it taketh away the Cholick or griping of the belly, it causeth one to sweat well; whereby it expelleth all bad humours out of the body, it cleanseth the blood, hunteth away all heavinesse and pensiveneſse, and strengtheneth all weakenesse.

To preserve the roots of all red Beets. §. 35.

YOu are to stew these roots with a little water, when they be mellow, then put thereto little peeces of Horseradish, and put them in a pot, and strew it with Caraway: afterwards pour half wine and half Vinegar upon it, until that they be well covered, and then lay some heavy thing upon them, that they may not swim.

In the same manner you may also prepare all the roots that serve for Sallads: the roots which are too great are to be cut overthwart. These and such like roots are not to be used for Physick, but for meat.

Conserve of Sage. §. 36.

COnserve of Sage is also made of the flowers like unto all other, it doth strengthen the stomach, it openeth all obstructions, it consumeth all bad humours of the stomach, it strengtheneth all members, and is very good for all diseases of the head, which proceed of cold, it is good against all Palsies and lamenesse, it is mete for all diseases of the sinewes

How Sloes are to be preserved. §. 27.

TAke very ripe Sloes with their stalks, and put thereto two parts of Honey, and one part of wine, and let them seeth so long until the wine be thoroughly sodden away; afterwards lay the Sloes in a pot, with the stalks on high, and pour the same Honey upon it, and cover it with a trencher, and lay some heavy thing on them, to the end that they may be covered with the liquor, and then set them in a Cellar. Another way to preserve Sloes: Take unripe Medlars, ripe Sloes, ripe and pared Quinces, when the coares be cut out, of each as much as you please: if you will you may stick them about with spice: likewise also the Medlars, which you shall seeth with the Quinces in Hony, like as is first of all said of Sloes, and lay some heavy thing on the top of it.

Conserves of Cowslips. §. 38.

THere be two kinds of these flowers, whereof the one is wild, and without smell, which is meet for nothing: but take of the yellow that smells well, and cut thereof behind the long pipe, and with Sugar make a Conserve thereof.

This conserve is of a warm and dry nature, it is very good for the head, it strengtheneth and warmeth the brains, it is also good for the Palsey, for which cause it is also called *Herba Paralysis.* This conserve is also of all them (which be inclined to the Palsey) much used, and it strengtheneth also the heart: but it is perchance not much used, for that it is a kind of Betony or of Gilloflowers, which be more acceptable.

Conserve of Water Lillies. §. 39.

LIkewise there be two sorts of these flowers, to wit, yellow and white; take thereof the white, and the white leaves only of the flowers, make a conserve thereof, like unto all other conserves. This conserve strengtheneth much, and cooleth, in very hot Agues, and also in pestilential agues. It is also very good for them that consume away, and that have the Pleurisie. It taketh away all dry coughes, for that it cooleth and moysteneth the breast, the throat, and the dry tongue: it quencheth thirst, it cooleth through hot cold the Liver, the milt, and all inward parts, and it provoketh sleep. All bald people, and they that be cold of nature may not use the same, for that if the same be used too much, then taketh it away the fleshly desire, and it obstructeth also the spermatical flux if it be heat.

Conserve of Violets. §. 40.

TAke blew odoriferous Violet flowers, pluck the flowers from their husks, and pownd them to pap, unto a pound of flowers put two pound of Sugar, and then stamp them well together, and so set them in the Sun. This conserve is cold in the first, and moyst in the second degree. It cooleth and moystneth with mildnesse, and it asswageth also the pain of the guts, but it is not so good for the stomach. It allayeth also the cholerick heat which cometh through moysture. It looseth and also taketh away thirst. It may well be given to young children (in all heat) very freely, for that it is good against their pangs; it keepeth the belly open, it strengtheneth the braines and the heart, and it taketh away all stenches. The yellow Violets are also preserved otherwhiles.

Conserve of the flowers of Cicorie. §. 41.

TAke the leaves of Cicorie flowers, and make a conserve thereof like as is taught of all other. This conserve is especial good for the Liver, it openeth the obstructions of the same, it cleanseth all inward parts, and also the intrailes of all cholerick humours, it expelleth them out through stool, and withstandeth thereby all putrifying agues, therefore this conserve is also to be used in the beginning of the Dropsie, it reviveth the weak and overheated heart; and also the stomach. In fine, it is very good in all hot sicknesses. The roots of Cicorie are also preserved, which are digged up before that they begin to sprout out. Being digged up make them cleane, and cut them the long way, and then take the innermost heart of it.

Afterwards cut it in peeces the length of a finger, and then let them boyl well in fresh water, that the bitternesse may come out, and the roots may be mellow. When as they be meetly dry, then pour thick boyled Sugar upon it, and if the roots be still somewhat hard, then let them boyl in the Sugar until they be mellow, and then let them be cold. But if that the Syrup be thin through the moisture of the roots, then seethe the same thick again, and that so often until it remain stiffe. These roots be of a cold and dry nature, and they have the same vertues with the conserve.

How red Cherries *are preserved.* §. 42.

REd Cherries be preserved like as we have taught before of the black. They have also one kind of operation, and are thus preserved: Take picked red Cherries which be not bruised, put them in a small Oaken vessel, afterwards take clarified Hony, and let it seeth with a little wine, until all the moisture be consumed, and pour then this Hony warm upon it, otherwise would they break through heat. This being now done, then stop the vessel right, and lay it in a Cellar, and roll it daily from one place to another, and do this the space of 14. dayes, or three weeks.

There is also made of these Cherries a Conserve, as hereafter followeth.

Take Cherries as many as you please, stamp them a little, and then pour yet more other Cherries unto it, and boyl it without any other moisture: all that which will remain thick, is to be rubbed through a sieve, to the end that there do not remain any other thing in the sieve, then skins and stones; then seeth it in an earthen pot. You may also put Sugar unto it as much as you please, and then seeth it unto a conserve. For this, is no kind of Spice meet, if so be that one desire not to put a little Cinamom unto it.

This conserve is very good against all dryth of the mouth, throat, and tongue, if sick persons be washed with it. It quencheth thirst in all hot Agues, and otherwise. It is also good for all *Choler* of the stomach, it maketh appetite to meat, and it cooleth the hot reins, the kernels do expel gravel. In Summer time is wine to be mingled with this conserve, and to be used for sauce with rost meat.

If one desire to keep Cherries long fresh, then are picked Cherries to be taken for it, and to dip the same in molten wax, viz. when it beginneth to be cold, and so let them be well closed in Wax, and afterwards to sement the same with Lome until it be throughly closed, then are they to be hanged up in a cool place, and they will remain fresh a very long time.

How ripe and unripe Grapes *are to be preserved.* §. 43.

THe unripe Grapes shall be confected like to all Barberries, but you must cut every Berry from the Clister, to the end that they may keep their stalks, and put therewith like as is said of the black Cherries: then let them not seeth long, that they do not break and get a bad taste. They have the same power as the Barberries, the ripe Grapes are to be confected, like as we have written of Pears.

Of that which commonly keepeth all fruits fresh. §. 44.

ALl that is laid in Hony, whether it be Flesh, Fruit, and Plants, or any other thing, doth remain a long time before it spoyl, therefore have dead carkasses before time been poured full of Hony. If you have then any Fruit, Fowles, Venison, or any other such like things that you will keep good the space of a year, or any Plants, or Flowers, and such like throughout the Winter, then look into M. *Triarme* water, whereof all ancient Physitians have had a good opinion. The same also do all vital and golden waters, which follow immediately hereafter.

The

The sixt Chapter.

Of the Golden and vital waters, and Elixirs of life.

THese kinds of potions and artificial waters, are ordained most to this end, for that they should strengthen the most principal parts of the body, as the head and the heart, to keep them from debility and swooning, especially if the same proceed of cold. Thus we will describe some of them, whereof there be 2. which the ancient Physitians call golden waters for their special vertues. Take fine Sage 7. ounces, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, and Greins, of each half an ounce, Cinamom peeled Bayberries, and Bevercod, of each one ounce, Spikenard one drachme, peeles of Citrons one quarter of an ounce, temper them all together grosly beaten, then pour 2. quarts of wine upon it, and so let all together stand the space of 14. dayes stopped close, stirring it well about every day. Afterward distil it in water in an helm luted well and tight. This water doth keep all manner of meates by their natural tast and vertue, it expelleth all bad humours of the body, it maketh all wine clean and of a good tast, if one temper a little amongst it, anoynted outwardly upon one, or used. It is very good for all inward parts, as the Stomach, the Spleen, the Liver, and the Lights. It is also good for all bruises and to anoynt the bruises with it. In like manner it is good for all falles, for all byles, and all paine of the head. It is good (namely at the first) against all Dropsies, against the Palsey, and also against all venom. If one have any thing in the stomach that he cannot digest, then will it be consumed thereby, it maketh a good memory, and withstandeth the Leprosie, it healeth all krabbednesse, and also all ulcers, if one drinke it, or lay it upon them.

Another: take Lavander flowers, Hyssope and Sage, of each 4. ounces, cut them very small, Nutmegs, Ginger, Cinamom, and Cloves, of each half an ounce, Greins 2. drach. beat all small, afterward pour upon it three quarts of the best wine, and set it the space of 14. dayes in the Sun stopped very close. Thus may you use the first. Item, take good Malmsey 2. quarts, and steep these things ensuing in it, being stopt very close, and then set it in dunghil which lyeth in the East the space of thirty dayes, afterwards distil it, as is before said. Take fine Sage with the flowers, of each half an ounce, Burrage flowers one ounce, the Orange, Rue three drach. Rosemary 3. ounces and a half, Rosemary flowers half an ounce, the tops of Marjoram gentle four ounces, the flowers of Bugloss 3. quarters of an ounce, red Roses two ounces and one quarter, Hyssope half an ounce, Cardus Benedictus half an ounce, Irees three drachmes, Camphire three quarters of an ounce, prepared Pearles half a drachme, oyl of Spike and liquid Storax, of each half a drachme, pownded Cinamom four ounces, Galangal three drachmes, long Pepper, and Greins, of each half an ounce, Cubebes, and Cardamom, of each one ounce and a quarter, Zedoary three drachmes, Ginger one ounce, beat this altogether grosse. Here is to be noted, that there will be too little wine, and that for by there may three or four quarts of wine be taken for it. Now followeth here a water, called the elixir of life, and it thus made:

Take Cinamom and Cloves, of each one ounce and a half, Nutmegs one ounce, red Roses ten handfuls, white Roses as many, Hyssope two handfuls, Lavander flowers seven handfuls, pour unto it 2 quart of Malmsey, and so let it stand the space of nine dayes, and distil it afterwards, as is said before. Now for to distil a common vital water, thus to be done. Take Cinamom one ounce and a half, Ginger one ounce, Cloves, Nutmegs and Greins, of each half an ounce, Lignum Aloes, Mastick, Mace, and long Pepper of each 2. drachmes, Sage sixteene ounces, Cardamom, Cubebes, and Galangal, of each two drach. and a half, Roses one quarter of an ounce, Balm three drachmes, Citron peels three quarters of an ounce, Rue, Bayberrie, and Stechas, of each half an ounce, Rosemary, Marjoram, Lavander, and Betony, of each three quarters of an ounce, Spica, and Bevercod, of each one drachme, steep it in three quarts of Malmsey, and so let stand the space of ten dayes, then distil it as is taught of the other. Some have also an especial water, which it called Aqua spiritualis, for that it strengtheneth much the vitall spirits. Take the herb Lavander with the flowers, and Liscon fancie, of each two ounces, Rosemary flowers, and Betony of each three drachmes

Sage, and Marjoram gentle, of each one ounce, Balm half an ounce, Hyssope, Mints, the greater Pimpernel, Tormentil, *Raponsica*, *Angelica*, and *Bistorta*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Piony roots, and of Valerian, of each one drach. Avence, and Juniper berries, of each half an ounce, Bayberries, and Bevercod, of each one drach, cut the roots, and pownd them grosly. The herbs are you to take dry, and to cut them small, and then put them in a glasse, which is narrow above, afterwards pour 3. pints of the spirit of wine upon it, and stop it tight, then set it the space of [illegible] dayes in the Sun, or in another warm place, and distil it afterwards, as is said in the beginning. In all that which is distilled out are you to lay in steep, Ginger and Galangal, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloves half an ounce, Cucubes 1. quarter of an ounce, Cardamom and Nutmegs, of each half a drach. Greins 1. scruple, Citron peels one quarter of an ounce, Pomgranate peels half a drachme, *Lignum Aloes*, and white Mustard seed of each one scruple, Saffron half a drachme, Indie Spica one scruple, Annis half an ounce Fennel one quarter of an ounce, Treacle one ounce, Turpentine 3. drach. prepared red Corral 1. drach. *Manna Christi* with Pearles half an ounce, conserves of Roses one ounce, clarifyed Hony four ounces, then pownd it all grosse that is to be pownded, and so let it stand the space of four dayes in a warm place, afterwards you shall distill it and then temper amongst it *Muscus* and *Ambra*, of each one scruple, *Spermatici* one drachme, good Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, Camphire ten greins, Sugercandy one ounce, then wring it out oftentimes and keep it stopt close.

Another. Take dry red Rose leaves half an ounce, flowers of Sage, of Rosemary, of Burrage and Bugloss, of each one quarter of an ounce, Liricofansy one ounce, and a half, Balm, Citron peels, Betony, and red Gilloflowers, of each one ounce, Nutmegs and Mace of each one drach. Cardamom and Cucubes, of each half a drach. white and yellow Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, pownd all these things very small, then take a pint of good spirit of wine, and put therein 2. ounces of Cucubes, the stones taken out, and then cast them to the foresaid small beaten herbs, and let them all stand to steep in a warm place, untill that the wine hath drawn the vertue of these herbs unto it, the which will be done in the space of two moneths. You may also set it in the Sun all the whole Sommer, strain it at last through a fine cloth. You may also put unto this Musk precious stones, Amber, Pearles, Unicornes horn, and such like things, for to strengthen the same therewith. These foresaid vital waters be special good against all swooning, against all debility of the braines and of the heart, they strengthen also the sinewes, and the memory, they warm the chilled and bad digesting stomach, wherein is much slime, if they be taken fasting. If one perceive any losse of his memory, then is he to anoynt therewith the forehead, the hinder part of the head, and the temples of the same. They be also good against all lamenesse of the Palsey; they be good also against trembling and shaking, against swimming in the head, and such like diseases. But note, that here will be too little burnt wine, but one may take more. In like manner, you have also in the 1. part the 11. chapter and 5. §. a very good water of May Lillies. This following is also an elixir of life, and is thus prepared; take Rose water 4. ounces, water of Borrage and of Bugloss, of each 3. ounces: *Manna Christi* one ounce and a half prepared Pearles one drach. and a half, temper them all together, and so give it him that hath great heat of the head and of the Liver, and where as is great fatnesse of the heart. This vital water ensuing is very common at *Augsta* in Germany.

Take culled Cinamom 3. quarters of an ounce, Ginger half an ounce, Cloves, Nutmegs, and Greines, of each one quarter of an ounce, Mace, Lignum Aloes, and long Peppe, of each one drach. Cardamom, Mastick, Cucubes, Galangal, and Calamus, of each half a drach. Balm flowers 6. ounces, Citron peels three drachmes, peeled Bayberries and Sochas, of each one quarter of an ounce, Rue, Rosemary, Marjoram, Lavander, Balm, and Betony of each half a handful, Indy Spica, and Bevercod, of each half a drach. steep them altogether in two quarts of Muscadel, or in any other strong wine, and let it stand so 10. or 12. hours space; afterwards distil it in seething water, then are you to hang Musk and Ambre of each 15. greins, to wit, in a fine linnen cloth, and then keep it close stopt.

This following is a very odoriferous water to be used for what one will; take the flowers of Spike, and Lavander flowers, of each one handful, Cloves, Cinamom, Nutmegs, Mace, of each one drachme and a half, Musk the quantity of a pease, then pour unto it three pints of Rosewater, and so let it in the Sun.

There is yet another odoriferous water in the ſixth Part, in the 15. Chap. and 5. §. which may alſo be uſed for divers purpoſes.

Cinamom water is alſo exhibited to ſick folks for a ſtrengthening, and they are anointed therewith, and is to be further uſed for many Confections, March panes, and other pleaſanties, the which is thus to be made: Take four ounces of good Cinamom, pownd it very ſmall and put it into an helm, afterwards pour a pint of water upon it and lute it cloſe, then diſtil it in ſeething water, and that which cometh out firſt is whitiſh, and ſtrongeſt, and is only to be kept, and the reſt to be received in another glaſſe.

The ſeventh Chapter.

Of Hand water.

TAke Lavander or Spikenard whereout the water is diſtilled, and pour as much rain water unto it until the helm be more then half full: afterwards diſtil it in ſeething water and ſet it in the Sun, it ſmelleth ſtrong enough, and it remaineth good certain moneths.

For to make May Cheeſe. §. 1.

TAke a new earthen pot, waſh it well with hot water and rub it with Salt within, afterwards make a hole in the bottom and put in a ſmall tap; then take freſh milked milk and rennet it like as a Cheeſe is wont to be rennetted, and ſo let it ſtand from Morning to Evening: then pluck out the tap that the whay may run out; afterwards put every day a ſaucer full of new milk with it, according to that there is much or little in the pot: ſtirre it well about, and then let every evening the whay run it: beſides all this, you are to ſalt the milk a little in rennetting of it.

How to make Wafers of Sugar. §. 2.

WHat the Wafers be (which are wont to be ſet upon the table a nights) is well known to all men; thus for to confect them and to make them only of Sugar, is to be done: Take fair white Sugar pownded very ſmall, and ſifted thorow a fine ſieve, make paſte thereof with Dragagant diſſolved in Roſewater: the which is to be ſtamped in a mortar, to the end you may make thereof thin flat wafers: this being done, then is the ſame beneath and above to be beſtrewed with well pownded Sugar that it cleave not too, then wind them on a round ſtick and lay them upon a ſieve to dry, to wit, in a warm place, but not in the Sun: if you will, you may alſo put *Maſtich* unto it. In like manner you may take for it pownded Sugar, and Cinamom tempered together, and roull the ſame alſo upon a round ſtaffe with diſſolved Dragagant: the which being bound to the ſpace of 14. dayes may remain good, and they are made like Cinamom pipes.

Hony water, Hydromel. §. 3.

HOney water or our courſe Meade do the Grecians call *Hydromel*, and the Latiniſts *Aquam mulſam*; this water is to be uſed for many things, and eſpecially in Phyſick for two kinds of things: the firſt, if one will looſe the belly or procure vomit, then temper the ſame with two parts of old rain water, and one part of Hony, and ſo let it ſtand in the Sun. This Hony water is to be tempered with oyl if the cauſe require it, and being luke-warm uſed for vomiting: the other Hony water is to be ſodden and uſed alſo for many kinds of things, as we in this book have in many places declared.

The eight Chapter.

For to make Juleps.

Julleps are made after divers manners, and most of all of distilled waters, but the commonest and most known are to be boyled of Rosewater, and Violet water with Sugar, as both these in the third Part, the 12. Chapter, and 10. §. be described: both these Julops be very much used in hot and dry causes.

The ninth Chapter.

For to take Spots out of all Clothes.

FOr to take spots out of all clothes, take two parts of Beechen ashes, and one part of Lime, and make Lee thereof with rain water, filter it oftentimes, and therewith wash the Spots, Item, take Argal one handful, three Oxe galls, Venice sope two ounces, Allum half an ounce, and a pint and a half of water: seeth it all together untill that the fourth part be wasted, and then wash the spots therewith. But above all should distilled water of Toadstooles be very good to take all spots out of clothes, they may try that will. For to take the spots out of Chamlet and Silks, rub it out with Turpentine oyl.

Spice cakes which be excellent good. §. 1.

OF fine Hony take a quart, clarifie it well, and half a pint of Malmsey, Cloves two ounces and a half, Ginger two ounces, Nutmegs one ounce, fine meal or flower 5. pound; let the Hony and Malmsey seeth together, then knead the Meal in it and make Cakes of it as you desire to have them, then bake them in an oven.

The tenth Chapter.

Hereafter follow Confections.

HEre shall follow now all kind of purging Confections which are commended to be used in this book, to the end that not only the bare unknown name, but also their vertues and operations might be declared: therefore we will comprehend them in a short sum, and use the names that are best known at the Apothecaries; and besides that we will interpret and english their names the best we can.

Confectio Anacardina. §. 1.

FIrst of all we will speak of the *Anacardina*. This confection doth sharpen the understanding and the memory, and is also good against all pain of the stomach which commeth through cold, it cleanseth the blood, and maketh good colour: it is also called a confection of the Sage men.

Antidotum Hamagogum. §. 2.

THis Confection hath her name of the blood wherein it doth also reign; the which also the Greek name doth give to understand.

Electuarium de Baccis Lauri. §. 3.

THis is a confection of Bayberries: this confection is for the griping and pain of the belly which is caused of wind, the very best medicine that may be devised, and moreover against all inward maladies which proceed of cold.

Benedicta

Benedicta laxativa. §. 4.

THis confection is called a blessed laxative, it is very much used and found ready at all Apothecaries, it is made of many simples, wherefore we omit her description: it is very good to purge all tough slimy matter, and especially that which lyeth in the joynts, as in them which have the joynt disease or the gout, it cleanseth much, and purgeth also slimy matter of the Kidneys, and of the bladder, &c.

Bezoartica. §. 5.

SUch like confections there are very many prepared in time of the Plague for to provoke sweat, of which we have described one in the 6. Part, the 16. Chapter, §. 3.

Electuarium de Calamintha. §. 6.

A Confection of the field Mints is described after three wayes by the Physitians, and when we make it, which hapneth seldom, it is in form of Tabulates: but that which *Galenus* describeth is made as followeth: Take the seeds of field Mints, of Penniroyal, of Parsly, and Silver mountain, of each one ℥. the seeds of Smallage, and of Thyme, of each one quarter of an ounce; the seed of Lovage one ounce, Pepper three ounces: make thereof Species. You are to take Sugar according as you will make a confection or tabulates, and that in such quantity as thereto belongeth. This confection is very good for all them that have a wambling of their meat, for them that have a bad breath, and a bad stomach, and be much plagued with the wind of the stomach.

Confection of Cassie after three wayes. §. 7.

HOw highly that the Cassie is commended in Physick, and especially in hot sicknesses is discovered in many places of this Book, and especially in the Introduction, where it is also taught how the same is to be driven through a sieve. Secondly, there is a confection made thereof, to wit, *Diacassia cum Manna*, which is to be used against the binding of the belly. The third is here before in the third Chapter described, in the first §. where we did discourse of Clisters, and in other places more.

Electuarium de Castorea. §. 8.

THis is the confection of Bevercod which one findeth very seldom, unlesse it were prepared of purpose for any body.

Cathartiqum Imperiale. §. 9.

THis is as much to say, as an imperial purgation, for that especially it is a purger of the head, maketh sweet breath, and expelleth black melancholy, and gall out of the stomach: this confection is not common at all Apothecaries.

Catholicon. §. 10.

THis Greek name is as much to say, as universal, and the ancient Physitians have given that name unto this confection, for that it is meet for all diseases: therefore it is also kept prepared at all Apothecaries. And because that the same can be made by no householder, therefore we will not set down her description. It is not onely good for all strong diseases, but also for all the extremest sicknesses, it allayeth and altereth the same, it strengtheneth all them that have any infirmity of the Liver, or in the Spleen; it purgeth melancholy, cholerick, and phlegmatick humours, and is a safe medicine, as it is also used in many places of this Book.

Electuarium

Electuarium de Cinere. §. 11.

THis Confection of Ashes is hardly to be found ready at any Apothecaries, but by reason of her profitablenesse, to shew that the ancient Physicians have not pretermitted to make it known, therefore it is described in the third Part, and hath an especial vertue in expelling of the stone, and of the gravel.

Electuaria varia de Cidoniis. §. 12.

THere be sundry Conserves of Quinces, of Marmalade, like as you find them before in the 4. Chapter, and 32. §.

Electuarium de Corticibus Aurantiarum. §. 13.

THe preserved peeles of Oranges, doth one find ready at all Apothecaries, and are good for all pains of the stomach.

Electuarium Ducis. §. 14.

THis Confection was prepared for a Duke, and is compounded of many things together; wherefore we will not describe the same here, for it is found commonly at all well furnished Apothecaries; it is also very good for all windy and bad digesting stomachs, and against all cold of the inward parts: it is also good against all griping of the belly, and especially for the stone: for which cause it is principally ordained in this our Book of Physick.

Electuarium de Epythymo. §. 15.

THis confection is very seldom used, but the flowers and the Thymus is very common in Physick. This confection should be very necessary, and helping women unto fruitfulnesse, like as is also prescribed in this Book for the same.

Electuarium de Gallia. §. 16.

THis for the profitableneſse and commodity that it hath in the pain of the guts, and in *Phlegma*, and for that it is easie to be made, is described in the third Part, the 15. chap and 6. §, for it is not known at the Apothecaries.

Confectio Hamech. §. 17.

THis confection is of two sorts, and is compounded of many things, and is very common at all Apothecaries: wherewith the humours of the Gall, especially the salt humours which cause scabbinesse, the Leprosie, the Canker, and all other diseases which excoriate and inflame the skin by their sharpnesse are holpen. The lesser confection *Hamech*, purgeth Melancholy, and is also good against all frenzie, giddinesse, forgetfulnesse and all infections of the skin.

Hiera Picra simplex. §. 18.

THis confection is at all Apothecaries every where prepared, and is not onely very well known to the Physitians, but also to the common people: Take Cinamom, Balsamwood, Asarabacca, Spica Indica, Saffron and Mastick, of each one drachme and a half, Aloe 25. drach. clarified and scummed Hony thirteen ounces; make a confection thereof. But if you will have it to strengthen rather then to purge, then take washed Aloes, instead of other. This confection is very good against all rotting and stinking humours, which do keep themselves in the mouth of the stomach, and in the bowels. In like manner it is also good for all them that have lost their natural colour, and against all inward diseases of the sight; it looseth very mildly, and her operation penetrateth no further, but into the Liver, it strengtheneth the stomach, nevertheless that it is partly hurtful for them that have a hot liver, but because of her great vertue, it is much used.

Hieralogodion

Hieralogodion. §. 19.

THis confection is also found at the Apothecaries, the which is made out of many sundry things, wherefore we will not describe the same here: it is as good against all old madnesse, against all old melancholy, against all falling sickneſſe, and all other raging of madneſſe, against the giddineſſe, and all pain of the head. Item, it is very good against all Palseys, against all shaking, and against all heart beating. It is also good in the Pleurisie, in all sicknesses of the Liver and of the Spleen, it provoketh womens terms; and is also good against all Gouts, against all poyson, Leprosie, and scurfe. Of this confection may one take a drachme at once with Wine, if there be tempered a little salt with it.

Hiera Pachis Ruffini. §. 20.

THe first *Hiera* is now of late come again in use amongst the Physicians, it is marvellous good for many kinds of things. not unlike to the aforementioned. In this our Book of Physick is otherwhiles mention made of it.

Electuarium Indum. §. 21.

OF this confection therebe two sorts, a greater, and a lesser; yet both do expel bad humours, especially such as breed wind in the stomach, and other nutritive parts; they amend also the bad accidents which arise thereby, as swelling up of the stomach, the griping of the belly, pain of the kidneyes, and such like.

Electuarium Lenitivum. §. 22.

THis is a laxative confection, which expelleth gently, without any pain, the phlegmatick, cholerick, and melancholick humors. It is also good against all Agues, and it is found ready at the Apothecaries, howbeit that it is very seldom used in this our book of Physick.

Electuarium de Lepore combusto. §. 23.

THere is also a confection prepared of the burnt Hares head, which is marvellous good against gravel, and is described in the third Part, the 12. Chap. and 4. §.

Latificans Almansoris. §. 24.

THis pleasant confection is now-adayes made rather in Losinges, then in form of a confection: but how the Species be made, that you do find described in the first part, the twelfth Chapter, and eight §.

Electuarium de Manna. §. 25.

THis Electuarie of Manna, is a very noble Confection, wherein come many easie laxative things; it cleanseth the blood, withstandeth Cholera, and Melancholia; it is very good for a hot Liver, and cleanseth also the body.

Electuarium ad Melancholiam. §. 26.

THis Confection is not made, if it were not that it is especially ordained, and it is also but once used in this Book.

Mechleta. §. 27.

THis Confection Mechleta is prepared at al furnished Apothecaries, it is especial good against all superfluous bleeding of the Piles, and against the griping of the belly, and it is exceeding good in all lasks, as in Lyenteria and Dysenteria. It is also used in Diar-

Mithridatum

Mithridatum. §. 28.

THis high renowned and very well known confection, hath next to Treacle, the highest commendation and price above all other confections and compounded medicines, the which of very many and divers simples is composed together: wherefore we will pretermit her description here. It is also older then the Treacle, and was found out by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus* three hundred years before Christs birth, and so named after him. This foresaid Confection did the King use against all venom, and with such commodity, that when he was in greatest extremity and had taken poyson, he could not die of it. Wherefore and because that the same is oftentimes ordained in this book, therefore we will briefly rehearse her vertue and vigour.

First, it hath almost in all things the same power of the Treacle; but that onely the Treacle is somewhat hotter and more forcible against all venom of Snakes; otherwise it is good against all pain of the head which proceedeth out of cold, and chiefly against all melancholick diseases, and also for them that live in great heavinesse without cause. It is also good against all heavy fansies and madnesse: and further it is also good against the Falling sickenesse, against the giddinesse, and all old pain of the head. Likewise it is a very good medicine against all running and diseased eyes, it sharpeneth the sight, and it is good against all sifling of the ears, and against all pain and falling of the gums if the same be laid upon it. Besides that, it is much commended for the Squinancy, it cleanseth and healeth all ulcers of the throat. It is a special medicine for all them that be taken with the Palsey, and them that have a disease in the lights: as it is also for all them that cough much, spet blood, and complain of pursiveneſſe. It is also especial good for all cold and moyst stomachs, it maketh appetite, it strengtheneth the digestive vertue, and maketh a good colour. It asswageth all gripings, all scourings, and the bloody flix, it openeth the obstruction of the liver and the milt: and it is a medicine for all inward parts: it driveth also the cramp away, and all convulsions of the sinews, it expelleth the gravel, and the stone of the bladder, it swageth all pain and ulcers of the same, it expelleth water, and moveth Womens terms: it is very necessary for all maladies of the Matrix, it is also especially commodious for all them that be plagued with the gout in the hands and feet; but especially it is given against all poyson: this doth it not onely taken inwardly, but also laid upon the outside. In like manner doth it apparantly work in the tertian and quartain Ague if that the same be taken an hour before or ere the Ague commeth, with Wine. The common weight that one taketh thereof is a drachme: the which nevertheleſſe according to the ability of the person and of the sickneſſe, may be augmented or diminished, or also omitted all together.

Electuarium Oculiſæ. §. 29.

THis is is a Confection for the eyes, whereof you shall find two sorts in the first Part, the seventh Chapter, and 20. §.

Electuarium de Olibano. §. 30.

THis present Confection of Frankincense is seldom used and prepared, but it is good against all pain and rheumes of the head, and also of the eyes: it swageth all bad throats which proceed of defluxions, it is also available against the Cough and spitting of blood, it stayeth all wambling and vomiting. Further, it is also good for all diseases of the Lights, and for the Pleurisie, whereas the matter is coughed up; it stayeth the running of the Reins, and womens terms: it is also used against the scouring.

Electuarium de Ove. §. 31.

HOw that this precious Confection of the golden Egge is to be made, is after two waves described in the sixt Part, the 16 Chapter and §. 3. and also taught thereby how that all pain and sick folks ought to use the same.

Electuarium

Electuarium Diaphœnicon. §. 32.

THis Confection of Dates is also to be made in Tabulates. It is meetly strong to purge therewith in the Quotidian and Tertian Agues. It purgeth *Phlegm* and *Cholera*. It hath a marvellous efficacie against all pain of the stomach, and other like pains of the guts, which are caused through thy rough slimy humour, therefore it is also oftentimes prescribed in this book.

Philonium. §. 33.

THis Confection is also called according to them which have found it out, to wit, after *Philon*. It is made after sundry manners, whereof there be twain, which be accompted the chief, *Romanum* and *Persicum*. The first is good against the Cough, and against all diseases of the Lights, viz. heavy breath, spitting blood, distemperance of the stomach, pain of the Liver, of the Spleen, and against all infirmities of the privities, and of the bladder.

The other, to wit, *Persicon*, is very good to staunch blood, like as womens termes, or when the Pyles run too sore: also in all scourings and bloudy flux, and whereas blood is avoided then is it an especial medicine. It is also exceeding good for women which have first conceived for to preserve and keep the fruit.

Electuarium Diaprunis. §. 34.

HEre before in the fourth Chapter, in the description of the preserved Prunes, is expressed of her power, and how it is made.

Electuarium de Psyllio. §. 35.

THis is also one of the commonest Confections, which one findeth ready at all Apothecaries; it expelleth the cholerick matter, and is very good for all hot Agues, which otherwise are hardly to be expelled. Moreover, it is good against the giddinesse and all pain of the head, which is caused by the vapours of *Choleric*, and mixed with other humours. Item, for the falling sickneſſe, and for enflaming of the Liver, &c.

Electuarium de Raphano Sylvestri. §. 36.

HOw this is to be prepared, and of what power it is, that is to be seen in the third Part, the 17. Chapter, and fourth Section.

Electuarium Regium. §. 37.

ALbeit that it is called a Kingly Confection, and is very good, yet it is nevertheleſſe no where in this book used, but only in the spetting of blood.

Electuarium de succo Rosarum. §. 38.

THis present Confection named, of the juyce of Roses, is one of the chiefest purging Confections, and because that it is very easie to be made, therefore we will describe it here. Take the juyce of red Roses and white Sugar, of each eight ounces, *Diaprunis* three quarters of an ounce, red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each three drachmes, Ivory one drachme and a half, Camphire half a scruple: the juyce and Sugar is to be sodden unto a meet thicknesse, and when it is almost cold then temper the rest amongst it, being all beaten very small. This may also well be made after the form of lozinges. This Confection purgeth *Cholera* without any anguish, and it is also good for all pain of the members, which be caused through hot cholerick humours, also for the tertian Ague, and for other more such like hot accidents.

Diasatyrion. §. 39.

THis is a Confection of Ragwort roots; how the same is prepared and used for the increase of humane nature, you may read in the third Part, the sixth Chapter, and 45.

Electuarium de Scoria Ferri. §. 40.

THe Confection of the refuse of Iron doth *Rasis* describe. It is seldom made or used. It stoppeth the Flux and all blood.

Electuarium de Sebesten. §. 41.

THis is also a very usual confection, how that the same is to be prepared, and what it hath for an operation or power, you may read that in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 20. §.

Diacenna. §. 42.

THis Confection of Sene, is also very common at the Apothecaries. It is good used in all melancholick, frantick, pensive, and such like sicknesses, which proceed of melancholick blood; and it cureth them that complain of the Spleen.

Theriaca magna. §. 43.

THe occasion wherefore that this high commended Confection is not here described, is, for that it is made of so many things. Also because there is a contention as yet amongst the learned, then for that certain things (which must be used in it) be not to be gotten, and especially in this Country, as the flesh of the Snake *Tyrus*, whereof this Treacle hath the name: but it is nevertheless needful and well worthy that we here describe her operation and vigour.

This Treacle and the Mithridate be amongst all other confections the most renowned and worthiest. The first was by *Andromacho*, *Neronis* Physitian found out first, but afterwards by *Galen* brought into a better order, and in such manner amended, that it may very well be kept for so precious a Jewel, which is neither with gold nor silver to be compared: thus for to speak of her vertue.

First, it is good against all poyson, whether it be of beasts or otherwise, for to the same end it is given: and it is laid upon the byting of mad Doggs. In like manner, it hath an especial power against all bad ayr, against the Plague, and all pestilential Agues. It is also good against all old pains of the head, against the falling sickness, the giddiness, and all darkness of the eyes. Item, it is commended for all infirmities of hearing, and for losse of sent. And briefly to speak thereof, it doth also amend all debilities, the infirmities of the mind, and also of the brain. Moreover, it strengtheneth also all weakness and swoonings of the heart, it openeth all obstructions of the Liver, and of the Spleen, and mollifieth or suppleth all their hardness, it openeth the breast, and is good against the wheasing, and also against the short breath. It allayeth the cough, and suppleth all rawness of the throat; it doth provoke the tough humours to be coughed up, it withstandeth spersing of blood, and swelling up of the veins. It expelleth the yellow *Choler*, and the Dropsie, it healeth all inward diseases and ulcers, it asswageth all inward diseases where there is no heat nor ague instant, if the same be taken with Wine, or otherwise the same must be taken with some other distilled water.

Likewise it is also good for all bad stomachs, it easeth the Consumption, it expelleth the Worms, and all windiness of the guts: also it is good against all gripings and pain of the guts, it is also very fit for all diseases of the Reins, it is very commodious and helping to all them which be vexed with the gravel or the stone, for that it expelleth the same, it healeth all ulcers of the bladder, and all conduits of the urine, it expelleth urine and womens terms; in like manner also dead childrē out of their mothers bodies. To all melancholick, which be full of anguish and pensiveness without cause, and half distract of their wits, is this given with great advancement. In fine, it is very good for all lingring sicknesses, as the Leprosie, old Agues, and chiefly Quartain Agues.

Where-

Wherefore it is advised to such as are to travel in the cold, that every morning fasting they should take somewhat thereof, for that it warmeth the inward parts, and defendeth them from all cold. It strengtheneth all the lame members, and bringeth them again to their power, and when the greatest pain of the gout is past, then is it taken with great advantage, so that it preserveth the body from all corruption.

But here is especially to be noted, that this Treacle is not good for young people especially in Sommer time, or when it is hot weather, if so be that great need do not require, and then shall not above half a drach be given at once, for that is too strong for such young natures. All they that be of middle age it is good for, used oftentimes, so that it cannot here be told, how much thereof may be given at once. The commonest weight is a drachme, and if so be that need require not the same, then is seldom any more to be given; yet according to the importance and ability of the person, the sickness, and such like, is the same to be augmented or diminished with wine or any other water.

Theriaca Diatessaron. §. 44.

THis confection hath her name of the Grecians, for that it is made of four kinds of things, namely in this manner following: take Gentian, fresh Bayberries, Myrrha, and the right Hart wort, of each 2. ounces, stamp all together very small, with one pound and a half of well scummed hony, then keep it well where you please. This Treacle may the common people commodiously use in stead of the great Treacle, for that it withstandeth all pestilential agues, and all venom, therefore do the people of the country also give it to sick cattle, and that with very great advantage. It is also good against all diseases of the braines, of the sinewes, and all sicknesses, which proceed of cold, as Falling sickness, Palsey, lameness, and the Cramp, it strengtheneth the stomach and her digestive power, it openeth the Liver, the Spleen, and the Kidnyes, therefore it is also good for the yellow Jaundise, the dropsie, it expelleth windiness, and all pain of the guts. There may one drachme and a half be taken thereof, to wit, in the morning fasting, but cattel must take more of it.

Triphera. §. 45.

OF such like confections are many kinds described of the Physitians, like as we shall shew hereafter. The first is *Fœnnis*, and is the lesser. It is good for all excessive fluxes, for womens termes, for the pyles, and against all debility of the stomach, it causeth all grosse and tough humours to avoid, it amendeth the nautral colour, it strengtheneth the bladder, and stayeth the scourings.

The other is Triphera magna, that is, the greater. The same is used for all cold pain of the stomach, as soone as one hath taken thereof, then sweat doth break out upon one. It is good for all melancholick women, which cannot sleep and that they have gotten this anguish and vexation through any disease of the Matrix. Likewise also for those which be burthened with any slimy matter in the Lights, and for all them that spet blood, whether it be beneath or above, and if one leave out the *Opium*, then should the same be good for to advance the fruitfulnesse of women.

The third is Triphera Persica, which is made of many kinds of things; it is good against all agues, which proceed out of the stomach, and also against the yellow Jaundise, which proceed of great heat, it openeth all obstructions, it amendeth the sight which is infirmed through cholerick vapours, it quencheth thirst, and defendeth one from all the sicknesses.

The fourth is, Triphera Saracenica, which with her heat strengtheneth the digestion of the stomach and of the Liver, it consumeth all windinesse of the same, it maketh good breath, and is very commodious for the whole body, it keepeth a body healthy, it provoketh desire of venery, and it obstructeth all the bleeding of the Pyles, whereof is from one drachme to three drachmes to be taken, and that according to the importance of his person.

Electuarium vitæ. §. 47.

THis is called a confection of life, and is described in the first part the second chapter, and first §.

Of Lee. §. 47.

THe ancient Physitians, as they were very diligent and curious in searching out the vertues of all things, thereby to withstand all diseases of mankind, so have they not omitted to search out the nature of ashes, for to discern (of whatsoever wood that the same be burnt) which should be the most commodious and fit, and they have in truth found no small efficacie and power in them, as is shewed here and there in this book.

For to make excellent spice or Sugar Cakes. §. 48.

ALbeit that these cakes may be used for the strengthening of the stomach and of the head in Physick, nevertheless they be more eaten of licorousnesse; but for their abuse we will not omit their description. First, take wheat and Rye flower, of each about a pound and a half, clarifyed hony as much as is needful for to knead this flower to dough, then temper amongst it these spices following, all beaten small, to wit, Cinamom two ounces, Greins, Nutmegs, and Cloves of each half an ounce, long Pepper one quarter of an ounce, Mace and Galangal, of each one drachme, Cucubes one quarter of an ounce, prepared Coriander one ounce and a half; and then make thereof round or long Cakes, and let them be slowly baked: when they be then almost baked, then anoint them oftentimes with wine, then do they get above an orient or pleasant colour.

The right Sugar cakes be made thus; take a pound of Sugar, which is decocted to a syrup, and when you have taken it from the fire, then temper amongst it four ounces of Wheat flower, and about four ounces of Rye flower, and make a paste thereof: at last put these spices unto it, viz. Ginger two ounces and a half, Cinamom two ounces, Cloves half an ounce, Nutmegs, long Pepper, of each one quarter of an ounce, prepared pownded Coriander half an ounce, Annis (also beaten) three quarters of an ounce, and so let them dry together.

Other which be daily used: Take Sugar two pound, and pour a quart of water unto it, let it seeth together, and clarifie it well with the whites of egs, when as now the water is sodden to the half, then knead amongst it five pound of flower, two ounces of Ginger, two ounces and a half of Cinamom, Nutmegs and Cloves, of each one ounce, Pepper one drachme, and let them dry. If you will make them of hony, then take three pintes of Hony, and a quart of water, let it seeth, and clarifie it, then put therewith as is before rehearsed.

The Bisket cakes be thus made: take of the old baked cakes, as many as you please, and grate them on a grater, then put hony and spices unto it, and then bake them once again.

The Noremberger Sugar cakes be made after this manner; take one pound and a half of Sugar, Cinamom 3. ounces and a half, Nutmegs 2. ounces, Ginger 3. ounces. Cloves and Cardamom, of each half an ounce, cut them, but not too grosse, and then take thereto one pint of hony, let it on the fire that the hony may melt, and afterwards take the Sugar, stir the same beaten very small amongst it, and so let it seeth very softly, that it do not burn nor run over, stirring it alwayes well about, then mix therein as much flower and spice as is needful, and work it upon a table; at last make cakes thereof about the weight of 6. ounces, and work each apart, and bake them afterward as behooveth.

Loch, Lohot. 49.

THus do the Apothecaries name certain mild confections, which have but little difference from other confections and therefore be they separated from the other, that one might know how to ask for them.

Loch ad Asthma, Graecis, for a heavy breath; this Loch is not much in use, it is good for a heavy wheasing breath, for an old cough, and it doth cause all tough matter of the Lights to avoid.

De Cancris, of Crabs; this Loch is very good in the Consumption.

De Farfara of Folefoot leaves; this Loch is to be used as all the rest.

De Papaver; this Loch is somwhat troublesome to be made, and is commonly made at all Apothecaries; it is good against all coughs, and roughnesse of the throat, which be caused

caused of a hot defluxion, which may be perceived by the thin and subtile spettle, and it maketh the same thick.

There be two other Confections more made of Poppies, under the name of *Diacodion*; amongst which that which *Mesue* describeth, and is thus made: Take green Poppy heads that be somewhat withered, five or six in number, and fair rain water 2 ounces; boil them softly together, so that there remain a third part; unto this colatured decoction, and when the two third parts be wasted then put unto it one ounce and a half of good Hony, half an ounce of salt, *Acatia*, Saffron, Myrrhe, and Pomgranate blossoms, of each half a drach. *Trochisci Ramich* one quarter of an ounce: temper them all together, as appertaineth; but there will be too little Hony, therefore must more be taken. It is to be noted, that this may also be made into lozinges; they be very good for them that have any subtile defluxion falling on the breast, great coughes, and other diseases more.

De Portulaca, of Purslain; how it is to be prepared, and what his vertues are, look in the first Part, the fifth Chapter and 6. §.

De Pinu, of Pingles; this is to be sought for in the first Part, the fifth Chapter, and 6. §. which is good for old coughes, and for the short breath; it causeth all rough fleam of the Lights to avoid.

De Portulaca, of Purslain; this is not often used by us, but there are two kinds made in Italy, which follow hereafter; take the clarified juyce of Purslain 12 ounces, *Trochisci* of sealed earth, and *Opium*, of each one drach. *Trochisci de Carabe*, and Dragon bloud, of each half a drachme, burnt Harts horn, and Bloudstone, of each one scrup, white Sugar 6 ounces, then seeth it like other *Looch*. This is especial good against spetting of blood, especially if it be tempered with this confection following; Take Henbane seed, white Poppy seed, of each two drach. red and white sealed earth, of each five drach. Conserve of Roses 4. ounces; temper them together, give it in the morning and evening, each time half a drach. The other; Take of the aforesaid three quarters of an ounce, *Philonis Persici* three drach. *Trochisci de Carabe* one drach. and a half, *Species Triatragacanthe frigidi* half an ounce, temper them together with Purslain water as before.

De pulmone Vulpis, of the Light of a Fox; how highly the same is to be praised, and how the same is to be prepared, is to be read in the first Part, the 5. Chap. and 5. §. 12.

Sanum per aprum, that is as much to say, as healthy and approved, viz. for all old coughes and shortnesse of the breath, &c.

De Scilla, of Squils; how the same is to be prepared and used for all old coughes, that may you read in the first Part, the fifth Chapter, and 7. §.

The eleventh Chapter.

WE will discourse in this eleventh Chapter of many sundry causes, as followeth hereafter.

Almond milk. §. 1.

Almond milk is prepared after many manners, and that according to the quality of the sickenesse. If so be that one will strengthen nature, then is the same to be made the stronger and the thicker, and one must take the more Almonds, and lesse water. But this is the common fashion to make it: Take Almonds as many as you please, put them in hot water, and let them steep so long therein, until one can peel them: then pour cold water upon them, that through the heat of the water, they lose no vertue; afterwards pownd the peeled Almonds very small, and take them in a very clean cloth, pour 3. or 4. spoonfuls of fair water upon it, and then with a spoon rub out the strength, and so pouring only more and more fair water upon it: you are to continue this straining, viz. so long as you suppose that there cometh out any whiteneſſe, then put as much Sugar unto it as you think good. If you will use it for sleep, then pownd a little white Poppy seed, and rub that through with the Almonds. If you desire that the Almond milk be more coolling, then stamp a little Melon seed with it: if one will use it against the flux, then is the water to be steeled; for the breast be Currans and Liebras to be sodden in it: there be also Pingles otherwhiles pownded, Hasel nuts, and such like things with it, all according to the quality of the malady. And albeit that this Almond milk be used for the kitchin, yet it is also good for many kinds of infirmities and sicknesse.

Manus Christi. §. 2.

HOw these Bolinges are to be prepared after two manner of sorts, with Pouder and also without Pouder, that is in the first Part, the third Chapter, and 9. §. described, and they be very much in use, so that the common people esteem them onelyes be a strengthening of the heart, although there are more forcible things prepared for it

Marchpane. §. 3.

TAke good fresh Almonds, as many as you please, and peel them, as we have taught of Almond milk: or if one have to much leisure, lay them a whole night to steep in cold water, then will the peeles go off; afterwards pownd them small in a stone mortar, and pour a little Rosewater unto it: at last you are to pownd amongst it as much Sugar as you please; whether it be much or little, the dough or paste is to be spread on wafers. But if the dough be too moist, then hasten not with baking; otherwise will it be full of bladders. These Marchpanes be most meetly baked in an oven, the top and bottome covered with a mild fire, laying the Marchpane verydry therein, and there is laid for the more certainty a paper beneath upon the bottom of the pan or oven. Will you have the Marchpane very white? then must you make the fire very slow. But if you will make a Marchpane to strengthen one (for which it was first of all found out) then must you add Pingles, Pistacies, and other spices unto it, and also water of Spike, of Lavander, of Endive, or take any other waters, as Cinamom water, and such like. The Sugar is also to be sod meetly hard; and when it is well clarified, then stir in, and mix afterwards the pownded Almonds amongst it.

For to counterfeit Marrow of bones. §. 4.

TAke peeled Almonds, pownd them very small, and make them often wet with Rosewater, afterwards then temper four ounces of beaten Sugar amongst it; and to the end it may be harder in rolling it, put two ounces more of Sugar unto it, and strew that on the outside upon it, then form it as you think good, and bake it like Marchpane.

Medicamen de Turbith. §. 5.

THe manner to make both these powders, and their vertues, have we declared in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 20. §.

Melicraton. §. 6.

THis do we call in English Wine Meade, whereof the ancient Physitians do make two sorts, for the one they took two parts of sowr Wine, and one part of Hony. When this is waxen old, then it is nourishing; when it is meetly old, then it is very requisite for the stomach and the belly, and it expelleth also urine: but after meat it is not very wholsome to be drunken. If one will use the same quickly, then must these two things be boyled together. Other do take six parts of Must, and let the same be hot, then do they pour a quart of Hony unto it, and when it hath boyled a while, then do they preserve the same. This *Melicraton* is beforetime much more usual then now adaies, and especially with the *Romans*, which called the same *Vinum Mulsum.*

Of Meade, a common drink. §. 7.

THo Hony water and the Meade are not onely invented for their vertue, but also for necessity, chiefly in such Countries where no Wine groweth, or may not be used. And it is very true, that this drink is more wholesome then sulphured Wine; for although the Mead be hot by nature, yet it is tempered with moisture, wherefore it cannot overheat nor overdry one. And albeit that this Mead may be made according to the fashion of every Country, diversly; yet nevertheless is this the commonest manner, viz. that one take 8. quarts of water unto one quart of hony, and so let it seeth by a gentle fire, scumming it so long until it begin to be clear.

It

It is also here to be noted, that how much longer you think to keep the Mead, so much the longer are you to seeth the same. When it is cold, then put it into a vessel, and let it be three fingers empty, to the end it may work. If so be that you desire to have the same stronger and more forcible, then hang these spices following in it, viz, Ginger, Cinamom, Cloves, Galangal, Nutmegs, and such like, and that in weight, as we shall write hereafter, of the aromatical wines. Some do take also Saffron unto it, not onely for the colour, but also for his vertue, and for that it yeeldeth a good savour to the Mead. When it hath spurged or wrought, then is the same to be lesten lie stopped the space of three moneths. But in case you desire to use it presently, then seeth the same not long, and expect not her working, but drink it freely as soon as it is cold, and then the next day make new again. In Liefeland they have in some places a custome, that they hoope their vessels with Iron, and so bury the Mead under the earth, and this will be stronger then any wine, but we will permit such countries to keep their customes. If you desire to make quickly a good Mead, then take a good Nutmeg, and one ounce of Cinamom cut small, and pour thereon three quarts of water, then let the third part seeth away, and then put unto it half a pound of clarifyed hony, this being done, let it seeth again together, until that there remain about a good quart.

In old time was this Mead following to be made; take hony combs, wash the same well with luke-warm water, and afterwards let it seeth well. But if it be not sweet enough, then put more hony unto it, and scum it well; afterwards put thereto prepared Coriander half a pound, Sage and Hops, of each one handful, let a third part seeth away, and so keep it in a firre fat, at last hang Valerian, Cinamom, Cloves, Nutmegs, and Mace therein.

Another sort: take as much scummed hony as you please, put the same into a clean leaded pot, and pour as much water unto it as you please, then take Sugar and Marjoram according as you desire it to be strong. If you will put any Cinamom unto it, that is also not amisse, then let it seeth together, and skum it well. If so be that you desire to have it brown, then take 2. or 3. spoonfuls of hony, and let the same seeth well, and stir it well about until that it be strong, as soon as you take it from the fire, then pour presently water upon it, it will boyle together, and then pour the rest unto it, strain out the herbs, and then keep it in a cellar.

The common vertues of these Meads be, that they quench thirst. It is also good for all cold diseases of the braines, of the backbone, of the sinewes, and for all other diseases, for which wine is hurtful, by his penetrating vertue and force, it cleanseth and openeth the breast, it taketh away the cold dry cough, it cleanseth the Kidnyes, the reines, the conduits of urine, and the bladder, of all cold slimy matter whereof the gravel and the stone doth grow, and it expelleth also all hurtful matter out of the guts, wherefore the same is to be used in all diseases of the braines, as in the giddinesse, in the falling sickenesse, and in lameneſse which is caused thereby. In like manner it is very good for them that be Plagued with the Cramp, and the hot Podagra.

The twelfth Chapter.

THis twelfth chapter hath no more then two sorts of compounded things, as oyles and some other which be made with vinegar, which be therefore called Oxymel, Oxycraton, Oxysacchara, and such like. First we will write of Oyles, whereof there is much declared, and add thereto, for what they are to be used: amongst which there be some 1. of Plants, of Fruits, and of seeds, as well prest as beaten out: other by addition of certain herbs, flowers, roots, and other things which be decocted therewith. Some are distilled, and by force of the fire be drawn out of roots, out of Mines, out of Mettals, and such like things, and the manner of making them is divers, whereof we will write hereafter, and also declare thereby for what each of them shall be good.

Oyl of Poplar buds. §. 1.

BEcause that in the making of all Oyles there must need be taken that the herbs, flowers, roots, and such like be not put too moyst into the oyl, the same must first of all be weathered a little and afterwards be chopt small, to the end the vertue and force may come

come the better out of it. If you have not the hot Sun, then let it seeth in a narrow pot in hot water. If so be that you renew the herbs or the flowers two or three times, then is the oyl the more forcible. And now to come to our oyl of Poplar buds: take Sallad oyl 12. ounces, white wine 12. ounces, fresh Poplar buds (which be pownded) nine ounces, then let them steep the space of seven dayes in the wine and oyl, and stir them oftentimes about, afterwards boyl it in a narrow pot in water until all the wine be wasted, and afterwards wring it through a cloth. It is also to be noted, like as is beforesaid, that if so be that you renew the Poplar buds two or thre times, that then the oyl will be the more forcible, which may also be well done. This oyl is very good against the head-ach, pain of the joynts, of the reins, of the Kidnyes, and against the paine of the Gout, with other paines more.

Oyl of Mandragora. §. 2.

IT is oftentimes before declared, what force the Mandragora hath, to wit, that it causeth sleep, and causeth insensibleness. This oyl is prepared and made in the same manner as all oyles of other roots are made, but it is very seldome used but when great need doth require.

Oyl of Amber. §. 3.

ALl they that delight in distillation, and have endeavoured themselves to draw out the purest and cleanest out of all things, they have also found great vertue in the oyl of Amber; for which there hath been made special ovens, glasses, and other preparatives, &c. which were here too long to discourse, but we will onely declare her vertue and use. First, there is nothing more forcible against all venemous ayre, if one rub a drop thereof in the nostrils. In like manner the losinges are also good, amongst which two or three drops of this oyl is tempered. The same is good against all sicknesses of the head, as against the Palsey, and against the falling sickness, if one take it with Betony water, or with any such like water, and anoint it outwardly upon the neck; but that is especial good which is distilled of the white Amber. It is also very good for all diseases of the sinewes, as for the cramp, the lameness, and such like, it expelleth the stone, and the gravel, if the same be given with the water of parsly; it furthereth also Childbirth if it be given with water of Vervein, so doth it also if one anoint the navel on the outside with Snakes grease and it together. It is also very commodious against the suffocation of the mother, if one anoint the same in the nostrils, and upon the pit of the heart. The losings wherein this oyl is baked, be special good against all cold rheumes, they strengthen the braines, they be good against all swouning and heart-beating, and they do also strengthen the digestive power of the stomach. In fine, this oyl may be used in stead of the true and natural Balm.

Artificial Balm. §. 4.

OF this artificiall Balm, and how the same is made after divers manners, and distilled, we have declared before in the second chapter sufficiently.

Sallad oyl, or oyl of Olives. §. 5.

THis Sallad oyl is of all people so well known, that whereas oyl standeth without any sirname, thereby alwayes Sallad oyl is understood; and it is also a gracious gift of God, that people may use the same for sundry necessaries, which were too long to discourse; for, how many kinds of Plaisters, Salves, Oyles and clisters, &c. be prepared of this oyl, but as much as concerneth this Sallad oyl, there be three sorts of the same used for Physick, to wit, one that is thorow ripe; the second that which is not thorow ripe; the third which is very old, for that each one of the three hath his proper nature; that which is clean ripe is of a warm nature, so that it defendeth the body from all cold being anointed thereon, it refresheth all the members, and maketh them fit for labour, it suppleth all the whole body and the skin, it asswageth all pain of the joynts, it cleareth the sight, it is good against all venom if one drink the same often and vomiteth it up

again

again: so that the ancient Physitians have left a proverb behind them; Wine sustaineth the body within, and Oyl outwardly. When the oyl is above a year old, then doth it lose much of her pleasantnesse, and the best driveth alway above, which is contrary in Hony, wherein the best doth lye alwayes underneath, and the best of the wine is alwaies in the middle. The oyl which is prest out of the unripe Olives, that is called *Omphacinum*, the same hath power for many kind of things, and especially in Salves; it is also very meet for the stomach through her astringent vertue, likewise it doth fasten the gums and the teeth. The old oyl is hotter then the other, and hath also more vertue to digest, it strengtheneth much the sight if it be anointed under the eyes, if one can get no old oyl, then look before into the Introduction how that the oyl is to be prepared.

Oyl of Behen. §. 6.

THis oyl of the roots of red and white Behen is not very much usual, howbeit that we do sometimes remember it in this book.

Oyl of Pyrethrum. §. 7.

IT is an oyl which is very hot, and that is not made at the Apothecaries but onely if the same be prescribed to be made, therefore we will write no further thereof.

Oyl of Bevercod. §. 8.

THe Apothecaries do make a certain oyl of Bevercod, which is made of many kinde of things for all cold diseases, and especially for all diseases of the sinewes, and pain of the joynts. It is very good for the Palsey, and stiffnesse of the neck. It allayeth the cold in Agues if the back bone be anointed with it. But we will here describe that which is easie to be made: Take Bevercod one ounce, *Euphorbium* three drachmes, *Myrrha* one quarter of an ounce, white strong wine eight ounces, Sallad oyl 12. ounces: let it seethe so long together until the wine be throughly consumed, afterwards strain it and keep it.

Oyl of Lead. §. 9.

THis oyl of Lead is thus made: Take dry Cetuse one pound, Vinegar which is two times distilled, one quart or more, and seethe it in a narrow pot in seething water an hours space, but stir it often about, and let it settle: afterwards distil it through a Filter, to the end the vinegar may run through it, and the oyl tarry in it: do this two or three times; then set this oyl in sand, and distil it slowly, then will come out of it that which is fair and clean. This oyl healeth all ulcers marvellous well, as we in the fifth Part, the fourth Chapter, and 4. §. have taught. Another. Take Lead as much as you please, and beat it very thin, then pour as much distilled vineger upon it until it be well covered, then will it be lead white. When it is now clean consumed, then set it certain dayes in the hot sun, or in horsedung, and afterwards distil it in sand, until that the water which distilleth do alter, then set another receiver before it, and there cometh a ruddy oyl out of it.

Oyl of Penniroyal. §. 10.

THis oyl is made like oyl of Cammomil. You may adjudge the vertue by the property of the herb, yet it is not much used.

Oyl of Purslain. §. 11.

This oyl is prepared as the oyles of other herbs, but it is made very seldom.

Oyl of Cammomil. §. 12.

THis oyl is thus made: Take well savouring Cammomil as much as you please, put it into a pot, and pour upon it as much old Sallad oyl, until all the Cammomil be well covered, and then set it the space of fourteen dayes in the Sunne, or in some other

other warm place: afterwards let them seethe in a narrow pot in seething water, and then put out the Cammomil, and put in fresh again, and let it seethe again, then wring it out well, and do this three times one after another, and then keep it until you have occasion to use it. This oyl is good for many kinds of things, it openeth the pores and sweat vents, it expelleth vapors, it allayeth rheumes, it is good for the sinewes, or all pain of the joynts; and asswageth also the pain of the guts.

Oyl of Capers. §. 13.

THe oyl of Capers is most commonly made at the Apothecaries in this manner: Take Capers roots one ounce, rinds and leaves of Tamarisk, the seeds of *Agnus Castus*, Harts tongue, and Cipers roots, of each one quarter of an ounce, Rue one drachme, Vinegar and good wine, of each one quarter of an ounce, ripe Sallad oyl twelve ounces, pound the roots grossly, and let them steep a whole night, afterwards seethe them in an especial pot in boyling water, strain and keep it. This oyl is especially good for all hardnesse, obstructions, and pain of the Spleen, but you may in seething put some more wine and vineger.

Oyl of Costus. §. 14.

TAke of the very true & good roots of Costus one ounce, Cassie wood, or Elecampane roots in stead of it, half an ounce, sprigs of Marjoram gentle four ounces, oyl of *Sesamum* eighteen ounces, and wine as much as sufficeth. Let it steep two dayes and two nights, afterwards let it seethe all together in water until the wine be throughly wasted, which you may perceive hereby, if that you let one drop fall into the fire, And that it hisse no more. This oyl is of a warm nature, it openeth the obstruction of the stomach and of the Liver. It is good against all diseases of the sinewes, it avoideth the growing of gray hairs, it preserveth the body in his natural colour.

In the first Part you have two other sorts of oyl of Costus, which may also be used for advantage, and they be also hotter than this present oyl is.

Oyl of Dill. §. 15.

THe oyl of Dill is made of the herb, of the flowers, and of old oyl, like as oyl of Cammomil is made. This oyl asswageth all pain, it openeth the pores, it consumeth wind, also all cold and hard swellings, it taketh away the shaking of the ague, it maketh one to sleep, and taketh away all pain of the head in hot Agues, if the back bone be therewith anointed.

Oyl of Eggs. §. 16.

HOw this oyl is made, and what it hath for efficacy and power, is taught in the first part the third Chapter, and first §.

Oyl of Annis. §. 17.

THis oyl of Annis is made by distilling in this manner: Take one pound of small beaten Annis, and put it into a glassed helm, and pour so much water upon it until the helm be half full: but distil it the first time with a milde or slow fire in boyling water, until it begin to be hot, afterwards make a good fire, until that the oyl and the water do go over together. Now being distilled, then separate the water and the oyl one from another with a glassen funnel, for that the oyl swimmeth alwaies on the top. This oyl hath a great force against the giddinesse of the head, and against the Collick, and is also highly commended against the falling sickneſſe, if one give thereof three or four drops. It is here to be noted, that if one will distil any such like, that one is alwayes to take for one pound, two or three pound of water.

Oyl of wild Cucumbers. §. 18.

THis oyl is not usual in this countrey: But for what it is meet, look for that in the Table.

Oyl of Euphorbium. §. 19.

THis oyl is made thus: Take Euphorbium half an ounce, oyl of yellow Violets, and good wine, of each five ounces, let it seeth so long until that all the wine be consumed; afterwards wring it through a cloth: it is especial good for the cold braines and sinewes. In like manner it is also good against the pains of the head Cephalalgia, Hemicrania, and against the Lethargy sickness if one annoint it in the nostrils. Item, for all pain of the joynts, of the Liver, and of the Spleen, if it proceed of cold.

Oyl of Foxes. §. 20.

BEfore in the second Part, the fourth Chapter, and 15. §. there is found this oyl of Foxes, and therewithal also his operation.

Oyl of Lillies. §. 21.

TAke the white leaves of Lillies, and prepare the oyl like as is said of the Cammomils. This oyl healeth all cold pain of the breast, of the reins and the bladder, and especially of the Matrix, and also all pain of the guts. For that it is of a hot nature, it hath power to digest, it assageth the tough, it ripeneth all impostumations, it dryeth all bad sores of the head, and it diminisheth also all swellings, if one temper a little Saffron amongst it.

Oyl of Hempseed. §. 22.

OUt of Hempseed is this oyl beaten: it warmeth and dryeth much, therefore it doth consume natural seed: yea if one eat too much of the same, then doth it the same hurt that Coriander doth: wherefore the same is very seldom, and that very little used in Physick, as also thereof but twice hath been spoken in this Book.

Oyl of the kernels of Apricocks. §. 23.

OUt of the kernels of this fruit is oyl prest, like as is done of Almonds, but is is very seldom prepared in this countrey.

Oyl of Eldern flowers. §. 24.

YOu are to make oyl of Eldern flowers and of old Sallad oyl, as oyl of Cammomil is made. It assageth the pain, it cleanseth, and is very good for the yellow Jaundies, and all diseases of the Liver, and also for their obstructions: likewise it doth also take away all pain of the joynts.

Oyl of Saint Johns wort. §. 25.

OF this herb, you must take the tops when it beginneth to ripen, to wit, the uppermost sprigs three ounces, steep them three dayes long in good Wine: afterwards wring them out well, and then put other in again and let it seeth together. Being sodden, wring it again even to the third time: and if the wine were sod away, then put more unto it. Lastly take three ounces of Turpentine, old Sallad oyl six ounces, Saffron one scruple; put this altogether in a several pot, and so let it seethe in seething water, so long until the wine be consumed: then wring it hard through a cloth, and let it settle: so do the Apothecaries make it. The Chirurgians do make it in this manner: Take four pound of the uppermost sprigs of Saint Johns wort, put them into a pot of the quantity of the five quarts, and pour two pound of Sallad oyl upon it, and as much white until the herbs be covered: then stop the pot tight, and so let it stand the space of six weeks: afterwards make it open, and put one drachme of Saffron unto it, but stop the pot by and by very close, and set it in a kettle with seething water, and so let it seethe the space of ten hours. This being all done, then pour it all together in a linnen bag, and bind it very fast unto it, and presse it hard out whilest that it is yet warm, put it in a glasse and

set it in the sun, or in another warm place; then will the oyl come on the top, lade it off then continually, and keep it well stopt in a glass. This oyl is hot and dry, and hath an especial astringent vertue: therefore it doth also heal all wounds and all wounded sinewes; yea all burning of fire, it asswageth all pain of the hips, of the bladder, and doth expel urine, &c.

Oleum Irinum. §. 26.

THere are two kinds described, and are both very troublesome to be made, they be also not much used.

Oyl of Cherry kernels. §. 28.

THis oyl is also very seldom used, and is made like as oyl of Almonds by pressing, and is much commended for moving of urine.

Oyl of Melilot. §. 27.

So is it also with this oyl of Melilot, it is also seldom made, and also very seldom used.

Oyl of Cresses. §. 29.

This oyl is also very seldom made, yet it is made like all oyls of herbes.

Oyl of Copper. §. 30.

THis oyl do the Achymists distil, like the oyl of Lead, whereof there be two kinds described before, and there is no other difference between them, but that the Copper is somewhat smaller to be cut, and must be beaten somewhat thinner.

Oyl of Gourd seed. §. 31.

This oyl is not usual with us, and is very seldom used.

Oyl of Lineseed. §. 32.

THe vertue of this oyl may be gathered by the properties of the seed out of which it is beaten, and also out of many places of this book, wherein they be commanded to be used.

Oyl of white Sesamum. §. 33.

THis oyl is made of the seed *Sesamum*, and it is also beaten out of the foresaid seed, like as the Lineseed oyl, it hath a special power to ease all rough throats, to take away all hoarseness, and to make one have a good voyce: wherefore it is used in many parts of Physick.

Oyl of Linnen cloth. §. 34.

HOw this oyl is to be used, we have told in the first Part, and also taught therewith how the same is to be made. It is to be used for all running eyes.

Oyl of Bay. §. 35.

THis oyl is brought unto us by thy Merchants in great quantity out of Italy: it is warm by nature, it openeth all obstructions, and asswageth all pains of the bowels, also all cold pains of the belly, of the Liver and of the Milt, the Kidneyes, the Matrix, of the sinewes, and of the joynts, and is also very good for all cold sicknesses.

Oyl of Mace. §. 36.

This oyl is brought unto us out of Indy, and used for divers cold accidents.

Oyl

Oyl of the seeds and flowers of Poppy. §. 37.

First of all there will be made of this plant and of the white flowers an oyl, which is more mild then the red and carnation flowers be, and will be made with Sallad oyl, like as Cammomil oyl is wont to be made, yet at sundry times renewing the infusing of the flowers, according to that one desireth to have it strong. This oyl asswageth all hot pain, it cooleth much, and is very good for all them that cannot sleep well, if the temples of the head be anointed therewith; and as the hot vapours do draw to the head, in any hot sicknesses, also the nostrels, the ears, and the temples of the head may be anointed with it.

The oyl which is made of the seeds of this herb, is made of the white, gray, and black seed, and beaten out of it, as the oyl of Linseed is made; it maketh fat, it asswageth the pain of the throat, heat of the Agues, and all heavy dreams.

Oyl of sweet Almonds. §. 38.

There be two kinds made thereof (of sweet and bitter Almonds.) This oyl is pressed out or beaten out upon a pownding mil, like as the oyl of Linseed is beaten out. But if one will drink the oyl, then take Almonds well dryed, which have a fresh and sweet taste, as much as you please, pownd them very small, and parch them a little, afterwards put Rosewater unto it, and presse it well out with a strong presse. But the oyl of sweet Almonds is much used. The oyl of sweet Almonds is good against the roughnesse of the throat, of the breast, of the Lights, and against all drought of the same. Further, it asswageth all pain of the joynts, it is also very pleasant for to be occupied in all meats, and good for all them which begin to consume, it maketh fat, and augmenteth human nature, it quencheth thirst, it allayeth the heat of the urine, and all pain of the bladder, together all ulcers of the womanhood, if the same be anointed thereon or injected therein.
The oyl of bitter Almonds doth asswage all hardnesse of the sinews, it openeth all obstructions, it consumeth wind and all bad vapours, and it is especial good for all deafnesse, and all bad hearing, for all sissing of the ears, and it taketh also away all spots.

Oyl of Marjoram gentle.

Take the herb Marjoram gentle 4. handfuls, wilde Thyme 2. handfuls, Myrtle leaves one handful, Southernwood and Mints, of each half a handful, Cassie wood two ounces, unripe Sallad oyl as much as will suffice for to cover all the foresaid; then stop it tight, and so let stand the space of 8. dayes in the Sun: afterwards wring it out hard, and lay fresh again therein: do this thus three times together. This oyl is special good for all diseases of the brains and of the sinews, and it is especial good in bathing against al lameneſse, or convulsion of the Palsey *Paralysis*; if the same be anointed in the ears and in the nose it taketh away all hissing: it moveth womans terms, and it withstandeth all venome of Scorpions. Some do make this oyl onely of the leaves, like as Camomil oyl is made, and it is made most so.

Oyl of Mastick. §. 40.

The manner to make this oyl, and also his vertue is described in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 5. §.

Oyl of Narcissus. §. 41.

This oyl is called by the Physitians *Oleum Narcissum*, and is made like as the oyl of Cammomil is wont to be made. This oyl is very good for the hardening of the womanhood, or if the same be shut too close: it is also used for the Palsey that cometh of falls.

Oyl of Myrtles. §. 42.

OF this oyl be two kinds made; that which is made of the seed hath an astringent vertue, wherefore it is also good for all hot ulcers, and for the chaps of the Arse-gut; it strengtheneth the slackness or loosenesse of the sinews, and it stayeth sweat. But that which is made of the leaves, strengtheneth onely the brains, the sinewes, the heart, and the stomach: but because that we can get no fresh, they are first to be infused in good wine, and to put unripe Sallad oyl unto it.

Oyl of Mints. §. 43.

THis oyl is made of Mints and unripe Sallad oyl, like as the oyl of Cammomil is wont to be made. This oyl warmeth the cold stomach, it taketh away vomiting, it maketh appetite to meat, it helpeth the Consumption, and it consumeth all hard swellings.

Oyl of Motherwort. §. 44.

THis oyl is very seldom used, and is made as other oyles, yet in this Book it is but once ordained.

Oyl of Nutmegs. §. 45.

THis oyl is made like as the oyl of Almonds is wont to be made, that it, by pressing it out.

Oyl of Cloves. §. 46.

TAke good fat Cloves half a pound, pownd them very small, and distil it, like as before in the 18. § hath been said of Annis seed. A pound of Cloves doth seldom yeeld more then an ounce and a half of oyl. In the same manner may oyl of Nutmegs be also distilled, and there is hardly more gotten out of it then five drachmes out of a pound: both these oyles are more forcible then the same spices.

Oyl of Walnuts. §. 47.

THis oyl of Walnuts is prest out of old Nuts, like as oyl of Almonds; his vertue do we find described in sundry places of this Book.

Oyl of Pepper. §. 48.

WE will refer the preparing of this oyl to the Apothecaries; but it is good for all cold diseases of the sinews, as for the Palsey, the cramp, the convulsion of the mouth, shaking, falling sickness, pains of the hips, and other diseases more of the joynts. In like manner it is also good for a cold stomach, for the guts, for the reins, and for the cold bladder; for that it warmeth, it avoideth all slimenesse, it openeth all obstructions, it breaketh the stone of the bladder, and also of the kidneys.

There is also oyl distilled out of Pepper, like as is said of the Annis.

Oyl of Peach Kernels. §. 49.

This oyl is also prest out like to the oyl of Almonds.

Oyl of Quinces §. 50.

THe vertue and nature of this oyl, and also the manner of making it, is described in the third Part, the 15. Chap. and 5. §.

Oyl of Rue. §. 15.

THis oyl is to be made of fresh Rue, like as oyl of Cammomil is made; it is warm by nature, it openeth and asswageth the pain, it is good for all cold kidneyes, for a cold Matrix, and for the pain of the same, if the belly be anointed therewith, or if one set a clister with it. It is very meet for the sinewes, for the crampe, and it expelleth all cold humors.

Oyl of Earthworms. §. 52.

IN the fourth Part, the fourth Chap. is the vertue of one of these oyls shewed and the manner how to make it. But there is also another made, which doth warm more, doth penetrate more, and strengtheneth all the joynts: Take Cammomil, Sage, Agrimony, and field Cipres, of each half handful, Rosemary half as much, Juniper berries one quarter of an ounce, Earthworms decocted in Wine six ounces, white Wine one pint, Sallad oyl 15. ounces: let it seethe together until the Wine be throughly consumed, and then wring it out through a cloth.

Oyl of Privet. §. 53.

THe Physitians and Apothecaries do name this privet *Ligustrum*. This oyl is made as the oyl of Cammomil, it strengtheneth all sinewie parts, and hindreth the hair to be gray.

Oyl of Rubarb. §. 54.

TAke Rubarb 9. ounces, Agaricus three ounces, Turbith three ounces and a half, roots of Polipody 4. ounces, Cinamom and Juniper berries, of each half an ounce, red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each 4. scruples, long and round Hartwort, Gentian, roots of blew Flower-deluce, of Costus, *Asarabacca*, Zeduary, Ginger, Galangal, Elecampane roots, and Calamus, of each one quarter of an ounce, Tormentil, and roots of Carduus Benedictus, of each one drachme and a half, Nutmegs, Cloves, Bayberries, Mace, and Cucubes, of each one drach. the seed of Sorrel, of Purslain, red and white Behen, and Doronicum, of each half a drachme, Lignum Aloes, red and white Coral, scraped Ivory, Mastick, Spica, and Camphire, of each one scruple, burnt Ivory one drach. pownd them all grosse, then pour upon it the clarified juyce of Burrage, and of Balm, of each 6. ounces, the juyce of Oranges, 3. ounces; let it steep certain dayes together, stirring it oftentimes about to the end it do not stink: afterwards you are to distil it in seething water, then doth it first of all yeeld a water: but as soon as you perceive that it begins to get another colour, and that it beginneth to drop slowly, then augment your fire and receive oyl in another receiver, and keep it well stopt, at the last set it the space of 20. dayes in the Sun. This oyl is somewhat ruddy, and smelleth very well; so that if one put a drop in a great deal of Well water, then getteth it a savour accordingly. This oyl doth purge very mildly if one give half a drachme thereof more or lesse, according to the quality or importance of the Patient. This oyl is most meetly given with Goats milk; it is also especial good against the Quartana, if the Patient have governed himself well before in his order of dyet. In like manner it is also good in all other Agues, which the Physitians do call *Pyrexidas*: it killeth and driveth out the Worms if it be given with Purslain water or with Wine. This oyl is also especial good given once every 6. dayes against the Pox: it is also good against the rheumes, against the pain in the head *Cephalalgia*, against the giddinesse, and against the pain of the kidneys, it obstructeth womens terms, and the flux of humane seed. It is good against the gout of the feet, if once every 14. dayes two or 3. drops of this oyl be given with the decoction of field Cipres. It it also very good against all running Fistulas, against all ulcers, and against the Canker: also for all diseases of the places in women women, and of the matrix, if one inject half a drach. thereof with the decoction of Feverfew, it provoketh also fruitfulnesse. The water that cometh out before the oyl hath his vertue also, for that it prepareth all humours which cause any sicknesse in the body, if one once or twice a day take thereof half an ounce at each time with three ounces of Endive water.

Oyl

Oyl of Roſes. §. 55.

After the common faſhion is this oyl of Roſes prepared, and is very meet for divers matters. It is made of Roſe buds as the oyl of Cammomil. This oyl cooleth much, and hath an aſtringent vertue; it is good for all manner of heat of whatſoever occaſion that the ſame may be cauſed, uſed outwardly, or in cliſters inwardly, and it ſtrengtheneth alſo the joynts which be anointed therewith, like as they be ordained for it throughout the whole Book.

This oyl is made very ſeldom of the white Roſes; and it cooleth alſo more, then that which is made of red Roſes.

Oyl of Saffron. §. 56.

The oyl of Saffron is not uſed by us, but yet is preſcribed in ſome places of this Book.

Oyl of Sandaracha. §. 57.

This oyl is alſo utterly unknown, it is but once preſcribed in this Book.

Oyl of Sulphur. §. 58.

THis oyl of Sulphur is an Alchimiſtical Oyl, and is made in divers manners: ſome do put one quarter of Amber unto it, other do put Petroleum unto it. In Italy do they take Sulphur vive, and pour the urine of a man childe unto it, and ſo bury it in horſe dung and afterwards diſtil the oyl out of it. But after theſe two manners following is this oyl chiefly made; Take 5. pounds of ſmall beaten Sulphur, and temper oyl Tyles amongſt it: afterwards lute the helm very tight, and at the firſt make a ſmall fire, and afterwards increaſe it. There is gotten out of the foreſaid 5. pounds of Sulphur, no more then about one ounce of oyl: this oyl muſt with great providence be given, to wit, in winter time two drops with vital waters or Malmſey, and in ſommer time with Endive water. This oyl doth aſſwage all griping of the belly, whether it be in the undermoſt or in the uppermoſt guts: as alſo all pain of the ſtomach which proceedeth of wind and cold humours: the ſame may alſo well be uſed outwardly. It is likewiſe very good annointed in the childrens mouthes when they have the Canker, or any ſtinking ulcer in the mouth. Further, Warts are alſo taken away with it, and it maketh the teeth white.

To make the other oyl of Sulphur: Take Sallad oyl and pour therein a good deal of ſmall pownded Sulphur, and let it ſtand ſo long upon the fire until that al the Sulphur be clean melted ſtirring it well about, then are you to quench gloing peeces of coals in it, untill the oyl be throughly ſunken into the Tyle ſtones. This being done, pownd theſe ſtones, and put them alone in the helme; the reſt that overfloweth, and alſo the Sulphur is to be done away, and then diſtil further all that is put into the helm.

The firſt oyl that cometh out of it doth appear ſomewhat bleak in the helm; and when it beginneth to be white, then ſet another receiver under it. This oyl ſeemeth to guild if it be anointed upon Iron, or upon any other thing.

Oyl of blew Flower-deluce. §. 59.

THis oyl is to be made like the oyl of Lillies, but it will be ſomewhat ſtrengthened through the roots; it is ſomewhat ſtrong, but it aſſwageth all pain, and melloweth all ſwellings, it is eſpecial good againſt all hardneſſe of the joynts, it warmeth the Matrix, driveth away the cramps and taketh away all pain and hiſſing of the ears: laſtly, it doth withſtand the Canker of the noſe.

Oyl of Scorpions. §. 60.

BEcauſe that we (God be praiſed) have no Scorpions in *England*, therefore is the oyl brought unto us out of Italy, and is made thus; Take ten or 12. Scorpions, caſt them in twelve ounces of oyl of bitter Almonds, and ſo ſet it five or ſix weekes in the Sun; after-

afterwards strain it and keep it for to use. This oyl breaketh the stone of the bladder, and of the reins, and it driveth the same also out, if it be anointed upon the reins, and upon the privites, or if it be injected into the bladder; lastly, it is also good for many other things more.

Oyl of water Lillies. §. 61.

THis oyl is made as well of the yellow as of the white water Lillies, but unripe Sallad oyl is taken for it, and it is made of the oyl of Violets. The oyl of the white water Lillies hath also the same vertue with the oyl of Violets, but that it is somewhat colder, but not altogether as cold as that of Poppie heads; wherefore these oyles are commonly tempered with other oyles, according to the quality of the disease. It is also very good for them that cannot rest, and for the pain of the Kidnyes of heat; also it is passing good against all venerial lusts, if the privities be anoynted with it. It is also used for divers matters, as may appear in divers places of this Book.

Oyl of Mustard seed. §. 62.

This oyl is very seldome used for that it is so hot.

Oyl of Spikenard. §. 63.

UNder the name of Oleum Nardinum be there two sorts described; we will commend the greater to the Apothecaries, because it containeth divers doubtful things, but the smallest is thus prepared; take good Spikenard three ounces, wine and water of each two ounces and a half, oyl of white Sesamum eighteen ounces seeth them together in hot water until that all the moysture be consumed, then strain it. This oyl doth heat, digesteth, and refineth all that is thick and grosse, and is somewhat astringent; it is good for all cold diseases of the braines, of the stomach, of the Liver, of the Spleen, of the Kidnyes, and of the Bladder, it cleanseth the head if it be anointed in the nose, it maketh a good colour, and also a good savour. It is brought now adaies meetly good and reasonable cheap out of France.

Oyl of Antimonie. §. 64.

THis oyl is thus prepared; take a pound of Antimony, pownd it grosse, and set it in the fire in a melting crust, when it beginneth to smoak, then cast half a drach. of Boreas unto it; when it is molten, then pour it upon a flat stone and let it be cold, then stamp and melt it again, like as before, and so do three times; afterwards pownd it to fine powder, and pour vinegar upon it which is distilled two or three times, then put it into a glasse being stopped very close, yet stir it often about, and that so long, until the vinegar begin to be red, which is wont to happen in the space of a moneth or twain. This being done, put all together into an helme, luted very close, and distil it with a mild fire so long until the redness be discerned, and as soone as that is perceived, then augment your fire, and fasten another receiver unto it, and make a good fire as long as one drop of oyl comes out of it. Out of a pound of Antimony you cannot have above one drach. or twain, according to the goodness of it, or the oyl is well made. This oyl hath a red brown colour, it is also used for the healing of wounds, and of old ulcers, like as is also for all Fistulaes, Leprosie, and for the Pocks, yet nevertheless according to the importance of each sickness, if there be a drop or twain taken tempered with any thing else. The ulcers are washed with the water, but it is very sharp. Another; take one pound of Antimony, pownd it small, and put unto it one quarter of an ounce of Mercurium Sublimatum, put it then into a glasse retort, and give it presently a good fire; there doth come no water out of it, but onely (five or six hours after) cleare oyl.

Oyl of Steele, or oyl of Iron. §. 65.

TAke small field steele or iron, and white Flint, pownded very small, of each half a pound, put it in a glasen helm, and distil it in sand, first with a mild fire, and afterwards alwayes greater, it giveth first water, &. afterwards red oyl, which hath a very plea-

sant

sant smell, even like to Balsam: Now for to distill this oyl, then are you to make an oven after the fashon of a Retort, as the Alchimists do know, these things are the rather serching out of the secrets of nature, then necessary for Physick.

Rocke or Peteroyl. §. 66.

SOme of these oyles be white, some yellow, and there are also some black, which is called Naphta. Peteroyl doth run in Italy, and also in other places out of the rock: it doth heat, dry and consume; it is also good for the falling sickness, for the Palsey, for doting, and for the enfeebled memory.

Oyl of Turpentine. §. 67.

THe manner to distill this oyl have we shewed in the fift Part, the thirteenth chapter and fourth §.

Oyl of Violets. §. 68.

THis oyl is made of blew Violets and unripe Sallad oyl, it is somewhat colder then the oyl of Roses; therefore doth it the more coole all heat, especially the heat of the reines, and of the kidnyes; in like manner it doth asswage the drie heated breast, and is moreover good for many things.

The oyl of Wal-flowers is prepared also of the flowers, and of old oyl, it is very good against the convulsion of the sinewes, it driveth away all diseases of the breast, the kidneyes, and the bladder, and it is also good against all pain of the sinewes and of the Matrix; also it asswageth and melloweth all other diseases.

Oyl of Ireas.

The oyl of Ireas is utterly unknown unto us.

Oyl of Vitriol or of Copperas. §. 69.

THis oyl is very highly commended, it getteth an especial sweetnesse, which is a miraculous work of nature, and is made thus; take four pound of Hungary Copperas, stamp it very small, and then put it in a great body, then let it dry certain dayes; afterwards pownd it again, and so set it in a warm place covered with a fine cloth, to the end that the savor of Copper may thereby avoid. This being done, pour four pound of the best spirit of wine upon it which is well rectifyed; lute it well, and so keep it 40. dayes in a warm place, or dunghil, and afterwards distill it, then shall you see the oyle swim on the top of the wine. There be yet more longer and more other meanes for to distil this oyl, but this is the commonest manner. Concerning the vertue of this oyl, and her force, it is very needful that it be providently dealt withal, it must alwayes be mixt with somewhat else, for that it is too sharp, that it will inflame the intrailes; otherwise hath it the same force of the oyl of Sulphur, but it is much stronger and penetrating; it is very good against all filth, and infection, and against the Plague it is especial good; it hath also great power to cause the matter of the Pleurisie to avoid out of the brest, it is good for all though phlegm and corruption of the brest to fetch it out, it suffereth also no stone to grow in the bladder, and healeth the bruised or perished bladder. There is no more but 3. or 4. drops to be given with wine. There may also losinges be made of it. Also this oyl is used by some according to the importance of the cause, like as is admonished in certain places of this book. This oyl doth strengthen the cold stomach, it consumeth Phlegma, it causeth all rough and slimie matter to avoid, it is good for the griping of the guts, and against all red fluxes, it quencheth thirst, it withstandeth all wambling and parbraking.

Because that these oyles must be driven through strong fire, it doth happen otherwhiles that the glasses leap in peeces, by which all the cost, the trouble, and labour is lost. Now for to prevent that, are the glasses to be hardened in this manner following: first are the bodies to be luted very well with lome, and before that you will use the same, anoint them oftentimes with Allum water, and so let them dry: and if so be that they happen for

all

withstood break, yet may they afterwards be soldered together, that they may hold water in this manner: Take Venice glasse, red Lead, Linseed oyl, Mill dust, and the white of an Egg, mix it well together, and then spread it meetly thick upon the cracks, and let it dry afterwards.

Of the Oyl of Wheat. §. 70.

The Oyl of Wheat is made like as the oyl of Annis seed is made.

Oyl of Juniper berries. §. 71.

This oyl is drawn out of the pownded berries. It may also be distilled like as the oyl of Annis seeds, but because that there is very much brought to sell of it, therefore may be bought better cheap then made. That which is distilled out of the wood is made as followeth: Bury a pot in the ground that it stand about three fingers out of it, then take another pot, which fitteth well the undermost, and fill the same with small chips of Juniper wood; then make over it a larten lid with many small holes, that the moisture may drop through it, and that the chips fall not into the undermost pot. This being done, then whelm both these pots one over the other, and then make a fire round about the upper pot a good while, then gather the oyl together which is dropt into the undermost pot.

This oyl is very good against all that that doth outwardly infect the skin, as old ulcers and cankers, but especially against the *Varices:* The oyl which is drawn out of the wood hath an unpleasant savour, but that which is drawn out of the berries, hath a very pleasant savour and smell. They have both of them one operation.

Oyl of Willow leaves. §. 72.

The leaves, flowers, and fruits of this tree have an astringent vertue, whereby they draw the wounds together and heal them, withstand the spitting of blood, and take away all spots of the face. The oyl thereof is good being dropt in the ears, against the pain of the ears: and if the same be anointed on the outside, then it is very good against the Gout, and it taketh away all unchastnesse. There may also oyl be drawn out of Willow wood, as it is drawn out of Juniper wood.

Oyl of Argal. §. 73.

Take four pound of Argal, pownd it very small, and set it to burn in a pot bakers oven; afterwards pownd it again, and then put it into a woollen bag, and so hang it in a cellar, then will there drop out cleer moysture, which is rather a water then an oyl.

Oyl of Wormwood. §. 74.

Ancient Physitians do make this oyl, of Wormwood which groweth in *Ponto*, and with unripe oyl, like as is said of the oyl of Camomil: but because that we have not that Wormwood, therefore are we to take that of ours; and one must take half so much Roses as Wormwood. This oyl hath an especial power to warm, it strengtheneth also all that is cold, and especially the stomach, it maketh an appetite to meat, it openeth all inward parts; and if one anoint the Navel, it killeth the Worms, without any hurt: wherefore it is more profitable for young and old people, then the Wormseed.

Oyl of Tyles. §. 75.

This oyl is to be distilled after two wayes, as the same is to be seen in the Table.

Oxycraton. §. 76.

These things following do keep the Greek name with the Physitians and with the Apothecaries, for *Oxys* is Vinegar: afterwards do they add somewhat unto it which is tempered with the foresaid Vinegar, like as with the *Oxycraton*; where Wine, water

Oxymel Simplex. §. 77.

THis Oxymel is described in the first Part, the second Chapter, and sixt §. It is very often used, and praised for many things.

Oxymel Compositum. §. 78.

THis is therefore named so, for that it is made of sundry things, which is also described in the first Part, the second Chapter.

Oxymel Scilliticum. §. 79.

This is described in the same place, and used oftentimes.

Oxyrhodinum. §. 80.

IT is another compound then the former. It is much used against the pain of the head, and annoynted on the outside, there be two kinds of it, as is taught in the second Part.

Oxysaccharum. §. 81.

THis compound, and her vertue and operation, is described in the first Part, the eight Chapter, and 2. §.

The thirteenth Chapter.

THis Chapter is a gathering together of all kinds of Plaisters and Pils, which be described in this Book.

Emplastrum album Collum. §. 1.

WE do commonly call this, the white Plaister. How it is made, is to be sought for in the Table.

Apostolicon Plaister. §. 2.

AFter two wayes is this plaister made; whereof one is called *Triapharmacon*, for that there cometh not above three things into it: You may look for both of them in the Latine Table.

Emplastrum de Baccis Lauri. §. 3.

THe manner how to make this plaister, and also her vertue, is described in the third Part, the eleventh Chapter.

Basilicon. §. 4.

HEr preparation and use is described in the fifth Part, the first Chapter and fifteenth Section.

A Plaister for the Rupture. §. 5.

There be divers speciesses of these in the third Part, the third Chapter, and §. 1.

The Plaister Ceroneum. §. 6.

If you be any where here to make this Plaister, he may look for the same in *Nicolao*, [illegible] very seldom used.

Diachilon.

Diachilon. §. 7.

OF this *Diachilon* there be three kinds made; the common *Diachilon* is described in the third Part, the 20. Chapter, and 20. §. The great *Diachilon* is found at the Apothecaries, it melloweth and ripeneth all hard swellings.

The Plaister de Galbano. §. 8.

HOw this Plaister is made, and also her operation, is to be sought for in the Latine Table, under the name of *Galbanum*.

Gratia Dei Plaister. §. 9.

THat is as much to say as Gods graces Plaister. The manner to make the same is found in the fifth Part, the first Chapter, and 16. §.

Emplastrum Griseum de Lapide Calaminari. §. 10.

WE call this the gray Plaister: it is also made after two wayes, and it is described in the fifth Part, the seventh Chapter, and 12. §.

Hyssopi Cerotum, sive Philagrii. §. 11.

This Plaister is made very seldom, and used but three times in this Book.

Emplastrum de Melilot. §. 12.

THis is a Plaister of the flowers of Melilot, and is made of many kinds of things; wherefore we will pretermit her description, and whereto it is to be used, shall you find here and there in this Book.

Emplastrum de Muscilaginibus. §. 13.

FOr what this Plaister is to be used, and how the same is made, that is found in the first Part, the sixt Chapter, and seventh §.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum. §. 14.

AFter three manners is this Plaister described; it hath her name of the Vinegar, and of the Saffron. Of her excellent operation may you read here and there in this Book.

Emplastrum de Pelle Arietis. §. 15.

LOok for this in the third Part, the third Chapter, and first §. how highly the same is commended for all manner of ruptures.

Emplastrum de Radicibus, §. 16.

HOw that Salve is to be washed, and Pils prepared of it, you may see in the Introduction.

THis Plaister of roots is but once used in this book, and that in the third Part, the twentieth Chapter, and eleventh §.

The Plaister of Saunders. §. 17.

THis Plaister is called at the Apothecaries, *Cerotum Sandalinum*, which may be made to a salve, as it is described in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 16. §.

The black Plaister. §. 18.

WHereof there be two sorts described, to wit, in the first Part, the fourth Chapter, and second §. and in the fifth Part, the seventh Chapter, and sixth §. for that they be very much used of the Chyrurgions.

Sparadropon. §. 19.

These Sparadraps are described in the fourth Part, the second Chapter, and second §.

Emplastrum Viride. §. 20.

THis Plaister do the Chyrurgions use much in old stinking ulcers, as the same is described in the first Part, the first Chapter, and fifteenth §. And because that now all the Plaisters must be boyled, therefore it is taught in the first Part, the fourth Chapter, and third §. how to make a proof, whereby it may be known, when the same are sodden enough, and must be taken from the fire.

The second Part of this Chapter speaketh of Pils.

THe most of all compounds and mixtures of Pils, be composed together of many things, and they be used but one drachme alone at one time, and not with whole or half ounces, as the Confections or Conserves are, wherefore it is not needful for to adde their description here: and also seeing that each houshold-der may buy the same for a small sum of money at the Apothecaries: but we will nevertheless discover the virtues and commodities of all the Pils which be in this book commemorated, and for what sicknesse that they are to be used.

Pillula de Agarico. §. 1.

PIls of *Agaricus* be good for all them that be short on the breast, or be vexed with any cold cough, and much tough phlegme.

Pillula Aggregativa. §. 2.

THese Pils be very good in all lingring Agues, in all diseases of the head, of the stomach, and of the Liver, they expel *Cholera*, and all slimy matter.

Pillulæ Elephangina. §. 3.

THese Pills do cleanse the stomach, the braine, and the head, from all tough, grosse, and slimy humours; they do strengthen the stomach, and her digestive vertue: they

Pillula de Aloe lota. §. 4.

HOw that *Aloe* is to be washed, and Pils prepared of it, you may see in the Introduction of this Book.

Pillula Azajareth. §. 5.

THese do expel the *Cholera* and the *Phlegma*, and are good for all rheumes which cause the Cough.

Pillula Aurea. §. 6.

THese cleanse the head, sharpen the sight, expel wind out of the guts, and do loose without pain.

Pillulæ de Bdellio. §. 7.

THese Pils be very good against much bleeding of the Pyles, and against womens flowers.

Pillulæ Benedictæ. §. 8.

THey do purge the *Phlegma*, and especially that that falleth into the joynts. They do also cleanse the kidneys and the bladder.

Pillulæ Cochiæ. §. 9.

THese do purge the head very mightily of all grosse, tough, and slimie matter, in like sort also the sinews, therefore they are also much used.

Pillulæ de Cynoglossa. §. 10.

THese Pils have a marvellous operation in staying all kind of thin and subtile defluxions that fall into any part of the body, and to ease one of all manner of pain; but they are very seldom used, unlesse it were in great extremities.

Pillulæ de Euphorbio. §. 11.

THese Pils have a mighty power to expel the water in the Dropsie, and all other matter which is caused of any tumour. They be also good for all pain of the reins, and for the *Podagra*, which is caused of any humour: but they be not much used.

Pillulæ Fœtidæ. §. 12.

THese purge all grosse, tough, and slimy humours; therefore they be also good for all Spetties of the Gout.

Pillulæ de fumo Terræ. §. 13.

THese Pils of Fumitory, do purge all salt and sharp humours of the gall, therefore they be also good for all diseases of the Skin.

Pillulæ de Hermodactilis. §. 14.

These Pils be especial good for all diseases of the Gout, and for other causes more.

Pillulæ de Hiera simplici. §. 15.

HOw these common pils are made, I have declared in the sixth Part, the fifteenth Chapter, and 12. §. and admonished also thereby how that the same be very good for all diseases of the stomach, that be caused of any manner of slimy humours.

Pillulæ de Hiera compositæ. §. 16.

THese are good for all infirmities of the head and sinews, which are caused of slimy humours, and for other matters more.

Pillulæ de Hiera cum Agarico. §. 17.

TO these Pils of *Hiera* is a little *Agaricus* added. They do empty the stomach and the breast from all grosse and cough humours, and they be good against the sifling of the ears.

Pillulæ de Indâ. §. 18.

BEcause these Pils are made with small trouble, and for all pain of the gout, therefore be they described in the third Part, the fifteenth Chapter, and 6. §.

Pillulæ de Fele. §. 19.

THese sorts of Pils have described, where we do treat of the hardnesse of the Spleen, for that they be especial good for it, as they be also very necessary for the Melancholy, against the Canker, the Leprosie, bad ulcers, heavinesse of the mind, and against the Quartain Ague.

Pillulæ de Lapide Armeno. §. 20.

THese do purge Melancholy, and the burnt *Cholera* very mildly, they be also good for all maladies which do proceed out of them.

Pillulæ de Lapide Lazuli. §. 21.

THese Pils of Lazure stone be used against all diseases of Melancholy, and also for all others which be caused through burnt gall.

Pillulæ lucis. §. 22.

THey do cleanse the head of all *Phlegma*, and strengthen the sight, like as their name doth testifie.

Pillulæ Masticinæ. §. 23.

THese Pils do defend the stomach from all sicknesse, they loose mildly, they do strengthen the stomach, and let not the humours putrifie; they do great pleasure and vertue unto all them that use the same, against all pain of the stomach, of the head, of the belly, and the Matrix. Item, for all pensiveneſse be they also especial good.

Pillulæ de Meserco. §. 24.

THese Pils do expel very vehemently the Dropsie, wherefore they are also used in *Anasarca* and *Ascite*.

Pillulæ de Opopanaco. §. 25.

THese be good for the Palsey, against the convulsion of the muscles, against the weakneſse of the knees, against the *Podagra*, and more other pains of the joynts, and also for all diseases of the sinewie parts.

Pillulæ pestilentiales, sive Rhasis. §. 26.

HOw these common pils and other more be prepared, we have declared in the sixth Part, the fifteenth Chapter, and 12. §. and admonished also thereby how that the same hath a vertue for to preserve one from the Plague, and to expel all stinking humours from the stomach.

Pillulæ de quinque generibus Myrobalanorum. §. 27.

THese purge the Melancholy, the *Phlegma*, and the *Cholera*, and do also cleanse the blood.

Pillulæ Rhabarbaræ. §. 28.

THese pils be especial good in the beginning of the Dropsie, in the obstruction of the Liver, and like wise also in all dirtying Agues. Look further *Rhabarbarum* cap.

Pillulæ de Sandarocha. §. 29.

BEcause these Pils are made with small [illegible] they also are described in the third Part, the fifteenth Chapter, and 6. §.

Pillulæ de Succo rosarum. §. 30.

They expel the *Phlegme*, and all sicknesses which are caused of it.

Pillulæ de Citrapini. §. 31.

THese pils have an especiall power in the pain of the hips, the gout of the feet, and of the joynts: they be also very good for the stomach, and further womens terms.

Pillulæ sine quibus esse nolo. §. 32.

THese pils do marvellously purge Cholera, Phlegma, and the Melancholy, and are especiall good for all Rheumes, and be especial good for all dark sight. They are also good for the pain of the ears, and for all pain of the guts.

Pillulæ stomachicæ. §. 33.

THese pils expel *Phlegma*, and the *Cholera* out of the stomach, and moreover out of the head, and they be also good for many more diseases.

The fourteenth Chapter.

THe Physitians and Apothecaries have certain conserves in use of some fruits and other things, whereas they temper nothing but Sugar with it, which they call *Rob*: amongst which the commoneſt is the *Rob de Berberis*, and *de Citoniis*, that is, *Rob* of Quinces, and *De Cornibus*, that is, of Gadriles, *Rob Nucum*, that is, of Nuts, *De Ribes*, that is, of Raspes, &c.

Hony of Roses. §. 1.

HOny of Roses is made after divers manners, like as such is taught in the first part; the third Chapter, and 4. §. whereas his use and vertue is declared.

Vinegar of Roses. §. 2.

TAke red Rose buds, cut off the white beneath, and pour red wine Vinegar upon it, to the end that they be well covered with it, and then let them stand to the space of two moneths in the hot Sun. In this manner also is made all manner of vinegar of herbs, and other flowers.

Vinegar of Rue. §. 3.

This Vinegar is made after the same manner as the Vinegar of Roses.

The fifteenth Chapter.

THis Chapter is none other, but a gathering together of certain Salves, Siefs (which be Eye powders) Syrupes, and Species, which be remembred in this book, and used daily at the Apothecaries.

Ægyptiacum. §. 1.

VVE will now speak first of the salve of Egypt, whose preparation is described in the fift Part, the first Chapter, and 16. §.

Salve of *Agrippa.* §. 2.

TAke Bryony roots 12. ounces, roots of wilde Cucumbers six ounces, Squills three ounces, Ireas one ounce and a half, roots of Fern, of wilde Eldern, and water

nuts, of each one ounce, white Wax seven ounces and a half, Sallad oyl 24. ounces; take the roots all fresh, and let them steep three or eight dayes in oyl, afterwards seethe them and wring them out, you are are then to melt the Wax in this decoction. This salve is marvellous good for the Dropsie, and all swelling of the body: it is also good for all diseases of the sinewes, it driveth out the water, and if it be anointed on the outside, then doth it loose the belly, and is especiall good for all pain of the kidneyes.

Salve of Alabaster. §. 3.

This salve is also very seldom used, and in this book was it spoken of but once.

Unguentum album. §. 4.

In the fourth part of this book be described five kindes of those white salves, and therewith declared for what they be meet. These white salves are so rife and common, that the skin can scarce get any disease for which the same are not used.

Unguentum de Althea. §. 5.

This salve of Hollihock roots is very common, whereof there be four kinds, and also their vertues described in the third part, the 14. Chap. and 1. §.

Unguentum Anodynum. §. 6.

The Grecians do call those salves Anodyna, which do asswage all manner of pain, whereof there be sundry described in this book, which you may look for in the Register.

Unguentum mundificativum de Apio. §. 7.

This is a mundifying salve, made of Smallage, her preparation is described in the third part, the third Chapter, and 9. §.

Unguentum Apostolorum. §. 8.

This salve of the Apostles and her efficacy is described in the third part, the eight Chapter, and third §.

Unguentum Aragon. §. 9.

This salve is much used, but is very troublesome to be made, it helpeth all cold diseases of the body, all convulsions of the sinewes, the weakness of the joynts, and all pain of the same.

Unguentum de Artanita. §. 10.

Of *Mesua*, there be two kinds of this salve described which are very seldom made, they be especial good against the dropsie, they kill worms, and expel the same, they loose the stomach very mildly, if one anoint it very fat underneath the navel, like as is wont to be done in vomiting.

Unguentum de Cerussa. §. 11.

This salve is described in the fourth part amongst other white salves.

Unguentum Citrinum. §. 12.

At all Apothecaries this salve is alwaies ready, but it is somewhat troublesome to be made: it driveth away the spots in the face, it is good against all roughnesse, against all redness of the eyes, and it softneth all hardnesse, but is not much used in this book.

Unguentum

Unguentum Comitissæ. §. 13.

THis salve is very good against all mischances of women, it stoppeth the bleeding of the Pyles: and it is also very good for the kidneyes, but it is very hard and troublesome to be made.

Salves for Scabs. §. 14.

Sundry of these salves are described in the first Part, the third Chapter, and ninth §.

Unguentum infrigidans Galeni. §. 15.

THis cooling salve is in the first Part, the first Chapter, and 1. §. described, and therewithal also her vertue and operation.

Unguentum Martianum, vel Martiatum. §. 16.

THere are three kinds of them described by the Physitians which be compounded of many things together, and are also of sundry operations, yet here too long to discourse.

Unguentum Mercuriale. §. 17.

THis salve of Quicksilver is much used for the Pocks, and is described in the fist part, third Chapter, and fift §.

Unguentum Nervinum. §. 18.

The description of this sinew salve do you find in first Part, the 13. Chapter, and 2. §.

Vnguentum Nihili. §. 19.

Her preparation is to be found in the first part, the seventh Chapter, and 4. §.

Vnguentum Pectorale. §. 20.

Whereof be two sorts described in the second part, the fift Chapter, and fift §.

Pomada, Pomadoes. §. 21.

The manner to make this salve shall you find in the first part, the eleventh Chap. and 1. §.

Vnguentum Pompholigos. §. 22.

THe preparing of this Tuty salve is described in the second part, the second Chapter, and second §. and her vertue is to be found in the table of the Tuty.

Vnguentum Populeonis. §. 23.

THis Poplar salve is rife at all Apothecaries, and is very troublesome to be made: wherefore is the same to be fetched at the Apothecaries: it is good against all unnatural heat; and if it be anointed upon the temples of the head, then procureth it sleep.

Vnguentum Rosatum. §. 24.

THe preparation of this salve is described in the first part, the first Chapter, and second §. and is there also taught how that it is good against all hot pain of the head, and other pains which be caused through heat.

Vnguentum Sandalinum. §. 25.

THis salve of Saunders is much used in effluxion of humane seed, and is described in the third part, the sixt Chapter, and fift §. This and other salves be used for many other things, which (as the cause shall require) are to be sought in the table.

The second Part of this Chapter, of Sief.

WE have discovered before, that the Physitians understand through this Arabian name *Sief*, all manner of fine and impalpable eye-powders, whereof some have been described in this book.

Sief Album Rasis. §. 1.

THis *Sief* is used for all red, sore, and waterish eyes, and is described in the first part, the 7. Chap. and 1. §. for what it is further to be used, look for that in the second table upon the name *Sief.*

Sief de Fellibus. §. 2.

The manner to prepare this *Sief*, is to be found in the first part, the 7. Chap. and 15. §.

Sief Memithe. §. 3.

His preparation is in the first part, the seventh Chapter and tenth §.

Sief de Plumbo. §. 4.

This is described in the first part, the seventh Chapter, and tenth §.

Sief de Rosis. §. 5.

This *Sief* of Roses is described against sore eyes in the first part, the 7. Chap. and sixt §.

Sief de Thure. §. 6.

This *Sief* of Frankincense is set down in the first part, and seventh Chapter.

Sief viride. §. 7.

This *Sief* shall you find in the first part of this book, the sixt Chapter, and first §.

The third Part of this Chapter of Sirupes.

Of the Sirupes and juices in general.

BOth of these things, as Sirupes and Juices, be almost innumerable that be used in Physick, to wit, the juices of fruits, herbs, flowers, roots, and such like things, sometimes alone, but tempered for the most part alwaies with other things, according as each pleaseth, as may be discerned throughout all this Book. Wherefore it is not our purpose to gather here together such things, but onely those which are most used: but we will as much as is possible, most truely expound and translate their names into English, and also adjoyn therewith their operations and powers. First, you have in the Introduction how all Juices are to be clarified. Secondly, it is also a general rule, that no sour juices, as the juice of unripe Grapes, Barberries, neither wine nor vinegar are to be sodden in Copper vessels, for that they may get an hurtful taste; but the same are to be decocted in earthen leaden pots. Thirdly, you have also in the first part, the first Chap. and 6. §. how that the compounded sirupes are to be decocted. Fourthly, because that it importeth much that the sirupes be decocted too hard, to the end they come not to candise, and that they be not sodden too thin, and come not to be moldy: wherefore the proof also is described in the Introduction, whereby may certainly be understood when as they be enough: like as is also sufficiently admonished of each sirupe that they may be clarified.

Sirupus

Syrupus de Absinthio, that is, of Wormwood. §. 1.

TAke Romish Wormwood, or if you can get it, then take of the common wormwood 6. ounces, red Roses two ounces, Indy Spica 3. drachmes, good white wine, and the juyce of Quinces, of each 24. ounces, let them steep all together in an earthen pot the space of one whole night, and afterwards seethe it to the half; this being done, strain it, then put four and twenty ounces of clear hony or Sugar unto it, and then let it seethe to a sirupe, This sirup is also especial good for the stomach, for the Liver, and for all nourishing parts: it maketh appetite to meat, and helpeth to digest the meat: it is good for the falling sickneſſe, it expelleth wind and driveth out all bad humours by the urine. In the table under the name of Wormwood is her vertue described at large.

Syrupus de Acetosa, of Sorrel. §. 2.

TAke the juyce of Sorrel three parts, Sugar two parts; let it seethe together, scum, and clarifie it well until it be sufficiently decocted. This sirup is good for all hot pestilential Agues: it quencheth the thirst, and the inflaming heat of the heart, and also of the stomach, and it strengtheneth the same. See further in the table of the Sorrel.

Syrupus Acetosus, of Vinegar. §. 3.

IN the third Part, the 11. Chap. and 9. §. is taught how that this sirup is to be made, and one may also read her use there.

Syrupus Acetosus compositus, also of Vinegar. §. 4.

HOw this sirup, and also *de Radicibus*, is to be made, is to be seen in the third Part, the 11. Chap. and 9. §. where both their operations be described.

Syrupus acetosus de Cytoniis, which is of sour Quinces. §. 5.

Her preparation is described in the third Part, the eleventh Chapter, and sixt §.

Syrupus Acetosus Diarrhodon, that is, of Vinegar of Roses. §. 6.

THis sirup is very seldom used, but for what it is good, you may read that in the table of the Roses.

Syrupus de Acetositate Citri, of the juyce of Citrons. §. 7.

TAke the juyce of Citrons, which is strained through a cloth without wringing, otherwise the juyce will be thick when it is cold, like as pap; then seethe away this juyce, with half so much Sugar. This sirup hath the same vertue as the sirup of Oranges, whereof we will speak shortly, but that it is more forcible. This sirup is made thus in *Cipro*, like as hereafter followeth; Take clear juyce, Sugar half so much, then stop it tight, and and set it in the Sun. This sirup remaineth alwayes clear. Both these sirups be good against all venome, but especially for the Plague and all other putrified humours: it strengtheneth the stomach, it cooleth the heart, and all other inward parts, it quencheth thirst, it bringeth sleep, it stayeth all vapours of the stomach, especially if one drink too much. Read further in the Table of the Citrons, and their vertues.

Syrupus de Agresta, of Verjuyce. §. 8.

FOr what Verjuyce is good, and how the same is to be made, we have taught in the first Chap. of this 8. Part: for the sirup are you to take 5. ounces, short sodden and unsalted Verjuyce, and 3. ounces and a half of Sugar; then let them seethe together unto a sirup.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Aurantiis, of Oranges. §. 9.

TAke the juyce of sweet Oranges, which is wrung through a cloth, and well cleansed, two parts, Sugar one part; seethe them together unto a sirup. This sirup is very good for all heat caused of Choler. Likewise it is also good in all pestilential Agues, and it asswageth the thirst singular well: it may also be made of four Oranges, for that the same is much more forcible then that of Citrons.

Syrupus de Artemisia, of Mugwort. §. 10.

THis sirup is very troublesome to be made, wherefore we will commend it to the Apothecaries: it is very good for all diseases of the Matrix, it keepeth it in her due place, it expelleth all wind, and all pain of the same, it strengtheneth the sinews, it openeth the pores, it maketh good blood, and it forceth womens terms. For what purpose else it may be used, look in the Table of the Barberries.

Syrupus de Berberis, of Barberries. §. 11.

TAke Barberries which be very ripe, and let them seethe well in wine until that they be mellow, then wring it through a cloth, and boyl the colature with Sugar, as before. Item, take the juyce of ripe Barberries, and let it seethe apart, afterwards scum it well: when it is well cleansed, take as much Sugar as juyce, seethe it all together unto a sirup: her vertue is to be read in the Table of the Barberries.

Syrupus de Betonica, of Betony. §. 12.

THe description of this sirup is very long, wherefore we will pretermit: her vertue may be judged by the description of the herb Betony in the Table.

Syrupus Byzantinus. §. 13.

TAke the juyce of Endive and of Berberries, of each six ounces, the juyce of Hops and of Bugloss, of each three ounces, seethe all together, clarifying it until there remain 12. ounces, then put 7. ounces and a half of Sugar unto it, and let them seethe all together to a sirup. This sirup maketh all the tough slimy matter to avoide, and it openeth all obstructions, wherefore it is also good for all yellow Jaundise, like as there be many other sirups.

Syrupus de Borragine, of Burrage. §. 14.

WE have before admonished in the fourth Chap. in the description of the conserve of Burrage, that there is none, nor indeed very small difference between the Burrage and the Bugloss: nevertheless there be made at the Apothecaries two kinds of sirups, and commonly mixed with other medicines: wherefore is an housholder to prepare it thus, Take the juyce of both these herbs, of each 8. ounces, the juyce of both these flowers, of each one ounce, seethe the same with 4. ounces of Sugar, and scum it as behoveth, and ought to be; you may suffer the flowers to seethe in some water, and pour the juyce unto it. This sirup is good against all diseases of the heart, and it maketh a merry mind: and of her power you may read further in the Register of Burrage.

Syrupus de Buglossa. §. 15.

Of this sirup is sufficiently written in this foresaid sirup of Burrage.

Syrupus de Calamintha, of field Mints.

TAke of the filed Mints and white water of Mints, of each two ounces, the seed of Lovage, of the greater Pimpernel (instead of *Dauci Cretici*) and Squinant, of each five drach. Rasins 6. ounces, hony 24. ounces, let them seethe all that is to seethe, scum and wring

wring it out well; then make with hony, or with as much Sugar a sirup of it. This sirup is especial good for a hard Spleen, and all hard intrails, and also for an old Cough, of all old people, which be Plagued with a feeble and short breath: like as you may read further of the Mints in the table.

Syrupus Capillorum Veneris, or of Maiden-hair. §. 17.

THis sirup doth cost very much labour before the same may be made, like as we have admonished under the name of Maydenhair in the Table.

Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhabarbaro, of Cicory. §. 18.

AT all Apothecaries this sirup is very rife: it cleanseth and withstandeth all poyson, and especially the Carbuncle, and such like: it strengtheneth the heart, and all nutritive parts; it is also good for all pestilent Agues, it expelleth all bad matter by the stool, and by the urine: it causeth also apperite to sleep.

Syrupus de Cydoniis, of Quinces. §. 19.

THis sirup is like to all the other sirups, made of Sugar and juyce of Quinces: you shall read of her vertue and efficacy in the Register in the description of Quinces. There is another sirup described before of sour Quinces, called *Mixta Cydoniorum*. Further, there are juyces or thick sirups prepared under the name of *Mira*, whereof there be some described in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 17. §.

Syrupus de Citro, of Citrons. §. 20.

SOme do take not onely the sourneſſe of the Citrons, but also the juyce of the white rinds, so that not onely the outwardmost peeles and the seeds are separated; but this sirup is not so forcible as that which is prescribed: yet they be both made and used in all hot sicknesses.

Syrupus de corticibus Citri, of Citron peels. §. 21.

TAke the outwardmost fresh peels of Citrons, cut in small peeces, one pound, pour thereon five times as much water, and let it seeth to the half; then wring it through a cloth, afterwards put a pound of Sugar unto it. When it is almost sodden to a sirup, then put 4. grains of Musk unto it, broken in Rosewater. This sirup cooleth not like the former, but it warmeth and strengtheneth the heart, and the brains, all inward parts, and the vital spirits. It strengtheneth the weak stomach, maketh a good breath, and defendeth from the Plague, &c.

Syrupus de Cucurbita, of Gourds. §. 22.

This sirup is seldom used, and in this Book but onely in two places.

Syrupus de Endivia, of Endive. §. 23.

OF this herb be many sundry sirups made. That which is called *Simplex*, is made thus: take the juyce of green Endive one pound, and when it is clarified through seething, then put ten ounces of Sugar unto it, seethe it away, like as all other sirups be. This sirup is good against all inward heat of the Liver, and other nutritive parts, it is used for many kinds of things, as may be seen in the Register.

Syrupus de Epithymo. §. 24.

AT well furnished Apothecaries this sirup is rife, whereas the same is to be fetched: it expelleth the burnt cholerick humours, it doth therefore withstand all sicknesses which spring or come thereof, viz. the Leprosie, Canker, bad ulcers, and Fistulaes: like as his name shall shew in the Table.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Eupatorio, of Agrimony. §. 25.

THe opinion of many learned men is, that our Agrimony is the true *Eupatorium*: of this is also a sirup made, which is very troublesome to be made: wherefore we will not describe the same here. It hath a special power for to help the cold and obstructed liver, to expel all Dropsies and such like sicknesses, for to make all grosse slime thin, and to strengthen the liver: it also moveth urine. Look further of her vertue in the table of Agrimony.

Syrupus de fumo Terræ of Fumitory. §. 26.

TAke the juyce of Fumitory, and of the sprouts of Hops, of each one pound, clarifie it and temper it like as we have taught, and then decoct it unto a sirup with one pound of Sugar. At the Apothecaries there is another made of many sundry things, which here we will not describe. These sirups be both good for to open all obstructions of the stomach, and of the liver; for to strengthen the same also and to cleanse the blood, that thereby all scabbednesse, all bad sores, and such like accidents may be suppressed, and avoided. Wherefore they be also good against the Pocks, against all old ulcers, Leprosie, and other such like diseases more.

Syrupus de Glycyriza, of Licorice. §. 27.

THe common people do make this sirup thus; Take a pound of small sliced Licorice, and pour thereon two pots of water, afterwards let it seethe so long, until the vertue come out; then strain it, and put to this decoction one ounce of Dragagant, and let it seethe together until it be thick enough. This sirup is very good for the Cough, and for all toughnesse of the breast. But this following is the right sirup of Licorice: Take small sliced Licorice one ounce, Maidenhair half an ounce, Hyssop one quarter of an ounce, put a quart of water unto it, and let it all together infuse the space of 24. hours, afterwards put unto it clear hony, Sugar pennets, and white Sugar, of each 4. ounces, Rose water 3. ounces, seethe it together unto a sirup. This sirup cleanseth the breast, and the lights, it is very good for all cold coughs, and also for the Pleurisie, as you may read in the table of Licorice.

Syrupus Granatorum, of Pomgranats. §. 28.

IT is a great abuse to wring out the sour and sweet Pomgranats together, by reason that the sour and the sweet each apart are meet for sundry diseases, but the foresaid mixture we will leave alone for Cookery: thus, take two quarts of Pomgranate wine, and seethe it so long until it be well clarified, then temper amongst it half a pound of Sugar, and so set it in the Sun until it come to work, and then afterwards preserve it in a cellar.

And for to write apart of the sour Pomgranats: Take thereof five pound of the juyce, and white Sugar three pound, seethe it together to a sirup, scumming it alwayes about. This sirup is very forcible in all hot Agues which be caused of Cholera.

The sirup of sweet Pomgranats is prepared in all sorts as the former, like as the same is taught in the table at large of the Pomgranats, and every one may direct himself accordingly.

Syrupus de Hyssopo, of Hyssop. § 29.

YOu must take dry Hyssop, the roots of Smallage, of Fennel, Parsly, and of Licorice, of each 5. drach. peeled Barly one quarter of an ounce, the seed of Mallowes, of Quince kernels and of Dragagant, of each one drach. and a half, Maidenhair three drach. Jujubes and Sebestes, of each 14. or 15. Currans 3. quarters of an ounce, Figs, and Dates, of each 5. or 6. Sugar pennets 12. ounces, then make a sirup thereof. This sirup is very forcible for all the diseases of the breast, and of the lights: it causeth all tough slime to avoide which may hardly be coughed up, like as shall be more at large taught thereof in the English Regist[illegible] under the name of Hyssop.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Ireos, of Irena. §. 30.

THis sirup is made, as in the third Part, the 10. Chapter, and 9. §. is taught, whereas it is ordained against the Dropsie *Tympanites*, like as also the Table under the name of Ireos doth give to understand.

Syrupus de Jujubis. §. 31.

OF Jujubes take thirty or thirty six, the seed of Violets, and of Mallowes, of each two drachmes and a half, Maiden hair, peeled Barley, and Licorice, of each half an ounce, Quince kernels, white Poppy seed, the seed of Melons, of Lettice, and Dragagant, of each one drachme and a half; seeth them together in Well water, and to this decotion strained, put twelve ounces of Sugar, and then let it seeth to a sirup. The same sirup is good against all hoarseneſse against the Cough, and against the Pleurisie, and also to other diseases more, like as the Table doth expresse.

Syrupus de Limonibus, of Limons. §. 32.

THis sirup is made of fresh Limons, even as the sirup of Oranges is made; but it is far stronger then the sirup of Citrons, like as the same may be seen in the Regiſter under the name of Limons.

Syrupus de Lupulo, of Hops. §. 33.

TAke the juice of the sprigs of young Hops one pound, and the juice of Fumitory half a pound, which be both very clear decocted, and scummed, afterwards seeth them with a pound and a half of Sugar unto a sirup. The juice of Hops may also be taken alone. This sirup cooleth much, it expelleth the yellow Jaundise; moreover all slimineſse and also the Dropsie through the stool, and is also good for all other things, like as is sufficiently declared under the name of Hops in the Table.

Syrupus de Menta, of Mints. §. 34.

THere be two kinds of Sirups of Mints, as the same and also their virtues are described in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 17. §. where it is also admoniſhed, that it is especial meet for the Laxe. For what causes more the same is profitable, that may you read in the Table under the name of Mints.

Syrupus de Myrto, of Mirtle seed. §. 35.

IN the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 17. §. is this Sirup also specified, which is very commodious for many things, like as you may read in the Table.

Syrupus de Nimphea, of water Lillies. §. 36.

TAke of the white leaves of water Lilly flowers one pound, let them wallme up in water, afterwards wring them hard out through a cloth, and then seeth this decoction, skumming it, with a pound of Sugar to a sirup. This sirup is very meetly used for all hot sicknesses, like as before is taught in the fourth Chapter, and 39. §. It moisteneth, it cooleth, and furthers sleep. Another, which is commonly prepared at all Apothecaries: Take the leaves of white water Lillies one ounce, yellow water Lillies half an ounce, seeds of Flea-wort and of Sorrel, of each half an ounce, the seeds of Melons, of Citruls, of Gourds, and of Cucumbers, (all together peeled) of each one quarter of an ounce; the seeds of Lettice, of Endive, of small Endive, and of Purslain, of each one drachme, Fennel roots half an ounce; shred it all together very small, and let it seeth in Barley water: afterwards strain it thorow, and wring it out hard. Now being clarified, then put six ounces of white Sugar unto it, Vinegar and the juice of four Pomgranates of each one ounce, then let them seeth altogether again unto a sirup, at last temper yellow Saunders with it, and Indi Spica, of each two scruples.

This

This sirup doth marvellous much withstand the hot *Cholera*, and besides all hot Agues, and procureth also sleep: it is also to be used for more other things, like as the Table under the name of water Lillies doth set forth.

Syrupus de Papavere, of Poppy heads. §. 37.

THere be two kinds of these sirups made, the one called *Compositum*, is thus made: Take black and white Poppy heads which be very fresh, of each 25. drachmes, Maiden hair seven drachmes and a half, Licorice 22. drachmes, Jujubes 15. drachmes, Lettice seed two ounces and a half, Mallowes seed and Quince kernels, of each three drachmes, seeth them altogether in a pot of water even to the half: afterwards wring it out, and seeth this decoction again, with Sugar and Sugar pennets, of each four ounces unto a sirup. This sirup is very good against all dry Coughes, against the Consumption *Phthisis*, and against all rheumes, it maketh sleep, and is also good for more other causes, like as the Table maketh mention.

Syrupus de Persicis, of Peaches. §. 38.

THis sirup is made of the juice of the self-same fruits, her virtues are described in the fourth Chapter; and wherefore it is further good, look for that in the Table of the Peaches.

Syrupus de Plantagine, of Plantain. §. 39.

THis sirup is very seldom used, and besides made with greater trouble; it is also used but once, to wit, in the obstruction of the Pyles; it is made onely of the juice like as all other sirupes.

Syrupus de Pomis, of Apples. §. 40.

OF Apples there be two kinds of sirupes made, like as the same be described in the second Part, the sixt Chapter, and fourth §. their use is declared in the Register under the name or title of Apples.

Syrupus de Portulaca, of Purslain, §. 41.

THis sirup is also made of the juice of the herb, but used very seldom, like as one may read in the Register under the name of Purslain.

Syrupus de Prassio, of Horehound. §. 42.

TAke Horehound one ounce, Licorice half an ounce, Maidenhair, and Hyssop, of each three drachmes, Currans, Anise, Roots of Smallage, and of Fennel, of each 2. drach. and a half, of the greater Pimpernel seed, of Fenegreek, and Ireos, of each one drach. and a half, Linseed, and Quince kernels, of each one drachme, Currans one ounce, eight or ten Figs, Sugar pennets, and Sugar, or Hony, of each twelve ounces; then make a sirup thereof like as is taught before. This sirup is very good against all diseases of the breast, and of the lights, which be caused of cold tough slimenesse, and be hard to be expelled; but it is especial good for all old ancient people which have stuffed breasts. The register teacheth further for what this sirup is meet.

Syrupus de Pyris, of Pears. §. 43.

THis sirup hath the same power which the sirup of Peaches hath; it is also made and used for the self same sicknesses.

Syrupus de Radicibus, of Roots. §. 44.

THere be also two sorts made of this, the one of twain, and the other of five kinds of roots, like as the same in the third Part, the 20 Chap. and 28. §. are described, where be also their vertues discovered. But whereto the same be further meet, look for that in the Register under the name of the sirup of Roots.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Ribes, of Raspes. §. 45.

TAke three pounds of the juice of Raspes, and two pounds of good Sugar, seeth the same unto a sirup. For what it is good, look before in the fourth Chapter, where it is described how that the same is to be made after sundry fashions.

Syrupus infusionis Rosarum, of Roses. §. 46.

TAke fresh Rose leaves twelve ounces, put them in a pot, and pour upon it 30 ounces of hot Rose water; afterwards stop the pot close, and so let it stand a steep the space of eight houre; this being done, then wring it out and put fresh Roses unto it again, then let it stand a steep as before, then being wrung out again, put twenty ounces of Sugar unto it, and seeth it together softly unto a sirup; this sirup is especial good for to slake thirst, to cool all heat, and hot Agues, and also to strengthen the stomach: It withstandeth all rotten humours; wherefore it is also very good for the Plague; it withstandeth winds and other diseases more, like as the Table maketh mention at large.

Syrupus de Rosis siccis, of dry Roses. §. 47.

ALso there is a sirup made of dry Roses which looseth not, but bindeth, but it is not much used, and is made like as in the first Part, the 13. Chapter, and 4 §. is shewed, look for this in the Table under the title of Hony of Roses.

Syrupus Rosatus solutivus, purging sirup of Roses. §. 48.

ALso there be sundry sirupes of Roses laxative prepared, as liketh each Physitian best; whereof in the first Part, the second Chapter, and seventh §. are described the two commonest sorts, and their vertues and operation added unto it. For what they be now further to be used, look into the Table under the name of Roses.

Syrupus de Rosis albis, of white Roses. §. 49.

ALthough this sirup be very profitable, nevertheless it is much used; it cooleth much more then the red sirup. Some do commonly take onely the juice wrung out of the flowers, and they seeth it short, with Sugar unto a sirupe, to the end, that it might the better retain his virtue. Look further into the Register of white Roses.

Syrupus super Regium. §. 50.

TAke the juice of Bugloss and of Burrage, of each six ounces, the juice of sweet Apples nine ounces, let them stand and settle, and afterwards put one ounce of Sene husks unto it, let them so infuse 24. houres, and then let it seeth a waume or twain, and afterwards seeth it with nine ounces of Sugar, unto a sirupe; further, hang with a little bag, half a drachme of Saffron in it, and wring it sentities out. This sirup is onely occupied in *Melancholia*.

Syrupus de Stechade, of Stechas flowers. §. 51.

THese be two kinds described, but we will commend them unto the Apothecaries: for they be also good for all cold diseases of the braine, and of the sinews, also for the Palsey, for the falling sickness, for the Cramp, for the convulsion of the mouth, for the shaking: they do strengthen the stomach, and all outward parts, like as the Register further declareth, under the name of Stechas.

Syrupus de Thymo, of Thyme. §. 52.

This sirup is also very seldom, and in this Book it is onely used against the Leprosie.

Syrupus

Syrupus Violarum, of Violets. §. 53.

THis present sirup is also described after three kinds of sorts: The first is made by infusion, like the sirup of Roses; the same is good against all inward burning, against all heat of Agues, of the Liver, of the Heart, against all roughnesse of the throat, against thirst, and against the obstruction of the belly.

The purging sirup of Violets is made laxative like the sirup of Roses, which is described in the first Part.

The third sirupe is made as hereafter followeth: Take one ounce of fresh Violets, Quince kernels, the seed of Mallowes, of each half an ounce, Jujubes and Sebestes, of each ten or twelve, water of Gourds as much as will suffice, let it then seeth together until the third part be boyled away. This sirup doth open the breast, the obstruction of the Lights, it asswageth all roughnesse of the throat, and all cough which is caused of heat, it is also good for the Pleurisie, and for all dryth: it is very much used, like as the Register maketh mention under the name of Violets.

The fourth part of this Chapter, of the Species, and of Loosings.

THoroughout all this Book, there be many kinds of Powders or Species used, which at all furnished Apothecaries be composed together and prepared of sundry things, of which all kinds of cordial waters, confections, and other things be made. But because the same be tempered together of many sundry things, and by reason that there cannot be made many at one time, therefore we have refrained from writing much of them.

Species de Ambra, of Amber. §. 1.

BEcause that this powder and Confection that is made of it, is very much used and vequisite, therefore we will here describe the same: Take Cinamom, *Doronicum*, Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, Clove leaves, and Galangal, of each 3. drachmes, Indi *Spica*, Cardamom, and Greins, of each one drachme, Ginger one drach. and a half, yellow Saunders, *Lignum Aloes*, and long Pepper, of each one quarter of an ounce, Amber one drachme, Musk half a drachme; then temper them, and pownd them all together very small: it is very forcible for all debility of the head, and of the whole body, it provoketh natural heat, it is also very good for all them that be vexed with cold humours, and in like manner for the joynts, and against the wambling of the stomach that can keep no meat or food, it causeth appetite and strengtheneth the heart. For what this powder or this Confection may be further used, that is here and there to be found throughout the whole book.

Species de Anise, of Annis. §. 2.

THese Species be very troublesome to be made, and they be not very much used. For what they be further good, look into the Table under the name of Annis.

Species de Rosmarino, of Rosemary. §. 3.

OF the flowers of Rosemary take half an ounce, Violets, Roses, and Licorice, of each [illegible] drachmes, Cloves, Indy Spica, Nutmegs, Galangal, Cinamom, Ginger, Zedoary, Mace, Lignum Aloes, Cardamom, Annis and Dill seed, of each two scruples, temper them all together. If you will have Tabulats of it, then take 8. ounces of Sugar, and make them up, these Species and loosinges be especiall good for all melancholick and feeble persons, it maketh merry, it strengtheneth the stomach, and is very meet for many more other things, like as the Table under the name of Rosemary doth specifie.

Species aromaticum Rosarum. §. 4.

THese Species are used for the debility of the stomach, and is described in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 5. §. You shall further find their virtues in the Register of Roses.

Species de Calaminthe, of field Mints. §. 5.

BEfore is declared in the tenth Chapter, and 6. §. how that three kinds of mixtures be described by the Physitians, which be all made of Mints, but by reason their Species be much more usual then their Confection: therefore we will here notifie them, like *Mesua* describeth them. Take field Mints, Marjoram, the seeds of Silvermountain, and of Parsley of *Macedony*, of each three drachmes, Ginger one drachme and a half, the seeds of Smallage and sprigs of Thyme, of each one drachme, Lovage seed three drach. Pepper three quarters of an ounce, then temper them together: These Species be very good against all cold stomachs, lost appetite, those which be vexed with wind, and against shortnesse of breath, and also for other causes more, like as the Table maketh mention under the name of Mints.

Species de Capparis, of Caper roots. §. 6.

THese Species are used very seldome, but the loosings thereof be onely once in this book ordained, *viz.* against the Spleen.

Species de Caryophyllis, of Cloves. §. 7.

THese Species be also called at the Apothecaries *Aromaticum Caryophyllatum*, and be made of many sundry things, they do strengthen the heart and the stomach, they expell the wambling and parbreaking, and do separate all tough slimenesse of the stomach, they do warm all nourishing parts, and also expel all winds: look further in the Table under the name of Cloves.

Species de Cinamomo, of Cinamom. §. 8.

IN the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 5. §. be these Species described after two waies, and also their vertue thereby declared. For what they be further good, look in the Table under the name of Cinamom.

Species Cordiales, for the heart. §. 9.

OF these Species be sundry prepared, like as *De Gemmis*, and *Diamargariton*, and others more, which be altogether made for the heart. There be also a certain sort of these Species in the second Part, the sixth Chapter, and 8. §. described.

Species Diacostu, of Costus roots. §. 10.

THese Species be very seldom prepared, for that there come certain doubtful things into it. But they be good for all inward pain, and for the beginning of the Dropsie; but they be not more then once ordained in this book, against a diseased Liver.

Species de Croco, or *Crocoma*, of Saffron. §. 11.

THese Species be commonly called with a wrong name, *Diacurcuma*: They be (because of certain things which be put into them) very troublesome to be made, and be also not much used. Their vertue is to correct all ingring sicknesses of the Spleen and the Liver, as when a body is inclined to the Dropsie: they be very good against all slimy cold humours of the stomach, they do cause wind to avoid, and also all pains of the Kidneys, and of the bladder; but especially they expel water. Look further for it in the Register, under the name of Saffron.

Species de Cymino, of Comin. §. 12.

TAke Comin ſeed one ounce and one ſcruple, let them ſteep in vinegar the ſpace of 24. hours and dry again; Cinamom and Cloves, of each two drachmes and a half, Pepper and Ginger, of each one quarter of an ounce and five greins, Galangal, Savery, and field Mints, of each half a ſcruple, the ſeed of *Ameos* and of Lovage, of each one drachme, and eighteen greins, long Pepper one drachme, Indi Spica, Cardamom, and Nutmegs, of each two ſcruples and a half, make a powder of it. This powder is good for the diſeaſes of the ſinews, for a heavy breath, for the Cough, for the Stomach, and it openeth all obſtructions; but it is moſt uſed in loſinges, like as the Table teacheth the ſame under the name of Comin.

Species de Tragacantha, of Dragagant. §. 13.

THere be alſo two kinds made thereof, to wit, cold and hot ſpecies of Dragagant; the hot you may find in the firſt Part, the fourteenth Chapter, and 4. §. and the cold be alſo deſcribed there, and there be declared their properties, and uſes, like as you may ſee in the Table under the name of Dragagant.

Species Ducis. §. 14.

THeſe be tempered together of many kinds of things; they be very good for a cold windy ſtomach, and for all inward cold parts. Item, for all cramping and pain of the uppermoſt bowels, and alſo for the Stone.

Species de Galanga, of Galangal. §. 15.

THis Species and Confections are alſo made every where and uſed: Take Galangal, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each ſeven drachmes, Cloves, Mace, and Lovage ſeed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Ginger, long and white Pepper, Calamus, and Cinamom, of each one drachme and a half, garden Mints, Cardamom, Indi Spica, the ſeed of Smallage, of Fennel, Annis, and Comin, of each one drachme, pownd them very ſmall unto a powder. This Powder is eſpecial good for all wind, for all belchings of the ſtomach, it helpeth much for the digeſtion of the ſtomach, it warmeth the Liver and alſo the Stomach. For what this, as well in powder, as alſo in loſinges is uſed, that is to be found in the Table under the name of Galangal.

Species de Gemmis, of pretious ſtone. §. 16.

BEfore in the Cordial Species is admoniſhed, that theſe may be called cordial ſpecies, whereof we have written down five kinds, viz. in the ſecond Part of this Book, the ſixth Chapter, and 9. §. And for what the ſame is uſed in Phyſick, that is declared in the Table under the name of precious ſtones.

Species Hiera ſimplicis. §. 17.

THeſe Species be made like as in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 20. §. is ſhewed; and for what they be further good, is ſufficiently taught and declared throughout all this Book.

Species de Ireos, of Ireas. §. 18.

THeſe Species be deſcribed in the firſt Part, the 14. Chapter, and 2. §. their power and operation is to be found in the Regiſter under the name of *Ireas*.

Species Juſſion. §. 19.

FOrasmuch as the deſcription of this ſpecies is very long, we will omit here to deſcribe the ſame, as alſo for that they are not much uſed. Theſe Species and the loſinges

which

which be made thereof, be very good against all pain of the Kidnyes, they break the stone, expell gravel, and open the passage of urine. For what they may be yet further used, that is taught sufficiently here and there, where is discoursed especially of the pain of the bowels, and of the gravel.

Species de Lacca. §. 20.

THese Species be made of many kind of things, but yet very seldome used: they be good against all obstructions, and against all swellings, they do mollify the hardnesse of the Kidnyes and the Liver, they expel all causes of the Dropsies, they move womens terms, and be good for all old yellow Jaundise, like as the Table doth shew at large under the name of Lacca.

Species Letificantes, and *Letitiæ Galeni.* 22.

BOth of these species have the names, to make merry. The first is described in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter and 8. §. But we do not describe the other, because that both of them have the same vertue. They both do strengthen the inward parts, they refresh the vital spirits, they do help natural heat, they expel all bad cogitations, they make a good colour, they ease the digestion of the stomach, they make merry, and they stay gray haires, like as is admonished in more other places.

Species Liberantes. §. 22.

THese Species are used in the time of the Plague, like as the same are described in sixt Part, the fifteenth Chapter, and 12. §.

Species Lithontribon. §. 23.

THese Species be expressely ordained for the Stone and the gravel, wherein they be indeed fifty kinds of things mixed together, as the table doth shew.

Species de Margaritis, of Pearles. §. 24.

THese are two kinds of these Species, to wit, cold and hot, the hot Species are described in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter and 12. §. the cold sort which are most used are made in this manner: take the Peeled seeds of Pompeons, Gourds, Citruls, and Cucumbers, Purslain seed, white Poppy seed, white, yellow, and red Sanders, Ginger, Roses, Burrage flowers, Water Lillie flowers, and Myrtle seed, of each one drach. make them all to powder; this powder comfortterh all feebled bodies that are readie still to swoon, whether the cause of swooning be in the heart, or in the stomach. It strengtheneth all inward parts, it is also good against the Cough, against the consumption, for those that by long sicknesses are greatly weakned. But regard must be had to hot and cold diseases, as this also severally is noted under the name of Pearls in the Table.

Species de Mentha, of Mints. §. 25.

THese Species are prepared at the Hpothecaries, but they are seldome used; and you may see their vertues in the name of Mints.

Species de Moschus, of Musk. §. 26.

THese Species are described after two wayes, to wit, under the name of sweet, and bitter Species of Musk, and because their composition is not a little troublesome, we have here omitted to recite them. They are good for the panting of the heart, against all bad dreames, against the tumors of the joynts, against a cold brain, against giddinesse, falling sickneſse, and against the shortnesse of breath. The bitter Species are much stronger then the sweet, and that especially for the moysture and corruption of the stomach, &c.

Species Nere. §. 27.

THeſe ſpecies are for the moſt part mixed with other compoſitions and made as followeth; Take Amber one ounce, *Lignum Aloes* three drachmes, Musk half a ſcruple, Camphire five greins, mix and beat them altogether.

Species de Olibano, of Frankincenſe. §. 28.

THeſe ſpecies, by reaſon of the Opium and Henbane ſeed which be put unto it) are ſeldome uſed inwardly, and therefore made but ſeldome. Whether they be made in powder or in a confection, yet be they alwayes good for all pain of the head, they ſtay all rheumes, they be good againſt the Cough, and ſpetting of blood, and they do alſo expel all wambling of the ſtomach, they be alſo good for all thoſe that have any impediment in the Lights, and them that have the Pleuriſie and ſpet matter, they ſtay the effluxion of natural ſeed, and *Satyriaſis*, beſides that all womens terms, if they run too much, for which in this book they be commended to be uſed: further look into the Table under the title of Frankincenſe.

Species de Papavere, of Poppie ſeed. §. 29.

TAke the juyce of Licorice, Dragagant and Gum, of each five drachmes, white Poppie ſeed, and Sugar Pennets, of each ten drachmes, peeled Almonds five drachmes, Starch, Quince kernels, and Purſlain ſeed, of each two drachmes and a half, peeled Gourds ſeed, the ſeeds of Pompeons, Cucumbers, and Lettice, and of Mallowes, of each one drach. and a half ſhred them, and ſtamp them very ſmall: of this may commonly be made a confection with Sugar like as they are alſo in the Table under the name of looſings to be found.

Species de Benidio. of Sugar Pennets. §. 30.

THeſe ſpecies be alſo deſcribed in the ſecond Part, the fift chapter, and 6. §. and alſo therewith declared for what the ſame is wont to be uſed.

Species Paonie, of Piony. §. 31.

These ſpecies be very ſeldome uſed, and that but once in this whole book.

Species Diaphœniconis, of Dates. §. 32.

THis mixture and her operation is deſcribed in the the third Part, the eleventh Chapter, and fifth §. For what the ſame is now to be uſed, that is to be ſeen in the Table under the name of Dates.

Species Philanthropon. §. 33.

THis is a very great compoſition, ſo that there come indeed ſome fifty things into it. It is ſeldome made, and is uſed in this booke but once, viz. in the obſtruction of the kidneyes.

Species Pliris Arsenicon. §. 34.

IN theſe kinds of Species there are put many kinds of things; they be very good againſt all melancholick and penſive people, againſt weak ſtomachs, and alſo againſt all ſwoonings which proceed of any debility of the heart, they quicken the underſtanding and the memory, they be alſo very good for all them which have the falling ſickneſſe and a ſhort breath, and alſo for other things more.

Species de Prassio, of Horehound. §. 25.

THis is alſo one of the very greateſt compounds, for that it is made of ſome 70 things. It is made in manner of a confection, and alſo in form of looſings. It is good againſt all dazeling and darkneſſe of the eyes, it cleanſeth the throat, and all parts adja-

cent, it dryeth the moisture of the *Vvula* in the throat, it asswageth the toothach, and it is especial good good for the heavy breath, and for all that which causeth the same, it expelleth the pain of the Liver, and strengtheneth the same, it strengtheneth the stomach and the Milt, it expelleth all pain and also all winde of the bowels, it clenseth the Kidneys and passages of urine from all gravel, and when the same is often used, then doth it make a good colour, it furthereth womens Terms, and also is good against the Tertian and Quartan agues. In fine, all they which often use these Losinges or Confections, they are freed and defended from many kindes of sicknesses, but because of their unpleasantnesse, they be seldom used, as in the Register you may see under the title of Horehound.

Species Diarrhodon Abbatis, of Roses. §. 36.

ALbeit that this composition be made of many things, yet it is nevertheless oftentimes used, wherefore will here discribe the same: Take red and white Saunders, ana. ℥. 2. ß. Dragagant Gum, and burnt Ivory, ana. ℈. 2. *Mirabacca*, Mastick, Indy Spica, Cardamom, the juice of Licorice, Saffron, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloves, *Gallia Muscata*, Annis, Fennel, Cinamom, Rubarb, Basil, Barberries, the seeds of small Endive, of Purslain, peeled Melon seed, Gourd seed, the seeds of Cucumbers, of Pompeons, and of white Poppy seed, ana. ℈. 1. Pearls and bones of the Stags heart, ana. ℈. ß. Sugarcandy and Roses, of each one ounce and three drach. Camphire ℥. ß. *Muscus*, G. 3. ß. pownd each apart, and then temper them all together. These species be especial good for all hot Stomacks, for the heat of the Liver, the Milt, of the Lights, and for all pain of the intrailes, and of the whole body. For what these species or their confection be meet, look for that in the Register, under the name of Roses.

Species Electuarii de succo Rosarum, of Roses. §. 37.

THese Species be before in the tenth Chapter, described amongst the Confections: out of which Species there be purging losinges wont to be made. In the Register shall you also finde (under the name of Roses) for what the same are to be used.

Species Rosatæ Novellæ. §. 38.

THese kindes of Species be very seldom prepared; they be especially meet for all hot and dry stomacks, Hearts, Lights, and Livers. They do quench thirst, stay vomiting, they fortifie the Stomach, they draw the resolved inward parts together, and they be very necessary for all that have any panting or beating of the heart, they do withstand sweat, and strengthen them also which be recovered from a long lingering sickneſſe.

Species de Seminibus. §. 39.

THese be also very seldom used, and be made of these seeds following, viz. of Annis, Fennel, Caraway, Cumin, Parsley seed, *Ameos*, seed of Smallage, *Amonum*, of each a like quantity: let all these steep together in Vinegar, and dry again, and afterwards be pownded to powder. They are used in all cold pains of the Kidneyes, in the gravel, and it moveth also urine.

Species Trisantalum, of Saunders. §. 40.

TAke red, white, and yellow Saunders, Rose sugar, and Sugar, of each three drach. Rubarb, burnt Ivory, and the juice of Licorice, of each one quarter of an ounce, and 15. Greins, Dragagant, Starch, Gum, peeled Melon seed, Pompeon seed, seeds of Gourds, of Cucumbers, and of small Endive, of each one drachme and a half, Camphire one scruple, temper them altogether pownded very small. This is especial good against all heat of the Liver, and of the stomach; it is also good against giddinesse, and the yellow Jaundies.

Species Trion-Piperon, of Pepper. §. 41.

TAke long, white, and black Pepper, of each five drachmes, Ginger, Thyme, and Annis, of each one quarter of an ounce, Indy *Spica*, *Anneti*, *Ammoniacum*, (or in stead thereof, *Cucubes*, or Calamus) Cinamom, one drachme, Casse wood, the seeds of Smallage, of Silver mountain, *Alcarabacca*, and Elecampane roots, of each half a drachme, make a powder thereof. This is very good against all cold stomacks, against all belchings, against the quartain ague, against all diseases of the liver, and also against the cough.

Species dia Turbith, of Turbith. §. 42.

THese species be described after two waies, to wit, as they be ordained in the third part, the 11. Chap. and 20. §. against the obstruction of the body.

Species de Xyloaloe, §. 43.

NOw for as much these species be very common, therefore we will not pretermit to describe them here: Take *Lignum Aloes*, and Roses, ana. ʒ. 1. Cloves, Indy *Spica*, Mace, *Gallia*, *Muscata*, *Cucubes*, Cardamom, Greins, Mastick, Cinamom, Cipers roots, Squinant, red and white Behen, Spikenard, red Silk, Pearls, red Coral, Amber, Citron leaves, *Basilicum*, Mints, Garden Mints, Marjoram, long Pepper, and Ginger, ana. ʒ. ß. Musk, ℈. 1. Amber, ʒ. 1. ß. pownd it small, and then temper them together. These species be good against all infirmities of the stomach, of the heart, of the liver, and also against all other inward diseases which be caused of cold. Item, for all swounings, for the bad digestion, and for a stinking breath; they do also make merry, as you shall find described in the Table under the name of *Lignum Aloes*.

To make strong water. §. 44.

FOr a conclusion of this former Chapter, we will add unto it this strong water; Take Allom, and Copperas, ana. ℔. 1. Saltpeter, ℔. ß. put them all together pounded small into a body, and then distil it in sand. Make first a milde fire, and so a little stronger and stronger: and when the fume in the glasse receiver beginneth to be red, then give it a stronger fire; and when the rednesse beginneth to be done, then draw out the fire and let it be cold, then keep it stopt very close. though not onely the Chirurgions, but also the Goldsmithes, and other more do use this water; yet it is nevertheless very good against the pain of the teeth, but it must be wisely taken in hand, or else the Quicksilver must be wholly omitted whereof the powder precipitate is made, and also is calcined with it.

Species Berchtoldi, §. 45.

THe occasion wherefore we have not adjoyned this Species with other, is therefore, for that these Species are onely used in the Kitchin and for fish: the same is tempered with some good Wine; they be not onely pleasant, but also very healthy. And to allay the moistnesse of the fish: Take Ginger, ʒ. ß. long Pepper one quarter of an ounce, Cinamom three three quarters of an ounce, Greins, ʒ. 1. ß. Galangal, ʒ. 1. Saffron, ʒ. ß. Sugar, ʒ. 10. pownd them all small, and then temper them together.

Another: Take Cinamom, ʒ. ß. Ginger, ʒ. 3. Greins, ʒ. ß. Cloves, Galangal, and Cardamom, ana. ℈. 1. Saffron, ʒ. ß. Sugar, ʒ. 2. pound them all together and make it moist with Wine: afterwards temper it in a mortar, and let it dry in a warm place, then bruise it at last to powder again.

The sixteenth Chapter.

IN this Chapter be certain Potions described, as also certain powders for meat, and Trochisks, which here and there be ordained in this present Practise of Physick: wherefore we will first begin with the Potions.

Decoctiones Aperitivæ, Potions that do obstruct. §. 1.

THere be some of these described in the third Part the 11. Chapter, and 20. §. viz. called the common, and with Rubarb, which be very necessary for to keep an open body: notwithstanding that one may use the same commonly, for to mix other Confections with it.

Decoctio Epithymi, of Dodder. §. 2.

THis Potion is prepared as it is described in the first Part, the 12. Chapter, and 8. §. viz. in three kindes of waies. Her operation may you read in the Register under the name of Dodder.

Decoctio fructuum, A potion of certain fruits. §. 3.

THis Potion is described in the third Part, the third Chapter, and fift §. where we do speak and discourse of the Rupture.

Decoctio pectoralis, The pectoral Potion. §. 4.

THis Potion is very good for all them which have a short breath, For the Cough, and for the rheume, whereof there be two discovered in the second Part the 2. Chapter, and 2. §. and in the second Part, the 5. Chapter, and 5. §. For what the same is further used, is to be found in the Register, under the name of the pectoral potion.

Decoctio & infusio Sennæ, A potion of Sene leaves. §. 5.

THis Potion is described in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 20. §. where it is ordained for the obstruction of the belly, as the Register doth witnesse the same, under the name of Sene leaves.

A water of Mans blood. §. 6.

AFter the discourse of these foresaid potions, I cannot pretermit to adjoyn with this a new invention, whereof some Princes have very great estimation, and have also used otherwhiles for to remain thereby in their force, and to live long (as they thought:) which was this, viz. that one should chuse a young strong man, which was as yet in his flourishing youth, like as of 25. years, which was somewhat cholerick by nature: the same is to be fed the space of one moneth, and be well dyeted with light and healthy meats, also with all kindes of spices, and with good strong wine, who also is to be kept with mirth: this being so done, then are both his veins to be opened in his arms, and so much blood to be let out as he may tolerate and abide, and unto six pound of blood mix one handful of salt: then put these together in a glasse body, stopt well and tight, and let it a whole moneth in horse dung, yet every eight daies in fresh horse dung: afterwards distil this blood in ashes, when the water is distilled out of it, then pour it again in the body, by all that which remained therein, to the end it may be soft again, and in this manner distil it seven times together. Other be of opinion, that as often as it is distilled, that then it is to be set again in horse dung. Some suppose that it ought to be but three times distilled, and that at the most: put the dry fetes into a Retort, and distil it with moderate fire, and then will it yield a stinking oyl. Afterwards pour oftentimes water into it, and distil this oyl as many times with the water, until it lose her savour or stench. This water is to be given in three or four times a year, each time one ounce, but not above three or four drops of the oyl, Each one may believe this as far as he will.

Concerning all other drinks, as Beer, Claret wine, Aromatical wines, Barly water, Juleps, Almond milk, Mead, and such like: of them we have written elsewhere. In the end of this book we will admonish and discourse of more other herbed wines.

The second part of this Chapter, of certain powders for meat.

WE will not here admonish of any powders, which be serviceable and meet for any sicknesses: but we will onely speak of them that are used for pleasure, and for to warm the stomach, or that may be strowed upon wine sops, as this ensuing: Take elected Cinnamom, ℥. 1. ß. Ginger, ℥. 3. Greins and Pepper, ana. ℥. 1. ß. Nutmegs, Cloves, and Mace, ana. ℥. 3. pownd all very small together, Sugar as much as you please, and according as that you desire to have it strong.

Item, take Cinnamom one quarter of an ounce, Nutmegs, ℥. 1. Mace, Greins, and Cloves ana. ℥. ß. Sugar as much as you please: Or take Cinamom one quarter of an ounce, Nutmegs, ℥. 1. Mace and Greins, ana. ℥. ß. prepared Coriander and red Roses, ana. ℈. 2. Sugar as much as you please, but not too much. These powders be very good, used as well at meals, as afterwards.

Another, take black, white, and long Pepper, ana. ℥. ß. Thyme, Annis, and Ginger, of each five greins, Sugar five ounces, then temper them altogether. This is special good for all cold stomacks.

The third part of this Chapter.

Rochiscus is a Greek name, and is as much to say as a round shive, or round Cake, like as these *Trochisci* be made: but the Apothecaries do commonly make them now adayes four square, and about the waight of one drachme, which is of small importance. These Trochisks be made diversly, of which be many mentioned in this our book: whereof we will onely describe the name and force of them that be too trubleſome to make, to the end the same may be asked for at the Apothecaries, when there is use for them.

Trochisci de Absinthio, of Wormword. §. 2.

THese be ordained onely against the obstruction of the Liver, and be described in the third Part, the 12. Chapter and 4. §.

Trochisci Adulphi. §. 1.

THese do take their name of the Sulphur, like as you may finde written in the second Part, the fift Chapter, and fifteenth §.

Trochisci de Agarico, of Agarick. §. 2.

THese Trochisks are found prepared at the Apothecaries, to the end that the bad quality of the Agarick may be taken away thereby. The manner to prepare them is described in the Introduction. Their use shall you find in the Table under the name Agarick.

Trochisci Alhandel, of Coloquint. §. 4.

THe preparation of these Trochisks, is also described in the Introduction of this book, for to strengthen other purgations with it, like as stands admonished in the Register, under the name of Coloquint.

Trochisci

Trochiſci Alkakengi, of winter Cherries. §. 5.

THeſe be alſo troubleſome to be made, they be good for all diſeaſes of the Reins, and the bladder, and for Dyſuria. Look further in the Regiſter under the name of winter Cherries.

Trochiſci de Barberis, of Barberries. §. 6.

OF the juyce of Barberries, take one quarter of an ounce, burnt Ivory, Lignum Aloes, Sorrel ſeed, Maſtick, Gallia Muſcata, and Indy Spica, of each one ounce, Gum three drach. Roſes five drach. and Roſewater as much as is needful for to temper them together. You ſhall find their uſe under the name of Barberries.

Trochiſci de Bolo Armeno §. 7.

Theſe Trochisks be in no uſe, but they are adviſed to be uſed for a cold ſtomach.

Trochiſci de Camphora, of Camphire. §. 8.

FOr that theſe Trochisks be very much uſed, therefore we will deſcribe the ſame: take Roſes half an ounce, burnt Ivory and Licorice, of each one quarter of an ounce, peeled ſeeds of Melons, of Pompeons, of Gourds, and of Cucumbers, Dragagant, Saffron, Gum, and Indy Spica, of each one drachme, yellow Saunders two drachmes and a half, Lignum Aloes, Cardamom, Starch, and Camphire, of each two ſcruples, white Sugar and Manna, of each three drachmes; then faſhion them with the muſcilage of Fleawort, which is made with Roſewater. Theſe Trochisks be very good againſt all hot Agues, againſt all inflaming of the blood, and Cholera, againſt a bad ſtomach and bad liver, and alſo againſt thirſt, which is cauſed thereby, they be alſo good againſt the yellow Jaundiſe, againſt the Conſumption, and againſt the Dizzines of the head: like as you may further perceive in the Regiſter, under the name of Camphire.

Trochiſci de Capparis, of Caper roots. §. 9.

THeſe Trochisks be very ſeldom made: they be good againſt the hardened milt, like as you may further read in the ſame place of the hardened ſpleen.

Trochiſci de Carabe, of Amber. §. 10.

TAke a quarter of an ounce of yellow Amber, burnt Harts horn, parched Gum, burnt Coral, Dragagant, the juyce of Sloes, *Hypociſtis*, bloſſomes of Pomgranats, Maſtick, Lacca, and parched black Poppy ſeed, of each two ſcruples, Frankincenſe, Saffron, and *Opium*, of each half a drachme, then make thereof Trochisks with the ſlime of Fleawort. Theſe Trochisks ſtop the blood, out of whatſoever place it ſhould flow: as womens terms, the Piles, and exceſſiive making of water: it healeth alſo all inward exulceration, viz. of the Liver, and of the Lights; look further in the table of Amber.

Trochiſci de Chelidonia, of Chelidony. §. 11.

Theſe Trochisks are uſed alone in this Book, for foul fleſh in ulcers.

Trochiſci de Corallis, of Corral. §. 12.

THey be very troubleſome to be made, and be very ſeldom uſed; they be onely good againſt the Piles.

Trochiſci de Agrimonia, of Agrimony. §. 13.

TAke the juyce of Agrimony, and of Manna, of each one ounce, Roſes half an ounce, burnt Ivory three drachmes and a half, Indy Spica three drachmes, Rubarb, Aſarabacca, and Annis, of each two drachmes and a half; pownd them very ſmall to powder, and

and temper them together with water of Cuscuta, then dry them in the shaddow. These be especial good for all obstructions of the liver and of the Spleen, and also for all agues which proceed of it. Item, for the yellow Jaundise, and Dropsie; look in the Register for Agrimony.

Trochisci de Lacca. §. 14.

THey are very troublesome to be prepared; they open the obstructions of the liver and Spleen, and cure the agues that are caused thereby; they do also expell the Dropsie *Ascites* by urine, as hath been shewed in the name *Lacca.*

Trochisci de Myrrha. §. 15.

TAke *Myrrha* one drachme and a half, Lupines two drachmes and a half, Rue, white water Mints, Diptamus of Candy, Comin, Madder, *Assa Fœtida*, *Sagapenum*, and *Opopanacum*, of each one drachme, then make thereof Trochisks with the juyce of Feverfew. These Trochisks do move womens terms, and assuage all pain which may be caused by their obstructions; such like Trochisks of Myrrha have you described in the third Part, the 19. Chapter, and 2. §. look further in the table of Myrrha.

Trochisci de Olibano, of Frankincense. §. 16.

THe description of these Trochisks you have in the third Part, the 11. Chap. and 12. §. look further in the table under the name of Frankincense.

Trochisci de Rhaburbaro. §. 17.

TAke good Rubarb five drachmes, the juyce of Agrimony, and bitter Almonds, of each one quarter of an ounce, Roses, Indy Spica, Annis, Madder, the seed of Smallage, Wormwood, and Asarabacca, of each half a drachme; then make Trochisks thereof with water of Fleawort. These open the obstructions of the liver, they take away all pain and swelling of the same; they be good against the Dropsie, and the yellow Jaundise. and also against all distemperance of the body, like as you may read in the Register under the name of Rubarb.

Trochisci Diarrhodon. §. 18.

THese Trochisks doth *Nicholaus* describe, and they be easily made: Take fresh Rose leaves half an ounce, burnt Ivory, and red Saunders, of each one drach, and a half, and 7. grains, white Saunders one drachme and 12. grains, Saffron two scruples and 7. grains, Camphire two grains: make Trochisks of them with Rosewater. They be very little used, like as is admonished in the table of Roses.

Trochisci de Rosis, of Roses. §. 19.

BY *Rasis* these be described in this manner following: Take Roses half an ounce, Lignum Aloes one quarter of an ounce, Mastick one drachme and a half, Wormwood, Cinamom, Indy Spica, Cassie wood, Squinant flowers, of each one drachme; fashion them with old Wine. They be very good against all pain and bad digestion of the stomach, against all cold agues, and the beginning of the Dropsie; but especially they be very good for all them which lose their natural colour: look further for this in the table of Roses.

Trochisce di Santalis, of Saunders. §. 20.

THese be not made but when the same be prescribed of the purpose; they be very good against the diseases of the liver, and against the Dropsie, like as our table of Saunders doth shew.

TAke

Trochisci

Trochisci de Spica. §. 21.

THese Trochisks be not used, and there is mention made but ounce of them in this Book, and that onely against the puffyenesse of the breast.

Trochisci de Ebore, of Ivory. §. 22.

THese be prepared as they are described in the third Part, the 1. Chapter, n. 9. and for that and for the like Licences, for what they be further necessary, that doth the Register make mention of Ivory.

Trochisci de Terra sigillata. §. 23.

OF more then twenty things be these Trochisks made, wherefore we do leave them to the Apothecaries. They be very much used, for that they be forcible against spetting blood, if the same be given with the water of Knotgrasse: they be also good against the bleeding at the nose if the same be anointed on the forehead: and also for womens flowers if they passe away too excessive fast: likewise for the bleeding of the Piles, and for pissing of blood, if it be spouted into the yard, like as the same is mentioned in the Register under the title of sealed Earth.

Trochisci de Violis, of Violets. §. 24.

YOu must take Violet leaves which be somewhat withered, one ounce and a half, Turbith one ounce, the juyce of Licorice, Manna, and Diagridion, of each half an ounce: make Trochisks thereof with the sirup of Violets. They are very seldom used alone, but sharpened with three grains, or with any other pils, if they be given to any body that is hard to be purged. They are made also without Diagridio, and they be also otherwhiles mixed with some other Trochisks: look further for it in the Register in Violets.

For to make writing Inke. §. 25.

WE must not pretermit the description of this Inke (being a necessary matter.) It is also made in sundry manners; but this is the commonest manner for to make Inke: Take pownded Gall nuts one pound, Copperas half a pound, rain water 5. quarts; seethe them all together until the third part be wasted; then let it settle, afterwards strain it through a cloth: put 4. ounces of Gum unto it, and stir it oftentimes about. Some do not boil it but let it stand and steep, stiring it very often and well: but take for it no more but three quarts of water, and let the Gum be first dissolved in good wine Vinegar until it be all dissolved, and then put the other substance unto it, and thus it is also best of all, and doth remain alwayes without moulding.

For to make common Vernish. §. 26.

VErnish is made after sundry weyes, and there are also sundry sorts of them, each for their especial use; the one is made thus, and the other so. But we will here describe onely, and teach how that it shall be most fitly made, and for what it shall be requisite for each one. First, take old Linseed oyl, and seeth it so long until it be as thick that if you do take a drop of it out and let it be cold, when you presse upon it with your finger it spinneth two or three threads, or glueth to the finger. This oyl being now so sodden, put Rosin unto it as much as shall suffice for to make the Vernish thick enough: then let the Rosin decoct together with oyl so long until it do stand wholly still. This vernish is good for the smiths, for the Trencher-makers, for the Trunck-makers; and further for to Vernish all slight things.

Of Painters Vernish. §. 27.

TAke old Linseed oyl and seethe the same as is aforesaid; afterwards put amongst one pound of the oyl, half a pound of Mastick or somewhat more, and so let it seethe together a good while. This being done, then set it in the Sun, in a leaden Bason, and pour one part of water upon it, and stir it well together; then will the oyl come upon the top, and let it stand to clarifying in the Sun about the space of two or three houres. But it is to be noted that you must always take good heed of the faire weather, and of the rain, and also of the night; for if so be that it did rain, then would your oyl run over, and so you lose the same: wherefore must you have alwayes ready a board or planck for to cover the same oyl, as well from the rain, as from the night, upon adventure least that it should rain at night, &c. You may make also a fair Vernish of the oyl alone, to wit, through the seething it away, and then let it clarifie as is before said.

For to make odoriferous Vernish §. 28.

OR to make this odoriferous Vernish you are to take a new earthen pot which is well leaded, and put into it one pound of oyl of Spike, and let the same be boyling hot: afterwards you are to take half a pound of Sandaraca, or somewhat more, and strew the same amongst it being beaten small, alwayes with a little at once, and stirring it well about; then set this Vernish to clarifie as is said before. This Vernish dryeth very hard and with a fair glosse: it hath an especial good savour, and may be used for all things that you please.

The 17 Chapter.

IN this Chapter do come no compositions, but onely those which be tempered with blew Violets and wall flowers, whereof we have oftentimes written before, whereof each is to be found in the Register; as the Julep of Violets, that you shall find in the third Part, the 12. chap. and 10. §. The Syrup of Violets in the 15. Chapter, and fifty third §. The conserve before in the 4. Chapter. The oyl of Violets in the 12. Chapter, 69. § viz. in this Eight Part. The vinegar of Violets is made, like as the vinegar of Roses is wont be made.

The 18. Chapter.

Of all kinds of Wines.

IN this Chapter be all Wines contained, which be made with any kind of herbs, and such like things, viz. all such as may be accounted amongst the Physical remedies; and because they are commonly prepared with Wine or Must, therefore we will write first of them, and that in the briefest sort: for that to write of all kind of wines were matter without end.

Of Wine in generall. §. 1.

IT is most true, that this noble Plant is made of God for divers necessities of mankind, notwithstanding that man doth daily abuse this noble gift of God so shamefully, and so instead of doing good thereby, harmeth his body, and provoketh sickness, wherefore we must discourse and treat somewhat of both these things.

In this do all learned agree, and daily experience doth teach us, that Wine is so commodious and necessary for mans life, and for his health, that there can no better drink be devised. Moreover it withstandeth all poyson, and is especial good for all soreness of the

Kidneyes

Kidnyes, and for all pain of the Bladder. But especially sowr wine strengtheneth the stomach; further, it doth provoke digestion, it sustaineth natural power, it strengtheneth all inward and outward parts, it keepeth a body with a good colour, it maketh fresh and healthie blood, it maketh the languishing merry, the dismayed couragious, it carrieth the well digested meate into the inward parts, it consumeth the slimy humours, it strengtheneth and dryeth the brains, it refresheth the heart, it sharpneth the wits and the understanding, wherefore it is of the heathen endued with a godly name, and is called *Liber*, that is free. Further, it bringeth with it the pleasant sleep, it provoketh venery, it maketh women fruitful. In fine, wine hath so many vertues, that *Asclepiades* said, that the power of wine may well be compared with the Gods. *Eydrus* doth write (which I cannot pretermit) that wine is stronger then men that drink it, that it altereth the wits, that it maketh Kings wise, poore, and rich men, it assureth and sharpneth the understanding, it causeth all pain to be forgotten, it satisfyeth all concupiscence, it careth neither for Kings, nor Princes, and it uttereth all that it listeth and pleaseth. These be now the commodities and availes which wine can bring with it.

But what shall I say to the contrary of those things which it doth if it be superfluously used? but we have enough spoken thereof in the six Part and eighteenth chapter, where we discourse of the Plague: but we will proceed with those things that are more fit for our purpose. We have before admonished, that there can no more commodious nor healthier potion be found for mans nature then wine, and of all other are best the fair, clean, light red, and they that have colour like Geese feet. But for to have a full and perfect instruction of wine, and for what Sickness each wine is prescribed or forbidden, that is to be seen in the table of the Vine. In like manner, there is also found here a perfect instruction of Must, of vine cuict, and of spirit of Wine: also in vinegar, and for what the same is good within and without, for what it is also hurtful. Lastly, we will describe sundry herbed wines, to wit, how that they be made, and also what operation they have.

Of sundry names of Wine. §. 2.

IT is also very needful, that one do know the nature of wine, for that some of them do alter their nature, according as they be young, old, white, red, thick, subtile, small, or strong. The white wine is warm in the first degree: the very old wine in the third degree; but the wine of a yeare old keepeth a middle mean. The thick red wine maketh much blood, because it needeth no great alteration, but the thin, white, and sowr wine giveth little nourishment. The thick and troubled wine obstructeth the belly, the Liver, the Spleen and the Kidnyes, so that all they which use the same too much, are wont to be troubled with the Dropsie, and Gravel, and especially the old folks. Out of this may each one choose such wines which be most meet.

Of Must. §. 3.

THe wine which we call Must, that is new Wine which is first prest out, and not long cellered; and hath not as yet wrought throughly, like as the same is known unto all men: this must have his proper nature, but there is almost no Must which doth any good, but many that are hurtful. But Must it commonly used when one will make any herbed wines.

Of Wine cuict, or decocted wine. §. 4.

THe Physitians do call this wine Sapam, it is commonly decocted so long of Must and other strong wine, until that of three quarts there remain but one. The decocted wine is used in Physick very much inwardly and outwardly.

Of burnt wine. §. 5.

THe burnt wine is for the most part burnt of drosse, or lees of wine, which is not used so much for Physick, as that which is distilled of clear wine, and is rectifyed two or three times over again.

Of

Of Vinegar. §. 6.

THat vinegar is made of ſowr wine, is apparent to every body. It is alſo a marvellous work of nature that it ſpoyleth wine, and altereth it out of his natural courſe, and maketh ſome other thing thereof which is a thing by it ſelf, and uſed as well in Cookery as for Phyſick, which is no leſſe pleaſant then wine it ſelf. For Dioſcorides, and other more learned aſcribe to vinegar many innumerable vertues, like as we find by daily experience, therefore is alſo the red as well as the white vinegar ordained in Phyſick for many kind of cauſes, as it is alſo in ſome diſeaſes forbidden. The lees of the vinegar is alſo otherwhiles mentioned in this book.

The ninth Chapter.

Of Herbed wines and ſuch like.

FIrſt, we will teach here how this Wine is here to be prepared, the which is effected after ſundry manners, and as liketh each one beſt. The common manner is, that the herbs are to be gathered between the middeſt of Auguſt, and the middeſt of September: but the fitteſt time is when they beare their flowers. Theſe herbs are to be dryed in the ſhaddow, or at leaſt in a luke-warm Chamber where it doth not duſt, until you will uſe the ſame. If now you will make any herbed Wine, then take a ſmall veſſel as big as you will, and put therein Beechen or Haſel chips into it, ſtrow upon it a good deale of dryed herbs, without wringing, and afterwards one part of chips again and herbs: do this ſo long until that all the whole veſſel be full, and afterwards fill it up with Muſt. If ſo be that it be ſtrong, then may you drink of it the ſooner, and fill it full again. But to procure further advice thereof, therefore we will add unto this how to make other ſorts of herbed wines.

If one will keep theſe wines ſweet, then is one part of the Muſt to be decocted away with a light fire, and that according as the Muſt is ſtrong, or thin. Other do prepare the herbed wine, by a certain diſtillation with ſuch herbs as they will themſelves, ſo that they keep their ſmell, power, and vertue, that if ſo be that one put but two or three drops of it into a quart of wine, that then all the wine will taſte of it, ſo that thereby many experiences, labour and travel is ſpared. But becauſe that ſuch experiments be not known unto all men, therefore may they uſe theſe things following: take ſuch herbs as you will, whether they be flowers or rootes, which be very dry, pownd them, and pouf upon them good burnt wine: afterwards ſtop it tight, and let it ſtand ſo aſteep the ſpace of certain dayes; afterwardrs ſtrain them out thorow a cloth, and then preſerve it in a glaſſe. When as then you would have ſuch wine, then pour thereof whether it be much or little into it; and if ſo be that you have no burnt wine, then take good old ſtrong wine in ſtead thereof. But excepting the boyling or diſtilling of it, the wine it ſelf is of that nature, that very ſhortly it draweth to it the power, ſmatch, ſavor, and vertue of thoſe things which are infuſed therein. Some ſuppoſe, that one muſt caſt into the veſſel onely the herbs, roots, ſeeds, flowers, or any thing elſe that one will, and to pour new Muſt upon it, whether it be much or little, according to that the wine or any thing that is in it be ſtrong or weak. Other do caſt the roots, herbs, and other things in it when the wine is a year old. Some do take the herbs or roots &c. green: ſome dry. Some do ſhred the herbs, ſome do ſtamp them to powder, and ſo hang them in a bag. Each may take out of this that liketh him beſt. Let this ſuffice for the making of wines.

Wine of Elecampane roots, §. 1.

THis wine is prepared after divers ſorts, but the beſt manner is which alſo needeth not ſo much trouble, as hereafter followeth, take Muſt firſt trodden out of the Grapes, and let it ſeeth without any ſmoak about it even to the half, if that you deſire to have it ſweet. In this you are to ſeeth Elecampane rootes which be digged up in the ſpring time, and cut into ſlices, and dryed on a threed. Seeth them ſo long in it until they have

loſt

lost all their bitter taste: and if one will often use this wine, then are the roots so much the oftener to be sod with new wine, that the Wine may abide by his power, and the vessel is alwaies to be filled up againe with Wine. This is a very profitable potion for the head and the brains; in like manner also for to warm and strengthen the sinews if the same be vexed with rheumes. This Wine is also good against all cold diseases of the lights and of the breast, it cleanseth the same, it strengtheneth all bad digestive stomachs, it refresheth natural warmth, it warmeth the sinews, it openeth the passages of urine, it is good against all winds, it strengtheneth the Matrix, and it cleanseth the same of all cold phlegmatick moisture, and it provoketh also the terms.

Eyebright VVine. §. 2.

THis Wine is made of the herb, as we have taught before, his vertues are described in the first Part, the 7. Chapter, and 20. §. and in other places more.

VVine of whole Grapes. §. 3.

IF one will make this Wine as it ought to be, then take whole red or white Grapes taken from the stalks and well cleansed, and put them into a vessel with chips (as we have taught before) fill the white with white Must, or with Fern wine, and the red with red wine. Some do boyl it in Must, and that according to each ones pleasure, as also some there be which put no chips unto it, but they do put Sage leaves unto it, and let them lie a certain time in it. There be spices also wont to be hanged therein, so that the wine may get thereby not only a pleasant, but also a strong and good taste.

These Wines are first of all very commodious for all hosts and housholders, so that all that which remaineth of other Wines, and is not drunken, may be poured unto it. Such Wines be very acceptable, but if one do drink too much thereof, then do they hurt the head, for they do distemper the brains, and that chiefly in the evening after supper, for that they be much subtiler, and more ascending then other wines: they make a body quickly very sleepy, they provoke vomiting against evening, but in the morning they make merry: and amongst all other there be none that hurt the brains more then this, wherefore they are both drunken more for lust and pleasure then for commodity of health.

VVine of Avence. §. 4.

THese odoriferous roots do the Apothecaries and Physitians call *Garyophyllata*, the same is to be digged up in the spring time, but chiefly in *March*, in which time the roots be most forcible: let these roots dry well, and when they be cleansed, then hang them afterwards in the Wine, it will get thereby a very pleasant savour and taste, which refresheth the heart and strengtheneth it: openeth the obstruction of the Liver, warmeth the cold and moist brains, dryeth and strengtheneth the cold slimy stomach, it asswageth also all pain of the Matrix.

Betony VVine. §. 5.

THis Wine is made of brown Betonie, as all other herbed Wines be; it is especial good against all belching and wambling of the stomach, it withstandeth the overflowing of the gall, it is many times approved in a cold Matrix, and against all suffocation of the same, it strengtheneth all inward parts, it warmeth and healeth also the same, it openeth the obstructions, it consumeth all cold humours, it expelleth all venemous matter by the urine and by the stool, and in like manner also the yellow Jaundise; and if the same be oftentimes used, then it is very requisite against the falling sickneſſe, against the *Sciatica*, against the sickneſſe of the Lights, and against the Consumption: It is also very necessary against the cough, against short breath, and it expelleth also all agues which do come out of a foul stomach. The same power have the red Gilloflowers, like as the same be also a kind of Betony, whereof hereafter we shall speak further. This Wines use and operation you shall find described in other places more.

Burrage Wine. §. 6.

WE have admoniſhed before of the deſcription of the Conſerve and Sirup of Burrage, how there is a ſmall difference between this herb and the Bugloſſe, wherefore alſo both theſe herbs may be taken for this Wine, like as we have taught before, or the juice of the ſame may alſo well be uſed with this Wine, which wine doth drive away all poiſon from the heart, it cleanſeth the blood, it maketh merry, it refreſheth the vitall ſpirit, it driveth away penſiveneſſe and all bad thoughts, it is alſo very neceſſary for all them which do fall eaſily into any ſwooning, and is of a full temperate nature, &c.

Wine of Aſarabacca. §. 7.

THis Wine and other more be prepared againſt the gravel, like as in the third Part, the 17. Chapter, and 4. §. is deſcribed; and you ſhall further find in other places more for what it is more commodious.

Wine of Framboyes. §. 8.

THis Wine is made like as the wine of the whole Grapes is made, it hath the nature of the ſame berries, it is much commended in the Plague and Squinancie, but if one put none other wine unto it, then is it not very pleaſant, wherefore it is not commanded to be uſed in any other places of this Book.

Wine of Harts tongue. §. 9.

THere be two kinds of Harts tongues, viz. the *Ceterach*, which is the right Harts tongue, and the long Harts tongue, which is hairy about the ſtalks, they may be taken both together, and to make this wine as all other wines: it is not very pleaſant of taſte, but it is of great force, for that it openeth and ſtrengtheneth the Spleen, it is good againſt all poiſon of Snakes, and being drunk warm, it aſſwageth all cramps and ſcouring of the belly, it taketh away the yellow Jaundiſe, and alſo obſtructions of the Liver; it is alſo very good for all them which be vexed with the ſtone and with the gravel: it is alſo good againſt all melancholy, and expelleth the Quartain Ague, it conſumeth all clotted blood which is cauſed in the breaſt through falls, it openeth alſo the conduits of urine, and healeth all diſeaſes of the ſame. For what this wine is further meet, that is to be found deſcribed in other places of this Book.

Wine of Hyſſop. §. 10.

THis herb is hot and dry by nature, which vertue the Wine alſo hath, wherefore it is good for all old perſons, for it warmeth all inward parts, it aſſwageth the cold and moiſt cough; it is alſo good againſt the falling ſickneſſe, for when the ſame is uſed often and long, then doth it take away the ſame, and that eſpecially in young folks. It is alſo good for the breaſt and the lights, for it warmeth the ſame, and conſumeth all tough ſlimy matter, and alſo all agues which may ſpring out of the ſame: it openeth the pipes of the lights, and it maketh a clear voice, for it cleanſeth the breaſt, and healeth all anguiſhes of the ſame: it taketh away the ſhortneſſe of breath, and is eſpecial good againſt the Dropſie, like as is admoniſhed and deſcribed in more other places of this Book.

Winter Cherry wine. §. 11.

THis Wine is alſo made like as the wine of whole Grapes, it is very much uſed againſt the ſtone, the gravel, and is alſo eſpecial good for all them which can hardly make water.

Cherry Wine. §. 12.

UPon the River of *Rhene*, and every where elſe, all wines which be made of red or black Cherries, are called Cherry Wines, and they make the ſame as hereafter followeth. Pluck the Cherries from the ſtalks, and pownd them in a ſtone mortar with

with ſtones and all, and then pour red or white Wine upon it: but this wine will be very ſmall, wherefore it is prepared after another maner with whole Cherries as followeth: Lay in a veſſel of beechen or haſel chips as many as you pleaſe, and then one part of Cherries upon it, and ſo further until it be full, like as we have ſaid and taught of the Wine of Grapes: fill then the veſſel full of wine, and ſo let it lie three or four daies, then ſhall it be ſufficiently coloured. This wine is of a good tempered nature, it is very requiſite in ſommer time in great heat for to aſſwage therewith thirſt, and to moiſten the inward parts. It openeth alſo the liver, it expelleth urine, eſpecially if the kernels with the ſtones be broken in it, for theſe kernels expel the gravel. Some do hang ſpices therein, which cannot be good, becauſe his nature is altered thereby. Look in the Table of the Cherries.

Lavender Wine. §. 13.

THere is but little made at once thereof in a ſmall veſſel, wherefore it may not be kept long. There is a ſling bag hanged in it with Lavender flowers, and interbaſted or quilted, to the end that not all the flowers fall in the wine. This wine is eſpecial good for a cold head, and for moiſt brains, for the giddineſſe, for the falling ſickneſſe, and ſuch like diſeaſes.

Of Malmſey. §. 14.

ALbeit that this Wine be tempered neither with herbs nor with ſpices, but by nature, and of it ſelf is a noble and pleaſant wine, which is brought unto us out of *Grecia*, and other Countries adjacent, yet ſhall it nevertheleſſe not be againſt our purpoſe, becauſe that the ſame is very much uſed in Phyſick, that his power and vertue be ſhewed at this preſent, look for it in the ſecond Part, in the firſt Chapter, and in the third Part, the fifth Chapter, and ſixth.

Wine of Marjoram. §. 15.

THis Wine is prepared as all other herbed wine, and it ſtrengtheneth the brains, and warmeth all inward parts: it is very good for them which be inclined to the dropſie, it aſſwageth the pain of the belly, it expelleth wind, and miſcarrying of women: it is very good potion for to warm the head, and to ſtrengthen the memory, as you find deſcribed in divers places of this Book.

Wine of Cinamon. §. 16.

THis aromatical Wine is ſo called and placed amongſt Claret Wine, wherefore you have it ſufficiently found before in the eight Part, in the third Chapter. This Wine is to be prepared in the harveſt, and will be good throughout the whole year. Take one and a half pound of Muſcat ſeeds, the ſame as we have taught of the wine of Eſtampes, and bruiſe it, then put it into a veſſel, and put thereto as many whole Grapes plucked from the ſtalks as will go into the third part of the veſſel. Afterwards make a linnen bag, and put therein a pound of Cinamond, Ginger one ounce, Galangal one ounce, and half, Pepper and Greins, of each half an ounce, Cloves and Nutmegs of each one quarter of an ounce, Cubebs, Cardamom and long Pepper, of each one drachme, Mace three drachmes, pound all groſſe, and bag theſe herbs in. This Cinamon wine may be uſed for all cold diſeaſes of the head, as all other Aromatical wines are to be uſed: many ſuch vertue and power is deſcribed in many places of this book.

Item, for all cold and unfruitful women; but to the contrary, all young and hot people, and all they that be burthened with hot Agues muſt flie this wine as poyſon. Of this foreſaid wine is admoniſhed in many places of this book.

Muſcadel Wine. §. 17.

THis Wine doth heal all diſeaſe of the mouth, it letteth fall the teeth and alſo the gums, it ſtrengtheneth the lungs, it dryeth the moiſt brains which are ſhot through Rheume, it keepeth from the cramp, trembling and ſhaking of the members, it is good for the Gout, and is alſo uſed for the ſame in Germany, not only at great feaſts, but alſo uſed for ſtrengthening of the body from all ſickneſſe. If the mouth be often waſhed therewith, then doth it make a well ſavouring breath, it giveth a fair pleaſant colour, not only drunken, but alſo the face waſhed therewith, it conſumeth all inward putrified humours, it expelleth urine, eſpecially if the kernels be broken in it, for theſe kernels expel the gravel. Some do hang ſpices therein, which cannot be good, becauſe his nature is altered thereby. Look in the Table of the Cherries.

Wine of Candy. §. 18.

THis Wine groweth in Candy, from whence it is brought to Venice, and brought thence unto us, and is often uſed in Phyſick, like as is admoniſhed in many places and there in this Book.

Wine of Gilloflowers. §. 18.

THis Wine is made of red Gilloflower flowers, and made after the same manner as the Wine of Betonie is made, which hath also the same force, like as both of these herbs taken to be of one efficacie, and is commended in sundry places of this book.

Wine of Buglosse. §. 19.

Look for it before in the fifth §. of the Wine of Burrage.

Wine that purgeth. §. 20.

THese purging Wines be made after many kinds of waies, like as you find them described in their places, whereof you have one for an example in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, in the end of the 20. §. which may be used for a common opening of the body.

Wine of whole Grapes. §. 21.

IT is before described in the third §. wherefore we will not here discourse any further thereof.

Wine of Pontacum. §. 22.

THis is no artificial Wine, but it is a Wine which is of it self so grown without the addition of any thing unto it. It is very healthy, and also good of taste. The same is drunken in *Germany*, not only at great feasts, but also used for Physick, like as is sufficiently admonished thereof in the Table.

Rosa[illegible] Wine. §. 23.

THis Wine is prepared as all other Aromatical wines, it comforteth the brains, and warmeth all inward parts: it is very good [illegible] which be inclined to the dropsie. This Rosa-ney Wine is [illegible] much commended, and taken for a very wholesome potion, especially in all cold sicknesses. It strengtheneth the digestive vertue of the stomach, it causeth appetite, it fortifieth the heart, the brains, and the sinewes, it giveth a fair pleasant colour, not onely drunken, but also the face washed therewith, it consumeth all inward putrified humours, and preserveth the body from all sickness. If the mouth be often washed therewith, then doth it make a well savouring breath, it strengtheneth the teeth and the flesh of the teeth, and therefore it is also very good against all corruptions, viz. the Canker, fleshwounds, and such like sores washed therewith. Further this Wine is good for all diseases of the lights, for the consumption, and especially for all them that are phthisicke and short winded. It is also good against the Palsey, against the falling sickness, against the lamenesse, and against the cold Mouth, it helpeth digestion, and [illegible] also for [illegible] concupiscence, thus it is to be made: [illegible] must be made in haste, and that before sprig, then may you take Rosemary flowers, Lavender tongues, [illegible] of each half a handful, [illegible] and fill up the vessel always with [illegible] and then [illegible] and cover it close, and let it stand so eight dayes, then [illegible] and his vertue and power is described in many [illegible]

Item for all cold and unnaturall women; but not for common, all young and old people, and all they that be burthened with [illegible] this wine is [illegible] forreign wines is [illegible] and also [illegible]

THis Wine doth heal all soreness of the mouth, it fasteneth fast the teeth and also the gums, it strengthneth the sight, and all the joints, it dryeth the moist brains which are hurt through *Rheume*, it freeth from the cramp, trembling and shaking, and also from the falling sickness, the same being drunken, and therewith washed, or the place anointed [illegible] for, as is further declared [illegible] and there in this Book.

Wine of Clarie. §. 25.

THe deceitful falſifiers of Wine have made this precious herb (which is a ſpecies of wild Sage) very ſuſpicious, ſo that it is eſteemed hurtful: but it is in truth not ſo, for if with this herb (as with all other herbs) the wine be prepared, then it is very fit for the head and for the ſtomach, for that it dryeth and warmeth the cold moiſt brains. It is alſo much to be compared with the wine of Sage and of Roſemary for his vertue, and this is alſo the cauſe wherefore we make ſo little mention thereof in this book.

Wine of Water Lillie flowers. §. 26.

THis wine is prepared very ſeldome, as alſo it is but once remembred in this Book, and that in the Conſumption.

Tamariſk Wine. §. 27.

THis Plant doth willingly grow in moiſt places, and to this Wine is alwaies uſed the middlemoſt rindes, it hath the ſame power of the Wine of Harts tongue, wherefore they are commonly uſed together, as may be ſeen in many places of this book. This wine may alſo well be drunken for to cleanſe the blood with it, and to conſume melancholick humours which do cauſe the quartain Ague and the Scurvie, and ſuch like ſickneſſes. What vertues this wine hath more, look for that in the Table, in the deſcription of the wine of Harts tongue.

Wine of Wormwood. §. 28.

ALthough that this wine hath a bitter and unpleaſant taſte, yet hath it nevertheleſſe a marvellous great vertue, and is uſed above all other herbed wines. Firſt of all it killeth the Worms, it withſtandeth poyſon, and it expelleth the hurtful phlegme; and if one drink the ſame often, it cleanſeth and ſtrengtheneth all inward parts that they cannot receive ſuch matter, it dryeth the vapours of the ſtomach that they cannot aſcend into the head, it maketh appetite, it openeth all obſtructions of the inward parts, viz. of the liver and the ſpleen, and it taketh away alſo the yellow Jaundiſe which is cauſed thereby; it freeth from the Palſey, the falling ſickneſſe, and all lameneſſe, it reſtoreth loſt ſpeech, it ſtrengtheneth the weakned joynts if the ſame be well rubbed and fomented with it; and if mens or beaſts wounds be waſhed with it, then is the ſame kept fair and clean, and ſuffereth no foul fleſh to grow in them, but healeth them: it cureth alſo all ſcald heads if the ſame be waſhed with it.

If any one would go to Sea, then is he to drink certain daies before ſome of this wine, for that thereby ſhall he be freed of the Sea ſickneſſe. Moreover, this wine is an eſpecial preſervative againſt the Plague, and againſt all venemous ayr, if one take a good draught thereof before that ſuch Patients be viſited, it bringeth alſo ſleep with it, and taketh away heavy dreams. But by reaſon the common people have not alwaies this wine in a readineſſe, the juice of Wormwood may be tempered amongſt Wine, and be uſed inſtead of the Wormwood wine. This Wine is meet for many more other diſeaſes, like as may be read here and there in this book.

Wine of Zeduary. §. 29.

TAke in the beginning of winter one barrel and a half of Muſt, let it ſeeth ſoftly, like as is deſcribed of Elecampane Wine, afterwards put it into a clean veſſel, and then put theſe ſpices following unto it: Take good Cinamom one ounce, Zeduary half an ounce, Ginger, Galangal, greins and long Pepper, of each one drach. pownd them all together groſſe, to the end that when the power of the Zeduary is gone, the ſpices may dry, and take out the Zeduary of it and put freſh unto it: if ſo be that you deſire to keep this wine long, then is the ſame to be filled up with decocted wine, and not with common wine. This wine hath the ſame efficacie and power with all aromatical wines, and may alſo be uſed inſtead of them.

How the infirmities of all Wines are to be amended. §. 30.

WE are here not to write too largely how all the infirmities of wine are to be amended, but are to commend that to the Wine sellers, by reason that thereof divers booke are written; for amendment of all Wines doth serve very well Mr. Tristrams water, which is described in the fifth Chapter, and at §. In like manner also all golden and vital waters which before in the eight Part, and sixt Chapter are described, if there be poured a little of them in Wine which is dead or low, and stirred well about.

Item, in the moneth of May you are to take a branch of a young green tree, shave off the uppermost rindes, and lay them the space of three dayes in fresh water: afterwards wash them well, and then pour fresh water again upon them. This being done, let them lie the space of three daies, wash them well again, and then dry them in the shadow. If you have now any Wine which beginneth to be dead, then take three or four of these rindes all of a length, and bind them to a threed, and hang them in the wine, it will thereby be very good and cleer.

There be here and there described divers sorts of Wine, which be prepared for sundry sicknesses and parts of mans body, *viz.* for the Head, for the Liver, for the Milt, for the Heart, and for the Reins, &c. each one may look for them in their places for which they will use them. Herewith we will in the name of God finish this our Book of Physick, and commend the same unto our most true Father, through Jesus Christ our Lord, the most true Physitian of all our diseases, that he will most graciously extend his blessings over it.

Amen.

The end of the Eight and last Part of this Book.

The

The first Table containeth all the names of all diseases, accidents and infirmities: Also all manner of Compositions, Conserves, Confections, Electuaries, Sirupes, Juleps, Trochisks, Pills, Potions, Salves, Plaisters, Oyles, Baulmes, Waters, and Aromatical Wines, with divers other things more, which are mentioned in this Book.

Abortus, abortion. 546
Abricocks how preserved. 745
Accidents that may follow after childbirth. 551
Accidents caused through pain in the hips. 570
Accidents divers in the Plague. 705, 706
Aegilops. 205
After-birth how to expel. 549
After-throwes how to be eased. 550
Agaricus prepared. 215
Agaricus used. *ibid.*
Agues description in general. 655
Ague of one day called *Ephemera*. 657
Ague pestilential. 700, 705
Ague quotidian. 675
Ague quartain. 676
Ague *Hepialos*. 657
Ague *Hemitritæa*. 667
Agues wandering. 657
Ague *Hectica*. 679
Agues continual. 660
Ague Tertian enquisitive. 667
Ague Tertian bastard. 670
Ague burning called *Causon*. 671
Ague called *Synochus*. 673
Ague *Synochus* of putrifacted blood. 674
Ague *Hectica*, with an Ulcer in the breast. 682
Ague *Marasmode*. 679, 684
Ague long lingering. 685
Ayr convenient for the sick of the Plague.
Alaes and clifts of the tongue. 203
Alipta muscata prepared. 373
Allom calcined, or burnt. 373
Almonds scalded. 373
Almonds swolne. 373
Almond milk prepared. 373
Ake how to know. 373
Aloe prepared. 8
Ammoniacum prepared. 11
Ancome, look Fellon.
Appetite unsatiable to meat. 412
Appetite lost, look hunger lost. 366
Appetite lost in hot Agues. 664
Apples preserved. 748
Apoplexie. 166, 191
Aprecocks preserved, look Abricocks.
Aqua Johannis. 195
Armes description. 552
Armpits description and stench. *ibid.*
Arseguts canker, look Canker.
Arseguts descent or procidence. 334
Arseguts description. *ibid.*
Arseguts impostume. 336, 340
Arseguts itch, look itch of the Fundament.
Arseguts pain. 336
Arseguts relaxation. 336
Arteries description. 687
Artificial Baulm. 738
Ascension of the Matrix. 524
Asthma, pursivenesse. 269

B

Back, and back pain. 243, 244
Bagg to be used in the falling sickness.
Bags to be laid upon the stomach.
Barley water.
Barley parched in broth.
Baulm precious to comfort the heart. 194
Barrennesse description.
Barrennesse through cold and moistnesse.
Barrennesse through dryth.
Barrennesse through heat. 328
Barrennesse through overmuch fatnesse.
Barrennesse through superfluity of bloud, and obstruction of the terms.

Bathes for swearing. 644
Baulme prepared. 737
Baulmes diversly prepared. *ibid.*
Beards description. 149
Beards falling out prevented. *ibid.*
Beards growth procured. *ibid.*
Beeres description. 739
Belching up of Gall, or boyling in the stomach. 400
Bellies pain, of all manner. 460
Belly bound or obstructed. 456
Biles of the Pox. 613
Biles, look Tumours, Nodes, &c.
Binding in the body. 390
Birth how to advance. 547
Birth untimely. 541
Birth unnatural called *Mola* in the mother. 533
How remedied. 534
Birth her signs. 548
Bladders description. 496
Bladder or neck of the bladders infection. 505
Bladders neck impostume. *ibid.*
Bleeding before and after what ought to be done. 25
Bleeding too much how to be prevented. 26, 640
Bleeding at the nose. 131
Bleeding at the nose remedied. 132
Bleeding at the ears, look ears that bleed.
Bleeding of the gummes, look Gums that bleed.
Bleeding of the Piles remedied. 337, 340
Blindnesse, look Eies that are blind.
Blisters how to draw them. 186, 187
Blood not to be drawn fasting. 26
Blood in the Leprosie how to be cleansed. 622
Bloods nature. 639
Blood when to be drawn. 24
Blood letting signs of the Kalender not to be used. 25
Blood letters admonition. *ibid.*
Bloods superfluity diminished. 23
Blood cleansed. 639
Bloods description. 638
Blood veins. 637
Blood melancholick how to purge. 451
Bloodstone prepared. 11
Blood spitting by some infirmity of the Lights. 274, 278
Blood congealed in the breast. 277
Blood by urine. 480
Blood stanched. 640
Blood clotted or congealed in the body. 80, 629
Bloody flixe in general. 390
Bloody flix, look Dysentery.
Bole prepared. 12
Bones fracture. 582
Bones corruption or putrifaction. 584
Bones description. 636
Botches. 593
Bowels pain in general. 452
Bowels pain in young children. 463
Bowels description. 452
Bowels pain in the uppermost part of them, called *Iliaca passio*. 453
Bowels pain called *Colica*. 454
Bowels pains difference. 455
Bowels pain of binding in the belly. *ibid.*
Bowels pain of slimenesse in the guts. 556
Bowels pain of windinesse. 457
Bowels or belly pains remedies. 458, 459, 460
Bowels pain of an impostume. *ibid.*
Bowels pain with heat. 462
Bowels pain with gravel. *ibid.*
Brains description. 150
Brains the beginning of sinews. *ibid.*
Brains how to dry them. 151
Breath which is short and wheasing. 273
Breaths shortnesse, look Lungs obstruction.
Breath that is stinking. 287
Breath that stinketh of a bad ulcer in the stomach. 408
Breasts description. 235
Breast of women that hang down too low. *ibid.*
Breasts of women that are schirrous and hard. 240
Breasts tumours. *ibid.*
Breasts impostumes. *ibid.*
Breast oppressed or stopped through flegme. 268
Brimstone prepared. 10
Bronchocele. 218
Bucks blood prepared. 11
Bucks blood distilled. 11
Bucks liver prepared, look Liver, &c.
Bugloss conserve. 748
Burning of fire, hot water, and gun-powder, 625
Burnings remedy. 339
Buttocks description. 333

C

CAkes for the rheume. 228
Cakes or spice cakes prepared. 758
Calamus aromaticus comforteth the head. 50, 735
Calamus preserved. 743
Camphire prepared. 12
Cankers description, causes and signs. 605
Canker in the nose. 128
Canker called *Carcinoma*. 605
Canker in womens breasts. 242

Canker

Canker in the Arſegut. 348
Canker in the mother. 530
Capital powder. 220, 229
Capon water how to make it. 286
Carbuncle, look Plague ſore.
Caſſie prepared. 12
Caſſie uſed. 12, 395
Catetrie. 108
Cathartica Imperiale. 759
Cauterization for the rheumes of the head. 101, 102
Cherries preſerved. 754
Childbirths remedies. 548, 549
Childs eaſie delivery. 545
Childs growth, at what time, and in what manner. 536
Childs delivery delayed. 548
Children how to purge them. 42
Childrens teeth, look Teeth.
Childs weakneſſe in the mothers womb. 537
Child dead, how to expel it. 543
Choleric a paſſio. 379
Cholera hath a proper ſeat in the body. 636, 640
Chops of the hands. 554
Cinamom water how to make it. 756
Citrons preſerved. 744
Cicatrices of the skin. 634
Citron ſhels preſerved. *ibid.*
Claret wine how to make it. 738
Clefts in the Arſegut. 347
Clefts in womens places. 320
Clefts in the skin. 589
Clefts in the eyelids. 85
Clefts in the tongue. 203
Cleanſing of the head. 131
Clifters for the rheume. 227
Clifters to comfort the heart. 399
Clotted or congealed bloud, look bloud that is congealed.
Cock water. 281
Cods deſcription. 308
Cold diſeaſes. 654
Colica, cholick, a griping in the neathermoſt guts. 454
Calyrium drying and aſtringent. 104
Colour good how to make it. 80
Coloquint prepared. 13
Confections of Horſeradiſh. 425
Confection of aſhes. 489
Confection of Pope *Innocent* againſt blindneſſe. 124, 128
Confection of all ſorts, preſervative, purative, &c. 758
Confection to ſtrengthen the liver. 315
Confection of Juniper berries. 697
Confection of a burnt Hare. 488
Confection for the obſtruction of the Liver thorough cold. 420
Confection of Currans. 265
Confection of Prunes. 392
Confection of *Paulus Riccius* Phyſician unto the Emperour. 50
Confectio Anacardina. 758
Confection of ſeeds. 739
Confection againſt the ſwimming or giddineſſe in the head. 156
Confection of Citrons. 358
Confection againſt melancholy. 39
Confection *Aromatica roſata* diverſly prepared. 356, 357
Confection *Diacinimomum.* 356
Confection *Diamargariton.* 171
Confection *Diatragantum* the cold. 217
Confection *Diatragantum* the hot. *ibid.*
Confection purging. 455
Confection for the panting of the heart through heat. 297
Confected things to tool the ſtomach. 364
Confection for the frantick. 162
Confection in the falling ſickneſſe. 186, 189
Confection for *Melancholia Aduſta.* 165
Confection of *Calamint.* 735
Confection of ſpices, peeles, and roots. 740
Confection of field Mints. 759
Confection of Caſſie after divers waies. *ibid.*
Confection called *Benedicta laxativa*, *ibid.*
Confection of *Montignana* for a bad ſight. 123
Confection *Catholicon.* 759
Confection *Hamech.* 760
Conſortation for them that have the Ague. 666
Conſerve of red Cherries. 754
Conſerve of Lavander. 746
Conſerve of Betony. 742
Conſerve of Gadriſes. 763
Conſerve of Elecampane roots. 741
Conſerve of Barberries. 744
Conſerve of the fruit of the wild Roſe tree. 745
Conſerve of Eldern berries. 745
Conſerve of Hyſſop. 746
Conſerve of Gilloflowers. 747
Conſerve of Piony. 748
Conſerve of Eyebright. 744
Conſerve of Succory flowers. 753
Conſerve of Raſpes. 748
Conſerve of Prunes. 749
Conſerve of Roſes. 755
Conſerve of Burrage. 743
Conſerve of Rolemary. 753
Conſerve of Sage. *ibid.*
Conſerve of Fumitory. 744
Conſerve of Violets. 753
Conſerve of Marjoram and Baulme. 746
747
Conſerve of Cowſlips. 753

Conserve of water Lillies. *ibid.*
Constipatron in the body. 399
Consumption. 283
Consumptions divers remedies. 285
Consumptions signs. 282
Contraction of the Mother. 527
Convulsion of the sinews. 179,189
Convulsion of the mouth. 177
Coral prepared. 13
Corns on the toes. 559
Coriander seed prepared. 13
Coughes description. 256
Coughes remedies. 259
Cough that is dry remedied. *ibid.*
Cough moist and cold. 261
Coughing up of flegme. 262
Cough which is old. *ibid.*
Crablice killed. 66
Cramp. 179
Cramp through emptinesse and heat. 180
Cramp through wounding. 181
Cramp of the sinews. 647
Crook backs remedies. 244,247
Cupping and boxing for what it serveth. 47

D

Dandrif or scales of the head, beard and eyebrowes. 65
Dead child, look Child dead.
Deafnesse. 146
Debility of the stomach, look stomach.
Decoctio aperitiva major. 394
Decoction of Sene. *ibid.*
Decoction of *Guaiacum.* 609
Decoctio pectoralis purging the rheume. 260
Decoctio fructuum. 314
Decoctio Epithymi, decoction of Dodder. 805
Decoction aperitive prepared. 394
Decoction common prepared. *ibid.*
Desire unsatiable of going to stool, look Tenesmus.
Diamargariton, look confection *Diamargariton.*
Diapendion prepared. 262
Diatragacanthum frigidum, look confection *Diatragacanthum.*
Diaprunum lenitiva. 392
Diaturbith prepared. 393,804
Digestion of the stomach how to be kept. 55
Dotage, or doting childishnesse. 187
Drunkennesse a very bad disease. 715
Dropsie in general. 431
Dropsie called *Anasarca.* 432
Dropsie called *Ascites.* 433
Dropsie called *Tympanites.* 437
Dysenteria described. 383
There are two kinds thereof. 383,389

E

Eares description. 136
Eares whereinto something is gotten. 146
Ears pain in general. 137
Ears full of noise. 139,140
Ears impostumes. 141,144
Ears that bleed. *ibid.*
Ears stopped. 145
Earwigs gotten into the ears. 146
Effluence of seed in women after the act of copulation. 540
Effluxion of urine continual and involuntary. 504,505
Eies described. 89
Eies pain remedied. 90
Eie water for all pain of the eyes. 103
Eie powder. 91
Eies blearednesse called *Ophthalmie.* 93
Eies that be red. 94
Eie salve. 95
Eies full of heat remedied. 96
Eies full of blisters. *ibid.*
Eiewater of the Emperour *Frederick.* 121
Eies how they are defended on all sides. 89
Eies hurt with the hairs of the eyelids. 87
Eies that itch and are sore. 97
Eies that run and water. *ibid.*
Eies that run of a cold cause. 103
Eies that do matter. 103
Eies impostumed of external causes. 104
Eies that bake together in the sleep. *ibid.*
Eies spotted. 105
Eies before which Gnats or Flies seem to swarm. 109
Eies grown over with skins. 113,116
Eies misty and cloudy. 115
Eies that stick out as if they would fall out. 116
Eies that are burned. 117
Eies that have had a blow. *ibid.*
Eies whereinto something is gotten. 118
Eies that are best by day or by night. 124
Eies that are blind. 118,124
Eies squintnesse. 124
Eie beams dilatation. 116
Eie corners fistulaes, 104,108
Eie corners infections. 91,94
Eielids that will grow together. 87
Eielids turned. 86
Eielids with Warts. *ibid.*
Eielids chapped. *ibid.*
Eielids itching. 84
Eielids swoln diverlly. 89
Eielids description. *ibid.*

Eie waters and other things diversly prepared 100, 103
Eie water for running eies. 97, 101
Eie salve for all kind of running and matterring. 101
Electuary of *Calamus* prepared diverslv. 735
Electuary for giddinesse of the head. 156
Electuarium de Psillio. 763
Electuarium Diaphœnicon. *ibid.*
Electuarium de Citro. 757
Elecampane roots confected. 741
Electuarium de succo rosarum. 763
Electuarium de Sthesen. 392
Electuarium vitæ. 765
Electuarium de Mannâ. 761
Electuaries more. 760, 762, &c.
Eluxation of the joynts. 570
Emperour *Charles* his prescriptions and rules in the Gout. 580
Epithymum or Dodder prepared. 14
Eryngus roots preserved. 746
Esula prepared and used 18
Euphorbium prepared and used. 14
Excoriation of the bladder. 505
Extraction for all obstructions and binding of the body. 420
Exhortation to the keepers of the infected with the Plague. 712
Exulceration in the Kidneys. 478
Exulceration in the stomach. 497

F

Faces description. 77
Faces redneſſe. 78
Faces pushes and heat. 79
Face how to clear it. 66
Falls, blowes, and bruises, cause many sicknesses. 726
Falling sickneſſe *Epilepsia.* 183
Falling sickneſſe in children. 184
Fat of mans body described unnatural. 649
Fats of divers beasts prepared. 4
Fat Marrowes, look Marrowes.
Fatneſſe, her troubleſomneſſe to man. 649
Fear and frighting. 604
Feets diseases how cured. 559
Felon or Anconie of the fingers. 597
Feverburning called *Causon.* 176
Fingers described. 595
Fingers numbed. 596
Fingers numbed through bruises. 597
Fistulaes causes and signs. 602
Fistulaes description. 601
Fistula in the corner of the eye. 101
Fistula in the gums. 207
Fistula in the breasts. 242
Fistula in the wast gut 848
To cause flesh to grow in wounds. 634
Fleshes description. 448
Flix and red flix. 375, 381
Flood too abundant after delivery of the child. 550
Flowers how long they may be kept. 8
Flowers in women, look Termes.
Flowers of women in general. 507
Flowers how to prefer them. 509
Flowers obstruction how remedied. 510, 511, 512, 513
Flowers exceſſive course how to be stopped. 516
Flux of seed through heat, look running of the reines.
Flux of seed in sleep. 325
Flux of seed through cold. *ibid.*
Flux white in women how to be remedied. 520
Fomentations for the stomach. 365
Fractures of bones. 582
Frenſineſſe. 157
Frenſineſſe of blood. 159
Frenſineſſe with a hot ague. 158
Friction in the falling evil. 180
Fruits of all sorts, how to keep them fresh. 754
Fruits increase in the womb. 535
Fruits in weakneſſe in the mothers womb. 538
Fruitfulneſſe how it is caused in man and woman. 332
Fruitfulneſſe her signs. 535
Fruitfulneſſe in women how furthered. 328

G

Galbanum plaister prescribed 191
Galbanum plaister *Galen.* *ibid.*
Gals description. 436
Gallia Muscata prepared. 373
Gargarisme for all infirmities of the mouth 63
Gargarisme for giddinesse of the head 156
Gargarisme for loss of speech 204
Gargarisme for rhewmes 202
Generation members. 305
Giddinesse of the head. 154
Ginger prepared. 745
Glisters diversly prepared. 740
Golden Egg prepared. 701
Gloves how to perfume. 557
Going ill after the gout in the feet, how to remedy it. 583
Gout. 560
Gout signs. *ibid.*
Gout rules that are to be observed 562
Gout

H

Gout of the hands called *Chiragra*. 364
Gout in the feet. 373
Gout of the feet his preservatives. 375
Gout of the feet how to prevent it. *ibid.*
Gout of the feet or *Podagra*, how purged. 376
Gout of the feet which is cold. 378
Gout of the feet his remedies. 376, 377
Gout of the hips called *Sciatica*. 565
Grapes preserved. 753
Gratia Dei plaister. 680
Gravel, sand, or stone of the Kidneyes. 482
Gravels increase hindered. 483
To expel gravel. 486
Outward remedies for the gravel. 492
Gravels pain delayed. 485
Gravel remedied. 486, 487.
Griping of the heart. 301
Groynes swolne. 305
Gumme Ammoniack, look *Ammoniacum*.
Gums of the teeth. 205
Gums bleeding. *ibid.*
Gums ulcer. 193
Gums fistuled. 207
Gums resolving. *ibid.*
Gums purifying. *ibid.*
Gums impostumating. 205
Gunpowder burning. 326
Guts pain, look Bowels pain.

H

Hagge or mare. 182
Hairs description. 61
Hair to make it grow. *ibid.*
Hair made yellow. 62
Hair made black. *ibid.*
Hair made to curle. *ibid.*
Hair that it wax not gray. *ibid.*
Hair taken away. 63
Hair drawn out. *ibid.*
Hair infected diversly. *ibid.*
Haires falling out prevented. 64
Haire on the breasts what it signifieth. 342
Hands end and use. 555
Hands description. *ibid.*
Hands how to keep them clean. *ibid.*
Hands how to make them fween 554
Hands that are scabbed. *ibid.*
Hands that are chapped. *ibid.*
Hand waters, or lotion for the hands. 555, 556.
Hardnesse of the Matrix or Mother. 527
Heart-burning. 366
Hearts heavinesse. 302
Hearts panting or beating. 294
Hearts panting through heat. 295
Hearts panting through a bad stomach. 302
Hearts panting through cold. 299
Hearts panting through frighting. 302
Hearts oppression. 291
Hearts description. 288
Heart infirmities in general. 289
Headach. 37
Head-ache *Hemicrania*. 45
Head-ache *Congelatio*. 37, 168
Head-aches causes. 38
Head-ache with an ague and a lask. 42
Head-ache of inanition. 45
Head-aches *Hemicranie* and *Cephalea* cured. *ibid.*
Head-aches remedies. *ibid.*
Head-ache of the Sun. 46
Head-ache of drunkennesse. *ibid.*
Head-ache of blowes or falls. 47
Head-ache of cold. *ibid.*
Head-ache of cold, and an especial remedy for it. 50
Head-aches that be old. 227
Head which is cold, how to purge it. 47
Head broken out. 67
Head broken out healed. 67, 68
Heads giddinesse, look giddinesse of the head.
Head veins use in opening of it. 27
Head wounded. 59, 70
Hearing that is bad. 140
Hearing diminished. 146
Healthy how preserved from infection of the Plague. 687
What exercise is to be used of them. 689
How their dwellings ought to be. *ibid.*
Their government without doors. 691
Heat of urine, look Urine that scalded.
Heat of ulcers, see Inflammation.
Heat unnatural in the Plague. 705
Heat unnatural. 117
Heat of the head with Melancholy.
Herbs, roots, and flowers, how to preserve them.
Herbs when they ought to be gathered.
Herbs and roots how to be reserved.
Herbed wines prepared.
Hermodactyles used.
Hickcoughes in general.
Hickcoughes description.
Hickcough of repletion and windinesse
Hickcough of inanition.
Hieralogodion.
Hiera Picra prepared.
Hippocras or Claret wine how to make it.

Hippocras *fontis*. 739
Hoarseneſſe. 217
Honywater prepared. 125,757
Hony of Roſes. 196
Horſleaches prepared. 13
Horſleaches uſed. 30
Humane ſeeds unnatural effluxion, look running of the reins.
Humane ſeed increaſed. 325
Humours melancholick how to purge. 446
Hunger, Cow-hunger or *Bulimos*. 413
Hunger called Hounds hunger. 412
Hunger loſt remedied. 366
Hunger with ſwooning, called *Syncopalis*. 415
Hunger unſatiable. 318

I

Iliaca paſſio, a griping in the uppermoſt ſmall guts. 453
Impoſtumation of the gums. 205
Impoſtume of the Matrix, hard to becured. 528
An hard impoſtume of the Kidneys. 476
Impoſtumes in the noſe. 128
Impoſtumes of the ſtomach of cold nature. 406
Impoſtume of the bladder. 505
Impoſtume of the Liver, look Livers impoſtume.
Impoſtume of the neck of the bladder. 505
Impoſtume of the neck of the Mother, look Mothers impoſtume.
Impoſtume of the Spleen, look Spleenes impoſtume.
Impoſtume of the ſtomach. 404
Inappetencie or loſt appetite, how remedied 366
Ink how to make it. 809
Infections of the liver diverſly cured. 426
Infection of the Plague. 700
Signs thereof. *ibid.*
Infected with the Plague, how to comfort. 703
And what things elſe are to be obſerved. 704
Infected how to be purged. 705
Inflammation in womens places. 320
Inflammation of ulcers. 607
Inflammation of *Eryſipelas*. 595
The ſigns and remedies thereof. *ibid.*
Joints hardneſſe. 575
Joynt diſeaſe called *Arthritis*. 562,563
Joynt-ache, or pain in general. 560
Ischia the hips Gout. 565
Itchednesſe or ſcabbednesſe. 590
Itch in the fundament. 348
Itch of the hands. 555
Juice of wild Cucumbers prepared. 14
Juices of herbs, flowers and roots prepared 16
Juice of Sloes prepared. 17
Julep prepared. 758
Julep of Roſes how made. 427
Julep of Violets. *ibid.*
Julep for the obſtructed Liver through heat. 417,418
Ivory prepared. 14

K

KEepers of the infected with the Plague, what to obſerve. 712
Kidneyes deſcription. 470
Kidneyes exulcerated. 476,478
Kidneyes exulcerated outwardly. 482
Kidneyes impoſtume. 476
Kidneyes impoſtume through cold. 478
Kidneyes impoſtume through heat. 477
Kidneyes obſtructed 473
Kidneyes pain of heat. *ibid.*
Kidneyes pain of cold. 471
Kidneys pain of heat eaſed. 474,475
Kidneys pain of winds. 472
Knees deſcription. 558

L

Lac Virginis, that is, Maiden milk prepared. 77
Lacca prepared. 15
Lenificans Almanſoris. 165
Lameneſſe, look Palſey.
Lameneſſe cauſed by the Pox. 607,608
Lask. 375
Lask called *Tenaſmus*. 390
Lask with parbreaking, look vomiting with a ſcouring.
Lask *Lienteria* proceeding of choler. 375
Lask *Diarrhœa*. 378
Lask of the liver. 382
Lask that is bloody, look Bloudy flix.
Lask that is bloody, another kind. 384
Lask remedied. 375,376,378.
Laurels uſe. 18
Lead prepared. 21
Leanneſſe remedied. 650
Leproſies deſcription, ſigns and cauſes. 615,616
Leproſies remedies. 617,618 619, &c.
Leproſies of all ſorts, what is requiſite. 624
Legs deſcribed. 558
Legs *Varices*. *ibid.*
Letting of blood, look Blood letting.
Lice killed. 65
Lice, a water for them. 66
Lice ſalve, look Salve for lice.

Lights description, see Lungs.
Lights obstructed. 257, 258
Limbs extenuated or withered. 570
Limbs unsensiblenesse. 584
Limbs shaking or nummednesse, look Members.
Lips chapped. 148
Lips described. *ibid.*
Lips trembling. 149
Livers description. 415
Liver diversly remedied. 416
Liver of a Wolf prepared. 18
Liver of a Buck prepared. 124
Livers diseases in general. 416
Livers obstruction in general. *ibid.*
Livers obstruction of cold. 429
Livers obstruction of heat. 348
Livers hardnesse or schirrosity. 423
Liver over-cold. *ibid.*
Livers impostume. 421
Livers pain. 419
Loathing of meat. 368
Loathing of meat in Agues 665
Loch de Pulmone vulpis described. 279
Loch de Cancris. 281
Loch of Squils. 262
Loch de Pseo. *ibid.*
Loch sanum & expertum. *ibid.*
Longings of women with child. 537
Losinges diversly prepared. 232
Losinges for the cough and theume diversly prepared. *ibid.*
Losse of tasting. 200
Losse of speech. 204
Louse evil. 66
Lungs description. 256
Lungs exulceration called *Empiema.* 279
Lungs infection called *Peripneumonia.* *ibid.*
Lungs stopped. 257, 258
Luxation of the joynts. 581

M

Madnesse, 157, 162
Madnesse called *Mania.* 151, 157
Madnesse called *Melancholia.* 157
Mad-mens dwelling place. 160
Mans body divided into four parts. 182
Maidens milk. 177
May cheese. 577
Means used. 151
Manus Christi with Pearl. 181
Marchpane prepared. 768
Marks and spots in the skin. 634, 635
Marmalade diversly prepared. 750
Marrow of divers beasts prepared. 142
Matrix description. 506, 507
Matrix canker and ulcer. 526
Matrix use in women. 506
Matrix suffocation or ascension. 522
Matrix impostume how remedied. 528
Matter made with urine. 481
Meade for the oppression of the breast. 268
Meade how to make it. 566, 768
Measles or the Red-gumme in children. 587
Medicamen de Turbith. 393
Melancholy. 157, 163
Melancholick humours how to be purged. 451
Melancholia hath in the body a certain place. 636, 638
Melicraton. 768
Members accidents. 581
Members extenuated. 573
Members luxation, look Luxation.
Members lamed. 633
Members numbed. 586
Members shaking. *ibid.*
Members strained or bruised. 581
Memories description. 151
Memory strengthened. 153
Mettals that are venemous, look Venemous mettals.
Mithridate. 764
Mezereon her description 171
Milks abundance. 234
Milk curded or clotted. 238
Milks description. 236
Milk in women defected. *ibid.*
Milks superfluity. 238, 450
Milt, see Spleen.
Mirobalans prepared. 145
Mirobalans used. 155
Mischance in women with child. 540
Mischance preventer. 541
Misery of mankind, three causes. 3
Miseries of mans life.
Miseries of new born babes.
Miva.
Miva Citoniorum aromatica.
Mola, an unshapen peece of flesh in the mother. 532
Moles or marks children are born with. 635
Mothers canker or ulcer.
Mothers descension.
Mothers description. 320, 506
Mothers impostume. 427
Mothers neck convulsed.
Mothers pain of winde.
Mothers pain of cold.
Mothers pain of heat.
Mothers schirrosity or hardnesse.

Mothers suffocation, look suffocation of the Matrix.
Mothers use in women. 506
Mouthes description. 493
Mouthes convulsion. 177
Mouthes exulceration. 193, 194
Mouth stinking. 195
Murre described. 130
Murre cured. *ibid.*
Muscilage, look Slime.
Muscles and lacerts described. 648
Mustard seed prepared. 17

N

NAiles of hands and feet described. 558
Napa. 636
Narcotica used. 460
Natural warmth of man described. 640
Navels descriptions. 304
Necks description. 218
Neesing of a cold rheumatick head. 58
Neesing what it is. *ibid.*
Neesing causes. *ibid.*
Neesing powder. *ibid.*
Neesing wort, or Hellebors use. 16
Nipples chapped. 243
Noses canker. 127, 128, 129
Noses description. 126
Noses exulcerated. 126, 128
Noses obstructed. 126
Nose obstructed in children. 128
Noses excrescence of flesh. *ibid.*
Noses impostume. *ibid.*
Noses infection called *Polipus.* 130
Numbednesse. 168
Nutmegs preserved. 747

O

OYl of Saint Johns wort. 773
Oyles for the stomach in vomiting and scouring. 372, 375
Oyle of Antimonie, of Steele, and Iron. 779
Oyl of Amber. 779
Oyl of Abrecock kernels. 773
Oyl of Camomil. 771
Oyl of Capers. 772
Oyl of Costus. 175, 772
Oyl of Bevercod. 771
Oyl of Egs. 64, 771
Oyl of *Euphorbium.* 773
Oyl of Annis seeds. 772
Oyl of blew Flowerdeluce. 778
Oyl of Roses. *ibid.*
Oyl of Sulphur. *ibid.*
Oyl called *Hypobalsamum.* 775
Oyl of *Mandragora.* 776
Oyl of Rubarb. 776
Oyl of Marjoram gentle. 776
Oyl of Scorpions. 778
Oyl of Cloves. 776
Oyl of Pepper. *ibid.*
Oyl of Rue. 777
Oyl of water Lillies. 779
Oyl of Spikenard. *ibid.*
Oyl of Eldern flowers. 773
Oyl of Violets. 780
Oyl of Nutmegs. 776
Oyl of Vitriol. 780
Oyl of the seeds and flowers of Poppy. 775
Oyl of Earthworms. 563, 777
Oyl of Dill. 781
Oyl of linnen cloth. 774
Oyl of Lead. 771
Oyl of Mastick. 363
Oyl of Foxes. 744, 773
Oyle of the bloslomes of Walnut trees. 147
Oyl of Wormwood. 781
Oyl of Olives. 11, 770
Oyl of Poplar buds. 769
Oyl of Juniper berries. 781
Oyl of Tyles. 135, 781
Oyl of Quinces. 363
Oyl of sweet Almonds. 395, 775
Oyl of Lillies. 773
Oyl of Hempseed. *ibid.*
Oyl of divers kinds. *ibid.*
Oyl of bitter Almonds. 775
Oyles divers more to be prepared. 773, &c.
Oyl of Copperas. 774
Oyntment of Roses described by *Mesues.* 40
Oyntment in Consumption. 286
Oyntments or oyles for all cold stomaches. 362
Opium prepared and used. 16
Order of dyet in the Rupture. 318
Order of dyet in the head-ache of heat. 45
Order of dyet in a cold head-ache. 59
Order of dyet for watering and running eyes. 99
Order of dyet in bleeding at the nose. 131
Order of dyet in diseases of the eares. 138
Order of dyet for weak memorie. 172
Order of dyet in the sleeping disease. 168
Order of dyet in the dead Palsey. 179

Order of dyet in the falling evil. 184
Order of dyet in *Bronchocele*. 219
Order of dyet in cold rheumes. 230
Order of dyet in the Pleurisie of heat. 250
Order of dyet in the spetting of blood. 277
Order of dyet in the Consumption. 283
Order of dyet in the debility of the heart. 290
Order of dyet in swoonings. 292
Order of dyet in the Pyles. 337
Order of dyet in the pain and windinesse of the stomach. 363
Order of dyet in a hardned Spleen. 446
Order of dyet in the involuntary effluxion of urine. 496
Order of dyet for women with child. 536
Order of dyet in the Canker. 605
Order of dyet in the Leprosie. 617
Order of dyet in hot Agues. 663
Order of dyet for them that recover after a long sickneſſe. 666
Order of dyet in the Plague. 710
Order of dyet for them that are bitten with a mad dog. 731
Order of dyet for giddineſſe of the head. 156
Order of dyet for thoſe that are purſive. 266, 267
Order for them that recover from the Plague, or any lingring diſeaſe. 712
Order of dyet for an hot impoſtume of the Kidneyes. 477
Order of dyet in falling down of the Palate. 199
Order of dyet in the Ague *Synochus*. 674
Order of dyet in hot rheumes. 234
Order of dyet in obſtruction of the liver. 422
Order of dyet for outward ulcers of the Kidneyes. 482
Order of dyet for the gravel and ſtone. 496
Order of dyet for the dropſie. 438
Oxycroceum Vigonis. 245
Oxycraton. 781
Oxymel diverſly prepared. 61, 62
Oxymel of Squils. 49
Oxyſaccharo prepared. 127

P

PAlſey or *Paralyſis*. 166, 167, 169
Palſey through falls or blowes. 176
Palate of the throat falling down. 197, 198
Palates deſcription. 197
Pain in the head, look Head-ache.
Pain in the eyes, look Eies pain.
Pain in the ears, look Ears pain.
Pain in the teeth, look Tooth-ache.
Pain in the joynts, look Joynt-ache.
Pain in the back, look Back pain.
Pain of the Pyles, look Pyles pained.
Pain of the ſtomach, look Stomach pained.
Pain in the left ſide under the ſhort ribs, look Spleen pained.
Pain in the right ſide under the ſhort ribs, look Liver pained.
Pain in the Kidneyes. 476
Pain in the mother through cold. 526
Pain in the ſame through heat. 527
Pain in the hips or *Sciatica*, through heat and cold. 566, 577
Pain of the *Podagra*, or Gout of the feet. 578
Paine in the Pox of long continuance. 613
Pain in the throat through *Phlegma* and cold taking. 225
Pain in the teeth through outward cauſes. 208
Palſey that is ſhaking. 169
Palſey that is dead. 171, 173
Pain in the bowels, look bowels pained.
Pain in the belly, look Bowels pained.
Pain in the belly remedied. 460
Pain in the belly of young children. 463
Pain in the Kidnies. 474, 475
Pain of retention of urine. 498
Pain of the Mother. 525
Pain of the joynts, an eſpecial remedy. 585
Pain of wounded ſinews remedied. 645
Pains deſcription. 398, 399
Parbreaking with a laſk, look vomiting.
Patients before whoſe eyes Gnats ſeem to appear, what toreſram. 113, 114
Pearl of the eye. 107
Peaches preſerved. 386, 748
Pears preſerved. 742
Pearles prepared. 11
Pectoral potion prepared. 260
Pectoral ſalve. *ibid.*
Peſtilential Agues, look Agues peſtilential.
Phlebotomies cauſe and commodity. 23
Phlebotomie forbidden. 24
Phlegmes deſcription. 652
Phyſicks commendation. 4
Phyſical books diviſion. 6
Phyſicks deſcription. 4
Phyſicks neceſſity. *ibid.*
Phyſick is a ſure pawn. *ibid.*

Physick weights. 36
Piles called *Verrucales*. 344
Piles called *Hæmorrhoides*. 336
Piles that hang far out. 344
Piles that bleed overmuch, look Bleeding.
Piles opened. 340
Piles their pain. 341
Pils pestilential. 342
Pils *Indæ* prepared. 695
Pils for all kinds of lasks, and the terms in women. 444
Pils that move urine. 388
Pils for the plague especial good. 426
Pils of Amber. 695
Pil of divers kinds. 356
Pils to preserve health. 784
Pils to bind 269
Pils for the Gout of *Charles* the Emperour. 381
Pissing of blood 375
Pissing of matter, look Matter made by urine. 480
Pitch prepared. 12
Places in women described 10
Places exulcerated by copulation, 320, 321
Plague. 686, 687, &c.
Plague described *ibid.*
Plague cured 701, 702
Plagues causes and signs 686
Plague prevented. 687
Plague sore or Carbuncle 687
Plague sore, what. *ibid.*
whence it proceedeth, *ibid.*
when it appeareth, how to be remedied. 707, 708, &c.
Plague sore not appearing what is to be done. 710
Plaister *Diachilon* how made. 341
Plaisters in the rheumes. 229
Plaister *Basilicum*. 266
Plaister for the head-ache. 36
Plaister *de Muscilaginibus*. 88
Plaister to heal the corner of the eyes. 188
Plaister for the redneſſe of the eyes. 88
Plaister for watering eyes and cold rheumes. 175, 180
Plaister of Bayberries. 381
Plaister called the black Plaister. 666
Plaister of Falkenstone. 662
Plaisters for Rupture. 388
Plaister *Gratia Dei*. 666
Plaister for wounds. 841
Plaister called *Emplastrum Grisseum*. 843
Plaister *Apostolicum*. 345
Plaister *de Pede Arietis*. 346
Plaister *Oxycroceum*. 345
Plaister of *Cerussa*. 388
Plaister *Diapompholigos*. 290
Plaister *de Crusta panis*. 373
Pleurisie diverlly remedied. 231, 232
Pleurisie a dangerous disease of the breast. 248
Pleurisie of heat. 249
Pleurisie an expedite cure. 232
Pleurisie of *Choler*. 252
Pleurisie of *Phlegma*. 253
Pleurisie of *Melancholia*. *ibid.*
Pleurisie bastard 254
Pleurisie in women with child. 255
Small Pox. 387, 388
Small pox called Swine pox. 388
French Pox. 807
Sundry wayes to cure the same. 808, 809, 812
For Pox that have long continued. 813
Pox cured. 818, 819
Poisons remedies. 724, 725
Poison how to prevent it. 718
Poysons that grow out of the earth. 720
Poysoning how to be prevented from it. 718
Poyson taken the signs 719
Polypodie prepared. 13
Pomado prepared. 149
Pomanders for the Plague. 96
Pomanders for the head-ache. 36
Pomanders for a cold head-ache. *ibid.*
Pomanders how to be made. *ibid.*
Pomanders for a bad sight. 122
Pomanders for the rheume. 175
Pomanders for the infected or for smelling 180
Potion of Dodder for all melancholy diseases. 253
Potions that purge. 395
Potions for the stone. 486, 487, 488
Potions diverlly prepared. 489
Potions to expel wind of the stomach. 256
Potions for the ryer obstructed through cold 427
Potion of Hoarehesle. 122
Powders for meat. 122, 156, 157
Powder of the Emperour against the plague. 827
Powder that is red for Chirurgions. 666, 669
Powder for melancholy marvelous good. 734
Powder pasaphan. 666
Powder of Sene. 388
Powder *Medicamen Turbith*. 132
Powder for memory. 171
Powder for the shaking Palsey. 91
Powder of Rasis for the eyes.

Powders for the panting of the heart. 297
Precious stones prepared. 10
Preparation of divers things. 8, 9
Preservatives against the Plague. 695
Preserved black Cherries. 740
Preserved red Cherries. 754
Preserved Orange peeles. 740, 743
Preserves that comfort the stomach. 741
Preserved Citrons. 744
Privities and their diseases. 305
Prunes conserve. 749
Purgations for the rheume. 228, 233
Putrifaction of the bones. 585
Pust veneese with a sore cold cough. 299
Purgations used in hot Agues. 665
Purgations diversly prepared. 392
Purgative potions. ibid.
Purging what is to be done in it. 20
Purging who must forbear. ibid.
Purging past what afterward is to be done. 21
Purging Tabulates of Ginger prepared. 393

Q

Quicksilver how mortified. 67
Quinces purging conserve. 749
Quinces preserved. ibid.

R

Aspes preserved. 746
Red pests of the eyes, look eyes that be
Red gum and Measles, look Measles.
Outward remedies for obstruction of the li
Outward remedies for cold stomach.
Remedies for the cold Pleurisie. 256
Remedies for the cold Gout.
Regression of urine in general. 497
Remedies that will not passe through the
Remedies for meat.
Remedies for mouth in general.
Remedies that are cold.
Remedies that are hot.
Remedies for mouth in general.
Remedies that are cold. 327
Remedies that are hot.
Remedies for mouth in general.
Remedies that are cold.

Scabbednesse. 590
Scammonie prepared. 16
Scammony used. *ibid.*
Scabs on the shins how remedied. 557
Scalding of urine. 502
Scalding with hot water. 625
Scalls of burning. *ibid.*
Scall or Scurf of the head. 67
how to pluck it away. 69
Dry scarf of the hands. 554
Schirrosity of the stomach. 408
Schirrosity of the Liver. 423
Schirrosity of the Mother. 527
Seeds confected. 739
Sena *preparata pluvia*. 396
Scouring proceeding of the stomach and liver. 382
Scalding in the throat, look Heartburning.
Scouring by stool, look Lask.
Sculs contusion. 71
Sculs description. 70
Sculs fracture, an especial salve for it. 72
Scurvies description. 712
the signs thereof. *ibid.*
remedies to cure the same. 713
Sciatica, look Gout of the hips.
Secundine expelled. 549
Seed of man increased. 325
Sene leaves prepared and used. 17
Sewets of divers beasts prepared. 14
Shaking of the joynts. 584
Shaking through fear. 616
Shaking Palsey. 169
Ships description. 558
Short breath, look Breath.
Shoulder blades described. 247
Sickneſse that is cold described. 654
Sief de Fellibus. 117
Sief of Roses. 100
Sief Mesuithe. 91
Sief divers kinds. 790
Sights strengthening. 548
Signs of instant delivery. 549
Simples that conduce to the head. 59
Sinews that are slacked or resolved. 646
Sinews convulsed through the Palsey. 179
Sinews convulsed, look Convulsion.
Sinews description. 644
Sinews pain remedied. 645
Sirup of Sorrel. 791
Sirup of Wormwood. *ibid.*
Sirup of Sene leaves. 396
Sirup for the pain in the head. 45
Sirup how to prepare or make it. *ibid.*
Sirup of Roses. 60
Sirup of Mulberries. 196
Sirup of Nutshels. 197
Sirup of Mints. 386
Sirup of Quinces. *ibid.*
Sirup of *Ireos*. 795
Sirup of Water Lillies. *ibid.*
Sirup of Mirtles. 387
Sirup of Vinegar. 791
Sirup of Citrons. *ibid.*
Sirup of Verjuyce. *ibid.*
Sirup of Oranges. 792
Sirup of Berberries. *ibid.*
Sirup of Byzantine. *ibid.*
Sirup of Burrage. *ibid.*
Sirup of field Mints. *ibid.*
Sirup of Citron peeles. 793
Sirup of Fumitory. *ibid.*
Sirup of Pomegranates. *ibid.*
Sirup of Hyssope. *ibid.*
Sirup of Apples. 297
Sirup of Jujubes. 795
Sirup of Poppy head. 796
Sirup of Horehound. *ibid.*
Sirup of Roses laxative. 665
Sirup of Violets. *ibid.*
Sirup *de duabus Radicibus*. 551
Sirup *de quinque Radicibus*. *ibid.*
Skin of the head described. 70
Skins description in general. 585
Skin infected, how. 586
to cause the skin to grow. 634
Skin making or cicatrising medicines. 633
Skins external infection. 625
Skins that cover the braines wounded. 76
Sleep procuring remedies in Agues. 665
Sleeps description. 651
Sleeps hinderances. *ibid.*
Sleep procured to the frantick. 161
Sleep procured diversly. 651
Sleeping disease *Lethargus*. 151,167
Slime or Muscilage of seeds and roots. 65
Sloes preserved. 753
Smell lost. 134
Sope to take away her bad smell. 42
Sope bals for a cold head. 55
Sores of the head, look Head broken out.
Sores, look Ulcers.
Sore caught through carnal copulation. 321
For all manner of old sores. 598
Sores in the Pox. 614
Speech hindered, look Tongues slowneſse.
Species liberantes. 698
Species Hieræ. 391
Species of divers kinds. 303
Spetting of blood through Lights disease. 275
Spleen vein, look Vein of the spleen.
Spleens description. 440

Spleens obstruction with heat and Agues. 441
Spleens impostume. 442
Spleens obstruction without Agues, but with pain. 443
Spleen pained. 441, 443.
Spleens schirrositie. 444
Spleens external remedies. 447
Spleens melancholike humours. 449, 452
Splinter, look Thorn.
Spots of falls. 635
Spots taken out of cloth. 638
Spots of the skin. 634
Spots of heat remedied. 635
Spots of the face cured. 77
Squinancy, look Tumor in the throat.
Squintnesse, look Eyes squintnesse.
Staims of the face. 77
Steel prepared.
Stench of the arme-holes, how remedied. 552
Stinking breath, look breath.
Stitch in the breast, look Pleurisie.
Stomachical confections. 356
Stomachical powders. 357
Stomachs description. 349
Stomachs mouthes description. ibid.
Stomachs digestion preserved. 351
Stomachs debility in generall. 354
Stomachs debility of cold. 355
Stomachs debility of heat. 363
Stomachs debility of dryth. 365
Stomachs wambling, look Wambling.
Stomachs pain in general. 398
Stomachs pain of heat. 399
Stomachs pain of cold. 400
Stomachs pain of wind. 400, 401
Stomachs swolne. 402
Stomach pained of melancholy. 404
Stomachs impostume. 404, 406
Stomachs pain through *Phlegme*. 403
Stomach exulcerated. 407
Stomachs schirrosity or hardnesse. 408
Stone of the kidneys. 482
Stone of the bladder hindred from growing. 403, 484
Stone of the bladder. 482
To break and expel the Stone. 486
Strong Water. 804
Suffocation of the Matrix. 521
Sugar cakes made. 766
Sugar penneets prepared. 19
Sugar clarified. 18
Sugar plates. 19
Suppositories. 391
Suppositories for windinesse. 401
Sweating good for all Dropsies. 436
Sweat in the Plague how to be procured. 701
Sweat described. 642
Sweat provoked. 643, 644
Swellings after an Ague. 675
Swellings hard. 593
Swellings of the Groins, Arm-pits, and ears. 597
Swelling of womens places. 320
Swine Pox. 588
Swooning. 289
Swooning called *Syncope*. 291
Synovia how to stay it. 634

TAbulates how to make them, look Cakes.
Termes in women, their description. 507
Tearms in women procured. 509
Tearms in women to be stayed. 516
Teeth that stand on edge. 213
Teeth kept good. 215
Teeth made white. 215
Teeth cleansed. ibid.
Teeth doubled. 214
Teeth drawn and fallen out. ibid.
Teeth that are loose fastened. ibid.
Teeths description. 208
Teeth in children furthered. 209
Teeth that are hollow and rotten. 211
Teeth with Worms, look Worms.
Teeths gnashing. 212
Testicles description. 308, 319
Tenasmus described. 397
The remedies for the same. 398
Theriaca magna. 764
Theriaca Diatessaron. 765
Thirst in hot Agues. 665
Thirst through dryth of the Liver. 426
Thorns or splinters how to be drawn out of the skin. 628
Throat stopped of something gotten into it. 220
Throat with a Horsleach in it. ibid.
Throats tumor, look Tumor.
Throat exulcerated. 225
Throwes in childbirth provoked. 547
Throwes after Childbirth eased. 550
Toes their commodity. 559
Tongues description. 199
Tongues slowneste. 201
Tongue moystened. 202
Tongues *Alcola*. 203
Tongues impostume. 204
Tongue swolne. 203
Tooth-ache of inward causes. 208
Tooth-ache cured. 209, 210
Tooth-ache in the Pox. 211

Tooth-ache by touching of cold things. 212
Treacles vertues and operation. 764
Trembling. 716
Triapharmacon plaister. 385
Triphera. 765
Trochisci de Olibano. 374
Trochisci de Myrrha. 808
Trochisci diversly prepared. 147
Trochisci de Sulphure, or *Mulphi.* 270
Trochisci de Spodio. 376
Trochisces of Roses. 356
Tumor which is hard, called *Schirrus.* 604
Tumor after Agues. 685
Tumor, nodes, byles, and other hard swellings. 593
Tumors of the skin in general. *ibid.*
Tumors of the throat, or Almonds in the same. 195
Tumor of the throat called Squinancie. 221
Tumor of the throat with heat. 222
Tumor of Womens breasts, look Breasts swollen.
Tumor of the groins. 305
Tumor of the Cods through water, look Rupture.
Tumor of womens places. 320
Turbith his preparation and use. 17
Tuttie prepared. 18, 95

V

VEins which are to be opened in every disease. 26
Vein of the head. *ibid.*
Vein of the Liver. *ibid.*
Vein Median, or Median vein. *ibid.*
Vein of the Armpits. *ibid.*
Vein of the Spleen. 28
Vein of the hips. *ibid.*
Vein of the Mother. *ibid.*
Vein of the knees. *ibid.*
Vein of the forehead. *ibid.*
Vein of the eyes. 29
Vein in the Temples. *ibid.*
Vein of the nose. *ibid.*
Vein in the lips. *ibid.*
Vein of the tongue. *ibid.*
Vein of the neck. *ibid.*
Vein that is broken in the breast or Lights. 276
Veins that are broken called *Varices.* 557
Veins description in general. 26, 637
Venemous beasts. 726
Venemous mettals. 725
Venoms of divers kinds. 717
Verjuice how to be made. 736
Vernish how to be made. 809, 810
Vinegar of Roses. 787
Vinegar of Squils. 658
Ulcers of womens places. 321, 530
Ulcers in general. 598
Ulcers that run and stink. 95, 599
Ulcers corroding in general. 601
Ulcer corroding called *Herpes.* 603
Ulcers inflammation cured. 607
Ulcer *Cancrebe.* 623
Ulcers of the shins how healed. 558
Ulcers in the Kidneyes. 476
Ulcers outward of the Kidneys. 482
how remedied. *ibid.*
Ulcer of the Matrix. 530
Of all manner of old ulcers. 598
Ulcerations of the privy members. 95
Unnatural heat. 641
Unnatural things that are six. 265, 266
Unguentum nervinum. 646
Vomiting through weakness of the stomach 369
Vomiting with a scouring. 371
Vomiting in Agues. 665
Vomiting of women with child. 538
Vomitories. 168
Voice described. 216
Voice cleered. 218
Urine to move in the Dropsie. 435
Urines abundance. 493
Urine that scalds or burneth. 502
Urines retention by obstruction of the passages. 501
Urines effluxion. 494
Urines effluxion through cold. *ibid.*
Urines effluxion through heat. 495
Urines retention by the debility of the vertue retentive. 498
Urines retention through falls or blowes. 501
Vulneral plaisters. 631
Vulneral potions. 630
Vulneral salves. 632

W

WAfers how to make them. 757
Walnuts preserved. 747
Wambling of the stomach. 369
Warts. 587
Warmth natural of man described. 640
Water that bindeth the body and stayeth the lask. 43
Water of the Emperour *Frederick* for the eyesight. 121
Water of M. *Tristram.* 78
Water for all manner of madness. 160
Waterish moisture of mans body, look *Phlegma.*

Waters for diseases of the Liver. 426
Water of Beans. 491
Waters to wash the mouth and other parts in the Leprosie. 621
Waters called golden waters, and elixirs of life. 755
Waters for to wash the hands. 757
Water for lice, look Lice water.
For him that cannot hold his water, look Urines effluxion.
Wearisomnesse described. 650
Whites in women. 520
Wild Cucumbers, look juyce of wild Cucumbers.
Wild Saffron prepared. 16
Williams potion for the stone. 486
Whites for the gravel and stone. 492
Wine forbidden in all infirmities of the sinewes. 171
Wine of Eyebright to strengthen the sight. 121
Wine of divers sorts, 810, 811, &c.
Wine for the cold head-ache. 51
Wines amended that have a fault. 798
Wolfes liver, look Liver of a Wolf.
Wombs description and use. 506, 507
Wombs descension, look Mother.
Good for childbearing Women. 534
How to know whether a Woman be with child. ibid.
And whether with a boy or a girle. ibid.
What commonly appeares in women with child. 535
Womens privities, look Places.
Women made narrow like maidens. 421
Women with child. 534, 535
For to comfort the womans vertue retentive 331
Women with child their strange longings. 537
Worms in the Arsegut called Astwiders. 470
Worms prevented. 465
Worms of the belly, ibid.
Worms of the teeth. 212
Wounds and all that appertaineth unto them 537
Wounds stitched. 603
Wounds to make them matter. 633
Wounds with proud flesh in them. ibid.
Wounds fresh. 630

Y

YArd exulcerated in the act venereal. 404
Yards unnatural erection, called *Priapismus* and *Satyrismus*. 307
Yellow Jaundise. 427, 428. &c.

V

The end of the first Table.

This

This ſecond *Index* containeth all the Simples that are ſpecified in this Work, as Roots, Herbs, Flowers, Fruits, Plants, Juyces, Gummes, Woods, Stones, Barks, Mettals, Minerals, and Earths. Alſo all the parts of Beaſts, and of the Body of man, that are or may be uſed in Phyſick.

A

Brecocks or Peaches, are called in Latine *Mala armeniaca*, *Mala præcocia*, and *Bericocia*: others do call them *mala trecacina*, and the common ſort name them *Chryſomela*, but this is the right and true Latine name of the Orange: it is a fruit ſufficiently known, and growing in this our countrey.

Adders tongue, is called of *Plinie Lingua*, and *Lingulaca*, of the Herbariſts, *Echiogloſſum*, *Ophiogloſſum*, *Lingua viperina*, *Lingua ſerpentina*, and *Lingua vulneraria*. This herb is to be gathered only in April and in May, it groweth in moiſt medowes and low grounds, and that at no other time then in the above ſaid moneths. It is uſed in vulneral potions, oyles and ſalves.

Alecoſt, or Indiſh Pepper, in Latine *Lepidium*, *Piperitis*.

Alehoof, or (as ſome ſay) Harehoof, is called in Greek and in Latine *Chamæciſſus*, *Selinitis*, *Hedera humilis*, and *Corona terræ*, by the Herbariſts, *Hedera pluvialis*, and by the Apothecaries, *Hedera terreſtris*.

Allium alpinum, it is alſo called *Allium reticulatum*, *Victorialis*, and *Victorialis longa*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Gladiolus ſegetalis*, which by divers authors is called *Victorialis rotunda*, although in very deed they differ greatly. The leaf of this herb is not much unlike to that of Neeſewort, the root is long and hairy, twiſted together, as if it had been done of purpoſe with the hand, whereof two of them are laid croſſe one over another, as the legs of man or woman otherwhiles are placed. This root do the roſening Merchants (I mean the Mountibanks and Quackſalvers) ſell for the right Mandragora or Mandrake, ſaying, that they have digged it up under the Gallows with great hazard of their lives: thus do they beguile and ſeduce the common ſort of men with untruths, which ought by the Magiſtrates to be ſeverely puniſhed, and not for a ſmall peece of ſilver to be permitted, otherwiſe, I fear they ſhall be called to an account for it, when it ſhall be ſaid, *Redde rationem villicationis tuæ.*

Allum, *Alumen*, *Alumen liquidum*, *Alumen liparinum*, *Alumen rubeum*, the Apothecaries do call it, *Alumen de Rocha.*

Amber in Latine, *Amharum*, *Ambar*, *Ampar*, *Succinum orientale*, and at the Apothecaries, *Ambra*, it is a precious liquor, or a kind of ſweet ſmelling earth.

Amethyſt, *Amethyſtus*, a precious ſtone.

Ammie, *Ameos*, *Ammium*, *Ammi*, *Cuminum regium Hippocratis*, *Cuminum Alexandrinum*, and *Cuminum Æthiopicum*, it is a kind of plant which beareth a ſharp and ſweet ſeed, which the Apothecaries do call *Ameos*.

Anacardus or *Anacardium*, is a ſtrange fruit ſo called.

Angelica, is called by divers and ſundry names, for that there be divers ſorts of it, as *Hippiatricis*, *Laſar en Gallaticon*, in Greek *Laſer Gallicum*, *Lacerpitium Gallicum*, and of the Herbariſts, *Imperatoria*, *Oſtruthium*, and *Aſtrutium*, the Apothecaries do call it *Aſtrantia*, and *Magiſtrantia*.

Anthora, is called of *Paulus Ægineta*, *Arnabo*, and of the Arabian writers *Zurumbet*, of the Simpliciſts *Zurumbetum*: It is a ſweet ſmelling root like to Ginger, but it is bitter in taſte. It is commonly called *Zedoaria*, but unjuſtly: for there is no ſmall difference between *Zurumbet*, that

is, *Anthora*, and *Zedoaria* of the Arabians, as manifestly appeareth by the words of *Avicen* and *Serapio*, who do write of these two in sundry chapters, severally: wherefore the *Zedoaria* of the Arabians is not our *Anthora*, although that it hath bin falsly used in many compositions for it, but it is the root of Zeduary; Anthora is an herb, not much unlike the lesser Wolfsbane, but that it groweth somewhat higher, and the flowers are a little lesse and yellow. It hath two black roots round like unto an Olive; blackish without and as it were withered; within white and solid. It groweth in great quantity on the hills in *Savoy*, and about *Geneva*, all about *Salmes*, in high *Burgundy*, and on the hills of *Switzerland*. The latter Greek Writers call it *Zadua*, *Zaduaria*, *Zedura*, *Zudar*, *Zaduara*, *Zadur*, *Zadera*, *Zadnar*, and *Zadar*: *Serapio* calleth it *Zedoaria*; *Avicen Zeduar*, *Gieduar*, and *Napellus Moysi*. The Simplicists name it *Anthora*, *Antithora*, and *Anthullia*: wherefore whensoever you shall find *Zurumbet* in any composition, then be sure to take *Anthora*; but if you read *Zedoaria*, then take *Doronicum*.

Antimony, in Greek *Stibi*, *Stibium*, or *Stimmi*; of *Galen Gynacium*, and of *Plinie Platiophthalmon*: it is called at the Apothecaries by the barbarous name *Antimonium*. *Plinie* also calleth it *Alabastrum*, which name is proper onely to Alabaster; it is a mineral like to lead; and known of all men.

Argentine, *Argemone altera*, *Inguinaria Plinii*, *Anserina*, *Argentina*, *Tenacetum sylvestre*, *Agrimonia sylvestris*, *Potentilla*, and *Portentilla*. This herb is sufficiently known, and much used for all pains and gripings in the belly which are without any binding.

Aristologie the round, *vide* Hartwort.

Aromatical wine, is a wine made with spice, and a kind of Hippocras. *Aromatites* Hippocras is called in Latine *Vinum Hippocraticum*, the Claret wine *Clarea*, *vinum Clarstum*, and at the Apothecaries *Claretum*.

Artichokes, are called in Greek and in Latine *Scolymus*, *Cinara*, *Cinarus*, *Acantha*, *Cactus*, *Cardnus altilis*, *Strobilus*, *Carchofilus*, *Articocalus* and *Articoca*.

Ars-smart, in Greek and in Latine *Hydropiper*, *Piper aquaticum*, *Piper caninum*, *Herba pavonis*, *Pavonaria* and *Persicaria*, of *Hippocrates*, *Polycraton* or *Polycriton*. It is a well known and contemned herb, but very good for wounds; it is hot and dry. The other kind, which by the unskilful without any regard is used for the true Ars-smart, is somewhat bigger, and hath blewish spots on the leaves, it is also something colder and dryer by nature then the former, and it is called *Persicaria major*, and *Persicaria maculata*, and of *Plinie Plumbago*, and *Molybdana*. The first sort is the right Arse-smart, which is not only used in wounds, but also for the Piles, and the juyce of it for the worms.

Asarabacca, *Asarum*, *Nardus rustica*, *Vulgago*, and as some say *Vulvago*: the Apothecaries call it *Asarum*, and some *Asata baccara*.

Ash tree, in Greek and in Latine *Melia*, and *Fraxinus*, it is a common and well known tree.

Azure stone, *Cyanon*, in Latine *Lapis Cyaneus*, *Lapis cæruleus*, and *Lapis Bellatus*, at the Apothecaries *Lapis lazuli*.

Avence, or herb bennet, *Caryophyllata*, *Avantia*, *Sanamunda*, *Oculus leporis*, and of *Plinie Geum*.

Axungia vehicularis, or *Unguentum vehiculare*, is a composition of Tarre and Tallow that countrey men do use to grease their Cart wheeles withal, it is used for Ruptures or Hernies.

BAcon, is called of *Plinie* in Latine *Lardum*, and of *Plautus Laridum*.

Badger, *Meles*, *Taxus*, *Tassus*, *Taxo*, it is a well known beast.

Barberry tree, in Greek and Latine *Oxyacantha Galeni*, *Crespinus*, and at the Apothecaries *Berberus* and *Berberis*.

Barley, in Greek and Latine *Crithe* and *Hordeum*.

Bay tree, in Greek *Daphne*, in Latine *Laurus*. There are two sorts of Baies, the male and female kind The female is the common Bay tree which beareth the berry: the male is altogether like to the former, but that it beareth no berries: the female is called of *Plinie Laurus baccalia*, and of the Herbarists *Laurus fœmina*, *Laurus bacciferæ*, and *Laurus fœcunda*. The male is called *Laurus mas*, and *Laurus sterilis*. Both kinds are planted in gardens with us.

Balme, *Melissophyllon*, *Meliphyllon*, *Melittæum*, and *Melitiana*, in Latine *Apiastrum*, *Ciarago* and *Citraria*, of the Herbarists *Citronella*, *Melifolium*, & *Cedronella*, at the Apothecaries *Melissa*. *Nicolaus Myrepsus* calleth it in Greek *Melissochortum*, that is, *Herba*

Herba apum. Our Baulm undoubtedly is the right *Meliſſophyllum* of the ancient Phyſitians, although divers will gainſay it, for both in form, vertues and operation do they agree. There be alſo two kinds of this herb, the one which is common and daily uſed, of the which in this place we ſpeak. The other hath long and jagged leaves, and brown flowers, and it beareth the ſmell of a ſtrong and odoriferous Limon, and it is called *Meliſſa cretica*, and *Meliſſa Turcica*, to diſtinguiſh it from the other; both kinds are in uſe.

Bearfoot, *Acanthus ſeu Acantha*, *Herba Topiaria*, *Herpacantha*, *Pœderos*, or *Pœdorotes*, *Melamphyllon*; of the Simpliciſts *Branca Urſina Italica*, to ſever it from our common Bearfoot, which is the right *Spondylium* of our anceſtors. The wild Bearfoot or *Acanthus* is very common every where in Germany, it groweth willingly in low and moyſt medowes, and is there called of the common people *Graskol*. It is there ordinarily uſed in the pot amongſt other potherbs. *Dioſcorides* calleth it *Acanthus ſylveſtris*, the Simpliciſts call it *Cardnus pratenſis*, and *Braſſica pratenſis*.

Beere, *Cerviſia*, *Zithum*.

Beetes are called of the Grecians *Teutlon*, *Teutlis* and *Seutlon*, of the Latiniſts *Beta*, and at the Apothecaries *Cicla*. There are two kinds of it, the white and red Beetes: the white Beets are called *Beta candida*, and *Beta Sicula*, whence the barbarous names *Cicla* and *Sicla* firſt began. The red Beetes are called *Beta rubra*, in Engliſh red Beets, of which there are alſo another ſort with a dark red coloured leaf, called *Beta nigra*. The white is uſed in Phyſick, and the other in the Kitchin.

Beeſtings, in Greek *Trophalis*, in Latine *Coloſtrum* and *Coloſtra*.

Behen or Ben, are two roots, the white and the red, they are ſeldom uſed ſeverally. The white is known of all Simpliciſts, and it is called *Cardianthemon*, of *Dioſcorides Ocymaſtrum*, we know no other name for it but Behen or white Ben. The other ſort which is brought unto us from forrain Countries, is called the red Behen, and but little accounted of with us. Some do uſe the roots of Tormentil or of Pimpernel for it, and that indeed not amiſſe, for that the roots of the red Ben is both without ſmell and taſte, and alſo uncertain.

Benzoin, *Beniovinum*, *Belzoinum*, *Benzoinum*, and *Benzuinum*, is a ſweet ſmelling juice, which is called at the Apothecaries *Aſa dulcis*, it is very ſeldom uſed alone, but is alwayes uſed in compoſitions, whether it be by fuming candles or ſope balls.

Beril, *Berillus* or *Beryllus*, it is a precious ſtone, pale green coloured. There is another kind of it that is ſomewhat yellowiſh, and is called *Chryſoberillus*, that is, a yellow Beril. The Beril is uſed for all infirmities of the heart, being mixed with other things.

Betony, in Greek and Latine *Ceſtron*, *Pſychotrophon*, *Betonica*, *Vetonica*, *Serratula*, and *Scribonius* doth call it *Hierabotane*, that is, *Sacra herba*, otherwiſe is Vervein called *Hierabotane*.

Bevercod, *Caſtoreum*.

Bisket, *Panis nauticus*, *Biſcoctus*, *Bucellatum*, *pyrites Hippocratis*, it is a bread twice baked.

Birdlime, in Greek *Cleos*, in Latine *Viſcus Viſcum*, *Gluten aviarium*, and *Gluten aucupum*.

Biſtorta, in Greek and Latine *Britannica*, *Britannica*; of the Herbariſts *Serpentaria rubra*, *Biſtorta*, and at the Apothecaries *Serpentaria* or *Colubrina*.

Blackberry buſh, or Bryer: *Batus*, *Rubus*, *Morus Vaticana*. The fruit of this ſhrub is called the Blackberry, in Greek and Latine *Mora bati*, *Mora rubi*.

Blites, in Latine *Blitum*; of the Herbariſts *Beta inſipida*, and *Beta fatua*. There be four kinds of it; the firſt is the common Blites, and known by that name *Blitum*, *Blitum album*. The ſecond kind hath red leaves, and is well known and common in every garden, called red Blites: the Simpliciſts do call it *Blitum rubrum*, and *Olus rubrum*. The third groweth on every dunghil, it is much leſſe, and is called wild Blites. The fourth kind is brought unto us from forrain Countries, but now it is common in all gardens, and it is called Hungarian or Indian Blites; the Herbariſts do call it *Blitum Indicum*, *Blitum Ungaricum*, and *Blitum Topiarium*. The common Blites ſhall be uſed in all compoſitions, to wit, where blites is named without any addition.

Borrage, or Burrage, *Bugloſſum*, *Euphroſynum*, *Nepenthes*, *Borago*, *Lingua bovis*, *Lingua bubula*, and *Corago*.

Borras, *Chryſocolla factitia*, and at the Apothecaries *Borax*. There is another kind of *Chryſocolla*, which the Goldſmiths were wont to uſe in ſoddering, this is called of the Grecians *Chryſocolla*, and in Latine

Auri ſyluſtre, *Gluten auri*, and *Chryſocolla nativa*, but that is not taken inwardly as the common Borras is.

Bran, *Furfur*, *Cantabrum*.

Brimſtone, in Latine *Sulfer*, *Sulphur*: there are two kinds of it, the one as it is digged out of the myne, which is called Sulfer vife, in Greek *Theon Apyron*, and in Latine *Sulphur ignem non expertum*, and *Sulphur vivum*. The other kind is the common Sulphur or dead Sulphur, in Greek *Theon pepyromenon*, in Latine *Sulphur ignem expertum*, *Sulphur factitium*, and *Sulphur mortuum*: but whenſoever Sulphur or brimſtone is found in any compoſition, then ſhalt thou underſtand Sulphur vife.

Bryony, in Greek *Ampelos Leuce*, *Bryonia Leuca*, *Pſilothrum*, *Ophyoſtophilos*, *Melothrum*, *Archiſoſtris*, *Cedroſtis*; *Hippocrates* calleth it *Echetroſis*; *Plinie*, *Madon*. In Latine *Bryonia*, *Vitis alba*, and *Bryonia alba*, *Vua ſerpentina*, *Vua anguina*, *Roſtrum*, of *Apuleius*, *Dentaria* and *Apiaſtellum*, in the Arabian tongue *Alpheſcira* and *Feſcera*. The other kind is called the black Bryony, but it is not ſo common with us as the white: the leaves of this are not much unlike to the long Hartwort leaves, but they are ſomewhat longer and tenderer, faſhioned like a Hart: it runneth up into the hedges like the white. This black-Bryony is called of *Diſcorides* *Ampelos melæna*, *Chironios ampelos*, *Bucranium*, and *Plinie* calleth it *Cynacanthe*. In Latine *Bryonia nigra*, *Vitis nigra*, *Vitis Chironia*, *Butaunta*, *Betiſalca*, and of *Plinie*, *Apronia*; The Herbariſts call it *Tamarus*, *Taminus*, *Tamus*, and *Vua taminia*; the Arabians *Alfeſirefin*, and *Feſirefin*, yet it is altogether unknown to our Phyſitians and Apothecaries. It groweth very much about *Lauterberge* in the woods and hedges thereabout. Whenſoever thou doſt find Briony in any compoſition without any addition, then ſhalt thou underſtand the white Bryony onely.

Broom, is altogether unknown to the Grecians, *Plinie* calleth it *Geniſta*; at the Apothecaries *Geneſta* and *Geneſtra*. The Simpliciſts call it, *Spartium ſcoparium*, and *Geneſta ſcoparia*, for a difference of the Spaniſh broom which *Dioſcorides* calleth *Spartium*.

Buck, *Hircus*, of this beaſt are many things and parts uſed in Phyſick.

Buffle, *Bubalus*.

Bugloſſe, Oxetongue, Lang de beuf, in Latine and Greek *Bugloſſa*, *Bugloſſum*, *Lingua bovis*, *Lingua bubula*, the Greeks do alſo call it, *Euphroſinon*, or *Nepenthes*: theſe are the true names of the Bugloſſe of the ancient Phyſitians. The herbs that now adaies are called Bugloſſes, are in number 8. whereof three are tame or garden Bugloſſes, and five wild. The firſt kind is called the Spaniſh Bugloſſe, which is the true Bugloſſe of *Dioſcorides*, as every one doth acknowledge that compareth it with the deſcription: the Simpliciſts call it Spaniſh Buglos, *Bugloſſum ſemper virens*, and *Meſues* calleth it *Bugloſſa domeſtica*. The ſecond kind is called Burrage, *Borago*, and *Corago*, it is both common and well known. Many do take this to be the right Bugloſſe, but indeed the former is to be taken for the right. The third is our ſmall Oxetongue, or Lang de beuf, which the Apothecaries do daily uſe, and is called the leſſer Bugloſſe; and of the Herbariſts, *Bugloſſa minor*, *Bugloſſa officinarum*. The fourth kind of Bugloſſe, although with us it be planted in gardens, yet notwithſtanding it is a wild Bugloſſe, for by *Merburge* in *Lottering*, and alſo in *France* it groweth very common in every field. It is called the greater Bugloſſe; Italian Bugloſſe, *Bugloſſum Italicum*, *Bugloſſum Gallicum*, and at the Apothecaries *Bugloſſa major*, *Meſues* doth call it *Bugloſſa ſylveſtris*, and other will make a kind of *Echium* of it. The firſt kind (and the ſecond among the wild Bugloſſes) groweth not above one foot in height, it beareth a purple flower admixed with blew, it is commonly found in woods, and in ſandy grounds: it is both in ſmell and taſte like the leſſer Bugloſſe, and is called alſo the leſſer wild Bugloſſe. The Simpliciſts call this fifth kind of Bugloſſe, *Bugloſſa ſylvatica*, *lingua Ovina*, and *Cynogloſſa minor*. The ſixt kind (and the third wild Oxetongue) groweth not above a ſpan and a half in height, it is very ſharp and pricking, it beareth a light blew flower, it is found in gardens, and in other well tilled places of it ſelf: the Herbariſts call it *Bugloſſum Echiotes*, and *Bugloſſum ſylveſtre ſpinoſum*. The ſeventh Bugloſſe (and the fourth amongſt the wild ones) is alſo commonly ſo called, it groweth every where by the high way ſides, and dry places, it is well known to every man under the name of Bugloſſe, it is called in Greek and Latine *Echium*, *Alcibiacum*, and of *Ægineta Alcibiadium* and *Dorium*, of the Simpliciſts *Bugloſſum viperinum*, *Bugloſſum ſylveſtre*. The eight kind and fifth wild Bugloſſe, is called red Bugloſſe, becauſe it hath red roots, it is called in Greek and Latine

Latine *Anchuſa*, but *Matthias Sylvaticus* doth call it *Lactuca aſinina*; the Herbariſts call it *Bugloſſa rubra*, and the Apothecaries *Alcana*, but Alcana is otherwhiles taken for *Liguſtrum*. The firſt ſix kinds of tame and wild Bugloſſes are moyſt, and meetly warm, in time of need they may be uſed one for another.

Bull, *Taurus*.

Burre the greater, in Greek *Proſopis*, *Proſopium*, in Latine Acrium, Perſonata, Perſonatia, Bardana, and at the Apothecaries Lappa major.

Butchers broom, or Kneeholm, in Greek *Oxymyrſine*, *Myrſine Agria*, *Myrtacantha*, *Myacantha*, *Schinchus*, *Scingus*, *Catangelos*, *Gyrenia*, *Ocneron*, *Cine*, and *Chamamyrtus*. In Latine *Myrtus ſylveſtris*, *Myrtus Aculeata*, *Myrtus acuminata*, *Myrtus humilis*, *Myrtus terreſtris*, *Genitura Herculis*, *Ruſcus*, and *Spina murina*; The Herbariſts do call it *Spina veſpertilionis*, *Palma murina*; the Apothecaries *Bruſcus*; and *Diſcorides*, *Hiera myrtus*, that is, *ſacra myrtus*. This Butchers broom is onely planted in gardens in *Germany*, although his roots and red berries be daily uſed of the Apothecaries. In *France* it groweth very common in divers places, to wit, about *Orliens* and *Montargy*.

C

CAbbage, or Coleworts, a Cabbage is called in Greek *Crambe*, *Cephalote*; and *Nicander* doth call it *Gaſter*: In Latine *Caulis imperialis*, *Braſſica capitata*, *Braſſica tritiana*, *Caulis capitatus*, *Caulis albus*, *Braſſica alba*, and the Apothecaries name it *Caputium*; this is moſt common of all other kinds of Coleworts, we call it a Cabbage. The other ſort of Cabbages is called of *Plinie* Lacuturris, and of the Simpliciſts Braſſica lacuturria, or Braſſica ſabaudica, of ſome Savoy Coleworts. The third kind is called the red Cabbage, in Greek *Caulodes*; in Latine, Braſſica cumana, Braſſica levis, and Braſſica rubra. The fourth ſort is named criſped, or crumpled Coleworts, this is much ſweeter then any of the reſt, and it hath crumpled or wrinkled leaves, like to the headed Lettice, for which cauſe it is called in Dutch *Lattouncoole*, that is, Lettice Coleworts; and by *Plinie*, Braſſica ſabellica; and by the Herbariſts, Braſlica criſpa major, and Braſſica dulcis. The fift ſort is the leſſer crumpled Cabbage, in Greek *Selinoides* or *Selinuſia*; and by *Athenæus*, Braſſica criſpa minor, Braſſica Apiana, and *Caulis criſpus minor*. The ſixth kind is the common Coleworts, and is alſo uſed in Phyſick, it is called *Crambe*, *Caulis*, or Braſſica without any addition. The ſeventh ſorts is the Caulyflorie or flowered Cabbage; *Plinie* calleth it Braſſica Pompeiana; and the Simpliciſts, Braſſica cypriana, and Florecaulis. The eight kind is called Rapecole, or Rapocaulis, but this ſort was altogether unknown to our predeceſſors.

Calamine is the oar of braſſe, *Cadmia*, *Cadmia foſſilis*, *Cadmia nativa*, for a difference of *Cadmia factitia*, or Tuttie; *Plinie* nameth it *Lapidem areſum*, the Apothecaries barbarouſly call it Climiam, Cathimiam, and Lapidem Calaminarem, and thoſe that work in mines name it *Cobaltum*. This mineral ſtone is much uſed amongſt Chirurgions, and is the very beſt of all the ſorts of *Cadmia*, as *Galen* witneſſeth.

Calcedonie, *Calcedonius* is a precious ſtone, and a kind of *Onyx*.

Calamus was by the ancient Phyſitians called *Acorus*: ſome do take the great Galangal for it, and although the ſame be not the right *Acorus*, yet is their errour more tolerable then of thoſe that uſe the *Ineas* root inſtead of Calamus.

Calamus Aromaticus, is the right Calamus of the ancient Phyſitians, and it is called *Acorus* and *Piperatum*: but the right *Calamus Aromaticus* is a ſweet ſmelling reed, which is never brought unto us, and therefore we do uſe Acorus, that is, Calamus, which doth now ſupply the place both of Calamus, and of Calamus Aromaticus.

Camelina is called of *Dioſcorides Myagrum*, of *Theophraſtus Eryſimum*, of Herbariſts *Camelina*, of the Apothecaries *Seſamum*. And although it be not the right *Seſamum* of the ancient Phyſitians, yet doubtleſſe it may ſafely be uſed inſtead thereof, becauſe as yet the right *Seſamum* is not known. It hath power to warm reaſonably, and to eaſe all manner of pain: wherefore it is much better to uſe a thing in place of the true *Seſamum* which is well known, then a thing altogether unknown and uncertain.

Camel, *Camelus*.

Camomils, in Greek and Latine *Chamæmelum*, *Anthemis*, *Leucanthemus*, and *Leucanthemum*, the Apothecaries do call it *Chamemilla* and *Camomilla*. Chamemils are hot and dry in the firſt degree.

Campher, *Caphora*, *Camphora*, in Latine and in Greek *Caphura*; it is a ſtrong ſmelling juyce or ſap of a tree in Indie: it is cold

and

and dry in the third degree, and it is much uſed in phyſick. There is yet another kind of Camphire, which is a kind of mineral or of Amber, called Camphire of the mine, that is hot and dry by nature. This kind of Camphire is altogether unknown to the Phyſitians, for which cauſe alſo it is not in uſe.

Canker, in Latine and Greek *Cartinoma*, *Carcinus* and *Cancer*, a virulent and corroding ulcer.

Canterbury bels, in Latine *Smilax levis*, *Volubilis*, *Campanula*, *Convolvulus*, *Campanella*, *Sandulaca*, *Conjugulum Catonis*, and *Funis arborum*. This herb is known every where.

Capers, in Greek and Latine *Caparis* and *Futuris*.

Capon, *Capus*, *Capo*, and *Gallus ſpado*.

Caraway, in Greek and Latine *Carum*: *Ætius* calleth it *Careum*, *Carium*: *Simeon* termeth it *Carnabadium*; others call it *Caronm* and *Careoſemen*; the Apothecaries call it Caryi: and *Athenaus* Paſtinaca major.

Carbuncle, in Greek and in Latine *Anthracites*, and *Carbunculus*.

Carduus Benedictus, *Attractylis hirſuta*, *Carduus ſanctus*, and *Carduus Benedictus*.

Carpe, in Greek in Latine *Cyprinus*, *Carpo*, and *Carpio*: *Eraſmus* doth call it *Carpa*.

Carot, *Carota*, *Paſtinaca Rubra*.

Caſſie canes or pipes, in Latine and in Greek *Caſſia*, *Caſia*, *Caſſia fiſtularis*, *Siliqua Ægyptia*, and *Caſſia Carthartica*.

Caſſie wood, look for *Caſſia lignea*, or *Xylocaſſia* in the Latine Table.

Caterpillers, in Greek and in Latine *Campe*, *Eruca* and *Brachus*; ſome men do call them *Erucula*; they are worms ſufficiently known, that eat and ſpoyl all green herbs, as Cabbages, leaves of hedges and trees. They that live on the Pine trees and Firre trees are called in Latine *Eruca Pinorum*, and *Erucæ Picearum*; in Greek *Pityocampe*.

Cats Mints, field Mints, wild Pennyroyal, *Calamintha agreſtis*, or *Arvenſis*, and *Pulegium agreſte*. Of *Meſua*, *Calamintha domeſtica*, *Calamintha ſelina*, and *Cattaria*.

Celendine, in Greek and Latine *Chelidonium majus*, *Cratea*, *Philomedium*, *Othonium*, *Radix Pandionia*, *Anbium*, *Fabium*, and of the Alchimiſts *Celidonium*, of *Serapio Caurech*, *Curcuma*, and of the Apothecaries *Celidonia*. It is an herb common and well known: the Simpliciſts do call it *Herba hirundinaria major*. The ſecond kind is called the leſſer Celendine, Pilewort, or Figwort: in Greek and in Latine *Chelidonium minus*, and *Triticum ſylveſtre*, of the Herbariſts *Herba hirundinaria minor*, *Teſticulus Sacerdotis*, *Scrophularia*, or *Scrofularia*, and at the Apothecaries *Celidonia minor*. The former kind is alwaies underſtood if it be without any addition.

Centorie, in Greek and Latine *Centaurium minus*, *Lymneſium*, *Lymnæum*, *Libadium*, *febrifuga*, and *Fel terræ*.

Ceruſe, in Greek and Latine *Pſymmithium*, *Ceruſſa*.

Ceterach both great and ſmall. The leſſer Ceterach is called in Greek and in Latine *Scolopendrion*, *Hemionion*, *Aſplenium*, of *Scribonius Largus*, *Calcifraga*; of the Herbariſts *Scolopendria vera*, and *Scolopendria minor*, *Splenium*, *Aſplenium* and *Ceterachum*. The Apothecaries do call it *Ceterach* as the Arabians do; it is the true *Scolopendrium* of the ancients: *Theodorus Gaza* calleth it *Mula*, or *Herba Mula*. Our unskilful Phyſitians and Apothecaries do uſe the Harts tongue *Phyllitis*, for the true *Scolopendrium* without any regard or care. If Roſemary were not ſo common, they would take the Juniper tree for it, and Nettles for Marjoram: wherefore it is a great grace that old women do ſo well know the herbs, otherwiſe they would often be deceived, ſeeing their whole truſt and credit relyeth on the Herb Wives. The other kind of *Ceterach* is alſo called Harts tongue, of *Dioſcorides*, *Dorchitis altera*; of the Simpliciſts *Scolopendrium majus*, *Scolopendrium major*, *Aſplenium*, *Aſplenium majus*, *Spicantum*, *Scolopendrium* or *Aſplenium ſylveſtre*, becauſe it groweth in dark and moiſt places. Both theſe herbs do take their names of the worm *Scolopendra*, which is called an Earwig, or worm with many legs, becauſe the leaves ſeem to be noted with it. Both theſe herbs have the ſame operation, for they are both hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree: they are the beſt ſplenetical herbs that are to be found, for they are good for all maladies of the ſpleen.

Chaſte tree is called in Greek and in Latine *Amiſtomianum*, *Agnos*, *Lygus*, *Agonus*, *Tridactylum*, *Lecriſticum*, *Vitex*, and *Salix Armerina*: of the Herbariſts, *Piper Agreſtis*, *Piper Monachorum*, *Arbor caſta*; and of the Apothecaries *Agnus caſtus*. There are two kinds of it, to wit, the greater and the leſſer Chaſt tree. The great groweth

in

in height like the Willow tree, and hath also leaves most like it, it smelleth very pleasantly, the flowers are white and purple coloured. The other kind hath altogether purple flowers, it is fuller of branches hath whiter leaves, and is much lesse then the former.

Charvil, *Cerephyllon* and *Cherefolium*, and of the common Physitians and Apothecaries *Cerefolium*.

Chestnut tree, *Castanea*, *Glans Sardiana*, *Jovis glans*: the fruit is called *Nux Castanea*: there are divers kinds of them that are not needful to be rehearsed at this present.

Cherries, *Cerasa*, there are two kinds of them, sweet and sowre, and each of them may be subdivided into more kinds. The hard, sweet, and great Cherries are in some places called Spanish Cherries, and in Latine *Cerusa duracina*, or *Plinians*; they have a very sweet and pleasant taste: amongst these are the white Cherries also comprehended. The common red Cherries are called *Cerasa Mellea*, for their great and pleasant sweetnesse. The red and sweet Cherries that leave a bitternesse in the mouth behind, have first been grafted on a Bay tree, whence they as yet do keep their bitternesse, and are called *Cerasa Amarella*, and *Laurea*. The black tame Cherries are called *Cerasa actia*, *Actiana*, *Caeciliana*, and *Ceffiana*. The little wild and black Cherries are comprehended under the *Actiana*: and in like sort also the little wild and red, under the great red and domestical or tame Cherries. Of the sowr Cherries there be two sorts, to wit, white and red; the red are called *Aproniana cerasa*: others call them *Juliana*, and *Aquea*. The black are named *Cerasa Amarina*, and *Amarena*: but amongst all kinds of Cherries, are the wild black, the red, and the domestical black Cherries used most in Physick, and above all other those black ones that are called *Amarena*. Wherefore if one find the name of Cherries in any receit without any addition, then are the black Cherries or *Amarena* to be understood and taken for it.

Chickweed, in Greek and Latine *Alsine*, at the Apothecaries *Morsus Gallinæ*, of the Herbarists *Pabulum anserinum*, and *Paverina*. This herb is cold and moist.

Cichelings, in Greek and Latine *Lathyrus*, and of *Plinie*, *Cicercula*; they are white four square Peason, sufficiently known of every man.

Cichorie or Suckerie, in Latine and Greek *Pioris*, *Chreston*, *Cichorium*, *Pancration*, *Troximum*, *Intybus* or *Intubia erratica*, *Cichorium agreste*, *Seris sylvestris*, *Amaraca*, *Cicorea*, *Ambubaia*; and of *Celsus Ambubia*, of *Plinie*, *Cichoreu*; and of the Arabians, *Taraxacon*, and *Altaraxacon*. Of the other kind of *Intybus*, look in E. for Endive: *Galen* calleth all these kinds of Cicories and Endives *Intybolachana*, that is, *Intybacea olera*.

Cinamom, in Greek and Latine *Cinnamomum*, *Cinnamomum*, and *Cinnamum*; it is a sweet smelling bark, and a well known spice: it is also called *Cunella*. It is hot and dry in the third degree.

Cinquefoil, in Greek and Latine *Pentaphyllon*, *Pentapetes*, *Chamæzelon*, *Pentafolium*, and *Quinquefolium*.

Ciper roots, or wild Galangal, in Greek and Latine *Cyperus*, *Eryssiceptrum*, *Cyprius*, *Juncus quadratus*; it is called of *Celsus* and *Plinie*, *Juncus angulosus*, *Juncus triangulus*. There are two kinds of it, the one hath a round root, and is called *Cyperus rotundus*; the other a long root called *Cyperus longus*.

Cipresse tree, *Cupressus*, *Cyparissus*.

Citron tree, *malus Cipria*, *medica*, or *Persica malus*.

Citrons, in Greek and Latine *Citromelum*, *Cochimelon*, *Malum citrium*, *Malum medicum*, *Malum citreum*, *Malum assyrium*, *Malum Hesperium*, and *Malum citrinatum*, and at the Apothecaries *Citrinatum*.

Citrul, *Citrullus*.

Clarie is called of the Herbarists in Latine *Orvala*, *Orvalla*, *Sclarea*, *Scarlea*, *Matrisalvia*, *Gallicrista*, *Tabacona*, and *Herba sanctæ Johannis*, at the Apothecaries *Gallitricum*, and *Centrum Galli*: it is a kind of *Orminum* or *Horminum*, although it be neither of them that *Dioscorides* doth write of, yet may it by reason of his similitude, properties and vertues be used either with or for *Horminum*. The other kind of Clary is the wild Clary, that groweth every where in the fields, it hath deep jagged leaves with a blew purple flower, and is called *Scarlea sylvestris*, or *Sclarea sylvestris*, and *Gallitricum sylvestre*. But whensoever Clary is preseribed, then ought the garden Clary to be used.

Clavers, look in *T.* for Three leafed grasse.

Clay, *Argilla*. *M. Cicero* calleth it *Terra figularis*, *Columella*, *Terra figularis*. This Clay is used in this book for the bleeding at the nose.

Clover,

Cloves, in Greek *Caryophyllum*, at the Apothecaries *Gariofilus* or *Gariofilus*.

Cock, *Gallus Gallinaceus*.

Cockle, *vide* Cornerose.

Codwort, in Greek and Latine *Bubonium*, *Aſtonium*, *Aſter Atticus*, *Aſteriſcus*, *Hyophthalmus*, *Herba inguinalis*, and *Inguinaria*, of the Herbariſts *Stella Attica*, *Oculus Chriſti*, and *Alibium*. There be four kinds of it, to wit, the firſt with the blew flower, which is commonly known by the name of Codwort. Some Simpliciſts do call it for a difference *Bubonium caruleum*. The ſecond is almoſt like the former, but that the leaves and the flowers be ſomewhat bigger, and the flowers yellow, and ſtarwiſe like the blew; this groweth by the river of *Rhene*. The Herbariſts term it *Bubonium luteum*, and *Inguinaria lutea*. The third kind groweth on dry hills, whereof the leaves are leſſe double, wrinkled, and bended almoſt like a half Moon, the flowers are very yellow, and leſſe then the aforeſaid: the Simpliciſts call it *Bubonium lunatum*. The fourth kind hath long and pricked leaves, with three or four ſinewes, like to the leſſer Plantain, and hath a fair ſtarlike flower, yellow every where, and every flower hath ſix ſmall leaves under it, placed alſo like a ſtar. This kind did we firſt get from *Marſelles*, for which cauſe it is now called *Bubonium Maſſiliotarum*, and *Stella Maſſiliotica*: but when and whereſoever Codwort is named with any addition, there is alwaies the common Codwort with the blew flower to be underſtood. This may alſo be called *Ranicaria*, or Rupture weed, becauſe it is eſpecial good for the Rupture.

Coloquint, in Greek and in Latine *Colocynthis*, *Sicyona*, *Cucurbita ſylveſtris*, *Cucurbita ſylvatica*, and *Cucurbitula*.

Conie, in Greek *Daſipus*, of *Polybius* and *Galen Cuniculus*, in Latine *Cuniculus*: it is a well known beaſt in all Countries.

Copper is called in Greek *Chalcos*, in Latine *Aes*, *Aes Cyprium*, *Cuprum*.

Coriander, in Greek and Latine *Coriannon*, *Corion*, and *Coriandrum*.

Cork tree, in Greek *Phellus*, and of *Theophraſtus Iſaeus*, and of *Theocritus Scoliaſtes*, *Anatolius* in Latine *Suber*. It is a kind of Oake, and very common in *Italy*, they have a thick rind or bark, of the which our Cork is made.

Cornroſe or Cockle, in Greek *Lychnis agria*, in Latine *Lychnis ſylveſtris*, of the Simpliciſts *Caryophyllus arvenſis*, *Pſeudomelanthium*, *Githago* and *Nigellaſtrum*. *Dioſcorides* calleth it *Atocium*, *Hieracopodium*, *Tragonaſtum*, *Lampada*, and *Semura*: ſome unskilful Phyſitians and Apothecaries have uſed this herb for the *Melanthium* or *Nigella* of the ancients, the which errour divers Apothecaries and fond fellows have ſo imbibed, that they will rather follow their own fooliſh opinions, then be better inſtructed of others.

Coral, in Greek and Latine *Coralium*, *Corallium*, *Gorgonia*, *Lithodendron*, *Dentriter* and *Eurallium*.

Coſtus roots, *Coſtum* and *Coſtus*: of this root there be two kinds, to wit, the bitter and the ſweet Coſtus roots. The bitter root is alwaies uſed for the Coſtus without any addition.

Coutſenille, in Greek and in Latine *Coccos baphica*, of *Pauſanias*, *Hyſge*, *Coccum infectorium*, *Coccum tinctorium*, *Granum infectorium*; in the Arabian tongue *Kermes* and *Chermes*. The Silk-Diers for a difference of the crimſon colour, have named it *Kermeſinum granum*, for the crimſon colour and *Kermes* of the *Arabians* is not one and the ſelf-ſame. The Coutſenille is called *Kermeſinum*, by reaſon of her brave colour, which is ſomewhat like unto ſcarlet. Alſo the crimſon colour called *Kermeſinum*, is taken from the roots of certain herbs, and it is an external thing from the roots, although it grow with them, for it is found to grow on the barks of certain trees, and hath no vertue or uſe in Phyſick at all, as the Coutſenille doth, which is the natural fruit of a little tree, not unlike to our Butchers broom, but that it is ſomewhat leſſe, with fewer leaves and fruits: wherefore they do erre greatly that take the crimſon colour *Kermeſinum* for the Coutſenille, and uſe it for the ſame in their compoſitions and medicaments. But the Apothecaries do erre more groſſly that do uſe the Gooſeberries in ſtead of the Coutſenille, and (that which is worſe) the unskilful Phyſitians do bear with it, and let it paſſe for good, ſo that it may well be ſaid of them, that one blind man leadeth another; but woe be to the Patient, for he ought not to be jeſted withal, ſeeing the Coutſenille is not uſed but in extreme debility of the heart, for which neither the crimſon colour, nor the Gooſeberry hath any vertue at all. The Coutſenille is alſo uſed of women with child for to comfort and ſtrengthen the child in their bodies, and to prevent all miſchances, for the which it is very meet and requiſite. The Gooſeberry is of a quite contrary nature.

Cowſlips,

Cowslips, Cowslops, of some Ladykeyes, or Primroses, in Greek *Phlomis*, *Arthritica*, in Latine *Verbasculum*; the Herbarists do call it *Herba paralysis*, *Primula veris flora*, *Primula veris*, *Brachia cuculi*, and *Herba primiflorii*; and the Apothecaries *Arthritica*, and *Betonica alba*, the which is indeed the right white Betony. There are three kinds of them: the first kind are the common Cowslops with the yellow flowers, that grow every where in dry meadowes, and on grassy hils: these are called of the Herbarists *Verbasculum odoratum*, by reason of their pleasant smell. The second kind groweth in the Woods, and is much bigger then the common Cowslops, it hath a pale yellow colour, but without any smell at all, and it is called *Verbasculum sylvestre*, and *Verbascum album*; and when this kind is set in gardens, it groweth as big again as before. The third kind are the double Cowslops, that are set in gardens, and they are much fairer, greater, and more pleasant then the common, and are called *Verbasculum multiplex*.

Crevets, in Greek and in Latine *Astacus fluviatilis*, *Gammarus*, *Gammarus*; it is a kind of shell fish very common and well known. This fish is now adaies of divers learned men called *Cancer* unjustly, for that there be no *Cancri* in Germany; for the true *Cancri* have no tail as our Crevets have, which are in all points like to the Lobsters, but that they are much lesse.

Crabs or wild Apples, *Malum sylvestre*, or *Pomum sylvestre*; they and their leaves are used for the lask.

Cresses, in Greek and Latine *Cardamum*, *Nasturtium hortense*, and of the comeon Herbarists *Cressio*.

Cricket, *Gryllus*, a little worm very common in all brew-houses.

Cristal, *Chrystallus* and *Chrystallum*.

Crowfoot, in Greek *Batrachion* and *Batrachis*, in Latine *Ranunculus*, *Herba Sardonia*, *Herba sceleratа*, *Struma*, and *Herba Struma*, of the Apothecaries *Flammula*, and *Pes Corvi*. *Plinie* calleth the double Crowfoot *Polyanthemum*, it is called here Batchelors buttons, and of the Simplicists *Ranunculus multiplex*. There are divers kinds of it, but because they are not all of them used in Physick, we will only speak of the lesser sort, which by reason of the round root that it hath it is called *Ranunculus rotundus*, and at the Apothecaries *Flammula*, and of some (for to distinguish it from the other sorts) *Flammula minor*, and *Flammula rotunda*; and this kind of Crowfoot is only to be used in Physick.

Cuckoe, in Greek *Coccyx*, in Latine *Cuculus*, a bird too common and well known.

Cuckobread, in Greek and Latine *Oxys*, *Oxytriphyllon*, *Trifolium acetosum*, *Rasis Cucubi*, and at the Apothecaries *Alleluia*.

Cuckopit, Priests pintle, or Wake Robin, in Latine *Pes vituli*, *virile Serapionis*, *Serpentaria minor*, and at the Apothecaries *Aron*.

Cucubes, in Greek *Carpesium*, of *Actuarius*, of the Arabians, and at all the Apothecaries *Cubeba*.

Cucumber, *Cucumis*, *Cucumer*, and *Cucumis satinus* in Greek and of *Aristophanes*, *Sicys* and *Sicyos*.

Cumfrey, of *Dioscorides*, *Symphytum alterum*, *Symphytum majus*, and *Pedion*; of *Apuleius Pedis*, *Anaxeresis*, *Haemostasis*, *Consolida major*, and *Alus Gallicus*, of *Scribonius Inula rustica*, *Consolida*, *Confirma major*, *Conserva major*, and *Solidago*; it is a common herb, whereof there be two sorts, the one with purple flowers, and the other with white. There is yet a third kind called *Symphytum petraeum*, of *Apuleius Xylophyton* and *Anachylis*, of the Herbarists *Consolida petraea*; this groweth on hils and stony places.

Cumin, in Greek and Latine *Cuminum*, *Cyminum*, *Cuminum satium*, *Cuminum hortense*, and *Cuminum Romanum*.

D.

DAffodil, it is called in Greek and Latine *Hemerocallis*, *Lilium sylvestre*, *Lilium Saracenicum*, and at the Apothecaries *Affodillus* for *Asphodelus*, but unjustly: and although it be not the true *Hemerocallis* that *Dioscorides* describeth, yet it is a kind of it, and very like it in vertues and operation. The right Daffodil is called in Greek and Latine *Asphodelus*, *Hastula regia*, *Albucum*, the flowers with the stalk *Antherices*. It is now by the diligent and expert Physitians brought unto use again.

Damask Prunes, *Pruna Damascena*.

Dandelion, Priests crown, wild or yellow Cichory, in Greek *Hedypnois*, of *Theophrastus Aphaca*, and of the Herbarists, *Seris urinaria*, *Herba unaria*, *Seris somnifera*, *Caput Monachi*, and *dens Leonis*. The Apothecaries and unskilful Physitians do call it *Taraxacon*, and *Altaraxacon*, which names are due to Plantain, as may be seen by *Serapius* and the Arabians. For that which *Dioscorides* calleth *Intybus sylvestris*, that

do they call *Taraxacon*, or *Altaraxacon*. This herb is cold by nature, it provoketh ſleep, it openeth all inward obſtructions, it moveth urine abundantly.

Daneweed, in Greek and Latine *Chamaeſike*, *Ebulus*, *Sambucus pumila*, *Sambucus humilis*, *Sambucus arvenſis*.

Dates, in Greek and Latine *Dactyli*. *Caryota*, *Caryotides*, and *Palmula*; ſown Dates are called *Tamarindi*.

Date tree, in Greek *Phœnix*, and in Latine *Palma*.

Dayſies, in Greek *Bellis*, in Latine *Bellis*, *Bellidium*, and *Bellius flos*; by the Herbariſts *Paſcanthemum*, and *Herba Arthritica*, *Herba margarita*, and at the Apothecaries *Conſolida minor*. The other kind is called *Bellis major*, *Bellium majus*, and of the Herbariſts *Chenanthemum*, *Conſolida media vulnerariorum*.

Diamond, *Adamas*, a well known gemme or precious ſtone.

Dill, *Anethum*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree.

Diptamer, *Diptamus*, in Greek and Latine *Polemonia* or *Polemonium*, *Phyletaria*, *Chiliodynamis*, *Fraxinus pumila*, *Fraxinula*, *Fraſſinula*, *Fraxinella*, *Fraſſinella*, and *Dictamnes albus*. The Apothecaries call it *Diptamus*, and *Dictamus albus*. This plant hath been taken a great while for *Paonia maſcula*, but it is the true *Polemonium* of the ancients.

Diſhwaſher, a little bird called *Motacilla*, *Cauda Tremula*, and of *Heſichius*, *Cyrillus*, it is a common and well known bird.

Divels bit, *Morſus Diabeli*, *Succiſſa*, *Jacea nigra*, and *Framorſa*. It is a kind of Scabious, and is not unlike the ſame, only that the leaves of it be not jagged as the Scabious leaves are.

Dock, in Greek *Lapathum*, in Latine *Rumex*, and at the Apothecaries *Lapatium*. There are ſix kinds of Docks: the firſt hath long piked leaves like Sorrel, but ſomething ſharper, and it is called in Greek to diſtinguiſh it from the reſt, *Oxylapathum*, in Latine *Lapathum acutum*, *Lapathum acutifolium* and at the Apothecaries *Lapatium acutum*. The ſecond kind hath great broad leaves, not much unlike the former, but ſomewhat bigger, the Herbariſts do call it *Lapathum latifolium*, *Lapathum platiphyllon*, and *Lapathum non acuminatum*, which is almoſt altogether in uſe under the name of Lapathum acutum unjuſtly; but amongſt the unskilful Phyſitians and Apothecaries a foot or twain breaks no ſquare: this groweth in medowes and other moiſt places. The third kind hath yet bigger, but ſofter or gentlea leaves: it is ſown in gardens, eſpecially in France, where they uſe it amongſt other pot herbs in their porredge, the roots of it are bigger then the other, ſomewhat yellow, not much unlike to Rubarb: it is called in Greek *Lapathon Cepaon*, in Latine *Lapathum domeſticum*, *Rumex ſatinus*, and by the Herbariſts *Rhabarbarum monachorum*, and *Patientia*: ſome do call it *Lapathum latifolium ſativum*, to diſtinguiſh it from the former. The fourth kind hath very great leaves, and piked before, it groweth in ponds and other waters, and is called in Greek *Hydrolapathon*, and *Hippolapathon*; in Latine *Lapathum equinum*, *Rumex equinus*, *Lapathum aquaticum*, *Rumex aquaticus*, and *paluſtris*; the Grecians do alſo call it *Bulapathon*. The fifth kind hath leaves like the firſt and the common Dock, with many red ſpots and veins, and it is found in gardens, it is called of the Herbariſts *Lapathum ſanguineum*, *Rumex ſanguineus*, and *Sanguis Draconis*. The ſixth kind is Sorrel whereof ſhall be ſpoken elſewhere.

Doronicum, the Arabians do call it *Doronigi*: it is mingled with other things that ſerve for comforting of the heart. Some will affirm that it is venemous, becauſe the ſecond kind of it is ſuch, that it killeth both man and beaſt: Wherefore if our *Doronicum* be poiſon, then muſt of neceſſity follow that the herb *Antora* or *Auritora* be alſo venemous, becauſe the one is us like the other in leaf, flower, and root, that the one can hardly be known from the other. But that our *Doronicum* is no poyſon, hath experience taught us many years ago.

Dragons, in Greek *Dracontium*, *Dracontea*, *Dracontia*, *Iſarum*, *Biarum*, *Iarum*, *Hermiagrion*, and *Sigiginalium*. *Apuleius* calleth them, *Pythonium*, *Anchomanes*, *Sanchromaton*, *Typhonium*, *Crocodilium*, *Therium*, and *Theriophonum*; in Latine *Serpentaria*, *Columbina*, *Colubrina*, *Mauriaria*, *Dracontea*, and *Collum Draconis*; of the Arabian Phyſitians *Luf*, *Luph*, or *Alaff*: the Simpliciſts do call it *Dracunculum*. There are three kinds of Dragons, to wit, the firſt, which we do call the greater Dragons, *Dracontium majus*, *Dracunculus major*, and *Colubrina magna*, thereby to know it from the other two ſorts. The ſecond kind is ſomewhat leſſe, and like to the Cuckopit, it is called *Dracontium minus*, *Dracunculus minor*, or *Colubrina minor*, and of *Athenæus*, *Aronia*: *Cordus* doth call it *Dracunculum*, *Hemicophyllon*, and *Luph planum*.

num: the greater they call *Laph Crispum*. Others do call it the lesser Dragons, that is, *Serpentaria minor*. The third kind groweth near the water, upon a stubbed root, with many stalks unto it, and on every stalk one onely leaf, much like to Ivie, and every stalk bringeth a bunch of berries like Cuckopit: it is called *Dracunculus palustris*, *Dracunculus aquatilis*, *Colubrina palustris*, and *Arum palustre*. We call them water Dragons. Some simple Physitians and silly Apothecaries do use the *Bistorta* roots for the roots of Dragons: but what great distance is between them, what difference in their vertues and operations, is sufficiently known to the learned.

Dragonblood, *Cinnabaris Indica*, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Lacryma Draconis*, it is the sap of a tree in the Indies called *Draco*.

Duck, he or she, *Anas*.

E.

EArth sealed, in Greek *Sphragis*, in Latine *Terra lemnia*, *Sigillum lemnium*, *Lutum lemnium*, *Rubrica lemnia*, *Minium lemnium*, *Lutum sigillatum*, and at the Apothecaries *Terra sigillata*: This earth is marvellously falsified and counterfeited, wherfore great heed must be had in the use of it. Our hedge Physitians will rather use clay, then want earth in their receipts.

Earthworms, *Lumbrici*, *Vermes terreni*, *Intestina terræ*.

Eele, *Anguilla*, the well known fish, that will not be held by the tail.

Elecampane, in Latine *Helenium*, *Ennla*, *Ennla campana*, and *Terminalium*.

Eldern, in Greek *Akte*, and in Latine *Sambucus*.

Elme, in Greek *Ptelea*, in Latine *Ulmus*: there are two kinds of it, the common is called *Ulmus campestris*. The other kind groweth on hils, and is called in Greek *Oriptelea*, in Latine of *Gaza*, *Montiulmus*, and of others *Ulmus Montana*.

Endive, in Greek and in Latine *Intybus*, *Intibum*, *Intybus sativus*, and *Seris*, at the Apothecaries *Endivia*: it is a kind of tame Succory, and is known at this present in every place.

Endive the white, or the lesser Endive, in Greek and Latine *Intybum sativum angustifolium*, *Seris sativa angustifolia*, *Seris sativa minor*, and *Seriola*: the Apothecaries do call it with a barbarous name *Scariolam*.

Eryngus, in Greek and Latine *Eryngium*, of the Herbarists *Herba pleuritica*, *Acus Veneris*, *Capitulum Muris*, *Centum capita*, and at the Apothecaries *Iringus*. There are two kinds of it, the one, which is common with us, and by the name of *Eryngus* sufficiently known. The other kind hath broad leaves, and is not so pricking as the former, it hath also a fair and bigger top, and a fair skie coloured flower, it is planted in gardens, it groweth otherwise at the sea side: the Simplicists call it *Eryngium maginum*. Some unexpert Physitians and Apothecaries do use the star Thistle for *Eryngus*, but erroniously, for it is a little Thistle, much lesse then the *Eryngus*, it hath many little heads, with purple flowers, and prickles about them standing out like a starre, it hath a small root, that perisheth in Winter, it groweth every where in dry places. The Herbarists do call it *Cardnus Stellatus*, *Cardnus Calcifragus*, *Tribulus stellatus*, *Acanthasterion*, *Spinastella*, *Calcitrapa*, and *Calcitripola*: *Valerius Cordus* doth call it *Polyacantha*, but it is not the *Polyacantha* of *Theophrastus*. Others do call it *Eryngium minus*, that is, the lesser *Eryngus*. And although this Thistle do also move urine, or provoke the terms in women as *Eryngus* doth; yet nevertheless it is not the same, but it is much stronger then the *Eryngus*; for if one use too much of it, then doth it expel blood with the urine: wherefore the same is duly to be used, and instead of *Eryngus* use the common Thistle, or Squills for it: *Rondoletius* doth call *Eryngus* by the name of *Coronopus*.

Escharbot, in Greek *Cantharus*, in Latine *Cantherius*, *Scarabæus*, and *Pilularius*.

F.

FEarn, in Greek and Latine *Pteris*, *Blechron*, *Dasyclonon*, and *Filix*, a well known herb, and common in all woods & Heaths: it is called of *Nicander*, *Beltus*.

Fenegreek, in Greek *Telis*, *Egoceros*, *Ceratis*; of *Pliny*, *Carphos*; of *Theophrastus*, *Buceras*; of *Hippocrates*, *Epiceras*; in Latine *Fœnum græcum*; of *Pliny*, *Silia*; of *Varro*, *Siliqua*, and of the Herbarists *Trifolium græcum*; it is an herb, whose seed is onely in use.

Fennel, *Funiculum*, *Maratrum*, it is a common and well known herb.

Fesant, *Phasianus*, *Fasianus*, and *Fucidis avis*, it is a common bird, which ought to be used for meat in many diseases, as hath been

been ſhewed in divers places of our Book.

Feverfew: it is called of the Herbariſts *Pſeudoparthenium*, *Amarella*, the practitioners and Apothecaries do call it *Matricaria*. This Feverfew hath until this preſent day been taken for the true *Parthenium* of the ancients, albeit that the moſt famous and learned Phyſitians *Antonius Muſa*, *Braſſavolus*, *Leonardus Fuchſius*, *Guilielmus Rondoletius*, and divers others have long ſince ſufficiently ſhewed, that the bitter and ſtinking Camomils (of ſome called dogs Camomils) are the true *Parthenium*; for it is not only in all points correſpondent to the deſcription of it, but agreeth alſo to the vertues and operations with it, and he that readeth *Dioſcorides*, is conſtrained to affirm the ſame: wherefore it is a great wonder, that many men will be ſo obſtinate, that although one do ſhew them the truth it ſelf, yet will they like ſwine tumble in their durt, and ſtick to their ungrounded opinions, whereby they ſeem to ſeek the overthrow of all truths. The true *Parthenium* are the ſtinking Camomils, which are called of the Herbariſts *Herba virginea*, *Cyanthemis*, *Bufonaria*, *Anethum caninum*, *chamaemelum fœtidum*, and *Cotula fœtida*.

Field berries, look Huckle berries.

Field Cypres, in Greek and Latine *Chamapitys*, *Abiuga*, or *Abiga*, at the Apothecaries *Iva*, and *Iva arthetica*, or *Arthetica*: of *Pliny*, *Thus terræ*, of the Herbariſts *Herba apoplactica*, *cucumbitularis*, and *Pinus pumila*.

Fig tree, *Ficus*.

Figs, dryed figs, *Ficus*, *ficus paſſa*, *Carica*, there are three kinds of them brought unto us, the firſt are they that come in frailes, and they are the meaneſt: the ſecond kind are the leaf Figs, that are brought from Candy and Cyprus, theſe are fatter and better then the former. They are called leaf Figs, becauſe they are packed and made up with Bay leaves between them. The third kind are leſſer and pleaſanter then the reſt, they are brought from Provence, they are called figs of *Marſelles*, and theſe are the beſt of all for Phyſick.

Figwort, the great Scrofulary, this herb hath been unknown to the ancients, and now adaies it is called of our Phyſitians *Scrophularia* or *Scrofularia*, and alſo *Millemorbia*, or *Caſtrangula*.

Firre tree, in Greek *Elate*, in Latine *Abies*, there are two kinds of it, the firſt is the common firre tree, which of the Simpliciſts is called the white firre tree, or *abies candida*, the ſecond kind of Firre tree is called in Greek *Peuce*, in Latine *Picea*, and of the Herbariſts *Abies nigra*; which is the red firre tree. But where thou findeſt Fir tree in any receipt without addition, there is the common Firre tree meant.

Fitches, in Greek *Bicion*, or *Aracus*, in Latine *Vicia*, there are two kinds of them, the firſt is that which is known to all men by the name of Fitches, the other kind groweth of it ſelf here and there, they are called wild fitches, *Dioſcorides* doth call them *Aphace*, in Latine *Vicia ſylveſtris*. But if the name of Fitches be found without addition, then ſhalt thou underſtand the firſt kind of them. Our unskilful Soothſayers and Apothecaries do take the fitches for the true *Ervum* of the ancient Writers, but it is an open deceit, which ought to be puniſhed by the Magiſtrates, and to call ſuch careleſſe fellowes in queſtion for their falſe *quid pro quo*.

Flax, in Greek and Latine *Linum*, *Pliny* calleth all that *Linum* that may be ſpun.

Fleawort, in Greek and Latine *Pſyllium*, *herba pulicaris*, *pulicaria*; of *Pliny* *Cynides*, and *Cynocephalon*. The ſeed only of this herb is uſed in Phyſick, it is cold in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree.

Flint or pible ſtone, in Greek *Chalix*, in Latine *Silex*.

Flowerdeluce, *Lilium cœleſte*, and *Iris Germanica*. Although this our Flowerdeluce do not agree in every reſpect with the *Ireas* of *Italy*, yet it is a kind of it, and much ſtronger in purging, for which cauſe it is above all other kinds uſed in the Dropſie.

Folefoot, in Greek *Bechium*, and *Chamelence*, in Latine *Populago*, *Tuſſilago*, of the Herbariſts *Ungula caballina*, and *herba divi Quirini*; at the Apothecaries *Farfara*; of *Theophraſtus Aphyllantes*, becauſe that it bloweth without any leaves, wherefore it is alſo called of ſome *filius ante patrem*, others do likewiſe term it *populus humilis*, *pumila*, *farfarella*, *farfarago*.

Famboys, in Greek and Latine *Batus Idæus*, *Rubus Idæus*, *Rubus Cervinus*, *Cervirubus*, the whole ſhrub is called the Framboye hedge, the fruit Framboyes, *mora rubi Idæi*.

Frankincenſe, in Greek and Latine *Libanus*, or *Libanum*, *Libanotis*, *Thus*, *Tus*, *Opolibanum*, *Incenſum*, & at the Apothecaries *Olibanum*. There are four kinds of it, the firſt is very white, round, and little cornes or grains: it is called in Greek *Stragonias*,

of

of *Pliny*, *Thus masculum*, of the simplicists *Thus testiculatum*, at the Apothecaries *Olibanum testiculatum*, in English white Frankincense, and this is the best of all the kinds. The second kind is gray, yellowish, and is that which is left after the former is picked out, and it is onely called Frankincense. The third is also used, and it is full of barks, to which the Frankincense sticketh, and it is taken from the tree: and although it be thought uncleane, yet hath it his place in Physick as well as the best. This is called *Thuris cortex*, *Thus corticosum*, and at the Apothecaries *Olibanum corticosum*, in English rindes or barks of Frankincense. The fourth kind are the reliques that are left after the former three kinds are taken out: all these kinds do come of one and the same tree; but there is yet another contemned kind of Frankincense at the Apothecaries, and also at the Druggists, that is not worthy to be numbred amongst the former kinds, because it is only a deceit and knavery used instead of good ware, wherefore it ought by good right to be thrown out of doors. This is made of the gum of the Pine tree, and so prepared deceitfully, it is called *Thus Adulterinum*, In English counterfeited Frankincense.

Frankincense the black, *Timiama*, in Greek *Nasaphthum Narcaphthum*; of others *Thymiama*; and at the Apothecaries *Thymiana*. It is a sweet smelling bark which is used in sweet unguents, or fuming candles; some do call it *Incensum nigrum*.

French beans, *Phaseolus*, *Phaselus*, *Dolicus*, *Phaselus*.

Frogg, *Rana*.

Fumitory, in Greek and Latine *Capnos fumaria*, and *Fumus terræ*, the Herbarists call it *Cerfolium felinum*, and *Columbinum*. It is a well known herb, and is hot and dry in the third degree.

G.

GAdrise tree, a tree called in Greek and Latine *Crania*, *Cornus*.

Galangal, *Cyprus Babylonius*, and *Galanga*, a well known spice, whereof there be two kinds, to wit, the great and the lesser, but the lesser is the true Galangal, and is to be used instead thereof, but the great is called *Galanga major*. This is used of some for the true Aron, which is Calamint, but they are greatly for Aron is common among Calamint, as hath been shewed elsewhere.

Gales, *Galla*, they that grow on the Oakes are altogether unmeet for Physick, they are called of *Dioscorides*, that is, *galla*.

Garlick, in Greek *Scordon*, and in Latine *Allium*.

Gilloflowers, are called of the Herbarists *Cariophyllus flos*, *Cariophyllus hortensis*, *Cariophyllus domesticus*, *Dianthus altilis*, and of *Pliny Cantabrica*, the Apothecaries call it *flos chariophyllorum*, but there are divers other herbs that are called *Herbæ tunicæ*, but some suppose *Carduus Benedictus* to be the right *herba tunica*, where they should read *herba turca* or *turcica* and not *tunica*. *Gordonius* doth call our *Oeymastrum*, that is, Betheny, *herbam tunicam*, so that almost each author hath his own *herbam tunicam*. Some do call our Gilloflowers *flos tunicæ*, to distinguish it from *herba tunica*, which is Behen, and they do very well, for a thing well distinguished preventeth many errours.

Gentian, in Greek and Latine *Nurce*, *Aron Gallica*, and *Gentiana*.

Gentian the lesser, in Greek *Phleuma*, in Latine *Cruciata*, *Gentiana Crucialis*, and at the Apothecaries about the River of *Rhene Herba divi Petri*. This herb is used even at this present for them that have taken somewhat to fall in love with another body, or that are bewitched. It is also a true remedy experimented, if it be used as it ought.

Germander, in Greek and Latine *Chamedrys*, *Chamæroys*, *Lynadis*, *Trixago*, *Circula*, and *Serratula*. Whensoever thou wilt use Germander, take that with the brown red flowers, which is a kinde of *Teucrium*, for that is the true Germander, and is called of some *Calamandrina*, and *Marsus mastiferum*.

Ginger, *Zingiber*, a well known spice called also *Gingiber*, and at the Apothecaries *Zinziber*.

Gips, in Greek and Latine *Gipsum*, or *Gipsum*: there are divers kinds of it, but the best is that which is most like to chalk.

Gitte, in Latine and Greek *Melanthium*, *Gith*, and at the Apothecaries *Nigella Romana*. There is yet another kind of it, whereof the plant is bigger, and more

pleasant to behold, but the seed is not so strong in smell, and is called Damask *Nigella*, of the Herbarists *Nigella Damascena*: but the first kind is only used in Physick. They are both of them hot and dry in the

Glew, in Greek *Cola*, and *Viscata*, in Latine of *Virgil*, *Glutten*; of *Varro* and *Sallustius*, *Glutinum*, otherwise also *Glutinum tauri-num*, and at the Apothecaries *Gluten ligni*. It is used in plaisters for the rupture.

Goat, in Greek *Aeneps*, and of *Hesichius*, *Nopus*, in Latine *Caper*.

Goat, *Capra*.

Goldfinch is called in Greek *Acanthis*, in Latine *Carduelis*, and is good in meats for them that have a cold stomach.

Goose, *Anser*.

Goosegrass, in Greek, *Aparine*, *Omphalocarpos*, *Philanthropos*; in Latine *Asperugo*, *Asperula*, and *Sperouella*, it is a well known weed, hot and dry by nature.

Gourds, *Cucurbita esculenta*, *Cucurbita ventricosa*, *Cucurbita camerata*, *Cucurbita pericalis*, and at the Apothecaries *Cucurbita*.

Gray, look a Badger, *B*.

Gromel, in Greek and Latine *Lithospermon*, *Gergonium*, of *Theophrastus Diospyros*, and at the Apothecaries *Milium solis*. *Dioscor.* calleth it *Lithospermum*, and *Semen Leonis-num*. There be two kinds of it: the first groweth in the fields and untilled places: the second is like the former which is used at the Apothecaries, but it groweth not above a span in height, and the seed is also much lesse, it is called *Lithospermon arvense*: the other hath small leaves like to Flaxe, and between every leaf a little seed, not unlike to the true Gromel: the Herbarists do call it *Lingua passerina*, *Lithospermon sylvestre*, and *Lithospermum nigrum*: in English black Gromil, to distinguish it from the white which is daily used. Some also do adde to the former kinds *Lachryma Jovis*, calling it *Lithospermon majus*, although it have no communion with them: the first is most used.

Greins, *Cardiacopium majus*, at the Apothecaries *Granum Paradisi*; it is used commonly both at the Apothecaries, and in the Kitchin.

Grasse, in Greek and Latine *Agrostis*, and *Gramen*.

Grashopper, *Cicada*.

Greenfinch, *Acanthis*; in Greek and in Latine *Spinus*, and of *Theodorus Gaza Ligurinus*: it is a well known bird, and used commodiously in meates for all cold rheumes.

Gum, in Latine *Gummi*, at the Apothecaries *Gummi Arabicum*.

H

HAre, *Lepus*, it is a common and well known beast, especially in rich mens houses.

Hares foot, in Greek and in Latine *Lagopus*, *Lagopodium*, *Pes leporinus*: the Herbarists do call it *Trifolium Leporinum*, *Trifolium folinum*, and *Trifolium Trinitatis*. This herb is much used for the lask.

Harts-ease, in Greek and Latine *Dioscorbos*, *Phlox*, *Phlogium*, *Herba flammea*, *Herba clavellata*, *Herba Trinitatis*, and at the Apothecaries *Jucea*. *Gaza* calleth it *Flammula*: it is otherwise called of the Herbarists *Flos Jovis*. It is an herb common in all gardens and fields, it is much used, and especially the water of it.

Harts tongue, in Greek and Latine *Phyllitis*, and *Lingua Cervina*. It is of divers unlearned Physitians taken and also used for the *Asplenium* of the ancients, or for the true *Scolopendrion*; where notwithstanding the true *Scolopendrium* is common enough.

Hartwort or Aristology, *Capnos Chelidonia*, *Capnos phragmites*, *Pes Gallinaceus*; of the Herbarists *Pseudoaristolochia*, and *Radix Concava*. The roots of this herb have the unskilful Physitians brought in use for the true Aristology the round, and is unto this day used for the same at many Apothecaries, which nevertheless is nothing like it. So befalleth it commonly that we will see and discern what is done in the heavens amongst the stars, and do not know those things that are beneath on earth, and belonging to our Art. This herb is a kind of Fumitory, which *Aetius* and *Pliny* have so described it, as may appear by their writings. Here is to be noted, that as often as you find either round Hartwort, or round Aristology, that the right round Aristology is to be taken for it. The true *Aristolochia rotunda* is called in Greek and Latine *Aristolochia* and *Melocarpon*: otherwise it is called for a difference *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Malum Terrae*.

Hasel, or Hasel nut, in Greek *Carya*, in Latine *Corylus*, and *Nux avellana*. There are two kinds of it, the one that groweth every where in the Woods; and the other that

is planted in gardens called a Filberd tree, The Nuts are called in Greek *Leptocaryon*, *Nux avellana*, *Nux ponsica*, *Nux pranestina*, *Nux Heraclestica*, and *Avellana*. The same Hasel Nuts are called Filberds, Lombardy Nuts, that is, *Nux Longobardica*. The wood of the Hasel is cut in chips as the wood of the Ash, and also used in the making of aromatical wines.

Hawthorn is called of *Theophrast*, *Canesbatus*, of *Plinie*, *Canosbaston*, and *Nennospaston*, of *Dioscorides Oxyacantha*, of *Gaza*, *Cavirubus*, the fruits are called Hawes.

Hawke, *Accipiter*, of *Virgil Sacer ales*.

Heath, *Erica*, of *Theophrastus Tetralax*.

Hedghog, *Echinus*, a well known beast, it is full of prickles over the whole body, so that his skin will not serve to fur a pair of mittens.

Hemlock, is a very venemous herb, it is called in Greek *Conion*, *Cathechomenion*, *Abiaton*, *Aegnos*, *Asfeuder*, *Ethusa*, *Agcomera*, *Apolegusa*, *Timoreo*, *Dolia*, *Palyanodinos*, *Amoerosis*, *Dardanis*, *Aphros*, *Creidion*, *Catapsixis*, *Cote*, in Latine *Cicuta*: it groweth here and there by hedges, in medowes, and in other grassie places, it hath a very stinking and hurtful savour.

Hemp, in Greek and Latine *Schoenostrophon*, *Asterion*, *Canabie*, or *Cannabis*; in is but seldom used in Physick: it is oft called Halterweed.

Henbane, in Greek and Latine *Hyoscyamus*, *Dioscyamus*, *Emmanes*, *Dithyrabion*, *Typhonium*, *Pythonium*, *Alterum*, *Apollinaris*, *Faburum*, *Faba Jovis*, *Faba suilla*, *Herba calicularis*, *Faba lupina*, *Mania*, and at the Apothecaries *Jusquiamus*. It is cold in the third degree, especially the white, which onely is used in Physick. The gray and black Henbane seeds by reason of their great cold, are taken for poyson, wherefore neither of both ought to be used inwardly.

Herb-bennet, look Avence, *A.*

Herb twopence, is called of *Theophrastus*, *Erestodanum*: in Latine *Centimorbia*, *Centimorbium*, or *Centimorbium*: at the Apothecaries *Nummularia*, *Serpentina minor*, and *Serpentinaria minor*. Some do also call it *Herundinaria*: it is a common vulneral herb.

Hermodactyles, in Greek *Colchicon*, in Latine *Ephemerum deleterium*, *Ephemerum lethale*, *Bulbus agrestis*; of the Herbarists *Caninecu*, *Panis Cisonis*, and *Bulbus Caninus*, Our Physitians and Apothecaries do call them *Hermodactylum*. But because that divers other plants are called Hermodactyles, it is needful to distinguish them here, that no man put either himself or any body else in danger: for our common *Hermodactylus*, is the Hermodactyle root, and the true *Colchicum*, which *Galen* calleth *Ephee merum deleterium*: *Avicenna*, *Serapio*, and other Arabian Physitians do affirm the same; and it availeth nought, that some will distinguish the *Colchicum* of the Grecians, from the *Hermodactylus* of the Arabians: their false and erroneous opinions are easily withstood, for you need but only compare the Chapter of Hermodactyles of *Serapio*, with the chapter of *Colchicum* of *Dioscorides*, then shall you evidently perceive that it is one and the same root: For *Serapio* being a diligent follower of *Dioscorides*, hath taken his chapter *de Hermodactyle* out of the chapter *de Colchico Dioscoridis verbatim*, word for word; as he hath also done in all other plants that are described of *Dioscorides*, as all they may perceive that have conferred both these Authors together. Wherefore it is most sure that the *Colchicum* of the Grecians, and the *Hermodactylus* of the Arabians, which now also are used for Hermodactyles, are one and the same. But *Dioscorides* and *Serapio* affirm their *Colchicum* and *Hermodactylus* to be a poyson as well as the venemous Toadstooles, wherefore also they command, that they be in no wise used or eaten: And although *Serapio* do say, that the Hermodactyles be good for the Gout, and other joynt diseases, yet he addeth, that if one use too much of them, that thereby the muscles and the stomach are marvellously weakened: but then he speaketh of the root of the white Hermodactyles, and supposeth that they that are red and black should altogether kill one. Seeing then they are so dangerous, these roots ought not to be tolerated at the Apothecaries, and much lesse to be used inwardly. Whereas then we know sufficiently that our *Colchicum*, or *Hermodactylus* is so venemous, therefore must they needs lie extreamly, that brag that they can cure all joynt diseases with it. For it is most true, that they that use these Hermodactyles for the Gout, whether it be in Pilles, Potions, or any other way, do wax worse and worse every day, and at last are constrained to die an untimely death, as hath been seen in divers men, and at divers times: notwithstanding that divers learned men have warned

them that uſe ſuch dogged medicines; but no man will be taught of another, which is the onely cauſe that we will not leave our own opinions and errours, which thing doth not only bereave many a man of this life, but alſo of the life to come. Wherefore I would admoniſh and warn every man to take heed of them, and where he findeth Hermodactyles in any receipt, that he omit them. And becauſe that there be Pils made with Hermodactyles, which would be very commodious for the Gout, if they were left out, therefore I would wiſh the Hermodactyles to be omitted, and to put *Turbith*, or Agarick inſtead thereof, or to take *Medulla Carthami* for it: for they that have obſerved this order, have found great good by it. But if you take the roots of the true *Mechoacan* for it, that would be much better, for I my ſelf have approved the ſame: this done, you need not fear any miſhap or danger, from which I could not omit to warn every good body. It is very true that divers Grecian Writers, as *Actuarius*, and *Nicolaus Myrepſus*, have left unto us certain compoſitions, wherein are both the white and the red Hermodactyles, as in *Aurea Alexandrina Nicolai*, and *Diamoſchu Actuarii*, but theſe Authors have not meant the Hermodactyles of the Arabians, or the *Colchicum Dioſcoridis*, but they have meant the *Behen album*, and *rubrum*; which very well ought to be noted, that this precious confection be not defiled with the Hermodactyles, Turbith, or with *Mechoacan*. *Dioſcorides* hath alſo his proper Hermodactyles, which he calleth otherwiſe *Pentaphyllum*, and it is called in Engliſh Cinquefoyl, whereof hath been ſpoken before.

Heron, in Latine *Erodius*, *Rhodius*, *Avis Diomedea*, and *Ardea*: it is a bird every where well known.

Hollyhocks, in Greek and in Latine *Althæa*, *Ariſtalthæa*, and *Dendron Malache*; of *Ætius* and *Galen Ebiſcus*, *Ibiſcus*, *Hibiſcus*, and at the Apothecaries *Malvaviſcus*, and *Biſmalva*: the leaves and flowers are hot and dry in the firſt degree.

Hony, *Mel*.

Honyſuckle, in Greek *Periclymenum*, *Periclymenus*, *Ægine*, *Carpathon*, *Splenion*, *Calycanthemum*, in Latine *Volucrum majus*, *Involucrum majus*, *Pileolus Veneris*; and of the Herbariſts *Matriſylvia*, *Materſylva*, or *Vinciboſcum*; of *Stribonius Sylvæ mater*: the Apothecaries do call it *Capriſolium*, or *Lilium inter ſpinas*. There are two kinds of it, firſt the common ſort which is known every where by the name of Honyſuckle; the other kind is onely ſet in gardens, and is very like the former, but that the leaves are ſomewhat broader, and grow cloſe to the ſtalks much like the Thorowax: the flowers are a little ſhorter then thoſe of the former, and white of colour intermixed with purple, and ſmell very pleaſantly. In Provence and Italy is this ſort as common as the other is with us; for it groweth in every hedge, &c. The Herbariſts do call it for a difference from the former, *Caprifolium Italicum*, *Caprifolium perfoliatum*, or *Periclymenum Italicum*, and *Periclymenum perfoliatum*, both theſe plants are hot and dry by nature: the leaves and the flowers are uſed for ſtinking ulcers, fiſtulaes, Canker, and Pox.

Hops, in Greek *Bryon*, in Latine *Lupulus ſalictarius*, *Lupulus Humulus*, and of *Meſues Volubilis*, or *Volubilis magna*, *Lupus reptitius*, *Habiola*, and *Bruſcandula*. It is hot and dry in the ſecond degree.

Horehound, in Greek and Latine *Linoſtrophon*, *Phyllopharis*, *Camelopodium*, *Præſſium*, and *Marrubium*.

Horſe, *Equus*.

Horſe Leach, *Hirudo*, *Sanguiſuga*: it is a well known Water-worm, it is often uſed to draw out blood of the body of man.

Horſe Radiſh, *Sinapi Perſicum*, at the Apothecaries *Raphanus major*, of the Herbariſts *Raphanus condimentarius*, and *Raphanus obſoniorum*: The Arabians do call it *Naſturtium album*. This root is every where well known, and is taken of divers unskilful Phyſitians and Apothecaries for *Armoracia*, and *Raphanus minor*, or *Sylveſtris*, the which are the names of wild Radiſh.

Horſetail, in Greek *Hippuris*, in Latine *Equiſetum*, *Cauda equina*, and *Aſprella*; *Dioſcorides* doth alſo call it *Ephedron*, and *Anabaſis*. There are two kinds of it, the greater and the leſſer; the greater is that whereof we have now ſpoken: the leſſer is called *Hippuris minor*, *Equiſitum*.

Horſetongue, in Greek and Latine *Hippogloſſum*, *Hypogloſſum*, *Epigloſſum*, *Epiphyllocarpon*, *Lingua pagana*, *Bonifacia*, *Uvularia*, and *Biſtingua*.

Hounds tongue, *Cynogloſſum*, or *Cynogloſſa*, *Lingua Canina*; it is cold and dry in the ſecond degree.

Houſleek, in Greek *Iſoon*, *Hypogreſſum*, *Stergethron*, *Zephalmon*, and *Aithales*;

in

in Latine *Sedum ſempervivum*, and of *Apuleius*, *Vitalis*, *Caulis Jovis*, of the Herbariſts *Herba tenitrus*: the Apothecaries do call it *Barba Jovis*. The ſecond kind is the leſſer Houſleek called of the Grecians *Trichales*, *Eriſithales*, *Geoſtitis*, and *Petrophyes*, in Latine, *Aizoum minus*, *ſedum minus Vermicularis*, *Canda muris*, of *Plinie Digitellus*, of the Herbariſts, *Herba vermiculata*, at the Apothecaries *Craſſula minor*: both theſe herbs have like operations, for they do dry, coole, and are aſtringent, but cold in the third degree.

Huckleberries, field Berries, Bilberries, *Pſeudomyrtus*, *Vitis Idæa Theophraſti*, it is a plant growing on hils and in woods very common. Theſe Blackberries are falſly taken for Myrtle ſeeds of the ſouthſayers and unlearned crue, as they alſo do with the leaves inſtead of Myrtle leaves, for they could never gueſſe by the ſign and courſe of the Moone, or by any other ſtars influence, what the right Myrtus is, for which cauſe they uſe this plant for it; but one muſt take heed not to uſe them for Myrtles, for they neither have the vertues nor operation of them.

Hyſſope, or Iſope, *Hyſſopus*, *Hyſſopum*.

I

JAcinth, in Greek and Latine *Hyacinthus*. It is a precious ſtone of a light violet colour. It is called an oriental, or Bohemiſh Amethiſt. It is dealt withal of the unskilful as is with divers other ſimples, for the Chryſolite hath been uſed many yeares for the Jacinth, but how erroneouſly that hath been done, may appeare by by the writings of Plinie, who ſayth, that the Jacinth is like the Amethiſt. Wherefore it is apparant that the Hyacinthus hath his name of the violet coloured flower Hyacinthus, which is moſt like to the natural Amethiſt, ſo that the *Chryſolithus* hath falſleybeen uſed for the *Hyacinthus*. Alſo the yellow ſtone *Praſius*, or *Chryſopraſium* hath falſely been called *Chryſolithus*, by which meanes theſe ſtones have been confuſed and confuſedly uſed the one for the other: wherefore *Hyacinthus* is the Bohemiſh or oriental Amethiſt, and the Chryſolite is a falſe Jacinth, and Chriſopraſius is the falſe Chryſolite, this have I thought good to ſhew, by reaſon of the great errors daily commited, to the end that more warily might be dealt hereafter in the like caſes.

Jaſper ſtone, it is a precious ſtone, whereof there be divers kinds, to wit, green red, light red, dark blew, liver coloured, and ſpotted, yellow like Turpentine, and gray with ſmoakie colours; all theſe kinds are in the fields about *Nivernoy*, and alſo here and there in France, alſo in Germany in ſundry places, except the green and dark green Jaſpers, which onely are brought out of India, theſe two laſt kinds are the beſt. The dark green Jaſper is called *Heliotropius*; the light green like a Smaragde is called *Iaſpis viridis*, this is uſed for the Smaragde but unjuſtly. The liver coloured is called at the Apothecaries *Lapis Hepaticus*. The yellow Iaſper is called of *Dioſcorides Therebinthiſula*, and the blew Iaſper *Arizuſa*.

Jewes lime, in Greek Aſphaltos, in latine Bitumen, and at the Apothecaries *Bitumen Iudaicum*, it hath his name by reaſon that it was wont to be brought unto us from *Judæa* out of the ſalt ſea, wherein the Jordan doth exonerate it ſelf, which alſo hath been taken for the very beſt of Galen, Dioſcorides, and of divers other antien writers: but that which is now adayes found at the Apothecaries, is onely a deceipt and a counterfeited Jewes lime, to wit, made of Pitch, and Oleum petræ, which is both bought and ſold of Jewes and other covetous Marchants; wherefore it is much better to uſe of our Dutch Pitch (which is the right Bitumen) then to take one that is counterfeited. Pitch or Jewes Lime is very ſeldome uſed alone, but it is alwayes mixed with other things.

Jewes ſtones, in Greek and Latine *Tecolithus*, *Phœnicites*, *Pyrene*, and *Eureos*. All theſe names doth Plinie attribute to the Jewes ſtone, yet he doth alſo call the ſponge ſtone *Spongites Tecolithus*, but this name is onely due to the Jewes ſtone. It is called of Dioſcorides *Lapis Judaicus*, by which name it is alſo known at the Apothecaries.

Ink *Atramentum ſcriptorum*, *Atramentum librarium*, the Apthecaries do call it Encauſtum.

Indian nut, in Greek *Caryon Indicon*, in Latine *Nux Indica*, and of Serapio Nergoil. It is a fruit like to the great Pompeons whileſt it is green, but it is brought unto us dried; the ſhell of it is as hard as a horn, black without, and as big as a common bowl. It is alſo well known in this country: within it hath a white pith or Kernel; it is uſed at all Apothecaries.

The kernel is hot in the ſecond, and moyſt in the firſt degree,

Ireas of *Dioſcorides*, *Iris*, *Urina*, *Thaumaſtos* or *Thalpide*, or *Thalpide*, and *Catharon*; of *Athenæus*, and *Theophraſtus*, *Hieris*, in Latine *Iris*, *Opertritus*, *Radix martica*, and *Radix conſecratrix*; of the Herbariſt *Strapula odorata*, *Radix violacea*, and at the Apothecaries, *indeclinabiter in caſu genitivo*, *Ireos*, or *Irios*. There are five kinds of it, the firſt is ſtrange, and is onely planted in Gardens, it hath a faire white and odorifrous flower; the roote is alſo white and ſweet ſmelling; it is called of the Herbariſts *Iris alba*, *Iris domeſtica alba*. The ſecond kind is alſo planted in gardens, it is very like the former, but the flower is blew and within of divers colours, not unlike to the the rainebow; the roote is ſomewhat grayer then the firſt, and not ſo odoriferous; it is called blew flower deluce, of the Herbariſts *Iris cærulea*, *Iris domeſtica cærulea*, and *Lilium cæruleum*. The 3. kind groweth of it ſelf in the woods, it is much like to the laſt mentioned, but that the flower is bigger and ſowewhat declining to the Violet or purple colour, within diſtinguiſhed with many colours like a raynbow. This is called wild Ireas, of the Herbariſts *Iris ſylveſtris*, *Lilium cœleſte ſylveſtre*. The fourth kind hath ſmall, yet long and narrow leaves, and a fair blew flower without any ſmell; the root is ſomewhat leſſe then of the others, but not odoriferous, yea almoſt without ſmell, but very ſharp and biting in taſt. It groweth commonly near the Rhene in Marſhes; it is called of the Simpliciſts *Iris paluſtris anguſtifolia*, *Lilium cæruleum*, *paluſtre majus*. The fift kind groweth alſo in moyſt places near the Rhene, it hath broader and ſhorter leaves then the former, with a blew flower: the root is ſharp on the tongue but without any ſent. It is called of the Herbariſts *Chamæiris*, *Iris pumila*, *Iris paluſtris minor*, *Iris paluſtris latifolia*, *Gladiolus paluſtris latifolius*, *Gladiolus paluſtris minor*, and *Lilium cæruleum paluſtre minus*. *Dioſcorides* commendeth the *Iris Illyrica* or *Sclauonica* above all other kinds. This is ſomewhat leſſer then the common kind of Ireas: it is alſo ſomewhat reddiſh and of a pleaſant colour, and ſweet in ſmell. But the Italian Ireas and that which groweth in Apulea, doth not onely exceed the former in odoriferouſneſſe, but alſo in operation; wherefore it is alſo commended of all learned phyſitians above that of *Illyria*. The Herbariſts do call it *Iris Italica*, *Iris Florentina*, *Iris Apulca*: in Engliſh the white Ireas roote. If thou therefore find Ireas in any compoſition with any addition, then ſhalt thou take the Iris Florentina, which is common at all Apothecaries.

Iſope look Hyſſop. H.

Jujubes in greek and Latine *Sericum Zyzyphum*, and at the Apothecaries Jujuba: it is a kind of Prunes that are well known.

Iron, Ferrum, it is very much uſed in Phyſick; for it is made red hot and extinguiſhed in water, wine, milk, and many other liquors more.

Juniper tree in Greek 'Arcuthos, in Latine Juniperus. There are two kinds of it, the great and the leſſer Juniper tree: the leſſer is common on every hill and known to every man; in greek and of Dioſcorides, it is called *Arcuthis* and *Acathalis*, of *Theophraſtus Oxycedros*, in Latin *Juniperus minor*, *Junipurulus*, and *Jupicellus*, in Engliſh the Juniper ſhrub. The great Juniper tree hath bigger, ſtronger, and more pricking leaves, then the leſſer, and it is a meetly great tree; the berries and fruits are thrice bigger then thoſe of the former; it groweth on high hils and in woods. It is called in Greek of Dioſcorides *Arcuthos* and *Acatera*, of others *Oxyarcuthis*, and of *Theophraſtus Cedera*, in Latine *Juniperus major*, *Juniperus acuta* and *Cupreſſus ſylveſtris*. They are both of ſundry vertues and operations in Phyſick, and therefore they may be uſed without indifferenity.

Ivory, *Ebur*, *Ebor*, *Dens Elephantis* but Juba doth call the Ivory or Flephants tooth Cerata.

Ivie, in Latine and Greek, *Ciſſus*, *Hedera Edera* and Hædera.

K

Kite, *Ictinus*, in Latine *Milvus* and *Milvius*. Knotgras, in Greek Polygonum, in Latine *Proſerpinaca*, *Herba Sanguinalis*, or Sanguinaria. There are three kinds of it, to wit, the male, the female, and the leſſer knotgras; the male is ſufficiently known by the name of knotgraſſe, it groweth every where on the high waies and untilled grounds: it is called in greek *Polycarpon*, *Carcinithron*, *Teutalis*, *Myrtopetalon Cnopadium*, *Pedalion*, in Latine *Polygonum mas*, *Sanguinaria*, *Herba Sanguinalis mas*,

mas, Seminalis. Unguis muris, Proserpinaca; of *Apuleius, Clinopodium, Scorpinaca, Stratumaria*, and *Miserevivium*. The Herbarists do call it *Polygonum Heracleum*, or *Herculeum, Corrigola, Multinodia, Centrummodia, Gramen Porcinum*; of *Actius Heliobotane* that is, *Herba solis*, *Dioscor.* doth also call it in greek Cynochala; the second kind is a kind of horsetaile, and is called of the common people the lesser Horsetaile, and of Dioscor. to distinguish it from the other *Poligonum fœmina*, or *Sanguinalis fœmina*, The third kind and the lesser knotgras groweth willingly in the fields amongst Turneps, and it hath a small flax like leaves and great store of seed; the Herbarists do call it *Polygonum minus, Centinodia minor, Multinodia minor, Corrigiola minor, Sanguinalis minor, Seminalis minor*, and Ruella; but whensoever any mention is made, then must the first kind be understood.

L

LAdymantle, the greater Sanicle of Valerius Cordius, is called in greek *Drosium, Drosera*, and *Psiadium*: the Herbarists do call it *Alchimilla, Stellaria, Sanicula major, Pes leonis* and *Planta leonis*; it is a well known vulnerall herb, yet all together unknown to the ancient Physitians. It is hot and dry in the second degree, it is used in all manner of vulneral potions, salves and oyles.

Ladythystle in greek and Latine *Sylibum*, of the Herbarists *Carduus divæ Mariæ, Carduus marianus*, at the Apothecaries *Cameleonta*, as they are taught by the unskilful physitians

Lark in Greek *Corydes*, and *Corydalis*, of Pliny, in Latin Galetita, Alauda. The Lark is much commended for the pain of the belly and many other infirmities

Larks spur of *Dioscor. ciminum sylvestre alterum*, of the Herbarists *Flectranthemum*, *Calcaria, Herba divæ Otilia, Flos regius, Cyminum cornutum, Cyminum siliquosum, Cyminum corniculatum* and *Calcatrippa* although the starkthistles in Italy be also called *Calcatrippa*, at the Apothecaries. *Consolida regia*, and consolida regalis, Ruellius calleth itCornuta.

Lavander Lavendula, Lavandula and Lavendandula. There are two kinds of it sufficiently known to every man, to wit, the great and the lesser, the lesser kind is commonly called Lavander and is every where known by that name; the greater is called Spikenard, and of the Herbarists *Spica hortulana*, and *Pseudonardus*. In old time, as well as in this our age, have these herbs been planted near Bee hives, because the Bees do love both the smell, and the taste of lavander flowers. The ancient physitians have called this herb *Casia herba, Casia coronaria*, and *Cneoron*; whereby they have meant both the Lavander and the Spikenard; for there are two kinds of the herb *Casia*. The use of both these herbs is very coumon with us in Physick; not onely used of it self, but mixed also with other things.

Laurel or Lorel, in greek *Daphnoides Euptalon, Pelasgum Plinii, Peploin, Dioscorides*, in latine *Laureola*. and *Piper montanum* of the Herbarists: it is a well known plant, that groweth in woods and dangerous to be used: some unskilful Physitians and Apothecaries do use it for the true *Mezereon* of of the Arabians.

Lead *Plumbum*.

Leaven, in greek *Zyme*, of *Theophrastus Phyrama*, in Latine *Fermentum*.

Lemon, *Lemonium malum, Limonium malum, Pomum Lemonium*, and *Limonium*, it is sufficiently well known every where.

Lentils, in greek *Phacos*, in Latine *Lens*, and *Lenticula*. They are maen between hot and cold, but dry in the third degree.

Lettice in greek *Thridax*, in Latine *Lactuca*, a very common and well known herb. There are many kinds of it: first the common Lettice which is called broad Lettice, secondly: the crumpled Lettce, called *Lactuca crispa*, and *Lactuca cappadox*: the third kind is the headed Lettice, *Lactica sessilis*; of Pliny, *Lactuca Laconica*; of *Columella, Lactuca Ceciliana*; and *Lactuca medica*, of Athæneus, Astylis; and of *Pythagoras, Eunuchion*, because that it hindereth the generation of humane seed: the fourth kind is wild, and is called wild Lettice, in greek *Thridax agria*, in latine *Lactuca sylvestris*, of the Herbarists *Chenoglossum, Lingua anserina*, and Carduus Hepaticus. Some blunt Physitians do use this for Endive, although the Endive be very common and known of most men, which is no small errour.

Licebane, or Staveacre, in greek *Astaphys agria, Staphis agria*; and *Phthiroctonum*, in latine *Uva sylvestris, Pedicularis*, and *Herba Pedicularis*, of the Herbarists, *Piper murinum*, and at the Apothecaries *Staphisagria*: of the whole plant is onely the seed used.

Licorice, *Glycyrrhiza*, *Glycerates*, *Glycephyton*, *Adipſos*, *Sylitra*, *Lybyeſtaſon*, and *Theopraſt.* calleth it *Eutyglycea*, in latin *Radix dulcis*: *Radix Scythica*, and at the Apothecaries *Liquiritia*: and of ſome barbarous people *Regulitia*; it is a well known root, and eſpecially about Bamberge, where it goweth in that abundance, that it doth not onely ſerve Germany, but many other countries more.

Lighe, *Lixivium*, and *Lixivia*, *Columel*, *Spuma cauſtica*, of *Martialis*, *Spuma Batava*.

Lignum Aloes, in greek *Agallochum*, of *Ætius*, *Simeon Sethus*, *Nicolaus*, and *Actuarius*, *Xyloaloes*, in Latine of Pliny, Tarum of the latter writers *Lignum Aloes*, *Xylum aloes*, and *Xyloaloes*. The Druggiſts do call it *Calambucum Lignum Taprobanum*, *Lignum paradaſi*, and *Lignum ſanctæ crucis*. In the Bible hath it onely been called Aloes; it is an odoriferous kind of wood which is brought out of the Iſles of *Sumatra*, or *Taprobana*: There are many kinds of it, the heavieſt is the beſt, and that which is hard and ſpotted black, and very Sappie, is alſo taken for the beſt.

Lilly, in greek and Latine *Crinon*, *Lirium*, *Lilium*, *Roſa Junonis*, or *Junonia Roſa*, *Nicander* calleth it *Crinanthemum*. The Apothecaries call it for a difference of the others, Lilium album, that is, the white Lilly; and by the name of the Lillies in this book are alwayes the white ones meant.

Liriconfancy or May Lillies, or Lillies of the vallies; of Theophraſtus, *Lilium Vernum*, of the Herbariſts and common Phyſitians, *Lilium convallium*. Some would have it to be the *Cacalia* of *Dioſcorides*. But they are deceived. The flowers of this herb are onely uſed.

Litharge of gold or ſilver, *Litharggrum*, there are two kinds of it: the firſt is the Litharge or droſſe of ſilver, *Argyritis*, at the Apothecaries *Litharggrium argenti*. The ſecond kind is the Litharge of gold and it is ſomewhat redder then the former. There is yet another kind called of *Pliny Molybditis*, and of other *Spuma plumbi*: that is the ſcum of Lead. Otherwiſe it is alſo called *Lythargirum argenti*, alſo *Lithargires* and of *Pliny* *Spuma argenti*, as the Litharge of gold is called of ſome *Spuma auri*. Theſe three kinds have the ſame qualities and operations, yet is the Litharge of gold taken for the beſt; then the ſcum of Lead: Laſtly the litharge of ſilver.

Loadeſtone, in greek of *Galen*, *Magnetis*, and *Heraclia*; of *Callimachus*, *Heracleotis*, and of *Porphyrius*, *Magnes*, and it is alſo called in latine. It is called of *Pliny* *Sideritis*, becauſe it draweth Iron unto it.

Lobſter, *Cancer Marinus*.

Lovage, in greek *Hippoſelinum*, in latine, *Apium equinum*, of *Theodorus Gaza*, *Equapium*, of the Herbariſts, *Pſeudoligusticum*, of the Apothecaries and common Phyſitians *Leviſticum*. Becauſe they have uſed it many yeares for the true *Lybiſticum*, or *Ligusticum*, therefore will they (according to their old cuſtome) remain in their error, and will by no meanes be better inſtructed, let the poore Patient ſpeed as he liſt; notwithſtanding that the true *Libyſticum* of the Ancients be in great abundance brought out of Italy, for it groweth very common in *Liguria*, and other provinces: but diligent and careful Phyſitians do plant the ſame in their gardens. Others that have not the true *Ligusticum* uſe the *Angelica* for it, or the *Ouſtrutium*, for both theſe herbs have the ſame virtues with the *Liſtugicum*: the which all phyſitians and Apothecaries ought to imitate, untill ſuch time as they attaine to the true *Ligusticum*. If we did ſo much trouble our ſelves about the knowledg of herbs and ſimples, as we do about the making of Calenders and Prognoſtications, we might have this and many ſimples more which now we want. The *Ligusticum* is alſo called *Panacea* of Dioſcorides.

Lupines in greek and Latine *Lupinus Thermus*, and *Faba Lupina*.

M

MAce in greek, and Latine, *Macer*, *Xylomacer*, *Macis* and *Nucis myriſtica involucrum*, It is a ſwell known ſpice, hot and dry by nature.

Madder, in greek and Latine *Erythrodanum*, of *Nicander*, *Scyron*, *Rubia*, *Rubia tinctorum*, *Rubia infectoria*, *Vena tinctoria*; at the Apothecaries *Rubia tinctorum*, and *Vena tinctorum*. There are two kinds of it, the wilde and the tame: the wilde groweth every where in the woods, and it is much better & fitter for Phyſick then the other, which my ſelf have approved to be true at ſundry times; the root is onely in uſe, for the herb hath ſmall vertue.

Magpie, *Pica*, and *Citta*.

Malmſey, in greek and latine *Momembraſites*, *Vinum Arvuſium*, *Vinum Creticum*, *Vinum chium*, and *Nicolaus Mirepſus* calleth it

Vinum

Vinum Momembraſiatcum, the common Phyſitians and Apothecaries call it *Vinum malvaticum*, and *Vinum marviſianum*, or *Malviſianum*.

Mallowes in greek *Malache*, in Latine *Malva*. There are four principal kinds of it, whereof the firſt is the tame Mallow, which groweth in gardens and elſewhere: it is called *Malva ſativa*, *Malva hortenſis*, of the Herbariſts, *Malva Major*, *Hippomala*- and *Malva caballina*: this is the right Mallow or Malva ſativa of the ancients, notwithſtanding that it groweth in all places of it ſelf. The ſecond kind groweth every where by the hedges and ditches, and it is much leſſer then the former; it is called in greek *Malache agria*, and in latine, *Malva ſylveſtris*, or *Malva agreſtis*, of the Herbariſts *Chenomalache*, *Malva anſerina*, *Malva Leporina*, and Malvapumila, in Engliſh the leſſer Mallowes. The 3. kind is now adayes planted in gardens, and it is called crumpled Mallowes, it is more moyſt then either of the former, although that firſt it came from them: for by the art of Gardening it is ſo changed, as many other plants alſo are. It is called of the Herbariſts *Malva Romana*, or *Malva Criſpa*. The fourth kind is called a winter Roſe, in greek *Moloche*, and in Latine of Apuleius, *Haſtula regia*, of the Herbariſts *Roſa tranſmarina*, *Roſa hyemalis*, *Roſa autumnalis*: the Apothecaries call it Malva arborea. The firſt two kinds are mean warm and moyſt by nature, but the leſſer diſagreeth ſomewhat from the other. The crumpled Mallowes are much moyſter by natnre then the other, and is but ſeldome uſed in Phyſick, and that becauſe the two firſt are much ſtronger. The winter Roſes are middle mean warm but aſtringent withal, that as the former kinds do looſe the belly, ſo this doth bind the ſame, wherefore it is alſo uſed for the lask; they therefore do lie falſely that commend this kind above all the Mallowes of Dioſcordes and Galen.

Mandrake, *Mandragora*, *Antimelon*: this is called of *Pythagoras*, *Anthropomorphos*.

Maniple is an handful, or as much as one can hold in his hand of herbs, flowers, rootes and ſuch like things, in greek *Dracos*, *Dragma*, and of the latter Grecians *Diſmidion*, in latine of Cornelius Celſus, *Manipulus*, of *Scribonius* and *Marcellus*, *Faſciculus*, of Plinie, *Faſciculus manualis*.

Manna, *Melligo*, *Saliva ſiderum Ros*, *ſyriacus*, *Mel aerium*; of Galen *Æromeli*, *Droſomeli*, at the Apothecaries *Manna* or *Manna cœleſtis*, to diſtinguiſh it from the Frankincenſe which is called *Manna Libani*, and *Manna Thuris*. There are two kinds of *Manna*, the one is ſoft and thin, which is gathered in ſtone pots, and that is called of Galen lib. *tertio de alimentorum facultatibus*, the principal *Æromeli*, that is *Mel aërium*, and *Mel libani*. The Arabians do call it for a difference from the other *Tereniabin*, and *Averroes Tergebium*. The Simpliciſts do call it, *Manna liquida*. But now adayes it was neither found nor uſed any longer, as it is wont to be in the time of Galen, and of other writers. This *Manna liquida* doth *Hippocrates* call *Mel cedrinum*. The other kind is dry and hard like Sugar, and is differing according to the place where it is collected, ſo the one is called *Manna Calabrina*, and *Manna Bombycina*, this is brought out of *Calabria*, and it is accompted the worſt kind, and it is not ſo ſweet as the other. The other kind is called *Manna Brianſona*, it is in compacted hard, and fatty greins, it is alſo ſweeter then the former, and more forcible in operation. The third kind is whiter, and the greins of it are not unlike to them of Maſtick, it is alſo called *Manna granata* or *granulata*, or *Maſtichina*, and it is the very beſt.

Marchaſite, in greek and latine *Pyrites*, at the Apothecaries *Marchaſita*, it is a mineral ſtone, it is uſed in Gum and Tinder boxes. There are many kinds of it, whoſe names do all differ according to the mineral that they contain.

Marjoram baſtard, look Organy O.

Marjoram gentle in greek *Sampſychus*, in latin *Amaracus* or *Amaracum*, of *Ægineta*, and at the Apothecaries *Majorana*.

Marigold, of *Virgil*, *Columella*, and *Pliny*, *Caltha*, and of the Herbariſts *Solſequium aureum*, *Verrucaria*, *Caltha poetica*, to diſtinguiſh it from the *Caltha* of Dioſcorides, which is the *Chryſanthemum*: it is otherwiſe called *Calendula*, and there are 3. kinds of it, to wit, the common Marigold, that groweth in every garden, and is called *Calendula*. The 2. kind hath fair great and double flowers, it is called *Calendula multiplex*. The third kind is much leſſe then both the former, but very like to the firſt kind with flowers, leaves and rootes: this kind groweth every where about worms, & alſo about *Reingan* in plowed fields, & it is much better & fitter for phyſick then the former, it is called the wild

Marigold,

Marigold *Calendula ſylveſtris* and *Arvenſis*: ſome call it *Calthula*, becauſe it is the leaſt of the three.

Maſtick, in Greek and Latine *Maſtiche, Reſina lentiſcina*, and at the Apothecaries *Maſtix*.

Mandlingwort, in Greek *Chryſocome*, and *Chryſitis*, in Latine *Coma aurea, Aureola*, and *Amaranthus*, of *Galen* and the Herbariſts *Amaranthus luteus, Amaranthus aureus, Tinctoria, Silphaliſhemum, Stechas citrina, Stichas citrina*, and at the Apothecaries *Stichadas citrinum*. This herb is known to moſt men, and is hot and dry by nature.

Maulte is prepared barly, whereof the beer is made; it is called in greek of Aetius, *Byne*, and in latine *Maltum*.

May Lillies, or flowers, look Liriconfancy.

L.

Marſh garlick in greek and latine Dioſcorides *Scordium, Scorbium, diſoſmon* and *Mithridation*, of *Apuleus Scordilum, Mithridation* and *Hama Ictinos*, of the Herbariſts *Trixago paluſtris, Triſſago paluſtris, Trixago aquatica, Chamedrys aquatica* and of *Apulus Sanguis Milui*. There are three kinds of it; the firſt is very like the true Germander both in the flower and in the leaf; but that the leaves are ſomewhat ſofter and of a light green colour, and ſmell like Garlick; the ſecond kind is much like to the former, but that it is in every reſpect ſomewhat greater; it hath ſoft leaves ſomewhat rough and gray, but in ſmell like to the former. The firſt kind is called of the Herbariſts *Scordium minus*; and the ſecond kind *Scordium majus*; the third kind hath a ſquare ſtalk and white flowers like to the Horehound; the leaves are big and much jagged, the ſmell is like Garlick, but not ſo ſtrong as the other two. Plinius calleth it Scardoris, the Herbariſts *Scordium alterium Plinii*, or *Scordium Plinianum, Scordiaſtrum, Marrubium paluſtre*, or *Marrubium aquaticum*; in Engliſh water Horehound. The Apothecaries and ſuch like Southſayers have taken the wild Garlicke for the true *Scordium*, but how falſly that is apparent enough to all the learned. The firſt and ſecond kind are uſed promiſcus the one for the other but it availeth not, ſeeing that they are both of one operation. The water or marſh Horehound is as yet unknown at the Apothecaries, and not uſed at all. The Scordium is uſed in many compoſitions.

Maidenhaire, in Greek and Latine *Adianthum, Polytricon, Callitrichon, Ebenotrichon, Capillus Veneris, Supercilium terræ*, and *Herba Capillaris*. There are two kinds of it: the firſt is *Adianthum nigrum*, or *Adianthum gallicum* becauſe that it is brought out of France unto us: all the Engliſh names (as Venus haire, Maidenhaire, &c.) are proper unto this kind, and whenſoever you find either of them in any compoſition, then ſhall this kind alwayes be underſtood: the ſecond kind is called *Adianthum album*: it is a common and well known herb here and ſelſewhere; ſome men call it *Onopterium, Filicula Aſſellorum; Ruta muraria*, and *Salvia vita*. Look in V. for Venus haire.

Meade or Hony water, in Greek *Hydromeli, Melicratum*, and in Latine *Aqua mulſa*.

Medlar tree, *Miſpilus*.

Melilot, is called of the Herbariſts *Melilotus Nobilis, Herba flavea, Herba leporina, Melilotus coronata, Sertula Regia*, and *Corona regia*. It is a well known herb, it groweth in high meadowes and hils, about a ſpan and a half in height (to wit in the Low-countryes) with ſmall Clavers; it hath a fine yellow flower which doth both ſmell and taſte like hony, it is not much unlike the flower of peaſon. It is uſed every where inſtead of the true Melilotus of the ancients, becauſe it hath the ſame vertues and operations that are deſcribed to their *Melilotus*. But in all Germany is the *Saxifragium luteum* moſt uſed, and the *Melilotus Saxifragus*, and *Trifolium urſinum*, which Dioſcorides doth call *Lotus Lybica, Lotus ſylveſtris*: This is much more forcible then the common Melliot as hath been approved. And although this kind be *Melilotus ſylveſtris* with *Dioſcorides*; yet there is another kind of it to wit, *Melilotus Avicennæ*, whereof he maketh two kinds, the one with white, and the other with yellow flowers: both which do ſmell very ſweet and are altogether bitter in taſte; yet doth ey digeſt and bind, which qualities Dioſcorides and Galen do alſo aſcribe to their Melilot; wherefore it is adviſed to take the great Melilot Avicennæ, and is uſed at the Apothecaries. The white Melilot is not common in all countryes, wherefore it is ſowen in gardens in many places. The white is called at the Apothecaries *Melilotus alba*, and the yellow *Melilotus lutea*, the Herbariſts do thus diſtinguiſh it from *Lotus ſativa*, they call it *Lotus alba*, *Lotus lutea* as they alſo call the *Lotus ſativa*, and *Lotus Cærulea*. *Serapio* hath alſo his proper

proper Melilot, to wit the leſſer Vitches, which after the flower is fallen away it getteth little husks like bird clawes. Some do uſe the leſſer ſmall Melilot that grow in meaddowes, which is ſomething leſſe then the common Melilot, calling it *Melilotus minor*, wee call it the leſſer Melilot. *Dioſc.* calleth his Melilot that groweth in *Campania*, *Sertula Campana*, and *Cato Serta Campana.*

Melons, *Melon*, *Melopepeon*, and Melo.

Mithridate, *Antidotus Mithridatica*, *Methridatium*, and at the Apothecaries Methridatum. It is a precious confection againſt all poyſon, which firſt was made by King Mithridates, and hath called it by his own name.

Mewe, *Anethum ſylveſtre*, *Anethon urſinum*. *Anethum*, *tortuoſum*, and Meum: ſome do call it Seſili Creticum, but care not for them, for it is the true Meum of the ancients, as every one may ſee and find to be without deceipt, that ſhall confer it with the deſcription of Dioſc.

Milke Thiſtle, in Greek and Latine *Chamæleon niger*, and at the Apothecaries Cardopatium, ſome do call it Carlina nigra.

Mill duſt, in Greek *Pollen*, *Farina volatica*, at the Apothecaries Farina volatils.

Mill ſtone, *Lapis molaris*, of *Virgil Lapis incuſus*.

Millet in Greek, *Cenchros*, of *Strabo Cenchris*, Hipoc. Paſpale; it is every where in Germany well known, and is daily uſed in meates.

Millet of Indy, It is called in Latine Milica, of Plinie Milium Indicum, of the Herbariſts Panicum Indicum, Meliga, Sorghum, and Saggina. The Portingals call it Milium ſaburtum. It is a plant not much unlike to the Sugar canes, and beareth a brown ſeed like a Lettice, but ſomewhat ſharp. It is now adaies ſowen in gardens.

Miſcledene, in greek of *Plinie Ixos*, and of *Virgil Aſtilis* of *Heſichius Steur*: *Stelis*, in Latine, and of *Virgil Viſcum*. It is an excreſcence of trees, and groweth commonly on Peare and Apple trees: alſo on the Hawthorne tree, and Birch trees; but that which groweth on Oakes, Tillet trees, Cheſtnut trees, or Haſels, is commended above the reſt in Phyſick. It is uſed for the falling evill and ſwimming of the head.

Moſſe, in Greek *Bryon*, *Spaghnon*, *Anion*, and *Annion* in Latine, *Muſcus*, *Muſcus arborum*, and *Lanugo arborum*; at the Apothecaries and of the Arabians *Uſnea*.

Mouſe *Mus*, a domeſtical animal.

Mouſe eare, *Auricula Muris*. The hearbs that are called Mouſe eare are 4. in number, although there be but one of them that is called ſo of the ancient writers; the firſt and greateſt kind is called of ſome Mouſe eare, others Lungwort; it groweth in dark Beechen woods, and old wals, it hath broad rough and hairy leaves that lie down flat on the ground, a ſtalk that is divided into three or four ſprigs, on the top whereof are yellow flowers; this ſtalk being ſqueeſed it yeeldeth a white milk juyce like to the wild Lettice; the Chirurgions do call it *Lactaria conſolida*; the Herbariſts *Piloſella major*, *Auricula Muris major*, and *Pulmonaria Gallica*, becauſe it alſo ſerveth for the diſeaſes of the Lights. The ſecond kind is called *Piloſella media*, and *Piloſella*, or Mouſe eare by which name it is every where known, as alſo in this Book it is called no otherwiſe. The third kind is called the leſſer Mouſeare, of the Herbariſts *Flos Angelicus*, and *Piloſella minor* It groweth in barren grounds, it hath fair white and purple flowers. The 4. kind is called the blew Mouſeare or blew Eyebright, of *Dioſcorides Myoſoris*, *Auricula muris*, and of the Herbariſts, *Euphraſia cærulea*, and *Auricula Muris cærulea*. This herb is nothing like to the former 3. kinds in operation and vertue; for the water diſtilled of it is uſed for the dimneſs and bleerednes of the eyes. The antient Phyſitians have onely uſed it for the bad eyes. But our common Mouſe-eare is onely uſed in potions for wounds and ruptures, and ſuch like compoſitions; notwithſtanding that it hath his proper uſe of it ſelf.

Mouſe of the Apples, *Mus Aplinus*, whereof the greaſe is uſed againſt the lameneſſe and extenuation of the joynts.

Mugwort, *Artemiſia*, it is an herb ſufficiently known, hot and dry in the ſecond degree.

Mulbery tree, *Morea*, *Sycaminus* in Greek, in Latine *Morus*, and *Arbor ſapiens*: the fruit is called *Morum*, or Mulberrie.

Mummie, *Mumia*: there are two kinds of it, the one is digged out of the graves in Arabia and Syria, of thoſe that are Baſſamed, and is brought unto us: it is called *Piſſaſphaltus factitius* of the Arabians *Mumia*, at the Apothecaries *Mumia*,

Mumia Seripio calleth it *Mumia ſepulchrorum*, to diſtinguiſh it from this kind following, the Phyſitians call it Mumia Arabum, for a difference from Mumia Græcorum. The ſecond kind is onely an equal mixture of the Jewes lime, and *Bitumen* in Greek *Piſſaſphaltum*, in Latine *Picibitumen*, and of the Simpliciſts *Ceramontana*, *Cera terreſtis*, *Piſſaſphaltum nativum*, and Mumia nativa; but as often as Mummie is named in this preſent work, is not the Jewes lime meant, but the Mummie of the Arabians, to wit *Mumia ſepulchrorum*, which is found at all Apothecaries under the name of Mumia.

Muſcadine, *Vinum Apianum*, *Vinum Muſcatulum*, *Vinum Muſcatellinum*, and *Muſcatellum*.

Muske Muſhus, Moſchus, Muſchus, it is the dryed matter of the impoſtume of a certain beaſt which is called of the Barbarians Gazella,

Muſt, in Greek Gleucos, and Deucos, in Latine Muſtum, and Vinum Muſteum, the wine firſt preſt out of the grape is called Columela, *Muſtum Lixivium*, of Plinie Potropion. This wine was wont to be incloſed in Tuns, and they well hooped, to to the end it ſhould not clarifie, and that it might continue ſweet. It is called of ſome Vinum coactum; it is called of the Grecians Aigleuces, that is, *ſemper muſtum*. It is often uſed for Phyſick, but very ſeldome alone.

Muſtard, in Greek and in Latine Sinapi, Napi, and Sinapis. There are two kinds thereof, the wilde and the tame Muſtard. They are both of them hot and dry in the fourth degree; the tame kind is more commended for Phyſick then the wilde.

Muſtard ſeed the white, or Rocket, in Greek Euſomius, or Euſomum, in Latine Eruca; there are four kinds of it, the firſt kind is ſowen in gardens, and is known every where by the name of Rocket, or white Muſtard ſeed; this is the true Eruca and Euſomum of the ancients. The ſecond kind groweth of it ſelf in the fields, not unlike the former, but ſomewhat leſſe, it is called of the Herbariſts Eruca ſylveſtris, with us, wilde rock. The other two kinds, to wit, the third, and fourth, do grow about the water ſide and have much bigger leaves then the former, whereof many leaves lye downe flat on the ground about the ſtalke; the one beareth white the other yellow flowers, they are called of the Herbariſts *Eruca aquatica*, *Eruca marina*, in Engliſh water rocket.

Mynts crumpled, *Menta criſpa*, *Mentha ſativa* or Mintha, it is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree; the Greeks do call it Hedyoſmum.

N

NArciſſus in Greek and Latine *Narciſſus*. There are there kinds of it, the firſt is ſuffciently known by the name of Narciſſus, the Herbariſts call it *Rhodionarciſſus*, and *Narciſſus Roſeus*, this is the true Narciſſus. The ſecond kind is very like the former, but it is ſomewhat bigger in every reſpect, it is called of Theophraſtus Leucoium, that is, *vila alba*, and this kind is moſt of all uſed at the Apothecaries. The third kind is like the firſt in leaſe and roote, but a little bigger, and the flower is yellow, the Herbariſts call it Narciſſus Autumnalis but this is onely to be underſtood of the flower that groweth in harveſt without any leaves. The roote of it is called *Colchicum*, and *Ephemerum*; as hath been ſaid of the Hermodactiles.

Nep, at the Apothecaries Menta felina, Cataria, it is uſed of divers men for Calamintha montana, becauſe it hath the ſame vertues, ſo that it may be done without any harm.

Nettles, that do burn, or burning nettles, Urtica pungens, Uertica urens.

Nettles, in Greek *Acaliphe*, *Acalephe*, *Cnida*, in Latine Urtica, there are three kinds of them, firſt, the great and common burning nettle which is unknown to all men, this is called Urtica mas, or Urtica major. The ſecond kind groweth not with us, but muſt be ſowen in gardens, this bringeth her ſeed in heads like to Flax, and indeed it is not unlike to Linſeed, but that it is ſomewhat leſſer and whiter. This Nettle is called of Dioſcorides and Pline, *Urtica ſylveſtris*, and of the Herbariſts Urtica Romana, Urtica Italia, *Urtica fœmina*. The ſeed of this Nettle is more fit for Phyſick then the former, and it is alſo more forcible. It is called the Italian, Roniſh, or garden Nettle, Urtica hortulana; notwithſtanding that heretofore times it hath been taken for the wild nettle. The third kind is the leſſer and hotter of all, Plinie calleth it Canin, and the Herbariſts Urtica minor. The ſeeds of all kinds of nettles are hot in the

the end of the first, and dry in the second degree; the roots and leaves do warm, resolve, and discusse.

Nettles, stinking or dead nettles, *Urtica mortua, urtica mortua, urtica labeo, Anonium*, there be commonly four kinds of it, they are called in Greek of *Dioscorides Galiopsis*, and of *Pliny, Galeopsis, Galeobdolon*, or *Galephos*; in Latine *Urtica labeo, urtica fœtida*, in English stinking nettles. The second kind is bigger and hath yellowish flowers, it is called of the Herbarists *Archangelica*; and *archangelica lutea*, or *Anonium luteum*, it is also a kind of *Lamium*, (although *Pliny* do ascribe but one kind of *Lamium*) and is called the yellow archangel. The third kind hath white flowers, the leaves are altogether like to the nettle leaves, wherefore they are also called dead nettles; it is called of *Pliny* and of the Herbarists *Lamium album*, to distinguish it from the former, *Archangelica alba, urtica mortua, urtica iners, urtica lactea*, and *Anonium album*. The latter Chirurgions do call it *Herba panaritii*; this is the right *Lamium Plinii*, and *urtica mortua*, dead Nettles, or white Archangel. The fourth kind is a pretty herb, not unlike to the nettle, with fair purple flowers, with a strong smell like to baulm; it groweth in thickets and woods, it is called of *Pliny urtica Herculanea*, or *urtica Herculea, urtica odorata*, also *urtica scarlata*, and that by reason of her strong and pleasant smell, they are also called wood nettles, *urtica sylvatica*. Here is to be noted, that when dead nettles are any where prescribed, that you must take the white Archangel *urtica lactea*.

O.

OAk, *Quercus, Arbor Jovis.*

Oates, in Greek and Latine *Bromus*, and *Avena.*

Oleander, in Greek *Rhododendron, Nerium, Rhododaphne*; the Herbarists do call it in Latine *Laurus rosea, rosea arbor, Rosago, Oleander*, and *Oleandrum*. It is a tree with green leaves like to the Bay tree, but the leaves are somewhat longer and lesser, not much unlike to the leaves of the Olive. It beareth a pleasant horsefleish coloured rose, and is planted in gardens. It is hot in the beginning of the third, and dry in the second degree.

Olive tree, *Olea*, and *Oliva*. There are two kinds of it, the tame, and the wild Olive, the tame is named as before: the wild is called in Greek and Latine *Agrielea, Corinus*, and *olea sylvestris*: the tame Olive is called of *Virgil Palladia arbor*.

Onion, in Greek and Latine *Crommyum, Cepa, Cepe*, and *Cepe inflectinabiliter*. There are many kinds of it, to wit, long, round, great, and small Onions, red, brown, and yellow: the long ones are much stronger then the round, and the yellow stronger then the white. *Pliny* divideth them into two kinds, the one doth he call *Cepa condimentaria*, and hath no head at all, but the tops are only used, and it is called *Cepa pallinaca*. The other kind is called *Cepa capitata*. Amongst all Onions, are greatest accounted the best for meat, they that are flat like Turneps, they are called *Cepa Africana*. Next after them are the Spanish onions, but they are lesse, longer, and sharper, yet bigger then any onions in this Countrey. There are also two kinds of them, the one is red, the other white, but whensoever thou wilt use onion seeds in any composition, then shalt thou take the seeds of our onions, for that is much more fit for Physick, but the Spanish onions are better for meat.

Orage, in Greek *Atraphaxis*, and *Chrysolachanum*, in Latine *Atriplex, Atriplexum*, and *olus Aureum*, it is a common potherb cold in the first, and moyst in the second degree.

Orage tree, *Narantia malus.*

Orange of *Athenæus*, in Greek *Chryseon*, of *Nicander Nerantzion*; of *Virgil Aureum malum*, and of the common people *Malum Nerantium, pomum Arangiæ, Adantium*, and *Aurantium.*

Organe, grosse or course Marjoram, in Greek and Latine *Origanus*, or *Origanum, Comila*; and *Cumila gallica*, of *Apuleius*. There are three kinds of it, the first is called in Spanish *Dosten*, in Latine and Greek *Origanus Heracleotica*, or *Origanum Heracleoticum*; of *Mesues Origanum Persicum*, and of the Simplicists *Origanum Hispanicum*, because it is brought unto us out of Spain: but we needed not to fetch it in Spain, if we did but look about us here in Germany, we should find this noble herb *Dosten* in a sufficient quantity here: but our nature and disposition is such, that we must alwayes have some new-fangle, and to forsake that which is present with us. This course Marjoram, or *Dosten* hath small and smooth leaves like to the common course Marjoram, the flowers are

also very like it, but it groweth somewhat higher, it hath a pleasant aromatical smell, nothing like to the common course Marjoram, it groweth in great abundance neer the *Rhene* on the hils. The second kind of course Marjoram is brought unto us out of *Candie*, and it hath white leaves like the Spanish *Dosten*, it is like to the wild Marjoram, both by the stalk, flour, and also by the hairinesse, so that there is no other difference between the Spanish *Dosten* and our wild Marjoram, but that the *Dosten* of Candy is somewhat subtiler in sight, and something more pleasant in smell then the other, which must be ascribed to the nature of the Country, because that the *Dosten* groweth there in the fields, and ours must be planted and sowen in Gardens for we do find the same by other plants that do also grow in fields with us, that they which grow abroad are much stronger then they which are set in gardens, although they be greater and more pleasant to sight. This kind of course Marjoram or Organe is called of *Dioscorides* and others in Greek and Latine *Onitis*, *Origanus onitis*, and of the Herbarists *Majorana sylvestris*, *Sampsychus sylvestris*, *Origanum asininum*, *Origanum*, and at the Apothecaries *Origanum creticum*. They that use our wild Marjoram when that of Candy cannot be had, erre not at all, for it is one and the same herb. The third kind groweth also in Candy, and is set in gardens with us; it hath commonly five or six stalks growing out of one root, the leaves are very like to the wild Thyme, and the flowers like Pennyroyal, it smelleth also very well, it is called in Greek *Tragoriganus*, in Latine *Tragoriganum*, and *Origanum hircinum*. The fourth kind is our common Marjoram, sufficiently known by that name, it is called in Greek *Agrioriganus*, in Latine *Origanum sylvestre*, and of the Herbarists *Origanum panaceum*. Note, that if you find course Marjoram in any composition, then is the Spanish *Dosten* to be taken for it, which is called *Origanum Heracleoticum*.

Otter, in Greek *Enydris*, in Latine *Lutra*.

Ox, *Bos*.

Oxymel, is a syrup made with Vinegar and Hony.

Oyl of Spikenard, *Oleum Spicanardi*, and *Oleum Nardinum*.

Oyster, in Greek and Latine *Ostreum*, of *Plinie*, *Ostrea*, it is a kind of shell fish.

P

Palma Christi, in Greek *Cici*, *crotion*, *sesili cyprion*, *pentadactylon*; and of *Erodotus*, *cilicyprion*; in Latine of *Plinie*, *Ricinus*, *Trixis*, and *Sesamum agreste*; of the Herbarists *Palma Christi*, and *Manus Christi*, of the Apothecaries *Cataputia major*. The Arabians do call it *Cherua*, *Cruca*; it is a plant common almost in every garden. The seed whereof is called *grana regium*, it is hot and dry in the second or third degree.

Panick, in Greek *Elymus*, and *Melinum*, in Latine *Panicum*, and *Panigo*.

Parchment, *Membrana*, and *charta pergamena*.

Parsnep, in Greek *Staphylinus*, in Latine *Pastinaca*, of the Simplicists *Carotis*, and *Carota*. There are four especial kinds of it, the first hath yellow roots, and they are called yellow Carrots; of the Herbarists *Staphylinus luteus*, *Carotis lutea*, and *pastinaca lutea*, this is the most common sort of all the tame kinds, and it is the true *pastinaca sativa*, but I trouble not my self with them that seek to place another kind instead of it, thereby to cover their grosse errours, if they did look on the true signes that *Dioscorides* describeth unto it, they would soon be led from that their blindnesse, although they were but children in judgment. The second kind of these roots is very like to the former, but that it is altogether white, and is called of the Herbarists *Carotus alba*, *staphylinus albus*, *pastinaca alba*; in English a Parsnep. The third kind are the garden Parsneps, these are most like to the two former in leaf, root, and flower. But the root is of a dark red colour, which yeeldeth also a juice of a dark red colour, but in taste it is altogether like the foresaid. This is the true *Pastinaca nigra* of *Theophrastus*, of the Herbarists, *Staphylinus ruber*, *Pastinaca rubra*, *Carotis rubra*, we call them red Carots. These three kinds are comprehended under the name of *Pastinaca sativa* of *Dioscorides*; yet they that would have the tame Parsnep with the broad leafe to bee a kinde of stone Parsley, because it is sweet in taste, I could wish they would bethink themselves otherwise, for they two are as like, as the Firre tree is to the Box tree. This is the true *Elaphoboscum Dioscoridis*, as every one must confesse that readeth the

the description of it: *Dioscorides* doth also call it *Ophioscorodon*, *Cervicedes*, and *Pabularia herba*. The Herbarists do call it *Pastinaca sativa*, but especially the wild kind that groweth of it self in hilly meadowes, and is most like to the tame kind, differing onely in the place where they grow: also the wild kind is fit for Physick, although they be both used for meat. The fourth kind is the wild Parsnep, and it groweth every where in the Vineyards and corn fields, it is much like to the tame or garden Parsnep, the root is whiter, and sharper in taste then of the other, the flowers are white, and of the same kind yellow: they that know the wild Parsnep may also know the tame kind very well, and may soon perceive the errours of others: it is called wild yellow Carrot, or Parsnep. This is that Parsnep that all authors will have used in Physick; the Herbarists do call it *Pastinaca hortica*: *Staphilinus sativus*, *Carotus sylvestris*: the Apothecaries do call it *Baucia*; others (but unjustly) *Daucus*, and would make *Baucia* and *Daucus* to be one and the same.

Partridge, *Perdix*.

Pauls Betonie, *Betonica Pauli*, *Veronica*, it is a common herb and daily used.

Peach tree, *Persicus*.

Pear tree, *Pyrus*.

Pearls, in Greek *Margarites*, *Cinædus*, of *Theophrastus*, and *Lucianus*, *Erythraus lapis*, of *Arrianus*, *lapis Indicus*; of *Strabus*, *Erythraus lapillus*; of *Virgil*, *Bacca* and *Bacca conchea*; of *Pliny*, *Unio*; of *Cicero*, *Margarita*, and of Saint *Jerom*, *Granum maris rubri*, of others *Perla*: it is a gemme or precious stone well known unto all men.

Peason, *Pisum*: there are divers kinds of them, but the very best are the Hastings.

Peacock, *Pavo* and *Pavus* in Latine, of *Ovidius*, *Junonia avis*.

Pellitory of Spain, in Greek and Latine *Pyrethrum*, *Pyritis*, *Pyreton*, and *Pes Alexandrinus*: it is hot and dry in the third degree.

Pellitory of the wall, in Greek *Helxine*, *Eusine*, *Elitis*, *Chanocersea*, *Amelxine*, *Amorgine*, *Sucobathos*, *Psychnocos*, *Melampelos*, *Anatetumenon*, *Polygonymon*, *Clibodion*, *Clybetis*, and *Clybatis*; in Latine *Perdicium*, *Urceolaris*, *Vitriola*, of *Celsus*, *herba Muraria*, *Muralium*, *Vineago*, *herba Urceolaris*, *herba Vitriaria*; and of *Avicenna*, *herba Vitri*; of *Apuleius*, *Herba Pedicularis*; of the Herbarists *Helxine muraria* and *Parietaria*. There are two kinds of it, to wit, the common Parietary, which is the largest, and groweth every where in old walls, and it is called of the Herbarists for a distinction *Parietaria major*. The second kind is somewhat lesse, and groweth not upright like the former, but creepeth onely along the walls, and hath red and tender stalks, like to Purslain, the leaves are like unto Purslain, but thin, soft, and limber. This kind groweth plentifully at *Pontemoy*, on the City walls, and in many other places of *France*: also at *Coblence* neer the *Rhine*: It is most like unto the great Pellitory in vertues and operation, they have also an absterstive and astringent quality; they are cold and moyst.

Pennyroyal, in Greek and Latine *Glechon*, *Blechon*, *Apoleium*, *Abvolium*, and *Pulegium*, it is hot and dry in the third degree.

Pepper, in Greek *Peperi*, and in Latine *Piper*; There are three kinds of it, white, black, and long Pepper, sufficiently known to every body: the white Pepper is gathered before it be through ripe, it is much stronger and forcible then the black, it is called *Piper album*. The black is called *Piper nigrum*. The long Pepper is a thing of it self, and is called *Piper longum*.

Perwinkle, in Greek *Clematis*, *Clematis Daphnoides*, *Myrsinoides*, *Polygonoides*, *Daphnoides*, and of *Pliny*, *Camædaphne*; in Latine *Vinca pervinca*, *Unicordia*, *Palma Virginea*, *Corona Virginea*, *Pervinca*, and *Viola mortuorum*. It is a common herb, and it groweth in shadowy places. There is yet another kind of it, which is set in gardens, it hath a dark blew flower, and it is a little bigger in every respect then the common sort is. It groweth in divers places of *France* of it self, they are both of them hot and dry in the third degree.

Petroleum, in Greek *Naphta*, and of *Plutarchus*, *Naphtas*; of *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, *Petraleon*; of *Suidas*, *Pharmacon*; in Latine *Bitumen liquidum*, *Bituminis Colamentum*; at the Apothecaries *Petroleum*, and *Oleum Petræ*. There are two kinds of it, the first is the white, which is brought unto us from *Naples*, and out of *Italy*: of the black kind we have sufficient store in Germany in the Land of *Bitsche*, half a mile from *Werde*, in the Mountains, between *Hapenbrn* and *Weyssenburch*, near the Town *Lamperts loch*: there is a spring in a valley, that in *April* and *May* yeeldeth as much of this Oyl, that the men in that place may gather as much of it as will serve them all the Winter,

to burn in their Lamps, and to grease their Carts with it, of which oyle the Quacksalvers & other such like impostors do gather and fill great bottles, and then sell it for much strange Coyneries, as if they had fetched it far, and had hazarded their lives greatly for to get it, which is little observed of divers Physicians, that will rather employ and apply themselves to the making of Prognostications, in the speculations of Astronomy, and in the presaging divers strange matters to come.

Phlegme, Slime, a waterish moysture, in Greek and Latine *Phlegma*, some do call it *Pituita*.

Pibble stone or flint, in Greek *Chalix*, and in Latine *Silex*.

Pigeon, in Greek *Peristera* and *Peristeros*, in Latine *Columba*, and of *Catullus Columbus*.

Pilewort, look Figwort in *F*.

Pils, in Greek *Catapotium*, of *Hippocrates*, *Gongylium* and *Gongylidium*, of the common Physicians *Pillula* and *Pilula*.

Pimpernel the great, *Petroselinum* and *Apium bastarda*: It is not our common Parsley, which the ancients do call *Apium*, as shall be shewed in the description of Smallage, but our great Pimpernel is nought else but the true *Petroselinum*, which groweth commonly on stony rocks or hills, and also on walls. The first kind groweth in stony fields, but in Vineyards there groweth the bigger of the two, and it yeeldeth a yellowish juice, it hath leaves like to the great Parsley; it is called of the Herbarists *Pimpinella major*, *Tragoselinum majus*, and *Pimpinella Hircina major*, and in English great Pimpernel. The second kind is somewhat lesse, and groweth on grassie hils, it is called *Pimpinella*, *Pimpinella alba*, *Tragoselinum*, and *Pimpinella hircina*, without any other addition, that is the common Pimpernel. The third kind hath small jagged leaves almost like to the crumpled Parsley; it groweth willingly on stony hills, walls, and old trees; it hath a very sharp root, and is the least of all the other, it is called *Tragoselinum minus*, *Tragoselinum petræum*, *Pimpinella minor*, and *Pimpinella petræa*. Some authors will accompt these herbs amongst the *Dauces*, but they do abuse them greatly, for they are the right stone Parsley, and have the same operation with Parsley. The last kind is called the lesser Pimpernel. As often as either Parsley seed, root, or juice is mentioned in any

Q3

Composition, then in the great Pimpernel to be understood.

Pingles, in Greek *Strobali*, *Pityides*, *Nuclei pinei*, in Latine *Nuces pineæ*, and of *Hippocrates*, *Cacculi*.

Pistacies, in Greek and Latine *Pistacia* and *Pistacium*, of *Fuchsius*, *Lobelius*, of *Nicolaus Piso*, *Pistacium*, but the Apothecaries *Pistachium* and *Pistichoul*. It is a strange fruit like Hasel nuts, that grow in Syria. The tree that beareth these nuts is called *Pistacia* and *Pistacium*, and it is planted in gardens in *Italy*, *France* and *Germany*.

Pitch, *Pix*, there are two kinds of it, to wit, hard or stone pitch, and liquid pitch or tarre. The stone pitch is called *Pix navalis*, *Concha*, *Pix arida*. The soft pitch is called Tarre, in Latine and Greek *Pissa nigra*, *Pix liquida*, *Pix fluida*.

Plaister, in Greek *Emplastros*, in Latine *Emplastrum*.

Plantain, in Greek and Latine *Arnoglossus*, *Arnoglossa*, *Abaium*, *Sauleplumer*, *Probation*, *Thelsurion*, *Tarbitelaimpa*, of *Theophrastus*, *Ortyx*, of *Apuleius*, *Turbidadapium*, *Plantago* and *Olus Agnicula*. There are sixe kinds of Plantain, whereof the first is the common great Plantain, that groweth in all highwayes and fields, it is known sufficiently, and is called for a difference *Heptapleuron* and *Polypleuron*; in Latine *Plantago major*; of *Apuleius*, *Plantago lata*, and *Septinervia*; of the Herbarists, *Plantago rubea*, *Plantago latifolia*, and *Multinervia*. The second kind is called Sheeps tongue, *Pentapleuron*, *Quinquenervia*, *Plantago minor*, *Lingua Agni*, and *Lingua Ovina*, *Lingua Arietis*, and *Plantago media*. The third kind is called picked Plantain, or Hounds ribb; in Greek *Hippoleuron* and *Cynopleuron*; in Latine *Plantago acuta*, *Plantago lanceolata*, *Costa equina*, *Costa Canina*, and *Lanceola*: this kind groweth in meadowes, it is well known to every body. The fourth kind hath round leaves like the great Plantain, but they are somewhat lesse and more limber, and each leaf hath but three ribs, it groweth in Woods, and is called of the Herbarists *Plantago sylvatica*, *Plantago trinervia*, and *Plantago latifolia minor*. The fifth kind is planted in gardens for pleasure, the leaves are like unto the great Plantain, on the upper end of the stalk doth it get many little green leaves, they grow double like unto a Rose, wherefore it is also called Rose plantain, or *Plantago Rosea*. Otherwise they have the same operations and vertues with the other Plantain. The sixth kind groweth in Wells

and

waterish places, it hath long, broad, and sharp leaves at the end, it is called greater plantain, of the Herbarists *Plantago aquatica*, *Plantago palustris*, and *Cochlearia palustris*. But when thou findest Plantain in any composition, then shalt thou take the first kinde, or the great Plantain.

Plane tree; it is not the tree which we call *Opulus*, but *Platanus*, it is a tree that groweth in Italy.

Plume allume, in Greek and Latine *Amiantus*, *Bostrychites*, *lapis vivus*, *lapis saxatile*, and at the Apothecaries *Alumen plumosum*, which the common Physicians and Apothecaries do falsly use for *Alumen scissum*, which hath no likelihood with any kinde of Allom: I will omit the vertues and operations which it should have equal with Allom, for they are as like one to another, as an apple is like an oyster.

Polipody, in Greek and Latine *Polypodium*, *Filicula*, of *Cato*, *Felicula*: The root of it is onely used; and when you finde Polipody with addition, then is the root only to be taken.

Pomegranate tree, in Greek *Rhoa*, *Rhoa* and *Sida*, in Latine *Malus punica*, and of the common Physitians *Malus granata*. Pomegranates, *Rhoa*, *Sida*, in Greek and in Latine *Mala punica*, at the Apothecaries *Mala granata* and *granatum*.

Pompion, in greek *Pepon*, in Latine *Pepo*, There are many kindes of it, first the common Pompeon, known to every body; secondly, the sugar Melons, *Pepo saccharinus*, *Pepo moschatellinus*, and *Pepo Turcicus*.

Poplar tree, in Greek *Leuce*, and in Latine *Populus*.

Poppy, *Papaver sativum*. There are two kindes of it, to wit, the white and the black Poppy. the white is called of *Dioscorides*, *Theophrastus*, and *Papaver sativum*, or *Hortense*: and at the Apothecaries *Papaver album*. The black which is also placed amongst the tame kindes, is called *Papaver nigrum*, *Erraticum* and *Papaver Rhoeas*, and at the Apothecaries *Papaver nigrum*. of *Hesychius* is the white Poppy called *Cynocephalion*. The top of head is called in Greek *Codeia*, in Latine *Caput Papaveris*: the leaf of it is called of *Theophrastus*, *Scoliastes*, *Plateagonion*. Note that whersoever Poppy is named alone, to take the white.

Privet or Primprint, in Greek and Latine *Ligustrum*; *Avicenna* and *Serapio* do call it *Alcanna*, *Alcanna Alcanna*, *Alkanna* and *Alcanna*: But the Druggists and Apothecaries do call the berries of the red Ox-tongue *Alcanna*. *Virgil* doth call the flowers of Privet *Alba Ligustra*: and *Columella* doth call the fruit of it *Nigra Ligustra*. This plant is very common in all Europe. The leaves, flowers, and berries are in use, and they have an astringent and drying quality.

Purslaine, in greek *Andrachne*, in Latine *Portulaca*, and *Porcellana*: it is cold in the third and moist in the second degree.

Pineapple, in Greek and Latine *Strobilus* and *Conus*.

Piony, in greek and latine *Paeonia*, *Peristerebum*, *Glycysidae*, of *Apuleius Glycysis*, and *Paeonium*, *Orobolinna*, *Orobos*, *Hemagogum*, *Rosedes*, *Menogenium*, *Menisum*, *Pantherotaton*, *Aglaophotin*, and of *Ælianus*, *Aglaophotis terrestris*, *Cynocrastus*, *Daphnis Idaea*, *Theodanium*, *Selenium*, *Selenogonum*, of *Theophrastus*, *Dichomenium*, of *Apuleius Glaucis*, *Rosa Fatuina*, of *Dioscorides Herba Casta*, and of *Josephus Historicus*, *Baaras*. *Dioscorides* doth also call it *Phtisis*, and *Averroes Rosa Asinorum*. The Herbarists do call it *Rosa benedicta*, *Rosa sancta*, *Rosa lunaris*, or *Lunaria*, *Rosa regia*, and *Rosa basilica*. There are three kindes of it, which are vsd planted in gardens: of the first kind, to wit, of the female there be two sorts, the one with fair dark red flowers, and many knottie roots about the thicknesse of ones thumb, and some lesse, much like to Acorns: this is known every where. This kind is called of *Dioscorides*, *Paonia foemina*, and *Daphnis Idaea*. The other kinde is like to the former, but the leaves are something lesse, and jagged, not so deep, and of a light green colour, and paler then the other: the roots are also longer and paler then the other, almost like to the male Piony, so that it seemeth to be a mixture between both male and female. *Dioscorides* maketh no mention of it, but *Pliny* calleth it *Paonia masculo*, and the Herbarists *Paonia foemina altera*, and *Paonia praecox*. The third kinde is like to the first, with leaves and roots, the flowers are red as blood, fair, great and double, it is called *Paonia multiplex*. The 4th kind hath leaves like to the Walnut tree, the flowers are like to the former in colour, but somethings lesse, the root is white, thick, long, & divided into two, it smelleth very strong

and pleasant. This is the true male Piony: *Paonia masculo*, of the Ancient Writers. *Ætius* and others do call it *Ephialtia* and *Ephialtinum*, of the Herbatiste *Paonia alba*, and *Herba Divi Valentin*, we call it the white Piony: This kinde is alwaies to be used, or else the compounded kind before named in the stead thereof.

Q.

Quick lime, in Greek *Conia* and *Asbestos*, in Latine *Calx viva*, *Pliny* calleth it *Ferrum Cementorum*.

Quicksilver, it is called in Greek and Latine *Hydraggyron*, *Argentum aqueum*, and *Argentum vivum*, of the Alchymists *Mercurius*: it is a mineral known to every body. There are two kindes of it, the one is found in the mines, which is called *Hydraggyron nativum*: the second kinde is made of Sinople, and it is called *Argentum vivum*, or *Hydraggyron factitium*. The Alchymists do add three other kinds unto the former, the one made of Lead, which they do call *Mercurius Saturni*: the other made of Tinne, which they do call *Mercurius Jovis*, or *Fel Draconis*: the third kinde is made of gold, which they call *Mercurius solis*, or *Viscum solis*: But the two first are onely used in physick, and the three last kindes, to wit, of Tinne, Lead, and gold, we do commit and commend to the Alchymists.

Quinces, in greek and Latine *Cydonea*, and of *Hesychius*. *Lasioma lum*, of *Nicander*, *Chrioeum*, of *Pliny Malum lanatum*, of *Virgil Malum canum*, of others *Cotoneum*, *Melum Coroneum*, *malum Cydonium*, and at the Apothecaries *Cydonium* and *Cotoneum*. There are three kindes of them the lesser yellow Quinces that are so odoriferous, are most common and most fit Physick. The other kinde is bigger and longer like a pear, and in colour pale yellow, much slighter both in taste and smell than the former: this kinde is called in greek and Latine, *Struthium* and *Struthiomelum*, the Simplicistes do call it *Cydonium majus*, *Cotoneum malum*, and *Pyrum Cydonium*. The third kinde is the middle sort: both the former are grafted from a tree on a stalk of another, this kinde is called of *Pliny malum milianum*, and of the Simplists *Cydoneum*, or *Cotoneum nothum*, with us the bastard Quince. The first and least are the very best, then the bastard Quinces, and the worst are the greatest.

R

Radish, in Greek and Latine *Raphanus*, or *Raphadis*, *Ranix* and *Radicula*.

Ragwort, Dogs stones, Gandergrasse, in greek *Satyrion*, of *Apuleius Panion*, in Latine *Satyrium*, of *Mesues*, *Testiculus Vulpis*, and of *Apuleius*, *Testiculus Leporinus*. There are two kindes of it known to *Dioscorides*, but we have many kindes with us which we do know, amongst which *Orchis* and *Orchis Serapias* are placed. *Theophrastus*, *Pliny* and *Apuleius* have comprehended them under the name of *Satyrium*, and confounded them together. The first and true *Satyrion* is called of *Dioscorides* in Greek *Satyrion triphyllon*, or *Satyrium trifolium*. The second kinde is called red Ragwort, of *Dioscorides* in Greek *Satyrion Erithronicon*, *Satyrium Erithraicum*, and *Satyrion Erythron*, of *Apuleius*, *Entaticum*, *Priacum*, and *Satyriscus*: in Latine *Molorticulum Veneris*, *Melium aquaticum*, *Testiculus Satyri*, and *Arrectorium*. The third kinde is called *Satyrium regium*, or *Satyrium Basilicum*, of the Herbarists *Manus Christi*, *Palma Christi*, and *Palma Veneris*, the Arabians do call it *Batheiden* and *Buzziden*, of *Avicenna*, *Digitus crinitus*, *Satyrium Basilicum majus mas*. The fourth kinde is like to the former, but the leaves are full of spots, it is called of the Herbarists *Satyrium Basilicum majus fœmina*, and *Lacryma Mariæ*. The fifth kinde hath small leaves like to Saffron, it beareth a fair purple flower with a pleasant smell: the roots are also like the two other small hands. The Herbarists do call it *Satyrium Basilicum*, or *regium minus*, *Satyrium odoratum*, *Amaranthus veneris*, *Palma Christi minor*, *Palmula Christi*, or *Palmula Veneris*. The sixth kinde hath leaves like to the white Lilly, but narrower and lesser, it hath two kinds of flowers, the one is of a bad dark red colour, like to that of Hartwort, the other as white as Snow. This kinde hath two roots, of the bigness of an Olive, and very sweet in taste: *Dioscorides* calleth it in Greek *Orchis* and *Cynosorchis*, in Latine *Testiculus*, and *Testiculus canis*: the Herbarists

Herbariſts do call it *Orchis major mas.* The ſeventh kinde is ſomewhat like the firſt, but that the leaves be leſſe, it beareth a flower of a Cheſtnut colour, it is called of the Herbariſts *Orchis mas major*. The eight kind hath ſoft leaves, not unlike the Lilly leaves, but ſomewhat leſſe; the flowers are partly of a dark red colour, and partly incarnation, with many white ſtrakes, the roots are like Cocks ſtones, it is called of the Herbariſts *Orchis fœmina major*. The ninth kind is much leſſe then the former, but very like the ſame in flowers, leaves, and roots, it is called of the Herbariſts *Orchis fœmina minor*. Some do call it *Orchis odorata* or *Teſticulus odoratus*, it growes on dry hils. The tenth kinde hath leſſer leaves than the white Lillies, the flowers are purple, it hath three roots, much leſſe than Olives, whereof two are of one bigneſſe, and the third leſſe and longer, ſo that theſe three are like the members of a man. It it is called in Greek of *Dioſcorides Orchis ſerapias*, of *Ægyneta Triorchis*, of *Apuleius Serapion*. Yet are three kindes more, whereof we have ſpoken elſewhere. Otherwiſe there is another kinde of this here, which is placed with the *Cynoſorchis*, or *Teſticulus canis*, which here for brevities ſake we do omit. The Apothecaries do uſe all the former kindes of Ragwort for *Satyrium*, without any difference: and although there be but a ſmall difference between all theſe kinds in operation, yet it were better onely to uſe that which hath three leaves like Lillies for the true *Satyrium*, for it is the *Satyrium* of the ancient Phyſitians, to the end no error be committed. All theſe before named herbs and roots are hot and moyſt, and have an attractive vertue.

Raiſons, in Greek *Aſtaphides*, and *Staphides*, in Latine *Uva paſſa*, at the Apothecaries *Paſſula*. There are three kindes of them in uſe: the firſt kinde is the beſt, and are called *Uva damaſcena*, and *Uva zibeba*, at the Apothecaries *Zibeba*, and *Paſſula damaſcena*. The ſecond kind is ſomewhat leſſe, they are brought from Cyprus, Spain, and Provence, they are the beſt in vertue and operation, and alſo in taſte, and are called of the Phyſitians *Uva paſſa majores*, *Uva maſſiliotica*, at the Apothecaries, *Paſſula majores*. The third kinde are the Currans, and are called in Greek *Apyrine*, in Latine *Uva paſſa Corinthiaca*, *Paſſula Ciliciæ*, *Paſſula Chemeſina*, that is, *Paſſulæ ſine nucleis*, and at the Apothecaries *Paſſulæ minores*: but when the we finde in any compoſition *Paſſulæ*, then are theſe to be taken. The Arabian Phyſitians call them *Reſmes* and *Cheſmis*, that is Raiſons without ſtones.

Ram, in Greek *Cribs*, in Latine *Aries*.

Rapes, in Greek *Gongylis*, *Gongylis*, in Latine *Rapa*, *Rapum*, and *Golſonium* is called in Greek *Baphys*, and *Rapys*. Theſe Rapes or Turneps are of four kindes, for ſome are ſound, ſome long, ſome white, ſome ſmall, ſome great, but we need not make any long rehearſal of them, ſeeing they have all one kinde of operation. There are certain Turneps ſown in Lottering, and in the upper Burgundy, to the end to make oyl of their ſeeds, but this kinde of Turneps is wilde, and altogether unfit for meat, but the ſeed is more fit for Phyſick than that of the tame Rapes. This kinde is called in Greek *Gongylis agria*, and in Latine *Rapum ſylveſtre*.

Rapontica, in Greek and Latine *Centaurium magnum*, *Maro*, *Maronia*, and of *Apuleius Maronium*, *Plectronia*, *Peleithronia*, *Chironia* and of the Magicians *Sanguis Herculis*, *Limneſtis*, *Neſſium*, *Unefera*: the Herbariſts do call it *Pſeudoraponticum*, at the Apothecaries it is unto this day falſely called *Rhaponticum*, and *Rhapontica*, becauſe their unskilful Phyſitians do take it to be the ſame, where nevertheleſſe the true *Rhaponticum* may be had ſufficiently. But theſe blinde bayards have ſo dazelled their eyes with gazing at the ſtars, that they are blinde though they ſeem to ſee, and they do draw and hold other men into their errors. The true Rapontica is a root outwardly dark, gray, and leſſe then the common Rapontica, and ſpungeous: alſo being broken, it hath many white veins much like to Rubarb, with an aſtringent taſte, it is brought to us from *Pontus*. This is in uſe amongſt curious and careful Phyſitians. It is called with us pontiſh Rubarb, to diſtinguiſh it from the root of the great Centory, which we do commonly call *Rapontica*. It is called in Greek *Rha*, *Reon*, *Reum*, in Latine, *Raponicum*, *Raponica*, *Rheum ponticum*, *Rheon ponticum*, of *Pliny Rhacoma* or *Rhecoma*, of *Celſus Radix pontica*.

Rhapontium, it is called of the Herbariſts *Rapuntium*, *Rapontium*, *Rapunculum*, *Raponticum*, *Raponculus*, and *Pes locuſtæ*, it

is a kinde of wilde Rapes, of which there is yet another kinde, it groweth commonly in shadowy woods, it hath round leaves below, and beareth a brown purple and hairy flower, and a thick root, it is very sweet in taste as the former also is, they are both used in sallads and in meats. The second kinde is called the wilde *Rapuntium*, the Herbarists do call it *Rapontium*, *Rapunculus sylvaticus* and *Rapunticum Alopecorum*.

Raspes, at the Apothecaries *Ribes*, it is a a kinde of *Ceanothus Theophrasti*, which we do call Gooseberies, and they are like in every respect, but that the Raspes hath no thorns, and they may be used in stead of the Gooseberies. The Raspes are cold and dry in the second degree.

Raven, in Greek *Corax*, in Latine *Corvus*.

Red Arsenick or Orpiment, *Sandaraca Creatorum*, and at the Apothecaries *Auripigmentum rubrum*.

Red lead, in Greek *Sandix* and *Syricum*, in Latine *Minium secundarium*, of *Vitruvius Sandaracha*, at the Apothecaries *Minium*, of *Dioscorides* and *Pliny* also *Minium*. It is our Sinople *Cinnabaris Metallica*, but red lead is made of lead, which is burned or calcined until it be red. This is used most commonly in salves and plaisters, and especially in the *unguentum Syricum Mesuis*, which the unskilful sort do call *unguentum Sericinum*, and they do suppose that *Syricum* should be *Sericum*, and so in stead of red Lead they put silk into salve.

Red Poppy, Corn Roses, in Greek *Mecon Rhœas*, and *Oxygonum*, in Latine *Papaver erraticum*, of *Geza Papaver fluidum*, and of others *Papaveralis* and *Papaverina*, of the Herbarists *Papaver caducum*, *Papaver punicum*, *Papaver caninum*, *Papaver Rhœas*, *rosella*, and at the Apothecaries *Papaver rubrum*. There is another kind of it very like the former but much lesse; whereof each flower hath but four leaves, it groweth in the Rye and Wheat, and it is called the lesser red Poppy. The Herbarists do call it *Papaver erraticum minus*, *Papaveralis*, and *papaverina minor*, it hath also the same vertues with the former.

Reed, in Greek and Latine *Calamus*, *Arundo*, and *Harundo*, the Apothecaries call it *Canna*. *Pliny* in his sixteenth book, and 36. chapter, and in the 24. book and 11. chapter, accounteth 24. kindes of them: but we do acknowledge but six kindes of them, whereof the first is called *Nastus*, that is, hard and compact, and smooth between the joynts, whereof the arrowes were wont to be made, it is called *Sagittaria Arundo*, and *Calamus Sagittarius*. The second kinde is the female, whereof the Cornets tongues are made, and it is called of *Dioscorides Calamus fœmina*, and of *Pliny Calamus Ambitius*. The third kinde is called in Greek *Syringias*, in Latine *Calamus* and *Arundo fistularis*, and it is hollow from one end to the other: there are writing pennes made of it, and it is without knots, wherefore it is called *Harunde inodis*. The fourth kinde is also hollow and thick, it groweth in ponds and great Lakes, in Greek *Donax*, in Latine *Harundo Cypria*, *Calamus Chyrius*, *Harundo equestica*. The fifth kinde is thick and strong, it is used for hedges, it is called in Greek *Phragmites*, and of *Theophrastus Characias*, in Latine *Calamus vallaris*, and *valatorius*, *Harundo vallatoria*, *Harundo sepiaria*, and *sepicularis*. The sixt kinde is planted in gardens in divers places of France and Germany, it is fair, great and pleasant to sight, it is brought unto us from *India*, and therefore it is also called *Arundo Indica*. Some call it Spanish Canes or Reed, because it was first brought unto us from Spain.

Rice, in Latine and Greek *Oriza*, *Risum*, *Rizum*, of *Theophrastus Orizum*, at the Apothecaries *Oriza*: it is known to every body.

Rocket, look Mustard seed the white in M.

Roebuck, in Greek *Dors*, in Latine *Capreus*, of *Virgil Capreolus*.

Rose, in Greek *Rhodon*, of *Theocriti Scoliastes*, and *Homer Thronon*, in Latine, *Rosa*. There are many kindes of it, to wit, the tame Roses which are planted in gardens, are in number seven several kindes: of the wilde ones are four kindes, which is in all eleven kindes. The first kinde is of a dark blood red colour, and are common in all gardens, some are single, some double, and are called of *Pliny Rosa milesia*, of the Herbarists *Rosa purpurea* and *punicea*. The second kinde is of a red colour, it is called of *Pliny Rosa trachinea*, of the Herbarists *Rosa rubra*: at the Apothecaries and of the common people are they called *Rosa rubra*, and red Roses without any distinction, neither skils it greatly by reason they are all one in vertues and operations. The third kinde is in-

carnation Rose with a pleasant smell, and are called Provence Roses, of *Pliny* *Rosa Alexandrina*, of the Herbarists *Rosa provincialis*, *Rosa Persica*, *Rosa incarnata*, and at the Apotheraries *Rosa purpurea*: this kinde of Roses are laxative, and are used for the laxative sloupe of Roses. The fourth kind are the double white garden Roses, the commonest amongst all tame kindes, and are called *Rosa alba*. The fifth kind is also white, and hath been known with us but of late yeares, but they are somewhat lesser, and pleasanter to the sight, then the former white Roses are, many of them being double grow together upon one branch, but six of them are scarce so big as one of the tame ones, yet very pleasant in smell: some do call them white Musk Roses, another name as yet is not known. The sixt kinde of tame Roses is the yellow Rose, every where common and known, without any smell, and altogether unfit for Physick; the Herbarists do call it *Rosa minor rosa Aegyptia*, *rosa Alexandrina*, and *rosa Vulpini*. The seventh kinde are the pleasant Damask Roses, they are called of *Pliny* *Rosa coronalis*, of the Herbarists *Rosa moschata*, or *rosa muscata*, *Rosa Syriaca*, *rosa Damascena*, and *Rosa autumnalis maxima*. The first kinde of wilde Roses are called hedge Roses or wilde Roses, they are called in Greek *Cynorrhodon*, of *Hesychius* *Cynocentron*, of *Galen* *Cynosbaton*, in Latine *Canirubus*, and *Rosa canina*: some do call it *Eglenteria* and *Englentaia*. The second kind of wilde Roses are much lesse then the first, and are of a carnation colour like the former, but they are very fragrant, as well the Rose as the leaf of it, it groweth in hedges and on hills, and is called of the Herbarists *Rosa diva Maria*, *Spina diva Maria*, *Cynorrhodon*, *vinetula*, and *rosa cinamomea*. The third kinde of wilde Roses groweth here and there in tilled fields, and especially in fields of Oates neer the Rhene, it is the very least kind of all wilde Roses, but it hath bigger leaves, inwardly purple coloured, it is called of the Herbarists *Chamaerhodon*, *Rosa Arvensis*, and *Rosa avenaria*. This kinde of Roses is so odoriferous, that it seemeth to excel all tame kindes. The fourth kinde of wilde Roses is very like the former, they are also white Roses without any smel, they blow very late, to wit, in June, they grow on dry hils and fields, and are called white field Roses: the Herbarists do call them *Rosa* [illegible] it is most contemptible of all other kindes. Amongst all these kindes are the double and single red Roses the very best that may be used for Physick, and in like manner also the Oaten Roses, wherefore if one finde them without any addition in any ointment, then set the red or Oaten Roses to be understood.

Rosemary in Greek and Latine *Libanotis* [illegible] of *Apuleius* *Herba Salmonis*, and *Libanotis coronalis* of the Herbarists *Dendrolibanum*, *Rosmarinus*, and *Libanotis coronaria*, to distinguish it from the other kinde of *Libanotis*, which is called by them *Libanotis montana*. The Apothecaries call it *Rosmarinus*: it is a well known plant, and so common in the Provinces that as they make hedges of it to bear their olives withal, and here with us it groweth in gardens.

Rosin *Resina pinea*, and *resina*: but *Resina* is a common name for all Gums, but because that Rosin is daily in use, it is called *resina*: the other Gums are named with additions: wherefore wheresoever you finde Rosin in any composition, then shall you understand the *resina pinea*, and [illegible].

Rubarb, in Greek *Rhaon barbaricon*, and *Rhabarbarum*; *Rhaumbarbarum*, *Rhasbarbaricum*, *Remiscentiorum*, and *Radix Alexandrina*.

Ruby, there are six kindes of it, the first and most precious is the Carbuncle, which is clear, fiery, and perspicuous above all other gemmes, it is called in Greek *Pyrrhos*, and *Anthracites*, in Latine *Carbunculus*. The other kinde of Carbuncle is the Ruby, a well known precious stone, and it is called *Carbunculus*, *Anthracion*, in Greek *Anthax Anthrakion*, and *Pyropus*, and at the Apothecaries *Rubinus*: this is next the Carbuncle, and very much used. The third kinde is somewhat paler then the other former kindes, it is of a light red colour, it is called in high Dutch *Ballas*, in Greek *Asterios*, or *Asterios*, of *Augustin* in the 21. book *de civitate Dei*, *Asser*: of the Druggists *Balagius*, *Ballasius*, *Pallasius*, *Pallenae gemma*, *Ballenae gemma*, *Carbunculus candidus*, and *Spinalius*. The fifth kinde is of a yellowish red and light in colour, it is called in Greek and Latine *Lychnis*, *Lychnites*, *Carbunculus gilvus* and *Carbunculus pallidus*. The sixth kinde is called *Carbunculus alabandicus*, and *Lapis alabandicus*.

Amongst all these herbs are

Rue with *Dioscorides*, *Ruta sylvestris*, *Avicenna* and the Arabians do call it *Alharmel*, *Armel*, and *Harmel*. Some unskilful Physitians do take Hemlock for *Harmel*, or *Ruta silvestris*, and so do they follow their blinde leaders *Matthæus Sylvaticus*, and *Jacobus Manlius*, that have composed the *Antidotarium*, and have translated *Harmel* for *Cicuta*, and have expounded *Armel* to be the wilde Rue, all which is most false: for it is most true that *Armala* and *Harmala* of the Greeks, and *Alharmel*, *Alatruel*, *Armel*, and *harmel* of the Arabians is one and the same plant, to wit, wilde Rue, which *Galen* doth call *Peganon*; wherefore these fellowes do lye falsly, and shall not be able to make answer for it hereafter, that they do mix the seeds of Hemlock in the *pilulæ fœtidæ* and *aggregativæ* in stead of the seeds of wilde Rue, thereby not onely deceiving people but hurting and spoiling them, so that great heed ought to be taken in those places where these pils are prepared with the seed of Hemlock in stead of the seed of wilde Rue; which I could not passe at

present to shew and make known to the Readers, because venome is read and searched is to much error.

Saint Johns wort is called in Greek *Hypericon*, *Perforata* and *Fugadæmonium*, of the Herbarists, *Ruta Sancti*, *herba Solis*, it is a common and well known herbe, hot and dry by nature.

Saint Johns bread, in Greek *Xylocrata*, or *Xylocerata*, at the Apothecaries, and of *Arabs* the *Carrubæ*: Others do call it *pinsidion Pythagoræ*, it is the fruit of a tree, longish and sweet, and hath certain kernels within it.

Sal Armoniack, it is called *Sal Ammoniacus*, or *Sal Harmoniacus*, and at the Apothecaries *Sal Armoniacum*. This salt was wont to be digged out of the Sands in *Affrica*, and was thence brought unto us, which now adayes we want: But there is another Chymical Salt, made of pisse and other things, used in stead of the former, the which of many unskilful men is taken and used as well inwardly as outwardly for the right

Sal

Sal *Armoniack*; but wo to them that take it inwardly. But becauſe that we cannot get of the right *Sal Armoniack* any more, we may uſe in this place the ſtone Salt, or Salt of the mines, which is a kinde of the true *Sal Armoniack* and hath alſo the ſame vertue and operation. I would wiſh no man to uſe the common *Sal Armoniack* inwardly.

Salamander, in Greek *Molge*, in Latine *Salamandra*: it is a very venemous worm like to a great Evet, with black and yellow ſpots, it liveth commonly in the water, and poyſoneth the ſame.

Salt, *Sal*. There are four kindes of it: the common ſalt is called of *Cato Sal popularis*. The ſecond, called *Sal Marinus*, is made of the Sea water, in Engliſh bay Salt. The third kind is *Sal paluſtris*. The fourth is ſtone ſalt, *Sal Foſſitius*, *Sal Cryſtallinus*, or *Sal Montanus*.

Saltpeter, *Nitrum*, *Niter*, and *Sal Petræ*: the Arabians do call it *Baurach*, it is a kinde of natural Salt. Some do falſly uſe the common Saltpeter for it, which is a great deceit.

Sanicle, in Latine *Sanicula*, and *Sennicula*. There are three kindes of it, which now adayes are called by the names of Sanicle. The firſt kinde and their true Sanicle, hath leaves like to the Vine, but ſomewhat leſſe, and divided into five ſeveral parts: it continueth green all the winter time, and is known of many men by the name of Sanicle, and is properly called *Sanicula*, otherwhiles to diſtinguiſh it from the other kindes, *Diapenſia*, *Sanicula Quinquefolia*, *Sanicula Vitigina*, and *Ferraria Minor*. The ſecond kinde groweth on high ſnowie hills, and hath fat leaves, not much unlike to Plantin: The flowers are ſomewhat like to Cowſlips, ſome blew, ſome purple coloured: The Herbariſts do call it *Arctocium*, *Auricula Urſi*, *Paralytica Alpina*, *Sanicula Alpina*, and *Arthritica Alpina*. The third kinde of Sanicle groweth on high, wooddie, and cold hills; it hath leaves almoſt like *Angelica*, and a black hairy root. It is called of the Simpliciſts *Sanicula Fœmina*, or *Aſtrantia nigra*, in Engliſh ſhe or female Sanicle. But this hath an other operation than the Sanicle, for the root of it purgeth like Ellebore, for which cauſe it is of ſome called *Sanicula Cathartica*. The Herbariſts call it wilde *Angelica*. But where and whenſoever Sanicle is found in any Compoſition without any addition, then ſhalt thou underſtand the firſt kinde of it.

Saphire ſtone, in greek and Latine *Sapphirus*, by *Marbodeus Syrtites*, and at the Apothecaries *Saphirus*. There are four kindes of it, of the blew which is known by that name, we have ſpoken before. And to diſtinguiſh it from the others, it is called *Saphyrus Cæruleus*; and *Dionyſius Afer* calleth it *Cyaneus Saphirus*. The ſecond kinde declineth ſomewhat from the blew to the green, and is called in Greek *Praſitis*, and *Saphirus praſitis*. The Druggiſts do call it *Saphirus viridis*, in Engliſh, a green Saphire. The third kinde declineth from the blew to the yellow: and is called in greek *Chryſitis*, and *Saphirus Chryſitis*: of the Simpliciſts *Saphirus Aureus*, in Engliſh the yellow Saphire. The fourth kinde is between blew and white, in colour like Buttermilk, altogether perſpicuous and clear, called *Saphirus Candidus*, in Engliſh the white Saphire.

Sarcocolla, in Latine *Sarcocolla*, or *Caruglutinum*; at the Apothecaries *Gummi Sarcocolla*, of *Serapins* and other Arabian writers *Anzarot* or *Anzarut*, it is a gum of a thorn in Perſia much like to Frankincenſe.

Savery, in Greek and Latine *Thymbra*, *Cunila*, and *Satureia*: there are two kindes of it, and there is no difference between them both, but that the wilde kinde groweth of it ſelf, and is called *Thymbra*, and *Cunila Ruſtica*. The other kinde is planted in gardens, and is more lavory and acceptable to meat than the former; but for Phyſick, the wilde hath more vertue than the other. It is hot and dry in the third degree.

Savine, or Savine tree, in greek *Bathy*, *Brathus*, *Bunathrum*, and *Barithon*: in latine *Sabina* and *Savina*: It is a well known ſhrub. There are two kindes of it, the one hath rough leaves like to the Cipres tree: the other like the leaves of the Tamariſk; they are both of them planted in the gardens with us, they are both attenuating and drying in the third degree.

Saunders, in Greek and Latine *Santalum*, *Santalus*, and of *Aſtuarius Xylon Santalon*, that is, *Lignum Santalum*. There are three kindes of it, that are all brought

unto us from the Indies, to wit, yellow, white, and red Saunders, all of them very common and wel known at all Apothecaries. The yellow kinde is called *Sandalum Flavum*, and at the Apothecaries *Sandalum citrinum*. The Arabians call it *Sandalum Machozir*, *Mazahari*, and *Mahacary*, that is, *Santalum Aromaticum*, or *Santalum odoriferum*, because it is the very best and most fragrant of all the kinds. The red Saunders are called *Santalum Rubrum*, of others *Rhodosantalum*, that is, *Santalum Rosaceum*, and at the Apothecaries *Santalum Rubeum*. The white Saunders are called Sandalum album. The best Saunders amongst all of them is the yellow kinde, next to that the white, and last of all the red. Whensoever one findeth Saunders in any receipt without addition, then is there the yellow Saunders alwaies understood. There is also a false kinde of red Saunders found at some Apothecaries, not unlike to the true red Saunders, yet without any smell at all: this is a kinde of Brasil, but it hath a darker red colour; the Druggists call it Sandalum Spurium; it may be called in English, bastard Saunders, neither ought it by any means to be used in Physick.

Scabious, of the Herbarists in Latine Scabiosa, and *Herba Apostematica*. There are five kinds of it, all of one vertue and operation. *Psora Ætii* is that common Scabious used at all Apothecaries.

Scammony, in greek and Latine *Scamonium*, or *Schamonia*, *Apopleumenon*, *Dactylion*, and *Sanilum*, of the Simplicists *Volubilis Syriaca*, *Volubilis Antiochena*, and *Volubilis Colophonia*: *Dioscorides* calleth it *Colophonium*, and *Sanilum*: At the Apothecaries Schamonea, and of the Arabians Sachmunia. It is a plant that groweth in Syria near Antiochia. It hath long sappy stalks, three square leaves, and white flowers like bells. It hath also a long sappy root as thick as ones arme, and white in colour. *Dioscorides* calleth this root *Radix Colophonia*, and *Radix Schambonia*. The juice which is presst out of this root is also called as the plant *Schamonia*, or *Scammonium*. Some do call this juice in Greek onely *Diacrydion*, that is, *Lacrymula*, and at the Apothecaries *Schambonea*. But our Physitians now adaies do understand by *Diacrydion* onely the prepared Scammonie, which the common Apothecaries and Physitians do call *Diagridium* or *Diagridium*, and *Schamonia preparata*.

Scorpion, *Scorpius*, *Scorpio*, a marvellous venomous little beast, in Italy and other Countries very common. If it bite or sting a man, and that he useth no present remedy for it, he is constrained to dye.

Sea balles, in greek *Sphæra thalassia*, or *Galon*; in latine *Sphæra Marina*, *Pila marina*, at the Apothecaries *Balla marina*, and *Nicolaus Myrepsus* calleth it *Palla marina*: *Dioscorides* doth name it *Prunum Genus Alcionis*. It is a kind of a Sea spunge dryed and round like a ball, whence it hath the name *pila marina*.

Sea Mussels *Concha marina*, *Conchilia marina*.

Sea Wormwood, in Greek and Latine *Absinthium thalassium*, *Absinthium marinum*, *Absinthium Seriphium*, *Helmintobotane*, *Helmintopœa*, *Seriphon* and *Seriphum*, at the Apothecaries *Semen tinæ*, or *Zina*. The seed of it is onely used at the Apothecaries to kill and expel the Worms of the belly, they call it *Semen Zinæ*, *Semen Lumbricorum*, *Semen Alexandrinum*, and *Semen Zedoariæ*. In Provence, that is in France, is another kind of sea Wormwood or Wormseed found, which is very like the garden Cypers, but it hath lesse store of seed then the former, and in the expulsion of Worms altogether as forcible. This plant is called, *Santonicum*, *Absinthium Santonicum*, at the Apothecaries *Sandonicum*, *Sanctonicum*, *Absinthium Sanctonicum*, *Centonica*, and *Herba centonica*. By all these names do they also understand the Wormseed, or sea Wormwood, for they do confound these and many others more. They do call the seed Semen Sandonicum, and Semen Sanctum, by which they do understand both the former seeds.

Selfeheal, *Prunella* and *Herba Divi Anthonii*.

Sene leaves, are called in greek, Latine, and in the Arabian tongue Sena, and Senua. *Mesues* called them with a Persian name *Abalzemer*. There are two kinds of them, the lesser groweth in Syria and Egypt, and are called (to distinguish them from the others) Sena Syriaca, Sena Egyptiaca, and at the Apothecaries Sena Alexandrina, and Sena Orientalis. The greater Sene leaves do grow in Italy and elsewhere, these are called of the Simplicists Sena Italica, or Sena Provincialis, and at the Apothecaries Sena Florentina. They are much weaker in operation and vertue then the lesser kinde, and therefore more unfit for Physical uses. Some there are

that affirm *Sena* to be a kind of *Celutea*. Others would have the *Colutea Theophrasti* to be *Sena*, or at the least a kind of the same, but both of them do err. Look also in the Introduction of this Book for Sene leaves.

Service tree, in greek *Oa* or *Oe*, in Latine *Sorbus*: it is a wel known tree, whereof the fruit is called in Latine *Sorbum*, and it is like to a little pear.

Sebestes, are little black berries, called in Greek *Myxa* or *Myxaria*, of *Alluarius* in latine *Sebestena*, and at the Apothecaries Sebesten. They are black berries, as big as hasel nuts, or little small dryed prunes, they are well known at all Apothecaries.

Sheep, *Ovis*.

Sheepheards purse, *Bursa pastoris*, and *Pera pastoris*.

Silkworms neast, *Folliculus Bombycis*, they are called in latine *Sericum crudum*, or *Sera cruda*, at the Apothecaries *Seta cruda*

Silver, in greek *Argyros* and *Argyrion*, and in Latine *Argentum*.

Silvermountain, in Greek and Latine *Seseli*, and of *Pliny Seselis* and *Sili*, of the Herbarists *Seselium*, at the Apothecaries *Sisalenos*, and *Seselies indeclinabiliter*. There are five kinds of it, the first hath leaves like Fennel but somewhat bigger, with a smooth stalk, the flowers are not unlike to them of Dill, and after them followeth a little sharp seed: the root is long and odoriferous, and it groweth on stony hils. It is called in Greek *Seseli Massiliotieum* and *Platycyminum*, in Latine *Seseli Massiliense*. The Herbarists do call it *Seselium Massiliense*; at the Apothecaries *Siseleos*, *Siler montanum*, in English Silver mountain, or Siler mountain. The second kind is called Silvermountain of *Æthiopia*, the stalk is of the thickness of a finger, woodly and of a dark red colour. The leaves of it are very like to them of Honisuckles: they are smooth and pale green in colour. It hath upon it four or five good yellow tops like Fennel, but the seed is somewhat bigger then that of Fennel. It is called in Greek and Latine *Cynosbryon*, *Seseli Æthiopicum*, and of the Simplicists *Seseli Æthiopicum Fruticans*. The third kind is our common black Silvermountain, which of many is taken for *Seseli Æthiopicum*, because it hath the same vertues and operations. But the Herbarists do call it *Seseli*, or *Seselium Æthiopicum Herbaceum*, thereby to diginguish it from the aforenamed. The fourth kind is our white silvermountain, called in Greek and Latine *Seseli Peloponnesiacum*, *Seseli Pelopponese*, and of the Herbarists *Seselium Cervinum album*. The fift kind is the *Tordylium* of *Dioscorides*. This herb as yet is not throughly known, because the description of it is so briefly set down by the ancient writers, which do onely make mention of the seed of it. This is called in Greek *Tordylion*, *Tordylon*, of *Pliny Syreon*, of *Paulus Ægineta Gergylon*, and in Latine *Seseli Creticum*. But when and whereseever thou findest silvermountain or *Siselios* in any composition, then and there shalt thou alwayes understand and use the first kind of silver mountain.

Sinober or Sinople, Vermillion, in Greek *Cinnabaris*, in Latine *Cinnabrium*. There are two kinds of it, the first is natural, and digged out of the Mine: it is called in Greek *Miltos Ammios*, in Latine of *Dioscorides* and *Pliny*, *Cinnabaris Fossilis*, *Minium Nativum*, in English Sinober of the Myne. The other kind is made by the Alchimistes of Quicksilver and Brimstone and it is called of the Simplicists *Cinnabaris Factitia*; *Cinnabrium Artificiale*, and *Minium Artificiale*, with us Vermillion.

Sivet, in greek of *Alluarius Zapetion*, in Latine of the Simplicists *Zibethum*, *Zibettum*, *Algalia*, and at the Apothecaries *Zibeta*: It is the fat or suet which is taken from the cods of the Sivet or musk Cat; at the first it smelleth very badly, but afterwards turneth to so fragrant an odour that it far surpasseth the Musk and Ambergreece: it is hot and moist by nature. It is used for increase of humane seed, and for the infirmities of the Matrix.

Sloe tree, or black Thorne, in Greek *Agriococcymelea*, and *Coccymela agria*. In Latine *Prunus sylvestris*, and of *Virgil Spinus*.

Smallage, in Greek and Latine *Eleoselinum*, *Hydroselinum*, *Apium Palustre*, and *Paludapium*. Here is to be noted, that as often as any mention is made in this Book of Smallage seeds, leaves, juyce, or roots, that the greater Pimpernel roots are alwayes to be understood for it, for that is the right *Apium* of the ancient Physitians.

Smarage, in Latine and Greek *Smaragdus*, of *Horatius*, *lapis viridis*: it is a green precious stone

Snake, *Serpens*, *Anguis*.

Snail, *Cochlea terrestris*, a Snail house and all the house of the Snail is called in Greek by *Dioscorides Celyphos*, of Galen *Ostracon*, of *Scammonicus Cochleatorum*, and of *Pliny Calyx*. The vine snails and garden snails are called *Cochleæ operularis*. The dew

snails

ſnails are called *Limax* and *Cochlea nuda*.

Solidago media, Sengreen, in Latine *Symphytum medium*, *Solidago media*, *Conſolida media*, *Conſolidago media*.

Soot of the chimney, *Fuligo caminorum*.

Sophia, in Greek and Latine *Thalictrum*, and *Thalictrum*, of the Chirurgeons and Herbariſts *Sophia*, and *Herba Sophia*. Some authors would have this herb to be *Abſinthium Seriphium*, but they ſhall never approve it to be true, for although they were the greateſt Alchimiſts in the world, yet ſhould they never tranſmute the one into the other: This Sophia I will not deny to be very good for the Worms of the belly, yet doth it not thereby follow that it is *Abſinthium Seriphium*, for if all the herbs ſhould be of *Sinchia Seriphia* that ſhould expelworms, then ſhould we have an infinite company of them. Of this *Abſinthium Seriphium* look under the title of ſea Wormwood.

Sope, in Greek and Latine *Smegma*, or *Sapo*, of *Martialis*, *Mattiaca*, *Pila*. Sope is prepared diverſly, but amongſt all others is the black ſope beſt for Phyſick.

Sorrel, in Greek of *Dioſcorides*, *Oxalis*, *Anaxyris*, and *Lapathon*, of *Galen Oxylapathum*, *Dioſcoridos* doth otherwhiles call the Dock *Oxylapathum*, becauſe it hath picked leaves: But *Galen* doth not call Sorrel by this name, becauſe it hath picked leaves, but that it is ampler and ſowre: for *Oxylapathum* is *Lapathum Acidum*, ſour Dock: the Apothecaries do call it *Acetoſa*. There are four kinds of it; the firſt, is that which groweth every where in Gardens. The ſecond kind is as big again as the common Sorrel, and groweth very plentifully in the Vineyards neer Rhene: It is alſo planted in Gardens for Sallads, and is called *Oxalis ſativa*, or *Acetoſa ſativa*. The third kind is ſet in the gardens in France, and high Burgundy, it hath round leaves, and is much ſowrer then the common Sorrel, it might be called round Sorrel, of the Herbariſts *Oxalis Rotundafolia*, *Acetoſa rotunda*, *Oxalis Francia*, and *Oxalis Gallica*. The fourth kind of Sorrel groweth in the common fields, and and dry places, it hath ſmall narrow leves, and may be called Sheeps or wilde Sorrel; of the Herbariſts *Oxalis Tenuifolia*, *Oxalis minor*, *Oxalis Vervecina*, and *Oxalis Arvenſis*: at the Apothecaries *Acetoſa minor*, and *Acetoſa ovina*. But as often as you read Sorrel in any compoſition, thou ſhalt always underſtand the common ſorrel, although the round be the beſt.

Sour Milk, in greek of *Pliny Oxygala*, in Latine *Lac Acidum*, or *Lac Acetoſum*.

Sowes bread, or Swines bread, in Greek *Cyclaminus*, *Ichthiotheron*, and *Chelonium*, that is, *Iceſtudinaria*, and *Chylme* in Latine *Cyclamen*, *Umbilicus terræ*, *Rapum terræ*, *Rapum porci*, *Orbicularis*, and *Herba orbicularis*, *Triumphalites*, *panis Terræ*, *Arthanita*, and *Harthanita*. Of the barbarous writers, *Panis Alcurſt*, *Panis fauni*, *Caſſamum*, *Caſſanum*, and *Quaſſamus*. Of the Arabian Phyſitians *Bothor Maria*. It is a root, whoſe leafe is like to Hartwort, but ſomewhat litherer, and fuller of ſpots. There is yet another kind of Sowes bread which is very like to the former, but ſomewhat leſſe, no bigger then a gall; this groweth in *Apulia*, on the hill *Garganum*, it is called *Cyclaminus minor*.

Southernwood, *Aurœſne*, or Wardrobe, in Latine *Abrotonum*, Thelyphtortum. The female kind of ſouthernwood is called garden Cipres, Abrotonum fœmina, it is called *Chamæcypariſſus*, but untruly: for *Chamæcypariſſus Plinii* is not great and woody as the garden Cipres is, but it is a little herb, about one ſpan in height, otherwiſe it is very like to the garden Cipres, it is alſo called with us the female Southernwood: the Herbariſts do call it *Abrotonum fœmina*, *Cypariſſus*, and Cypreſſus hortulanus, and Sandolina.

Sparrow, in Greek *Pſar*, *Struthos*, *Colmis*, and in Latine Paſſer: as a well known bird.

Sparrowhauke, in Greek *Spizias* and Spizires, in Latine Accipiter, Fringellarius, and Niſus: it is a bird common and well known.

Sperage, in Greek and Latine *Aſparagus* or Aſpharagus, at the Apothecaries Sparagus. There be two kinds of it, to wit, the wilde and the tame Sperage: the tame kind groweth every where near the Rhein: the wilde ſperage hath leſſer leaves and ſeeds, this groweth on the hils, for which cauſe it is called Aſparagus petræus.

Sperma Ceti, in Greek *Halos anthos*, in Latine Maris flos, of the Herbariſts Sperma balnearum, and at the Apothecaries Sperma Ceti: It is uſed for clotted blood, being mixed with other things.

Spidor, in Greek Arachne, in Latine Aranea, Araneus: there is yet another kind, called of *Pliny*, Phalangium: this is big, and poyſoneth in biting or ſtinging, it is onely found in hot countries, and eſpecially in Italy, where it is called Tarantula.

Spike

spike of Rome, *Salmanta*, Nardus Celtica, Nardus Romana, Spica Celtica, Spica Romana, Nardus Gallica, and Spica Celtica, the Herbarists do call it *Aldrea Arcadalene*: it is a well known herb, warm in the first, and dry in the second degree.

Spinage, in Greek *Semidalon* and *Semidalech*, in Latine *Beta Alexandrina*, *Spinachia*, or *Spinargia*, and *Olus Hispanicum*. It is cold and moist in the first degree.

Sponge, in Greek *Spongos*, and in Latine *Spongia*. In Greek *Tithymalus*, in Latine *Lactaria herba*, or Celsus and Columella, *Lactuca marina*, of Pliny *Lactuca caprina*, and at the Apothecaries Esula, or Ezula. The Arabians do call it Jenifer. There are eight kinds of it, the first is called in Greek and Latine Characias, Tithymalus characias, Tithymalus vallaris, Amygdaloides, Cometes, Tithymalis cometes, Cobius, Tithymalus cobius, of Apuleius, Alipus, Gobius and Meconites, Tithymalus malleolus, Lactuca marina, and Genitura Martis, of the Herbarists Esula, or Esula papaverata, Esula vallaris, Esula amygdalina, and Esula comata. It is a very big kind of Spurge, it hath great long leaves, not unlike to the Almond tree, red stalks and branches, it is called *Lathyris sylvestris*, and *Catapuția sylvestris*. The second kind of Spurge hath thick and picked leaves, like to the Myrtle, it is called in Greek and Latine *Myrtites*, *Tithymalus myrsinites*, *Tithymalus feminus*, Caryites, Tithymalus Caryites, of Apuleius, Caryon, of Theophrastus and the Simplicists Tithymalus myrtifolius, Tithymalus myrtiphillus, Tithymalus myrtaceus, of Apuleius, Multilago Caprarii, of the common Herbarists *Esula*, or *Esula myrtifolia*, and *Esula myrtacea*. This kind of Spurge groweth not with us of it self, but is planted in gardens. The third kind of Spurge groweth about one span in height, and hath red branches, round leaves, white flowers, and seeds as big as small pease, it is called Sea Spurge, in Greek and Latine Paralius, Tithymalus Paralius, Tithymalus maritimus. Tithymalus lactariolus, Tithymalis, and of Theophrastus, Coccos: of the Herbarists Lactariola, Herba, Lactariola, and Esula, or Esula marina. The fourth kind of Spurge groweth every where in gardens, and near hedges, it is an herb not altogether a span in height, with red stalks and branches, it hath round leaves like Purslain, and it beareth his yellow flowers and turneth with the Sun, in Greek and Latine Heliotropium, Tithymalus heliotropius, Tithymalus Sollequus, or Sbilequus, Demetrius Apollonii, Arbuscula similis cupressi, Greek Columbinum, Cupressus of the Herbarists Lactaria obliqua, Tithymalus Sollequus. The fifth kind of Spurge is the lesser kind of Spurge, which is like to the small field Cypress, it groweth here and there in sandy gardens, and in tilled ground, and is called the lesser Spurge, in Greek and Latine *Tithymalus Cyparissias*, *Tithymalus Cyparissus*, *Tithymalus Cyparissus*; of the Herbarists *Esula* or *Esula cyparissias*, and at the Apothecaries *Esula minor*. This plant is called of Ægineta *Sarabaca minor*, and *Asterabaca minor*. The sixt kind of Spurge is the greatest of all, it groweth in rocks of stony places: it is like to a little tree, the leaves are broader then the other. *Tithymalus dendroides*. It is called in Greek and Latine *Dendroides*, of *Tithymalus dendroides*, *Tithymalus Lepthophyllos*, *Tithymalus arvensis folio*, *Tithymalus Peplus*, *Tithymalus arborescens* of the Simplicists Esula, or Esula Arborescens and Petræa. The seventh kind hath great broad leaves, and is called great Spurge, and sweet Spurge, in Greek and Latine *Tithymalus Platyphyllus*, *Tithymalus latifolius*, *Cyparissias*, and of Apuleius, *Perfoliata*, in Latine of the Herbarists Tritum or Titan, at the Apothecaries Esula, or Esula latifolia, and Esula dulcis. The eighth kind is the Esula, which is called *Tithymalus*, of *Mesue*, *Alsebrum*, or *Alsebrum maius*, of Avicenna, Mehenehadgi, at the Apothecaries Esula major. There hath been spoken of this kind in the rule of Turbith T. Also if Esula or Spurge be named in this book, then is the Esula Cyparissa to be used.

Squinanth, in Latine and Greek *Schænus*, *Schænanthus*, *Juncus odoratus*, *Psatium*, *Camelorum*, at the Apothecaries *Spalanthum*, the flowers are called in greek *Schænanthos*, that is, *Junci flores*: they are now brought into us again, although they be not common every where.

Stag Cornes.

Staverfacre, look for Licebane in L.

Stechados or Stechas, it is called of *Dioscorides* in Greek *Strobas*, of *Galen Stechas*, of others Sincilopa, Alcibiades, Stephonia and Stephonia, in Latine Stechas, Strebas, Stæchas, Oculus Pythonis, or Scielobina, and at the Apothecaries *Stechados municipalis*.

There are two kinds of it, the
[illegible] cometh from Arabia, which hath
[illegible] yellow to wander, but they are
[illegible] jagged, and as small as are
[illegible] Pares, or peach
[illegible] little
[illegible] pleasant and fra-
[illegible] and
[illegible] This kind is called
[illegible] The other kind
[illegible] and in other pla-
[illegible] not such like the former, but
[illegible] bigger, and the stalks
[illegible] the Herbarists do call
this kind *Stachas Europea*, it hath also
[illegible] name of the place where it
[illegible] that of France is called *Sti-*
[illegible] the Italians do call their
[illegible] Stichades mountains: the *Per-*
[illegible] all that which groweth in Ara-
[illegible] *Hispanicum*, *Lusitanicum*. The
Arabians do commend that of Arabia
above all the other kinds, but because it
is brought so far, and that it loseth his
vertue by the way, do the learned Physi-
tians use onely that which groweth in Eu-
rope. A

Steel, in Greek *Calyps*, and of *Rellius*, *Sto-*
mumis, in Latine *Chalybs*, of *Plinie*, *Nucle-*
us ferri, and *Aries ferri*.

Stonecrop, *Illecebra*, *Piper murarium*, and of
Dioscorides, *Sedi tertium genus*.

Stone Parsly, or Parsly of Macedon, *Petro-*
selinum Macedonicum: they that have
great stuff of small skill in simples, have
hitherto used the Parsly of *Alexandria* for
that of *Macedonia*: Others because they
had the stone Parsly, have used the great-
er Pimpernel instead of it; of which opi-
nion *Hieronimus Tragus* (my master) was
the first, because that kind of Pimpernel
is stronger, and agreeth better with the
stone Parsly then the other. But now
have gotten the true stone Parsly and
planted it in divers gardens, it is not need-
ful to use any other thing for it. The
Parsly of *Alexandria* hath also her pro-
per use in Physick, and it is called of *Dios-*
corides Symirnium: of the Herbarists *Petro-*
selinum Alexandrinum, *Petroselinum Cili-*
cum, *Apium Alexandrinum*, *Apium grande*
and *Olusatrum*: these herbs are seldom
used alone.

Storax, look *Styrax* in the Latine Index or
Table.

Storks, in Greek *Pelargus* in Latine *Ciconia*:
it is a bird common enough beyond the
[illegible]

Storks bill, of *Dioscorides Geranium alterum*,
of the Herbarists *Pes Columbinus*, and *Pe-*
[illegible] one of the smallest kinds
of Storks bills with round leaves like to
[illegible] lesser Mallow. [illegible]
Strawberry [illegible]
Sturgion, [illegible]
Succory, [illegible]
Sugar, in great [illegible] Sacchar, *Mel* of
[illegible] *Saccharum*, in the shops *Succ*,
Sugar and the [illegible] Apothe-
caries *Succarum*. There are six kinds of
it: the first kind is refined Sugar, which
is artificially [illegible] and is cal-
led of the Simplicists *Saccharum rubrum*,
Saccharum Indum, *Saccharum candidum*, and
Saccharum Tabarzet. The second kind is
Madery Sugar, which is brought from the
Iland *Madera*, this is the second in good-
ness, and is called in Latine *Saccharum*
Madrisense, or *Maderense*. The third
kind is Canary Sugar, which is next in
goodness to the Madery Sugar, in Latine
Saccharum Canarium. The fourth kind
is the Malta or powder Sugar, it is brought
from *Malta*, and it is called of the Sim-
plicists *Saccharum Melitense*. The fift
kind is a brown and soft Sugar, it is
brought from the Iland S. *Thomas*, and it
is the very worst of all the kinds: it is
called of the Simplicists *Saccharum Thoma-*
sinum, *Saccharum Thomasium*, and at the
Apothecaries *Saccharum rubrum*. The 6.
kind is the sirupe that floweth from the
Sugar in refining, it is known every where
by the name of Sirupe, *Mel Saccharinum*
and *Rasuel*. Whensoever any mention is
made of Sugar, then is either the Madery
Sugar, or the Malta Sugar to be taken and
used.

Sugar parsnep, in Greek and Latine *Siserum*
and *Siser*: this is the true *Siserum* or Si-
ser of the ancient writers, and not our
common parsnep, as some suppose; for
the parsnep with the broad leafe is the
true *Elaphoboscum Dioscoridis*. If we did
alwayes distinguish our herbs after the
best manner, we should not fall and run
into so many confusions and errours.

Sulphur, look for Brimstone in *B*.

Suppositories is used to procure stools, and
is [illegible]ed in Greek and Latine *Balanus*,
glans, and at the Apothecaries *Suppositori-*
um.

Swallow, in Greek *Chelidon*, in Latine *Hirun-*
do.

T

TAmarisk, in Greek *Myrica.* in Latine *Tamarix*, of the Herbarists *Bryaria*, and at the Apothecaries *Tamariscus*: it is a well known tree, and groweth abundantly in many places of Germany.

Tanſie, the Herbarists do call it *Tanacetum*, and *Athanasia*

Taſſel, in Greek and Latine *Dipſacus*, *Onocardium*, *Labrum Veneris*, *Cardaus Veneris*, *Virga Paſtoris*, *Cardus Fullonius*, and *Lavacrum Veneris.*

Three leafed graſſe, look for Clavers in C.

Thoroughwax, *perfoliata.*

Thunderbolt, *Phrygius lapis* of *Dioſcorides*, and at the Apothecaries *Lapis lyncis.* The gentle Reader is here to be admoniſhed of the great abuſe, harm and deceipt that hath hapned theſe many years at the Apothecaries in the uſe of this ſimple. For the unskilful Phyſitians which do not much trouble themſelves with the true knowledge of ſimples, are as yet of opinion that the Thunderbolt ſhould be engendred in the air; and they do uſe it in their compoſitions to expel urine, gravel, and ſtone, and eſpecially in the *Litbontribon magnum* Nicolai. But the ſtone which they call Lapis Lyncis or Lyncurium, is called of *Galen and Dioſcorides Lapis phrygius* do uſe it in their dyings. This foreſaid ſtone (as *Dioſcorides* witneſſeth) groweth in *Cappadocia*; but neither *Galen* nor yet *Dioſcorides* doth ſay, that this ſtone ſhould be engendred in the air, for it is a thing that groweth of it ſelf, as the Calamine doth, and (as *Galen* ſaith) it hath the ſame vertues with the Flint, but that this may not be uſed inwardly. By this may appear how greatly they have erred that have called this ſtone *Lapis Lyncis* or *Lyncurium*; alſo how diverſly men have been deceived, and their infirmities increaſed, in miniſtring unto them divers compoſitions, wherein this ſtone is put. Wherefore every careful Phyſitian ought diligently to read the Books of *Dioſcorides*, *Galen*, *Pliny*, *Ætius*, and of *Nicolaus Myrepſus*, that he might thereby perceive his own defaults, and turn back from his errors. *Dioſcorides* in his ſecond Book *de re Medica*, and the 74. Chapter writeth after this manner of the Thunderbolt: It hath been thought that the water of the air, which is called *Lyncurium*, ſhould congeal into a ſtone, but it hath been found falſe, and all whatſoever elſe hath been ſaid of it; for the *Lyncurium* is that which is called of ſome *Electrum Pterigopharon*, Amber, or white Amber, and is brought unto us in great abundance from *Pruſſia*: theſe are the very words of *Dioſcorides*. The like falſe opinion doth *Pliny* detect, *lib. 37. cap. 3.* Here may you evidently perceive, that neither ancient writers have held any thing of that falſe and falſed opinion; for they do all affirm that *Electrum*, *Succinum*, and *Lyncurium*, is one and the ſame thing, which have been ſufficiently ſeen by the words of *Dioſcorides*. It doth alſo appear in the writings of *Ætius*, and *Nicolaus Myrepſus*, that they meant nothing elſe by their Thunderbolt *Lyncurium* or *Lapis Lyncis*, but onely Succinum, that is the Amber. Alſo that the Amber cometh not out of the air, but out of the ſea, that is ſufficiently known to all the world. But whether that unskilfull cure had ſaid that it were engendred of a certain water in the air, or that it is the urine of a beaſt congealed into a ſtone, that were a ſmall error, if they had uſed the right Amber in their compoſitions. That Amber hath power to expel the ſtone, urine, and gravel, (which vertues are aſcribed to the *Lyncurium*) that is ſufficiently known to every expert Phyſitian: and that the white Amber is the right Lyncurius or Lyncurium, and that may be ſhewed by the words of *Ætius*, who calleth it Electrum, Lyncurium, and Succinum, and diſtinguiſheth the yellow Amber from it, calling it Chryſelectrum, that is, Aureum Electrum. And *Dioſcorides* in the former chapter calleth the white Amber Electrum Pterigophoron, and in the firſt Book *de medica materia*, doth he call the yellow Amber Chryſophorum. Hereby do we conclude that Lapis Lyncis, Lyncurius or Lyncurium (as the Gretians term it) is nought elſe but the white Amber: wherefore heed muſt be taken that thou uſe the white Amber in all compoſitions that have the Lapis Lyncis in them. Of the vertues of the Thunderbolt, look for Amber.

Thyme, in Greek and Latine *Thymum*, *Thymus*, *Serpillum Romanum*, or *herba Thymiana*, at the Apothecaries *Tymus.* There are two kinds of it, and both of them are ſet in gardens, but in hot countries they do grow every where of themſelves. The firſt kind is white, and hath long ears or heads like to Stechados, it hath a very pleaſant ſmell, it is called in Greek and Latine *Thymum Capitatum*, *Thymum Candidum*,

Thymum

Thymum creticum, *Thymum Spicatum*, and *Thymum aromaticum*: we call it white Thyme. The second kind is rougher, and of a darke green colour, and it is common in all gardens, and well known by the name of Thyme, the first kind is much better for Physick then the other if it may be gotten: they are both of them hot and dry in the third degree.

Tillet tree, in Greek *Philyra*, in Latine *Tilia*, there are two kinds of it, the common Tillet tree, and the wilde Tillet tree, which groweth in the shadowy wood and hills, it is very like to the tame kind, but that it is much lesse; it bloweth also flower, and at the last the blossoms fall off without any fruit. It is called the wild Tillet tree, or stone Tillet, because the wood of it is harder and more compacted then the tame: it is called in Latine *Tilia sylvestris* and *Tiliamas*. The blossoms and the fruits of it are used in Physick.

Toad, in Greek *Phrynus*, of *Virgil*, *Bufo*, and of *Pliny*, *Rubeta*. Some unskilfull Physitians do take *Rubeta* to be the leafe Frog, which is a great error, for they are as like as an apple is like to an oyster, because the Toad is hurtful and venemous, and the Leafe-frog without all hurt or harm.

Tormentil, is called of *Dioscorides*, *Chrysogonon*, and of others *Heptaphyllon*, of the Herbarists *Septifolium*, *Betularia*, and at the Apothecaries *Tormentilla*.

Tortoyse, in Greek *Chelone* or *Emys*; of *Hesichius* and *Aristoteles*, *Myt*; in Latine *Testudo*: the shell of it is called in Greek *Chelonium*, and of *Nicander*, *Chelium*, in Latine *Testudinis operimentum*.

Treacle, in Greek and Latine *Theriaca*: at the Apothecaries *Teriaca*. We have mentioned in this Book of two kinds of Treacle, to wit, of *Theriaca Andromachi* or Theriaca magna, and the common Treacle called Theriaca Diatessaron: but wheresoever Treacle is named without any addition, there must the great Theriaca Andromachi be taken and used.

Turbith, of *Actuarius*, *Turpetum*, in latine, of the Herbarists *Turbetum*, of the Arabians *Turbith* and *Turbeth*. There are four kinds of it; the first is the white Turbith, very common at all Apothecaries, this kind is called of *Dioscorides* in Greek *Alpum*, of *Actuarius* *Alypias*, and *Turpetum album*, at the Apothecaries *Turpetum Orientale*, or *Turpetum Alexandrinum*, and in English white Turbith. The second kind is called of *Dioscorides* and *Actuarius*, *Pityusa*, *Clema*, *Crabion*, and *Canopicon*, of the Herbarists *Turpetum nigrum*, and Esula major: also of the Arabians *Alscebram majus* or *Scebram majus*, in English black Turbith. The third kind is called in greek *Thapsia*, *Hypopium*, and *Pancranium*, in Latine *Ferulago*, and *Ferula sylvestris*, of the Herbarists Turpetum cinerittium, and Turpetum Mesuis, and *Mesues* hath understood by his Turbith nothing else but *Thapsia*. The fourth kind is the Turpetum Serapionis, who also hath his several Turbith. *Dioscorides* calleth it Tripolium, Psyche Meris, Stachyites, of the Herbarists Turpetum Serapionis, and After marinus: but when thou findest Turbith in any composition with any addition, then is the white Turbith to be understood for it.

Turmerick, *Ciperus Indicus*, the Apothecaries call it *Curcuma*, and *Terra merita*, *Rasis* calleth it *Vena citrina*.

Turneps, look for Rapes in *R*.

Turpentine is called *Resina Terebinthi*, *Terebinthina*, or *Terminthina*, of the Arabians and Apothecaries *Turpentina*, *Turbentina*, and *Turpentina*. It is not the common Turpentine that floweth from the Fir tree, as the unskilful suppose, but it is the true Turpentine of the Turpentine tree.

Turpentine tree, in Greek *Terminthos*, of *Nicander*, *Trimithos*, in Latine *Terebinthus*, of *Avicenna*, *Arbor granivirides*.

Turtle Dove, in greek *Trygon*, in Latine *Turtur*.

Tutty, at the Apothecaries *Tutia factitia*, *Cadmibotryitis*, or *Cadmia Acinosa*, and *Cadmia officinarum*.

V

Valerian, in greek and Latine *Phu Valeriana*, *Geniculatis*, *Herba benedicta* and *Marinella*. There are four kinds of it, and two of them onely in use; the first is the common Valerian, which onely ought to have that name, The second kind is planted in gardens, although it be otherwhiles found in woods and on hills: it hath much greater leaves then the common Valerian, and also a bigger root, of the thickneſſe of a finger, and this is the true *Phu* of the [illegible]ent writers. It is called *Phu Pontiſ*[illegible] in English great Valerian; the Herbarists do call it Theriacaria, Herba divi Georgii, Georgiana, and Herba divæ Mariæ. This is commended before the former Valerian, if it may be gotten. They are hot in the first, and dry in the second degree.

Venus

Venus hair, in Greek *Trichomanes*, *Callitrichon*, *Eupteron*, of *Hippocrates*, *Calliphyllon*, of *Apuleius*, *Tricophys*, *Selinophyllon*, *Dyphyes*, *Scholibrochon*, *Amianthon*, and *Adianton*: although *Dioſcorides* do deſcribe another kind of *Adianton*, to wit, Maiden-hair, yet notwithſtanding is Venus hair the true *Adiantum Apulèii*; in Latine *Herba Capillaris*, *Barba Herculis* and *Pinnula*, of *Apuleius*, *Herba crinita*, *Capillus Veneris*: the Apothecaries call it *Polyrichum*. There are yet two kinds more of it, to wit, the greater and the leſſer Maiden hair: the greater kind is called of the Herbariſts *Polytrichum aureum*, *Adiantum aureum*, and *Capillaris aurea*. The leſſer is called *Adiantum aureum minus*. Some have taken both theſe kinds for *Polytrichon Apulèii*; but they err greatly, as doth appear by the deſcription of it. But when thou readeſt Venus hair in any compoſition, then ſhalt thou take the common Venus hair.

Verdigreaſe, in Greek *Chalcos anthos*, in latine *Flos æris*, or *Æruga*, at the Apothecaries *Viride æris*.

Vinum punicum, or *Vinum Hiſtricum*, *Vinum punicinum*.

Violets, in greek *Ion*, and *Ion porphyrion*, of *Theophraſtus*, *Ion Melen*, and *Melanion*, of *Dioſcorides Daſipodium*, *Priapeion*, *Cybelion*, in Latine *Viola purpurea*, *Viola muraria Viola nigra*, and *Setialis*: of the Herbariſts *Viola Martia*, and *Viola Quadrageſimalis*: it is alſo ſometimes called onely *Viola*, in Engliſh a *Violet*: the Apothecaries call it *Flos Violæ*. The leaves of the Violets are called *Violaria*, and *Mater Violarum*. There are five kinds of them, that are all of one and the ſame operation. The firſt kind is common every where, and know to all men. The ſecond kind are the white Violes, which are very like to former, but that they be very white; they be ſet in gardens, notwithſtanding that they are found in the fields: the Herbariſts do call it *Viola alba*, and *Viola Martia alba*. The third and fourth kinds are the white and blew double Violets, that grow in gardens: the blew double Violets are called *Viola multiplex*, *Ion Polyphyllon*, and *Viola purpurea multiplex*. The white double Violets are called *Viola alba multiplex*. The fift kind of Violets are the wilde Violets, which are like to the tame Violets in every reſpect, but that the leaves are ſomewhat leſſe and longer, and the flowers are of a light or purple blew, like the other, but without any ſmell, where nevertheleſſe, all the other kinds are very fragrant. The ſixt kind is called Ion agreon, Viola ſylveſtris, of the Herbariſts viola fatua, or Viola canina.

Viper or Adder, in Greek *Echis*, and *Echidna*, in Latine *Vipera*, and of *Cicero*, *Exveria*: the Italians do call it *Marassus*. It is a venemous Snake, unknown with us, but very common in Italy.

Virga aurea, *Solidago ſaracenica*, *Conſolida ſaracenica*, *Herba fortis*, and *Virga aurea*.

Unicorn, *Unicornium*, *Cornu Monocerotis*.

Unripe Grapes, in Greek *Omphax*, in Latine *Uva immatura*, and *Uva acerba*.

Vulture, *Vultur*, and of *Plautus*, *Vulturius*, it is a well know ravening bird.

W

WAlflowers, in Greeke *Leuconium*, *Viola lutea*, *Heſperis*, at the Apothecaries *Keyri*, *Keiri* and *Cheyri*.

WValnut tree, in greek *Caryon*, *Caryon baſilicon*, and of *Pollux*, *Caryon Perſicon*, *Nux baſilica*, *Nux regia*, *Juglans*, and *Nux Perſica*. There are three kinds of it, to wit, great, middle, and leſſer nuts: the leſſer may be called ſtony nuts, becauſe they have ſuch hard ſhels. The ſecond kind are the common WValnuts, *Nuces media*, or *juglandes mediæ*. The third kind are the biggeſt, and are called *Nuces equinæ*, or *juglandes equinæ*.

Watercreſſe, in greek and Latine *Naſturtium aquaticum*, *Naſturtium aquaticum*, and *Cardamine*.

Water Lentils, *Lens paluſtris*, or *Lenticula aquatica*.

Water Lillies, in greek *Nymphæa Rhopalon*, *Herkition*, *Androgynus*; of *Apuleius*, *Lotometra Madon*; of *Theophraſtus*, *Madonia*; in Latine *Clavus Veneris*, *Digitus Veneris*, *Alga paluſtris*, *Lilium paluſtre*, *Papaver paluſtre*, *Clava Herculis*, *Roſa paluſtris*, of *Apuleius*, *Proteus*, and *Mater herculanea*: The Arabians and Apothecaries do call it *Nenufar*, or *Nenuphar*. There are four kinds of it: the firſt kind groweth in Ponds, they are very common and bear a fair white flower, known to every man: it is called *Nymphæa alba*, of *Pliny*, *Nymphæa Heraclia*, with us white water Lillies. The other kind is like the former, but not ſo common, it beareth a yellow flower, and is called of the Herbariſts *Nymphæa lutea*; of *Dioſcorides*, *Nymphon*, the flowers *Blephara*, with us yellow wa-

ter

water Lillies. The 3. kind hath ſmall leaves, like to Crowfoot flowers, and ſmall white flowers, it groweth commonly in ſweet and running ſtreams, and it is called of the Herbariſts *Nymphæa minor*, in Engliſh the leſſer white water Lillie. The fourth kind is like to the great water Lillie, but that it is ſomewhat leſſe, it beareth a pretty yellow ſtarrie flower, it is called of the Herbariſts *Nymphæa lutea minor*, we call it the leſſer yellow water lillie.

Water Torch, in greek and latine *Typha*: the Herbariſts do call it *Typha aquatica*, and *Typha paluſtris*, to diſtinguiſh it from the Turkiſh Corn, and the Ginny wheat, both which are alſo called *Typha*: whereof ſhall be ſpoken more at large when opportunity ſhall ſerve. The water Torch is but once mentioned in this whole work.

Water Willow, in greek and latine *Lyſimachium*, or *Lyſimachia, Litrum*, of the Herbariſts *Salicaria*. There are three kinds of it, the firſt is the common water Willow, which is called the yellow water Willow, in latine *Lyſimachia lutea*, or *Lyſimachia melina*. The ſecond kind groweth in moiſt places, it hath narrow and picked leaves, with a pretty purple flower: it is called of *Pliny Lyſimachia*, for the firſt kind is *Lyſimachia Dioſcorides*: of the Herbariſts *Lyſimachia Pliniana, Lyſimachia purpurea*, or *Punicea, Lyſimachia Spicata*, and *Salicaria purpurea*, in Engliſh the purple water VVillow. The third kind groweth about the running waters or ſtreams, it hath ſmall leaves, like to the VVillow, but a little jagged, it beareth a pretty ſmall purple flower, like to the leſſer Roſes, out of which commeth afterwards a little cup, which containeth ſome ſmall ſeeds. It is called of the Herbariſts *Lyſimachia ſiliquoſa*, and *Filius ante patrem*, in Engliſh horned water VVillows, that is, *Salicaria cornuta, Salicaria ſiliquoſa*, and *Lyſimachia cornuta*. But if thou find water VVillowes without any addition, then ſhalt thou underſtand the yellow water VVillow, or *Lyſimachia Dioſcoridis*.

Wax, in greek *Ceros*, in Latine *Cera*.

Whay, *Serum*, *Aqua lactis*, and *Aqua Casei*.

Wheaſie, in greek *Galè*, *Spondyle*, in latine *Mustela*.

Wheat, in greek *Pyros*, in latine *Triticum*. There are three kinds of it, the firſt kind do we call Wheat, without any addition, of *Columella Robus*, of the Simpliciſts *Triticum robum*: This is the very beſt in weight and whiteneſſe. The ſecond is a kind of ruffeared Wheat, in greek *Pyros Trimenos*, or *Setanias*, in latine *Triticum Trimeſtre*, and *Halicaſtrum*, of *Columella*, *Setanium*, or *Sitanium*, of the Herbariſts *Triticum ſitanium*. The third kind is called in Greek *Silignis*, in latine *Siligo*, and *Triticum Siligineum*.

Wheat ruffeared, in greek *Zea*, in latine *Zemen*, of *Columella Far clyſinum*, and of others *Spelta*. There are two kinds of it, the firſt is the common ruffeared Wheat, it bringeth two husks cloſe together, with two grains in them: this is called Spelt, and *Zea diacoccos*. The ſecond kind is called S. Peters corn, it bringeth but one ſeed or grain, to wit, in a row, as the former bringeth the two: it is called in greek *Zea monococos*, and in latine *Zea ſimplex*, and *Semen ſimplex*: it is a kind of grain which is a mean between Barly and Wheat.

VVheat ruffeared prepared *Alica* or *Halica* in greek *Chondrus*, *Zea deglubita*, ruffeared wheat peeled.

White water Mints, in greek Minthæ agriæ, Hedioſmos agrios, in Latine Mentaſtrum, and Mentha ſylveſtris, of the Herbariſts Mentha equina, Mentha caballina, and Balſamita ſelina. There are two kindes of it: the firſt hath rough, white, and round leaves, and a hairy and rough ſtalk, this is the true Mentaſtrum *Dioſcoridis*. The ſecond kinde is not rough, but hath long pricked leaves, and a brown hairy flower: they grow neer to the water ſide; this ſecond kinde is called Mentaſtrum acutum, and they have both one and the ſame operation. *Apuleius* and *Pliny* have alſo their ſeveral Mentaſtrum, which they do call Glechon agrión, and Pulegium agreſte: It is the ſecond Calamintha Dioſcoridis, which we have called Calamintha arvenſis before.

Wilde Beets, of the Herbariſts *Apiophyllon*, *Herba pyrifolia* or *Pyrifolia*, *Conſolida Pyrifolia*, *Pyrola*, and *Pyrula*: It is a vulneral herb, having leaves like a Pear tree, it groweth in the ſhadowie woods, and continueth green both winter and ſummer. There is yet another kind of it, which groweth in medowes, near hils, which is like to the former, but that it hath longer leves and ſtalks, wheron there be white flowers: the Herbariſts do call it *Pyrola*, or *Pyrula pratenſis*: they are both of one nature and operation: they are

dry

dry in the third degree, they do conſolidate mightily: but by wilde Beets ſhalt thou underſtand that which groweth in woods.

Wilde Cucumbers, *Cucumer Aſininus*, *Cucumer ſylveſtris*, *Cucumer anguinus*, and *Cucumer erraticus*. It is a well known herb, but it groweth not with us unleſſe it be ſowen in gardens. There is a juyce preſt out of the fruit of it and prepared, which is called *Elaterium*, whereof ſhall be ſpoken elſe-where.

Wilde Flax, in greek and latine *Oſyris* of the Herbariſts *Herba urinalis*, and *Linum beate Mariæ*, at the Apothecaries *Linaria*.

Wilde Grapes, in Greek *Ampelos agria*, in latine *Labruſca*: the bloſſomes of the wild Vine is called in greek *Oenanthe*, in latine *Flos labruſca*, *Flos vitis ſylveſtris*, and at the Apothecaries *Flos lambruſca*.

Wilde Pears, *Pyrum ſylveſtre*: the tree is called in greek *Achras*, in latine *Pyraſter*, in Engliſh a wilde Pear tree. theſe Pears, their leaves, and the water diſtiled of them is uſed for the Lask.

Wilde Radiſh, *Armoracia*, *Raphanus ſylveſtris*, at the Apothecaries *Rapiſtrum*: There are two kinds of it, both of them do grow in fields that are ſown. The firſt kind is that whereof now hath been ſpoken. The ſecond kind is like the firſt, but it hath fewer and broader leaves; the flowers are white, and is commonly cald white wilde Radiſh, *Rapiſtrum album*, that is, *Lapſana*, *Dioſcoridis & Galeni*. They that call our Horſe-radiſh *Armoracia*, do err greatly; for *Armoracia* is *Raphanus ſylveſtris*, a wild Radiſh. Look for this in the deſcription of *Dioſcoridis*, and the truth will ſoon appear.

Wilde Saffron, in greek *Cnicus*, *Cnecus*, *Gnicus*, and *Guecus*, in *Latine Cortamus*, or *Chartamus*. There are two kinds of it, the firſt is the wilde wel known Saffron, which groweth in many gardens: this is called *Cartamus domeſticus*; of *Serapio*, *Kartan*, of *Averroes*, *Elcaris*, of the Herbariſts *Crocus hortulanus*, *Crocus ſylveſtris*, Crocus ſaracenicus, Crocus fatuus, it is barbarouſly called *Zaffranum ſylveſtre* and *Saffranum fatuum*. *Averroes* calleth the ſeed of it *Semen de Papaga*. The ſecond kind groweth on dry hils and untilled and dry fields, it is called wilde fielde Saffron, in greek *Atractylis*, and *Cnecus agrius*, in latine *Colus ruſtica*, *Fuſus agreſtis*, and of the Herbariſts *Cnicus ſylveſtris*, *Cnicus campeſtris* *Cartamus ſylveſtris*, *Eryacantha*, and *Cardnus amoris*: but the tame kinde is onely uſed in Phyſick, to wit, the flowers and ſeed of it, which is alſo called *Semen papagalli*, or *Semen Piſtacis*. Note that *Cartamus* with *t*, doth ſignifie wilde Saffron, and *Cardamum* with *d*, Creſſes ſeeds. *Naſturtium*: wherefore great heed is to be given of it.

Wilde Thyme, *Serpillum*, *Cunilago*, and in greek *Herpyllum*.

Willow tree, in greek *Itea*, in latine *Salix*, of *Homerus*, *Frugiperda*: There are five kinds of it; the firſt is called with us the red Willow, of *Theophraſtus*, *Salix nigra*, or *Punicea*, of *Pliny*, *Salix viminalis*, of *Columella*, *Salix Sabina*, and *Salix Amerina*: this is the very beſt kind of all the reſt. The ſecond kind is the white Willow, and of the Herbariſts *Salix Candida*. The third kind is called of *Pliny*, Salix vitillina, of Columella, Salix Græca, with us water Willow tree. The fourth kind is called of the Herbariſts Salix platyphyllos, Salix latifolia, and Salix cinerea. The fift kind is the leaſt of all, called of *Theophraſtus*, Salix helix, of *Pliny*, and *Columella*, Salix Gallica: of the Simpliciſts Salix pumila. Theſe five kinds of Willowes are ſufficiently known to all men.

Wine, in greek *Oenos*, of *Cratinus*, *Teyx*. There are four kinds, each according to the country, to wit, the leaſt, ſmalleſt, middle, and ſtrong Wine: but we will ſpeak but of two kinds at this preſent, to wit, of ſtrong and of ſmall wine: the ſtrong wine is called *Vinum Oenodes*, *Vinum polyphorum*, and *Vinum multiferum*. The common wine is called *Vinum oligophorum*, *Vinum pauciferum*, *vinum aqueſum*, and *Vinum Tiberium*, this is onely ſpoken and meant of Rheniſh wine.

Winter Cherries, in greek, Halicacabus, phyſalis, in Latine Solanum veſicarium, of *Pliny* Veſicaris, of the Herbariſts Solanum rubeum, or Solatrum rubeum, Ceraſum Judæorum, Ceraſum terræ, in the Arabian tongue *Alkekengi*, or *Alkekengi*: they are cold and aſtringent in the ſecond degree, but mean moiſt.

Weather, *Caſtrum*, *Vervex*.

Woad, in greek and latine Iſatis, of *Pliny* Glaſtum, of the Herbariſts Guadum, and Paſtillum; it is an herb well know to divers. There are two kinde of it, one tame, and one wilde; the tame Woad groweth in France, and in Turing, with

us onely in gardens for Physical uses: it is called *Isatis sativa, Egne,* and *Glastum sativum.* The second is the wilde kind, it is lesser then the former, it groweth here and there in the woods and fields; it is called Isatis sylvestris, Isatis minor, Glastum sylvestre, and Glastum minus. They are both drying and astringent, but the wilde Woad is much stronger then the tame.

Woodcock, in greek *Scolopax*, of *Hesychius, Varino, Nemesiano*, in Latine of *Gesna, Gallinago* of *Heradianus, Perdix sylvestris*, of other *Perdix rustica* or *Rusticula*, of *Nigbus* and *Valaterranus, Gallinella*, of the simplicists Rostrulus, and Gallinacea.

Woodpecker, *Picus Martius, Turbo*, in greek *Driocalaptes*; of *Arist. Driocolaps*; of *Hesych.* it is a well known bird; it is mentioned otherwhiles in some dyers in this work.

Woolblade; or Longwort, in greek *Phlomus* or *Phlouns*, of *Apuleius, Pyrenis*, in Latine *Verbascum, fœminalis, Lucumbra, Candelaria gigas Candelaria Lunaria*, at the Apothecaries *Tapsus barbatus*. There are four kinds of it, whereof the first is the common VVoolblade, with the white woolly leaves, and yellow flowers; it is called *Verbascum albifolium*, and in greek *Leucophyllon*. The second kind is like the former, but that the leaves are blacker and broader; it is called black woolblade, in greek Phlomos melanophyllos, in Latine Verbascum nigrum. The third kind is the wilde Woolblade, it hath a long stalk with great leaves, much like to the great Sage, it hath yellow flowers, in greek Phlomos agrios, in Latine Verbascum sylvestre: of the Herbarists, Verbascum salvifolium. The fourth kind is most like to the first, but that the flowers are white, and it is called white Woolblade Verbascum album, and Verbascum fœmina.

Woolfsbane, in greek and Latine *Aconitum*, There are six kinds of it, the first hath rough leaves not much unlike to the lesser Cucumbers, with pretty yellow flowers, not unlike to them of *Doronicum*. The roots are round, with many joints, the little roots about it are very like a Scorpion, it is called in greek and latine Perdalianches Thelyphonum, Aconitum Thelyphonum, Therionphonum, Aconitum Therionphonum, Myoctonum, aconitum Myoctonum, and Scorpion. The second kind of Woolfsbane hath leaves like to the Italian Pellitory, but somewhat deeper jagged: the root is blackt with many hairs about it. This Plant is sufficiently known by the name Woolfsbane, it groweth on high hils, and is called in greek and latine Lycoctonum, Aconitum Lycoctonum, Cynoctonum, and aconitum Cynoctonum. The Herbarists do call it Aconitum Lycoctonum luteum: the Apothecaries Lupatia. The third kind is called of the Herbarists Aconitum Lycoctonum Cæruleum, there are also three kinds of it, and it is common in all gardens. The fourth kind of Wolfsbane is Aconitum Lycoctonum cæruleum magnum: Avicenna calleth it Napellus; it is a very venemous herb. The fift kind hath yellow flowers, and is called yellow Woolfsbane, of the Herbarists Aconitum Lycoctonum luteum minus. The sixt kind groweth in darke and shadowie woods, the stalk is about one span and a half in height, and about the middest of the same are 4. dark green leaves, standing oppositte one against the other: it getteth a black berry, under which many little leaves are placed each opposite to other. It is called of the Herbarists Aconitum salutiferum, Sigillum Christi, Crux Christi, Sigillum Veneris, and Herba Paris. It is a very wholesome herb, and may be used inwardly very well against many diseases. Many learned men would have it to be *Aconitum pardalianches*, but it is as like it as an apple is like an oyster. By Woolfsbane shalt thou understand the yellow Wolfsbane.

Wormwood, in Latine and Greek *Absinthium, Aloina*: there are three kinds of it: The first, is the common Wormwood that groweth every where, called Barthypicron, Barypicron, and *Absinthium rusticum*. The second kind is like to the former in leaves and flowers, but it is somewhat lesse, and it groweth not above a span and a half in height, it is also bitter like the fore said, yet somewhat more pleasant to be used, it groweth on hilly places: This kind will never be greater although it grow in fertil grounds. This is the same Wormwood which *Dioscorides* doth call Absinthium ponticum, *Mesues*, Absinthium Romanum, of the Simplicists Absinthium mountanum, and *Pliny*, Absinthium Italicum. The third kind is very like the great Wormwood, but it hath lesser leaves and stalks then the mountain wormwood, it groweth also somewhat higher, the leaves are white & soft. This groweth on moody ditches. It is called Romish

Wormwood, to avoid all errours, and we leave the name of mountain Wormwood unto the second kind. This Wormwood is called of *Galen Absinthium ponticum*. But *Mesues* and other Authors do take the second kind to be the true *Absinthium ponticum*. Whensoever thou findest Wormwood by it self in any composition, then is the mountain Wormwood to be taken and used; and if that cannot be had, then must you take the common wormwood that groweth in the fields, and not that which groweth in gardens; for the garden Wormwood is not so strong, neither can it perform that which the wilde Wormwood doth that groweth on dry grounds. VVormwood is hot in the first, and dry in the third degree.

Yarrow, Nosebleed, Millfoyle, in Greek *Stratiotes*, *Chiliophyllos*, *Supercilium Veneris*, *Herba militaris*, and *Millefolium*. It is a common herb, it is drying and astringent.

Yewe, *Taxus*, *Smilax*, *Miles*.

The end of the second Table.

This third and Latine Index, contained the Latine, Greek, and other ſtrange names of old Simples, and eſpecially of thoſe things which are mentioned in this Book, as Roots, Herbs, Flowers, Fruits, Plants, Juyces, Gums, Woods, Stones, Barks, Metals, Minerals, Earths, Deer; and whatſoever elſe is uſed in Phyſick: Alſo all mixed and compounded Medicines, as Electuaries, Confectures, Syrups, Juleps, Conſerves, Cakes, Pils, Salves, Oyls, Potions, and diſtilled waters, with their names, not only as they are called by the ancient Greek and Latine Phyſitians, but alſo as they are now named amongſt the common Phyſitians and Apothecaries: In like ſort alſo all inward and outward parts and members of the body, with all the diſeaſes that every one of them is ſubject unto.

A

A Balzener Arabum, Sena, *Sene.*
Abies, *a Fir tree.*
Abies candida, *a white Fir tree.*
Abies nigra *a black Fir tree.*
Abiga, Chamæpitys, *ſmall Cipres, or wilde Cipres.*
Abioten, Abiotos, *Hemlock.*
Abortus, *an untimely birth.*
Abrotonum, *Southernwood.*
Abrotonum fœmina, *Southernwood female.*
Abſceſſus, an *impoſtume, or botch.*
Abſinthium, *Wormwood.*
Abſinthium bathypicron, *common Wormwood.*
Abſinthium Italicum, *Italian wormwood.*
Abſinthium ponticum, *Wormwood gentle, or Wormwood pontick.*
Abſinthium montanum, *Wormwood of the hill.*
Abſinthium Romanum, *Wormwood Romane.*
Abſinthium ruſticum, *common, or rurall wormwood.*
Abſinthium thalaſſium, *Sea wormwood.*
Abſinthites, *Wormwood Vine.*
Abvolum Plinii, Pulegium, *Penniroyal.*
Acacia, *the juyce of a thorne in Egypt, inſteed whereof we uſe the juyce of Sloes.*
Acalephe, urtica, *Nettles.*
Acalypha, *a nettle.*
Acanthus, *or* Acantha, *Branke urſine, or Bearbreech.*
Acanthus ſylveſtris, *wilde branke or urſine.*
Acantha Germanica, *branke urſine.*
Acatalis, Juniperus minor, *a little Juniper.*
Acatera, Juniperus major, *a great Juniper.*
Acetoſa, *Sorrel.*
Acetoſa ſativa, *Garden Sorrel.*
Acetoſa rotunda, *round Sorrel.*
Acetoſa Gallica, *French Sorrel.*
Acetoſa minor, *the leſſer Sorrel.*
Acetoſa ovina, *ſheeps Sorrel.*
Acetum *Vingar.*
Acetum ſcillinum, *or* Scilliticum, *Vinegar of ſea Onions.*
Acetum roſaceum, *Roſe Vinegar.*
Acetum rutaceum, *Vinegar of Rue.*
Acinus, *wilde or ſmall Baſil.*
Achras, Pyraſter, *a wilde Pear tree.*
Aconitum, *Wolfsbane.*
Aconitum cynoctonum, *or* Aconitum cynoctonum luteum, *yellow Wolfsbane.*
Aconitum lycoctonum, or Aconitum lycoctonum cæruleum, *blew wolfsbane.*
Aconitum lycoctonum magnum cæruleum, *blew wolfsbane the great.*
Aconitum lycoctonum luteum minus *the leſſer yellow wolfsbane.*
Aconicum Myoctonum, *a certain kind of wolfsbane.*
Aconitum Pardalianches, *Lybards bane.*
Aconitum ſalutiferum Herbariorum, *one berry.*
Aconitum Thelyphonum, *a kind of wolfsbane.*
Aconitum Theriophonum, *another kind of Wolfsbane.*

Acorum

Acorum or Acorus, Calamus, *the great Galangal.*
Acte, Sambucus, *Elder.*
Acylos Ariſtotelis, Glans quercina, *an Acorn.*
Adamas, *a Diamond.*
Adiantum, *Venus hair, or Well Fern.*
Adiantum album, *the white Venus hair.*
Adiantum Apuleii, Trichomanes Dioſcoridis.
Adiantum Aureum Herbariorum.
Adiantum Gallicum, *French Venus hair.*
Adiantum nigrum, *black Venus hair.*
Adipſos, Glycyrrhiza, *Licorice.*
Ærizuſa *a Jaſper like the air.*
Æris flos, Viride æris, *Verdegreace.*
Ægoceros, Fœnum græcum *Fenegreek.*
Ægyne, Caprifolium.
Ægynos, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Æromeli, Manna, *a manner of dew congealed on trees and plants.*
Ærugo, viride æris, *Verdegreace.*
Æs uſium, *burnt Copper.*
Affectus animi, *affections, motions, or paſſions of the mind.*
Affodillus officinarum, *Daffodil.*
Agallochum, Lignum Aloes, *a ſweet wood ſo named.*
Agaricum, or agaricus, *a Muſhrum growing on trees.*
Agaſilis, frutex qui Hammoniacum Thymiama gignit, *the herb whereof* Hammoniacum *is made.*
Ageomoron, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Aglaophoris Apuleii, Pæonia *is named of*
Ælianus Aglaophoris terreſtris, *Piony.*
Agnus vitex, Agnus caſtus, *Chaſt tree.*
Agnus caſtus officinarum, *the ſame.*
Agonus vitex, Agnus caſtus the ſame.
Agreſta officinarum, *Verjuyce.*
Agriclæa, Olea ſylveſtris, *wilde Olive tree.*
Agrimonia officinarum, Eupatorium Græconi, Egrimony, *or Agrimony.*
Agrimonia ſylveſtris Herbariorum, Potentilla, *wilde Agrimony.*
Agriocinara, Cinara ſylveſtris, *wilde Hartichook.*
Agriococcymela, Prunus ſylveſtria, *Slaes.*
Agrioccymelea, prunus ſylveſtris, *Slo tree, or ſloe. buſh.*
Agrioriganos, Origanum ſylveſtre, *wilde Organe.*
Agroſtis, gramen, *Graſſe.*
Aigleuces, Sempermuſtum, *Wine alwayes muſty.*
Aithales, *Sengreen, or Houſleek.*
Aizoon agrion, Sedum ſylveſtre, *wilde Sengreen.*
Aizoon Sempervivum, *Sengreen, or Houſleek.*
Aizoum minus, Sempervivum minus, *the leſſer Sengreen, or Prickmadame.*
Alabandicus lapis, *a red ſtone mixt with blew.*
Ala, Axilla, *the arm pit.*
Alarmel Arabum, *wilde Rue.*
Alarum fœtor, Tragonia, *ſtinking of the arm-pits.*
Alabaſtrum Plinii, *a Marble ſtone.*
Albucum, aſphodelus, *Daffodil.*
Album coctum officinarum & Chirurgorum, *a plaiſter of Ceruſe, or white Lead.*
Album græcum officinarum, Stercus caninum album, *a white dogs turd.*
Alcanna Arabum, Liguſtrum, *Privet, or Primprint.*
Alkakengi Arabum, Alkakengi, or *winter Cherrie*
Alchenna Arabum, *Cipres Privet.*
Alcibiadium, *wilde Langde beefe, or Ox tongue, or wilde Bugloſſe.*
Alcibiadium Æginetæ, Echium, *wilde Bugloſſe the leſſer.*
Alchimilla, *Ladies mantle.*
Alcibiades, Stœchas, *French Lavender.*
Alcocalus, Scolymus, *a Hartichok.*
Alcyonium primum Dioſcoridis, Balla marina officinarum, *the ſome of the Sea indurate, or a Sea ball.*
Alcyonium quintum Dioſcor. Spuma marina officinarum, *the ſome of the ſea.*
Alexander, or Alexandrum officinarum, *Parſly, or* Alexandria.
Alexipharmacum unguentum, *a medicine againſt poyſon.*
Alfeſcera Arabum, Vitis alba, *white Briony.*
Alfeſireſin, vitis nigra, *black Briony.*
Algalio, Zibetum, *Sivet.*
Alga paluſtris, *Reites, or a ſea weed ſo named.*
Alharmel, *wilde Rue.*
Alibium, Aſter Atticus, *an herb ſo called, Codwort.*
Alica, or Halica, *a meat made of Wheat.*
Alipta muſcata.
Alhandal Arabum, Colocynthis, *Coloquint.*
Alkanna Arabum, Liguſtrum, *Privet.*
Alkekengi, *winter Cherries.*
Allium, *Garlick.*
Allium Alpinum, Victorialis.
Allium caninum, *Dogs garlick.*
Allium reticulatum, Allium Alpinum.
Allium ſylveſtre, *wilde garlick.*

Alleluya officinarum, *wood Sorrel.*
Allus Arabum, Dracontium, *Dragonwort, or Dragons.*
Aloe, sempervivum marinum, *a very bitter herb.*
Aloe caballina, *the grosser kind of Aloes.*
Aloepatica, and Aloepaticum officinarum, *the same.*
Aloe Gallica, *Gentian.*
Aloe lignum, Lignum Aloes, *a sweet and pretious wood.*
Alonia, Absinthium, *Wormwood.*
Alopecea, Capillorum defluvium, *a disease causing the hair of the head or beard to fall off by the roots.*
Alfesera Mauritanorum, Vitis alba, *White Briony.*
Alscebram, or Alscebram majus Arabum, Pityusa, Esula, *Spurge.*
Alscebram minus Arabum, Esula minor officinarum.
Alsine, paverina, *Chickweed.*
Altaraxacon officinarum, Aphaca Theophrasti, *of some a kind of Tar, of others a kind of Cicory.*
Althæa, Malvaviscus, *Hollihock.*
Altercum, *Henbane.*
Alumen, *Allom.*
Alumen fecis, *dregs of wine, or wine lees.*
Alumen jamenum officinarum, Alumen capillare,
Alumen capillare, *the same.*
Alumen liquidum.
Alumen liparium.
Alumen plumosum officinarum, Alumen rupeum.
Alus Gallicus Scribonii, Symphytum.
Alypias Actuarii, Turpetum album.
Alypus Apuleii, Tithymalus Dioscor. Esula.
Alypum, Turpetum album Actuarii.
Amara Dulcis.
Amaranthus aureus, *gold flowre.*
Amarantus Galeni, *Mandlen wort, or Baltasar.*
Amaranthus Luteus, *the same.*
Amaranthus Veneris, *flower gentle of some Ragwort.*
Amaracus Dioscoridis, *Marjoram.*
Amaracus Galeni, *Feverfew.*
Amarena Cerasa, *black Cherries.*
Amarena passa, *dryed Cherries.*
Amarella, Parthenium adulterinum, *Feverfew.*
Amourosis, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Ambet, sive Ambarum, *Amber.*
Ambarum, *Amber.*
Amber, *the same.*
Ambragrisea officinarum, *Ambergreese.*
Ameos officinarum, Ammi, *Amy.*
Amethystus, *a gem, or precious stone, called an Amethyst.*
Amianton Apulei, Trichomanes, *Maiden-hair.*
Amiantus, Linum saxatile, *Plume Allom.*
Amictomiænum, vitex, Agnus castus, *chaste tree.*
Ammi, sive Ammium, *Amy, the herb and seed.*
Ammoniacum, or Hammoniacum, is called of the Apothecaries Armoniacum. It is the juyce or gum of a tree growing in *Africa*, called *Agasillis.* Of this gum there are two kinds, the one fair and clean, very like Frankincense; this sort of the ancient Physitians hath been used for a sweet savour or smell, it is named of *Aëtius*, of *Paulus Ægineta*, and the other Greek writers, *Ammoniacum Thymiama*, or *Hammoniacum Thymiama*, and this is the best for Physick, *Plinius* calleth it Thrauston, and Thrausma. The other kind is foul and unclean, such is very common in the Apothecaries shops, and is called of *Plinius*, Apyrama.
Amnion, Bryon, *Mosse.*
Amnion *Plinii*, Cinnabaris fossilis, *a soft red stone in mynes called Cinoper.*
Amomum, a strange shrub as yet unknown, although the unskilful Physitians use it not, for they instead of this have in their common shops a dead and wilde Parsly seed (when indeed the right *Amomum* hath alwayes been a pleasant and sweet smelling shrub accounted of the ancient Physitians) which is as like the right *Amomum* as an apple is like an Oyster. Let every one therefore take heed of this *Amomum*, also of all such medicines which are mixed with it. Some take the Rose of Jerico for the right *Amomum*, which the Herbarists call *Rosa Hierichuntea* and *Rosa Divæ Mariæ*, but they are deceived. *Galen* saith, that *Amomum* and *Calamus* in vertue are very like, and therefore seeing that we have not the right *Amomum*, we may use *Calamus* very well in his place.
Amorgine, Perdicium, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Ampar, Ambarum, *Amber.*
Ampelos, vitis, *the Vine.*
Ampelos agria, vitis sylvestris, *a wilde Vine.*
Ampelos leuce, vitis alba, *white Briony.*
Ampelos melæna, vitis nigra, *black Briony.*

Ampelo-

Ampelopraſum, Porrum vineale, *wilde Leek.*
Amydum officinarum, *Starch.*
Amygdalum an *Almon.*
Amygdalus, the *Almon tree.*
Amygdala amara, better *Almons.*
Amygdalogala, Amygdalinum lac *Almon-milk.*
Amygdaloides, *Spurge.*
Amylum, *Starch.*
Anacardium, five Anacardus, a tree (growing in India, and on the firie mountnines of *Sicily*) ſo named.
Anabaſis, *Horſe taile.*
Anagallis, Chorchorus Theophraſti Sapana, Macia, Nicteritis, Zeliaurus, *Chickweed.*
There are three ſundry kinds of Chickweed, whoſe leaves are all alike, but differ in flower, the one hath pretty little purple flowers, and is called in Greek *Anagallis phœnece*, Anagallis punicea, Anagallis rubea, Anagallis purpurea: *Paulus Ægineta*, calleth it Corallium, *or* Corallia, this is Chickweed with the red flower. The other is called *Anagallis cærulea*, Anagallis fœmina, that is, Chickweed with the blew flower. The third hath yellow flowers: this groweth not about us except it be ſet or ſown. It is found in the upper *Burdundy*, in a field between *Dolen* and *Beſanſon*. This is called *Anagallis lutea*, Chickweed with the yellow flower. They are all hot and dry, and may be uſed in wounds and fractures.
Anagallis mas, Chickweed with the red flower or Chickweed male.
Anagallis fœmina, Chickweed with the blew flower or Chickweed female.
Anagallis phœnicea, Chickweed with red flower.
Anagallis punicea, Purpurea, *the ſame.*
Anagallis lutea, *yellow Chickweed.*
Anactorium Theophraſti, *wide flags.*
Anangelos, Ruſcus, Kneehul *knehulme, petigre.*
Anaſtrophe, Inverſio ventriculi, an inverſion *of the ſtomach.*
Anaſarca, Hypoſarca, *the dropſie.*
Anatetamenon, *Pelitory of the wall.*
Anaxyris, Oxalis, *Sorrel.*
Anaſeteſis, Comfry.
Anchmanes Apuleii, Dracontium, Dragonwort, *or Dragons.*
Androgynos Apuleii, Nymphæa, a water Lilly, *or a water Roſe.*
Andrachne Portulaca, *Purſlain.*
Aneſum, Aniſum, *Annis.*
Anetum *Dill.*
Anetum caninum Cotula fœtida, *an herb like Camomil.*
Anetum ſylveſtre, *wilde Dill.*
Anetum tortuoſum, *the ſame.*
Anetum urſinum, *the ſame.*
Angelica, Angelica, *or Imperial.*
Angina, Inflammatio faucium, *a ſwelling in the throat. The Angine.*
Achuſa, wilde Bugloſſe, *or Orchanet.*
Animi accidentia, *troubles of the mind.*
Aniſum, *Aniſe.*
Anonium, a dead *nettle.*
Anonium album, the white dead *nettle, or Archangel.*
Anorexia, *a diſeaſe of the ſtomach.*
Arnium, *Plantain.*
Arnogloſſa, Arnogloſſus, *a kind of Plantain.*
Arnachylis, *Plantain.*
Anthemis, Chamæmelum, *Camomil.*
Anthericos, the flowers and ſtalks of *Martagon.*
Anthera, *the yellow ſeed that is within the Roſes.*
Anthracites, a gem, *or pretious ſtone.*
Anthrax, Carbunculus, *a Cole.*
Anthrax, Amethyſtizon, Carbunculus lapis, a precious ſtone, *a Carbuncle.*
Anthora, is taken of ſome for the right *Zedoar root, but it is not ſo.*
Antullia, hath no Engliſh name, it is called in Greek *Anarbo*, in high Dutch *Zuwan.*
Antidotus, *or* Antidotum, *is* Alexipharmacum. a medicine againſt poyſon: but there are other medicines ſo likewiſe named.
Antidotus Mitridatica, Mithridate, a medicine like Treacle againſt poyſon.
Antimelon, Mandragora, *Mandrage.*
Antimonium officinarum, *a kind of Miniral.*
Antiphthora, *or* Antitora, Napellus ſalutiferus, *Monks hood.*
Anthophyllus officinarum, *refuſe of Cloves.*
Antora. *Monks hood.*
Anthropomorphos, *Mandrage.*
Anzarot, ſive Auzerut Arabum, Sarcocolla, a gum of a tree in *Perſia* like the powder of Incenſe.
Apepſia, bad digeſtion *of the ſtomach.*
Aprine, Aſpergula, Clivers, *or Gooſegraſſe.*
Aphaca Theophraſti, a kind of *Cichory.*
Aphaca Dioſcoridis, vicia ſylveſtris, *wilde tares.*
Aphros cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Aphyllantes, Tuſſilago, *Fole foot, Colts foot or Horſe hoofe*

Apiaſtrum, Meliſſophyllon, *Balm.*
Apiaſtelſum Apuleii, Bryonia, Bryony, or the wilde Vine.
Apium, *Smallage.*
Apium Alexandrinum, *ſtone Parſly.*
Apium Equinum, *Lovage.*
Apium grande, called alſo Smyrnium.
Apium paluſtre, Paludapium, *Smallage.*
Apium riſus, *water Crowfoot.*
Apium ſaxatile, *the greater Pimpernel.*
Apiophyllon, Pyrola, *wilde Beets.*
Apoleium, Pulegium, *Penniroyal.*
Apolegusa, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Apolinaris *Henbane.*
Apoplecticus, one that hath the *Palſey.*
Apopleumenum, *Scammony.*
Apoplexia, the *Palſey.*
Apoſtema, Abſceſſus, an impoſtume or *Boyl.*
Appetitus ſyncopalis, appetite with a ſwoning.
Appetitus Caninus, an immoderate hunger, or dogs hunger.
Apronia Plinii, Vitis nigra, *black Briony.*
Apſendes, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Apyreni, *Corrans.*
Apyrotus, Carbunculus, *a Carbuncle.*
Aqua æroſa, or Aqua ærea, water of Copper, or that hath the vertues of *Copper.*
Aqua extinctionis Argenti, water in which ſilver hath been *quenched.*
Aqua extinctionis Auri candentis, water in the which gold hath been *quenched.*
Aqua caſei, *Cheeſe-whay.*
Aqua extinctionis Chalybis, water in which ſteel hath been *quenched.*
Aqua Chalybata, *ſteeled water.*
Aqua decoctionis Cinamomi, *ſodden Cinamom water.*
Aqua florum omnium officinarum, Aqua ſtillatitia ſtercoris vaccini, *the water of Cowdung.*
Aqua decoctionis Glycyrrhizæ, the decoction of *Licorice.*
Aqua lactis, *Milk-whay.*
Aqua marina, *Seawater.*
Aqua muſa, *Mead, or Hony water.*
Aqua pluvia, or aqua pluvialis, *Rain water.*
Aqua fortis, *Goldſmiths water.*
Aqua ſalſa, *Salt water.*
Aqua ſaccharata, aqua decoctionis ſacchari, Sugared water, or the decoction of *Sugar.*
Aqua extinctionis ſilicum candentium, water in the which hot Flint ſtones have been *quenched.*
Aqua ſulphurea, Brimſtone water, or that hath the vertues of *Brimſtone in it.*
Aqua vitæ, *in this Book by* Aqua vitæ, are meant the compounded waters, or *Aqua vitæ compoſitæ.*
Aqua vitis, Lachryma vitis, the water that droppeth out of *Vines being cut.*
Aquilegia, *a Columbine.*
Aquilina, *the ſame.*
Arantium, *an Orange.*
Arbor caſta, Agnus caſtus, *Chaſt tree.*
Arbor Jovis, Quercus, *Oake.*
Arbor ſapiens, Morus, *the Mulberry tree.*
Arceuthos. Juniperus, *Juniper.*
Arceuthis.
Arceuthides, Baccæ Juniperi, *Juniper berries.*
Arceuthites, Juniperinum vinum, *Juniper wine.*
Archangelica, *or* Archangelica lutea, *Archangel with the yellow flower.*
Archangelica alba, Lamium album, *white Archangel.*
Archezoſtis, vitis alba, *Briony.*
Arction, or actium, *the great Burr.*
Arctotium, ſeu Auricula urſi Herbariorum, *Sanicle the great.*
Area, Alopecia, the fallings off of the hair by the *roots.*
Argentina Herbariorum, *wilde Tanſie.*
Argentum aqueum, *Quick ſilver.*
Argentum viuum, *Quick ſilver.*
Argilla, *Clay.*
Argyritis, Lythargyrum, *Lytharge.*
Ariſtaltæa, Biſmalua.
Ariſtolochia longa, *long Hartwort, or Birtwort.*
Ariſtolochia rotunda, *round Hartwort.*
Ariſtolochia officinarum, *Hartwort.*
Armoniacum officinarum, *Armoniack.*
Armala Geleni, Ruta ſylveſtris, *Wilde Rue.*
Armorcia, Raphanus ſylveſtris wilde or *horſe Radiſh.*
Armel Avicennæ, Ruta ſylveſtris, *wilde Rue.*
Arnabo Pauli Æginetæ, Zurumbetum, *Sedtar.*
Aromaticum gariophyllatum, a confection of *Cloves ſo termed.*
Aromaticum Roſatum, *a confection of Roſes.*
Aromatites, an aromatical *or ſpiced wine.*
Aron, Cuccopit, *Prieſts pintle, or Wake Robin.*
Aronia Athenæi, *Dragons.*
Arquatus morbus, *the yellow Jaundiſe.*

Arſenicum,

Arſenicum, *Arſenick, or Ratsbane.*
Arctorium
Arthenicum, *Ratsbane.*
Artechochia, *Artichoke.*
Artemiſia, *Mugwort.*
Arteria, *artery, or vein.*
Arteria aſpera, *the winde pipe.*
Arthanita, Cyclaminus, Panis porcinus, *ſowes bread, or Swines bread.*
Arthetica officinarum, Arthritica, *Cowſlips.*
Arthrica alpina Herbariorum, *Sanicle the great.*
Arthritis, Morbus articularis, *the gout.*
Articoca, Artichock.
Articocalus, *the ſame.*
Arum, *Cuccopit.*
Arum paluſtre, *the ſame.*
Arundo ſagittaria, *a great Reed to make darts.*
Aſa dulcis, *Benzoin.*
Aſa fœtida, *a ſtinking gum,*
Aſara baccara, Officinarum, Aſarum, Aſarabacca.
Asbeſtos, *look* Conia.
Aſcalis, Palmes, *the branch of a vine.*
Aſclepias, Vincetoxicum, *Swallowes wort.*
Aſclites Barbarorum, Aſcites, *that kinde of Dropſie that maketh the legs and belly ſwell onely.*
Aſparagus, Sparage.
Aſparagus altilis, *common Sperage.*
Aſparagus Horelaceus, Aſparagus altilis.
Aſparagus regius, *common Sparage.*
Aſparagus petreus, *wilde Sperage.*
Aſparagus myacantinus, *wilde Sparage.*
Aſparagus paluſtris Galeni, *wilde Sparage.*
Aſparagus ſylveſtris, *the ſame.*
Aſparagia, Corrudago, *wilde Sperage.*
Aſpera arteria, Canna pulmonis, *the windepipe.*
Aſpergula, Aparine, *Clivers or Goosegraſſe.*
Aſpergula, Aſperula, *the ſame,*
Aſpaltium.
Aſpaltus, ſive Aſpaltum.
Aſphodelus, *Daffodil.*
Aſpis, *a little ſerpent.*
Aſplenos, Aſplenium, *or* Aſplenum, *Scatefern, or Fingerfern.*
Aſplenium ſylveſtre Herbariorum, *the ſame.*
Aſpella, Hippuris, *Horſetail.*
Aſſa dulcis officinarum, *Benſoine.*
Aſſa fœtida officinarum.
Aſtaphydes, *Raiſins,*
Aſtaphiſagria, *an herb called* Staphis Agria.
Aſter atticus, *an herb alſo called* Inguinalis, *or Codwort,*
Aſter Auguſtini, a Ruby.
Aſterion, Cannabis, *Hemp.*
Aſterios, Ballaſius, *a Ruby.*
Aſterium Bubonium, *Shave, Starre, or Codwort.*
Aſtericus, Inguinalis, *the ſame.*
Aſthma, *a ſtopping of the breath with wheaſing.*
Aſtilis, Viſcum, *Birdlime.*
Aſtrantia officinarum, Imperatoria, *Angelica.*
Aſtrantia nigra, *Sanicle.*
Aſtrios, Ballaſius, *a Ruby.*
Aſtrutium officinarum, *Angelica.*
Aſtylis, *headed Lettice.*
Aza dulcis, *Benzoin.*
Aza fœtida officinarum, *a ſtinking gum.*
Azara baccara officinarum, *Aſarabacke.*
Athanaſia, Tanacetum, *Tanſie.*
Atoſſum, Lychnis ſylveſtris, *wild Saffron.*
Attractylis hirſuta, Cardnus benedictus.
Atramentum Coriariorum, Copperas.
Atramentum Librarum, *Ink.*
Atraphaxis, Atriplex, *Orage, or Orache.*
Atriplex ſylveſtris, *the wilde Orage.*
Atriplex, ſive Atriplexum, *Orage.*
Atrophia, Nutrimenti ceſſatio, *a Conſumption.*
Attonitus, *aſtoniſhed.*
Avantia Herbariorum, *Herb Avance, or herb Bleſſed.*
Aubium, Chelidonium majus, *Celandine the greater, or ſwallowes herb.*
Avena, *Oats.*
Avellana, *haſel Nut.*
Aurantium, *an Orange.*
Aurea Alexandrina, *a confection ſo called.*
Aureola Herbariorum, Amaranthus luteus, *Maudlenwort, or Baltaſar.*
Aureum malum, *an Orange.*
Auricula muris, *the herb Mouſe ear.*
Auricula muris major, *Mouſear the great.*
Auricula muris minor, Flos angelicus *the leſſer Mouſear.*
Auricula muris cærulea, *blew Mouſear.*
Auricula muris, Dioſcoridis Myoſotis, *Mouſear.*
Auricula urſi, *Sanicle the great.*
Aurigo, *the yellow Jaundiſe.*
Auripigmentum, Arſenicum luteum, *Orpiment.*

Axilla

Axilla, Ala, *the armpit.*

B

BAaras Josephi Historici, Pæonia, *Pyony.*
Bacca, *and* Baccha conchea Virgillii, *a Pearl.*
Bacca Lauri, *a Bay Berry.*
Balanus, Glans querciua, *an Acorn.*
Balanus, Suppositorium officinarum, *a Suppository.*
Balanus, Ægyptia, Mirobalanus, *it is the frnit of a tree, and is called* Ben.
Balanus myrepsica, Glans unguentaria, *the of a tree much like Myrice.*
Balaustium, *the flower of a Pomgranate.*
Ballagius. *or* Balasius, *a Ruby.*
Balla marina, Alcyonii primum genus *a sea ball.*
Ballanæa gemma, Curbunculus candidus, *a Ruby.*
Ballis, Bellis *Daises.*
Balneum Sulphureum, *a bath that hath the vertues of Brimstone.*
Balsamita, Felina Herbariorum, *Mountain Mints.*
Balsamum Judaicum, Opobalsamum, *Balm natural.*
Barba Herculis Apuleii, Trichomanes, *Maiden hair.*
Barba Jovis, sempervivum, *Sengreen.*
Bardana, *the great Bur.*
Baratrum, Sabina, *Savine.*
Batypicron, Bathypicron, *common Wormwood.*
Baryton, Sabina, *Savine.*
Basilica dextra, *the Liver vein.*
Basilica sinistra, *the vein of the Milt, or Spleen.*
Basilica herba, Basilicum, *Basil.*
Basilicum minus, *the lesser Basil.*
Basilicum crispum, *a kinde of Basil.*
Basilicum aquaticum, *water Basil.*
Bathypicron, Absinthium rusticum, *Wormwood.*
Batitura æris, *refuse of Brasse.*
Batanuta, Vitis nigra, *black Briony.*
Batrachis, Ranunculus, *Crowfoot.*
Batrachium, *Crowfoot.*
Batus, Rubus, *Bramble, Blackbery, or Bryerbush.*
Batus Idæus, Rubus Idæus *Framboyse, Raspis, or Hindbury.*
Baucia, Pastinaca sylvestris, *wilde Parsenep.*
Bechicæ officinarum, *a medicince for the cough.*
Bechion, Bechium, *Folefoot, or Horsehoose.*
Bedegar, *or* Bedeguar, *the white bryer.*
Beletzici, Bellirici, *one kinde of Mirobalans.*
Bellerici, Mirobalani bellerici, *the same.*
Bellis, Ballis, *a Daisie.*
Bellis major, *the great Daisie.*
Bellium, *a Daisie.*
Bellios flos, *the same.*
Bellirici, *one kinde of Mirobalans.*
Benedicta Laxativa, *a purging Electuary.*
Benioninum, *Benioin.*
Benzoinum, *or* Benzuinum, *the same.*
Berberis, *or* Berberus, *Berbery tree.*
Berberus, *the same.*
Bericocia, Mala præcocia, *Abrecock tree.*
Beryllus, *a precious stone called Beryl.*
Besasa, Ruta montana.
Beta, *Beets.*
Beta sicula, *white Beets.*
Beta fatua, Blitum, *wilde sine Orage, or Blite.*
Beta insipida. Blitum, *Blites.*
Beta nigra, *Black Beets.*
Beta rubra, *red Beets.*
Beta maluacea, Spinacea, *Spinage.*
Betisalca, Brionia nigra, *black Briony.*
Betonica, *Betony.*
Betonica alba officinarum, *Cowslips.*
Betonica, alba vera, *white Betony.*
Betonica altilis, *Betony.*
Betonica Pauli, Veronica, *Pauls Betony.*
Betula, *Birchtree.*
Betularia, Tormentilla, *Tormentil.*
Bdella, Hirudo, *a Horselech.*
Bdellion, *or* Bdellium, *the name of a gum.*
Biarum, Drocontium, *Dragons.*
Bibinella, Pimpinella, *Pimpernel.* Theodorus Gaza *taketh* Bibinella *for a kinde of woolblade, which is called* Thryallis *of* Dioscorides *and* Theophrast.
Bicion, Vicia, *Vetches.*
Bilis, *Gall.*
Bislingua, Uvularia, *Horse tongue.*
Bismalua, Althæa, *marsh Mallow.*
Bistorta.
Bitumen, *a kinde of naturall Lime or clay.*
Bitumen Judaicum, *Jews Lime.*
Bitumen liquidum, Naphta, *a kinde of clay.*
Blacca byzantia, *or* Blacta byzantia, *or* Blatta byzantia officinarum, *in Greek* Onix: *it is called of* Actuarius, *and* Nicolaus Mirepsus, *and the other new Grecians* Blattion, Conchyla Indica, Unguila odorata

rata, Unguis Aromaticus, Oſtracium Indicum, *and* Conchylii Indici operculum, *a Muſſle ſhell of India. This is brought hither out of India, as they are taken up out of the pooles, in the which the ſweet ſmelling leaves* Malabathra *grow. Of theſe there be two ſorts, the beſt are white and fat, theſe are found in the red ſea. The other are black, and are brought from* Babylon. *They are both well ſmelling, and while they be burning, they ſcent as ſtrong as the Beverced.*

Blechon, Pulegium, *Penniroyall.*

Blechion, Filix, *Fern.*

Bletus Nicandri, Felix, *Fern.*

Bletum, Blitum, *Blites.*

Blitum album, *white Blites.*

Blitum Indicum, *Blites of India.*

Blitum rubrum, *red Blites.*

Blitum ſylveſtre, *wilde Blites.*

Blitum Ungaricum, Blites of Hungary.

Boletus, *or* Boletus cervi, *a Muſhrum that may be eaten.*

Boletus cervi, *the ſame.*

Bolus Armenus, *Bole Armenack.*

Bombaſum, ſive Bombax officinarum, *Cotton.*

Bombax, Bombaſum, *the ſame.*

Bonifacia Herbariorum, Uvularia, *Horſe-tongue.*

Borrago, *Borrage.*

Borax officinarum, *Borrace.*

Brax officinarum, Chryſocolla factitia, *the ſame.*

Boſciſalvia, Salvia ſylveſtris, *wilde Sage.*

Botor Mariæ Arabum, Cyclaminus, *Sowbread.*

Brabela, Pruna Damaſcena, *Damask Prunes, Dammoſens.*

Brabyla Theocriti, *the ſame.*

Bracha cuculi Herbariorum, arthitica, *Cowſlips.*

Bradypepſia, *a long digeſtive.*

Brancha urſina officinarum, *Branck urſine.*

Branca urſina Italica, Italian *Branck urſine.*

Braſſica, Cabbage *or* Colewort.

Braſſica alba, *white* Cabbage.

Baſſica apiana, *a wrinckled* Cabbage.

Braſſica criſpa major, *the great wrinckled* Cabbage.

Braſſica cumana, *the broad red* Cabbage.

Braſſica cypria, *flowred Coleworts.*

Braſſica pratenſis, Acanthus ſylveſtris, *wilde Bearbeech, or Branck urſine.*

Braſſica marina, *Sea cole.*

Braſſica rubra, *a red* Cabbage.

Braſſica Sabaudica, *Savey Coleworts.*

Braſſica ſabellica, *criſped Colewort.*

Braſſica tritinia, *tanded Colewort.*

Brathy, *or* Brathys, *Sanine.*

Britannica, *Scurvygraſſe.*

Briſa Galeni, Secale, *Rye.*

Bromus Avena, *Oates.*

Brucus, Eruca, *Rocket.*

Bruſcus officinarum, Ruſcus *Kneeholm.*

Bruſcandula Herbariorum, Lupulus, *Hop.*

Bryaria, Tamarix, *the Tamariſk tree.*

Bryon, Lupulus, *Hop.*

Bryon, Muſcus, *Moſſe.*

Bryonia, *Bryony.*

Bryonia alba, *white Bryony.*

Brynia melæna, *black Bryony.*

Bryonia leuce, Vitis alba, *white Bryony.*

Bubonium, Aſter atticus, *Cadwort.*

Bubonium caeruleum, *blew Cadwort.*

Bubonium luteum, *yellow Cadwort.*

Bubonium Maſſilioticum, *Cadwort of Maſſilia.*

Buceras, Fœnum græcum, *Fenegreek.*

Bucheiden Arabum, Palma Chriſti.

Buchormarien Arabum, Cyclaminus, Panis porcinus, *Sowbread.*

Buſonaria, Parthenium, *Maiden weed.*

Bugloſſa, Bugloſſum, *Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſa domeſtica, Meſues, *Burrage.*

Bugloſſa Major, *the leſſer Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſa major officinarum, *the great Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſa officinarum, *Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſa ſylveſtris, *wilde Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſa ſylvatica Herbariorum, *the ſame.*

Bugloſſum, bugloſſa, *Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſum Dioſcoridis, *Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſum Gallicum, *French Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſum Hiſpanicum, *Spaniſh Buglaſſe.*

Bugloſſum Italicum, *Italian or great Buloſſe.*

Bugloſſa ſempervivens, *tame Buglaſſe.*

Bugloſſum ſylveſtre ſpinoſum, Herbariorum Echium, *wilde Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſum viperinum, Herbariorum Echium, *wilde Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſum rubrum, Herbariorum, Anthuſa, *red Bugloſſe.*

Bugloſſites, Vinum bugloſſatum, *Wine made of Bugloſſe.*

Bulbus agreſtis, *our Ladies Cowſlips.*

Bulimus, Buliſmos, *Cowhunger, or an unnatural appetite of meat.*

Bulimia, bulimus, *an unnatural hunger.*

Bunias, Napus, *Rape, or Navet.*

Bulapathum, Lapathum paluſtre, *Dock.*

Buris, *a kinde of ſore proceeding from Melancholy.*

Burſa

Burſa paſtoris, *Shepheards purſe.*
Butermariem, *or* Buthomarien Arabum, Cyclaminus, *Sow bread.*
Butyrum, *Butter.*
Buxus, *Box.*
Buzeicon Arabum, Palma Chriſti.
Byne, Maltum, *Maulte.*

CAcochymia, *a corruption of all the humors in the body.*
Cacoete, ulcus malignum, *an ulceration hard to be cured, a roding ulcer.*
Cactus, cinara, *Hartichock.*
Cadmia, *Tutty.*
Cadmia, Botryitis. *Tutty.*
Cadmia foſſilis, Lapis calaminaris.
Cadmia nativa, *a kind of Mineral.*
Cadmia officinarum, Cadmia ocina, *Tutty.*
Caducus morbus, *the falling ſickneſſe.*
Calamandrina, *Germander.*
Calamentum, *Mint.*
Calamintha agreſtis, *wilde Mint.*
Calamintha arvenſis, *the ſame.*
Calamintha felina, Cattaria, *Cats Mint.*
Calamintha montana, *wilde Mountain Mints.*
Calamites, Rana viridis, *a green Frog.*
Calamus aromaticus, Calamus, *a ſweet ſmelling Reed, which is brought out of* India: *We uſe the common* Calamus *root in ſtead of it.*
Calamus odortus, *or* Calamus unguentarius, *the ſame.*
Calcaria Conſolida regalis, *Larks ſpur.*
Calcatrepola, *Star thiſtle the leſſer.*
Calcedonius, *a precious ſtone.*
Calcifraga, Saxifraga, *Saxifrage.*
Calcifraga Scribonii Largi, Aſplenium, *Fearn.*
Calendula, Caltha, *Marigold.*
Calendula arvenſis, *wilde Marigold.*
Calendula multiplex, *double Marigold.*
Calendula ſylveſtris, *wilde Marigold.*
Carenum, *ſeek* carenum.
Calliphillum Hippocratis, Trichomanes, *Maidenhair.*
Callitrichum, Adianthum, *the ſame.*
Caltha *of* Virgil, Columel, *and* Pliny, Calendula, *Marigold.*
Caltha poetica, Calendula, *Marigold.*
Caltha Dioſcoridis, Chryſanthemum, *Golden knap.*
Caltha Plinii, *See* Caltha Virgilii.
Calycanthemum, Caprifolium, *Woodbinde.*
Calix Plinii, Cochleæ domus, *a Snailes ſhell.*
Calx conia, *Lime.*
Calx viva, *Quick lime.*

Calomelopodium, Praſſium, *Horehound.*
Camomilla officinarum, *Cammomil.*
Campe, Eruca, *Rocket.*
Campanella, Volubilis, Campanula, *the flower called Canterbury Bels.*
Campanula marina, Soldanella, *ſea foleſoot.*
Cammarus, Gammarus, *a Crab.*
Camphora, Camphura, *Camphire.*
Cannabis, *Hemp.*
Cancer, *a Crab.*
Cancer carcinoma, *the canker.*
Cancer marinus, *a ſea crab.*
Candela regis, Verbaſcum, *Woolblade, or Torch herb, or Longwort.*
Candelaria, *the ſame.*
Canella, cinamomum, *Cinamom.*
Canineca, colchicum, *Hermodactyles.*
Canina fames Cynorexia, *unnatural hunger.*
Canirubus Dioſcoridis, Cynosbatus, *Eglantine, or ſweet bryer.*
Canirsbus Theodori Gazæ, Cynosbatus Theophraſti, *the Hawthorn tree.*
Cania Plinii, Urtica minor, *the little nettle.*
Canna, Calamus, Arundo, *a reed.*
Canophicon, *Turbith.*
Canthabrica Plinii, Caryophillus hortulanus, *a Gilloflower, a Gelover.*
Canthabrum, Furfur, *Bran.*
Cantharides, *Cantarides, or Spaniſh flies.*
Cantharus, *or* Catherius, *a black Beetle.*
Caphura, Camphora, *Camphire.*
Capillaris, Capillus Veneris, *Venus hair.*
Capillus Terræ, Adiantum, *Maiden hair.*
Capillus Veneris Apuleii, *our Lady hair.*
Capillaris aurea Herbariorum, *yellow Maiden hair.*
Capnos, Capnus, Fumaria, *Fumitory.*
Capnos chelidonia, Pſeudariſtolochia rotunda officinarum', *Hartwort, or Ariſtology.*
Capnos phragmites, *the ſame.*
Caprago Apuleii, Eſula, *Spurge.*
Capparis, *Capers.*
Caprifolium, *Woodbinde.*
Caprifolium Italicum, Caprifolium perforatum, *Woodbinde of Italy.*
Caput monachi, Hedypnois, *yellow Cicory.*
Caput papaveris, Codia, *Poppy ſeed.*
Caputium barbarorum, headed Coleworts, Cabbage.
Carabe, Succinum, *yellow or White Amber.*

Carbo,

Carbo, Carbunculus, *a Plague ſore, or botch.*
Carbunculus, Anthracites, *a Carbuncle ſtone.*
Carbunculus amethiſtizon, Anthrax, *a Ruby.*
Carbunculus candidus, Spinalus, *Spinele.*
Carbunculus Alabandicus, Lapis Alabandicus, *a kinde of Ruby.*
Carbunculus gilvus, or Carbunculus pallidus, *a yellow Carbuncle.*
Carbunculus carchedonicus, or Carbunculus Garamanticus, Granatus, *a Granate.*
Carchedonius, Gemma, *the ſame.*
Carchoſilus, Carduus altilis, *Artichock.*
Carcinethron, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Carcinoma, Cancer, *the Canker.*
Cardamine, Naſturtium aquaticum, *Water creſſe.*
Cardamomum, *a ſpice comming out of* India, *There be two ſorts of this* Cardamomum, *the greatet, and the ſmall or leſſer. The greater we call graine,* Nicolaus Myrepſus *calleth it* Menigeta : Serapio *tearmeth it* Sacola, *and in Apothecaries ſhops it is* Granum Paradiſi : *the Arabians name the common* Cardamomum, Cacola, Heilbague, *and it the leſſer* Cardamomum *of the Arabians. The leſſer ſort is that which we commonly call Cardamom, it is called both in Greek and in Latine* Cardamomum, *of the ſimpliſts* Cardamomum Indicum, *of the Apothecaries* Cardamomum minus, *of the Arabians* Cardumenum, *or* Cordumenum. *If any one will uſe* Cardamomum, *let him alwaies take the leſſer.*
Cardamomum majus officinarum, Granum Paradiſi, *Greins.*
Cardamomum minus, *Cardamome.*
Cardamomum Indicum, *the ſame.*
Cardanum, Naſturtium, *Creſſe.*
Cardiaca, Mediana, *the Median, or Liver vein.*
Cardiaca, *Mother wort.*
Cardialgia, *grief or pain at the heart.*
Cardianthemum Herbariorum, Ocimaſtrum, *Behen.*
Cardopatium officinarum, Chameleon niger, *Milk Thiſtle.*
Cardumenum, *See* Cardamomum:
Carduus Altilis, Cinara, *Hartichock.*
Carduus amoris, Atractylis, *an herb called* Cnecus ſylveſtris, *baſtard Saffron, or Wilde Saffron.*
Carduus benedictus, *bleſſed thiſtle.*
Carduus Fullonius, Dipſacus, *Fullers Thiſtle, or Teaſel.*
Caduus hepaticus, Lactuca ſylveſtris, *Letice.*
Carduus marianus, *our Lady thiſtle.*
Carduus niger, *Milk thiſtle.*
Carduus prætenſis, Cinara ſylveſtris, *Wilde Artichock.*
Carduus ſanctus, *bleſſed thiſtle.*
Carduus ſtrobilus, Cinara ſativa, *Artichocke.*
Carduus ſativus, Chameleon niger, *milk thiſtle.*
Carduus varius, *the leſſer milk thiſtle.*
Carduus Veneris, Dipſacus, *Teaſel.*
Carenum, *or as* Braſſavolus *ſaith,* Calenum muſtum ad tertias coctum, *Muſt or new wine that hath been ſod till the third part remain.*
Carioſemen, Semen Carvi, *Caraway ſeed.*
Caricæ, Ficus paſſæ, *dryed Figs.*
Carium, Carum, *Caraway.*
Carnabadum, Carnabum, Carum, *Caraway.*
Carnabum, *the ſame.*
Carniglutinum *fleſh lime.*
Carolina, *Gentian.*
Carota, Carotis, *Parſnep.*
Carotis lutea, *a yellow Carrot.*
Carotis rubra, a red *Carrot.*
Carotis ſylveſtris, Paſtinaca vera, *a wilde Carrot.*
Carpathon, Caprifolium, *Woodbinde.*
Carpobalſamum, Fructus Balſami, the fruit of *Balſamum.* But that which is now commonly uſed in the Apothecaries ſhops, is not the fruit of the true *Balſamum*, but it is the ſeed of *Hypericon petræum*, which alſo in the time of *Dioſcorides* was uſed for true ſeed of *Balſamum*: and the unskilful Phyſitians as yet uſe it for the ſame in their compoſitions : but indeed with them all is one, for ſo it bear the name onely, it is good enough.
Carphos, *Fenegreek.*
Cartamus, Cnicus, *Wilde Saffron.*
Cartamus domeſticus, *Saffron.*
Cartamus ſylveſtris, *wilde Saffron.*
Cartilago, Chondrus, *a Cartilage or griſtle.*
Carvi officinarum, *Carawaies.*
Carya, Nux avellana, *a Haſel nut tree.*
Caryon, Juglans, *a Walnut tree.*
Caryon baſilicon, Nux regia, *the ſame.*
Caryon Indicum, Nux Indica, *An Indian nut.*
Caryon Perſicum, Nux Perſica, *A Nut tree.*
Caryon Theophr. Tithymalus myrtaceos, *Spurge.*
Carytes Apulei, *Spurge.*
Caryophyllum, *Cloves.*
Cariophyllata, *Avence.*

Cariophy-

Caryophyllus flos, *Carnations, and double Gilloflowers.*
Cariophyllus Arvenſis, *Carnations.*
Caryophyllus domeſticus, *Carnations.*
Caryophyllus hortulanus, *the ſame.*
Caſſamum officinarum, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Caſſia, *Caſſie.*
Caſſia Alexandrina, Caſſia fiſtularis, *Caſſie.*
Caſſiæ flos, *or* Caſſiæ medulla, *or* Caſſia cribrata, *prepared* Caſſie.
Caſſia lignea, Xylocaſſia, *a ſweet ſmelling kind like* Cinamom.
Caſſia herba, Lavendula, *Lavander.*
Caſſuta, *or* caſſita, *Bindeweed, or winde.*
Caſſia coronata, *Lavender.*
Caſtanea, *a Cheſtnut,*
Caſtanea aquatica, Tribulus aquaticus, *water Nuts.*
Caſtoreum, *the Bevercod.*
Caſtrangula, *Pilewort the great.*
Catagma, Oſſium fractura, *a fracture of the bone.*
Catapotium, Pillula, *a Pill, or a little ball.*
Catangelus, Ruſcus, *Kneeholm.*
Catarrhus, *a Rheume.*
Catharticum imperiale, *is a purging medicine ſo called.*
Cataputia major, Ricinus, *a tree called* Palma Chriſti.
Cataputia minor, Lathyris, *Spurge.*
Cataputia ſylveſtris, *wilde Spurge.*
Cathæron, Iris, *Flowerdeluce.*
Catapliris, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Catechomenium, *the ſame.*
Cathimia officinarum, Cadmia, *Tutty.*
Caucaſis, *baſtard Parſly.*
Cauda muris, Craſſula minor, *Blood ſtrange.*
Caulis, *a Colewort.*
Caulis Jovis, *Houſleek, or Senegreen?*
Cauſon, *or* Cauſus, *a hot burning Fever.*
Ceanothus Theophraſti, *Gooſeberry.*
Ceanothus aſper, *the ſame.*
Ceanothus levis, *Raſps.*
Cedria Theophr. *the great Juniper tree.*
Cedromelum, malum Citreum, *A Citron.*
Cedronella, Citraria, *Baum.*
Cedroſtis, vitis alba, *Bryony.*
Celidonia officinarum, *Celandine the greater, or Swallowes.*
Celidonia minor, Chelidonium minus, *Pilewort, or Figwort.*
Celyphos, Cochleæ domus, *a Snailes ſhell.*
Cenchros *or* Cenchris Milium, *Mill or Millet.*
Centaurium magnum, *the greater Centory.*
Centaurium minus, *the little Centory.*
Centimorbia, Centimorbium, *Herb twopence.*
Centinodia, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Centinodia minor, Ruella, *Knotgraſſe the leſſer.*
Centumcapita, Eryngium, *Seaholm or Sea holly.*
Centonica, *Wormſeed.*
Centumnodia, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Cepa, Crommium, *an Onion.*
Cepe, *the ſame.*
Cepa Pallacana Plinii, *Leeks?*
Cepæ Africanæ, *Onions of Africa.*
Cepæ Hiſpanicæ, *Spaniſh Onions.*
Cephalæa, capitis dolor, diuturnus, *a continual headach.*
Cephalalgia, capitis dolor, *headach.*
Cepa maris, *Sea onion.*
Cephalica, *the head vein.*
Cepuli, Chebuli, *a kinde of Mirobalans.*
Cera, *Wax.*
Cera montana, Piſaſphaltum, *a kind of Lime or Clay like Pitch.*
Cera terreſtris, Picibitumen, *the ſame.*
Ceraitis, Fœnum græcum, *Fenegreek.*
Ceraſa, *or* ceraſia, *Cherries.*
Cerſia amarella, *or* Laurea, *bitter Cherries.*
Cera Theophraſti, *or* Ceria, *A certain drink.*
Ceraſites, vinum ex ceraſis confectum, *Wine made of Cherries.*
Ceraſum, *a Cherry.*
Ceraſum Judæorum, *or* Ceraſum terræ, *A winter Cherry.*
Ceraſus, *a Cherry tree.*
Ceratia, *and* Ceratonia, *the fruit of the tree Siliqua.*
Ceratum, *or* Cerotum, *it is called of* Galen Cerotum, *or* Cerote: *This is a plaiſter made of oyl and wax, and is prepared diverſly.*
Ceratum album Galeni, *a cold or cooling plaiſter of* Galen.
Ceratum Sandalinum, *a ſalve made of Saunders.*
Cerebrum, *the brain.*
Cerefolium officinarum, *Chervil.*
Cerefolium columbinum, Herbariorum fumaria, *Fumitory.*
Cerefolium Felinum, Herbariorum capros, *Fumitory.*
Cerefolium Hiſpanicum, Chærephyllon, *Spaniſh Chervil.*
Cerefolium ſylveſtre, Pſeudomirrhis, *wilde Chervil.*
Cerviocellus, Ophioctonum, *a kinde of Parſenep.*
Cervicornula tenella, *Harts Horn.*

Cervina

Cervina radix, *Sil venenuptium.*
Cervirubus, Rubus Idæus, *Raspis or Rymbois.*
Cervus volans, *Escarbot.*
Ceruſa *or* Ceruſſa, Plymmichium, *Ceruse or white Lead.*
Ceſtrum, Betonica, *Betony.*
Ceterach, *or* Ceterachum Arabum, Scolopendrium, *Harts tongue.*
Chærephyllon, *or* Chærefolium, *Chervil.*
Chæbice Scrapionis, *seu Folefoot.*
Chalcantum, Vitriolum, *Copperas or Vitriol.*
Chalix, Silex, *a Flint.*
Chalybs, *or* Chalyps, *Steel.*
Chalyps, *the same.*
Chamæace, Ebulus, *Dwarf-wort, Bloodwort, or Wallwort.*
Chamæciſſus, Hædera terreſtris, *Ale-hoofe, or Harehoof.*
Chamæcyparuſſus, *Heath Cypers, or dwarfe Cypers.*
Chamædaphne Plinii, Pervinca, *Periwinkle.*
Chamedaphne Dioſcoridis, Laureola, *Laurel, Lowry, or Lorel.*
Chamædrys aquatica, Sphondium, *water Germander.*
Chamædrys, Triſſago, *Germander.*
Chameleuce, Populago alba, *Coltsfoot.*
Chmæmelum *Cammomil.*
Chamæmelum ſoetidum, Herbarjorum, Parthenium, *Feverfew, Maidenweed, or Mother wort.*
Chamæmyrtus, Ruſcus, *a prickled Broth, of ſome Butchers Broom; of others Knee-holm.*
Chamærhodon, *a certain wilde Rose.*
Chamæpeys, *ſive Cypenis.*
Chamærops, Chamædrys, *Germander.*
Chamæplatanus, Spondylium, *Beares-foot.*
Chamæleon niger, *the blacke Thistle.*
Chamæleon albus, Carlina, *the white or milke Thistle.*
Carabe, Succinum, *Amber.*
Characias Dioſcoridis, *wilde Spurge.*
Chartamus, *or* Cartamus, *bastard Safflower.*
Chebuli, *a kinde of Myrobalanum.*
Cheiri *vel* Cheyri, Leucoium, *Stock-Gilliflowers.*
Chelidon, Hirundo, *a Swallow.*
Chelidonium minus, *Pilewort, or Figwort.*
Chelidonium majus, *Celandine.*
Chelone, Teſtudo, *a Tortoiſe.*
Chelonium herba, Cynoglossus, *Houndes tongue.*
Chenopodium Herbarjorum, Botrys, *Oke of Jerusalem.*
Chenopodium majus, *the greater Daiſie.*
Chenogoſſum Lobelii, *wilde Bryony.*
Chenomalacha, Malua anſerina, *Gooſe mallowes.*
Chermes, Granum tinctorum, *Cochenil.*
Chermeſinum, *Crimson.*
Cherva Arabum, Ricinus, Palma Chriſti.
Cheyri, *See* Cheiri.
Chilophyllus, Supercilium Veneris, *Tarrow.*
Chiragra, *the Gout in the fingers.*
Chironia, Centaurium magnum, *great Centory.*
Chironios, Ampelos, vitis chironia, *Bryony.*
Cholera, Cholerica paſſio, *ſo called of Aurelian* Felliſlua paſſio, *that is, a great pain in the belly with pricking and ſhearing, and avoiding of Choler both by vomit and ſtool. The unskilful Phyſitians and others take* Cholera *for* Bilis: *and over all this book* Bilis *is taken for* Cholera.
Chondrus, Cartilago, *a griſtle.*
Chryſanthemum, *Goldknap.*
Chryſelectrum, Electrum aureum, *yellow Amber.*
Chryſitis Plinii, Chriſocome, *Goldknap.*
Chryſitis, Lithargyrium auri, *Litharge or burnt Lead.*
Chryſitis gemma, Saphyrus aurea, *a yellow Saphire.*
Chryſocolla, *Borax.*
Chryſocolla aurifabrorum factitia, *Borax.*
Chryſocome, Amaranthus, Calaminthe, *Goldknap.*
Chryſosachanum, *Orage.*
Chryſomela, *or* Chryſomilla, *yellow Quinces.*
Chryſolithus, *a kinde of Jasper.*
Chryſogonum Tormentilla, *Tormentil.*
Chryſophorum Dioſcoridis, Electrum aureum, *yellow Amber.*
Chyline, Cychmium, *Pease bread.*
Chylus, *a certain white juice that cometh of meat and drink digested in the ſtomach.*
Cicadæ, *Graſshoppers.*
Cicer, *Cich or Cich peaſe.*
Cicer columbinum Apulejj, Tithymalus ſolisequus, *Spurge.*
Cicer columbinum Dioſcoridis, *the white Cicher.*
Cicer candidum, *or* album, *the ſame.*
Cicerbita, Souchus aſpera, *Sow thiſtle.*
Ciceroule Plinii, Lathyrus, *Cetheling, Cerres, Peaſon cerres, pety Cichs.*
Cichla, Turdus, *a Blackbird, or Oſſel.*
Cici, Ricinus, Palma Chriſti.
Cicla officinarum, Beta, *Beets.*
Cichorea officinarum, Chichorium, *Cicory.*
Cichorium, *the ſame.*

Ciconia,

Ciconia, *a Stork.*
Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Cicutaria, Myrrhis, *wilde Cheveril, Cax, Kex, Aſſepa-ſley, or mooke Cheveril.*
Cidonium, *a Quince.*
Cilia, *the eyelids.*
Cimex, *a ſtinking Worm breeding in wood.*
Cinara *or* Cynara.
Cinarus *or* Cynarus, *an Artichock.*
Cinamomum, *Cinamom.*
Cine, Ruſcus, *the box tree.*
Cinis, *Aſhes.*
Cinnabaris Indica, Sanguis Draconis, *A liquor gum brought out of Africa.*
Cinnabaris metallica, *Cinoper.*
Cinnabaris metallica nativa, *a certain red ſtone or Cinoper.*
Cinnabaris metallica factitia, *common or counterfeited Cinoper.*
Cinnabaris foſſilis, *Cinoper of the mine.*
Cinnabaris artificialis, *counterfeited Cinoper.*
Cinnabrium, Cinnabaris, *Cinoper.*
Cinnabrium nativum ſive foſſile, *Cinoper of the mine.*
Cinnamomum ſive.
Cinnamum, *Cinamom.*
Cirsinalis, *Maiden hair.*
Ciſſion, Aclepias, *Swallow-wort.*
Ciſſus, Hedera, *Ivy.*
Citera, ſive Citrus, *a Citron or Orenge.*
Citreum malum *the ſame.*
Citrago, Citraria, Citronella, *Balm.*
Citrullus, *a Citrul.*
Citrus, Citrea, *a Citron or Orenge tree.*
Citta, Pica malacia, *the affection of a longing in women with childe.*
Claretum *or* Claretum, *Claret or ſpice wine.*
Clavis Aquatilis Nymphæa, *water Lilly, or water Roſe or Nenuphar.*
Clavus Veneris Apulei, Nymphæa, *the ſame.*
Clema, Palmes, *the branch of a Vine.*
Clema, Pityuſa, *Spurge.*
Clematis herba. *and*
Clematis Daphonides, *Perwinkle.*
Clibodium, Parietaria, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Climia officinarum, Cadmia, *Tutty.*
Clinophodiontes Apulei, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Clibodium, Helxine, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Clibatis Nicandri, *the ſame.*
Clibetin Nicandri, *the ſame.*
Cnicus Cartamus, *wilde Saffron.*
Cnecus, Cartamus, *wilde Saffron.*
Cnicus ſylveſtris, *wilde Saffron.*
Cnecus campeſtris, *a wilde Saffron.*
Cneoron, *Seek* Caſſia cosmeria.
Cnopodium, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Coagulum, *the rennet of a beaſt, that turneth milk.*
Coagulum capreola, *A Kids maw.*
Coagulum Leporis, *A Hares maw.*
Cobaltum metallicorum, Cadmia, *Tutty.*
Cobius, *Spurge.*
Coccali Hippocratis, Nuces Pineæ, *Pingles.*
Coccogni dium, Granum Thymeleæ. *In this book you muſt not take it for* Mezereon, *that is Lorel, but for* Lathyris, *which is Spurge.*
Coccum infectorum, *Grain wherewith cloth is grained.*
Coccus Theophraſti, Paralius, *ſea Spurge.*
Coccus Baphica, Granum tinctorum. *Grain wherewith cloth is grained.*
Coccimela, *A Plumtree.*
Coccimelea agria, *Sloes.*
Coccimelon, Prunum, *a Plum.* Diphilo *taketh* Coccimelon *for a Citron.*
Cochlearia, Braſſica marina, *ſea Foleſoot.*
Cochlearia paluſtris, Plantago aquatica, *water Plantain.*
Codia, Papaveris caput, *Poppy huſks.*
Coelidonium chymiſtarum, Chelidonium. *Celandine.*
Coete, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Colatypus avis, *a Stare.*
Colchicum, *Dogs bane, Dogs ſtones, or meadow Saffron.*
Colica *the Colick.*
Colla, Gluten, *Glew.*
Collum draconis, *Dragons.*
Colon, *or* Colum, *or* inteſtinum colon, *a great gut ſo called.*
Colocynthis, *a kinde of wilde Gourd purging phlegme.*
Colophonia radix, *Scammony.*
Colophonium Scammonium, *the ſame.*
Coloſtra *or* Coloſtrum, *Beeſtings.*
Columbaris, Vervena, *Vervein.*
Colubrina officinarum, Britanica, *Harts tongue.*
Colubrina vera, *Dragons.*
Colubrina magna, *great Dragons.*
Colubrina minor, *the leſſer Dragons.*
Colubrina paluſtris, *Water Cuckoo pit.*
Columbrina, Verbena, *Vervein.*
Columbrina, Dracuntium, *Dragons.*
Coluthea Theophraſti, *Sene.*
Colus ruſtica, Attractylis, *Wilde Saffron.*
Colyrea Theophraſti, *a kinde of nuts called* Piſtacium.
Columbus Oliva in condimentis, *preſerved Olives.*
Coma aurea, Chryſocome, *Goldknap.*

Comites,

Cometes, Cataputia ſylveſtris, *wilde ſpurge.*
Comitialis morbus, Epilepſia, *the falling ſickneſſe.*
Concha marina, *ſea Muſſels.*
Conchilii Indici operculum *or* Tegumentum, *Muſſel ſhels of* India. *Seek* Blacca Byzantia.
Condiloma, *A ſwelling of the fundament.*
Conion, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Confectio lætificans Almanſoris, *A certain Confection ſo called.*
Confectio lætificans Galeni, *ſuch another confection as that before.*
Confectio Anacardina, *A confection ſo termed.*
Confectio Aromatica roſata, *called alſo* Aromaticum roſatum.
Confectio de gemmis, *the Confection of gems or precious ſtones.*
Confectio Hamech, *A certain purge ſo called.*
Confectio Juſtina, *A Confection ſo named.*
Confectio de Xyloaloe, *A confection made of* Lignum Aloes.
Conſerva major, Symphytum alterum, *Comfrey.*
Confirma major, *Comfrey.*
Congelatio, Stupor, *benumbing, unſenſibleneſſe.*
Conila Apuleii, Origanum, *Marjoram.*
Conigiulum Catonis, *Bindeweed.*
Conſerva Bugloſſæ, *the Conſerve of Bugloſſe.*
Conſerva Hyſſopi, *Conſerve of Hyſſope.*
Conſerva Meliſſæ, *Conſerve of Baulm.*
Conſerva Nenupharis, *Conſerve of Water Lillies.*
Conſerva florum paralyſis, *Conſerve of Cowſlips.*
Conſerva Pæoniæ, *Conſerve of Pyony ſlips.*
Conſerva Roſarum, *conſerve of Roſes.*
Conſerva, Anthos, *Conſerve of Roſemary.*
Conſerva primulæ veris, *conſerve of Primroſes.*
Conſerva Salviæ, *Conſerve of* Sage.
Conſerva Spicanardi, *Conſerve of Spikenark.*
Conſerva Trifolii acetoſi, *conſerve of wood Sorrel.*
Conſerva Violarum, *conſerve of Violets.*
Conſiligo Plinii, *Longwort.*
Conſolida, Symphytum, *Comfrey.*
Conſolida lactaria, *Mouſear.*
Conſolida media Herbariorum, *Setwall or Bugle.*
Conſolida media vulnerariorum, *the ſame.*
Conſolida minor, Bellis minor, *Daiſies.*
Conſolida media, *Bugle or Setwall.*
Conſolida petræa, *Comfrey.*
Conſolida pyrifolia, *wilde Beets.*
Conſolida regalis, *Larks ſpur.*
Conſolida Saracenica.
Convolvolus, Ciſſampelos, *Bindeweed.*
Convolvolus marinus, *ſea Windweed.*
Convulſio, Spaſmus, *A Convulſion or crampe.*
Conyſa, *wilde Mints.*
Corrago, *Burage or Bugloſſe.*
Corallia, *and* Corallium, Anagallis mas, *he Pimpernel.*
Corallium, *Coral.*
Corchorus Theophraſti, Anagallis mas, *red or he Pimpernel.*
Cordis palpitatio, Cordis ſaltus, *panting or beating of the heart.*
Corda Barbarorum, Nervus, *A Sinew.*
Cordumenum Arabum, Cardamomum Græcorum, *Cardamom.*
Coriandrum, *the herb Coriander.*
Corianon, *or*
Corion, *the ſame.*
Corona regia, Melilotus, *Melilot.*
Corona terræ, *Alehoof or high.*
Corona virginea, Clematis daphnoides, *Perwincle.*
Cornu cervi, *Harts horn.*
Cornus, *Dog tree, or Gadriſe.*
Corna, *the fruit of the ſame.*
Cornu Monocerotis, *the horn of a Unicorn.*
Corſalvium Apuleii, Salvia, *Sage.*
Corrigiola, *Knotgraſſe.*
Corrigiola minor, *Knotgraſſe the leſſer.*
Corruda, Aſparagus ſylveſtris, *wilde Sperage.*
Corruda, Gazæ, Aſparagus Regius, *Sperage.*
Corrudago Gazæ, Aſparagus ſylveſtris, *wilde Sperage.*
Corylus, *an Haſel or Filberd tree.*
Cortex thuris, *the bark or rinde of Frankincenſe.*
Coryza, *the poſe.*
Corymbites, *a kinde of Spurge.*
Coſta Aſinina, *Plantain the leſſer, Ribwort.*
Coſta equina, Plantago acuta, *the ſame.*
Coſtum, *or* Coſtus, *commonly called* herba Mariæ.
Corinus, Oleaſter, *a wilde Olive tree.*
Cotonea malus, *A Quince tree.*
Cotoneum, *A Quince.*
Cotoneum majus, *the greater Quince.*

Cotula fœtida, *Wilde Camomill.*
Cotum officinarum. *Cotton.*
Crambe, Braſſica, *Cole, or Coleworts.*
Crambe cephalote, Braſſica capitata, *the headed Coleworts or* Cabbage.
Crambion, Pityuſa, *Spurge.*
Cranium, *the ſcull or brain pan.*
Craſſamen, *or* Craſſamentum vini, *wine Lees.*
Craſſula minor, *Prickmadam.*
Craſſula major, *Houſeleek.*
Cratæa, Chelidonium majus, *Celandine the greater, or Swallowes herb.*
Cridion, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Cremor lactis, *Cream of milk.*
Creſpinus, *a Barberry tree or buſh.*
Creſſio Barbarorum, *Creſſes.*
Creta, *Chalk.*
Crinanthemum, Lillium, *a Lilly.*
Crinis vitis, *hairs of the Vine.*
Crinon, Lillium, *a Lilly.*
Crite, Hordeum, *Barley.*
Crocum, *or*
Crocus, *Saffron.*
Crocus fatuus, Cartamus, *Wilde Saffron.*
Crocus hortulanus, *tame or garden Saffron.*
Crocus Saracenicus, Cartamus, *wilde Saffron.*
Crocus ſylveſtris, *wilde or field Saffron.*
Crommium, Cepa, *an Onion.*
Croſmis, Salvia, *Sage.*
Croton, Ricinus, Palma Chriſti.
Cruciata, *Gentian.*
Crux Chriſti herba, Aconitum ſalutiferum, *Wolfsbane.*
Cuculus herba, *Nightſhade.*
Cucumer, *or*
Cucumis, *a Cucumber.*
Cucumer Anguinus, *or*
Cucumer Aſininus, *the wilde Cucumber.*
Cucumer erraticus, *or*
Cucumer ſylveſtris, *the ſame.*
Cucurbita, *or*
Cucurbita eſculenta, *a Gourd.*
Cucurbita ſylvatica, Colocinthis, Coloquintida, *or the wilde Gourd.*
Cuminum, *or* Cyminum, *Cumin.*
Cuminum Alexandrinum, *Ammy.*
Cuminum cornutum, *Larks ſpur.*
Cuminum regium Hippocratis, *Ammy.*
Cuminum ſylveſtre alterum Dioſcoridis, *larks ſpur, or wilde Cumin.*
Cuminum Sativum Hortulanum, Romanum, *tame or garden Cumin.*
Cunila Satureia, *Savory.*
Cunila ruſtica, *wilde Savory.*
Cunila bubula, *Marjoram.*

Cunila Gallica Apuleii, *the ſame.*
Cunilago, Serpillum, *wilde or running Thyme.*
Cupreſſus, *a Cypres tree.*
Cupreſſus hortulana, Abrotanum fœmina, *Southernwood.*
Cupreſſus ſylveſtris, *a Juniper tree.*
Cupula glandis cittarus, *Acorn cups.*
Curcuma, Cyperus Indicus.
Curallium, Coralium, *Coral.*
Cuſcuta officinarum, Caſſita, *Windeweed.*
Cyanos, lapis Cyaneus, *a Turquoyſe.*
Cybelon, Viola martia, *a Violet.*
Cybeles, Pomum Martialis, Conus, *a Pine apple.*
Cyclamen, orbicularis, *Sowes bread, or rape Violet.*
Cyclaminus, Cyclamen, *the ſame.*
Cyclaminus minor, *Rape Violet the leſſer.*
Cydonia malus, *A Quince tree.*
Cydonia majus, *the greater Quince.*
Cydonium nothum, *a baſtard Quince.*
Cyminites, vinum ex Cymino confectum, *Wine made of Cumin.*
Cyminum, Cuminum, *Cumin.*
Cyminum dulce, Aniſum, *Anniſe.*
Cyminum ſiliquoſum, *A kinde of Cumin.*
Cynanthemis, Parthenium, Motherwort.
Cynanche, Angina, *the Squincy.*
Cynosbatus Theophraſti, *or*
Cynosbatus Dioſcoridis, *the Eglantine or Sweet bryer.*
Cynocentrum Heſychii, *a wilde Roſe.*
Cynocephalæon Heſychii, Papaver nigrum, *the black Poppy.*
Cynocephalion Dioſcoridis, Pſilliium, *Fleawort or Fleabane.*
Cynogala, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Cynogloſſa, *or* Cynogloſſum; *Hounds tongue.*
Cynogloſſa minor, *the leſſer Hounds tongue.*
Cynomazum, chameleon niger, *the black Thiſtle, or Cameleon.*
Cynomorphus, Crocus, *Saffron.*
Cynomoron Galeni, Roſa canina, *the wilde Roſe.*
Cynopleuron, Platago acuta. *Rib wort.*
Cynoſrhodon, Roſa canina, *a Bryer Buſh.*
Cynoſpaſton Plinii, Canirubus Gazæ, *the Hawthorn tree.*
Cynoſpaſtos Aeliani, Pæonia, *a Pyony.*
Cynorexia, Appetitus caninus, *a greedineſſe and an unnatural appetite of meat.*
Cynozolum, Chameleon niger, *a ſtinking Thiſtle.*
Cynoxylon, Cardopaticum, *Wolfes bane.*

Cypa-

Cyparissus, Cypressus, *A Cypresse tree.*
Cyparissus hortulana, *Southernwood.*
Cyparissia, Tithymalus, Cyparissimus, *Spurge.*
Cyperus, *A kinde of Galangal.*
Cyperus rotundus, *the round Galangal.*
Cyperus longus, *or*
Cyperus Romanus, *the long Galangal.*
Cyperis *Galangal.*
Cyprus, Ligustrum, *Privet.*
Cytinus, flos mali punicæ sativæ, *the bud or flower of a Pomgranate.*

D

Dactyli, Palmulæ, *Dates.*
Dactylion, Scammonium, *Scammony.*
Dactylitis, Aristolochia magna, *Aristology.*
Dactylus Idæus, Herba Peonia, *Pyony.*
Diacrydion, Lachrymula, *is the juice of the herb Scammony.*
Dagridion officinarum, Dacrydion, *Scammony.*
Daphne, Laurus, *A Bay tree.*
Daphnelæon, oleum Laurinum, *oyl of Bayes.*
Daphnides, Baccæ lauri, *Bay Berries.*
Dardanis, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Dapsipodium, Viola martia, *a Violet.*
Daucus, *or*
Daucum, *A Carrot.*
Decoctio officinarum, *A decoction of boyling of the Apothecaries.*
Decoctio aperitiva, *A decoction that openeth obstructions.*
Decoctio communis, *A common decoction, which is made of two sundry wayes at the Apothecaries, with the which we mix Electuaries or Syrupes to prepare and purge the humours.*
Decoctio fructuum, *A decoction of Fruits, which is commonly made of the Apothecaries.*
Decoctio pectoralis, *A decoction for the breast.*
Decoctio Senæ, *A decoction of Sene leaves.*
Defrutum, Mustum ad Tertias decoctum, *new Wine sod till one third part remain.*
Delirium, *doting, or raving.*
Dementia, *Madnesse.*
Dentrites, Coralium, *Coral.*
Dentritis Apuleii, Tithymalus solisequus, *Spurge.*
Dendrodes, *and* Dendroides Dioscoridis, Tithymalus arboreſcens, *A kinde of Spurge.*
Dendrolibanum, *Rosemary.*
Dendromalache, Althea, *The Marsh Mallow.*
Dens Elephanti, *an Elephants tooth.*
Dens Leonis herba, Hedypnois, Dandelion, *Priests crown, wilde or yellow Cicory.*
Desipientia, *foolishnesse.*
Decuos, Mustum, *Must, or new wine.*
Diacalamentum, *or*
Diacalamenta, *A certain confection made of Mints.*
Diacaryon, *or*
Diacarydion, Rob nucum officinarum, *A Conserve of Walnuts.*
Diacapparis, *or*
Diacapparum, *A Conserve made of the roots of Capers.*
Diacatholicon, *a purging Confection so termed.*
Diacinnamomum, *A Confection of Cinamom.*
Diacinnamomum cum Rhabarbaro, *An Electuary of Cinamom and Rubarb.*
Diachylon, Emplastrum Diachylon, *a plaister or salve so termed.*
Diacitonidon officinarium, *or* Diacitoniton simplex, Diacidonium, *and* Diacidonites, *a conserve made of Quinces.*
Diacitoniton compositum, *or* cum speciebus officinarum, *a compounded conserve of Quinces.*
Diacitoniton laxativum, *or* Solutinum officinarum, *a purging conserve of Quinces.*
Diacodion, *a confection made of Quinces.*
Diacostum, *a conserve so called.*
Diacrocoma, Diacurcuma officinarum, *a certain confection also called* Diacrocum.
Diacrocum, *the same.*
Diacurcuma, *the same.*
Diacydonites, *seek* Diacitoniton.
Diacydonium *seek* Diacitoniton.
Diacydonium Catharticum, Diacidonium solutivum, *seek* Diacidonium laxativum.
Diacyminum, *or* Diacuminum, *a confection of Romish Cumin.*
Diaireos *or* Diairis Solomonis, *a confection made of Ireas or the root of Flower-deluce. It is thought that* Solomon *was the first author of it.*
Diareos *or* Diairis simplex, *another confection of the root Ireas, and is also called* Diareos, *or* Diairis Nicolai.
Diairis simplex, *the same.*
Diairis Solomonis, *seek* Diareos.
Dialacca, *a confection so called.*

Dianthon, or Dianthos, *A confection made of Roſemary flowers.*
Dianthus, *the ſame.*
Diabetes, Diamnes, or Diampus, *an unnatural and extreme making of urine.*
Diagalanga, *A Confection made of Galangal.*
Diamanna, Electuarium ex Manna, *An Electuary of Manna.*
Diamargariton Calidum, or Diamargaritum Avicennæ, *a hot Confection of Pearls.*
Diambra, or Diambarum, or Diampe, *A Confection of Amber greaſe.*
Diahyſſopum, *a confection of Hyſſope.*
Dialthea, unguentum Dialtheæ, *a plaiſter of marſh Mallowes.*
Diamintha, *A conſerve of Mints.*
Diamnes, or Diampnes, *an unnatural yielding of urine.*
Diamoron, Rob mororum, *a confection of Mulberies.*
Diamoſcum, *A confection of Muſk.*
Diamoſcum amarum, vide Diamoſcum.
Diampnes, vide Diamnes.
Diaolibanum, or Electuarium de Olibano, *an Electuary of Frankincenſe.*
Diagridium officinarum, Diacrydion Scammonea præparata, *prepared Scammony.*
Dianiſum, *A confection of Anniſe.*
Diapapaver, Eclegma de papavere, or Loch de papavere, *An Electuary, or lick of Poppy.*
Diapenidion, *A Confection of Sugar Pennets.*
Diapenidion ſine ſpecibus, *the ſame without ſpices.*
Diapenſia, Sanicula, *Sanicle.*
Diapliris officinarum, Electuarium pleriſarcoticon, or Electuarium pleriſarchigon, *a confection ſo named.*
Diaphœnicon officinarum, Diaphœnicon, Electuarium ex dactylis, *a purging Electuary of Dates.*
Diaprunis Laxativa or Lenitiva officinarum Diaprunum ſolutinum, *a purging confection of Prunes.*
Diaprunum, vide Diaprunis.
Diaprunum ſimplex, *the ſame.*
Diaphragma, ſeptum tranſverſum, *the Midriffe, a skin that ſeparateth the ſtomach and breaſt from the belly.*
Diapompholigos officinarum, Unguentum Diapompholigos, *an ointment made of Tutty.*
Diapraſſium, *a confection of Horehound.*
Diarrhodon abbatis, *A Confection of Roſes.*
Diarrhodon ſine ſpecibus, *A ſimple Confection of Roſes.*
Diaria, vide Ephemera.
Diarrhæa, profluvium alvi, *a lax or flix of the belly.*
Diaſatyrion, *A Confection made of Ragwort.*
Diaſenna, *a confection of Senna.*
Diaſpoliticon, *a confection ſo called.*
Diathamaron, *a certain confection.*
Diatragagantum calidum, *A warming Confection.*
Diatrionſantalon, *A confection of Saunders, called* Triaſandali *at the Apothecaries.*
Diatrionpipereon, *a confection made of the three kindes of Pepper.*
Diatragagantum frigidum, *A cooling confection.*
Diaturbith, or Diaturbethum, *a confection of Turbith.*
Diaturbith cum rhabarbaro, *a confection of Turbith with Rubarb.*
Diaxyloaloes, *a confection of* Lignum Aloes.
Diachomenum Theophraſti, Peonia, *Pyony.*
Dictamum, or Dictamus, Dictamus alba, *French Diptamer.*
Didymi, *the ſtones of men or women.*
Digitellus Plinii, *Prickmadam.*
Digitus citrinus Avicennæ, *Prieſts ſtones, or Ragwort.*
Digitus Veneris, Nymphæa, *the water Lilly.*
Diſmidion, Manipulus, Faſciculus, *a handful.*
Dyoſciamus, Hyoſcyamus, *Henbane.*
Dioſporus, milium ſolis, *Mill, or Millet.*
Dios Anthos, Viola Trinitatis, *herb Trinity, or Harts eaſe.*
Diptamus, or Diptamum officinarum, Polemonium, *white Diptamer.*
Dipſacus, *Teaſel, or Fullers Thiſtle.*
Dipyrites Hippocratis, Panis biſcoctus, *Biſket.*
Diſcus ſolis Chymiſtarum, *A kinde of Quickſilver.*
Dithyambrion, Hyoſcyamus, *Henbane.*
Dolia, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Dolzegine Italorum, *ſweet Galangal.*
Domine miſerere, Iliaca paſſio, *A pain in the ſmall guts.*
Dorcis, Diptamus Cretica, *Diptamer of Candia.*
Dorycnium, *a venemous herb, with the which darts were wont to be poyſoned; it groweth by the ſea coaſt, and hath been taken for Hemlock.*
Dracontea, or Dracontia, *Dragons.*
Draco in inſulis Maderiæ & Canariæ arbor eſt, ex qua ſanguis draconis defluit, *the tree whoſe juice is called* ſanguis draconis.

Dracos

Dicos, Faſciculus manualis, Manipulus, *a handful: it is alſo called* Dragma.
Dracunculus, Dracontium, *Dragons.*
Dracunculus aquaticus, *water Dragons.*
Dracunculus Henicophyllos, *the leſſer Dragons.*
Dracunculus polyphyllos, *Serpentine the greater.*
Dracunculus minor, *the leſſer Serpentine.*
Dracunculus major, *the greater Serpentine, or Dragons.*
Dragma, *a drachme.*
Dragantum officinarum, Tragacantha, vel Tragacanthum, *the gum of Tragacanth.*
Dragontea, Dragontium, *Dragons.*
Drangea Nicolai Mirepſi, Tragea, Tragea, *a powder uſed for ſauce.*
Droſera Herbariorum, *and* Droſium Alchimillæ, *Sanicle the great.*
Droſomeli, *Honydew.*
Dryocolaps Heſychii, *and of others* Dryocolaptos, Picus martius, *a Star.*
Dulcichinum, Traſum, Cyperus eſculentus, *ſweet Galangal.*
Duodenum, *the ſtomach gut.*
Duracinum, Perſicum, *a Peach.*
Dura mater Barbarorum, Pericranium, *the skin that is next to the brain pan.*
Dyſpnœa, Spirandi difficultas, *purſiveneſſe.*
Dyſpnoici, *they that are purſie, or have a ſtreightneſſe of breath.*
Dyſpepſia, Concoctio depravata, *ill concoction.*
Dyſenteria, Cruenta alvi dejectio, *the bloody flix.*
Dyſoſmon, Scordium, *water Leeks.*
Dyſuria, Urinæ difficultas, *a ſtopping of the urine.*

E.

EBiſcus Althæa, *marſh mallowes.*
Ebenotrichon, Adiantum, *Venus, Mayden, or our Lady hair.*
Ebor, dens Elephantis, *Elephants tooth, or Ivory.*
Ebulus. *Dane or Bloodwort.*
Ebur, *Ivory.*
Echetroſis Hippocratis, Vitis alba, *Bryony.*
Echidna, Vipera, *a Viper.*
Echinus, Erinaceus, *a Hedghog or Irchin.*
Echis, Vipera.
Echiogloſſum, Ophiogloſſum, *Adders tongue.*
Echium, Bugloſſa ſylveſtris, *Wilde Bugloſſe.*
Eclegma, Illinctus, Ecligma, *a lick or confection, which is licked up without any chewing.*
Ecligma de papavere, vide Diapapaver.
Ectamum Hippocratis, Veratrum album, *the white Ellebor, or Neeſewort.*
Edera, Hedera, *Ivy.*
Effluxio, *a flix of the ſeed or ſperm.*
Eglenteria Herbariorum, Roſa canina, *A bryer buſh or wilde Roſe.*
Egne Dioſcoridis, Igne Hippocratis, Ilatis, *Wood, or new Aſh of Jeruſalem.*
Eilbagus Arabum, Cardamomum majus officinarum. *Gresns.*
Elaphoboſcum, Cervicocellus, *a kinde of Parſnep.*
Elate, Abies, *a Firr tree.*
Elaterium, *the juice of wilde Cucumbers.*
Elcratis Arabum, Cattamus, *wilde Saffron.*
Electarium, Electuarium, *a Confection, an Electuary, or compounded medicine.*
Electrum, Succinum, *Amber.*
Electrum aureum, Chryſelectrum, *yellow Amber.*
Electuarium Arantiorum, *an Electuary of Orenges.*
Electuarium Aureum, Electuarium de ovo, *An Electuary called the golden Egg.*
Electuarium de baccis lauri, *An Electuary of Bayberries.*
Electuarium Bezoarticum, Electuarium veneno reſiſtens, *an Electuary of the Beſoar ſtone for poyſon.*
Electuarium de Calamintha, *an Electuary of Horſe Mints.*
Electuarium de caſtoreo, *A confection of the Bevercod.*
Electuarium Catholicum, vide Diacatholicon.
Electuarium de Citro, *an Electuary of Citrons.*
Electuarium de corticibus Arantiarum, *An Electuary of Orenge peels.*
Electuarium de Epithymo, *A confection of Dodder.*
Electuarium lenitivum, *A lenitive Electuary.*
Electuarium de paſſulis, *An Electuary of Raiſons.*
Electuarium ad melancholiam Avicennæ, *An Electuary of* Avicenne *againſt Melancholy.*
Elect. Mirobalanorum, *a confection of Mirobalans.*
Elect. Montagnanæ oculiſtæ, *an Electuary to comfort the ſight.*
Electuarium de ovo, vide Electuarium aureum.
Electuarium Plirifarchicon, vide Diapliris.

Electuarium de Pfillio, *an Electuary of Fleawort.*
Electuar. ex Prunis, vide Diaprunum.
Electuar. de ſcoria ferri, *A confection of Iron.*
Electuar. Nucum, *an Electuary of Walnuts.*
Electuar. vitæ Pauli Rixii.
Elenium, *Elecampane.*
Eleoſelinum, Paludapium, *Smallage.*
Elitis, Parietaria, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Elephantiaſis, Elephantia, *the Leprey.*
Elleboraſtrum, *a kind of Neeſewort.*
Elleborus Veratrum, *Neeſewort.*
Elleborus albus, *the white Ellebor, or Neeſewort.*
Elleborus niger, *the black Ellebor.*
Eluxatio, Exarthrema, *luxation, or putting out of joynt.*
Elymus, Panicum, *Panick.*
Emblici, vide Mirobalani Emblici.
Emmanes, Hyoſcyamus, *Henbane.*
Emphyſodes, vide Febris Emphyſodes.
Empelitici, vide Mirobalani Emblici.
Emplaſtros, Emplaſtrum, *a plaiſter or ſalve.*
Emplaſtrum album coctum officinarum, or Emplaſtrum de Ceruſſa, *a ſalve or plaiſter made of Ceruſe or White Lead.*
Emplaſtrum Apoſtolicum officinarum, Emplaſtrum triapharmacum, vulgo Apoſtolicum.
Emplaſtrum Diaquilon officinarum, Emplaſtrum diachilon, *a ſalve ſo called.*
Emplaſtrum diaquilon cum gummis officinarum, or Emplaſtrum diachilon magnum, *the ſame ſalve with the gums.*
Emplaſtrum de cruſta panis, *a ſalve of the cruſt of bread.*
Emplaſtrum de baccis lauri, *a ſalve of Bayberries.*
Emplaſtrum de Galbano, *a ſalve of the gum* Galbannm.
Emplaſtrum griſeum, or Emplaſtrum de lapide Calaminari, *a Salve made of Calamine ſtone.*
Emplaſtrum de Meliloto, *a ſalve of Melilote.*
Emplaſtrum de Muſcilaginibus, Emplaſtrum de mucaginibus, *a ſalve made of Muſcilages.*
Emplaſtrum de pelle Arietis, *a ſalve made of a Rams-skin.*
Emplaſtrum Triapharmacum, vide Emplaſtrum Apoſtolicum.
Emplaſtrum viride Chirurgorum, *a green ſalve of the Chirurgions.*
Emproſtotonos, pronus raptus, *A kind of Crampe.*
Empneumatoſis, Condenſatio Spiritus plurimi in ventriculo, *ventoſity or windineſſe in the ſtomach.*
Empyema, Purulenta excreatio, *A ſpitting of corrupt matter out of the cheſt of the body.*
Endivia, Intubus, *Endive.*
Eglenteria, Roſa ſylveſtris. *Eglantine.*
Enneaphyllon, Conſiligo.
Entonum, Helleborus albus, *Neeſewort.*
Ephemera Febris, *a light fever that continueth but one day.*
Ephemerum Colchicum, or Ephemerum deleterium, Ephemerum hethale, *Hermodactyls.*
Ephialtia, or Ephialtum Ætii, Pæonia maſcula, *a kinde of Piony.*
Ephialtes, or Epialtes, Suppreſſio nocturna, *A diſeaſe called the Mare.*
Ephydron, Cauda equina, *Horſe tayl.*
Epialtes, vide Ephialtes.
Epiglottis, Sublinguium, *the cover of the throat, the flap.*
Epigloſſum, Uvularia, *Horſe-tongue.*
Epiceras Hippocratis, Fœnum græcum, *Fenegreek.*
Epidemia, Peſtis, *the Plague, or Peſtilence.*
Epiphyllocarpon, Hippogloſſon, *double tongue.*
Epilepſia, Comitialis morbus, *the falling ſickneſſe.*
Epilepticus, *he that hath the Falling ſickneſſe.*
Epithymum or Epithymus, *Dodder, that is,* Caſſita thymi.
Equapium, *Smallage.*
Equicauda, Hipparis, *Horſetail.*
Equiſetum, *the ſame.*
Equitium, Hippuris. *Horſetail.*
Eracantha, Carduus amoris, *Wilde Saffron.*
Ereſtedanum, Theophraſti, Centimorbia, *herb two pence.*
Ergaſima, *A kinde of Mirrhe.*
Erica, *Heath.*
Eriſitales, Cauda muris, *ſtone crop.*
Eruca, Euzonium, *White Muſtard ſeed.*
Eruca ſylveſtris, *Wilde Rocket.*
Ervum, Orobus, *Tares, or bitter Vetches.*
Eryngium, *Sea holm, or Sea holly.*
Eryngium marinum, *Sea holm.*
Eryngium minus, Coronopus Rondoletii, Spina Stellæ, *Eryngus the leſſer.*
Eryſimum Theophraſti, Camelina Herbariorum.
Eryſipelas, *An inflammation called the Roſe.*
Eryſiſceptrum, Ciperus, *wilde Galangal.*
Erytreus, Lapis Luciani, Margarita, *a pearl.*

Erythro-

Erythrodanum, Rubia, *Madder.*
Eſula, Tithymalus, *Spurge.*
Eſula Amygdalina, Cataputia ſylveſtris. *wilde great Spurge.*
Eſula arboreſcens, *great Spurge.*
Eſula camoſa, *wilde Spurge.*
Eſula lactariola, *ſea Spurge.*
Eſula major, Pityuſa, *the great Spurge.*
Eſula dulcis, *a kinde of Spurge.*
Eſula latifolia, *broad leafed Spurge.*
Eſula marina, *ſea Spurge.*
Eſula minor, *the leſſer Spurge.*
Eſula papaveracea, *a kinde of Spurge.*
Eſula petræa, *ſtone Spurge.*
Eſula ſoliſequa, *or* ſolſequia, *A kinde of Spurge.*
Eſula vallaris, *the common Spurge.*
Eſula, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Euphraſia, *Eyebright.*
Euphraſea cærulea, Myoſitis.
Eunuchium, *headed Lettice.*
Eupatorium, *Agrimony.*
Euphorbium, *the juice or gum of an herb alſo called* Euphorbium.
Euphroſynon, Bugloſſa, *Bugloſſe.*
Euphroſine, Euphraſia, *Eyebright.*
Eupetalon, *Lorel, or Laury.*
Euphroſinum, *Burage, or Bugloſſe.*
Eupteron Apuleii, Trichomanes, *Maden hair.*
Eureos, lapis Judaicus, *a kinde of ſtone.*
Euſine, Pariietaria, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Eutaticon, Satyrium Erythronium, *a kinde of Rugwort, or Dogs ſtones.*
Eutyglycea Theophraſti, *Licorice.*
Euzomum, *or* Euzomus, *Rocket.*
Exarthrema, *luxation*, vide Eluxatio.
Excerta, Vipera, *a Viper.*
Exuvia Viperæ, *a Vipers skin.*

F.

FAba, cyanyus, *a Bean.*
Faba Jovis, Hyoſcyamus, *Henbane.*
Faba lupina, Lupinus, *Lupines.*
Faba ſuilla, Hyoſcyamus, *Henbane.*
Fabium, Chelidonium, *Celandine.*
Fabulum, Hyoſcyamus, *Henbane.*
Fagus, *a Beech tree.*
Falernum, Vinum Apianum, *Muſcadel.*
Far cluſinum, *ruffeard wheat.*
Farfara, Bechium, *Folefoot.*
Farfarago, Tuſſilago, *the ſame.*
Farfarella, *the ſame.*
Farina volatilis, *mill duſt.*
Farrago, Secale, *Rye.*
Faſciculus manualis, *a handful.*
Faſeolus, *French Beans.*
Faſeanus, *a Feaſant.*
Faſtidium, Faſtidium ſtomachi Ciceroni, Ciborum horror, Aureliano, Faſtidium in cibis, Plinio, Anorexia, *lothing of meat.*
Febres errabundæ, *or* erraticæ, *a wandring Ague.*
Febres languidæ, *a faint or lither ague.*
Febres phrycodes, *Agues that come with heat about the ſhoulders.*
Febres putridæ, *Agues which are cauſed of putrifaction of the blood in the veins.*
Febris, *in Greek* Pyretos, *an ague.*
Febris ardens, Cauſos, Cauſon, Cauſodes, *a very hot and burning ague.*
Febris aſtringens, *an ague that bindeth the body.*
Febris continua, *or* continuata Seneches, *A continual Ague.*
Febris Diaria, *or* Febris Ephemera, *or* Ephemeros, vide Ephemera.
Febris Emphyſodes, *An Ague, which by reaſon of heat raiſeth bliſters in the mouth.*
Febris Ictericdes, *An ague that bringeth the yellow jaundiſe.*
Febris Hepiala, *or* Epiala, *by* Actuarius, Epialus, *A flegmatick ague.*
Febris Hemitritæa, A *baſtard Tertian Ague.*
Febris Hectica, *A Conſuming Ague.*
Febris Lippyria, *An Ague with an extreme outward cold, and vident inward heat.*
Febris maraſmodes, marcor, Febris hectica cum marcore, *a pining Ague.*
Febris quartana, *A Quartane or fourth dayes Ague.*
Febris quotidiana, A *continual Ague.*
Febris Rhoodes, *An ague with a flix.*
Febris tertiana, A *Tertian or third dayes ague.*
Febrifuga, fel terræ, *Centory.*
Fecula, Alumen fecis, *Calcined wine Lees.*
Fel Draconis Chymiſtarum, A *kinde of Quickſilver.*
Felicula, Polypodium, *Polypody.*
Feltaria minor, Sanicula, *Sanicle.*
Ferri rubigo, *the ruſt of Iron.*
Ferri fex, *or* Ferri ſcoria, *or* Ferri ſtercus, *the refuſe of Iron.*
Fetrugo, *the ruſt of Iron.*
Ferrumen cæmentorum, *white lime.*
Ferrula ſylveſtris, Thapſia, *Fennel giant, or herb* Sagapene.
Feſcera Arabum, vitis alba, *White Bryony.*
Feſirin Arabum, vitis alba, *the ſame.*
Fex vini, *wine lees.*
Fex vini uſta, vide Fecula.
Ficulna folia, *Figtree leaves.*
Ficus, *a Figtree.*
Ficus paſſæ, *dryed Figs.*
Ficus, Mariſca, Sycon *and* Sycoſis, *the pyles or hemorrhoides in the Fundament of a man.*

Felicula, Polypodium, *Polypody.*
Filicula aſellorum, Onopretium, *Maiden hair.*
Filipendula, Oenanthe, Saxifraga rubea, *Dropwort.*
Filius ante patrem, Lyſimachia corniculata, *or* Siliquoſa, *looſe ſtrife, or water Willowes.*
Filix, Pteris, *Fern.*
Fiſticum, *a kinde of nut called alſo Piſtacium.*
Fiſtula, *A continual iſſue.*
Flammula officinarum, Ranunculus rotundus, vide Flammula.
Flammula Cazæ, Herba trinitatis, *Harts eaſe.*
Florecaulis *flowered* Cabbage.
Flos angelicus, auricula muris minor, *the leſſer Monſear.*
Flos anſerinus Bdellium majus, *Daiſies.*
Flos divi Johannis, *S. Johns wort.*
Flos Jovis, *Harts eaſe.*
Flos Garyophyllorum officinarum, *Gilloflers.*
Flos lactis, *Creame.*
Flos divæ Magdalenæ, Spica romana, *herb Magdalene.*
Flos regius, *Larks ſpur.*
Flos maris, *Parmacitty.*
Flos Roſarum, Anthera, *the yellow ſeed within the Roſe.*
Flos tunicus, *Gilloflers.*
Fœniculum, *Fennel.*
Fœniculum porcinum, Peudanum, *Dog-Fennel.*
Fœnum græcum, *Fenegreek.*
Folia lauri, *Bay leaves.*
Folium, Folium Indicum, Malobathrum *or* Malabathrum, Betrum, Batrum, *or* Betrum Indicum, ſeu Batrum Indicum. *This is called of the Arabians* Tembul, *or* Tembucum, *of the Greeks* Malabathron, phyllon, phyllon Indicum, *of* Ætius phyllon Scylmatos, *Indian leaf. It is a ſmelling leaf of India, which there is found in the ſtanding pools, and driveth on the water without any root. The inhabitants there gather them, and dry them. Our Apothecaries uſe the leafe of the Cinamom tree in ſtead of it, although the right* Malobathrum *may eaſily be gotten: but the common error will hardly be amended.*
Folium Indicum, vide Folium.
Folliculus bombycis, *Silk-worms neſts.*
Fontanella, *a Fontanel.*
Formica, *an Ant.*
Formica, Herpes, *a corroding ulcer.*
Formica miliaris, Herpes miliaris, *the ſame.*
Fragaria, *Strawberry leaves.*
Fragula, *the ſame.*
Fragum, *a Strawberry.*
Fraſſinula, *or* Fraſſinella, *or* Fraſſinella germanica, *white Diptamer.*
Fraſſinula Italica, Polygonatum, *Solomons Seal.*
Franus, *an Aſh tree.*
Fraxinus montana, *the leſſer Beach.*
Fraxinus pumila, *Diptamer.*
Frons, *the forehead.*
Fuga dæmonum S. *Johns wort.*
Fuligo camini, *ſoot of the chimney.*
Fumaria, *Fumitory.*
Fumus terræ, *the ſame.*
Fungus Abietis, *A Muſhrome of the Firre tree.*
Fungus laricis, *a Muſhrome of the Turpentine tree.*
Fungi, *Toadſtooles.*
Fungi Juniperi, *the Muſhrome of the Juniper tree.*
Funis arborum, *Ivy.*
Furfur, *Branne.*
Furfures capitis, *the white duſt of a mans head.*
Furunculus, *a byle.*
Fuſcus agreſtis, Atractylis, *wilde Saffron.*

G

GAgates, *Jeat.*
Gaiacum lignum, vel Guaiacum, *A tree growing in the new found Iles.*
Galbanum, *or* Galbanus, *in Greek* Chalbane, of Pliny Stagonitis, *of the Arabians* Chene, *and* Bezard; *of the Apothecaries* Galbanum: *it is the juice or gum of the herb* Metopium, *which groweth in* Syria.
Galanga, Cyperus Babylonicus, *Galangal.*
Galanga major, *the great Galangal.*
Galanga ſylveſtris, *wilde Galangal.*
Galanga ſylveſtris rotunda, *the round wilde Galangal.*
Galanga ſylveſtris longa, *long wilde Galangal.*
Galeobdolon, Galiopſis, *a kinde of dead nettles.*
Galbalus, Pilula, Nux Cupreſſi, *a Cipreſſe Nut.*
Galla, *Galles, the fruit of an oak: but thoſe that grow on our Oaks will not be dryed, they are called of* Galen Onicicidæ, *and* Gallæ Aſininæ.
Galli criſta, *Clary.*
Gallia muſcata, *a ſweet ſmelling confection of the Apothecaries ſo called.*
Gallicus morbus, *the French Pocks, the great diſeaſe, the Crinkomes, or Venus badge.*
Gallitricum, *Clary.*

Galli-

Gallitricum ſylveſtre, *wilde Clary.*
Gammarus, *A crab.*
Gangytes, Gagates, *Jeat.*
Garyophyllata officinarum, *herb bennet, herb bleſſed, or hares eye.*
Garophyllus officinarum, *Cloves.*
Gariophyllata Herbariorum, *herb Bennet.*
Gariophyllea Herbariorum, *little or ſingle Gelofers.*
Gariophyllum, *or* Gariophyllus, *Cloves.*
Garemantites, Granatus, *a kinde of Ruby.*
Gaſter Nicandri, Braſſica capitata, *headed Cabbage.*
Gaſter, Ventriculus, *the ſtomach.*
Gararia, Napita ſelina, *Nep.*
Galatina cidoniorum. *Marmalade.*
Gemelli, Parotides, *Impoſtumes behinde the eares.*
Gemma, Lapillus pretioſus, *a Gem.*
Genicularis, *Valerian.*
Geniculata, Polygonatum, *Solomons ſeal.*
Genichella, *the ſame.*
Geniliculum, or Geniculus, *the ſame.*
Geniculum latifolius, *or* Geniculus major, *the greater Solomons ſeal.*
Geniculus anguſtifolius, or Geniculus minor, *the leſſer Solomons ſeal.*
Genitale cervi, *a Harts piſle.*
Genitalis, Gladiolus, *Flags.*
Geniſta, *Broom.*
Genitura Martis, *Spurge.*
Genitura Herculis, *a Box tree.*
Gentiana, *Gentian or bitterwort.*
Gentiana cruciata, *the ſame.*
Georgiana, *a kind of Valerian.*
Geoſtitis, *the leſſer Houſleek.*
Geranium alterum Dioſcoridis. Pes columbinus, *Pigeons foot.*
Geranium Robertianum, *Storks bill, Pinkneedle, Sheepheards bodkin.*
Gethyllis *or* Getium, *Leeks.*
Gethyum, *the ſame.*
Geum Plinii, herba benedicta, *herb bennet.*
Gieduar, Zedoaria, Anthora, *Sedwary.*
Gigartho, Vinacea, *the kernels that are in the Grapes or Raiſons.*
Gingiber, Zingiber, *Ginger.*
Gingidium, Cerefolium Hiſpanicum, *a kind of Chervil.*
Gith, Nigella, *the herb Gitte.*
Githago, Pſeudomelantium, *Cockle.*
Gladiolus, *Sedge* or *Gladen.*
Gladiolus Arvenſis, *the ſame.*
Gladiolus luteus, Iris lutea, *the yellow Flower-deluce, or Gladen.*
Gladiolus paluſtris anguſtifolius, *the leſſer Gladen.*
Gladiolus paluſtris latifolius, *the greater gladen.*
Glæos, Viſcum, *Birdlime.*
Glandis calix, *or* Glandis putamen *the outward Acorn huſk.*
Glans Dryobalanus, *an Acorn.*
Glans Ægyptiaca, *or* Glans unguentaria, *the fruit of a tree alſo called Ban.*
Glans Jovis, *a Cheſtnut tree.*
Glans ſardonia, *the ſame.*
Glan quercina, *an Acorn.*
Glans ungentaria, vida Glans Ægyptiaca.
Glans, *a Suppoſitory.*
Glaſtum, Iſatis, *Woad.*
Glaſtum minus, *wilde woad.*
Glaſtum ſativum, *woad.*
Glaſtum ſylveſtre, *wilde woad.*
Glaucium, *is called of the Arabians* Memithe: *it is the juyce of a ſtrange herb growing in Syria, it is uſed onely in this in* Sief Memithe, *which is called of the Greeks* Collyrium diaglaucion.
Glebra armena, *Bole Armoniack.*
Glechon, Pulegium, *Pennyroyal.*
Glechon agrion, *wilde Mints.*
Gleſſum, Succinum, *Amber.*
Gleucos, Muſtum, *new wine.*
Globulus Cypariſſus, *a Cypreſſe nut.*
Gluten, *common glew.*
Gluten avium, *or* Gluten aucupum, *Birdlime.*
Gluten auri, Chryſocolla, *Beras.*
Gluten ligni, *Joyners glew.*
Gluten taurinum, *or* Glutinum, *glew.*
Gludis, Pæonia, *a Piony.*
Gyleeraton, Glycyrrhiza, *Licorice.*
Gylcyphyron, *the ſame.*
Glycyrrhiza, *Licorice.*
Glycis Pauſaniæ, *ſodden wine.*
Glycyſide or Glyciſis, *Piony.*
Glycyſites, *or* Glycyſidites, Vinum ex Pæonia confectum, wine made of *Pionyes.*
Glythris Athenæi, *ſodden wine.*
Gobius Apuleii, *wilde Spurge.*
Golſonium, Rapum, *a Rape root.*
Gongyle, *or* Gongylis, *the ſame.*
Gongylis agria, Rapum ſylveſtre, *a wilde rape root.*
Gonorrhæa, *the running of the reins.*
Gorgonia, Corallium, *a Coral.*
Gorgonium, *Millet.*
Gorgylon, Pauli Turtylium,
Goſſipium, *or* Goſſipitium, *Cotten.*
Gramen, Agroſtis, *Graſſe.*
Grana, vulgo Granum tinctorium, *Conchnil.*
Granata acidodulcia, *or* Granata muſa, *a kind of Pomgranat.*
Grana turdorum, *Iuniper-berries.*
Granatum officinarum, *or* Granatum malum, *a Pomgranat.*
Granatus officinarum, Garbunculus garamanticus.

Granum

Granum chermesinum, *Couchenil.*
Granum infectorium, *the same.*
Granum maris rubri divi Hieronimi, Margarita, *a Pearl.*
Granum paradisi, Cardamomum officinarum majus, *Grains.*
Granum tinctorium, *Couchenil.*
Guaiacum lignum, *a tree growing in the new found Isles so called.*
Ginguedes Arabum, *the veins in the nick.*
Gula, *the throat.*
Guilioco, Cortex exterior nucum, *the outward shell of a Walnut.*
Gummi Arabicum, *Gum Arabick.*
Gummi Cerali, *the Gum of a Cherry tree.*
Gummi Juniperi, *the gum of the juniper tree.*
Gummi Sarcocolla, vide Sarcocolla.
Gynacium, Stimmi, *Antimony.*
Gypsum, or Gypsus, *a plaister.*
Gkrenia, Ruscus, *Kneeholme.*

H

HAbilla, *or* Habiola Herbariorum, Lupulus, *Hops.*
Hæmoptois, *or* Hæmaptisis, *a spetting of blood.*
Hæmorrhois, Sanguinis profluvium per venas ani, *the bleeding of the Hemorrhoides, or Piles.*
Hæmorrhoides verrucales, *the Piles.*
Hæmorrhoides nasi, *an ulceration of the nose.*
Hæmostasis Democriti, Symphytum, *Comfry.*
Hæmagonum, Pæonia, *a Piony.*
Hæmictinos, Scordium, *water Leeks.*
Hæmatites, sanguinarius lapis, *a blood-stone.*
Halica, Chrondrus, *a kind of Corn.*
Halicacabites, *winter* Cherries.
Halicastrum, *Wheat.*
Halinectera, *Olives.*
Halicacabus, Solanum rubeum, *winter Cherries.*
Halipastos, Oliva conditanea, *Olives.*
Halmas, *the same.*
Halsionæum, *and* Halsionium, Spuma maris, *the froth of the sea*
Halos anthos, *Parmacity.*
Harmala, Ruta sylvestris, *wild Rue.*
Harmagrion, Dracunculus, *Dragons.*
Harmel, Besasa, *the same.*
Harpax, Succinum, *Amber.*
Harundo Enodis, Calamus fistularis, *kind of reed without joynts, which hath been used in stead of quils to make pens.*
Harundo Sepiaria, *or* Harundo Sepicularis, *a kind of reed.*
Hartanita officinarum, Cyclamimus, *Sowes bread.*
Hastula regia Apulcii, Rosa Autumnalis, *winter Roses.*
Hastula Dioscoridis, Asphodelus, *the same.*
Hedera humilis vel terrestris, *Alehoof, or Ivyhoe.*
Hectica, *a wasting or consuming fever.*
Hedera pluviatilis, vide Hedera humilis.
Hederalis, Asclepias, *Swallow wort.*
Hedypnois, *Dandelion, or yellow Cichory.*
Hedyosmus, *Garden mints.*
Heilbague, *or* Heilbane Arabum, Cardamomum majus officinarum, *Grains.*
Heilbane, *the same.*
Helenium, *Elecampane.*
Hellobarane Actii, *Knotgrasse.*
Heliotropius lapis, Jaspis viridis, *a Jasper stone.*
Helix, Capreolus vitis, *the little tendrils of vines.*
Helleborum, *or* Helleborus, *Neesewort.*
Helleborum, nigrum, *the black Neesewort.*
Helmintobotane vide Zeduaria.
Helxine, Perditium, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Hemerocallis, *Daffodil.*
Hemicrania, *or* Hemicræne, *a kind of headach, when but one side of the head is grieved.*
Hemionium, Asplenium, *Scalfern*, or *Fingerfern.*
Henne, Arabum, Cyperus, alcanna.
Hepar the *Liver.*
Hepaticus, *one that is diseased in the Liver.*
Hepatis oppilatio, *an obstruction, or oppilation of the Liver.*
Hepatica, *the Liver vein.*
Hepatica herba, *Agrimony.*
Hepatica fontana, *Liverwort.*
Hepatica saxatica, *stone Liverwort.*
Hepiala, vide Febris hepiala.
Hepsema, Mustum coctum, *sodden new Wine.*
Heptapluron, *broad Plantaine.*
Heptaphyllon, Tormentilla, *Tormentil.*
Heracleotis Calamachi, or Herachea Galeni, *the Load stone.*
Herba divi Anthonii, *Self-heal.*
Herba Apoplectica.
Herba Apostematica, *Scabious.*
Herba apum, Melissa, *Baulm.*
Herba Arthritica *Cowslips.*
Herba Basilica, Ocimum, *Basil.*
Herba benedicta, Valeriana, *Valerian.*
Herba calicularis, *Henbane.*
Herba capillaris, *Venus, Maiden, or Lady hair.*
Herba capillaris Apuleli, *the same.*
Herba casta, Pæonia, *Piony.*

Herba

Herba clavellata, *Harts eaſe.*
Herba crinita Apuleii, *Maiden hair.*
Herba cincinnalis, *Vervein.*
Herba columbaris, *wilde Cipreſſe.*
Herba cochlearis, Braſſica marina, *ſea-Cole.*
Herba centonica officinarum, Abſinthium marinum, *ſea Wormwood.*
Herba divæ Mariæ Magdalenæ, Phu ponticum, *a kind of Valerian.*
Herba divæ Otiliæ, Conſolida regalis, *Larks ſpur.*
Herba divi Petri, *the leſſer Gentian.*
Herba divi Quirini, *Horſehoof.*
Herba divi Georgii, Phu ponticum, *a kind of Valerian.*
Herba divi Ruperti.
Herba divi Valentini, pæonia alba, *a kind of Piony.*
Herba flammea, *Harts eaſe.*
Herba flavea, Melilotum nobile, *Melilote.*
Herba fortis, Conſolida Saracenica.
Herba fullonum, *Teaſel.*
Herba cederalis, Aſclepias, *ſwallow-wort.*
Herba hirundinaria minor, the leſſer Celandine or *Hylewort.*
Herba inguinalis, Bubonium, *an herb called After.*
Herba Jovis, Sedum, *Houſleek.*
Herba lactaria, Tithymalus, *Spurge.*
Herba lanaria.
Herba leporina, *a kind of Mallowes.*
Herba Mercurii, Mercurialis, *herb Mercury.*
Herba margarita, *Daiſies.*
Herba militaris, Millefolium, *Yarrow, or Noſebleed.*
Herba mula, Aſplenium, *Fingerfern.*
Herba muralis Celſi, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Herba ocularia, *Eye-bright.*
Herba ophthalmica, *the ſame.*
Herba orbicularis, Cyclaminus, *Rape violet.*
Herba panarcii, Herbariorum, Lamium album, *a kind of dead nettles.*
Herba paralyſis, *Cowſlips.*
Herba pavonis, Perſicaria, *Ars ſmart.*
Herba pedicularis, Staphiſagria, *Lice-bane.*
Herba perdicalis Apuleii, Perdicium, *Perſicary.*
Herba pulicaris, Perſicaria, *Ars-ſmart.*
Herba primi floris, herba paralytica, *Primroſes.*
Herba pyrifolia, ſeu perifolia Herbariorum, Pyrola, *wilde Beets, or winter green.*
Herba Roberta, *and* herba Ruperti, *herbe Robin.*
Herba regia, *Baſil.*
Herba ſanguinalis, Polygonum, *Knot graſſe.*
Herba ſanguinalis mas, *the male Knot graſſe.*
Herba ſanguinalis fœmina, Polygonum fœmina, *Knotgraſſe female.*
Herba ſardonia, Ranunculus, *Crowfoot.*
Herba ſcelerata, *Idem.*
Herba ſcorbuti, Braſſica marina, *Scurvygraſſe.*
Herba ſalutaris Apulcii, *Roſemary.*
Herba ſolis Herbariorum, *St. Johns wort.*
Herba ſolis, Ætii polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Herba Sophiæ herbariorum.
Herba ſortis, Conſolida ſaracenica.
Herba ſtataria, Peucedanum, *Hogs fennel.*
Herba ſacra, verbena, *Vervein.*
Herba Trinitatis, *harts eaſe.*
Herba toparia, *Bearfoot.*
Herba tonitrui, Sedum, *houſleek.*
Herba tunica officinarum, *Geloſers.*
Herba tunica Gordonii Ocimaſtrum.
Herba tunica Minfridi, *Geloſers.*
Herba turca, Carduus benedictus, *or bleſſed thiſtle.*
Herba Thymiena Herbariorum, *Thyme.*
Herba vermicularis, Sedum minus, *Prickmadam.*
Herba virginea, Parthenium, *Feverfew.*
Herba vitraria, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Herba vitri Avicennæ, Perdicium, *the ſame.*
Herba urinaria Herbariorum, Hedipnois, *Dandelion.*
Herba urceolaris, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Herculeus morbus, *the falling evil.*
Hermodactylis Arabum, *Dogsbane.*
Hermodactylus Dioſcoridis, Pentaphyllon, *a kind of Dogs bane.*
Hermodactylus Actuarii, *the root of Beben.*
Hermodactylus Nicolai Myrepſi, of the ſame.
Hermodactylus albus, *white Beben.*
Hermodactylus Rubeus, *red Beben.*
Hernia, Ramex, *a rupture.*
Hernia Oſcheno, *a great rupture.*
Hernia Oſcealis, *the ſame.*
Herpacantha, Acanthus *Bearfoot*
Herpes, *a corroding ulcer, or wolf.*
Herpes exedens, *the ſame.*
Heriſypila, Eriſypelas, *an inflammation called the Roſe.*
Herpillum, Serpillum, *wilde tyme, or Ladies bedſtraw.*
Heſperis, Viola lutea, *Wallflowers.*

Hibiſcus, *a kind of Mallow.*
Hieracopodium, Lychnis ſylveſtris,
Hierapachii, *a purging confection ſo called.*
Hierabotane Dioſcoridis, Verbena, *Vervein.*
Hierabotane Scribonii, Betonica, *Betony.*
Hieralogodion officinarum, *or*
Hieralegadii, *the name of a purging Confection.*
Hiera picra, *or*
Hiera picra ſimplex, *a very bitter confection.*
Hiera Ruffi, *a purging confection.*
Hiera Athenæi, *and*
Hiera Theophraſti, *the Flower-deluce.*
Hieromyrtus, Ruſcus, *Knee-holme.*
Hilbane, Granum paradiſi, *Grains.*
Hippocras fontis officinarum, Aqua Hippocratica, *Hippocras.*
Hippocras officinarum, Vinum Hippocraticum, *the ſame.*
Hippocraticum vinum, *the ſame.*
Hippociſtis officinarum, vide Hypociſtis.
Hippolapathium, *a Water Dock.*
Hippogloſſum, *Adder's tongue.*
Hippomalache, Malva equina, *horſe Mallowes.*
Hippoſelinum, *Angelica.*
Hippopleuron, *Hounds rib, a kind of Plantain.*
Hippuris, equiſetum, *Horſe tail.*
Hirundinaria, *Horſeech.*
Hirudo, *the ſame.*
Hirundo, *a Swallow.*
Hiſpanach Arabum, Spinachia, *Spinage.*
Hordeum, *Barly.*
Hordeum Galaticum, *Rice.*
Hordei cremor, Ptiſana, *Barly husked and ſodden in water.*
Humeralis vena, *the ſhoulder vein.*
Humerus, *the ſhoulder.*
Humor Scrupeus poetarum, Podagra, *the Gout.*
Humulus, Lupulus, *Hop.*
Hyacinthus, Helodias, Porphyrantes, a purple flower that we call Crowtoes. There are four kinds of it, two of them (as the greater and leſſer) are moſt in uſe: the other two ſorts I will paſſe over for brevity ſake. The firſt kind hath narrow leaves like the wilde Onion, with a ſtalk about one ſpan in height: upon this on every ſide grow flowers of a light purple colour, much like the Amethyſt, or Jacinct ſtone: on the top of all are the flowers ſomewhat leſſer, and ſadder in colour. This is the right *Hyacinthus* of *Dioſcorides*; it groweth commonly in tilled grounds, and of ſome is called hogs Onion, becauſe Hogs greatly delight in eating of it: the Herbariſts call it *Hyacinthus major*, and *Bulbus porcinus.* The other is ſomewhat leſſe, and groweth in woods; it flowreth in March, and hath pretty little blew flowers, not much unlike the May Lillies, or Liriconfancy, the root is like little Onions. This is called in ſome places blew May flowers; of the Herbariſts *Hyacinthus minor*, *Allium caninum*, and *Bulbus canius.* *Palladius* alſo maketh mention of a blew *Hyacinthus.* In like ſort is the yellow Lilly *Lillium luteum*, or *Hemerocallis*, the Hyacinthus of *Ovid*, which *Theocritus* calleth *Hyacinthus ſcriptus*, to make it differ from the right *Hyacinthus*: the Herbariſts call it *Hyacinthus poetarum.* *Virgil* calleth it *Hyacinthus ſuave rubens*, and *Hyacinthus mollis*; and *Pauſanias* termeth it *Corhoſandalon.*
Hyacinthus major Herbariorum, *or*
Hyacinthus Dioſcoridis, *Crowtoes*, vide Hyacinthus.
Hyacinthus minor Herbariorum, vide Hyacinthus.
Hyacinthus Palladii, vide Hyacinthus.
Hyacinthus poetarum, Hemerocallis, vide Hyacinthus.
Hyacinthus Ovidii, vide Hyacinthus.
Hyacinthus mollis Virgilii, *yellow Lillies.*
Hyacinthus ſcriptus Theocriti, vide Hyacinthus.
Hyacinthus ſuave rubens, vide Hyacinthus.
Hyacinthus, gemma, a *Jacinct.*
Hydrargyrum, Argentum vivum, *Quick-ſilver.*
Hydrargyrum nativum, vomica liquoris æterni & rerum omnium venenum Plinio vocatur, *Quick-ſilver of the Mine.*
Hydrargyrum factitium, *Quck-ſilver which is made of Cinoper.*
Hydrolapathum, Lapathum paluſtre, *water Docks.*
Hydromeli, aqua mulſa, *Mead.*
Hydrophobus, a rabido cane morſus, *he that is bitten of a mad Dog: he that is afraid of water.*
Hydropper, Perſicaria, *Arſe-ſmart.*
Hyppoſelinum, Apium paluſtre, *Lovage, Aliſander.*
Hyophthalmus, Aſter atticus, *the herb* Bubonium.
Hyoſciamus, *Henbane.*

Hypericum, S. *Iohns Wort.*
Hypericum petræum, *is that which is now taken for* Carpoblasamum, *but unjustly.*
Hypochyma, *Pitch.*
Hypocistis *is also called* Barba hircina, and Orobetrum, *it groweth at the root of the herb* Cistus, *much like the flower of the Pomgranat, and is full of juyce, which being wrung out and dryed, is also called* Hypocistis, *and of the Apothecaries* Hippocistis or Hypoquistidos indeclinabiliter.
Hypogessum, Sedum majus, *Houseleek.*
Hypopium, Thapsia, *Turbith.*
Hysge Pausaniæ, Granum tinctorium, *Couchenil.*
Hyssopites, *wine of Hyssop.*
Hyssopum, *or*
Hyssopus, *Hyssop.*
Hyssopus humida officinarum, Oesypus, *Wool of the flanck of a Sheep.*
Hysteta, Uterus, Lori, Matrix, *the mother in Women, or Matrix, or Womb.*
Hysteralgia, *pain in the belly or matrix.*

I

IArum, *Cuckopit.*
Iacea, *Harts-ease.*
Iacea nigra, Morsus Diaboli, *Divels-bit.*
Iamenum officinarum, Alumen scissile, vide Alumen.
Iaspis, *a Jasper stone.*
Iaspis, *green Iaspis.*
Ichthiotheron, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Ibiscus, Althea, *marsh Mallowes.*
Ictetiria, *the yellow jaundise.*
Icteritis Apuleii, Libanotis coronulis, *Rosemary.*
Icterus, Morbus regius, *the yellow jaundise.*
Iecur, the Liver.
Igne Hippocratis, Isatis, *Woad.*
Ignis divi Anthonii, *or*
Ignis sacer, Erysipelas, *the Rose.*
Ileos, *or*
Ileus, *or*
Iliaca passio, *or*
Iliaca, a *wringing in the small guts.*
Illecebra, Piper murinum, *Stonecrop.*
Illinctus, Eclegma, *a medicine which is licked up, and not swallowed.*
Imaginatio, *an imagination or conceit.*
Imperatoria, *Angelica.*
Impetigenaria arborea, Lichen arboreus, *a kind of Liverwort.*
Impetigenaria, petræa, Lichen saxatilis, *Liverwort.*
Impetigenaria saxatalis, Lichen, *the same.*
Impetigo, *a Ringworm, or dry Scab.*
Inanitio, *emptinesse of the body.*
Incensum Thus, *Frankincense.*
Incrementum, *the increasing of a sickenesse.*
Incubus, Ephialtes, Faunorum in quiete Judibrium, as *Plin.* saith, the Night-mare or Hag, it is a little falling sickenesse, and it a sign of madnesse to come, or of the falling evil, or Palsey, &c.
Infusio Sennæ, *the infusion or steeping of Sene leaves.*
Inguinalis, *or*
Inguinaria Dioscoridis, *the herb* Bubonium.
Inguinari Plinii, Ansertina.
Intemperies *untemperatenesse.*
Intestina gracilia, *the little guts.*
Intestina terræ, Lumbrici terrestres, *Earthworms.*
Intestinum duodenum, Intestinum primum, Pylorus, *the gut next to the stomach.*
Intestinum jejunum, Nestis, *the empty gut.*
Intestinum monoculum.
Intestinum cæcum, *the blind gut.*
Intestinum primum, vide Intestinum duodenum.
Intestinum rectum, Longanum, *the Arsegut.*
Intubum, *Endive.*
Intubum sativum angustifolium, *a kind of Endive.*
Intybus, &
Intibus sativus latifolius, *white Endive.*
Inturis, Copparis, *Capers.*
Inversio ventriculi, Anastrophe, *an inversion of the stomach.*
Inula, Helenium, *Elecampane.*
Inula rustica Apuleii, Symphitum magnum, *Comfry.*
Ion, Viola, *a Violet.*
Ion porphyrion, Viola purpurea, *a march Violet.*
Ion melan Theophrasti, viola nigra, *the same.*
Ion polyphyllon, viola multiplex, *double Violets.*
Ion Agria, Viola sylvestris, *wilde Violets.*
Ireos sive Irios officinarum, Iris, *the Flowerdeluce,*
Iris, *the same.*
Iris alba, *the white Flower-deluce.*
Iris Apula, *the same.*
Iris domestica, *the same.*
Iris Florentina, *the same.*
Iris Germanica, *the blew Flower-deluce.*
Iris lutea, *yellow Flower-deluce.*
Iris palustris latifolia, *a kind of Flowerdeluce.*
Iris Schlavonica, *Flower-deluce.*

Iſatis, Glaſtum, *woad.*
Iſatis minor, *wilde Woad.*
Iſatia ſativa, *tame Woad.*
Iſſopus humida officinarum, Oeſypus, *wool of the flank of ſheep.*
Iſchias, Coxarius morbus, *Sciatica.*
Iſchiatica barbarorum, *the ſame.*
Iſchuria, urinæ retentio, *a ſtopping of urine.*
Itea, Salix, *a Willow.*
Jujuba Arabum & officinarum Ziziſum, *a kind of fruit ſo called.*
Iva officinarum, Ajuga *or* Abiga, *wilde Cypres.*
Juglans, *a Walnut tree.*
Juglans equina, *the great Walnut.*
Julebum *or* Julepum, *a Julep.*
Junci flos, Schœnum Anthos, Squinanthum.
Juncus anguloſus Plinii, Cyperus, *a kind of Galangal.*
Juncus odoratus, Squinanthum.
Juncus odoratus Celſi, Cyperus, *a kind of Galangal.*
Juncus triangulus Plinii, Cyperus, *the ſame.*
Juniperus, *a Juniper tree.*
Juniperus acuta, *the greater Juniper tree.*
Juniperus major, *the ſame.*
Juniperus minor, Juniperulus, *and* Jupicellus, *the leſſer Juniper tree, or the Gooſeberrie buſh.*
Juniperi baccæ, vel,
Juniperi grana, *Gooſeberries, or Juniper berries.*
Junonia, Roſa Plinii, Lilium, *a Lilly.*
Juſquiamus officinarum Hyoſcyamus, *Henbane*

K

KArtam Arabum, Cnicus, Cartamus, *wild Saffron.*
Kauroch Arabum, Chelidonium, *Celandine.*
Keiri, Leucoium, *Wallflowers.*
Kerva Arabium, Ricinus, Palma Chriſti.

L

LAbrum Veneris, Dipſacus, *Teaſſel.*
Labruſca, vitis ſylveſtris, *the wilde Vine.*
Labruſcæ flos, *the bloſſomes of the wilde Vine.*
Lacamygdalinum, *Almond milk.*
Lac acidum, Oxylacha, *ſowre milk.*
Lac ebuteratum, *Butter-milk.*
Lac chalybatum, *ſteeled milk.*
Lac ovillum, *or* ovinum, *Ewes milk.*
Lactis cremor, Pingue, Flos, vel Pinguedo, *Cream.*
Lac ſciſtum, *Curded milk.*
Lacca, Caucamum, *a Gum ſo called.*
Lacerta, *or*
Lacertus, *an Evet.*
Lachryma draconis, *a Gum called* Sanguis draconis.
Lachryma Jobi, Lithoſpermum majus, *Gromil.*
Lachryma Juniperi, Sandaraca, *the Gum of the Juniper tree.*
Lachryma Mariæ
Lachryma medica, Aſſa fœtida, *a gum ſo called.*
Lachryma Syriaca, *the ſame,*
Lachryma vitis, Aqua vitis, *Sap of a Vine.*
Lactaria Tithymalus, *Spurge.*
Lactuca, *Lettice.*
Lactuca cappadox Plinii, *crumpled Lettice.*
Lactuca aſinina, Anchuſa, *Orchanet.*
Lactuca Betica Columellæ, *great Lettice.*
Lactuca Cæciliana Columellæ, *white Lettice.*
Lactuca criſpa, *curled Lettice.*
Lactuca caprina, *or*
Lactuca marina, Tithymalus, *Spurge.*
Lactuca marina Apuleii, Cataputia ſylveſtris, *great wilde Spurge.*
Lactuca Laconia Plinii, *or*
Lactuca ſeſſilia, *or*
Lactuca capitata, *headed Lettice.*
Lacaturris Plinii, Braſſica lacuturrea, *a kind of Cabbage.*
Lada, *or*
Ladon, *or*
Ladanum, *or*
Laudanum, *this is called of* Dioſcorides, Ledum, Laden, *and* Leden. *In the Apothecaries ſhop it hath his common name* Laudanum. *It is the dryed juyce of an herbe ſo called. The Herbariſts call it alſo* Ciſtum laudaniferum, *and* Fruticem laudaniferum.
Lætitia Galeni officinarum, vide Lætificans.
Lagopodium, *or* Lagopus, *Hares foot.*
Lagopus, *the ſame.*
Lamium Plinii, *dead Nettles.*
Lampſana, Rapiſtrum album, *Cadlocke.*
Lampas.
Lana ſuccida, *unwaſhed Wool.*
Lanaria, Saponaria, *the herb that Fullers uſe in ſcouring of cloth.*
Lana arborea, *or*
Lana xylina, *Cotton.*
Lanceola, *narrow Plantain.*
Lanugo arborum, *Moſſe.*
Labdanum barbarorum, vide Lada.
Lapathum Dioſcoridis, Oxalis, *Sorrel.*

Lapathum

Lapathum Galeni, *Dock.*
Lapathum acidum, *a kind of Dock.*
Lapathum acutum, *a Dock.*
Lapathum aquaticum, *water Dock.*
Lapathum cepeon, *or.*
Lapathum ſativum, *Monks Ruburb.*
Lapathum domeſticum, *or*
Lapathum latifolium ſativum, *herbe patience.*
Lapathum aquinum, *water Docks.*
Lapathum latifolium.
Lapathum non acuminatum.
Lapathum platyphyllon, *the greater Dock.*
Lapathum barbarorum, vide Lada.
Lapillus Eritræus, *a Pearl.*
Lapis calaminaris officinarum, Cadmia nativa, *the Oare of Braſſe.*
Lapis cæruleus, *an Azure ſtone.*
Lapis corroſivus, *a Corroſive, or* Corroding *ſtone.*
Lapis Cyaneus, *an* Azure *ſtone.*
Lapis Indicus, Margarita, *a Pearl.*
Lapis Judaicus, *a ſtone that purgeth Melancholly, or a Jewes ſtone.*
Lapis Hepaticus, *a liver ſtone.*
Lapis Lazulus officinarum, *the* Azure *ſtone.*
Lapis Erithæus, Margarita, *a Pearl.*
Lapis Lyncis officinarum, Lapis phrygius, *of ſome white* Amber, *of others a Thunderbolt, of others a ſtone that groweth in* Phrygia.
Lapis Stellatus, *or* Cæruleus, *the* Azure *ſtone.*
Lapis viridis, *an Hemerande.*
Lapis vini *Argoyle.*
Lappa major, Bardana, *the great Bur.*
Lapſana, Rapiſtrum album, *a kind of Muſtardſeed.*
Laſaron, Galacticon, *Angelica.*
Laſcaphrum, Naraphtum, *black Frankincenſe.*
Laſerpitium Gallicum, *Angelica.*
Laſer medicum, *or*
Laſer Syriacum, Aſſa fœtida.
Laſiomalum, Cydonium, *a Quince.*
Lathyris, Cataputia minor, *the leſſer* Spurge.
Lathyris ſylveſtris, *wilde* Spurge.
Lathyris cicercula, *the fruit or ſeed of* Spurge.
Lavacrum Veneris, *Teaſel or Fullers Thiſtle.*
Lavendala, *Lavander.*
Laureola, *Laurel or Lorel.*
Laurus, *a Bay tree.*
Lauri baccæ, *Bayberries.*
Lauri folia, *Bay leaves.*
Laurus Baccalis Plinii, *or*
Laurus Baccifera, *or*
Laurus fæmina, *the ſhee or female Bay tree.*
Laurus mas, *or*
Laurus virilis, *the he or male Bay tree.*
Laurus roſea, Nerion, *Roſe laurel, or Oleander.*
Lecriſticum, Vitex, Agnus caſtus, *the chaſt tree.*
Lemonium malum, *a Lemon.*
Lens paluſtris, *or.*
Lenticula aquatica, *water Lentils.*
Lentiſcus, *the Maſtick tree.*
Lentiſcinum oleum, *oyl of Maſtick.*
Lentiſcina, reſina, *Maſtick.*
Lepra, *the Leapry, a diſeaſe that maketh the skin rough, with black wanniſh ſpots, and dry parched ſcales and ſcurffe.*
Lepra leonina, *kind of Leapry in which the diſeaſed groweth mad.*
Leptocaryon, Nux avellana, *a Haſel nut.*
Lethargus veternus, *the Lythargy, a heavy and drowſie diſeaſe, in which the ſenſes and reaſon it ſelf ſeemeth to ſleep.*
Leucena Galeni, Caſtanea, Cheſtnut.
Leuce, Populus alba, *the white Poplar tree.*
Leuce, vitilago alba, *of the Barbarians* Morphæa alba, a white and dry and continual ſcurffe.
Leucanthemis, *or* Leucanthemum, *the herb Camomil.*
Leucoicum Dioſcoridis, Viola lutea, *the winter Gilloflower.*
Leuconia, Candidum ovi, *the white of an Egg.*
Leucophlegmatias, Hydrops, Anaſarca, *a kind of Dropſie.*
Leveſticum officinarum, *Lovage.*
Libadium, Centauria minor, *the leſſer Centory.*
Libanotides, *Wine made of Roſemary.*
Libanotis Coronalis, *Roſemary.*
Libanotis Ferulacea, *or* Libanotis umbellifera Herbariorum, *a kind of Roſemary.*
Libanotis umbellifera, *the ſame.*
Libyſticum, *Lovage.*
Libanum, *or* Libanus, Thus, *Frankincenſe.*
Libyeſtaſon, Glycyrrhiza, *Licorice.*
Lichen, Hepatica, *Liverwort.*
Lichen infectio, & aſperitas ſummæ cutis, cum maxima prurigine, *a Tetter or Ringworm.*
Lichen Arboreus, Pulmonaria officinarum, *Longwort.*
Lichen petræus, *or* Saxatilis, *Liverwort.*
Lien, Splen, *the Spleen or Milt.*
Lienteria, Inteſtinorum levitas, *a kind of flux of the ſtomach, when the meat and drink runneth from a man as he took it, utterly without concoction or alteration.*
Lignum Aloes, *a kind of ſweet wood ſo called.*
Lignum guaiacum, *or* Guaiacum, *a tree growing*

growing in the new found Iſles.

Lignum Indicum, Lignum ſanctum; *a kind of wood ſo called.*

Lignum paradiſi, Lignum Aloes, *a kind of ſweet wood ſo called.*

Ligamenta, *ſinewes.*

Lignum ſanctæ Crucis, Agollochum, *a kind of wood.*

Liguſticum, *Lovage.*

Ligula, Uvula, *a little peece of fleſh in the roof of the mouth.*

Liguſtrum, Cyprus, *Privet; Prinprint tree.*

Lilium, Crinon, *a Lilly.*

Lilium album, *a White Lilly.*

Lilium cœleſte, ſylveſtre, *flower-deluce.*

Lilium convallium, *Liriconſancy, or May Lillies.*

Lilium cæruleum, *the blew Flowerdeluce.*

Lilium caprinum, Percilymenum, *Woodbind. or Honyſuckle.*

Lilium inter ſpinas, *the ſame.*

Lilium luteum, Hemerocallis, vide Hyacinthus.

Lilium paluſtre Herbariorum, *a water Roſe.*

Lilium Saracenicum, Lilium ſylveſtre, *the Daffodil.*

Lilium vernum Theophraſti, Lilium convallium, *May Lilles.*

Limmatis, Hirudo, *and Horſleech or blood ſucker.*

Limneſtis Apuleii, Centaurium majus, *the greater kind of Centory.*

Limonium malum, *Lemon.*

Linctus, Eclegma lambetivum, *medicine or confection that is not chewed, but licked in, and is called of the Apothecaries by an Arabian name* Lohoch.

Linæleon, Oleum Lini, *oyl of Flax.*

Lanaria, *wilde Flax.*

Lingave Anſerina, *Gooſe tongue.*

Lingua Arietis, Arnogloſſum, *water Plantain.*

Lingua Bovis, *Bugloſſe,*

Lingua Canina, Cynogloſſum, *Hounds tongue.*

Lingua Cervina, Phyllitis, *Harts tongue.*

Lingua Ovina, *Sheeps tongue.*

Lingua pagana, Hypogloſſum, *double tongue.*

Lingua Ophiogloſſum, *Serpents tongue.*

Lingua Serpentina, Lingua Viperina, Echiogloſſum, *the ſame.*

Lingua vulneraria Herbariorum, *the ſame*

Lingulaca, *or* Lingua Plinii, *the ſame.*

Linodys, Chamedrys, *the herb Germander, or Engliſh Treacle.*

Linoſtrophon, Marrubium, *Horehound.*

Linozoſtis, Mercurialis, *French Mercury.*

Linum *Flax.*

Lippitudo, Ophthalmia, *bleerednesſe of the eyes.*

Lipothymia, defectus animi, Deliquium animi, *a ſwooning, wherein one ſeemeth to be dead.*

Liquiritia, Officinarum Glycyrrhiza, *Licorice.*

Liquor medicus, *and* Liquor Syriacus, Aſſa fætida.

Lirium, Lilium, *a Lilly.*

Liſtatium, *a kind of nuts commonly at the Apothecaries called* Fiſtici.

Lithargyrium, Spuma argenti, *Litharge or White Lead.*

Lithargyrum argenti, *the ſame.*

Lithargyrium Auri, *a kind of Litharge.*

Lithiaſis, Calculus renum, & Veſicæ, *the diſeaſe of the ſtone in a mans body engendred.*

Lithodendron, Corallium, *Coral.*

Lithontribon, Confectio calculum frangens, *a confection of the Apothecaries ſo called, which driveth away, and breaketh the ſtone in a mans body.*

Lithoſpermum nigrum, Lithoſpermum ſylveſtre, *Wilde Gromel, or Graymil.*

Lithoſpermum ſylveſtre, *the ſame.*

Loch Arabum, Linctus, Lambetivum, Eclegma, *a thin confection, of the Arabians called* Lohoch in plurali numero, *which is* Eclegma.

Loch ad Aſthma, *a thin confection againſt the extream and vehement ſtopping of the breath.*

Loch de Cancris, *a confection made of Crevisſes.*

Loch de Farfara, *a kind of Confection ſo called.*

Loch de Papavere, Diapapaver, *a confection made of Poppies*

Loch de Paſſulis, *a confection of Raiſons.*

Loch de Pino, *a certaine confection ſo called.*

Loch de Portulace, *a confection made of Purſlain.*

Loch ad Pthiſin, *Confection ſo called.*

Loch de pulmone vulpis, *a confection made of the Lungs or Lights of a Fox.*

Loch ſanum et expertum, *a confection ſo called.*

Loch de Scilla, *a certain confection.*

Lohoch, Eclegma, vide Loch ſupra, *aliquid confection.*

Lonchitis altera, Aſplenium majus Herbariorum.

Geterach, Sealfern, or Fingerfern.
Longanum, the Arſegul.
Lotus alba, Claver, or three leafed graſſe, alſo Melilot.
Lotus cærulea, Lotus lutea, garden or tame Melilot.
Lotus lutea, the ſame.
Lotus lybica Dioſc. Lotus ſylveſtris, wilde Melilot.
Letrometra Apuleii, Nymphæa, the white water Lilly or Roſe, white Nenuphar.
Lucumbra, Longwort Woolblade, or Torch herb.
Lues, a Plague or Peſtilence.
Luf Arabum, Dracontium, Dragonwort, or Dragons.
Lumbricus and Lumbricus terræ, a certain long worm in the earth, or in mans body.
Luparia officinarum, lycoctonum, a kind of Aconitum.
Luph planum Arabum, Dracontium, Dragons.
Luph planum Herbariorum, Dracontium, minus, the leſſer Dragonwort.
Luph criſpum Herbariorum, Dracontium majus, the greater ſort of Dragons.
Lupinus, a kind of pulſe ſo called.
Lupulus, Hops.
Lupus reptitius, and Lupus ſalictarius, Lupulus, the ſame,
Luſcioſus or Luſcitioſus, Nyctalops, it is one that ſeeth very little in the night or in the morning.
Lutum Armenum, Bolus armenus, Bolcarmenick.
Luteum lemnium, and lutum ſigillatum, is the right terra ſigillata, which is brought unto us from the Iſle *Lemnos*.
Lychnis gemma, and Lychnites, Carbunculus gilvus, a kind of Ruby.
Lychnis agria, or Lychnis ſylveſtris, Roſe Campion.
Lycium, Pyxacantha, Spina buxea, and of Pliny Buxacanthus Chironius, medicine made of the juice or decoction of the Bramble root.
Lycoctonum, one of the kinds of Aconitum.
Lycoctonum cæruleum, the ſame.
Lyncurium, and Lyncurius Lapis, Succinum, a precious ſtone congealed of the urine of the beaſt Lynx.
Lymneum, and Lymneſium, Centaureum, Centory.
Lypiria, vide Febris Lypiria.
Lyſimachia, or Lyſimachium, Willow herb, Looſeſtrife, or water Willow.
Lyſimachia cornuta, a kind of water Willow.
Lyſimachia lutea, yellow looſeſtrife.
Lyſimachia Dioſcoridis, the ſame.
Lyſimachia Meſina, *the ſame.*
Lyſimachia Plinii, *a kind of Willow herb.*
Lyſimachia purpurea, Punicea, and Spicata, *the purple water Willow or Looſeſtrife.*
Lyſimachia punicea, *the ſame.*
Lyſimachia ſiliquoſa, *brown Willow herb.*
Lytrum, Lyſimachia, *Willow herb, Looſeſtrife, or water willow.*

M

MAcer, Macis, *it is commonly taken for the ſpice called* Macis.
Macheronium, *the Flower-deluce.*
Macia, Anagallis, *white, or the Pimpernel.*
Madon Plinii, Nymphæa, *the white water Lilly or Roſe.*
Madonais Theophraſti, Nymphæa, *the ſame.*
Magiſtrantia officinarum, *Maſterwort, Angelica*
Magnes, *and of* Galen Magnetis, *the Loadſtone.*
Magudaris ſive Magydaris, *a certain herb ſo called.*
Majorana Sampſyches, *French Marjoram.*
Mala armeniaca, *an Apricock, or haſty Peach tree.*
Mala præcocia, *the ſame.*
Malabathrum, vide Folium Indum.
Malache, Malva, *Mallowes.*
Malache agria, Malva ſylveſtris, *wilde Mallowes*
Malacia, Pica, a corrupt appetite by reaſon of humors gathered about the mouth of ſtomach, that is the affection of longing, eſpecially in women.
Malacociſſus, *a kind of herb like unto Ivy ſo called.*
Mali corium, Cortex mali punici, *the outward ſhell or rinde of a Pomgranat.*
Mali punici corium, *the ſame.*
Malobathrum, *a certain Indian ſpice.*
Maltum, Manlt, *ſuch as Brewers put in their Beer*
Malva, *Mallows.*
Malva arborea, *or* Malva arboreſcens, *Hollihocks or marſh* Mallowes.
Malva agriſtis, wilde Mallowes.
Malva Anſerina, Chenomalathe, cut Mallows.
Malva caballina, *or*
Malva equina, wilde or Horſe Mallows.

Malva crispa, *crisped Mallows.*
Malva hortensis, *or* Malva sativa, *garden Mallowes.*
Malva Leporina, *a kind of Mallowes.*
Malva major, Malva equina, *the great wilde Mallows.*
Malva pumila, *or*
Malva minor, *the lesser Mallow.*
Malva Romana, Malva crispa, *romish Mallows.*
Malva trahsmarina. *Hollihocks.*
Malva sativa, vide Malva hortensis.
Malva sylvestris, *wilde Mallows.*
Malvaviscus, Althea, *Hollihocks.*
Malum, pomum, *an Apple.*
Malum Assyrium, *a Citron.*
Malum aureum, *an Orange.*
Malum canum, *a Quince.*
Malum Citrium, vel Citreum, *a Citron.*
Malum Citoneum. *a Quince.*
Malum granatum, *a Pomgranat.*
Malum Cydonium, *a Quince.*
Malum Hesperium, *a Citron.*
Malum Lanatum, *a Quince.*
Malum Lemomum, a *Lemon.*
Malum Milvianum, *a Quince.*
Malum punicum, *a Pomgranat.*
Malum sylvestre, *a Crab or wilde Apple.*
Malum Nerantium, *an Orange.*
Malus, *an Apple tree.*
Malus Cidonia, *or* Malus Cotonia, a *Quince tree.*
Malus granata, *a Pomgranat tree.*
Malus Nerantia, *an Orenge tree.*
Malus punica, *a Pomgranat tree.*
Man Arabum, *a certain kind of dew.*
Mania, Furor, Rabies, *madnesse.*
Maoia, Herba, Apollinaris, *Henbane.*
Mandragora, *the Mandrage.*
Manna, *a kind of sweet dew.*
Manna bombicina, *or*
Manna Calabrina, *a kind of Manna or dew which is brought from* Calabria: *this is the common Manna of the Apothecaries.*
Manna Brianson, *a more excellent kind of Manna then the foresaid.*
Manipulus, Fasciculus manualis, *a handful.*
Manus Christi, Radix Palmæ Christi, *a kind of Ragwort.*
Manus Christi, Frutex, Ricinus, Palma Christi.
Marasmodes, vide Hectica.
Marassus, Vipera, *an Adder.*
Marathrum, Fœniculum, *Fennel.*
Marchasita officinarum, Pyrites, *a kind of stone.*
Margarita, *or* Margarites, *a Pearl.*
Marinella, Valeriana, *Valerian.*

Mariscus, Ficus, Sycosis, Turberculum in ano adfici similitudinem, *the Piles.*
Maro, Centaurium magnum, *the greater Centory.*
Marrubium, Prassium, *Horehound.*
Marrubium aquaticum sive palustre, *water Horehound.*
Maspeta, folia Silphii, *the leaves of the herb* Silphium.
Mastiche, Resina Lentisci, *Mastick.*
Mater Caryphillorum, *or* Caryophillorum, *Mothercloves.*
Mater Herculanea Apuleii, Nymphæa, *water Roses.*
Matricaria, *Feverfew.*
Matrisalvia, Scarlea, *Clary.*
Matrisylva Herbariorum, Caprifolium, *Honysuckle.*
Matrix, Mediana vena, *the Median vein.*
Matrix, Uterus, *the womb.*
Matronaria, sive Matronella, *Feverfew.*
Mattiaca pila, Matrialis, Sapo. *Sope.*
Mauriaria, Dracontium, *Dragons.*
Mecon, Papaver, *Poppy.*
Meconitis, Cataputia sylvestris, *wilde Spurge.*
Meconrhœas, Papaver erraticum, *a Corne rose.*
Mediana, *the Median vein.*
Medicamen de Turbith, *a purging medicine.*
Medulla, *Marrow.*
Mehezeregi Avicennæ, Pityusa, *Spurge.*
Melanphyllon, Acanthus, *Bears claw.*
Melampodium, Veratrum nigrum, *the black Neesewort.*
Melampelos, Helcine, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Mel aerium, *Hony dew.*
Melancholia, Mentis alienatio ex atra bile nata, mœstitia metu conjuncta, *Melancholy, kind of madnesse.*
Melanium Theophr. Viola nigra, *a kind of Violet.*
Malanthium, Nigella, *Nigel, Gitte.*
Mel, *Hony.*
Mel Anacardinum, *the Hony of* Anacardium.
Mel cedrinum Hippocr. Manna liquida. *Hony dew.*
Mel Mirobalanorum, *the Sirupe of Mirobalans.*
Mel roreum, *Hony dew.*
Mel rosaceum, sive Mel rosarum, *Hony of Roses.*
Melaga, sorghum, *a kind of Millet brought from* India.
Meli Calaminon Arriani, Saccarum, *Sugar.*

Melia,

Melia, Fraxinus, an Aſh tree.
Melicratum, wine and hony ſodden together.
Melica Herbariorum, Indian Millet.
Melilotum, or Nelilotes, Melilot.
Melilotus Avicennæ, great Melilot.
Melilotus alba officinarum, white Melilot.
Melilotus coronata a kind of Melilot.
Melilotus lutea officinarum, yellow Melilot.
Melilotus minor, the leſſer Melilot.
Melilotus nobilis Herbariorum, a kind of Melilot.
Melilotus Serapionis, a kind of Melilot.
Melilotus Catonis, or
Melilotus Dioſcoridis, Italian Melilot.
Meline, or
Melinus, Panicum, Panick.
Meline Varronis, Melium, Mill or Millet.
Meliphyllon, Meliſſa, Baulme.
Meliſſa, Citrago, the ſame.
Meliſſa Cretica, or
Meliſſa Turcica Herbariorum, Turkiſh Balme.
Meliſſochortes Nicolai Myrepſi, or
Meliſſophyllum, Baulm.
Melitites, honied wine.
Melitæna, and
Melittæa Meliſſa, Baulm.
Melizoron, Mulſum, ſweet wine or Mead.
Melium aquaticum, a kind of Ragwort.
Melligo, Manna, Hony dew.
Melo, and.
Melon, a Melon.
Melocarpon, Ariſtolochia longa, Long Hartwort.
Melopepo, Melo, a Melon.
Melothrum, Vitis alba, Briony the white.
Menianthes, trifolium bituminoſum, water Claver.
Menium, Pæonia, Piony.
Menogenium, Piony flowers.
Meninges, involucra duo Cerebrum circumquaque contegentia, quorum exterius, quod adverſus cranii impreſſiones cerebri veluti propugnaculum eſt, tegumentum, Craſſa ſive dura Meninx appellatur, & Chirurgis dura mater. Aliud quod tenuiſſimum eſt, & cerebro penitus conjunctum, Choroides appellatur, Chirurgis Pia mater: the two skins that compaſſe or wrap the brain.
Menſes, or
Menſtruum, the flowers, or terms in women.
Menſtruum album, the whites in women.
Mentha, Mintha, Mints.
Mentha aquatica, *water Mints.*
Mentha, caballina, *or* Mentaſtrum, *horſe Mints.*
Mentha criſpa, rumpled Mints.
Mentha equina, *horſe Mints.*
Mentha felina, Nepeta felina, *Nep.*
Mentha rubra, *a kind of Mints, red Mints.*
Mentha ſativa, *garden Mints.*
Mentha ſylveſtris, *wilde or horſe Mints.*
Mentagra, Menti impetigo, *a ſcabbedneſſe of the face.*
Mentaſtrum, Mentha ſylveſtris, *wilde or horſe Mints.*
Mentaſtrum acutum Herbariorum, *a kind of wilde Mints.*
Mentaſtrum Apuleii, *or*
Mentaſtrum Plinii, Pulegium agreſte, *wilde Mints.*
Mentis error, *Madneſſe.*
Mercurialis, Linoſoſtis, *herb Mercury.*
Mercurius Chimiſtarum, Hydrargyron, *Quick ſilver.*
Mercurius præcipitatus, *Precipitate.*
Mercurius ſublimatus, *Sublimate.*
Meris, Tripolium, *a kind of Turbith.*
Meri Arabum, Oeſophagus, *the mouth of the ſtomach.*
Meſeraicæ venæ, *certain little veins in the Liver.*
Meſpilum, *a Medlar, or Open-arſe.*
Miſpilus, *a Medlar or an Openarſe tree.*
Metallum, *Metal.*
Metopium, Ferula galbanifera, *the herb of the which the gum* Galbanum *is made.*
Metra Hippocratis, Uterus, *the Womb.*
Meu Arabum,
Meon, *or*
Meum, *Mew.*
Mezereon Arabum, *Lorel or Laurel.*
Mica thuris, Mantia thuris, *the fragments of Frankincenſe.*
Micancalus, flos githaginis, *a Corn roſe.*
Michleta, *a confection ſo called.*
Milax barbarorum, Smilax, Taxus, *a tree like Fir.*
Milium, Millet.
Milium Indicum, ſive,
Millium ſaburrum, *Indian Millet.*
Milium ſolis Lithoſpermum, *Gromil.*
Millifolia, *or*
Millifolium, *Yarrow, Noſeblood, or Milfoile.*
Millimorbia, *or*
Millimorbium, *Figwort.*
Milos, Taxus, *a tree like Fir.*

Miltos Plinii, Cinnabaris nativa, *natural Cinoper.*
Milvus, *or*
Milvus, a *Kite.*
Minii gleba Celſi, Terra lemnia, Terra ſigillata, *or ſealed earth.*
Minium, *red lead.*
Minium Dioſcoridis, *or*
Minium Plinii, Cinnabaris metallica, Cinoper.
Minium lemnium, terra lemnia, *ſealed earth.*
Minium artificiale, *artificial Cinoper.*
Minium nativum, Cinanbaris metallica nativa, natural Cinoper.
Minium officinarum, *or*
Minium ſecundarium, red or burnt lead.
Mintha, Mentha, *Mint.*
Mintha agria, Mentaſtrum, horſe *Mint.*
Miſerevivium Apulei, Polygonum. Knotgraſſe.
Mithridatium Dioſcoridis, Trixago paluſtris, water Germander.
Mithridatium, antidotus Mithridatis, *Mithridate.*
Mithridatium, *or* Mithridatia Apulei, Scordium, *water Germander.*
Miva Cydoniorum, *and* Miva Cydoniorum ſimplex officinarum, Syrupus Cydoniorum ſimplex, *the ſirup of Quinces.*
Miva Aromatica officinarum, Syrupus Cydoniorum Aromaticus.
Mnion, Muſcus, *Moſſe.*
Mola, *a piece of fleſh without ſhape growing in a womans Womb.*
Molge, Salamandra, *a Salamander.*
Molocho, Malva major, *the great Mallow or Hollihock.*
Molotriculum Veneris.
Moly Galeni, Ruta montana, *wilde Rue.*
Molybdæna Plinii, perſicaria major, perſicaria maculata, *the greater ſort of Arſe-ſmart.*
Molybditis Plinii, Spuma plumbi, Litargyrium, plumbi, *Litargie, or white Lead.*
Monembaſites, Nicolai Myrepſi, Vinum Malvaticum, *wine made of Mallowes.*
Monoceros, Unicornium, *an Unicorn.*
Montulmus Gazæ, Ulmus montana, *a kind of Elme.*
Mora, poma ſive fractus mori, Mulberies.
Mora bati, *Bramble berries*
Mora Celſi, *Mulberies.*
Mora rubi, *Bramble berries.*
Mora rubi, Idæi, *Frambois.*
Morbus arquatus, Morbus regius, *the yellow Jaundiſe.*
Morbus caducus, Morbus comitialis, Herculeus, lunaticus, *the falling ſickneſſe.*
Morbus comitialis, vide Morbus caducus.
Morbus Divi Fiacari, Condyloma, *the Emrods.*
Morella Herbariorum, Solanum, *Nightſhade.*
Morea, *Mulberrie tree.*
Morſus Diaboli *Divels bit.*
Morſus gallinæ, *running Bur Wheat.*
Morſus mulierum, *Germander.*
Moron, Morum, *a Mulbery tree.*
Morus, Morea, *the ſame.*
Morus vaticana, *Blucberry Buſh.*
Moſcus, Muſcus *Muſk.*
Moſchocaryon, Muſchocarydion, *a Nutmeg.*
Mucago, Mucilago, *and of the Apothecaries* Mucilago: *it is a ſlime or juyce which is drawn either out of herbs, roots, or ſeeds.*
Mula herba Gazæ, Hemionium, *Harts tongue.*
Mulſum, *ſweet wine.*
Multinervia, Plantago major, *the great Plantain.*
Multinodia, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Multinodia minor, *the leſſer Knotgraſſe.*
Mumia Arabum, Piſſaſphaltum factitium, *Mummy.*
Mumia Græcorum, Piſſaſphaltum, *the ſame.*
Mumia ſepulchrorum, the ſame.
Muria, *Salt water, pickle, or brine.*
Muria Colymbadum, Muria Olivarum, *the liquor of Olives.*
Muria Lemoniorum, *the brine of the Lemons.*
Muria Olivarum, *Olive brine.*
Muralium, Helxine, *Pellitory of the Wall,*
Muſcatellum vinum, *Muſcadel.*
Muſcus arborum, *Moſſe.*
Muſtum, *new wine, or Muſt.*
Muſtum coctum, *ſodden wine.*
Myacantha, *a Palme tree.*
Myacantha Æginetæ, Aſparagus myacanthinus, *Sperage.*
Myces, Fungus, *a Toad ſtool, or Muſhrome.*
Myoſitis, Eufraſia cærulea, *blew Eyebright.*
Myrmex, Formica, an Ant, Emmet, or piſmire.
Myrapia, or Myrapidia, Pyra muſcatella, a kind of pleaſant and odoriferous Pears.
Myrica, Tamarix, a Tamarisk tree.
Miricites, Vinum Miricinum, or Tamaricium, wine made of Tamarisk.
Myrobalanus, Bellerica, a kind of fruit growing in India.

Myrobalanus Cepula, vel Chebula, *the same.*
Myrobalanus citrinus officinarum, Myrobalanus flava.
Myrobalanus Empelitica, or Emblica.
Myrobalanus Inda, Myrobalanus nigra.
Myrobalanus Gæcorum, myrobalanus unguentaria, *a strange fruit called Ben. Look for Ben, in the second Index.*
Myrrha, *a sweet gum called Myrre.*
Myrrha Troglodytica, a *very excellent gum* so called.
Myrrhis Cicutaria, Kex Cax, Asse Parsly, *mock Chervil.*
Myrsine, Myrthus, *or* Myrtus, *the Myrtle tree.*
Myrsine agria, Ruscus, *Knecholme.*
Myrsionides, Unicordia, *Pervincle.*
Myrtillus officinarum, Bacca myrti, *the berries of the Myrtle tree.*
Myrthacantha, Ruscus, *Kneeholme.*
Myrtus, a *Myrtle tree.*
Myrtus aculeata, myrtus acuminata, a *kind of Myrtle.*
Myrtus humilis, the same.
Myrtus terrestris, Ruscus, *Kneeholme.*
Myxa, *or* Myaxaria, *a kind of fruit so called.*

N

NAocaphton Pauli, Naocauton, Narcaphton, *black or common Frankincense.*
Naphta, Petroleum, Bitumen liquidum, and Bituminis Calamentum, a *kind of maunde or chalkie clay.*
Napellus. Tota.
Napellus Moysis, Avicennæ Napellus salutiferus, Antithora, *it is a root much like unto Zeduary, but yet is not the right Zeduary, but an other unknown root.*
Napi, Sinapi, *Mustard seed, or the herb it self.*
Napus, sive Napum, a *Turnep.*
Narce, Gentiana, *and* Centaurium magnum, *Gentian, Bitterwort.*
Narcissus, *the white of Daffodil.*
Narcissus Autumnalis, Flos Colchici, *a Daffodil.*
Narcissus luteus, a *yellow Daffodil.*
Narcissus Roseus, Rhodionarcissus Herbariorum.
Narcissus verus, a *Daffodil.*
Narcissus officinarum, Leuconium Theophrasti, *an Italian Daffodil.*
Narcissus Virgilii, Narcissus Theophrasti.
Narcotica, *or* Narcoticapharmaca, medicamenta, quæ frigiditate torporem adferunt, *it is a certain medicine which maketh people stupefactive, or some of their members unsensible.*
Nardinum, *Oyl of the Spikenard.*
Nardus, *Nardus, or* Spica *from India,* Nardus Indica.
Nardus Celtica, Nardus Romana, Nardus Gallica, *a kind of Spikenard.*
Nareaphtum, Thymiama, *a kind of Frankincense.*
Nascaphtum, *the same.*
Nasturtium, Nasturtium hortense, *towne Cresse garden Cresses, or Nosesmart.*
Nasturtium aquaticum, *water Cresses.*
Nasturtium album, Raphanus marinus, *Horse-radish.*
Nausea, a *disposition or will to vomit.*
Nebula oculorum, *the dimnesse of the eyes.*
Nectris, *or* Notris Pollucis, Oliva conditanea, *an Olive.*
Nephrytis, Renum dolor, a *grief or sickenesse in the Reins.*
Nepeta, *or* Nepita, Calaminta, *Nep.*
Nepenthes, Buglossum, *Bugloss.*
Nenuphar, *or* Nenuphar Arabum, Nymphæa *the flower-deluce.*
Neregil, Nux Indica, *an Indian nut.*
Nerantzia malus, *an Orange tree.*
Neranzion, *or* Narauzium malum, *the same.*
Nerion, Nerium, Rhododendron, *Rose lawrel, Bay Rose tree, Oleander.*
Nervorum resolutio, *or* dissolutio, *is a dissolving or weakening of the sinews, called* Paralysis
Nervus, a sinew.
Nessium Apulcii, Centaureum magnum, the grrat Centory.
Neurospaston Plinii, Oxyacantha Dioscoridis, the Berbery tree, sharp or Tartbery tree, the white Thorn tree.
Nigella, Melanthium, Coriander of Rome Narde, Pepperwort.
Nigella alba, Melanthium album, white Pepperwort.
Nigella Romana, Coriander of Rome.
Nigellastrum, Corn rose.
Nihili album officinarum, Pompholyx, Tutty
Nihili griseum officinarum, Spodium Græcorum, Tutia Arabum, gray Tutty.
Nil album officinarum, Tutty.
Nil griseum officinarum.
Nitrum, Salpeter.
Nonifolium Ennaphyllum, wild Neeswoort.
Nucis myristicæ involucrum, Nucis muscatæ involucrum, Macis, the spice called Mace.
Nucis regiæ Juli, the blossoms of the nut tree.
Nuclei pinei, the kernel of a nut so called.
Nucleus ferri, Chalybs, Steel.
Numularia Centummorbia, silver grasse.
Nursina, Pila Martialis, Napus, a Rape or Turnep.
Nux, Nut, and nut tree: by this word nut, is

understood all fruits having hard shels like a Nut.

Nux avellana, *a Hasel nut.*
Nux aromatica, *a Nutmeg.*
Nux Basilica, *a Walnut, or Walnut tree.*
Nux castanea, *a Chesnut.*
Nux cypariſſi, Pilula cypariſſi, *a Cypresse nut.*
Nux equina, *a Horse nut.*
Nux Indica, *an Indian nut.*
Nux Juglans, *a Walnut.*
Nux Lungobardica, *Lombardy nuts.*
Nux Myriſtica, *a Nutmeg.*
Nux Moſcata, *or* Muſchata, *a Nutmeg.*
Nux Græca, Amygdalus, *an Almond, or Almond tree.*
Nux Heraeleotica, *a Hasel nut.*
Nux Myrepſica, *a Nutmeg.*
Nux Perſica, *a Persian nut, and nut tree.*
Nux Pinea, *Pinyles.*
Nux Pontica, *a hasel nut.*
Nux Regia, *the same.*
Nux Taſſia, *an Almond.*
Nux Vomica.
Nux ungeuntaria, *a Nutmeg.*
Nyctalops, Luſciosus, *one that is Purblind.*
Nycteris Æth, *or* Nycteritis, *a Rearmouse or Bat.*
Nymphæa, *the Yellow Flower-delice, or Water Lilie.*
Nymphæa alba, *the White Water Lillie, or Rose.*
Nymphæa Feraclea Plinii, *the same.*
Nymphæa lutea, *yellow water Lilly, or Rose.*
Nymphæa minor, *the lesser Nenuphar.*
Nymphæa lutea minor, *the lesser Yellow water Lilies or Roses.*

O

OA, Sorbus, *Servis tree.*
Ocimum, *vide* Ozymum, *and* Ozimum.
Ocneron Ruſcus, *a kind of shrub so called.*
Oculus canis, Conyza, *a certain herb so called.*
Oculus leporis, Gariophyllata, *Avens.*
Oculus ſuis, Aſter Atticus, *share, Stirr, or Coulwort.*
Octymaſtrum, Cardiancthemum, *a kind of Gilloflowers so called.*
Ocymum, Baſilicum, *Basil.*
Oedema, Undinia chirurgorum vulgo, *an impostume coming of flegmatick matter without griefe.*
Oenanthe, Flos vitis ſylveſtris, Flos Labruſcæ, *the blossomes of the wilde Vine.*
Oenanthe herba, Filipendula, *Dropwort.*
Oenanthi Pampinus, *a vine leafe, or green branch.*
Oenomeli, Mulſum, *sweet wine.*
Oenolithos, Lapis vini, Tartarus, *or* Tartarum, *Argolyte, or Wine stone.*
Oenorhodon, Vina roſa, Wine Rose.
Oenos, Vinum, Wine.
Oeſophagus, Stomachus, Orificium ventriculi, *the mouth of the stomach.*
Oeſipum, or Oeſipus, the filthy oyl that is in the flancks of a Sheep.
Olea, Oliva, the Olive tree.
Olea ſylveſtris, Oleaſter, *the wilde Olive tree.*
Oleaſter, *the same.*
Olei fex, Amurca Olei, *the dregs of oyl.*
Oleander, or Oleandrum, Bararorum Rhododedrum, Oleander.
Oleum Olivum, Oyl of Olives.
Oleum Aniſi, Oyl of Annise.
Oleum Antimonii, Oyl of Antimony.
Oleum Amygdalarum, or Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium, Oyl of Almonds.
Oleum Amygdalarum amararum, Oyl of bitter Almonds.
Oleum balaninum, Oleum glandis unguentariæ, Oyl of Behen.
Oleum Camelinum, Oleum ſeſaminum officinarum, Oyl of Camomil.
Oleum Chamemelinum, *the same.*
Oleum Nucleorum Perſicorum, Oyl of Peachkernels.
Oleum Caryophyllorum, Oyl of Cloves.
Oleum Coſtinum, Oyl of Coſtus.
Oleum Cucurbitinum, Oyl of Gourds.
Oleum Cucumeris Aſinini, Oyl of wild Cucumbers.
Oleum Cicinum, vide Oleum Ricinum.
Oleum cydoneorum, Oyl of Quinces.
Oleum Euphorbii.
Oleum Hyperici, Oyl of Saint Johns wort.
Oleum Irinum, Oyle of the Flower-deluce.
Oleum florum nucis Juglandis, Oyl of the blossome of the Walnut tree.
Oleum de Kerva, Oleum ricinum, Oyl of Palma Chriſti.
Oleum de lateribus, Oleum Philoſophorum, Oyl of Bricks.
Oleum Laurinum, Oyl of Bays.
Oleum liguſtrinum, Oleum cyprinum, Oyl of Privet.
Oleum Liliorum, Oyl of Lillies.

Oleum Lini, *Oyl of Lin or Flax.*
Oleum macis, oyl of Mace.
Oleum maſtichinum, *Oyl of Maſtick.*
Oleum matricariæ, *oyl of ſweet* Marjoram.
Oleum melinum, *oyl of Quinces.*
Oleum de mentha, *Oyl of Mints.*
Oleum menthaceum, *the ſame.*
Oleum Myrtinum, *oyl of Mirtles.*
Oleum myrtillorum officinarum, Oleum Baccarum myrti, *the ſame.*
Oleum Narciſſinum, *oyl of* Narciſſus,
Oleum nucum juglandium, *oyl of* Walnuts.
Oleum nucis Indicæ, *Oyl of Indian Nuts.*
Oleum nucis muſcatæ, Oleum nucis myriſticæ, *Oyl of Nutmegs.*
Oleum Nenupharis, *or* Oleum Nymphæa, *Oyl of Nenuphar, or White Water Roſe.*
Oleum Olivarum, *Oyl of Olives.*
Oleum Omphacinum, *Oyl of Olives not full ripe.*
Oleum Ovorum, *oyl of Eggs.*
Oleum floruu papaveris, *oyl of Poppy.*
Oleum ſeminis papavers, *oyl of the ſeed of Poppy.*
Oleum petræ, Petroleum, *an oyl that naturally runneth out of the ſtone.*
Oleum Philoſophorum, *oyl of Bricks.*
Oleum de piperibus, *oyl of Pepper.*
Oleum Piperinum ſtillatitium, *oyl that is diſtilled out of Pepper.*
Oleum Ricinum, *oyl of* Palma Chriſti.
Oleum Roſaceum, *oyl of Roſes.*
Oleum Syocinum, Oleum Cucumeris aſinini, *oyl of wilde Cucumbers.*
Oleum Suſinum, *oyl of Lillies.*
Oleum Staphidis, agriæ, *oyl of Staveſacre.*
Oleum Seſaminum officinarum, *oyl of Cammomil.*
Oleum ſulphuris, *oyl of Brimſtone.*
Oleum ſcorpionum, *oyl of Scorpions.*
Oleum Sinapis, *or* Oleum Sinapinum, *oyl of Muſtard.*
Oleum Stimmios, Oleum Antimonii, *oyl of Stibium, a ſtone ſo called.*
Oleum viride, Oleum Omphacinum, *oyl of unripe or green Olives.*
Oleum Vitrioli, *oyl of Vitriol.*
Oleum lumbricorum, Oleum vermium terreſtrium, *oyl of earth-Worms.*
Oleum cyprinum, Oleum liguſtrinum, *oyl of Privet.*
Oleum Raphaninum, *or* Oleum ſeminis Raphani, *oyl of Radiſhes.*
Oleum Rhabarbari, *oyl of Rubarb.*
Oleum Sandaracæ, *oyl of Juniper gum.*
Oleum vermium terreſtrium, vide Oleum lumbricorum.
Oleum ſeminis Raphani, vide Oleum Raphanium.
Oleum Abſinthii, oyl of *Wormwood.*
Oleum Leuconium, Oleum cheyrinum, oyl of *Violets.*
Oleum Cheyrinum, Oleum leuconium.
Oleum granorum Juniperi, oyl of *Juniper berries.*
Oleum Nardinum, oyl of *Spikenard.*
Oleum ex immaturis Olivis confectum, oyl of unripe Olives.
Oleum Spicæ nardi, oyl of *Spikenard.*
Oleum Tartari, oyl of *Tartar.*
Oleum reſinæ abietis, oyl of *Turpentine.*
Oleum Therebinthinæ officinarum, oyl of *Turpentine.*
Oleum Tritici, oyl of *Wheat.*
Olibanum officinaruu, Opolibanum, white *Frankincenſe.*
Olibanum teſticulatum, a kind of *Frankincenſe.*
Oliva, Olea, an Olive tree.
Oliva conditanea, Olives.
Olivum, Oleum olivarum, oyl of Olives.
Olus atrum, Aliſander, or Lovage.
Olus aureum, Atriplex, Orage, Arech, or or golden herb.
Olus rubrum, Blitum rubrum, red Spinage.
Olus Hiſpanicum, ſive Olus Spinacium, Spinage.
Olus agninum Plantago, Plantain, or Weybry.
Omentum, vulgo Zirbus, the caul, or ſuet, wherein the bowels are lapt.
Omphacinum, vulgo Agreſta, ſuccus è labruſca, vel uvis acerbis, Verjuyce.
Omphalecarpos, aparine, Goeſhatr.
Omphax, uva immatura, uva acerba, an unripe Grape.
Onicidæ, Gallæ aſininæ, a kind of Gaules.
Oniſcus, Aſellus, a kind of fiſh ſo called.
Onitis, Origanum Creticum, baſtard Marjoram, Spaniſh Origan.
Onocardium, Dipſacus, Fullers Thiſtle, or Teazil.
Onopretium Herbariorum, Felicuala fellorum Adiantum album, Maiden hair.
Onoriganum Herbariorum, Origanum aſininum ſic dictum, quod folium ejus aſinis pabulo ſit gratum, Onitis, baſtard Marjoram, or Spaniſh Origan.
Onyx, Blattium Bizantium, vide Blacca Bizantia.
Ophioſtonum, Cervioſellas, a Parſnep.

Ophiogloſſum, *Serpents tongue.*
Ophioſtaphylos, Uva anguina, *a kind of ſhrub ſo called.*
Ophthalmia, Lippitudo, *bleareduesse of the eyes.*
Ophthalmica herba, Eufraſia, *Eyebright.*
Opiſthotonus, *a kind of Cramp.*
Oppertitus, Iris, *Flower-deluce.*
Oppilation, *a ſtopping of the breaſt.*
Opion, Opium, Liquor, vel lacryma, è vulnerutis, papaveris nigri Capitulis fluens, *a certain dryed ſap of the black Poppy, which of the Apothecaries is called* Opium.
Opopanax, lacrima panacis, officinis opopanacum, *the dryed ſap or gum which is preſſed out of the root of the herb* Panax, *which as yet is ſo called of the Apothecaries.*
Opobalſamu m, laquor Balſami, Balſamum, Judaicum, *natural or Jewiſh Balſamum.*
Opolibanum, Thus, *Frankincenſe.*
Opopyra, *a confection ſo called.*
Opos Medicos, *and* Opos Syriacos, hoc eſt, Succus medicus, & Syriacus, *a kind of juyce ſo called.*
Opulus, *Dog tree.*
Orbicularis, *Sowes bread.*
Orchis, Teſticulus, *Gandergraſſe, Ragwort.*
Orchis mas major, *the male Gandergraſſe or Ragwort, with the broud leaves.*
Orchis mas minor, *male Gandergraſſe with the narrow leaves.*
Orchis fœmina minor, *the female Gandergraſſe with the narrow leaves.*
Orchis Odoratus, *ſweet Ragwort.*
Orchis Serapias, *a kind of Ragwort.*
Origanum, Origanus, *baſtard Marjoram, or Spaniſh Origane, Organy.*
Origanum Aſininum, Onitis, vide Origanum.
Origanum Hiſpanicum, vide Origanus Heracleotica.
Origanum Hircinum, Tragoriganum, vide Origanum.
Origanum pahaceum, Origanum ſylveſtre, *wilde or common Origane.*
Oriptelea, Montiulmus, Ulmus montana, *an Elme.*
Orminum officinarum, Gallitricum, *Clary.*
Orobax, Paeonia, *Piony.*
Orobelium, *the ſame.*
Orobethrum, Hypociſtis, *a certain juyce ſo called.*
Orobus, Ervum, *a kind of pulſe bigger then Vetches, bitter Vetches, Tarer.*
Orneogloſſum, Lingua avis, & officinis ſemen fraxini, *the ſeed, or keyes of Aſh.*
Ornus, Fraxinus montana, *an Aſh.*
Orthophnæa, *a ſtraightneſſe of breath, by ſtopping of the Lights, that one cannot breath but holding his neck upright.*
Ortyx Theophraſti, Herbæ genus, Plantago, *Plantain.*
Orvala, ſive Orbalſa Herbariorum, *Clary.*
Oryza, Riſum, *Rice.*
Os Sepiæ, *Curtlebone.*
Os de corde cervi, Oſſea cartilago cordis cervini, eſt propago quædam nervia duriuſcula, crucis ſimilitudine, *the bone that is in a Stags heart.*
Oſtracium Indicum, Blattum Byzantium, *an Indian ſhell*, vide Blatta Byzantia.
Oſtracum Galeni, Cothleæ domus, *a Snail ſhell.*
Oſyris, vel Oſyrias, *wilde Flax.*
Othonnum, Chelidonium majus, *Celendine the greater.*
Oxalis, vulgo Acetoſa, *Sorrel.*
Oxalis arvenſis, Oxalis minor, tenuifolia vervecina, *the leſſer Sorrel.*
Oxalis gallica, *or* Oxalis rotunda, *round Sorrel.*
Oxalis ſativa, *tame Sorrel.*
Oxyacantha Galeni, Officinis Berberis dicitur, *the Berbary tree.*
Oxyacanthites, *Berbary wine.*
Oxyarcentis, *the greater Juniper tree.*
Oxycraton, ſive Oxycratum, water and vinegar together, called Poſca in Latine.
Oxycroceum, vide Emplaſtrum Oxycroceum.
Oxygonum, Papaver erraticum, *the red cornroſe.*
Oxydrus Theophraſti, Juniperus minor, *the Gooſeberry tree.*
Oxylapathum Dioſcoridis, Lapathum acutum, *Docks.*
Oxylapathum Galeni, Lapathum acidum, Sorrel.
Oxymalon perſicon Laconi, prunum, *a Prune.*
Oxymel ſive Oxymel ſimplex, *Sirupe made of Vineger and Hony.*
Oxymel compoſitum, Oxymel diureticum.
Oxymel de radicib. a *kind of compounded ſirupe.*
Oxymel Scillinum, ſive Scilliticum, a ſirup of ſea Onions, Vinegar and Hony.
Oxymel ſimplex, vide Oxymel.
Oxymyrſive, Ruſcus, *Kneeholme.*
Oxyphœnica, Palmulæ Indicæ Tamarindi, the fruit of the tree Oxyphœnix.
Oxyrrhodinum, Oleum roſaceum aceto dilutum, *Oyl of Roſes & Vineger together.*
Oxyſaccharum, Officinis Oxyſaechara, a ſirup ſo called.

Oxyſac-

Oxyſaccharum compoſitum, *a compounded ſirupe of Vinegar and Sugar.*
Oxytriphyllum, Aſphaltium, *wood Sorrel.*
Ozæna, ſive Ozena, *a ſore in the noſe cauſing a ſtinking ſavour.*
Ozilete officinarum, *or* Ozylete, *perfuming Candles.*
Ozimum, Ocimum, *or* Ozymum, *Baſil.*
Ozymum aquaticum, *water Baſil.*
Ozymum Caryophyllatum, *or* Ozimum minus, *the leſſer Baſil.*
Ozimum criſpum, *criſped Baſil.*
Ozimum minus, vide Ozimum Cariophylatum.

P.

PAbulum anſerinum, Alſine, *Chickweed.*
Pabulum camelorum, Scœnanthum, Squinanthum.
Pabulum cervi, Elaphoboſcum, *A kinde of Sage.*
Pæderos, *and* Pæderotes, Acanthus, *Bears foot.*
Pæderotes, vide Pæderos.
Pæonia, *Pyony.*
Pæonia alba, *white Pyony.*
Pæonia fœmina, *Pyony the Female.*
Pæonina fœmina altera, *red Pyony.*
Pæonia maſcula Plinii, Pæonia promiſcua, *the ſame.*
Pæonia maſcula Dioſcoridis, Pæonia alba.
Pæonia multiplex, *double Pyony.*
Pæonia promiſcua, vide Pæonia maſcula, Plinii.
Pæonium Apulcii, idem quod Pæonia, *Piony.*
Pæſæde, Pæonia, *the ſame.*
Pala marina Barbarorum, Balla marina officinarum, *ſea balls.*
Palimpiſſa, Pix excocta, *Pitch twice ſod.*
Palatium leporis.
Palma, Phœnia, *the Date tree.*
Palma Chriſti, *a tree ſo called.*
Palma Chriſti minor, Satyrium Baſilicum minus Herbariorum, *three leuſed Gandergraſſe. Ragwort, or Dogſtones.*
Palma Veneris, Satyrium Baſilicum, *the ſame.*
Palma virginea herbariorum, Pervinca, *Perwinkle.*
Palmos, *the panting of the heart.*
Palmulæ Dactyli, Phœnices, *Dates.*
Palmulæ acidæ, Palmulæ Indicæ, Palmulæ nigra Tamarindi, *ſower Dates.*
Palmulæ Indicæ, vide Palmulæ acidæ.
Palmulæ nigræ, vide Palmulæ acidæ.
Palmula Veneris, Satyrium regium minus, *a kinde of Ragwort.*
Palpitatio cordis, *the panting of the heart.*
Palpebra, gena, Blepharon, *an eye lid.*
Paludapium, Eleoſelinum, *wilde Parſly, Smallage.*
Pampinula, Pimpinella. *Pimpernel.*
Panaritium Barbarorum Paronychia, *A diſeaſe often breeding in ones fingers.*
Panada, Panatilla Practicorum, *A pap made with bread.*
Panacea, Ligusticum verum, *Lovage.*
Pancarpos, *Milkthiſtle.*
Pandionia radix, Chelidonium majus, *Celandine the greater.*
Pancranum, Thapſia, *a kinde of Turbith.*
Panicum, *Panick.*
Panicum Indicum, *Indian Panick.*
Panigo, Panicum, *Panick.*
Panion, Satyriam, *Dog ſtones.*
Panis alcarit Barbarorum, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Panis bis coctus, Panis nauticus, *Biſket.*
Panis ciconiæ, Colchichum, *Hermodactyles.*
Panis cuculi, Trifolium acidum, *Cuccowbread, wood Sorrel.*
Panis fauni Barbarorum, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Panis Divi Johannis, Carrubia, Siliqua.
Panis nauticus, vide Panis bis coctus.
Panis terræ herbariorum, Ciclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Panthiceratos, Pæonia, *Pyony.*
Papaver, Mecon, *Poppy.*
Papaver album, *white Poppy.*
Papaver caninum, Papaver erraticum, *wilde Poppy.*
Papaver caducum, *red Poppy.*
Papaver erraticum, vide Papaver caninum.
Papaver erraticum minus, *the leſſer red Poppy.*
Papaver fluidum Gazæ, Papaver rhœas, *the ſame.*
Papaver ſativum, *white Poppy.*
Papaver hortenſe, *the ſame.*
Papaver paluſtre, Nymphæa, *the white water Lilly, or Roſe.*
Papaver nigrum, *black Poppy.*
Papaver puniceum, Papaver rubrum, *red Poppy.*
Papaver rhœas, vide Papaver fluidum.
Papaver rubrum, vide Papaver puniceum.
Papaver ſylveſtre Dioſcoridis papaver ni- *wilde Poppy.*

Papa-

Papaveralis, *red Poppy.*
Papaveralis minor, *the leſſer Poppy.*
Papaveris caput Codia, *the tops of Poppy.*
Paralius, Tithymalus marinus, *A kinde of Spurge.*
Paralyſis, paraphlegia, nervorum reſolutio, *a diſeaſe called the Palſie.*
Paralytica, or Paralytica herba, *Cowſlips.*
Paralytica, Alpina, *Sanicle.*
Paralyticus, *one that hath the Palſey.*
Paraphlegia, vide Paralyſis.
Paraphora, Delirium, vide Mentis error.
Pardalianches, *a kinde of Wolfewort.*
Parietalia, *the Temples of the head.*
Perietaria, *and* Parietaria minor, Perdicium, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Paron Italorum, Ilíaca, *A pain in the guts.*
Paronychia, Panaritium Barbarorum, *A diſeaſe growing in the fingers.*
Parotes, Abſceſſus ſecus aures, *An Impoſtume behinde the ears.*
Parthenium, Cotula fœtida, *Feverfew, or Motherwort.*
Paſaphan, Italorum, *a powder ſo called*
Paſcanthemum Herbariorum, Bellis minor, *Daiſies.*
Paſpaſe Hippocratis, Millium, *Millet.*
Paſtinaca, *a Parſenep.*
Paſtinaca alba, *A white Parſenep.*
Paſtinaca cervina, Elaphoboſcum, *a kinde of Parſenep.*
Paſtinaca erratica, Paſtinaca vera, *Wilde or yellow Parſenep.*
Paſtinaca nigra Theophraſti, Paſtinaca rubra, *A Carrot.*
Paſtinaca lutea, Carotis lutea, *yellow Carrot.*
Paſtinaca ſylveſtris, Paſtinaca vera, *Wilde Parſeneps.*
Paſtinaca major Athenæi, Careum, *Cumin.*
Paſtillum, Iſatis, *Woad.*
Paſtus Camelorum, Scœnanthum, *Squinanth.*
Paſſulæ officinarum, Uvæ paſſæ, *Raiſons.*
Paſſulæ Chemeſinæ, Paſſulæ ſine nucleis, *Corans.*
Paſſulæ corinthiacæ, vide Paſſulæ ſiliciæ.
Paſſulæ Damaſcenæ, Uvæ Zizibæ, vel Zibebæ, *A kinde of Raiſons.*
Paſſulæ minores, *Currans.*
Patientia, *the herb Patience.*
Paverina Italorum, Alſine, *Chickweed.*
Pavonaria Herbariorum, *Arſeſmart.*
Pectis Apuleii, Sympheitum magnum, *Comfrey.*
Pedalium Apuleii, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Pedicularia.
Pelaſgum Plinii.
Penidia, Penidiorum.
Pentapetes, quinquefolium, *five leaved graſſe.*
Pentapleuron, *Hounds rib, or the leſſer Plantain.*
Pentaphyllon, *Cinckfoyl.*
Pentorobon, Peonia, *Pyony.*
Pentadactylon, Ricinus: Palma Chriſti.
Peplion, *Wilde Purſlain.*
Pepo, Pepon, *A kinde of Melons called Pompeons.*
Pepo muſcatellinus, *A kinde of Pompeons.*
Pepo ſaccharinus, *Another kinde of Pompeons.*
Pepo ſaracenicus, *A kinde of Pompeons.*
Pepo Turcicus, *the ſame.*
Pera paſtoris, Burſa paſtoris, *ſhepheards pouch.*
Perdicium, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Perfoliata, *Thorough wax.*
Perforata officinarum, S. *Johns wort.*
Pericardium, *the skin that compaſſeth the heart.*
Periclymenum perfoliatum, vide Periclymenum Italicum, ſive Periclymenum perforatum, *Woodbinde, or a kinde of Honyſuckle.*
Pereclymenum, Periclymenus, *Honyſuckle.*
Periſterion, Columbaria, *Vervein.*
Peripneumonia, An inflammation or impoſtume in the Lungs, with a vehement Fever.
Periſteropodium, Pes columbinus, *Storks Bill.*
Perla, Margarita, *A kinde of pretious ſtone.*
Perſicaria Herbariorum, *Arſeſmart.*
Perſicum, *a Peach.*
Perſicus, *and* Perſica malus, *a Peach tree.*
Perſites, Tithymalus dulcis, *A kinde of Spurge.*
Perſonatia, or Perſonata, *Clot, or great bur.*
Pervinca, *Pervinkle.*
Pes Alexandrinus, Pyrethrum, Bartrame, or Pellitory.
Pes columbinus Herbariorum, *Pinckneedle, Shepherds bodkin, or Storks bill.*
Pes gallinaceus, Hartwort.
Pes Leporinus, *Hares foot.*
Pes Leonis, *Pedelion, or Lions foot.*
Pes vituli, *A kinde of Cuckowpinte.*
Peſtilentia, Peſtis, *A Peſtilence or Plague.*
Peſtis, vide Peſtilentia.
Petrælæon, Petroleum, *an oyl that naturally runneth out of a ſtone.*
Petroſelinum, *a kinde of parſly growing on ſtones.*
Petroſelinum Alexandrinum, Herbariorum, *ſtone parſly.*
Petroſelinum Macedonicum, *the ſame.*

Peuce,

Peuce, Abies nigra, *A Firr tree.*
Peucedanum, *Dog Fennel.*
Phagadæna, *A running canker, or pock.*
Pharmacon Suidæ, Petræleon. An oyl naturally running out of a ſtone.
Phaſganum, Gladiolus, *Seage or Gladen.*
Phaſelus, ſive Phaſeolus, a kinde of pulſe or long peaſe.
Phaſiolus, Phaſelus, the ſame, a Turkiſh bean or peaſe.
Pheminalis, Pelomus, *a kinde of Primroſe.*
Philanthropus, Aparine, a kinde of burrs that cleave mens coats.
Philonium, ſive Philonium Romanum, *A Confection ſo called.*
Philonium perſicum, *A Confection ſo called.*
Philomedium, Chelidonium majus, *Celandine the greater.*
Phlegma, the humour in the body called *Phlegme.*
Phlegmone, inflammatio, *An Impoſtume, or blood inflamed.*
Phlogion, Viola Trinitatis, *herb Trinity, or Harts eaſe.*
Phlomis, Verbaſculum, *Cowſlips.*
Phlomos, Melanophyllos, Verbaſcum nigrum, *Long wort, Woolblade, or Torch herb.*
Phlomos agrios, Verbaſcum ſylveſtre, *wilde Woolblade.*
Phlox, *flower gentle.*
Phœnix, Palma, *A Date tree.*
Phœnicites, Lapis Judaicus, *Jewes ſtone.*
Phrenitis, A phrenſie.
Phrycodes, vide Febris phrycodes.
Phrygius lapis, *Amber.*
Phthiriaſis, Morbus pediculariſ, *the Lowſy evil.*
Phthiriocton um, Pedicularia, *Lycebane.*
Phthiſis, *a kinde of Conſumption.*
Phthiſicus, *one that hath a Conſumption.*
Phu, *Valerian.*
Phu ponticum, *the ſame.*
Phyleteria, ſive Phyletcrium, Dictamus alba, A certain herb ſo called.
Phylira, Tilia, *The Linden, or Tillet tree.*
Phyllitis, Lingua cervina, *Harts tongue.*
Phyllon, ſive Phyllon Indicum, *An Indian ſtafe,* vide Malabathrum.
Phyllopharis, Marrubium, *Horehound.*
Phyſtrum, *Loveweed.*
Phyrania, Fermentum, *ſowr dough.*
Phyſalis, Halicacabus, *Alkakengy.*
Pia mater, A little skin that covereth the braine, vide Meninges.
Pica, citta, Malacia, A diſeaſe of longing unnaturally in a woman with childe.
Picea, Abies nigra, *a Pitch tree.*
Picibitumen, Piſſaſphaltum, *Pitch, and the lime called Bitumen mingled together.*
Pilula, Catapotium, Barbaris Pillula, per duplex L. *Pills.*
Pillula cypariſſi, Nux cupreſſi, *A Cypreſſe nut.*
Pilulæ Alephanginæ Arabum, Pilulæ aromaticæ, *A kinde of Pills.*
Pilulæ aromaticæ, vide Pilulæ Alephanginæ.
Pilulæ aureæ, *a kinde of Pills.*
Pilulæ de Agarico, *pills of Agaricus.*
Pilulæ Aſſajereth, *pills ſo called.*
Pilulæ de Aloe lota, *pills of waſhed Aloes, or Sengreen.*
Pilulæ aggregativæ officinarum, Pilulæ Polychreſtæ, *pills ſo called.*
Pilulæ de Lapide Armoniaco, *pills of a ſtone ſo called.*
Pilulæ de Bdellio, *pills made of the Gum* Bdellium.
Pillulæ benedictæ, *certain pills ſo called.*
Pilulæ cochiæ, *pills that purge the head.*
Pilulæ communes, Pilulæ Ruffi, Pilulæ ſine cura, vide Pilulæ peſtilentiales.
Pilulæ de Cynogloſſa, *pills of Hounds tongue.*
Pilulæ de Euphorbio, *pills of the gum called Euphorbium.*
Pilulæ Fœtidæ, *pills of* Aſſa fœtida.
Pilulæ de Hiera, *pills of Aloes.*
Pilulæ de Hiera compoſita, *pills of Aloes, and other things.*
Pilulæ de fumo terræ, *pills of Pigeons, Chervil, or Fumitory.*
Pilulæ de Hermodactylis, *pills of Hermodactiles.*
Pilulæ iliacæ, *pills for the Colick, or pain in the ſmall guts.*
Pilulæ Indæ, *pills of Indian Mirobalans.*
Pilulæ de Hiera cum agarico, *pills ſo called.*
Pilulæ de lapide Lazuli officinarum, Pilulæ de lapide Cyaneo.
Pilulæ maſtichinæ, *pills of Maſtick.*
Pilulæ de mezereo officinarum, *pills of Lorel.*
Pilulæ de Chamelæa, *the ſame.*
Pilulæ ophtalmicæ, *pills for the eyes.*
Pilulæ de quinque generibus Mirobalanorum, *Pills of five kindes of Mirobalans.*
Pilulæ de Opopanaco, *pils of the Gum Opopanacum.*
Pilulæ polychreſtæ, vide Pilulæ aggregativæ.
Pilulæ peſtilentiales, Pilulæ Ruffi, *pils againſt the plague.*
Pilulæ ruffi, vide Pilulæ communes, and Pilulæ Peſtilentiales.

Pilulæ de Sarcocolla, *Pils of a gum called Sarcocollum.*
Pilulæ ſine quibus, ſive, ſine quibus eſſe nolo, *Pills ſo called, which ſome call* Pilulæ ſine cura, *becauſe they may be taken or uſed without all fear.*
Pilulæ de Sandaracha, *pills of the Gum of a Juniper tree.*
Pilulæ de Serapino, *pills of the Gum* Serapinum.
Pillulæ de ſuccino, *pills of white Amber.*
Pilulæ de tribus, Pilulæ peſtilentiales.
Pilulæ de Rhabarbaro, *pills of Rubarb.*
Pilulæ ſine cura, vide Pilulæ Alephanginæ, Pilulæ peſtilentiales, Pilulæ communes, Pilulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo.
Pilulæ Stomachicæ, *Pills for the ſtomack.*
Pimpinella criſpa, Pimpinella petræa, Pimpinella minor, *Burnet, or Pimpinel, Pimpinel the leſſer.*
Pimpinella Hircina, *a kinde of Pimpinel.*
Pimpinella Italorum, Sanguiſorba, *Pimpinel.*
Pimpinella major, *the great, Pimpinel.*
Pimpinella minor, vide Pimpinella criſpa.
Pinaſter, Pinus ſylveſtris, *the wilde Pinetree.*
Pineſtell, Pineſtellum, *Dog Fennel.*
Pinea officinarum, Nux Pinea, *the fruit of the Pine tree.*
Pingue lactis, Pinguedo lactis, *Cream.*
Pinguitudo ſuccidarum Lanarum, Oeſypus, *the oyl that breedeth in the flanck, or neck of a ſheep.*
Pinus, *A Pine apple tree.*
Pinus ſylveſtris, vide Pinaſter.
Pinus pumila, *A kinde of Pine tree.*
Pinula, Tricomanes, *Maindenhair.*
Piper, *Pepper.*
Piper album, *white Pepper.*
Piper agreſte, Vitex, Agnus Caſtus.
Piper Aquaticum, Hydropiper, *water Pepper, Arſnick, Kitbridge, or Culrage.*
Piper caninum, *the ſame.*
Piper Eunuchorum, Piper Monachorum, Agnus caſtus, vide Agnus caſtus.
Piper longum, *long Pepper.*
Piper monachorum, vide Piper Eunuchorum.
Piper montanum, *Lorrel.*
Piper nigrum, *black Pepper.*
Piperitis, Lepidium, *Indiſh Pepper, Alecoſte.*
Pira muſcatellina, *Muſk pears.*
Pinaſter, *wilde pear tree.*
Pirola, ſive Pirula, *or* Pirola pratenſis, *wilde Beets.*
Piſſahygra, Pix liquida, *Tarr.*
Piſſaſphaltum, Picibitumen, *Pitch, and the lime called Bitumen mingled together.*
Piſſaſphaltum Arabum, Mumia officinarum, *the ſame.*
Piſſaſphaltum Græcorum, Piſſaſphaltum nativum, *the ſame.*
Piſtaceum, ſive Piſtacium, Piſtachium, *A kinde of nuts commonly of the Apothecaries called* Piſtici.
Piſtaceus, *A kinde of nut tree.*
Piſtachium, or Piſtacium, vide Piſtaceum.
Piſum, *A Peaſe.*
Phititis, Papaver nigrum, *Black Poppy.*
Pituita, Phlegma, *Phlegme.*
Pityides, Pineæ nuces, *the fruit or nuts of the*
Pityuſa, Eſula major officinarum, Eſula, *Spurge.*
Pix, Piſſa, *Pitch.*
Pix arida, Pix concreta, Pix excocta, *hard, or ſtone Pitch.*
Pix Brutia, Pix græca, *A kinde of Pitch.*
Pix Fluida, Pix Liquida, *Tarr.*
Pix navalis, pix radulana, *ſhip, or ſayler's* Pitch.
Plantago, Plantain, or Waybread.
Plantago acuta, ſive Lanceolata, *ſharp plantain.*
Plantago Aquatica, Plantago Paluſtris, *water Plantain.*
Plantago lata Apulei, Plantago latifolia, *broad leafed Plantain.*
Plantago lanceolata, Plantago acuta, *prickle leafed Plantain.*
Plantago latifolia minor, Plantago trinervia, Plantago ſylvatica, *the leſſer broad leafed Plantain.*
Plantago major, *the great Plantain.*
Plantago media Herbariorum, Plantago minor Dioſcoridis, *Waybread, or Ribgraſſe.*
Plantago minor Dioſcoridis, vide Plantago media.
Plantago acuta, vide ſupra.
Plantago rubea, Plantago major, *red Plantain.*
Plantago trinervia, vide Plantago latifolia minor.
Plantago roſea, *A kinde of Plantain.*
Planta leonis, Alchimilla, *Ladies mantle.*
Plantagonium, Folium papaveris, *the leaf of Poppy.*
Plantanella Spondyllium, *Bear's foot.*
Plantanus, A Plane tree with broad leaves, growing in Italy, whom ſome do take for *Opulus.*
Platyophthalmon Plinii, Stimmi, *A kinde of purging glaſſe called* Stibium.
Pleuritis, *the Pleuriſie.*
Plectronia, ſive Pelethronia Apuleii, Centaureum magnum, *Centory the greater,* vide Rapontica.
Plectranthemum, Conſolida regia, *Larkſpur.*
Pleuriticus, *one that hath the Pleuriſie.*

Plum-

Plumbago Plinii, Perſicaria maculata, *A kinde of Arſmart.*
Plumbum, *Lead.*
Plumbum uſtum, *burnt Lead.*
Podagra, *the Gout.*
Prodagra lini Herbariorum, Caſſyta, *Bindeweed.*
Podex, *an Arſehole.*
Polemonia, ſive Polemonium, vide Diptamus.
Pollen, *Mealduſt.*
Polyanodynos, Cicuta, *Hemlock.*
Polyanthemon Plinii, Ranunculus multiplex, *A kinde of Butter flower.*
Polycarpon, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Polycraton Hippocratis ſive Polycriton, *Arſmart.*
Polygonoides, pervinca, *Perwinkle.*
Polygonatum, Sigillum Solomonis, *Solomons Seal.*
Polygonatum anguſtifolium, Polygonatum minus Herbariorum, *Solomons ſeal the leſſer.*
Polygonatum latifolium, Polygonatum platyphyllon, *the great Solomons ſeal.*
Polygonatum majus, *the ſame.*
Polygonatum minus, vide Polygonatum anguſtifolium.
Polygonatum platiphyllon, vide Polygonatum latifolium.
Polygonum, multinodia, *Knotgraſſe.*
Polygonum Heraclium Herbariorum, Polygonum mas, *Knotgraſſe the male.*
Polygonum fœmina, Hippurus minor, *Knotgraſſe the female, or Horſetail.*
Polygonum maſculum, vide Polygonum Heracleum.
Polygonum minus, vulgo ruella, *the leſſer Knotgraſſe.*
Polyneuron, *broad Knotgraſſe.*
Polyominon, Perdicum, Parietaria.
Polypodium, Felicula, *Polipody.*
Polypus, *a certain Impoſtume in the noſe.*
Polytrion officinarum, Trichomanes, *Maiden hair.*
Polytrichum Apuleii, *the ſame.*
Polytrichum Dioſcoridis, Polytrichum verum, *a kinde of Venus hair.*
Polytrichum aureum Herbariorum, *the ſame.*
Polytrichum verum, vide Polytrichum Dioſcoridis.
Pomada, ſive Pomata, *a ſweet ſmelling ſalve made of Apples.*
Pomata, unguentum Pomatum, vide Pomada.
Pomelæa Herbariorum, *Lungwort.*
Pompholyx nigra, *gray Tutty.*
Pompholyx, *Tutty.*
Pomum Arangiæ, Pomum Nerantzium, *an Orenge.*
Pomum Lemonium, ſive Limonium, *A Lemon.*
Pomum ſylveſtre, *a Crab or wilde Apple.*
Poplitis vena, *the vein of a mans ham behinde the leg.*
Populago, Bechium, *Folefoot, Alehoof, or Horſe-hoof.*
Populeum officinarm, unguentum populeum, *Poplar ſalve.*
Populus, *the Poplar tree.*
Populus humilis ſive Populus pumila, *a kinde of Poplar.*
Porcellana, Herbariorum, Andrachne, *Purſlain.*
Poros, *that matter which conſolidateth the broken bones within.*
Porrum, *a Leek.*
Porrum aricinum, Porrum Capitatum, *headed Leeks.*
Porrum ſectile, ſive Porrum ſectivum, *Leeks.*
Porrum Tarentinum, *Leeks.*
Porrum ſylveſtre, ſive Porrum vineale ſeu Ampeloraſum, *wilde Leeke.*
Portentilla Herbariorum, Argemone altera, *wilde Tanſie, or Silver herb.*
Poſca, Oxycraton, *a kinde of ſmall houſhold wine, mixed with water in the preſſe:* vide Oxycraton.
Præmorſa Herbariorum, Morſus Diaboli, *Devils bit.*
Praſitis gemma, *a kinde of Saphyre.*
Praſium, Marrubium, *Horehound.*
Priapeion, Viola nigra, *a kinde of Violets.*
Priapicon, Satyrium Erythronium, *a kinde of Gandergraſſe.*
Priapiſmus, ſatyriſmus, ſatyriaſis, ſatyriaſmus, *a diſeaſe whereby the privy member of a man ſtandeth alway, without appetite or luſt of generation.*
Priapus Cervi, *Piſle of a Hart.*
Primula verſlora Herbariorum, ſive Primula veris, *Primroſe, or Cowſlips.*
Probatium, Plantago, *Plantain.*
Proetium, Veratrum nigrum, *black neeſewort.*
Proſerpinaca, *Knotgraſſe.*
Proſopium, ſive Proſopis, *the great Burr.*
Protopium, *wine new preſſed out of the Grape.*
Protea Apuleii, Nymphæa, *the white water Lilly.*
Pruneola, Pruna ſylveſtria, *Sloes.*
Prunella Herbariorum, *Selfe-heal.*
Prunidactyla, *Damask Prunes.*
Pruna Avenaria, *a kinde of Sloes.*
Pruna Aſinaria, *or* Pruna Aſinina, *great Prunes.*
Pruna Cerea, ſive Cerina, *a kinde of Prune.*

Pruna

Pruna Celina, sive Cerea majora, *great Italian Prunes.*
Pruna Damascena, *Damask Prunes.*
Pruna Hiberica, Pruna Hispanica, *Spanish Prunes.*
Pruna hordearia, *white Prunes.*
Pruna equina, *Horse Prunes.*
Pruna Syriaca, vel Pruna Syriacusana, *Damask Prunes.*
Pruna Nana, *harvest Prunes.*
Pruna sylvestria, *Sloes.*
Prunum, *A Prune.*
Prunum Passum, *a dryed Prune.*
Prunus, *A plumtree.*
Prunus sylvestris, *A Sloe tree.*
Prurigo, Prurigus, *Itch.*
Pseudoacorus, Gladiolus luteus, *sweet Cane.*
Pseudaristolochia, Capnos, Chelidonia, *Swallows herb.*
Pseudoligusticum, *Lovage.*
Pseudomelantium, *Corn rose.*
Pseudonardus, Spica hortulana, & Lavendula, *Spike.*
Pseudopastinaca, *A Parsenep.*
Pseudomyrtus, vitis Idæa,
Pseudopartenium, *Mother wort.*
Pseudorhaponticum, Centaureum magnum, *great Centory.*
Pseudosantalum, *false Saunders.*
Psiadium Herbariorum, Alchimilla, Sinnau.
Psittachium Nicandri, Pistaceum, *A kinde of nutt so called.*
Psilothrum, Vitis alba, *Bryony.*
Psora Ætii, Scabiosa, Scabious.
Psora Plinii, fera scabies, *A certain kinde of scurvy sore so called.*
Psyche, tripolium, *A kinde of Turbith.*
Psychotrophon, Betonica, *Betony.*
Psychuacos, Perdicium, Parietary.
Psyllium, Fleawort.
Psymmithium, Cerussa, *white Lead.*
Ptela, Ulmus, *or*
Ptelea, *an Elme tree.*
Pteris, Filix, *Fern, herb Osmund, or brake.*
Pterygophoron Dioscoridis, Lincurium, Electrum, *Amber.*
Ptisana, Cremor hordei, *A decoction of Barly Orgemond.*
Pugio Gazæ, Gladiolus, *Flower-delice.*
Pulegium, *Pennyroyal, or pudding grasse.*
Pulegium martis, Dictamum Creticum.
Pulegium agreste sive sylvestre, *wilde Pennyroyal.*
Pulicaria, sive
Pulicaris, *Fleawort.*
Pulmonaria, *Lungwort.*
Pulmonaria arborea, Lichen arboreus, *a kinde of Ludgwort, that groweth on trees like Mosse.*
Pulmonaria maculata, *Sage of Jerusalem.*
Pulmonaria Gallica, Auricula muris major, *the greater Mousear.*
Pulmonaria Vegetii, *wilde Neeswort.*
Pulvis Montagnanæ contra pestem, *a certain powder for the Plague.*
Pulvis nihili officinarum, *Tutty.*
Pulvis Senæ præparatus, *the powder of Sene prepared.*
Pyon, pingue lactis, *Cream.*
Pyra Apiana, *or*
Pyra Muscatellina, *or*
Pyra hordearia Plinii, *A kinde of sweet Pearl.*
Pyrachya. *the same.*
Pyrama, Ammoniacum impurum, *the foul and impure gum Ammoniack.*
Pyraster sive
Pyrus sylvestris, *A wilde Pear tree.*
Pyrene Plinii Tecolithus lapis, *the stone calpis* Lapis Judaicus.
Pyretrum, *Pellitory of Spain.*
Pyretos febris, *a burning ague.*
Pyrites, Pyrethrum, *Pellitory of Spain.*
Pyrites lapis, lapis luminis, Marchasita, *the Mine of Brasse.*
Pyrola, sive
Pyrula, *wilde Beets, or winter green.*
Pyrola pratensis, sive
Pyrule pratensis, *wilde Beets.*
Pyrum, *a Pear.*
Pyrum Cidoneorum, *a Quince.*
Pyrus, *a Pear tree.*
Pythonium Apuleii, Dracunculus major, *Dragons.*
Pythonium Dioscoridis, Hyoscyamus, *Henbane.*
Pyxacantha, *or*
Pyxacanthus, Chironius Plinii, *the Barberry tree.*
Pyxos, Buxus arbor, *the Box tree.*

Q

Quassamus barbarorum, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Quartana, *a Quartain ague.*
Quercula, Trixago, Chamedrys, *Germander.*
Quercus, *an Oak or an Acorn tree.*
Quinquefolium, *Cinquefoil.*
Quinquenervia, Plantago minor, *the lesser Plantain.*
Quotidiana, *a Quotidian or daily Ague.*

R.

RAdicula, Raphanus, *A Radiſh.*
Radix, Raphanus, *A Radiſh.*
Radix barbarica, Rhabarbarum, *Rubarb.*
Radix concava Herbariorum, *Hartwort.*
Radix colophoniæ, *Scammony.*
Radix conſecatrix, Iris, *Flowerdelice.*
Radix pandeonia, *Celandine.*
Radix pontica, Rhaponticum.
Radix Scammonia, *the root of Scammony.*
Radix Scythica, Glycyrrhiza, *Licorice.*
Radix violacea vulgo dicta, *the Flowerdelice.*
Ramex varicoſus, *A Rupture of ſwollen veins.*
Ranunculus, *Crowfoot.*
Ranunculus multiplex, Polyanthemum, *Batchelours buttons.*
Ranunculus rotundus, Flamula, *the leſſer Golden knap or Butter flower.*
Rapa ſive
Rapum, *the Rape root.*
Rapaneolus Herbariorum, genus Rapi ſylveſtris, *A wilde Rape.*
Raphanus condimentarius, ſive
Raphanus obſoniorum, *An Horſe-radiſh.*
Raphanus ſylveſtris, Armoracia, *A wilde Radiſh.*
Rapocaulis Herbariorum, *Rape Colewoorts.*
Raponcellus, ſive Rapontium.
Rapontium, vide Raponcellus.
Raponcellus,
Rapuntium, ſeu
Rapunculum Herbariorum, *the ſame.*
Rapuntium ſylvaticum, *the wilde.*
Rapontium Alopecurum Herbariorum, *the ſame.*
Rapum porcinum Herbariorum, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Rapum ſylveſtre, *wilde Rape root.*
Repulitia Barbarorum, Glycyrrhiza, *Licorice.*
Repletio, *fulneſſe of body.*
Res non naturales.
Reſina, *Roſin.*
Reſina pinus, ſive reſina pinea, *Gum of the Pine tree, or the Roſin of the Pine.*
Reſina Laricis, ſive Larigna, *the common Turpentine.*
Reſina Lentiſcina, Maſtiche, Maſtix, *Maſtick.*
Reſina Therebentina, *Venetian Turpentine.*
Rha Rheon, Rheum, Rhaponticum.
Rhabarbarum, Rhebarbara, *Rubarb.*
Rhabarbarum ponticum Herbariorum, *herb Patience.*
Rhacoma Plinii, ſive Recoma, *the ſame.*
Rhapontica, ſive Rhaponticum, *the ſame.*
Rhaponticum, ſive Rhaponticum officinarum, *the root of the greater Centary.*
Rhæa, ſive Rhoa, *the Pomegranate tree.*
Rhagadia, ſive Rhagades, *Chaps and clefts in the hands, and other parts of the body.*
Rhagoides, *the third rinde or skin that compaſſeth the eye.*
Rhaſpe Nicolai Myrepſi, Rhaſpaticum vinum.
Rhecoma Plinii, ſive Rhacoma.
Rheon, vide Rha.
Rheon Barbaricon, ſive Rheon Barbarum, *Rubarb.*
Rheuma, *A Rheume or diſtillation of humors.*
Rheum barbarum Monachorum, Rumex ſativus, *Monkes Rubarb, Patience.*
Rhododendrum, ſive Rhododendrum Nerion. *Oleander.*
Rhodionarciſſus, Narciſſus Roſeus, *red Narciſſus.*
Rhododaphne, Laurus roſea, Nerion, *A kinde of Oleander.*
Rhodon, Roſa, *A Roſe.*
Rhodinum, Oleum roſatum, *oyl of Roſes.*
Rhodoſantalon, Santalum rubrum, *Red Saunders.*
Rhoodes, vide Febris Rhoodes.
Rhopalon Apulcii, Nymphæa, *white water Lilly.*
Rhyte, Ruta, *Rue.*
Rhyte montana, Ruta montana, *a kinde of Rue.*
Ribes officinarum, *Raſpes.*
Ricinus, Cici Palma Chriſti.
Riſum, vel Rizum *Riſe.*
Rob Arabum, eſt ſuccus medicatus qui ſolis calore denſatur, Latinis ſapa dicitur, Anglis, *A certain confection, which the Arabians call* in plurali numero, Robub, *which is* Sapa *the juice of any herb or fruit defecate.*
Rob de agreſta, ſuccus medicatus de Omphacio, *Verjuice.*
Rob de Berberibus officinarum, ſuccus medicatus ex Baccarum Oxycanthæ ſuccis, *a confection of Berberies.*
Rob Cornorum, ſive rob de Cornis, *A confection made of Dogtree.*
Rob de Cydoniis, ſive rob Cydoniorum, *a confection of the juice of Quinces without Sugar.*
Rob granatorum, ſuccus medicatus ex ſucco malorum Punicorum, *A Confection made of the juice of the Pomgranate without Sugar.*

Rob

Rob mororum officinarum, Diamoron, *the juice of Mulberries.*
Rob nucum officinarum, Diacuryon, ſive Diacarydion, *A certain Confection made of the juice of a kinde of Nut, with ſugar ſodden with it till it be a thick Sirupe.*
Rob de ribibus officinarum, *the juice of a certain berry with Sugar ſodden together like a ſirupe.*
Rob Uvarum, *A Confection of Grapes with Sugar ſodden like a ſirupe.*
Roberta herba ſive Robertiana, *a kinde of Crowfoot.*
Robertiana, vide Roberta herba.
Robub, Sapa, vide Rob.
Robus Columellæ, Triticum, *Wheat.*
Ropertiana, *Crowfoot.*
Roraſtrum Apuleii, Vitis alba, *Bryony.*
Ros Syriacus, Manna, *Honey dew, or Manna.*
Roſa, Rhodon, *A Roſe.*
Roſa Ægyptia, *A yellow Roſe.*
Roſa Alabandica Plinii, *A kinde of Roſe ſo called.*
Roſa alba, *A white Roſe.*
Roſa Africana, *A yellow Roſe.*
Roſa Arvenſis, ſive Roſa Avenaria, *a kinde of Corn Roſe.*
Roſa Autumnalis, *A winter Roſe.*
Roſa Alexandrina, *A kinde of Roſe ſo called.*
Roſa Baſilica, vide Pæonia.
Roſa benedicta, vide Pæonia.
Roſa Aſinorum Averrhois, Pæonia, *Pyony.*
Roſa canina, *Brier buſh, or Hep tree, or Bryer tree.*
Roſa Campeſtris, *A wilde or field Roſe.*
Roſa Cinamomina vel Cinnamomea, *a kinde of Roſe ſo called.*
Roſa Caroneola, *A Damask Roſe.*
Roſa Divæ Mariæ, *Ladies Roſe, ſome there are that take it to be Roſe of* Jericho, vide Roſam Hierichuntis.
Roſa Damaſcena, *A Damask Roſe.*
Roſa Sativa, Pæonia, *Pyony.*
Roſa Hierichuntis, ſive roſa Divæ Mariæ, *Roſe of Jericho.*
Roſa Hyemalis, *Winter Roſe.*
Roſa incarnata Herbariorum, *Carnation Roſe.*
Roſa Junonis, ſive Roſa Junonia, *A white Lilly.*
Roſa lutea, *A kinde of yellow Roſe.*
Roſea mileſia Plinii, *purple Roſe.*
Roſa muſcata ſive Moſcata, *Musk Roſe.*
Roſa purpurea officinarum, *purple Roſe.*
Roſa paluſtris, *A water Roſe.*
Roſa punicea, *A kinde of Roſe.*
Roſa regia, Pæonia, *Pyony.*
Roſa pumila, *A field Roſe.*
Roſa rubra, *A red Roſe.*
Roſa ſancta, Pæonia, *Pyony.*
Roſa Syriaca, A *Musk Roſe.*
Roſa Trachinis Plinii, Roſa rubra, *the red Roſe.*
Roſa vulpina, *A yellow Roſe.*
Roſago, Nerium, *Oleander.*
Roſarum apices, the yellow ſeed which is within the Roſe.
Roſata novella, A Confection of Roſes ſo called.
Roſea arbor, Rhododendrum, *Oleander.*
Roſella Herbariorum, Papaver erraticum, *wilde Poppy.*
Roſimarinum, ſive Roſimarinus, ſeu Roſmarinum Coronarium, *Roſemary.*
Roſmarinum Coronarium, *Roſemary.*
Roſmarinum Mauritanorum, Sticas Arabica, *French Lavender, or Lavender gentle.*
Roſtrum Ciconiæ, *Storks bill.*
Rubia, Erythrodanum, *Madder.*
Rubia tinctoria ſive tinctorum, ſeu rubia Infectoria, *A kinde of Madder.*
Rubinus, Gemma, A *Ruby, or precious ſtone.*
Rubrica armenie, Bolus armenius, Bolearmoniack.
Rubrica lemnia, Rubrica ſigillata, Terra lemnia, Terra ſigillata, Sealed earth.
Rubus, the Bramble, Blackberry, or Bryerbuſh.
Rubus Cervinus, Rubus Idæus, A kinde of Bramble.
Ruella, Polygonum minus, A kinde of Swines graſſe.
Rucula Aquatica, ſive Rucula marina, Rocket.
Ructus, A belching or breaking of winde upward.
Rumex, *Sorrel.*
Rumex aquaticus, ſive paluſtris, Hydrolapathum, A kinde of water Sorrel.
Rumex paluſtris, vide Rumex aquaticus.
Rumex ſativus, Rhabarbarum Monachorum, Monks Rubarb, Patience.
Rupertiana, Herba Ruperti, *Storks bill.*
Ruſcus, A certain rough and pricking ſhrub ſo called, Butchers broom, or Pettigrew.
Ruta, *Rue.*
Ruta montana, A kinde of Rue ſo called.
Ruta muraria, Adiantum candidum, Venus, Maiden, or our Lady hair.
Ruta ſylveſtris, wilde Rue.
Ruta ſolis, Hypericum, S. *Johns wort.*

Rutinalis, Spondylium, *Bears foot, or Bears claw.*

S.

SAbina, Savina, *the herb called Savine.*
Sacchar, Saccharon, vel Saccharum, *Sugar.*
Saccharum Cantium, Candum, sive Candidum, *Sugar candy.*
Saccharum Cibale, *common kitchin Sugar.*
Saccharum Canarienſe, *Canary Sugar.*
Saccharum Chriſtallinum, *White Sugar Candy.*
Saccharum finum, ſeu refinatum, ſive Saccharum Valentinum, *fine Sugar.*
Saccharum Maltanum, ſive Melitæum, *kitchin Sugar.*
Saccharum Maderienſe, ſive Mederienſe, *A kinde of Sugar ſo called.*
Saccharum Miſcellaneum, *A kinde of Sugar.*
Saccharum Ponidium, *A kinde of Sugar ſo called.*
Saccharum Tabartzet Arabum, Saccharum puriſſimum, & albiſſimum, Saccharum finum, *fine Sugar.*
Saccharum Thomaſinum, ſive Thomæum, Saccharum rubrum officinarum, S. *Thomas Sugar.*
Saccharum ſeu Conſerva florum Caryophyllææ, *a conſerve of Gilloflers.*
Saccharum florum Lavendulæ, *A conſerve of Lavander flowers.*
Saccharum florum Meliſſæ, *a conſerve ſo called.*
Saccharum Bugloſſatum, *A conſerve of Bugloſſe.*
Saccharum Borraginatum, *conſerve of Borrage.*
Saccharum florum Hyſſopi, *Conſerve of Hyſſope.*
Saccharum florum Nymphææ, *conſerve of water Roſes.*
Saccharum florum Pſeudonardi, *conſerve of Spike.*
Saccharum florum Perſici, *A conſerve ſo called.*
Saccharum Roſatum, *Conſerve of Roſes.*
Saccharum florum Roſemarini, *conſerve of Roſemary.*
Saccharum Salviatum, *Conſerve of Sage.*
Saccharum Trifolii acidi *Conſerve of Cuckoes bread.*
Saccharum florum verbaſculi, *Conſerves of Cowſlips.*
Saccharum violarum, Joſaccharon, *conſerve of Violets.*
Sacerdotis vitile, Aurum, *Cuckopit.*
Sacra herba, Venbena, *Vervein.*
Sagupenum, Serapinum officinarum, *a certain kind of ſtinking gum growing in Syria, which the Apothecaries call, Serapinum.*
Saggina Italorum, Sorgium, *an herb ſo called.*
Sahafaran Arabum, Crocus, *Saffron.*
Sal Ammoniacus, ſive ſal Hammoniacus, *a kind of Salt, the which hath heretofore been digged of the land in Africa, and hath been brought hither, which as yet is uſed amongſt us.*
Sal Armoniacum officinarum, *a certain compounded Salt of the Alchymiſts, the which of ſome men have falſly been taken for the right Salt of Africa, and is called* Sal Armoniack.
Sal Criſtallinus, Sal nativus, Sal Foſſitivus, *fine and Clear, or Chriſtal ſalt.*
Sal fuſilis, *melting ſalt,*
Sal gemmæ officinarum, Sal gemmeus, *chriſtal ſalt.*
Sal Indus, *a kind of Sugar.*
Sal marinus, *Sea ſalt.*
Sal popularis, *common Salt.*
Sal paluſtris, *ſea Salt.*
Sal ſaxeus, *ſtone ſalt.*
Sal Abſinthites, *Wormwood ſalt.*
Salicharia, Lyſimachia Dioſcoridis, ſive ſalicaria lutea, *yellow Water Willow or Looſeſtrife.*
Salicaria cornuta Herbariorum, *a kind of water willow.*
Salicaria punicea, ſive purpurea, Lyſimachia Plinii ſeu ſalicaria Spicata Herbariorum, *a kind of brown Looſeſtrife or water Willow.*
Saliva Syderum Plinii, Manna, *Hony dew, or Manna.*
Saliunca, Spica, Celtica, vide ſpica Celtica.
Salix, Itea, *the Sallow tree.*
Salix Amerina, ſalix Marina, *ſea Sallow tree.*
Salix marina, vide ſalix amarina.
Saltus leporis, *an herb ſo called.*
Salvatella, *the Liver vein.*
Salvia, Eleliſphacos, *Sage.*
Salvia auriculata, ſalvia acuta, ſalvia minor, ſalvia nobilis, ſalvia cruciata, *the leſſer or eared Sage.*
Salvia acuta, vide ſalvia auriculata.
Salvia Boſchi, ſeu Boſchi ſalvia Herbariorum, *wilde Sage.*
Salvia cruciata, vide ſalvia auriculata.
Salvia major, *great Sage.*
Salvia ſylveſtris, *wilde Sage.*
Salviavita, ſive ſalvia vitæ, Adiantum album *Veneris, Maiden or our Ladies hair.*

Sambucus, *Elder, or Bometree.*
Sambucus Arvenſis, ſambucus humilis[1] ſive ſambucus pumila, Ebulus, *wilde Elder.*
Sambucus humilis, vide ſambucus arvenſis.
Sambucus pumila, *wilde Elder.*
Sampſucus, Marjorana, *Marjoram.*
Sanamunda, *Avence.*
Sanctonicum officinarum, Santonicum, *a kind of Southernwood.*
Sandaracha Græcorum, Auripigmentum rubeum, *red Arſenick.*
Sandaracha Vitruvii, minium ſecundarium, *Sinople, red Lead, or Vermillion.*
Sandaracha Arabum, Gummi Juniperi Sandarax, *the gum of the Juniper tree.*
Sandrax Arabum, vide ſandaracha Arabum.
Sandalum, Sandalus, *the ſpice called Saunders.*
Sandalum album, *white Saunders.*
Sandalum Citrinum officinarum, Sandalum flavum, *yellow Saunders.*
Sandonicum officinarum, ſantonicum, *a kind of Southernwood.*
Sanguinalis mas, Polygonum mas, *the male Knotgraſſe.*
Sanguinalis fœmina, Polygonum fœmina, *the female Knotgraſſe.*
Sanguinalis minor, Ruella, Knotgraſſe the leſſer.
Sanguinaria, Knotgraſſe.
Sanguinaria maſcula, the ſame.
Sanguinaria fœmina, the female Knotgraſs, or Horſetail.
Sanguinarius lapis, Hæmatites, the bloodſtone.
Sanguis Draconis, Lachryma Draconis, Dragons blood.
Sanguis Draconis herba, an herb ſo called.
Sanguis Herculis Apuleii, Centaureum magnum, great Centory.
Sanguis Herculis Dioſcoridis, Crocus, Saffron.
Sanguis milvi Apuleii, Scordium, a water Leek.
Sanguiſorba, the herb Burnet.
Sanguiſuga, *a Horſleech.*
Sanies vini, *Wine Lees.*
Sanicula, Diapenſia, *Sanicle.*
Sanicula Alpina Herbariorum.
Sanicula cathartica Herbariorum, ſanicula fœmina.
Sanicula fœmina, vide ſanicula cathartica.
Sanicula quinquefolia, ſive ſanicala vitiginea Herbariorum.
Sanicula major, *Alchimilla.*
Sanicula vitiginea Herbariorum, vide ſanicula quinquefolia.
Sanilum, Scammonium, *Scammony.*
Santalum, Santalus, *Saunders,*
Santalum album, *white Saunders.*
Santalum Aromaticum, ſantalum flavum, *yellow Saunders*
Santalum machoſiri, vel mazanari, ſeu machazari Arabum, ſantalum flavum *the ſame.*
Santalum machazari Arabum, vide ſantalum machozari.
Santalum machaziri, vide ſantalum machoſiri.
Santalum odoriferum, ſantalum flavum.
Santalum roſaceum, ſantalum rubrum, *red Saunders.*
Santalum rubrum, vide ſantalum roſaceum.
Santalum ſpurium, ſantalum adulterinum, Pſeudoſantalum, *baſtard Saunders.*
Santonicum, Abſynthium ſantonicum, ſive marinum *ſea Wormwood.*
Santolina Herbariorum, Abrotonum fœmina, *Southernwood the female.*
Sapa *new wine boiled to the third part.*
Sapana, Anagallis, *Chickweed.*
Saphea, ſaphena Barbarorum, *the womb vein, or the vein of the Matrix.*
Saphena Barbarorum, vide ſaphea.
Saphyrus, vide ſapphirus.
Sapo, ſmegma, *Sope.*
Saponaria, *Fullons graſſe, Crowſope.*
Sapphyrus, ſaphyrus, *a ſaphyre ſtone.*
Sapphyrus aureus, Chryſites, *a yellow ſaphyre.*
Sapphyrus candidus *a white ſaphyre.*
Sapphyrus cæruleus, ſive ſapphyrus cyaneus, *A blew Saphire.*
Sapphyrus Chryſitis, ſapphyrus aureus, *A yellow Saphyre.*
Sapphyrus praſitis, vel
Sapphyrus viridis, *a green Saphire.*
Sarcocolla, gluten carnis, Carniglutinum, *a kinde of Glew.*
Sarcotica, *Incarnating ſalves.*
Sarda, vel
Sardius lapis, Cornelius, *a hard red ſtone.*
Sardonia herba *Crowfoot.*
Sardonix, Sardius onychinus, *a ſtone of the colour of the nail of a mans hand.*
Sarmentum, *a branch of a vine growing on the tree.*
Satyrion, *Dogs ſtones, Gãndergraſs, or Ragwort.*
Satyrion baſilicum, ſatyrium regium, *Ragwort the male.*
Satyrium baſilicum majus mas, *the greater male Ragwort.*
Satyrium baſilicum majus fœmina, lacryma Mariæ, *the greater Ragwort female.*
Satyrium baſilicum minus, *the leſſer male Ragwort.*
Satyrium Erythron, *or*
Satyrium Erythronium, *red Ragwort.*
Satyrion Triphyllon, *or*
Satyrium Trifolium, *Ragwort.*
Satyrium odoratum, *a kinde of Ragwort,*

Satyrium

Satyrium regium, vide Satyrium basilicum.
Satyrium regium minus, Satyrium odoratum *a kinde of Priestpintle or Ragwort.*
Satyrismus Apulei, Satyrium erythronium; *red Ragwort.*
Satyriscus, *a disease whereby the privy member of man standeth alwaies.*
Satureia, sive
Saturegia, *Savory:*
Sauchromatum, Dragontium, *Dragons.*
Savina, sabina, *the Savine tree.*
Saxifraga, sive
Saxifraga, *Saxifrage.*
Saxifragia alba, *white Saxifrage.*
Saxifraga lutea, *yellow Saxifrage.*
Scabies, *a scab, or itch.*
Scabies Hispanica, *the Pox.*
Scabiosa, *Scabious.*
Scala cœli, sigillum Salomonis, *Solomons seal.*
Scambonia, radix, *Scammony.*
Scammonia, sive
Scammonium, *Scammony.*
Scammonia præparata, *prepared Scammony.*
Scandulaca, *Rope weed, or windeweed.*
Scariola officinarum, Seriola, *Endive.*
Scarlea Herbariorum, Gallitricum, *Clary.*
Scarlea sylvestris, *wilde clary.*
Scebram majus Mesues, Tythimalus major, *the greater Spurge.*
Scebram minus Mesues, Tythimalus minor, *the lesser Spurge.*
Sceiles, *the veins of the Milt or Spleen.*
Scelerotes barbarorum, *or*
Scelerotes Græcorum, durities, Schyrrhus, *a hard impostume, kernel, or swelling, which yieldeth not being pressed, and is commonly called* Schirrhus.
Schœnanthum, Squinantum.
Schœnoprasum porrum sectivum, *Garlick.*
Schœnostrophon, Cannabis, *Hemp.*
Schœnus, schœnanthum, squinanthum,
Scinus, lentiscus, *the Mastick tree.*
Scinus Plutarchi.
Scia barbarorum, Isebias, *an ach in the Hip.*
Scingus, Ruscus, *Knecholm.*
Scinchus, Crocodilus terrestris, vide Stincus.
Scincus Herba, Ruscus, Knecholm.
Scilla, Cepa marina, *sea Onion.*
Scioscbina, stechas, *Lavander gentle.*
Sclarea Herbariorum, Scarlea, *Clary.*
Sclarea sylvestris, *wilde Clary.*
Scleros, Durus, in hoc libro pro schyro intelligitur.
Sclerotes, schyrrus,
Scolibrocon Apulei, Trichomanes, *Maidenhair.*
Scolopendra, sive scolopendrium, *Harts tongue.*
Scolopendria vera, *or* Scolopendria minor, *the herb called* Ceterach.
Scolopendrion majus, Lonchitis altera, *the greater Harts tongue.*
Scolopendrium sylvestre Herbariorum, *A kinde of Harts tongue.*
Scolymus, Cynara, *the Artichoke.*
Scordiastrum herbariorum, Scordotis Plinii, *Marsh garlick, or Water Germander.*
Scordiana Herbariorum, *or*
Scordonia, *or* Scordiana herbariorum, salvia sylvestris, *wilde Sage.*
Scordilum Apulei, Scordium, Chamædris aquatica, *water Germander.*
Scordium, Trixago palustris, *marsh Garlick.*
Scordium alterum Plinii, *a kinde of marsh Garlick.*
Scordium majus, *the same.*
Scordium minus, *the lesser marsh Garlick.*
Scordium Plinianum, vide scordium alterum.
Scoria ferri, *the refuse of Iron.*
Scordotis, marrubium palustre, *marsh Garlick.*
Scorodon, Allium, *Garlick.*
Scorpinaca Apulei, *Knotgrasse.*
Scorpio, *a Scorpion.*
Scorpion, *a kinde of Spurge.*
Scotomia, *or*
Scotoma, *a giddinesse of the head.*
Scrophularia, sive scrofularia, &
Scrophularia major, *the greater Celandine, or the greater Figwort.*
Scrophularia minor, Chelidonium minus, *the lesser Figwort, or Pilewort.*
Scrotum, *the cod or skin wherein he the stone of a man.*
Scrupeus humor, *the Gout.*
Sebel Arabum, *the skin of the eddy eye.*
Sebeste, sive
Sebestena Arabum, Myxa, *the fruit also called* Myxa.
Secale, Briza, *Rye.*
Secundina, *the secundine or skin wherein the childe is wrapped in the womb.*
Sedum, sempervivum, *Houseleek.*
Sedum minus, Crassula minor, *Prickmadam.*
Seditertium genus Dioscoridis, Illecebra, *Little Tunifs or Stone Stonecrop.*
Segatolis, Gladiolus arvensis, *Flags.*
Selinastrum Herbariorum, Ranunculus aquaticus, *water Crowfoot.*
Selenitis, Corona terræ, *Alabast.*
Selinoide, Brassica crispa, *crinkled Cabbage.*
Selinon, sive
Selinum, Apium, *Smallage.*
Selinophyllon Apulei, Trichomanes Dioscoridis, *Maidenhair.*
Selinusia, *the lesser Cabbage.*

Semen ſimplex, Zea monococcos, *Bear-barly or Spelt.*
Semen Alexandrinum officinarum, aliis, ſemencina, ſementina, ſive Semenzina, *Wormſeed.*
Semencina officinarum, vide ſemen Alexandrinum.
Semen leonitum, milium ſolis, *Groutel.*
Semen lumbricorum officinarum, ſemen Abſynthii marini, *Wormwood.*
Semen de papaga, Averrhoi dicitur Cartami ſemen, aliis ſemen papagalli, & ſemen pſittaci, *wilde Saffron ſeed.*
Semen ſanctum officinarum, *Wormſeed.*
Semen Zedoariæ officinarum, ſemen Abſynthii marini, *ſee Wormſeed.*
Seminalis Apuleii, Polygonum maſculum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Seminalis minor Herbariorum Ruellii, *A kinde of Knotgraſſe.*
Sempervivum, Aizoum, *Houſeleek.*
Semura, Pſeudomelanthium, *red Poppy.*
Sena, ſenna, *Sene.*
Senæ infuſio, vide infuſio Senæ.
Sena Ægyptiaca Syriaca, Alexandrina, Orientalis, *the leſſer Sene, or Alexandrian Sene.*
Sena Florentina, Italica, provincialis, *common or great Sene.*
Senecta viperæ, Exuvium viperæ, *the skin of a Viper.*
Senicula, ſanicula, *Sanicle.*
Septimervia, Plantago major, *the greater or broad Plantain.*
Septifolium, Tormentilla, *Tormentil.*
Serapion Apuleii, Orchis ſerapias, *a kinde of Gandergraſſe.*
Serapium, vide Syrupus.
Serapium officinarum, vide ſagapenum.
Serica, Zizipha, *a kinde of fruit ſo called.*
Seriphium, ſeu Seriphon, Abſinthium marinum, *a kinde of Wormwood growing in the ſea.*
Seris, Cichorium, *Cicory, or Endive.*
Seris ſativa anguſtifolia, *the leſſer Endive.*
Seris ſativa minor, *the ſame.*
Seris ſomnifera, ſive seris urinaria, *a kinde of Endive.*
Serpentaria Dioſcoridis, Dracontium, *Dragons.*
Serpentaria officinarum, Biſtorta, *Dragons.*
Serpentaria minor, *the leſſer Dragons, of ſome is alſo called* Aron, ſerpentaria minor.
Serpentaria rubra Herbariorum, Biſtorta, *Dragons.*
Serpentaria minor, Numularia, *Silver graſſe, or Dragons.*
Serpillum, ſive ſerpillus, *wilde Thyme.*
Serratula major Herbariorum, Betonica, *Betony.*
Serratula minor, Chamædrys, *Germander.*
Serta campana Catonis, ſerpula campana Dioſcoridis, Melilotus, *Melilot.*
Serum, *Whay.*
Seſamum, ſeſama, *it is an oyle-ſeed, for the which the Apothecaries uſe the ſeed of* Camelina.
Seſamum officinarum, Camelina.
Seſamum agreſte, ſeſamum agrion, Ricinus, Palma Chriſti.
Seſeli, ſeſelium, & ſeſelis, *Silvermountain ſeed.*
Seſeli Æthiopicum, *black Silvermountain.*
Seſeli Æthiopicum herbaceum, *the ſame.*
Seſeli cervinum album, ſeſeli Peloponneſiacum, *white Silvermountain.*
Seſelium, ſeſeli, *Silvermountain.*
Seſelium Peloponneſiacum, vide ſeſeli cervinum album.
Seſeli Cyprion, Palma Chriſti.
Setanias, ſive ſetanium, *a kinde of Wheat.*
Setialis, viola martia, *a kinde of Violet.*
Seutlomalache, ſive Seutlomalachon, Spinachea, *Spinage.*
Seutlon, Beta, *Beet.*
Sicla officinarum, Beta ſicula, *Beet.*
Syeis, Syeios, Cucumis, *a Cucumber.*
Sicys agrion, Cucumer ſylveſtris, Cucumer aſininus, *a wilde Cucumber.*
Sideritis, Magnes, *the Loadſtone.*
Sidia, malus punica, *the Pomgranate tree.*
Sidion, Malicorium, *the Pomgranate husk.*
Sief Arabum, Collyrium, vel Collyrium ſiccum dicitur latinis, Græcis, Xerocollyrium, *a medicine for the eyes.*
Sief de Fellibus, Collyrium de Fellibus, *A medicine for the eyes made of Gall.*
Sief de Plumbo, Collyrium de Plumbo, *A medicine for the eyes, made of Lead.*
Sief de Roſis, Collyrium de Roſis, *a medicine for the eyes, made of Roſes.*
Sief de Thure, Collyrium de Thure, *a medicine for the eyes, made of Frankincenſe.*
Sief viride, Collyrium viride, *a medicine for the eyes of a green colour.*
Sigillum Chriſti Herbariorum, Herba paris, *a kinde of Lilly bore or Wolfes bane.*
Sigillum lemnium, Terra ſigillata, *A ſealed earth.*
Sigillum Salamonis, Polygonatum, *Solomons ſeal.*
Sigillum Veneris, Herba Paris, *Wolfes-bane.*
Signigialium, *Dragons.*
Siler, ſalix pumica, ſalix aquatica, *a kinde of Willow or Withy Oſier.*

Silvermontanum officinarum, ſeſeli Massiliense, *a kinde of Silvermountain.*
Silex, *a Flintſtone.*
Sili Hippocratis, ſili, vel ſeſeleos Plinii, *Silvermountain.*
Sili Plinii, Sili Hippocratis.
Silicia Plinii, Fœnum Græcum, *Fenegreek.*
Silicula Varronis, Fœnum græcum, *the ſame.*
Silphanthemum, Amaranthus luteus; *Cadweed, or Chaffeweed.*
Sili Cyprion Herodoti, Ricinus, Palma Chriſti.
Siliqua arbor, *the Siliquetree.*
Siliqua Ægyptia, Caſſia Fiſtula, *round Cinnamom pipes.*
Sinapi vel ſinapis, *Muſtard.*
Sinapi Perſicum, Raphanus marinus, *a Kinde of Muſtard.*
Singultus, *vexing or ſobbing.*
Spinalus Carbunculus candidus, *a kinde of Carbuncle.*
Siſelos officinarum, ſeſeli, *Silvermountain.*
Siſarum, vel ſiſer, *the Skyrret, the white Carrot, or yellow Parſenep.*
Siſer, vide ſiſarum.
Sirupus, vide ſyrupus.
Siſymbrium, *water Mint.*
Siſymbrium aquaticum, *the ſame.*
Sitanium, *Saint Peters wheat.*
Smilax, Taxus, *Bindeweed, or Toy.*
Smilax levis, *Ropeweed, or Weedbinde.*
Smyrna, Myrrha, *Myrrhe.*
Smyrnium, *Lovage.*
Soda Arabum, capitis dolor, *Headach.*
Solanum, Styrchnus, *Nightſhade, or deathes herb.*
Solanum ſativum, *the ſame.*
Solanum veſicarium, Halicacabus, *winter Cherry, or Alkakengy.*
Solanum rubeum, *the ſame.*
Solatrum officinarum, Solanum, *Nightſhade.*
Solatrum rubrum, Halicacabus, *Alkakengy.*
Solbaſtrella, ſive Sorbaſtrella, *Pimpernell.*
Soldana, ſive ſoldanella officinarum, Volubilis marina, *Seacole.*
ſolidago, Conſolida, *Wallwort.*
Solidago media, *Sengreen.*
Solſequium aureum, *a Marigold.*
Solidago ſaraſenica, *a kinde of Wallwort.*
Solutio continuitatis, *a diſſolving of that which neceſſarily belongeth to another.*
Sonchus, Cicerbita, *Sowthiſtle.*
Sonchus aſpera, ſonchus ſylveſtris, *wilde Sowthiſtle.*
Sorbum, ſperba, *the Service tree.*
Sorbus, *the ſame.*
Sorgum, ſive ſorghum, *Millet of Indie.*
Sophia, Thalictrum, *Mugwort.*
Spanachia, ſpinacea, *Spinage.*
Sparagus officinarum, Aſparagus, *Sparage.*
Spaſmus, Convulſio, *the Cramp.*
Spatula odorata, Iris, *the Flower-deluce.*
Species Diambræ, *A powder of Ambergreece.*
Species Dianiſi, *a powder of Annis ſeeds.*
Species Dianthus, ſive Dianthos, *a powder of the flowers of Roſemary.*
Species Aromatici Roſati, *A powder of Roſes.*
Species Aromatici Cariophyllati, *a powder of Clowes.*
Species Diacalaminthon, *a powder of wilde Mints.*
Species Diacroci, ſive ſpecis Diacurcumæ, ſive Diacrocomæ, *a powder of Suffron ſo called.*
Species Diacoſti, *a powder ſo called.*
Species Diacymini, *a powder of Cumin.*
Species Diatragacanthi frigidi & calidi, *A powder ſo called.*
Species Diacinnamomi, *A powder of Cinnamom.*
Species Cordiales, *A powder for the heart.*
Species Ducis, *a powder ſo called.*
Species Diagalangæ, *A powder of Galangal.*
Species de Gemmis frigidæ, *A powder ſo called.*
Species de gemmis calidæ; *A powder ſo called.*
Species de gemmis temperatæ, *A powder of tempered Pearles.*
Species Hieræ ſimplicis, *A powder ſo called.*
Species Diairis, ſive Diatros, *A powder of Flower-delace.*
Species Juſtinæ, *a powder ſo called.*
Species Dialaccæ, *a powder ſo called.*
Species Lætificantes, *a powder whereby the heart is made glad and joyful.*
Species lætitiæ Galeni, *the ſame.*
Species lithontribon, *a powder ſo called.*
Species liberantes, *a preſervative powder.*
Species Diamargariton frigidæ, *a very cooling powder made of Pearls.*
Species Diamargariton calidæ, *a warming powder made of Pearls.*
Species Diamenthæ, *a powder of Mints.*
Species Diamoſci amari, & dulcis, *a powder ſo called.*
Species Neræ, *a powder ſo called.*
Species Diaolibani, *A powder of Frankincenſe.*
Species de Papavere, *a powder of Poppy.*
Species Diapendii, *a powder ſo called.*

Species Diapœonii, *A powder of Piony roots.*
Species Diaphœnicon, vide Diaphœnicon.
Species Philanthropon, *a powder ſo called.*
Species pĭris Arcoticon officinarum, ſive ſpecies Diapiriſarcoticon, *A powder ſo called.*
Species Diapraſſii, *a kinde of powder.*
Species Diarrhodon Abbatis, *a powder of Roſes.*
Species Electuarii de ſucco Roſarum, *a powder of the ſap of Roſes.*
Species roſatæ novellæ, *a powder of Roſes.*
Species de ſeminibus, *A powder of certain ſeeds.*
Species Diatrionpipereon, *A powder of three kindes of Pepper.*
Species Triaſandalon, *A powder ſo called.*
Species Diaturbith, *A powder of Turbith.*
Species Bartholdi, *A powder ſo called, which is uſed to be eaten with Fiſh, and with cold Hens and Capons.*
Species Diaxyloaloes, *a powder ſo called.*
Spelta, Zea, *Spelt.*
Sperma Balenarum, *the ſpawn of a Whale.*
Sperma ceti, *the ſame.*
Speronella, Aparine, *Gooſhart.*
Sphacelus Theophraſti, *a kinde of Sage.*
Sphæra marina, ſphæra Thalaſſia, *ſea balles.*
Spharion, Sphæritis, Mux Cypariſſi, *A Cypreſſe nut.*
Sphagnon, Muſcus arborum, *Moſſe.*
Specle, *lees of wine.*
Sphocle, *the ſame.*
Sphondilium, *Beares breech, or Bears claw.*
Sphrargis, ſigillum lemnium, *Sealed earth.*
Spica Celtica ſpica Romana, ſpica Gallica, *the long Spikenard.*
Spica hortulana, *a kinde of Lavander.*
Spica Indica Nardus Indica *a kinde of Spikenard*
Spica Romana, vide ſpica Celtica.
Spicantum Herbariorum, Lonchitis altera, *An herb ſo called.*
Spinacea, ſpinaceum, Spinachia, *Spinage.*
Spina Divæ Mariæ, *A kinde of Roſe ſo called.*
Spina Buxea, Pyxacantha, *the Barberry tree.*
Spina muſina, ſpina veſpertilionis, *Buchers broom.*
Spinalus, Carbunculus candidus, *A Carbuncle.*
Spinus Vergilii, Prunus ſylveſtris, *a Wilde plumtree, or Sloetree.*
Spiritus vitales, *the lively breath.*
Splenium, *Harts tongue.*
Splen, Lien, *the Milt.*
Splenetica, *the Milt vein.*
Spodium Græcorum, Pompholix nigra, *a kinde of ſoot.*
Spolium viperæ, *the skin of a viper.*
Spongiola, Roſæ caninæ, ſpondogos Marcelli, Bedegar, *that groweth on a ſweet Bryar or other trees like a ſponge.*
Spondylia, *ridge homes.*
Spongites, Lapis ſpongiæ, *Sponge or Jewiſh ſtone.*
Spuma auri, *yellow Lithargy.*
Spuma argenti, *ſilver droſſe, or white Litharge.*
Spuma Batava martialis, Lixivium, *Lee.*
Spuma Cauſtica martialis, Lixivium, *Lee.*
Spuma maris, *ſea ſome, or froath.*
Spuma Plumbi, *Lithargy, or white lead.*
Squinanche, & ſquinantia Barbarorum, *the inflammation of the muſcle of the inner gargil, the ſquince,* alias, Angina.
Squilla, *and* ſquilla officinarum, *a certain herb ſo called.*
Stachyites, Tripolium, *a kinde of Turbith.*
Stacte, ſtyrax liquidus, *the flower of Myrrhe,* vide ſtorax liquida.
Stœchas Galeni, ſtichas Dioſcoridis, *French Lavander, or Lavander gentle.*
Stœchas citrina herbariorum, Amarantus luteus, *Mandlenwort,* Cudweed, *or Chaffeweed.*
Staſis agria officinarum, ſtaphys agria, *Staveſacre, or Licebane.*
Stagonitis, *a certain herb in Syria, from the which the Gum* Galbanum *cometh,* vide Galbanum.
Staphylinus, Paſtinaca, *a Parſenep.*
Staphylinus albus, Paſtinaca alba, *a White Parſenep.*
Staphylinus erraticus, Paſtinaca vera, *A Wilde yellow parſenep.*
Staphylinus luteus, Paſtinaca lutea, *a yellow Parſnep.*
Staphylinus ruber, Paſtinaca rubea, *a kind of red Parſnep.*
Staphylodendrum, *a kind of Nuts, ſo called.*
Staphydes, vuæ paſſæ, *Raiſons.*
Staphys agria, *Staveſacre or Licebane.*
Statumaria Apulcii, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Stear, viſcum, *Miſtleto.*
Stella Attica, Bubonium, *Cudwort.*
Stella Maſſilotica, Bubonium Maſſilioticum, *a kinde of the ſame.*
Stelladia Italorum, *an Hypocraſs drink in Italy called* Stelladia.
Stellaria Herbariorum, Alchimilla, *Ladies Mantle.*

Stele-

Stelephuros Theophrasti, Plantago Auguſtifolia, narrow leafed Plantain.
Stemphyla, uvarum expreſſarum retrimenta, *preſſed or dryed Figs.*
Stercus caninum album, vulgo Album Græcum dicitur, *the white dung or ordure of a dog.*
Stercus Diaboli officinarum, Aſſa fœtida, *A ſtincking Gum.*
Stergetron, ſedum, *Houſeleek.*
Sternutatio, *Sneeſing.*
Stibi, ſtibium, Antimonium, *a kinde of glaſſe ſo called.*
Stichas Dioſcoridis, ſtechas Galeni, *Lavander gentle.*
Sticas Arabica, *Arabian Lavander.*
Stichas citrina Herbariorum, Amarantus luteus, *Mandlenwort, Cudweed, or Chaffeweed.*
Stichas Gallica, *a kinde of Lavander gentle ſo called.*
Stichas montana, *Italian Lavander gentle.*
Stimmi, ſive Stimium, *A glaſſe ſo called.*
Stincus officinarum, Scincus, Crocodilus terreſtris, An earth Crocodile. Our doting fools uſe the water Evet for it, which is as like it, as an Apple is like an Oyſter.
Stiphonia, ſive Styphonia, *a kinde of Lavander gentle.*
Stomachus, *the ſtomach.*
Stomoma, Chalybs, *Steel.*
Storax officinarum, & ſtorax Calamintha, ſtorax, ſive ſtyrax Calamitis, A certain odoriferous and well ſmelling Gum, proceeding of a tree alſo called Styrax.
Storax liquida officinarum, ſtyrax liquidus.
Stacte, A ſweet ſmelling juice of Myrrhe.
Strangulatio, ſtrangling, choaking, or ſtopping.
Strangulator Medicorum, vulgo, Angina, *the Squince.*
Stranguria, Urinæ ſtillicidium, *the Strangury.*
Stratiotes, Milefolium, *Muſfoil, Yarrow, or Noſebleed.*
Strobilus, Conus, *a Pine Apple tree.*
Strobili, nuclei Pini, *A pine Apple.*
Strobilus, Cinara, *An Artichock.*
Struthiomelum, Struthium, Burit, herb Philip, Fullons graſſe, or Crowſoot.
Struthium, vide Struthiomelum.
Struthos, Paſſer, *a Sparrow.*
Strichnum, ſive ſtrichnus, ſolanum, *Nightſhade.*
Stupefactiva, *a diſmaying medicine.*
Stupor, Paraplexia, *ſudden privation or lack of ſenſe or feeling.*
Suber, Phellus, *Cork.*
Subeth Arabum, Charos, *A kinde of ſleeping diſeaſe.*
Subverſio ventriculi, *the turning upſide down of the mawe.*
Succinum, Electrum, *Amber.*
Succinum Orientale, Ambarum, *Amber.*
Succio Macobil, Perſicum, *A Peach.*
Succiſa, Morſus Diaboli, *Devils bit, or Ramſeye.*
Succotachos, Perditium, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Succus Malorum Punicorum, ſive vinum Malorum Punicorum, *the ſap or juice of a Pumgranate.*
Succus medicus, ſuccus Syriacus, Aſſa fœtida, *A ſtinking gum.*
Suffuſio fellis, ſuffuſio bilis, Icterus, *the Yellow Jaundiſe.*
Sulphur, Sulfur, *Brimſtone.*
Sulphur vivum, *Sulfur vive.*
Sulphur mortuum, ſulphur factitium, *Brimſtone.*
Sulphur factitium, *the ſame.*
Sumach Arabum, Rhus Græcorum, a kinde of ſeed which of the Apothecaries is called Sumach.
Supercilium terræ, Adiantum, Venus, Maiden, or our Lady hair.
Supercilium Veneris, Milefolium, *Muſfoil.*
Suppoſitorium officinarum, & Barbarorum Glans, Balanus, A Suppoſitory.
Suppreſſio nocturna, Ephialtes, Incubus, a diſeaſe in ones ſleep when one is almoſt ſtifled, and cannot well feteh his breath nor ſpeak. The Mare.
Sutura capitis, *the ſeam in the ſkul.*
Sycaminum, Morum, *the Mulberry tree.*
Sycodes, Ficus, *the Hemorrhoides.*
Sylvæ mater Scribonii, *Honyſuckle.*
Symphytum alterum, Symphytum minus, *Walwort, Aſſe-ear, or Comfrey.*
Synciput, *the forepart of the head.*
Syncopalis fames, *An extream or cutting hunger.*
Syncope, *A ſwooning for feeblenſſe.*
Syncliopa, Stæchas, *French Lavander.*
Synochus, *An Ague ſo called.*
Syræum, Muſtum ad tertias coctum, *new wine or Muſt thrice ſodden.*
Syreon Plinii, Tortyle, ſive Tordylium, *the ſeed of the herb* Seſelis.
Syrium, Minium ſecundarium, *Sinople, red Lead or Vermilion.*
Syrtites, Saphyrus lapis, *A Saphire.*
Syrupus, ſirupus, ſerapium, *and of* Nicolaus Mirepſius, *it is called* Droſacum, *a Sirup.*

Syrupus de abſinthio, *ſirupe of Wormwood.*
Syrupus Acetoſæ, ſyrupus, de ſucco Oxalidis, *Sirupe of ſowr Dock.*
Syrupus Acetoſus ſimplex, officinarum, ſyrupus aceratus ſimplex, *ſirupe of Vinegar.*
Syrupus aceratus ſimplex, ſyrupus acetoſus ſimplex.
Syrupus acetoſus compoſitus officinarum, vel ſyrupus acetoſus de radicibus, ſyrupus aceratus compoſitus de radicibus, ſyrupus acetatus diureticus, *a kind of ſirupe ſo called.*
Syrupus acetoſus compoſitus.
Syrupus acetoſus de Cydoniis officinarum, ſyrupus acetatus de Cydoniis.
Syrupus acetatus de radicibus, vide ſyrupus acetoſus compoſitus.
Syrupus acetaſus duireticus, vide ſyrupus acetoſus compoſitus.
Syrupus aceratus deCydoniis, vide ſyrupus acetoſus de Cydoniis.
Syrupus acetatus Diarhodon, vide ſyrupus acetoſus Diarhodon.
Syrupus acetoſus Diarhodon, ſyrupus aceratus Diarhodon, *ſirup of vinegar and Roſes.*
Syrupus adiantinus, vide ſyrupus de Capillis Veneris.
Syrupus de Arantiis, ſive Arantiorum, *ſirup of Oranges.*
Syrupus de Artemiſia, *ſirup of Mugwart.*
Syrupus de Berberibus, ſyrupus de Oxyacantha, *ſirup of Berberies.*
Syrupus de Betonica, *ſyrup of Betony.*
Syrupus de Byzantiis, ſympus Danarii, ſyrupus Byzantinus, *a ſyrup ſo called.*
Syrupus de Boragine, *ſyrup of Burrage.*
Syrupus de Bugloſſa, *ſyrup of Bugloſſe.*
Syrupus de Calamintha, *ſyrup of Calamint.*
Syrupus de Cichorea, ſive de Cichoreo, *ſyrup of wilde Cicory.*
Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhubarbaro, *ſyrup of Cicory and Rubarb.*
Syrupus Capillorum Veneris, ſyrupus Adiantinus, *ſyrup of Venus, Maiden, or ſay Ladies hair.*
Syrupus de corticibus Citri, *ſyrup of the ſhells of a Citron.*
Syrupus de Cucurbita, ſyrupus Cucurbitinus, *ſyrup of Gourds or Pompions.*
Syrupus Cydoniorum, Mira Cidoniorum, *ſyrupus Quinces.*
Syrupus de Endivia, ſyrupus de Intybo, *ſyrup of Endive.*
Syrupus de Epithymo.
Syrupus de Eupatorio, ſyrupus de Agrimonia, *ſyrup of Agrimony.*
Syrupus Danarii, vide ſyrupus de Byzantiis.
Syrupus de Agrimonio, vide ſyrupus de Eupatorio.
Syrupus de Fumuria, ſyrupus de Fumo terræ, *ſyrup of Fumitory.*
Syrupus de fumo terræ vide ſuprà.
Syrupus de Glycirrhiza, officinis ſyrupus de liquiritia dicitur, *ſyrup of Licorice.*
Syrupus granatorum, ſyrupus ex ſucco Malorum Punicorum, *ſyrup of Pomgranats.*
Syrupus de Hyſſopo, *ſyrup of Hyſſop.*
Syrupus de Intybo, *ſyrup of Endive.*
Syrupus de Irios officinarum, ſyrupus de Iride, ſyrupus Irinus, *ſyrup of Flower-de-luce.*
Syrupus de Jujubis, ſyrupus Jujubinus ſyrupus Zyzyphorum, *or* Zyzyphinus, *a ſyrup ſo called.*
Syrupus de Lemonibus, ſive ſyrupus aciditatis Lemoniorum, *ſyrup of Lemons.*
Syrupus de Lupulo, ſyrupus Lupulorum, *ſyrup of Hops.*
Syrupus de Mentha, *ſyrup of Mints.*
Syrupus de Myrto, ſive ſyrupus Myrtinus, *ſyrup of Myrtles.*
Syrupus Malorum Neranziorum, *ſyrup of Oranges.*
Syrupus condituræ Mirobalanorum, *ſyrup of the confection of Mirobalans.*
Syrupus de Nenuphare officinarum, vide ſyrupus de Nymphæa.
Syrupus de Mymphæa, ſirupus de Nenuphar officinarum, *ſyrup of Water Lillies.*
Syrupus de Papavere, ſive ſirupus Papaverinus, *ſyrup of Poppy.*
Syrupus de Omphacio, vide ſirupus de Agreſta.
Syrupus de Ozyacantha, vide ſirupus de Berberies.
Syrupus de ſucco Oxalidis, ſirupus de ſucco Acetoſæ.
Syrupus Perſicorum, *ſyrup of Peaches.*
Syrupus de Plantagine, *ſyrup of Plantain.*
Syrupus de Pomis, *ſyrup of Apples.*
Syrupus de pomis Saboris Regis.
Syrupus de Portulaca, *ſyrup of Purſlain.*
Syrupes de Praſſio, *ſyrup of Horehound.*
Syrupus de Pyris, *ſyrup of Pears.*
Syrupus de radicibus, vide ſirupus de quinque radicibus.
Syrupus de duabus radicibus, *ſyrup of the two roots.*
Syrupus Ribium, *ſyrup of Raſpes.*
Syrupus infuſionis Roſarum, ſirupus Roſarum, *ſyrup of Roſes.*
Syrupus Roſarum, vide ſyrupus infuſionis Roſarum.
Syrupus Roſarum ſoluſinus, ſive ſirupus incar-

incarnatarum roſarum, *a laxative ſirup of Roſes.*
Syrupus de Roſis ſiccis, ſive ſyrupus Roſarum ſiccarum, *ſirup of dryed Roſes.*
Syrupus Roſarum albarum, *Sirupe of white Roſes.*
Syrupus Saboris Regis, ſive ſyrupus de pomis Saboris Regis, *a certain kinde of ſirup ſo called.*
Syrupus ſenæ, ſive ſyrupus ſeniticus, *a ſirup of Sene.*
Syrupes de liquititia officinarum, vide ſyrupus de Glycirrhiza.
Syrupus de Stæchade, *ſirupe of Lavander gentle.*
Syrupus de Thymo, *ſirupe of Thyme.*
Syrupus Violarum, *ſirupe of Violets.*

T.

TAbes, Phthiſis, *a conſuming and waſting of the body.*
Talus Leporis, *Sowe Dates.*
Tamariſcus officinarum, *a Tamariſk tree.*
Tamarix, *the ſame.*
Tamarus, Vitis nigra, *black Briony.*
Tamus, ſive tamus, *the ſame.*
Tanacetum, *Tanſie.*
Tanacetum ſylveſtre herbariorum, Anſerina, *wilde Tanſie.*
Tapſus Barbatus, *Woolblade.*
Tarantula, Phalangium, *a kinde of Spiders.*
Taraxacon Arabum, Cichorea, Intybus ſylveſtris, *Cicory.*
Taraxacon officinarum, Aphaca Theophraſti, *the ſame.*
Tarbelodathium Dioſcoridis, Plantago, *Plantain.*
Tarum Plinii, Agallochum Græcorum, *A ſweet wood ſo called.*
Tartarus, *the lees of wine.*
Taxus, Smilax, *A tree like Firre, a kinde of Yew.*
Tecolithus, Lapis Judaicus, *Somes ſtone.*
Telephium, *an herb ſo called.*
Telephium Album, *A kinde of white Orpine.*
Telephium Purpureum, *a kinde of Orpine.*
Telis, *Fenegreek.*
Tembul, ſive tembulum Arabum, folium Indum, vide Malabathrum.
Tendones, *the ſinewes or ſtrings.*
Teneſmus, tineſmus, *a diſeaſe ſo called.*
Terbentina officinarum, reſina terebinthina.
Terebinthina, *Turpentine.*
Terebinthus, *the Turpentine tree.*
Terebinthina reſina, *Turpentine.*
Terebinthizuſa, *A kinde of Yellow Jaſper ſtone.*
Tereniabin, ſive tergebin Arabum, Manna liquida, *Hony dew or Manna.*
Terpentina officinarum, Reſina terebinthina, *Turpentine.*
Terra figularis Columellæ, Argilla, *pottars earth.*
Terra lemnia, terra ſigillata, *ſealed earth.*
Terra ſigillaria Ciceronis, Argilla, *Pottars earth.*
Terra viridis, *Boraſſe.*
Terra Sancti Pauli, *an earth ſo called.*
Tertiana, *a Tertian ague.*
Tertiana exquiſita, A right Tertian Ague.
Tertiana extenſa, A tertian Ague of forty hours.
Tertiana duplex, A double tertian Ague, which is alſo mixed with a quotidian Ague.
Tertiana notha, ſive tertiana ſpuria, *a baſtard tertian ague.*
Teſticulus, ſive teſticulus Canis, Orchis, *Dogſtones.*
Tiſticulus leporinus, Satyrion, three leafed Gandergraſſe.
Teſticulus ſacerdotis, Chelidonium minus, *the leſſer Celandine.*
Teſticulus odoratus, *a kinde of Dogs ſtones.*
Teſticulus Satyri, Satyrium erithronium, A kinde of three leafed Gandergraſſe.
Teſticulus vulpis, Satyrion, A kinde of Ragwort.
Teſtidunaria, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Teucrium, great Germander.
Teutlomalache, Spinacea, *Spinage.*
Teuthalis, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Teutlis ſive Teutlon, *Beets.*
Tetanus, *a kinde of Crampe.*
Thalictrum, *Sophia.*
Thapſia, *a kinde of Turbith.*
Thaumaſtos, Iria, *Flower delyce.*
Thelpede, vel thalpide, Iris, *the ſame.*
Theliphonum, *an herb ſo called.*
Thelyphtorium, Abrotonum, *a kinde of Sowthernwood.*
Theriaca, Treacle.
Theriaca Andromachi, a kinde of the beſt Treacle.
Theriaca Diateſſaron, common Treacle.
Theriaca magna, another kinde of the beſt Treacle.
Theriacaria, Phu verum, A kinde of Valerian.
Theriophonum Apuleii, Dragontium, Dragons.

Theriophonum Dioſcoridis, Pardalianches, Libarbs bane.
Theriophonum Aconitum, Pardalianches.
Therium Apulei, Dragontium, Dragons.
Thermæ ſulphureæ, Brimſtone bathes.
Thermus, Lupinus, Lupines.
Theſatica, Plantago, Plantain.
Thion apyron, ſulphur foſſile, ſeu ignem non expertum, a kind of Brimſtone.
Thlaſpi Crotevæ, thlaſpi alterum Dioſcoridis, Raphanus marinus, Rayfort, Treacle, Muſtard. boures or diſh Muſtard.
Thorax, the Breaſt.
Thrauſtma, ſive thrauſton Plinii, Ammoniacum thymiama, a certain kind of gum Armoniack, vide Ammoniacum thymiama.
Thridax Lactuca, Lettice.
Thridax agratis, Lactuca ſylveſtris, wilde Lettice
Thronon, Homeri, Roſa, a Roſe,
Thryalles, the leaves of the herb called roſe Champion.
Thus, Olibanum, Frankincenſe.
Thus Corticoſum, the refuſe of Frankincenſe.
Thus adulterinum, baſtard Frankincenſe.
Thus granuloſum, crombed Frankincenſe.
Thus maſculum, thus teſticulatum, white Frankincenſe.
Thus terræ Plinii, Chamæpytis, Heath or dwarfe Cypreſſe.
Thylacitis, Papaver album, white Poppy.
Thymiama, Nareaphtum officinarum, Thymiama, black Frankincenſe.
Thymiama Herbariorum, Thymum, Thyme.
Thymum Candidum, Thymum capitatum, thymum creticum, thymum ſiccatum, thymum Aromaticum, white Thyme, or Thyme of Creete.
Tilia, Philyra, the Teyle tree.
Tilia fœmina, tilia ſativa, the Linden tree.
Tilia maſcula, tilia ſylveſtris, the wilde Teyſet tree.
Tilphantemum, Gold flower.
Timbrom, Cicuta, Hemlock.
Tithymalus arboreſcens, wilde Spurge.
Tithymalus Characias, a kinde of Spurge.
Tithymalus Caryites, a Spurge ſo called.
Tithymalus Cobius, wilde Spurge.
Tithymalus Cometes, the ſame.
Tithymalus Cupreſſinus, or Tithymalus Cyperiſſias, pine Spurge.
Tithymalus Dendrodes, ſive Dendroides, ſtone Spurge.
Tithymalus fœmina, the female Spurge.
Tithymalus leptophyllus, *ſtone Spurge.*
Tithymalus latifolius, *broad leafed* Spurge.
Tythymalus mirtifolius, ſive myrtiphillos, *or* Tithymalus myrtaceus, *a certain* Spurge *ſo called.*
Tithymalus maſculus, *woolfs milk.*
Tithymalus petræus, *ſtone Spurge.*
Tithymalus paryphillos, *a certain* Spurge *ſo called.*
Tithymalus ſoliſequius, ſive ſolſequius, *Wertgraſſe, or Wertwoore.*
Tithymalus tenuifolius, *narrow leafed* Spurge.
Tithymalus vallaris, *wilde* Spurge.
Tonſillæ, *the kernels growing within the mouth.*
Topiaria, *Italian Beanbreech, or Beares claw.*
Tordylium, tordylion, Seſeli Creticum, *Silver mountain of* Candy.
Tormentilla.
Tormina, *fretting or wringing in the belly or guts.*
Torpor, *a debilitation or feebleneſſe of the mind.*
Tota bona Herbariorum, *a kind of* Spinage.
Toxicum, *a kind of venom or poyſon, wherein with the heades of arrowes are poyſoned.*
Trachea, *the weaſen or pipe of the lunge, the windpipe.*
Tragacantha, tragacanthum, *a kind of gum.*
Tragea, tragema.
Tragoriganum, ſive tragoriganus.
Tragonatum, Cariophillus Arvenſis, *Cornroſe.*
Tragonia, Tarragon.
Tragoſelinum Herbariorum, Pimpinella alba, *white Pimpernell.*
Tragoſelinum minus, Pimpinella major, *the greater Pimpernell.*
Tragoſelinum majus, *the leſſer Pimpernell.*
Tremor, *quaking, trembling or great fear.*
Triapharmacum officinarum, Emplaſtrum triapharmacum.
Triſantali, triſandalon officinarum, *Look* Diatriſandalon *in the letter* D.
Tribulus aquaticus, tribulos, enydros, *water Cheſtnut.*
Tribulus marinus officinarum, tribulus aquaticus, *the ſame.*

Tricho-

Trichomanes, *Maiden hair.*
Tridactylum, Vitex, *Agnus castus.*
Tripholium, Triphyllon, *three leafed grasse.*
Trifolium acidum, sive acetosum, *sowr Trifoly, or woodsowr.*
Trifolium acutum, Columellæ Asphaltium, *prickled Trifoly.*
Trifolium album, *white Trifoly.*
Trifolium felinum, Lagopus, *Hares foot, Hares cummin, Trinity grasse, or herb Trinity.*
Trifolium græcum, *Fenegreek.*
Trifolium incarnatum Herbariorum, *a kind of Trifoly.*
Trifolium odoratum Vergerii, Asphaltium, *garden Clover.*
Trifolium pratense, *three leafed grasse, or Trifoly the red.*
Trifolium purpureum, *the same.*
Trifolium sylvestre *wilde Trifoly.*
Trifolium Trinitatis, Lagopodium, *Trinity grasse.*
Trifolium ursinum herbariorum, Lotus sylvestris, wild Meililot.
Trimithos Nicandri, Terebinthus, the Turpentine tree.
Trinitatis herba, *herb Trinity or Hartsease.*
Trionpiperεon officinarum, vide Diatriopipereon.
Triorchis Æginetæ, Orchis serapias Dioscoridis, *Gander grasse.*
Tripetalon Callimachi, trifolium pratense, *a kind of Trifoly.*
Trifera magna, *a confection so called.*
Trifera fœnonis, *a certain confection.*
Trifera Persica, *a confection so called.*
Trifera Saracenica, *a certain confection.*
Tripolium, turpetum Serapionis, *a kind of Turbith.*
Trissago, Chamedrys, Chamedrios,
Trissago aquatica, sive palustris, Chamædrys aquatica, vide Teucrium.
Trissis, vide Telisca.
Trithales, *a kind of Houseleek.*
Triticum sylvestre, vel triticum terrestre, Chelidonium minus, *the lesser Celandine.*
Tritum Apulei, Tythimalus dulcis, *a kind of Spurge.*
Trixago, Trissago, *Germander.*
Trixago palustris, vide Teucrium.
Trixis Plinii, Palma Christi.
Trociſci pastilli, Gfficinæ nonihil depravata appellatione trociscos nominant sine aspiratione, *a certain kind of round cakes, which are prepared for medicines.*
Trociſci Adulphi, vide trochisci de sulphure.
Trociſci de absinthio, *little cakes of Wormwood.*
Trociſci de Agarico, *cakes of* Agarick.
Trociſci de Alhandel, Triciſci de Colocinthide, *little cakes of Coloquintida, or Wilde Gourds.*
Trociſci de Alkakengi, trociſci de Halicacabo.
Trociſci de Berberis, sive de Berberibus, trociſci de Oxacantha, *little cakes of Berberies.*
Trociſci de Bolo Armeno, *cakes of fine Bolus.*
Trociſci de Camphora, *cakes of Camphire.*
Trociſci de Capparibus, sive trociſci Capparum.
Trociſci de Charabe, sive trociſci de succino, *cakes of Amber.*
Trociſci de Chelidonia, *cakes of Celandine.*
Trociſci de Colacynthide, vide trociſci de Alhandel.
Trociſci de Coralliis, *the cakes of Coral.*
Trociſci de Crocoma, vide Trociſci de Lacca.
Trociſci de Eupatorio, *cakes of Agrimony.*
Trociſci de Lacca, *cakes of* Lacca, sive trociſci de Crocoma.
Trociſci de Halicacabo, vide trociſci de Alkakengi.
Trociſci de Gallia Moschata.
Trociſci de Diarrhodon, *Roſe cakes which do retain the name* Diarrhodon, *or cakes of* Diarrhodon.
Trociſci de Myrrha, *cakes of Myrrhe.*
Trociſci de Olibano, *cakes of Frankincense.*
Trociſci de Oxyacantha, vide Trociſci de Berberis.
Trociſci de Rhabarbaro.
Trociſci de Rosis, *Roſe cakes.*
Trociſci de Sandalis, *cakes of* Lignum Aloes.
Trociſci de sulphure, sive trociſci Adulphi.
Trociſci de spica, *cakes of Spikenard.*
Trociſci de spodio, *cakes made of a kind of sum so called.*
Trociſci de terra sigillata.
Trociſci de Violis, *Violet cakes.*
Tricophyes Apulei, Trichomanes, *Maiden hair.*
Trichnus, Solanum, *Nightshade.*
Trymphalites, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Turbetum, Turpetum, *the Turbith root.*
Turbit, *the same.*
Turpetum Actuarii duplex, nigrum, & album, *white and black Turbith.*
Turpetum album, Alypum, *white Turbith.*
Turpetum Alexandrinum, turpetum Orientale

tale, *the same.*
Turpetum Cineritium, thapsia, *a kind of Turbith.*
Turpetum Serapionis, tripolium Dioscoridis, *a certain kind of Turbith so called.*
Tussilago, Bechium, *Foles foot.*
Tussis, *the Cough.*
Tutia Arabum, Pompholix nigra, *gray Tutty.*
Tutia officinarum, Cadmia fornaria, *Tutty.*
Tutia factitia, *tutty counterfeited.*
Tuvesca, vocabulum ungaricum, Pruna Passa, *dried Prunes.*
Tympania, sive tympanites, *the Tympany.*
Typhodes, *a kind of continual ague.*
Typonium Dioscoridis, Apolinaris, *Henbane or Hengnail.*
Typhonium Apulei, Draguntium, *Dragons.*
Typha Theophrasti, Typha aquatica, Typhapalustris, *Cats-tail, or water Torch.*
Tyrus, Vipera, *a Viper.*

VAccinium, vitis Idæa Theophrasti, *a Blackberrie.*
Valeriana, Marinella, *Valerian.*
Varices, *broken veins in the legs, or in any other part of a mans body.*
vena, a *Vein.*
Vena cava, *the great Liver vein.*
Vena Citrina, Cyperus Indicus, *a kind of Cypresse root.*
Vena communis, *the Median Vein.*
Vena corporalis, *the same.*
Vena manifesta, *the Mother Vein.*
Vena nigra, *the Median vein.*
Vena pulsatilis, *the pulse vein.*
Vena tinctoria, rubia infectoria, *Madder.*
Vena universalis, Mediana, *the Median vein.*
Venæ quietæ, *the blood veins.*
Ventriculus, *the stomach.*
Veratrum adulterinum, Pulmonari Vegetii, *wilde Neesewort.*
Verbena, sive verbenaca, *Vervein.*
Verbasculum, *Cowslips.*
Verbasculum album, *white Cowslips.*
Verbasculum odoratum, *Cowslips.*
Verbasculum multiplex, *double Cowslips.*
Verbascum, Phlomis, *Longwort, or Woolblade.*
Verbascum album, verbascum fœmina, *Woolblade the female.*
Verbascum salvifolium, sive verbascum sylvestre, *wilde Woolblade.*

Vermes terreni, Intestina terræ, *a long Worm breeding in the earth.*
Vermicularis, crassula, minor, *the lesser Houseleek.*
Vernilagium, sive vernilago, Chameleon niger, *the common Thistle with a great long stalk.*
Vernix, Sandarica, *the gum of the Juniper tree.*
Veronica, *Pauls Betony.*
Verrucales, Hæmorrhoides, *the Pyles or Hemorrhoides.*
Verrucaria quorundam, *Marigolds.*
Vertebræ, Spondyla, *the joynts, or Knots of the back bone, the Spondiles.*
Vertex, the top or crown of the head.
Vertigo, a giddinesse of the head.
Vesiccaria, Halicacebus, winter Cherries.
Veternus, Lethargus, *a drowsie disease causing a continual sleep.*
Veronica sive Ceronica, *Betony.*
Vicia, *a Vetch.*
Victorialis.
Victorialis longa.
Victorialis mascula.
Victorialis fœmina, sive victorialis rotunda.
Vinca pervinca officinarum, *Perwinkle.*
Vicetoxicum, Asclepias, *Swallowwort.*
Vinciboscum Herbariorum, Periclymenum, *Woodbind, or Honysuckle.*
Vineago, Perdicium, *Pellitorie of the wall.*
Vini rosa, *a kind of wilde Rose or Eglantine smelling like Cinnamon, a Cinnamon Rose.*
Vinum ex Absynthio, *Wormwood wine.*
Vinum aquosum, vinum Oligophorum, *small wine.*
Vinum ardens, vinum sublimatum, Aqua vitæ.
Vinum arvisium, *Malmsey.*
Vinum Apianum, *Muscadine.*
Vinum atrum, *thick red wine, Aligant.*
Vinum Buglossatum, vinum ex Buglosse *Buglosse wine.*
Vinum Cerasorum, *Cherry wine.*
Vinum Chium, *Malmsey.*
Vinum Claretum, *Hippocras.*
Vinum ex floribus Cariophylleæ, *wine of Gilloflowers.*
Vinum creticum, *Malmsey.*
Vinum coactum, *a kind of Must.*
Vinum dilutum, *water and wine mixed together.*
Vinum Hippocraticum, *Hippocrasse.*
Vinum Juniperinum, *Juniper wine.*
Vinum mellitum, *Honied wine.*
Vinum malviticum, *Malmsey.*

Vinum

Vinum multiferum, *ſtrong wine.*
Vinum Granatorum, *Pomgranat wine.*
Vinum Malvaſiaqum, *Malmſey.*
Vinum mulſum, *ſweet wine.*
Vinum Malorum punicorum, *Pomgranet wine.*
Vinum Muſcatellum, ſeu Muſcatellinum, *Muſcadine.*
Vinum Marreſianum, *Malmſey.*
Vinum Muſteum, *Muſt.*
Vinum Muricum, *a kind of Wine ſo called.*
Vinum Monenhaſiaticum, *Malmſey.*
Vinum Nenupharinum, *Wine of water Lilies.*
Vinum Oenodes, ſive vinoſum, *ſtrong wine.*
Vinum Polyphorum, vinum multiferum, *the ſame.*
Vinum pauciferum, Oligophorum, *ſmall Wine.*
Vinum ex Peonie, ſive Pæonites, *Piony Wine.*
Vinum ex floribus Pſeudonardi, *Spikenard Wine.*
Vinum ruſſum, rubrum, vel rubeum, *red Wine.*
Vinum rubellum, *reddiſh Wine.*
Vinum Raſpatitium, *Wine of whole Grapes.*
Vinum ſublimatum, Aqua vitæ.
Vinum ſalviatum, *Saged Wine.*
Vinum ſeniticum, vinum ex Sena confectum, *Wine of Sene.*
Vinum temperatum, ſive vinum dilutum, *Wine mixed with water.*
Viola, *a Violet.*
Viola alba Dioſcoridis, *white yellow and brown Violets.*
Viola alba Theophraſti, *a kind of water Gillafer.*
Viola alba multiplex, *white double Violets.*
Viola canina, *a dog Violet.*
Viola ſatua, *a wilde Violet.*
Viola martia, *a March Violet.*
Viola Martia alba, *a white March Violet.*
Miola mortuorum, Pervinca, *Pervinkle.*
Viola muraria, *March Violets.*
Viola nigra, *the ſame.*
Viola purpurea, idem quod Viola nigra.
Viola purpurea multiplex, *double Violets.*
Viola Quadrageſimalis, *March Violets.*
Viola ſylveſtris, *wilde Violets.*
Violaria, *March Violets.*
Vipera, Tyrus, *a Viper, a kind of Adder.*
Virga Cervi, Pryapus Cervi, *the piſſe of a Stag.*
Virga aurea, ſolidago ſaracenica.
Virga paſtoris, *Taſſel.*
Viride æris, Ærugo, *Verdigreſe.*
Viſnago Hiſpanorum, Gingidium, *Spaniſh Chervil.*
Viſcum, Ixos, Aſtylis, *Miſſleto, or Miſſledan.*
Viſcum quercinum, *Miſtleden of the Oake.*
Viſcum, viſcus pro glutine. Aucupum, glu ten aviarium, *Birdlime.*
Vitalis, Sedum, Houſleek.
Vitealis, *leſſer Ropemack.*
Vitex, Agnus, *Chaſt tree.*
Vitis, ſive vitis vinifera, *a Vine.*
Vitiligo, Morphea alba Barbarorum, *a fowlneſſe of the body with ſpots of diverſe colours.*
Vitis alba, Bryonia, *white Briony.*
Vitis chironia, vitis nigra, *a black Vine, or black Briony.*
Vitis Idæa, Vaccinium, *a black berry.*
Vitis veneris.
Vitis ſylveſtris, *a Wilde Vine.*
Vitis ſylveſtris flos, *the bloſſome of the wilde Vine.*
Vitriola, Parietaria, *Pellitory of the Wall.*
Vitriolum, Chalcanthum, *blew Vitriol.*
Vitriolum Romanum, *Romiſh Vitriol.*
Vitriolum uſtum, *burned Vitriol.*
Vitulipes, Aurum, *Cockpit.*
Ulcus, *an ulcer, or Byle.*
Ulmus, *an Elme.*
Ulmus campeſtris, *a Wilde Elme.*
Ulmus Montanus, Montiulmus, *a kinde of Elme.*
Ulophonium, Chameleon niger, *a kinde of Thiſtle.*
Umbilicus Veneris, Cyclaminus, *Sowes bread.*
Undimia Chirurgorum, Oedema, *a ſo called.*
Unefera, ſive unephera, *Centory the greater,* Rapontica.
Ungula Alces.
Ungula caballina, Bechium, *Foolefoot, or Cattesfoot.*
Ungula odorata, Blatta byzantia, vide Blatta Byzantia.
Unguis muris, Polygonum, *Knotgraſſe.*
Unguis Aromaticus, *the ſame that ungula odorata is.*
Unicyedia, Clematis Daphnoides, *Periwinkle.*
Unicornium, cornu monocerotis, *the Unicorne.*
Volubilis Antiochena, ſive volubilis magna, Hoppe.

Unguentum Ægyptiacum, *an Egyptian salve.*
Vnguentum Agrippæ, Agrippas *salve.*
Unguentum Althea, a *salve of marsh Mallowes.*
Unguentum album, ubguentum de Cerusa, *a salve of white Lead or, Cerusse.*
Unguentum album Camphoratum, *a salve of white Lead and Camphire.*
Unguentum Anodynum, *a salve which easeth any paine.*
Unguentum Apostolorum, *a salve so called.*
Unguentum Aragon, *a salve so called.*
Unguentum Aurantziorum, *a salve of Orranges.*
Unguentum Alabastrinum, *a salve of Alabaster.*
Unguentum mundificativum de Apio, a *salve of smallage.*
Unguentum de Arthanita, unguentum de Cyclamine, *a salve of Sowes bread.*
Unguentum basilicon, *a salve of Basil.*
Ungentum de Cetussa, vide unguentum album.
Unguentum de Cerussa Mesues, *a salve of Cerusse after the description of* Mesues.
Unguentum Citrinum, a salve of Citrons.
Unguentum Comitissæ, *a salve so called.*
Unguentum infrigidans Galeni, *a cooling salve.*
Unguentum de Gallia, *a salve so called.*
Uuguentum ex Gammaris, *a salve of sea Crevise.*
Unguentum fuscum, *a salve for wounds being yellow.*
Unguentum marcianum, *a salve so called.*
Unguentum Mercuriale, *a salve for the Piles.*
Unguentum nervinum officinarum, *a salve for the sinewes.*
Unguentum nihili officinarum, a salve so called, *good for blearing eyes.*
Unguentum de Pompholige, a salve made of ashes, which the Apothecaries call Nyl.
Unguentum pectorale, a salve for the breast.
Unguentum Populeon, a salve of Poplar.
Unguentum Rosatum, an oyntment of Roses.
Unguentum Rhodinum, *the same.*
Unguentum Sandalinum, vel santalinum, an oyntment of Saunders.
Unguentum serpentinum, vel silicinum, *a salve so called.*
Volubilis, *Rape weed or Woodbind.*
Volubilis Antiochena, sive volubilis Colophonia, *an herb so called.*
Volubilis magna, *Hops.*
Volubilis media, *Woodbind.*
Volubilis Mesues, *Hops.*
Volubilis Syriaca, *an herb so called.*
Volucrum majus, Caprifolium. *Woodbind.*
Volvulus, Iliaca passio, a *pain in the guts, of a Colike in the uppermost gut.*
Urantia, Iris, *the flowerdeluce.*
Urceolaris Helxine, *Pellitory of the wall.*
Ureteres, *the Waterpipes, or Conduits by which the urine passeth from the reins to the bladder.*
Urinæ profluvium, the overflowing of urine.
Ursus, a Bear.
Urtica, a Nettle.
Urtica fœmina, urtica Romana, Italica, the Romish Nettle.
Urtica fœtida, *a stinking Nettle.*
Urtica Herculana, sive Herculea, *a kind of dead Nettles.*
Urtica Italica, vide Urtica fœmina.
Urtica iners, urtica labeo, urtica mortua, *dead Nettles.*
Urtica lactea, *a worm nettles.*
Urtica labeo, vide urtica iners.
Urtica mascula, urtica major, *the great sharpe and stiuking Nettles.*
Vrtica minor, *the lesser Nettles.*
Vrtica mortua, vide, vrtica iners.
Vrtica odorata, a kinde of sweet smelling Nettle.
Vrtica hortulana, Romane Netules.
Vrtica Romana, vide, urtica fœmina.
Vrtica scarlata, a kind of dead Nettles.
Vrtica sylvatica, wilde Nettles.
Vrtica sylvestris, the same.
Vsnea, Muscus arborum, Mosse.
Vterus, the Womb of a woman.
Vulgago, sive Vulvago, Asaraback.
Vulpes, a Fox.
Vulva, uterus, the Womb of a woman.
Vultur, a certain greedy creature so called.
Uva a Grape.
Uva acerba, uva immatura, an unripe Grape.
Uvæ acerbæ conditæ, unripe Grapes comfited.
Uva anguina, uva serpentina, vitis alba, Briony.
Uvarum expressarum retrimenta, the Husks of pressed Grapes.
Uva immatura, vide, uva acerba.
Uva lupi, uva vulpis, Nightshade.
Uva serpentina, vide, uva anguina.
Uva Taminia. vitis nigra, black Briony.
Uva Vulpis, vide, uva Lupi.
Uvæ passæ, Raisons.
Uvæ Damascenæ, Zebeben, great Raisons.
Uva passæ Ciliciæ, sive Corinthiacæ, seu minores, Currans.
Uvæ passæ Corinthiacæ, vide uvæ Damascen.
Uvæ passæ majores, great Raisons.
Uvæ passæ Massilioticæ, a kind of great Raisons.

Uvæ Zibebæ, *great Raiſons.*
Uvula, *a little piece of fleſh in the roof of the mouth.*
Uvularia, *Horſetongue.*

X.

XAuſter Arabum, Tithymalus, *a kinde of Spurge.*
Xerocollyrion, vide Collyrium.
Xylon, Goſſipium, *Cotton.*
Xyphium, *Flower-deluce.*
Xyphium aquaticum, *the ſmall blew water Flower-deluce.*
Xyphium arvenſe, *Flower-deluce.*
Xyloaloe, Xyloaloes, Xylumaloes, Lignum Aloes, *a kinde of ſweet wood ſo called.*
Xyoaloes, vide Xyloaloe.
Xylobalſamum, *the wood whereof Baulm naturally cometh.*
Xylocaſſia, *a kinde of flower ſo called.*
Xylocaracta officinarum, Xylocerata, S. *Johns bread.*
Xylocolla, *a kinde of Lime.*
Xylon, Santalon, *Saunders.*
Xylophyton, *wild Comin.*
Xylum aloes, vide Xyloaloe.

Z.

ZAduar, Zaduaria, Zadura, Zadera, ſive Zador, *a kinde of Zeduary.*
Zaduara, vide Zaduar.
Zador, vide Zaduar.
Zaffranum Barbarorum, *Saffron.*
Zaffranum fatuum, ſive fatuorum, *wilde Saffron.*
Zapetium, Zibetum, *Civet.*
Zea, Spelta, *Beer barly, or Spelt.*
Zea Dicoccos, *Spelt.*
Zea deglubita, *Corn.*
Zea monococcos, Semen, *Spelt.*
Zea ſimplex, *the ſame.*
Zedoaria officinarum, Zurumbetum, *Zeduary*
Zeduar, *the ſame.*
Zeliaurus, Anagallis, *Pimpernel.*
Zibebæ, *great Raiſons.*
Zibetæ officinarum.
Zibethum, zibetuum, *Civet.*
Zibethum, vide Zibethum.
Zina officinarum, Abſinthium Seriphium, *A kinde of Wormwood.*
Zingiber, Gingiber, *Ginger.*
Zingiber conditum, *comfited Ginger.*
Zingiber coctum, ſive Tabulatum, *baked Ginger.*
Zingiber tabulatum, vide Zingiber coctum.
Zingiber viride, vide Zingiber conditum.
Zingiber officinarum, Zingiber, *Ginger.*
Zirbus Barbarorum, Omentum, *the Call or ſuet wherein the bowels are lapt.*
Zizypha, *a kinde of fruit ſo called.*
Zoophthalmon, Sedum, *Houſleek.*
Zopiſſa, *Pitch.*
Zuccarum, ſive Zuccharum, Saccharum, *Sugar.*
Zuccarum penidium, *a certain kinde of Sugar.*
Zuccarum candidum, *Sugar of Candy.*
Zuccharum, vide Zuccarum.
Zulapium Nympheæ, Julep *of the white water Lilly.*
Zulapium Roſarum, *Roſe* Julep.
Zulapium Violaceum, *Violet* Julep.
Zurumbet, ſive
Zurumbetum, *Anthora.*
Zurumbetites, *Anthora wine.*
Zyme, fermentum, *Leaven.*
Zythum, Cervifia, *Beer.*

FINIS.

The Table of Contents.

Χ.

Χάλαζα, Grando.

Χαλαζοφυλάκιον, vide Χαλαζοφυλάκιον.

Χαλαζοφυλάκιον, Granarium.

Χαλεπὸς, Difficilis.

Χαλεπότης, Difficultas.

Χαλεπῶς ἔχειν, Male habere.

Χαλινὸς, Frenum.

Χαλκεῖον, Officina fabrilis.

Χαλκεύειν, Fabricare.

Χαλκεύς, Faber.

Χαλκεύω, Fabricor.

Χαλκὸς, Æs.

Χαλκοῦς, vide Χάλκεος.

Χαλκοῦς, Nummus æreus.

Χαλκοῦς, Æreus.

Χαλκοῦς, Æneus.

Χαλκοῦς, Æratus.

Χαλκοῦς, Æramentum.

Χαλκοῦς, Æramentum.

Χαλκοῦς, Æramentum